macmillan learning™

Practical Strategies

FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

A BRIEF GUIDE

FOURTH EDITION

Mike Markel • Stuart A. Selber

Practical Strategies

FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

A BRIEF GUIDE

FOURTH EDITION

Mike Markel • Stuart A. Selber

Achieve

Did your instructor assign Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*?

Students who use Achieve along with their textbook have access to resources that boost their engagement, their confidence as writers, and their success in the course.

- Writing tools make composing, revising, and giving and receiving feedback in a digital environment easy.
- Diagnostic tests and study plans personalize the book's instruction.
- LearningCurve activities for reading, writing, and grammar adapt (get harder or easier) depending on a student's progress.
- Interactive exercises, a powerful e-book, and a convenient gradebook that integrates with your school's LMS are easy to find and use.
- Document-based cases for every chapter in the book include end-of-chapter cases in Parts 1–3 and pre-built writing assignments that expand on the cases in Part 4, helping you to focus on key goals for each draft and genre.
- Digital writing tutorials suggest ways to use free or common tools.
- Additional resources provide support for close reading, the writing process, grammar, mechanics, and more.

Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication* can be purchased on its own or packaged with the print book for additional savings. An activation code is required.

Accessibility

Macmillan Learning is committed to the goal of providing equal access to all products regardless of an individual's age, ability, or situation and embraces the opportunity to develop services and information technologies that are accessible and usable by all individuals. Accessibility at Macmillan Learning is about extending the power of education to all users. In addition to addressing product compatibility with assistive technologies such as screen reader software, alternative keyboard devices, and voice recognition products, we are working to ensure that the content and platforms we provide are fully accessible.

Our E-books

Macmillan Learning became the first education solutions company to become Global Certified Accessible™, providing "born accessible" digital learning (e-book) options for students with disabilities. Books that are born accessible are developed to ensure that all students, no matter their ability, have the same access to information. This is increasingly important for students and instructors, as more than one out of every ten students who attends college has a disability.

To become Global Certified Accessible, Benetech evaluated Macmillan Learning’s workflow for creating accessible books, as well as many samples of content across the disciplines they publish in, and certified conformance to the accessible EPUB creation guidelines, which are based on WCAG 2.0 AA+ standards put in place by the international standards organizations and the publishing community. Using a collaborative process, Benetech evaluated and provided feedback on more than one hundred accessibility features. The certification applies to all books created using Macmillan Learning's updated process, which includes all e-books with a 2019 copyright and beyond.

Extended Descriptions

In this book, Extended descriptions are present for complex images and graphs that may be helpful to understanding content. These Extended descriptions can be accessed via a link on this icon:

ℹ

Alternative Text

When an image provides important pedagogical information, alternative text (which is also known as alt text) is provided for the image. This text is not visible on the page but can be accessed and read with screen reader technology and other assistive technologies. Our alt text is written and reviewed by subject matter experts.

Color Contrast

All of our book designs and illustrations are checked to ensure that they meet contrast requirements for WCAG 2.0 AA. Meeting these standards ensures ease of use for users with low vision and color blindness, and can create a more supportive learning environment for users with learning disabilities.

Navigation

E-book navigation is designed to make it easy for users, with or without assistive technology, to discover and learn from content within the textbook. Text reflows when resized so there is no horizontal scrolling on the page, and page numbers are embedded in the book so that students can always find where they are compared to classmates using the print equivalent. Heading structures are clearly marked up so it's easy to see where you are within the book as you work your way through.

Accessibility Help

If you have any questions about the accessibility of this e-book or other Macmillan Learning e-books, please reach out to us at webaccessibility@macmillan.com.

Practical Strategies FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

Practical Strategies FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

A BRIEF GUIDE

FOURTH EDITION

Nikada / Getty Images

Mike Markel
Boise State University

Stuart A. Selber
Penn State University

bedford/st.martin's
Macmillan Learning
Boston | New York

Vice President, Humanities: Leasa Burton
Program Director, English: Stacey Purviance
Senior Program Manager: Laura Arcari
Director of Content Development: Jane Knetzger
Senior Development Editor: Sherry Mooney
Assistant Editor: Bill Yin
Director of Media Editorial: Adam Whitehurst
Media Editor: Julia Domenicucci
Executive Marketing Manager: Joy Fisher Williams
Senior Director, Content Management Enhancement: Tracey KuehnGetty Images
Senior Managing Editor: Michael Granger
Senior Manager of Publishing Services and Content Project Manager: Andrea Cava
Lead Workflow Project Manager: Paul W. Rohloff
Production Supervisor: Robert Cherry
Director of Design, Content Management: Diana Blume
Interior Design: Maureen McCutcheon Design
Cover Design: William Boardman
Director of Rights and Permissions: Hilary Newman
Photo Permissions Editor: Allison Ziebka-Viering
Director of Digital Production: Keri deManigold
Media Project Manager: Elizabeth Dziubela

Project Management: Lumina Datamatics, Inc.
Composition: Lumina Datamatics, Inc.

Copyright © 2022, 2019, 2016, 2013 by Bedford/St. Martin's.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, except as may be permitted by law or expressly permitted in writing by the Publisher.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2021933653

ISBN 978-1-319-38270-4 (epub)

1 2 3 4 5 6 26 25 24 23 22 21

Acknowledgments
Acknowledgments and copyrights appear on the same page as the text and art selections they cover; these acknowledgments and copyrights constitute an extension of the copyright page.

For information, write: Bedford/St. Martin's, 75 Arlington Street,
Boston, MA 02116

Preface for Instructors

TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION has, by definition, always involved technology in fundamental ways, from the tools people use to produce and access workplace documents to the subject matter of those documents and the contexts in which they are implemented. 2020 saw an unprecedented shift toward digital work, digital education, and even digital interactions with friends and family. This upheaval underscored the value of the technical communicator and the importance in developing an adaptable mindset and flexible skills. When planning for the fourth edition of *Practical Strategies*, then, it was clear that the concerns of today's learners are less a matter of how to use a particular tool — though support in that area is still a key to success — and more a question of why and when to use what tools to achieve a specific rhetorical goal. Which is to say that with a vast array of technology available, and the disruptive reality of technology's truly integral role in our lives, we felt that it was most important for students to appreciate the context and implications of their digital choices, developing an evaluative perspective that will serve them through generations of technological evolution.

In technical-communication situations, however, that evolution is a multidimensional process with both social and technical aspects. A new feature, Strategies for Online Communication, has been added to the fourth edition to address this process. Professionals from a diverse array of fields provide models of their writing to showcase key digital skills they employ in their work. Annotations provided by those professionals highlight the rhetorical moves and technical considerations they made while developing the document. This new feature explores the complex factors in digital-specific situations, including how to crowdsource data and information and how to integrate multiple modalities into a single end-product. These real-world models present technology in all its possibility and complexity and truly speak to the decisions available to today's technical communicators.

Finally, although it doesn't always feel this way, technology tends to be more evolutionary than revolutionary in nature. Although the web has enabled people to communicate in new and different ways, it involves practices and perspectives that derive from earlier media. For better or worse, the page metaphor still has a notable impact on website design and use, and techniques from film, television, and music production help inform the creation of digital content for technical communication. The new edition embraces this sort of change and continues to provide thorough guidance on traditional, still-valuable approaches to writing while making clear connections to emerging approaches. A great example of this in the fourth edition is our new coverage on how to give an effective video interview and how it compares to one being held in person. This new coverage showcases the evolution of this particular genre and equips students to make effective decisions based on their specific rhetorical needs.

Keeping technology in perspective is not a new task for the field, but it has become intensified in an age of digital everything. In each and every project, technical communicators need to be alert to the benefits and consequences of technology for their own work and for the work of users and their communities. Being alert requires a critical eye, but not in a negative sense: a technological integration of nearly any sort is a nuanced process with a range of options to explore. As opposed to being either a cynic or an evangelist for technology, technical communicators should be curious professionals who are interested in what might be gained, lost, and reproduced, and in how technology can advance the goals, approaches, and values of the field.

We have revised the new edition of *Practical Strategies* to give students even more support for navigating this changing technological landscape. The practice of technical communication, in fact, has never been more dynamic or complex, in large part because of the ongoing evolution and reinvention of technology and work. Today's professionals face an ever-increasing set of challenges in the development of documents, from analyzing global contexts to designing digital content. This book will help prepare students to address such challenges — in their courses and in their careers — and will help them to become effective, responsible communicators in a technologically saturated world.

New to This Edition

The Fourth Edition has been revised to help students stay current with a changing technical-communication environment. We have created a new feature, Strategies for Online Communication, that introduces an emergent topic or issue of digital communication and explores how it is handled by workplace professionals, who share their strategies and insights with students. The new feature appears in Chapters 3, 7, and 14, and the professionals discuss crowdsourcing data and information, using multiple modalities in technical-communication documents, and moderating user forums. They all provide instructive examples from their work and annotate the examples to illustrate the most salient points.

The chapter on applying for a job now includes new material on preparing for and participating in online job interviews, which are increasingly common because they save companies money and time.

The chapter on designing print and online documents now discusses the possibility of leveraging the affordances of both media in the same end-user context. We have also updated our discussion in Chapter 1 of how employers rank the value of technical-communication skills and abilities, and we have added new Tech Tips in the chapters on designing print and online documents and creating graphics. The Tech Tips continue to reflect not just *how* to create different parts of documents using different kinds of software, but *why* to use these tools in the first place. In fact, in all of our revisions, we work to bridge research and practice at the level of document production and use.

Updated examples, both in the print text and in Achieve, provide opportunities for students to analyze the types of documents they will need to produce or contribute to, such as comparison-based data visualizations about education and the earnings gap and a video-based tutorial about selling into international markets.

Practical Strategies has always provided thorough support for students with different levels of preparedness and experience, and the fourth edition is no different. The end-of-chapter checklists and exercises have been revised to meet students where they are, offering a range of detail and depth. Robust additional support is also available in the brand new Achieve.

Achieve with *Practical Strategies* is an exciting, new, and comprehensive set of interconnected teaching and assessment tools. It integrates the most effective elements from Bedford/St. Martin's market-leading digital solutions you may be familiar with — including LaunchPad, LearningCurve, and iClicker — in a single, powerful, easy-to-use platform. We are proud to present **Achieve with *Practical Strategies***, which rests on three core values: *engaging students for better outcomes, supporting students of all levels,* and *partnering with teachers and learners.*

Achieve with *Practical Strategies* comes with a curated course option that you can adapt to fit your needs; add, hide, and rearrange resources and assignments — conveniently available in a searchable library — until the course works for you. Resources in Achieve with *Practical Strategies* include:

- *An interactive e-book* with *Practical Strategies* brings together the resources students need to prepare for your class. Students can download the e-book to read offline, or to have read aloud to them.
- *LearningCurve adaptive quizzing* offers personalized question sets and feedback for each student based on correct and incorrect responses. Questions are conveniently tied back to the e-book to encourage students to access help when they need it.
- *Pre-built writing assignments and other activities* have been developed to support the *Practical Strategies* approach, designed to deliver a coherent learning experience, and will make prep, practice, and review easy and engaging.
- *Source Check plagiarism detection* allows students to scan their papers for potential plagiarism *before* they submit them for review, allowing students to learn academic writing habits and citation practices in the context of their own writing.
- *Diagnostics and study plans* help establish a baseline for student performance — a mark from which students can make progress throughout the course. Promoting personalized learning,

Achieve helps students create actionable study plans to strengthen their skills and build their confidence.
- *Reporting and insights* do the heavy lifting for you with powerful analytics that highlight student engagement, provide opportunities for intervention, and allow you to visualize trends in student progress across assignments.

Based on leading scholars’ work on writer development, the pre-built writing assignments in Achieve with *Practical Strategies* give teachers deeper visibility into students’ writing processes so they can target instruction and feedback to help writers grow and develop across drafts, across assignments, and across courses. Students do the work of the course in a contained and active writing space that includes a suite of powerful writing tools. Actionable insights make students’ progress toward outcomes clear and measurable.

- *Revision.* The Revision Plan helps writers turn feedback into concrete strategies and take ownership of their revision planning. For students, the Revision Plan creates accountability; for teachers, it provides insights about how well students understand the feedback they receive.
- *Reflection.* The writing tools increase students’ rhetorical awareness and promote the transfer of skills and habits from draft to draft. How? By prompting students to articulate the choices they make as writers and to communicate their confidence in the drafts they write. You can choose and

customize reflection prompts to fit your course and assignment goals.

- *Instructor feedback tools.* Powerful and customizable commenting tools allow you to focus your feedback on success criteria — draft goals that you set — and efficiently mark patterns of error. Feedback links to e-book content to give students point-of-need support in the context of their own writing.
- *Peer review tools.* When you empower students to seek feedback from and offer feedback to one another, you invite them to become *writers*, not just students of writing. Achieve's tools scaffold and support students' development as peer reviewers — and allow you to facilitate and monitor the process easily.
- *Pre-built assignments and units that make your life easier.* A flexible assignment building tool allows you to assign ready-made writing prompts or create your own.

Additional resources to help instructors teach students with varying levels of preparedness are also available in Achieve with *Practical Strategies*. Because some students need more time and support to develop the skills they need to be successful communicators, Achieve includes supplemental material that can be assigned as needed on a variety of topics, including active reading, the writing process, grammar, citation, and more. Achieve also features LearningCurve, an adaptive self-study program for students that quickly adapts to what students know and helps them practice what they don't yet understand.

Get ready for insights and *aha!* moments. Get ready to **achieve more**.

The following table describes the updates made to each chapter in the Fourth Edition.

CHAPTER	WHAT'S NEW
Chapter 1 Introduction to Technical Communication	• Updated coverage of the current state of technical communication in the job market
Chapter 3 Writing Collaboratively	• New Strategies for Online Communication feature on Crowdsourcing Platforms
Chapter 5 Researching Your Subject	• New model of a social-media search engine • Updated Team Exercise
Chapter 7 Designing Print and Online Documents	• New coverage on combining print and online documents • New Strategies for Online Communication feature on Using Multiple Modalities • Tech Tip: Why and How To Set Up Pages
Chapter 8 Creating Graphics	• Tech Tip: Why and How To Use Drawing Tools
Chapter 10 Applying for a Job	• Updated coverage of interviewing • New Guidelines box on Preparing for an Online Job Interview
Chapter 12 Writing Informational Reports	• Updated Focus on Process: Informational Reports

Chapter 14 Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions	• New Strategies for Online Communication feature on Moderating User Forums
Appendix Reference Handbook	• Updated coverage of 2019 APA Style guidelines and 2021 MLA Style guidelines

Acknowledgments

The Fourth Edition of *Practical Strategies* has benefited greatly from the perceptive observations and helpful suggestions of our fellow instructors throughout the country. We thank Joyce Bower, Linn-Benton Community College; Paula Brown, Louisiana Tech University; Joe Gilbert, University of New Hampshire Main Campus; Shari Horner, Shippensburg University of Pennsylvania; David Merchant, Louisiana Tech University; Beata Peterson, Fayetteville Technical Community College; Rebecca Ruggiero, University of Maine; Jessica See, York College Pennsylvania; Joseph Williams, Louisiana Tech University; Tammy Wolf, Central New Mexico Community College; and several anonymous reviewers.

We have been fortunate, too, to work with a terrific team at Bedford/St. Martin's. Stacey Purviance and Laura Arcari assembled the first-class team that has worked so hard on this edition, including Andrea Cava, Sherry Mooney, and Bill Yin, and from Lumina Datamatics, Inc., Misbah Ansari. For us, Bedford/St. Martin's continues to exemplify the highest standards of professionalism in publishing. The people there have been endlessly

encouraging and helpful. We hope they realize the value of their contributions to this book.

Stuart would like to thank his family, Kate Latterell and Avery and Griffin Selber, for their ongoing support and encouragement.

A Final Word

We are more aware than ever before of how much we learn from our students, our fellow instructors, and our colleagues in industry and academia. If you have comments or suggestions for making this a better book, please contact us through the publisher. We hope to hear from you.

Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber

Bedford/St. Martin’s Puts You First

From day one, our goal has been simple: to provide inspiring resources that are grounded in best practices for teaching reading and writing. For more than 40 years, Bedford/St. Martin’s has partnered with the field, listening to teachers, scholars, and students about the support writers need. No matter the moment or teaching context are committed to helping every writing instructor make the most of our resources — resources designed to engage every student.

How can we help *you*?

- Our editors can align our resources to your outcomes through correlation and transition guides for your syllabus. Just ask us.
- Our sales representatives specialize in helping you find the right materials to support your course goals.
- Our learning solutions and product specialists help you make the most of the digital resources you choose for your course.
- Our *Bits* blog on the Bedford/St. Martin's English Community (**community.macmillan.com**) publishes fresh teaching ideas regularly. You'll also find easily downloadable professional resources and links to author webinars on our community site.

Contact your Bedford/St. Martin's sales representative or visit **macmillanlearning.com** to learn more.

Digital and Print Options for *Practical Strategies*

Choose the format that works best for your course, and ask about our packaging options that offer savings for students.

Digital

- *Achieve with* Practical Strategies. Achieve puts student writing at the center of your course and keeps revision at the core, with a dedicated composition space that guides students through drafting, peer review, source check, reflection, and revision. Developed to support best practices in commenting on student

drafts, Achieve is a flexible, integrated suite of tools for designing and facilitating writing assignments, paired with actionable insights that make students' progress toward outcomes clear and measurable. Fully editable pre-built assignments support the book's approach and an e-book is included. To order *Achieve with* Practical Strategies, use ISBN 978-1-319-37446-4. For details, visit **macmillanlearning.com/college/us/englishdigital**.
- *Popular e-book formats.* For details about our e-book partners, visit **macmillanlearning.com/ebooks**.
- *Inclusive Access.* Enable every student to receive their course materials through your LMS on the first day of class. Macmillan Learning's Inclusive Access program is the easiest, most affordable way to ensure all students have access to quality educational resources. Find out more at **macmillanlearning.com/inclusiveaccess**.

Print

- *Paperback.* To order the paperback edition, use ISBN 978-1-319-24502-3. To order the paperback edition with Achieve, use ISBN 978-1-319-44326-9.
- *Loose-leaf edition.* This format does not have a traditional binding; its pages are loose and hole-punched to provide flexibility and a lower price to students. It can be packaged with Achieve for additional savings. To order the loose-leaf, use ISBN

978-1-319-42128-1. To order the loose-leaf packaged with Achieve, use ISBN 978-1-319-44533-1.

Your Course, Your Way

No two writing programs or classrooms are exactly alike. Our Curriculum Solutions team works with you to design custom options that provide the resources your students need. (Options below require enrollment minimums.)

- *ForeWords for English.* Customize any print resource to fit the focus of your course or program by choosing from a range of prepared topics, such as Sentence Guides for Academic Writers.
- *Macmillan Author Program (MAP).* Add excerpts or package acclaimed works from Macmillan's trade imprints to connect students with prominent authors and public conversations. A list of popular examples or academic themes is available upon request.
- *Mix and Match.* With our simplest solution, you can add up to 50 pages of curated content to your Bedford/St. Martin's text. Contact your sales representative for additional details.

Select Value Packages

Add value to your text by packaging one of the following resources with *Practical Strategies.*

Document-Based Cases for Technical Communication, Second Edition, by Roger Munger (Boise State University), offers realistic writing tasks based on seven context-rich scenarios, with more than 50 examples of documents that students are likely to encounter in the workplace. To order the print book packaged with *Document-Based Cases for Technical Communication,* contact your sales representative.

Team Writing, by Joanna Wolfe (Carnegie Mellon University), is a print supplement with online videos that provides guidelines and examples of collaborating to manage written projects by documenting tasks, deadlines, and team goals. Two- to five-minute videos corresponding with the chapters in *Team Writing* give students the opportunity to analyze team interactions and learn about communication styles. Practical troubleshooting tips show students how best to handle various types of conflicts within peer groups. To order the print book packaged with *Team Writing,* contact your sales representative.

Instructor Resources

You have a lot to do in your course. We want to make it easy for you to find the support you need — and to get it quickly.

Instructor's Resource Manual for Practical Strategies for Technical Communication, Fourth Edition, is available as a PDF that can be downloaded from macmillanlearning.com and is also available in

Achieve. Visit the instructor resources tab for *Practical Strategies*. In addition to chapter overviews and teaching tips, the instructor's manual includes sample syllabi, essays on teaching the technical communication course, and suggested responses to all of the Document Analysis Activities, Exercises, and Cases.

Test Bank for Practical Strategies for Technical Communication, Fourth Edition, offers a convenient way to provide additional assessment to students and is available in Achieve with *Practical Strategies*. Instructors using Achieve will find the test bank material there, where they can add pre-built quizzes to any unit or build their own tests from the test bank questions. **Lecture slides** are available from **macmillanlearning.com** to download and adapt for each chapter.

Introduction for Writers

THE FOURTH EDITION of *Practical Strategies* offers a wealth of support to help you complete your technical communication projects. Many of these features are also indexed on the inside back cover of this book.

- **Annotated Examples** make it easier for you to learn from the many model documents, illustrations, and screen shots throughout the text.
- **Tech Tips** explain why and how to use widely available digital tools for common writing tasks.
- **Document Analysis Activities** in every chapter prompt you to apply what you have just read as you analyze a real business or technical document.
- **Guidelines** boxes throughout the book summarize crucial information and provide strategies related to key topics.
- **Focus on Process** boxes point out key steps in the process of writing different kinds of technical documents.
- **Ethics Notes** remind you to think about the ethical implications of your choices, encouraging the highest standards of professionalism.
- **Writer's Checklists** at the end of most chapters summarize important concepts and act as handy reminders as you draft

and revise your work.

- **Strategies for Online Communication** boxes explore how issues of digital communication are handled by workplace professionals. Actual professionals share their strategies and insights.
- **Achieve with *Practical Strategies*** may have been assigned by your instructor. It includes extra opportunities for you to practice key skills, explore case studies, and put your skills into practice. Achieve with *Practical Strategies* includes:
  - **Pre-built writing assignments** expand on the cases in Part 4, guiding students through multiple drafts, and helping them to focus on key goals for each genre
  - **LearningCurve adaptive activities** cover the first ten chapters of the text, as well as the most serious grammatical errors and ESL topics
  - **End-of-chapter cases** offer convenient downloads of the documents students need to work with
  - **Additional support for writing and research**, including supplemental material that can be assigned as needed on a variety of topics, including the writing process, grammar, citation, and more.

Visit **macmillanlearning.com/college/us/englishdigital** to get access today.

Brief Contents

Preface for Instructors

Introduction for Writers

Part 1 Working in the Technical-Communication Environment

1 Introduction to Technical Communication

2 Understanding Ethical and Legal Considerations

3 Writing Collaboratively

Part 2 Planning and Drafting the Document

4 Analyzing Your Audience and Purpose

5 Researching Your Subject

6 Writing for Your Readers

Part 3 Designing User-Friendly Documents and Websites

7 Designing Print and Online Documents

8 Creating Graphics

Part 4 Learning Important Applications

9 Corresponding in Print and Online

10 Applying for a Job

11 Writing Proposals

12 Writing Informational Reports

13 Writing Recommendation Reports

14 Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions

15 Making Oral Presentations

APPENDIX Reference Handbook

A Documenting Your Sources

B Editing and Proofreading Your Documents

References

Index

Index of Selected Features

Contents

Preface for Instructors

Introduction for Writers

Part 1 Working in the Technical-Communication Environment

1 Introduction to Technical Communication

What Is Technical Communication?

UNDERSTANDING PURPOSE

UNDERSTANDING AUDIENCE

Why Technical Communication Skills Are Important in Your Career

The Challenges of Producing Technical Communication

AUDIENCE-RELATED FACTORS

PURPOSE-RELATED FACTORS

SETTING-RELATED FACTORS

DOCUMENT-RELATED FACTORS

PROCESS-RELATED FACTORS

THINKING VISUALLY: Characteristics of a Technical Document

THINKING VISUALLY: Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents

- **Skills and Qualities Shared by Successful Workplace Communicators**
  - ■ GUIDELINES: Communicating Professionally
  - ■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Writing Technical Documents
- **A Look at Three Technical Documents**
  - **EXERCISES**
  - **CASE 1: Using the Measures of Excellence in Evaluating a Résumé**

2 Understanding Ethical and Legal Considerations

- **A Brief Introduction to Ethics**
- **Your Ethical Obligations**
  - **OBLIGATIONS TO YOUR EMPLOYER**
  - **OBLIGATIONS TO THE PUBLIC**
  - **OBLIGATIONS TO THE ENVIRONMENT**
- **Your Legal Obligations**
  - **COPYRIGHT LAW**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Determining Fair Use
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Dealing with Copyright Questions
    - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Distinguishing Plagiarism from Acceptable Reuse of Information
- **The Role of Corporate Culture in Ethical and Legal Conduct**
- **Understanding Ethical and Legal Issues Related to Social Media**

    - ■ GUIDELINES: Using Social Media Ethically and Legally
  - **Communicating Ethically Across Cultures**
    - **COMMUNICATING WITH CULTURES WITH DIFFERENT ETHICAL BELIEFS**
    - **COMMUNICATING IN COUNTRIES WITH DIFFERENT LAWS**
      - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Presenting Guidelines for Using Social Media
  - **THINKING VISUALLY:** Principles for Ethical Communication
    - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
    - **EXERCISES**
    - **CASE 2: The Ethics of Requiring Students to Subsidize a Plagiarism-Detection Service**
- **3 Writing Collaboratively**
  - **THINKING VISUALLY:** Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration
  - **Managing Projects**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Managing Your Project
  - Conducting Meetings
    - **LISTENING EFFECTIVELY**
      - ■ GUIDELINES: Listening Effectively
    - **SETTING YOUR TEAM'S AGENDA**
      - ■ GUIDELINES: Setting Your Team's Agenda

        - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Pulling Your Weight on Collaborative Projects
    - **CONDUCTING EFFICIENT MEETINGS**
    - **COMMUNICATING DIPLOMATICALLY**
    - **CRITIQUING A TEAM MEMBER'S WORK**
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Communicating Diplomatically
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Critiquing a Colleague's Work
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Critiquing a Draft Clearly and Diplomatically
- **Using Electronic Tools in Collaboration**
    - **WORD-PROCESSING TOOLS**
    - **MESSAGING TECHNOLOGIES**
    - **VIDEOCONFERENCING**
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Participating in a Videoconference
    - **WIKIS AND SHARED DOCUMENT WORKSPACES**
    - **CROWDSOURCING PLATFORMS**
    - **STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION:** Jenny Gilbert, Crowdsourcing Data and Information
        - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Maintaining a Professional Presence Online
- **Gender and Collaboration**
- **Culture and Collaboration**
    - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**

EXERCISES
CASE 3: Accommodating a Team Member's Scheduling Problems
Part 2 Planning and Drafting the Document
4 Analyzing Your Audience and Purpose
Understanding Audience and Purpose
Using an Audience Profile Sheet
■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Responding to Readers' Attitudes
Techniques for Learning About Your Audience
DETERMINING WHAT YOU ALREADY KNOW ABOUT YOUR AUDIENCE
INTERVIEWING PEOPLE
READING ABOUT YOUR AUDIENCE ONLINE
SEARCHING SOCIAL MEDIA FOR DOCUMENTS YOUR AUDIENCE HAS WRITTEN
ANALYZING SOCIAL-MEDIA DATA
THINKING VISUALLY: Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience
Communicating Across Cultures
UNDERSTANDING THE CULTURAL VARIABLES "ON THE SURFACE"
UNDERSTANDING THE CULTURAL VARIABLES "BENEATH THE SURFACE"
CONSIDERING CULTURAL VARIABLES AS YOU WRITE

- ■ GUIDELINES: Writing for Readers from Other Cultures
- ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Examining Cultural Variables in a Business Letter

USING GRAPHICS AND DESIGN FOR MULTICULTURAL READERS

Applying What You Have Learned About Your Audience

- ■ ETHICS NOTE: Meeting Your Readers' Needs Responsibly

Writing for Multiple Audiences

Determining Your Purpose

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

EXERCISES

CASE 4: Focusing on an Audience's Needs and Interests

5 Researching Your Subject

Understanding the Research Process

- ■ GUIDELINES: Planning for the Research Process
- ■ GUIDELINES: Researching a Topic

Choosing Appropriate Research Methods

- ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Research Questions and Methods

Conducting Secondary Research

UNDERSTANDING RESEARCH TOOLS

- **TYPES OF SECONDARY RESEARCH SOURCES**
- **USING SOCIAL MEDIA AND OTHER INTERACTIVE RESOURCES**
- **EVALUATING THE INFORMATION**
  - ■ GUIDELINES: Evaluating Print and Online Sources

Conducting Primary Research

- **ANALYSIS OF SOCIAL-MEDIA DATA**
  - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Evaluating Information from Internet Sources
- **OBSERVATIONS AND DEMONSTRATIONS**
- **INSPECTIONS**
- **EXPERIMENTS**
- **FIELD RESEARCH**
- **INTERVIEWS**
  - ■ GUIDELINES: Conducting an Interview
- **INQUIRIES**
- **QUESTIONNAIRES**
  - ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Choosing Types of Questions for Questionnaires
  - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Reporting and Analyzing Data Honestly
- **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
- **EXERCISES**
- **CASE 5: Revising a Questionnaire**

6 Writing for Your Readers

Presenting Yourself Effectively

- ■ GUIDELINES: Creating a Professional Persona

Using Conventional Patterns of Organization

- ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Choosing Effective Organizational Patterns

Writing Clear, Informative Titles

Writing Clear, Informative Headings

- ■ GUIDELINES: Revising Headings

Writing Clear, Informative Paragraphs

- STRUCTURE PARAGRAPHS CLEARLY
    - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Avoiding Burying Bad News in Paragraphs
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Dividing Long Paragraphs
- USE COHERENCE DEVICES WITHIN AND BETWEEN PARAGRAPHS

Writing Grammatically Correct Sentences

- AVOID SENTENCE FRAGMENTS
- AVOID COMMA SPLICES
- AVOID RUN-ON SENTENCES
- AVOID AMBIGUOUS PRONOUN REFERENCES
- COMPARE ITEMS CLEARLY
- USE ADJECTIVES CLEARLY
- MAINTAIN SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT
- MAINTAIN PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT
- USE TENSES CORRECTLY

- Structuring Effective Sentences
  - EMPHASIZE NEW AND IMPORTANT INFORMATION
  - WRITE EFFECTIVE SENTENCE LISTS
  - CHOOSE AN APPROPRIATE SENTENCE LENGTH
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Lists
  - FOCUS ON THE “REAL” SUBJECT
  - FOCUS ON THE “REAL” VERB
  - USE PARALLEL STRUCTURE
  - USE MODIFIERS EFFECTIVELY
- Choosing the Right Words and Phrases
  - SELECT AN APPROPRIATE LEVEL OF FORMALITY
  - BE CLEAR
  - USE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE APPROPRIATELY
    - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Euphemisms and Truth Telling
  - BE CONCISE
    - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Revising for Conciseness and Simplicity
  - USE INOFFENSIVE LANGUAGE
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Avoiding Sexist Language
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Using the People-First Approach
  - WRITER’S CHECKLIST
  - EXERCISES

- **CASE 6: Emphasizing Important Information in a Technical Description**

Part 3 Designing User-Friendly Documents and Websites

- **7 Designing Print and Online Documents**
  - **Goals of Document Design**
  - **Planning the Design of Print and Online Documents**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Planning Your Design
  - **Understanding Design Principles**
  - **Designing Print Documents**
    - **NAVIGATION AIDS**
    - **PAGE LAYOUT**
      - ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Creating Navigation Aids
      - ■ GUIDELINES: Understanding Learning Theory and Page Design
      - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Format Columns
    - **TYPOGRAPHY**
      - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Using Type Sizes Responsibly
    - **TITLES AND HEADINGS**
    - **OTHER DESIGN FEATURES**
      - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Create Borders and Screens
  - **Designing Online Documents**
    - **USE DESIGN TO EMPHASIZE IMPORTANT INFORMATION**

    - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Analyzing Page Designs
  - **CREATE INFORMATIVE HEADERS AND FOOTERS**
  - **HELP READERS NAVIGATE THE DOCUMENT**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Making Your Document Easy To Navigate
  - **INCLUDE EXTRA FEATURES YOUR READERS MIGHT NEED**
  - **HELP READERS CONNECT WITH OTHERS**
  - **CONSIDER MATTERS OF ACCESSIBILITY**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Designing Accessible Websites
  - **DESIGN FOR MULTICULTURAL AUDIENCES**
    - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Designing Legal and Honest Online Documents
- **Designing Online Pages**
  - **AIM FOR SIMPLICITY**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Designing a Simple Site
  - **MAKE THE TEXT EASY TO READ AND UNDERSTAND**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Designing Easy-To-Read Text
  - **CREATE CLEAR, INFORMATIVE LINKS**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Writing Clear, Informative Links
- **Combining Print and Online Documents**
  - **STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION:** Calvin Jones on Using Multiple Modalities

WRITER’S CHECKLIST
EXERCISES
CASE 7: Designing a Flyer
8 Creating Graphics
The Functions of Graphics
THINKING VISUALLY: Characteristics of an Effective Graphic
■ ETHICS NOTE: Creating Honest Graphics
Understanding the Process of Creating Graphics
PLANNING GRAPHICS
PRODUCING GRAPHICS
■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Insert and Modify Graphics
REVISING GRAPHICS
CITING SOURCES OF GRAPHICS
Using Color Effectively
Choosing the Appropriate Kind of Graphic
■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Choosing the Appropriate Kind of Graphic
ILLUSTRATING NUMERICAL INFORMATION
■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Tables
■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Bar Graphs
■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Infographics
■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Use Drawing Tools
■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Line Graphs

        - ■ GUIDELINES: Creating Effective Pie Charts
      - **ILLUSTRATING LOGICAL RELATIONSHIPS**
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Analyzing a Graphic
      - **ILLUSTRATING PROCESS DESCRIPTIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS**
      - **ILLUSTRATING VISUAL AND SPATIAL CHARACTERISTICS**
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Presenting Photographs Effectively
        - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Create and Insert Screen Shots
    - **Creating Effective Graphics for Multicultural Readers**
      - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
      - **EXERCISES**
      - **CASE 8: Creating Appropriate Graphics To Accompany a Report**
- **Part 4 Learning Important Applications**
  - **9 Corresponding in Print and Online**
    - **Understanding the Process of Writing Correspondence**
      - ■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Correspondence
      - ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Choosing a Type of Correspondence
    - **Presenting Yourself Effectively in Correspondence**
      - **USE THE APPROPRIATE LEVEL OF FORMALITY**

        - **COMMUNICATE CORRECTLY**
        - **PROJECT THE “YOU ATTITUDE”**
        - **AVOID CORRESPONDENCE CLICHÉS**
        - **COMMUNICATE HONESTLY**
            - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Writing Honest Business Correspondence
    - **Writing Letters**
        - **ELEMENTS OF A LETTER**
        - **COMMON TYPES OF LETTERS**
    - **Writing Memos**
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Organizing a Memo
    - **Writing Emails**
        - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Use Email for Business Correspondence
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Following Netiquette
    - **Writing Microblogs**
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Following Netiquette in an Email Message
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Representing Your Organization on a Microblog
    - **Writing Correspondence to Multicultural Readers**
        - **WRITER’S CHECKLIST**
        - **EXERCISES**
        - **CASE 9: Writing a Memo**
- **10 Applying for a Job**
    - **Establishing Your Professional Brand**

    - ■ GUIDELINES: Building the Foundation of Your Professional Brand
    - CRAFTING YOUR PROFESSIONAL BRAND
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Presenting Your Professional Brand
        - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Writing Honest Job-Application Materials
- Finding the Right Position
    - UNDERSTANDING JOB-SEARCH STRATEGIES
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Using LinkedIn's Employment Features
- Writing Résumés
    - ELEMENTS OF THE CHRONOLOGICAL RÉSUMÉ
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Elaborating on Your Education
    - ELEMENTS OF THE SKILLS RÉSUMÉ
    - PREPARING A PLAIN-TEXT RÉSUMÉ
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Formatting a Plain-Text Résumé
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Preparing a Résumé
    - CONSIDERING NONTRADITIONAL RÉSUMÉS
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Planning a Nontraditional Résumé
- Writing Job-Application Letters
- Preparing for a Job Interview
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Preparing for a Job Interview

        - ■ GUIDELINES: Preparing for an Online Job Interview
    - **Following Up After an Interview**
        - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
        - **EXERCISES**
        - **CASE 10: Writing a Cover Letter**
- **11 Writing Proposals**
    - **The Logistics of Proposals**
        - ■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Writing Proposals
        - **INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL PROPOSALS**
        - **SOLICITED AND UNSOLICITED PROPOSALS**
    - **The "Deliverables" of Proposals**
        - **RESEARCH PROPOSALS**
        - **GOODS AND SERVICES PROPOSALS**
    - **Persuasion and Proposals**
        - **UNDERSTANDING CONTEXTS**
        - **DESCRIBING WHAT YOU PLAN TO DO**
        - **DEMONSTRATING YOUR PROFESSIONALISM**
            - ■ GUIDELINES: Demonstrating Your Professionalism in a Proposal
            - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Writing Honest Proposals
    - **The Structure of the Proposal**
        - **SUMMARY**
        - **INTRODUCTION**
            - ■ GUIDELINES: Introducing a Proposal
        - **PROPOSED PROGRAM**

QUALIFICATIONS AND EXPERIENCE

■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Writing the Proposed Program

BUDGET

APPENDIXES

TASK SCHEDULE

■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Create a Gantt Chart

DESCRIPTION OF EVALUATION TECHNIQUES

Sample Internal Proposal

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

EXERCISES

CASE 11: Writing an Introduction for a Proposal

12 Writing Informational Reports

■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Informational Reports

Writing Directives

■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Writing a Persuasive Directive

Writing Field Reports

■ GUIDELINES: Responding to Readers' Questions in a Field Report

Writing Progress and Status Reports

■ ETHICS NOTE: Reporting Your Progress Honestly

ORGANIZING PROGRESS AND STATUS REPORTS

CONCLUDING PROGRESS AND STATUS REPORTS

      - ■ GUIDELINES: Projecting an Appropriate Tone in a Progress or Status Report
  - Sample Progress Report
  - Writing Incident Reports
  - Writing Meeting Minutes
    - WRITER’S CHECKLIST
    - EXERCISES
    - CASE 12: Writing a Directive
- 13 Writing Recommendation Reports
  - Understanding the Role of Recommendation Reports
  - Using a Problem-Solving Model for Preparing Recommendation Reports
    - IDENTIFY THE PROBLEM OR OPPORTUNITY
    - ESTABLISH CRITERIA FOR RESPONDING TO THE PROBLEM OR OPPORTUNITY
    - DETERMINE THE OPTIONS
    - STUDY EACH OPTION ACCORDING TO THE CRITERIA
    - DRAW CONCLUSIONS ABOUT EACH OPTION
    - FORMULATE RECOMMENDATIONS BASED ON THE CONCLUSIONS
      - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Presenting Honest Recommendations
  - Writing Recommendation Reports
    - WRITING THE BODY OF THE REPORT
      - ■ GUIDELINES: Writing Recommendations

    - **WRITING THE FRONT MATTER**
        - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Make a Long Report Navigable
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Writing an Executive Summary
    - **WRITING THE BACK MATTER**
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Analyzing an Executive Summary
- **Sample Recommendation Report**
    - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
    - **EXERCISES**
    - **CASE 13: Writing a Recommendation**

14 Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions

- ■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions
- **Writing Definitions**
    - **ANALYZING THE WRITING SITUATION FOR DEFINITIONS**
        - ■ CHOICES AND STRATEGIES: Choosing the Appropriate Type of Definition
    - **WRITING SENTENCE DEFINITIONS**
        - ■ GUIDELINES: Writing Effective Sentence Definitions
    - **WRITING EXTENDED DEFINITIONS**
- **Writing Descriptions**
    - **ANALYZING THE WRITING SITUATION FOR DESCRIPTIONS**

- **INDICATING CLEARLY THE NATURE AND SCOPE OF THE DESCRIPTION**
- **INTRODUCING THE DESCRIPTION CLEARLY**
- **PROVIDING APPROPRIATE DETAIL**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Providing Appropriate Detail in Descriptions
- **ENDING THE DESCRIPTION WITH A BRIEF CONCLUSION**
- **A LOOK AT SEVERAL SAMPLE DESCRIPTIONS**

Writing Instructions

- **UNDERSTANDING THE ROLE OF INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS**
- **STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION:** Suzanne Barnhill on Moderating User Forums
- **DESIGNING A SET OF WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Designing Clear, Attractive Pages
- **PLANNING FOR SAFETY**
    - ■ ETHICS NOTE: Ensuring Your Readers' Safety
- **DRAFTING EFFECTIVE INSTRUCTIONS**
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Drafting Introductions for Instructions
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Drafting Steps in Instructions
    - ■ GUIDELINES: Testing Instructions for Usability

        - **REVISING, EDITING, AND PROOFREADING INSTRUCTIONS**
        - **A LOOK AT SEVERAL SAMPLE SETS OF INSTRUCTIONS**
    - **Writing Manuals**
        - ■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Presenting Clear Instructions
        - **WRITER'S CHECKLIST**
        - **EXERCISES**
        - **CASE 14: Writing Instructions**
- **15 Making Oral Presentations**
    - **Understanding the Role of Oral Presentations**
    - **Preparing the Presentation**
        - ■ FOCUS ON PROCESS: Oral Presentations
        - **ANALYZING THE SPEAKING SITUATION**
        - **ORGANIZING AND DEVELOPING THE PRESENTATION**
            - ■ GUIDELINES: Introducing the Presentation
            - ■ GUIDELINES: Concluding the Presentation
        - **PREPARING PRESENTATION GRAPHICS**
            - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Create a Presentation Template
            - ■ TECH TIP: *Why* and *How* To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation
        - **CHOOSING EFFECTIVE LANGUAGE**

■ DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY: Integrating Graphics and Text on a Presentation Slide

■ GUIDELINES: Using Memorable Language in Oral Presentations

REHEARSING THE PRESENTATION

THINKING VISUALLY: Delivering the Presentation

PRESENTING TO ALL AUDIENCES

Answering Questions After a Presentation

■ ETHICS NOTE: Answering Questions Honestly

SPEAKER'S CHECKLIST

EXERCISES

CASE 15: Writing an Oral Presentation

APPENDIX Reference Handbook

A Documenting Your Sources

Note Taking

APA Style

IEEE Style

MLA Style

B Editing and Proofreading Your Documents

Punctuation

Mechanics

References

Index

Index of Selected Features

Practical Strategies FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

Part 1

Working in the Technical-Communication Environment

Nikada/Getty Images

CHAPTER 1

Introduction to Technical Communication

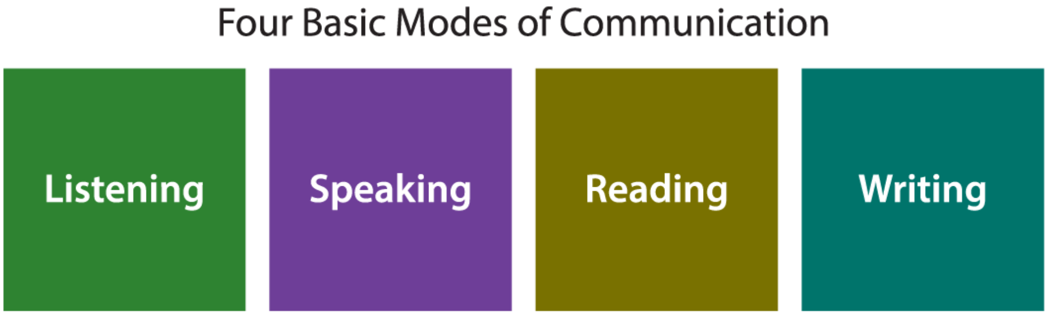
What Is Technical Communication?
Why Technical Communication Skills Are Important in Your Career
The Challenges of Producing Technical Communication
Skills and Qualities Shared by Successful Workplace Communicators
A Look at Three Technical Documents

THIS TEXTBOOK EXPLORES how people in the working world find, create, and deliver technical information. Even if you do not plan on becoming a *technical communicator* (a person whose main job is to produce documents such as manuals, reports, and websites), you will often find yourself creating documents on your own, participating in teams that create them, and contributing technical information to others who use and create them. The purpose of *Technical Communication* is to help you learn the skills you need to communicate more effectively and efficiently in your professional life.

What Is Technical Communication?

Technical information is frequently communicated through documents such as proposals, emails, reports, podcasts, computer help files, blogs, and wikis. Although these documents are a key component of technical communication, so too is the *process*: writing and reading tweets and text messages, for example, or participating in videoconference exchanges with colleagues. Technical communication encompasses a set of *activities* that people do to discover, shape, and transmit information.

When you produce technical communication, you use the four basic communication modes — listening, speaking, reading, and writing — to analyze a problem, find and evaluate evidence, and draw conclusions. These are the same skills and processes you use when you write in college, and the principles you have studied in your earlier writing courses apply to technical communication. The biggest difference between technical communication and the other kinds of writing you have done is that technical communication has a somewhat different focus on *purpose* and *audience*.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

UNDERSTANDING PURPOSE

Technical communication begins with identifying a problem and thinking about how to solve it. Because of the variety of problems and solutions in the working world, people communicate technical information for a number of *purposes*, many of which fall into one of the two categories:

- **Communication that helps others learn about a subject, carry out a task, or make a decision.** For instance, administrators with the International Trade Administration might hire a media production company to make a video that explains to companies how to make sales in a foreign market. The president of a manufacturing company might write an article in the company newsletter to explain to employees why the management decided to phase out production of one of the company's products. The board of directors of a community-service organization might produce a grant proposal to submit to a philanthropic organization in hopes of being awarded a grant.

- **Communication that reinforces or changes attitudes and motivates readers to take action.** A wind-energy company might create a website with videos and text intended to show that building wind turbines off the coast of a tourist destination would have many benefits and few risks. A property owners' association might create a website to make the opposite argument: that the wind turbines would have few benefits but many risks. In each of these two cases, the purpose of communicating the information is to persuade people to accept a point of view and encourage them to act — perhaps to contact their elected representatives and present their views about this public-policy issue.

UNDERSTANDING AUDIENCE

When you communicate in the workplace, you have not only a clear purpose — what you want to achieve — but also a clearly defined *audience* — one or more people who are going to read the document, attend the oral presentation, visit the website, or view the video you produce. Sometimes, audience members share the same purpose, but not always. It's possible, even likely, that a piece of technical communication will have multiple audiences with different purposes.

In most of your previous academic writing, your audience has been your instructor, and your purpose has been to show your instructor that you have mastered some body of information or skill. Typically, you have not tried to create new knowledge or motivate the reader to take a particular action — except to give you an “A” for that assignment.

By contrast, in technical communication, your audience will likely include peers and supervisors in your company, as well as people outside your company. For example, suppose you are a public-health scientist working for a federal agency. You and your colleagues just completed a study showing that, for most adults, moderate exercise provides as much health benefit as strenuous exercise. After participating in numerous meetings with your colleagues and after drafting, critiquing, and revising many drafts, you produce four different documents:

- a journal article for other scientists
- a press release to distribute to popular print and online publications
- an infographic for use in doctors’ offices
- an animated blog post for your agency to share on social media

In each of these documents, you present the key information in a different way to meet the needs of a particular audience.

Why Technical Communication Skills Are Important in Your Career

Many college students believe that the most important courses they take are those in their major. Some biology majors think, for example, that if they just take that advanced course in genetic analysis, employers will conclude that they are prepared to do more advanced projects and therefore will hire them.

But knowledge in a particular field is not the only thing employers are looking for. It's not even the most important skill or ability. Surveys over the past several decades have shown consistently that employers want to hire people who can communicate. Look at it this way: when employers hire a biologist, they want a person who can communicate effectively about biology. When they hire a civil engineer, they want a person who can communicate effectively about civil engineering.

A 2013 survey of 500 business executives found that almost half — 44 percent — think that recent hires are weak in soft skills (including communication and collaboration), whereas only 22 percent think recent hires are weak in technical skills (Adecco Staffing, 2013). According to another 2013 survey, by the Workforce Solutions Group at St. Louis Community College, more than 60 percent of employers believe that job seekers are weak in communication and interpersonal skills. This figure is up 10 percentage points from 2011 (*Time*, 2013).

Job Outlook 2019, a report produced by the National Association of Colleges and Employers, found that written communication skills, problem-solving skills, and teamwork skills top the list of skills employers seek on a job candidate's resume. The report's main data point about written communication skills is that 80 percent of employers consider it to be a top priority (National Association, 2019, p. 30). Here are the top 10 skills and attributes, according to employers, and the percentage of respondents in the study who ranked the skills and attributes:

SKILL OR ATTRIBUTE	PERCENTAGE
Communication skills (written)	82.0
Problem-solving skills	80.9
Ability to work in a team	78.7
Initiative	74.2
Analytical/quantitative skills	71.9
Strong work ethic	70.8
Communication skills (verbal)	67.4
Leadership	67.4
Detail oriented	59.6

Technical skills	59.6

Most of these skills relate to the technical communication process introduced in this chapter and described in greater detail throughout the book.

A study of more than 400 employers suggests that technical communication is even more important for professionals now than it ever has been in the past (Hart Research Associates, 2015, pp. 1–4). Over 80 percent of the employers surveyed said that their top priority in hiring new employees is finding people with excellent writing, speaking, and problem-solving skills. They also emphasized the ability to work in groups and make ethical decisions. Some reports estimate that large companies spend nearly $20 million annually to train employees (The Industry Report, 2018, p. 20). Would companies rather not have to spend that money on writing training? Yes.

You’re going to be producing and contributing to a lot of technical documents. The facts of life in the working world are simple: the better you communicate, the more valuable you are. This textbook can help you learn and practice the skills that will make you a better communicator.

The Challenges of Producing Technical Communication

One of the most challenging activities you will engage in as a professional is communicating your ideas to audiences. Why? Because communication is a higher-order skill that involves many complex factors.

The good news is that there are ways to think about these complex factors, to think *through* them, that will help you communicate better. No matter what document you produce or contribute to, you need to begin by considering five sets of factors.

AUDIENCE-RELATED FACTORS

What problem or problems are your audience trying to solve? Does your audience know enough about your subject to understand a detailed discussion, or do you need to limit the scope, the amount of technical detail, or the type of graphics you use? Does your audience already have certain attitudes or expectations about your subject that you wish to reinforce or change? Does your audience speak English well, or should you present the information in more than one language? Does your audience share your cultural assumptions about such matters as how to organize and interpret documents, or do you need to adjust your writing approach to match a different set of assumptions? Does your audience include people with disabilities (of vision, hearing, movement, or cognitive ability) who have requirements you need to meet?

PURPOSE-RELATED FACTORS

Before you can write, you need to determine your purpose: what do you want your audience to know or believe or do after having read your document? Do you have multiple purposes? If so, is one more important than the others? Although much technical communication is intended to help people perform tasks, such as configuring privacy settings in a social-media environment, many organizations large and small devote significant communication resources to the increasingly vital purpose of branding: creating an image that helps customers distinguish the company from competitors. Most companies now employ community specialists as technical communicators to coordinate the organization's day-to-day online presence and its social-media campaigns. These specialists publicize new products and initiatives and respond to questions and new developments. They also manage all of the organization's documents — from tweets to blog posts to Facebook fan pages and company-sponsored discussion forums.

SETTING-RELATED FACTORS

What is the situation surrounding the problem you are trying to solve? Is there a lot at stake in the situation, such as the budget for a project, or is your document a more routine communication, such as technical notes for a software update? What is the context in which your audience will use your document? Will the ways in which they use it — or the physical or digital environment in which they use it — affect how you write? Will the document be used in a socially or politically charged setting? Does the setting include established norms of ethical behavior? Is the setting formal or informal? Settings can have a great deal of influence over how audiences think about and use technical communication.

DOCUMENT-RELATED FACTORS

What type of content will the document include? How will the content aid problem solving? Does your subject dictate what kind of document (such as a report or a blog post) you choose to write? Does your subject dictate what medium (print or digital) you choose for your document? Do you need to provide audiences with content in more than one medium? If you're using a document template, how should you modify it for your audiences and purposes? Does the application call for a particular writing style or level of formality? (For the sake of convenience, we will use the word *document* throughout this book to refer to all forms of technical communication, from written documents to oral presentations and online forms, such as podcasts and wikis.)

PROCESS-RELATED FACTORS

What process will you use to produce the document? Is there an established process to support the work, or do you need to create a new one? Do you have sufficient time for planning tasks, such as analyzing your audience and purpose, choosing writing tools, and researching and reading background information? Does your budget limit the number of people you can enlist to help you or limit the size or shape of the document? Does your schedule limit how much information you can include in the document? Does your schedule limit the type or amount of document testing you can do? Will the document require updating or maintenance?

Because all these factors interact in complicated ways, every technical document you create involves a compromise. If you are writing a set of printed instructions for installing a water heater and you want those instructions to be easily understood by people who speak only Spanish, you will need more time and a bigger budget to have the document translated, and it will be longer and thus a little bit harder to use, for both English and Spanish speakers. You might need to save money by using smaller type, smaller pages, and cheaper paper, and you might not be able to afford to print the instructions in full color. In technical communication, you do the best you can with your resources of time, information, and money. The more carefully you think through your options, the better able you will be to use your resources wisely and make a document that will get the job done.

THINKING VISUALLY

Characteristics of a Technical Document

Almost every technical document that gets the job done has six major characteristics.

It addresses particular READERS.

Knowing who your readers are, what they understand about the subject, how well they speak English, and how they will use the document will help you determine the type of document to create.

It helps readers solve PROBLEMS.

You might produce a video that shows your company's employees how to select their benefits, or a text document that explains the company's social-media policy.

It is produced COLLABORATIVELY.

No one person has all the skills, information, or time to create a large document. You will work with a variety of technical professionals inside and outside your organization to obtain the information you need.

It uses DESIGN to increase readability.

Design features such as typography, spacing, and color help make a document attractive, navigable, and understandable.

It reflects the organization's GOALS and CULTURE.

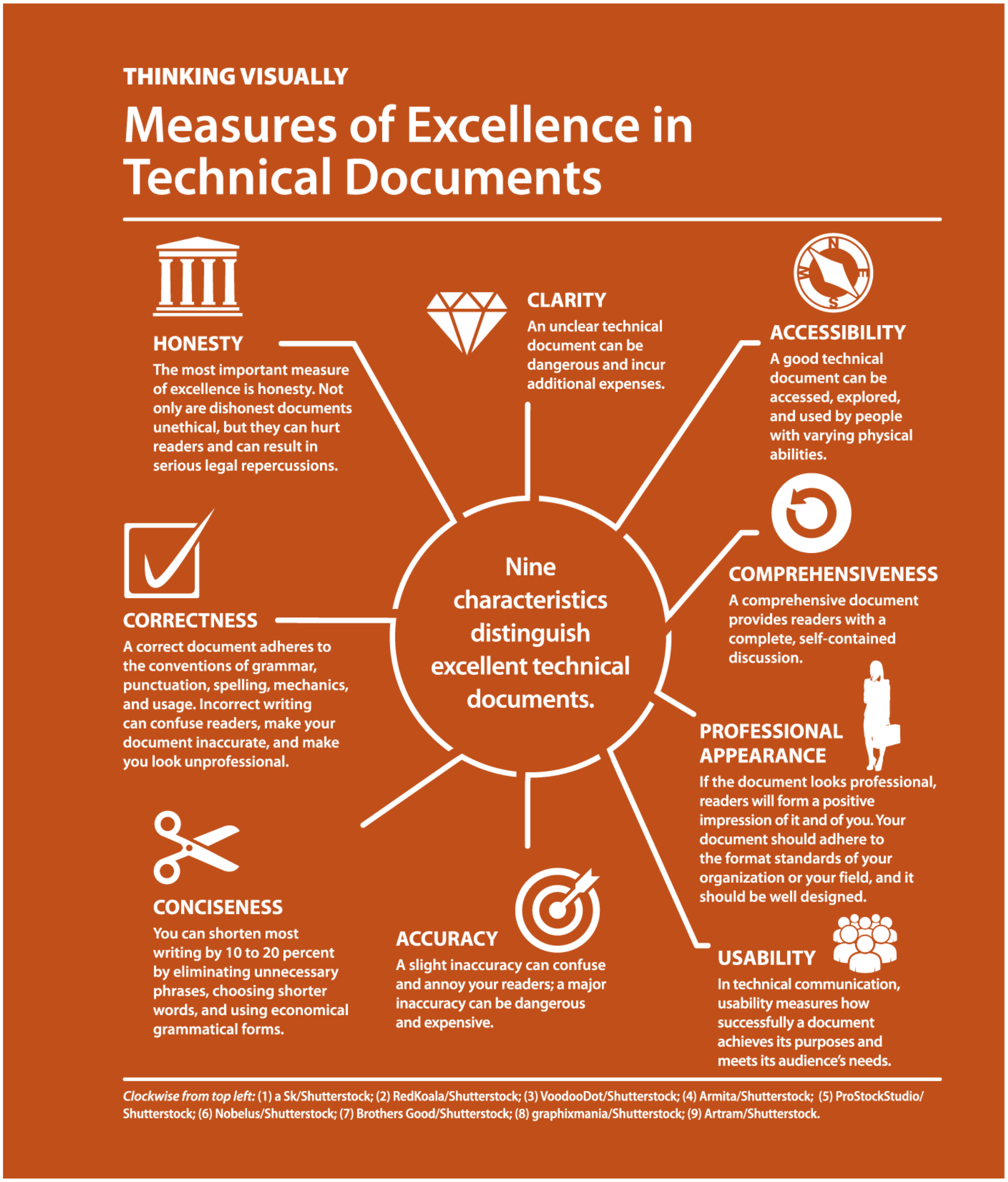
Organizations produce documents that help them further their goals and that demonstrate their values and culture to the outside world.

It consists of WORDS or IMAGES or both.

Images—both static and moving—can communicate difficult concepts, instructions, descriptions of objects and processes, and large amounts of data. They can also communicate information to nonnative speakers.

Clockwise from top left: (1) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (2) Palsur/Shutterstock; (4) puruan/Shutterstock; (5) Brothers Good/Shutterstock; (6) PureSolution/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



THINKING VISUALLY

Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents

Nine characteristics distinguish excellent technical documents.

HONESTY
The most important measure of excellence is honesty. Not only are dishonest documents unethical, but they can hurt readers and can result in serious legal repercussions.

CLARITY
An unclear technical document can be dangerous and incur additional expenses.

ACCESSIBILITY
A good technical document can be accessed, explored, and used by people with varying physical abilities.

COMPREHENSIVENESS
A comprehensive document provides readers with a complete, self-contained discussion.

PROFESSIONAL APPEARANCE
If the document looks professional, readers will form a positive impression of it and of you. Your document should adhere to the format standards of your organization or your field, and it should be well designed.

USABILITY
In technical communication, usability measures how successfully a document achieves its purposes and meets its audience's needs.

ACCURACY
A slight inaccuracy can confuse and annoy your readers; a major inaccuracy can be dangerous and expensive.

CONCISENESS
You can shorten most writing by 10 to 20 percent by eliminating unnecessary phrases, choosing shorter words, and using economical grammatical forms.

CORRECTNESS
A correct document adheres to the conventions of grammar, punctuation, spelling, mechanics, and usage. Incorrect writing can confuse readers, make your document inaccurate, and make you look unprofessional.

Clockwise from top left: (1) a Sk/Shutterstock; (2) RedKoala/Shutterstock; (3) VoodooDot/Shutterstock; (4) Armita/Shutterstock; (5) ProStockStudio/Shutterstock; (6) Nobelus/Shutterstock; (7) Brothers Good/Shutterstock; (8) graphixmania/Shutterstock; (9) Artram/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Skills and Qualities Shared by Successful Workplace Communicators

People who are good at communicating in the workplace share a number of skills. Three of them relate to the problem-solving skills you have been honing in school and will continue to develop in your career:

- **Ability to perform research.** Successful communicators know how to perform primary research (discovering new information through experiments, observations, interviews, surveys, and calculations) and secondary research (finding existing information by reading what others have written or said). Successful communicators seek out information from people who *use* the products and services, not just from the manufacturers. Therefore, although successful communicators would visit the Toyota website to learn about the technical specifications of a Prius if they wanted to find out what it was like to drive, own, or repair a Prius, they would be sure to search the internet for information from experts not associated with Toyota, as well as *user-generated content*: for example, information from owners presented in discussion forums and blogs.

- **Ability to analyze information.** Successful communicators know how to identify the best information — most accurate, relevant, recent, and unbiased — and then figure out how it can help them in understanding a problem and ways to solve it. Successful communicators know how to sift through mountains of data, identifying relationships among apparently unrelated facts. They know how to evaluate a situation, look at it from other people's perspectives, and zero in on the most important issues.
- **Ability to speak and write clearly.** Successful communicators know how to express themselves clearly and simply, both to audiences who know a lot about the subject and to audiences who do not. They take care to revise, edit, and proofread their documents so that the documents present accurate information, are easy to read, and make a professional impression. And they know how to produce different types of documents, from tweets to memos to presentations.

In addition to the skills just described, successful workplace communicators have several qualities that relate to professional attitudes and work habits. These qualities are outlined in the following Guidelines box.

GUIDELINES Communicating Professionally

When you communicate in the workplace, model the behavior of successful professionals.

- **Be honest.** Successful communicators tell the truth. They don't promise what they know they can't deliver, and they don't bend facts. When they make mistakes, they admit them and work harder to solve the problem.
- **Be willing to learn.** Successful communicators know that they don't know everything — not about what they studied in college, what their company does, or how to write and speak. Every professional is a lifelong learner.
- **Display emotional intelligence.** Successful communicators understand their own emotions and those of others. Because they can read people — through body language, facial expression, gestures, and words — they can work effectively in teams, helping to minimize interpersonal conflict and encouraging others to do their best work.
- **Be generous.** Successful communicators reply to requests for information, and they share information willingly. (Of course, they don't share confidential information, such as trade secrets, information about new products being developed, or personal information about colleagues.)
- **Monitor the best information.** Successful communicators seek out opinions from others. They monitor the best online sources for new approaches that can spark their own ideas. They use searching and filtering tools to help them stay on top of the torrent of new information on the internet. They know how to use social media and can represent their organization online.
- **Be self-disciplined.** Successful communicators are well organized and diligent. They finish what they start, and they always do their best on any document, from the least important text message to the most important report.
- **Prioritize and respond quickly.** Successful communicators know that the world doesn't always conform to their own schedules. Because social-media sites never sleep, communicators sometimes need to put their current projects aside to respond immediately to a problem or request. And even though speed is important, they know that quality is, too; therefore, they make sure that before it goes out, every document is fully professional.

FOCUS ON PROCESS

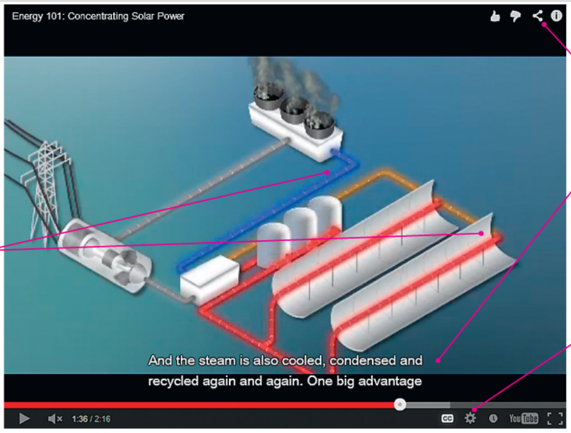
Writing Technical Documents

PLANNING	• **Analyze your audience**. Who are your readers? What are their attitudes and expectations? How will they use the document? See Chapter 4 for advice about analyzing your audience. • **Analyze your purpose**. After they have read the document, what do you want your readers to *know* or *do*? See Chapter 4 (p. 73) for advice about determining your purpose. • **Generate ideas about your subject**. Ask journalistic questions (*who*, *what*, *when*, *where*, *why*, and *how*), brainstorm, freewrite, talk with someone, or make clustering or branching diagrams. • **Research additional information**. See Chapter 5 for advice about researching your subject. • **Organize and outline your document**. See Chapter 6 (p. 104) for information about common organizational patterns. • **Select an application, a design, and a delivery method**. See Chapter 7 for advice about designing your document. • **Devise a schedule and a budget**. How much time will you need to complete each task of the project? Will you incur expenses for travel, research, or usability testing?
DRAFTING	• **Draft effectively**. Get comfortable. Start with the easiest topics, and don't stop writing to revise. • **Use templates — carefully**. Check that their design is appropriate and that they help you communicate your information effectively to your readers. • **Use styles**. Styles are like small templates that apply to the design of elements such as headings and bullet lists. They help you present the elements of your document clearly and consistently.
REVISING	**Look again at your draft to see if it works.** Revising by yourself and with the help of others, focus on three questions: ○ Has your understanding of your audience changed? ○ Has your understanding of your purpose changed? ○ Has your understanding of your subject changed? If the answer to any of these questions is yes, what changes should you make to the content and style of your document? See the Writer's Checklist in each chapter for information about what to look for when revising.

EDITING	**Check your revised draft to improve six aspects of your writing:** grammar, punctuation, style, usage, diction (word choice), and mechanics (matters such as use of numbers and abbreviations). See Appendix, Part B (p. 474) for more information about these topics.
PROOFREADING	**Check to make sure you have typed what you meant to type.** Don’t rely on the spell-checker or the grammar-checker. They will miss some errors and flag correct words and phrases. See Appendix, Part B (p. 474) for more information about proofreading.

A Look at Three Technical Documents

Figures 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 (pp. 13–14) present excerpts from technical documents. Together, they illustrate a number of the ideas about technical communication discussed in this chapter.



Energy 101: Concentrating Solar Power

And the steam is also cooled, condensed and recycled again and again. One big advantage

This screen is from a video produced by the Department of Energy and is intended to educate the general public about the basics of solar energy. Because the document includes narration, still images, video, and animation, creating it required the efforts of many professionals.

The video takes advantage of our cultural assumptions about color: red suggests heat, blue suggests cold.

The video is meant to be easy to share on social media.

The video was designed to accommodate people with disabilities: the viewer can listen to the narration or turn on the subtitles.

The document includes a text-only version that provides a complete transcript of the narration and describes the images.

FIGURE 1.1 A Video That Educates the Public About a Technical Subject

Information from U.S. Department of Energy, 2012: http://energy.gov/articles/energy-101-concentrating-solar-power.

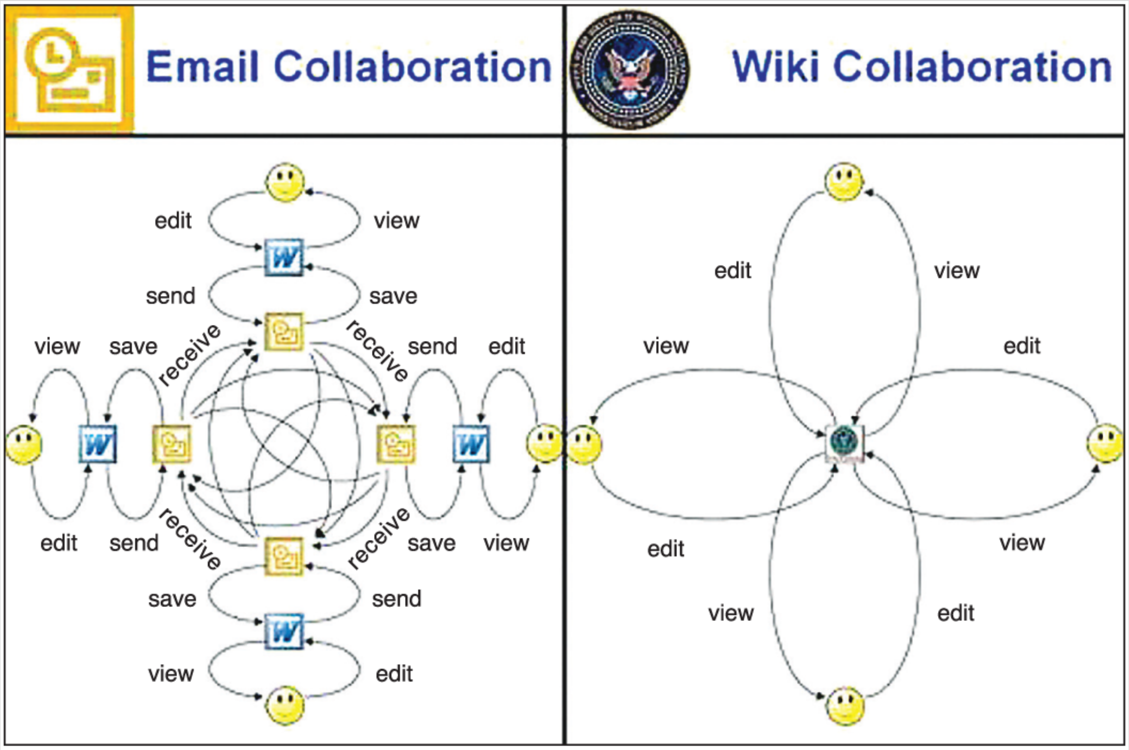

Email Collaboration
Wiki Collaboration
edit
view
send
save
view
save
receive
receive
send
edit
receive
receive
edit
send
save
view
save
send
view
edit
edit
view
view
edit
edit
view
view
edit

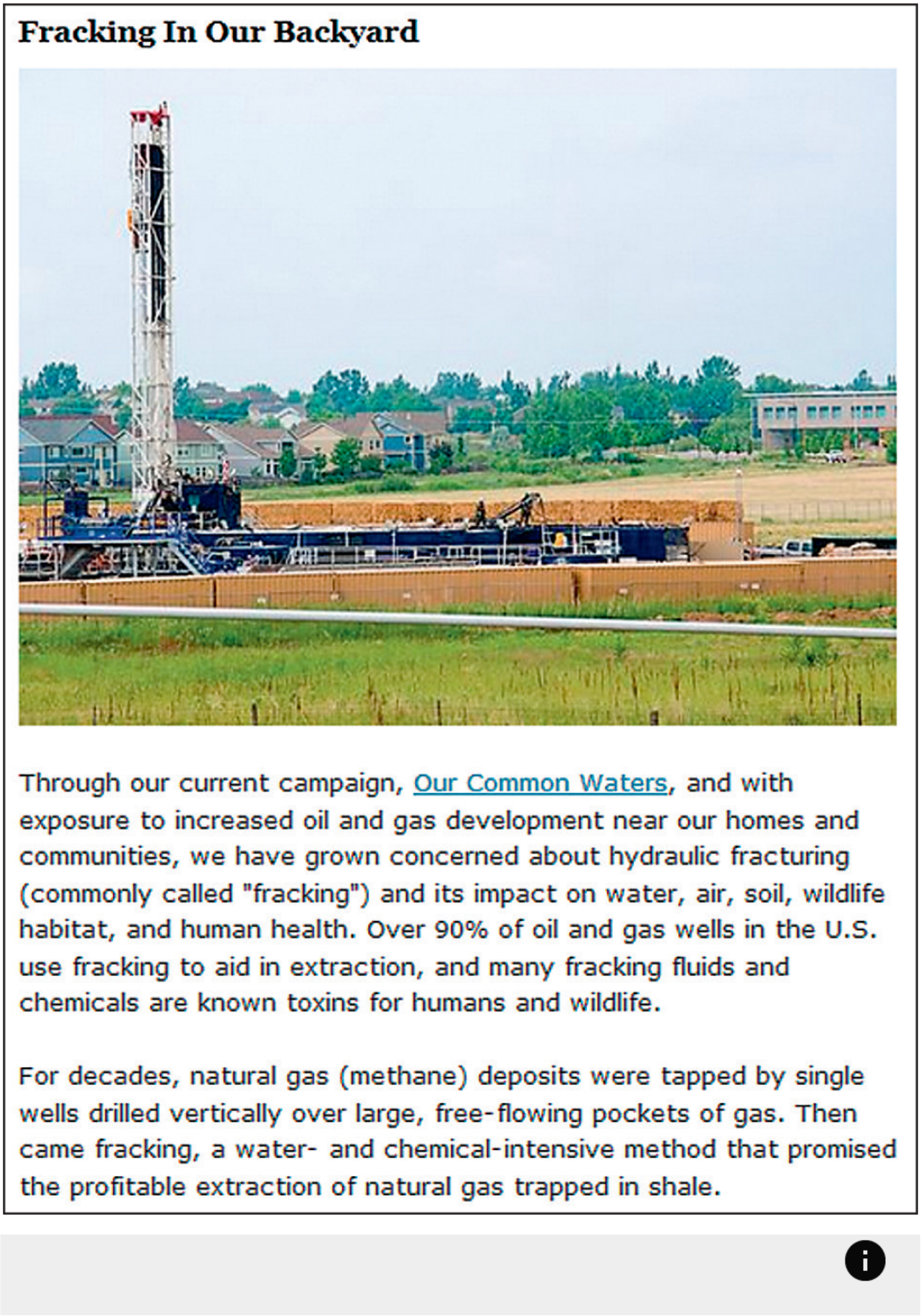
FIGURE 1.2 A Graphic Comparing Two Communication Media

Information from Williams, 2008: www.wikinomics.com/blog/index.php/2008/03/26/wiki-collaboration-leads-to-happiness/.

The history of this graphic says something about how information flows in the digital age. The graphic was originally created by one person, Manny Wilson of U.S. Central Command, who shared it with a colleague at another U.S. government agency. Eventually, it made its way to another person, Anthony D. Williams, who incorporated it into a presentation he delivered at a corporation. From there, it went viral.

The writer who created this image doesn't need to say that a wiki is a better tool than email for editing a document. The complexity of the image on the left, compared with the simplicity of the image on the right, *shows* why the wiki is the better tool for this job.

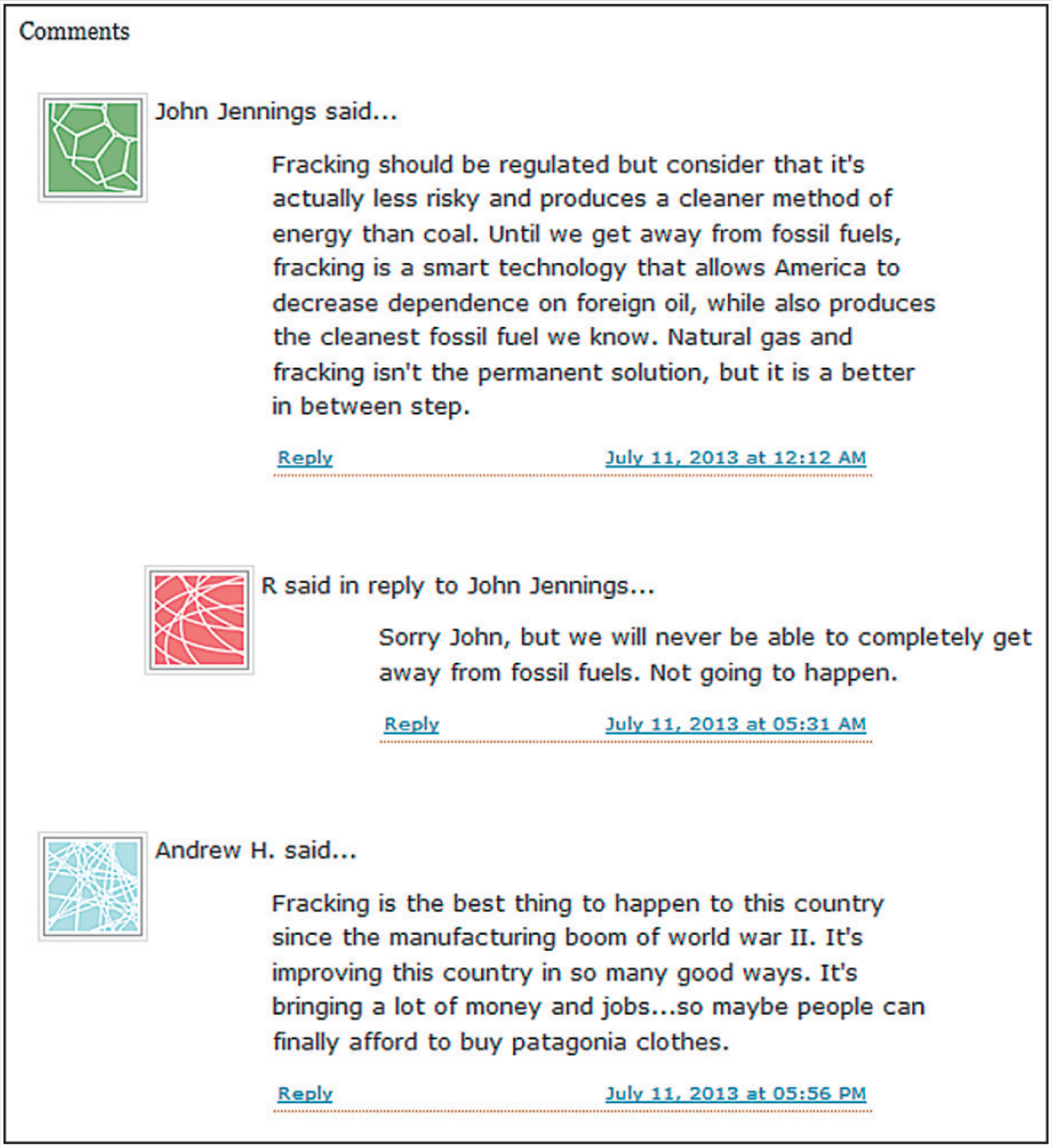
One characteristic that distinguishes technical communication from many other kinds of writing is its heavy use of graphics to clarify concepts and present data. This graphic, from a PowerPoint presentation, compares two technologies used for collaborative writing. The image on the left represents how a writer creates a document and then distributes it via email to others for editing. The image on the right represents how a writer creates a document in a wiki (an online writing and editing space), to which others come to view and edit the document.



Fracking In Our Backyard

Through our current campaign, Our Common Waters, and with exposure to increased oil and gas development near our homes and communities, we have grown concerned about hydraulic fracturing (commonly called "fracking") and its impact on water, air, soil, wildlife habitat, and human health. Over 90% of oil and gas wells in the U.S. use fracking to aid in extraction, and many fracking fluids and chemicals are known toxins for humans and wildlife.

For decades, natural gas (methane) deposits were tapped by single wells drilled vertically over large, free-flowing pockets of gas. Then came fracking, a water- and chemical-intensive method that promised the profitable extraction of natural gas trapped in shale.



Comments

John Jennings said...

Fracking should be regulated but consider that it's actually less risky and produces a cleaner method of energy than coal. Until we get away from fossil fuels, fracking is a smart technology that allows America to decrease dependence on foreign oil, while also produces the cleanest fossil fuel we know. Natural gas and fracking isn't the permanent solution, but it is a better in between step.

R said in reply to John Jennings...

Sorry John, but we will never be able to completely get away from fossil fuels. Not going to happen.

Andrew H. said...

Fracking is the best thing to happen to this country since the manufacturing boom of world war II. It's improving this country in so many good ways. It's bringing a lot of money and jobs...so maybe people can finally afford to buy patagonia clothes.

FIGURE 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint

Top: Information from Patagonia, 2013: www.thecleanestline.com/2013/07/fracking-in-our-backyard.html#more.
Bottom: Information from Topher Donahue.

Top: Patagonia, the manufacturer of outdoor clothing, hosts a blog called The Cleanest Line. In one post, “Fracking In Our Backyard,” the company sought to educate its readers about the controversy surrounding hydraulic fracturing. The post included links to many online sources about the controversy and presented the company’s perspective: “Because of fracking’s wide-ranging risks and impacts, we support each community’s right to educate itself and regulate and/or ban fracking, and we support local, state and federal government efforts to monitor and regulate fracking.”

Bottom: The post generated many comments, of which the first three are presented here. Notice that the third comment ends with a swipe at the company. Blogs are a popular way for organizations to interact with their stakeholders, and even though blog posts routinely elicit negative comments, most organizations believe that the occasionally embarrassing or critical comment is a reasonable price to pay for the opportunity to generate honest discussions about issues — and thereby learn what is on the minds of their stakeholders.

EXERCISES

1. Form small groups and study the home page of your college or university's website. Focus on three measures of excellence in technical communication: clarity, accessibility, and professional appearance. How effectively does the home page meet each of these measures of excellence? Be prepared to share your findings with the class.
2. Locate an owner's manual for a consumer product, such as a coffee maker, bicycle, or hair dryer. In a memo to your instructor, discuss at least three decisions the writers and designers of the manual appear to have made to address audience-related factors, purpose-related factors, setting-related factors, document-related factors, or process-related factors. For instance, if the manual is printed only in English, the writers and designers presumably decided either that it was not necessary to create versions in other languages or that they didn't have the resources to do so. For more about memos, see Ch. 9, p. 247.
3. Using a job site such as Indeed.com or Monster.com, locate three job ads for people in your academic major. In each ad, identify references to writing and communication skills, and then identify references to professional attitudes

and work habits. Be prepared to share your findings with the class.

CASE 1: Using the Measures of Excellence in Evaluating a Résumé

Your technical-communication instructor is planning to invite guest speakers to deliver presentations to the class on various topics throughout the semester, and she has asked you to work with one of them to tailor his job-application presentation to the “Measures of Excellence” discussed in this chapter. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to access relevant documents and complete your writing assignment.

CHAPTER 2

Understanding Ethical and Legal Considerations

A Brief Introduction to Ethics
Your Ethical Obligations
Your Legal Obligations
The Role of Corporate Culture in Ethical and Legal Conduct
Understanding Ethical and Legal Issues Related to Social Media
Communicating Ethically Across Cultures

ETHICAL AND LEGAL ISSUES are all around you in your work life. If you look at the website of any bike manufacturer, for example, you will see that bicyclists are always shown wearing helmets. Is this because bike manufacturers care about safety? Certainly. But bike makers also care about product liability. If a company website showed cyclists without helmets, an injured cyclist might sue, claiming that the company was suggesting it is safe to ride without a helmet.

Ethical and legal pitfalls lurk in the words and graphics of many kinds of documents. In producing a proposal, you might be tempted to exaggerate or lie about your organization's past accomplishments, pad the résumés of the project personnel, list as project personnel some workers who will not be contributing to the project, or present an unrealistically short work schedule. In drafting product information, you might feel pressured to exaggerate the quality of the products shown in catalogs or manuals or to downplay the hazards of using those products. In creating graphics, you might be asked to hide an item's weaknesses by manipulating a photo of a product.

One thing is certain: there are many serious ethical and legal issues related to technical communication, and all professionals need a basic understanding of them. Keep in mind that decisions and actions can be legal but not ethical, or vice versa. You will need to think carefully about both aspects of any technical communication you create and address any conflicts that arise.

A Brief Introduction to Ethics

Ethics is the study of the principles of conduct that apply to an individual or a group. For some people, ethics is a matter of intuition — what their gut feelings tell them about the rightness or wrongness of an act. Others see ethics in terms of their own religion or the Golden Rule: treat others as you would like them to treat you. Ethicist Manuel G. Velasquez outlines four moral standards that are useful in thinking about ethical dilemmas (2011):

- **Rights.** This standard concerns individuals’ basic needs and welfare. Everyone agrees, for example, that people have a right to a reasonably safe workplace. When we buy a product, we have a right to expect that the information that accompanies it is honest and clear. However, not everything that is desirable is necessarily a right. For example, in some countries, high-quality health care is considered a right. That is, the government is required to provide it, regardless of whether a person can afford to pay for it. In other countries, health care is not considered a right.
- **Justice.** This standard concerns how the costs and benefits of an action or a policy are distributed among a group. For example, the cost of maintaining a high-speed broadband infrastructure should be borne, in part, by people who use it. However, because everyone benefits from the infrastructure, the standard of justice suggests that general funds can also be

used to pay for it. Another example: justice requires that people doing the same job receive the same pay, regardless of gender or race.

- **Utility.** This standard concerns the positive and negative effects that an action or a policy has, will have, or might have on others. For example, if a company is considering closing a plant, the company's leaders should consider not only the money they would save but also the financial hardship of laid-off workers and the economic effects on the community. One tricky issue in thinking about utility is figuring out the time frame to examine. An action such as laying off employees can have one effect in the short run — improving the company's quarterly balance sheet — and a very different effect in the long run — hurting the company's productivity or the quality of its products.
- **Care.** This standard concerns the relationships we have with other individuals. We owe care and consideration to all people, but we have greater responsibilities to people in our families, our workplaces, and our communities. The closer a person is to us, the greater care we owe that person. Therefore, we have greater obligations to members of our family than we do to others in our community.

Although these standards provide a vocabulary for thinking about how to resolve ethical conflicts, they are imprecise and often conflict with one another. Therefore, they cannot provide a systematic method of resolving ethical conflicts. Take the case of a job opportunity in your company. You are a member of the committee that will recommend which of six applicants to hire to redesign a customer portal that hosts tutorials and documentation. One of the six is a friend of yours who has been unable to secure a professional job since graduating from college two years ago. She therefore does not have as much website design experience as the other five candidates. However, she is enthusiastic about gaining experience in this particular field — and eager to start paying off her student loans.

How can the four standards help you think through the situation? According to the *rights* standard, lobbying for your friend or against the other applicants would be wrong because all applicants have an ethical right to an evaluation process that considers only their qualifications to do the job. Looking at the situation from the perspective of *justice* yields the same conclusion: it would be wrong to favor your friend. From the perspective of *utility,* lobbying for your friend would probably not be in the best interests of the organization, although it might be in your friend's best interests. Only according to the *care* standard does lobbying for your friend seem reasonable.

As you think about this case, you have to consider a related question: should you tell the other people on the hiring committee that one of the applicants is your friend? Yes, because they have a right to know about your personal relationship so that they can better evaluate your contributions to the discussion. You might also offer to *recuse* yourself (that is, not participate in the discussion of this position), leaving it to the other committee members to decide whether your friendship with a candidate represents a conflict of interest.

Here is one more complication in thinking about this case: let's say your friend is one of the top two candidates for the job. In your committee, which is made up of seven members, three vote for your friend, but four vote for the other candidate, who already has a very good job. She is a young, highly skilled employee with a degree from a prestigious university. In other words, she is likely to be very successful in the working world, regardless of whether she is offered this particular job. Should the fact that your friend has yet to start her own career affect your thinking about this problem? Some people would say no: the job should be offered to the most qualified applicant. Others would say yes: society does not adequately provide for its less-fortunate members, and because your friend needs the job more and is almost as qualified as the other top applicant, she should get the offer. In other words, some people would focus on the narrow, technical question of determining the best candidate for the job, whereas others would see a much broader social question involving human rights.

Most people do not explore the conflict among rights, justice, utility, and care when they confront a serious ethical dilemma; instead, they simply do what they think is right. Perhaps this is good news. However, the depth of ethical thinking varies dramatically from one person to another, and the consequences of superficial ethical thinking can be profound. For these reasons, ethicists have described a general set of principles that can help people organize their thinking about the role of ethics within an organizational context. These principles form a web of rights and obligations that connect an employee, an organization, and the world in which the organization is situated.

For example, in exchange for their labor, employees enjoy three basic rights: fair wages, safe and healthy working conditions, and due process in the handling of such matters as promotions, salary increases, and firing. Although there is still serious debate about the details of employee rights, such as whether employees have the right to freedom from surreptitious surveillance and unreasonable searches in drug investigations, the debate almost always concerns the extent of employees' rights, not the existence of the basic rights themselves. For instance, ethicists disagree about whether hiring undercover investigators to identify drug users at a job site is an unwarranted intrusion on employees' rights, but there is no debate about employees' right to freedom from unwarranted intrusion.

Your Ethical Obligations

In addition to enjoying rights, an employee assumes obligations, which can form a clear and reasonable framework for discussing the ethics of technical communication. The following discussion outlines three sets of obligations that you have as an employee: to your employer, to the public, and to the environment.

OBLIGATIONS TO YOUR EMPLOYER

You are hired to further your employer's legitimate aims and to refrain from any activities that run counter to those aims. Specifically, you have the following obligations:

- **Competence and diligence.** *Competence* refers to your skills; you should have the training and experience to do the job adequately. *Diligence* simply means working hard. Unfortunately, a survey of over 1,000 workers revealed that more than half of employees waste up to one hour of their eight-hour day surfing the web, socializing with co-workers, and doing other tasks unrelated to their jobs (Salary.com, 2013).
- **Generosity.** Although *generosity* might sound like an unusual obligation, you are obligated to help your co-workers and stakeholders outside your organization by sharing your knowledge and expertise. What this means is that if you are asked to respond to appropriate questions or provide recommendations

on some aspect of your organization's work, you should do so. If a customer or supplier contacts you, make the time to respond helpfully. Generosity shows professionalism and furthers your organization's goals.

- **Honesty and candor.** You should not steal from your employer. Stealing includes such practices as embezzlement, "borrowing" office supplies, and padding expense accounts. *Candor* means truthfulness; you should report to your employer problems that might threaten the quality or safety of the organization's product or service.
  Issues of honesty and candor include what Sigma Xi, the Scientific Research Society, calls trimming, cooking, and forging (Sigma Xi, 2000, p. 11). *Trimming* is the smoothing of irregularities to make research data look extremely accurate and precise. *Cooking* is retaining only those results that fit the theory and discarding the others. And *forging* is inventing some or all of the data or even reporting experiments that were never performed. In carrying out research, employees must resist any pressure to report only positive findings.
- **Confidentiality.** You should not divulge company business outside of the company. If a competitor finds out that your company is planning to introduce a new product, it might introduce its own version of that product, robbing your company of its competitive advantage. Many other kinds of privileged information — such as information on quality-control problems, personnel matters, relocation or expansion plans, and financial restructuring — also could be used against the company. A well-known confidentiality

problem involves *insider information*: an employee who knows about a development that will increase (or decrease) the value of the company's stock, for example, buys (or sells) the stock before the information is made public, thus unfairly — and illegally — reaping a profit (or avoiding a loss).

- **Loyalty.** You should act in the employer's interest, not in your own. Therefore, it is unethical to invest heavily in a competitor's stock, because that could jeopardize your objectivity and judgment. For the same reason, it is unethical (and illegal) to accept bribes or kickbacks. It is unethical to devote considerable time to moonlighting (performing an outside job, such as private consulting), because the outside job could lead to a conflict of interest and because the heavy workload could make you less productive in your primary position. However, you do not owe your employer absolute loyalty; if your employer is acting unethically, you have an obligation to try to change that behavior — even, if necessary, by blowing the whistle.

For more about whistle-blowing, see The Role of Corporate Culture in Ethical and Legal Conduct on page 24.

OBLIGATIONS TO THE PUBLIC

Every organization that offers products or provides services is obligated to treat its customers fairly. As a representative of an organization, and especially as an employee communicating technical information, you will frequently confront ethical questions.

In general, an organization is acting ethically if its product or service is both *safe* and *effective*. The product or service must not injure or harm the consumer, and it must fulfill its promised function. However, these commonsense principles provide little guidance in dealing with complicated ethical problems that arise routinely.

The U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (2017) estimates that around 42,000 deaths and more than 16 million injuries occurred in the United States in a single year because of consumer products — not counting automobiles and medications. Even more common, of course, are product and service failures: products or services don't do what they are supposed to do, products are difficult to assemble or operate, they break down, or they require more expensive maintenance than the product information indicates.

Who is responsible for injuries and product failures: the company that provides the product or service or the consumer who purchases it? In individual cases, blame is sometimes easy enough to determine. A person who operates a chainsaw without reading the safety information and without seeking any instruction in how to use it is to blame for any injuries caused by the normal operation of the saw. But a manufacturer that knows that the chain on the saw is liable to break under certain circumstances and fails to remedy this problem or warn the consumer is responsible for any resulting accidents.

Unfortunately, these principles do not outline a rational theory that can help companies understand how to act ethically in fulfilling their obligations to the public. Today, most court rulings are based on the premise that the manufacturer knows more about its products than the consumer does and therefore has a greater responsibility to make sure the products comply with all of the manufacturer's claims and are safe. Therefore, in designing, manufacturing, testing, and communicating about a product, the manufacturer has to make sure the product will be safe and effective when used according to the instructions. However, the manufacturer is not liable when something goes wrong that it could not have been foreseen or prevented.

OBLIGATIONS TO THE ENVIRONMENT

One of the most important lessons we have learned in recent decades is that we are polluting and depleting our limited natural resources at an unacceptably high rate. Our excessive use of fossil fuels not only deprives future generations of them but also causes possibly irreversible pollution problems, such as climate change. Everyone — government, businesses, and individuals — must work to preserve the environment to ensure the survival not only of our own species but also of the other species with which we share the planet.

But what does this have to do with you? In your daily work, you probably do not cause pollution or deplete the environment in any extraordinary way. Yet you will often know how your organization's actions affect the environment. For example, if you work for a manufacturing company, you might be aware of the environmental effects of making or using your company's products. Or you might help write an environmental impact statement.

As communicators, we should treat every actual or potential occurrence of environmental damage seriously. We should alert our supervisors to the situation and work with them to try to reduce the damage. The difficulty, of course, is that protecting the environment can be expensive. Clean fuels usually cost more than dirty ones. Disposing of hazardous waste properly costs more (in the short run) than merely dumping it. Organizations that want to reduce costs may be tempted to cut corners on environmental protection.

Your Legal Obligations

Ethical and legal obligations are closely related. In fact, our ethical values have shaped many of our laws. For this reason, professionals should know the basics of four different bodies of law: copyright, trademark, contract, and liability.

COPYRIGHT LAW

As a student, you are frequently reminded to avoid plagiarism. A student caught plagiarizing would likely fail the assignment and possibly the course and might even be expelled from school. A medical researcher or a reporter caught plagiarizing would likely be fired or at least find it difficult to publish in the future. But plagiarism is an ethical, not a legal, issue. Although a plagiarist might be expelled from school or be fired, he or she will not be fined or sent to prison.

By contrast, copyright is a legal issue. Copyright law is the body of law that relates to the appropriate use of a person's intellectual property: written documents, pictures, musical compositions, and the like. Copyright literally refers to a person's *right* to *copy* the work that he or she has created.

The most important concept in copyright law is that only the copyright holder — the person or organization that owns the work — can copy it. For instance, if you work for Zipcar, you can legally copy information from the Zipcar website and use it in other Zipcar documents. This reuse of information is routine in business, industry, and government because it helps ensure that the information a company distributes is both consistent and accurate.

However, if you work for Zipcar, you cannot simply copy information that you find on the Car2Go website and put it in Zipcar publications. Unless you obtained written permission from Car2Go to use its intellectual property, you would be infringing on Car2Go's copyright.

Why doesn't the Zipcar employee who writes the information for Zipcar own the copyright to that information? The answer lies in a legal concept known as *work made for hire*. Anything written or revised by an employee on the job is the company's property, not the employee's.

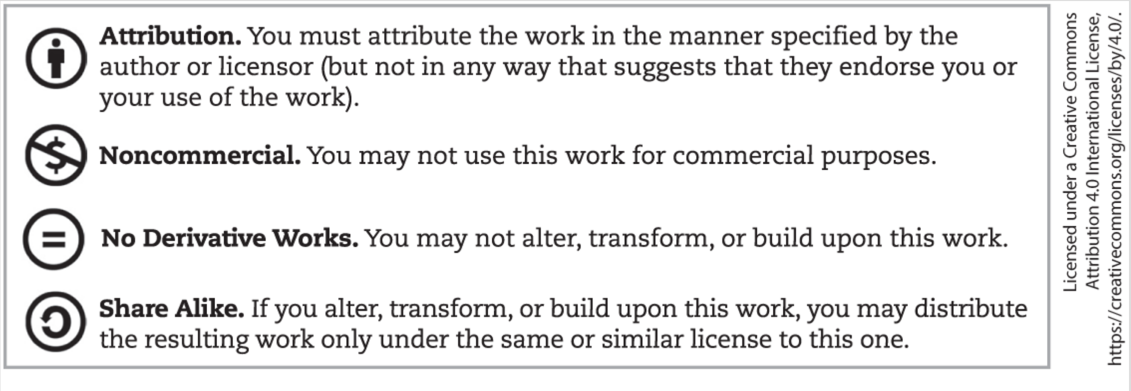
Although copyright gives the owner of the intellectual property some rights, it doesn't give the owner all rights. You can place small portions of copyrighted text in your own document without getting formal permission from the copyright holder. When you quote a few lines from an article, for example, you are taking advantage of a part of copyright law called *fair use*. Under fair-use guidelines, you have the right to use a portion of a published work, without getting permission, for purposes such as criticism, commentary, news reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research. Because fair use is based on a set of general guidelines that are meant to be interpreted on a case-by-case basis, you should still cite the source accurately to avoid potential plagiarism.

GUIDELINES Determining Fair Use

Courts consider four factors in disputes over fair use:

- **The purpose and character of the use, especially whether the use is for profit.** Profit-making organizations are scrutinized more carefully than nonprofits.
- **The nature and purpose of the copyrighted work.** When the information is essential to the public — for example, medical information — the fair-use principle is applied more liberally.
- **The amount and substantiality of the portion of the work used.** A 200-word passage would be a small portion of a book but a large portion of a 500-word brochure.
- **The effect of the use on the potential market for the copyrighted work.** Any use of the work that is likely to hurt the author's potential to profit from the original work would probably not be considered fair use.

A new trend is for copyright owners to stipulate which rights they wish to retain and which they wish to give up. You might see references to Creative Commons, a not-for-profit organization that provides symbols for copyright owners to use to communicate their preferences. Figure 2.1 shows four of the Creative Commons symbols. A benefit of using materials with Creative Commons licenses is that you don't have to track down the copyright holder to ask for permission. Note that some internet search engines allow you to search for Creative Commons materials.



Attribution. You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).

Noncommercial. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.

No Derivative Works. You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

Share Alike. If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one.

Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License, https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/.

FIGURE 2.1 Selected Licensing Symbols from Creative Commons

The organization has created a number of symbols to represent rights that copyright owners can retain or release.

GUIDELINES Dealing with Copyright Questions

For more about documenting your sources, see Appendix, Part A.

Consider the following advice when using material from another source.

- **Abide by the fair-use concept.** Do not rely on excessive amounts of another source's work (unless the information is your company's own boilerplate).
- **Seek permission.** Write to the source, stating what portion of the work you wish to use and the publication you wish to use it in. The source is likely to charge you for permission.

- **Cite your sources accurately.** Citing sources fulfills your ethical obligation and strengthens your writing by showing the reader the range of your research.
- **Consult legal counsel if you have questions.** Copyright law is complex. Don't rely on instinct or common sense.

ETHICS NOTE

DISTINGUISHING PLAGIARISM FROM ACCEPTABLE REUSE OF INFORMATION

Plagiarism is the act of using someone else's words or ideas without giving credit to the original author. It doesn't matter whether the writer intended to plagiarize. Obviously, it is plagiarism to borrow or steal graphics, video or audio media, written passages, or entire documents and then use them without attribution. Web-based sources are particularly vulnerable to plagiarism, partly because people mistakenly think that if information is on the web it is free to borrow and partly because this material is so easy to copy, paste, and reformat.

However, writers within a company often reuse one another's information without giving credit — and this is completely ethical. For instance, companies publish press releases when they wish to publicize news. These press releases typically conclude with descriptions of the company and how to get in touch with an employee who can answer questions about the company's products or services. These descriptions, sometimes called *boilerplate*, are simply copied and pasted from previous press releases. Because these descriptions are legally the intellectual property of the company, reusing them in this way is completely honest. Similarly, companies often *repurpose* their writing. That is, they copy a description of the company from a press release and paste it into a proposal or an annual report. This reuse is also acceptable.

When you are writing a document and need a passage that you suspect someone in your organization might already have written, ask a more experienced co-worker whether the culture of your organization permits reusing someone else's writing. If the answer is yes, check with your supervisor to see whether he or she approves of what you plan to do.

The Role of Corporate Culture in Ethical and Legal Conduct

Most employees work within organizations, such as corporations and government agencies. We know that organizations exert a powerful influence on their employees' actions. According to a study by the Ethics Resource Center of more than 6,500 employees in various businesses (2014), organizations that value ethics and build strong cultures experience fewer ethical problems than organizations with weak ethical cultures. In organizations with strong ethical cultures, far fewer employees feel pressure to commit misconduct, far fewer employees observe misconduct, far more employees report the misconduct that they see, and there is far less retaliation against employees who report misconduct.

Companies can take specific steps to improve their ethical culture:

- The organization's leaders can set the right tone by living up to their commitment to ethical conduct.
- Supervisors can set good examples and encourage ethical conduct.
- Peers can support those employees who act ethically.
- The organization can use additional communication to reinforce the formal policies, such as those presented in a company code of conduct.

In other words, it is not enough for an organization to issue a statement that ethical and legal behavior is important. The organization has to create a culture that values and rewards ethical and legal behavior. That culture starts at the top and extends to all employees, and it permeates the day-to-day operations of the organization.

An important element of a culture of ethical and legal conduct is a formal code of conduct. Most large corporations in the United States have one, as do almost all professional societies. (U.S. companies that are traded publicly are required to state whether they have a code of conduct — and if not, why not.) Codes of conduct vary greatly from organization to organization, but most of them address such issues as the following:

- adhering to local laws and regulations, including those intended to protect the environment
- avoiding discrimination
- maintaining a safe and healthy workplace
- respecting privacy
- avoiding conflicts of interest
- protecting the company’s intellectual property
- avoiding bribery and kickbacks in working with suppliers and customers

A code of conduct focuses on behavior, including adhering to the law. Many codes of conduct are only a few paragraphs long; others are lengthy and detailed, some consisting of several volumes.

An effective code has three major characteristics:

- **It protects the public rather than members of the organization or profession.** For instance, the code should condemn unsafe building practices but not advertising, which increases competition and thus lowers prices.
- **It is specific and comprehensive.** A code is ineffective if it merely states that people must not steal or if it does not address typical ethical offenses such as bribery in companies that do business in other countries.
- **It is enforceable.** A code is ineffective if it does not stipulate penalties, including dismissal from the company or expulsion from the profession.

Although many codes are too vague to be useful in determining whether a person has violated one of their principles, writing and implementing a code can be valuable because it forces an organization to clarify its own values and fosters an increased awareness of ethical issues.

If you think there is a serious ethical problem in your organization, find out what resources your organization offers to deal with it. If there are no resources, work with your supervisor to solve the problem.

What do you do if the ethical problem persists even after you have exhausted all the resources at your organization and, if appropriate, the professional organization in your field? The next step will likely involve *whistle-blowing* — the practice of going public with information about serious unethical conduct within an organization. For example, an engineer is blowing the whistle when she tells a regulatory agency or a newspaper that quality-control tests on a company product were faked.

Ethicists such as Velasquez (2011) argue that whistle-blowing is justified if you have tried to resolve the problem through internal channels, if you have strong evidence that the problem is hurting or will hurt other parties, and if the whistle-blowing is reasonably certain to prevent or stop the wrong-doing. But Velasquez also points out that whistle-blowing is likely to hurt the employee, his or her family, and other parties. Whistle-blowers can be penalized through negative performance appraisals, transfers to undesirable locations, or isolation within the company. The Ethics & Compliance Initiative (2018) reports that more than one in three workers in the private sector who reported misconduct experienced some form of retaliation.

Understanding Ethical and Legal Issues Related to Social Media

There is probably some truth to this comment from social-media consultant Peter Shankman: “For the majority of us, social media is nothing more than a faster way to screw up in front of a larger number of people in a shorter amount of time” (Trillos-Decarie, 2012). As social media have become more prevalent and important in the workplace, we’re starting to get a better idea of both the rewards and risks. Certainly, social media have created many new and exciting ways for people in the workplace to connect with each other and with other stakeholders outside the organization. However, the widespread use of social media by employees in the workplace and in their private lives also presents challenges.

User-generated content, whether it is posted to Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, YouTube, Instagram, Yelp, Pinterest, or any of the many other online services, presents significant new ethical and legal issues. Just as employers are trying to produce social-media policies that promote the interests of the organization without infringing on employees’ rights of free expression, we all need to understand the basics of ethical and legal principles related to these new media.

A 2014 report by the law firm Proskauer Rose LLP, “Social Media in the Workplace Around the World 3.0,” surveyed over 100 companies from the United States and many other countries. Here are some of the survey findings (Proskauer Rose LLP, 2014, p. 2):

- Almost 80 percent of employers have social-media policies.
- More than one-third of employers block employee access to social media.
- More than half of the employers reported problems caused by misuse of social media by employees. Over 70 percent of businesses have had to take disciplinary action against an employee for misuse of social media.

And in a 2016 report by the Pew Research Center, employees indicated that they use social media on the job to take a break from work, help solve work-related problems, and learn about someone they work with (Pew Research Center, 2016).

Over the next few years, organizations will revise their policies about how employees may use social media in the workplace, just as courts will clarify some of the more complicated issues related to social media and the law. For these reasons, what we now see as permissible and ethical is likely to change. Still, it is possible to identify a list of best practices that can help you use social media wisely — and legally — in your career.

Finally, a related suggestion: avoid criticizing your employer online. Although defamation laws forbid making untrue factual statements about your employer, you are in fact permitted to criticize your employer, online or offline. The National Labor Relations Board has ruled that doing so is legal because it is protected discussion about “working conditions.” Our advice: if you’re angry, move away from the keyboard. Once you post something, you’ve lost control of it.

However, if you think your employer is acting illegally or unethically, start by investigating the company’s own resources for addressing such problems. Then, if you are still dissatisfied, consider whistle-blowing.

GUIDELINES Using Social Media Ethically and Legally

These guidelines can help you use social media to your advantage in your career.

- **Keep your private social-media accounts separate from your company-sponsored accounts.** After you leave a company, you don’t want to get into a dispute over who “owns” an account. Companies can argue, for example, that your collection of Twitter followers is in fact a customer list and therefore the company’s intellectual property. Regardless of whether you post from the workplace or at home, post only about business on your company-sponsored accounts.
- **Read the terms of service of every service to which you post.** Although you retain the copyright on original content that you post, most social-media services state that they can repost your content wherever and whenever they want, without informing you, getting your permission, or paying you. Many employers would consider this policy unacceptable.
- **Avoid revealing unauthorized news about your own company.** A company that wishes to apply for a patent for one of its products or processes has, according to the law, only one year to do so after the product or process is first mentioned or illustrated in a “printed publication.” Because courts have found that a photo on Facebook or a blog or even a tweet is equivalent to a printed publication (Bettinger, 2010), you could inadvertently start the clock ticking. Even worse, some other

company could use the information to apply for a patent for the product or process that *your* company is developing. Or suppose that on your personal blog, you reveal that your company's profits will dip in the next quarter. This information could prompt investors to sell shares of your company's stock, thereby hurting everyone who owns shares — including you and most of your co-workers.

- **Avoid self-plagiarism.** Self-plagiarizing is the act of publishing something you have already published. If you write an article for your company newsletter and later publish it on a blog, you are violating your company's copyright, because your newsletter article was a work made for hire and therefore the company's intellectual property.
- **Avoid defaming anyone.** Defamation is the legal term for making false statements of fact about a person that could harm that person. Defamation includes libel (making such statements in writing, as in a blog post) and slander (making them in speech, as in a video posted online). In addition, you should not repost libelous or slanderous content that someone else has created.
- **Don't live stream or quote from a speech or meeting without permission.** Although you may describe a speech or meeting online, you may not stream video or post quotations without permission.
- **Avoid false endorsements.** The Federal Trade Commission has clear rules defining false advertising. The most common type of false advertising involves posting a positive review of a product or company in exchange for some compensation. For instance, some unscrupulous software companies give reviewers a copy of the software to be reviewed (which is perfectly legal) loaded on an expensive computer that the reviewers can keep. Unless the reviewer explicitly notes in the review the compensation from the software company, posting the positive review is considered false advertising. Similarly, you should not endorse your own company's products without stating your relationship with the company (U.S. Federal Trade Commission, 2017).
- **Avoid impersonating someone else online.** If that person is real (whether alive or dead), you could be violating his or her right of publicity (the right to control his or her name, image, or likeness). If that person is a fictional character, such as a character on a TV show or in a movie, you could be infringing on the copyright of whoever created that character.
- **Avoid infringing on trademarks by using protected logos or names.** Don't include copyrighted or trademarked names, slogans, or logos in your posts unless you have received permission to do so. Even if the trademark owner likes your content, you probably will be asked to stop posting it. If the trademark owner dislikes your content, you are likely to face a more aggressive legal response.

Communicating Ethically Across Cultures

The United States exports more than $2.2 trillion worth of goods and services to the rest of the world (U.S. Census Bureau, 2016). U.S. companies do not necessarily have the same ethical and legal obligations when they export as when they sell in the United States. For this reason, technical communicators should understand the basics of two aspects of writing for people in other countries: communicating with cultures with different ethical beliefs and communicating in countries with different laws.

COMMUNICATING WITH CULTURES WITH DIFFERENT ETHICAL BELIEFS

Companies face special challenges when they market their products and services to people in other countries (and to people in their home countries who come from other cultures). Companies need to decide how to deal with situations in which the target culture's ethical beliefs clash with those of their own culture. For instance, in many countries, sexual discrimination makes it difficult for women to assume responsible positions in the workplace. If a U.S. company that sells cell phones, for example, wishes to present product information in such a country, should it reinforce this discrimination by excluding women from photographs of its products? Ethicist Thomas Donaldson argues that doing so is wrong (1991). According to the principle he calls the *moral minimum*, companies are ethically obligated not to reinforce patterns of discrimination in product information.

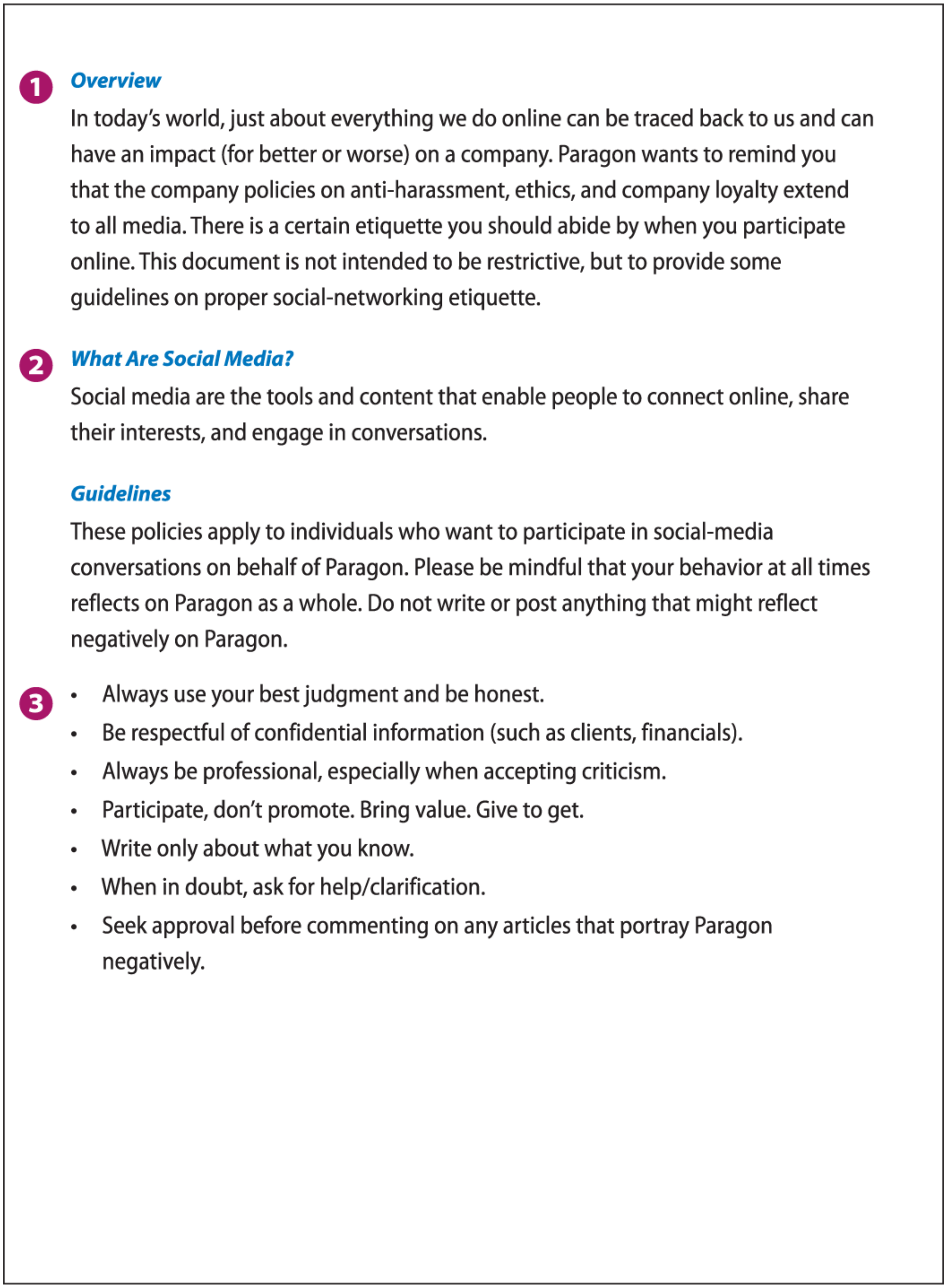
However, Donaldson also argues that companies are not obligated to challenge the prevailing prejudice directly. A company is not obligated, for example, to include photographs that show women performing roles they do not normally perform within a particular culture, nor is it obligated to portray women wearing clothing, makeup, or jewelry that is likely to offend local standards. But there is nothing to prevent an organization from adopting a more activist stance. Organizations that actively oppose discrimination are acting admirably.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Presenting Guidelines for Using Social Media

This excerpt is from a corporate social-media policy statement. The questions below ask you to think about how to make the policy statement clearer and more useful.

1. The “Overview” section discusses the company’s social-media policy guidelines in terms of etiquette. In what way is “etiquette” an appropriate word to describe the policy? In what way is it inappropriate?
2. The “What Are Social Media?” section provides little useful information. What other information might it include to make the document more useful to Paragon employees?
3. The bulleted guidelines are vague. Revise any two of them to include more specific information.



① ### Overview

In today's world, just about everything we do online can be traced back to us and can have an impact (for better or worse) on a company. Paragon wants to remind you that the company policies on anti-harassment, ethics, and company loyalty extend to all media. There is a certain etiquette you should abide by when you participate online. This document is not intended to be restrictive, but to provide some guidelines on proper social-networking etiquette.

② ### What Are Social Media?

Social media are the tools and content that enable people to connect online, share their interests, and engage in conversations.

Guidelines

These policies apply to individuals who want to participate in social-media conversations on behalf of Paragon. Please be mindful that your behavior at all times reflects on Paragon as a whole. Do not write or post anything that might reflect negatively on Paragon.

③
- Always use your best judgment and be honest.
- Be respectful of confidential information (such as clients, financials).
- Always be professional, especially when accepting criticism.
- Participate, don't promote. Bring value. Give to get.
- Write only about what you know.
- When in doubt, ask for help/clarification.
- Seek approval before commenting on any articles that portray Paragon negatively.

COMMUNICATING IN COUNTRIES WITH DIFFERENT LAWS

When U.S. companies export goods and services to other countries, they need to adhere to those countries' federal and regional laws. For instance, a company that wishes to export to Germany must abide by the laws of Germany and of the European Union, of which it is a part. In many cases, the target region will not allow goods and services to be imported that do not conform to local laws. The hazardous-product laws of the European Union, in particular, are typically more stringent than those of the United States.

Because exporting goods to countries with different laws is such a complex topic, companies that export devote considerable resources to finding out what they need to do, not only in designing and manufacturing products but also in writing the product information. For an introduction to this topic, see Lipus (2006).

THINKING VISUALLY

Principles for Ethical Communication

The following ten principles provide a starting point for communicating ethically in the workplace.

Abide by COPYRIGHT LAWS. Get written permission when you wish to include copyrighted material in a document.

Abide by your organization's professional CODE OF CONDUCT. Your field's professional organization is likely to have a code that expresses ethical principles.

Abide by your organization's POLICY ON SOCIAL MEDIA. If there is no written policy, check with Human Resources or your supervisor for advice.

Take advantage of your employer's ETHICS RESOURCES, such as its Ethics Office. Your employer will likely have a mechanism for registering complaints anonymously.

Tell the TRUTH. Resist pressure to lie, going over your supervisor's head if necessary.

Don't MISLEAD your readers. Avoid false implications about products, euphemisms, exaggerations about product specifications, and legalistic constructions.

Use DESIGN to highlight important ethical and legal information. Don't bury this information or downplay it using very small type.

Be CLEAR, using tables of contents, indexes, headings, and other accessing devices to help your readers find what they need.

Avoid LANGUAGE that DISCRIMINATES against people because of their sex, religion, ethnicity, race, sexual orientation, or physical or mental abilities.

Cite YOUR SOURCES and YOUR COLLABORATORS accurately and graciously.

From left to right: (2) artizarus/Shutterstock; (3) Fejas/Shutterstock; (4) a sk/Shutterstock; (5) a Sk/Shutterstock; (6) alexandrovskyi/Shutterstock; (7) ThisSTOCK/Shutterstock; (8) VoodooDot/Shutterstock; (9) punsayaporn/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

☐ Did you tell the truth?

☐ Did you abide by relevant laws?

☐ Did you abide by the appropriate corporate or professional code of conduct?

☐ Did you take advantage of your company’s ethics resources?

☐ Did you abide by your organization’s policy on social media?

EXERCISES

1. It is late April, and you need a summer job. On your town’s news website, you see an ad for a potential job. The only problem is that the ad specifically mentions that the job is “a continuing, full-time position.” You know that you will be returning to college in the fall. Is it ethical for you to apply for the job without mentioning this fact? Why or why not? If you believe it is unethical to withhold that information, is there any ethical way you can apply? Be prepared to share your ideas with the class.
2. You serve on the Advisory Committee of your college’s bookstore, which is a private business that leases space on campus and donates 10 percent of its profits to student

scholarships. The head of the bookstore wishes to stock Simple Study Guides, a popular series of plot summaries and character analyses of classic literary works. In similar bookstores, the sale of Simple Study Guides yields annual profits of over $10,000. Six academic departments have signed a statement condemning the idea. Should you support the bookstore head or the academic departments? Be prepared to discuss your answer with the class.

3. Using the search term “social media policy examples,” find a corporate policy statement on employee use of social media. In a 500-word memo to your instructor, explain whether the policy statement is clear, specific, and comprehensive. Does the statement include a persuasive explanation of why the policy is necessary? Is the tone of the statement positive or negative? How would you feel if you were required to abide by this policy? If appropriate, include a copy of the policy statement (or a portion of it) so that you can refer to it in your memo. For more about memos, see Ch. 9.
4. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form small groups. Study the website of a company or other organization that has a prominent role in your community or your academic field. Find information about the organization’s commitment to ethical and legal conduct. Often, organizations present this information in sections with titles such as “information for investors,” “about the company,” or “values and principles of conduct.”

- One group member could identify the section that states the organization’s values. How effective is this section in presenting information that goes beyond general statements about the importance of ethical behavior?
- A second group member could identify the section that describes the organization’s code of conduct. Does the organization seem to take principles of ethical and legal behavior seriously? Can you get a clear idea from the description whether the organization has a specific, well-defined set of policies, procedures, and resources available for employees who wish to discuss ethical and legal issues?
- A third group member could identify any information related to the organization’s commitment to the environment. What does the organization do, in its normal operations, to limit its carbon footprint and otherwise encourage responsible use of natural resources and minimize damage to the environment?
- As a team, write a memo to your instructor presenting your findings. Attach the organization’s code of conduct to your memo.

CASE 2: The Ethics of Requiring Students to Subsidize a Plagiarism-

Detection Service

The provost of your university has sent a letter to you and other members of the Student Council proposing that the university subscribe to a plagiarism-detection service, the cost of which would be subsidized by students' tuition. You and other council members have some serious concerns about the proposal and decide to write to the provost, analyzing the ethical implications of requiring students to subsidize such a program. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to read the provost's letter and begin drafting your response.

CHAPTER 3

Writing Collaboratively

Managing Projects
Conducting Meetings
Using Electronic Tools in Collaboration
Gender and Collaboration
Culture and Collaboration

THE EXPLOSIVE GROWTH of digital media has greatly expanded the scope of workplace collaboration, reducing barriers of time and space. Today, people routinely collaborate not only with members of their project teams but also with others within and outside their organization.

But how exactly does this sort of collaboration work? In every possible way. For example, you and other members of your project team might use collaboration tools primarily to gather information that you will use in your research. You bring this information back to your team, and then you work exclusively with your team in drafting, revising, and proofreading your document. In a more complex collaboration pattern, you and other members of your team might use collaboration tools to gather information from sources around the globe and then reach out to others in your organization to see what they think of your new ideas. Later in the process, you create the outline of your document, in the form of a wiki, and authorize everyone in your own organization to draft sections, pose questions and comments, and even edit what others have written. In short, you can collaborate with any number of people at one or at several stages of the writing process.

Every document is unique and will therefore call for a unique kind of collaboration. Your challenge is to think creatively about how you can work effectively with others to make your document as good as it can be. Being aware of the strengths and limitations of collaborative tools can prompt you to find people in your community and around the world who can help you think about your subject and write about it compellingly and persuasively.

THINKING VISUALLY

Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration

ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Collaboration…	Collaboration…
draws on a **WIDER KNOWLEDGE BASE.**	takes **MORE TIME** than individual writing.
draws on a **WIDER SKILLS BASE.**	can lead to **GROUPTHINK**, which values harmony over critical thinking.
provides a **BETTER IDEA OF HOW THE AUDIENCE WILL READ THE DOCUMENT.**	can yield a **DISJOINTED DOCUMENT.** Sections can contradict or repeat each other or be written in different styles.
improves **EMPLOYEE COMMUNICATION.**	can lead to **INEQUITABLE WORKLOADS.**
helps **ACCLIMATE NEW EMPLOYEES** to an organization.	can **REDUCE A PERSON'S MOTIVATION** if he or she feels alienated from the group.
MOTIVATES EMPLOYEES TO SHARE skills and knowledge.	can lead to **DISAGREEMENT AND INTERPERSONAL CONFLICT,** leaving a lasting impact on working relationships.

From left to right: (1) WonderfulPixel/Shutterstock; (2) PureSolution/Shutterstock; (3)Ecelop/Shutterstock; (4) milo827/Shutterstock; (5) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (6) NEGOVURA/Shutterstock; (7) Jiripravda/Shutterstock; (8) iDesign/Shutterstock; (9) Faberr Ink/Shutterstock; (10) Jiw Ingka/Shutterstock; (11) Introwiz1/Shutterstock; (12) Macrovector/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Managing Projects

At some point in your career, you will likely collaborate on a project that is just too big, too technical, too complex, or too difficult for your team to complete successfully without some advance planning and careful oversight. Often, collaborative projects last several weeks or months, and the efforts of several people are required at scheduled times for the project to proceed. For this reason, collaborators need to spend time managing the project to ensure that it not only meets the needs of the audience but also is completed on time and, if relevant, within budget.

GUIDELINES Managing Your Project

These seven suggestions can help you keep your project on track.

- **Break down a large project into several smaller tasks.** Working backward from what you must deliver to your client or manager, partition your project into its component parts, making a list of what steps your team must take to complete the project. This task is not only the foundation of project management but also a good strategy for determining the resources you will need to complete the project successfully and on time. After you have a list of tasks to complete, you can begin to plan your project, assign responsibilities, and set deadlines.
- **Plan your project.** Planning allows collaborators to develop an effective approach and reach agreement before investing a lot of time and resources. Planning prevents small problems from becoming big problems with a deadline looming. Effective project managers use planning documents such as *needs analyses*, *information plans*, *specifications*, and *project plans*.
- **Create and maintain an accurate schedule.** An accurate schedule helps collaborators plan ahead, allocate their time, and meet deadlines. Update your

schedule when changes are made, and either place the up-to-date schedule in an easily accessible location (for example, on a project website) or send the schedule to each team member. If the team misses a deadline, immediately create a new deadline. Team members should always know when tasks must be completed.

- **Put your decisions in writing.** Writing down your decisions, and communicating them to all collaborators, helps the team remember what happened. In addition, if questions arise, the team can refer easily to the document and, if necessary, update it.
- **Monitor the project.** By regularly tracking the progress of the project, the team can learn what has already been accomplished, whether the project is on schedule, and if any unexpected challenges exist.
- **Distribute and act on information quickly.** Acting fast to get collaborators the information they need helps ensure that the team makes effective decisions and steady progress toward completing the project.
- **Be flexible regarding schedule and responsibilities.** Adjust your plan and methods when new information becomes available or problems arise. When tasks are held up because earlier tasks have been delayed or need reworking, the team should consider revising responsibilities to keep the project moving forward.

Conducting Meetings

Collaboration involves meetings. Whether you are meeting live in a room or using videoconferencing tools, the five aspects of meetings discussed in this section can help you use your time productively and produce the best possible document.

LISTENING EFFECTIVELY

Participating in a meeting involves listening and speaking. If you listen carefully to other people, you will understand what they are thinking and will be able to speak knowledgeably and constructively. Unlike hearing, which involves receiving and processing sound waves, listening involves understanding what the speaker is saying and interpreting the information.

GUIDELINES Listening Effectively

Follow these five steps to improve your effectiveness as a listener.

- **Pay attention to the speaker.** Look at the speaker, and don't let your mind wander.
- **Listen for main ideas.** Pay attention to phrases that signal important information, such as "What I'm saying is …" or "The point I'm trying to make is.…"
- **Don't get emotionally involved with the speaker's ideas.** Even if you disagree, continue to listen. Keep an open mind. Don't stop listening in order to plan what you are going to say next.
- **Ask questions to clarify what the speaker said.** After the speaker finishes, ask questions to make sure you understand. For instance, "When you said that each

journal recommends different protocols, did you mean that each journal recommends several protocols or that each journal recommends a different protocol?"

- **Provide appropriate feedback.** The most important feedback is to look into the speaker's eyes. You can nod your approval to signal that you understand what he or she is saying. Appropriate feedback helps assure the speaker that he or she is communicating effectively.

SETTING YOUR TEAM'S AGENDA

It's important to get your team off to a smooth start. In the first meeting, start to define your team's agenda.

GUIDELINES Setting Your Team's Agenda

Carrying out these tasks will help your team work effectively and efficiently.

- **Define the team's task.** Every team member has to agree on the task, the deadline, and the approximate length of the document. You also need to agree on more conceptual points, including the document's audience, purpose, and scope.
- **Choose a team leader.** This person serves as the link between the team and management. (In an academic setting, the team leader represents the team in communicating with the instructor.) The team leader also keeps the team on track, leads the meetings, and coordinates communication among team members.
- **Define tasks for each team member.** There are three main ways to divide the tasks: according to technical expertise (for example, one team member, an engineer, is responsible for the information about engineering), according to stages of the writing process (one team member contributes to all stages, whereas another participates only during the planning stage), or according to sections of the document (several team members work on the whole document, but others work only on, say, the appendixes). People will likely assume informal roles, too. One person might be good at clarifying what others have said, another at preventing arguments, and another at asking questions that force the team to reevaluate its decisions.

- **Establish working procedures.** Before starting to work, collaborators need answers — in writing, if possible — to the following questions:
  — When and where will we meet?
  — What procedures will we follow in the meetings?
  — What tools will we use to communicate with other team members, including the leader, and how often will we communicate?
- **Establish a procedure for resolving conflict productively.** Disagreements about the project can lead to a better product. Give collaborators a chance to express ideas fully and find areas of agreement, and then resolve the conflict with a vote.
- **Create a style sheet.** A style sheet defines the characteristics of the document's writing style. For instance, a style sheet states how many levels of headings the document will have, whether it will have lists, whether it will have an informal tone (for example, using "you" and contractions), and so forth. If all collaborators draft using a similar writing style, the document will need less revision. And be sure to use styles to ensure a consistent design for headings and other textual features and to save time.
- **Establish a work schedule.** For example, for a proposal to be submitted on February 10, you might aim to complete the outline by January 25, the draft by February 1, and the revision by February 8. These dates are called *milestones.*
- **Create evaluation materials.** Team members have a right to know how their work will be evaluated. In college, students often evaluate themselves and other team members. In the working world, managers are more likely to do the evaluations.

Go to Achieve to download templates for work-schedule forms and self-evaluation forms.

ETHICS NOTE

PULLING YOUR WEIGHT ON COLLABORATIVE PROJECTS

Collaboration involves an ethical dimension. If you work hard and well, you help the other members of the team. If you don't, you hurt them.

You can't be held responsible for knowing and doing everything, and sometimes unexpected problems arise in other courses or in your private life that prevent you from participating as actively and effectively as you otherwise could. When problems occur, inform the other team members as soon as possible. For instance, call the team leader as soon as you realize you will have to miss a meeting. Be honest about what happened. Suggest ways you might make up for missing a task. If you communicate clearly, the other team members are likely to cooperate with you.

If you are a member of a team that includes someone who is not participating fully, keep records of your attempts to get in touch with that person. When you do make contact, you owe it to that person to try to find out what the problem is and suggest ways to resolve it. Your goal is to treat that person fairly and to help him or her do better work, so that the team will function more smoothly and more effectively.

CONDUCTING EFFICIENT MEETINGS

Much of human communication is nonverbal. That is, although people communicate through words and through the tone, rate, and volume of their speech, they also communicate through body language. For this reason, meetings provide the most information about what a person is thinking and feeling — and the best opportunity for team members to understand one another.

For a discussion of meeting minutes, see Ch. 12, "Writing Meeting Minutes."

To help make meetings effective and efficient, team members should arrive on time and stick to the agenda. One team member should serve as secretary, recording the important decisions made at the meeting. At the end of the meeting, the team leader should summarize the team's accomplishments and state the tasks each team member is to perform before the next meeting. If possible, the secretary should give each team member this informal set of meeting minutes.

COMMUNICATING DIPLOMATICALLY

Because collaborating can be stressful, it can lead to interpersonal conflict. People can become frustrated and angry with one another because of personality clashes or because of disputes about the project. If the project is to succeed, however, team members have to work together productively. When you speak in a team meeting, you want to appear helpful, not critical or overbearing.

CRITIQUING A TEAM MEMBER’S WORK

In your college classes, you probably have critiqued other students’ writing. In the workplace, you will do the same sort of critiquing of notes and drafts written by other team members. Knowing how to do it without offending the writer is a valuable skill.

GUIDELINES Communicating Diplomatically

These suggestions for communicating diplomatically will help you communicate effectively.

- **Listen carefully, without interrupting.** See the Guidelines box on page 36.
- **Give everyone a chance to speak.** Don’t dominate the discussion.
- **Avoid personal remarks and insults.** Be tolerant and respectful of other people’s views and working methods. Doing so is right — and smart: if you anger people, they will go out of their way to oppose you.

- ► **Don't overstate your position.** A modest qualifier such as "I think" or "it seems to me" is an effective signal to your listeners that you realize that everyone might not share your views.

OVERBEARING	My plan is a sure thing; there's no way we're not going to kill Allied next quarter.
DIPLOMATIC	I think this plan has a good chance of success: we're playing off our strengths and Allied's weaknesses.

Note that in the diplomatic version, the speaker says "this plan," not "my plan."

- ► **Don't get emotionally attached to your own ideas.** When people oppose you, try to understand why. Digging in is usually unwise — unless it's a matter of principle — because, although it's possible that you are right and everyone else is wrong, it's not likely.
- ► **Ask pertinent questions.** Bright people ask questions to understand what they hear and to connect it to other ideas. Asking questions also encourages other team members to examine what they hear.
- ► **Pay attention to nonverbal communication.** Bob might *say* that he understands a point, but his facial expression might show that he doesn't. If a team member looks confused, ask him or her about it. A direct question is likely to elicit a statement that will help the team clarify its discussion.

GUIDELINES Critiquing a Colleague's Work

People can be sensitive about their writing. Following these three suggestions for critiquing writing will increase the chances that your colleague will consider your ideas positively.

- **Start with a positive comment.** Even if the work is weak, say, "You've obviously put a lot of work into this, Joanne. Thanks." Or, "This is a really good start. Thanks, Joanne."
- **Discuss the larger issues first.** Begin with the big issues, such as organization, development, logic, design, and graphics. Then work on smaller issues, such as

paragraph development, sentence-level matters, and word choice. Leave editing and proofreading until the end of the process.

- **Talk about the document, not the writer.**

RUDE	You don’t explain clearly why this criterion is relevant.
BETTER	I’m having trouble understanding how this criterion relates to the topic.

Your goal is to improve the quality of the document you will submit, not to evaluate the writer or the draft. Offer constructive suggestions.

RUDE	Why didn’t you include the price comparisons here, as you said you would?
BETTER	I wonder if the report would be stronger if we included the price comparisons here.

In the better version, the speaker focuses on the goal (to create an effective report) rather than on the writer’s draft. Also, the speaker qualifies his recommendation by saying, “I wonder if. . . .” This approach sounds constructive rather than boastful or annoyed.

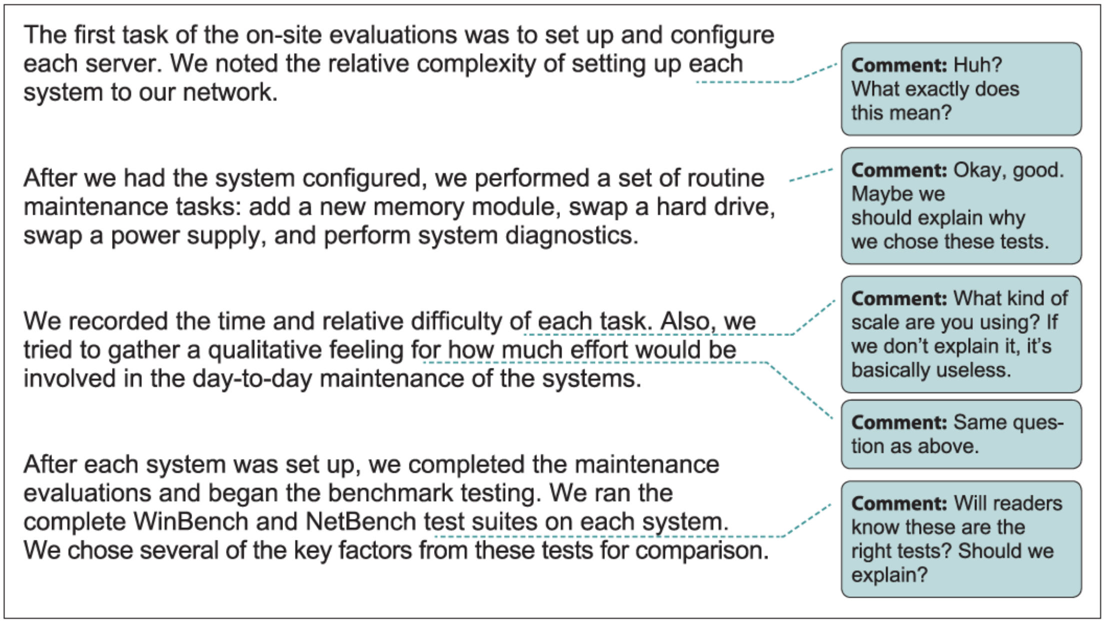
DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Critiquing a Draft Clearly and Diplomatically

This is an excerpt from the Methods section of a report about computer servers. In this section, the writer is explaining the tasks he performed in analyzing different servers. In a later section, he explains what he learned from the analysis. The comments in the balloons were inserted into the document by the author’s colleague.

The questions in the margin ask you to think about techniques for critiquing.

1. What is the tone of the comments? How can they be improved?
2. How well does the collaborator address the larger issues?
3. How well does the collaborator address the writing, not the writer?
4. How well do the collaborator's comments focus on the goal of the document, rather than judging the quality of the writing?



The first task of the on-site evaluations was to set up and configure each server. We noted the relative complexity of setting up each system to our network.

Comment: Huh? What exactly does this mean?

After we had the system configured, we performed a set of routine maintenance tasks: add a new memory module, swap a hard drive, swap a power supply, and perform system diagnostics.

Comment: Okay, good. Maybe we should explain why we chose these tests.

We recorded the time and relative difficulty of each task. Also, we tried to gather a qualitative feeling for how much effort would be involved in the day-to-day maintenance of the systems.

Comment: What kind of scale are you using? If we don't explain it, it's basically useless.

Comment: Same question as above.

After each system was set up, we completed the maintenance evaluations and began the benchmark testing. We ran the complete WinBench and NetBench test suites on each system. We chose several of the key factors from these tests for comparison.

Comment: Will readers know these are the right tests? Should we explain?

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Using Electronic Tools in Collaboration

Professionals use many types of electronic tools to exchange information and ideas as they collaborate. The following discussion highlights the major technologies that enable collaboration: word-processing tools, messaging technologies, videoconferencing, wikis and shared document workspaces, and virtual worlds.

WORD-PROCESSING TOOLS

Most word processors offer three powerful features that are useful in collaborative work:

- The *comment feature* lets readers add electronic comments to a file.
- The *revision feature* lets readers mark up a text by deleting, revising, and adding words and indicates who made which suggested changes.
- The *highlighting feature* lets readers use different "highlighting pens" to call the writer's attention to a particular passage.

MESSAGING TECHNOLOGIES

For more about writing email, see Ch. 9, "Writing Emails."

Two messaging technologies that have been around for decades are instant messaging and email. *Instant messaging (IM)*, or chat functionality, is real-time, text-based communication between two or more people. In the working world, IM enables people in different locations to communicate textual information at the same time. *Email* is an asynchronous medium for sending brief textual messages and for transferring files such as documents, spreadsheets, images, and videos.

For use on mobile devices such as phones, the two most popular messaging technologies are text messaging and microblogging.

Text messaging enables people to use mobile devices to send messages that can include text, audio, images, and video. Texting is the fastest-growing technology for exchanging messages electronically because most people keep their phones nearby. Organizations use text messaging for such purposes as sending a quick update or alerting people that an item has been delivered or a task completed. On your campus, the administration might use a texting system to remind students of an upcoming registration deadline or to alert people about a campus emergency.

Microblogging is a way of sending very brief textual messages to your personal network. You probably use the world's most popular microblog, Twitter, which now has more than 300 million users (Shaban, 2019). Although some organizations use Twitter, many use Twitter-like microblogs such as Yammer, which includes a search function and other features and which can be administered from within an organization.

VIDEOCONFERENCING

Videoconferencing technology allows two or more people at different locations to simultaneously see and hear one another as well as exchange documents, share data on computer displays, and use electronic whiteboards. Systems such as Skype are simple and inexpensive, requiring only a webcam and some free software. However, there are also large, dedicated systems that require extensive electronics, including cameras, servers, and a fiber-optic network or high-speed telephone lines.

GUIDELINES Participating in a Videoconference

Follow these six suggestions for participating effectively in a videoconference.

- **Practice using the technology.** For many people, being on camera is uncomfortable, especially the first time. Before participating in a high-stakes videoconference, become accustomed to the camera by participating in a few informal videoconferences.
- **Arrange for tech support at each site.** Participants can quickly become impatient or lose interest when someone is fumbling to make the technology work. Each site should have a person who can set up the equipment and troubleshoot if problems arise.
- **Organize the room to encourage participation.** If there is more than one person at the site, arrange the chairs so that they face the monitor and camera. Each person should be near a microphone. Before beginning the conference, check that each location has adequate audio and video as well as access to other relevant technology

such as computer monitors. Finally, remember to introduce everyone in the room, even those off camera, to everyone participating in the conference.

- **Make eye contact with the camera.** Eye contact is an important element of establishing your professional persona. The physical setup of some videoconferencing systems means you will likely spend most of your time looking at your monitor and not directly into the camera. However, this might give your viewers the impression that you are avoiding eye contact. Make a conscious effort periodically to look directly into the camera when speaking.
- **Dress as you would for a face-to-face meeting.** Wearing inappropriate clothing can distract participants and hurt your credibility.
- **Minimize distracting noises and movements.** Sensitive microphones can magnify the sound of shuffling papers, fingers tapping on tables, and whispering. Likewise, depending on your position in the picture frame, excessive movements can be distracting.

WIKIS AND SHARED DOCUMENT WORKSPACES

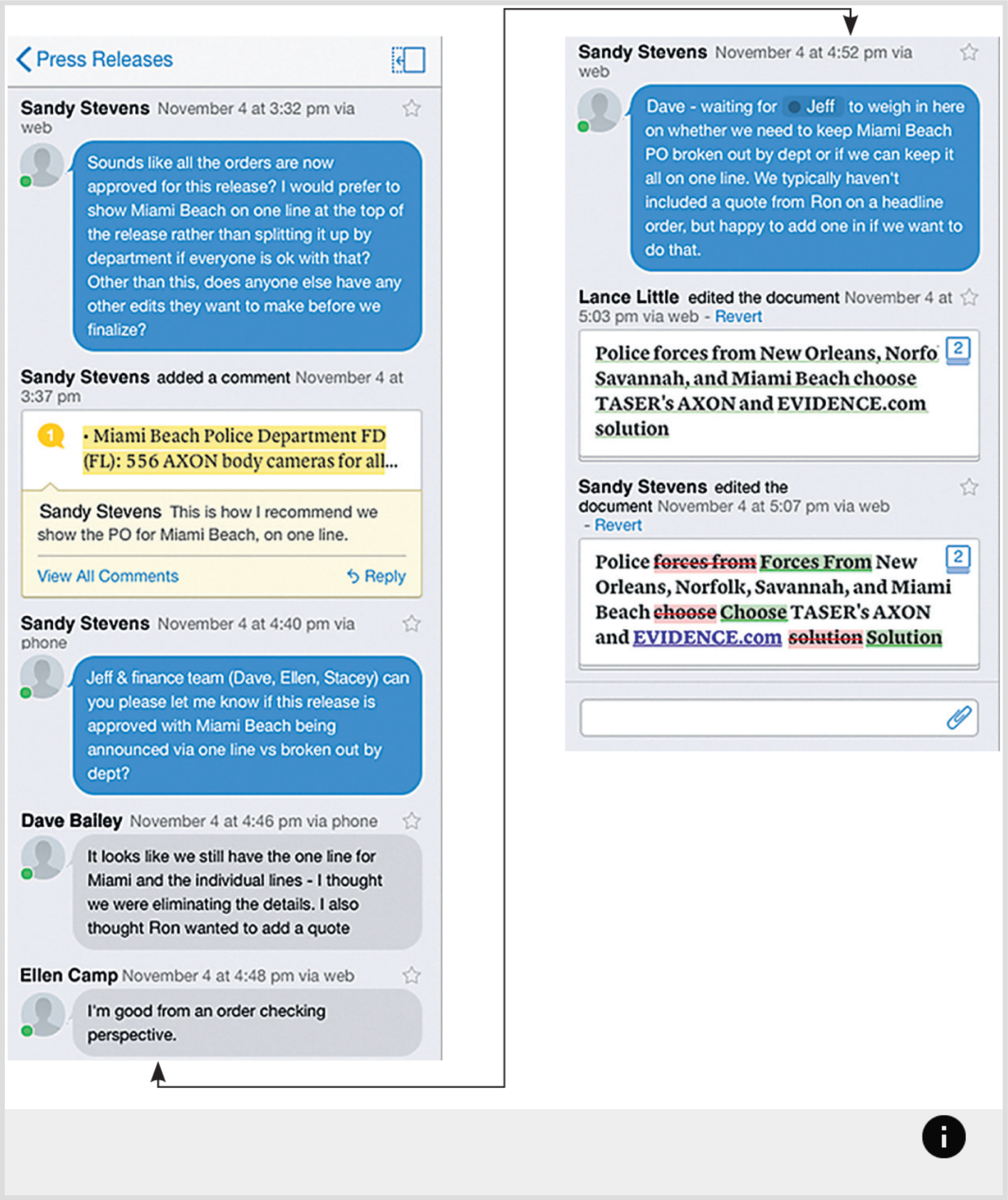
In the not-too-distant past, people would collaborate on a document by using email to send it from one person to another. One person would write or assemble the document and then send it to another person, who would revise it and send it along to the next person, and so forth. Although the process was effective, it was inefficient: only one person could work on the document at any given moment. Today, two new technologies — wikis and shared document workspaces — make collaborating on a document much simpler and more convenient.

A *wiki* is a web-based document that authorized users can write and edit. The best-known wiki is Wikipedia, an online encyclopedia that contains millions of articles written and edited by people around the world. In the working world, people use software such as MediaWiki and Confluence to host wikis used for creating many kinds of documents, such as instructions, manuals, lists of frequently asked questions, and policy documents. For instance, many organizations create their policies on social media by setting up wikis and inviting employees to write and edit what others have written. The concept is that a wiki draws on the expertise and insights of people throughout the organization and, sometimes, outside the organization.

A *shared document workspace* makes it convenient for a team of users to edit a file, such as a Prezi or PowerPoint slide deck or a Word document. A shared document workspace such as Microsoft SharePoint or Google Drive archives all the revisions made by each of the team members, so that the team can create a single document that incorporates selected revisions. Some shared document workspaces enable a user to download the document, revise it on his or her computer, and then upload it again. This feature is extremely convenient because the user does not need to be connected to the internet to work on the document.

TASER, a company that manufactures law-enforcement products, uses the shared document workspace Quip to collaborate on press releases and other documents. Figure 3.1 shows one of those press releases in development. In Quip, team members can edit a single version of a document simultaneously. Those edits are recorded in a chat thread, where team members can also add comments and questions. TASER

PR Director Sydney Siegmeth notes that Quip helps the company overcome one of collaboration’s biggest disadvantages: inefficiency.



Sandy Stevens November 4 at 3:32 pm via web

Sounds like all the orders are now approved for this release? I would prefer to show Miami Beach on one line at the top of the release rather than splitting it up by department if everyone is ok with that? Other than this, does anyone else have any other edits they want to make before we finalize?

Sandy Stevens added a comment November 4 at 3:37 pm

1 • Miami Beach Police Department FD (FL): 556 AXON body cameras for all...

Sandy Stevens This is how I recommend we show the PO for Miami Beach, on one line.

Sandy Stevens November 4 at 4:40 pm via phone

Jeff & finance team (Dave, Ellen, Stacey) can you please let me know if this release is approved with Miami Beach being announced via one line vs broken out by dept?

Dave Bailey November 4 at 4:46 pm via phone

It looks like we still have the one line for Miami and the individual lines - I thought we were eliminating the details. I also thought Ron wanted to add a quote

Ellen Camp November 4 at 4:48 pm via web

I'm good from an order checking perspective.

Sandy Stevens November 4 at 4:52 pm via web

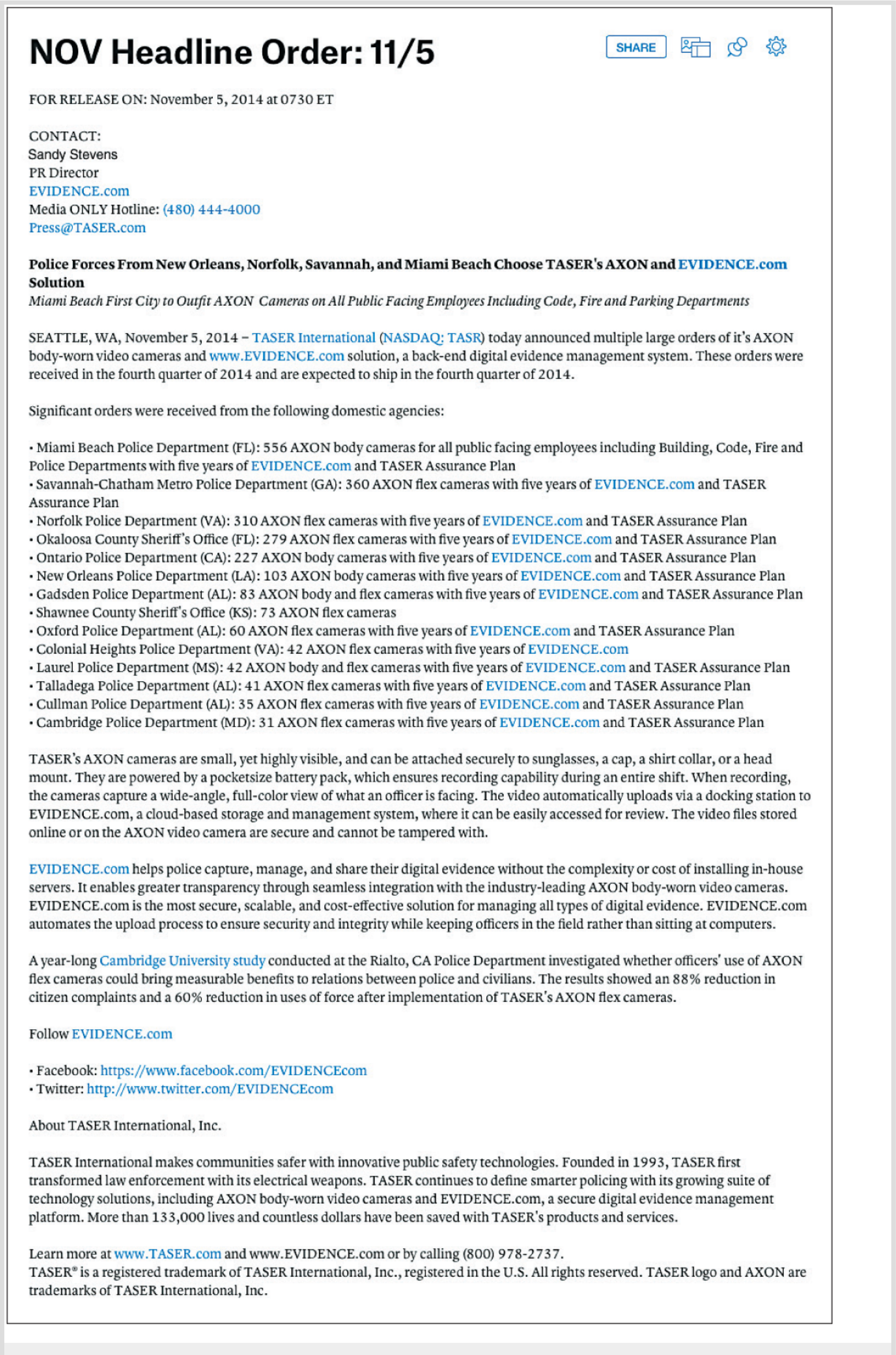
Dave - waiting for Jeff to weigh in here on whether we need to keep Miami Beach PO broken out by dept or if we can keep it all on one line. We typically haven't included a quote from Ron on a headline order, but happy to add one in if we want to do that.

Lance Little edited the document November 4 at 5:03 pm via web - Revert

Police forces from New Orleans, Norfo Savannah, and Miami Beach choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com solution

Sandy Stevens edited the document November 4 at 5:07 pm via web - Revert

Police ~~forces from~~ Forces From New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach ~~choose~~ Choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com ~~solution~~ Solution



NOV Headline Order: 11/5

FOR RELEASE ON: November 5, 2014 at 0730 ET

CONTACT:
Sandy Stevens
PR Director
EVIDENCE.com
Media ONLY Hotline: (480) 444-4000
Press@TASER.com

Police Forces From New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach Choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com Solution
Miami Beach First City to Outfit AXON Cameras on All Public Facing Employees Including Code, Fire and Parking Departments

SEATTLE, WA, November 5, 2014 – TASER International (NASDAQ: TASR) today announced multiple large orders of it's AXON body-worn video cameras and www.EVIDENCE.com solution, a back-end digital evidence management system. These orders were received in the fourth quarter of 2014 and are expected to ship in the fourth quarter of 2014.

Significant orders were received from the following domestic agencies:

- Miami Beach Police Department (FL): 556 AXON body cameras for all public facing employees including Building, Code, Fire and Police Departments with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Savannah-Chatham Metro Police Department (GA): 360 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Norfolk Police Department (VA): 310 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Okaloosa County Sheriff's Office (FL): 279 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Ontario Police Department (CA): 227 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- New Orleans Police Department (LA): 103 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Gadsden Police Department (AL): 83 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Shawnee County Sheriff's Office (KS): 73 AXON flex cameras
- Oxford Police Department (AL): 60 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Colonial Heights Police Department (VA): 42 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com
- Laurel Police Department (MS): 42 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Talladega Police Department (AL): 41 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Cullman Police Department (AL): 35 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Cambridge Police Department (MD): 31 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan

TASER's AXON cameras are small, yet highly visible, and can be attached securely to sunglasses, a cap, a shirt collar, or a head mount. They are powered by a pocketsize battery pack, which ensures recording capability during an entire shift. When recording, the cameras capture a wide-angle, full-color view of what an officer is facing. The video automatically uploads via a docking station to EVIDENCE.com, a cloud-based storage and management system, where it can be easily accessed for review. The video files stored online or on the AXON video camera are secure and cannot be tampered with.

EVIDENCE.com helps police capture, manage, and share their digital evidence without the complexity or cost of installing in-house servers. It enables greater transparency through seamless integration with the industry-leading AXON body-worn video cameras. EVIDENCE.com is the most secure, scalable, and cost-effective solution for managing all types of digital evidence. EVIDENCE.com automates the upload process to ensure security and integrity while keeping officers in the field rather than sitting at computers.

A year-long Cambridge University study conducted at the Rialto, CA Police Department investigated whether officers' use of AXON flex cameras could bring measurable benefits to relations between police and civilians. The results showed an 88% reduction in citizen complaints and a 60% reduction in uses of force after implementation of TASER's AXON flex cameras.

Follow EVIDENCE.com

- Facebook: https://www.facebook.com/EVIDENCEcom
- Twitter: http://www.twitter.com/EVIDENCEcom

About TASER International, Inc.

TASER International makes communities safer with innovative public safety technologies. Founded in 1993, TASER first transformed law enforcement with its electrical weapons. TASER continues to define smarter policing with its growing suite of technology solutions, including AXON body-worn video cameras and EVIDENCE.com, a secure digital evidence management platform. More than 133,000 lives and countless dollars have been saved with TASER's products and services.

Learn more at www.TASER.com and www.EVIDENCE.com or by calling (800) 978-2737.
TASER® is a registered trademark of TASER International, Inc., registered in the U.S. All rights reserved. TASER logo and AXON are trademarks of TASER International, Inc.

FIGURE 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread

Top: TASER employees collaborate in Quip on final edits to a press release announcing the purchases of products by several municipal police forces. The chat thread, which is located directly to the left of the document, serves as a single space where all communication about a project is recorded, such as approvals from other departments, as well as communication about the document itself. Here, team members discuss how to format information about purchases from multiple departments within a single police force, and they quickly resolve the questions. See the following page for the press release under discussion.

Bottom: TASER's press releases are developed by many teams, including some from outside the company. Before using Quip, Siegmeth's team had to consolidate edits made to various versions of the document by other teams and make sure all of the contributors received updates about the progress of the press release. Quip's chat thread streamlines all communication regarding the document in a single place, ensuring that all parties are kept in the loop. TASER has also found that Quip motivates employees to make their contributions more quickly than they did when working with email and a word processor. "I've found that once someone goes in to make an edit or a comment, others will jump in there too and offer their approval or other edits," Siegmeth says.

Although this section has discussed various collaboration tools as separate technologies, software companies are bundling programs in commercial products such as IBM Sametime, Adobe Creative Cloud, and Skype for Business, which are suites of voice, data, and video services. These services usually share four characteristics:

- **They are cloud based.** That is, organizations lease the services and access them over the internet. They do not have to acquire and maintain special hardware. This model is sometimes called *software as a service.*

- **They are integrated across desktop and mobile devices.** Because employees can access these services from their desktops or mobile devices, they are free to collaborate in real time even if they are not at their desks. Some services provide *presence awareness,* the ability to determine a person's online status, availability, and geographic location.
- **They are customizable.** Organizations can choose whichever services they wish and then customize them to work effectively with the rest of the organization's electronic infrastructure, such as computer software and telephone systems.
- **They are secure.** Organizations store the software behind a firewall, providing security: only authorized employees have access to the services.

CROWDSOURCING PLATFORMS

Some problems in technical communication can only be solved by enlisting the help of a large number of people. Crowdsourcing platforms like GitHub allow computer programmers from around the world to collaborate on a library of open-source code that can be downloaded and edited for any purpose. The distributed programmers bring a broad range of expertise from different professional settings, providing widely varying perspectives on coding problems and their solutions. On Zooniverse, nearly 2 million registered volunteers help researchers solve problems by collecting, transcribing, and interpreting data and information. For example, over 5,000 volunteers help monitor the health and behavior of penguin populations by counting penguins in aerial photographs taken with drones and planes. These data help researchers understand the size and shape of penguin colonies and how penguins use their natural habitat. Answers to these questions are critical to writing policies for marine protected areas (MPAs) in the Antarctic Peninsula.

You can find a more popular example of crowdsourcing in disaster-response situations. Technical communication researcher Liza Potts studied how citizens used social media during Hurricane Katrina, the London bombings, and the Mumbai attacks to help officials manage critical emergencies that were chaotic and often unpredictable (Potts, 2014). Her findings revealed that social media content shared by the many citizens who were in and around the emergencies was essential to communicating what was going on and what needed to be done to help the victims. The content included written descriptions, photographs, and videos, which were uploaded to digital networks and then circulated across the globe.

STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION

Jenny Gilbert, Crowdsourcing Data and Information

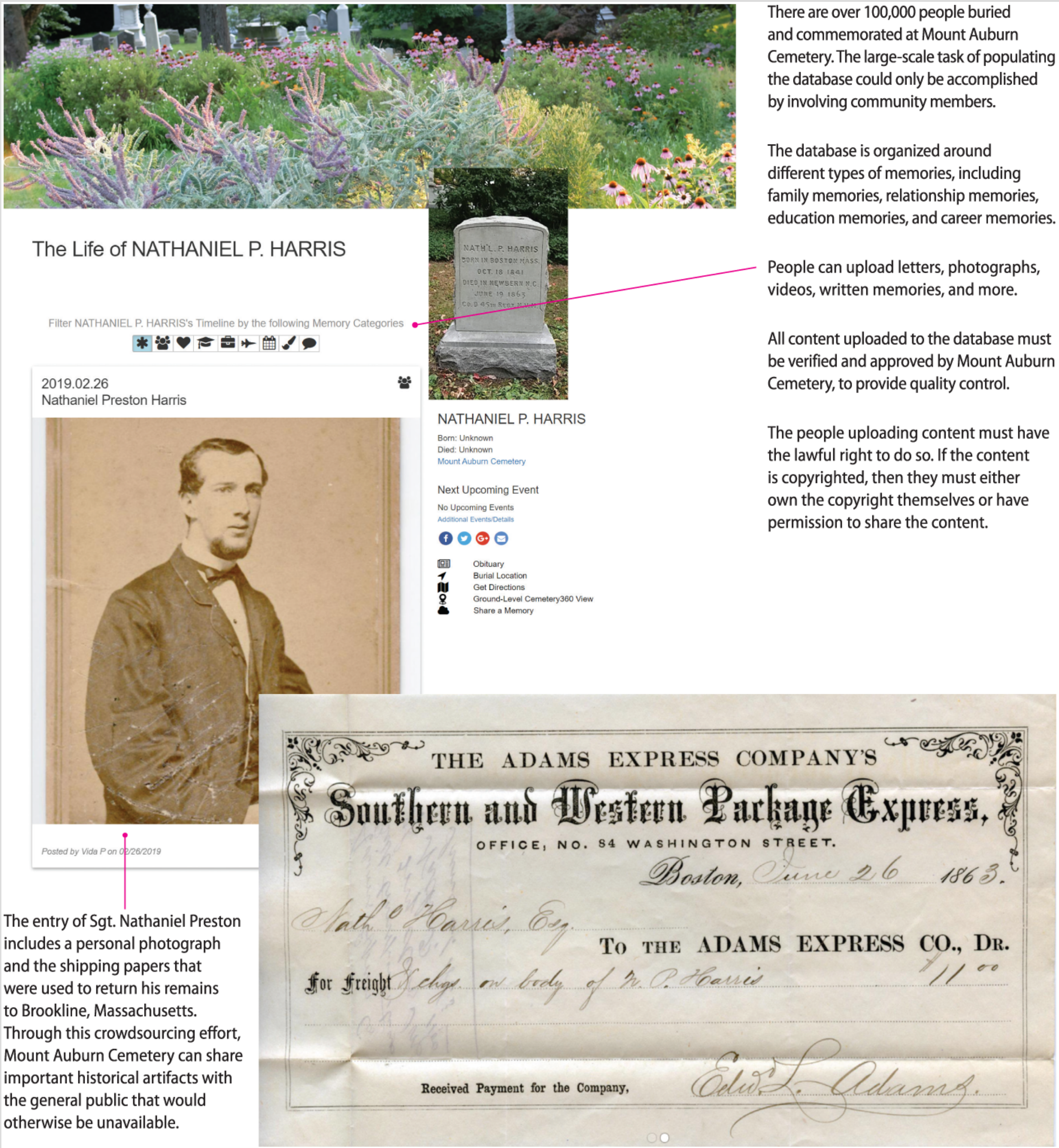
Technical communicators can crowdsource data and information to help them with the research process. Crowdsourcing is a technique by which customers, stakeholders, and other audiences are asked to contribute their own perspectives and resources to a project. This technique is particularly valuable in large-scale projects for online settings, where problem solving can be distributed and managed over digital networks. Jenny

Gilbert is the director of institutional advancement at Mount Auburn Cemetery, a national historic landmark and the country's first rural cemetery. She explains how a crowdsourcing strategy can bring audiences together to help answer certain types of research questions in technical communication contexts.

Mount Auburn Cemetery

JENNY GILBERT

At Mount Auburn Cemetery, Jenny Gilbert writes grants and annual reports and communicates in a variety of ways with donors. The cemetery's database of crowdsourced materials about the deceased, both notables and everyday people from local communities, can be accessed from a website; however, most visitors use the database optimized as a mobile app because it also helps them to navigate the 175-acre site. The app was designed by an interdisciplinary team of professionals, but there are regularly scheduled "digitization days" where people from the community learn how to populate the app with personal artifacts. People who don't need help can simply upload contributions on their own at any time. This example from the mobile app shows part of the entry for Sgt. Nathaniel Preston Harris of Brookline, Massachusetts (1841–1863), who died of disease while serving in the Civil War. The artifacts were provided by family members.



The Life of NATHANIEL P. HARRIS

Filter NATHANIEL P. HARRIS's Timeline by the following Memory Categories

2019.02.26
Nathaniel Preston Harris

Posted by Vida P on 02/26/2019

NATHANIEL P. HARRIS

Born: Unknown
Died: Unknown
Mount Auburn Cemetery

Next Upcoming Event

No Upcoming Events
Additional Events/Details

Obituary
Burial Location
Get Directions
Ground-Level Cemetery360 View
Share a Memory

THE ADAMS EXPRESS COMPANY'S
Southern and Western Package Express,
OFFICE, NO. 84 WASHINGTON STREET.
Boston, June 26 1863.

Nath'l Harris, Esq.
To THE ADAMS EXPRESS CO., DR.
For Freight & chgs. on body of N. P. Harris $11.00

Received Payment for the Company, Edw. L. Adams.

There are over 100,000 people buried and commemorated at Mount Auburn Cemetery. The large-scale task of populating the database could only be accomplished by involving community members.

The database is organized around different types of memories, including family memories, relationship memories, education memories, and career memories.

People can upload letters, photographs, videos, written memories, and more.

All content uploaded to the database must be verified and approved by Mount Auburn Cemetery, to provide quality control.

The people uploading content must have the lawful right to do so. If the content is copyrighted, then they must either own the copyright themselves or have permission to share the content.

The entry of Sgt. Nathaniel Preston includes a personal photograph and the shipping papers that were used to return his remains to Brookline, Massachusetts. Through this crowdsourcing effort, Mount Auburn Cemetery can share important historical artifacts with the general public that would otherwise be unavailable.

Mount Auburn Cemetery

FIGURE 3.2 Crowdsourcing Content for a Database

ETHICS NOTE

MAINTAINING A PROFESSIONAL PRESENCE ONLINE

For more about maintaining a professional presence online, see Ch. 2, "Understanding Ethical and Legal Issues Related to Social Media."

According to a report from Cisco Systems (2010), half of the surveyed employees claim they routinely ignore company guidelines that prohibit the use of social media for non- work-related activities during company time. If you use your organization's social media at work, be sure to act professionally so that your actions reflect positively on you and your organization. Be aware of several important legal and ethical issues related to social media.

Although the law has not always kept pace with recent technological innovations, a few things are clear. You and your organization can be held liable if you make defamatory statements (statements that are untrue and damaging) about people or organizations, publish private information (such as trade secrets) or something that publicly places an individual "in a false light," publish personal information, harass others, or participate in criminal activity.

In addition, follow these guidelines to avoid important ethical pitfalls:

- Don't waste company time using social media for nonbusiness purposes. You owe your employer diligence (hard work).
- Don't divulge secure information, such as a login and password that expose your organization to unauthorized access, and don't reveal information about products that have not yet been released.
- Don't divulge private information about anyone. Private information relates to such issues as religion, politics, and sexual orientation.
- Don't make racist or sexist comments or post pictures of people drinking.

If your organization has a written policy on the use of social media, study it carefully. Ask questions if anything in it is unclear. If the policy is incomplete, work to make it complete. If there is no policy, work to create one.

For an excellent discussion of legal and ethical aspects of using your organization's social media, see Kaupins and Park (2010).

Gender and Collaboration

Effective collaboration involves two related challenges: maintaining the team as a productive, friendly working unit and accomplishing the task. Scholars of gender and collaboration see these two challenges as representing the broad socialized perspectives of women and men.

This discussion should begin with a qualifier: in discussing gender, we are generalizing. The differences in behavior between two people who share a gender are likely to be just as great as the differences in behavior between people of different genders.

The differences in how men and women tend to communicate and work in teams have been traced to each culture's traditional family structure. Because women were traditionally the primary caregivers in American culture, they learned to value nurturing, connection, growth, and cooperation; because men were the primary breadwinners, they learned to value separateness, competition, debate, and even conflict (Karten, 2002). In collaborative teams, women appear to value consensus and relationships more than men do, to show more empathy, and to demonstrate superior listening skills. Women talk more about topics unrelated to the task (Duin, Jorn, & DeBower, 1991), but this talk is central to maintaining team coherence. Men appear to be more competitive than women.

Scholars of gender recommend that all professionals strive to achieve an androgynous mix of the skills and aptitudes commonly associated with both women and men.

Culture and Collaboration

For more about multicultural issues, see Ch. 4, "Communicating Across Cultures."

Most collaborative teams in industry and in the classroom include people from other cultures. The challenge for all team members is to understand the ways in which cultural differences can affect team behavior. People from other cultures:

- might find it difficult to assert themselves in collaborative teams;
- might be unwilling to respond with a definite "no";
- might be reluctant to admit when they are confused or to ask for clarification;
- might avoid criticizing others;
- might avoid initiating new tasks or performing creatively.

Even the most benign gesture of friendship on the part of a U.S. student can cause confusion. If a U.S. student casually asks a Japanese student about her major and the courses she is taking, the Japanese student might find the question too personal — yet she might consider it perfectly appropriate to talk about her family and her religious beliefs (Lustig & Koester, 2012). Therefore, you should remain open to encounters with people from other cultures without jumping to conclusions about what their actions might or might not mean.

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

In managing your project, did you

☐ break it down into several smaller tasks if it was large?
☐ create a plan and maintain an accurate schedule?
☐ put your decisions in writing?
☐ monitor progress and distribute and act on information quickly?
☐ act flexibly regarding schedule and responsibilities?

At your first team meeting, did you

☐ define the team's task and the tasks for each team member?
☐ choose a team leader?
☐ establish working procedures and conflict resolution procedures?
☐ create a style sheet and evaluation materials?
☐ establish a work schedule?

To help make meetings efficient, do you

☐ arrive on time and stick to the agenda?
☐ make sure that a team member records important decisions made at the meeting?
☐ make sure that the leader summarizes the team's accomplishments and that every member understands what his

or her tasks are?

To communicate diplomatically, do you

☐ listen carefully, without interrupting?
☐ give everyone a chance to speak?
☐ avoid personal remarks and insults?
☐ avoid overstating your position or getting emotionally attached to your own ideas?
☐ ask pertinent questions?
☐ pay attention to nonverbal communication?

In critiquing a team member's work, do you

☐ start with a positive comment?
☐ discuss the larger issues first?
☐ talk about the document, not the writer?
☐ use the comment, revision, and highlighting features of your word processor, if appropriate?

When you participate in a videoconference, do you

☐ first practice using videoconferencing technology?
☐ arrange for tech support at each site?
☐ organize the room to encourage participation?
☐ make eye contact with the camera?
☐ dress as you would for a face-to-face meeting?
☐ minimize distracting noises and movements?

EXERCISES

For more about memos, see Ch. 9, "Writing Memos."

1. Using a current writing sample from your course, "In giving feedback on a peer's work," experiment with the comment, revision, and highlight features of your word processor when giving feedback on a peer's work. Using online help if necessary, learn how to make, revise, and delete comments; make, undo, and accept revisions; and add and delete highlights.
2. Using a wiki site such as wikiHow.com, find a set of instructions on a technical process that interests you. Study one of the revisions to the instructions, noting the types of changes made. Do the changes relate to the content of the instructions, to the use of graphics, or to the correctness of the writing? Be prepared to share your findings with the class.
3. You have probably had a lot of experience working in collaborative teams in previous courses or on the job. Brainstorm for five minutes, listing some of your best and worst experiences participating in collaborative teams. Choose one positive experience and one negative experience. Think about why the positive experience went well. Was there a technique that a team member used that accounted for the positive experience? Think about why the

negative experience went wrong. Was there a technique or action that accounted for the negative experience? How might the negative experience have been prevented — or fixed? Be prepared to share your responses with the class.

4. **TEAM EXERCISE** Your college or university wishes to update its website to include a section called “For Prospective International Students.” Along with members of your team, first determine whether your school’s website already has information of particular interest to prospective international students. If it does, write a memo to your instructor describing and evaluating the information. Is it accurate? Comprehensive? Clear? Useful? What kind of information should be added to the site to make it more effective?

   If the school’s site does not have this information, perform the following two tasks:

   - *Plan*. What kind of information should this new section include? Does some of this information already exist elsewhere on the web, or does it all have to be created from scratch? For example, can you create a link to an external site with information on how to obtain a student visa? Write an outline of the main topics that should be covered.
   - *Draft*. Write the following sections: “Where To Live on or near Campus,” “Social Activities on or near Campus,” and “If English Is Not Your Native

Language." What graphics could you include? Are they already available? What other sites should you link to from these three sections?

In a memo, present your suggestions to your instructor. For more about memos, see Ch. 9, "Writing Memos."

CASE 3: Accommodating a Team Member's Scheduling Problems

Your technical-communication instructor has organized you into groups of three. Your group will collaborate on a series of projects throughout the semester. Before your first assignment is due, you learn that one team member must deal with a family emergency that will interfere with his ability to participate in the project for some time. Now, you and your other teammate must devise a plan to proceed with the project. You also decide to propose a class-wide policy for communicating with teammates when problems arise. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started on your assignment.

PART 2

Planning and Drafting the Document

Nikada/Getty Images

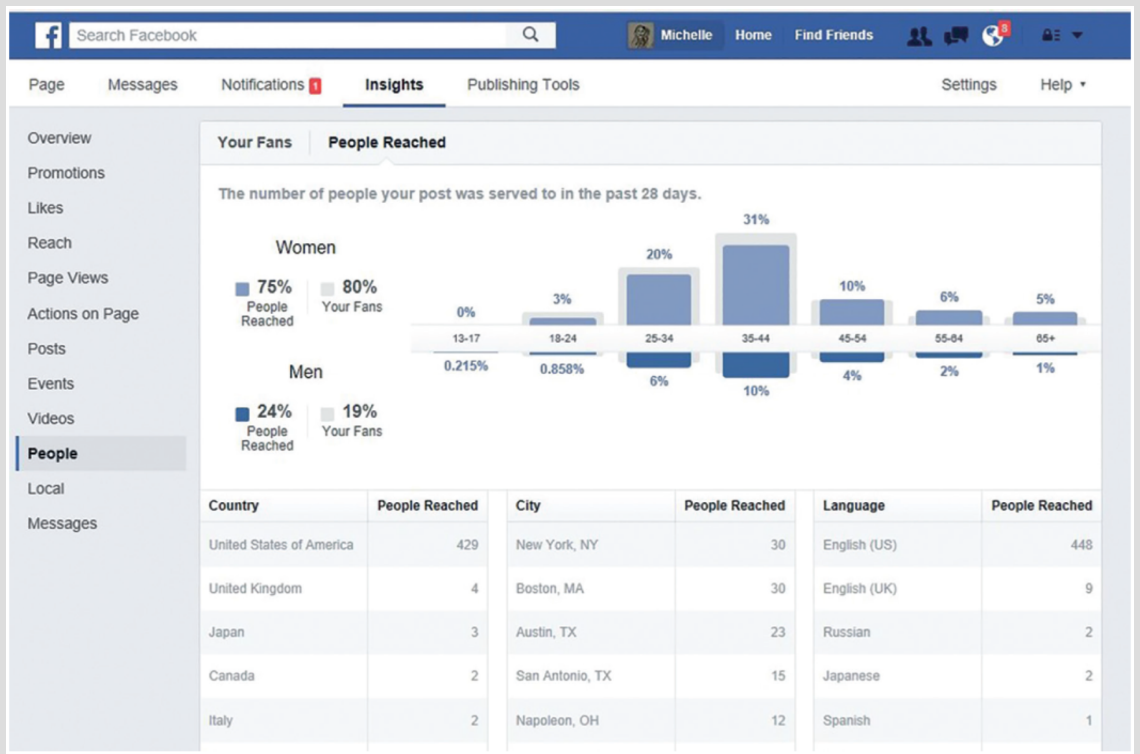
CHAPTER 4

Analyzing Your Audience and Purpose

Understanding Audience and Purpose
Using an Audience Profile Sheet
Techniques for Learning About Your Audience
Communicating Across Cultures
Applying What You Have Learned About Your Audience
Writing for Multiple Audiences
Determining Your Purpose

DIGITAL STRATEGIST Jason Falls writes frequently about how companies can use social media to develop relationships with customers. What does he say is the key to using social media for business? Knowing your audience. The analytics report shown in Figure 4.1 provides basic information about the people who have visited a specific Facebook page in the previous four weeks: their gender, age, and geographic location. If you want more detailed information, you can purchase sophisticated tools and software that allow you to analyze the data on your own, or you can hire an expert to do it for you. Understanding your followers — your audience —

can help you tailor your page to the people who are already visiting and broaden or adjust your content to reach more people.


Search Facebook
Michelle
Home
Find Friends
Page
Messages
Notifications 1
Insights
Publishing Tools
Settings
Help ▾
Overview
Promotions
Likes
Reach
Page Views
Actions on Page
Posts
Events
Videos
People
Local
Messages
Your Fans
People Reached
Women
75% People Reached
80% Your Fans
Men
24% People Reached
19% Your Fans
13-17
18-24
25-34
35-44
45-54
55-64
65+
0%
3%
20%
31%
10%
6%
5%
0.215%
0.858%
6%
10%
4%
2%
1%

The number of people your post was served to in the past 28 days.

Country	People Reached
United States of America	429
United Kingdom	4
Japan	3
Canada	2
Italy	2

City	People Reached
New York, NY	30
Boston, MA	30
Austin, TX	23
San Antonio, TX	15
Napoleon, OH	12

Language	People Reached
English (US)	448
English (UK)	9
Russian	2
Japanese	2
Spanish	1

FIGURE 4.1 Analysis of Facebook Users

Organizations of all sorts, not just businesses, analyze their audiences. Government agencies that want to appeal to the general public — to urge people to eat better, get vaccinated, or sign up for health insurance, to name just a few activities — start by analyzing their audiences to learn how to motivate them. Political campaigns analyze voters to determine the issues they want to see addressed. Charities such as the March of Dimes analyze their audiences to improve the effectiveness of their communications.

Understanding Audience and Purpose

Projects of all sizes and types succeed only if they are based on an accurate understanding of the needs and desires of their audiences and have a clear, focused purpose. Because the documents and other communication you produce in the workplace will, more often than not, form the foundations of these projects, they too will succeed only if they are based on an accurate understanding of your audience and have a clear purpose.

Although you might not realize it, you probably consider audience in your day-to-day communication. For example, when you tell your parents about a new job you've landed, you keep the discussion general and focus on the job details you know they care most about: its location, its salary and benefits, and your start date. But when you email a former internship supervisor with the same news, you discuss your upcoming duties and projects in more detail.

As you produce documents for this technical-communication course, you will of course consider your instructor's expectations, just as you do when you write anything for any other course. But keep in mind that your instructor is also playing the role of the audience that you would be addressing if you had produced the document outside of this course. Therefore, to a large extent your instructor will likely evaluate each of your course assignments on how effectively you've addressed the audience and achieved the purpose specified in the assignment.

Analyzing an audience means thinking about who your audience is, what they already know about your subject, how they feel about it, and how they are going to use the information you present. You analyze your audience as you plan your document so that it appeals to their interests and needs, is easy for them to understand, and motivates them to pay attention to your message and consider your recommendations.

The word *purpose* refers to what you want to accomplish with the document you are producing. Most often, your purpose is to explain to your audience how something occurs (how regenerative braking systems work in hybrid cars), how to carry out a task (how to set up a Skype connection), or why some situation is either good or bad (why the new county guidelines for water use will help or hurt your company). When your purpose is to explain why a situation is either good or bad, you are trying to reinforce or change the audience's attitudes toward the situation and perhaps urge them to take action. As you will see, in many cases your technical communication will have multiple purposes.

Before you can start to think about writing about your *subject*, analyze your audience and purpose. Doing so will help you meet your readers' needs — and your own. For instance, you're an engineer working for a consulting company. One document to which you might contribute is a report to the city planning board about how building a housing development would affect the natural environment as well as the city's roads, schools, and sanitation infrastructure. That's the *subject* of the report. The *purpose* is to motivate the planning board to approve the project so that it can begin. How does the audience affect how you analyze your purpose? Think about who the board members are. If most of them are not engineers, you don't want to use specialized vocabulary and advanced engineering graphics and concepts. You don't want to dwell on the technical details. Rather, you want to use general vocabulary, graphics, and concepts. You want to focus on the issues the board members are concerned about. Would the development affect the environment negatively? If so, is the developer including a plan to offset that negative effect? Can the roads handle the extra traffic? Can the schools handle the extra kids? Will the city have to expand its police force? Its fire department? Its sewer system?

In other words, when you write to the planning board, you focus on topics they are most interested in, and you write the document so that it is easy for them to read and understand. If the project is approved and you need to communicate with other audiences, such as architects and contractors, you will have different purposes, and you will adjust your writing to meet each audience's needs.

What can go wrong when you don't analyze your audience? McDonald's Corporation found out when it printed takeout bags decorated with flags from around the world. Among them was the flag of Saudi Arabia, which contains scripture from the Koran. This was extremely offensive to Muslims, who consider it sacrilegious to throw out items bearing sacred scripture. As a result, McDonald's lost public credibility.

Throughout this chapter, the text will refer to your *reader* and your *document*. But all of the information refers as well to oral presentations, which are the subject of Chapter 15, as well as to documents in various media, such as podcasts or videos.

Using an Audience Profile Sheet

As you read the discussions in this chapter about audience characteristics and techniques for learning about your audience, you might think about using an audience profile sheet: a form that prompts you to consider various audience characteristics as you plan your document. For example, the profile sheet can help you realize that you do not know much about your primary reader's work history and what that history can tell you about how to shape your document. Visit Achieve to find a downloadable copy of an audience profile sheet.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Responding to Readers' Attitudes

IF ...	TRY THIS ...
Your reader is neutral or positively inclined toward your subject	Write the document so that it responds to the reader's needs; make sure that vocabulary, level of detail, organization, and style are appropriate.
Your reader is hostile to the subject or to your approach to it	• Find out what the objections are, and then answer them directly. Explain why the objections are not valid or are less important than the benefits. For example, you want to hire an online-community manager to coordinate your company's social-media efforts, but you know that one of your primary readers won't like this idea. Try to find out why. Does this person think social media are a fad? That they are irrelevant and can't help your company? If you understand the objections, you can explain your position more effectively.

	- Organize the document so that your recommendation follows your explanation of the benefits. This strategy encourages the hostile reader to understand your argument rather than to reject it out of hand. - Avoid describing the subject as a dispute. Seek areas of agreement and concede points. Avoid trying to persuade readers overtly; people don't like to be persuaded, because it threatens their ego. Instead, suggest that there are new facts that need to be considered. People are more likely to change their minds when they realize this.
Your reader was instrumental in creating the policy or procedure that you are arguing is ineffective	In discussing the present system's shortcomings, be especially careful if you risk offending one of your readers. When you address such an audience, don't write, "The present system for logging customer orders is completely ineffective." Instead, write, "While the present system has worked well for many years, new developments in electronic processing of orders might enable us to improve logging speed and reduce errors substantially."

For tips on critiquing a team member's draft diplomatically, see Ch. 3, "Critiquing a Colleague's Work."

If your document has several readers, you must decide whether to fill out only one sheet (for your most important reader) or several sheets. One technique is to fill out sheets for one or two of your most important readers and one for each major category of other readers. For instance, you could fill out one sheet for your primary reader, Harry Becker; one for managers in other areas of your company; and one for readers from outside your company.

When do you fill out an audience profile sheet? Although some writers like to do so at the start of the process as a way to prompt themselves to consider audience characteristics, others prefer to do so at the end of the process as a way to help themselves summarize what they have learned about their audience. Of course, you can start to fill out the sheet before you begin and then complete it or revise it at the end.

Techniques for Learning About Your Audience

To learn about your audience, you figure out what you do and do not already know, interview people, read about them, and read documents they have written. Of course, you cannot perform extensive research about every possible reader of every document you write, but you should learn what you can about your most important readers of your most important documents.

DETERMINING WHAT YOU ALREADY KNOW ABOUT YOUR AUDIENCE

Start by asking yourself what you already know about your most important readers: their demographics (such as age, education, and job responsibilities); their expectations and attitudes toward you and the subject; and the ways they will use your document. Then list the important factors you *don't* know. That is where you will concentrate your energies. An audience profile sheet can help you identify gaps in your knowledge about your readers.

INTERVIEWING PEOPLE

For your most important readers, make a list of people who you think have known them and their work the longest or who are closest to them on the job. These people might include those who joined the organization at about the same time your readers did; people who work in the same department as your readers; and people at other organizations who have collaborated with your readers.

For a discussion of interviewing, see Ch. 5, "Interviews."

Prepare a few interview questions that are likely to elicit information about your readers and their preferences and needs. For instance, you are writing a proposal for a new project at work. You want to present return-on-investment calculations to show how long it will take the company to recoup what it invested, but you're not sure how much detail to present because you don't know whether an important primary reader has a background in this aspect of accounting. Several of this reader's colleagues will know. Interview them in person, on the phone, or by email.

READING ABOUT YOUR AUDIENCE ONLINE

If you are writing for people in your own organization, start your research there. If your primary reader is a high-level manager or executive, search the organization's website or internal social network. Sections such as "About Us," "About the Company," and "Information for Investors" often contain a wealth of biographical information, as well as links to other sources.

In addition, use a search engine to look for information on the internet. You are likely to find newspaper and magazine articles, industry directories, websites, and blog posts about your audience.

SEARCHING SOCIAL MEDIA FOR DOCUMENTS YOUR AUDIENCE HAS WRITTEN

Documents your readers have written can tell you a lot about what they like to see with respect to design, level of detail, organization and development, style, and vocabulary. If your primary audience consists of those within your organization, start searching for documents they've produced within the company. Then broaden the search to the internet.

Although some of your readers might have written books or articles, many or even most of them might be active users of social media, such as Facebook and Twitter. Pay particular attention to LinkedIn, a networking site for professionals. LinkedIn profiles are particularly useful because they include a person's current and former positions and education, as well as recommendations from other professionals.

For an employee's LinkedIn profile, see Chapter 10.

ANALYZING SOCIAL-MEDIA DATA

Private companies and public agencies alike analyze social media to better understand their audiences. Private companies use these data primarily to determine who their customers are, how they feel about various marketing messages, and how these messages influence their buying behavior. Public agencies use these data to help them refine their own messages.

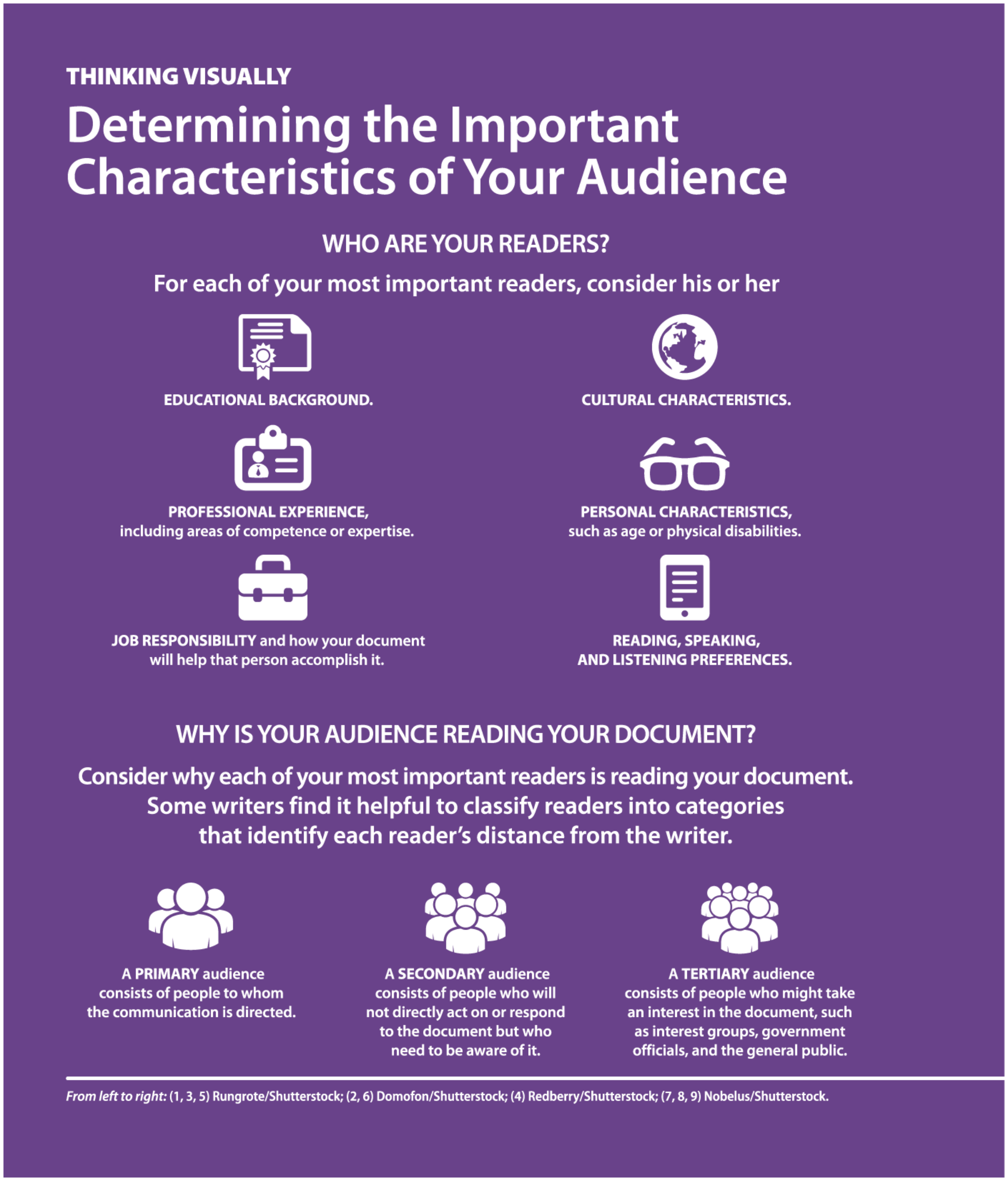
For instance, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), a U.S. federal agency, analyzes social media to improve the quality and effectiveness of its public health information. The agency starts by classifying people into various categories by age (such as tweens, teens, baby boomers) and determining which media each group uses most. On the basis of these data, the agency designs and implements health campaigns on such topics as cancer screening, HIV/AIDS prevention and treatment, vaccines, and smoking cessation.

Then the CDC monitors social media to determine how many people are seeing the agency's information, how they are engaging with the information (whether they share the information or follow links to other sites), and whether the information is changing their behavior (Centers for Disease Control, 2013). Among the data the CDC analyzes each month are the following:

- the number of visitors to each of the CDC web pages
- the most popular keywords searched on CDC pages as well as on selected other sites and popular search engines such as Google
- the numbers of Facebook fans and Twitter followers

- the number of click-throughs to CDC web pages from Facebook and Twitter

On the basis of these data, the CDC adjusts its social-media campaigns to use its resources most effectively.



THINKING VISUALLY

Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience

WHO ARE YOUR READERS?

For each of your most important readers, consider his or her

EDUCATIONAL BACKGROUND.

CULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS.

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE, including areas of competence or expertise.

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS, such as age or physical disabilities.

JOB RESPONSIBILITY and how your document will help that person accomplish it.

READING, SPEAKING, AND LISTENING PREFERENCES.

WHY IS YOUR AUDIENCE READING YOUR DOCUMENT?

Consider why each of your most important readers is reading your document. Some writers find it helpful to classify readers into categories that identify each reader's distance from the writer.

A **PRIMARY** audience consists of people to whom the communication is directed.

A **SECONDARY** audience consists of people who will not directly act on or respond to the document but who need to be aware of it.

A **TERTIARY** audience consists of people who might take an interest in the document, such as interest groups, government officials, and the general public.

From left to right: (1, 3, 5) Rungrote/Shutterstock; (2, 6) Domofon/Shutterstock; (4) Redberry/Shutterstock; (7, 8, 9) Nobelus/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

WHAT ARE YOUR READERS' ATTITUDES AND EXPECTATIONS?

In thinking about the attitudes and expectations of each of your most important readers, consider these three factors:

Your reader's attitude toward **YOU.** If a reader's animosity toward you is irrational or unrelated to the current project, try discussing other, less volatile projects or some shared interest.

Your reader's attitude toward the **SUBJECT.** If possible, gauge your primary readers' attitudes beforehand.

Your reader's expectations about the **DOCUMENT,** including scope, organizational pattern, amount of detail, and application.

HOW WILL YOUR READERS USE YOUR DOCUMENT?

In thinking about how your reader will use your document, consider the following four factors:

The **WAY** your reader will read your document. Will he or she file it, skim it, study it carefully, modify it, try to implement its recommendations, use it to perform a test, or use it as a source document?

The **PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT** in which your reader will read your document, including light levels and exposure to the elements.

Your reader's **READING SKILL.** Consider whether you should be writing at all and at what level, or whether you should use another medium, such as a video, an oral presentation, or a podcast.

The **DIGITAL PLATFORMS** on which your reader will read your document. How can you design the document so that it is easy to access—easy to get to, to see, to navigate, and to use—in these environments?

From left to right: (1) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (2) Colorlife/Shutterstock, (cover inset) Aleutie/Shutterstock; (3) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (4) Eman Design/Shutterstock; (5) vasabii/Shutterstock; (6) Vector.design/Shutterstock; (7) Domofon/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Communicating Across Cultures

Our society and our workforce are becoming increasingly diverse, both culturally and linguistically, and businesses are exporting more goods and services. As a result, professionals often communicate with individuals from different cultural backgrounds, many of whom are nonnative speakers of English, both in the United States and abroad, and with speakers of other languages who read texts translated from English into their own languages.

The economy of the United States depends on international trade. In 2015, the United States exported over $3.1 trillion of goods and services (U.S. Census Bureau, 2019). In addition, the population of the United States itself is truly multicultural. Each year, the United States admits about a million immigrants (U.S. Department of Homeland Security, 2019).

Effective communication requires an understanding of culture: the beliefs, attitudes, and values that motivate people's behavior.

UNDERSTANDING THE CULTURAL VARIABLES "ON THE SURFACE"

Communicating effectively with people from another culture requires understanding a number of cultural variables that lie on the surface. You need to know, first, what language or languages to use. You also need to be aware of political, social, religious, and economic factors that can affect how readers will interpret your documents. Understanding these factors is not an exact science, but it does require that you learn as much as you can about the culture of those you are addressing.

A brief example: Microsoft's search engine had trouble catching on in China, in part because of its name — *Bing* — which means "sickness" in Chinese (Yan, 2015).

In *International Technical Communication*, Nancy L. Hoft (1995) describes seven major categories of cultural variables that lie on the surface:

- **Political.** This category relates to trade issues and legal issues (for example, some countries forbid imports of certain foods or chemicals) and laws about intellectual property, product safety, and liability.
- **Economic.** A country's level of economic development is a critical factor. In many developing countries, most people cannot afford devices for accessing the internet.
- **Social.** This category covers many issues, including gender roles and business customs. In most Western cultures, women play a much greater role in the workplace than they do in many Middle Eastern and Asian cultures. Business customs — including forms of greeting, business dress, and gift giving — vary from culture to culture.

- **Religious.** Religious differences can affect diet, attitudes toward individual colors, styles of dress, holidays, and hours of business.
- **Educational.** In the United States, 40 million people are only marginally literate. In other countries, the rate can be much higher or much lower. In some cultures, classroom learning with a teacher is considered the most acceptable way to study; in others, people tend to study on their own.
- **Technological.** If you sell high-tech products, you need to know whether your readers have the hardware, the software, and the technological infrastructure to use them.
- **Linguistic.** In some countries, English is taught to all children starting in grade school; in other countries, English is seen as a threat to the national language. In many languages, the orientation of text on a page and in a book is not from left to right.

In addition to these basic differences, you need to understand dozens of other factors. For instance, the United States is the only major country that has not adopted the metric system. Whereas Americans use periods to separate whole numbers from decimals, and commas to separate thousands from hundreds, much of the rest of the world reverses this usage.

UNITED STATES	3,425.6
EUROPE	3.425,6

Also, in the United States, the format for writing out and abbreviating dates is different from that of most other cultures:

UNITED STATES	March 2, 2020	3/2/20
EUROPE	2 March 2020	2/3/20
JAPAN	2020 March 2	20/3/2

These cultural variables are important in obvious ways: for example, you can't send an electronic file to a person who doesn't have access to the internet. However, there is another set of cultural characteristics — those beneath the surface — that you also need to understand.

UNDERSTANDING THE CULTURAL VARIABLES "BENEATH THE SURFACE"

Scholars of multicultural communication have identified cultural variables that are less obvious than those discussed in the previous section but just as important. *Culture and the Shape of Rhetoric (1999)* explains five key variables and how they are reflected in technical communication.

- **Focus on individuals or groups.** Some cultures, especially in the West, value individuals more than groups. The typical Western employee doesn't see his or her identity as being defined by the organization for which he or she works. Other cultures, particularly those in Asia, value groups more than individuals. The typical employee in such cultures sees himself or herself more as a representative of the organization than as an individual who happens to work there.

  Communication in individualistic cultures focuses on the writer's and reader's needs rather than on those of their organizations. Writers use the pronoun *I* rather than *we.* Letters are addressed to the principal reader and signed by the writer.

  Communication in group-oriented cultures focuses on the organization's needs by emphasizing the benefits to be gained through a cooperative relationship between organizations. Writers emphasize the relationship between the writer and the reader rather than the specific technical details of the message. Writers use *we* rather than *I.* They might use their organization's name, not their own, in the complimentary close.

- **Distance between business life and private life.** In some cultures, especially in the West, many people separate their business lives from their private lives. When the workday ends, they are free to go home and spend their time as they wish. Although many employees are increasingly expected to be available by email or phone outside official working hours, those in the West still usually think of themselves primarily as individuals rather than as part of an organizational body. In other cultures, particularly in Asia, people see a much smaller distance between their business lives and their private lives. Even after the day ends, they still see themselves as employees of their organization.

  Cultures that value individualism tend to see a great distance between business and personal lives. In these cultures, communication focuses on technical details, with relatively little reference to personal information about the writer or the reader.

Cultures that are group oriented tend to see a smaller distance between business life and private life. In these cultures, communication contains much more personal information — about the reader's family and health — and more information about general topics — for example, the weather and the seasons. The goal is to build a formal relationship between the two organizations. Both the writer and the reader are, in effect, on call after business hours and are likely to transact business during long social activities such as elaborate dinners or golf games.

- **Distance between ranks.** In some cultures, the distance in power and authority between workers within an organization is small. This small distance is reflected in a close working relationship between supervisors and their subordinates. In other cultures, the distance in power and authority between workers within an organization is great. Supervisors do not consult with their subordinates. Subordinates use formal names and titles — "Mr. Smith," "Dr. Perez" — when addressing people of higher rank. Individualistic cultures that separate business and private lives tend to have a smaller distance between ranks. In these cultures, communication is generally less formal. Informal documents (emails and memos) are appropriate, and writers often sign their documents with their first names only. Keep in mind, however, that many people in these cultures resent what they view as inappropriate informality, such as letters or emails addressed "Dear Jim" when they have never met the writer.

  In cultures with a great distance between ranks, communication is generally formal. Writers tend to use their full professional titles and to prefer formal documents (such as letters) to informal ones (such as memos and emails). Writers make sure their documents are addressed to the appropriate person and contain the formal design elements (such as title pages and letters of transmittal) that signal their respect for their readers.

- **Need for details to be spelled out.** Some cultures value full, complete communication. A written text must be comprehensive, containing all the information a reader needs to understand it. These cultures are called *low-context cultures.* Other cultures value documents in which some of the details are merely implied. This implicit information is communicated through other forms of communication that draw on the personal relationship between the reader and the writer, as well as social and business norms of the culture. These cultures are called *high-context cultures.* Low-context cultures tend to be individualistic; high-context cultures tend to be group oriented. In low-context cultures, writers spell out all the details. Documents are like contracts in that they explain procedures in great detail and provide specific information that indicates the rights and responsibilities of both the writer and the readers. In high-context cultures, writers tend to omit information that they consider obvious because they don't want to insult the reader. For example, a manual written for people in a high-context culture might not explain why a cell-phone battery needs to be charged because everyone already knows why.
- **Attitudes toward uncertainty.** In some cultures, people are comfortable with uncertainty. They communicate less formally

and rely less on written policies. In many cases, they rely more on a clear set of guiding principles, as communicated in a code of conduct or a mission statement. In other cultures, people are uncomfortable with uncertainty. Businesses are structured formally, and employees use explicit procedures for communicating.

In cultures that tolerate uncertainty, written communication tends to be less detailed. Oral communication is used to convey more of the information that is vital to the relationship between the writer and the readers. In cultures that value certainty, communication tends to be detailed. Policies are lengthy and specific, and forms are used extensively. Roles are firmly defined, and there is a wide distance between ranks.

As you consider this set of cultural variables, keep four points in mind:

- **Each variable represents a spectrum of attitudes.** Terms such as *high-context* and *low-context,* for instance, represent the opposite end points on a scale. Most cultures occupy a middle ground.
- **The variables do not line up in a clear pattern.** Although the variables sometimes correlate — for example, low-context cultures tend to be individualistic — in any one culture, the variables do not form a consistent pattern. For example, the dominant culture in the United States is highly individualistic rather than group oriented but only about midway along the scale in terms of tolerance of uncertainty.
- **Different organizations within the same culture can vary greatly.** For example, one software company in Germany might

have a management style that does not tolerate uncertainty, whereas another software company in that country might tolerate a lot of uncertainty.
- **An organization's cultural attitudes are fluid, not static.** How an organization operates is determined not only by the dominant culture but also by its own people. As new people join an organization, its culture changes. The IBM of 2020 is not the IBM of 2000.

For you as a communicator, this set of variables therefore offers no answers. Instead, it offers a set of questions. You cannot know in advance the attitudes of the people in an organization. You have to interact with them before you can reach even tentative conclusions. The value of being aware of the variables is that they can help you study the communication from people in that organization and become more aware of underlying values that affect how they will interpret your documents.

CONSIDERING CULTURAL VARIABLES AS YOU WRITE

The challenge of communicating effectively with a person from another culture is that you are communicating with a person, not a culture. You cannot be sure which cultures have influenced that person. For example, a 50-year-old Japanese-born manager at the computer manufacturer Fujitsu in Japan has been shaped by the Japanese culture, but he also has been influenced by the culture of his company and of the Japanese computer industry in general. Because he works on an export product, it is also likely that he has traveled extensively outside of Japan and has absorbed influences from other cultures.

A further complication is that when you communicate with a person from another culture, to that person *you* are from another culture, and you cannot know how much that person is trying to accommodate your cultural patterns. As writing scholar Arthur H. Bell (1992) points out, the communication between the two of you is carried out in a third, hybrid culture. When you write to a large audience, the complications increase. A group of managers at Fujitsu represents a far more complex mix of cultural influences than one manager at Fujitsu.

No brief discussion of cultural variables can answer questions about how to write for a particular multicultural audience. You need to study your readers' culture and, as you plan your document, seek assistance from someone native to the culture who can help you avoid blunders that might confuse or offend your readers.

Start by reading some of the basic guides to communicating with people from cultures other than your own, and then study guides to the particular culture you are investigating. In addition, numerous sites on the internet provide useful guidelines that can help you write to people from another culture. If possible, study documents written by people in your audience. If you don't have access to these, try to locate documents written in English by people from the culture you are interested in.

GUIDELINES Writing for Readers from Other Cultures

The following suggestions will help you communicate more effectively with readers from a variety of cultures who may speak a variety of languages.

> *For more about voice, see Ch. 6.*

> *For more about graphics, see Ch. 8.*

- ▶ **Limit your vocabulary.** Every word should have only one meaning and you should avoid complex sentence constructions.
- ▶ **Keep sentences short.** There is no magic number, but try for an average sentence length of no more than 20 words.
- ▶ **Define abbreviations and acronyms in a glossary.** Don't assume that your readers know what a particular acronym means; these will naturally vary across languages.
- ▶ **Avoid jargon unless you know your readers are familiar with it.** For instance, your readers might not know what malware is.
- ▶ **Avoid idioms and slang. These terms are culture-specific.** If you tell readers that your company plans to put on a "full-court press," most likely they will be confused.
- ▶ **Use the active voice whenever possible.** The active voice is easier for nonnative speakers to understand than the passive voice.
- ▶ **Be careful with graphics.** The shopping cart icon on e-commerce websites does not translate well, because outside of the United States people are used to a bag or basket icon.
- ▶ **Be sure someone from the target culture reviews your document.** Even if you have had help in planning the document, have it reviewed before you publish and distribute it.

USING GRAPHICS AND DESIGN FOR MULTICULTURAL READERS

One of the challenges of writing to people from another culture is that they are likely to be nonnative speakers. One way to overcome the language barrier is to use effective graphics and appropriate document design.

For more about design for multicultural readers, see Ch. 7. For more about graphics for international readers, see Ch. 8.

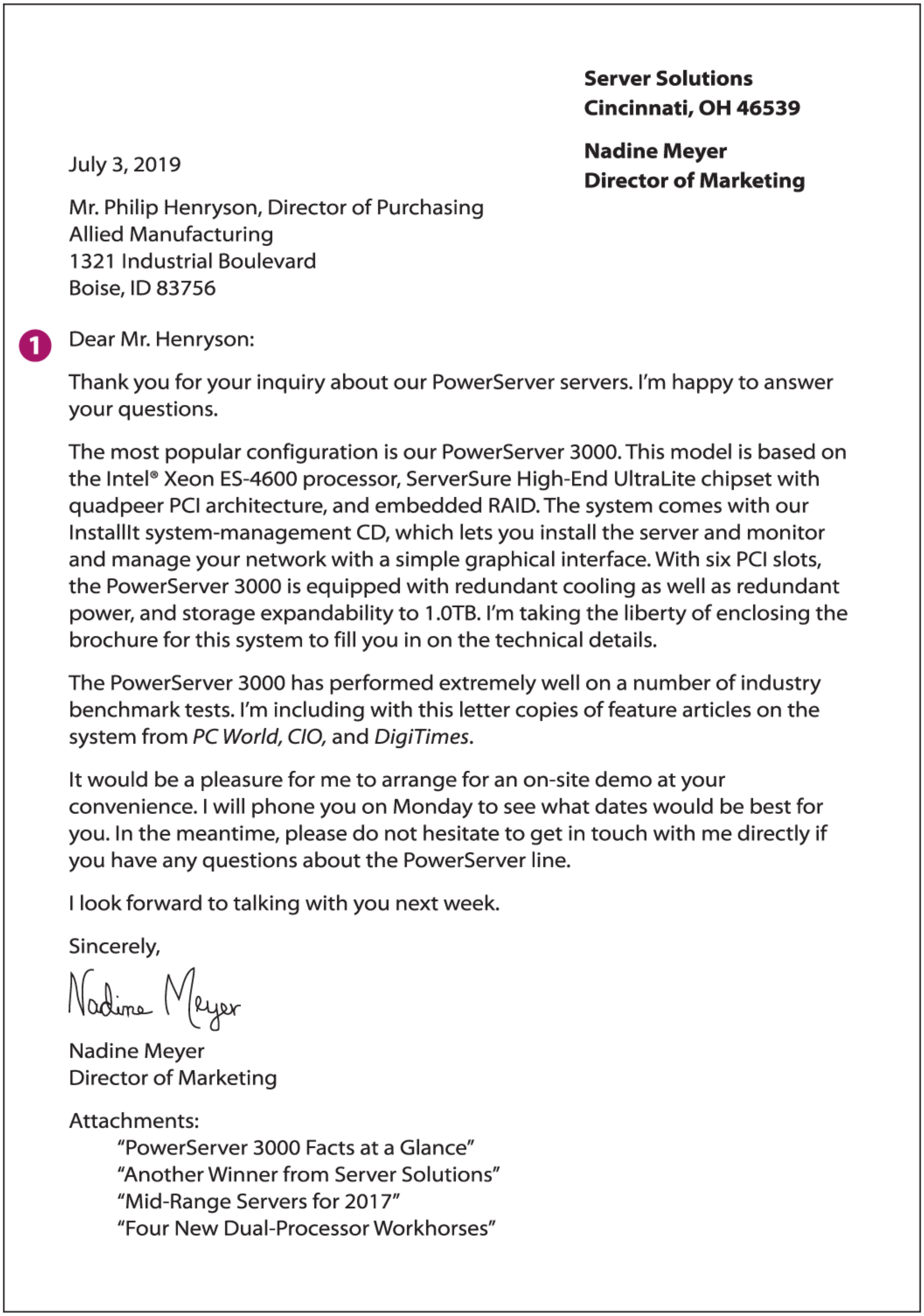
However, the most appropriate graphics and design can differ from culture to culture. Business letters written in Australia use a different size paper and a different format than those in the United States. A series of graphics arranged left to right could confuse readers from the Middle East, who read from right to left. For this reason, you should study samples of documents written by people from the culture you are addressing to learn the important differences.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Examining Cultural Variables in a Business Letter

These two versions of the same business letter were written by a sales manager for an American computer company. The first letter was addressed to a potential customer in the United States; the second version was addressed to a potential customer in Japan. The questions in the margin ask you to think about how cultural variables affect the nature of the evidence, the structure of the letters, and their tone (see pp. 62–67).

1. How does the difference in the salutations (the “Dear…” part of the letter) reflect a cultural difference?
2. Does the first paragraph of the second letter have any function beyond delaying the discussion of business?
3. What is the point of telling Mr. Kirisawa about his own company? How does this paragraph help the writer introduce her own company’s products?
4. To a reader from the United States, the third paragraph of the second letter would probably seem thin. What aspect of Japanese culture makes it effective in the context of this letter?
5. Why doesn’t the writer make a more explicit sales pitch at the end of the second letter?



Server Solutions
Cincinnati, OH 46539

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

July 3, 2019

Mr. Philip Henryson, Director of Purchasing
Allied Manufacturing
1321 Industrial Boulevard
Boise, ID 83756

Dear Mr. Henryson:

Thank you for your inquiry about our PowerServer servers. I'm happy to answer your questions.

The most popular configuration is our PowerServer 3000. This model is based on the Intel® Xeon ES-4600 processor, ServerSure High-End UltraLite chipset with quadpeer PCI architecture, and embedded RAID. The system comes with our InstallIt system-management CD, which lets you install the server and monitor and manage your network with a simple graphical interface. With six PCI slots, the PowerServer 3000 is equipped with redundant cooling as well as redundant power, and storage expandability to 1.0TB. I'm taking the liberty of enclosing the brochure for this system to fill you in on the technical details.

The PowerServer 3000 has performed extremely well on a number of industry benchmark tests. I'm including with this letter copies of feature articles on the system from *PC World, CIO,* and *DigiTimes*.

It would be a pleasure for me to arrange for an on-site demo at your convenience. I will phone you on Monday to see what dates would be best for you. In the meantime, please do not hesitate to get in touch with me directly if you have any questions about the PowerServer line.

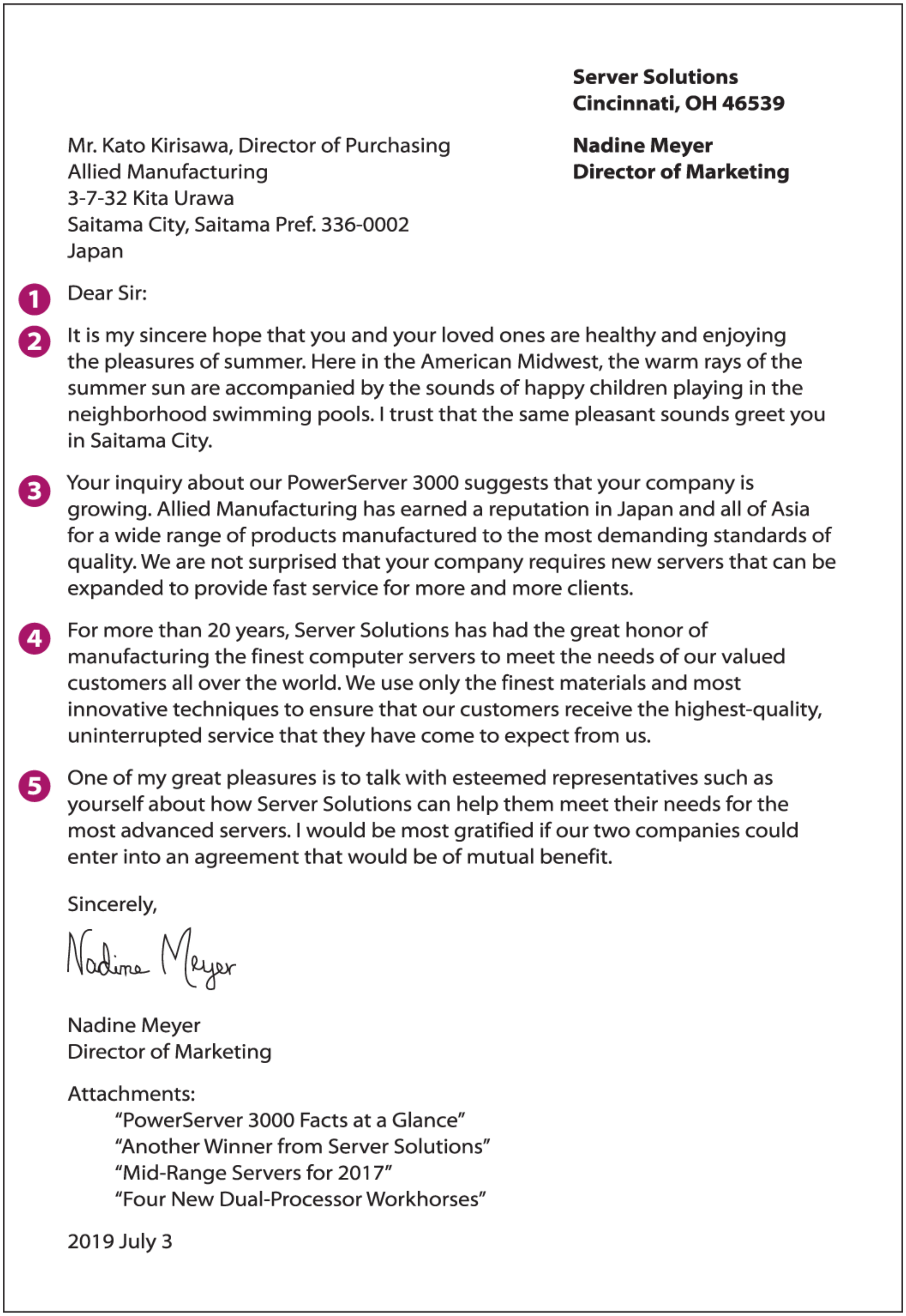
I look forward to talking with you next week.

Sincerely,

Nadine Meyer

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

Attachments:
"PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance"
"Another Winner from Server Solutions"
"Mid-Range Servers for 2017"
"Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses"



Server Solutions
Cincinnati, OH 46539

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

Mr. Kato Kirisawa, Director of Purchasing
Allied Manufacturing
3-7-32 Kita Urawa
Saitama City, Saitama Pref. 336-0002
Japan

① Dear Sir:

② It is my sincere hope that you and your loved ones are healthy and enjoying the pleasures of summer. Here in the American Midwest, the warm rays of the summer sun are accompanied by the sounds of happy children playing in the neighborhood swimming pools. I trust that the same pleasant sounds greet you in Saitama City.

③ Your inquiry about our PowerServer 3000 suggests that your company is growing. Allied Manufacturing has earned a reputation in Japan and all of Asia for a wide range of products manufactured to the most demanding standards of quality. We are not surprised that your company requires new servers that can be expanded to provide fast service for more and more clients.

④ For more than 20 years, Server Solutions has had the great honor of manufacturing the finest computer servers to meet the needs of our valued customers all over the world. We use only the finest materials and most innovative techniques to ensure that our customers receive the highest-quality, uninterrupted service that they have come to expect from us.

⑤ One of my great pleasures is to talk with esteemed representatives such as yourself about how Server Solutions can help them meet their needs for the most advanced servers. I would be most gratified if our two companies could enter into an agreement that would be of mutual benefit.

Sincerely,

Nadine Meyer

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

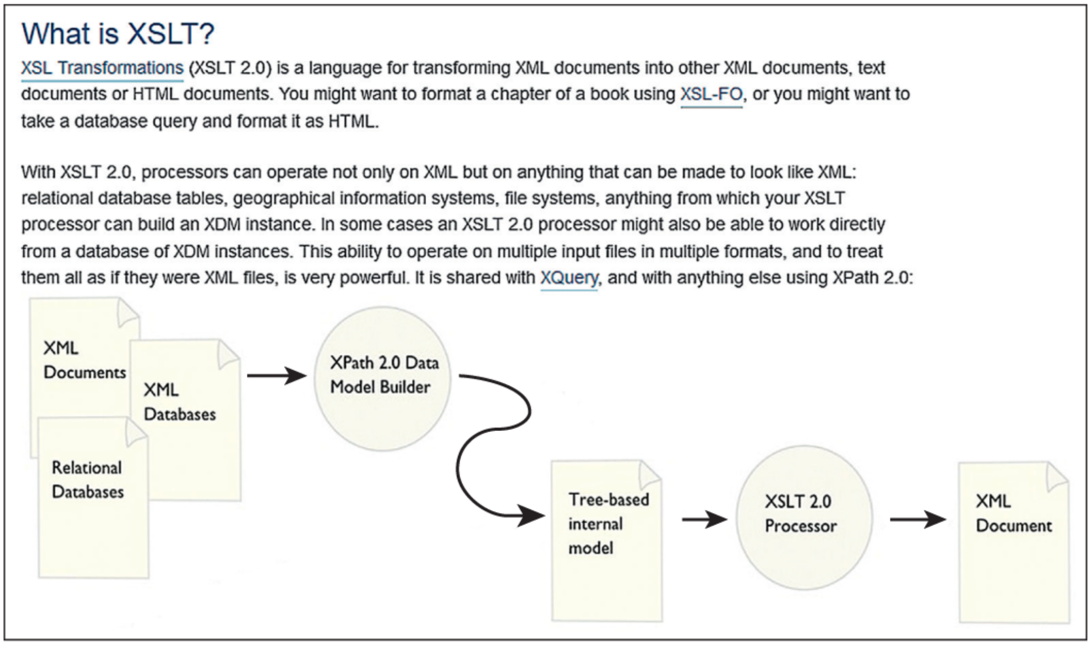
Attachments:
- "PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance"
- "Another Winner from Server Solutions"
- "Mid-Range Servers for 2017"
- "Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses"

2019 July 3

Applying What You Have Learned About Your Audience

You want to use what you know about your audience to tailor your communication to their needs and preferences. Obviously, if your most important reader does not understand the details of DRAM technology, you cannot use the concepts, vocabulary, and types of graphics used in that field. If she uses one-page summaries at the beginning of her documents, decide whether they will work for your document. If your primary reader's paragraphs always start with clear topic sentences, yours should, too.

The samples of technical communication shown in Figure 4.2 illustrate some of the ways writers have applied what they know about their audiences in text and graphics.



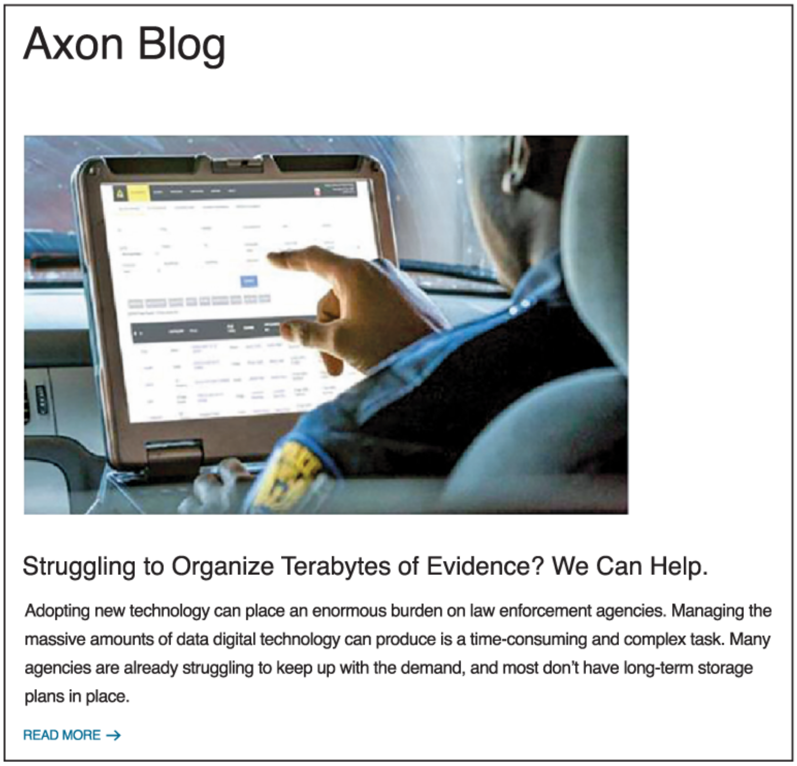
What is XSLT?

XSL Transformations (XSLT 2.0) is a language for transforming XML documents into other XML documents, text documents or HTML documents. You might want to format a chapter of a book using XSL-FO, or you might want to take a database query and format it as HTML.

With XSLT 2.0, processors can operate not only on XML but on anything that can be made to look like XML: relational database tables, geographical information systems, file systems, anything from which your XSLT processor can build an XDM instance. In some cases an XSLT 2.0 processor might also be able to work directly from a database of XDM instances. This ability to operate on multiple input files in multiple formats, and to treat them all as if they were XML files, is very powerful. It is shared with XQuery, and with anything else using XPath 2.0:

a. Document presenting technical information to an expert audience

a: Information from World Wide Web Consortium, 2015: www.w3.org/standards/xml/transformation.html.



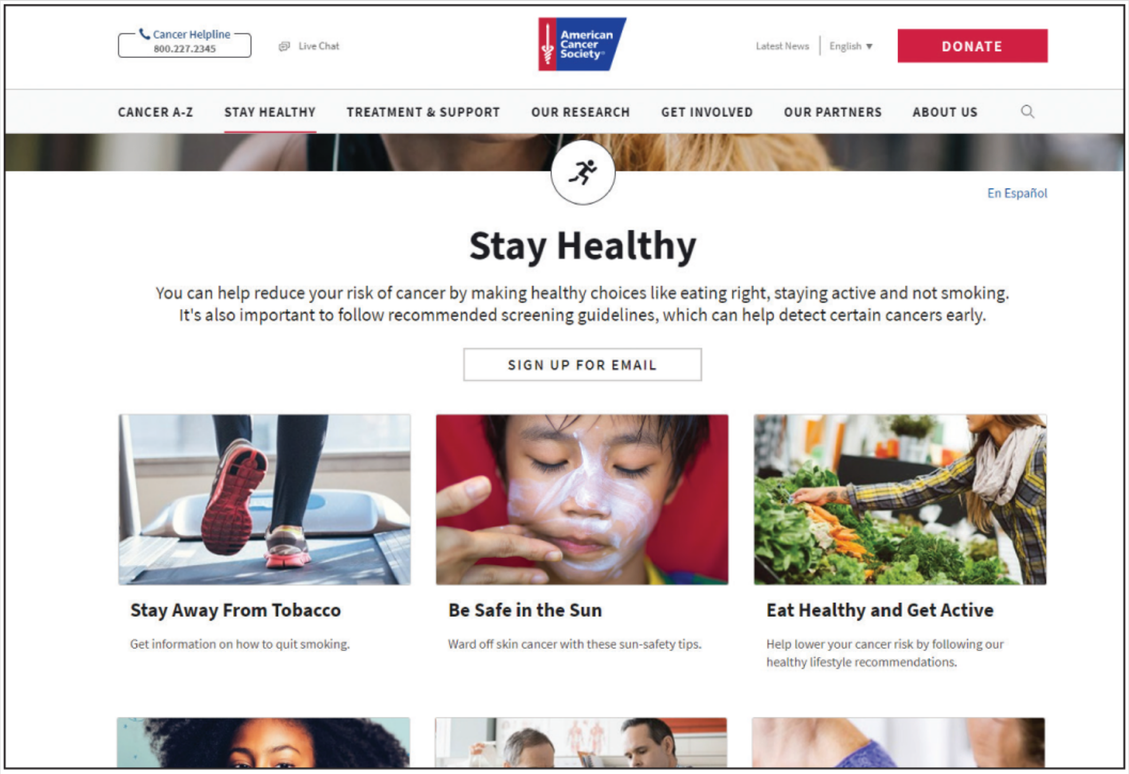
Axon Blog

Struggling to Organize Terabytes of Evidence? We Can Help.

Adopting new technology can place an enormous burden on law enforcement agencies. Managing the massive amounts of data digital technology can produce is a time-consuming and complex task. Many agencies are already struggling to keep up with the demand, and most don't have long-term storage plans in place.

b. Document motivating decision makers to learn about a product

Information from Axon, 2016: www.axon.io/blog.


Cancer Helpline
800.227.2345
Live Chat
American Cancer Society
Latest News
English ▾
DONATE
CANCER A-Z
STAY HEALTHY
TREATMENT & SUPPORT
OUR RESEARCH
GET INVOLVED
OUR PARTNERS
ABOUT US
En Español
SIGN UP FOR EMAIL

Stay Healthy

You can help reduce your risk of cancer by making healthy choices like eating right, staying active and not smoking. It's also important to follow recommended screening guidelines, which can help detect certain cancers early.

Stay Away From Tobacco

Get information on how to quit smoking.

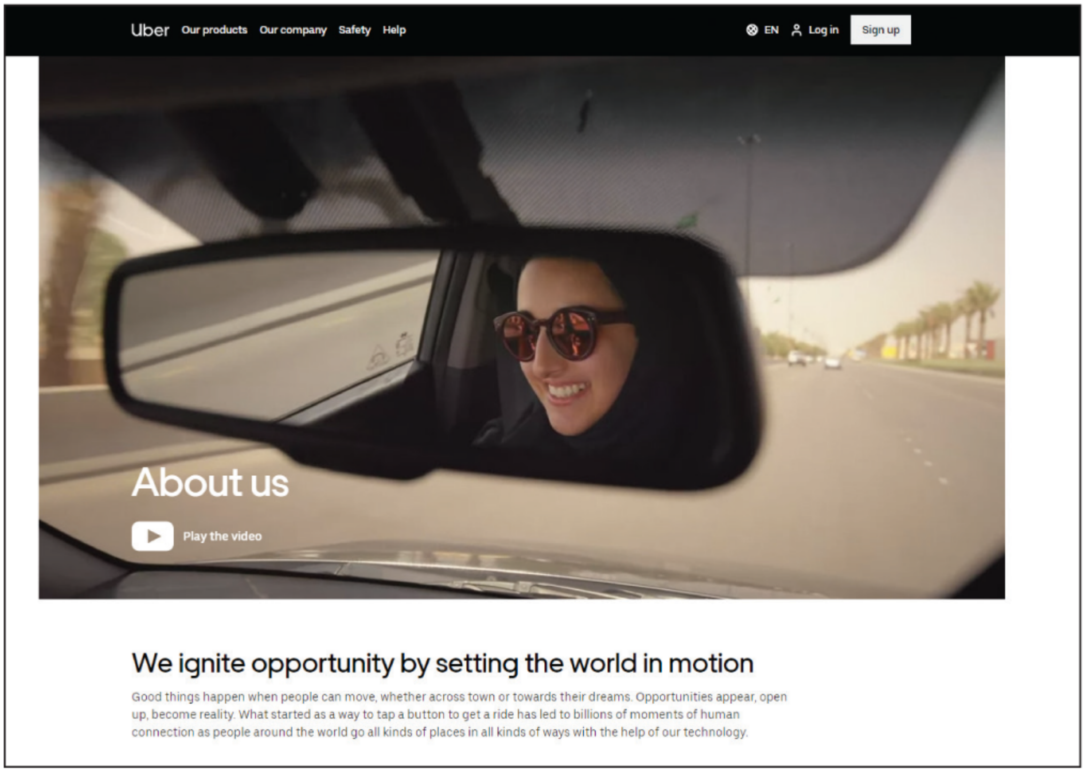
Be Safe in the Sun

Ward off skin cancer with these sun-safety tips.

Eat Healthy and Get Active

Help lower your cancer risk by following our healthy lifestyle recommendations.

c. Document presenting educational resources to a general audience


Uber
Our products
Our company
Safety
Help
EN
Log in
Sign up
About us
Play the video

We ignite opportunity by setting the world in motion

Good things happen when people can move, whether across town or towards their dreams. Opportunities appear, open up, become reality. What started as a way to tap a button to get a ride has led to billions of moments of human connection as people around the world go all kinds of places in all kinds of ways with the help of our technology.

d. Document reinforcing a brand

FIGURE 4.2 Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers' Needs and Interests

a. This excerpt from a technical description of a web coding language appears on the site of the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C).

Because the readers are coding experts, the writers use highly technical language and refer to advanced topics. Note, however, that the nontechnical information is written simply and directly.

Notice that the graphic is based on a simple flowchart and basic icons. Why? Because the readers are interested only in understanding the logic of the process illustrated in the flowchart.

b. This blog post, from Axon, focuses on a problem facing law enforcement agencies: the need to store large amounts of digital information efficiently. The post is addressed to law enforcement officers who need to access information quickly and remotely.

The writer aims to connect with the reader by acknowledging the "enormous burden" police officers face trying to keep up with new digital technologies and by pointing out that many agencies find themselves in a similar situation. The headline offers to help those who are struggling, and the photograph suggests that help will come in the form of a program that keeps terabytes of data organized and readily available at the tap of a finger. Although the solution isn't given on this page, the reader is led to believe that details can be found by clicking the "Read More" link.

c. This excerpt from the Stay Healthy section of the American Cancer Society website shows several techniques for providing information to a general audience.

The page begins with brief text intended to motivate readers to find out more about how to stay healthy. The tone throughout — from the words to the colorful images designed to make the links more appealing — is encouraging: it says, "You can do this."

The page includes a set of six links to detailed information on more specific topics about preventing cancer.

The "Sign Up for Email" button is placed in the center of the page, inviting visitors with a way to stay engaged in cancer prevention even after they leave the site.

Notice that the writers use simple, direct language, as well as the second person (*you*), to maintain an informal tone.

d. The online transportation network company Uber faces opposition from some who believe that it is unsafe and illegal for drivers to provide what they call “pirate” taxi services without a special license. This page from the Uber website is part of the company’s attempt to project a positive message.

The text emphasizes the less concrete benefits that Uber provides: people can get rides, not just across town, but “towards their dreams.” Connections are forged. Opportunities are created. These are all difficult points to argue with. The smiling faces of Uber drivers (“partners”) and riders in the video that opens this page show the human side of the company. The reader is made to feel like a part of this global mission to connect people across cultures.

ⓘ

ETHICS NOTE

MEETING YOUR READERS’ NEEDS RESPONSIBLY

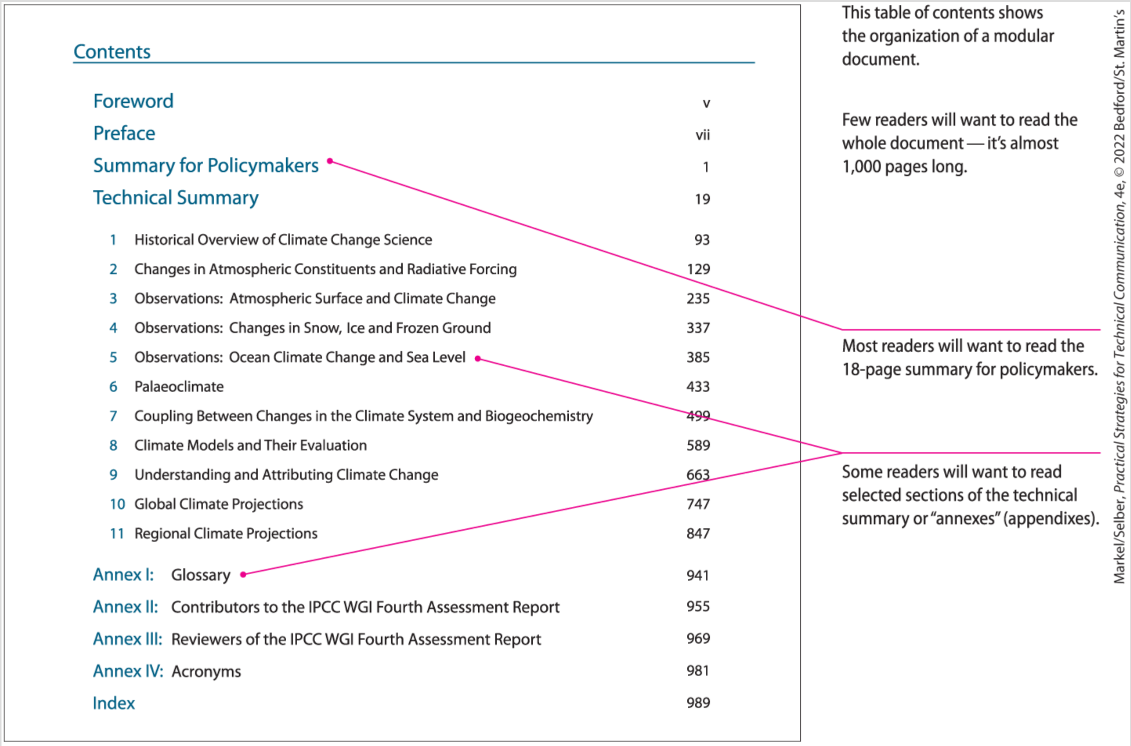
A major theme of this chapter is that effective technical communication meets your readers’ needs. What this theme means is that as you plan, draft, revise, and edit, you should always be thinking of who your readers are, why they will read your document, and how they will read the document. For example, if your readers include many nonnative speakers of English, you will adjust your vocabulary, sentence structure, and other textual elements so that readers can understand your document easily. If your readers will be accessing the document on a mobile device, you will ensure that the design is optimized for their screen.

Meeting your readers’ needs does *not* mean writing a misleading or inaccurate document. If your readers want you to slant the information, omit crucial data, or downplay bad news, they are asking you to act unethically. You should not do so. For more information on ethics, see Chapter 2.

Writing for Multiple Audiences

Many documents are addressed to more than one reader. Often, an audience consists of people with widely different backgrounds, needs, and attitudes.

If you think your document will have a number of readers, consider making it *modular*: break the document up into components addressed to different readers. A modular report might contain an executive summary for managers who don't have the time, knowledge, or desire to read the whole report. It might also contain a full technical discussion for expert readers, an implementation schedule for technicians, and a financial plan in an appendix for budget officers. Figure 4.3 shows the table of contents for a modular report.



Contents

Foreword		v
Preface		vii
Summary for Policymakers		1
Technical Summary		19
1	Historical Overview of Climate Change Science	93
2	Changes in Atmospheric Constituents and Radiative Forcing	129
3	Observations: Atmospheric Surface and Climate Change	235
4	Observations: Changes in Snow, Ice and Frozen Ground	337
5	Observations: Ocean Climate Change and Sea Level	385
6	Palaeoclimate	433
7	Coupling Between Changes in the Climate System and Biogeochemistry	499
8	Climate Models and Their Evaluation	589
9	Understanding and Attributing Climate Change	663
10	Global Climate Projections	747
11	Regional Climate Projections	847
Annex I:	Glossary	941
Annex II:	Contributors to the IPCC WGI Fourth Assessment Report	955
Annex III:	Reviewers of the IPCC WGI Fourth Assessment Report	969
Annex IV:	Acronyms	981
Index		989

This table of contents shows the organization of a modular document.

Few readers will want to read the whole document — it's almost 1,000 pages long.

Most readers will want to read the 18-page summary for policymakers.

Some readers will want to read selected sections of the technical summary or "annexes" (appendixes).

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 4.3 Table of Contents for a Modular Report

Source: Figure 5.8 from Bindoff, N.L., J. Willebrand, V. Artale, A, Cazenave, J. Gregory, S. Gulev, K. Hanawa, C. Le Quéré, S. Levitus, Y. Nojiri, C.K. Shum, L.D. Talley and A. Unnikrishnan, 2007: Observations: Oceanic Climate Change and Sea Level. In: Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.

Determining Your Purpose

Once you have identified and analyzed your audience, it is time to examine your purpose. Ask yourself this: “What do I want this document to accomplish?” When your readers have finished reading what you have written, what do you want them to *know* or *believe*? What do you want them to *do*? Your writing should help your readers understand a concept, adopt a particular belief, or carry out a task.

In defining your purpose, think of a verb that represents it. (Sometimes, of course, you have several purposes.) The following list presents verbs in two categories: those used to communicate information to your readers and those used to convince them to accept a particular point of view.

Communicating Verbs	Convincing Verbs
authorize	analyze
define	argue
describe	assess
explain	conclude
illustrate	determine
inform	evaluate

outline	forecast
present	propose
review	recommend
summarize	request

This classification is not absolute. For example, *review* could in some cases be a *convincing verb* rather than a *communicating verb*: one writer's review of a complicated situation might be very different from another's.

Here are a few examples of how you can use these verbs to clarify the purpose of your document (the verbs are italicized).

- This wiki *presents* the draft of our policies on professional use of social media within the organization.
- This letter *authorizes* the purchase of six new tablets for the Jenkintown facility.
- This report *recommends* that we revise the website as soon as possible.

Sometimes, your real purpose differs from your expressed purpose. For instance, if you want to persuade your reader to lease a new computer system rather than purchase it, you might phrase the purpose this way: *to explain the advantages of leasing over purchasing.*

As mentioned earlier, many readers don’t want to be *persuaded* but are willing to learn new facts or ideas.

In situations like this, stick to the facts. No matter how much you want to convince your readers, it is unacceptable to exaggerate or to omit important information. Trust that the strength and accuracy of your writing will enable you to achieve your intended purpose.

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

Following is a checklist for analyzing your audience and purpose. Remember that your document might be read by one person, several people, a large group, or several groups with various needs.

☐ Did you fill out an audience profile sheet for your primary and secondary audiences?

In learning about your readers, did you

☐ determine what you already know about them?
☐ interview people?
☐ read about your audience online?
☐ search social media for documents your audience has written?
☐ analyze social-media data, if available?

In analyzing your audience, did you consider the following questions about each of your most important readers:

☐ What are your reader's educational background, professional experience, and job responsibility?
☐ What are your reader's cultural and personal characteristics and preferences?
☐ What is your reader's attitude toward you?

☐ What is your reader's attitude toward the subject?
☐ What are your reader's expectations about the document?
☐ How will your reader read your document?
☐ What is your reader's reading skill?
☐ In what physical environment and on what digital platforms will your reader read your document?

In planning to write for an audience from another culture, did you consider the:

☐ economic, social, and religious variables?
☐ educational, technological, and linguistic variables?
☐ focus on individuals or groups?
☐ distance between business life and private life?
☐ distance between ranks?
☐ need for details to be spelled out?
☐ attitudes toward uncertainty?

In writing for a multicultural audience, did you

☐ limit your vocabulary and keep sentences short?
☐ define abbreviations and acronyms in a glossary?
☐ avoid jargon unless you knew that your readers were familiar with it?
☐ avoid idioms and slang?
☐ use the active voice whenever possible?
☐ use graphics carefully?

☐ have the document reviewed by someone from the reader's culture?
☐ consider creating a modular document for multiple audiences?
☐ state your purpose in writing and express it in the form of a verb or verbs?

EXERCISES

1. Choose a 200-word passage from a technical article related to your major course of study and addressed to an expert audience. (You can find a technical article on the web by using Google Scholar or the Directory of Open Access Journals. In addition, many federal government agencies publish technical articles and reports on the web.) Rewrite the passage so that it will be clear and interesting to a general reader. Submit the original passage to your instructor along with your revision.
2. The following passage is an advertisement for a translation service. Revise the passage to make it more appropriate for a multicultural audience. Submit the revision to your instructor.

> If your technical documents have to meet the needs of a global market but you find that most translation houses are swamped by the huge volume, fail to accommodate the various languages you require, or fail to make your deadlines, where do you turn?

> Well, your search is over. Translations, Inc. provides comprehensive translations in addition to full-service documentation publishing.
> We utilize ultrasophisticated translation programs that can translate a page in a blink of an eye. Then our crack linguists comb each document to give it that personalized touch.
> No job too large! No schedule too tight! Give us a call today!

3. Study the website of a large manufacturer of computer products, such as Hewlett-Packard, Acer, Dell, or Lenovo. Identify three different pages that address different audiences and fulfill different purposes. Here is an example:

   > Name of the page: Lenovo Group Fact Page
   > Audience: prospective investors
   > Purpose: persuade the prospective investor to invest in the company
   > Be prepared to share your findings with the class.

4. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form small groups and study two websites that advertise competing products. For instance, you might choose the websites of two car makers, two television shows, or two music producers. Have each person in the group, working *alone*, compare and contrast the two sites according to these three criteria:
   a. the kind of information they provide: hard, technical information or more emotional information
   b. the use of multimedia such as animation, sound, or video
   c. the amount of interactivity they invite — that is, the extent to which you can participate in activities while you visit the site

After each person has separately studied the sites and taken notes about the three criteria, come together as a group. After each person shares his or her findings, discuss the differences as a group. Which aspects of these sites caused the most difference in group members' reactions? Which aspects seemed to elicit the most consistent reactions? In a brief memo to your instructor, describe and analyze how the two sites were perceived by the different members of the group.

CASE 4: Focusing on an Audience's Needs and Interests

You're interning in the marketing department of a cell-phone service provider, and your supervisor has asked you to perform research into a competing provider's products and services for the over-65 market, paying special attention to the ways in which the company successfully appeals to the needs and interests of its audience. She then asks you to prepare an oral presentation about your findings. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to begin your project.

CHAPTER 5

Researching Your Subject

Understanding the Research Process
Choosing Appropriate Research Methods
Conducting Secondary Research
Conducting Primary Research

IN THE WORKPLACE, you will often conduct research to support your technical communication. As a buyer for a clothing retailer, for example, you might need to conduct research to help you determine whether a new line of products would be successful in your store. As a civil engineer, you might need to perform research to determine whether to replace your company's current surveying equipment with 3D-equipped stations. And as a pharmacist, you might need to research whether a prescribed medication might have a harmful interaction with another medication a patient is already taking.

In the workplace, you will conduct research using a variety of methods. You will consult websites, blogs, and discussion forums, and you might listen to podcasts or watch videos. Sometimes you will interview people, and you will likely distribute surveys electronically to acquire information from customers and suppliers. Regardless of which technique you use, your challenge will be to sort the relevant information from the irrelevant, and the accurate from the bogus.

This chapter focuses on conducting primary research and secondary research. *Primary research* involves discovering or creating technical information yourself. *Secondary research* involves finding information that other people have already discovered or created. This chapter presents secondary research first. Why? Because you will probably do secondary research first. To design the experiments or the field research that goes into primary research, you need a thorough understanding of the information that already exists about your subject.

Understanding the Research Process

In most cases, whether you are conducting academic research or workplace research, your main goal is to answer a question.

In *academic research*, your goal is to find information that will help answer a scholarly question: “To what extent do standardized tests contribute to the success of public elementary schools?” or “What effects do violent media have on teenagers?” Academic research questions are often more abstract than applied. That is, they seek information regarding the principles underlying a phenomenon. Academic research usually requires extensive secondary research: reading scholarly literature in academic journals and books. If you do primary research, as scientists do in labs, you do so only after you have conducted extensive secondary research.

In *workplace research*, your goal is to find information to help you answer a practical question: “Should we replace our sales staff’s notebook computers with tablets?” or “What would be the advantages and disadvantages to our company of adopting a European-style privacy policy for customer information?” Workplace research questions frequently focus on improving a situation at a particular organization. These questions call for considerable primary research because they require you to learn about your own organization’s processes and how the people in your organization would respond to your ideas. Sometimes, workplace research questions address the needs of customers or other stakeholders. You will need a thorough understanding of your organization’s external audiences in order to effectively align your products or services with their needs.

Regardless of whether you are conducting academic or workplace research, the basic research methods — primary and secondary research — are fundamentally the same, as is the goal: to find answers to your questions effectively and efficiently. The following Guidelines box provides an overview of planning for the research process, and the Guidelines: Researching a Topic box below reviews important points to consider while conducting research. Remember that you might also need to perform additional research as you draft, revise, edit, and proofread the technical communication that results from your research. Whenever you need additional information to help you make your argument clear and persuasive, do more research.

GUIDELINES Planning for the Research Process

These eight steps can help you develop a research plan.

- ► **Analyze your audience.** Who are your most important readers? What are their personal characteristics, their attitudes toward your subject, their motivations for reading? If you are writing to an expert audience that might be skeptical about your message, you need to do a lot of research to gather the evidence for a convincing argument. See Ch. 4.

- **Analyze your purpose.** Why are you writing? Understanding your purpose helps you understand the types of information readers will expect. Think in terms of what you want your readers to know or believe or do after they finish reading your document. See Ch. 4.
- **Analyze your subject.** What do you already know about your subject? What do you still need to find out? Using techniques such as freewriting and brainstorming, you can determine those aspects of the subject you need to investigate.
- **Work out a schedule and a budget for the project.** When is the document due? Do you have a budget for phone calls, database searches, or travel to libraries or other sites?
- **Determine what information will need to be part of the document.** Draft an outline of the contents, focusing on the kinds of information that readers will expect to see in each part.
- **Determine what information you still need to acquire.** Make a list of the pieces of information you don't yet have.
- **Create questions you need to answer in your document.** Writing the questions in a list forces you to think carefully about your topic. One question suggests another, and soon you have a lengthy list that you need to answer.

GUIDELINES Researching a Topic

Follow these seven guidelines as you gather information to use in your document.

- **Conduct secondary research.** Study journal articles and web-based sources such as discussion forums, blogs, and podcasts.
- **Conduct primary research.** You can answer some of your questions by consulting company records, interviewing experts in your organization, distributing questionnaires, and interviewing other people in the industry. Other questions call for using social media to gather information from your customers, suppliers, and other stakeholders.
- **Evaluate your information.** Once you have your information, you need to evaluate its quality: is it accurate, comprehensive, unbiased, and current?
- **Do more research.** If the information you have acquired doesn't sufficiently answer your questions, do more research. And if you have thought of additional

questions that need to be answered, do more research. When do you stop doing research? You stop only when you think you have enough high-quality information to create your document.

Choosing Appropriate Research Methods

Different research questions require different research methods. Once you have determined the questions you need to answer, think about the various research techniques you could use to answer them.

For example, your research methods for finding out how a current situation is expected to change would differ from your research methods for finding out how well a product might work for your organization. That is, if you want to know how outsourcing will change the computer-support industry over the next 10 to 20 years, you might search for long-range predictions in journal and magazine articles and on reputable websites and blogs. By contrast, if you want to figure out whether a specific scanner will produce the quality of scan that you need and will function reliably, you might do the same kind of secondary research and then observe the operation of the scanner at a vendor's site, schedule product demos at your site, follow up by interviewing others in your company, and perform an experiment in which you try two different scanners and analyze the results.

The following table provides a good starting point for thinking about how to acquire the information you need. You are likely to find that your research plan changes as you conduct your research. You might find, for instance, that you need more than one method to get the information you need or that the one method you thought would work doesn't. Still, having a plan can help you discover the most appropriate methods more quickly and efficiently.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Research Questions and Methods

TYPE OF QUESTION	EXAMPLE OF QUESTION	APPROPRIATE RESEARCH TECHNIQUE
What is the theory behind this process or technique?	How do greenhouse gases contribute to global warming?	**Encyclopedias, handbooks**, and **journal articles** present theory. Also, you can find theoretical information on **websites** from reputable professional organizations and universities. Search using keywords such as "greenhouse gases" and "global warming."
What is the history of this phenomenon?	When and how did engineers first try to extract shale oil?	**Encyclopedias** and **handbooks** present history. Also, you can find historical information on **websites** from reputable professional organizations and universities. Search using keywords such as "shale oil" and "petroleum history."
What techniques are being used now to solve this problem?	How are companies responding to the federal government's new laws on health-insurance portability?	If the topic is recent, you will have better luck using digital resources such as **websites** and **social media** than using traditional print media. Search using keywords and tags such as "health-insurance portability." Your search will be most effective if you use standard terminology in your search, such as "HIPAA" for the health-insurance law.
How is a	What changes	For long-range predictions, you can find information

current situation expected to change?	will outsourcing cause in the computer-support industry over the next 10 to 20 years?	in **journal articles** and **magazine articles** and on reputable **websites**. Experts might write forecasts on **discussion boards** and **blogs**.
What products are available to perform a task or provide a service?	Which vendors are available to upgrade and maintain our company’s website?	For current products and services, search **websites, discussion boards**, and **blogs**. Reputable vendors — manufacturers and service providers — have sites describing their offerings. But be careful not to assume vendors’ claims are accurate. Even the specifications they provide might be exaggerated.
What are the strengths and weaknesses of competing products and services?	Which portable GPS system is the lightest?	Search for benchmarking articles from experts in the field, such as a **journal article** — either in print or on the web — about camping and outfitting that compares the available GPS systems according to reasonable criteria. Also check **discussion boards** for reviews and **blogs** for opinions. If appropriate, do **field research** to answer your questions.
Which product or service do experts recommend?	Which four-wheel-drive SUV offers the best combination of features and quality for our needs?	Experts write **journal articles, magazine articles,** and sometimes **blogs**. Often, they participate in **discussion boards**. Sometimes, you can **interview** them, in person or on the phone, or write **inquiries**.
What are the facts about how we do our jobs at	Do our chemists use gas chromatography in their analyses?	Sometimes, you can **interview** someone, in person or on the phone, to answer a simple question. To determine whether your chemists use a particular technique, start by asking someone in that department.

this company?		
What can we learn about what caused a problem in our organization?	What caused the contamination in the clean room?	You can **interview** personnel who were closest to the problem and **inspect** the scene to determine the cause of the problem.
What do our personnel think we should do about a situation?	Do our quality-control analysts think we need to revise our sampling quotient?	If there are only a few personnel, **interview** them. If there are many, use **questionnaires** to get the information more quickly.
How well would this product or service work in our organization?	Would this scanner produce the quality of scan that we need and interface well with our computer equipment?	Read product reviews on reputable **websites**. Study **discussion boards. Observe** the use of the product or service at a vendor's site. Schedule product **demos** at your site. Follow up by **interviewing** others in your company to get their thinking. Do an **experiment** in which you try two different solutions to a problem, then analyze the results.

If you are doing research for a document that will be read by people from other cultures, think about what kinds of evidence your readers will consider appropriate. In many non-Western cultures, tradition or the authority of the person making the claim can be extremely important, in some cases more important than the kind of scientific evidence that is favored in Western cultures.

And don’t forget that all people pay particular attention to information that comes from their own culture. If you are writing to European readers about telemedicine, for instance, try to find information from European authorities and about European telemedicine. This information will interest your readers and will likely reflect their cultural values and expectations.

Conducting Secondary Research

When you conduct secondary research, you are trying to learn what experts have to say about a topic. Whether an expert is a world-famous scientist revising an earlier computer model about the effects of climate change on agriculture in Europe or the head of your human-resources department checking company records to see how a new health-care law changed the way your company hired part-time workers last year, your goal is the same: to acquire the best available information — the most accurate, most unbiased, most comprehensive, and most current.

Sometimes you will do research in a library, particularly if you need specialized handbooks or access to online subscription services that are not freely available on the internet. Sometimes, you will do your research on the web. As a working professional, you might find much of the information you need in your organization's information center. An *information center* is an organization's library, a resource that collects different kinds of information critical to the organization's operations. Many large organizations have specialists who can answer research questions or who can get articles or other kinds of data for you.

UNDERSTANDING RESEARCH TOOLS

Most technical information — whether it exists in print or electronic form or both — can be tracked down using search tools available in your library, many of which are also available on your personal computer.

Library Catalogs

A library's catalog contains electronic records of its physical holdings — all of the books, journals, reports, and other print documents the library contains, as well as its nonprint materials such as audio and video recordings. To search for an item, consult the catalog's instructions, which explain how to limit your search by characteristics such as types of media, date of publication, and language. The instructions also explain how to use punctuation and words such as *and*, *or*, and *not* to focus your search effectively.

Online Databases

Most libraries subscribe to services, such as LexisNexis, ProQuest, InfoTrac, Gale Virtual Reference, and ERIC, that provide access to large databases of full-text journal articles, conference proceedings, newspapers, and other documents. Some databases have a specific focus within a field or subject matter. Check with a reference librarian — either in person or through a virtual chat — for guidance on the most useful and relevant databases for your needs.

Newspaper and Periodical Indexes

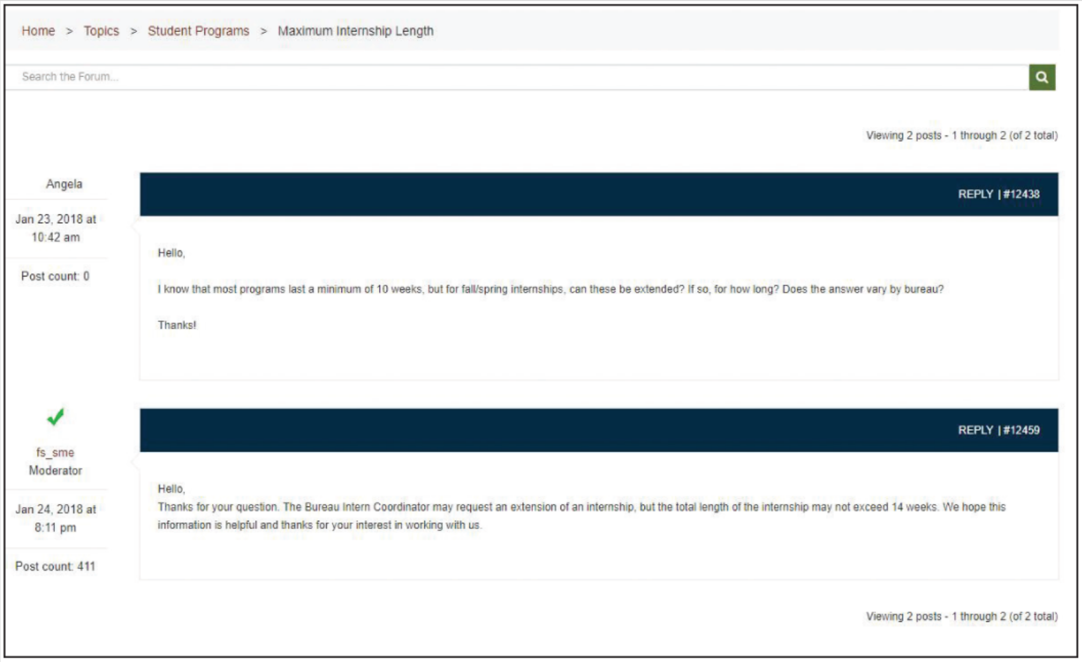
Indexes are similar to databases, but they typically contain only citation information for articles. If you locate an article title that sounds promising, you then need to track down the periodical through other means in order to access the full article. There are periodical indexes in any number of fields. The following brief list will give you a sense of the diversity of titles:

- *Applied Science & Technology Index*
- *Business Source Premier*
- *Engineering Village*
- *National Newspaper Index*
- *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*

Abstract Services

For more about abstracts, see Ch. 13, "Abstract."

Abstract services are like indexes but also provide abstracts: brief technical summaries of the articles. In most cases, reading the abstract will enable you to decide whether to seek out the full article. Some abstract services, such as Chemical Abstracts Service, cover a broad field, but many are specialized rather than general.


Home > Topics > Student Programs > Maximum Internship Length
Search the Forum...
REPLY | #12438
REPLY | #12459

Viewing 2 posts - 1 through 2 (of 2 total)

Angela
Jan 23, 2018 at 10:42 am
Post count: 0

Hello,

I know that most programs last a minimum of 10 weeks, but for fall/spring internships, can these be extended? If so, for how long? Does the answer vary by bureau?

Thanks!

✓
fs_sme
Moderator
Jan 24, 2018 at 8:11 pm
Post count: 411

Hello,
Thanks for your question. The Bureau Intern Coordinator may request an extension of an internship, but the total length of the internship may not exceed 14 weeks. We hope this information is helpful and thanks for your interest in working with us.

Viewing 2 posts - 1 through 2 (of 2 total)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 5.1 A Discussion Board Exchange

If you use a search engine to find this interchange, you are performing secondary research: discovering what has already been written or said about a topic. If you post a question to a discussion forum (or comment on a blog post) and someone responds, you are performing primary research, just as if you were interviewing that person. But don't worry too much about whether you are doing primary or secondary research; worry about whether the information is accurate and useful.

Web Search Engines

If you search the web effectively and efficiently, you can find reference materials such as dictionaries and encyclopedias that don't exist in print, online versions of magazines and journals, conversion calculators and other statistical software, current survey data, government documents, animations, audio and video podcasts, and many other kinds of information.

Reference Works

Reference works include general dictionaries and encyclopedias, biographical dictionaries, almanacs, atlases, and dozens of other research tools. These print and online works are especially useful when you are beginning a research project because they provide an overview of the subject and often list the major works in the field.

TYPES OF SECONDARY RESEARCH SOURCES

Using the search tools described above, you will uncover a wide variety of information from a multitude of source types.

Books

Printed (and electronic) books continue to be useful and popular. Most are edited and published by reputable organizations, some of them with a scientific or academic affiliation. Books provide in-depth background information on a wide range of subjects.

Periodicals: Journals and Magazines

Usually published weekly, monthly, or quarterly, periodicals typically focus on a specific subject area and provide recent findings on a variety of issues. Journals tend to be more scholarly and scientific, and their articles are often reviewed by experts in the field; magazines are intended for a more general audience. Many periodicals are available in both print and digital formats.

Newspapers and Online News Sources

Three of the most important indexed U.S. newspapers are the following:

- the *New York Times*, a reputable U.S. newspaper for national and international news
- the *Christian Science Monitor,* another highly regarded general newspaper
- the *Wall Street Journal*, the most authoritative news source on business, finance, and the economy

Many newspapers available on the web can be searched electronically, although sometimes there is a charge for archived articles. In addition, important news sites such as APnews.com have become reliable sources for breaking news.

Government Documents

The U.S. government is the world's biggest publisher. In researching any field of science, engineering, or business, you are likely to find that a federal agency or department has produced a relevant brochure, report, or book.

Government publications are cataloged and shelved separately from other kinds of materials. They are classified according to the

Superintendent of Documents system, not the Library of Congress system. A reference librarian or a government documents specialist at your library can help you use government publications. You can also access various government sites and databases on the internet. For example, if your company wishes to respond to a request for proposals (RFP) published by a federal government agency, you will find that RFP on a government site. The major entry point for federal government sites is USA.gov, which links to hundreds of millions of pages of government information and services. It also features tutorials, a topical index, online transactions, and links to state and local government sites.

For more about RFPs, see Ch. 11, "Solicited Proposals."

Websites and Social Media

Web searches can yield many sources that exist only on the internet, from company-sponsored sites to online archives. Social-media sources include discussion forums, blogs, and wikis. Because social-media sites typically provide user-generated content, they must be used with caution, as detailed in the next section.

USING SOCIAL MEDIA AND OTHER INTERACTIVE RESOURCES

Social media and other interactive resources enable people to collaborate, share, link, and generate content in ways that traditional websites offering static content cannot. However, the ease and speed with which new content can be posted, as well as the lack of formal review of the content, create challenges for online researchers. Everyone using social-media resources must be extra cautious in evaluating and documenting sources.

This discussion covers three categories of social-media and web-based resources used by researchers — discussion forums, wikis, and blogs — as well as two techniques for streamlining the process of using these resources: tagged content and RSS feeds.

Discussion Forums

Online discussion forums sponsored by professional organizations, private companies, and others enable researchers to tap a community's information. Discussion forums are especially useful for presenting quick, practical advice. However, the advice might or might not be authoritative, so it should be checked against other sources whenever possible.

Wikis

A wiki is a website that makes it easy for members of a community, company, or organization to create and edit content collaboratively. Often, a wiki contains articles, information about student and professional conferences, reading lists, annotated sets of links, book reviews, and documents used by members of the community. You might have participated in creating and maintaining a wiki in one of your courses or as a member of a community group outside of your college.

Wikis are popular with researchers because they contain information that can change from day to day, on topics in fields such as medicine or business. As members make changes to the content, the wiki keeps track of who made the changes and when they were made. In addition, because wikis rely on information contributed voluntarily by members of a community, they represent a much broader spectrum of viewpoints than media that publish only information that has been approved by editors. For this reason, however, you should be especially careful when you use wikis; the information they contain might not be trustworthy. It's a good idea to corroborate any information you find on a wiki by consulting other sources. To find a wiki in your subject area, use a specialized search engine such as wiki.com.

Blogs

For more about blogs, see Ch. 9, "Writing Microblogs."

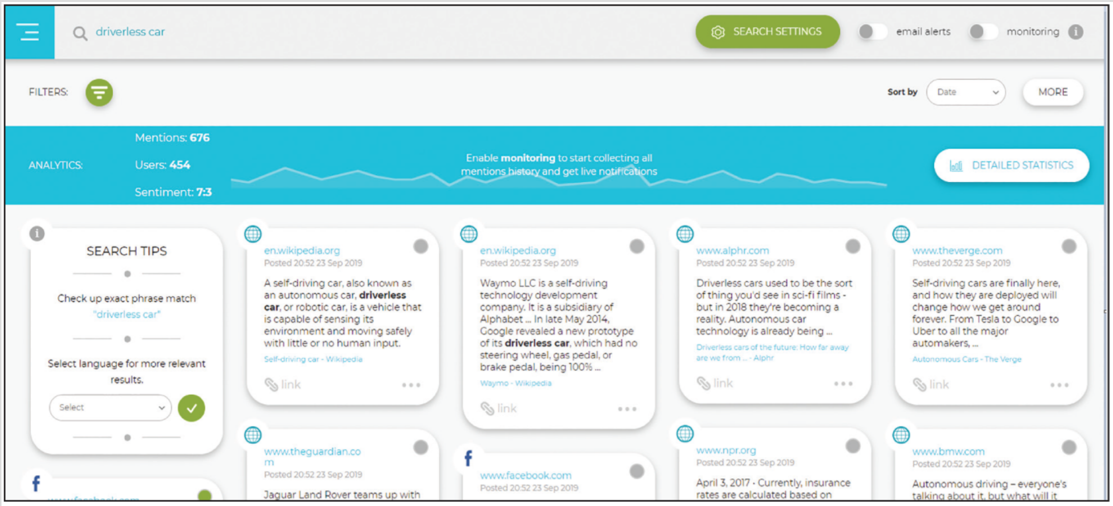
Many technical and scientific organizations, universities, and private companies sponsor blogs that offer useful information for researchers.

Keep in mind that bloggers are not always independent voices. A Hewlett-Packard employee writing on a company-sponsored blog will likely be presenting the company's viewpoint on the topic. Don't count on that blogger to offer objective views about products. Blogs sponsored by government and nonprofit agencies are more likely to be trustworthy.

Tagged Content

Tags are descriptive keywords people use to categorize and label content such as blog entries, videos, podcasts, and images they post to the internet or bookmarks they post to social-bookmarking sites. Tags can be one-word descriptors without spaces or punctuation (such as "sandiegozoo") or multiword descriptors (such as "San Diego Zoo"). Many social-media platforms have adopted the hashtag (#) as a way to tag an item to make it easier to find by searching.

[Figure 5.2](#) shows search results for web pages tagged with "driverless cars" on Social Searcher, a search engine that tracks social-media sites.



Mentions: **676**
Users: **454**
Sentiment: **7:3**

Enable **monitoring** to start collecting all mentions history and get live notifications

Check up exact phrase match "driverless car"

Select language for more relevant results.

en.wikipedia.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
A self-driving car, also known as an autonomous car, **driverless car**, or robotic car, is a vehicle that is capable of sensing its environment and moving safely with little or no human input.
Self-driving car - Wikipedia

en.wikipedia.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
Waymo LLC is a self-driving technology development company. It is a subsidiary of Alphabet ... In late May 2014, Google revealed a new prototype of its **driverless car**, which had no steering wheel, gas pedal, or brake pedal, being 100% ...
Waymo - Wikipedia

www.alphr.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
Driverless cars used to be the sort of thing you'd see in sci-fi films - but in 2018 they're becoming a reality. Autonomous car technology is already being ...
Driverless cars of the future: How far away are we from ... - Alphr

www.theverge.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
Self-driving cars are finally here, and how they are deployed will change how we get around forever. From Tesla to Google to Uber to all the major automakers, ...
Autonomous Cars - The Verge

www.theguardian.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
Jaguar Land Rover teams up with

www.facebook.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

www.npr.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
April 3, 2017 · Currently, insurance rates are calculated based on

www.bmw.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019
Autonomous driving – everyone's talking about it, but what will it

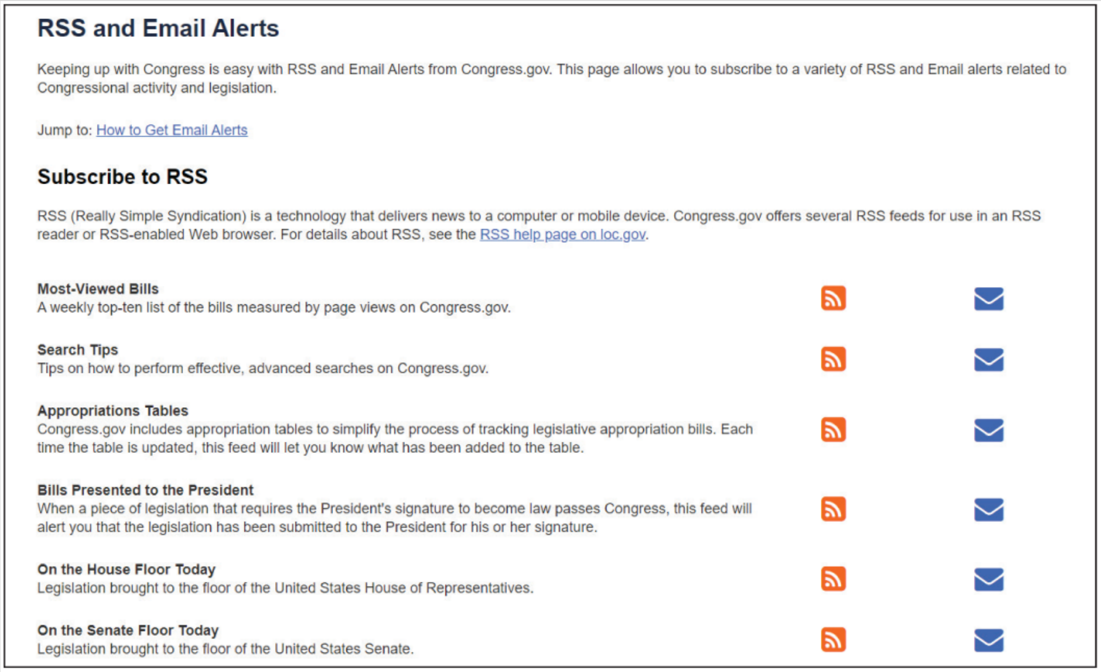
Social Searcher.com.

FIGURE 5.2 Search Results for Pages Tagged with “Driverless Cars”

This search returned numerous pages that relate to the topic of driverless cars. You could also search for individual posts about the topic on other social media and get even more results.

RSS Feeds

Repeatedly checking for new content on many different websites can be a time-consuming and haphazard way to research a topic. *RSS* (short for *rich site summary* or *really simple syndication*) *technology* allows readers to check just one place (such as a software program running on their computer or an email program) for alerts to new content posted on selected websites. Figure 5.3 shows a website that offers RSS feeds. Readers use a special type of software program called an *RSS aggregator* to be alerted by *RSS feeds* (notifications of new or changed content from sites of interest to them). With RSS feeds, the information comes to you; you don’t have to search for it.



RSS and Email Alerts

Keeping up with Congress is easy with RSS and Email Alerts from Congress.gov. This page allows you to subscribe to a variety of RSS and Email alerts related to Congressional activity and legislation.

Jump to: How to Get Email Alerts

Subscribe to RSS

RSS (Really Simple Syndication) is a technology that delivers news to a computer or mobile device. Congress.gov offers several RSS feeds for use in an RSS reader or RSS-enabled Web browser. For details about RSS, see the RSS help page on loc.gov.

Most-Viewed Bills
A weekly top-ten list of the bills measured by page views on Congress.gov.

Search Tips
Tips on how to perform effective, advanced searches on Congress.gov.

Appropriations Tables
Congress.gov includes appropriation tables to simplify the process of tracking legislative appropriation bills. Each time the table is updated, this feed will let you know what has been added to the table.

Bills Presented to the President
When a piece of legislation that requires the President's signature to become law passes Congress, this feed will alert you that the legislation has been submitted to the President for his or her signature.

On the House Floor Today
Legislation brought to the floor of the United States House of Representatives.

On the Senate Floor Today
Legislation brought to the floor of the United States Senate.

Congress.gov.

FIGURE 5.3 A Website Offering RSS Feeds

This pop-up menu is from a congressional website that offers RSS subscriptions. The orange feed icon is used on many websites to indicate RSS.

EVALUATING THE INFORMATION

You’ve taken notes, paraphrased, and quoted from your secondary research. Now, with more information than you can possibly use, you try to figure out what it all means. You realize that you still have some questions — that some of the information is incomplete, some contradictory, and some unclear. There is no shortage of information; the challenge is to find information that is accurate, unbiased, comprehensive, appropriately technical, current, and clear.

- **Accurate.** Suppose you are researching whether your company should consider flextime scheduling. If your research returns conflicting results, you will want to find additional sources on the subject to help you make a decision.
- **Unbiased.** You want sources that have no financial stake in your project. A private company that transports workers in vans is likely to be a biased source because it could profit from flextime, making extra trips to bring employees to work at different times.
- **Comprehensive.** You want information from different kinds of people — in terms of gender, cultural characteristics, and age — and from people representing all viewpoints on the topic.
- **Appropriately technical.** Good information is sufficiently detailed to respond to the needs of your readers, but not so detailed that they cannot understand it or do not need it. For the flextime study, you need to find out whether opening your building an hour earlier and closing it an hour later would significantly affect your utility costs. You can get this information by interviewing people in the Operations Department; you do not need to do a detailed inspection of all the utility records of the company.
- **Current.** If your information is 10 years old, it might not accurately reflect today's situation.
- **Clear.** You want information that is easy to understand. Otherwise, you'll waste time figuring it out, and you might misinterpret it.

The most difficult kind of material to evaluate is user-generated content from the internet — such as information on discussion forums or in blogs — because it rarely undergoes the formal review procedure used for books and professional journals. A general principle for using any information you find on the internet is to be extremely careful. Because content is unlikely to have been reviewed before being published on a social-media site, use one or more trusted sources to confirm the information you locate. Some instructors do not allow their students to use blogs or wikis for their research. Check with your instructor to learn his or her policies.

GUIDELINES Evaluating Print and Online Sources

FOR PRINTED SOURCES	FOR ONLINE SOURCES
▶ **Authorship**	
Do you recognize the name of the author? Does the source describe the author’s credentials and current position? If not, can you find this information in a “who’s who” or by searching for other books or other journal articles by the author?	If you do not recognize the author’s name, is the site mentioned on another reputable site? Does the site contain links to other reputable sites? Does it contain biographical information — the author’s current position and credentials? Can you use a search engine to find other references to the author’s credentials? Be especially careful with unedited sources such as Wikipedia; some articles in it are authoritative, others are not. Be careful, too, with blogs, some of which are written by disgruntled former employees with a score to settle.
▶ **Publisher**	

What is the publisher’s reputation? A reliable book is published by a reputable trade, academic, or scholarly publisher; a reliable journal is sponsored by a professional association or university. Are the editorial board members well known? Trade publications — magazines about a particular industry or group — often promote the interests of that industry or group. For example, information in a trade publication for either loggers or environmentalists might be biased. If you doubt the reliability of a book or journal, ask a reference librarian or a professor.	Can you determine the publisher’s identity from headers or footers? Is the publisher reputable? If the site comes from a personal account, the information it offers might be outside the author’s field of expertise. Many internet sites exist largely for public relations or advertising. For instance, websites of corporations and other organizations are unlikely to contain self-critical information. For blogs, examine the *blogroll*, a list of links to other blogs and websites. Credible blogs are likely to link to blogs already known to be credible. If a blog links only to the author’s friends, blogs hosted by the same corporation, or blogs that express the same beliefs, be very cautious.
▶ **Knowledge of the literature**	
Does the author appear to be knowledgeable about the major literature on the topic? Is there a bibliography? Are there notes throughout the document?	Analyze the internet source as you would any other source. Often, references to other sources will take the form of links.
▶ **Accuracy and verifiability of the information**	
Is the information based on reasonable assumptions? Does the author clearly describe the methods and theories used in producing the information, and are they appropriate to the subject? Has the author used sound reasoning? Has the author explained the limitations of the information?	Is the site well constructed? Is the information well written? Is it based on reasonable assumptions? Are the claims supported by appropriate evidence? Has the author used sound reasoning? Has the author explained the limitations of the information? Are sources cited? Online services such as Clicky help you evaluate how active a blog is, how the blog ranks compared to other blogs, and who is citing the blog. Active, influential blogs that are

	frequently linked to and cited by others are more likely to contain accurate, verifiable information.
▶ **Timeliness**	
Does the document rely on recent data? Was the document published recently?	Was the document created recently? Was it updated recently? If a site is not yet complete, be wary.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Choosing Types of Questions for Questionnaires

IF YOU WANT TO …	CONSIDER USING THIS QUESTION TYPE	EXAMPLE
Have respondents choose among alternatives	**Multiple choice**. The respondent selects one answer from a list.	Would you consider joining a company-sponsored sports team? Yes ____________ No ____________
Measure respondents' feelings about an idea or concept	**Likert scale**. The respondent ranks the degree to which he or she agrees or disagrees with the statement. Using an even number of possible responses (six, in this case) increases your chances of obtaining useful data. With an odd number, many respondents will choose the middle response.	The flextime program has been a success in its first year. strongly agree ____________ strongly disagree
Measure respondents' feelings about a task, an experience, or an object	**Semantic differentials**. The respondent registers a response along a continuum	Logging on to the system is simple ____________ difficult

	between a pair of opposing adjectives. As with Likert scales, an even number of possible responses yields better data.	The description of the new desalinization process is interesting __________ boring
Have respondents indicate a priority among a number of alternatives	**Ranking**. When using ranking questions, be sure to give instructions about what method (in this case, numbering) the respondents should use to rank the items.	Please rank the following work schedules in order of preference. Put a 1 next to the schedule you would most like to have, a 2 next to your second choice, and so on. 8:00–4:30__________ 9:00–5:30 __________ 8:30–5:00__________ flexible__________
Ask open-ended questions	**Short answer**. The respondent writes a brief answer using phrases or sentences.	What do you feel are the major advantages of the new parts-requisitioning policy?
Give respondents an opportunity to present fuller responses	**Short essay**. Although essay questions can yield information you never would have found using closed-ended questions, you will receive fewer responses because they require more effort. Also, essays cannot be quantified precisely, as data from other types of questions can.	The new parts-requisitioning policy has been in effect for a year. How well do you think it is working?

Conducting Primary Research

Although the library and the internet offer a wealth of authoritative information, in the workplace you will often need to conduct primary research because you need new information. There are eight major categories of primary research: analysis of social-media data, observations and demonstrations, inspections, experiments, field research, interviews, inquiries, and questionnaires.

ANALYSIS OF SOCIAL-MEDIA DATA

Every hour, tens of millions of posts are made on social media. A torrent of information is continuously coming online, and many organizations are working hard to sift through it to find useful insights.

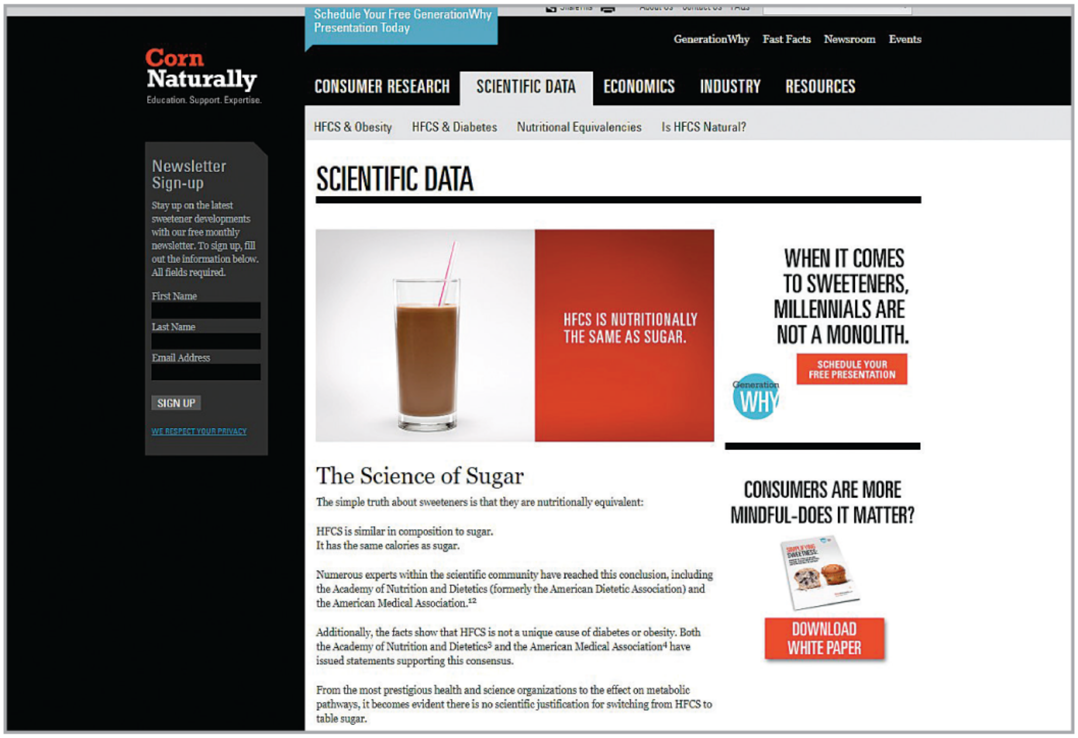
Businesses are spending the most time on social-media research, trying to figure out what customers like and dislike about their products and services, learn what they want, and reinforce brand loyalty. Take the case of Nielsen, which for 50 years has been monitoring the TV viewing habits of Americans by distributing questionnaires and attaching devices to their TVs, and then selling the data it collects to TV networks and producers, who use the information to determine how much to charge advertisers. The problem at Nielsen is that many people don't watch TV on a TV, or they don't watch shows when they are broadcast. Now Nielsen also uses social-media analysis: gathering data by monitoring social media to listen in on what people are saying on Twitter, Facebook, and other services about different TV programs (DeVault, 2013).

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Evaluating Information from Internet Sources

This information appears on the website of the Corn Refiners Association. The questions below ask you to consider the guidelines for evaluating internet sources (pp. 85–90).

1. Given the association's name and the product being discussed, what potential bias might exist on the part of the authors of this document?
2. What main point are the authors making in "The Science of Sugar"? How do they use comparisons between high fructose corn syrup and regular sugar to try to persuade readers of their point of view?
3. If you were considering using this source in a document you were writing, what information would you want to discover about the site and the organization that publishes it? How would you locate the information you needed?


Schedule Your Free GenerationWhy Presentation Today
GenerationWhy
Fast Facts
Newsroom
Events
Corn Naturally
Education. Support. Expertise.
CONSUMER RESEARCH
SCIENTIFIC DATA
ECONOMICS
INDUSTRY
RESOURCES
HFCS & Obesity
HFCS & Diabetes
Nutritional Equivalencies
Is HFCS Natural?
HFCS IS NUTRITIONALLY THE SAME AS SUGAR.
WHEN IT COMES TO SWEETENERS, MILLENNIALS ARE NOT A MONOLITH.
SCHEDULE YOUR FREE PRESENTATION
Generation WHY
CONSUMERS ARE MORE MINDFUL-DOES IT MATTER?
DOWNLOAD WHITE PAPER
SIGN UP
WE RESPECT YOUR PRIVACY

Newsletter Sign-up

Stay up on the latest sweetener developments with our free monthly newsletter. To sign up, fill out the information below. All fields required.

First Name

Last Name

Email Address

SCIENTIFIC DATA

The Science of Sugar

The simple truth about sweeteners is that they are nutritionally equivalent:

HFCS is similar in composition to sugar.
It has the same calories as sugar.

Numerous experts within the scientific community have reached this conclusion, including the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (formerly the American Dietetic Association) and the American Medical Association.[1][2]

Additionally, the facts show that HFCS is not a unique cause of diabetes or obesity. Both the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics[3] and the American Medical Association[4] have issued statements supporting this consensus.

From the most prestigious health and science organizations to the effect on metabolic pathways, it becomes evident there is no scientific justification for switching from HFCS to table sugar.

But organizations other than businesses are analyzing social-media data, too. For instance, the U.S. Geological Survey created the Twitter Earthquake Detector (TED), a program to monitor Twitter for the use of the word *earthquake*. Why? Because they realized that when people experience earthquakes, a lot of them tweet about it. The Centers for Disease Control, a U.S. federal agency, analyzes keywords on social media to monitor the spread of diseases, such as the Zika virus, in the United States and around the world. According to one scientist, “The world is equipped with human sensors — more than 7 billion and counting. It’s by far the most extensive sensor network on the planet. What can we learn by paying attention?” (McCaney, 2013).

How do you perform social-media data analysis? There are many software programs that can help you devise searches. Among the most popular is HootSuite, which includes tools for listening in on what people are saying about your company on social media such as Twitter, Facebook, LinkedIn, and many other services. In addition, HootSuite helps you monitor and manage your company's social-media presence and provides *analytics*: demographic data about who is following your company, their attitudes, and their behaviors.

OBSERVATIONS AND DEMONSTRATIONS

Observation and demonstration are two common forms of primary research. When you *observe*, you simply watch some activity to understand some aspect of it. For instance, if you were trying to determine whether the location of the break room was interfering with work on the factory floor, you could observe the situation, preferably at different times of the day and on different days of the week. If you saw workers distracted by people moving in and out of the room or by sounds made in the room, you would record your observations by taking notes, taking photos, or shooting video of events. An observation might lead to other forms of primary research. You might, for example, follow up by interviewing some employees who could help you understand what you observed.

When you witness a *demonstration* (or *demo*), you are watching someone carry out a process. For instance, if your company was considering buying a conveyor belt sorter for its warehouse, you could arrange to visit a manufacturer’s facility, where technicians would show how the sorter works. If your company was considering a portable machine, such as a laptop computer, manufacturers or dealers could demo their products at your facility.

When you plan to observe a situation or witness a demo, prepare beforehand. Write down the questions you need answered or the factors you want to investigate. Prepare interview questions in case you have a chance to speak with someone. Think about how you are going to incorporate the information you acquire into the document you will write. Finally, bring whatever equipment you will need (pen and paper, computer, camera, etc.) to the site of the observation or demo.

INSPECTIONS

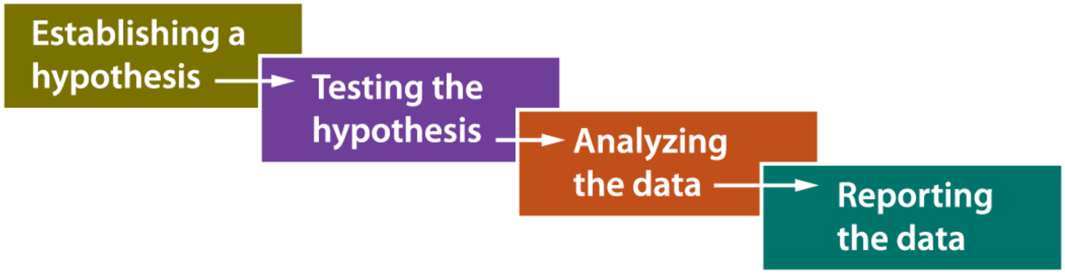
Inspections are like observations, but you participate more actively. For example, a civil engineer can determine what caused a crack in a foundation by inspecting the site: walking around, looking at the crack, photographing it and the surrounding scene, examining the soil. An accountant can determine the financial health of an organization by inspecting its financial records, perhaps performing calculations and comparing the data she finds with other data.

These professionals are applying their knowledge and professional judgment as they inspect a site, an object, or a document. Sometimes, inspection techniques are more complicated. A civil engineer inspecting foundation cracking might want to test his hunches by bringing soil samples back to the lab for analysis.

When you carry out an inspection, do your homework beforehand. Think about how you will use the data in your document: will you need photographs or video files or computer data? Then prepare the materials and equipment you'll need to capture the data.

EXPERIMENTS

Learning to conduct the many kinds of experiments used in a particular field can take months or even years. This discussion is a brief introduction. In many cases, conducting an experiment involves four phases.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

- **Establishing a hypothesis.** A hypothesis is an informed guess about the relationship between two factors. In a study relating gasoline octane and miles per gallon, a hypothesis might be that a car will get 5 percent better mileage with 89-octane gas than with 87-octane gas.
- **Testing the hypothesis.** Usually, you need an experimental group and a control group. These two groups should be identical except

for the condition you are studying: in the above example, the gasoline. The control group would be a car running on 87 octane. The experimental group would be an identical car running on 89 octane. The experiment would consist of driving the two cars over an identical course at the same speed — preferably in some sort of controlled environment — over a given distance, such as 1,000 miles. Then you would calculate the miles per gallon. The results would either support or refute your original hypothesis.

- **Analyzing the data.** Do your data show a correlation — one factor changing along with another — or a causal relationship? For example, we know that sports cars are involved in more fatal accidents than sedans (there is a stronger correlation for sports cars), but we don't know what the causal relationship is — whether the car or the way it is driven is the important factor.
- **Reporting the data.** When researchers report their findings, they explain what they did, why they did it, what they saw, what it means, and what ought to be done next.

For more about reports, see Chs. 12 and 13.

FIELD RESEARCH

Whereas an experiment yields quantitative data that typically can be measured precisely, most field research is qualitative; that is, it yields data that typically cannot be measured precisely. Often in field research, you seek to understand the quality of an experience. For instance, you might want to understand how a new seating arrangement affects group dynamics in a classroom. You could design a study in which you observed and shot video of classes and interviewed the students and the instructor about their reactions to the new arrangement. Then you could do the same in a traditional classroom and compare the results.

Some kinds of studies have both quantitative and qualitative elements. In the case of classroom seating arrangements, you could include some quantitative measures, such as the number of times students talked with one another. You could also distribute questionnaires to elicit ratings by the students and the instructor. If you used these same quantitative measures on enough classrooms, you could gather valid quantitative information.

When you are doing quantitative or qualitative research on the behavior of animals — from rats to monkeys to people — try to minimize two common problems:

- **The effect of the research on the behavior you are studying.** In studying the effects of the classroom seating arrangement, minimize the effects of your own presence. For instance, if you observe in person, avoid drawing attention to yourself. Also, make sure that the video camera is placed unobtrusively and that it is set up before the students arrive, so they don’t see the process. Still, any time you bring in a camera, you cannot be sure that what you witness is typical.

- **Bias in the recording and analysis of the data.** Bias can occur because researchers want to confirm their hypotheses. In an experiment to determine whether students write differently on physical keyboards than on touch screens, a researcher might see differences where other people don’t. For this reason, the experiment should be designed so that it is *double blind.* That is, the students shouldn’t know what the experiment is about so that they don’t change their behavior to support or negate the hypothesis, and the data being analyzed should be disguised so that researchers don’t know whether they are examining the results from the control group or the experimental group. For example, the documents produced on keyboards and touch screens should be printed out the same way.

Conducting an experiment or field research is relatively simple; the hard part is designing your study so that it accurately measures what you want it to measure.

INTERVIEWS

Interviews are extremely useful when you need information on subjects that are too new to have been discussed in the professional literature or are too narrow for widespread publication (such as local political questions).

In choosing a respondent — a person to interview — answer three questions:

- **What questions do you want to answer?** Only when you know this can you begin to search for a person who can provide the information.
- **Who could provide this information?** The ideal respondent is an expert willing to talk. Unless there is an obvious choice, such as the professor carrying out the research you are studying, use directories, such as local industrial guides, to locate potential respondents. You may also be able to find experts through your social-media network.
- **Is the person willing to be interviewed?** Contact the potential respondent by phone or in writing and describe what kind of information you are seeking. If the person is not able to help you, that person might be willing to refer you to someone who can. Explain why you have decided to ask that person. (A compliment works better than admitting that the person you really wanted to interview is out of town.) Explain what you plan to do with the information, such as write a report or present a talk. Then, if the person is willing to be interviewed, set up an appointment at that person's convenience.

GUIDELINES Conducting an Interview

Follow these suggestions for preparing for and conducting an interview — and for following up after the interview.

PREPARING FOR THE INTERVIEW

- **Do your homework.** If you ask questions that have already been answered in the professional literature, the respondent might become annoyed and uncooperative.
- **Prepare good questions.** Good questions are clear, focused, and open.

— **Be clear.** The respondent should be able to understand what you are asking.

UNCLEAR	Why do you sell Trane products?
CLEAR	What are the characteristics of Trane products that led you to include them in your product line?

The unclear question can be answered in a number of unhelpful ways: “Because they’re too expensive to give away” or “Because I’m a Trane dealer.”

— **Be focused.** The question must be narrow enough to be answered briefly. If you want more information, you can ask a follow-up question.

UNFOCUSED	What is the future of the computer industry?
FOCUSED	What will the American microchip industry look like in 10 years?

— **Ask open questions.** Your purpose is to get the respondent to talk. Don’t ask a lot of questions that have yes or no answers.

CLOSED	Do you think the federal government should create industrial partnerships?
OPEN	What are the advantages and disadvantages of the federal government’s creating industrial partnerships?

- **Check your equipment.** If you will be recording the interview, test your voice recorder or video camera to make sure it is operating properly.

BEGINNING THE INTERVIEW

- **Arrive on time.**
- **Thank the respondent for taking the time to talk with you.**
- **State the subject and purpose of the interview and what you plan to do with the information.**
- **If you wish to record the interview, ask permission.**

CONDUCTING THE INTERVIEW

- **Take notes.** Write down important concepts, facts, and numbers, but don’t take such copious notes that you can’t make eye contact with the respondent or that you are still writing when the respondent finishes an answer.
- **Start with prepared questions.** Because you are likely to be nervous at the start, you might forget important questions. Have your first few questions ready.
- **Be prepared to ask follow-up questions.** Listen carefully to the respondent’s answer and be ready to ask a follow-up question or request a clarification. Have your other prepared questions ready, but be willing to deviate from them if the respondent leads you in unexpected directions.
- **Be prepared to get the interview back on track.** Gently return to the point if the respondent begins straying unproductively, but don’t interrupt rudely or show annoyance. Do not say, “Whoa! I asked about layoffs in this company, not in the whole industry.” Rather, say, “On the question of layoffs at this company, do you anticipate … ?”

CONCLUDING THE INTERVIEW

- **Thank the respondent.**
- **Ask for a follow-up interview.** If a second meeting would be useful, ask to arrange one.
- **Ask for permission to quote the respondent.** If you think you might want to quote the respondent by name, ask for permission now.

AFTER THE INTERVIEW

- **Write down the important information while the interview is fresh in your mind.** (This step is unnecessary, of course, if you have recorded the interview.) If you will be printing a transcript of the interview, make the transcript now.

- **Send a brief thank-you note.** Within a day or two, send a note showing that you appreciate the respondent's courtesy and that you value what you have learned. In the note, confirm any previous offers you have made, such as to send the respondent a copy of your final document.

When you wish to present the data from an interview in a document you are preparing, include a transcript of the interview (or an excerpt from the interview). You will probably present the transcript as an appendix so that readers can refer to it but are not slowed down when reading the body of the document. You might decide to present brief excerpts from the transcript in the body of the document as evidence for points you make.

INQUIRIES

For more about inquiry letters, see "Common Types of Letters," Ch. 9, p. 239.

A useful alternative to a personal interview is to send an inquiry. This inquiry can take the form of a letter, an email, or a message sent through an organization's website. If you are lucky, your respondent will provide detailed and helpful answers. However, the respondent might not clearly understand what you want to know or might choose not to help you. Although the strategy of the inquiry is essentially that of a personal interview, inquiries can be less successful because the recipient has not already agreed to provide information and might not respond. Also, an inquiry, unlike an interview, gives you little opportunity to follow up by asking for clarification.

QUESTIONNAIRES

To find software for conducting surveys, search for "survey software."

Questionnaires enable you to solicit information from a large group of people. You can send questionnaires through the mail, email them, present them as forms on a website, or use survey software (such as SurveyMonkey).

Unfortunately, questionnaires rarely yield completely satisfactory results, for three reasons:

- **Some of the questions will misfire.** Respondents will misinterpret some of your questions or supply useless answers.
- **You won't obtain as many responses as you want.** The response rate will almost never exceed 50 percent. In most cases, it will be closer to 10 to 20 percent.
- **You cannot be sure the respondents are representative.** People who feel strongly about an issue are much more likely to respond to questionnaires than are those who do not. For this reason, you need to be careful in drawing conclusions based on a small number of responses to a questionnaire.

When you send a questionnaire, you are asking the recipient to do you a favor. Your goal should be to construct questions that will elicit the information you need as simply and efficiently as possible.

Asking Effective Questions

To ask effective questions, follow two suggestions:

- **Use unbiased language.** Don’t ask, “Should U.S. clothing manufacturers protect themselves from unfair foreign competition?” Instead, ask, “Are you in favor of imposing tariffs on men’s clothing?”
- **Be specific.** If you ask, “Do you favor improving the safety of automobiles?” only an eccentric would answer no. Instead, ask, “Do you favor requiring automobile manufacturers to equip new cars with electronic stability control, which would raise the price by an average of $300 per car?”

The Choices and Strategies box on the next page explains common types of questions used in questionnaires.

Include an introductory explanation with the questionnaire. This explanation should clearly indicate who you are, why you are writing, what you plan to do with the information from the questionnaire, and when you will need it.

Testing the Questionnaire

Before you send out *any* questionnaire, show it and its accompanying explanation to a few people who can help you identify any problems. After you have revised the materials, test them on people whose backgrounds are similar to those of your intended respondents. Revise the materials a second time, and, if possible, test them again.

Once you have sent the questionnaire, you cannot revise it and resend it to the same people.

Administering the Questionnaire

Determining who should receive the questionnaire can be simple or difficult. If you want to know what the residents of a particular street think about a proposed construction project, your job is easy. But if you want to know what mechanical-engineering students in colleges across the country think about their curricula, you will need a background in sampling techniques to identify a representative sample.

Make it easy for respondents to present their information. For mailed questionnaires, include a self-addressed, stamped envelope.

Presenting Questionnaire Data in Your Document

To decide where and how to present the data that you acquire from your questionnaire, think about your audience and purpose. Start with this principle: important information is presented and analyzed in the body of a document, whereas less important information is presented in an appendix (a section at the end that only some of your audience will read). Most often, different versions of the same information appear in the two places.

Typically, the full questionnaire data are presented in an appendix. If you can, present the respondents' data — the answers they provided —

in the questionnaire itself, as shown here:

1. Approximately how many days per week do you eat lunch in the lunchroom?

0 **12**	1 **16**	2 **18**	3 **12**	4 **9**	5 **4**

2. At approximately what time do you eat in the lunchroom?

11:30–12:30 **3**	12:00–1:00 **26**	12:30–1:30 **7**	varies **23**

If you think your reader will benefit from analyses of the data, present such analyses. For instance, you could calculate the percentage for each response: for question 1, “12 people — 17 percent — say they do not eat in the cafeteria at all.” Or you could present the percentage in parentheses after each number: “12 (17%).”

Selected data might then be interpreted in the body of the document. For instance, you might devote a few sentences or paragraphs to the data for one of the questions. The following example shows how a writer might discuss the data from question 2.

> Question 2 shows that 26 people say they use the cafeteria between noon and 1:00. Only 10 people selected the two other times: 11:30–12:30 or 12:30–1:30. Of the 23 people who said they use the cafeteria at various times, we can conclude that at least a third — 8 people — use it between noon and 1:00. If this assumption is correct, at least 34 people (26 + 8) use the cafeteria between noon and 1:00. This would explain why people routinely cannot find a table in the noon hour, especially between 12:15 and 12:30. To alleviate this problem, we might consider asking department heads not to schedule

> meetings between 11:30 and 1:30, to make it easier for their people to choose one of the less-popular times.

The body of a document is also a good place to discuss important nonquantitative data. For example, you might wish to discuss and interpret several representative textual answers to open-ended questions.

ETHICS NOTE

REPORTING AND ANALYZING DATA HONESTLY

When you put a lot of time and effort into a research project, it's frustrating if you can't find the information you need or if the information you find doesn't help you say what you want to say. As discussed in Chapter 2, your responsibility as a professional is to tell the truth.

If the evidence suggests that the course of action you propose won't work, don't omit that evidence or change it. Nor should you hide it in a place where readers may not see it. Rather, try to figure out why the evidence does not support your proposal. Present your explanation honestly and visibly.

If you can't find reputable evidence to support your claim that one device works better than another, don't just keep silent and hope your readers won't notice. Explain why you think the evidence is missing and how you propose to follow up by continuing your research.

If you make an honest mistake, you are a person. If you cover up a mistake, you're a dishonest person. If you get caught fudging the data, you could be an unemployed dishonest person. If you don't get caught, you're still a smaller person.

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

☐ Did you determine the questions you need to answer for your document?

Did you choose appropriate secondary-research tools to answer those questions, including, if appropriate

☐ online catalogs?
☐ reference works?
☐ periodical indexes?
☐ newspaper indexes?
☐ abstract services?
☐ government information?
☐ social media and other interactive resources?

In evaluating information, did you carefully assess

☐ the author’s credentials?
☐ the publisher?
☐ the author’s knowledge of literature in the field?
☐ the accuracy and verifiability of the information?
☐ the timeliness of the information?

Did you choose appropriate primary-research methods to answer your questions, including, if appropriate

☐ social-media data analysis?

☐ observations and demonstrations?

☐ inspections?

☐ experiments?

☐ field research?

☐ interviews?

☐ inquiries?

☐ questionnaires?

☐ your own reporting and honest analysis of the data?

EXERCISES

1. For each of the following questions, select a research technique that is likely to yield a useful answer. For instance, if the question is “Which companies within a 20-mile radius of our company headquarters sell recycled paper?” a search of the web is likely to provide a useful answer.
    a. Does the Honda CR-V include traction control as a standard feature?
    b. How much money has our company’s philanthropic foundation donated to colleges and universities in each of the last three years?
    c. How does a 3D printer work?
    d. Could our Building 3 support a rooftop green space?

   e. How can we determine whether we would save more money by switching to LED lighting in our corporate offices?
2. Revise the following interview questions to make them more effective. In a brief paragraph for each, explain why you have revised the question as you have.
   a. What is the role of communication in your daily job?
   b. Do you think it is better to relocate your warehouse or go to just-in-time manufacturing?
   c. Isn’t it true that it’s almost impossible to train an engineer to write well?
   d. Where are your company’s headquarters?
   e. Is there anything else you think I should know?
3. Revise the following questions from questionnaires to make them more effective. In a brief paragraph for each, explain why you have revised the question as you have.
   a. Does your company provide tuition reimbursement for its employees? Yes ____________ No ____________
   b. What do you see as the future of bioengineering?
   c. How satisfied are you with the computer support you receive?
   d. How many employees work at your company? 5–10 ____________ 10–15 ____________ 15 or more ____________
   e. What kinds of documents do you write most often? memos ____________ letters ____________ reports ____________

4. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form small groups, and describe and evaluate your college or university's website. A different member of the group might carry out each of the following tasks:
    - In an email to the site's webmaster, ask questions about the process of creating the site. For example, how involved was the webmaster with the content and design of the site? What is the webmaster's role in maintaining the site?
    - Analyze the kinds of information the site contains, and determine whether the site is intended primarily for faculty, students, alumni, legislators, or prospective students.
    - Determine the overlap between information on the site and information in printed documents published by the school. In those cases with overlap, is the information on the site merely a duplication of the printed information, or has it been revised to take advantage of the unique capabilities of the web?

In a memo to your instructor, present your findings and recommend ways to improve the site. For more about memos, see Ch. 9, "Writing Memos."

CASE 5: Revising a Questionnaire

You're a marketing director at a real-estate company, and you are trying to determine whether it would be cost-effective to have the company's agents take property photos instead of having the photos taken by the professional photographers from the supplier with which you currently contract. You ask one of your agents to develop a questionnaire to gauge agents' reactions to and opinions about the possibility of adding photography to their responsibilities, but you find that her questionnaire needs considerable revising before it will be an effective tool. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to access the questionnaire and begin assessing it.

CHAPTER 6

Writing for Your Readers

Presenting Yourself Effectively

Using Conventional Patterns of Organization

Writing Clear, Informative Titles

Writing Clear, Informative Headings

Writing Clear, Informative Paragraphs

Writing Grammatically Correct Sentences

Structuring Effective Sentences

Choosing the Right Words and Phrases

WRITING FOR YOUR READERS means writing documents that are easy for readers to use and understand. It starts with making sure you present yourself effectively, as a professional whose writing is worth reading. In addition, writing for your readers involves creating a usable document — one in which readers can easily find the information they need — that presents ideas and data clearly and emphasizes the most important information. Finally, writing for your readers means choosing words carefully and crafting accurate, clear, concise, and forceful sentences. If a sentence doesn't say what you intended, misunderstandings can occur, and misunderstandings can cause harm and cost money. More important, the ability to write for your readers — word by word and sentence by sentence — reflects positively on you and your organization.

Presenting Yourself Effectively

No matter how strong your arguments, your audience won't read them — or won't read them sympathetically — unless they see you as a professional.

GUIDELINES Creating a Professional Persona

Your *persona* is how you appear to your readers. Demonstrating the following characteristics will help you establish an attractive professional persona.

- **Cooperativeness.** Make clear that your goal is to solve a problem, not to advance your own interests.
- **Moderation.** Be moderate in your judgments. The problem you are describing will not likely spell doom for your organization, and the solution you propose will not solve all the company's problems.
- **Fair-mindedness.** Acknowledge the strengths of opposing points of view, even as you offer counterarguments.
- **Modesty.** If you fail to acknowledge that you don't know everything, someone else will be sure to volunteer that insight.

The following paragraph shows how a writer can demonstrate the qualities of cooperativeness, moderation, fair-mindedness, and modesty:

> This plan is certainly not perfect. For one thing, it calls for a greater up-front investment than we had anticipated. And the return on investment through the first three quarters is likely to fall short of our initial goals. However, I think this plan is the best of the three alternatives for the following reasons. . . . Therefore, I recommend that we begin planning immediately to implement the plan. I am confident that this plan will enable us to enter the 3-D market successfully, building on our fine reputation for high-quality advanced electronics.

In the first three sentences, the writer acknowledges the problems with his recommendation.

The use of "I think" adds an attractive modesty; the recommendation might be unwise.

The recommendation itself is moderate; the writer does not claim that the plan will save the world.

In the last two sentences, the writer shows a spirit of cooperativeness by focusing on the company's goals.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Using Conventional Patterns of Organization

This chapter presents a number of conventional, or commonly used, patterns of organization, such as the chronological pattern and the spatial pattern. You should begin by asking yourself whether a conventional pattern for presenting your information already exists. Using a conventional pattern makes things easier for you as a writer and for your audience.

For you, a conventional pattern serves as a template or checklist, helping you remember which information to include and where to put it. In a proposal, for example, you include a budget, which you put near the end or in an appendix. For your audience, a conventional pattern makes your document easier to read and understand. Readers who are familiar with proposals can find the information they want because you have put it where others have put similar information.

Does this mean that technical communication is merely a process of filling in the blanks? No. You need to assess the writing situation continuously as you work. If you think you can communicate your ideas better by modifying a conventional pattern or by devising a new pattern, do so. However, you gain nothing if an existing pattern would work just as well.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Choosing Effective Organizational Patterns

IF YOU WANT TO …	CONSIDER USING THIS ORGANIZATIONAL PATTERN	EXAMPLE
Explain events that occurred or might occur, or tasks the reader is to carry out in sequence	**Chronological**. Most of the time, you present information in chronological order. Sometimes, however, you use reverse chronology.	You describe the process you used to diagnose the problem with the accounting software. In a job résumé, you describe your more-recent jobs before your less-recent ones.
Describe a physical object or scene, such as a device or a location	**Spatial**. You choose an organizing principle such as top-to-bottom, east-to-west, or inside-to-outside.	You describe the three buildings that will make up the new production facility.
Explain a complex situation or idea, such as the factors that led to a problem or the theory that underlies a process	**General to specific**. You present general information first, then specific information. Understanding the big picture helps readers understand the details.	You explain the major changes in and the details of the law mandating the use of a new refrigerant in cooling systems.
Present a set of factors	**More important to less important**. You discuss the most-important issue first, then the next-most-important issue, and so forth. In technical communication, you don’t want to create suspense. You want to present the	When you launch a new product, you discuss market niche, competition, and then pricing.

	most-important information first.	
Present similarities and differences between two or more items	**Comparison and contrast**. You choose from one of two patterns: discuss all the factors related to one item, then all the factors related to the next item, and so forth; or discuss one factor as it relates to all the items, then another factor as it relates to all the items, and so forth.	You discuss the strengths and weaknesses of three companies bidding on a contract your company is offering.
Assign items to logical categories, or discuss the elements that make up a single item	**Classification or partition**. Classification involves placing items into categories according to some basis. Partition involves breaking a single item into its major elements.	You group the motors your company manufactures according to the fuel they burn: gasoline or diesel. Or you explain the operation of each major component of one of your motors.
Discuss a problem you encountered, the steps you took to address the problem, and the outcome or solution	**Problem-methods-solution**. You can use this pattern in discussing the past, the present, or the future. Readers understand this organizational pattern because they use it in their everyday lives.	In describing how your company is responding to a new competitor, you discuss the problem (the recent loss in sales), the methods (how you plan to examine your product line and business practices), and the solution (which changes will help your company remain competitive).
Discuss the factors that led	**Cause and effect**. You can	You discuss factors that you

to (or will lead to) a given situation, or the effects that a situation led to or will lead to	start from causes and speculate about effects, or start with the effect and work backward to determine the causes.	think contributed to a recent sales dip for one of your products. Or you explain how you think changes to an existing product will affect its sales.

Writing Clear, Informative Titles

The title of a document is crucial because it is your first chance to define your subject and purpose for your readers, giving them their first clue to whether the document contains the information they need. The title is an implicit promise to readers: “This document is about Subject A, and it was written to achieve Purpose B.” Everything that follows has to relate clearly to the subject and purpose defined in the title; if it doesn’t, either the title is misleading or the document has failed to make good on the title’s promise.

You might want to put off giving a final title to your document until you have completed the document, because you cannot be sure that the subject and purpose you established during the planning stages will not change. However, you should jot down a working title before you start drafting; you can revise it later. To give yourself a strong sense of direction, make sure the working title defines not only the subject of the document but also its purpose. The working title “Snowboarding Injuries” states the subject but not the purpose. “How To Prevent Snowboarding Injuries” is better because it helps keep you focused on your purpose.

An effective title is precise. For example, if you are writing a feasibility study on the subject of offering free cholesterol screening at your company, the title should contain the key terms *free* *cholesterol screening* and *feasibility.* The following title would be effective:

> Offering Free Cholesterol Screening at Thrall Associates: A Feasibility Study

If your document is an internal report discussing company business, you might not need to identify the company. In that case, the following would be clear:

> Offering Free Cholesterol Screening: A Feasibility Study

Or you could present the purpose before the subject:

> A Feasibility Study of Offering Free Cholesterol Screening

Avoid substituting general terms, such as *health screening* for *cholesterol screening* or *study* for *feasibility study*; the more precise your terms, the more useful your readers will find the title. An added benefit of using precise terms is that your document can be more accurately and effectively indexed in databases and online libraries, increasing the chances that someone researching your subject will be able to find the document.

Before settling on a title, test its effectiveness by asking whether readers will be able to paraphrase it in a clear, meaningful sentence. For instance, "A Feasibility Study of Offering Free Cholesterol Screening to Employees of Thrall Associates" could be paraphrased as follows: "This document reports on a project to determine whether it is feasible to offer free cholesterol screening to employees of Thrall Associates."

But notice what happens when the title is incomplete: “Free Cholesterol Screening.” With only those three words to go on, the reader has to guess about the document’s purpose. The reader knows that the document has something to do with free cholesterol screening, but is the writer recommending that screening be implemented, modified, or discontinued? Or is the writer reporting on the success of an existing screening program?

Clear, comprehensive titles can be long. If you need eight or ten words to say what you want to say about your subject and purpose, use them.

Writing Clear, Informative Headings

Headings, which are lower-level titles for the sections and subsections in a document, do more than announce the subject that will be discussed in the document. Collectively, they create a *hierarchy of information*, dividing the document into major sections and subdividing those sections into subsections. In this way, coherent headings communicate the relative importance and generality of the information that follows, helping readers recognize major sections as *primary* (likely to contain more important or more general information) and subsections as *secondary* or *subordinate* (likely to contain less important or more specific information).

Clear, informative headings communicate this relationship not only through their content but also through their design. For this reason, make sure that the design of a primary heading (sometimes referred to as a *level 1 heading, 1 heading,* or *A heading*) clearly distinguishes it from a subordinate heading (a *level 2 heading, 2 heading,* or *B heading*), and that the design of that subordinate heading clearly distinguishes it from yet a lower level of subordinate heading (a *level 3 heading, 3 heading,* or *C heading*).

The headings used in this book illustrate this principle, as does the example below. Notice that the example uses both typography and indentation to distinguish one heading from another and to communicate visually how information at one level logically relates to information at other levels.

Level 1 Heading
Level 2 Heading
Level 3 Heading

The best way to make sure you use typefaces and indentation consistently is to use the Styles function. As discussed in Chapter 3, a style is a set of formatting instructions that you can apply to all titles, headings, lists, or other design elements that you want to look alike. Because you create a style only once but then apply it to any number of headings or other design elements, you're far more likely to format these items consistently than if you were to format each one individually.

Styles also speed up the process of changing the appearance of titles, headings, and lists. As you revise, you might notice that two levels of headings are insufficiently distinct. You can easily use the Styles function to change the design of one of those headings so that it is distinct and therefore does a better job of helping readers follow the discussion and understand where they are in the document. In addition, you can create new styles to ensure consistency when, for instance, you further subdivide a subsection of a document or introduce bulleted lists into the discussion.

Because a heading is a type of title, much of the advice about titles in the previous section also applies to headings. For instance, a clear, informative heading is crucial because it announces the subject and purpose of the discussion that follows it, just as a title does for the whole document. Announcing the subject and purpose in a heading helps readers understand what they will be reading or, in some cases, helps them decide whether they need to read the section at all. For the writer, a heading eliminates the need for awkward transitional sentences such as "Let us now turn to the advantages of the mandatory enrollment process" or "The next step in replacing the saw blade is to remove the arbor nut from the drive shaft."

Effective headings help both reader and writer by forecasting not only the subject and purpose of the discussion that follows but also its scope and organization. When readers encounter the heading "Three Health Benefits of Yoga: Improved Muscle Tone, Enhanced Flexibility, Better Posture," they can reasonably assume that the discussion will consist of three parts (not two or four) and that it will begin with a discussion of muscle tone, followed by a discussion of flexibility, and then of posture.

Because headings introduce text that discusses or otherwise elaborates on the subject defined by the heading, avoid back-to-back headings. In other words, avoid following one heading directly with another heading:

> **3. Approaches to Neighborhood Policing**
>
> **3.1 Community Policing**

> According to the COPS Agency (a component of the U.S. Department of Justice), "Community policing focuses on crime and social disorder." …

What's wrong with back-to-back headings? First, they're illogical. If your document contains a level 1 heading, you have to say something at that level before jumping to the discussion at level 2. Second, back-to-back headings distract and confuse readers. The heading "3. Approaches to Neighborhood Policing" announces to readers that you have something to say about neighborhood policing — but you don't say anything. Instead, another, subordinate heading appears, announcing to readers that you now have something to say about community policing.

To avoid confusing and frustrating readers, separate the headings with text, as in this example:

> **3. Approaches to Neighborhood Policing**
> Over the past decade, researchers have concluded that community policing offers significant advantages over the traditional approach based on patrolling in police cars. However, the traditional approach has some distinct strengths. In the following discussion, we define each approach and then explain its advantages and disadvantages. Finally, we profile three departments that have successfully made the transition to community policing while preserving the major strengths of the traditional approach.
>
>> **3.1 Community Policing**
>> According to the COPS Agency (a component of the U.S. Department of Justice), "Community policing focuses on crime and social disorder." …

The text after the heading "3. Approaches to Neighborhood Policing" is called an *advance organizer*. It indicates the background, purpose, scope, and organization of the discussion that follows it. Advance organizers give readers an overview of the discussion’s key points before they encounter the details in the discussion itself.

GUIDELINES Revising Headings

Follow these suggestions to make your headings more effective.

For more about noun strings, see “Avoid Long Noun Strings,” p. 140.

- **Avoid long noun strings**. The following example is ambiguous and hard to understand:

  Proposed Production Enhancement Strategies Analysis Techniques

  Is the heading introducing a discussion of techniques for analyzing strategies that have been proposed? Or is it introducing a discussion that proposes using certain techniques to analyze strategies? Readers shouldn’t have to ask such questions. Adding prepositions makes the heading clearer:

  Techniques for Analyzing the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production

  This heading announces more clearly that the discussion describes techniques for analyzing strategies, that those strategies have been proposed, and that the strategies are aimed at enhancing production. It’s a longer heading than the original, but that’s okay. It’s also much clearer.
- **Be informative**. In the preceding example, you could add information about how many techniques will be described:

  Three Techniques for Analyzing the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production

  You can go one step further by indicating what you wish to say about the three techniques:

  Advantages and Disadvantages of the Three Techniques for Analyzing the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production

Again, don't worry if the heading seems long; clarity is more important than conciseness.

- **Use a grammatical form appropriate to your audience**. The question form works well for readers who are not knowledgeable about the subject and for nonnative speakers:

  What Are the Three Techniques for Analyzing the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production?

  The "how-to" form is best for instructional material, such as manuals:

  How To Analyze the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production

  The gerund form (-*ing*) works well for discussions and descriptions of processes:

  Analyzing the Proposed Strategies for Enhancing Production

- **Avoid back-to-back headings**. Use advance organizers to separate the headings.

For more about how to format headings, see "Titles and Headings," Ch. 7, p. 168.

Writing Clear, Informative Paragraphs

There are two kinds of paragraphs — body paragraphs and transitional paragraphs — both of which play an important role in helping you emphasize important information.

A *body paragraph,* the basic unit for communicating information, is a group of sentences (or sometimes a single sentence) that is complete and self-sufficient and that contributes to a larger discussion. In an effective paragraph, all the sentences clearly and directly articulate one main point, either by introducing the point or by providing support for it. In addition, the whole paragraph follows logically from the material that precedes it.

A *transitional paragraph* helps readers move from one major point to another. Like a body paragraph, it can consist of a group of sentences or be a single sentence. Usually, it summarizes the previous point, introduces the next point, and helps readers understand how the two are related.

The following example of a transitional paragraph appeared in a discussion of how a company plans to use this year's net proceeds.

The first sentence contains the word "then" to signal that it introduces a summary.

The final sentence clearly indicates the relationship between what precedes it and what follows it.

> Our best estimate of how we will use these net proceeds, then, is to develop a second data center and increase our marketing efforts. We base this estimate on our current plans and on projections of anticipated expenditures. However, at this time we cannot precisely determine the exact cost of these activities. Our actual expenditures may exceed what we've predicted, making it necessary or advisable to reallocate the net proceeds within the two uses (data center and marketing) or to use portions of the net proceeds for other purposes. The most likely uses appear to be reducing short-term debt and addressing salary inequities among software developers; each of these uses is discussed below, including their respective advantages and disadvantages.

STRUCTURE PARAGRAPHS CLEARLY

Most paragraphs consist of a topic sentence and supporting information.

The Topic Sentence

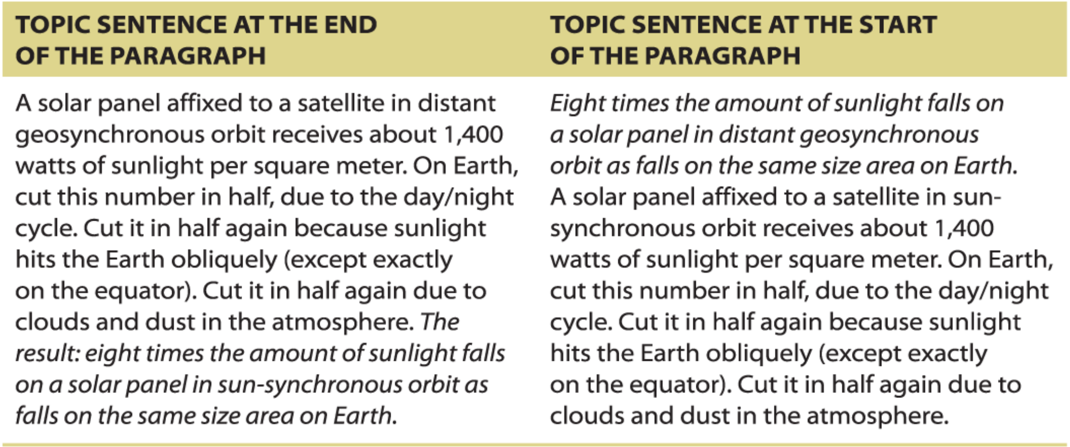
Because a topic sentence states, summarizes, or forecasts the main point of the paragraph, put it up front. Technical communication should be clear and easy to read, not suspenseful. If a paragraph describes a test you performed, include the result of the test in your first sentence:

> The point-to-point continuity test on Cabinet 3 revealed an intermittent open circuit in the Phase 1 wiring.

Then go on to explain the details. If the paragraph describes a complicated idea, start with an overview. In other words, put the “bottom line” on top:

> Mitosis is the usual method of cell division, occurring in four stages: (1) prophase, (2) metaphase, (3) anaphase, and (4) telophase.

Putting the bottom line on top makes the paragraph much easier to read, as shown in Figure 6.1 below.



TOPIC SENTENCE AT THE END OF THE PARAGRAPH	TOPIC SENTENCE AT THE START OF THE PARAGRAPH
A solar panel affixed to a satellite in distant geosynchronous orbit receives about 1,400 watts of sunlight per square meter. On Earth, cut this number in half, due to the day/night cycle. Cut it in half again because sunlight hits the Earth obliquely (except exactly on the equator). Cut it in half again due to clouds and dust in the atmosphere. *The result: eight times the amount of sunlight falls on a solar panel in sun-synchronous orbit as falls on the same size area on Earth.*	*Eight times the amount of sunlight falls on a solar panel in distant geosynchronous orbit as falls on the same size area on Earth.* A solar panel affixed to a satellite in sun-synchronous orbit receives about 1,400 watts of sunlight per square meter. On Earth, cut this number in half, due to the day/night cycle. Cut it in half again because sunlight hits the Earth obliquely (except exactly on the equator). Cut it in half again due to clouds and dust in the atmosphere.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 6.1 A Topic Sentence Works Better at the Start of the Paragraph

The topic sentences are italicized for emphasis in this figure.

Notice that placing the topic sentence at the start gives a focus to the paragraph, helping readers understand the information in the rest of the paragraph.

Make sure each of your topic sentences relates clearly to the organizational pattern you are using. In a discussion of the physical condition of a building, for example, you might use a spatial pattern and start a paragraph with the following topic sentence:

> On the north side of Building B, water damage to about 75 percent of the roof insulation and insulation in some areas in the north wall indicates that the roof has been leaking for some time. The leaking has contributed to …

Your next paragraph should begin with a topic sentence that continues the spatial organizational pattern:

> On the east side of the building, a downspout has eroded the lawn and has caused a small silt deposit to form on the neighboring property directly to the east. Riprap should be placed under the spout to …

Note that the phrases “on the north side” and “on the east side” signal that the discussion is following the points of the compass in a clockwise direction, further emphasizing the spatial pattern. Readers can reasonably assume that the next two parts of the discussion will be about the south side of the building and the west side, in that order.

Similarly, if your first topic sentence is “First, we need to … ,” your next topic sentence should refer to the chronological pattern: “Second, we should …” (Of course, sometimes well-written headings can make such references to the organizational pattern unnecessary, as when headings are numbered to emphasize that the material is arranged in a chronological pattern.)

ETHICS NOTE

AVOIDING BURYING BAD NEWS IN PARAGRAPHS

The most emphatic location in a paragraph is the topic sentence, usually the first sentence in a paragraph. The second most emphatic location is the end of the paragraph. Do not bury bad news in the middle of the paragraph, hoping readers won't see it. It would be misleading to structure a paragraph like this:

> In our proposal, we stated that the project would be completed by May. In making this projection, we used the same algorithms that we have used successfully for more than 14 years. In this case, however, the projection was not realized, due to several factors beyond our control.… We have since completed the project satisfactorily and believe strongly that this missed deadline was an anomaly that is unlikely to be repeated. In fact, we have beaten every other deadline for projects this fiscal year.

The writer has buried the bad news in a paragraph beginning with a topic sentence that appears to suggest good news. The last sentence, too, suggests good news.

A more forthright approach would be as follows:

> We missed our May deadline for completing the project. Although we derived this schedule using the same algorithms that we have used successfully for more than 14 years, several factors, including especially bad weather at the site, delayed the construction.…
>
> However, we have since completed the project satisfactorily and believe strongly that this missed deadline was an anomaly that is unlikely to be repeated.… In fact, we have beaten every other deadline for projects this fiscal year.

Here the writer forthrightly presents the bad news in a topic sentence. Then she creates a separate paragraph with the good news.

The Supporting Information

The supporting information makes the topic sentence clear and convincing. Sometimes, a few explanatory details provide all the support you need. At other times, however, you need a lot of information to clarify a difficult thought or to defend a controversial idea. How much supporting information to provide also depends on your audience and purpose. Readers knowledgeable about your subject may require little supporting information; less knowledgeable readers might require a lot. Likewise, you may need to provide little supporting information if your purpose is merely to *state* a controversial point of view rather than *persuade* your reader to agree with it. In deciding such matters, your best bet is to be generous with your supporting information. Paragraphs with too little support are far more common than paragraphs with too much.

Supporting information, which is most often developed using the basic patterns of organization discussed earlier in this chapter, usually fulfills one of these five roles:

1. It defines a key term or idea included in the topic sentence.
2. It provides examples or illustrations of the situation described in the topic sentence.
3. It identifies causes: factors that led to the situation.
4. It defines effects: implications of the situation.
5. It supports the claim made in the topic sentence.

A topic sentence is like a promise to readers. At the very least, when you write a topic sentence that says “Within five years, the City of McCall will need to upgrade its wastewater-treatment facilities because of increased demands from a rapidly rising population,” you are implicitly promising readers that the paragraph not only will be about wastewater-treatment facilities but also will explain that the rapidly rising population is the reason the facilities need to be upgraded. If your paragraph fails to discuss these things, it has failed to deliver on the promise you made. If the paragraph discusses these things but also goes on to speculate about the price of concrete over the next five years, it is delivering on promises that the topic sentence never made. In both situations, the paragraph has gone astray.

Paragraph Length

How long should a paragraph be? In general, 75 to 125 words are enough for a topic sentence and four or five supporting sentences. Long paragraphs are more difficult to read than short paragraphs because they require more focused concentration. They can also intimidate some readers, who might skip over them.

But don’t let arbitrary guidelines about length take precedence over your own analysis of the audience and purpose. You might need only one or two sentences to introduce a graphic, for example. Transitional paragraphs are also likely to be quite short. If a brief paragraph fulfills its function, let it be. Do not combine two ideas in one paragraph simply to achieve a minimum word count.

You may need to break up your discussion of one idea into two or more paragraphs. An idea that requires 200 or 300 words to develop should probably not be squeezed into one paragraph.

A note about one-sentence paragraphs: body paragraphs and transitional paragraphs alike can consist of a single sentence. However, many single-sentence paragraphs are likely to need revision. Sometimes, the idea in that sentence belongs with the paragraph immediately before it or immediately after it or in another paragraph elsewhere in the document. Sometimes, the idea needs to be developed into a paragraph of its own. And sometimes the idea doesn't belong in the document at all.

When you think about paragraph length, consider how the information will be printed or displayed. If the information will be presented in a narrow column, such as in a newsletter, short paragraphs are much easier to read. If the information will be presented in a wider column, readers will be able to handle a longer paragraph.

GUIDELINES Dividing Long Paragraphs

Here are three techniques for dividing long paragraphs.

- ► **Break the discussion at a logical place.** The most logical place to divide this material is at the introduction of the second factor. Because the paragraphs are still relatively long and cues are minimal, this strategy should be reserved for skilled readers.

High-tech companies have been moving their operations to the suburbs for two main reasons: cheaper, more modern space and a better labor pool. A new office complex in the suburbs will charge from one-half to two-thirds of the rent charged for the same square footage in the city. And that money goes a lot further, too. The new office complexes are bright and airy; new office space is already wired for computers; and exercise clubs, shopping centers, and even libraries are often on-site.

The second major factor attracting high-tech companies to the suburbs is the availability of experienced labor. Office workers and middle managers are abundant. In addition, the engineers and executives, who tend to live in the suburbs anyway, are happy to forgo the commuting, the city wage taxes, and the noise and stress of city life.

- ► **Make the topic sentence a separate paragraph and break up the supporting information.** This version is easier to understand than the one above because the brief paragraph at the start clearly introduces the information. In addition, each of the two main paragraphs now has a clear topic sentence.

High-tech companies have been moving their operations to the suburbs for two main reasons: cheaper, more modern space and a better labor pool.

First, office space is a bargain in the suburbs. A new office complex in the suburbs will charge from one-half to two-thirds of the rent charged for the same square footage in the city. And that money goes a lot further, too. The new office complexes are bright and airy; new office space is already wired for computers; and exercise clubs, shopping centers, and even libraries are often on-site.

Second, experienced labor is plentiful. Office workers and middle managers are abundant. In addition, the engineers and executives, who tend to live in the suburbs anyway, are happy to forgo the commuting, the city wage taxes, and the noise and stress of city life.

- ► **Use a list.** This is the easiest of the three versions for all readers because of the extra visual cues provided by the list format.

High-tech companies have been moving their operations to the suburbs for two main reasons:

- *Cheaper, more modern space.* Office space is a bargain in the suburbs. A new office complex in the suburbs will charge anywhere from one-half to two-thirds of the rent charged for the same square footage in the city. And that money goes a lot further, too. The new office complexes are bright and airy; new office space is already wired for computers; and exercise clubs, shopping centers, and even libraries are often on-site.

- *A better labor pool.* Office workers and middle managers are abundant. In addition, the engineers and executives, who tend to live in the suburbs anyway, are happy to forgo the commuting, the city wage taxes, and the noise and stress of city life.

USE COHERENCE DEVICES WITHIN AND BETWEEN PARAGRAPHS

For the main idea in the topic sentence to be clear and memorable, you need to make the support — the rest of the paragraph — coherent. That is, you must link the ideas together clearly and logically, and you must express parallel ideas in parallel grammatical constructions. Even if the paragraph already moves smoothly from sentence to sentence, you can strengthen the coherence by adding transitional words and phrases, repeating key words, and using demonstrative pronouns followed by nouns.

Adding Transitional Words and Phrases

Transitional words and phrases help the reader understand a discussion by explicitly stating the logical relationship between two ideas. Table 6.1 lists the most common logical relationships between two ideas and some of the common transitions that express those relationships.

TABLE 6.1 Transitional Words and Phrases

RELATIONSHIP	TRANSITION
addition	also, and, finally, first (second, etc.), furthermore, in addition, likewise, moreover, similarly
comparison	in the same way, likewise, similarly
contrast	although, but, however, in contrast, nevertheless, on the other hand, yet
illustration	for example, for instance, in other words, to illustrate
cause–effect	as a result, because, consequently, hence, so, therefore, thus
time or space	above, around, earlier, later, next, soon, then, to the right (left, west, etc.)
summary or conclusion	at last, finally, in conclusion, to conclude, to summarize

Transitional words and phrases benefit both readers and writers. When a transitional word or phrase explicitly states the logical relationship between two ideas, readers don't have to guess at what that relationship might be. Using transitional words and phrases in your writing forces you to think more deeply about the logical relationships between ideas than you might otherwise.

To better understand how transitional words and phrases benefit both reader and writer, consider the following pairs of examples:

WEAK	Demand for flash-memory chips is down by 15 percent. We have laid off 12 production-line workers.
IMPROVED	Demand for flash-memory chips is down by 15 percent; as a result, we have laid off 12 production-line workers.
WEAK	The project was originally expected to cost $300,000. The final cost was $450,000.
IMPROVED	The project was originally expected to cost $300,000. However, the final cost was $450,000.

The next sentence pair differs from the others in that the weak example *does* contain a transitional word, but it's a weak transitional word:

WEAK	According to the report from Human Resources, the employee spoke rudely to a group of customers waiting to enter the store, and he repeatedly ignored requests from co-workers to unlock the door so the customers could enter.
IMPROVED	According to the report from Human Resources, the employee spoke rudely to a group of customers waiting to enter the store; moreover, he repeatedly ignored requests from co-workers to unlock the door so the customers could enter.

In the weak version, *and* implies simple addition: the employee did this, and then he did that. The improved version is stronger, conveying not merely simple addition but also the idea that refusing to unlock the door compounded the employee's rude behavior, elevating it to something more serious. By using *moreover*, the writer is saying that speaking rudely to customers was bad enough, but the employee *really* crossed the line when he refused to open the door.

Whichever transitional word or phrase you use, place it as close as possible to the beginning of the second idea. As shown in the examples above, the link between two ideas should be near the start of the second idea, to provide context for it. Consider the following example:

> The vendor assured us that the replacement parts would be delivered in time for the product release. The parts were delivered nearly two weeks after the product release, however.

The idea of Sentence 2 stands in contrast to the idea of Sentence 1, but the reader doesn't see the transition until the end of Sentence 2. Put the transition at the start of the second idea, where it will do the most good.

You should also use transitional words to maintain coherence *between* paragraphs, just as you use them to maintain coherence *within* paragraphs. The link between two paragraphs should be near the start of the second paragraph.

Repeating Key Words

Repeating key words — usually nouns — helps readers follow the discussion. In the following example, the first version could be confusing:

UNCLEAR	For months the project leaders carefully planned their research. The cost of the work was estimated to be over $200,000. What is *the work:* the planning or the research?
CLEAR	For months the project leaders carefully planned their research. The cost of the research was estimated to be over $200,000.

From a misguided desire to be interesting, some writers keep changing their important terms. *Plankton* becomes *miniature seaweed*, then *the ocean's fast food.* Avoid this kind of word game; it can confuse readers.

Of course, too much repetition can be boring. You can vary nonessential terms as long as you don't sacrifice clarity.

SLUGGISH	The purpose of the new plan is to *reduce* the *problems* we are seeing in our accounting operations. We hope to see a *reduction* in the *problems* by early next quarter.
BETTER	The purpose of the new plan is to *reduce* the

	problems we are seeing in our accounting operations. We hope to see an *improvement* by early next quarter.

Using Demonstrative Pronouns Followed by Nouns

Demonstrative pronouns — *this, that, these,* and *those* — can help you maintain the coherence of a discussion by linking ideas securely. In almost all cases, demonstrative pronouns should be followed by nouns, rather than standing alone in the sentence. In the following examples, notice that a demonstrative pronoun by itself can be vague and confusing.

UNCLEAR	New screening techniques are being developed to combat viral infections. These are the subject of a new research effort in California. What is being studied in California: *new screening techniques* or *viral infections*?
CLEAR	New screening techniques are being developed to combat viral infections. These techniques are the subject of a new research effort in California.
UNCLEAR	The task force could not complete its study of the mine accident. This was the subject of a scathing editorial in the union newsletter. What was the subject of the editorial: *the mine accident* or the task force's *inability to complete its study* of the accident?

CLEAR	The task force failed to complete its study of the mine accident. This failure was the subject of a scathing editorial in the union newsletter.

Even when the context is clear, a demonstrative pronoun used without a noun might interrupt readers' progress by forcing them to refer back to an earlier idea.

INTERRUPTIVE	The law firm advised that the company initiate proceedings. This caused the company to search for a second legal opinion.
FLUID	The law firm advised that the company initiate proceedings. This advice caused the company to search for a second legal opinion.

Writing Grammatically Correct Sentences

Grammar is the study of how words can be combined into sentences to make meaning. Why does it matter if you can write grammatically correct sentences? One reason is that many grammar conventions are functional. If you write, “After sitting on a mildewed shelf in the garage for thirty years, my brother decided to throw out the old computer,” you’ve said that your brother spent thirty years sitting on a mildewed shelf in the garage, which gave him plenty of time to decide what to do with the old computer. If you write, “Did Sean tell Liam when he was expected to report to work?” the reader might have a hard time figuring out whether *he* refers to Sean or Liam.

Even if a grammar mistake doesn’t make you sound silly or confuse the reader, it can hurt you by making readers doubt your credibility. The logic is that if you are careless about grammar, you might also be careless about the quality of the technical information you communicate. Many readers will assume that documents that are unprofessional because of grammar problems might also be unprofessional in other ways.

This section will review nine principles for using clear, correct grammar:

1. Avoid sentence fragments.
2. Avoid comma splices.
3. Avoid run-on sentences.
4. Avoid ambiguous pronoun references.
5. Compare items clearly.
6. Use adjectives clearly.
7. Maintain subject–verb agreement.
8. Maintain pronoun–antecedent agreement.
9. Use tenses correctly.

AVOID SENTENCE FRAGMENTS

A sentence fragment is an incomplete sentence. A sentence fragment occurs when a sentence is missing either a verb or an independent clause. To correct a sentence fragment, use one of the following two strategies:

1. **Introduce a verb.**

FRAGMENT	The pressure loss caused by a worn gasket. This example is a fragment because it lacks a verb. (The word *caused* does not function as a verb here; rather, it introduces a phrase that describes the pressure loss.)
COMPLETE	The pressure loss was caused by a worn gasket. Pressure *loss* now has a verb: *was caused*.

COMPLETE	We identified the pressure loss caused by a worn gasket. *Pressure* loss becomes the object in a new main clause: *We identified the pressure loss*.
FRAGMENT	A plotting program with clipboard plotting, 3D animation, and FFTs.
COMPLETE	It is a plotting program with clipboard plotting, 3D animation, and FFTs.
COMPLETE	A plotting program with clipboard plotting, 3D animation, and FFTs will be released today.

2. Link the fragment (a dependent element) to an independent clause.

FRAGMENT	The article was rejected for publication. Because the data could not be verified. *Because the data could not be verified* is a fragment because it lacks an independent clause: a clause that has a subject and a verb and could stand alone as a sentence. To be complete, the clause needs more information.
COMPLETE	The article was rejected for publication because the data could not be verified. The *dependent* element is joined to the independent clause that precedes it.

COMPLETE	Because the data could not be verified, the article was rejected for publication. The *dependent* element is followed by the independent clause.
FRAGMENT	Delivering over 150 horsepower. The two-passenger coupe will cost over $32,000.
COMPLETE	Delivering over 150 horsepower, the two-passenger coupe will cost over $32,000.
COMPLETE	The two-passenger coupe will deliver over 150 horsepower and cost over $32,000.

AVOID COMMA SPLICES

A comma splice is an error that occurs when two independent clauses are joined, or spliced together, by a comma. Independent clauses in a comma splice can be linked correctly in three ways:

1. **Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, or, nor, but, for, so,* or *yet*).**

SPLICE	The 909 printer is our most popular model, it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model, for it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.

	The coordinating conjunction *for* explicitly states the relationship between the two clauses.

2. Use a semicolon.

SPLICE	The 909 printer is our most popular model, it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model; it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility. The semicolon creates a somewhat more distant relationship between the two clauses than the comma and coordinating conjunction do; the link remains implicit.

3. Use a period or another form of terminal punctuation.

SPLICE	The 909 printer is our most popular model, it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model. It offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility. The two independent clauses are separate sentences. Of the three ways to punctuate the two clauses correctly, this one suggests the most distant relationship between them.

AVOID RUN-ON SENTENCES

In a run-on sentence (sometimes called a *fused sentence*), two independent clauses appear together with no punctuation between them. A run-on sentence can be corrected in the same three ways as a comma splice:

1. **Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, or, nor, but, for, so,* or *yet*).**

RUN-ON	The 909 printer is our most popular model it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model, for it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.

2. **Use a semicolon.**

RUN-ON	The 909 printer is our most popular model it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model; it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.

3. **Use a period or another form of terminal punctuation.**

RUN-ON	The 909 printer is our most popular model it offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.
CORRECT	The 909 printer is our most popular model. It offers an unequaled blend of power and versatility.

AVOID AMBIGUOUS PRONOUN REFERENCES

Pronouns must refer clearly to their antecedents — the words or phrases they replace. To correct ambiguous pronoun references, use one of these four strategies:

1. **Clarify the pronoun's antecedent.**

UNCLEAR	Remove the cell cluster from the medium and analyze it. Analyze what: the cell cluster or the medium?
CLEAR	Analyze the cell cluster after removing it from the medium.
CLEAR	Analyze the medium after removing the cell cluster from it.
CLEAR	Remove the cell cluster from the medium. Then analyze the cell cluster.

CLEAR	Remove the cell cluster from the medium. Then analyze the medium.

2. Clarify the relative pronoun, such as *which* , introducing a dependent clause.

UNCLEAR	She decided to evaluate the program, which would take five months. What would take five months: the program or the evaluation?
CLEAR	She decided to evaluate the program, a process that would take five months. By replacing *which* with *a process that*, the writer clearly indicates that it is the evaluation that will take five months.
CLEAR	She decided to evaluate the five-month program. By using the adjective *five-month*, the writer clearly indicates that it is the program that will take five months.

3. Clarify the subordinating conjunction, such as *where* , introducing a dependent clause.

UNCLEAR	This procedure will increase the handling of toxic materials outside the plant, where adequate safety measures can be taken. Where can adequate safety measures be taken: inside the plant or outside?

CLEAR	This procedure will increase the handling of toxic materials outside the plant. Because adequate safety measures can be taken only in the plant, the procedure poses risks.
CLEAR	This procedure will increase the handling of toxic materials outside the plant. Because adequate safety measures can be taken only outside the plant, the procedure will decrease safety risks. Sometimes, the best way to clarify an unclear reference is to split the sentence in two, drop the subordinating conjunction, and add clarifying information.

4. Clarify the ambiguous pronoun that begins a sentence.

UNCLEAR	Allophanate linkages are among the most important structural components of polyurethane elastomers. They act as cross-linking sites. What act as cross-linking sites: allophanate linkages or polyurethane elastomers?
CLEAR	Allophanate linkages, which are among the most important structural components of polyurethane elastomers, act as cross-linking sites. The writer has rewritten part of the first sentence to add a clear nonrestrictive

	modifier and has combined the rewritten phrase with the second sentence.

If you begin a sentence with a demonstrative pronoun that might be unclear to the reader, be sure to follow it immediately with a noun that clarifies the reference.

UNCLEAR	The new parking regulations require that all employees pay for parking permits. These are on the agenda for the next senate meeting. What are on the agenda: the regulations or the permits?
CLEAR	The new parking regulations require that all employees pay for parking permits. These regulations are on the agenda for the next senate meeting.

COMPARE ITEMS CLEARLY

When comparing or contrasting items, make sure your sentence communicates their relationship clearly. A simple comparison between two items usually causes no problems: “The X3000 has more storage than the X2500.” Simple comparisons, however, can sometimes result in ambiguous statements:

AMBIGUOUS	Trout eat more than minnows. Do trout eat minnows in addition to other food, or do trout eat more than minnows eat?

CLEAR	Trout eat more than minnows do.

If you are introducing three items, make sure the reader can tell which two are being compared:

AMBIGUOUS	Trout eat more algae than minnows.
CLEAR	Trout eat more algae than they do minnows.
CLEAR	Trout eat more algae than minnows do.

Beware of comparisons in which different aspects of the two items are compared:

ILLOGICAL	The resistance of the copper wiring is lower than the tin wiring.
LOGICAL	The resistance of the copper wiring is lower than that of the tin wiring. *Resistance* cannot be logically compared with *tin wiring*. In the revision, the pronoun *that* substitutes for *resistance* in the second part of the comparison.

USE ADJECTIVES CLEARLY

In general, adjectives are placed before the nouns that they modify: *the plastic washer*. In technical communication, however, writers often need to use clusters of adjectives. To prevent confusion in technical communication, follow two guidelines:

1. **Use commas to separate coordinate adjectives.** Adjectives that describe different aspects of the same noun are known as coordinate adjectives.

   portable, programmable device
   adjustable, removable housings
   The comma is used instead of the word *and*.

   Sometimes, an adjective is considered part of the noun it describes: *electric drill*. When one adjective modifies *electric drill*, no comma is required: *a reversible electric drill*. The addition of two or more adjectives, however, creates the traditional coordinate construction: *a two-speed, reversible electric drill*.
2. **Use hyphens to link compound adjectives.** A compound adjective is made up of two or more words. Use hyphens to link these elements when compound adjectives precede nouns.

   a variable-angle accessory

   increased cost-of-living raises

   The hyphens in the second example prevent *increased* from being read as an adjective modifying *cost*.

A long string of compound adjectives can be confusing even if you use hyphens appropriately. To ensure clarity, turn the adjectives into a clause or a phrase following the noun.

UNCLEAR	an *operator-initiated default-prevention* technique
CLEAR	a technique *initiated by the operator to prevent default*

MAINTAIN SUBJECT–VERB AGREEMENT

The subject and verb of a sentence must agree in number, even when a prepositional phrase comes between them. The object of the preposition might be plural in a singular sentence.

INCORRECT	The *result* of the tests *are* promising.
CORRECT	The *result* of the tests *is* promising.

The object of the preposition might be singular in a plural sentence.

INCORRECT	The *results* of the test *is* promising.
CORRECT	The *results* of the test *are* promising.

Don't be misled by the fact that the object of the preposition and the verb don't sound natural together, as in *tests is* or *test are*. Here, the noun *test(s)* precedes the verb, but it is not the subject of the verb. As long as the subject and verb agree, the sentence is correct.

MAINTAIN PRONOUN–ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT

A pronoun and its antecedent (the word or phrase being replaced by the pronoun) must agree in number. Often, an error occurs when the antecedent is a collective noun — one that can be interpreted as either singular or plural, depending on its usage.

INCORRECT	The *company* is proud to announce a new stock option plan for *their* employees.
CORRECT	The *company* is proud to announce a new stock option plan for *its* employees. *Company* acts as a single unit; therefore, the singular pronoun is appropriate.

When the individual members of a collective noun are emphasized, however, a plural pronoun is appropriate.

CORRECT	The inspection team have prepared their reports.
CORRECT	The members of the inspection team have

	prepared their reports. The use of *their* emphasizes that the team members have prepared their own reports.

USE TENSES CORRECTLY

Two verb tenses are commonly used in technical communication: the present tense and the past perfect tense. It is important to understand the specific purpose of each.

1. **The present tense is used to describe scientific principles and recurring events.**

INCORRECT	In 1992, McKay and his coauthors argued that the atmosphere of Mars *was* salmon pink.
CORRECT	In 1992, McKay and his coauthors argued that the atmosphere of Mars *is* salmon pink. Although the argument was made in the historical past — 1992 — the point is expressed in the present tense because the atmosphere of Mars continues to be salmon pink.

When the date of the argument is omitted, some writers express the entire sentence in the present tense.

CORRECT	McKay and his coauthors *argue* that the

	atmosphere of Mars *is* salmon pink.

2. **The past perfect tense is used to describe the earlier of two events that occurred in the past.**

CORRECT	We *had begun* excavation when the foreman *discovered* the burial remains. *Had begun* is the past perfect tense. The excavation began before the burial remains were discovered.
CORRECT	The seminar *had concluded* before I *got* a chance to talk with Dr. Tran.

Structuring Effective Sentences

Good technical communication consists of clear, graceful sentences that convey information economically. This section describes six principles for structuring effective sentences:

- Emphasize new and important information.
- Choose an appropriate sentence length.
- Focus on the "real" subject.
- Focus on the "real" verb.
- Use parallel structure.
- Use modifiers effectively.

EMPHASIZE NEW AND IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Sentences are often easier to understand and more emphatic if new information appears at the end. For instance, if your company has labor problems and you want to describe the possible results, structure the sentence like this:

> Because of labor problems, we anticipate a three-week delay.
> In this case, *three-week delay* is the new information.

If your readers already expect a three-week delay but don't know the reason for it, reverse the structure:

> We anticipate the three-week delay in production because of labor problems.

> Here, the new and important information is *labor problems*.

Try not to end the sentence with qualifying information that blunts the impact of the new information.

WEAK	The joint could fail under special circumstances.
IMPROVED	Under special circumstances, the joint could fail.

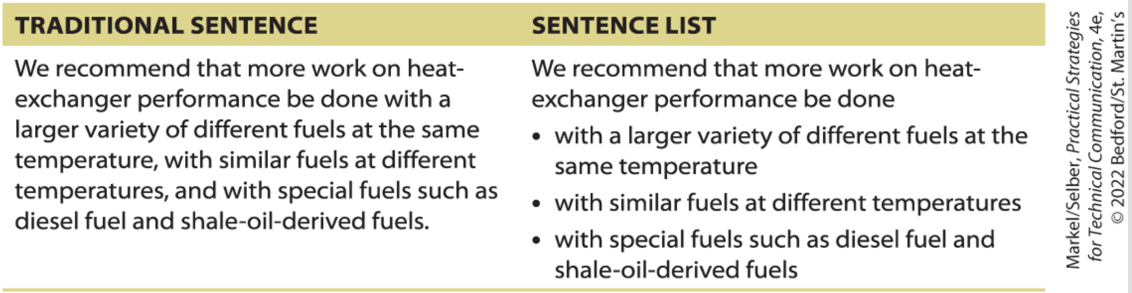
Put references to time and space at the beginning of the sentence, where they can provide context for the main idea that the sentence expresses.

> *Since the last quarter of 2014,* we have experienced an 8 percent turnover rate in personnel assigned to the project.

> *On the north side of the building,* water from the leaking pipes has damaged the exterior siding and the sheetrock on some interior walls.

WRITE EFFECTIVE SENTENCE LISTS

A sentence list is a list in which the bulleted or numbered items are words, phrases, or single sentences. Figure 6.2 shows a traditional sentence and a list presenting the same information.



TRADITIONAL SENTENCE	SENTENCE LIST
We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature, with similar fuels at different temperatures, and with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels.	We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done • with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature • with similar fuels at different temperatures • with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 6.2 A Traditional Sentence and a Sentence List

If you don't have enough space to list the items vertically or if you are not permitted to do so, number the items within the sentence:

> We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done (1) with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature, (2) with similar fuels at different temperatures, and (3) with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels.

GUIDELINES Creating Effective Lists

These five suggestions will help you write clearer, more effective paragraph lists and sentence lists.

- ► **Set off each listed item with a number, a letter, or a symbol (usually a bullet).** — Use numbered lists to suggest sequence (as in the steps in a set of instructions) or priority (the first item being the most important). Numbers help readers see the total number of items in a list. For sublists, use lowercase letters:

  1. Item
     a. subitem
     b. subitem
  2. Item
     a. subitem
     b. subitem

— Use bullets to avoid suggesting either sequence or priority, such as for lists of people (everyone except number 1 gets offended). For sublists, use dashes.

- Item
    — subitem
    — subitem

— Use an open (unshaded) box (□) for checklists.

For more about designing checklists, see "Checklists," Ch. 8, p. 221.

- ▶ **Break up long lists**. Because most people can remember only 5 to 9 items easily, break up lists of 10 or more items.
- ▶ **Present the items in a parallel structure**. A list is parallel if all the items have the same grammatical form. In the parallel list below, each item is a verb phrase.
- ▶ **Structure and punctuate the lead-in correctly**. The lead-in tells readers how the list relates to the discussion and how the items in the list relate to each other. Although standards vary from one organization to another, the most common lead-in consists of a grammatically complete clause followed by a colon, as shown in the following examples:
  Following are the three main assets:
  The three main assets are as follows:
  The three main assets are the following:
  The committee found that the employee:
    - did not cause the accident
    - acted properly immediately after the accident
    - reported the accident according to procedures
- ▶ **Punctuate the list correctly**. Because rules for punctuating lists vary, you should find out whether people in your organization have a preference. If not, punctuate lists as follows:
  — If the items are phrases, use a lowercase letter at the start. Do not use a period or a comma at the end. The white space beneath the last item indicates the end of the list.
    The new facility will offer three advantages:
    - lower leasing costs
    - shorter commuting distance
    - a larger pool of potential workers

  — If the items are complete sentences, use an uppercase letter at the start and a period at the end.

The new facility will offer three advantages:

- The leasing costs will be lower.
- The commuting distance for most employees will be shorter.
- The pool of potential workers will be larger.

— If the items are phrases followed by complete sentences, start each phrase with an uppercase letter and end it with a period. Begin the complete sentences with uppercase letters and end them with periods. Use italics to emphasize the phrases.

The new facility will offer three advantages:

- *Lower leasing costs*. The lease will cost $1,800 per month; currently we pay $2,300.
- *Shorter commuting distance*. Our workers' average commute of 18 minutes would drop to 14 minutes.
- *Larger pool of potential workers*. In the last decade, the population has shifted westward to the area near the new facility. As a result, we would increase our potential workforce in both the semiskilled and the managerial categories by relocating.

— If the list consists of two kinds of items — phrases and complete sentences — capitalize each item and end it with a period.

The new facility will offer three advantages:

- Lower leasing costs.
- Shorter commuting distance. Our workers' average commute of 18 minutes would drop to 14 minutes.
- Larger pool of potential workers. In the last decade, the population has shifted westward to the area near the new facility. As a result, we would increase our potential workforce in both the semiskilled and the managerial categories by relocating.

In most lists, the second and subsequent lines, called turnovers, align under the first letter of the first line, highlighting the bullet or number to the left of the text. This hanging indentation helps the reader see and understand the organization of the passage.

CHOOSE AN APPROPRIATE SENTENCE LENGTH

Sometimes, sentence length affects the quality of the writing. In general, an average of 15 to 20 words per sentence is effective for most technical communication. A series of 10-word sentences would be choppy. A series of 35-word sentences would probably be too demanding. And a succession of sentences of approximately the same length would be monotonous.

In revising a draft, use your software to compute the average sentence length of a representative passage.

Avoid Overly Long Sentences

How long is too long? There is no simple answer, because ease of reading depends on the vocabulary, sentence structure, and sentence length; the reader's motivation and knowledge of the topic; the purpose of the communication; and the conventions of the application you are using. For instance, you use shorter sentences in tweets and text messages than in reports.

Often, a draft will include sentences such as the following:

> The construction of the new facility is scheduled to begin in March, but it might be delayed by one or even two months by winter weather conditions, which can make it impossible or nearly impossible to begin excavating the foundation.

To avoid creating such long sentences, say one thing clearly and simply before moving on to the next idea. For instance, to make this difficult 40-word sentence easier to read, divide it into two sentences:

> The construction of the new facility is scheduled to begin in March. However, construction might be delayed until April or even May by winter weather conditions, which can make it impossible or nearly impossible to begin excavating the foundation.

Sometimes, an overly long sentence can be fixed by creating a list.

Avoid Overly Short Sentences

Just as sentences can be too long, they can also be too short and choppy, as in the following example:

> Customarily, environmental cleanups are conducted on a “time-and-materials” (T&M) basis. Using the T&M basis, the contractor performs the work. Then the contractor bills for the hours worked and the cost of equipment and materials used during the work. With the T&M approach, spending for environmental cleanups by private and government entities has been difficult to contain. Also, actual contamination reduction has been slow.

The problem here is that some of the sentences are choppy and contain too little information, calling readers’ attention to how the sentences are constructed rather than to what the sentences say. In cases like this, the best way to revise is to combine sentences:

> Customarily, environmental cleanups are conducted on a “time-and-materials” (T&M) basis: the contractor performs the work, then bills for the hours worked and the cost of equipment and materials. With the T&M approach, spending for environmental cleanups by private and government entities has been difficult to contain, and contamination reduction has been slow.

Another problem with excessively short sentences is that they needlessly repeat key terms. Again, consider combining sentences:

SLUGGISH	I have experience working with various *microprocessor-based systems*. Some of these *microprocessor-based systems* include the T90, RCA 9600, and AIM 7600.
BETTER	I have experience working with various microprocessor-based systems, including the T90, RCA 9600, and AIM 7600.

FOCUS ON THE “REAL” SUBJECT

The conceptual, or “real,” subject of the sentence should also be the grammatical subject. Don’t disguise or bury the real subject in a prepositional phrase following a weak grammatical subject. In the following examples, the weak subjects obscure the real subjects. (The grammatical subjects are italicized.)

WEAK	The *use* of this method would eliminate the problem of motor damage.
STRONG	This *method* would eliminate the problem of motor damage.

WEAK	The *presence* of a six-membered lactone ring was detected.
STRONG	A six-membered lactone *ring* was detected.

In revising a draft, look for the real subject (the topic) and ask yourself whether the sentence would be more effective if the real subject was also the grammatical subject. Sometimes, all that is necessary is to ask yourself this question: *What is the topic of this sentence?* The author of the first example above wasn't trying to say something about *using* a method; she was trying to say something about the method itself. Likewise, in the second example, it wasn't the *presence* of a lactone ring that was detected; rather, the lactone ring itself was detected.

Another way to make the subject of the sentence prominent is to reduce the number of grammatical expletives. *Expletives* are words that serve a grammatical function in a sentence but have no meaning. The most common expletives are *it* (generally followed by *is*) and *there* (generally followed by *is* or *are*).

WEAK	There is no alternative for us except to withdraw the product.
STRONG	We have no alternative except to withdraw the product.

WEAK	It is hoped that testing the evaluation copies of the software will help us make this decision.
STRONG	We hope that testing the evaluation copies of the software will help us make this decision.

The second example uses the expletive *it* with the passive voice. The problem is that the sentence does not make clear who is doing the hoping.

Expletives are not errors. Rather, they are conversational expressions that can clarify meaning by emphasizing the information that follows them.

WITH THE EXPLETIVE	It is hard to say whether the downturn will last more than a few months.
WITHOUT THE EXPLETIVE	Whether the downturn will last more than a few months is hard to say.

The second version is harder to understand because the reader has to remember a long subject (*Whether the downturn will last more than a few months*) before getting to the verb (*is*). Fortunately, you can revise the sentence in other ways to make it easier to understand and to eliminate the expletive.

> I don't know whether the downturn will last more than a few months.
> Nobody knows whether the downturn will last more than a few months.

Use the search function of your word processor to locate both weak subjects (usually they precede the word *of*) and expletives (search for *it is, there is,* and *there are*).

FOCUS ON THE "REAL" VERB

A “real” verb, like a “real” subject, should stand out in every sentence. A common problem in technical communication is the inappropriate use of a *nominalized* verb — a verb that has been changed into a noun, then coupled with a weaker verb. *To install* becomes *to effect an installation; to analyze* becomes *to conduct an analysis*. Notice how nominalizing the verbs makes the following sentences both awkward and unnecessarily long (the nominalized verbs are italicized).

WEAK	Each *preparation* of the solution is done twice.
STRONG	Each solution is prepared twice.

WEAK	*Consideration* should be given to an acquisition of the properties.
STRONG	We should consider acquiring the properties.

Like expletives, nominalizations are not errors. In fact, many common nouns are nominalizations: *maintenance, requirement*, and *analysis*, for example. In addition, nominalizations often effectively summarize an idea from a previous sentence (in italics below).

> The telephone-service provider decided not to replace the land lines that were damaged in the recent storm. This *decision* could prove a real problem for those residents who used land lines to connect to the internet and for their medical-alert services.

Some software programs search for common nominalizations. With any word processor, however, you can identify most of them by searching for character strings such as *tion*, *ment*, *sis*, *ence*, *ing*, and *ance*, as well as the word *of*.

USE PARALLEL STRUCTURE

A sentence is parallel if its coordinate elements follow the same grammatical form: for example, all the clauses are either passive or active, all the verbs are either infinitives or participles, and so on. Parallel structure creates a recognizable pattern, making a sentence easier for the reader to follow. Nonparallel structure creates no such pattern, distracting and possibly confusing readers. In the following examples of nonparallel constructions, the verbs are not in the same form (verbs are italicized).

NONPARALLEL	Our present system *is costing* us profits and *reduces* our productivity.
PARALLEL	Our present system *is costing* us profits and *reducing* our productivity.

NONPARALLEL	The compositor *should follow* the printed directions; *do not change* the originator’s work.
PARALLEL	The compositor *should follow* the printed directions and *should not change* the originator’s work.

When using parallel constructions, make sure that parallel items in a series do not overlap, causing confusion or even changing the meaning of the sentence:

CONFUSING	The speakers will include partners of law firms, businesspeople, and civic leaders. *Partners of* appears to apply to *businesspeople* and *civic leaders*, as well as to *law firms*. That is, *partners of* carries over to the other items in the series. The following revision solves the problem by rearranging the items so that *partners* can apply only to *law firms*.
CLEAR	The speakers will include businesspeople, civic leaders, and partners of law firms.

CONFUSING	We need to buy more lumber, hardware, tools, and hire the subcontractors. The writer has linked two ideas inappropriately. The first idea is that we need to buy three things: lumber, hardware, and tools. The second is that we need to hire the subcontractors. Hiring is not in the same category as the items to be bought. In other words, the writer has structured and punctuated the sentence as if it contained a four-item series, when in fact it should contain a three-item series followed by a second verb phrase.

CLEAR	We need to buy more lumber, hardware, and tools, and we need to hire the subcontractors.

USE MODIFIERS EFFECTIVELY

Modifiers are words, phrases, and clauses that describe other elements in the sentence. To make your meaning clear, you must indicate whether a modifier provides necessary information about the word or phrase it refers to (its *antecedent*) or whether it simply provides additional information. You must also clearly identify the antecedent — the element in the sentence that the modifier is describing or otherwise referring to.

Distinguish Between Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Modifiers

As the term implies, a *restrictive modifier* restricts the meaning of its antecedent; it provides information that the reader needs to identify the antecedent and is, therefore, crucial to understanding the sentence. Notice that restrictive modifiers — italicized in the following examples — are not set off by commas:

> The airplanes *used in the exhibitions* are slightly modified.
>
> The modifying phrase *used in the exhibitions* identifies which airplanes the writer is referring to. Presumably, there are at least two groups of airplanes: those that are used in the exhibitions and those that are not. The restrictive modifier tells readers which of the two groups is being discussed.

> Please disregard the notice *you recently received from us.*
>
> The modifying phrase *you recently received from us* identifies which notice. Without it, the sentence could be referring to one of any number of notices.

In most cases, the restrictive modifier doesn't require a relative pronoun, such as *that,* but you can choose to use the pronoun *that* (or *who,* for people):

> Please disregard the notice *that* you recently received from us.

A *nonrestrictive modifier* does not restrict the meaning of its antecedent: the reader does not need the information to identify what the modifier is describing or referring to. If you omit the nonrestrictive modifier, the basic sentence retains its primary meaning.

> The Hubble telescope*, intended to answer fundamental questions about the origin of the universe,* was last repaired in 2009.
> Here, the basic sentence is *The Hubble telescope was last repaired in 2009.* Removing the modifier doesn't change the meaning of the basic sentence.

If you use a relative pronoun with a nonrestrictive modifier, choose *which* (or *who* or *whom* for a person).

> Go to the Registration Area*, which is located on the second floor*.

Use commas to separate a nonrestrictive modifier from the rest of the sentence. In the example about the Hubble telescope, a pair of commas encloses the nonrestrictive modifier and separates it from the rest of the sentence. In that respect, the commas function much like parentheses, indicating that the modifying information is parenthetical. In the example about the Registration Area, the comma indicates that the modifying information is tacked on at the end of the sentence as additional information.

Avoid Misplaced Modifiers

The placement of the modifier often determines the meaning of the sentence, as the placement of *only* in the following sentences illustrates:

> *Only* Turner received a cost-of-living increase last year.
> Meaning: Nobody else received one.
>
> Turner received *only* a cost-of-living increase last year.
> Meaning: He didn’t receive a merit increase.
>
> Turner received a cost-of-living increase *only* last year.
> Meaning: He received a cost-of-living increase as recently as last year.
>
> Turner received a cost-of-living increase last year *only*.
> Meaning: He received a cost-of-living increase in no other year.

Misplaced modifiers — those that appear to modify the wrong antecedent — are a common problem. Usually, the best solution is to place the modifier as close as possible to its intended antecedent.

MISPLACED	The subject of the meeting is the future of geothermal energy *in the downtown Webster Hotel*.
CORRECT	The subject of the meeting *in the downtown Webster Hotel* is the future of geothermal

	energy.

A *squinting modifier* falls ambiguously between two possible antecedents, so the reader cannot tell which one is being modified:

UNCLEAR	We decided *immediately* to purchase the new system. Did we decide immediately, or did we decide to make the purchase immediately?
CLEAR	We *immediately* decided to purchase the new system.
CLEAR	We decided to purchase the new system *immediately*.

A subtle form of misplaced modification can also occur with *correlative constructions*, such as *either … or, neither … nor,* and *not only … but also*:

MISPLACED	The new refrigerant *not only decreases* energy costs *but also* spoilage losses.

Here, the writer is implying that the refrigerant does at least two things to energy costs: it decreases them and then does something else to them. Unfortunately, that’s not how the sentence unfolds. The second thing the refrigerant does to energy costs never appears.

CORRECT	The new refrigerant *decreases not only* energy costs *but also* spoilage losses.

In the revised sentence, the phrase *decreases not only* implies that at least two things will be decreased, and as the sentence develops that turns out to be the case. *Decreases* applies to both *energy costs* and *spoilage losses*. Therefore, the first half of the correlative construction (*not only*) follows the verb (*decreases*). Note that if the sentence contains two different verbs, each half of the correlative construction precedes a verb:

> The new refrigerant *not only decreases* energy costs *but also reduces* spoilage losses.

Avoid Dangling Modifiers

A *dangling modifier* has no antecedent in the sentence and can therefore be unclear:

DANGLING	Trying to solve the problem, the instructions seemed unclear.

This sentence says that the instructions are trying to solve the problem. To correct the sentence, rewrite it, adding the clarifying information either within the modifier or next to it:

CORRECT	As I was trying to solve the problem, the instructions seemed unclear.

CORRECT	Trying to solve the problem, I thought the instructions seemed unclear.

Sometimes, you can correct a dangling modifier by switching from the *indicative mood* (a statement of fact) to the *imperative mood* (a request or command):

DANGLING	To initiate the procedure, the BEGIN button should be pushed. (indicative mood)
CORRECT	To initiate the procedure, push the BEGIN button. (imperative mood)

Choosing the Right Words and Phrases

This section discusses four principles that will help you use the right words and phrases in the right places: select an appropriate level of formality, be clear and specific, be concise, and use inoffensive language.

SELECT AN APPROPRIATE LEVEL OF FORMALITY

Although no standard definition of levels of formality exists, most experts would agree that there are three levels:

INFORMAL	The Acorn 560 is a real screamer. With 5.5 GHz of pure computing power, it slashes through even the thickest spreadsheets before you can say 2 + 2 = 4.
MODERATELY FORMAL	With its 5.5-GHz microprocessor, the Acorn 560 can handle even the most complicated spreadsheets quickly.
HIGHLY FORMAL	With a 5.5-GHz microprocessor, the Acorn 560 is a high-speed personal computer appropriate for computation-intensive applications such as large, complex spreadsheets.

Technical communication usually requires a moderately formal or highly formal style.

To achieve the appropriate level and tone, think about your audience, your subject, and your purpose:

For more about writing to a multicultural audience, see the Guidelines box “Writing for Readers from Other Cultures,” Ch. 4, p. 67.

- **Audience.** You would probably write more formally to a group of retired executives than to a group of college students. You would likewise write more formally to the company vice president than to your co-workers, and you would probably write more formally to people from most other cultures than to people from your own.
- **Subject.** You would write more formally about a serious subject — safety regulations or important projects — than about plans for an office party.
- **Purpose.** You would write more formally in presenting quarterly economic results to shareholders than in responding to an email requesting sales figures on one of the company’s products.

In general, it is better to err on the side of formality. Avoid an informal style in any writing you do at the office, for two reasons:

- **Informal writing tends to be imprecise.** In the example “The Acorn 560 is a real screamer,” what exactly is a *screamer*?
- **Informal writing can be embarrassing.** If your boss spots your email to a colleague, you might wish it didn’t begin, “ ’Sup, dawg?”

BE CLEAR

Follow these seven guidelines to make your writing clear:

- Use active and passive voice appropriately.
- Be specific.
- Avoid unnecessary jargon.
- Use positive constructions.
- Avoid long noun strings.
- Avoid clichés.
- Avoid euphemisms.

USE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE APPROPRIATELY

In a sentence using the active voice, the subject performs the action expressed by the verb: the “doer” of the action is the grammatical subject. By contrast, in a sentence using the passive voice, the recipient of the action is the grammatical subject. Compare the following examples (the subjects are italicized):

ACTIVE	*Dave Brushaw* drove the launch vehicle. The doer of the action is the subject of the sentence.
PASSIVE	The launch *vehicle* was driven by Dave Brushaw. The recipient of the action is the subject of the sentence.

In most cases, the active voice works better than the passive voice because it emphasizes the *agent* (the doer of the action). An active-voice sentence also is shorter because it does not require a form of the verb *to be* and the past participle, as a passive-voice sentence does. In the active version of the example sentence, the verb is *drove* rather than *was driven,* and the word *by* does not appear.

The passive voice, however, is generally better in these four cases:

1. When the agent is clear from the context:
   Students are required to take both writing courses.
   Here, the context makes it clear that the college sets the requirements.
2. When the agent is unknown:
   The comet was first referred to in an ancient Egyptian text.
   We don't know who wrote this text.
3. When the agent is less important than the action:
   The blueprints were hand-delivered this morning.
   It doesn't matter who the messenger was.
4. When a reference to the agent is embarrassing, dangerous, or in some other way inappropriate:

   Incorrect figures were recorded for the flow rate.

   It might be unwise or tactless to specify who recorded the incorrect figures. Perhaps it was your boss. However, it is unethical to use the passive voice to avoid responsibility for an action.

   > *For more about ethics, see Ch. 2.*

   The passive voice can also help you maintain the focus of your paragraph.

   Cloud computing offers three major advantages. First, the need for server space is reduced. Second, security updates are installed automatically …

Some people believe that the active voice is inappropriate in technical communication because it emphasizes the person who does the work rather than the work itself, making the writing less objective. In many cases, this objection is valid. Why write “I analyzed the sample for traces of iodine” if there is no ambiguity about who did the analysis or no need to identify who did it? The passive focuses on the action, not the actor: “The samples were analyzed for traces of iodine.” But if in doubt, use the active voice.

Other people argue that the passive voice produces a double ambiguity. In the sentence “The samples were analyzed for traces of iodine,” the reader is not quite sure who did the analysis (the writer or someone else) or when it was done (during the project or some time previously). Identifying the actor can often clarify both ambiguities.

The best approach is to recognize that the two voices differ and to use each one where it is most effective.

Many grammar-checkers can help you locate the passive voice. Some of them will advise you that the passive is undesirable, almost an error, but this advice is misleading. Use the passive voice when it works better than the active voice for your purposes.

Any word processor allows you to search for the forms of *to be* used most commonly in passive-voice expressions: *is*, *are*, *was*, and *were*. You can also search for *ed* to isolate past participles (for example, *purchased*, *implemented*, and *delivered*); such past participles appear in most passive-voice constructions.

Be Specific

Being specific involves using precise words, providing adequate detail, and avoiding ambiguity.

- **Use precise words.** A Ford Focus is an automobile, but it is also a vehicle, a machine, and a thing. In describing the Focus, *automobile* is better than the less specific *vehicle*, because *vehicle* can also refer to pickup trucks, trains, hot-air balloons, and other means of transport. As words become more abstract — from *machine* to *thing*, for instance — chances for misunderstanding increase.
- **Provide adequate detail.** Readers probably know less about your subject than you do. What might be perfectly clear to you might be too vague for them.

VAGUE	An engine on the plane experienced some difficulties. Which engine? What plane? What kinds of difficulties?
CLEAR	The left engine on the Cessna 310 temporarily lost power during flight.

- **Avoid ambiguity.** Don't let readers wonder which of two meanings you are trying to convey.

AMBIGUOUS	After stirring by hand for 10 seconds, add three drops of the iodine mixture to the solution.

	After stirring the iodine mixture or the solution?
CLEAR	Stir the iodine mixture by hand for 10 seconds. Then add three drops to the solution.
CLEAR	Stir the solution by hand for 10 seconds. Then add three drops of the iodine mixture.

If you don't have the specific data, you should approximate — and clearly tell readers you are doing so — or explain why the specific data are unavailable and indicate when they will be available:

> The fuel leakage is much greater than we had anticipated; we estimate it to be at least 5 gallons per minute, not 2.

> The fuel leakage is much greater than we had anticipated; we expect to have specific data by 4 P.M. today.

Avoid Unnecessary Jargon

Jargon is shoptalk. To an audiophile, *LP* is a long-playing record; to an engineer, it is liquid propane; to a guitarist, it is a Gibson Les Paul model; to a physician, it is a lumbar puncture; to a drummer, it is Latin Percussion, a drum maker.

Jargon is often ridiculed; many dictionaries define it as "writing that one does not understand" or "nonsensical, incoherent, or meaningless talk." However, jargon is useful in its proper sphere. For one thing, jargon enables members of a particular profession to communicate clearly and economically with one another.

If you are addressing a technically knowledgeable audience, use jargon recognized in that field. However, keep in mind that technical documents often have many audiences in addition to the primary audience. When in doubt, avoid jargon; use more common expressions or simpler terms.

Using jargon inappropriately is inadvisable for four reasons:

- **It can be imprecise.** If you ask a co-worker to review a document and provide *feedback*, are you asking for a facial expression, body language, a phone call, or a written evaluation?
- **It can be confusing.** If you ask a computer novice to *cold swap the drive*, he or she might have no idea what you're talking about.
- **It is often seen as condescending.** Many readers will react as if you were showing off — displaying a level of expertise that excludes them. If readers feel alienated, they will likely miss your message.
- **It is often intimidating.** People might feel inadequate or stupid because they do not know what you are talking about. Obviously, this reaction undermines communication.

Use Positive Constructions

The term *positive construction* has nothing to do with being cheerful. It indicates that the writer is describing what something is instead of what it is not. In the sentence "I was sad to see this project completed," "sad" is a positive construction. The negative construction would be "not happy."

Here are a few more examples of positive and negative constructions:

Positive construction	Negative construction

most	not all
few	not many
on time	not late, not delayed
positive	not negative
inefficient	not efficient
reject	cannot accept
impossible	not possible

Readers understand positive constructions more quickly and more easily than negative constructions. Consider the following examples:

DIFFICULT	Because the team did not have sufficient time to complete the project, it was unable to produce a satisfactory report.
SIMPLER	Because the team had too little time to complete the project, it produced an unsatisfactory report.

Avoid Long Noun Strings

A noun string contains a series of nouns (or nouns, adjectives, and adverbs), all of which together modify the last noun. For example, in the phrase *parking-garage regulations*, the first pair of words modifies *regulations*. Noun strings save time, and if your readers understand them, they are fine. It is easier to write *passive-restraint system* than *a system that uses passive restraints*.

For more about hyphens, see Appendix, Part B, p. 486.

Hyphens can clarify noun strings by linking words that go together. For example, in the phrase *flat-panel monitor*, the hyphen links *flat* and *panel*. Together they modify *monitor*. In other words, it is not a *flat panel* or a *panel monitor*, but a *flat-panel monitor*. However, noun strings are sometimes so long or so complex that hyphens can't ensure clarity. To clarify a long noun string, untangle the phrases and restore prepositions, as in the following example:

UNCLEAR	preregistration procedures instruction sheet update
CLEAR	an update of the instruction sheet for preregistration procedures

Noun strings can sometimes be ambiguous — they can have two or more plausible meanings, leaving readers to guess at which meaning you're trying to convey.

AMBIGUOUS	The building contains a special incoming materials storage area. What's special? Are the incoming materials special? Or is the area they're stored in special?
UNAMBIGUOUS	The building contains a special area for storing incoming materials.
UNAMBIGUOUS	The building contains an area for storing special incoming materials.

An additional danger is that noun strings can sometimes sound pompous. If you are writing about a simple smoke detector, there is no reason to call it a *smoke-detection device* or, worse, a *smoke-detection system*.

Avoid Clichés

Good writing is original and fresh. Rather than use a cliché, say what you want to say in plain English. Current clichés include *pushing the envelope*; *synergy*; *mission critical*; *bleeding edge*; *paradigm shift*; and *been there, done that*. The best advice is to avoid clichés: if you are used to hearing or reading a phrase, don't use it. Jimi Hendrix was a rock star; the Employee of the Month sitting in the next cubicle isn't. Don't think outside the box, pick low-hanging fruit, leverage your assets, bring your "A" game, be a change agent, raise the bar, throw anyone under a bus, be proactive, put lipstick on a pig, or give 110 percent. And you can assume that everyone already knows that it is what it is.

Avoid Euphemisms

A euphemism is a polite way of saying something that makes people uncomfortable. For instance, a near miss between two airplanes is officially an "air proximity incident." The more uncomfortable the subject, the more often people resort to euphemisms. Dozens of euphemisms deal with drinking, bathrooms, sex, and death. Here are several euphemisms for firing someone:

personnel-surplus reduction	dehiring
workforce-imbalance correction	decruiting
rightsizing	redundancy elimination

indefinite idling	career-change-opportunity creation
downsizing	permanent furloughing
administrative streamlining	personnel realignment
synergy-related headcount restructuring	

ETHICS NOTE

EUPHEMISMS AND TRUTH TELLING

There is nothing wrong with using the euphemism *restroom*, even though few people visit one to rest. The British use the phrase *go to the toilet* in polite company, and nobody seems to mind. In this case, if you want to use a euphemism, no harm done.

But it is unethical to use a euphemism to gloss over an issue that has important implications for people or the environment. People get uncomfortable when discussing layoffs — and they should. It's an uncomfortable issue. But calling a layoff a *redundancy elimination initiative* ought to make you even more uncomfortable. Don't use language to cloud reality. It's an ethical issue.

BE CONCISE

The following five principles can help you write concise technical documents:

- Avoid obvious statements.
- Avoid filler.
- Avoid unnecessary prepositional phrases.
- Avoid wordy phrases.
- Avoid fancy words.

Avoid Obvious Statements

Writing can become sluggish if it overexplains. The italicized words in the following example are sluggish:

SLUGGISH	The market for *the sale of* flash memory chips is dominated by *two chip manufacturers*: Intel and Advanced Micro Systems. These two *chip manufacturers* are responsible for 76 percent of the $1.3 billion market *in flash memory chips* last year.
IMPROVED	The market for flash memory chips is dominated by Intel and Advanced Micro Systems, two companies that claimed 76 percent of the $1.3 billion industry last year.

Avoid Filler

In our writing, we sometimes use filler, much of which is more suited to speech. Consider the following examples:

basically	kind of
certain	rather
essentially	sort of

Such words are common in oral communication, when we need to think fast, but they are meaningless in writing.

BLOATED	*I think that*, *basically*, the board felt *sort of* betrayed, *in a sense*, by the *kind of* behavior the

	president displayed.
BETTER	The board felt betrayed by the president's behavior.

But modifiers are not always meaningless. For instance, it might be wise to use *I think* or *it seems to me* to show that you are aware of other views.

BLUNT	Next year we will face unprecedented challenges to our market dominance.
LESS BLUNT	In my view, next year we will face unprecedented challenges to our market dominance.

Of course, a sentence that sounds blunt to one reader can sound self-confident to another. As you write, keep your audience's preferences and expectations in mind.

Other fillers include redundant expressions, such as *collaborate together, past history, end result, any and all, still remain, completely eliminate*, and *very unique*. Say it once.

REDUNDANT	This project would not have succeeded if not for the *hard work and considerable effort* of *each and every one* of the auditors assigned to the project.
BETTER	This project would not have succeeded if not for the *hard work* of *every one* of the auditors assigned to the project.

Avoid Unnecessary Prepositional Phrases

A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition followed by a noun or a noun equivalent, such as *in the summary, on the engine*, and *under the heading*. Unnecessary prepositional phrases, often used along with abstract nouns and nominalizations, can make your writing long and boring.

LONG	The increase *in* the number *of* students enrolled *in* the materials-engineering program *at* Lehigh University is suggestive *of* the regard *in* which that program is held *by* the university's new students.
SHORTER	The increased enrollment in Lehigh University's materials-engineering program suggests that the university's new students consider it a good program.

Avoid Wordy Phrases

Wordy phrases also make writing long and boring. For example, some people write *on a daily basis* rather than *daily*. The long phrase may sound more important, but *daily* says the same thing more concisely.

Table 6.2 lists common wordy phrases and their more concise equivalents.

TABLE 6.2 Wordy Phrases and Their Concise Equivalents

WORDY PHRASE	CONCISE PHRASE	WORDY PHRASE	CONCISE PHRASE
a majority of	most	in the event that	if
a number of	some, many	in view of the fact	because

		that	
at an early date	soon	it is often the case that	often
at the conclusion of	after, following	it is our opinion that	we think that
at the present time	now	it is our recommendation that	we recommend that
at this point in time	now	it is our understanding that	we understand that
based on the fact that	because	make reference to	refer to
check out	check	of the opinion that	think that
despite the fact that	although	on a daily basis	daily
due to the fact that	because	on the grounds that	because
during the course of	during	prior to	before
during the time that	during, while	relative to	regarding, about
have the capability to	can	so as to	to
in connection with	about, concerning	subsequent to	after
in order to	to	take into consideration	consider
in regard to	regarding, about	until such time as	until

Compare the following wordy sentence and its concise translation:

WORDY	I am of the opinion that, in regard to profit

	achievement, the statistics pertaining to this month will appear to indicate an upward tendency.
CONCISE	I think this month’s statistics will show an increase in profits.

AVOID FANCY WORDS

Writers sometimes think they will impress their readers by using fancy words — *utilize* for *use, initiate* for *begin, perform* for *do, due to* for *because of,* and *prioritize* for *rank*. In technical communication, plain talk is best. Compare the following fancy sentence with its plain-English version:

FANCY	The purchase of a database program will enhance our record-maintenance capabilities.
PLAIN	Buying a database program will help us maintain our records.

Table 6.3 lists commonly used fancy words and their plain equivalents.

TABLE 6.3 Fancy Words and their Plain Equivalents

FANCY WORD	PLAIN WORD	FANCY WORD	PLAIN WORD
advise	tell	herein	here
ascertain	learn, find out	impact (verb)	affect
attempt (verb)	try	initiate	begin
commence	start, begin	manifest (verb)	show
demonstrate	show	parameters	variables, conditions

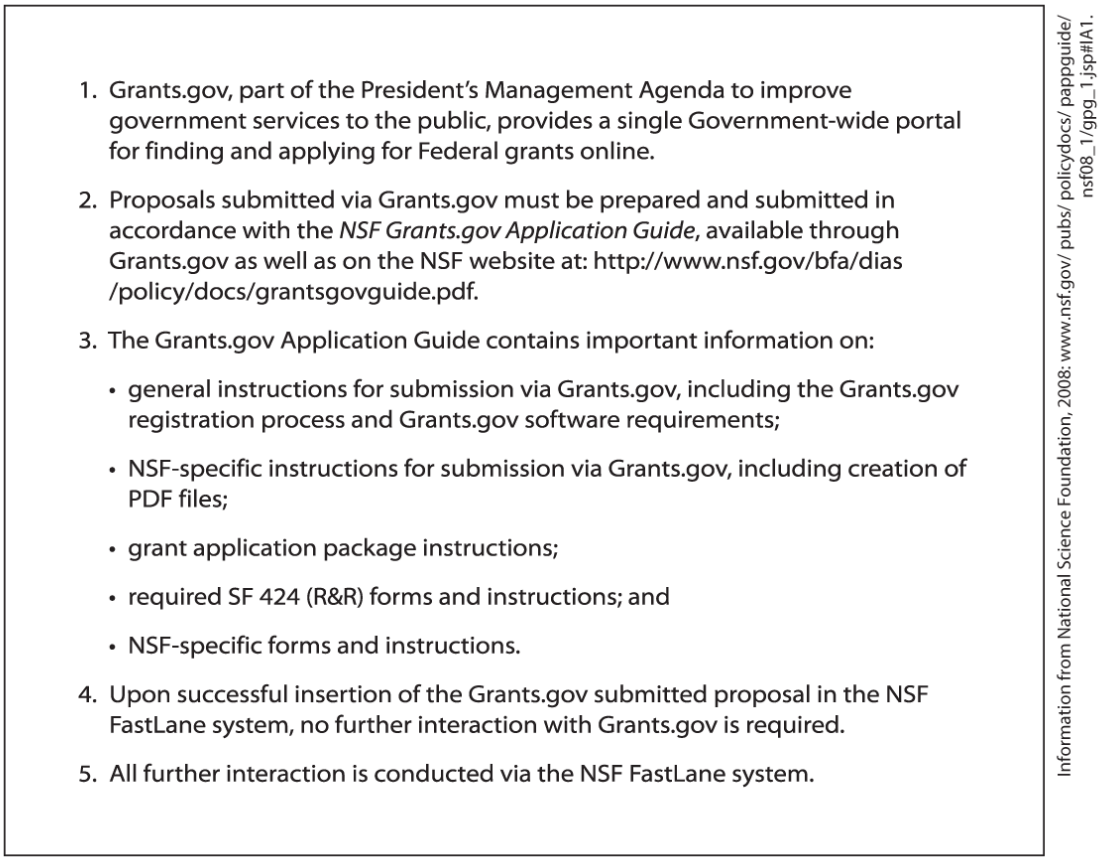
due to	because of	perform	do
employ (verb)	use	prioritize	rank
endeavor (verb)	try	procure	get, buy
eventuate	happen	quantify	measure
evidence (verb)	show	terminate	end, stop
finalize	end, settle, agree, finish	utilize	use
furnish	provide, give		

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Revising for Conciseness and Simplicity

The following passage is from a request for proposals published by the National Science Foundation. (Sentence numbers have been added here.) The questions below ask you to think about word choice (as discussed on pp. 135–44).

1. This passage contains many prepositional phrases. Identify two of them. For each one, determine whether its use is justified or whether the sentence would be easier to understand if it were eliminated.
2. Part of this passage is written in the passive voice. Select one sentence in the passive voice that would be clearer in the active voice, and rewrite it in the active voice.
3. This passage contains a number of examples of fancy words. Identify two of them. How can they be translated into plain English?



1. Grants.gov, part of the President's Management Agenda to improve government services to the public, provides a single Government-wide portal for finding and applying for Federal grants online.
2. Proposals submitted via Grants.gov must be prepared and submitted in accordance with the *NSF Grants.gov Application Guide*, available through Grants.gov as well as on the NSF website at: http://www.nsf.gov/bfa/dias /policy/docs/grantsgovguide.pdf.
3. The Grants.gov Application Guide contains important information on:
   - general instructions for submission via Grants.gov, including the Grants.gov registration process and Grants.gov software requirements;
   - NSF-specific instructions for submission via Grants.gov, including creation of PDF files;
   - grant application package instructions;
   - required SF 424 (R&R) forms and instructions; and
   - NSF-specific forms and instructions.
4. Upon successful insertion of the Grants.gov submitted proposal in the NSF FastLane system, no further interaction with Grants.gov is required.
5. All further interaction is conducted via the NSF FastLane system.

Information from National Science Foundation, 2008: www.nsf.gov/ pubs/ policydocs/ pappguide/ nsf08_1/gpg_1.jsp#IA1.

Information from National Science Foundation, 2008: www.nsf.gov/pubs/policydocs/pappguide/nsf08_1/gpg_1.jsp#IA1.

USE INOFFENSIVE LANGUAGE

Writing to avoid offense is not merely a matter of politeness; it is a matter of perception. Language reflects attitudes, but it also helps to form attitudes. Writing inoffensively is one way to break down stereotypes. After writing, consider inviting a classmate or colleague to review your work for unintentional language that may have racist, sexist, ableist, or other negative overtones. It is the responsibility of business and technical communicators to ensure that their writing is free of harmful language.

Gender-Neutral Language

Sexist language can include writing that relies only on male pronouns (*he, him, his*) as well as attributing specific professions to specific genders, such as only referring to doctors as men and nurses as women. In addition, using exclusively male or female pronouns can be exclusionary to those who do not identify as a binary gender. Solutions can include using the singular *they* if you are writing for a publication or audience that allows you to do so. Alternately, you might rewrite sentences to avoid the use of pronouns that do not refer to specific individuals.

GUIDELINES Avoiding Sexist Language

Follow these four suggestions for writing gender-neutral text.

- **Replace male-gender words with non-gender-specific words**. *Chairman*, for instance, can become *chairperson* or *chair. Firemen* are *firefighters; policemen* are *police officers*.
- **Switch to a different form of the verb.**

SEXIST	The operator must pass rigorous tests before he is promoted.
NONSEXIST	The operator must pass rigorous tests before being promoted.

- **Switch to the plural.**

NONSEXIST	Operators must pass rigorous tests before they are promoted.

Many organizations accept the use of plural pronouns with singular nouns, particularly in memos and other informal documents:

> If an employee wishes to apply for tuition reimbursement, they should consult Section 14.5 of the Employee Manual.

- **Address the reader directly**. Use *you* and *your* or the understood *you*.

[You] Enter the serial number in the first text box.

People-First Language for Referring to People with Disabilities

Almost one in five Americans — some 41 million people — has a physical, sensory, emotional, or mental disability that interferes with daily life (Institute on Disability, 2017). In writing about people with disabilities, use the “people-first” approach: treat the person as someone with a disability, not as someone defined by that disability. The disability is a condition the person has, not what the person is.

GUIDELINES Using the People-First Approach

When writing about people with disabilities, follow these five guidelines, which are based on Snow (2009).

- **Refer to the person first, the disability second**. Write *people with intellectual disability*, not *intellectually disabled people*.
- **Don’t confuse *handicap* with *disability***. *Disability* refers to the condition; *handicap* refers to the interaction between the person and the environment. A person can have a disability without being handicapped.
- **Don’t refer to victimization**. Write *a person with AIDS*, not *an AIDS victim* or *an AIDS sufferer*.
- **Don’t refer to a person as *wheelchair bound* or *confined to a wheelchair***. People who use wheelchairs to get around are not confined.
- **Don’t refer to people with disabilities as abnormal**. Having a disability is part of the normal spectrum of potential human experience.

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

☐ Did you consider using a conventional pattern of organization?

Titles and Headings

Did you revise the title of your document so that it

☐ clearly states the subject and purpose of your document?
☐ is precise and informative?

Did you revise the headings to

☐ avoid long noun strings?
☐ be informative?
☐ use a grammatical form appropriate to your audience?
☐ Did you avoid back-to-back headings by including an advance organizer?

Paragraphs

Did you revise your paragraphs so that each one

☐ begins with a clear topic sentence?
☐ has adequate and appropriate support?
☐ is not too long for readers?

☐ uses coherence devices?

Lists

☐ Is each list of the appropriate kind: numbered, lettered, bulleted, or checklist?
☐ Does each list contain an appropriate number of items and are the items grammatically parallel?
☐ Is the lead-in to each list structured and punctuated properly?
☐ Are the items in each list punctuated properly?

Sentences

☐ Are the sentences structured with the new or important information near the end?
☐ Are the sentences an appropriate length?
☐ Does each sentence focus on the “real” subject?
☐ Does each sentence focus on the “real” verb, without weak nominalizations?
☐ Have you used parallel structure?
☐ Have you used restrictive and nonrestrictive modifiers appropriately?
☐ Have you eliminated misplaced modifiers, squinting modifiers, and dangling modifiers?

Words and Phrases

Did you

☐ select an appropriate level of formality?

☐ use the active and passive voices appropriately?

☐ use precise words and adequate detail?

☐ avoid ambiguity?

☐ avoid unnecessary jargon?

☐ use positive rather than negative constructions?

☐ avoid long noun strings?

☐ avoid clichés?

☐ avoid euphemisms?

☐ avoid unnecessary prepositional phrases?

☐ use the most concise phrases?

☐ avoid fancy words?

☐ use nonsexist language?

☐ use the people-first approach in referring to people with disabilities?

EXERCISES

1. Identify the best organizational pattern for a discussion of each of the subjects that follow. For example, a discussion of distance education and on-campus courses could be organized using the comparison-and-contrast pattern. Write a brief explanation supporting your selection. (Use each of the organizational patterns discussed in this chapter at least once.)

    a. how you propose to reduce the time required to register for classes or to change your schedule
    b. your car’s dashboard
    c. two music-streaming services
    d. increased security in airports
    e. how to prepare for a job interview
2. In a small group, discuss the following questions and rewrite the titles below. Appoint a spokesperson for your group to report back to the class. Questions: How clearly does the title indicate the subject and purpose of the document? In what ways does it fall short of incorporating this chapter’s advice about titles? On the basis of your analysis, rewrite each title.
    a. Recommended Forecasting Techniques for Haldane Company
    b. A Study of Digital Cameras
    c. Agriculture in the West: A 10-Year View
3. Write a one-paragraph evaluation of each of the following headings. How clearly does the heading indicate the subject and purpose of the text that will follow it? In what ways does it fall short of incorporating this chapter’s advice about headings? On the basis of your analysis, rewrite each heading to make it clearer and more informative. Invent any necessary details. Be prepared to share one of your paragraphs with a group.
    a. Multigroup Processing Technique Review Board Report Findings

   b. The Great Depression of 1929
   c. Intensive-Care Nursing
4. Provide a topic sentence for this paragraph.
   The reason for this difference is that a larger percentage of engineers working in small firms may be expected to hold high-level positions. In firms with fewer than 20 engineers, for example, the median income was $62,200. In firms of 20 to 200 engineers, the median income was $60,345. For the largest firms, the median was $58,600.

CASE 6: Emphasizing Important Information in a Technical Description

You and two classmates have been asked to write a technical description of a new 3D printer purchased by the engineering college at your school. Your professor, however, has concerns about the draft you have submitted, and he has outlined those concerns in an email. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to read the email, identify the passages that warrant improvement, and begin revising the technical description for emphasis and coherence.

PART 3

Designing User-Friendly Documents and Websites

Nikada/Getty Images

CHAPTER 7

Designing Print and Online Documents

[Goals of Document Design](#)
[Planning the Design of Print and Online Documents](#)
[Understanding Design Principles](#)
[Designing Print Documents](#)
[Designing Online Documents](#)
[Designing Online Pages](#)
[Combining Print and Online Documents](#)

THE DESIGN OF a print or online document can help a writer achieve many goals: to entertain, to amaze, to intrigue, to sell. In technical communication, the goal is typically to help the reader learn something, perform a task, or accept a point of view. When you look at a well-designed page or screen, you intuitively understand how to use it.

Design refers to the physical appearance of print and online documents. For print documents, design features include binding, page size, typography, and use of color. For online documents, many of the same design elements apply, but there are unique elements, too. On a web page, for instance, there are navigation bars, headers and footers, and (sometimes) tables of contents and site maps.

The effectiveness of a document depends largely on how well it is designed, because readers see the document before they actually read it. In less than a second, the document makes an impression on them, one that might determine how well they read it—or even whether they decide to read it at all.

Goals of Document Design

In designing a document, you have five major goals:

1. **To make a good impression on readers.** Your document should reflect your own professional standards and those of your company.
2. **To help readers understand the structure and organization of the information.** As they navigate a document, readers should know where they are and how to get where they are headed. They should also be able to see the relationship, hierarchical and otherwise, between one piece of information and another.
3. **To help readers locate and access the information they need.** Usually, people don't read every word in a print document, and they don't study every screen of an online document. In print documents, design elements (such as tabs, icons, and color), page design, and typography help readers find the information they need quickly and easily. In online documents, design elements are critically important because readers can see only what is displayed on the screen; without design elements to help them navigate, they are stranded.
4. **To help readers understand the information.** Effective design can clarify information. For instance, designing a set of instructions so that the text describing each step is next to the accompanying graphic makes the instructions easier to understand. An online document with a navigation bar

displaying the main sections is easier to understand than an online document without one.

5. **To help readers remember the information.** An effective design helps readers create a visual image of the information, making it easier to remember. Text boxes, pull quotes, and similar design elements help readers remember important explanations and passages.

Planning the Design of Print and Online Documents

The first step in designing a print or online technical document is planning. Analyze your audience and purpose, and then determine your resources.

GUIDELINES Planning Your Design

Follow these four suggestions as you plan your design.

For more about analyzing your audience and purpose, see Ch. 4.

- ▶ **Analyze your audience.** Consider factors such as your readers' knowledge of the subject, their attitudes, their reasons for reading, the way they will be using the document, and the kinds of tasks they will perform. Think too about your audience's expectations. Readers expect to see certain kinds of information presented in certain ways. Plan to fulfill those expectations. For example, hyperlinks in websites are often emphasized in some fashion and presented in an alternative color.
- ▶ **Consider multicultural readers.** If you are writing for multicultural readers, keep in mind that many aspects of design vary from one culture to another. In memos, letters, reports, and manuals, you may see significant differences in design practice. The best advice, therefore, is to study documents from the culture you are addressing. Look for differences in paper size, text direction, typeface preferences, and color preferences.
- ▶ **Consider your purpose.** For example, if you are creating a website for a new dental office, do you merely want to provide information on the hours and location, or do you also want to present dental information for patients? Let patients set up or change appointments? Ask a question? Each of these purposes affects the site design.
- ▶ **Determine your resources.** Think about your resources of time, money, and equipment. Short, informal documents and websites are usually produced in-house; more-ambitious projects are often subcontracted to specialists. If your organization has a technical-publications department, consult the people there about scheduling

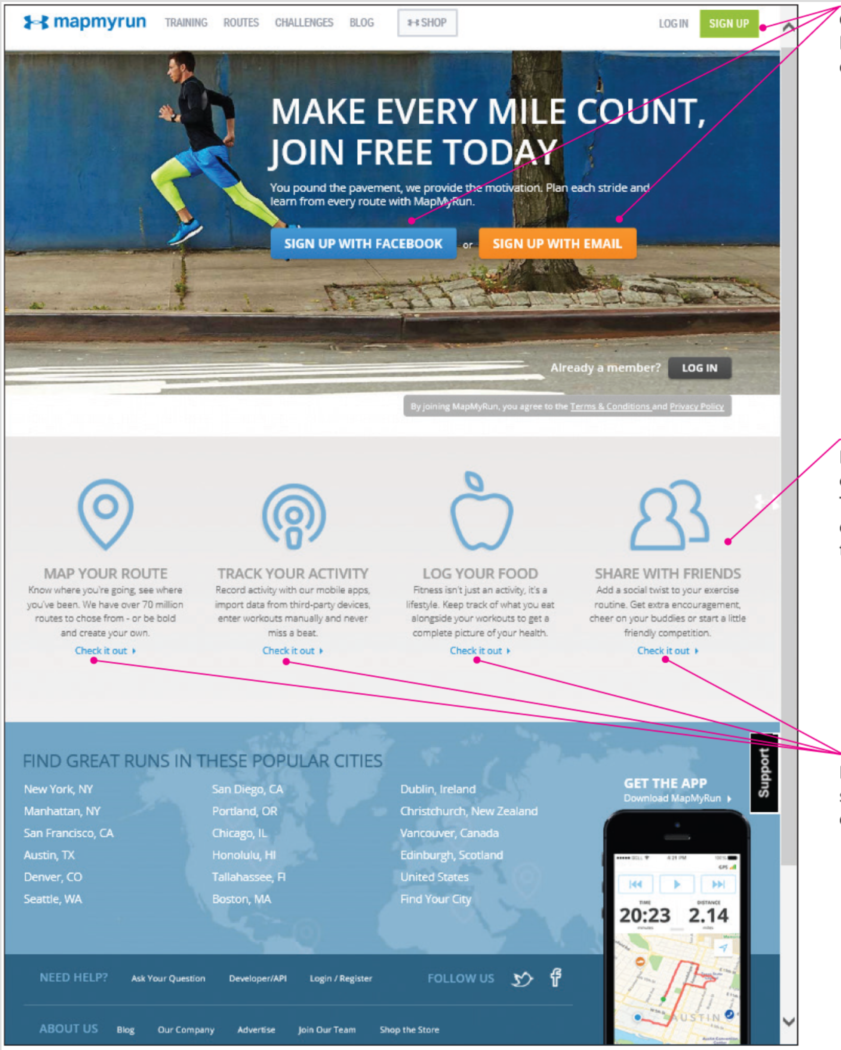
and budgeting. A sophisticated design might require professionals at service bureaus and print shops, and their services can require weeks or months and cost thousands of dollars.

Understanding Design Principles

One of your biggest challenges in thinking about how to design a document is that, more than ever, readers control how the document appears. When they view documents online, through websites, apps, and other kinds of programs, readers can control many aspects of the design, including color and the size, shape, and location of objects on the screen. A significant variable that you have to consider is screen size. Some devices on which your readers will use your document will be as large as big-screen TVs, whereas others will be as small as wrist watches.

In this chapter, the term *print document* will be used to refer to documents that are designed to be printed on paper, such as letters, memos, and reports, regardless of whether readers hold pieces of paper in their hands or view the documents online. The term *online document* will be used to refer to documents that are designed to be used online, through websites, apps, and other software.

Because there are so many different types of print and online documents used in so many different environments by so many different people for so many different purposes, it is impossible to provide detailed advice about “how to design” a technical document. Still, there are some powerful and durable principles that can help you design any kind of print or online document. The following list is based on Robin Williams’s *The Non-designer’s Design Book* (2015), which describes four principles of design: proximity, alignment, repetition, and contrast. All of these principles are illustrated in Figure 7.1 on pages 153–54.


mapmyrun
TRAINING
ROUTES
CHALLENGES
BLOG
SHOP
LOG IN
SIGN UP
SIGN UP WITH FACEBOOK
or
SIGN UP WITH EMAIL
Already a member?
LOG IN
Check it out
Check it out
Check it out
Check it out
Support
GET THE APP
Download MapMyRun
20:23
2.14
NEED HELP?
Ask Your Question
Developer/API
Login / Register
FOLLOW US
ABOUT US
Blog
Our Company
Advertise
Join Our Team
Shop the Store

MAKE EVERY MILE COUNT, JOIN FREE TODAY

You pound the pavement, we provide the motivation. Plan each stride and learn from every route with MapMyRun.

By joining MapMyRun, you agree to the Terms & Conditions and Privacy Policy

MAP YOUR ROUTE

Know where you're going, see where you've been. We have over 70 million routes to chose from - or be bold and create your own.

TRACK YOUR ACTIVITY

Record activity with our mobile apps, import data from third-party devices, enter workouts manually and never miss a beat.

LOG YOUR FOOD

Fitness isn't just an activity, it's a lifestyle. Keep track of what you eat alongside your workouts to get a complete picture of your health.

SHARE WITH FRIENDS

Add a social twist to your exercise routine. Get extra encouragement, cheer on your buddies or start a little friendly competition.

FIND GREAT RUNS IN THESE POPULAR CITIES

New York, NY
Manhattan, NY
San Francisco, CA
Austin, TX
Denver, CO
Seattle, WA
San Diego, CA
Portland, OR
Chicago, IL
Honolulu, HI
Tallahassee, Fl
Boston, MA
Dublin, Ireland
Christchurch, New Zealand
Vancouver, Canada
Edinburgh, Scotland
United States
Find Your City

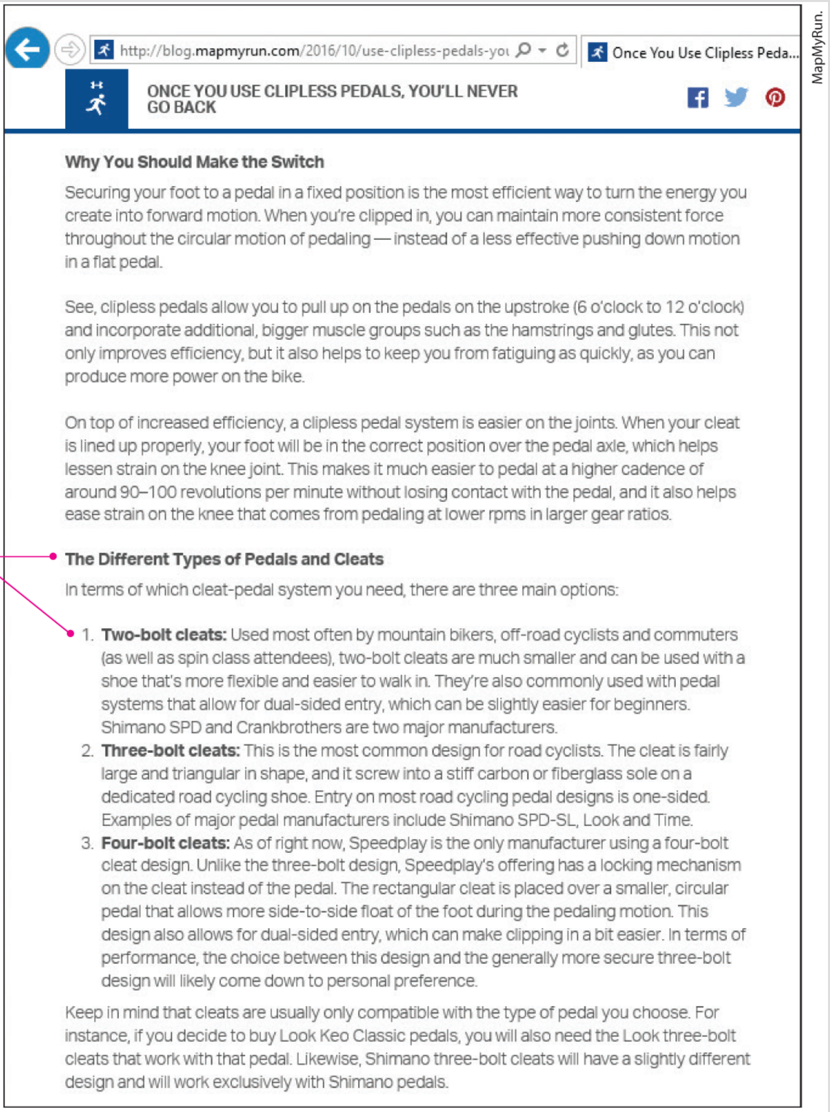
Contrast: Brightly colored buttons highlight the places the web designer wants users to click.

Proximity: Text and graphics are clearly related by their position. The textual descriptions are placed directly below the icons to which they refer.

Repetition: Repeated type styles, sizes, and colors indicate headings, descriptions, and links.

MapMyRun.

FIGURE 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles (continued)


http://blog.mapmyrun.com/2016/10/use-clipless-pedals-yo
Once You Use Clipless Peda...
MapMyRun.

ONCE YOU USE CLIPLESS PEDALS, YOU'LL NEVER GO BACK

Why You Should Make the Switch

Securing your foot to a pedal in a fixed position is the most efficient way to turn the energy you create into forward motion. When you're clipped in, you can maintain more consistent force throughout the circular motion of pedaling — instead of a less effective pushing down motion in a flat pedal.

See, clipless pedals allow you to pull up on the pedals on the upstroke (6 o'clock to 12 o'clock) and incorporate additional, bigger muscle groups such as the hamstrings and glutes. This not only improves efficiency, but it also helps to keep you from fatiguing as quickly, as you can produce more power on the bike.

On top of increased efficiency, a clipless pedal system is easier on the joints. When your cleat is lined up properly, your foot will be in the correct position over the pedal axle, which helps lessen strain on the knee joint. This makes it much easier to pedal at a higher cadence of around 90–100 revolutions per minute without losing contact with the pedal, and it also helps ease strain on the knee that comes from pedaling at lower rpms in larger gear ratios.

The Different Types of Pedals and Cleats

In terms of which cleat-pedal system you need, there are three main options:

1. **Two-bolt cleats:** Used most often by mountain bikers, off-road cyclists and commuters (as well as spin class attendees), two-bolt cleats are much smaller and can be used with a shoe that's more flexible and easier to walk in. They're also commonly used with pedal systems that allow for dual-sided entry, which can be slightly easier for beginners. Shimano SPD and Crankbrothers are two major manufacturers.
2. **Three-bolt cleats:** This is the most common design for road cyclists. The cleat is fairly large and triangular in shape, and it screw into a stiff carbon or fiberglass sole on a dedicated road cycling shoe. Entry on most road cycling pedal designs is one-sided. Examples of major pedal manufacturers include Shimano SPD-SL, Look and Time.
3. **Four-bolt cleats:** As of right now, Speedplay is the only manufacturer using a four-bolt cleat design. Unlike the three-bolt design, Speedplay's offering has a locking mechanism on the cleat instead of the pedal. The rectangular cleat is placed over a smaller, circular pedal that allows more side-to-side float of the foot during the pedaling motion. This design also allows for dual-sided entry, which can make clipping in a bit easier. In terms of performance, the choice between this design and the generally more secure three-bolt design will likely come down to personal preference.

Keep in mind that cleats are usually only compatible with the type of pedal you choose. For instance, if you decide to buy Look Keo Classic pedals, you will also need the Look three-bolt cleats that work with that pedal. Likewise, Shimano three-bolt cleats will have a slightly different design and will work exclusively with Shimano pedals.

Alignment: The writer uses two levels of headings, each reinforced by a different alignment.

FIGURE 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles

Source: MapMyRun, 2017: http://mapymyrun.com.

- **Proximity.** The principle of proximity is simple: if two items appear close to each other, the reader will interpret them as related to each other. If they are far apart, the reader will interpret them as unrelated. Text describing a graphic should be positioned close to the graphic.

- **Alignment.** The principle of alignment says that you should consciously line up text and graphics along a real or imaginary vertical axis so that the reader can understand the relationships among elements.
- **Repetition.** The principle of repetition says that you should format the same kind of information in the same way so that readers can recognize consistent patterns. For example, all first-level headings should have the same typeface, type size, spacing above and below, and so forth. This repetition signals a connection between headings, making the content easier to understand. Other elements that are used to create consistent visual patterns are colors, icons, rules (straight lines), and screens (shaded backgrounds).
- **Contrast.** The principle of contrast says that the human eye is drawn to—and the brain interprets—differences in appearance between two items. For example, the principle of contrast explains why black print is easier to read against a white background than against a dark gray background; why 16-point type stands out more clearly against 8-point type than against 12-point type; and why information printed in a color, such as red, grabs readers’ attention when the information around it is printed in black.

Designing Print Documents

Before you design the individual pages of a printed document, design the overall document. Decide whether to use paper of standard size (8.5 × 11 inches) or another size, choose a grade of paper, and decide how you will bind the pages together. Decide on the navigational elements you will include, such as a table of contents, index, and tabs. You want the different elements to work together to accomplish your objectives, and you want to stay within your budget for producing and (perhaps) shipping. Then think about how to design the document pages.

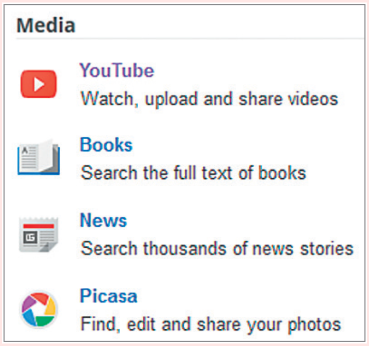
NAVIGATIONAL AIDS

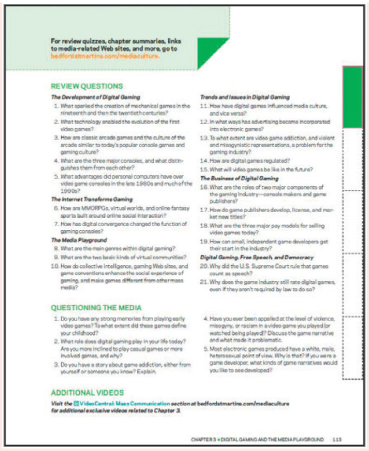
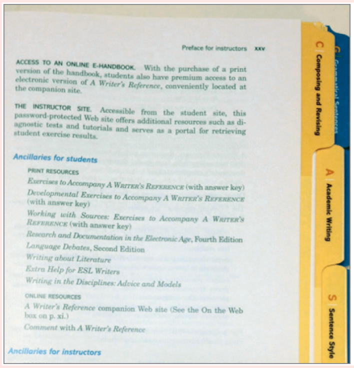
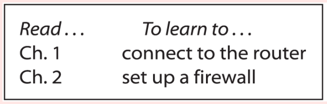
In a well-designed document, readers can easily find the information they seek. Most navigational aids use the design principles of repetition and contrast to help readers navigate the document. The Choices and Strategies table on the next page explains different kinds of navigational aids.

PAGE LAYOUT

Every page has two kinds of space: white space and space devoted to text and graphics. The best way to design a page is to make a grid: a drawing of what the page will look like. In making a grid, you decide how to use white space and determine how many columns to have on the page.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Creating Navigation Aids

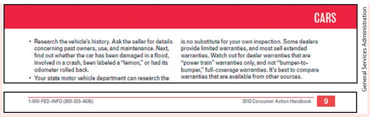
IF YOU WANT TO …	TRY USING THIS NAVIGATION AID	EXAMPLE
Symbolize actions or ideas	**Icons**. Icons are pictures that symbolize actions or ideas. Perhaps the most important icon is the stop sign, which alerts you to a warning. Icons depend on repetition: every time you see the warning icon, you know what kind of information the writer is presenting. Don't be too clever in thinking up icons. One computer manual uses a cocktail glass about to fall over to symbolize "tip." This is a bad idea, because the pun is not functional: when you think of a cocktail glass, you don't think of a tip for using computers. Don't use too many different icons, or your readers will forget what each one represents.	 Media YouTube Watch, upload and share videos Books Search the full text of books News Search thousands of news stories Picasa Find, edit and share your photos
Draw attention to important features or sections of the document	**Color**. Perhaps the strongest visual attribute is color (Keyes, 1993). Use color to draw attention to important features of the document, such as warnings, hints, major headings, and section tabs. But use it sparingly, or it will overpower everything else in the document.	

	Color exploits the principles of repetition (every item in a particular color is logically linked) and contrast (items in one color contrast with items in another color). Use color logically. Third-level headings should not be in color, for example, if first- and second-level headings are printed in black. Using paper of a different color for each section of a document is another way to simplify access.	 For review quizzes, chapter summaries, links to media-related Web sites, and more, go to bedfordstmartins.com/mediaculture. REVIEW QUESTIONS ***The Development of Digital Gaming*** 1. What sparked the creation of mechanical games in the nineteenth and then the twentieth centuries? 2. What technology enabled the evolution of the first video games? 3. How are classic arcade games and the culture of the arcade similar to today's popular console games and gaming culture? 4. What are the three major consoles, and what distinguishes them from each other? 5. What advantages did personal computers have over video game consoles in the late 1980s and much of the 1990s? ***The Internet Transforms Gaming*** 6. How are MMORPGs, virtual worlds, and online fantasy sports built around online social interaction? 7. How has digital convergence changed the function of gaming consoles? ***The Media Playground*** 8. What are the main genres within digital gaming? 9. What are the two basic kinds of virtual communities? 10. How do collective intelligence, gaming Web sites, and game conventions enhance the social experience of gaming, and make games different from other mass media? ***Trends and Issues in Digital Gaming*** 11. How have digital games influenced media culture, and vice versa? 12. In what ways has advertising become incorporated into electronic games? 13. To what extent are video game addiction, and violent and misogynistic representations, a problem for the gaming industry? 14. How are digital games regulated? 15. What will video games be like in the future? ***The Business of Digital Gaming*** 16. What are the roles of two major components of the gaming industry—console makers and game publishers? 17. How do game publishers develop, license, and market new titles? 18. What are the three major pay models for selling video games today? 19. How can small, independent game developers get their start in the industry? ***Digital Gaming, Free Speech, and Democracy*** 20. Why did the U.S. Supreme Court rule that games count as speech? 21. Why does the game industry still rate digital games, even if they aren't required by law to do so? QUESTIONING THE MEDIA 1. Do you have any strong memories from playing early video games? To what extent did these games define your childhood? 2. What role does digital gaming play in your life today? Are you more inclined to play casual games or more involved games, and why? 3. Do you have a story about game addiction, either from yourself or someone you know? Explain. 4. Have you ever been appalled at the level of violence, misogyny, or racism in a video game you played (or watched being played)? Discuss the game narrative and what made it problematic. 5. Most electronic games produced have a white, male, heterosexual point of view. Why is that? If you were a game developer, what kinds of game narratives would you like to see developed? ADDITIONAL VIDEOS ***Visit the VideoCentral: Mass Communication section at bedfordstmartins.com/mediaculture for additional exclusive videos related to Chapter 3.*** CHAPTER 3 • DIGITAL GAMING AND THE MEDIA PLAYGROUND 113 Here green is used to emphasize the titles of the sections, the box at the top left, and the bar along the edge of the page.
Enable readers to identify and flip to sections	**Dividers and tabs**. You are already familiar with dividers and tabs from loose-leaf notebooks. A tab provides a place for a label, which enables readers to identify and flip to a particular section. Sometimes, dividers and tabs are color-coded. Tabs work according to the design principle of contrast: the tabs literally stick out.	 C Composing and Revising A Academic Writing S Sentence Style Preface for instructors xxv ACCESS TO AN ONLINE E-HANDBOOK. With the purchase of a print version of the handbook, students also have premium access to an electronic version of *A Writer's Reference*, conveniently located at the companion site. THE INSTRUCTOR SITE. Accessible from the student site, this password-protected Web site offers additional resources such as diagnostic tests and tutorials and serves as a portal for retrieving student exercise results. *Ancillaries for students* PRINT RESOURCES *Exercises to Accompany A Writer's Reference* (with answer key) *Developmental Exercises to Accompany A Writer's Reference* (with answer key) *Working with Sources: Exercises to Accompany A Writer's Reference* (with answer key) *Research and Documentation in the Electronic Age*, Fourth Edition *Language Debates*, Second Edition *Writing about Literature* *Extra Help for ESL Writers* *Writing in the Disciplines: Advice and Models* ONLINE RESOURCES *A Writer's Reference* companion Web site (See the On the Web box on p. xi.) *Comment* with *A Writer's Reference* *Ancillaries for instructors* Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's
Refer readers to related information within the document	**Cross-reference tables**. These tables, which exploit the principle of alignment, refer readers to related discussions.	 *Read . . .* *To learn to . . .* Ch. 1 connect to the router Ch. 2 set up a firewall Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's
Help readers see where they are in the document	**Headers and footers**. Headers and footers help readers see	

where they are in the document. In a book, for example, the headers on the left-hand pages might repeat the chapter number and title; those on the right-hand pages might contain the most recent first-level heading. Sometimes, writers build other identifying information into the headers. For example, your instructor might ask you to identify your assignments with a header like the following: “Smith, Progress Report, English 302, page 6.” Headers and footers work according to the principle of repetition: readers learn where to look on the page to see where they are in the document.

Page numbering. For one-sided documents, use Arabic numerals in the upper right corner, although the first page of most documents does not have a number on it. For two-sided documents, put the page numbers near the outside margins.

Complex documents often use two number sequences: lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, and so on) for front matter and Arabic numerals for the



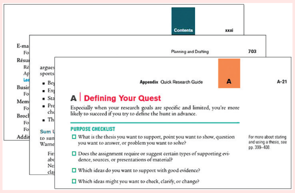
CARS

- Research the vehicle’s history. Ask the seller for details concerning past owners, use, and maintenance. Next, find out whether the car has been damaged in a flood, involved in a crash, been labeled a “lemon,” or had its odometer rolled back.
- Your state motor vehicle department can research the

is no substitute for your own inspection. Some dealers provide limited warranties, and most sell extended warranties. Watch out for dealer warranties that are “power train” warranties only, and not “bumper-to-bumper,” full-coverage warranties. It’s best to compare warranties that are available from other sources.

General Services Administration

1-800-FED-INFO (800-333-4636) 2013 Consumer Action Handbook 9



Contents xxxi

Planning and Drafting 703

Appendix Quick Research Guide A A-21

A | Defining Your Quest

Especially when your research goals are specific and limited, you’re more likely to succeed if you try to define the hunt in advance.

PURPOSE CHECKLIST

☐ What is the thesis you want to support, point you want to show, question you want to answer, or problem you want to solve?

☐ Does the assignment require or suggest certain types of supporting evidence, sources, or presentations of material?

☐ Which ideas do you want to support with good evidence?

☐ Which ideas might you want to check, clarify, or change?

For more about stating and using a thesis, see pp. 399–408.

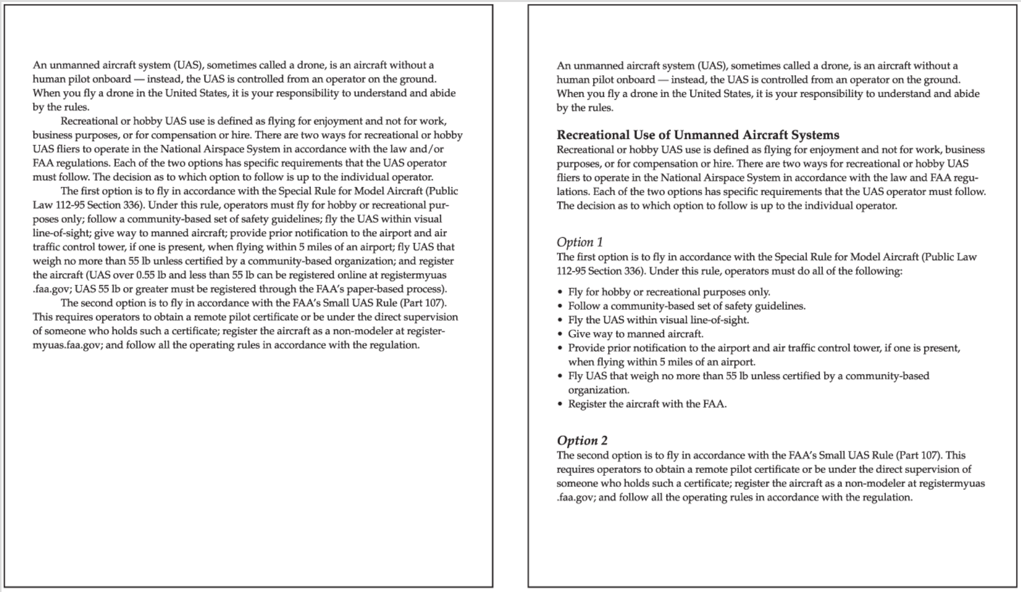
Information from THE BEDFORD GUIDE FOR COLLEGE WRITERS, Tenth Edition (Boston: Bedford/St. Martin’s, 2014). X. J. Kennedy, Dorothy M. Kennedy, and Marcia F. Muth, pp. xxxi, 703, A-21.

	body. There is no number on the title page, but the page following it is ii. Appendixes are often paginated with a letter and number combination: Appendix A begins with page A-1, followed by A-2, and so on; Appendix B starts with page B-1. Sometimes, documents list the total number of pages in the document (so recipients can be sure they have all of them). The second page is “2 of 17,” and the third page is “3 of 17.” Documents that will be updated are sometimes numbered by section: Section 3 begins with page 3-1, followed by 3-2; Section 4 begins with 4-1. This way, a complete revision of one section does not affect the page numbering of subsequent sections.	

GUIDELINES Understanding Learning Theory and Page Design

In designing the page, create visual patterns that help readers find, understand, and remember information. Three principles of learning theory, the result of research into how people learn, can help you design effective pages: chunking, queuing, and filtering.

- **Chunking.** People understand information best if it is delivered to them in chunks—small units—rather than all at once. For single-spaced type, chunking involves double-spacing between paragraphs, as shown in Figure 7.2.



An unmanned aircraft system (UAS), sometimes called a drone, is an aircraft without a human pilot onboard — instead, the UAS is controlled from an operator on the ground. When you fly a drone in the United States, it is your responsibility to understand and abide by the rules.

Recreational or hobby UAS use is defined as flying for enjoyment and not for work, business purposes, or for compensation or hire. There are two ways for recreational or hobby UAS fliers to operate in the National Airspace System in accordance with the law and/or FAA regulations. Each of the two options has specific requirements that the UAS operator must follow. The decision as to which option to follow is up to the individual operator.

The first option is to fly in accordance with the Special Rule for Model Aircraft (Public Law 112-95 Section 336). Under this rule, operators must fly for hobby or recreational purposes only; follow a community-based set of safety guidelines; fly the UAS within visual line-of-sight; give way to manned aircraft; provide prior notification to the airport and air traffic control tower, if one is present, when flying within 5 miles of an airport; fly UAS that weigh no more than 55 lb unless certified by a community-based organization; and register the aircraft (UAS over 0.55 lb and less than 55 lb can be registered online at registermyuas .faa.gov; UAS 55 lb or greater must be registered through the FAA's paper-based process).

The second option is to fly in accordance with the FAA's Small UAS Rule (Part 107). This requires operators to obtain a remote pilot certificate or be under the direct supervision of someone who holds such a certificate; register the aircraft as a non-modeler at registermyuas.faa.gov; and follow all the operating rules in accordance with the regulation.

a. Without chunking

An unmanned aircraft system (UAS), sometimes called a drone, is an aircraft without a human pilot onboard — instead, the UAS is controlled from an operator on the ground. When you fly a drone in the United States, it is your responsibility to understand and abide by the rules.

Recreational Use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems

Recreational or hobby UAS use is defined as flying for enjoyment and not for work, business purposes, or for compensation or hire. There are two ways for recreational or hobby UAS fliers to operate in the National Airspace System in accordance with the law and FAA regulations. Each of the two options has specific requirements that the UAS operator must follow. The decision as to which option to follow is up to the individual operator.

Option 1

The first option is to fly in accordance with the Special Rule for Model Aircraft (Public Law 112-95 Section 336). Under this rule, operators must do all of the following:

- Fly for hobby or recreational purposes only.
- Follow a community-based set of safety guidelines.
- Fly the UAS within visual line-of-sight.
- Give way to manned aircraft.
- Provide prior notification to the airport and air traffic control tower, if one is present, when flying within 5 miles of an airport.
- Fly UAS that weigh no more than 55 lb unless certified by a community-based organization.
- Register the aircraft with the FAA.

Option 2

The second option is to fly in accordance with the FAA's Small UAS Rule (Part 107). This requires operators to obtain a remote pilot certificate or be under the direct supervision of someone who holds such a certificate; register the aircraft as a non-modeler at registermyuas .faa.gov; and follow all the operating rules in accordance with the regulation.

b. With chunking

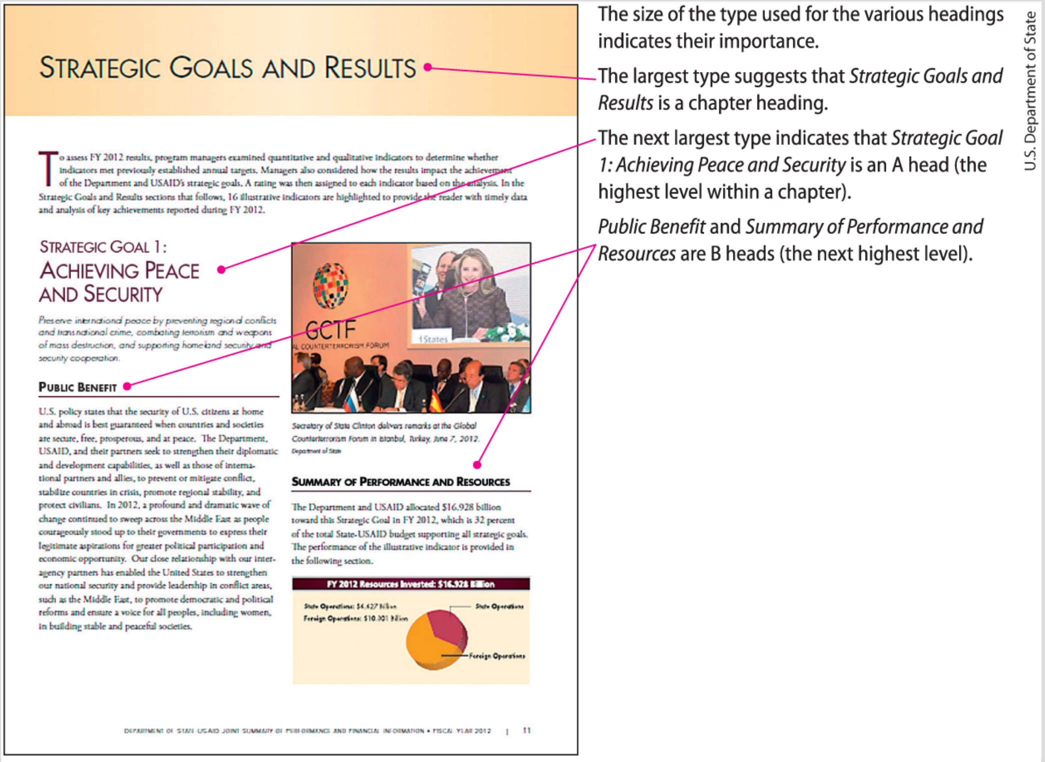
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.2 Chunking

Chunking emphasizes units of related information. Note how the use of headings and lists creates clear chunks of information.

Text adapted from Federal Aviation Administration, 2016: www.faa.gov.

- **Queuing.** Queuing refers to creating visual distinctions to indicate levels of importance. More emphatic elements—those with bigger type or boldface type—are more important than less emphatic ones. Another visual element of queuing is alignment. Designers start more important information closer to the left margin and indent less important information. (An exception is titles, which are often centered in reports in the United States.) Figure 7.3 shows queuing.



STRATEGIC GOALS AND RESULTS

To assess FY 2012 results, program managers examined quantitative and qualitative indicators to determine whether indicators met previously established annual targets. Managers also considered how the results impact the achievement of the Department and USAID's strategic goals. A rating was then assigned to each indicator based on the analysis. In the Strategic Goals and Results sections that follows, 16 illustrative indicators are highlighted to provide the reader with timely data and analysis of key achievements reported during FY 2012.

STRATEGIC GOAL 1:
ACHIEVING PEACE AND SECURITY

Preserve international peace by preventing regional conflicts and transnational crime, combating terrorism and weapons of mass destruction, and supporting homeland security and security cooperation.

PUBLIC BENEFIT

U.S. policy states that the security of U.S. citizens at home and abroad is best guaranteed when countries and societies are secure, free, prosperous, and at peace. The Department, USAID, and their partners seek to strengthen their diplomatic and development capabilities, as well as those of international partners and allies, to prevent or mitigate conflict, stabilize countries in crisis, promote regional stability, and protect civilians. In 2012, a profound and dramatic wave of change continued to sweep across the Middle East as people courageously stood up to their governments to express their legitimate aspirations for greater political participation and economic opportunity. Our close relationship with our interagency partners has enabled the United States to strengthen our national security and provide leadership in conflict areas, such as the Middle East, to promote democratic and political reforms and ensure a voice for all peoples, including women, in building stable and peaceful societies.

Secretary of State Clinton delivers remarks at the Global Counterterrorism Forum in Istanbul, Turkey, June 7, 2012.
Department of State

SUMMARY OF PERFORMANCE AND RESOURCES

The Department and USAID allocated $16.928 billion toward this Strategic Goal in FY 2012, which is 32 percent of the total State-USAID budget supporting all strategic goals. The performance of the illustrative indicator is provided in the following section.

FY 2012 Resources Invested: $16.928 Billion

State Operations: $6.627 Billion
Foreign Operations: $10.301 Billion

DEPARTMENT OF STATE USAID JOINT SUMMARY OF PERFORMANCE AND FINANCIAL INFORMATION • FISCAL YEAR 2012 | 11

The size of the type used for the various headings indicates their importance.

The largest type suggests that *Strategic Goals and Results* is a chapter heading.

The next largest type indicates that *Strategic Goal 1: Achieving Peace and Security* is an A head (the highest level within a chapter).

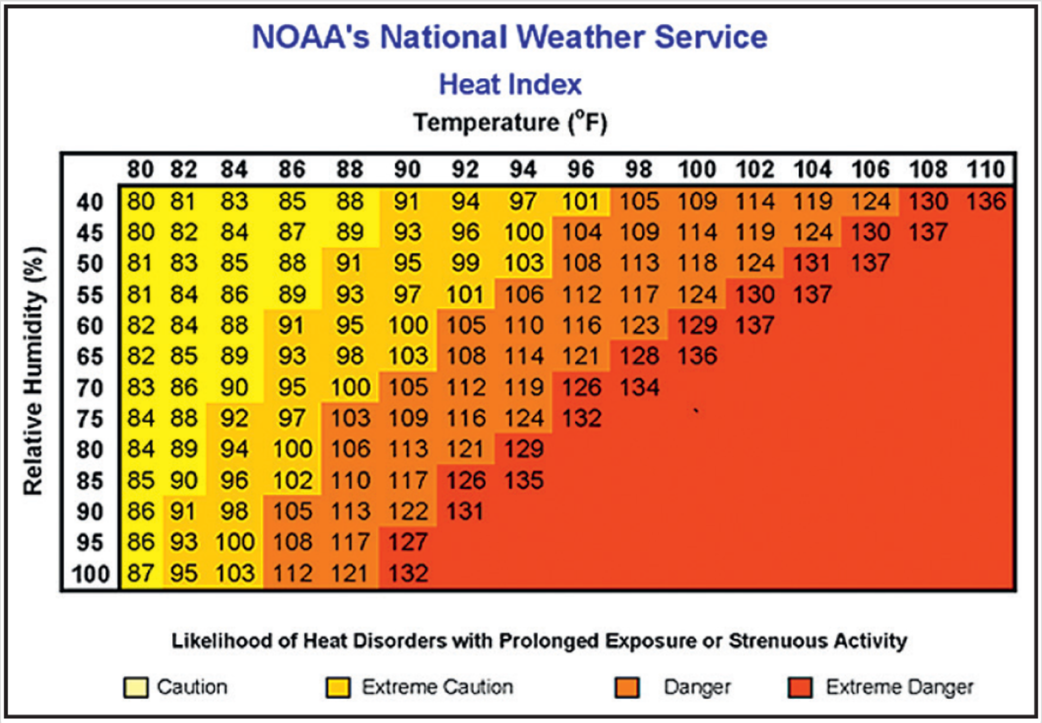
Public Benefit and *Summary of Performance and Resources* are B heads (the next highest level).

U.S. Department of State

FIGURE 7.3 Queuing

Information from U.S. Department of State, 2013: www.state.gov.

- ► **Filtering.** Filtering is the use of visual patterns to distinguish various types of information. Introductory material might be displayed in larger type, and notes might appear in italics, another typeface, and a smaller size. Figure 7.4 shows filtering.



NOAA's National Weather Service

Heat Index

Temperature (°F)

Relative Humidity (%)	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98	100	102	104	106	108	110
40	80	81	83	85	88	91	94	97	101	105	109	114	119	124	130	136
45	80	82	84	87	89	93	96	100	104	109	114	119	124	130	137	
50	81	83	85	88	91	95	99	103	108	113	118	124	131	137		
55	81	84	86	89	93	97	101	106	112	117	124	130	137			
60	82	84	88	91	95	100	105	110	116	123	129	137				
65	82	85	89	93	98	103	108	114	121	128	136					
70	83	86	90	95	100	105	112	119	126	134						
75	84	88	92	97	103	109	116	124	132							
80	84	89	94	100	106	113	121	129								
85	85	90	96	102	110	117	126	135								
90	86	91	98	105	113	122	131									
95	86	93	100	108	117	127										
100	87	95	103	112	121	132										

Likelihood of Heat Disorders with Prolonged Exposure or Strenuous Activity

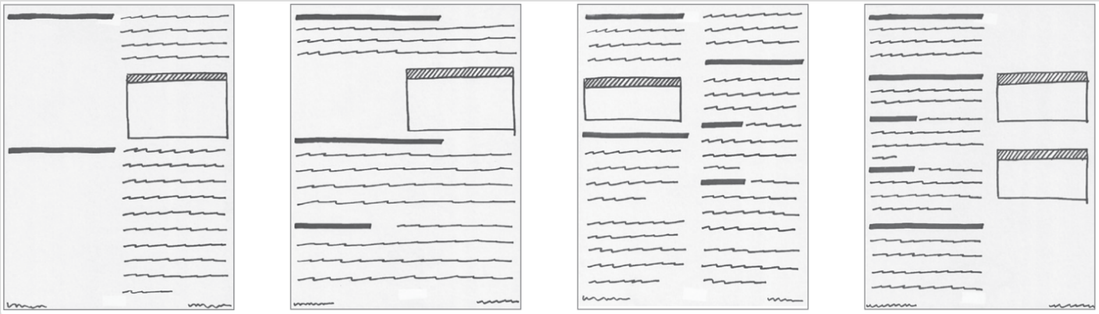
☐ Caution 🟨 Extreme Caution 🟧 Danger 🟥 Extreme Danger

FIGURE 7.4 Filtering

Effective technical communication presents data and explains what the data mean. In this table about the heat index, the writer uses color as a filtering device. In Western cultures, red signals danger.

Page Grids

As the phrase suggests, a *page grid* is like a map on which you plan where the text, the graphics, and the white space will go. Many writers like to begin with a *thumbnail sketch*, a rough drawing that shows how the text and graphics will look on the page. Figure 7.5 shows thumbnail sketches of several options for a page from the body of a manual.

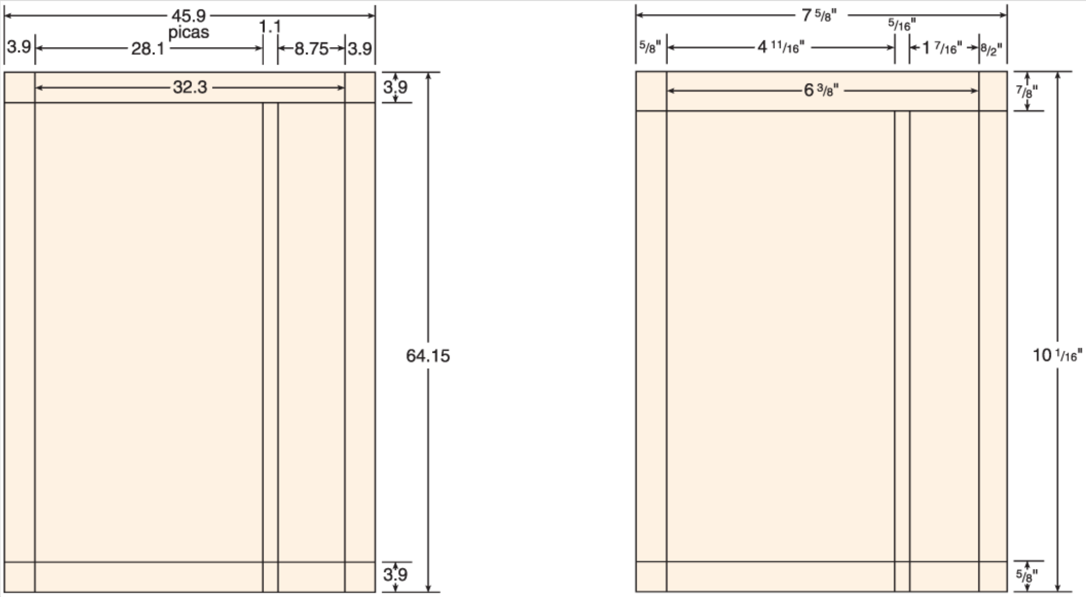


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.5 Thumbnail Sketches

Experiment by sketching the different kinds of pages of your document: body pages, front matter, and so on. When you are satisfied, make page grids. You can use either a computer or a pencil and paper, or you can combine the two techniques.

Figure 7.6 shows two simple grids: one using *picas* (the unit that printing professionals use, which equals one-sixth of an inch) and one using inches. On the right is an example of a page laid out using the grid in the figure.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication, 4e,* © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.6 Sample Grids Using Picas and Inches

White Space

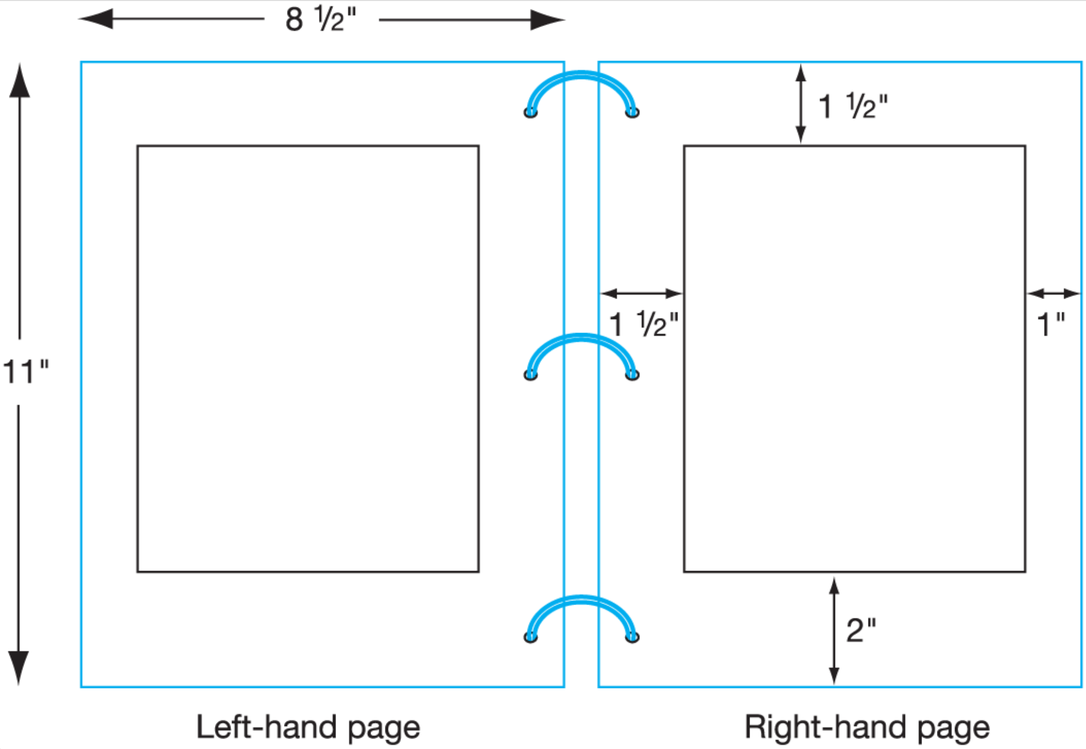
Sometimes called *negative space*, white space is the area of the paper with no writing or graphics: the space between two columns of text, the space between text and graphics, and, most obviously, the margins.

Margins, which make up close to half the area on a typical page, serve four main purposes:

- They reduce the amount of information on the page, making the document easier to read and use.
- They provide space for binding and allow readers to hold the page without covering up the text.
- They provide a neat frame around the type.
- They provide space for marginal glosses.

Increase the size of the margins if the subject is difficult or if your readers are not knowledgeable about it.

Figure 7.7 shows common margin widths for an 8.5 × 11-inch document.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.7 Typical Margins for a Document That Is Bound Like a Book

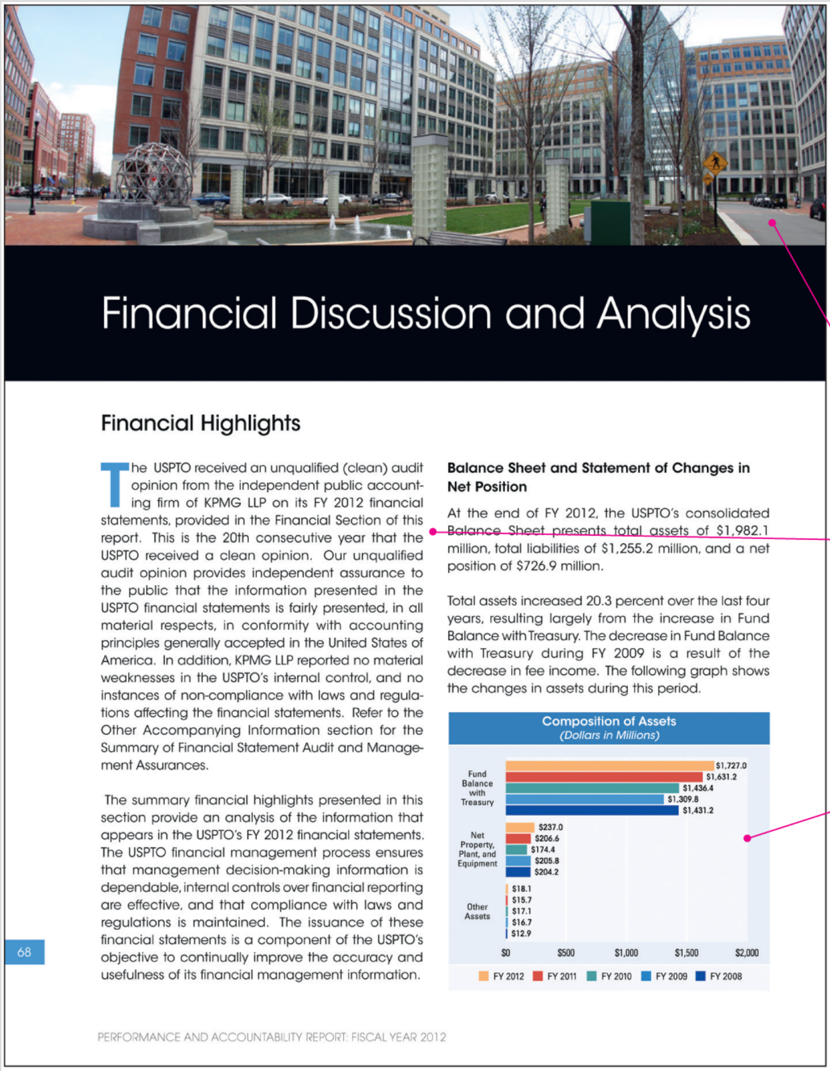
White space can also set off and emphasize an element on the page. For instance, white space around a graphic separates it from the text and draws readers' eyes to it. White space between columns helps readers read the text easily. And white space between sections of text helps readers see that one section is ending and another is beginning.

Columns

Many workplace documents have multiple columns. A multicolumn design offers three major advantages:

- Text is easier to read because the lines are shorter.
- Columns allow you to fit more information on the page, because many graphics can fit in one column or extend across two or more columns. In addition, a multicolumn design enables you to put more words on a page than a single-column design.
- Columns enable you to use the principle of repetition to create a visual pattern, such as text in one column and accompanying graphics in an adjacent column.

Figure 7.8 on p. 163 shows a two-column design with graphics. Figure 7.9 on p. 164 shows a single-column design with graphics and marginal text boxes.



Financial Discussion and Analysis

Financial Highlights

The USPTO received an unqualified (clean) audit opinion from the independent public accounting firm of KPMG LLP on its FY 2012 financial statements, provided in the Financial Section of this report. This is the 20th consecutive year that the USPTO received a clean opinion. Our unqualified audit opinion provides independent assurance to the public that the information presented in the USPTO financial statements is fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. In addition, KPMG LLP reported no material weaknesses in the USPTO's internal control, and no instances of non-compliance with laws and regulations affecting the financial statements. Refer to the Other Accompanying Information section for the Summary of Financial Statement Audit and Management Assurances.

The summary financial highlights presented in this section provide an analysis of the information that appears in the USPTO's FY 2012 financial statements. The USPTO financial management process ensures that management decision-making information is dependable, internal controls over financial reporting are effective, and that compliance with laws and regulations is maintained. The issuance of these financial statements is a component of the USPTO's objective to continually improve the accuracy and usefulness of its financial management information.

Balance Sheet and Statement of Changes in Net Position

At the end of FY 2012, the USPTO's consolidated Balance Sheet presents total assets of $1,982.1 million, total liabilities of $1,255.2 million, and a net position of $726.9 million.

Total assets increased 20.3 percent over the last four years, resulting largely from the increase in Fund Balance with Treasury. The decrease in Fund Balance with Treasury during FY 2009 is a result of the decrease in fee income. The following graph shows the changes in assets during this period.

68

PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT: FISCAL YEAR 2012

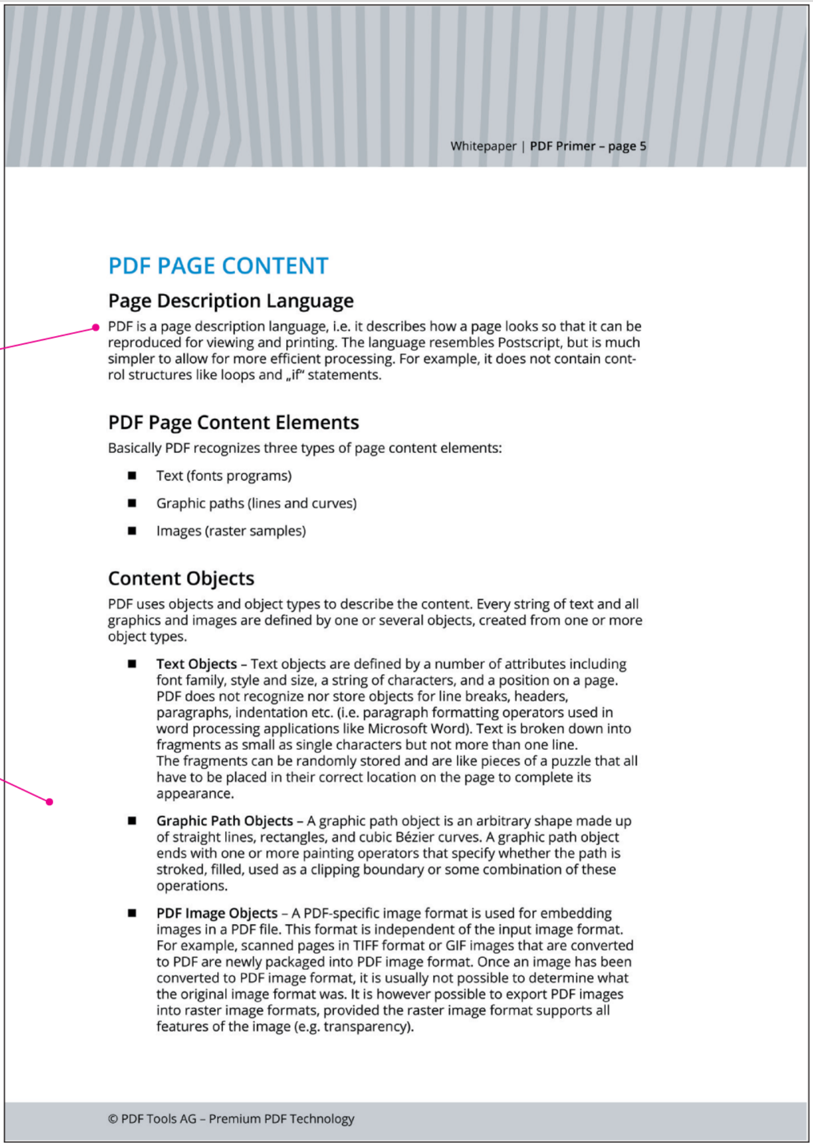
A multicolumn design enables you to present a lot of text and graphics of different sizes.

Notice how the designer has used the whole width of the page for one graphic and a single column for a smaller graphic.

Note that the alley — the space between the two columns of text — need not be wide. Nor do you need to include a vertical rule to keep the columns separate. The human brain easily understands that each column is a separate space.

In this sample, the bar graph is exactly the width of the column in which it appears. But it doesn't have to be. It could break the shape of the column and extend into the other column or even into the margin. Or it could be narrower than its column, with the text wrapping around it. The design you see here looks neat and professional. If the graph were wider or narrower than the column, the design might appear somewhat more creative.

FIGURE 7.8 A Multicolumn Design



Whitepaper | **PDF Primer – page 5**

PDF PAGE CONTENT

Page Description Language

PDF is a page description language, i.e. it describes how a page looks so that it can be reproduced for viewing and printing. The language resembles Postscript, but is much simpler to allow for more efficient processing. For example, it does not contain control structures like loops and „if" statements.

PDF Page Content Elements

Basically PDF recognizes three types of page content elements:

- Text (fonts programs)
- Graphic paths (lines and curves)
- Images (raster samples)

Content Objects

PDF uses objects and object types to describe the content. Every string of text and all graphics and images are defined by one or several objects, created from one or more object types.

- **Text Objects** – Text objects are defined by a number of attributes including font family, style and size, a string of characters, and a position on a page. PDF does not recognize nor store objects for line breaks, headers, paragraphs, indentation etc. (i.e. paragraph formatting operators used in word processing applications like Microsoft Word). Text is broken down into fragments as small as single characters but not more than one line. The fragments can be randomly stored and are like pieces of a puzzle that all have to be placed in their correct location on the page to complete its appearance.
- **Graphic Path Objects** – A graphic path object is an arbitrary shape made up of straight lines, rectangles, and cubic Bézier curves. A graphic path object ends with one or more painting operators that specify whether the path is stroked, filled, used as a clipping boundary or some combination of these operations.
- **PDF Image Objects** – A PDF-specific image format is used for embedding images in a PDF file. This format is independent of the input image format. For example, scanned pages in TIFF format or GIF images that are converted to PDF are newly packaged into PDF image format. Once an image has been converted to PDF image format, it is usually not possible to determine what the original image format was. It is however possible to export PDF images into raster image formats, provided the raster image format supports all features of the image (e.g. transparency).

© PDF Tools AG – Premium PDF Technology

This page from a software company's white paper — a marketing document usually distributed on the web — shows one approach to a one-column design.

A one-column design allows greater flexibility for a variety of elements, such as a bulleted list with paragraphs of text, which would be dense and difficult to read in a two-column design.

There is more white space in the right margin than the left, an asymmetric design that focuses attention of the main headings running on the left. One goal of document design is to reduce the number of pages needed — but when you design a page, you want to make the text inviting and easy to read. Figuring out how to balance these two priorities is one of the major challenges of designing a page.

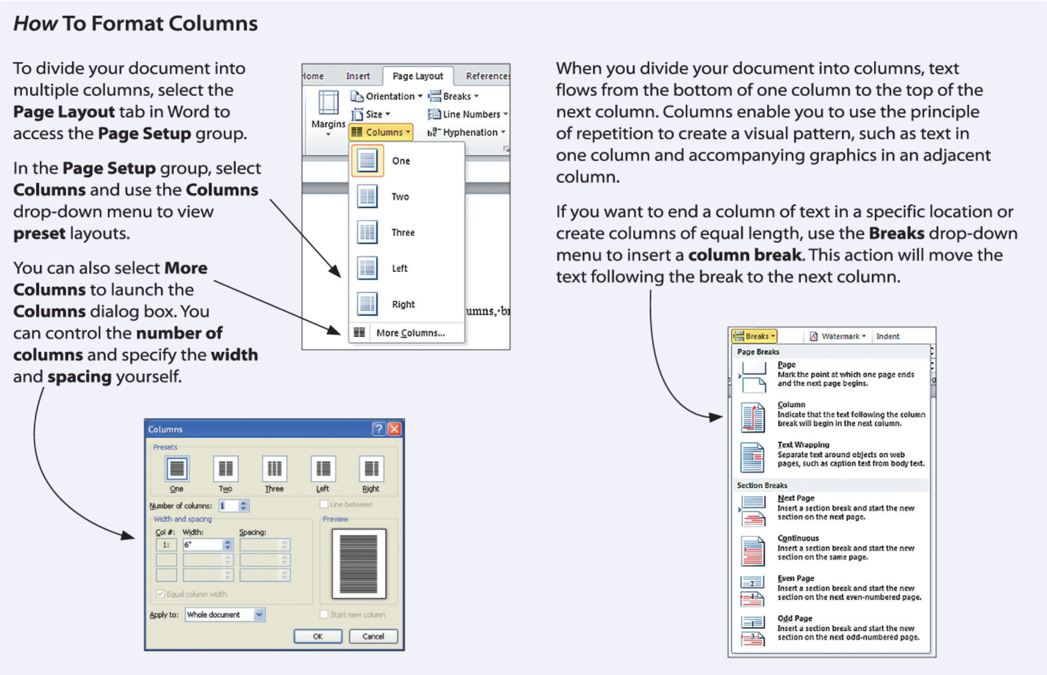
PDF Tools AG.

FIGURE 7.9 A One-Column Design

TECH TIP

Why To Format Columns

A multicolumn format allows you to fit more text on the page, create easier-to-read and more visually interesting pages, and have more options when sizing and placing graphics.



***How* To Format Columns**

To divide your document into multiple columns, select the **Page Layout** tab in Word to access the **Page Setup** group.

In the **Page Setup** group, select **Columns** and use the **Columns** drop-down menu to view **preset** layouts.

You can also select **More Columns** to launch the **Columns** dialog box. You can control the **number of columns** and specify the **width** and **spacing** yourself.

When you divide your document into columns, text flows from the bottom of one column to the top of the next column. Columns enable you to use the principle of repetition to create a visual pattern, such as text in one column and accompanying graphics in an adjacent column.

If you want to end a column of text in a specific location or create columns of equal length, use the **Breaks** drop-down menu to insert a **column break**. This action will move the text following the break to the next column.

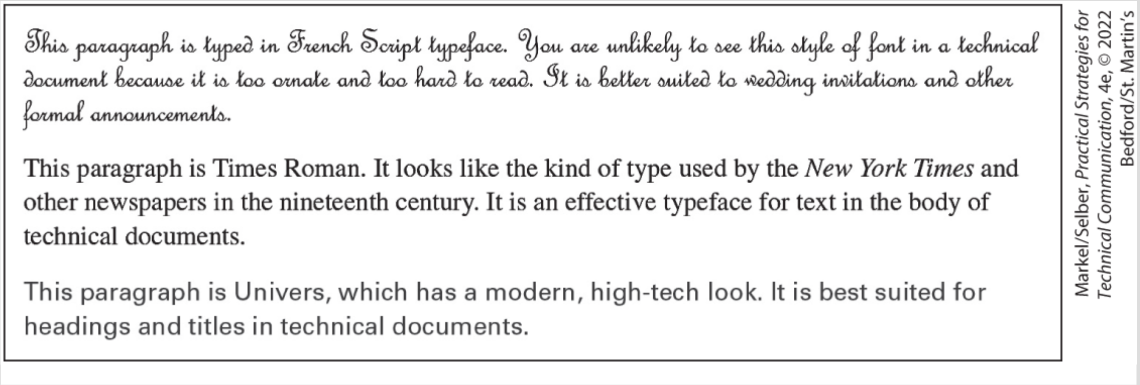
Home
Insert
Page Layout
References
Margins
Orientation
Size
Columns
Breaks
Line Numbers
Hyphenation
One
Two
Three
Left
Right
More Columns...
Columns
Presets
One
Two
Three
Left
Right
Number of columns:
Line between
Width and spacing
Col #:
Width:
Spacing:
Preview
Equal column width
Apply to:
Whole document
Start new column
OK
Cancel
Breaks
Watermark
Indent
Page Breaks
Page
Mark the point at which one page ends and the next page begins.
Column
Indicate that the text following the column break will begin in the next column.
Text Wrapping
Separate text around objects on web pages, such as caption text from body text.
Section Breaks
Next Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next page.
Continuous
Insert a section break and start the new section on the same page.
Even Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next even-numbered page.
Odd Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next odd-numbered page.

TYPOGRAPHY

Typography, the study of type and the way people read it, encompasses typefaces, type families, case, and type size, as well as factors that affect the white space of a document: line length, line spacing, and justification.

Typefaces

A typeface is a set of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other symbols, all bearing a characteristic design. There are thousands of typefaces, and more are designed every year. Figure 7.10 on page 165 shows three contrasting typefaces.



This paragraph is typed in French Script typeface. You are unlikely to see this style of font in a technical document because it is too ornate and too hard to read. It is better suited to wedding invitations and other formal announcements.

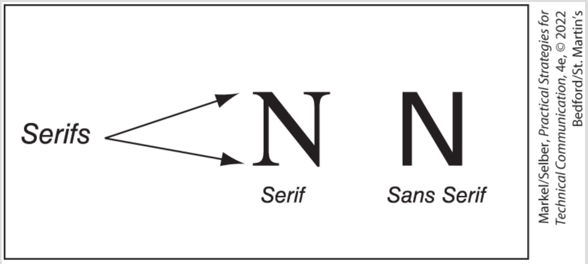
This paragraph is Times Roman. It looks like the kind of type used by the *New York Times* and other newspapers in the nineteenth century. It is an effective typeface for text in the body of technical documents.

This paragraph is Univers, which has a modern, high-tech look. It is best suited for headings and titles in technical documents.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.10 Three Contrasting Typefaces

As Figure 7.11 illustrates, typefaces are generally classified into two categories: *serif* and *sans serif.*



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

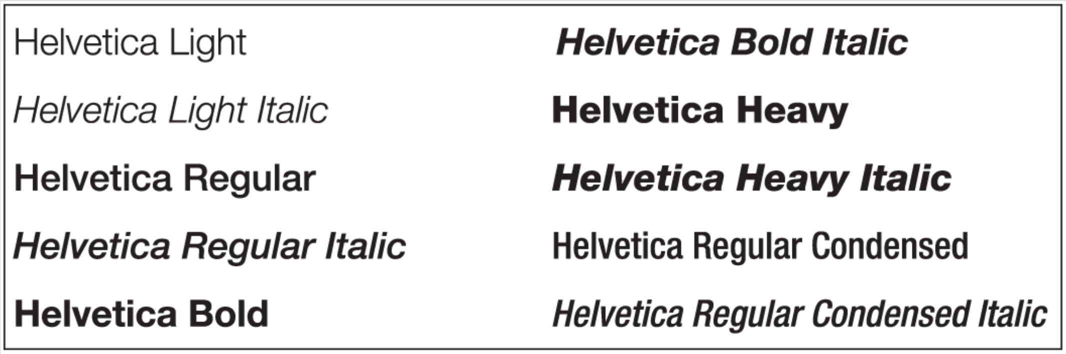
FIGURE 7.11 Serif and Sans-Serif Typefaces

Although scholars used to think that serif typefaces were easier to read because the serifs encourage readers' eyes to move along the line, most now believe that there is no difference in readability between serif and sans-serif typefaces, either in print or online. Readers are most comfortable with the style they see most often.

Most of the time you will use a handful of standard typefaces such as Times New Roman, Cambria, Calibri, and Arial, which are included in your word-processing software and which your printer can reproduce.

Type Families

Each typeface belongs to a family of typefaces, which consists of variations on the basic style, such as italic and boldface. Figure 7.12, for example, shows the Helvetica family.


Helvetica Light
Helvetica Light Italic
Helvetica Regular
Helvetica Regular Italic
Helvetica Bold
Helvetica Bold Italic
Helvetica Heavy
Helvetica Heavy Italic
Helvetica Regular Condensed
Helvetica Regular Condensed Italic

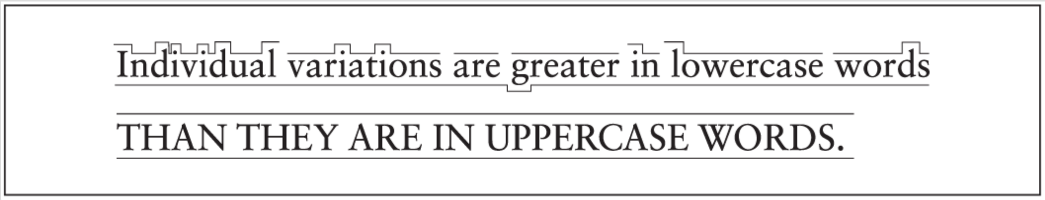
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.12 Helvetica Family of Type

Be careful not to overload your document with too many different members of the same family. Used sparingly and consistently, these variations can help you with filtering: calling attention to various kinds of text, such as warnings and notes. Use italics for book titles and other elements, and use bold type for emphasis and headings. Stay away from outlined and shadowed variations. You can live a full, rewarding life without ever using them.

Case

To make your document easy to read, use uppercase and lowercase letters as you would in any other kind of writing (see Figure 7.13). Most people require 10 to 25 percent more time to read text using all uppercase letters than to read text using both uppercase and lowercase. In addition, uppercase letters take up as much as 35 percent more space than lowercase letters (Haley, 1991). If the text includes both cases, readers will find it easier to see where new sentences begin (Poulton, 1968).


Individual variations are greater in lowercase words
THAN THEY ARE IN UPPERCASE WORDS.

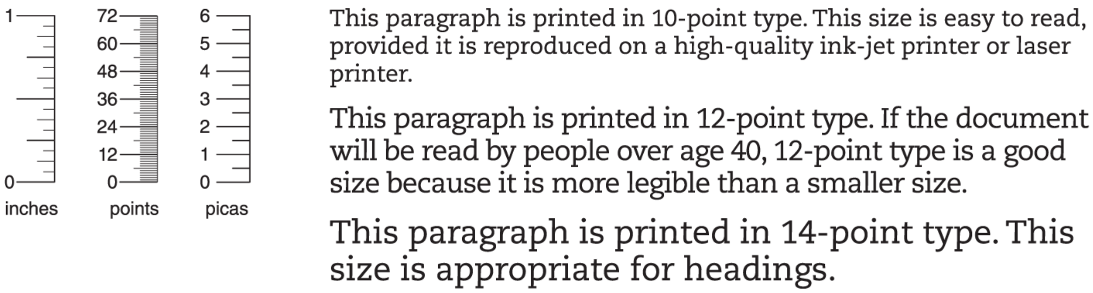
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 7.13 Individual Variations in Lowercase and Uppercase Type

Lowercase letters are easier to read than uppercase because the individual variations from one letter to another are greater.

Type Size

Type size is measured with a unit called a *point*. There are 12 points in a pica and 72 points in an inch. In most technical documents 10-, 11-, or 12-point type is used for the body of the text:



This paragraph is printed in 10-point type. This size is easy to read, provided it is reproduced on a high-quality ink-jet printer or laser printer.

This paragraph is printed in 12-point type. If the document will be read by people over age 40, 12-point type is a good size because it is more legible than a smaller size.

This paragraph is printed in 14-point type. This size is appropriate for headings.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Type sizes used for other parts of a document include the following:

footnotes	8- or 9-point type
indexes	2 points smaller than body text
slides or transparencies	24- to 36-point type

In general, aim for at least a 2- to 4-point difference between the headings and the body. Too many size variations, however, suggest a sweepstakes advertisement rather than a serious text.

ETHICS NOTE

USING TYPE SIZES RESPONSIBLY

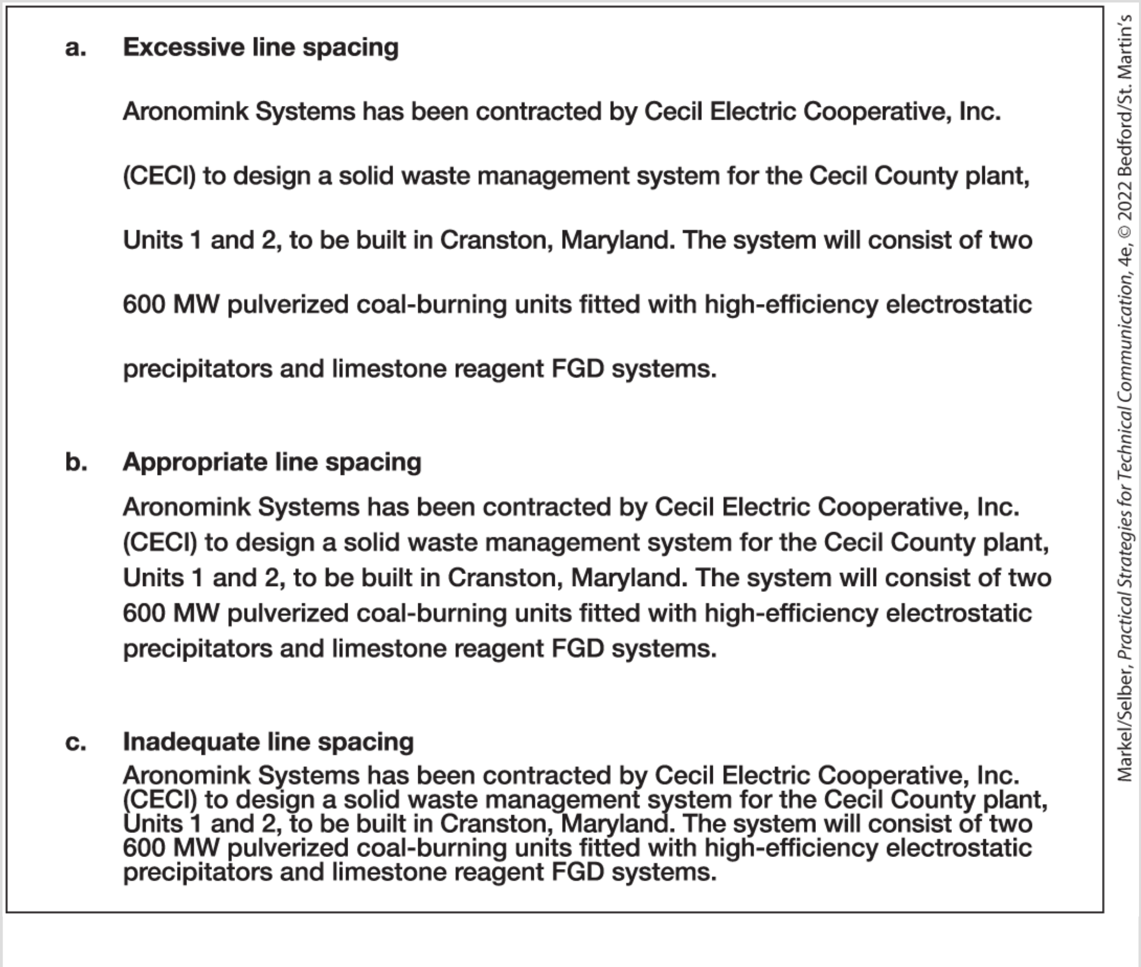
Text set in large type contrasts with text set in small type. It makes sense to use large type to emphasize headings and other important information. But be careful with small type. It is unethical (and, according to some court rulings, illegal) to use excessively small type (such as 6-point or smaller type) to disguise information that you don't want to stand out. When you read the fine print in an ad for cell-phone service, you get annoyed if you discover that the low rates are guaranteed for only three months or that you are committing to a long-term contract. You *should* get annoyed. Hiding information in tiny type is unethical. Don't do it.

Line Length

The line length most often used on an 8.5 × 11-inch page—about 80 characters—is somewhat difficult to read. A shorter line of 50 to 60 characters is easier, especially in a long document.

Line Spacing

Sometimes called *leading* (pronounced “ledding”), *line spacing* refers to the amount of white space between lines or between a line of text and a graphic. If lines are too far apart, the page looks diffuse, the text loses coherence, and readers tire quickly. If lines are too close together, the page looks crowded and becomes difficult to read. Some research suggests that documents that have small type, long lines, and/or sans-serif typefaces benefit from extra line spacing. Figure 7.14 shows three variations in line spacing.



a. Excessive line spacing

Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

b. Appropriate line spacing

Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

c. Inadequate line spacing

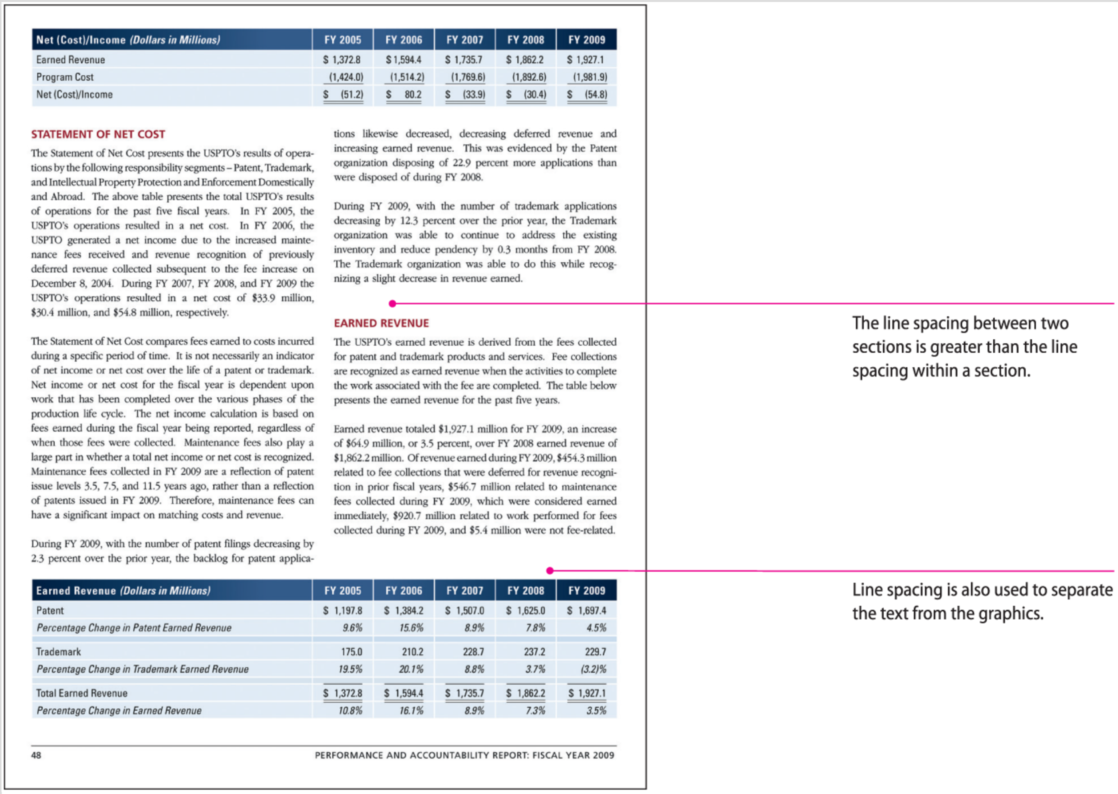
Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

FIGURE 7.14 Line Spacing

Line spacing is usually determined by the kind of document you are writing. Memos and letters are single-spaced; reports, proposals, and similar documents are often double-spaced or one-and-a-half-spaced.

Figure 7.15 on page 169 shows how line spacing can be used to distinguish one section of text from another and to separate text from graphics.



Net (Cost)/Income ***(Dollars in Millions)***	**FY 2005**	**FY 2006**	**FY 2007**	**FY 2008**	**FY 2009**
Earned Revenue	$ 1,372.8	$ 1,594.4	$ 1,735.7	$ 1,862.2	$ 1,927.1
Program Cost	(1,424.0)	(1,514.2)	(1,769.6)	(1,892.6)	(1,981.9)
Net (Cost)/Income	$ (51.2)	$ 80.2	$ (33.9)	$ (30.4)	$ (54.8)

STATEMENT OF NET COST

The Statement of Net Cost presents the USPTO's results of operations by the following responsibility segments – Patent, Trademark, and Intellectual Property Protection and Enforcement Domestically and Abroad. The above table presents the total USPTO's results of operations for the past five fiscal years. In FY 2005, the USPTO's operations resulted in a net cost. In FY 2006, the USPTO generated a net income due to the increased maintenance fees received and revenue recognition of previously deferred revenue collected subsequent to the fee increase on December 8, 2004. During FY 2007, FY 2008, and FY 2009 the USPTO's operations resulted in a net cost of $33.9 million, $30.4 million, and $54.8 million, respectively.

The Statement of Net Cost compares fees earned to costs incurred during a specific period of time. It is not necessarily an indicator of net income or net cost over the life of a patent or trademark. Net income or net cost for the fiscal year is dependent upon work that has been completed over the various phases of the production life cycle. The net income calculation is based on fees earned during the fiscal year being reported, regardless of when those fees were collected. Maintenance fees also play a large part in whether a total net income or net cost is recognized. Maintenance fees collected in FY 2009 are a reflection of patent issue levels 3.5, 7.5, and 11.5 years ago, rather than a reflection of patents issued in FY 2009. Therefore, maintenance fees can have a significant impact on matching costs and revenue.

During FY 2009, with the number of patent filings decreasing by 2.3 percent over the prior year, the backlog for patent applications likewise decreased, decreasing deferred revenue and increasing earned revenue. This was evidenced by the Patent organization disposing of 22.9 percent more applications than were disposed of during FY 2008.

During FY 2009, with the number of trademark applications decreasing by 12.3 percent over the prior year, the Trademark organization was able to continue to address the existing inventory and reduce pendency by 0.3 months from FY 2008. The Trademark organization was able to do this while recognizing a slight decrease in revenue earned.

EARNED REVENUE

The USPTO's earned revenue is derived from the fees collected for patent and trademark products and services. Fee collections are recognized as earned revenue when the activities to complete the work associated with the fee are completed. The table below presents the earned revenue for the past five years.

Earned revenue totaled $1,927.1 million for FY 2009, an increase of $64.9 million, or 3.5 percent, over FY 2008 earned revenue of $1,862.2 million. Of revenue earned during FY 2009, $454.3 million related to fee collections that were deferred for revenue recognition in prior fiscal years, $546.7 million related to maintenance fees collected during FY 2009, which were considered earned immediately, $920.7 million related to work performed for fees collected during FY 2009, and $5.4 million were not fee-related.

Earned Revenue ***(Dollars in Millions)***	**FY 2005**	**FY 2006**	**FY 2007**	**FY 2008**	**FY 2009**
Patent	$ 1,197.8	$ 1,384.2	$ 1,507.0	$ 1,625.0	$ 1,697.4
Percentage Change in Patent Earned Revenue	*9.6%*	*15.6%*	*8.9%*	*7.8%*	*4.5%*
Trademark	175.0	210.2	228.7	237.2	229.7
Percentage Change in Trademark Earned Revenue	*19.5%*	*20.1%*	*8.8%*	*3.7%*	*(3.2)%*
Total Earned Revenue	$ 1,372.8	$ 1,594.4	$ 1,735.7	$ 1,862.2	$ 1,927.1
Percentage Change in Earned Revenue	*10.8%*	*16.1%*	*8.9%*	*7.3%*	*3.5%*

48 PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT: FISCAL YEAR 2009

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

The line spacing between two sections is greater than the line spacing within a section.

Line spacing is also used to separate the text from the graphics.

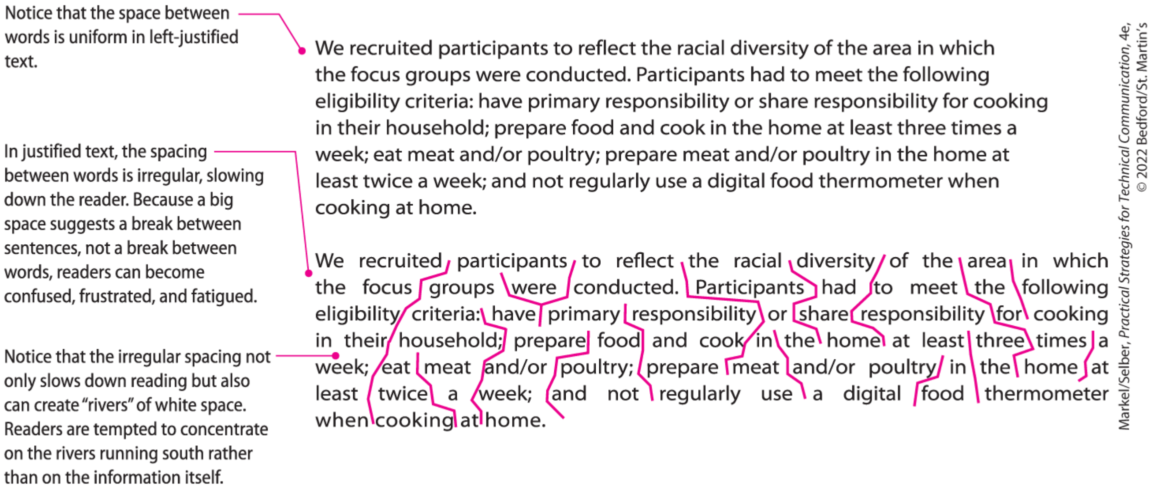
FIGURE 7.15 Line Spacing Used To Distinguish One Section from Another

Information from U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, 2010: www.uspto.gov/.

Justification

Justification refers to the alignment of words along the left and right margins. In technical communication, text is often *left-justified* (also called *ragged right*). Except for the first line in each paragraph, which is sometimes indented, the lines begin along a uniform left margin but end on an irregular right margin. Ragged right is most common in word-processed text (even though word processors can justify the right margin).

In *justified* text, also called *full-justified text*, both the left and the right margin are justified. Justified text is seen most often in formal documents, such as books. The following passage from a Department of Agriculture publication is presented first in left-justified form and then in justified form:



Notice that the space between words is uniform in left-justified text.

We recruited participants to reflect the racial diversity of the area in which the focus groups were conducted. Participants had to meet the following eligibility criteria: have primary responsibility or share responsibility for cooking in their household; prepare food and cook in the home at least three times a week; eat meat and/or poultry; prepare meat and/or poultry in the home at least twice a week; and not regularly use a digital food thermometer when cooking at home.

In justified text, the spacing between words is irregular, slowing down the reader. Because a big space suggests a break between sentences, not a break between words, readers can become confused, frustrated, and fatigued.

Notice that the irregular spacing not only slows down reading but also can create "rivers" of white space. Readers are tempted to concentrate on the rivers running south rather than on the information itself.

We recruited participants to reflect the racial diversity of the area in which the focus groups were conducted. Participants had to meet the following eligibility criteria: have primary responsibility or share responsibility for cooking in their household; prepare food and cook in the home at least three times a week; eat meat and/or poultry; prepare meat and/or poultry in the home at least twice a week; and not regularly use a digital food thermometer when cooking at home.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Full justification can make the text harder to read in one more way. Some word processors and typesetting systems automatically hyphenate words that do not fit on the line. Hyphenation slows down and distracts the reader. Left-justified text does not require as much hyphenation as full-justified text.

TITLES AND HEADINGS

Titles and headings should stand out visually on the page because they introduce new ideas.

Titles

For more about titling your document, see “Writing Clear, Informative Headings,” Ch. 6, p. 107.

Because the title is the most important heading in a document, it should be displayed clearly and prominently. On a cover page or a title page, use boldface type in a large size, such as 18 or 24 points. If the title also appears at the top of the first page, make it slightly larger than the rest of the text—perhaps 16 or 18 points for a document printed in 12 point—but smaller than it is on the cover or title page. Many designers center titles on the page between the right and left margins.

Headings

Readers should be able to tell when you are beginning a new topic. The most effective way to distinguish one level of heading from another is to use size variations (Williams & Spyridakis, 1992). Most readers will notice a 20-percent size difference between an A head (a first-level heading) and a B head (a second-level heading). Boldface also sets off headings effectively. The *least* effective way to set off headings is underlining, because the underline obscures the *descenders*, the portions of some letters that extend below the body of the letters, such as in *p* and *y*.

In general, the more important the heading, the closer it is to the left margin: A heads usually begin at the left margin, B heads are often indented a half inch, and C heads are often indented an inch. Indented C heads can also be run into the text.

In designing headings, use line spacing carefully. A perceivable distance between a heading and the following text increases the impact of the heading. Consider these three examples:

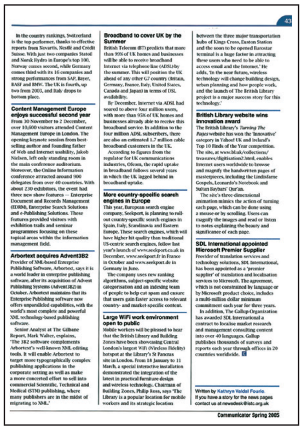
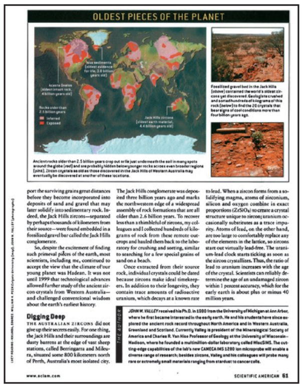
> **Summary**
>
> In this example, the writer has skipped a line between the heading and the text that follows it. The heading stands out clearly.
>
> **Summary**
> In this example, the writer has not skipped a line between the heading and the text that follows it. The heading stands out, but not as emphatically.
>
> **Summary.** In this example, the writer has begun the text on the same line as the heading. This run-in style makes the heading stand out the least.

For more about using headings, see “Writing Clear, Informative Headings,” Ch. 6, p. 107.

OTHER DESIGN FEATURES

Table 7.1 shows five other design features that are used frequently in technical communication: rules, boxes, screens, marginal glosses, and pull quotes.

TABLE 7.1 Additional Design Features for Technical Communication

Two types of rules are used here: vertical rules to separate the columns and horizontal rules to separate the items. Rules enable you to fit a lot of information on a page, but when overused they make the page look cluttered.		**Rules.** *Rule* is a design term for a straight line. You can add rules to your document using the drawing tools in a word processor. Horizontal rules can separate headers and footers from the body of the page or divide two sections of text. Vertical rules can separate columns on a multicolumn page or identify revised text in a manual. Rules exploit the principles of alignment and proximity.
		**Boxes.** Adding rules on all four sides of an item creates a box. Boxes can enclose graphics or special sections of text or can form a border for the whole page. Boxed text is often positioned to extend into the margin, giving it further emphasis. Boxes exploit the principles of contrast and repetition.
The different-colored screens clearly distinguish the three sets of equations.		**Screens.** The background shading used behind text or graphics for emphasis is called

43

In the country rankings, Switzerland is the top performer, thanks to effective reports from Novartis, Nestlé and Crédit Suisse. With just two companies Statoil and Norsk Hydro in Europe's top 100, Norway comes second, while Germany comes third with its 16 companies and strong performances from SAP, Bayer, BASF and BMW. The UK is fourth, up two from 2003, and Italy drops to bottom place.

Content Management Europe enjoys successful second year

From 30 November to 2 December, over 10,600 visitors attended Content Management Europe in London. The opening keynote session from best-selling author and founding father of Web and Internet usability, Jakob Nielsen, left only standing room in the main conference auditorium. Moreover, the Online Information conference attracted around 900 delegates from over 40 countries. With about 230 exhibitors, the event had three new show features — Enterprise Document and Records Management (EDRM), Enterprise Search Solutions and e-Publishing Solutions. These features provided visitors with exhibition trails and seminar programmes focusing on these topical areas within the information management field.

Arbortext acquires Advent3B2

Provider of XML-based Enterprise Publishing Software, Arbortext, says it is a world leader in enterprise publishing software, after its acquisition of Advent Publishing Systems (Advent3B2) in October. Arbortext maintains that its Enterprise Publishing software now offers unparalleled capabilities, with the world's most complete and powerful XML technology-based publishing software.

Senior Analyst at The Gilbane Report, Mark Walter, explains, 'The 3B2 software complements Arbortext's well-known XML editing tools. It will enable Arbortext to target more typographically complex publishing applications in the corporate setting as well as make a more concerted effort to sell into commercial Scientific, Technical and Medical (STM) publishing, where many publishers are in the midst of migrating to XML.'

Broadband to cover UK by the Summer

British Telecom (BT) predicts that more than 99% of UK homes and businesses will be able to receive broadband Internet via telephone line (ADSL) by the summer. This will position the UK ahead of any other G7 country (Britain, Germany, France, Italy, United States, Canada and Japan) in terms of DSL availability.

By December, Internet via ADSL had soared to above four million users, with more than 95% of UK homes and businesses already able to receive this broadband service. In addition to the four million ADSL subscribers, there are also an estimated 1.7 million cable broadband customers in the UK.

According to figures from the regulator for UK communications industries, Ofcom, the rapid uptake in broadband follows several years in which the UK lagged behind in broadband uptake.

More country-specific search engines in Europe

This year, European search engine company, Seekport, is planning to roll-out country-specific search engines in Spain, Italy, Scandinavia and Eastern Europe. These search engines, which will have higher hit quality than traditional US-centric search engines, follow last year's launch of www.seekport.co.uk in December, www.seekport.fr in France in October and www.seekport.de in Germany in June.

The company uses new ranking algorithms, subject-specific website categorisation and an indexing team of people to help cut spam and ensure that users gain faster access to relevant country- and market-specific content.

Large WiFi work environment open to public

Mobile workers will be pleased to hear that the British Library and Building Zones have been showcasing Central London's largest WiFi (Wireless Fidelity) hotspot at the Library's St Pancras site in London. From 18 January to 11 March, a special interactive installation demonstrated the integration of the latest in practical furniture design and wireless technology. Chairman of Building Zones, Philip Ross, says 'The Library is a popular location for mobile workers and its strategic location between the three major transportation hubs of Kings Cross, Euston Station and the soon to be opened Eurostar terminal is a huge factor in attracting these users who need to be able to access email and the Internet.' He adds, 'In the near future, wireless technology will change building design, urban planning and how people work, and the launch of The British Library project is a major success story for this technology.'

British Library website wins innovation award

The British Library's *Turning The Pages* website has won the 'Innovative' category in Yahoo! UK and Ireland's Top 10 Finds of the Year competition. The site, at www.bl.uk/collections/treasures/digitisation2.html, enables Internet users worldwide to browse and magnify the handwritten pages of masterpieces, including the Lindisfarne Gospels, Leonardo's Notebook and Sultan Baybars' Qur'an.

The site's three-dimensional animation mimics the action of turning each page, which can be done using a mouse or by scrolling. Users can magnify the images and read or listen to notes explaining the beauty and significance of each page.

SDL International appointed Microsoft Premier Supplier

Provider of translation services and technology solutions, SDL International, has been appointed as a 'premier supplier' of translation and localisation services to Microsoft. The agreement, which is not constrained by language or by Microsoft product choice, includes a multi-million dollar minimum commitment each year for three years.

In addition, The Gallup Organization has awarded SDL International a contract to localise market research and management consulting content into over 40 languages. Gallup publishes thousands of surveys and reports each year through offices in 20 countries worldwide. C

Written by Kathryn Valdal Fourie.
If you have a story for the news pages contact us at newsdesk@istc.org.uk

Communicator Spring 2005

OLDEST PIECES OF THE PLANET

Isua sediments (oldest evidence for life, 3.8 billion years old)
Acasta Gneiss (oldest intact rock, 4 billion years old)
Rocks older than 2.5 billion years
Inferred
Exposed
Jack Hills zircons (oldest earth material, 4.4 billion years old)

Ancient rocks older than 2.5 billion years crop out or lie just underneath the soil in many spots around the globe (*red*) and are probably hidden below younger rocks across even broader regions (*pink*). Zircon crystals as old as those discovered in the Jack Hills of Western Australia may eventually be discovered at another of these locations.

Fossilized gravel bed in the Jack Hills (*above*) contained the world's oldest zircons yet discovered. Geologists crushed and sorted hundreds of kilograms of this rock (*below*) to find the 20 crystals that bear signs of cool conditions more than four billion years ago.

port the surviving grains great distances before they become incorporated into deposits of sand and gravel that may later solidify into sedimentary rock. Indeed, the Jack Hills zircons—separated by perhaps thousands of kilometers from their source—were found embedded in a fossilized gravel bar called the Jack Hills conglomerate.

So, despite the excitement of finding such primeval pieces of the earth, most scientists, including me, continued to accept the view that the climate of our young planet was Hadean. It was not until 1999 that technological advances allowed further study of the ancient zircon crystals from Western Australia—and challenged conventional wisdom about the earth's earliest history.

Digging Deep

THE AUSTRALIAN ZIRCONS did not give up their secrets easily. For one thing, the Jack Hills and their surroundings are dusty barrens at the edge of vast sheep stations, called Berringarra and Mileura, situated some 800 kilometers north of Perth, Australia's most isolated city.

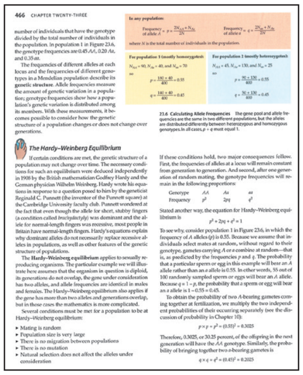
The Jack Hills conglomerate was deposited three billion years ago and marks the northwestern edge of a widespread assembly of rock formations that are all older than 2.6 billion years. To recover less than a thimbleful of zircons, my colleagues and I collected hundreds of kilograms of rock from these remote outcrops and hauled them back to the laboratory for crushing and sorting, similar to searching for a few special grains of sand on a beach.

Once extracted from their source rock, individual crystals could be dated because zircons make ideal timekeepers. In addition to their longevity, they contain trace amounts of radioactive uranium, which decays at a known rate to lead. When a zircon forms from a solidifying magma, atoms of zirconium, silicon and oxygen combine in exact proportions ($ZrSiO_4$) to create a crystal structure unique to zircon; uranium occasionally substitutes as a trace impurity. Atoms of lead, on the other hand, are too large to comfortably replace any of the elements in the lattice, so zircons start out virtually lead-free. The uranium-lead clock starts ticking as soon as the zircon crystallizes. Thus, the ratio of lead to uranium increases with the age of the crystal. Scientists can reliably determine the age of an undamaged zircon within 1 percent accuracy, which for the early earth is about plus or minus 40 million years.

THE AUTHOR

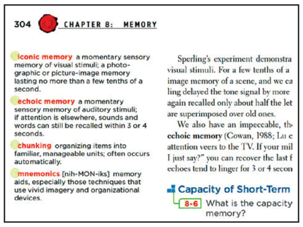
JOHN W. VALLEY received his Ph.D. in 1980 from the University of Michigan at Ann Arbor, where he first became interested in the early earth. He and his students have since explored the ancient rock record throughout North America and in Western Australia, Greenland and Scotland. Currently Valley is president of the Mineralogical Society of America and Charles R. Van Hise Professor of Geology at the University of Wisconsin–Madison, where he founded a multimillion-dollar laboratory called WiscSIMS. The cutting-edge capabilities of the lab's new CAMECA IMS 1280 ion microprobe will enable a diverse range of research; besides zircons, Valley and his colleagues will probe many rare or extremely small materials ranging from stardust to cancer cells.

www.sciam.com SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN 61



a screen. The density of a screen can range from 1 percent to 100 percent; 5 to 10 percent is usually enough to provide emphasis without making the text illegible. You can use screens with or without boxes. Screens exploit the principles of contrast and repetition.

The marginal glosses present definitions of key words.



304 CHAPTER 8: MEMORY

iconic memory a momentary sensory memory of visual stimuli; a photographic or picture-image memory lasting no more than a few tenths of a second.

echoic memory a momentary sensory memory of auditory stimuli; if attention is elsewhere, sounds and words can still be recalled within 3 or 4 seconds.

chunking organizing items into familiar, manageable units; often occurs automatically.

mnemonics [nih-MON-iks] memory aids, especially those techniques that use vivid imagery and organizational devices.

Sperling's experiment demonstra
visual stimuli. For a few tenths of a
image memory of a scene, and we ca
ling delayed the tone signal by more
again recalled only about half the let
are superimposed over old ones.

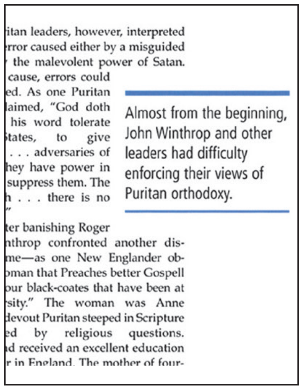
We also have an impeccable, th
echoic memory (Cowan, 1988; Lu c
attention veers to the TV. If your mil
I just say?" you can recover the last f
echoes tend to linger for 3 or 4 secon

Capacity of Short-Term

8-6 What is the capacity
memory?

Marginal glosses. A marginal gloss is a brief comment on the main discussion. Marginal glosses are usually set in a different typeface—and sometimes in a different color—from the main discussion. Although marginal glosses can be helpful in providing a quick overview of the main discussion, they can also compete with the text for readers' attention. Marginal glosses exploit the principles of contrast and repetition.

This pull quote extends into the margin, but a pull quote can go anywhere on the page, even spanning two or more columns or the whole page.



itan leaders, however, interpreted
rror caused either by a misguided
the malevolent power of Satan.
cause, errors could
ed. As one Puritan
laimed, "God doth
his word tolerate
tates, to give
. . . adversaries of
hey have power in
suppress them. The
h . . . there is no
"

ter banishing Roger
nthrop confronted another dis-
me—as one New Englander ob-
oman that Preaches better Gospell
our black-coates that have been at
sity." The woman was Anne
devout Puritan steeped in Scripture
ed by religious questions.
d received an excellent education
r in England. The mother of four-

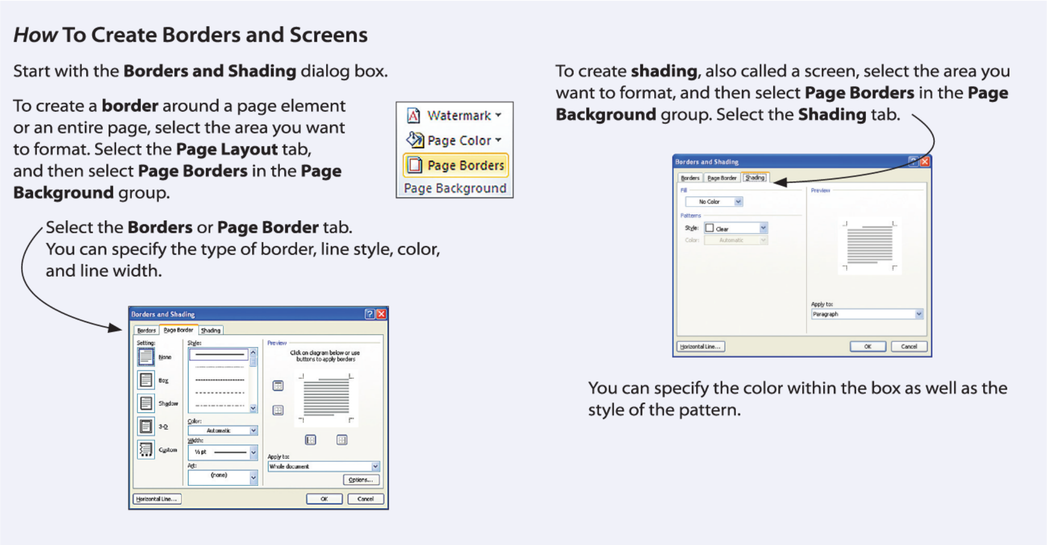
Almost from the beginning, John Winthrop and other leaders had difficulty enforcing their views of Puritan orthodoxy.

Pull quotes. A pull quote is a brief quotation (usually just a sentence or two) that is pulled from the text, displayed in a larger type size and usually in a different typeface, and sometimes enclosed in a box. Newspapers and magazines use pull quotes to attract readers' attention. Pull quotes are inappropriate for reports and similar documents because they look too informal. They are increasingly popular, however, in newsletters. Pull quotes exploit the principles of contrast and repetition.

TECH TIP

Why To Create Borders and Screens

You can use background borders and screens (or shading) in Microsoft Word to emphasize page elements such as text and graphics. By emphasizing certain elements, you are letting your readers know what is important.



***How* To Create Borders and Screens**

Start with the **Borders and Shading** dialog box.

To create a **border** around a page element or an entire page, select the area you want to format. Select the **Page Layout** tab, and then select **Page Borders** in the **Page Background** group.

Select the **Borders** or **Page Border** tab. You can specify the type of border, line style, color, and line width.

To create **shading**, also called a screen, select the area you want to format, and then select **Page Borders** in the **Page Background** group. Select the **Shading** tab.

You can specify the color within the box as well as the style of the pattern.

Designing Online Documents

The previous discussion of designing printed documents focused on four components: size, paper, bindings, and navigational aids. Of these four components, size and navigational aids are relevant to websites and other online documents.

Size is important in that you can control—to some extent, at least—how much information (text, graphics, animation) you present on the screen. On all but the smallest screens, you can use multiple columns and vary column width, and you can fill screens with content (and thereby use fewer screens) or leave a lot of white space (and thereby use more screens). As people are increasingly turning to smaller screens for reading online content, you want to pay even more attention to designing your information so that it is clear and attractive. You also want to be sure that you design online documents so that key information is emphasized and easily accessible to users. In addition, you want to consider audience characteristics such as age (use bigger type for older people) and disabilities (for example, include alternative text for images so that people with vision disabilities can use software that "reads" your descriptions of the images). For more on accessibility for people with disabilities, see pages 180–81.

Navigational tools are vitally important for online documents, because if your audience can't figure out how to find the information they want, they're out of luck. With a print document, they can at least flip through the pages.

The following discussion focuses on seven principles that can help you make it easy for readers to find and understand the information they seek:

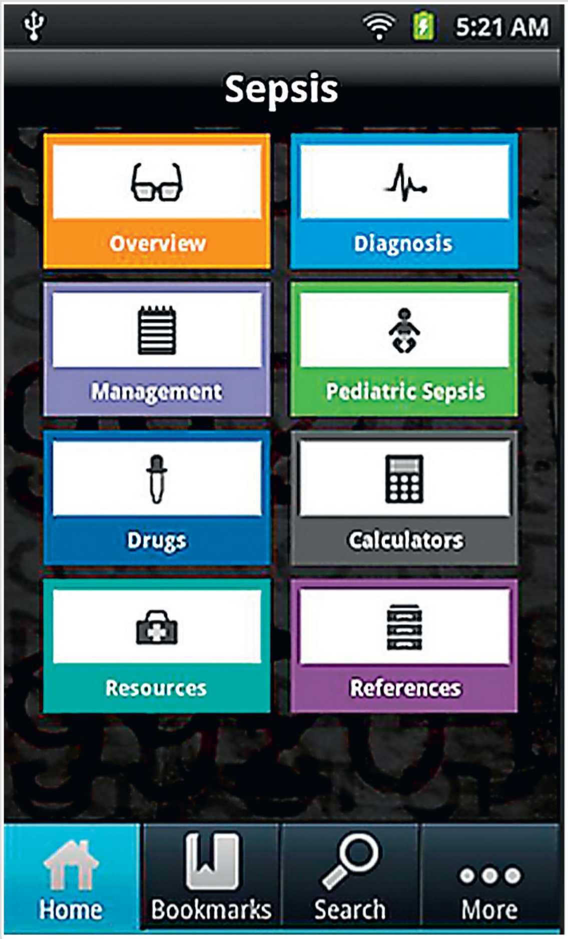
- Use design to emphasize important information.
- Create informative headers and footers.
- Help readers navigate the document.
- Include extra features your readers might need.
- Help readers connect with others.
- Design for accessibility.
- Design for multicultural readers.

Although some of these principles do not apply to every type of online document, they provide a useful starting point as you think about designing your document.

USE DESIGN TO EMPHASIZE IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The smaller the screen, the more cluttered it can become, making it difficult for readers to see what is truly important. No matter what size screen they are using, you want readers to be able to find what they want quickly and easily. As you begin planning an online document, decide what types of information are most essential for your audience, and ensure that that content in particular is clearly findable from the home screen. Give your buttons, tabs, and other navigational features clear, informative headings. For more guidance on emphasizing important information, see Chapter 6.

Once you have determined the information you want to emphasize, adhere to design principles rigorously so that users can easily identify key content. Use logical patterns of organization and the principles of proximity, alignment, repetition, and contrast so that readers know where they are and how to carry out the tasks they want to accomplish. Figure 7.16 on page 176 shows a well-designed screen for a mobile phone.


5:21 AM
Sepsis
Overview
Diagnosis
Management
Pediatric Sepsis
Drugs
Calculators
Resources
References
Home
Bookmarks
Search
More

Sepsis Clinical Guide mobile app,Escavo, Inc. (www.escavo.com). Used by permission.

FIGURE 7.16 Screen for a Mobile Application

This app helps physicians diagnose sepsis quickly and effectively. The information most crucial to evaluating the condition is easily accessible on the home screen. At the top of the screen, where the reader's eyes will initially fall, is an overview of the condition and, most importantly, the diagnostic tool. Less essential items, such as resources and references, are located at the bottom of the screen. Supplementary information, such as a call for authors and a feedback form, is deeper on the site, behind the "More" tab.

This simple screen uses the principle of contrast effectively to highlight key content. Each of the eight main content areas has its own color and its own icon to distinguish it from the seven other areas. In addition, the four navigation items at the bottom of the screen use contrast in that the icon for the screen the reader is now viewing—in this case, the home page—is presented against a blue background, whereas the other three icons are presented against a black background.

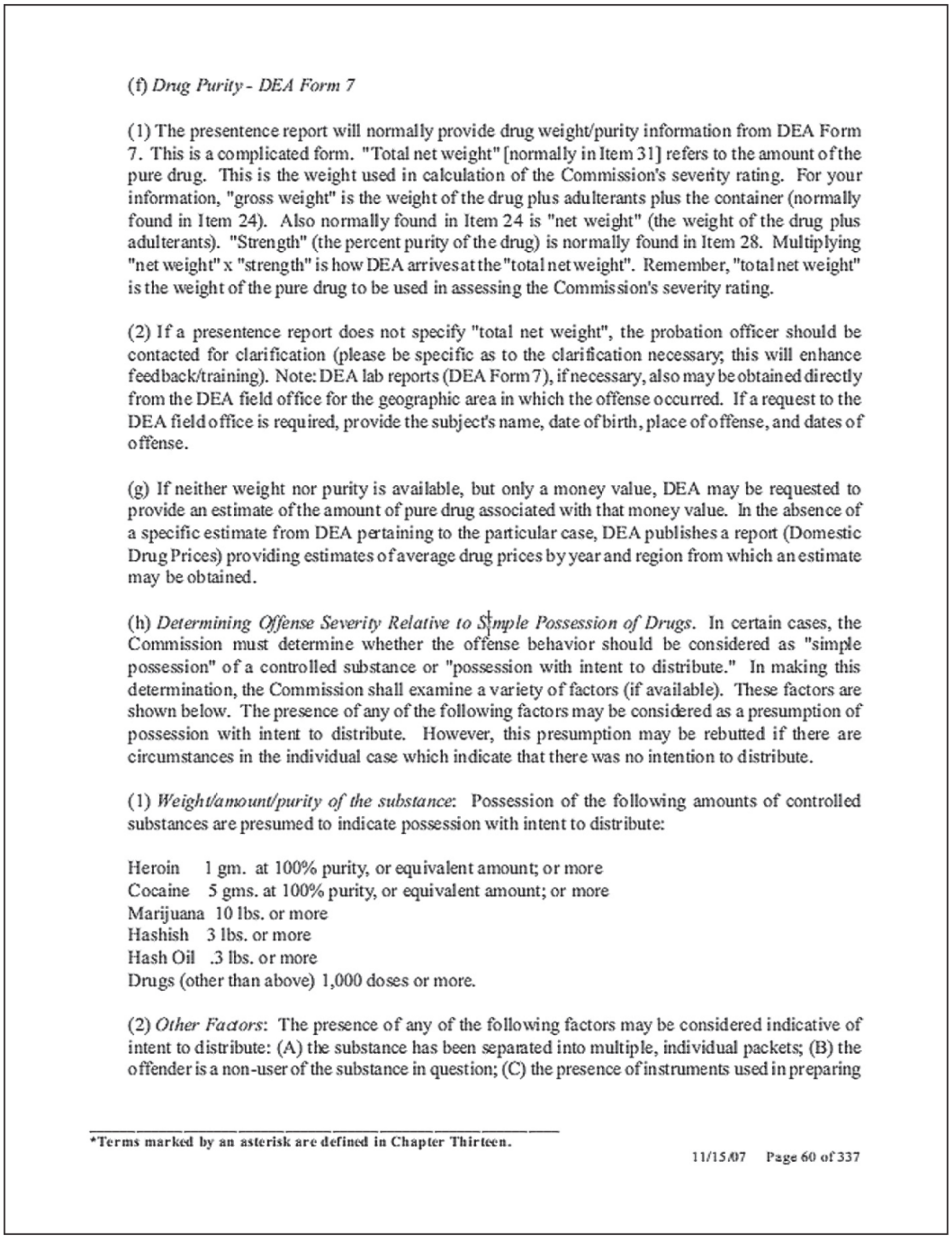
DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Analyzing Page Designs

The two pages shown here come from different government reports. Both are printed on 8½ × 11-inch paper. The questions next to each ask you to think about page design as discussed in this chapter.

1. How many columns are used in this document? How does the column design affect the readability of the page?
2. What type of justification has been used for the text? Was this a wise choice for this page size? Why or why not?
3. What alignment features, if any, have been used? What problems with alignment, if any, do you see?

4. How many levels of headings appear on this page? Are the different levels designed effectively so that they are easy to distinguish? If not, what changes would you make to the design?
5. How are rules used on this page? Are they effective? Would you change any of them?
6. Describe the design of the body text on this page, focusing on columns and alignment. Is the design of the body text effective? Would you change it in any way? Why or why not?



(f) *Drug Purity - DEA Form 7*

(1) The presentence report will normally provide drug weight/purity information from DEA Form 7. This is a complicated form. "Total net weight" [normally in Item 31] refers to the amount of the pure drug. This is the weight used in calculation of the Commission's severity rating. For your information, "gross weight" is the weight of the drug plus adulterants plus the container (normally found in Item 24). Also normally found in Item 24 is "net weight" (the weight of the drug plus adulterants). "Strength" (the percent purity of the drug) is normally found in Item 28. Multiplying "net weight" x "strength" is how DEA arrives at the "total net weight". Remember, "total net weight" is the weight of the pure drug to be used in assessing the Commission's severity rating.

(2) If a presentence report does not specify "total net weight", the probation officer should be contacted for clarification (please be specific as to the clarification necessary; this will enhance feedback/training). Note: DEA lab reports (DEA Form 7), if necessary, also may be obtained directly from the DEA field office for the geographic area in which the offense occurred. If a request to the DEA field office is required, provide the subject's name, date of birth, place of offense, and dates of offense.

(g) If neither weight nor purity is available, but only a money value, DEA may be requested to provide an estimate of the amount of pure drug associated with that money value. In the absence of a specific estimate from DEA pertaining to the particular case, DEA publishes a report (Domestic Drug Prices) providing estimates of average drug prices by year and region from which an estimate may be obtained.

(h) *Determining Offense Severity Relative to Simple Possession of Drugs*. In certain cases, the Commission must determine whether the offense behavior should be considered as "simple possession" of a controlled substance or "possession with intent to distribute." In making this determination, the Commission shall examine a variety of factors (if available). These factors are shown below. The presence of any of the following factors may be considered as a presumption of possession with intent to distribute. However, this presumption may be rebutted if there are circumstances in the individual case which indicate that there was no intention to distribute.

(1) *Weight/amount/purity of the substance*: Possession of the following amounts of controlled substances are presumed to indicate possession with intent to distribute:

Heroin	1 gm. at 100% purity, or equivalent amount; or more
Cocaine	5 gms. at 100% purity, or equivalent amount; or more
Marijuana	10 lbs. or more
Hashish	3 lbs. or more
Hash Oil	.3 lbs. or more
Drugs (other than above)	1,000 doses or more.

(2) *Other Factors*: The presence of any of the following factors may be considered indicative of intent to distribute: (A) the substance has been separated into multiple, individual packets; (B) the offender is a non-user of the substance in question; (C) the presence of instruments used in preparing

---

*Terms marked by an asterisk are defined in Chapter Thirteen.

11/15/07 Page 60 of 337

U.S. Department of Justice

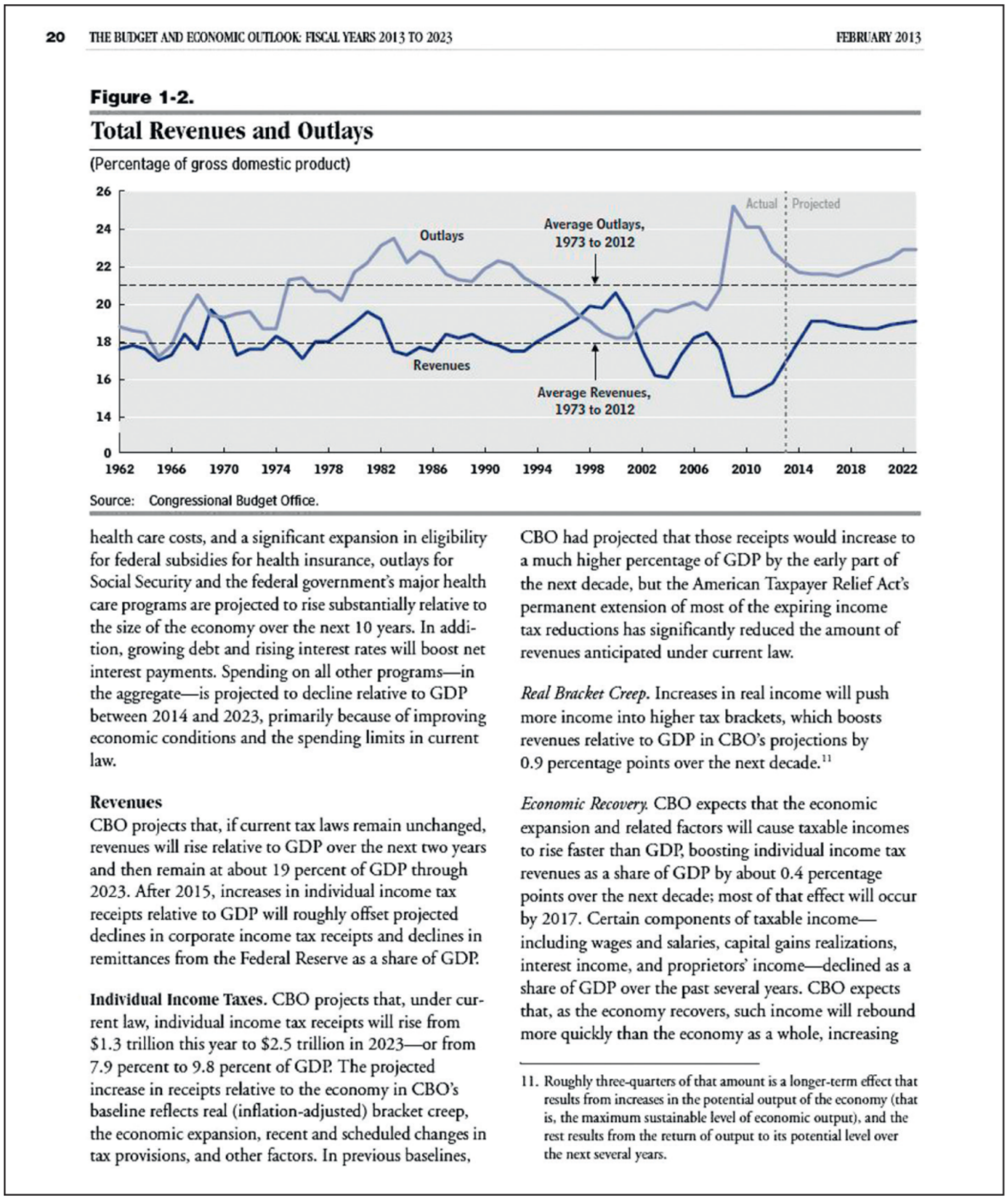


Figure 1-2.

Total Revenues and Outlays

(Percentage of gross domestic product)

26
24
22
20
18
16
14
0
Actual
Projected
Outlays
Average Outlays, 1973 to 2012
Revenues
Average Revenues, 1973 to 2012
1962
1966
1970
1974
1978
1982
1986
1990
1994
1998
2002
2006
2010
2014
2018
2022

Source: Congressional Budget Office.

health care costs, and a significant expansion in eligibility for federal subsidies for health insurance, outlays for Social Security and the federal government's major health care programs are projected to rise substantially relative to the size of the economy over the next 10 years. In addition, growing debt and rising interest rates will boost net interest payments. Spending on all other programs—in the aggregate—is projected to decline relative to GDP between 2014 and 2023, primarily because of improving economic conditions and the spending limits in current law.

Revenues

CBO projects that, if current tax laws remain unchanged, revenues will rise relative to GDP over the next two years and then remain at about 19 percent of GDP through 2023. After 2015, increases in individual income tax receipts relative to GDP will roughly offset projected declines in corporate income tax receipts and declines in remittances from the Federal Reserve as a share of GDP.

Individual Income Taxes. CBO projects that, under current law, individual income tax receipts will rise from $1.3 trillion this year to $2.5 trillion in 2023—or from 7.9 percent to 9.8 percent of GDP. The projected increase in receipts relative to the economy in CBO's baseline reflects real (inflation-adjusted) bracket creep, the economic expansion, recent and scheduled changes in tax provisions, and other factors. In previous baselines, CBO had projected that those receipts would increase to a much higher percentage of GDP by the early part of the next decade, but the American Taxpayer Relief Act's permanent extension of most of the expiring income tax reductions has significantly reduced the amount of revenues anticipated under current law.

Real Bracket Creep. Increases in real income will push more income into higher tax brackets, which boosts revenues relative to GDP in CBO's projections by 0.9 percentage points over the next decade.[11]

Economic Recovery. CBO expects that the economic expansion and related factors will cause taxable incomes to rise faster than GDP, boosting individual income tax revenues as a share of GDP by about 0.4 percentage points over the next decade; most of that effect will occur by 2017. Certain components of taxable income—including wages and salaries, capital gains realizations, interest income, and proprietors' income—declined as a share of GDP over the past several years. CBO expects that, as the economy recovers, such income will rebound more quickly than the economy as a whole, increasing

---

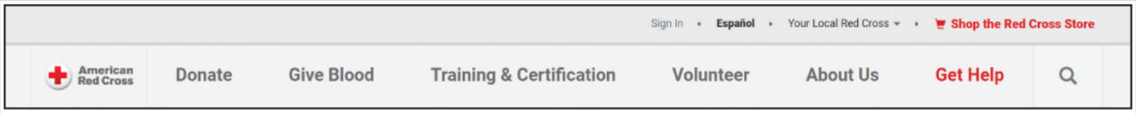
[11] Roughly three-quarters of that amount is a longer-term effect that results from increases in the potential output of the economy (that is, the maximum sustainable level of economic output), and the rest results from the return of output to its potential level over the next several years.

U.S. Congressional Budget Office, 2013: www.cbo.gov/sites/default/files/cbofiles/attachments/43907-BudgetOutlook.pdf.

Information from U.S. Congressional Budget Office, 2013: www.cbo.gov/sites/default/files/cbofiles/attachments/43907-BudgetOutlook.pdf.

CREATE INFORMATIVE HEADERS AND FOOTERS

Headers and footers help readers understand and navigate your document, and they help establish your credibility. You want readers to know that they are reading an official document from your organization and that it was created by professionals. Figure 7.17 shows a typical website header, and Figure 7.18 shows a typical footer.

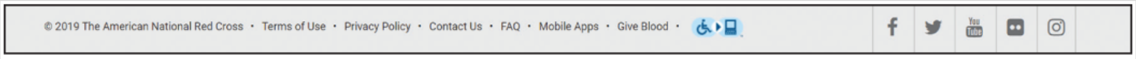

Sign In
Español
Your Local Red Cross
Shop the Red Cross Store
American Red Cross
Donate
Give Blood
Training & Certification
Volunteer
About Us
Get Help

Courtesy of the American Red Cross. © 2020 The American National Red Cross ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

FIGURE 7.17 Website Header

Notice that a header in a website provides much more accessing information than a header in a printed document. This header enables readers to search the site, as the header on almost every site does, but it also includes other elements that are particularly important to the American Red Cross. For instance, there is a link to information about becoming a volunteer, and there is a link for helping people find their local chapter.

The footer contains the copyright notice, as well as links to the terms and conditions for using the site, the privacy policy, contact information, a page with frequently asked questions (FAQ), and social media.


© 2019 The American National Red Cross
Terms of Use
Privacy Policy
Contact Us
FAQ
Mobile Apps
Give Blood

Courtesy of the American Red Cross. © 2020 The American National Red Cross ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

FIGURE 7.18 Website Footer

This simply designed footer presents all the links as text. Readers with vision difficulties who use text-to-speech devices will be able to understand these textual links; they would not be able to understand graphical links.

There are also links to content pages the American Red Cross wants to spotlight. These pages provide information on using mobile apps and donating blood.

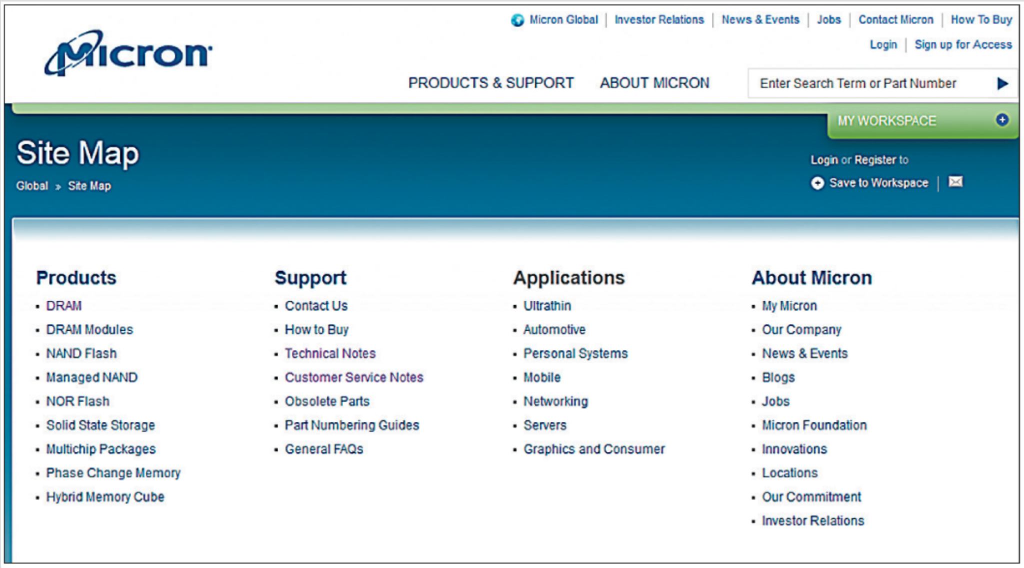
HELP READERS NAVIGATE THE DOCUMENT

One important way to help readers navigate is to create and sustain a consistent visual design on every page or screen. Make the header, footer, background color or pattern, typography (typeface, type size, and color), and placement of the navigational links the same on every page. That way, readers will know where to look for these items.

GUIDELINES Making Your Document Easy To Navigate

Follow these five suggestions to make it easy for readers to find what they want in your document.

- **Include a site map or index.** A site map, which lists the pages on the site, can be a graphic or a textual list of the pages, classified according to logical categories. An index is an alphabetized list of the pages. Figure 7.19 shows a portion of a site map.


Micron
Micron Global | Investor Relations | News & Events | Jobs | Contact Micron | How To Buy
Login | Sign up for Access
PRODUCTS & SUPPORT
ABOUT MICRON
Enter Search Term or Part Number
MY WORKSPACE
Login or Register to
Save to Workspace

Site Map

Global » Site Map

Products

- DRAM
- DRAM Modules
- NAND Flash
- Managed NAND
- NOR Flash
- Solid State Storage
- Multichip Packages
- Phase Change Memory
- Hybrid Memory Cube

Support

- Contact Us
- How to Buy
- Technical Notes
- Customer Service Notes
- Obsolete Parts
- Part Numbering Guides
- General FAQs

Applications

- Ultrathin
- Automotive
- Personal Systems
- Mobile
- Networking
- Servers
- Graphics and Consumer

About Micron

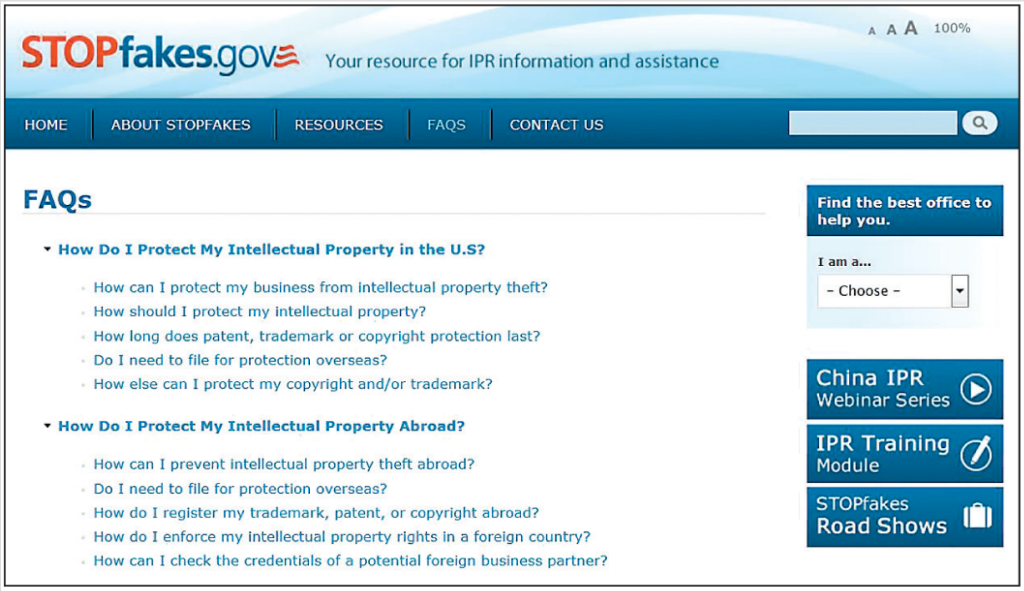
- My Micron
- Our Company
- News & Events
- Blogs
- Jobs
- Micron Foundation
- Innovations
- Locations
- Our Commitment
- Investor Relations

© 2017 Micron Technology, Inc. All rights reserved. Used with permission.

FIGURE 7.19 Site Map

For large websites, help your readers by organizing the site map rather than just presenting an alphabetical list of the pages. In this portion of a site map, Micron Technology classifies the pages in logical categories to help visitors find the pages they seek.

- **Use a table of contents at the top of long pages.** If your page extends for more than a couple of screens, include a table of contents—a set of links to the items on that page—so that readers do not have to scroll down to find the topic they want. Tables of contents can link to information farther down on the same page or to information on separate pages. Figure 7.20 shows an excerpt from the table of contents at the top of a frequently asked questions (FAQ) page.


STOPfakes.gov
Your resource for IPR information and assistance
A A A 100%
HOME
ABOUT STOPFAKES
RESOURCES
FAQS
CONTACT US
Find the best office to help you.
I am a...
- Choose -
China IPR Webinar Series
IPR Training Module
STOPfakes Road Shows

FAQs

- How Do I Protect My Intellectual Property in the U.S?
  - How can I protect my business from intellectual property theft?
  - How should I protect my intellectual property?
  - How long does patent, trademark or copyright protection last?
  - Do I need to file for protection overseas?
  - How else can I protect my copyright and/or trademark?
- How Do I Protect My Intellectual Property Abroad?
  - How can I prevent intellectual property theft abroad?
  - Do I need to file for protection overseas?
  - How do I register my trademark, patent, or copyright abroad?
  - How do I enforce my intellectual property rights in a foreign country?
  - How can I check the credentials of a potential foreign business partner?

U.S. Department of Commerce, 2013: www.stopfakes.gov/faqs.

FIGURE 7.20 Table of Contents

The table of contents is classified by topic (first all the topics about protecting your intellectual property in the United States, then all the topics about protecting it outside the United States).

Information from U.S. Department of Commerce, 2013: www.stopfakes.gov/faqs.

- **Help readers get back to the top of long pages.** If a page is long enough to justify a table of contents, include a “Back to top” link (a textual link or a button or icon) before the start of each new chunk of information.
- **Include a link to the home page on every page.** This link can be a simple “Back to home page” textual link, a button, or an icon.
- **Include textual navigational links at the bottom of the page.** If you use buttons or icons for links, include textual versions of those links at the bottom of the page. Readers with vision difficulties might use special software that reads the information on the screen. This software interprets text only, not graphics.

INCLUDE EXTRA FEATURES YOUR READERS MIGHT NEED

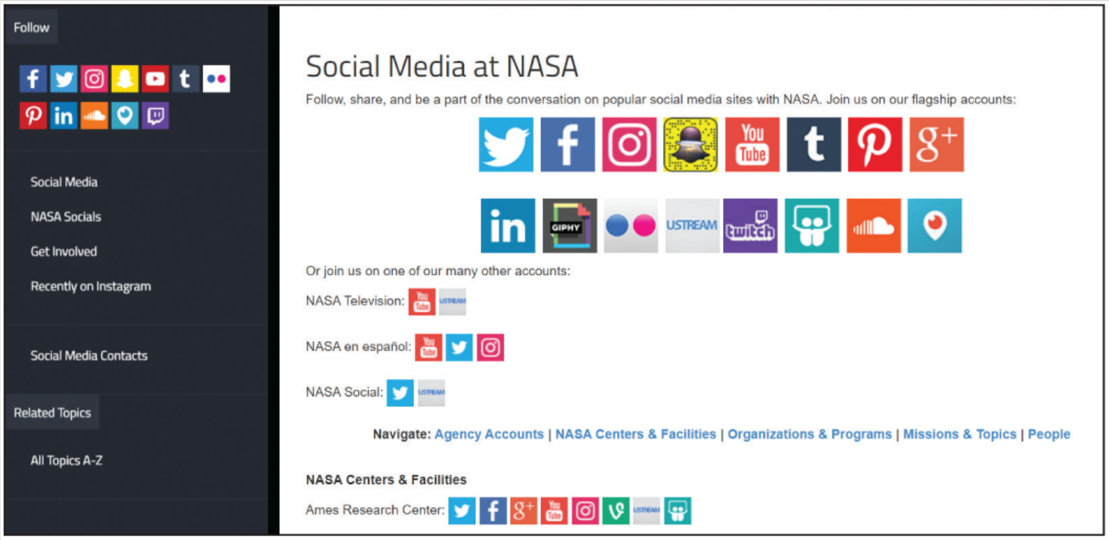
Because readers with a range of interests and needs will visit your site, consider adding some or all of the following five features:

- **An FAQ page.** A list of frequently asked questions helps new readers by providing basic information, explaining how to use the site, and directing them to more detailed discussions.
- **A search page or engine.** A search page or search engine enables readers to enter a keyword or phrase and find all the pages in the document that contain it.
- **Resource links.** If one of the purposes of your document is to educate readers, provide links to other sites.
- **A printable version of your site.** Online documents are designed for a screen, not a page. A printable version of your document, with black text on a white background and all the text and graphics consolidated into one big file, will save readers paper and toner.
- **A text-only version of your document.** Many readers with impaired vision rely on text because their specialized software cannot interpret graphics. Consider creating a text-only version on your document for these readers, and include a link to it on your home page.

HELP READERS CONNECT WITH OTHERS

Organizations use their online documents, in particular their websites, to promote interaction with clients, customers, suppliers, journalists, government agencies, and the general public. For this reason, most organizations use their sites to encourage their various stakeholders to connect with them through social media such as discussion forums and blogs.

Use your online document to direct readers to interactive features of your own website, as well as to your pages on social-media sites such as Facebook or Twitter. Figure 7.21 shows a portion of NASA's community page.



Follow

Social Media

NASA Socials

Get Involved

Recently on Instagram

Social Media Contacts

Related Topics

All Topics A-Z

Social Media at NASA

Follow, share, and be a part of the conversation on popular social media sites with NASA. Join us on our flagship accounts:

Or join us on one of our many other accounts:

NASA Television:

NASA en español:

NASA Social:

Navigate: Agency Accounts | NASA Centers & Facilities | Organizations & Programs | Missions & Topics | People

NASA Centers & Facilities

Ames Research Center:

NASA

FIGURE 7.21 Maintaining Communities

As a federal agency with a mission that includes public education, NASA has a robust social-media presence. NASA has dozens of accounts on Facebook and the other popular social-media platforms, and it offers many opportunities for scientists and the general public alike to stay connected through blogs, podcasts, chat rooms, and educational programs and activities on such topics as how to view the International Space Station.

Information from National Aeronautics and Space Administration, 2019: www.nasa.gov/socialmedia/.

CONSIDER MATTERS OF ACCESSIBILITY

According to Web Accessibility in Mind (WebAIM, 2016), an estimated 20 percent of the population has some form of visual, hearing, motor, or cognitive disability. These may vary widely in type and severity, but a significant number of people will be denied access to online material unless that material includes adaptations such as closed captioning of videos, links to audio for text files, and magnification of visuals. It's worth noting that such adaptions are also beneficial to people without disabilities who are in situations in which they need alternative accessibility—for example, when audio is unavailable or when they are using a very small screen.

Laws in the United States and throughout the world require that websites be accessible to people with disabilities. In addition to being a matter of ethics, accessibility also makes good business sense: why exclude any members of the population? Moreover, principles of accessible design generally coincide with general principles of good design. The Worldwide Web Consortium (W3C), the governing body of the web, has produced a list of international guidelines for good web design. WebAIM summarizes these guidelines as the "POUR" principles: documents should be perceivable, operable, understandable, and robust.

- **Perceivable.** Content is available to the senses (vision and hearing primarily) either through the browser or through assistive technologies (e.g., screen readers, screen enlargers).
- **Operable.** Users can interact with all controls and interactive elements using either a mouse, a keyboard, or an assistive device.

- **Understandable.** Content is clear and limits confusion and ambiguity.
- **Robust.** A wide range of technologies (including old and new user agents and assistive technologies) can access the content.

When designing for web and mobile devices, it's helpful to consider matters of accessibility in the planning stages of your design. For example, keep in mind the space that may be needed for closed captioning to run at the bottom of the screen. Or think about the placement of labels on graphics that may be magnified to 200 percent of their original size. A more detailed list of design principles is included in the Guidelines box on page 180.

GUIDELINES Designing Accessible Websites

The following key principles of accessible design have been adapted from WebAIM (2016). Most accessibility principles can be implemented very easily and will not affect the overall look or "feel" of your website. This list does not cover all accessibility issues, but by addressing these eleven basic principles, you can ensure that your web content is more accessible to everyone.

- **Provide appropriate alternative text.** Alternative text is a textual alternative to nontext content, such as the graphics in web pages. It is especially helpful for people who are blind and rely on a screen reader to read the content of the website to them.
- **Provide appropriate document structure.** Headings, lists, and other structural elements lend meaning and structure to web pages. They can also facilitate keyboard navigation within the page.
- **Provide headers for data tables.** Tables are used online for layout and to organize data. Tables that are used to organize data should have appropriate column headers. Data cells should be associated with their appropriate headers, making it easier for users of screen readers to navigate and understand the data tables.
- **Ensure that users can complete and submit all forms.** Ensure that every element of a form (text field, checkbox, dropdown list, etc.) has a label. Also make sure the user

can submit the form and recover from any errors, such as the failure to fill in all required fields.

- **Ensure that links make sense out of context.** Every link should make sense if the link text is read by itself. Users of screen readers may choose to read only the links on a web page. Certain phrases like “click here” and “more” should be avoided.
- **Caption and provide transcripts for media.** Videos and live audio must have captions and a transcript. With archived audio, a transcript may be sufficient.
- **Ensure accessibility of non-HTML content.** PDF documents and other non-HTML content must be as accessible as possible. If you cannot make such content accessible, consider using HTML formatting instead or, at the very least, provide an accessible alternative. A PDF document should also include a series of tags to make it more accessible. A tagged PDF file looks the same as an untagged file, but it is almost always more accessible to a person using a screen reader.
- **Allow users to skip repetitive elements on the page.** You should provide a method that allows users to skip navigation or other elements that repeat on every page. This is usually accomplished by providing a “Skip to Main Content” or “Skip Navigation” link at the top of the page; such a link allows the user to jump to the main content of the page.
- **Do not rely on color alone to convey meaning.** The use of color can enhance comprehension, but do not use color alone to convey information. That information may not be available to a person who is colorblind and will be unavailable to users of screen readers.
- **Make sure content is clearly written and easy to read.** There are many ways to make your content easier to understand. Write clearly, use clear fonts, and use headings and lists appropriately.
- **Design to standards.** HTML-compliant and accessible pages are more robust and provide better search engine optimization. Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) allow you to separate content from presentation, providing more flexibility and making your content more accessible.

DESIGN FOR MULTICULTURAL AUDIENCES

Only about 8 percent of the people using the internet are from North America (Internet World Stats, 2019). Therefore, it makes sense in planning your online documents to assume that many of your readers will not be proficient in English.

Planning for a multicultural website is similar to planning for a multicultural printed document:

- **Use common words and short sentences and paragraphs.**
- **Avoid idioms, both verbal and visual, that might be confusing.** For instance, don't use sports metaphors, such as *full-court press*, or a graphic of an American-style mailbox to suggest an email link.
- **If a large percentage of your readers speak a language other than English, consider creating a version of your site in that language.** The expense can be considerable, but so can the benefits.

ETHICS NOTE

DESIGNING LEGAL AND HONEST ONLINE DOCUMENTS

For more about copyright law, see "Copyright Law," Ch. 2, p. 22.

You know that the words and images that you see on the internet are covered by copyright, even if you do not see a copyright symbol. The only exception is information that is in the public domain, either because it is not covered by copyright (such as information created by entities of the U.S. federal government), because copyright has expired (the author has been dead for over 70 years), or because the creator of the information has explicitly stated that the information is in the public domain and you are free to copy it.

But what about the design of a site? Almost all web designers readily admit to spending a lot of time looking at other sites and pages for inspiration. And they admit to looking at the computer code to see how that design was achieved. This is perfectly ethical. So is copying the code for routine elements such as tables. But is it ethical to download the code for a whole page, including the layout and the design, and then plug in your own data? No. Your responsibility is to create your own information, then display it with your own design.

Designing Online Pages

Well-designed online pages are simple, with only a few colors and nothing extraneous. The text is easy to read and chunked effectively, and the links are written carefully so readers know where they are being directed.

AIM FOR SIMPLICITY

When you create an online document, remember that readers are increasingly likely to use it on a device with a small screen. In addition, they will likely read in noisy, distracting environments with too much light or not enough light. For these reasons, keep the design as simple as you can.

GUIDELINES Designing a Simple Site

Follow these four suggestions to make your design attractive and easy to use.

- **Use simple backgrounds.** A plain background is best. Avoid busy patterns that distract the reader from the words and graphics of the text.
- **Use conservative color combinations to increase text legibility.** The greater the contrast between the text color and the background color, the more legible the text. The most legible color combination is black text against a white background. Bad idea: black on purple.
- **Avoid decorative graphics.** Don’t waste space using graphics that convey no useful information. Think twice before you use clip art.
- **Use thumbnail graphics.** Instead of a large graphic, which takes up space, requires a long time to download, and uses up your reader’s data-download

allotment, use a thumbnail that readers can click on if they wish to open a larger version.

MAKE THE TEXT EASY TO READ AND UNDERSTAND

Online pages are harder to read than paper documents because screen resolution is less sharp.

GUIDELINES Designing Easy-To-Read Text

Follow these suggestions to make the text on your sites easy to read.

- **Keep the text short.** Poor screen resolution makes reading long stretches of text difficult. In general, pages should contain no more than two or three screens of information.
- **Chunk information.** When you write for the screen, chunk information to make it easier to understand. Use frequent headings, brief paragraphs, and lists.
- **Make the text as simple as possible.** Use common words and short sentences to make the information as simple as the subject allows.

CREATE CLEAR, INFORMATIVE LINKS

Well-phrased links are easy to read and understand. By clearly indicating what kind of information the linked site provides, links can help readers decide whether to follow them. Figure 7.22 is a good illustration of a website with clear, informative links. The following guidelines box is based on *Web Style Guide Online* (Lynch & Horton, 2011).

GUIDELINES Writing Clear, Informative Links

Links are critically important. Follow these suggestions to make them easy to use.

- ▶ **Structure your sentences as if there were no links in your text.**

AWKWARD	Click here to go to the Rehabilitation Center page, which links to research centers across the nation.
SMOOTH	The Rehabilitation Center page links to research centers across the nation.

- ▶ **Indicate what information the linked page contains.** Readers get frustrated if they wait for a web file to download and then discover that it doesn't contain the information they expected.

UNINFORMATIVE	See the Rehabilitation Center.
INFORMATIVE	See the Rehabilitation Center's hours of operation.

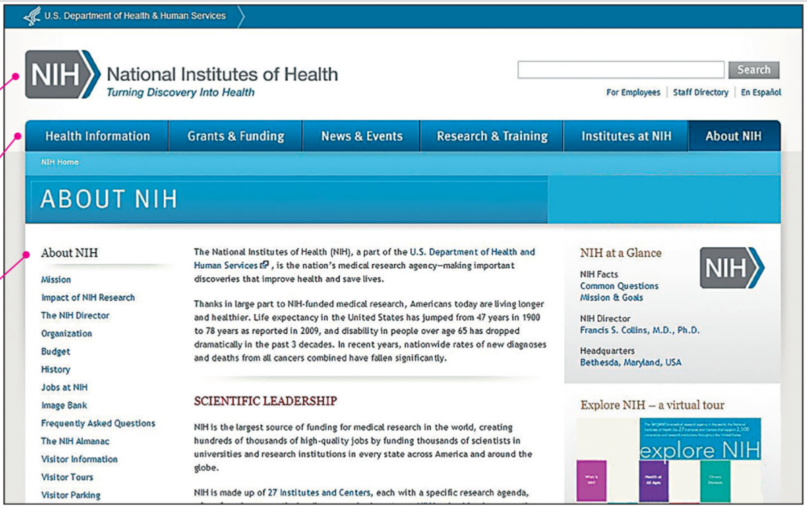
- ▶ **Use standard colors for text links.** Readers are used to seeing blue for links that have not yet been clicked and purple for links that have been clicked. If you have no good reason to use other colors, stick with the ones most readers expect.

The About NIH page on the National Institutes of Health website conveys its message simply but effectively.

The top row is reserved for the name of this government agency.

Below the agency's name is the main navigation pane, beginning with "Health Information."

Below the main navigation pane is the navigation pane for the section in which this page appears: "About NIH." The About NIH page has 18 sections, beginning with "Mission."



U.S. Department of Health & Human Services
NIH
National Institutes of Health
Turning Discovery Into Health
Search
For Employees | Staff Directory | En Español
Health Information
Grants & Funding
News & Events
Research & Training
Institutes at NIH
About NIH
NIH Home
ABOUT NIH
About NIH
Mission
Impact of NIH Research
The NIH Director
Organization
Budget
History
Jobs at NIH
Image Bank
Frequently Asked Questions
The NIH Almanac
Visitor Information
Visitor Tours
Visitor Parking

The National Institutes of Health (NIH), a part of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, is the nation's medical research agency—making important discoveries that improve health and save lives.

Thanks in large part to NIH-funded medical research, Americans today are living longer and healthier. Life expectancy in the United States has jumped from 47 years in 1900 to 78 years as reported in 2009, and disability in people over age 65 has dropped dramatically in the past 3 decades. In recent years, nationwide rates of new diagnoses and deaths from all cancers combined have fallen significantly.

SCIENTIFIC LEADERSHIP

NIH is the largest source of funding for medical research in the world, creating hundreds of thousands of high-quality jobs by funding thousands of scientists in universities and research institutions in every state across America and around the globe.

NIH is made up of 27 Institutes and Centers, each with a specific research agenda,

NIH at a Glance
NIH Facts
Common Questions
Mission & Goals

NIH Director
Francis S. Collins, M.D., Ph.D.

Headquarters
Bethesda, Maryland, USA

Explore NIH – a virtual tour

explore NIH

National Institutes of Health: www.nih.gov.

FIGURE 7.22 An About Us Page with Clear, Informative Links

Information from: National Institutes of Health: www.nih.gov.

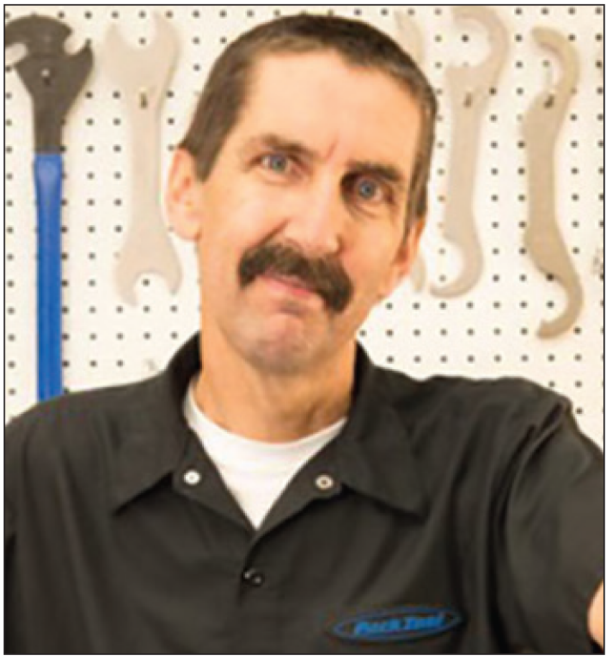
Combining Print and Online Documents

If understanding learning theory helps technical communicators design pages and screens, it also helps them recognize that users receive and process data and information in different ways. For example, some people may be visual learners, preferring graphics and other types of spatial representations, while others may do best with kinesthetic or physical activities. Still others may be verbal or linguistic learners, wanting written and spoken words. Technical communicators can draw on a variety of modalities—verbal, visual, aural, physical, and more—in which to present data and information, and technical communicators can integrate several modalities in a single context to support multiple learning styles.

If your analysis of audience and purpose suggests that users would benefit from support for multiple learning styles, you have the option of providing both print and online documents. In the example in Figure 7.23, technical communicators at Park Tool provide written and video-based instructions for the same task. The written instructions include graphics, some of which overlay spatial-cueing devices; the video can be watched but also listened to while working. Users have access to a variety of learning options.

STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION

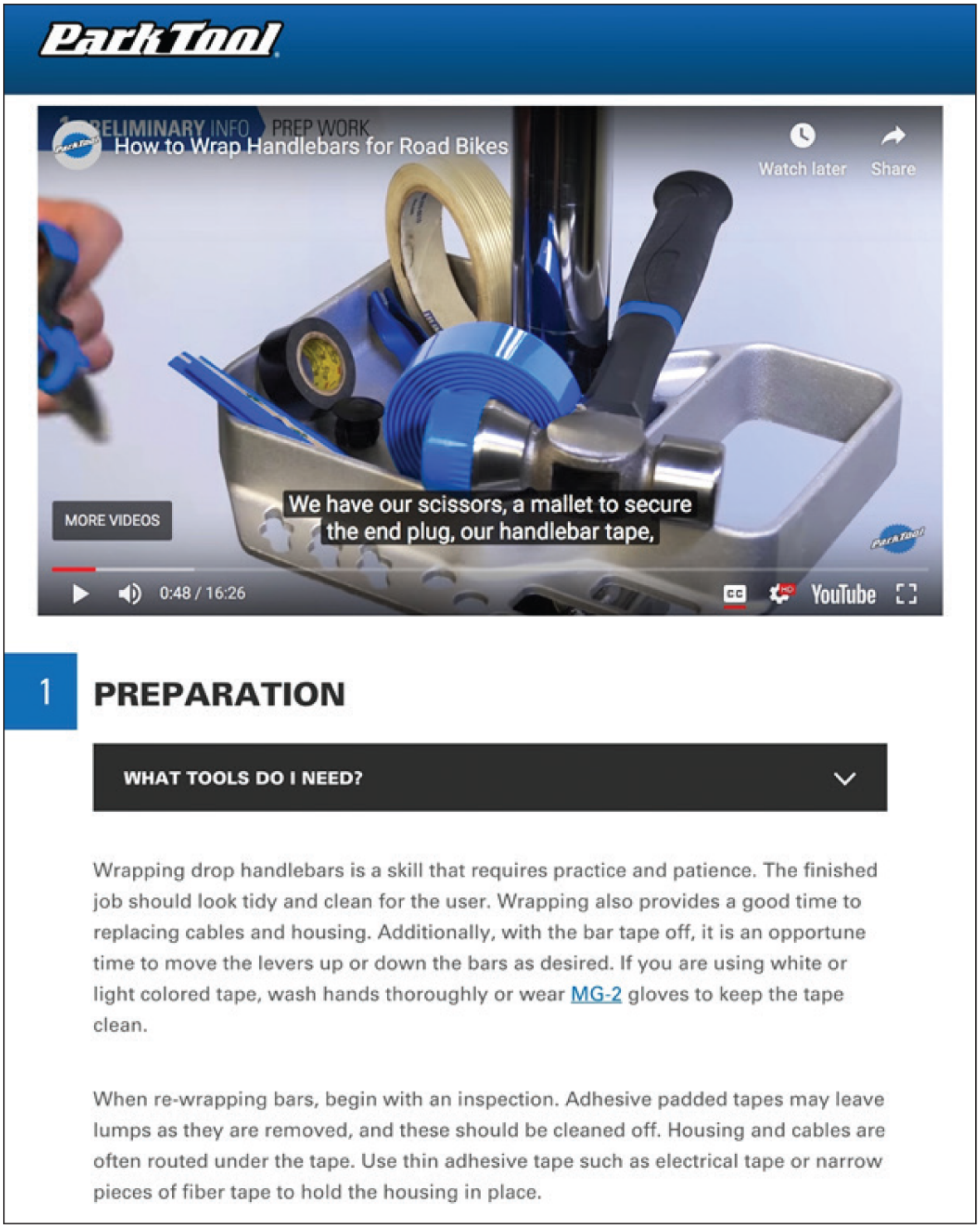
Calvin Jones on Using Multiple Modalities



Courtesy Park Tool

CALVIN JONES

At Park Tool, Calvin Jones, director of education, creates the instruction sets, technical descriptions, troubleshooting guides, and other documents that help users repair bicycles. In this example from the Park Tool website, Jones explains how he uses multiple modalities in an online instruction set to show both professional and home mechanics how to wrap drop-style handlebars with handlebar tape (handlebar tape reduces vibration and provides grip and comfort, but can unwind if not installed properly). Depending on their learning needs, users can watch a video or read written instructions with integrated graphics. Users can also view selected portions of the video for elaborations on the written instructions.


Park Tool
PRELIMINARY INFO
PREP WORK
How to Wrap Handlebars for Road Bikes
Watch later
Share
MORE VIDEOS
0:48 / 16:26
CC
YouTube

We have our scissors, a mallet to secure the end plug, our handlebar tape,

1 PREPARATION

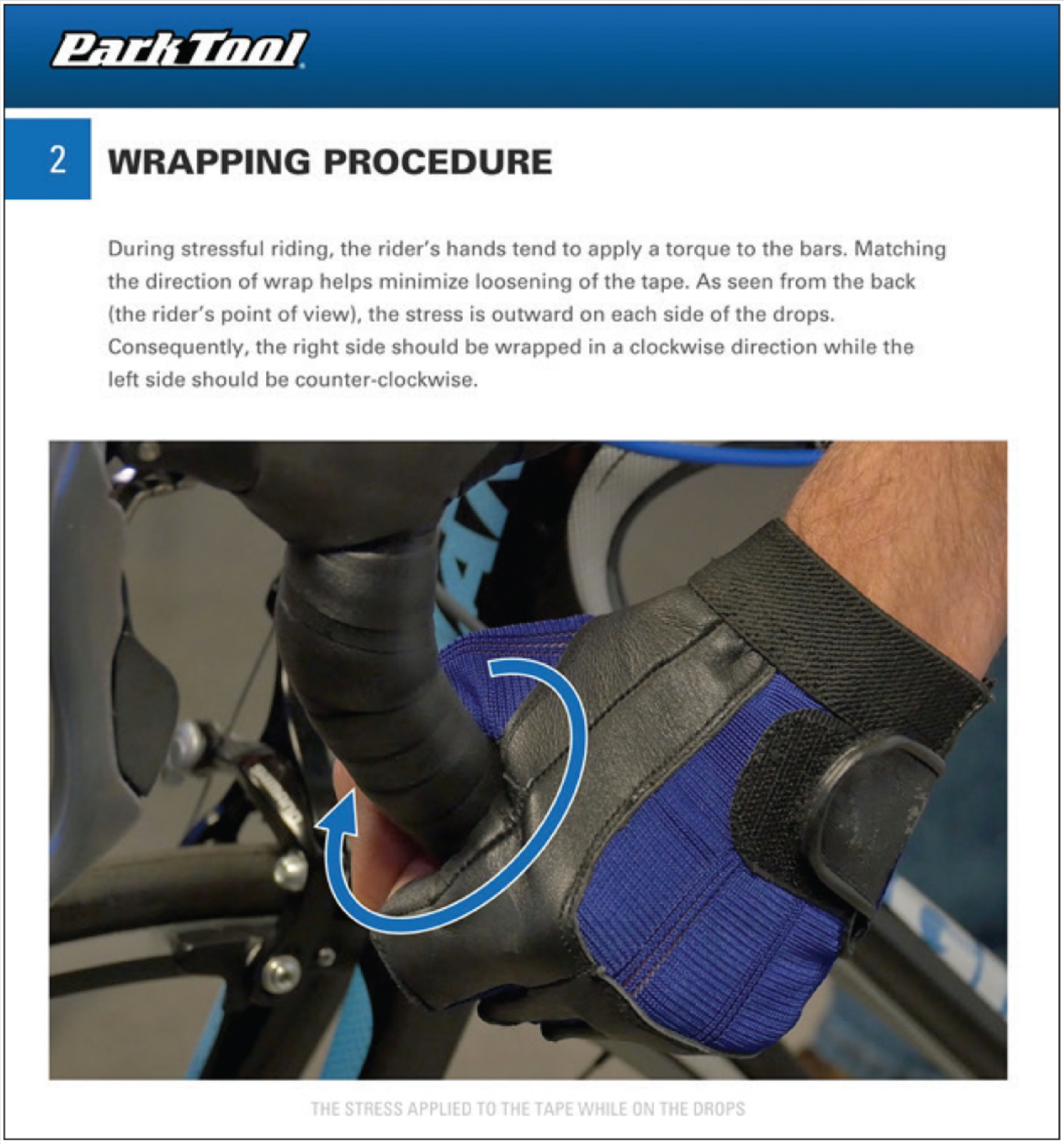
WHAT TOOLS DO I NEED?

Wrapping drop handlebars is a skill that requires practice and patience. The finished job should look tidy and clean for the user. Wrapping also provides a good time to replacing cables and housing. Additionally, with the bar tape off, it is an opportune time to move the levers up or down the bars as desired. If you are using white or light colored tape, wash hands thoroughly or wear MG-2 gloves to keep the tape clean.

When re-wrapping bars, begin with an inspection. Adhesive padded tapes may leave lumps as they are removed, and these should be cleaned off. Housing and cables are often routed under the tape. Use thin adhesive tape such as electrical tape or narrow pieces of fiber tape to hold the housing in place.

Courtesy Park Tool.

FIGURE 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities (continued)



2 WRAPPING PROCEDURE

During stressful riding, the rider's hands tend to apply a torque to the bars. Matching the direction of wrap helps minimize loosening of the tape. As seen from the back (the rider's point of view), the stress is outward on each side of the drops. Consequently, the right side should be wrapped in a clockwise direction while the left side should be counter-clockwise.

THE STRESS APPLIED TO THE TAPE WHILE ON THE DROPS

Courtesy Park Tool.

FIGURE 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities

The instructions provide users with different options for learning how to do the task. Providing options gives users the opportunity to learn in the method that works best for their experience level and learning style. This strategy increases the likelihood that users will be successful in following the instructions and benefiting from Park Tool's products and assistance.

The options for learning involve both telling (verbal instructions) and showing (video-based instructions). The video-based instructions also support customers with vision difficulties because they can hear the instructions spoken out loud. In addition, the talking modality allows people to listen to the instructions while wrapping the handlebars, keeping their attention focused on the bike rather than dividing their attention between the bike and the screen.

The video (at over 16 minutes in length) is an elaborated version of the verbal instructions, providing added support for novices.

Hosting instructions on the company website allows Park Tool to provide their customers with support in a variety of modalities.

The visuals in the verbal instructions incorporate spatial modalities—in this example, directional arrows—to help users with the task at hand (handlebar tape is wrapped in different directions on a handlebar, depending on how stress is applied by riders).

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

Did you

☐ analyze your audience: their knowledge of the subject, their attitudes, their reasons for reading, and the kinds of tasks they will be carrying out?
☐ consider the purpose(s) you are trying to achieve?
☐ determine your resources in time, money, and equipment?

Designing Print Documents and Pages

Did you

☐ think about which accessing aids would be most appropriate?
☐ use color, if available, to highlight certain items?
☐ devise a style for headers, footers, and page numbers?
☐ draw thumbnail sketches and page grids that define columns and white space?
☐ choose typefaces and styles that are appropriate for your subject?
☐ use type sizes that are appropriate for your subject and audience?
☐ choose a line length and line spacing that is suitable for your subject and audience?
☐ consider whether to use left-justified text or full-justified text?

☐ design your title for clarity and emphasis?
☐ devise a logical, consistent style for each heading level?
☐ use rules, boxes, screens, marginal glosses, and pull quotes where appropriate?

Designing Online Documents

Did you

☐ create informative headers and footers?
☐ help readers navigate the site by including a site map, a table of contents, "Back to top" links, and textual navigation buttons?
☐ include extra features your readers might need?
☐ help readers connect with others through links to interactive portions of your site and to social-media sites?
☐ design for readers with vision, hearing, or mobility disabilities?
☐ design for multicultural audiences?
☐ aim for simplicity in web page design?
☐ make the text easy to understand by keeping it short, chunking information, and writing simply?

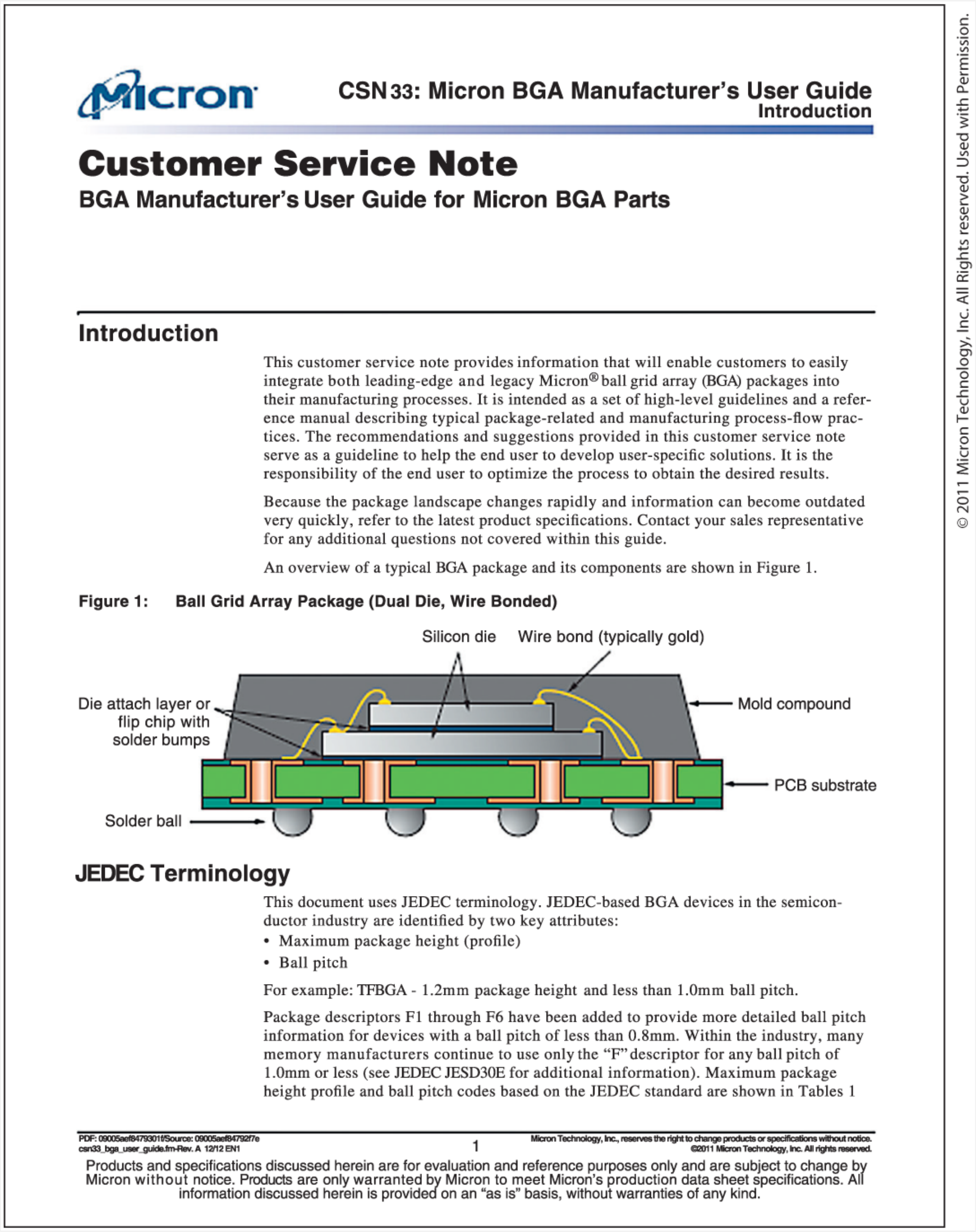
EXERCISES

1. Study the first and second pages of an article in a journal in your field. Describe ten design features on these two pages.

Which design features are most effective for the audience and purpose? Which are least effective?

2. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form small groups for this collaborative exercise in analyzing design. Photocopy or scan a page from a book or a magazine. Choose a page that does not contain advertisements. Each person works independently for the first part of this project:
    - One person describes the design elements.
    - One person evaluates the design. Which aspects of the design are effective, and which could be improved?
    - One person creates a new design using thumbnail sketches.

    Then meet as a group and compare notes. Do all members of the group agree with the first member's description of the design? With the second member's evaluation of the design? Do all members like the third member's redesign? What have your discussions taught you about design? Write a memo to your instructor presenting your findings, and include the photocopy or scan of the page with your memo. For more about memos, see Ch. 9, p. 247.
3. Study the excerpt from this Micron data flyer (2012, p. 1). Describe the designer's use of alignment as a design principle. How effective is it? How would you modify it? Present your analysis and recommendations in a brief memo to your instructor.



Customer Service Note

BGA Manufacturer's User Guide for Micron BGA Parts

Introduction

This customer service note provides information that will enable customers to easily integrate both leading-edge and legacy Micron® ball grid array (BGA) packages into their manufacturing processes. It is intended as a set of high-level guidelines and a reference manual describing typical package-related and manufacturing process-flow practices. The recommendations and suggestions provided in this customer service note serve as a guideline to help the end user to develop user-specific solutions. It is the responsibility of the end user to optimize the process to obtain the desired results.

Because the package landscape changes rapidly and information can become outdated very quickly, refer to the latest product specifications. Contact your sales representative for any additional questions not covered within this guide.

An overview of a typical BGA package and its components are shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: **Ball Grid Array Package (Dual Die, Wire Bonded)**

Silicon die
Wire bond (typically gold)
Die attach layer or flip chip with solder bumps
Mold compound
PCB substrate
Solder ball

JEDEC Terminology

This document uses JEDEC terminology. JEDEC-based BGA devices in the semiconductor industry are identified by two key attributes:

- Maximum package height (profile)
- Ball pitch

For example: TFBGA - 1.2mm package height and less than 1.0mm ball pitch.

Package descriptors F1 through F6 have been added to provide more detailed ball pitch information for devices with a ball pitch of less than 0.8mm. Within the industry, many memory manufacturers continue to use only the "F" descriptor for any ball pitch of 1.0mm or less (see JEDEC JESD30E for additional information). Maximum package height profile and ball pitch codes based on the JEDEC standard are shown in Tables 1

©2011 Micron Technology, Inc. All rights reserved.

Products and specifications discussed herein are for evaluation and reference purposes only and are subject to change by Micron without notice. Products are only warranted by Micron to meet Micron's production data sheet specifications. All information discussed herein is provided on an "as is" basis, without warranties of any kind.

© 2011 Micron Technology, Inc. All Rights reserved. Used with Permission.

4. Find the websites of three manufacturers within a single industry, such as personal watercraft, cars, computers, or

medical equipment. Study the three sites, focusing on two or more of these aspects of site design:

  - use of color
  - quality of the site map or index
  - navigation, including the clarity and placement of links to other pages in the site
  - accommodation of multicultural readers
  - accommodation of people with disabilities
  - phrasing of the links

Which of the three sites is most effective? Which is least effective? Why? Compare and contrast the three sites in terms of their effectiveness.

CASE 7: Designing a Flyer

As an employee in the educational information office in the U.S. Department of Education, you have been asked by your supervisor to design a flyer for international students hoping to complete graduate school in the United States. She has given you a text document with all of the relevant information; it's your job to turn that information into a visually appealing flyer that will catch students' attention. Your supervisor has asked you to write her a memo before you begin, describing and defending the design you have in mind. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started on your memo.

CHAPTER 8

Creating Graphics

The Functions of Graphics
Understanding the Process of Creating Graphics
Using Color Effectively
Choosing the Appropriate Kind of Graphic
Creating Effective Graphics for Multicultural Readers

GRAPHICS ARE THE “PICTURES” in technical communication: drawings, maps, photographs, diagrams, charts, graphs, and tables. Graphics range from realistic, such as photographs, to highly abstract, such as organization charts. They range from decorative, such as clip art and stock photos that show people seated at a conference table, to highly informative, such as a schematic diagram of an electronic device.

Graphics are important in technical communication because they do the following:

- catch readers’ attention and interest
- help writers communicate information that is difficult to communicate with words

- help writers clarify and emphasize information
- help nonnative speakers understand information
- help writers communicate information to multiple audiences with different interests, aptitudes, and reading habits

The Functions of Graphics

We have known for decades that graphics motivate people to study documents more closely. Some 83 percent of what we learn derives from what we see, whereas only 11 percent derives from what we hear (Gatlin, 1988). Because we are good at acquiring information through sight, a document that includes a visual element in addition to the words is more effective than one that doesn't. People studying a document with graphics learn about one-third more than people studying a document without graphics (Levie & Lentz, 1982). And people remember 43 percent more when a document includes graphics (Morrison & Jimmerson, 1989). In addition, readers like graphics. According to one survey, readers of computer documentation consistently want more graphics and fewer words (Brockmann, 1990, p. 203).

Graphics offer five benefits that words alone cannot:

1. **Graphics are indispensable in demonstrating logical and numerical relationships.** For example, an organization chart effectively represents the lines of authority in an organization. And if you want to communicate the number of power plants built in each of the last 10 years, a bar graph works better than a paragraph.
2. **Graphics can communicate spatial information more effectively than words alone.** If you want to show the details of

a bicycle derailleur, a diagram of the bicycle with a close-up of the derailleur is more effective than a verbal description.

3. **Graphics can communicate steps in a process more effectively than words alone.** A troubleshooter’s guide, a common kind of table, explains what might be causing a problem in a process and how you might fix it. And a diagram can show clearly how acid rain forms.
4. **Graphics can save space.** Consider the following paragraph:

   In the Wilmington area, some 80 percent of the population aged 18 to 24 have watched streamed movies on their computers. They watch an average of 1.86 movies a week. Among 25- to 34-year-olds, the percentage is 72, and the average number of movies is 1.62. Among 35- to 49-year-olds, the percentage is 62, and the average number of movies is 1.19. Among the 50 to 64 age group, the percentage is 47, and the number of movies watched averages 0.50. Finally, among those people 65 years old or older, the percentage is 28, and the average number of movies watched weekly is 0.31.

   Presenting this information in a paragraph is uneconomical and makes the information hard to remember. Presented as a table, however, the information is more concise and more memorable.

AGE	PERCENTAGE WATCHING STREAMED MOVIES	NUMBER OF MOVIES WATCHED PER WEEK

18–24	80	1.86
25–34	72	1.62
35–49	62	1.19
50–64	47	0.50
65+	28	0.31

5. **Graphics can reduce the cost of documents intended for international readers.** Translation costs an average of nearly 15 cents per word (Straker Translations, 2019). Used effectively, graphics can reduce the number of words you have to translate.

THINKING VISUALLY

Characteristics of an Effective Graphic

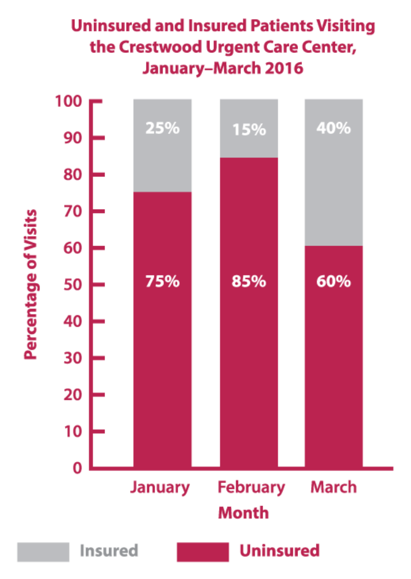
To be effective, graphics must be clear, understandable, and meaningfully related to the larger discussion. Follow these five principles when creating them.

A graphic should serve a PURPOSE.
Don't include a graphic unless it will help readers understand or remember information.

A graphic should be SIMPLE and UNCLUTTERED.
Three-dimensional bar graphs are easy to make, but they are harder to understand than two-dimensional ones.

A graphic should present a MANAGEABLE amount of information.
Presenting too much information can confuse readers. Consider what kinds of graphics your readers are familiar with, how much they already know about the subject, and what you want the document to do. Consider creating several simple graphics rather than a single complicated one.

A graphic should meet readers' FORMAT expectations.
Follow the conventions—for instance, use diamonds to represent decision points in a flowchart—unless you have a good reason not to.


Uninsured and Insured Patients Visiting the Crestwood Urgent Care Center, January–March 2016

A graphic should be clearly LABELED.
Give every graphic (except a brief, informal one) a unique, clear, informative title. Fully label the columns of a table and the axes and lines of a graph. Don't make readers guess whether you are using meters or yards, or whether you are also including statistics from the previous year.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

As you plan and draft your document, look for opportunities to use graphics to clarify, emphasize, summarize, and organize information.

ETHICS NOTE

CREATING HONEST GRAPHICS

Follow these six suggestions to ensure that you represent data honestly in your graphics.

- If you did not create the graphic or generate the data, cite your source. If you want to publish a graphic that you did not create, obtain permission. For more on citing graphics, see page 198.
- Include all relevant data. For example, if you have a data point that you cannot explain, do not change the scale to eliminate it.
- Begin the axes in your graphs at zero — or mark them clearly — so that you represent quantities honestly.
- Do not use a table to hide a data point that would be obvious in a graph.
- Show items as they really are. Do not manipulate a photograph of a computer monitor to make the screen look bigger than it is, for example.
- Do not use color or shading to misrepresent an item's importance. A light-shaded bar in a bar graph, for example, appears larger and nearer than a dark-shaded bar of the same size.

Common problem areas are pointed out in the discussions of various kinds of graphics throughout this chapter.

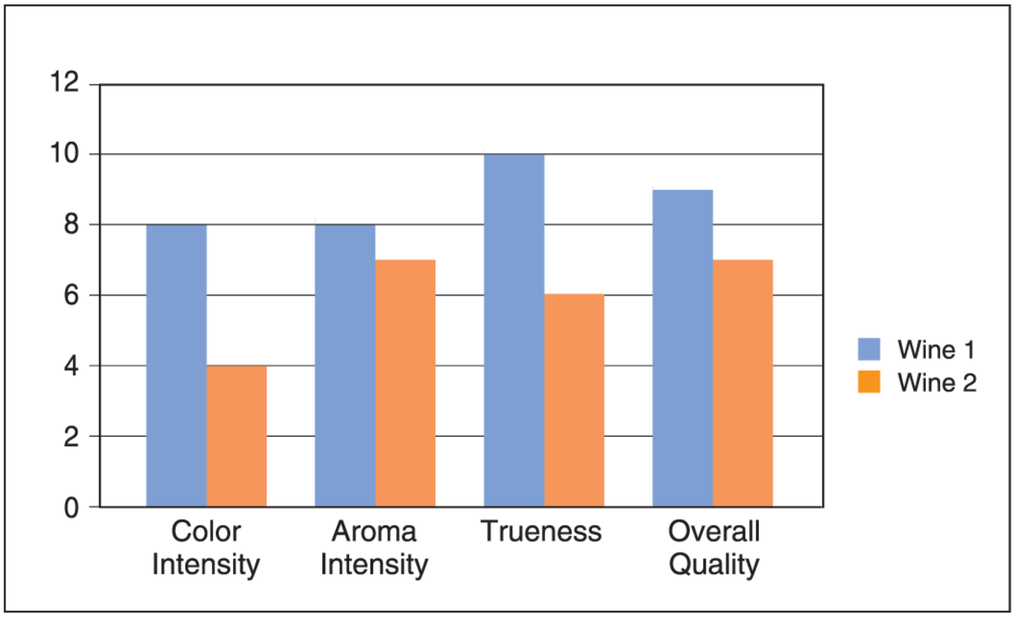
Understanding the Process of Creating Graphics

Creating graphics involves planning, producing, revising, and citing.

PLANNING GRAPHICS

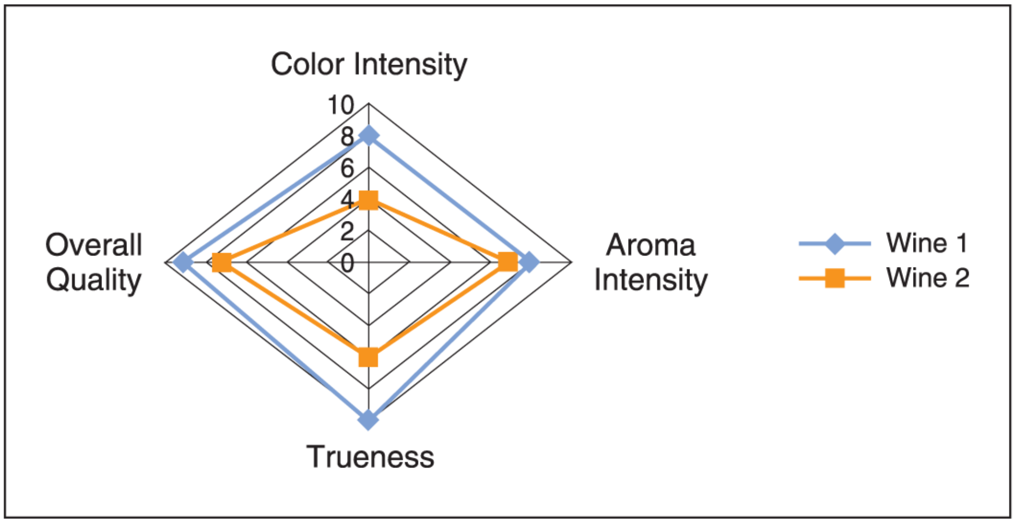
Whether you focus first on the text or the graphics, consider the following four issues as you plan your graphics.

- **Audience.** Will readers understand the kinds of graphics you want to use? Will they know the standard icons in your field? Are they motivated to read your document, or do you need to enliven the text — for example, by adding color for emphasis — to hold their attention? General audiences know how to read common types of graphics, such as those that appear frequently in newspapers or on popular websites. A general audience, for example, could use this bar graph to compare two bottles of wine:



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

However, they would probably have trouble with the following radar graph:

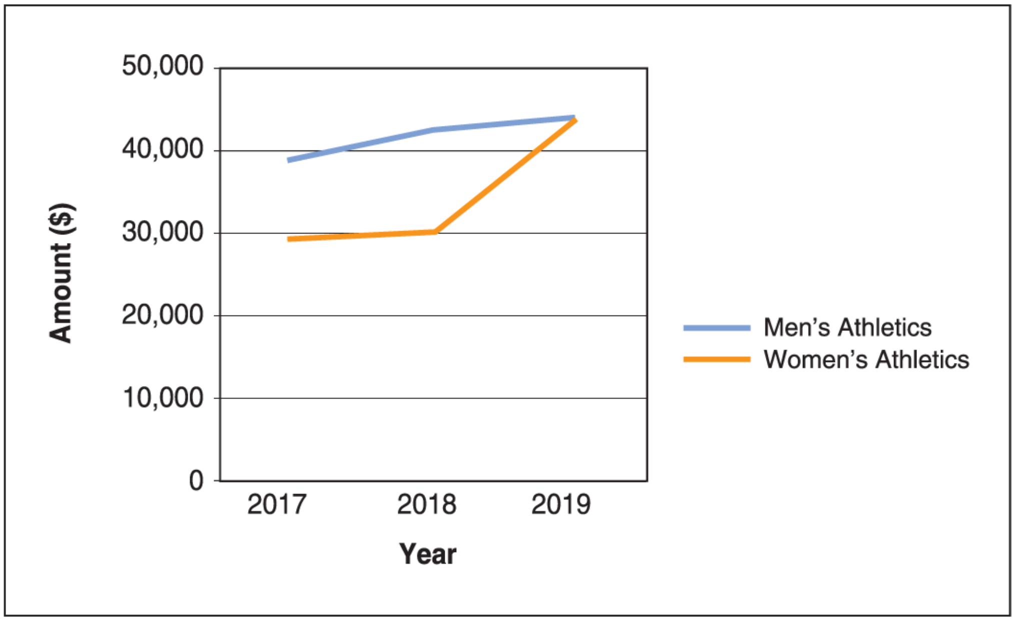


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

- **Purpose.** What point are you trying to make with the graphic? Imagine what you want your readers to know and do with the information. For example, if you want readers to know the exact dollar amounts spent on athletics by a college, use a table:

YEAR	MEN'S ATHLETICS ($)	WOMEN'S ATHLETICS ($)
2017	38,990	29,305
2018	42,400	30,080
2019	44,567	44,213

If you want readers to know how spending on athletics is changing over time, use a line graph:



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

- **The kind of information you want to communicate.** Your subject will help you decide what type of graphic to include. For example, in writing about languages spoken by your state's citizens, you might use a table for the statistical data, a map for the patterns of language use, and a graph for statistical trends over time.
- **Physical conditions.** The physical conditions in which readers will use the document — amount of lighting, amount of surface space available, the size of the screen on which the information will be displayed, and so forth — will influence the type of graphic as well as its size and shape, the thickness of lines, the size of type, and the color.

As you plan how you are going to create the graphics, consider four important factors:

- **Time.** Because making a complicated graphic can take a lot of time, you need to establish a schedule.
- **Money.** Creating a high-quality graphic can be expensive. How big is the project budget? How can you use that money effectively?
- **Equipment.** Determine what tools and software you will require, such as spreadsheets for tables and graphs or graphics software for diagrams.

- **Expertise.** How much do you know about creating graphics? Do you have access to the expertise of others?

PRODUCING GRAPHICS

Usually, you won't have all the resources you would like. You will have to choose one of the following four approaches:

- **Use existing graphics.** For a student paper that *will not be published*, some instructors allow the use of copied and pasted existing graphics; other instructors do not. For a document that *will be published*, whether written by a student or a professional, using an existing graphic is permissible if the graphic is in the public domain (that is, not under copyright), if it is the property of the writer's organization, or if the organization has obtained permission to use it. Be particularly careful about graphics you find on the web. Many people mistakenly think that anything on the web can be used without permission. The same copyright laws that apply to printed material apply to web-based material, whether words or graphics. For more on citing graphics, see "Citing Sources of Graphics" below.

  Aside from the issue of copyright, think carefully before you use existing graphics. The style of the graphic might not match that of the others you want to use; the graphic might lack some features you want or include some you don't. If you use an existing graphic, assign it your own number and title.

- **Modify existing graphics.** You can redraw an existing graphic or use a scanner to digitize the graphic and then modify it electronically with graphics software. The same copyright laws that apply to existing graphics also apply to modified graphics. See "Citing Sources of Graphics" for more on citing graphics.
- **Create graphics on a computer.** You can create many kinds of graphics using your spreadsheet software and the drawing tools in your word processor.
- **Have someone else create the graphics.** Professional-level graphics software can cost hundreds of dollars and require hundreds of hours of practice. Some companies have technical-publications departments with graphics experts, but others subcontract this work. Many print shops and service bureaus have graphics experts on staff or can direct you to them.

For more about work made for hire, see "Copyright Law," Ch. 2, p. 22.

Note that even if you create a graphic yourself or hire someone to create one for you, you need to cite the source of any copyright-protected information used to create it.

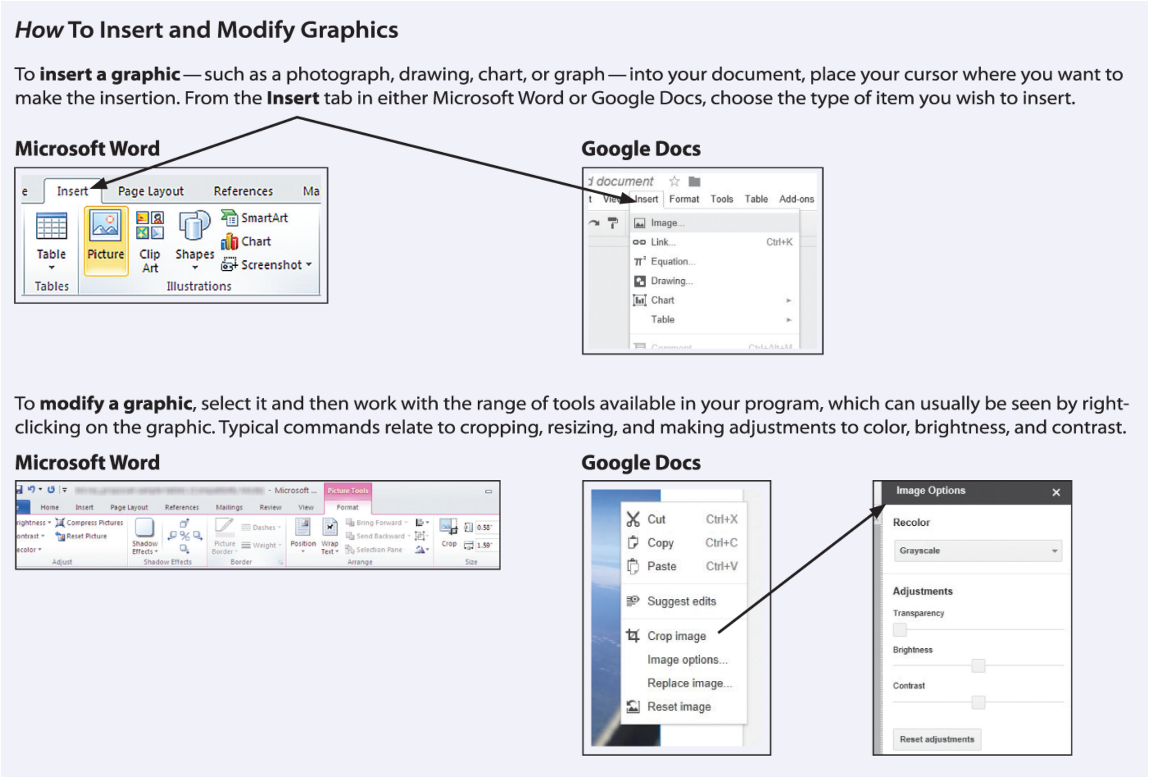
REVISING GRAPHICS

As with any other aspect of technical communication, build in enough time and budget enough money to revise the graphics you want to use. Create a checklist and evaluate each graphic for effectiveness. The Writer's Checklist at the end of this chapter is a good starting point. Show your graphics to people whose backgrounds are similar to those of your intended readers and ask them for suggestions. Revise the graphics and solicit more reactions.

TECH TIP

Why To Insert and Modify Graphics

You can insert graphics into your document in order to highlight, clarify, summarize, and/or organize information. You may have access to graphics, from online stock photo agencies or your company's graphics library, that could benefit from some modification.



How To Insert and Modify Graphics

To **insert a graphic**—such as a photograph, drawing, chart, or graph—into your document, place your cursor where you want to make the insertion. From the **Insert** tab in either Microsoft Word or Google Docs, choose the type of item you wish to insert.

To **modify a graphic**, select it and then work with the range of tools available in your program, which can usually be seen by right-clicking on the graphic. Typical commands relate to cropping, resizing, and making adjustments to color, brightness, and contrast.

Microsoft Word
Insert
Page Layout
References
Table
Picture
Clip Art
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Screenshot
Tables
Illustrations
Google Docs
Insert
Format
Tools
Table
Add-ons
Image...
Link...
Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Microsoft Word
Picture Tools
Format
Compress Pictures
Reset Picture
Shadow Effects
Position
Wrap Text
Bring Forward
Send Backward
Selection Pane
Crop
Google Docs
Cut
Ctrl+X
Copy
Ctrl+C
Paste
Ctrl+V
Suggest edits
Crop image
Image options...
Replace image...
Reset image
Image Options
Recolor
Grayscale
Adjustments
Transparency
Brightness
Contrast
Reset adjustments

CITING SOURCES OF GRAPHICS

For more information about copyright, see “Copyright Law,” Ch. 2, p. 22.

If you wish to publish a graphic that is protected by copyright (even if you have revised it), you need to obtain written permission from the copyright holder. The same goes for any copyright-protected information you use to create a graphic. Related to the issue of permission is the issue of citation. Of course, you do not have to cite the source of a graphic if you created it yourself, if it is not protected by copyright, or if your organization owns the copyright.

In all other cases, however, you should include a source citation, even if your document is a course assignment and will not be published. Citing the sources of graphics, even those you have revised substantially, shows your instructor that you understand professional conventions and your ethical responsibilities.

For more about style manuals, see Appendix, Part A.

If you are following a style manual, check to see whether it presents a format for citing sources of graphics. In addition to citing a graphic’s source in the reference list, most style manuals call for a source statement in the caption:

PRINT SOURCE

Source: Verduijn, 2015, p. 14. Copyright 2015 by Tedopres International B.V. Reprinted with permission.

ONLINE SOURCE

Source: Johnson Space Center Digital Image Collection. Copyright 2019 by NASA. Reprinted with permission.

If your graphic is based on an existing graphic or based on copyright-protected information from another source, the source statement should state that your graphic is “based on” or “adapted from” your source:

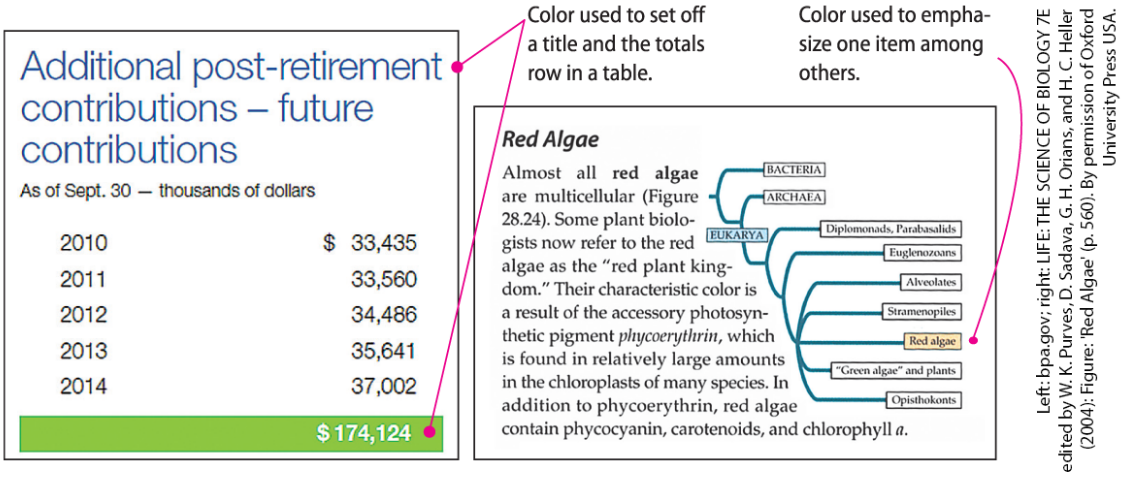
> Source: Adapted from Jonklaas et al., 2011, p. 771. Copyright 2008 by American Medical Association. Reprinted with permission.

Using Color Effectively

Color draws attention to information you want to emphasize, establishes visual patterns to promote understanding, and adds interest. But it is also easy to misuse. The following discussion is based on Jan V. White's still-excellent text *Color for the Electronic Age* (1990).

In using color in graphics and page design, keep these six principles in mind:

- **Don't overdo it.** Readers can interpret only two or three colors at a time. Use colors for small items, such as portions of graphics and important words. And don't use colors where black and white will work better.
- **Use color to emphasize particular items.** People interpret color before they interpret shape, size, or placement on the page. Color effectively draws readers' attention to a particular item or group of items on a page. In Figure 8.1, for example, color adds emphasis to different kinds of information.



Additional post-retirement contributions – future contributions

As of Sept. 30 — thousands of dollars

2010	$ 33,435
2011	33,560
2012	34,486
2013	35,641
2014	37,002
	$ 174,124

Red Algae

Almost all red algae are multicellular (Figure 28.24). Some plant biologists now refer to the red algae as the "red plant kingdom." Their characteristic color is a result of the accessory photosynthetic pigment *phycoerythrin,* which is found in relatively large amounts in the chloroplasts of many species. In addition to phycoerythrin, red algae contain phycocyanin, carotenoids, and chlorophyll *a.*

Color used to set off a title and the totals row in a table.

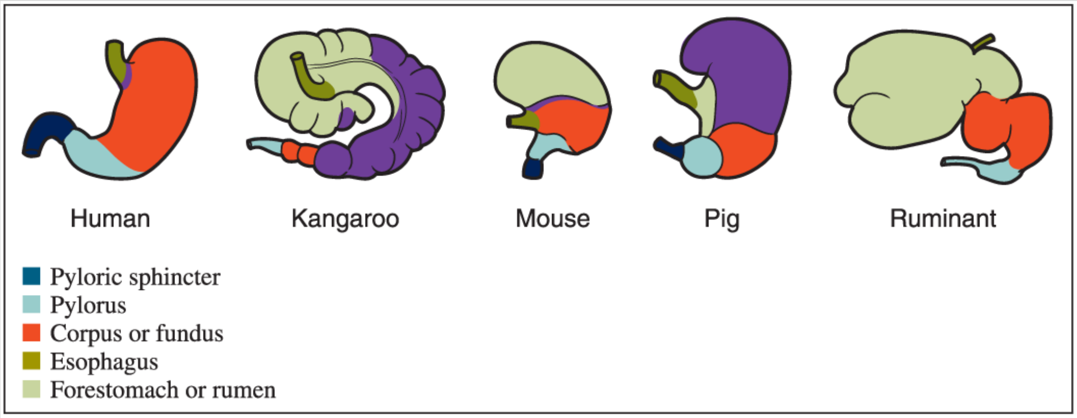
Color used to emphasize one item among others.

Left: bpa.gov; right: LIFE: THE SCIENCE OF BIOLOGY 7E edited by W. K. Purves, D. Sadava, G. H. Orians, and H. C. Heller (2004): Figure: 'Red Algae' (p. 560). By permission of Oxford University Press USA.

FIGURE 8.1 Color Used for Emphasis

For more about designing your document, see Ch. 7.

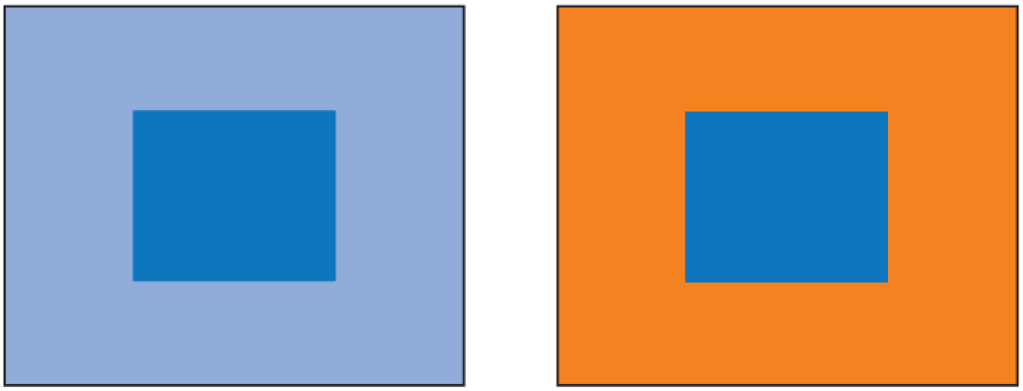
- **Use color to create patterns.** The principle of repetition — readers learn to recognize patterns — applies in graphics as well as in document design. In creating patterns, also consider shape. For instance, use red for safety comments but place them in octagons resembling a stop sign. This way, you give your readers two visual cues to help them recognize the pattern. Figure 8.2 shows the use of color to establish patterns. Color is also an effective way to emphasize design features such as text boxes, rules, screens, and headers and footers.


Human
Kangaroo
Mouse
Pig
Ruminant
Pyloric sphincter
Pylorus
Corpus or fundus
Esophagus
Forestomach or rumen

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.2 Color Used to Establish Patterns

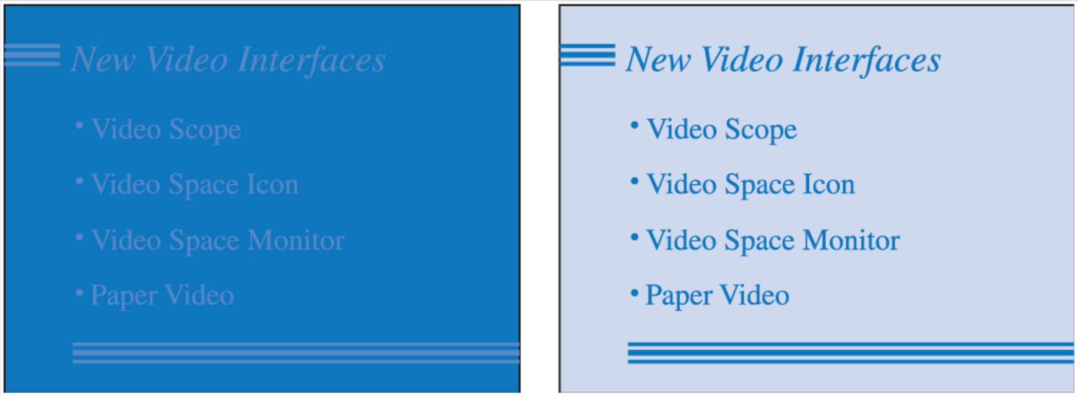
- **Use contrast effectively.** The visibility of a color is a function of the background against which it appears (see Figure 8.3). The strongest contrasts are between black and white and between black and yellow. The need for effective contrast also applies to graphics used in presentations, as shown in Figure 8.4.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.3 The Effect of Background in Creating Contrast

Notice that a color washes out if the background color is too similar.


New Video Interfaces
• Video Scope
• Video Space Icon
• Video Space Monitor
• Paper Video
New Video Interfaces
• Video Scope
• Video Space Icon
• Video Space Monitor
• Paper Video

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

a. Insufficient contrast **b.** Effective contrast

FIGURE 8.4 Effective Contrast Used in a Presentation Slide

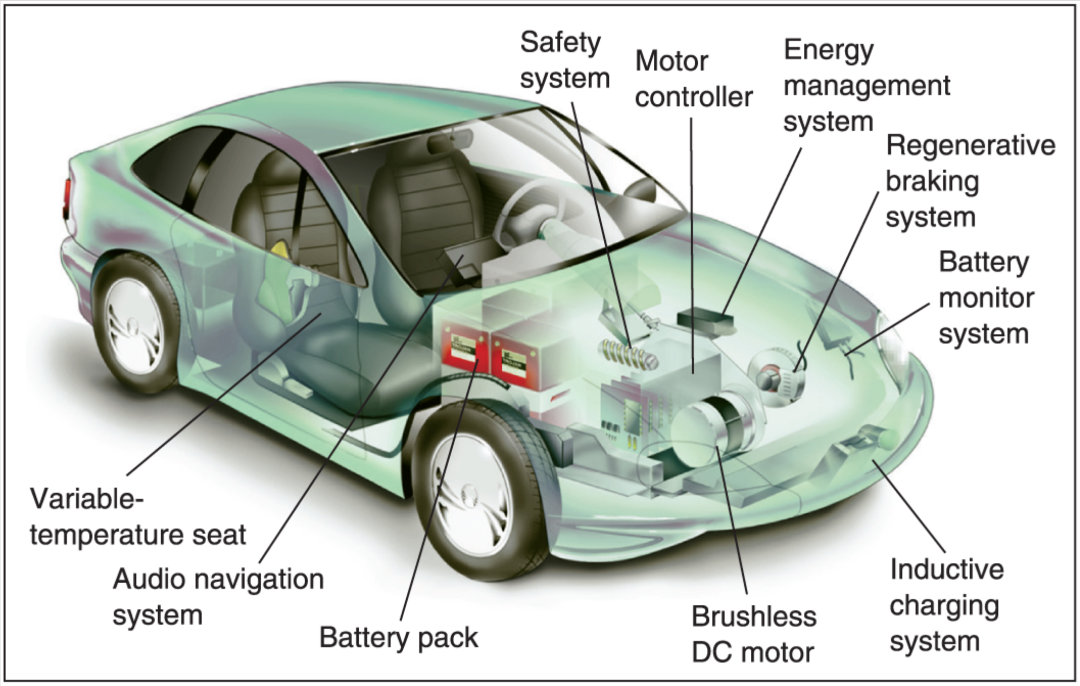
In graphic (a), the text is hard to read because of insufficient contrast. The greater contrast in graphic (b) makes the text easier to read.

For more about presentation graphics, see “Preparing Presentation Graphics,” Ch. 15.

- **Take advantage of any symbolic meanings colors may already have.** In American culture, for example, red signals danger, heat, or electricity; yellow signals caution; and orange signals warning. Using these warm colors in ways that depart from these familiar meanings could be confusing. The cooler colors — blues and greens — are more conservative and subtle. (Figure 8.5 illustrates these principles.) Keep in mind, however, that people in different cultures interpret colors differently.

For more about cultural patterns, see “Communicating Across Cultures,” Ch. 4, p. 62.

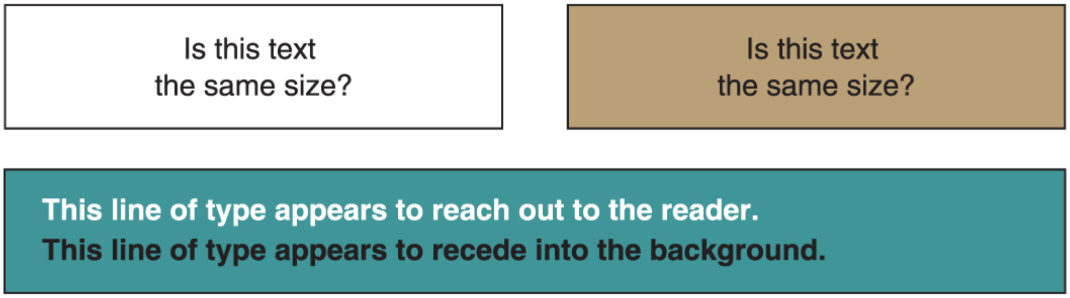
- Be aware that color can obscure or swallow up text.


Safety system
Motor controller
Energy management system
Regenerative braking system
Battery monitor system
Variable-temperature seat
Audio navigation system
Battery pack
Brushless DC motor
Inductive charging system

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.5 Colors Have Clear Associations for Readers

The batteries are red. The warm red contrasts effectively with the cool green of the car body.


Is this text the same size?
Is this text the same size?
This line of type appears to reach out to the reader.
This line of type appears to recede into the background.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

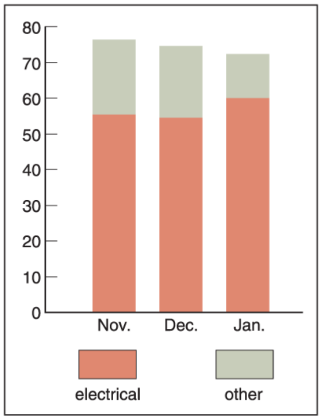
If you are using print against a colored background, you might need to make the type a little bigger, because color makes text look smaller.

Text printed against a white background looks bigger than the same-size text printed against a colored background. White letters counteract this effect.

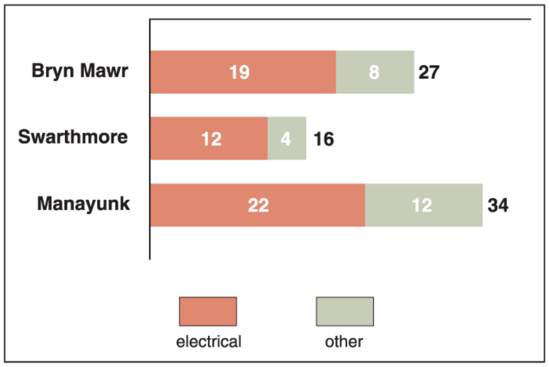
Choosing the Appropriate Kind of Graphic

As Figure 8.6 (on p. 202) shows, even a few simple facts can yield a number of different points. Your responsibility when creating a graphic is to determine what point you want to make and how best to make it. Don't rely on your software to do your thinking; it can't.

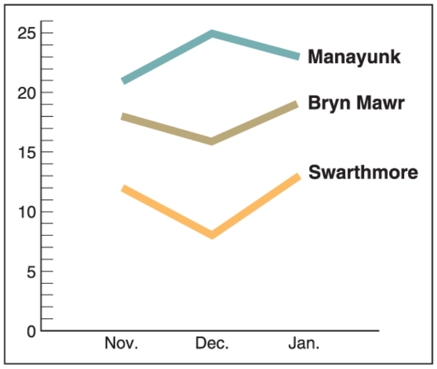
Rail Line	November		December		January	
	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled
Bryn Mawr	**19 (70)**	**27**	**17 (60)**	**28**	**20 (76)**	**26**
Swarthmore	**12 (75)**	**16**	**9 (52)**	**17**	**13 (81)**	**16**
Manayunk	**22 (64)**	**34**	**26 (83)**	**31**	**24 (72)**	**33**



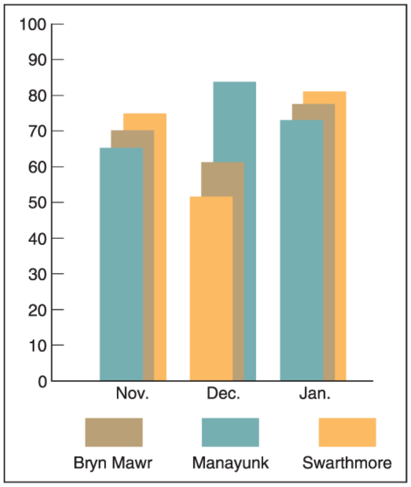
a. Number of railcars disabled, November–January



b. Number of railcars disabled in November



c. Number of railcars disabled by electrical problems, November–January



d. Range in percentage of railcars, disabled by electrical problems, November–January

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

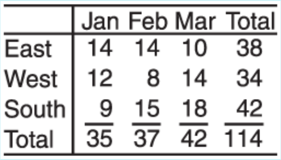
FIGURE 8.6 Different Graphics Emphasizing Different Points

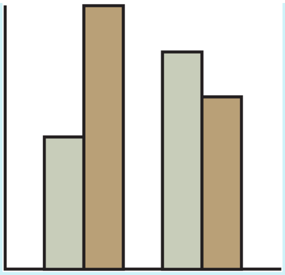
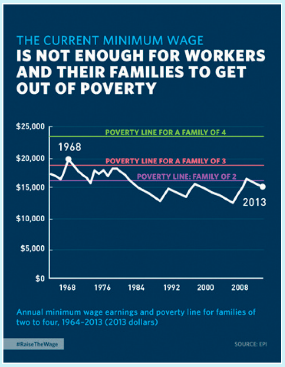
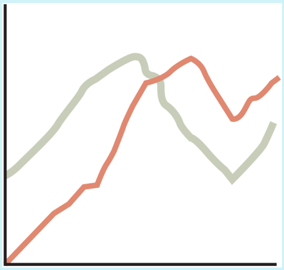
Each of these four graphs emphasizes a different point derived from the data in the table. Graph (a) focuses on the total number of railcars disabled each month, classified by cause, graph (b) focuses on the three rail lines during one month, and so forth. For information on bar graphs, see pages 207–11; for information on line graphs, see pages 213–15.

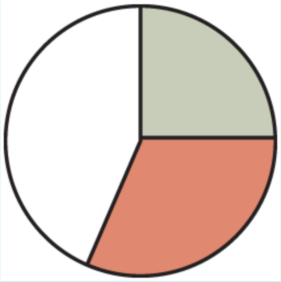
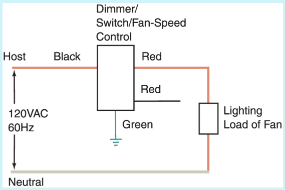
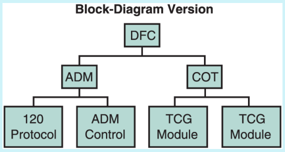
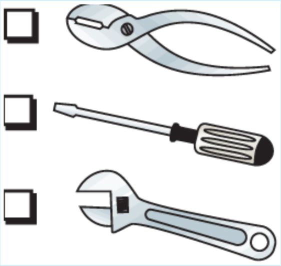
Graphics used in technical documents are classified as tables or figures. Tables are lists of data, usually numbers, arranged in columns. Figures are everything else: graphs, charts, diagrams, photographs, and the like. Typically, tables and figures are numbered separately: the first table in a document is Table 1; the first figure is Figure 1. In documents of more than one chapter (like this book), the graphics are usually numbered within each chapter. That is, Figure 3.2 is the second figure in Chapter 3.

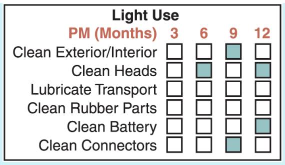
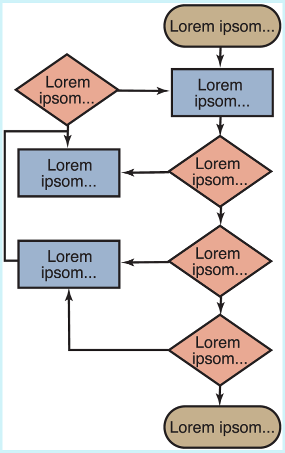
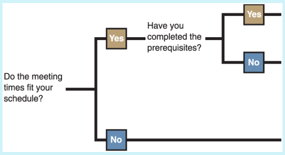
The discussion that follows is based on the classification system in William Horton's "Pictures Please — Presenting Information Visually," in *Techniques for Technical Communicators* (Horton, 1992). The Choices and Strategies box below presents an overview on choosing the appropriate graphic.

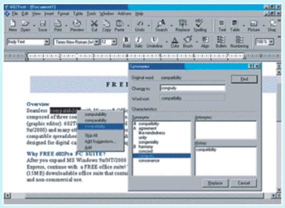
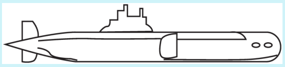
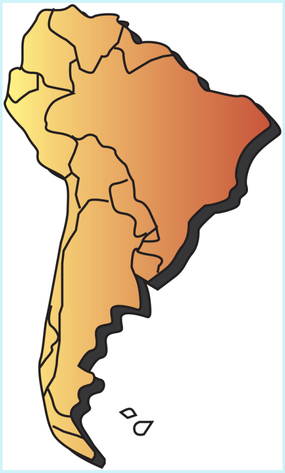
CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Choosing the Appropriate Kind of Graphic

<table>
<tr><th>IF YOU WANT TO …</th><th>TRY THIS TYPE OF GRAPHIC</th><th>WHAT THIS GRAPHIC DOES BEST</th></tr>
<tr><td>Illustrate numerical information</td><td>Table

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Jan</th><th>Feb</th><th>Mar</th><th>Total</th></tr>
<tr><td>East</td><td>14</td><td>14</td><td>10</td><td>38</td></tr>
<tr><td>West</td><td>12</td><td>8</td><td>14</td><td>34</td></tr>
<tr><td>South</td><td>9</td><td>15</td><td>18</td><td>42</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total</td><td>35</td><td>37</td><td>42</td><td>114</td></tr>
</table></td><td>Shows large amounts of numerical data, especially useful when there are several variables for a number of items</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Bar graph</td><td>Shows the relative values of two or more items.</td></tr>
</table>

		
	Infographic 	Enlivens statistical information for the general reader.
	Line graph 	Shows how the quantity of an item changes over time. A line graph can present much more data than a bar graph can.
	Pie chart	Shows the relative sizes of the parts of a whole. Pie charts are instantly familiar to most readers.

		
Illustrate logical relationships	Diagram  Dimmer/ Switch/Fan-Speed Control Host Black Red Red 120VAC 60Hz Green Lighting Load of Fan Neutral	Represents relationships among items or properties of items.
	Organization chart  Block-Diagram Version DFC ADM COT 120 Protocol ADM Control TCG Module TCG Module	Shows the lines of authority and responsibility in an organization or hierarchical relationships among items.
Illustrate process descriptions and instructions	Checklist 	Lists or shows what equipment or materials to gather or describes an action.
	Table	Shows numbers of items or indicates the state (on/off) of an item.

	 Light Use PM (Months) 3 6 9 12 Clean Exterior/Interior ☐ ☐ ■ ☐ Clean Heads ☐ ■ ☐ ■ Lubricate Transport ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ Clean Rubber Parts ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ Clean Battery ☐ ☐ ☐ ■ Clean Connectors ☐ ☐ ■ ☐	
	Flowchart  Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom... Lorem ipsom...	Shows the stages of a procedure or a process.
	Logic tree  Have you completed the prerequisites? Yes No Do the meeting times fit your schedule? Yes No	Shows which of two or more paths to follow.
Illustrate visual and spatial characteristics	Photograph NASA	Shows precisely the external surface of objects.

	Screen shot 	Shows what appears on a computer screen.
	Line drawing 	Shows simplified representations of objects.
	Map 	Shows geographic areas.

Information from W. Horton, “The Almost Universal Language: Graphics for International Documentation” from *Technical Communication* 40 (1993): 682–93. *Source:* https://www.cbo.gov/publication/52408.

ILLUSTRATING NUMERICAL INFORMATION

The kinds of graphics used most often to display numerical values are tables, bar graphs, infographics, line graphs, and pie charts.

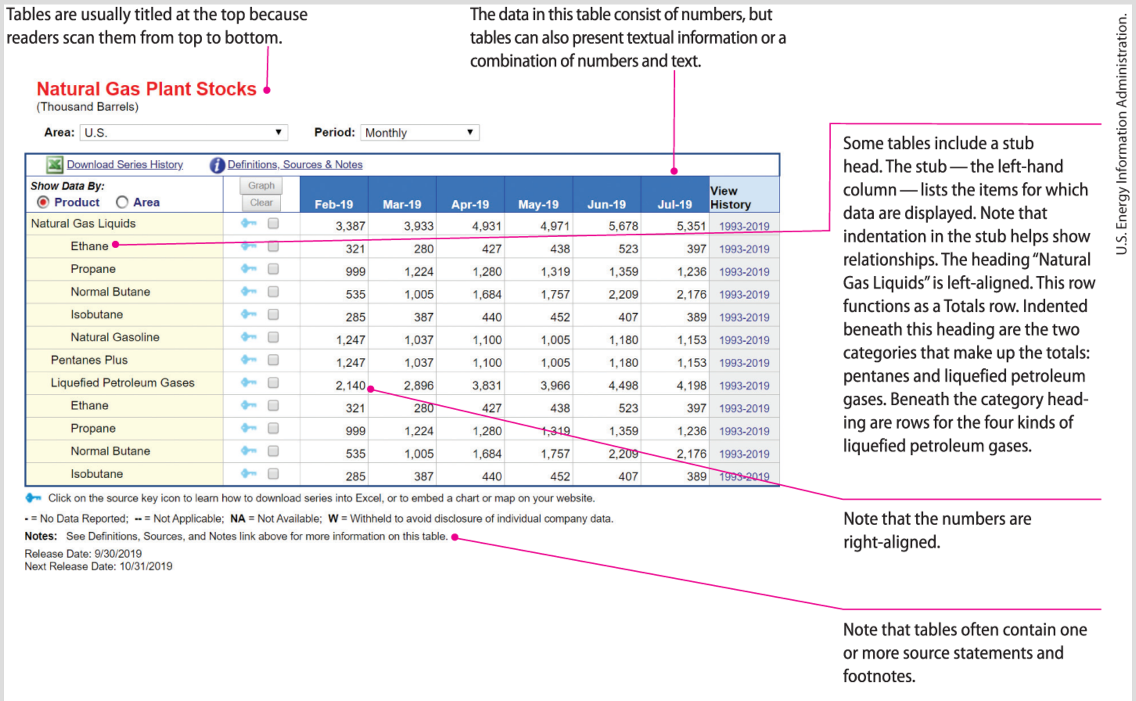
Tables

Tables convey large amounts of numerical data easily, and they are often the only way to present several variables for a number of items. For example, if you wanted to show how many people are employed in 6 industries in 10 states, a table would probably be most effective. Although tables lack the visual appeal of other kinds of graphics, they can present much more information.

In addition to having a number ("Table 1"), tables are identified by an informative title that includes the items being compared and the basis (or bases) of comparison:

> Table 3. Mallard Population in Rangeley, 2009–2016
>
> Table 4.7. The Growth of the Robotics Industry in Japan and the United States, 2016

Figure 8.7 illustrates the standard parts of a table.



Tables are usually titled at the top because readers scan them from top to bottom.

The data in this table consist of numbers, but tables can also present textual information or a combination of numbers and text.

Natural Gas Plant Stocks
(Thousand Barrels)

Area: U.S. ▼ **Period:** Monthly ▼

Download Series History Definitions, Sources & Notes

Show Data By: ● **Product** ○ **Area**	Graph Clear	Feb-19	Mar-19	Apr-19	May-19	Jun-19	Jul-19	View History
Natural Gas Liquids	☐	3,387	3,933	4,931	4,971	5,678	5,351	1993-2019
Ethane	☐	321	280	427	438	523	397	1993-2019
Propane	☐	999	1,224	1,280	1,319	1,359	1,236	1993-2019
Normal Butane	☐	535	1,005	1,684	1,757	2,209	2,176	1993-2019
Isobutane	☐	285	387	440	452	407	389	1993-2019
Natural Gasoline	☐	1,247	1,037	1,100	1,005	1,180	1,153	1993-2019
Pentanes Plus	☐	1,247	1,037	1,100	1,005	1,180	1,153	1993-2019
Liquefied Petroleum Gases	☐	2,140	2,896	3,831	3,966	4,498	4,198	1993-2019
Ethane	☐	321	280	427	438	523	397	1993-2019
Propane	☐	999	1,224	1,280	1,319	1,359	1,236	1993-2019
Normal Butane	☐	535	1,005	1,684	1,757	2,209	2,176	1993-2019
Isobutane	☐	285	387	440	452	407	389	1993-2019

Click on the source key icon to learn how to download series into Excel, or to embed a chart or map on your website.

- = No Data Reported; -- = Not Applicable; **NA** = Not Available; **W** = Withheld to avoid disclosure of individual company data.

Notes: See Definitions, Sources, and Notes link above for more information on this table.

Release Date: 9/30/2019
Next Release Date: 10/31/2019

Some tables include a stub head. The stub — the left-hand column — lists the items for which data are displayed. Note that indentation in the stub helps show relationships. The heading "Natural Gas Liquids" is left-aligned. This row functions as a Totals row. Indented beneath this heading are the two categories that make up the totals: pentanes and liquefied petroleum gases. Beneath the category heading are rows for the four kinds of liquefied petroleum gases.

Note that the numbers are right-aligned.

Note that tables often contain one or more source statements and footnotes.

U.S. Energy Information Administration.

FIGURE 8.7 Parts of a Table

This is an interactive table from the Energy Information Administration showing the amount of natural gas stocks in the United States over a six-month period. Note that you can use the radio buttons to show the data by product or location, and you can use the pull-down menu to specify a time frame. Even though this table is interactive, it functions much the way any table does.

GUIDELINES Creating Effective Tables

Follow these nine suggestions to make sure your tables are clear and professional.

- **Indicate the units of measure.** If all the data are expressed in the same unit, indicate that unit in the title:

  Farm Size in the Midwestern States (in Hectares)

If the data in different columns are expressed in different units, indicate the units in the column heads:

Population (in Millions)	Per Capita Income (in Thousands of U.S. Dollars)

You can express data in both real numbers and percentages. A column head and the first data cell under it might read as follows:

Number of Students (Percentage)
53 (83)

► **In the stub — the left-hand column — list the items being compared.** Arrange the items in a logical order: big to small, more important to less important, alphabetical, chronological, geographical, and so forth. If the items fall into several categories, include the names of the categories in the stub:

- *Snowbelt States* . . . .
  - Connecticut . . . .
  - New York . . . .
  - Vermont . . . .
- *Sunbelt States* . . . .
  - Arizona . . . .
  - California . . . .
  - New Mexico . . . .

If you cannot group the items in the stub in logical categories, skip a line after every five rows to help the reader follow the rows across the table. Or use a screen (a colored background) for every other set of five rows. Also useful is linking the stub and the next column with a row of dots called *dot leaders*.

For more about screens, see Table 7.1, Chapter 7.

► **In the columns, arrange the data clearly and logically.** Use the decimal-tab feature to line up the decimal points:

3,147.4
365.7
46,803.5

In general, don't vary the units used in a column unless the quantities are so dissimilar that your readers would have a difficult time understanding them if expressed in the same units.

3.4 hr

12.7 min

4.3 sec

This list would probably be easier for most readers to understand than one in which all quantities were expressed in the same unit.

- **Do the math.** If your readers will need to know the totals for the columns or the rows, provide them. If your readers will need to know percentage changes from one column to the next, present them:

Number of Students (Percentage Change from Previous Year)

2017	2018	2019
619	644 (+4.0)	614 (–4.7)

- **Use dot leaders if a column contains a "blank" spot** — a place where there are no appropriate data:

3,147
…
46,803

But don’t substitute dot leaders for a quantity of zero.

- **Don’t make the table wider than it needs to be.** The reader should be able to scan across a row easily. As White (1984) points out, there is no reason to make a table as wide as the text column in the document. If a column head is long — more than five or six words — stack the words:

  Computers Sold Without
  a Memory-Card Reader

- **Minimize the use of rules.** Grimstead (1987) recommends using rules only when necessary: to separate the title and the heads, the heads and the body, and the body and the notes. When you use rules, make them thin rather than thick.
- **Provide footnotes where necessary.** All the information your readers need in order to understand the table should accompany it.
- **If you did not generate the information yourself, indicate your source.** See the discussion of citing sources of graphics on page 198.

Bar Graphs

Like tables, *bar graphs* can communicate numerical values, but they are better at showing the relative values of two or more items. Figure 8.8 on page 208 shows typical horizontal and vertical bar graphs that you can make easily using your spreadsheet software. Figure 8.9 on page 208 shows an effective bar graph that uses grid lines.

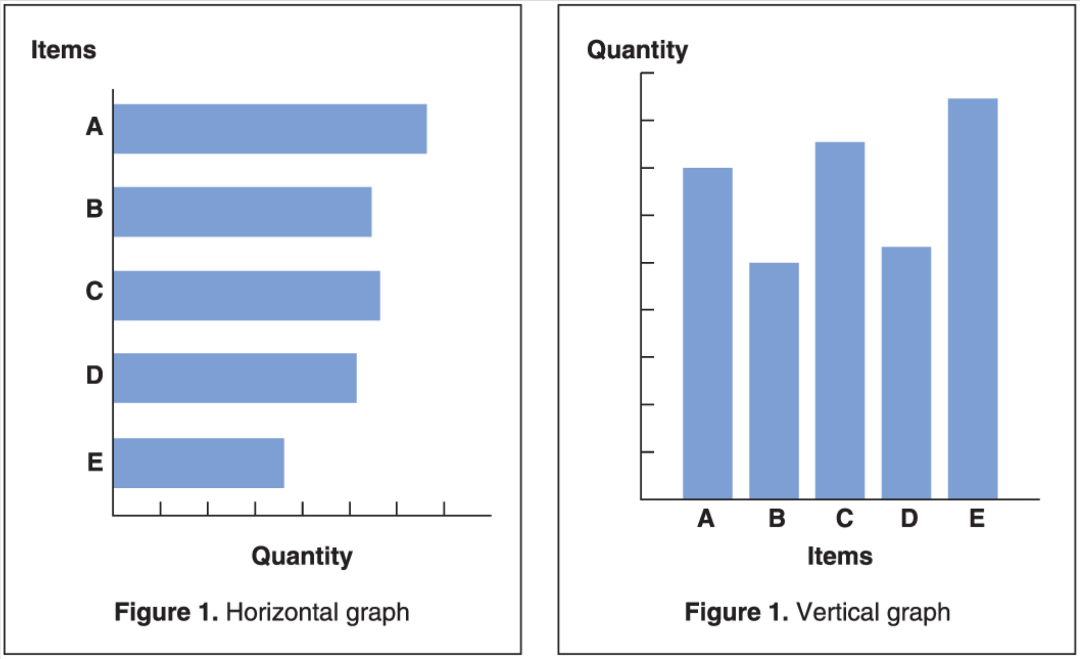


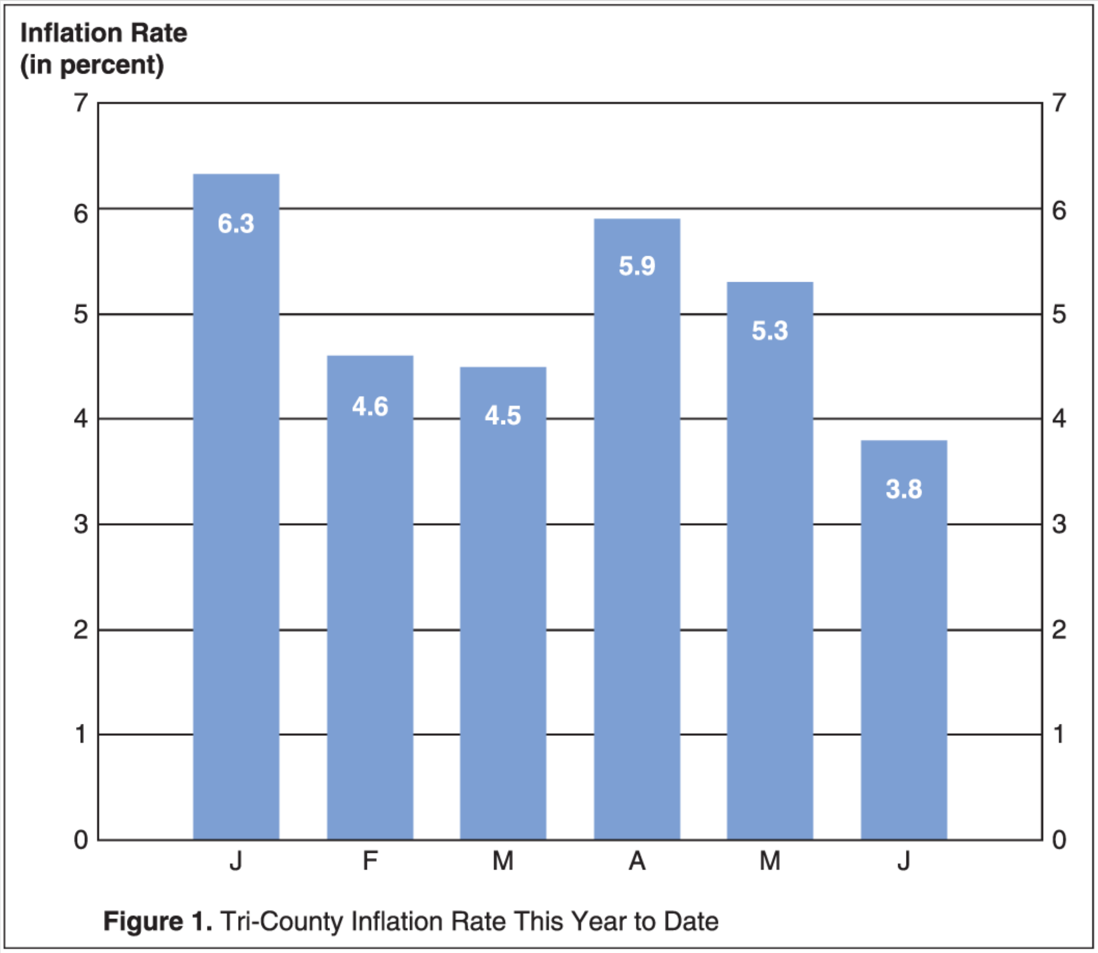
Figure 1. Horizontal graph

Figure 1. Vertical graph

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.8 Structures of Horizontal and Vertical Bar Graphs

Horizontal bars are best for showing quantities such as speed and distance. Vertical bars are best for showing quantities such as height, size, and amount. However, these distinctions are not ironclad; as long as the axes are clearly labeled, readers should have no trouble understanding the graph.

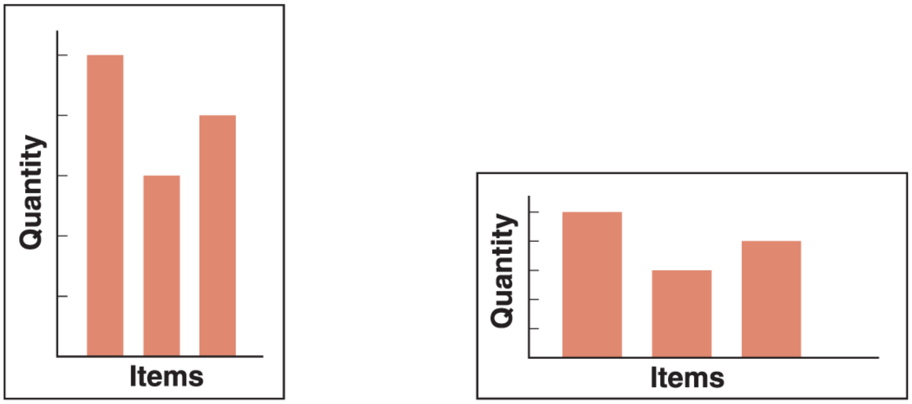


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.9 Effective Bar Graph with Grid Lines

GUIDELINES Creating Effective Bar Graphs

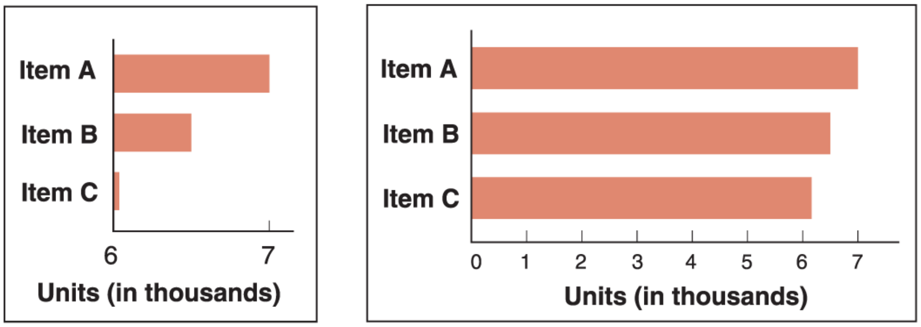
► **Make the proportions fair.** Make your vertical axis about 25 percent shorter than your horizontal axis. An excessively long vertical axis exaggerates the differences in quantities; an excessively long horizontal axis minimizes the differences. Make all the bars the same width, and make the space between them about half as wide as a bar. Here are two poorly proportioned graphs:



a. Excessively long vertical axis **b.** Excessively long horizontal axis

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication,* 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

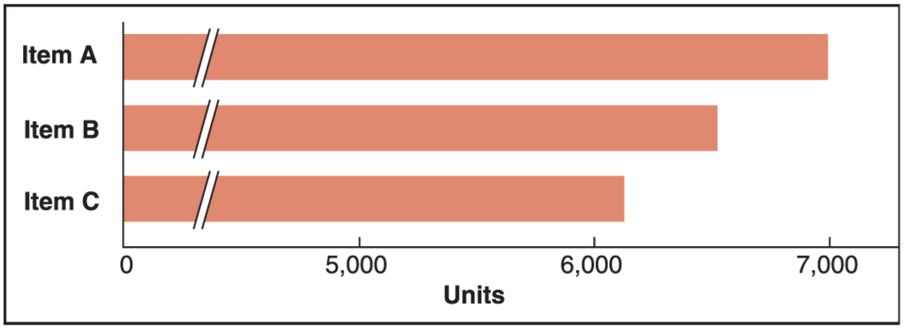
▶ **If possible, begin the quantity scale at zero.** Doing so ensures that the bars accurately represent the quantities. Notice how misleading a graph can be if the scale doesn't begin at zero.



c. Misleading **d.** Accurately representative

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication,* 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

If it is not practical to start the quantity scale at zero, break the quantity axis clearly at a common point on all the bars.



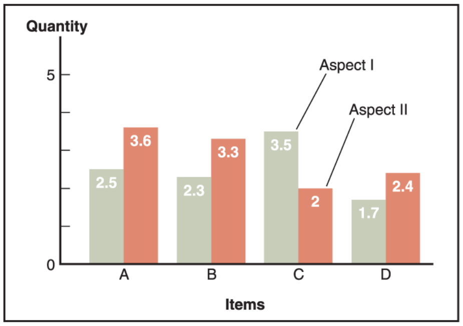
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

- **Use tick marks — marks along the axis — to signal the amounts.** Use grid lines — tick marks that extend across the entire graph — if the graph has several bars, some of which are too far away from the tick marks to enable readers to gauge the quantities easily. (See Figure 8.9 on p. 208.)
- **Arrange the bars in a logical sequence.** For a vertical bar graph, use chronology if possible. For a horizontal bar graph, arrange the bars in order of descending size, beginning at the top of the graph, unless some other logical sequence seems more appropriate.
- **Place the title below the figure.** Unlike tables, which are usually read from top to bottom, figures are usually read from the bottom up.
- **Indicate the source of your information if you did not generate it yourself.**

The five variations on the basic bar graph shown in Table 8.1 can help you accommodate different communication needs. You can make all these types using your spreadsheet software.

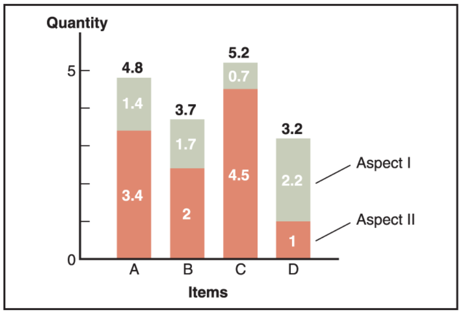
TABLE 8.1 Variations on the Basic Bar Graph

Grouped bar graph. The *grouped bar graph* lets you compare two or three aspects for each item. Grouped bar graphs would be useful, for example, for showing the numbers of full-time and part-time students at several universities. One bar could represent full-time students; the other, part-time students. To distinguish between the bars, use hatching (striping), shading, or color, and either label one set of bars or provide a key.



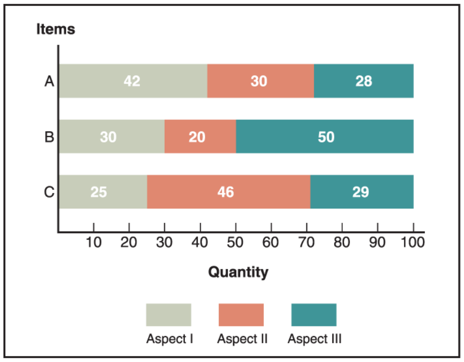
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Subdivided bar graph. In the *subdivided bar graph*, Aspect I and Aspect II are stacked like wooden blocks placed on top of each other. Although totals are easy to compare in a subdivided bar graph, individual quantities are not.



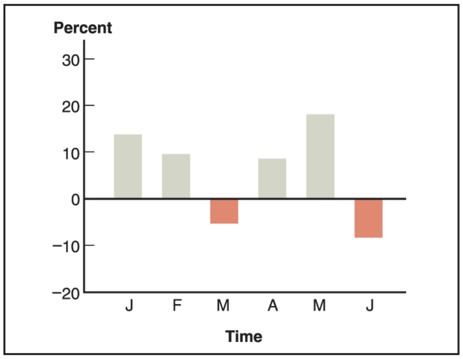
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

100-percent bar graph. The *100-percent bar graph*, which shows the relative proportions of the aspects that make up several items, is useful in portraying, for example, the proportion of full-scholarship, partial-scholarship, and nonscholarship students at a number of colleges.



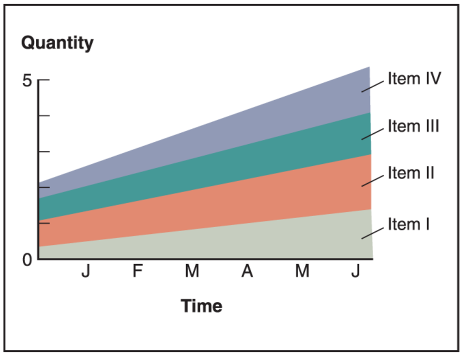
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Deviation bar graph. The *deviation bar graph* shows how various quantities deviate



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

from a norm. Deviation bar graphs are often used when the information contains both positive and negative values, such as profits and losses. Bars on the positive side of the norm line (above it) represent profits; bars on the negative side (below it), losses.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Stratum graph. The *stratum graph*, also called an *area graph*, shows the change in quantities of several items over time. Although stratum graphs are used frequently in business and scientific fields, general readers sometimes have trouble understanding how to read them.

Infographics

An *infographic* — short for *information graphic* — is a combination of words and graphics used to present factual data about a subject in a visually interesting way.

GUIDELINES Creating Effective Infographics

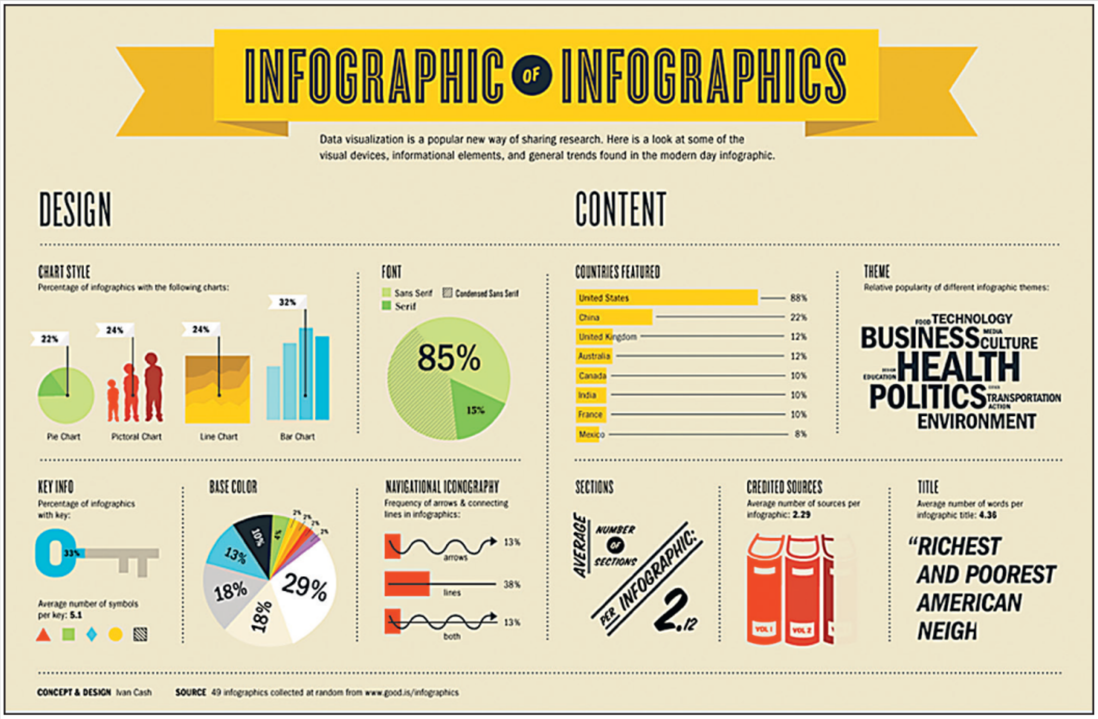
Follow these seven suggestions for making effective infographics.

- **Make a claim.** A good infographic states — or at least implies — a claim and then presents evidence to support it. For instance, the claim might be that the number of people accessing the internet in a language other than English is increasing at an accelerating rate, that the pace at which new drugs are coming onto the market is slowing, or that the cost of waging a campaign for a U.S. Senate seat has increased tenfold in the last 20 years. The claim you present will suggest the theme of your graphics: you might consider maps, flowcharts, or statistics.
- **Use accurate data.** Once you have settled on your claim, find facts to support it. Use reputable sources, and then check and recheck the facts. Be sure to cite your sources on the infographic itself.

For more about research techniques, see Ch. 5.

- **Follow the guidelines for the type of graphic you are creating.** Although you want to express your creativity when you create graphics, abide by the guidelines for that type of graphic. For instance, if you use a bar graph to present data on the number of zebras born in captivity, your first obligation is to make the length of each bar reflect the quantity it represents; don't manipulate the lengths of the bars to make the graph look like a zebra.
- **Write concisely.** If you need more than a paragraph to introduce a graphic, try revising the text to get the word count down or see if you can break the idea into several smaller ones.
- **Don't present too much information.** It's natural to want to include all the data you have found, but if the infographic is too tightly packed with text and graphics, readers will be intimidated. Use white space to let the graphics breathe.
- **Don't go on forever.** Your readers will want to spend a minute — maybe two — on the infographic. They won't want to spend 15 minutes.
- **Test the infographic.** As with any kind of technical document, the more you evaluate and test the infographic, the better it will be.

Figure 8.10, a portion of an infographic about infographics, shows many of the techniques used in this type of display.



Used by permission of Ivan Cash/Cash Studios.

FIGURE 8.10 An Infographic About Infographics

Designer Ivan Cash created this infographic by collecting data about infographics and then creating graphics to make the data interesting and visually appealing.

Infographics are built around basic types of graphical display: pie charts, line graphs, bar graphs, and diagrams. In an effective infographic, each visual display adheres to the conventions of the graphic on which it is based. For instance, in the "Countries Featured" bar graph, the length of each bar accurately reflects the quantity of the item it represents.

The art makes the data visually interesting, but the most important characteristic of an infographic is accuracy: the data must be accurate and presented fairly.

Infographics are very popular, but many of them are of low quality. Before you create an infographic to communicate technical information, be sure you are not skewing your data or oversimplifying to promote an agenda. Doing so is unethical. In

Figure 8.11, digital strategist Hervé Peitrequin offers a clever commentary on infographics.

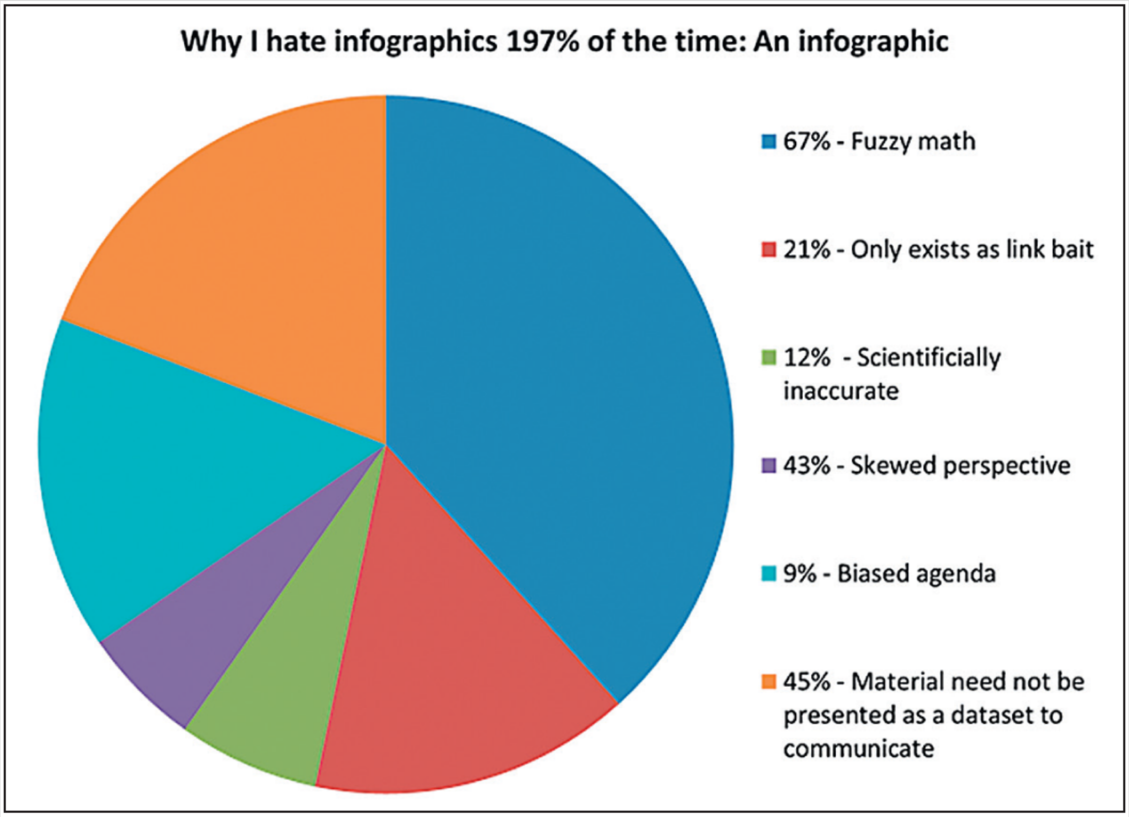
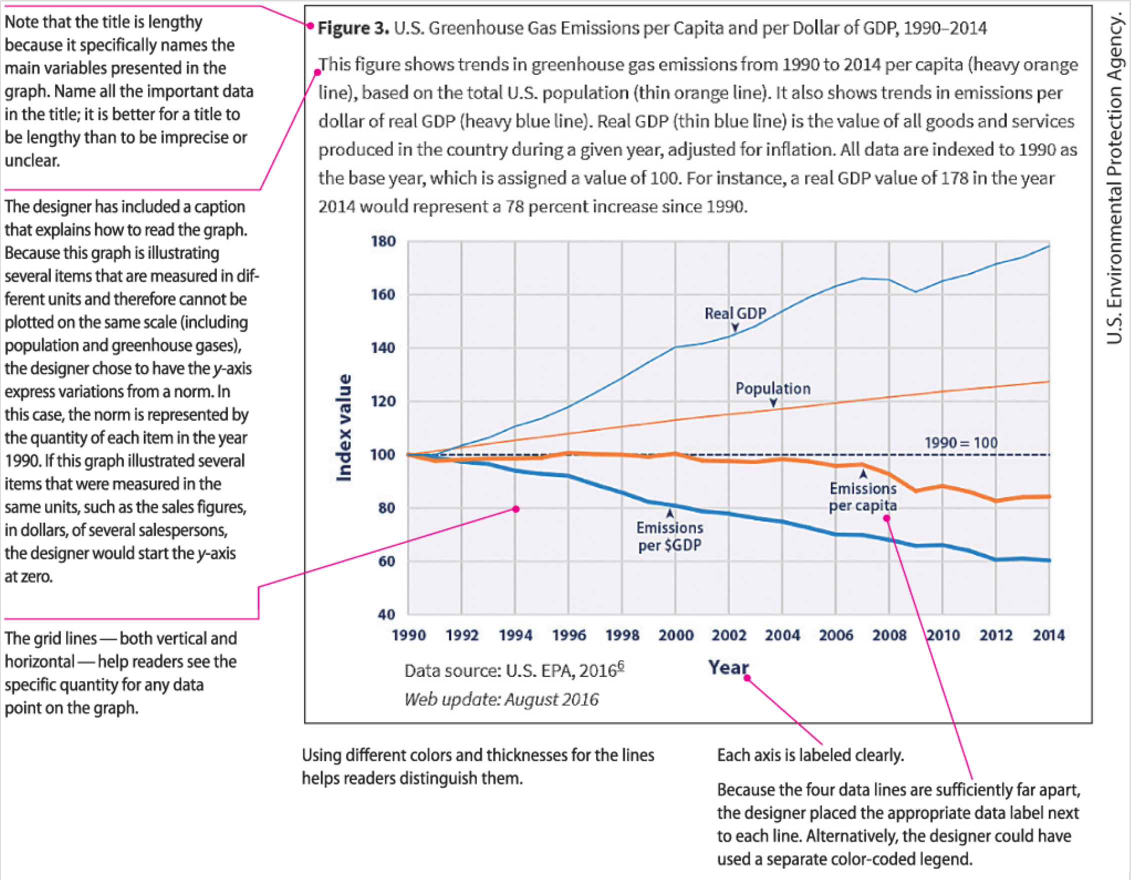


FIGURE 8.11 A Critique of Infographics

Line Graphs

Line graphs are used almost exclusively to show changes in quantity over time: for example, the month-by-month production figures for a product. A line graph focuses readers' attention on the change in quantity, whereas a bar graph emphasizes the quantities themselves.

You can plot three or four lines on a line graph. If the lines intersect, use different colors or patterns to distinguish them. If the lines intersect too often, however, the graph will be unclear; in this case, draw separate graphs. Figure 8.12 (on p. 214) shows a line graph.


Note that the title is lengthy because it specifically names the main variables presented in the graph. Name all the important data in the title; it is better for a title to be lengthy than to be imprecise or unclear.

The designer has included a caption that explains how to read the graph. Because this graph is illustrating several items that are measured in different units and therefore cannot be plotted on the same scale (including population and greenhouse gases), the designer chose to have the *y*-axis express variations from a norm. In this case, the norm is represented by the quantity of each item in the year 1990. If this graph illustrated several items that were measured in the same units, such as the sales figures, in dollars, of several salespersons, the designer would start the *y*-axis at zero.

The grid lines — both vertical and horizontal — help readers see the specific quantity for any data point on the graph.

Figure 3. U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions per Capita and per Dollar of GDP, 1990–2014

This figure shows trends in greenhouse gas emissions from 1990 to 2014 per capita (heavy orange line), based on the total U.S. population (thin orange line). It also shows trends in emissions per dollar of real GDP (heavy blue line). Real GDP (thin blue line) is the value of all goods and services produced in the country during a given year, adjusted for inflation. All data are indexed to 1990 as the base year, which is assigned a value of 100. For instance, a real GDP value of 178 in the year 2014 would represent a 78 percent increase since 1990.

Data source: U.S. EPA, 2016[6]
Web update: August 2016

Using different colors and thicknesses for the lines helps readers distinguish them.

Each axis is labeled clearly.

Because the four data lines are sufficiently far apart, the designer placed the appropriate data label next to each line. Alternatively, the designer could have used a separate color-coded legend.

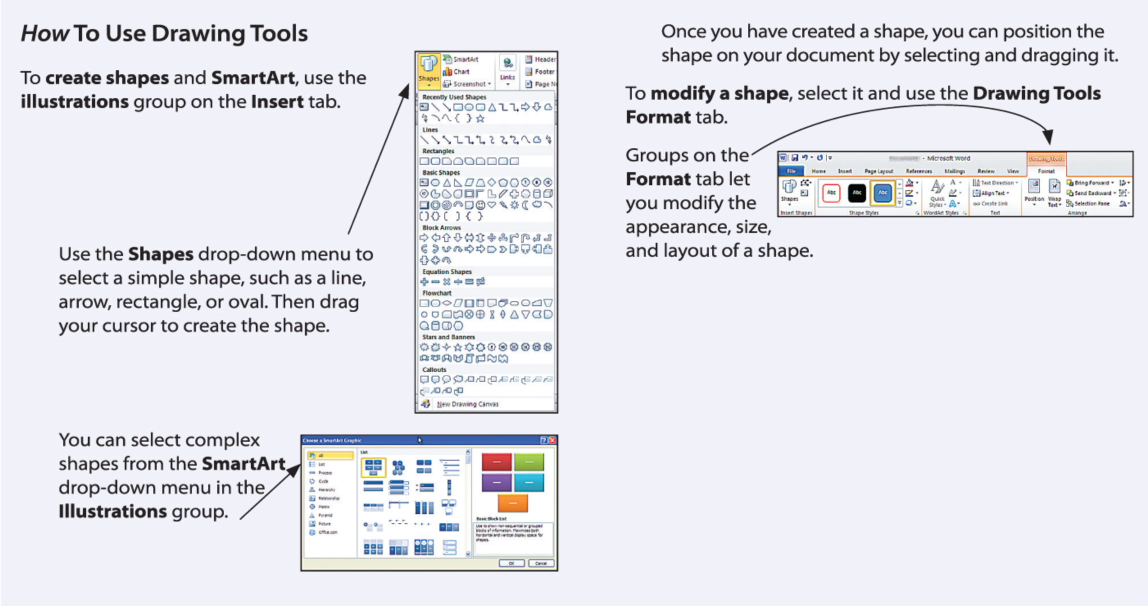
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

FIGURE 8.12 Line Graph

TECH TIP

Why To Use Drawing Tools

Although you can make many types of graphics using a spreadsheet, some types, such as pictograms, call for drawing tools. Your word processor includes basic drawing tools. Use them to create and edit graphics.



How **To Use Drawing Tools**

To **create shapes** and **SmartArt**, use the **illustrations** group on the **Insert** tab.

Use the **Shapes** drop-down menu to select a simple shape, such as a line, arrow, rectangle, or oval. Then drag your cursor to create the shape.

You can select complex shapes from the **SmartArt** drop-down menu in the **Illustrations** group.

Once you have created a shape, you can position the shape on your document by selecting and dragging it.

To **modify a shape**, select it and use the **Drawing Tools Format** tab.

Groups on the **Format** tab let you modify the appearance, size, and layout of a shape.

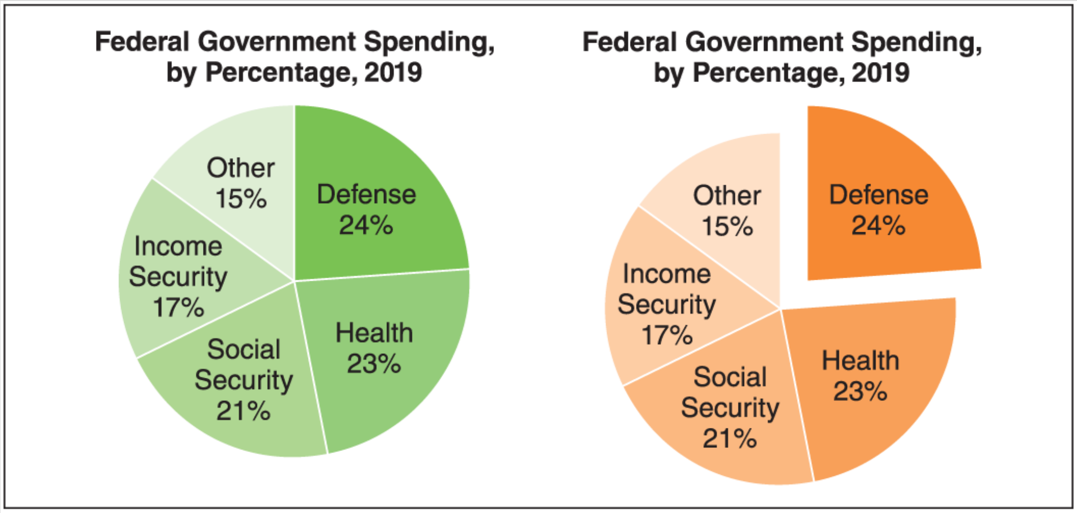
GUIDELINES Creating Effective Line Graphs

Follow these three suggestions to create line graphs that are clear and easy to read.

- **If possible, begin the quantity scale at zero.** Doing so is the best way to portray the information honestly. If you cannot begin at zero, clearly indicate a break in the axis, if appropriate.
- **Use reasonable proportions for the vertical and horizontal axes.** As with bar graphs, make the vertical axis about 25 percent shorter than the horizontal axis.
- **Use grid lines — horizontal, vertical, or both — rather than tick marks when your readers need to read the quantities precisely.**

Pie Charts

The *pie chart* is a simple but limited design used for showing the relative sizes of the parts of a whole. You can make pie charts with your spreadsheet software. Figure 8.13 shows typical examples.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.13 Pie Charts

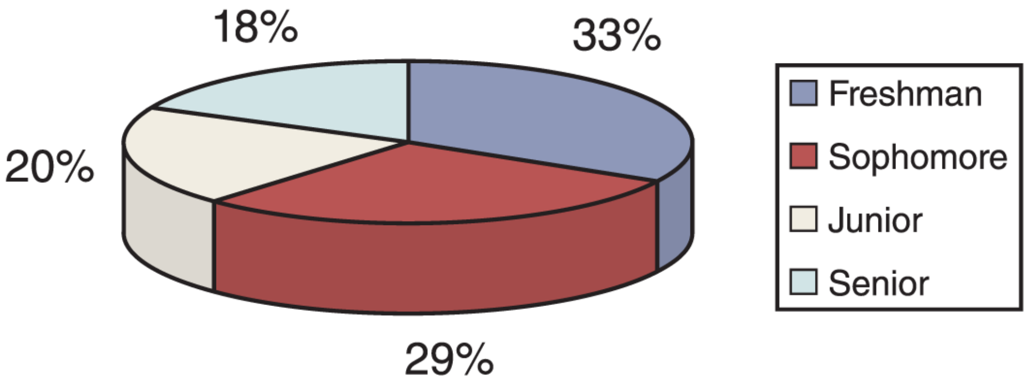
You can set your software so that the slices use different saturations of the same color. This approach makes the slices easy to distinguish from each other — without any distractions or misrepresentations caused by a rainbow of colors.

You can set your software to emphasize one slice by separating it from the rest of the pie.

GUIDELINES Creating Effective Pie Charts

Follow these eight suggestions to ensure that your pie charts are easy to understand and professional looking.

- **Restrict the number of slices to no more than seven.** As the slices get smaller, judging their relative sizes becomes more difficult.
- **Begin with the largest slice at the top and work clockwise in order of decreasing size, unless you have a good reason to arrange the slices otherwise.**
- **If you have several very small quantities, put them together in one slice to maintain clarity.** Explain its contents in a footnote. This slice, sometimes called "other," follows the other slices.
- **Place a label (horizontally, not radially) inside the slice, if space permits.** Include the percentage that each slice represents and, if appropriate, the raw number.
- **To emphasize one slice, use a bright, contrasting color or separate the slice from the pie.** Do this, for example, when you introduce a discussion of the item represented by that slice.
- **Check to see that your software follows the appropriate guidelines for pie charts.** Some spreadsheet programs add fancy visual effects that can impair comprehension. For instance, many programs portray the pie in three dimensions, as shown here.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

In this three-dimensional pie chart about the percentages of a college's student body, by year, the sophomore slice looks bigger than the freshman slice, even though it isn't, because it appears closer to the reader. To communicate clearly, make pie charts two-dimensional.

- **Don't overdo fill patterns.** Fill patterns are patterns, shades, or colors that distinguish one slice from another. In general, use simple, understated patterns or none at all.

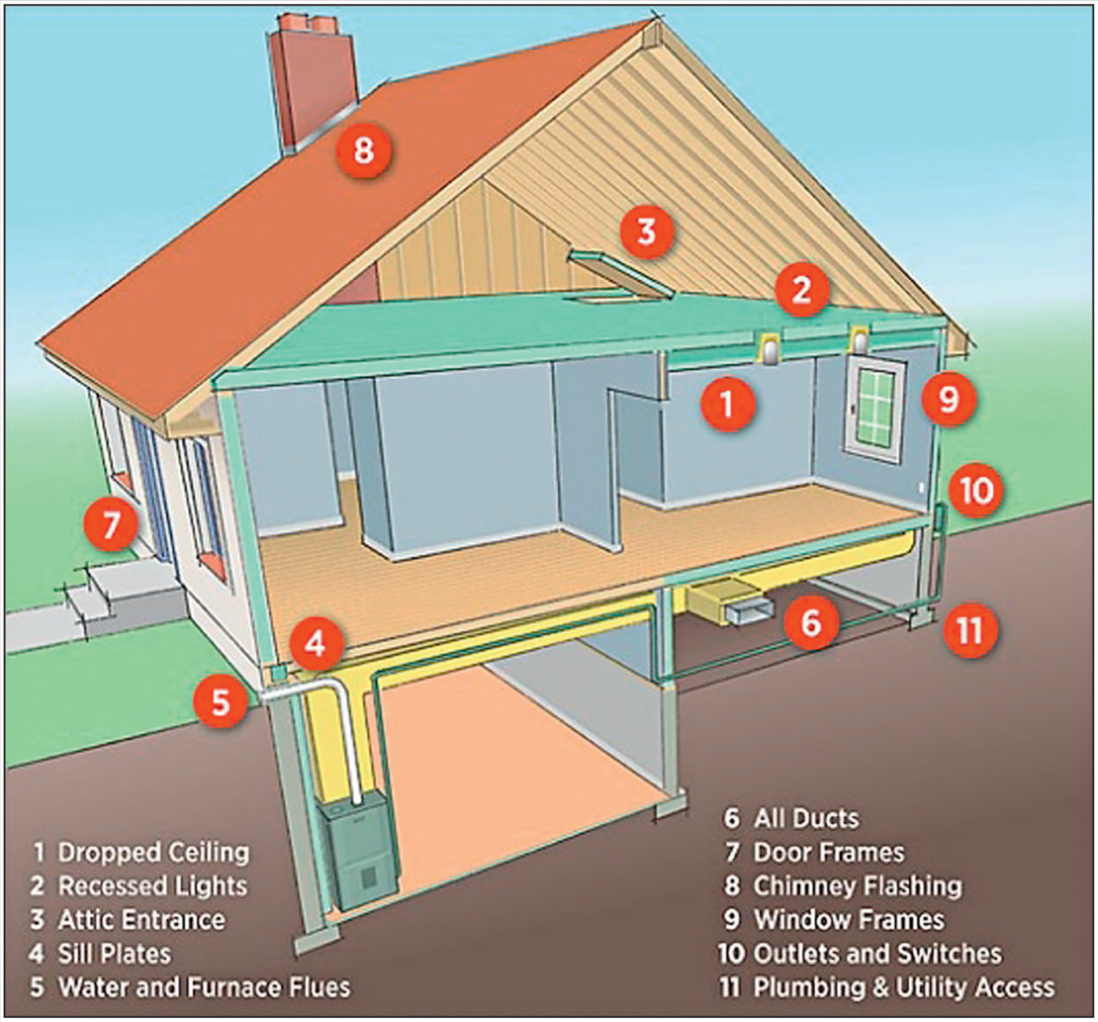
- **Check that your percentages add up to 100.** If you are doing the calculations yourself, check your math.

ILLUSTRATING LOGICAL RELATIONSHIPS

Graphics can help you present logical relationships among items. For instance, in describing a piece of hardware, you might want to show its major components. The two kinds of graphics that best show logical relationships are diagrams and organization charts.

Diagrams

A *diagram* is a visual metaphor that uses symbols to represent relationships among items or their properties. In technical communication, common kinds of diagrams are blueprints, wiring diagrams, and schematics. Figure 8.14 is a diagram.



8
3
2
1
9
10
7
6
11
4
5
1 Dropped Ceiling
2 Recessed Lights
3 Attic Entrance
4 Sill Plates
5 Water and Furnace Flues
6 All Ducts
7 Door Frames
8 Chimney Flashing
9 Window Frames
10 Outlets and Switches
11 Plumbing & Utility Access

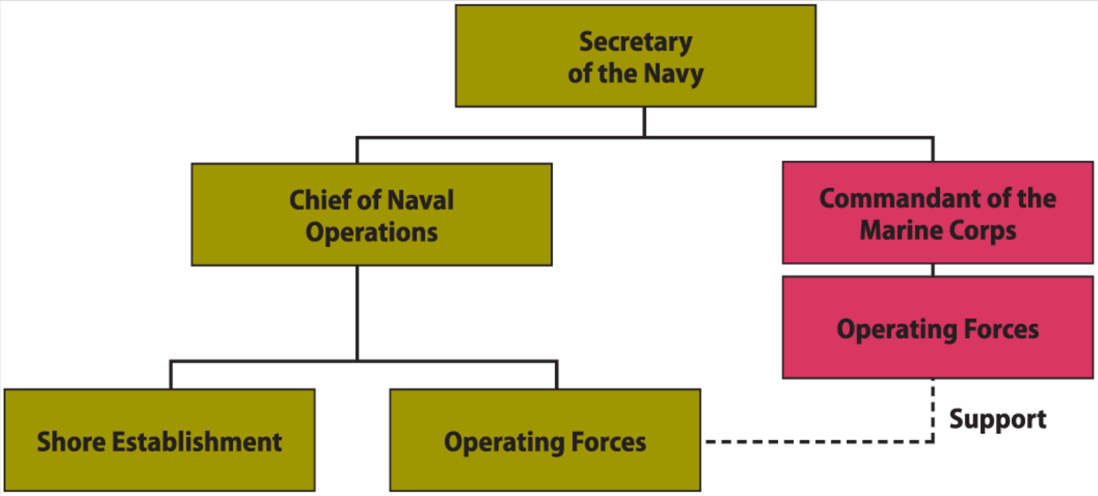
U.S. Department of Energy.

FIGURE 8.14 Diagram

The purpose of this diagram is to help people understand the different areas in their home that need to be insulated. In diagrams, items do not necessarily look realistic. Here the designer is trying to represent logical relationships, not the physical appearances of items.

Organization Charts

A popular form of diagram is the *organization chart*, in which simple geometric shapes, usually rectangles, suggest logical relationships, as shown in Figure 8.15. You can create organization charts with your word processor.


Secretary of the Navy
Chief of Naval Operations
Commandant of the Marine Corps
Operating Forces
Shore Establishment
Operating Forces
Support

United States Department of the Navy.

FIGURE 8.15 Organization Chart

An organization chart is often used to show the hierarchy in an organization, with the most senior person in the organization in the box at the top.

Alternatively, an organization chart can show the functional divisions of a system, such as the human nervous system.

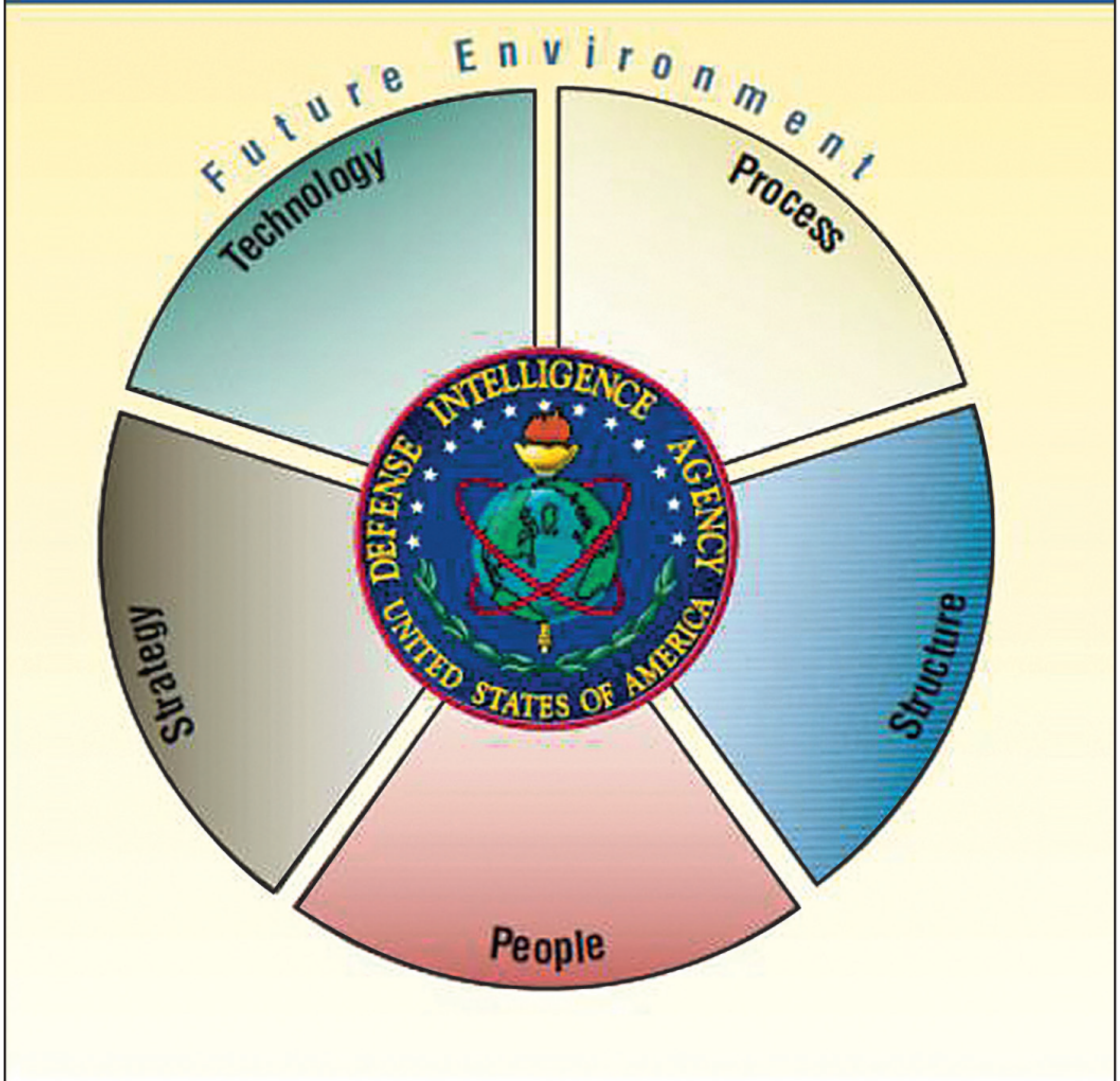
DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Analyzing a Graphic

This diagram is from a government report. The questions below ask you to think about diagrams, as discussed on page 217.

1. This design resembles a pie chart, but it does not have the same function as a pie chart. What message does this design communicate? Is it effective?
2. Do the colors communicate any information, or are they merely decorative? If you think they are decorative, would you revise the design to change them in any way? How?
3. What does the phrase “Future Environment,” above the graphic, mean? Is it meant to refer only to the “Technology” and “Process” shapes?
4. Is the explanation below the graphic clear? Would you change it in any way? How?

Context for Change


Future Environment
Technology
Process
Structure
People
Strategy

The graphic above illustrates the components of change that the Defense Intelligence Agency will consider as it embraces transformation. In the sections that follow, we discuss each component in turn, beginning with the Future Environment, progressing around the circle and ending with Recommendations.

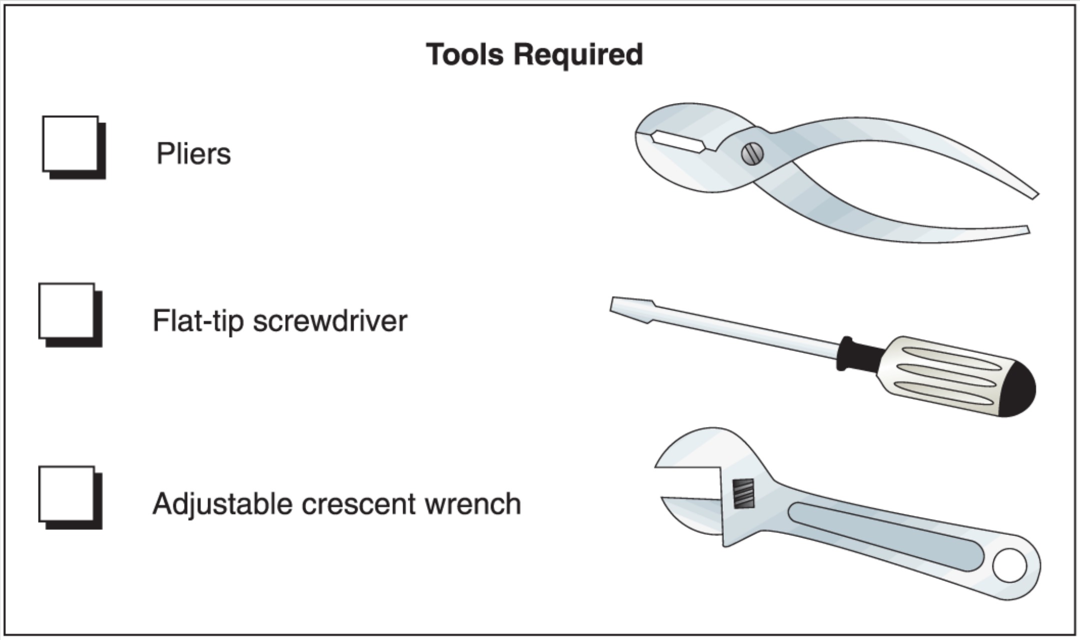
Defense Intelligence Agency.

ILLUSTRATING PROCESS DESCRIPTIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS

Graphics often accompany process descriptions and instructions (see Ch. 14). The following discussion looks at some of the graphics used in writing about actions: checklists, flowcharts, and logic trees. It also discusses techniques for showing motion in graphics.

Checklists

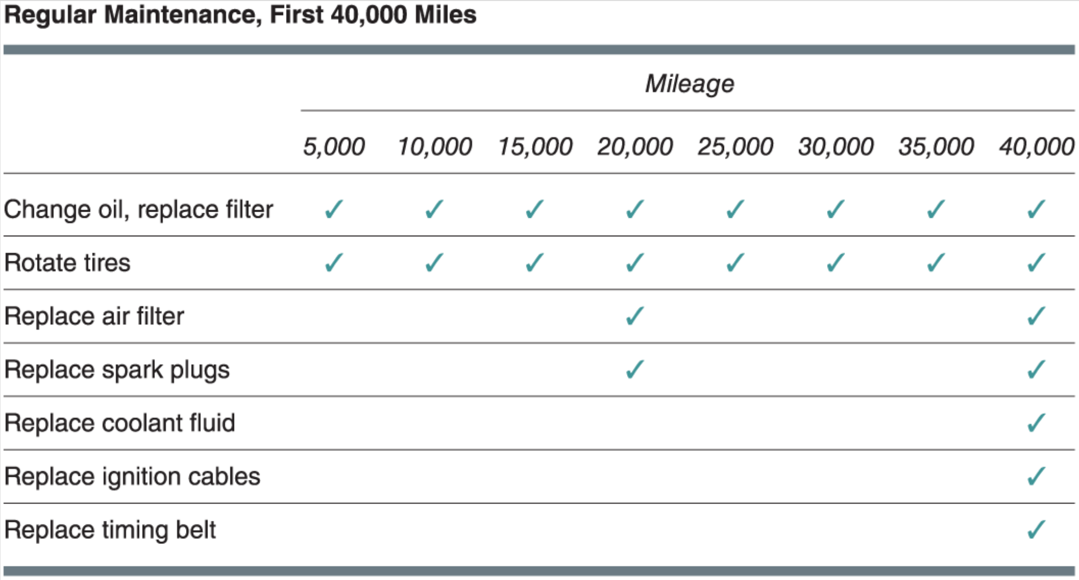
In explaining how to carry out a task, you often need to show the reader what equipment or materials to gather, or describe an action or a series of actions to take. A *checklist* is a list of items, each preceded by a check box. If readers might be unfamiliar with the items you are listing, include drawings of the items, as shown in Figure 8.16. You can use the list function in your word processor to create checklists.


Tools Required
☐ Pliers
☐ Flat-tip screwdriver
☐ Adjustable crescent wrench

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.16 Checklist

Often, you need to indicate that readers are to carry out certain tasks at certain intervals. A table is a useful graphic for this kind of information, as shown in Figure 8.17.



Regular Maintenance, First 40,000 Miles

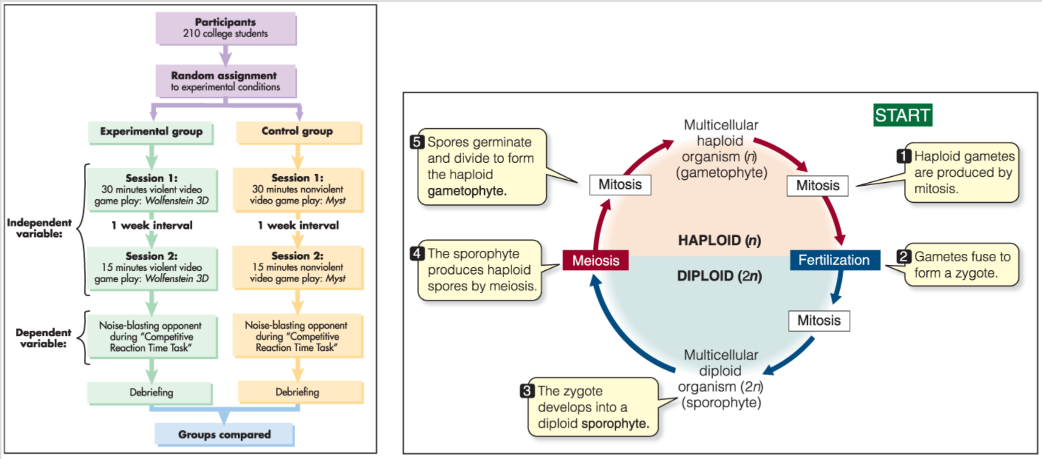
	Mileage							
	5,000	*10,000*	*15,000*	*20,000*	*25,000*	*30,000*	*35,000*	*40,000*
Change oil, replace filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Rotate tires	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace air filter				✓				✓
Replace spark plugs				✓				✓
Replace coolant fluid								✓
Replace ignition cables								✓
Replace timing belt								✓

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.17 A Table Used To Illustrate a Maintenance Schedule

Flowcharts

A *flowchart*, as the name suggests, shows the various stages of a process or a procedure. Flowcharts are useful, too, for summarizing instructions. On a basic flowchart, stages are represented by labeled geometric shapes. Flowcharts can portray open systems (those that have a start and a finish) or closed systems (those that end where they began). Figure 8.18 shows an open-system flowchart and a closed-system flowchart. Figure 8.19 shows a deployment flowchart, which you can make using the drawing tools in your word processor.

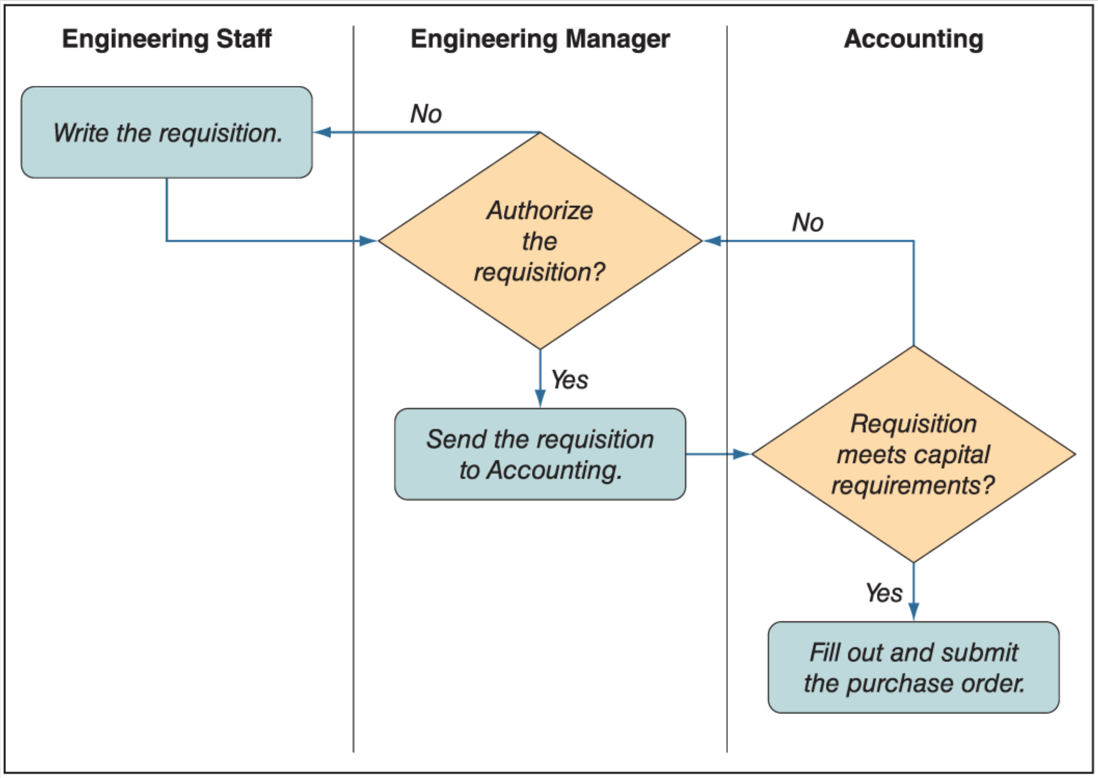

Participants
210 college students
Random assignment
to experimental conditions
Experimental group
Control group
Session 1:
30 minutes violent video game play: Wolfenstein 3D
Session 1:
30 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst
Independent variable:
1 week interval
1 week interval
Session 2:
15 minutes violent video game play: Wolfenstein 3D
Session 2:
15 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst
Dependent variable:
Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction Time Task"
Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction Time Task"
Debriefing
Debriefing
Groups compared
START
1 Haploid gametes are produced by mitosis.
Mitosis
Multicellular haploid organism (n) (gametophyte)
Mitosis
5 Spores germinate and divide to form the haploid gametophyte.
HAPLOID (n)
DIPLOID (2n)
Fertilization
2 Gametes fuse to form a zygote.
Meiosis
4 The sporophyte produces haploid spores by meiosis.
Mitosis
Multicellular diploid organism (2n) (sporophyte)
3 The zygote develops into a diploid sporophyte.

a. Open-system flowchart

b. Closed-system flowchart

a: From Don Hockenbury and Sandra E. Hockenbury, DISCOVERING PSYCHOLOGY, Sixth Edition, Figure 1.3. Copyright © 2014 by Worth Publishers. Used by permission of the publisher; b: Studyguide for Life the Science of Biology by Purves (2004) Fig. 27.14, p. 594. By permission of Oxford University Press, USA.

FIGURE 8.18 Flowcharts


Engineering Staff
Engineering Manager
Accounting
Write the requisition.
No
Authorize the requisition?
No
Yes
Send the requisition to Accounting.
Requisition meets capital requirements?
Yes
Fill out and submit the purchase order.

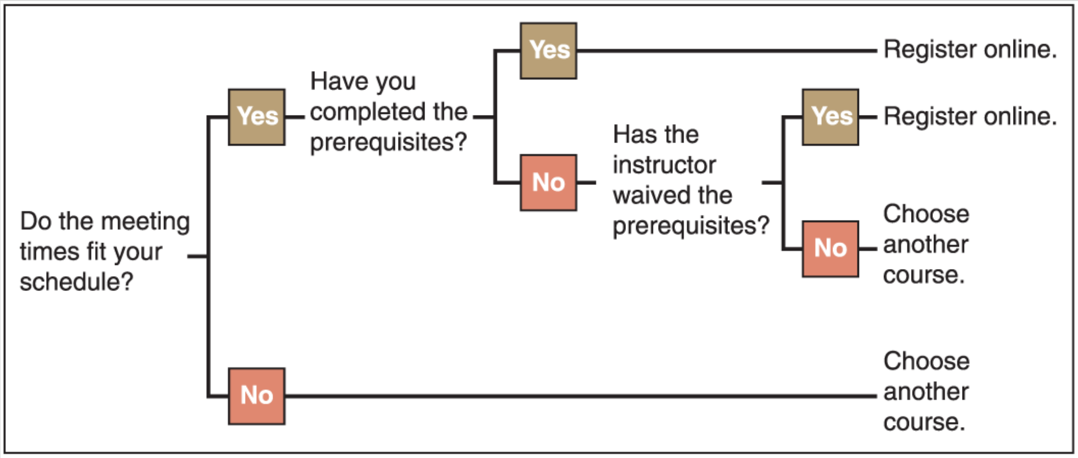
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.19 Deployment Flowchart

A deployment flowchart shows who is responsible for carrying out which tasks. Here the engineering staff writes the requisition, then sends it to the engineering manager.

Logic Trees

Logic trees use a branching metaphor. The logic tree shown in Figure 8.20 (on p. 223) helps students think through the process of registering for a course.


Do the meeting times fit your schedule?
Yes
Have you completed the prerequisites?
Yes
Register online.
No
Has the instructor waived the prerequisites?
Yes
Register online.
No
Choose another course.
No
Choose another course.

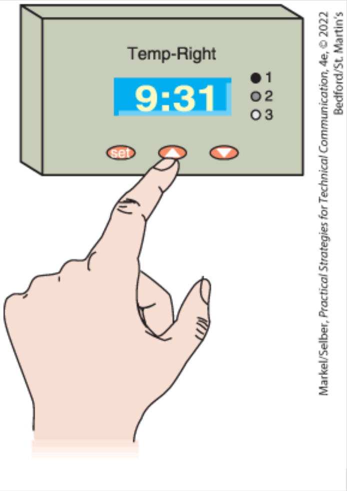
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.20 Logic Tree

Techniques for Showing Action or Motion

In some types of process descriptions and instructions, you will want to show action or motion. For instance, in an instruction manual for helicopter technicians, you might want to illustrate the process of removing an oil dipstick or tightening a bolt, or you might want to show a warning light flashing. Although animation and video are frequently used to illustrate action or motion in online documents, such processes still need to be communicated in static graphics for print documents.

If the reader is to perform the action, show the action from the reader's point of view, as in Figure 8.21.

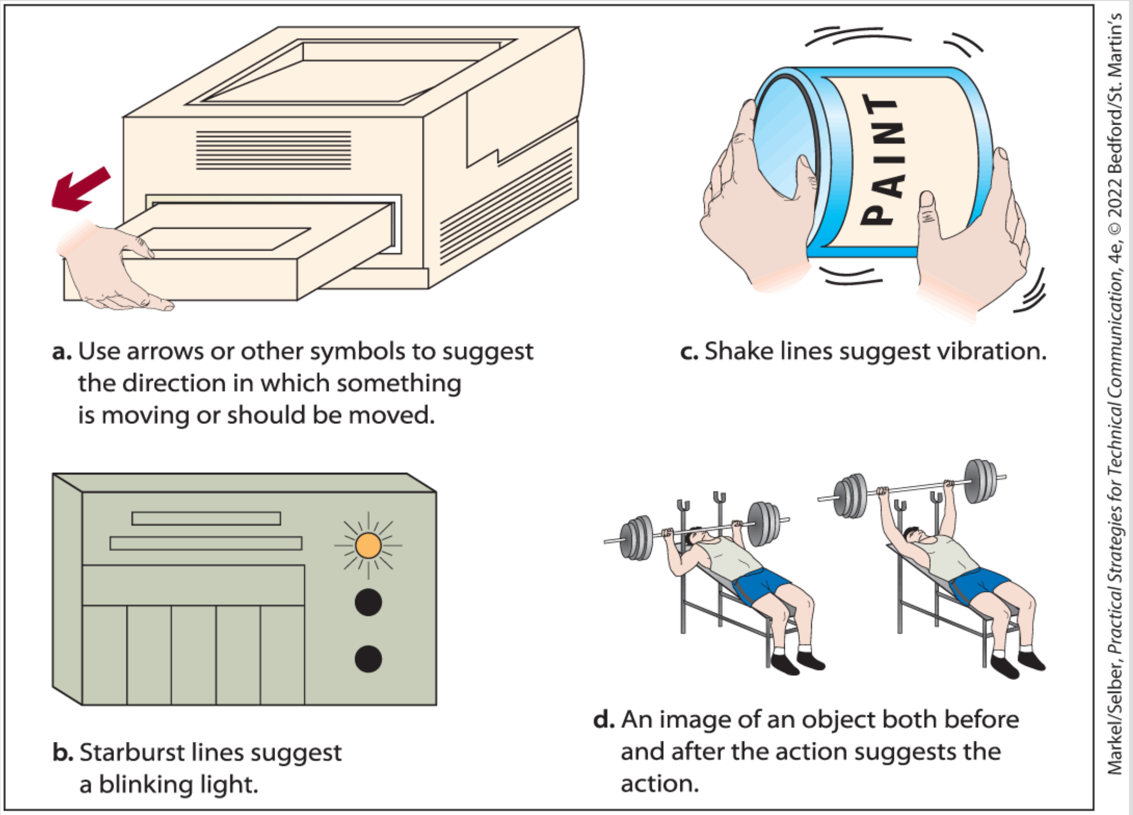


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.21 Showing Action from the Reader's Perspective

In many cases, you need to show only the person's hands, not the whole body.

Figure 8.22 illustrates four additional techniques for showing action. These techniques are conventional but not universal. If you are addressing readers from another culture, consult a qualified person from that culture to make sure your symbols are clear and inoffensive.



a. Use arrows or other symbols to suggest the direction in which something is moving or should be moved.

b. Starburst lines suggest a blinking light.

c. Shake lines suggest vibration.

d. An image of an object both before and after the action suggests the action.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.22 Showing Action or Motion

ILLUSTRATING VISUAL AND SPATIAL CHARACTERISTICS

To illustrate visual and spatial characteristics, use photographs, screen shots, line drawings, and maps.

Photographs

Photographs are unmatched for reproducing visual detail. Sometimes, however, a photograph can provide too much information. In a sales brochure for an automobile, a glossy photograph of the dashboard might be very effective. But in an owner's manual, if you want to show how to use the trip odometer, use a diagram that focuses on that one item.

Sometimes, a photograph can provide too little information. The item you want to highlight might be located inside the mechanism or obscured by another component.

GUIDELINES Presenting Photographs Effectively

Follow these five suggestions to make sure your photographs are clear, honest, and easy to understand.

- **Eliminate extraneous background clutter that can distract readers.** Crop the photograph to delete unnecessary detail. Figure 8.23 (on p. 226) shows examples of cropped and uncropped photographs.

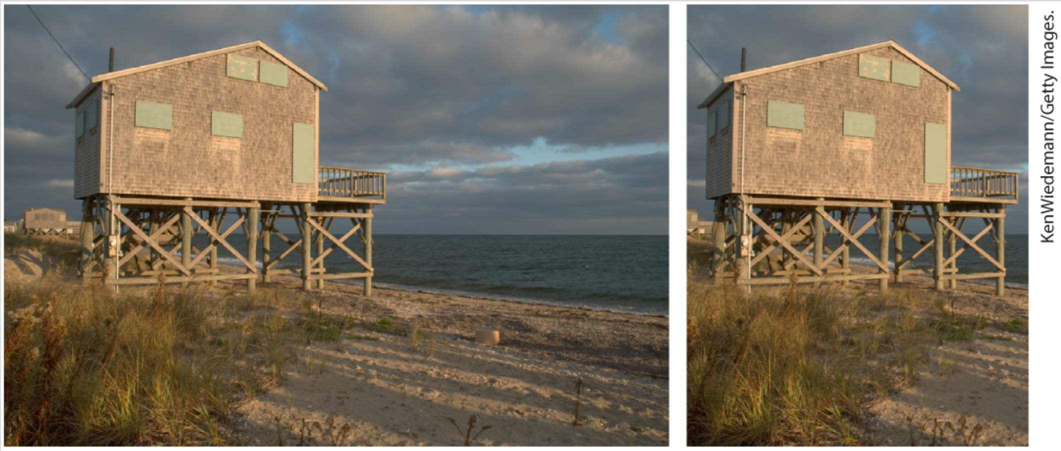

KenWiedemann/Getty Images.

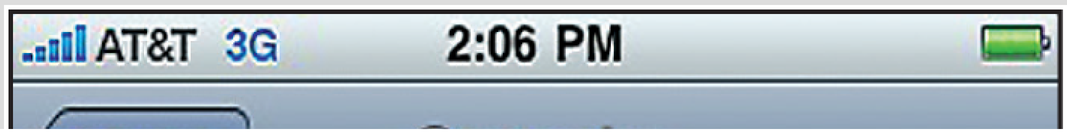
FIGURE 8.23 Cropping a Photograph

Sometimes, writers and designers crop photographs to save space. Ideally, you should crop a photo because it helps you make your point. If you want to show how vulnerable to natural forces the structure in the photograph is, the left-hand version is better because it emphasizes the vastness of the sea. But if you want to discuss the ways the structure has been designed and built to resist natural forces, the right-hand version is better.

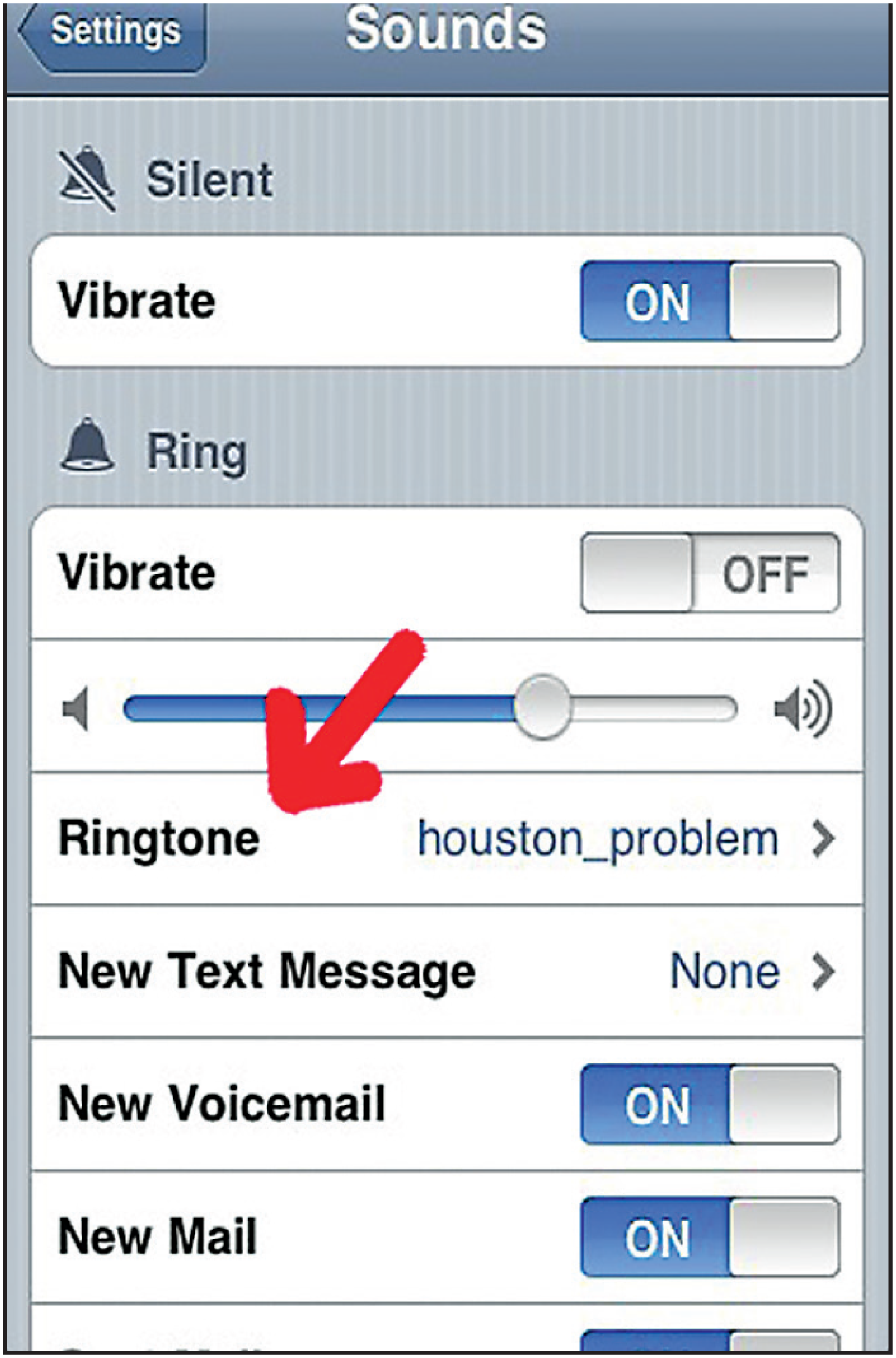
- **Do not electronically manipulate the photograph.** There is nothing unethical about removing blemishes or cropping a digital photograph. However, manipulating a photograph — for example, enlarging the size of the monitor that comes with a computer system — *is* unethical.
- **Help readers understand the perspective.** Most objects in magazines and journals are photographed at an angle to show the object's depth as well as its height and width.
- **If appropriate, include some common object, such as a coin or a ruler, in the photograph to give readers a sense of scale.**
- **If appropriate, label components or important features.**

Screen Shots

Screen shots — images of what appears on a computer monitor or some other screen — are often used in manuals to show users what the screen will look like as they perform tasks with the device. Readers who see that the screen shot accurately portrays what appears on their own devices are reassured and therefore better able to concentrate on the task they are trying to perform. Figure 8.24 (on p. 225) is an example of how screen shots are used.



ons.html.



Silent

Vibrate ON

Ring

Vibrate OFF

Ringtone houston_problem

New Text Message None

New Voicemail ON

New Mail ON

FIGURE 8.24 Screen Shot

NASA, 2013: http://www.nasa.gov/connect/sounds/iphone_install_directi

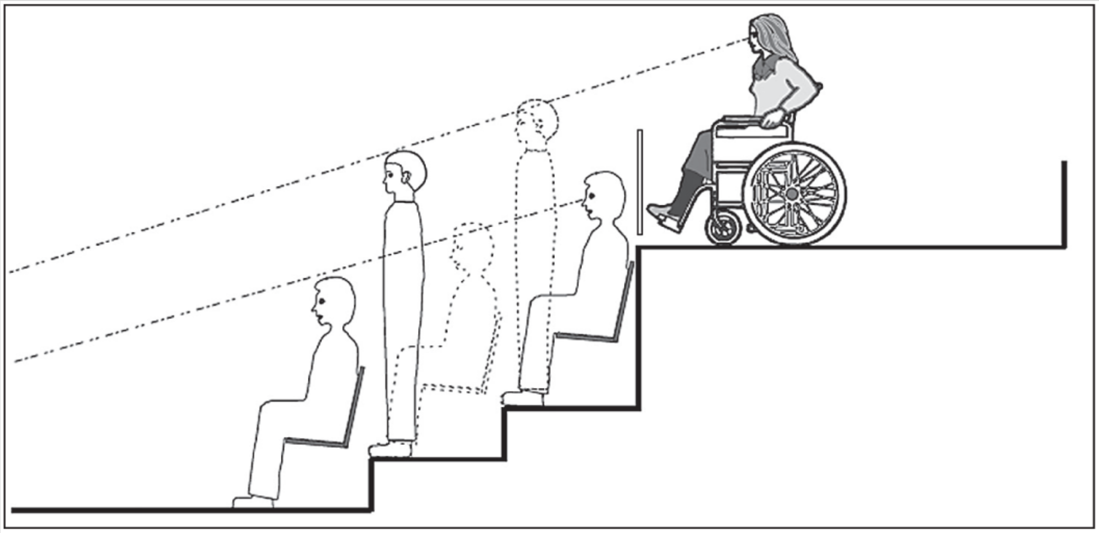
This screen shot, from a user guide on NASA's website, shows users how to select a ringtone.

Line Drawings

Line drawings are simplified visual representations of objects. Line drawings offer three possible advantages over photographs:

- Line drawings can focus readers' attention on desired information better than a photograph can.
- Line drawings can highlight information that might be obscured by bad lighting or a bad angle in a photograph.
- Line drawings are sometimes easier for readers to understand than photographs are.

Figure 8.25 shows the effectiveness of line drawings.



U.S. Department of Justice.

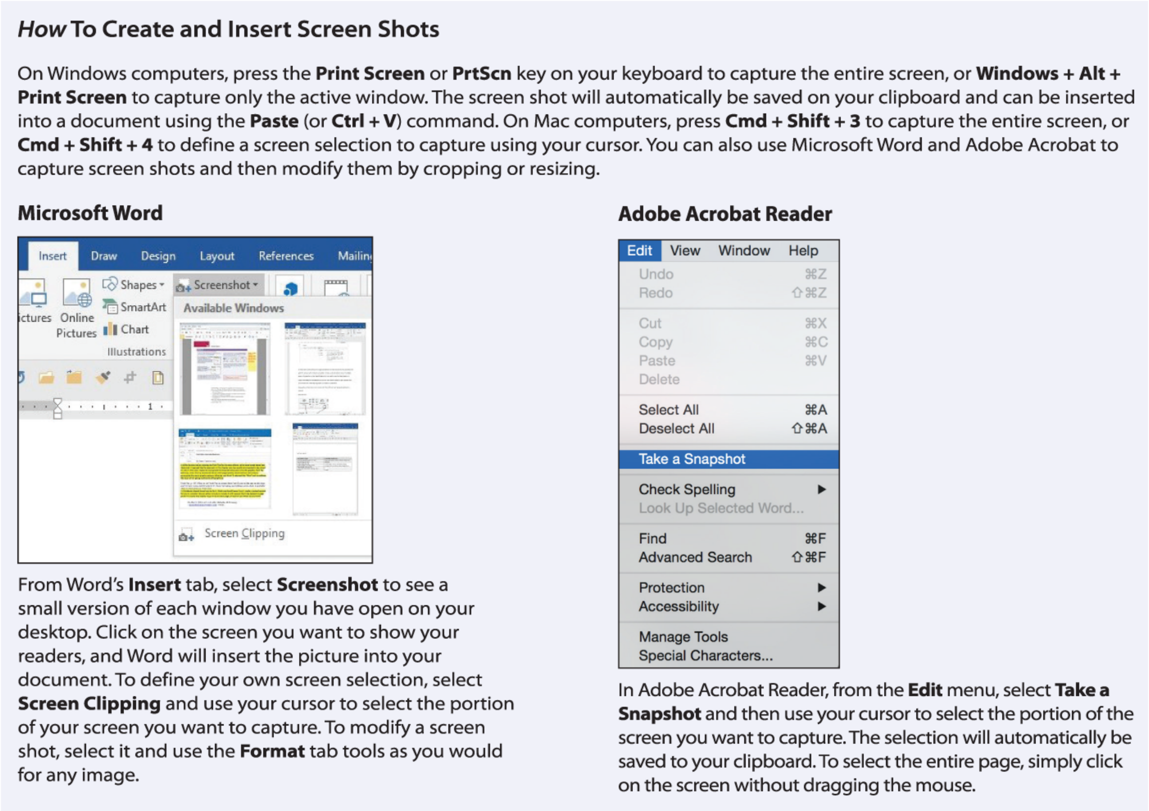
FIGURE 8.25 Line Drawing

This drawing, which accompanies a manual about the Americans with Disabilities Act, illustrates the idea that “wheelchair seating locations must provide lines of sight comparable to those provided to other spectators.” A photograph could not show this concept as clearly as this drawing does.

TECH TIP

Why To Create and Insert Screen Shots

You may find that you need to share an image of your computer screen with an instructor, a colleague, or a tech-support worker. To show your reader what appears in a window on your monitor, you can create a screen shot by using a program such as Microsoft Word or simply by using your Windows or Mac operating system. If you plan to create many screen shots or if you want more sophisticated functionality, including video capture, search the internet for “screen capture apps” such as TechSmith’s SnagIt.



How To Create and Insert Screen Shots

On Windows computers, press the **Print Screen** or **PrtScn** key on your keyboard to capture the entire screen, or **Windows + Alt + Print Screen** to capture only the active window. The screen shot will automatically be saved on your clipboard and can be inserted into a document using the **Paste** (or **Ctrl + V**) command. On Mac computers, press **Cmd + Shift + 3** to capture the entire screen, or **Cmd + Shift + 4** to define a screen selection to capture using your cursor. You can also use Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat to capture screen shots and then modify them by cropping or resizing.

Microsoft Word

Insert
Draw
Design
Layout
References
Mailin
Shapes
Screenshot
SmartArt
Chart
ictures
Online Pictures
Illustrations
Available Windows
Screen Clipping

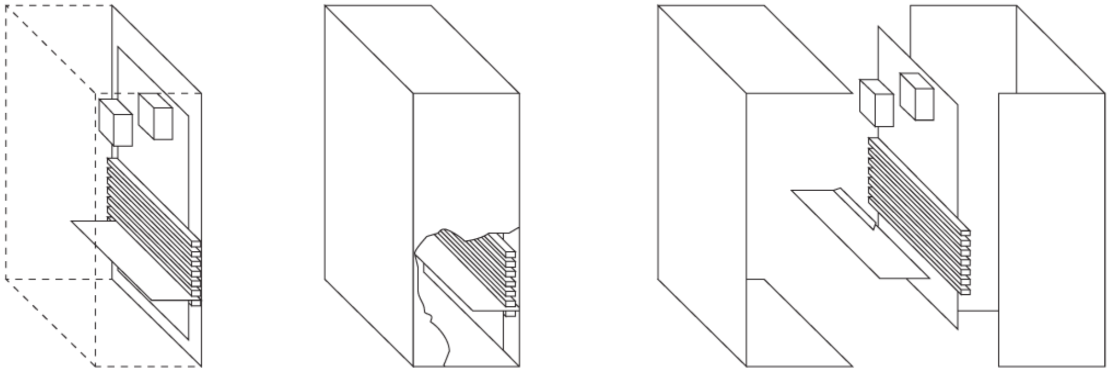
From Word's **Insert** tab, select **Screenshot** to see a small version of each window you have open on your desktop. Click on the screen you want to show your readers, and Word will insert the picture into your document. To define your own screen selection, select **Screen Clipping** and use your cursor to select the portion of your screen you want to capture. To modify a screen shot, select it and use the **Format** tab tools as you would for any image.

Adobe Acrobat Reader

Edit
View
Window
Help
Undo ⌘Z
Redo ⇧⌘Z
Cut ⌘X
Copy ⌘C
Paste ⌘V
Delete
Select All ⌘A
Deselect All ⇧⌘A
Take a Snapshot
Check Spelling ▶
Look Up Selected Word...
Find ⌘F
Advanced Search ⇧⌘F
Protection ▶
Accessibility ▶
Manage Tools
Special Characters...

In Adobe Acrobat Reader, from the **Edit** menu, select **Take a Snapshot** and then use your cursor to select the portion of the screen you want to capture. The selection will automatically be saved to your clipboard. To select the entire page, simply click on the screen without dragging the mouse.

You have probably seen the three variations on the basic line drawing shown in Figure 8.26.



a. *Phantom drawings* show parts hidden from view by outlining external items that would ordinarily obscure them.

b. *Cutaway drawings* “remove” a part of the surface to expose what is underneath.

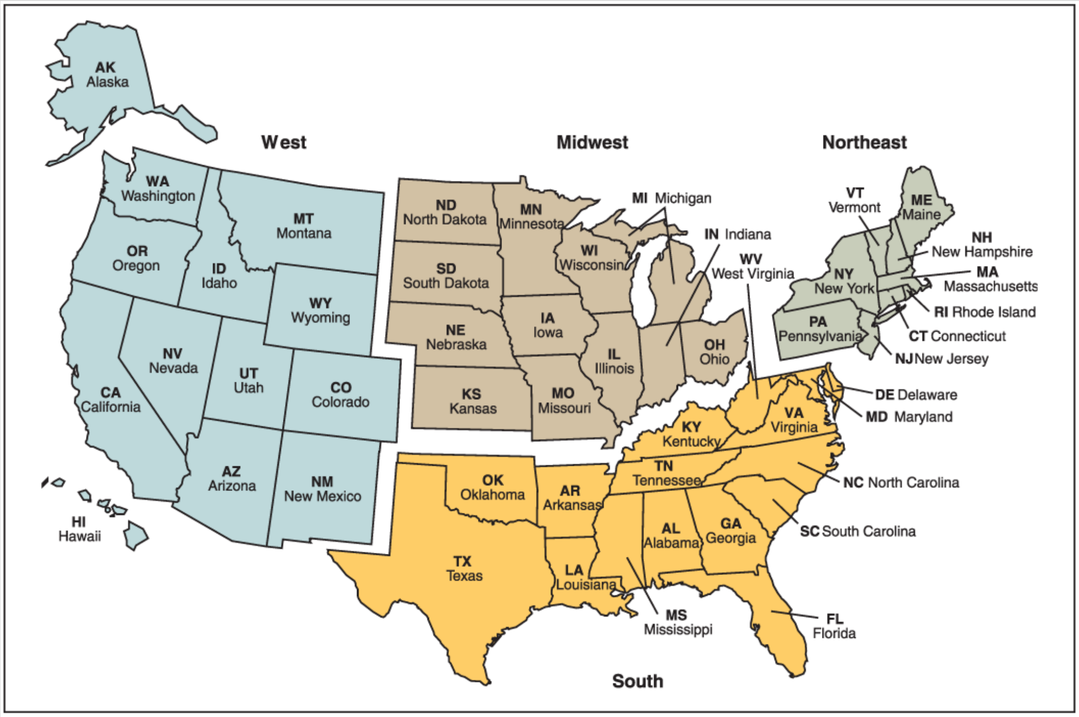
c. *Exploded drawings* separate components while maintaining their physical relationship.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.26 Phantom, Cutaway, and Exploded Views

Maps

Maps are readily available as clip art that can be modified with a graphics program. Figure 8.27 shows a map derived from clip art.


West
Midwest
Northeast
South
AK Alaska
WA Washington
OR Oregon
ID Idaho
MT Montana
WY Wyoming
NV Nevada
CA California
UT Utah
CO Colorado
AZ Arizona
NM New Mexico
HI Hawaii
ND North Dakota
SD South Dakota
NE Nebraska
KS Kansas
MN Minnesota
IA Iowa
MO Missouri
WI Wisconsin
IL Illinois
MI Michigan
IN Indiana
OH Ohio
WV West Virginia
VT Vermont
ME Maine
NH New Hampshire
MA Massachusetts
RI Rhode Island
CT Connecticut
NY New York
PA Pennsylvania
NJ New Jersey
DE Delaware
MD Maryland
KY Kentucky
VA Virginia
TN Tennessee
NC North Carolina
SC South Carolina
OK Oklahoma
AR Arkansas
TX Texas
LA Louisiana
MS Mississippi
AL Alabama
GA Georgia
FL Florida

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 8.27 Map

Include a scale and a legend if the map is one that is not thoroughly familiar to your readers. Also, use conventional colors, such as blue for water.

Creating Effective Graphics for Multicultural Readers

Whether you are writing for people within your organization or outside it, consider the needs of readers whose first language is different from your own. Like words, graphics have cultural meanings. If you are unaware of these meanings, you could communicate something very different from what you intend. The following guidelines are based on William Horton's article "The Almost Universal Language: Graphics for International Documents" (1993).

- **Be aware that reading patterns differ.** In some countries, people read from right to left or from top to bottom. In some cultures, direction signifies value: the right-hand side is superior to the left, or the reverse. You need to think about how to sequence graphics that show action or where to put "before" and "after" graphics. If you want to show a direction, as in an informal flowchart, consider using arrows to indicate how to read the chart.
- **Be aware of varying cultural attitudes toward giving instruction.** Instructions for products made in Japan are highly polite and deferential: "Please attach the cable at this time." Some cultures favor spelling out general principles but leaving the reader to supply the details. To people in these cultures,

instructions containing a detailed close-up of how to carry out a task might appear insulting.

- **Deemphasize trivial details.** Because common objects, such as plugs on the ends of power cords, come in different shapes around the world, draw them to look generic rather than specific to one country.
- **Avoid culture-specific language, symbols, and references.** Don't use a picture of a mouse (the furry rodent) to symbolize a computer mouse because the device is not known by that name everywhere. Avoid the casual use of national symbols (such as the maple leaf or national flags); any error in a detail might offend your readers. Use colors carefully: red means danger to most people from Western cultures, but it is a celebratory color to the Chinese.
- **Portray people very carefully.** Every aspect of a person's appearance, from clothing to hairstyle to physical features, is culture- or race-specific. A photograph of a woman in casual Western attire seated at a workstation would be ineffective in an Islamic culture where only a woman's hands and eyes may be shown. Horton (1993) recommends using stick figures or silhouettes that do not suggest any one culture, race, or sex.
- **Be particularly careful in portraying hand gestures.** Many Western hand gestures, such as the "okay" sign, are considered obscene in other cultures, and some people consider long red fingernails inappropriate. Use hands in graphics only when necessary — for example, to illustrate carrying out a task — and obscure the person's sex and race.

Cultural differences are many and subtle. Learn as much as possible about your readers and about their culture and outlook, and have your graphics reviewed by a native of the culture.

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

☐ Does the graphic have a purpose?

☐ Is the graphic simple and uncluttered?

☐ Does the graphic present a manageable amount of information?

☐ Does the graphic meet readers’ format expectations?

☐ Is the graphic clearly labeled?

☐ Is the graphic honest?

☐ If you want to use an existing graphic, do you have the legal right to do so? If so, have you cited its source appropriately?

☐ Is the graphic clearly visible and easily accessible?

☐ Is the graphic introduced and explained clearly in the text?

☐ Is the graphic inoffensive to your readers?

EXERCISES

For more about memos, see Ch. 9, p. 245.

1. Find out from the admissions office at your college or university the number of students enrolled from the different states or from the different counties in your state. Present this information in four different kinds of graphics:
   a. map

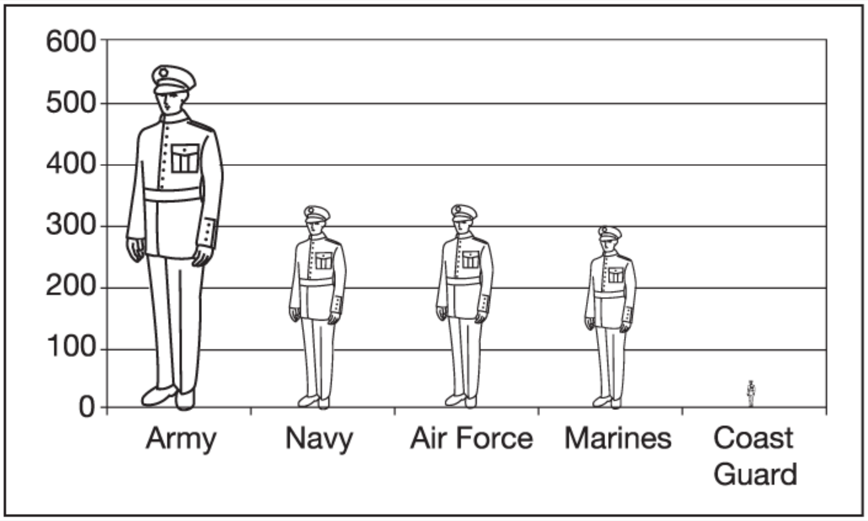
   b. table
   c. bar graph
   d. pie chart

   In three or four paragraphs, explain why each graphic is appropriate for a particular audience and purpose and how each emphasizes different aspects of the information.
2. Design a flowchart for a process you are familiar with, such as applying for a summer job, studying for a test, preparing a paper, or performing some task at work. Your audience is someone who will be carrying out the process for the first time.
3. For each of the following four graphics, write a paragraph evaluating its effectiveness and describing how you would revise it.
   a. Majors

	2017	**2018**	**2019**
Civil Engineering	236	231	253
Chemical Engineering	126	134	142
Comparative Literature	97	86	74
Electrical Engineering	317	326	401
English	714	623	592
Fine Arts	112	96	72

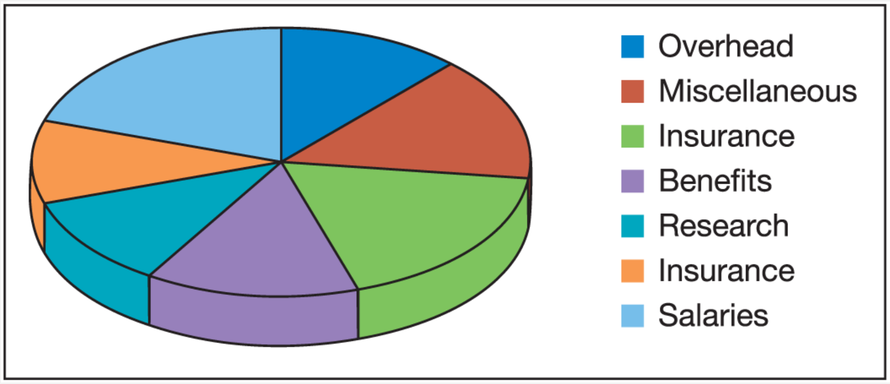
Foreign Languages	608	584	566
Materials Engineering	213	227	241
Mechanical Engineering	196	203	201
Other	46	42	51
Philosophy	211	142	151
Religion	86	91	72

b. Number of Members of the U.S. Armed Forces in 2012 (in Thousands)



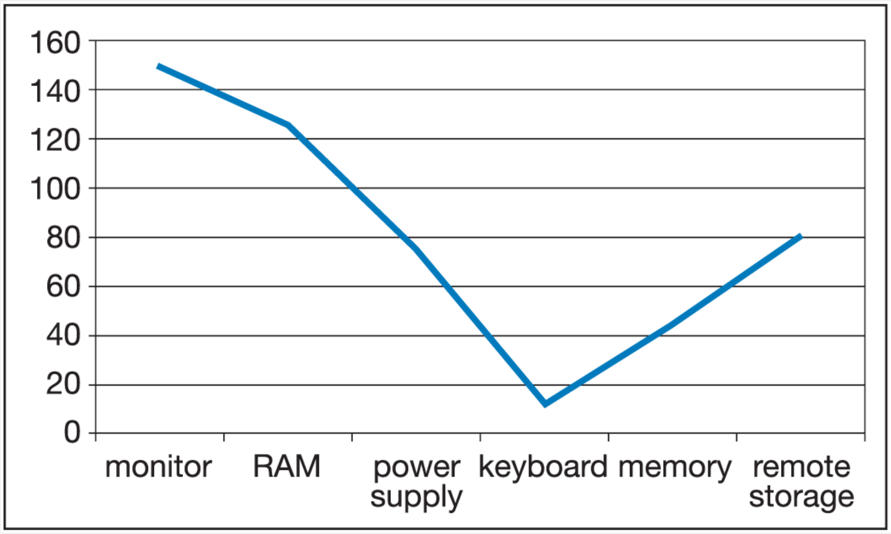
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

c. Expenses at Hillway Corporation



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

d. Costs of the Components of a PC

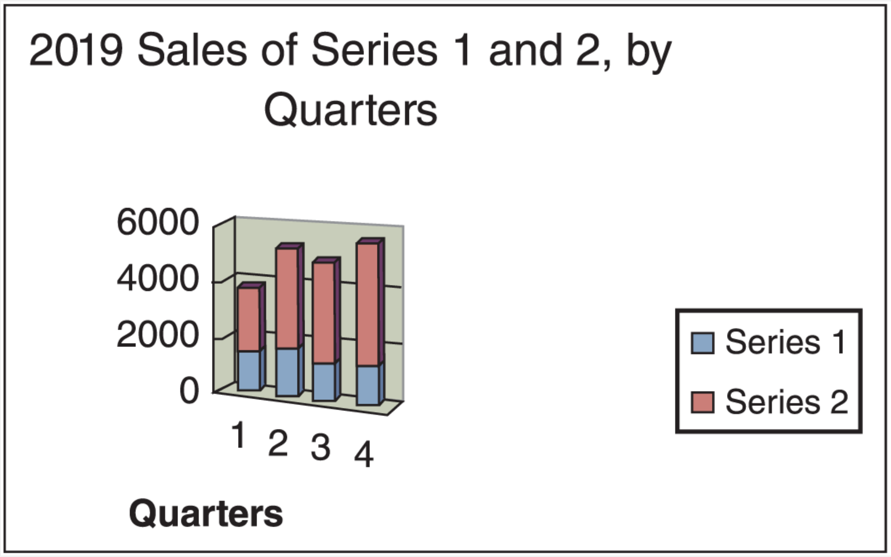


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

5. The following three graphs illustrate the sales of two products — Series 1 and Series 2 — for each quarter of 2019. Which is the most effective in conveying the information?

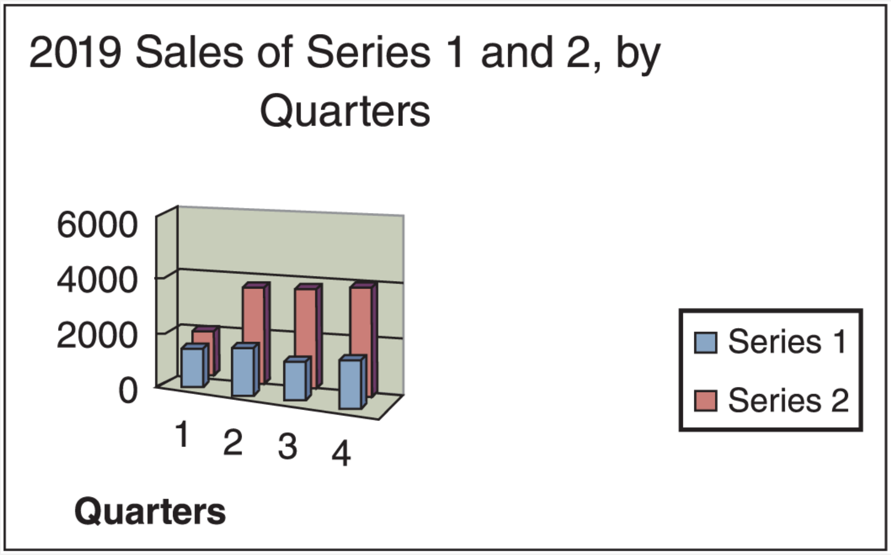
Which is the least effective? What additional information would make the most effective graph better?

a.



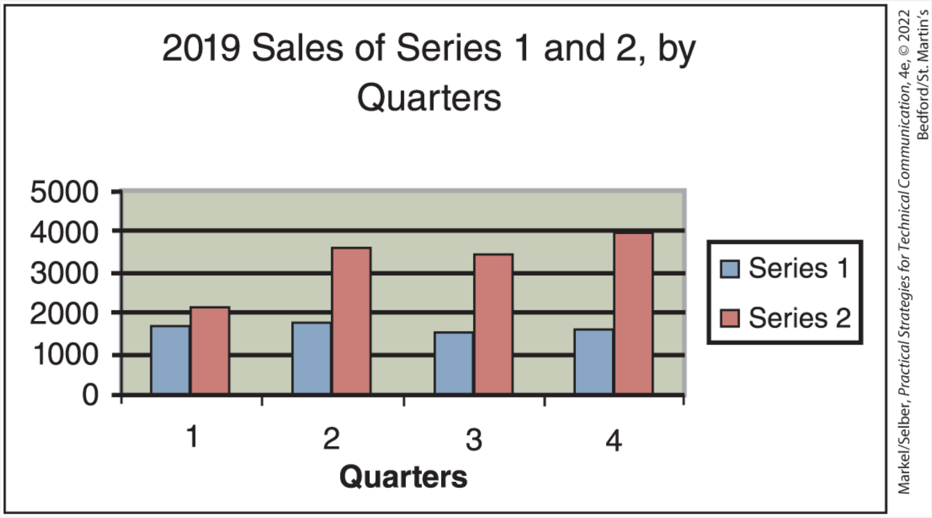
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

b.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

c.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

CASE 8: Creating Appropriate Graphics To Accompany a Report

Following a series of texting-related driving accidents, a representative in your state legislature has decided to introduce legislation restricting the use of cell phones while driving. As an assistant to the state's insurance commissioner, you have been asked to collect data on how cell-phone use affects driving. The representative hopes to use these data to make his case for the legislation. When you present your findings to your supervisor, she asks that you pare them down to the facts most relevant to the representative. She also asks that you consider presenting some of the data graphically. If your instructor assigned it, got to Achieve to get to work improving your research.

PART 4

Learning Important Applications

Nikada/Getty Images

CHAPTER 9

Corresponding in Print and Online

Understanding the Process of Writing Correspondence
Presenting Yourself Effectively in Correspondence
Writing Letters
Writing Memos
Writing Emails
Writing Microblogs
Writing Correspondence to Multicultural Readers

REGARDLESS OF THE APPLICATION you use, you will communicate in writing every day on the job. This chapter discusses the four major formats used for producing workplace correspondence: letters, memos, emails, and microblog posts. Throughout this chapter, the word *correspondence* refers to all these forms.

Understanding the Process of Writing Correspondence

The process of writing correspondence is essentially like that of writing any other kind of workplace document. The Focus on Process box presents an overview of this process, focusing on letters, memos, and emails. The more formal the correspondence, the more time you are likely to spend on each of these steps.

FOCUS ON PROCESS: Correspondence

When writing correspondence, pay special attention to these steps of the writing process.

PLANNING	You will need to choose the appropriate type of correspondence for your writing situation.
DRAFTING	For letters, memos, and emails, clearly state your purpose, use headings to help your readers, summarize your message, provide adequate background, organize the discussion, and highlight action items. For microblogs, state your message or question early and clearly.
REVISING	You might need to write correspondence quickly, but you still need to write carefully. Review the section of the Writer’s Checklist at the end of this chapter that applies to your document.
EDITING	See Chapter 6 for advice on writing correct and effective sentences.

PROOFREADING	See Appendix, Part B, for proofreading tips.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Choosing a Type of Correspondence

IF THE SITUATION IS …	AND YOU ARE WRITING TO …	TRY THIS TYPE OF CORRESPONDENCE
Formal	People outside or within your organization	**Letters.** Because letters use centuries-old conventions such as the salutation and complimentary close, they are the most formal of the four types of correspondence.
Moderately formal	People outside your organization	**Letters or email.** Letters are more formal than email, but consider how your readers will need to use the information. Recipients can store and forward an email easily, as well as capture the text and reuse it in other documents. In addition, you can attach other files to an email.
Moderately formal	People within your organization	**Memos or email.** Memos are moderately formal and can be sent in the body of an email or as an attachment.
Informal	People outside or within your organization	**Email or microblogs.** Email is good for quick, relatively informal communication with one or many recipients. Microblog posts such as Twitter tweets or Facebook status updates can be useful for quick questions addressed to a group. Microblogs are the most informal type of correspondence.

Presenting Yourself Effectively in Correspondence

When you write business correspondence, follow these five suggestions for presenting yourself as a professional:

- Use the appropriate level of formality.
- Communicate correctly.
- Project the "you attitude."
- Avoid correspondence clichés.
- Communicate honestly.

USE THE APPROPRIATE LEVEL OF FORMALITY

People are sometimes tempted to use very informal writing in informal digital applications such as email and microblogs. Don't. Everything you write on the job is legally the property of the organization for which you work, and messages are almost always archived digitally, even after senders and recipients have deleted them. Your documents might be read by the company president, or they might appear in a newspaper or in a court of law. Therefore, use a moderately formal tone to avoid potential embarrassment.

TOO INFORMAL	Our meeting with United went south right away when they threw a hissy fit, saying that

	we blew off the deadline for the progress report.
MODERATELY FORMAL	In our meeting, the United representative expressed concern that we had missed the deadline for the progress report.

However, you don’t want to sound like a dictionary.

TOO FORMAL	It was indubitably the case that our team was successful in presenting a proposal that was characterized by quality of the highest order. My appreciation for your industriousness is herewith extended.
MODERATELY FORMAL	I think we put together an excellent proposal. Thank you very much for your hard work.

COMMUNICATE CORRECTLY

One issue closely related to formality is correctness. As discussed in Chapter 1, correct writing is free of errors in grammar, punctuation, style, usage, and spelling. Correctness problems occur most often in email and microblogs.

Some writers mistakenly think that they do not need to worry about correctness because these digital applications are meant for quick communication. They are wrong. You have to plan your digital correspondence just as you plan any other written communication, and you should revise, edit, and proofread it. Sending correspondence that contains language errors is unprofessional because it suggests a lack of respect for your reader—and for yourself. It also causes your reader to think that you are careless about your job.

PROJECT THE “YOU ATTITUDE”

Correspondence should convey a courteous, positive tone. The key to accomplishing this task is using the “you attitude” — looking at the situation from the reader’s point of view and adjusting the content, structure, and tone to meet his or her needs. For example, if you are writing to a supplier who has failed to deliver some merchandise by the agreed-on date, the “you attitude” dictates that you not discuss problems you are having with other suppliers; those problems don’t concern your reader. Instead, concentrate on explaining clearly and politely that the reader has violated your agreement and that not having the merchandise is costing you money. Then propose ways to expedite the shipment.

Following are two examples of thoughtless sentences, each followed by an improved version that shows the “you attitude.”

ACCUSING	You must have dropped the engine. The housing is badly cracked.
BETTER	The badly cracked housing suggests that the engine must have fallen onto a hard surface from some height.
SARCASTIC	You’ll need two months to deliver these parts? Who do you think you are, the post office?

BETTER	Surely you would find a two-month delay for the delivery of parts unacceptable in your business. That's how I feel, too.

A calm, respectful tone makes the best impression and increases the chances that you will achieve your goal.

AVOID CORRESPONDENCE CLICHÉS

Over the centuries, a group of words and phrases have come to be associated with business correspondence; one common example is *as per your request.* These phrases sound stilted and insincere. Don't use them.

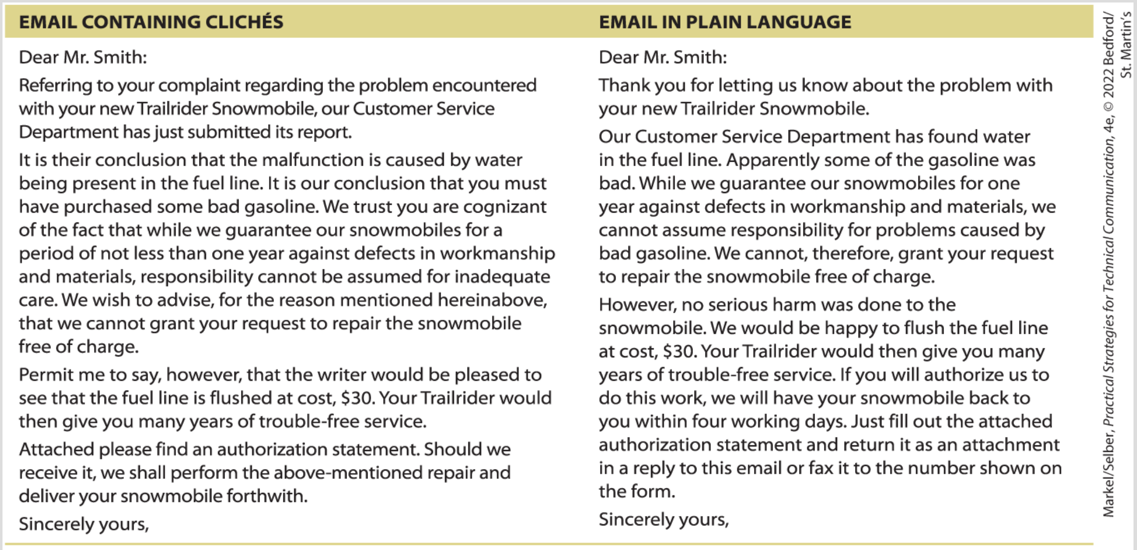
For more on language, see "Choosing the Right Words and Phrases" in Ch. 6 on p. 135.

Table 9.1 is a list of common clichés and their plain-language equivalents. Figure 9.1 shows two versions of the same email: one written in clichés, the other in plain language.

TABLE 9.1 Clichés and Plain-Language Equivalents

CLICHÉ	PLAIN-LANGUAGE EQUIVALENT
attached please find	attached is
enclosed please find	enclosed is
pursuant to our agreement	as we agreed

referring to your (“Referring to your letter of March 19, the shipment of pianos …”)	“As you wrote in your letter of March 19, the …” (or subordinate the reference at the end of your sentence)
wish to advise (“We wish to advise that …”)	(The phrase doesn’t say anything. Just say what you want to say.)
the writer (“The writer believes that …”)	“I believe …”



EMAIL CONTAINING CLICHÉS

Dear Mr. Smith:

Referring to your complaint regarding the problem encountered with your new Trailrider Snowmobile, our Customer Service Department has just submitted its report.

It is their conclusion that the malfunction is caused by water being present in the fuel line. It is our conclusion that you must have purchased some bad gasoline. We trust you are cognizant of the fact that while we guarantee our snowmobiles for a period of not less than one year against defects in workmanship and materials, responsibility cannot be assumed for inadequate care. We wish to advise, for the reason mentioned hereinabove, that we cannot grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge.

Permit me to say, however, that the writer would be pleased to see that the fuel line is flushed at cost, $30. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service.

Attached please find an authorization statement. Should we receive it, we shall perform the above-mentioned repair and deliver your snowmobile forthwith.

Sincerely yours,

EMAIL IN PLAIN LANGUAGE

Dear Mr. Smith:

Thank you for letting us know about the problem with your new Trailrider Snowmobile.

Our Customer Service Department has found water in the fuel line. Apparently some of the gasoline was bad. While we guarantee our snowmobiles for one year against defects in workmanship and materials, we cannot assume responsibility for problems caused by bad gasoline. We cannot, therefore, grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge.

However, no serious harm was done to the snowmobile. We would be happy to flush the fuel line at cost, $30. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service. If you will authorize us to do this work, we will have your snowmobile back to you within four working days. Just fill out the attached authorization statement and return it as an attachment in a reply to this email or fax it to the number shown on the form.

Sincerely yours,

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

FIGURE 9.1 Sample Emails With and Without Clichés

The email on the right avoids clichés and shows an understanding of the “you attitude.” Instead of focusing on the violation of the warranty, it presents the conclusion as good news: the snowmobile is not ruined, and it can be repaired and returned in less than a week for a small charge.

COMMUNICATE HONESTLY

You should communicate honestly when you write any kind of document, and business correspondence is no exception.

Communicating honestly shows respect for your reader and for yourself.

ETHICS NOTE

WRITING HONEST BUSINESS CORRESPONDENCE

Why is dishonesty a big problem in correspondence? Perhaps because the topics discussed in business correspondence often relate to the writer's professionalism and the quality of his or her work. For instance, when a salesperson working for a supplier writes to a customer explaining why a product did not arrive on time, he is tempted to make it seem as if his company — and he personally — were blameless. Similarly, when a manager has to announce a new policy that employees will dislike, she might be tempted to distance herself from the policy.

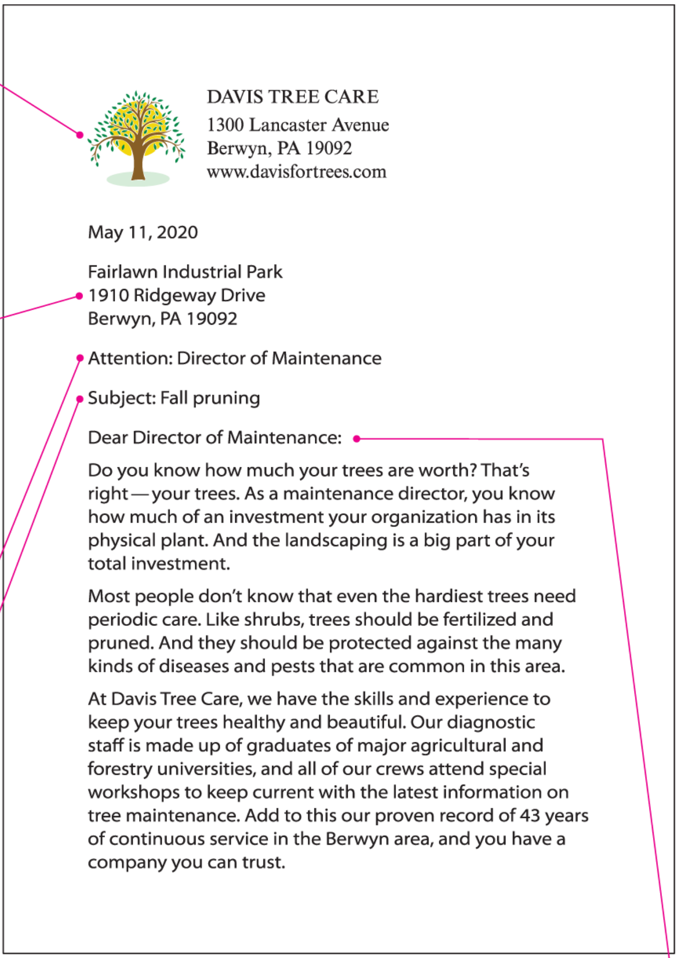
The professional approach is to tell the truth. If you mislead a reader in explaining why the shipment didn't arrive on time, the reader will likely double-check the facts, conclude that you are trying to avoid responsibility, and end your business relationship. If you try to convince readers that you had nothing to do with a new, unpopular policy, some of them will know you are being misleading, and you will lose your most important credential: your credibility.

Writing Letters

Letters are still a basic means of communication between organizations, with millions written each day. To write effective letters, you need to understand the elements of a letter, its format, and the types of letters commonly sent in the business world.

ELEMENTS OF A LETTER

Most letters include a heading, inside address, salutation, body, complimentary close, and signature. Some letters also include one or more of the following: attention line, subject line, enclosure line, and copy line. Figure 9.2 shows the elements of a letter.



DAVIS TREE CARE
1300 Lancaster Avenue
Berwyn, PA 19092
www.davisfortrees.com

May 11, 2020

Fairlawn Industrial Park
1910 Ridgeway Drive
Berwyn, PA 19092

Attention: Director of Maintenance

Subject: Fall pruning

Dear Director of Maintenance:

Do you know how much your trees are worth? That's right — your trees. As a maintenance director, you know how much of an investment your organization has in its physical plant. And the landscaping is a big part of your total investment.

Most people don't know that even the hardiest trees need periodic care. Like shrubs, trees should be fertilized and pruned. And they should be protected against the many kinds of diseases and pests that are common in this area.

At Davis Tree Care, we have the skills and experience to keep your trees healthy and beautiful. Our diagnostic staff is made up of graduates of major agricultural and forestry universities, and all of our crews attend special workshops to keep current with the latest information on tree maintenance. Add to this our proven record of 43 years of continuous service in the Berwyn area, and you have a company you can trust.

Heading. Most organizations use letterhead stationery with their heading printed at the top. This preprinted information and the date the letter is sent make up the heading. If you are using blank paper rather than letterhead, your address (without your name) and the date form the heading. Whether you use letterhead or blank paper for the first page, do not number it. Use blank paper for the second and all subsequent pages.

Inside Address. If you are writing to an individual who has a professional title — such as Professor, Dr., or, for public officials, Honorable — use it. If not, use Mr. or Ms. (unless you know the recipient prefers Mrs. or Miss). If the reader's position fits on the same line as the name, add it after a comma; otherwise, drop it to the line below. Spell the name of the organization the way the organization itself does: for example, International Business Machines calls itself IBM. Include the complete mailing address: street number and name, city, state, and zip code.

Attention Line. Sometimes, you will be unable to address a letter to a particular person because you don't know (and cannot easily find out) the name of the individual who holds that position in the company.

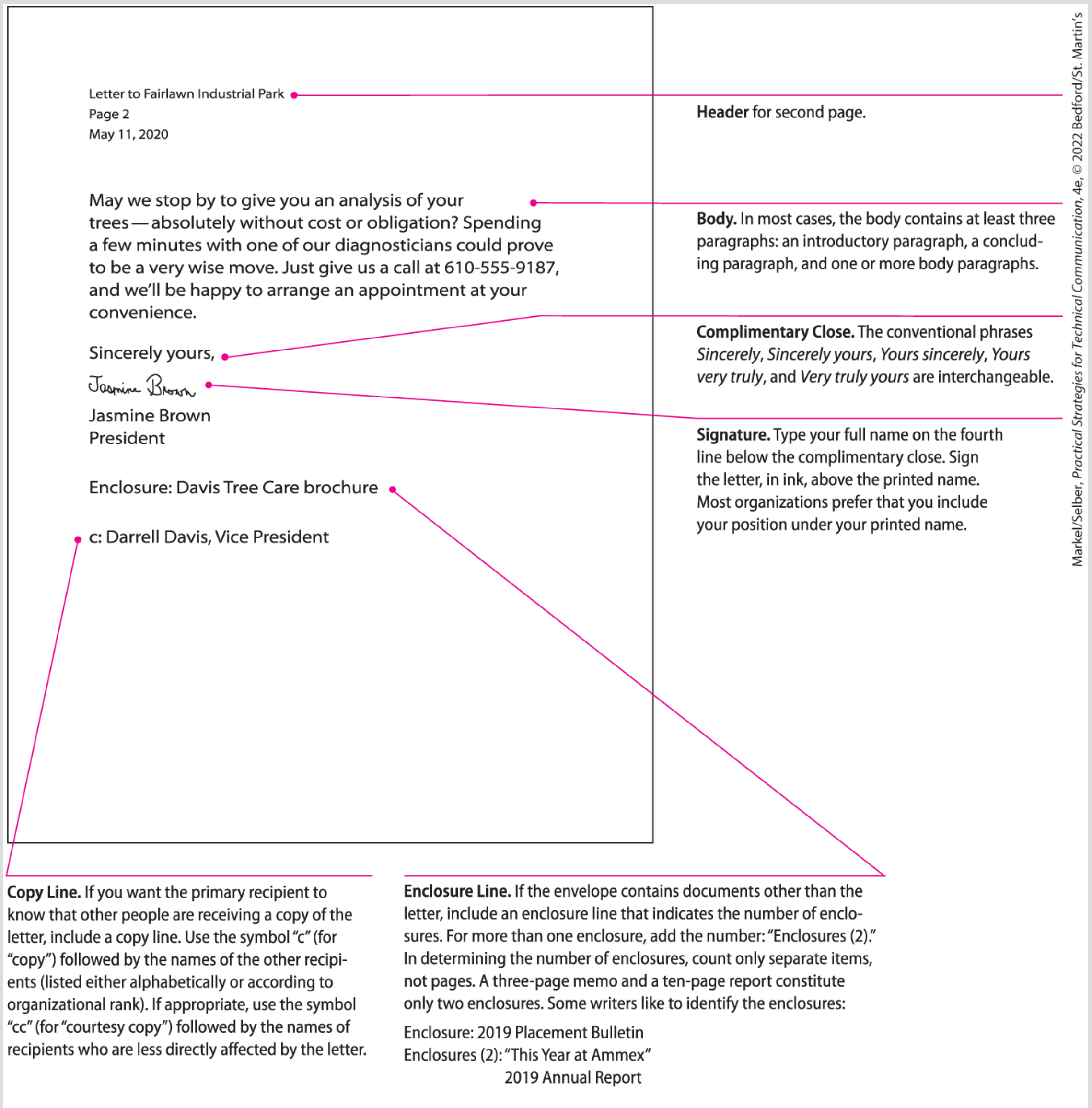
Subject Line. The subject line is an optional element in a letter. Use either a project number (for example, "Subject: Project 31402") or a brief phrase defining the subject (for example, "Subject: Price quotation for the R13 submersible pump").

Salutation. If you decide not to use an attention line or a subject line, put the salutation, or greeting, two lines below the inside address. The traditional salutation is "Dear," followed by the reader's courtesy title and last name and then a colon (not a comma):

Dear Ms. Hawkins:

Top left image: Sapik/Shutterstock.com.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.2 Elements of a Letter (continued)



Letter to Fairlawn Industrial Park
Page 2
May 11, 2020

May we stop by to give you an analysis of your trees—absolutely without cost or obligation? Spending a few minutes with one of our diagnosticians could prove to be a very wise move. Just give us a call at 610-555-9187, and we'll be happy to arrange an appointment at your convenience.

Sincerely yours,

Jasmine Brown

Jasmine Brown
President

Enclosure: Davis Tree Care brochure

c: Darrell Davis, Vice President

Header for second page.

Body. In most cases, the body contains at least three paragraphs: an introductory paragraph, a concluding paragraph, and one or more body paragraphs.

Complimentary Close. The conventional phrases *Sincerely*, *Sincerely yours*, *Yours sincerely*, *Yours very truly*, and *Very truly yours* are interchangeable.

Signature. Type your full name on the fourth line below the complimentary close. Sign the letter, in ink, above the printed name. Most organizations prefer that you include your position under your printed name.

Copy Line. If you want the primary recipient to know that other people are receiving a copy of the letter, include a copy line. Use the symbol "c" (for "copy") followed by the names of the other recipients (listed either alphabetically or according to organizational rank). If appropriate, use the symbol "cc" (for "courtesy copy") followed by the names of recipients who are less directly affected by the letter.

Enclosure Line. If the envelope contains documents other than the letter, include an enclosure line that indicates the number of enclosures. For more than one enclosure, add the number: "Enclosures (2)." In determining the number of enclosures, count only separate items, not pages. A three-page memo and a ten-page report constitute only two enclosures. Some writers like to identify the enclosures:

Enclosure: 2019 Placement Bulletin
Enclosures (2): "This Year at Ammex"
2019 Annual Report

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.2 Elements of a Letter

Letters follow one of two typical formats: modified block or full block. When sending a letter as an email attachment, you can save it as a PDF file to preserve the formatting for the recipient.

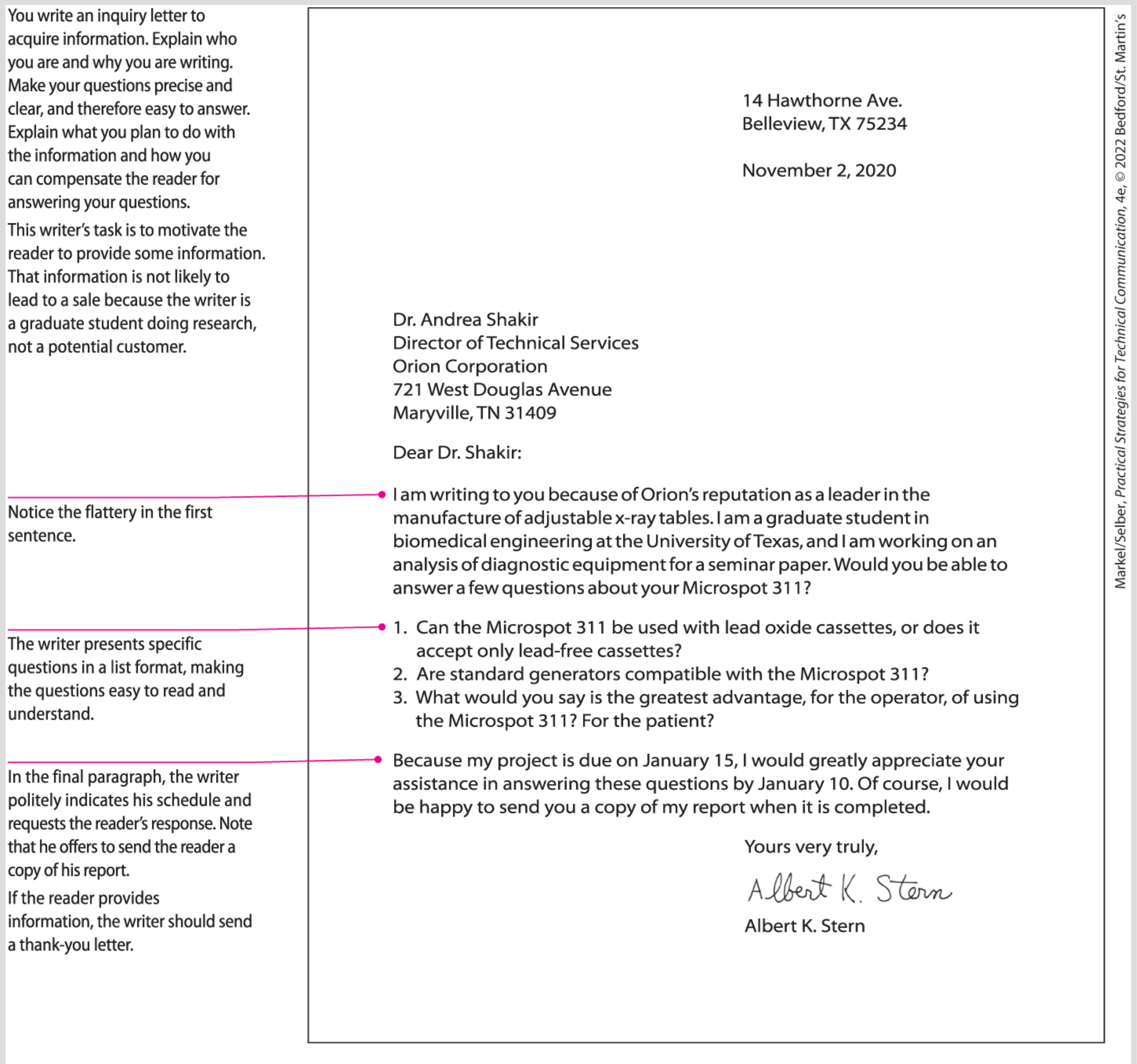
COMMON TYPES OF LETTERS

Two other types of letters are discussed in this book: “Letter of Transmittal” in Ch. 13, p. 346, and “Writing Job-Application Letters” in Ch. 10, p. 281.

Organizations send out many different kinds of letters. This section focuses on four types of letters written frequently in the workplace: inquiry, response to an inquiry, claim, and adjustment.

Inquiry Letter

Figure 9.3 shows an inquiry letter, in which you ask questions.



You write an inquiry letter to acquire information. Explain who you are and why you are writing. Make your questions precise and clear, and therefore easy to answer. Explain what you plan to do with the information and how you can compensate the reader for answering your questions.

This writer's task is to motivate the reader to provide some information. That information is not likely to lead to a sale because the writer is a graduate student doing research, not a potential customer.

14 Hawthorne Ave.
Belleview, TX 75234

November 2, 2020

Dr. Andrea Shakir
Director of Technical Services
Orion Corporation
721 West Douglas Avenue
Maryville, TN 31409

Dear Dr. Shakir:

Notice the flattery in the first sentence.

I am writing to you because of Orion's reputation as a leader in the manufacture of adjustable x-ray tables. I am a graduate student in biomedical engineering at the University of Texas, and I am working on an analysis of diagnostic equipment for a seminar paper. Would you be able to answer a few questions about your Microspot 311?

The writer presents specific questions in a list format, making the questions easy to read and understand.

1. Can the Microspot 311 be used with lead oxide cassettes, or does it accept only lead-free cassettes?
2. Are standard generators compatible with the Microspot 311?
3. What would you say is the greatest advantage, for the operator, of using the Microspot 311? For the patient?

In the final paragraph, the writer politely indicates his schedule and requests the reader's response. Note that he offers to send the reader a copy of his report.

If the reader provides information, the writer should send a thank-you letter.

Because my project is due on January 15, I would greatly appreciate your assistance in answering these questions by January 10. Of course, I would be happy to send you a copy of my report when it is completed.

Yours very truly,

Albert K. Stern

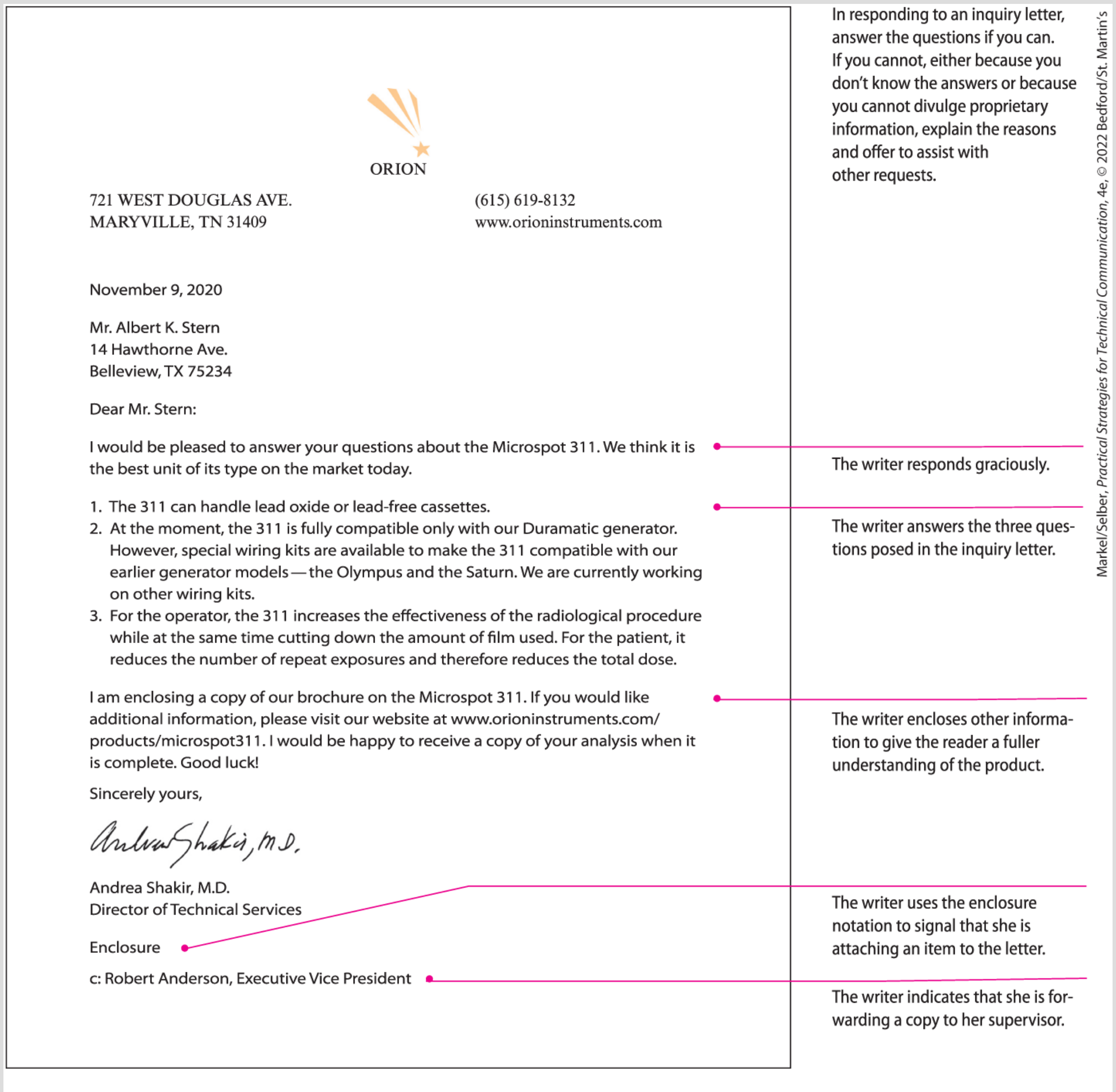
Albert K. Stern

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.3 Inquiry Letter

Response to an Inquiry

Figure 9.4 shows a response to the inquiry letter in Figure 9.3.



ORION

721 WEST DOUGLAS AVE.
MARYVILLE, TN 31409

(615) 619-8132
www.orioninstruments.com

November 9, 2020

Mr. Albert K. Stern
14 Hawthorne Ave.
Belleview, TX 75234

Dear Mr. Stern:

I would be pleased to answer your questions about the Microspot 311. We think it is the best unit of its type on the market today.

1. The 311 can handle lead oxide or lead-free cassettes.
2. At the moment, the 311 is fully compatible only with our Duramatic generator. However, special wiring kits are available to make the 311 compatible with our earlier generator models — the Olympus and the Saturn. We are currently working on other wiring kits.
3. For the operator, the 311 increases the effectiveness of the radiological procedure while at the same time cutting down the amount of film used. For the patient, it reduces the number of repeat exposures and therefore reduces the total dose.

I am enclosing a copy of our brochure on the Microspot 311. If you would like additional information, please visit our website at www.orioninstruments.com/products/microspot311. I would be happy to receive a copy of your analysis when it is complete. Good luck!

Sincerely yours,

Andrea Shakir, M.D.

Andrea Shakir, M.D.
Director of Technical Services

Enclosure

c: Robert Anderson, Executive Vice President

In responding to an inquiry letter, answer the questions if you can. If you cannot, either because you don't know the answers or because you cannot divulge proprietary information, explain the reasons and offer to assist with other requests.

The writer responds graciously.

The writer answers the three questions posed in the inquiry letter.

The writer encloses other information to give the reader a fuller understanding of the product.

The writer uses the enclosure notation to signal that she is attaching an item to the letter.

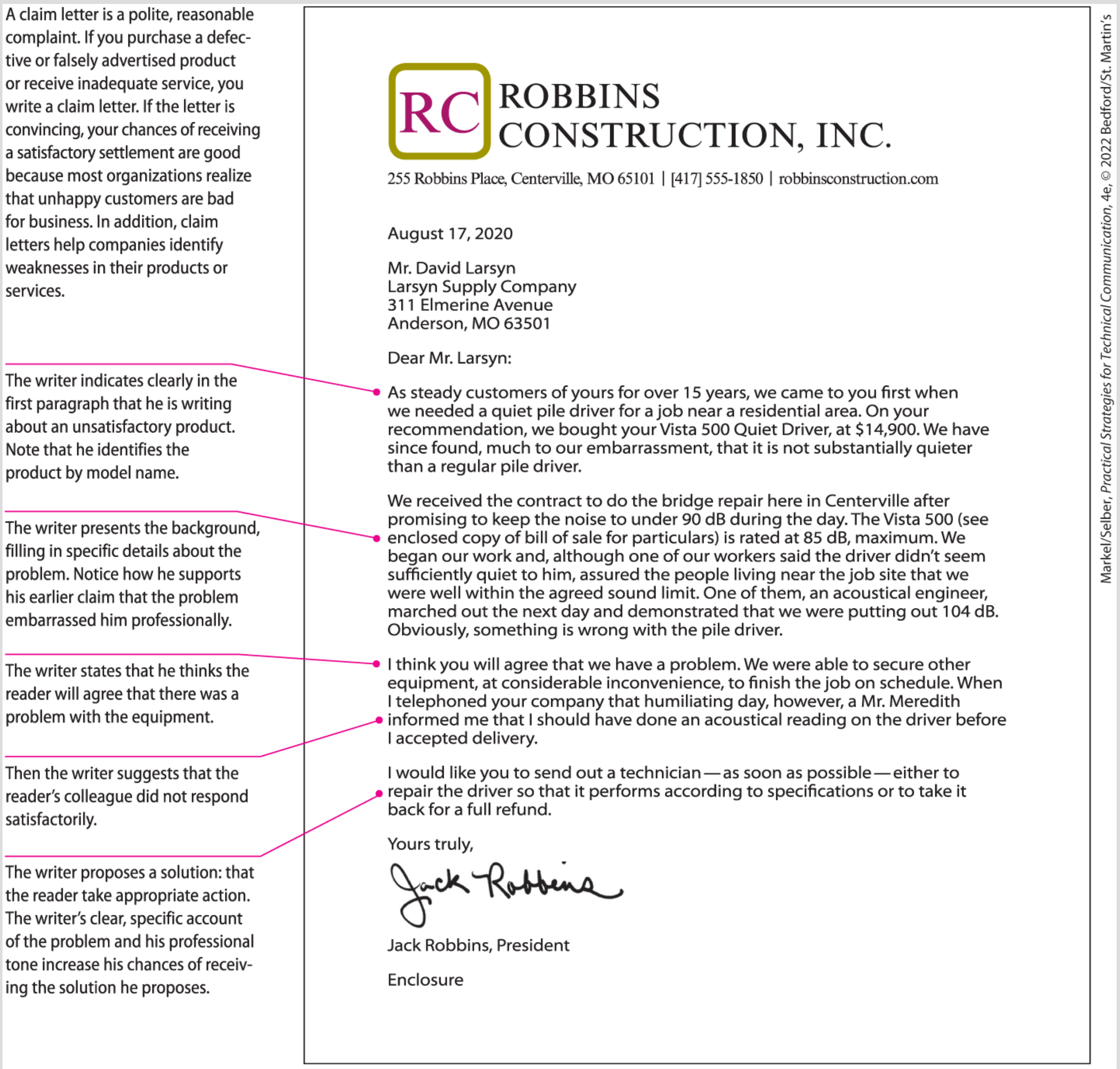
The writer indicates that she is forwarding a copy to her supervisor.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.4 Response to an Inquiry

Claim Letter

Figure 9.5 (on page 242) is an example of a claim letter that the writer scanned and attached to an email to the reader. The writer's decision to present his message in a letter rather than an email suggests that he wishes to convey the more formal tone associated with letters — and yet he wants the letter to arrive quickly.



RC ROBBINS
CONSTRUCTION, INC.

255 Robbins Place, Centerville, MO 65101 | [417] 555-1850 | robbinsconstruction.com

August 17, 2020

Mr. David Larsyn
Larsyn Supply Company
311 Elmerine Avenue
Anderson, MO 63501

Dear Mr. Larsyn:

As steady customers of yours for over 15 years, we came to you first when we needed a quiet pile driver for a job near a residential area. On your recommendation, we bought your Vista 500 Quiet Driver, at $14,900. We have since found, much to our embarrassment, that it is not substantially quieter than a regular pile driver.

We received the contract to do the bridge repair here in Centerville after promising to keep the noise to under 90 dB during the day. The Vista 500 (see enclosed copy of bill of sale for particulars) is rated at 85 dB, maximum. We began our work and, although one of our workers said the driver didn't seem sufficiently quiet to him, assured the people living near the job site that we were well within the agreed sound limit. One of them, an acoustical engineer, marched out the next day and demonstrated that we were putting out 104 dB. Obviously, something is wrong with the pile driver.

I think you will agree that we have a problem. We were able to secure other equipment, at considerable inconvenience, to finish the job on schedule. When I telephoned your company that humiliating day, however, a Mr. Meredith informed me that I should have done an acoustical reading on the driver before I accepted delivery.

I would like you to send out a technician — as soon as possible — either to repair the driver so that it performs according to specifications or to take it back for a full refund.

Yours truly,

Jack Robbins

Jack Robbins, President

Enclosure

A claim letter is a polite, reasonable complaint. If you purchase a defective or falsely advertised product or receive inadequate service, you write a claim letter. If the letter is convincing, your chances of receiving a satisfactory settlement are good because most organizations realize that unhappy customers are bad for business. In addition, claim letters help companies identify weaknesses in their products or services.

The writer indicates clearly in the first paragraph that he is writing about an unsatisfactory product. Note that he identifies the product by model name.

The writer presents the background, filling in specific details about the problem. Notice how he supports his earlier claim that the problem embarrassed him professionally.

The writer states that he thinks the reader will agree that there was a problem with the equipment.

Then the writer suggests that the reader's colleague did not respond satisfactorily.

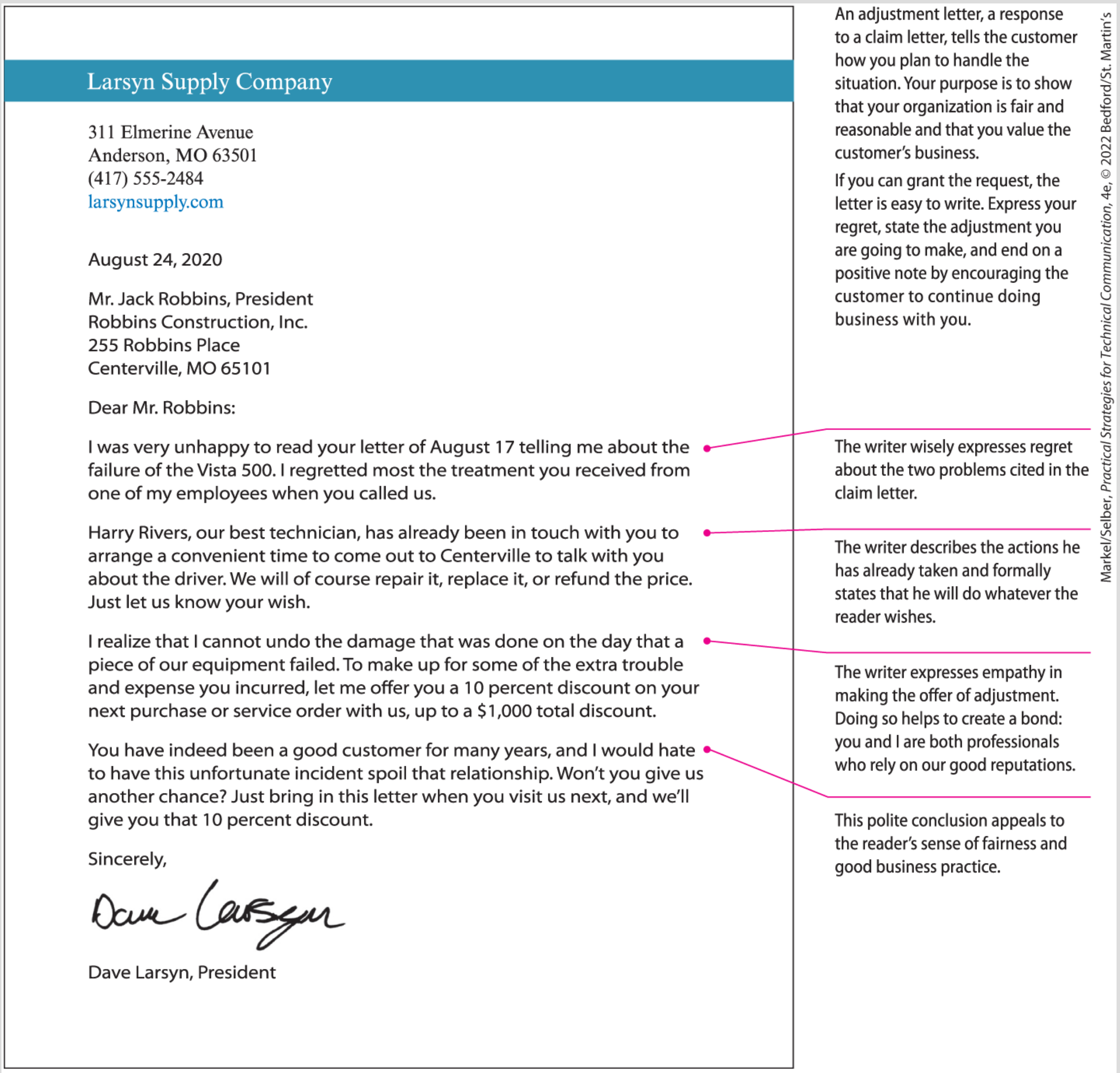
The writer proposes a solution: that the reader take appropriate action. The writer's clear, specific account of the problem and his professional tone increase his chances of receiving the solution he proposes.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.5 Claim Letter

Adjustment Letter

Figures 9.6 and 9.7 show “good news” and “bad news” adjustment letters. The first is a reply to the claim letter shown in Figure 9.5 on page 242.



Larsyn Supply Company

311 Elmerine Avenue
Anderson, MO 63501
(417) 555-2484
larsynsupply.com

August 24, 2020

Mr. Jack Robbins, President
Robbins Construction, Inc.
255 Robbins Place
Centerville, MO 65101

Dear Mr. Robbins:

I was very unhappy to read your letter of August 17 telling me about the failure of the Vista 500. I regretted most the treatment you received from one of my employees when you called us.

Harry Rivers, our best technician, has already been in touch with you to arrange a convenient time to come out to Centerville to talk with you about the driver. We will of course repair it, replace it, or refund the price. Just let us know your wish.

I realize that I cannot undo the damage that was done on the day that a piece of our equipment failed. To make up for some of the extra trouble and expense you incurred, let me offer you a 10 percent discount on your next purchase or service order with us, up to a $1,000 total discount.

You have indeed been a good customer for many years, and I would hate to have this unfortunate incident spoil that relationship. Won’t you give us another chance? Just bring in this letter when you visit us next, and we’ll give you that 10 percent discount.

Sincerely,

Dave Larsyn

Dave Larsyn, President

An adjustment letter, a response to a claim letter, tells the customer how you plan to handle the situation. Your purpose is to show that your organization is fair and reasonable and that you value the customer’s business.

If you can grant the request, the letter is easy to write. Express your regret, state the adjustment you are going to make, and end on a positive note by encouraging the customer to continue doing business with you.

The writer wisely expresses regret about the two problems cited in the claim letter.

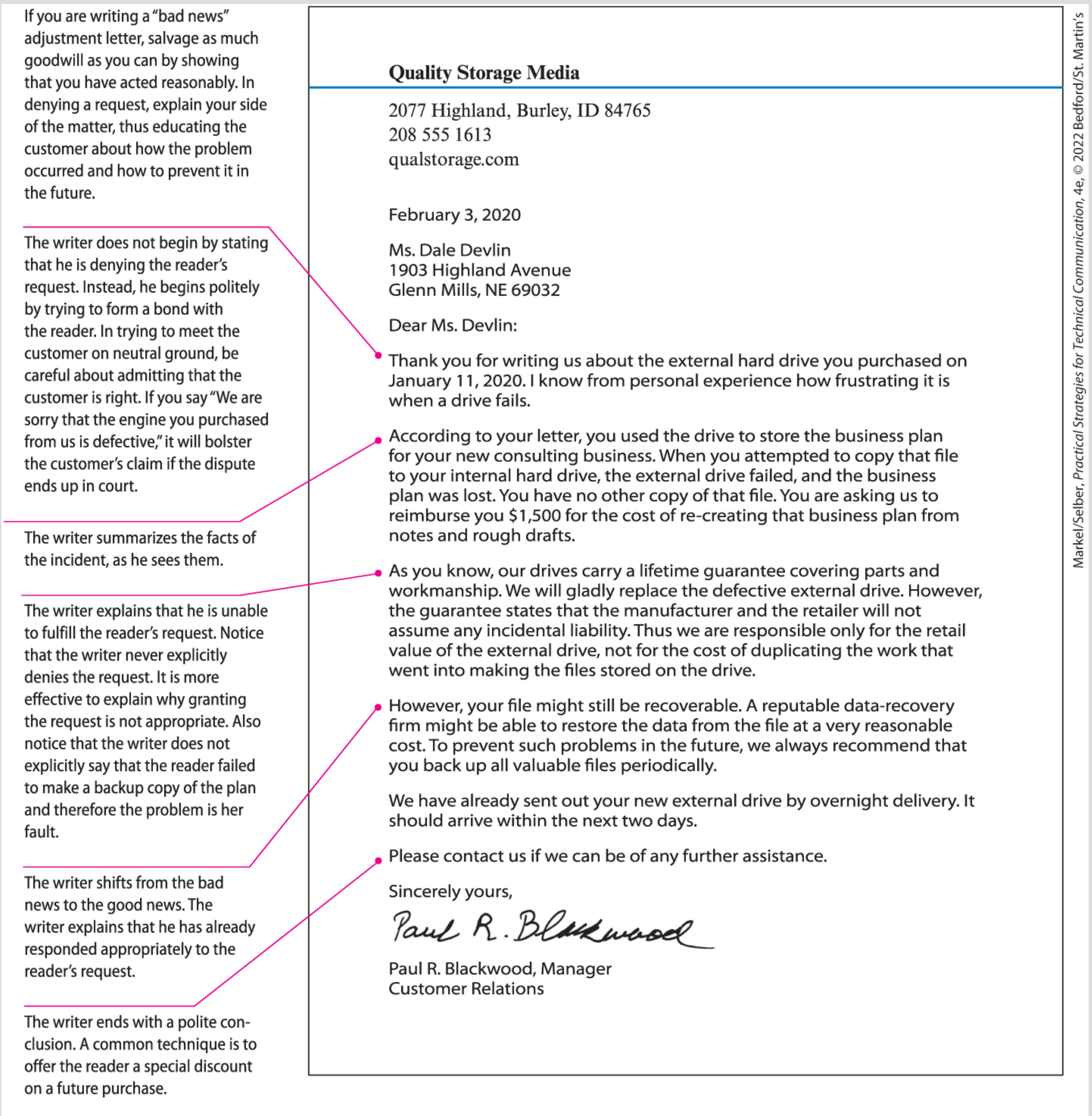
The writer describes the actions he has already taken and formally states that he will do whatever the reader wishes.

The writer expresses empathy in making the offer of adjustment. Doing so helps to create a bond: you and I are both professionals who rely on our good reputations.

This polite conclusion appeals to the reader’s sense of fairness and good business practice.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

FIGURE 9.6 “Good News” Adjustment Letter



Quality Storage Media

2077 Highland, Burley, ID 84765
208 555 1613
qualstorage.com

February 3, 2020

Ms. Dale Devlin
1903 Highland Avenue
Glenn Mills, NE 69032

Dear Ms. Devlin:

Thank you for writing us about the external hard drive you purchased on January 11, 2020. I know from personal experience how frustrating it is when a drive fails.

According to your letter, you used the drive to store the business plan for your new consulting business. When you attempted to copy that file to your internal hard drive, the external drive failed, and the business plan was lost. You have no other copy of that file. You are asking us to reimburse you $1,500 for the cost of re-creating that business plan from notes and rough drafts.

As you know, our drives carry a lifetime guarantee covering parts and workmanship. We will gladly replace the defective external drive. However, the guarantee states that the manufacturer and the retailer will not assume any incidental liability. Thus we are responsible only for the retail value of the external drive, not for the cost of duplicating the work that went into making the files stored on the drive.

However, your file might still be recoverable. A reputable data-recovery firm might be able to restore the data from the file at a very reasonable cost. To prevent such problems in the future, we always recommend that you back up all valuable files periodically.

We have already sent out your new external drive by overnight delivery. It should arrive within the next two days.

Please contact us if we can be of any further assistance.

Sincerely yours,

Paul R. Blackwood

Paul R. Blackwood, Manager
Customer Relations

If you are writing a "bad news" adjustment letter, salvage as much goodwill as you can by showing that you have acted reasonably. In denying a request, explain your side of the matter, thus educating the customer about how the problem occurred and how to prevent it in the future.

The writer does not begin by stating that he is denying the reader's request. Instead, he begins politely by trying to form a bond with the reader. In trying to meet the customer on neutral ground, be careful about admitting that the customer is right. If you say "We are sorry that the engine you purchased from us is defective," it will bolster the customer's claim if the dispute ends up in court.

The writer summarizes the facts of the incident, as he sees them.

The writer explains that he is unable to fulfill the reader's request. Notice that the writer never explicitly denies the request. It is more effective to explain why granting the request is not appropriate. Also notice that the writer does not explicitly say that the reader failed to make a backup copy of the plan and therefore the problem is her fault.

The writer shifts from the bad news to the good news. The writer explains that he has already responded appropriately to the reader's request.

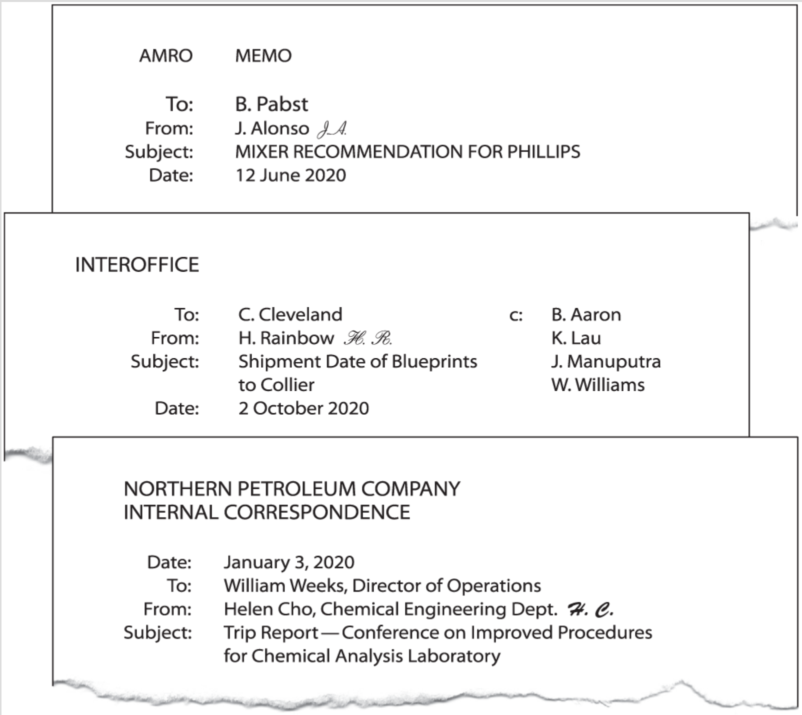
The writer ends with a polite conclusion. A common technique is to offer the reader a special discount on a future purchase.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.7 "Bad News" Adjustment Letter

Writing Memos

Like letters, memos have a characteristic format, which consists of the elements shown in Figure 9.9.



AMRO MEMO

To: B. Pabst
From: J. Alonso *J.A.*
Subject: MIXER RECOMMENDATION FOR PHILLIPS
Date: 12 June 2020

INTEROFFICE

To: C. Cleveland
From: H. Rainbow *H.R.*
Subject: Shipment Date of Blueprints to Collier
Date: 2 October 2020

c: B. Aaron
K. Lau
J. Manuputra
W. Williams

NORTHERN PETROLEUM COMPANY
INTERNAL CORRESPONDENCE

Date: January 3, 2020
To: William Weeks, Director of Operations
From: Helen Cho, Chemical Engineering Dept. *H.C.*
Subject: Trip Report—Conference on Improved Procedures for Chemical Analysis Laboratory

Write out the month instead of using the all-numeral format (6/12/20); multicultural readers might use a different notation for dates and could be confused.

List the names of persons receiving copies of the memo, either alphabetically or in descending order of organizational rank.

Most writers put their initials or signature next to the typed name (or at the end of the memo) to show that they have reviewed the memo and accept responsibility for it.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

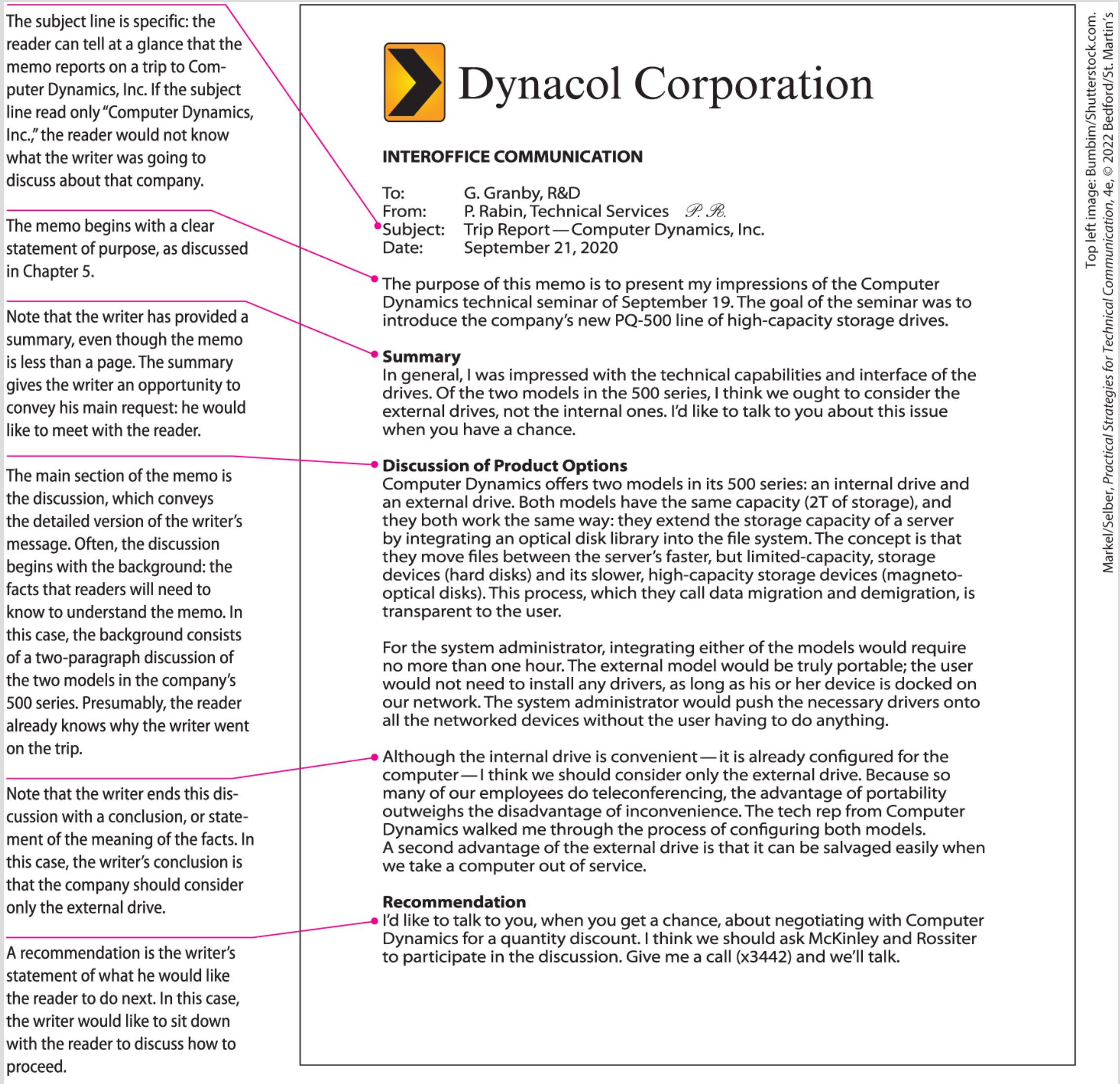
FIGURE 9.8 Identifying Information in a Memo

Some organizations prefer the full names of the writer and reader; others want only the first initials and last names. Some prefer job titles; others do not. If your organization does not object, include your job title and your reader's. The memo will then be informative for anyone who refers to it after either of you has moved on to a new position, as well as for others in the organization who do not know you.

As with letters, you can attach memos to emails and deliver them electronically. To preserve the memo format for the email recipient, save the memo as a PDF before sending.

If you prefer to distribute hard copies, print the second and all subsequent pages of a memo on plain paper rather than on letterhead. Include three items in the upper right-hand or left-hand corner of each subsequent page: the name of the recipient, the date of the memo, and the page number. See the header in Figure 9.2 on page 238.

Figure 9.9, a sample memo, is a trip report, a record of a business trip written after the employee returned to the office. Readers are less interested in an hour-by-hour narrative of what happened than in a carefully structured discussion of what was important. Although writer and reader appear to be relatively equal in rank, the writer goes to the trouble of organizing the memo to make it easy to read and refer to later.



Dynacol Corporation

INTEROFFICE COMMUNICATION

To: G. Granby, R&D
From: P. Rabin, Technical Services *P. R.*
Subject: Trip Report—Computer Dynamics, Inc.
Date: September 21, 2020

The purpose of this memo is to present my impressions of the Computer Dynamics technical seminar of September 19. The goal of the seminar was to introduce the company's new PQ-500 line of high-capacity storage drives.

Summary
In general, I was impressed with the technical capabilities and interface of the drives. Of the two models in the 500 series, I think we ought to consider the external drives, not the internal ones. I'd like to talk to you about this issue when you have a chance.

Discussion of Product Options
Computer Dynamics offers two models in its 500 series: an internal drive and an external drive. Both models have the same capacity (2T of storage), and they both work the same way: they extend the storage capacity of a server by integrating an optical disk library into the file system. The concept is that they move files between the server's faster, but limited-capacity, storage devices (hard disks) and its slower, high-capacity storage devices (magneto-optical disks). This process, which they call data migration and demigration, is transparent to the user.

For the system administrator, integrating either of the models would require no more than one hour. The external model would be truly portable; the user would not need to install any drivers, as long as his or her device is docked on our network. The system administrator would push the necessary drivers onto all the networked devices without the user having to do anything.

Although the internal drive is convenient—it is already configured for the computer—I think we should consider only the external drive. Because so many of our employees do teleconferencing, the advantage of portability outweighs the disadvantage of inconvenience. The tech rep from Computer Dynamics walked me through the process of configuring both models.
A second advantage of the external drive is that it can be salvaged easily when we take a computer out of service.

Recommendation
I'd like to talk to you, when you get a chance, about negotiating with Computer Dynamics for a quantity discount. I think we should ask McKinley and Rossiter to participate in the discussion. Give me a call (x3442) and we'll talk.

The subject line is specific: the reader can tell at a glance that the memo reports on a trip to Computer Dynamics, Inc. If the subject line read only "Computer Dynamics, Inc.," the reader would not know what the writer was going to discuss about that company.

The memo begins with a clear statement of purpose, as discussed in Chapter 5.

Note that the writer has provided a summary, even though the memo is less than a page. The summary gives the writer an opportunity to convey his main request: he would like to meet with the reader.

The main section of the memo is the discussion, which conveys the detailed version of the writer's message. Often, the discussion begins with the background: the facts that readers will need to know to understand the memo. In this case, the background consists of a two-paragraph discussion of the two models in the company's 500 series. Presumably, the reader already knows why the writer went on the trip.

Note that the writer ends this discussion with a conclusion, or statement of the meaning of the facts. In this case, the writer's conclusion is that the company should consider only the external drive.

A recommendation is the writer's statement of what he would like the reader to do next. In this case, the writer would like to sit down with the reader to discuss how to proceed.

Top left image: Bumbim/Shutterstock.com. Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 9.9 Sample Memo

GUIDELINES Organizing a Memo

When you write a memo, organize it so that it is easy to follow. Consider these five organizational elements.

- **A specific subject line.** "Breast Cancer Walk" is too general. "Breast Cancer Walk Rescheduled to May 14" is better.

- **A clear statement of purpose.** As discussed in Chapter 4, Determining Your Purpose (p. 73), the purpose statement is built around a verb that clearly states what you want the readers to know, believe, or do.
- **A brief summary.** Even if a memo fits on one page, consider including a summary. For readers who want to read the whole memo, the summary is an advance organizer; for readers in a hurry, reading the summary substitutes for reading the whole memo.
- **Informative headings.** Headings make the memo easier to read by enabling readers to skip sections they don't need and by helping them understand what each section is about. In addition, headings make the memo easier to write because they prompt the writer to provide the kind of information readers need.
- **A prominent recommendation.** Many memos end with one or more recommendations. Sometimes, these recommendations take the form of action steps: bulleted or numbered lists of what the writer will do or what the writer would like others to do. Here is an example:

Action items:
I would appreciate it if you would work on the following tasks and have your results ready for the meeting on Monday, June 9.

- Henderson: recalculate the flow rate.
- Smith: set up meeting with the regional EPA representative for some time during the week of May 13.
- Falvey: ask Armitra in Houston for his advice.

Writing Emails

Before you write an email in the workplace, find out your organization's email policies. Most companies have written policies that discuss circumstances under which you may and may not use email, principles you should use in writing emails, and the monitoring of employee email. The Tech Tip box shows the basic elements of an email.

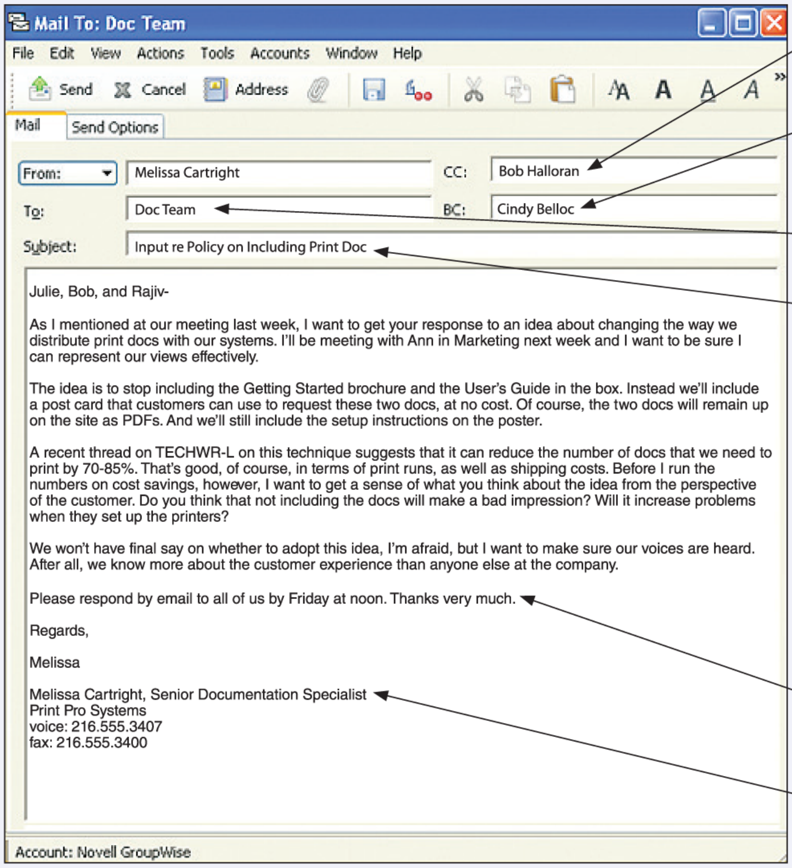
TECH TIP

Why To Use Email for Business Correspondence

Email allows for quick, direct correspondence with one or more recipients. It also provides a time- and date-stamped record of your communication, and users can create a "thread" or "string" to keep track of questions, comments, and responses. Although email itself is somewhat informal, it is a convenient time- and cost-saving option, especially for correspondence being sent internationally, and formal documents can easily be attached.

How To Use Email for Business Correspondence

When using an email as a substitute for a memo or letter, keep in mind the points illustrated below, as well as the Guidelines box "Following Netiquette" on page 249.


Mail To: Doc Team
File Edit View Actions Tools Accounts Window Help
Send
Cancel
Address
Mail
Send Options
Account: Novell GroupWise

From: Melissa Cartright
CC: Bob Halloran
To: Doc Team
BC: Cindy Belloc
Subject: Input re Policy on Including Print Doc

Julie, Bob, and Rajiv-

As I mentioned at our meeting last week, I want to get your response to an idea about changing the way we distribute print docs with our systems. I'll be meeting with Ann in Marketing next week and I want to be sure I can represent our views effectively.

The idea is to stop including the Getting Started brochure and the User's Guide in the box. Instead we'll include a post card that customers can use to request these two docs, at no cost. Of course, the two docs will remain up on the site as PDFs. And we'll still include the setup instructions on the poster.

A recent thread on TECHWR-L on this technique suggests that it can reduce the number of docs that we need to print by 70-85%. That's good, of course, in terms of print runs, as well as shipping costs. Before I run the numbers on cost savings, however, I want to get a sense of what you think about the idea from the perspective of the customer. Do you think that not including the docs will make a bad impression? Will it increase problems when they set up the printers?

We won't have final say on whether to adopt this idea, I'm afraid, but I want to make sure our voices are heard. After all, we know more about the customer experience than anyone else at the company.

Please respond by email to all of us by Friday at noon. Thanks very much.

Regards,

Melissa

Melissa Cartright, Senior Documentation Specialist
Print Pro Systems
voice: 216.555.3407
fax: 216.555.3400

"CC" stands for courtesy copy. All of your recipients will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group.

"BC" or "Bcc" stands for blind copy or blind courtesy copy. None of your readers will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group.

You can create a "group" for people whom you email frequently.

Like a memo, an email should have a specific subject line.

By naming her readers at the start, the writer is showing respect for them.

The first paragraph of the email clarifies the writer's purpose.

The second paragraph describes the idea. You want to be sure your readers understand the context.

Notice that paragraphs are relatively brief and that the writer skips a line between paragraphs.

The writer explains what she would like her readers to do, and she states a deadline. Then she ends politely.

The writer has created a signature, which includes her contact information. This signature is attached automatically to her emails.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

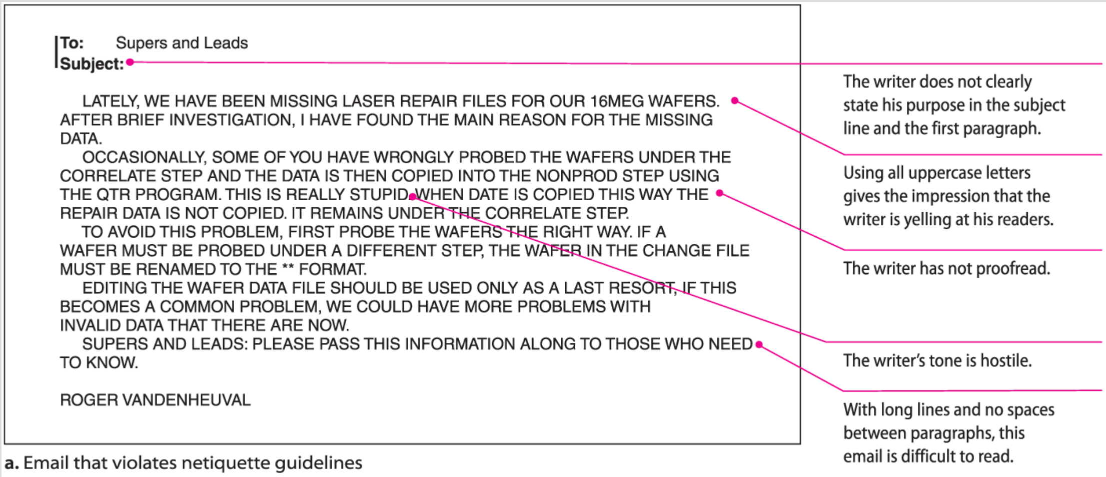
GUIDELINES Following Netiquette

When you write email in the workplace, adhere to the following netiquette guidelines. *Netiquette* refers to etiquette on a network.

- **Stick to business.** Don't send jokes or other nonbusiness messages.
- **Use the appropriate level of formality.** As discussed earlier in the chapter, avoid informal writing.

- **Write correctly.** Remember to revise, edit, and proofread your emails before sending them.
- **Don't flame.** To *flame* is to scorch a reader with scathing criticism, usually in response to something that person wrote in a previous message. When you are angry, keep your hands away from the keyboard.
- **Make your message easy on the eyes.** Use uppercase and lowercase letters, and skip lines between paragraphs. Use uppercase letters or boldface (sparingly) for emphasis.
- **Don't forward a message to an online discussion forum without the writer's permission.** Doing so is unethical and illegal; the email is the intellectual property of the writer or (if it was written as part of the writer's work responsibilities) the writer's company.
- **Don't send a message unless you have something to say**. If you can add something new, do so, but don't send a message just to be part of the conversation.

Figure 9.10a shows an email that violates netiquette guidelines. The writer is a technical professional working for a microchip manufacturer. Figure 9.10b shows a revised version of this email message.



To: Supers and Leads
Subject:

LATELY, WE HAVE BEEN MISSING LASER REPAIR FILES FOR OUR 16MEG WAFERS. AFTER BRIEF INVESTIGATION, I HAVE FOUND THE MAIN REASON FOR THE MISSING DATA.

OCCASIONALLY, SOME OF YOU HAVE WRONGLY PROBED THE WAFERS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP AND THE DATA IS THEN COPIED INTO THE NONPROD STEP USING THE QTR PROGRAM. THIS IS REALLY STUPID. WHEN DATE IS COPIED THIS WAY THE REPAIR DATA IS NOT COPIED. IT REMAINS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP.

TO AVOID THIS PROBLEM, FIRST PROBE THE WAFERS THE RIGHT WAY. IF A WAFER MUST BE PROBED UNDER A DIFFERENT STEP, THE WAFER IN THE CHANGE FILE MUST BE RENAMED TO THE ** FORMAT.

EDITING THE WAFER DATA FILE SHOULD BE USED ONLY AS A LAST RESORT. IF THIS BECOMES A COMMON PROBLEM, WE COULD HAVE MORE PROBLEMS WITH INVALID DATA THAT THERE ARE NOW.

SUPERS AND LEADS: PLEASE PASS THIS INFORMATION ALONG TO THOSE WHO NEED TO KNOW.

ROGER VANDENHEUVAL

The writer does not clearly state his purpose in the subject line and the first paragraph.

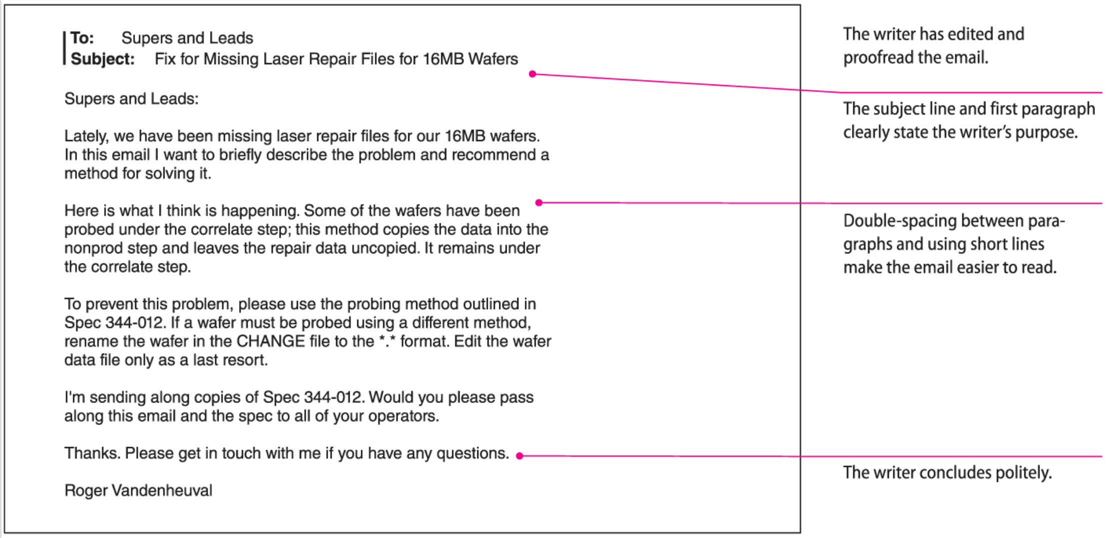
Using all uppercase letters gives the impression that the writer is yelling at his readers.

The writer has not proofread.

The writer's tone is hostile.

With long lines and no spaces between paragraphs, this email is difficult to read.

a. Email that violates netiquette guidelines



To: Supers and Leads
Subject: Fix for Missing Laser Repair Files for 16MB Wafers

Supers and Leads:

Lately, we have been missing laser repair files for our 16MB wafers. In this email I want to briefly describe the problem and recommend a method for solving it.

Here is what I think is happening. Some of the wafers have been probed under the correlate step; this method copies the data into the nonprod step and leaves the repair data uncopied. It remains under the correlate step.

To prevent this problem, please use the probing method outlined in Spec 344-012. If a wafer must be probed using a different method, rename the wafer in the CHANGE file to the *.* format. Edit the wafer data file only as a last resort.

I'm sending along copies of Spec 344-012. Would you please pass along this email and the spec to all of your operators.

Thanks. Please get in touch with me if you have any questions.

Roger Vandenheuval

The writer has edited and proofread the email.

The subject line and first paragraph clearly state the writer's purpose.

Double-spacing between paragraphs and using short lines make the email easier to read.

The writer concludes politely.

b. Email that adheres to netiquette guidelines

FIGURE 9.10 Netiquette

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Writing Microblogs

As discussed earlier in this chapter, microblog posts are different from letters, memos, and email in that they are often extremely brief and quite informal in tone. However, the fact that microblog posts are fast and informal does not mean that anything goes. When you write microblog posts, you are creating communication that will be archived and that will reflect on you and your organization. In addition, anything you write is subject to the same laws and regulations that pertain to all other kinds of documents. Many of the guidelines laid out in “Following Netiquette” (see above) apply to microblog posts as well as email. Take care, especially, not to flame. Become familiar with your microblog’s privacy settings, and be aware of which groups of readers may view and share your posts.

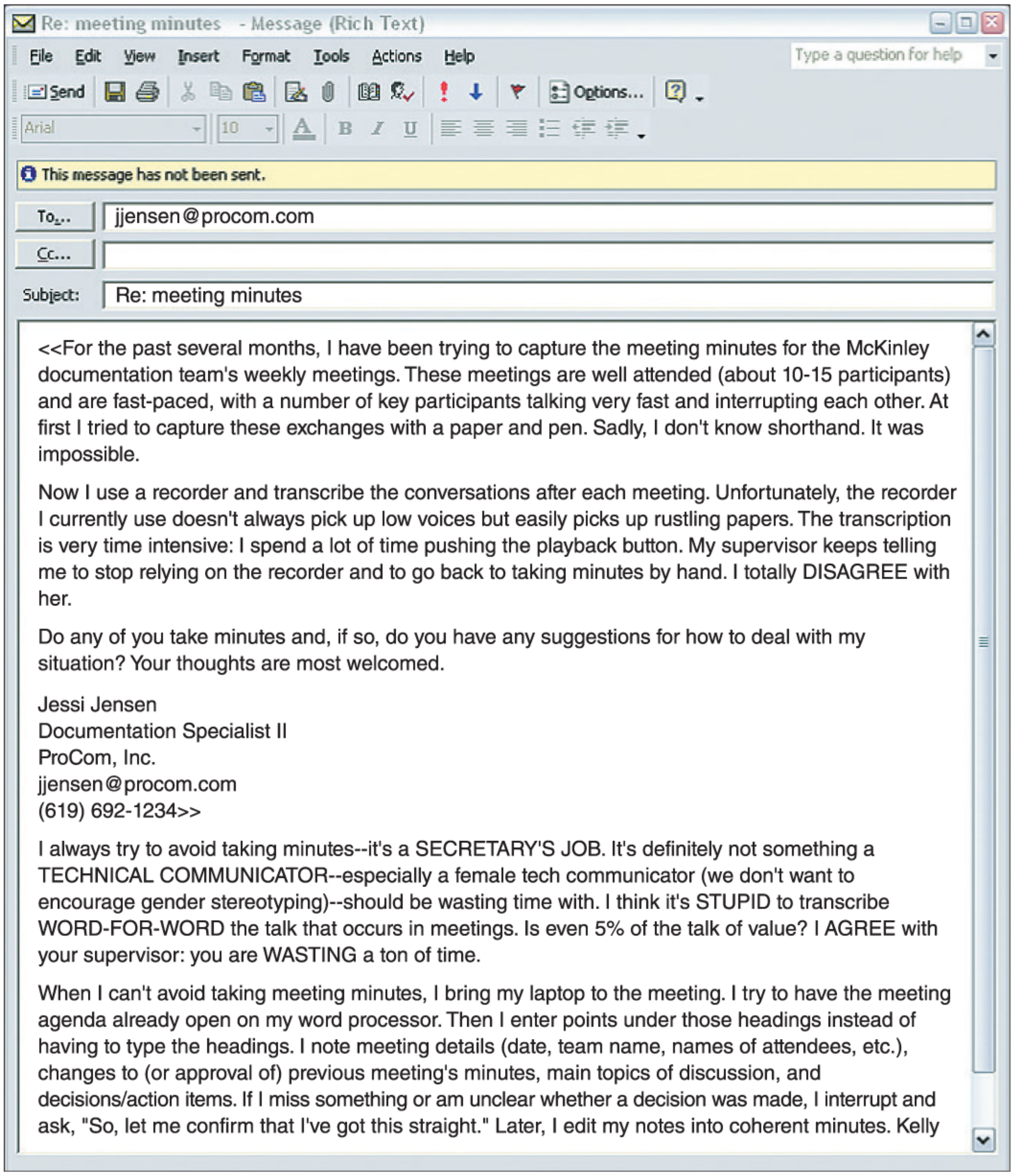
The best way to understand your responsibilities when you write a microblog post at work is to study your organization’s guidelines. Sometimes, these guidelines are part of the organization’s guidelines for all business practices or all digital communication. Sometimes, they are treated separately.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Following Netiquette in an Email Message

This message was written in response to a question emailed to several colleagues by a technical communicator seeking advice on how to write meeting minutes effectively. A response to an email message should adhere to the principles of effective emails and proper netiquette. The questions below ask you to think about these principles (explained in “Writing Emails” on pp. 246–50).

1. How effectively has the writer stated her purpose?
2. How effectively has the writer projected a “you attitude”?
3. How effectively has the writer made her message easy to read?



This message has not been sent.

To... jjensen@procom.com

Cc...

Subject: Re: meeting minutes

<<For the past several months, I have been trying to capture the meeting minutes for the McKinley documentation team's weekly meetings. These meetings are well attended (about 10-15 participants) and are fast-paced, with a number of key participants talking very fast and interrupting each other. At first I tried to capture these exchanges with a paper and pen. Sadly, I don't know shorthand. It was impossible.

Now I use a recorder and transcribe the conversations after each meeting. Unfortunately, the recorder I currently use doesn't always pick up low voices but easily picks up rustling papers. The transcription is very time intensive: I spend a lot of time pushing the playback button. My supervisor keeps telling me to stop relying on the recorder and to go back to taking minutes by hand. I totally DISAGREE with her.

Do any of you take minutes and, if so, do you have any suggestions for how to deal with my situation? Your thoughts are most welcomed.

Jessi Jensen
Documentation Specialist II
ProCom, Inc.
jjensen@procom.com
(619) 692-1234>>

I always try to avoid taking minutes--it's a SECRETARY'S JOB. It's definitely not something a TECHNICAL COMMUNICATOR--especially a female tech communicator (we don't want to encourage gender stereotyping)--should be wasting time with. I think it's STUPID to transcribe WORD-FOR-WORD the talk that occurs in meetings. Is even 5% of the talk of value? I AGREE with your supervisor: you are WASTING a ton of time.

When I can't avoid taking meeting minutes, I bring my laptop to the meeting. I try to have the meeting agenda already open on my word processor. Then I enter points under those headings instead of having to type the headings. I note meeting details (date, team name, names of attendees, etc.), changes to (or approval of) previous meeting's minutes, main topics of discussion, and decisions/action items. If I miss something or am unclear whether a decision was made, I interrupt and ask, "So, let me confirm that I've got this straight." Later, I edit my notes into coherent minutes. Kelly

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

GUIDELINES Representing Your Organization on a Microblog

If you use a microblog at work to communicate with people outside your own organization, such as vendors and customers, you want to use it in such a way that people are encouraged to like, respect, and trust you. These suggestions can help.

- **Decide on your audience and your purpose.** Are you connecting with clients, providing customer service, or helping people understand your company's goals and vision? You might want to have different accounts if you have several different audiences and purposes.
- **Learn the technology.** Know how to use hashtags, how to mention other users in your tweets, how to reply publicly and privately, how to integrate images and videos, and how to cross-post to your other social media accounts should you need to.
- **Learn the culture of the community.** Listen and learn before you post. Most communities have a distinct culture, which influences how and when people post, link, and reply. For instance, in some communities, people stick close to the technical topic; in others, they roam more freely and include personal comments.
- **Share, don't sell.** Post about incidents and developments that reinforce your organization's core principles, such as environmental awareness or making technology available around the world. Talk about leadership, teamwork, and cooperation. Don't try to sell products.
- **Help educate readers and solve their problems.** Regardless of whether you're responding to individual questions and complaints or helping people understand your company's culture or goals, focus on helping people learn and solve problems.
- **Sound like a person.** Use an informal tone. Readers are especially pleased when high-ranking employees show their human side, such as when the Zappos CEO posted, "Dropped my laptop on floor this morning. I usually drop my phone, so good to know I'm moving on to bigger and better things" (Hall, 2009).
- **Apologize when you make a mistake.** At the start of a basketball game against their rivals the Dallas Mavericks, the Houston Rockets sent out a tweet with a gun emoji pointed at a horse. Within two hours, after receiving heavy criticism, the Rockets apologized and removed the tweet (Meyer, 2016).

- **Link generously.** When you want to talk about something you’ve learned online, don’t paraphrase. Rather, link back to the original source. Use a URL shortener such as Bitly or TinyURL so that the link won’t take up too many of your 280 characters on Twitter.
- **Get your facts right.** Like anything online, your post is permanent. Double-check your facts before you post. Otherwise, you could embarrass yourself and erode people’s trust in your organization.
- **Edit and proofread before you post.** You should be informal, but you shouldn’t be sloppy. It sends the wrong message.

Writing Correspondence to Multicultural Readers

For more about cultural variables, see “Understanding the Cultural Variables ‘On the Surface’” in Ch. 4, p. 62.

The four types of business correspondence discussed in this chapter are used in countries around the world. The ways they are used, however, can differ significantly from the ways they are used in the United States. These differences fall into three categories:

- **Cultural practices.** As discussed in Chapter 4, cultures differ in a number of ways, such as whether they focus on individuals or groups, the distance between power ranks, and attitudes toward uncertainty. Typically, a culture’s attitudes are reflected in its business communication. For example, in Japan, which has a high power distance — that is, people in top positions are treated with great respect by their subordinates — a reader might be addressed as “Most Esteemed Mr. Director.” Some cultural practices, however, are not intuitively obvious even if you understand the culture. For example, in Japanese business culture, it is considered rude to reply to an email by using the reply function in the email software; it is polite to begin a new email (Sasaki, 2010).

- **Language use and tone.** In the United States, writers tend to use contractions, the first names of their readers, and other instances of informal language. In many other countries, this informality is potentially offensive. Also potentially offensive is U.S. directness. A writer from the United States might write, for example, that “14 percent of the products we received from you failed to meet the specifications.” A Korean would more likely write, “We were pleased to note that 86 percent of the products we received met the specifications.” The writer either would not refer to the other 14 percent (assuming that the reader would get the point and replace the defective products quickly) or would write, “We would appreciate replacement of the remaining products.” Many other aspects of business correspondence differ from culture to culture, such as preferred length, specificity, and the use of seasonal references in the correspondence.
- **Application choice and use.** In cultures in which documents tend to be formal, letters might be preferred to memos, or face-to-face meetings to phone calls or email. In Asia, for instance, a person is more likely to walk down the hall to deliver a brief message in person because doing so shows more respect. In addition, the formal characteristics of letters, memos, and emails are different in different cultures. The French, for instance, use indented paragraphs in their letters, whereas in the United States, paragraphs are typically left-justified. The ordering of the information in the inside address and complimentary close of letters varies widely. In many countries, emails are structured like memos, with the “to,” “from,” “subject,” and “date” information

added at the top, even though this information is already present in the routing information.

Try to study business correspondence written by people from the culture you will be addressing. When possible, have important documents reviewed by a person from that culture before you send them.

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

Letter Format

☐ Is the first page printed on letterhead stationery?
☐ Is the date included?
☐ Is the inside address complete and correct?
☐ Is the appropriate courtesy title used?
☐ If appropriate, is an attention line or a subject line included?
☐ Is the salutation appropriate?
☐ Is only the first word of the complimentary close capitalized?
☐ Is the signature legible, and is the writer's name typed beneath the signature?
☐ If appropriate, is an enclosure line included?
☐ If appropriate, is a copy and/or courtesy-copy line included?
☐ Is the letter typed in one of the standard formats?
☐ If the letter is to be sent by email, did you consider saving it as a PDF?

Types of Letters

Does the inquiry letter

☐ explain why you sent the inquiry to the reader?
☐ explain why you are requesting the information and how you will use it?
☐ specify the date when you need the information?

☐ list the questions clearly?
☐ offer, if appropriate, the product of your research?

Does the response to an inquiry letter

☐ answer the reader's questions?
☐ explain why, if any of the reader's questions cannot be answered?

Does the claim letter

☐ specifically identify the unsatisfactory product or service?
☐ explain the problem(s) clearly?
☐ propose an adjustment?
☐ conclude courteously?

Does the "good news" adjustment letter

☐ express your regret?
☐ explain the adjustment you will make?
☐ conclude on a positive note?

Does the "bad news" adjustment letter

☐ meet the reader on neutral ground, expressing regret but not apologizing?
☐ explain why the company is not at fault?
☐ clearly deny the reader's request?
☐ attempt to create goodwill?

Memos

☐ Does the identifying information adhere to your organization's standards?
☐ If the memo is to be sent by email, did you consider saving it as a PDF?
☐ Did you include a specific subject line?
☐ Did you clearly state your purpose at the start of the memo?
☐ If appropriate, did you summarize your message?
☐ Did you provide appropriate background for the discussion?
☐ Did you organize the discussion clearly?
☐ Did you include informative headings to help your readers?
☐ Did you highlight items requiring action?

Email

☐ Did you refrain from sending jokes or other nonbusiness messages?
☐ Did you keep the email as brief as possible and send it only to appropriate people?
☐ Did you use the appropriate level of formality?
☐ Did you write correctly and avoid flaming?
☐ Did you check with the writer before forwarding the message?
☐ Did you write a specific, accurate subject line?
☐ Did you use uppercase and lowercase letters?
☐ Did you skip lines between paragraphs?

Microblogs

☐ Did you study your organization's policy on which microblog sites you may use and how you should use them?

EXERCISES

1. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form small groups for this exercise on claim and adjustment letters. Have each member of your group study the following social-media post and the response, which function as a claim and an adjustment. Then meet and discuss your reactions to the two posts. How effectively does the writer of the claim present her case? How effective is the response from the company? Does its writer succeed in showing that the company's procedures for ensuring safety are effective? Does its writer succeed in projecting a professional tone? In both posts, how might the context of social media be affecting the tone? Write an email to your instructor discussing the two posts, and attach to your email a revised version of the company's response.

> Melissa Jackson
>
> Star-Tel, your new Corona ME smartphone is the worst I've ever purchased! Two days into using it, I saw the back of the phone starting to smoke and the battery caught fire. The guy at the store said the battery must have been defective and replaced the phone. But three days later the same thing happened and sparks started coming out of it! Clearly it is not just the battery but something to do with the phone. It is too dangerous to keep using it, but I don't want to keep returning this phone and getting yet another defective product! I have lost hours of work this week because of this. I think you owe me — and everyone who's bought your defective phone — a refund!

Star-Tel Communications

Melissa, we’re sorry to hear you weren’t happy with your Corona ME. Problems like this are usually due to a defect in the battery or user error, such as exposing the phone to extreme heat. All of our products go through rigorous testing and safety checks before they’re shipped, so we really don’t see how this could be a problem with the Corona ME model. If you purchased the phone from one of our authorized dealers, they should provide you with a replacement at no charge or offer you store credit.

Sincerely,

The Customer Service Team

2. Louise and Paul work for the same manufacturing company. Louise, a senior engineer, is chairing a committee to investigate ways to improve the hiring process at the company. Paul, a technical editor, also serves on the committee. The excerpts quoted in Louise’s email are from Paul’s email to all members of the committee in response to Louise’s request that members describe their approach to evaluating job-application materials. How would you revise Louise’s email to make it more effective?

To: Paul
From: Louise

Sometimes I just have to wonder what you’re thinking, Paul.

>Of course, it’s not possible to expect perfect resumes. But I
>have to screen them, and last year I had to read over 200. I’m
>not looking for perfection, but as soon as I spot an error I
>make a mental note of it and, when I hit a second and
>then a third error I can’t really concentrate on the writer’s
>credentials.

Listen, Paul, you might be a sharp editor, but the rest of us have a different responsibility: to make the products and move them out as soon as possible. We don’t have the luxury of studying documents to see if we can find errors. I suggest you concentrate on what you were hired to do, without imposing your “standards” on the rest of us.

>From my point of view, an error can include a
>misused tradmark.

Misusing a “tradmark,” Paul? Is that Error Number 1?

3. Because students use email to communicate with other group members when they write collaboratively, your college or university would like to create a one-page handout on how to use email responsibly. Find three or four netiquette guides on the internet that focus on email. Study these guides and write a one-page student guide to using email to communicate with other students. Somewhere in the guide, be sure to list the sites you studied, so that students can visit them for further information about netiquette.

CASE 9: Writing a Memo

As the editor-in-chief of your college newspaper, you have recently been granted permission to create a Twitter account. The newspaper’s faculty advisor has requested that, before you set up the account, you develop a memo to her outlining the audience and purpose as well as outlining your plan for the account based on the school’s social media policy. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to begin drafting your memo.

CHAPTER 10

Applying for a Job

Establishing Your Professional Brand
Finding the Right Position
Writing Résumés
Writing Job-Application Letters
Preparing for a Job Interview
Following Up After an Interview

GETTING HIRED has always involved writing. Whether you apply online through a company's website, reply to a post on LinkedIn, or send a formal letter and résumé through the mail, you will use words to make the case that the organization should offer you a position.

You will probably make that case quite a few times. According to the U.S. Department of Labor (2019), the typical American worker holds more than 11 different jobs while he or she is between the ages of 18 and 48. Obviously, most of those jobs don't last long. Even among American workers who begin a new job between the ages of 40 and 48, a third will no longer be with that company at the end of one year, and two-thirds will no longer be there in five years.

For most of you, looking for professional work is the first nonacademic test of your technical-communication skills. And it’s an important test. Kyle Wiens, CEO of two tech companies, iFixit and Dozuki, requires all new employees to pass a writing test. His reason? “If it takes someone more than 20 years to notice how to properly use ‘it’s,’ then that’s not a learning curve I’m comfortable with” (Bowers, 2013).

Establishing Your Professional Brand

One way to look at the process of looking for work is to keep in mind that, except for those times when you don't want to be in the workforce, you are *always* looking for work. That doesn't literally mean you're always applying for jobs; it means you're always open to the possibility that a job that interests you will come along. In other words, you are a *passive* applicant. When employers have an opening, they seek out the best candidates — regardless of whether those candidates are looking actively or passively (Cohen, 2013).

Being a successful job seeker requires a particular frame of mind. Think of yourself not as a student at this college or an employee of that company but rather as a professional with a brand to establish and maintain. For instance, say your name is Amber Cunningham, and you work as a human-resources officer for Apple. Don't think of yourself as an Apple human-resources officer. Instead, think of yourself as Amber Cunningham, a human-resources specialist who has worked for several companies (including Apple) and who has a number of marketable skills and a substantial record of accomplishments. Your *professional brand* (sometimes referred to as a "personal brand") is Amber Cunningham. Your challenge is to attract employers successfully — even if you're happy with your current position at Apple and are not looking to change jobs.

To present your professional brand successfully, you need to understand what employers are looking for, and then you need to craft the materials that will present that brand to the world.

GUIDELINES Building the Foundation of Your Professional Brand

Follow these five guidelines in developing your professional brand.

- **Research what others have done.** What kinds of information do they present about themselves online? On which social-media sites are they active? What kinds of comments and questions do they post? How do they reply to what others have posted?
- **Tell the truth.** Statistics about how many people lie and exaggerate in describing themselves in the job search vary, but it is probably between a third and a half. Companies search online themselves or hire investigators to verify the information you provide about yourself, to see if you are honest.
- **Communicate professionally.** Show that you can write clearly and correctly, and remember that it is inappropriate (and in some cases illegal) to divulge trade secrets or personal information about colleagues.
- **Describe your job skills.** Employers want to see that you have the technical skills that the job requires. They look for degrees, certifications, speeches and publications, and descriptions of what you do in your present position and have done in previous positions.
- **Focus on problem-solving and accomplishments.** The most compelling evidence that you would be a good hire is a solid record of identifying problems and devising solutions that met customers' needs, reduced costs, increased revenues, improved safety, and reduced environmental impact. Numbers tell the story: try to present your accomplishments as quantifiable data.

CRAFTING YOUR PROFESSIONAL BRAND

With your long list of characteristics, experiences, skills, and accomplishments in hand, it's time to start creating the materials — primarily online materials — that will display your professional brand.

GUIDELINES Presenting Your Professional Brand

The following six guidelines can help you display your professional brand.

- **Create a strong online presence.** The best online presence is your own website, which functions as your online headquarters. All your other online activities will link back to this one site, the only site on the internet that is all about you. Register a site and try to name it *yourname.com* (you will be required to pay a small fee to secure the domain name). If you aren't experienced designing and creating sites, try a drag-and-drop site builder like Weebly or Squarespace, or use a template from a free blogging site such as WordPress. Upload to your site everything you want potential employers to see: contact information, a professional history, work samples, documents, and links to your accounts on social-media sites. If you don't have a website, take advantage of all the features on LinkedIn.
- **Participate on LinkedIn.** LinkedIn is the major social-media site used by employers to find employees. Set up a LinkedIn account and create a profile that includes the keywords that will attract potential employers. Rather than calling yourself a "programmer at ADP," which describes your current situation, call yourself "an experienced programmer in various programming languages (Java, C, C++, and PHP) and scripting languages (JavaScript, Perl, WSH, and UNIX shells) who understands interactive web pages and web-based applications, including JavaServer Pages (JSP), Java servlets, Active Server Pages (ASP), and ActiveX controls." Including keywords makes it easier for potential employers to find you when they search for employees. In addition, remember to list specific skills in the "Skills and Abilities" section of your profile. Potential employers searching for specific skills can then locate you more easily, and colleagues who know your work can endorse you for various skills. And don't merely set up an account — participate actively on LinkedIn. When you read a good article or see a useful video, link to it so

others can find it. Participate in forum discussions. Make connections and endorse people who you know have good qualifications.

- **Participate on Facebook.** You probably already have a Facebook account and use Facebook's Timeline feature. Within your account, you also have the option of creating separate Pages for specific interests. Create a public Facebook Page and use it only for professional activities. Share information that will be interesting and useful to other professionals.
- **Participate on Twitter.** Follow influential people in your industry on Twitter to see the kinds of activities, conferences, and publications that interest them. Comment on and retweet useful tweets, link to the best items you see in the media, and reply when others send you messages.
- **Create a business card.** Having a business card if you're a student might seem odd, but a card is the best way to direct people to your website when you meet them in person. Your card should have your contact information, a few phrases highlighting your skills, and the URL of your website. Some people add a QR code (a Quick Response code, the square barcode that smartphones can read) to allow others to link to their websites instantly. (Search for "QR code generator" to find free sites that will help you generate a QR code.)
- **Practice an "elevator pitch."** An elevator pitch is a brief oral summary of your credentials. At less than 20 seconds long, it's brief enough that you can say it if you find yourself in an elevator with a potential employer. After the pitch, you hand the person your business card, which contains all the information he or she needs to get to your website, which links to everything else you want that person to see about you.

In making job offers, employers often rely on information they learn about potential new employees on the internet. According to a 2015 study commissioned by CareerBuilder, 52 percent of companies research job applicants on social media (Tarpey, 2015). The good news: 32 percent of those companies were motivated to seek out an applicant because of the positive information they found online, including the following:

- background information that supported job qualifications

- personality that fit with company culture
- professional-looking site
- great communication skills
- creativity

The bad news: 48 percent found information that made them reject an applicant. The employers who rejected applicants most often cited the following five problems:

- provocative or inappropriate photos
- suggestion of drug or alcohol use
- negative comments about a former employer or co-worker
- poor communication skills
- discriminatory comments about race, gender, or religion

Search online for your own name. Look at what potential employers will see and ask yourself whether your online personal brand is what you want to display. If it isn't, start to change it.

ETHICS NOTE

WRITING HONEST JOB-APPLICATION MATERIALS

Many résumés contain lies or exaggerations. Job applicants say they attended colleges they didn't and were awarded degrees they weren't, give themselves inflated job titles, say they were laid off when they were really fired for poor performance, and inflate their accomplishments. A CareerBuilder survey found that 38 percent of employees have embellished their job responsibilities at some point, and 18 percent have lied about their skills (Lorenz, 2012). Economist Steven D. Levitt, co-author of *Freakonomics*, concludes that more than 50 percent of job applicants lie on their résumés (Isaacs, 2012).

Companies take this problem seriously. They hire agencies that verify an applicant’s education and employment history and check for a criminal record. They do their own research online. They phone people whose names the candidate has provided. If they find any discrepancies, they do not offer the candidate a position. If the person is already working for the company when discrepancies arise, they fire the employee.

Finding the Right Position

Once you have constructed your personal brand online — a process that can take weeks or even months — you can embark on finding the job that is right for you.

UNDERSTANDING JOB-SEARCH STRATEGIES

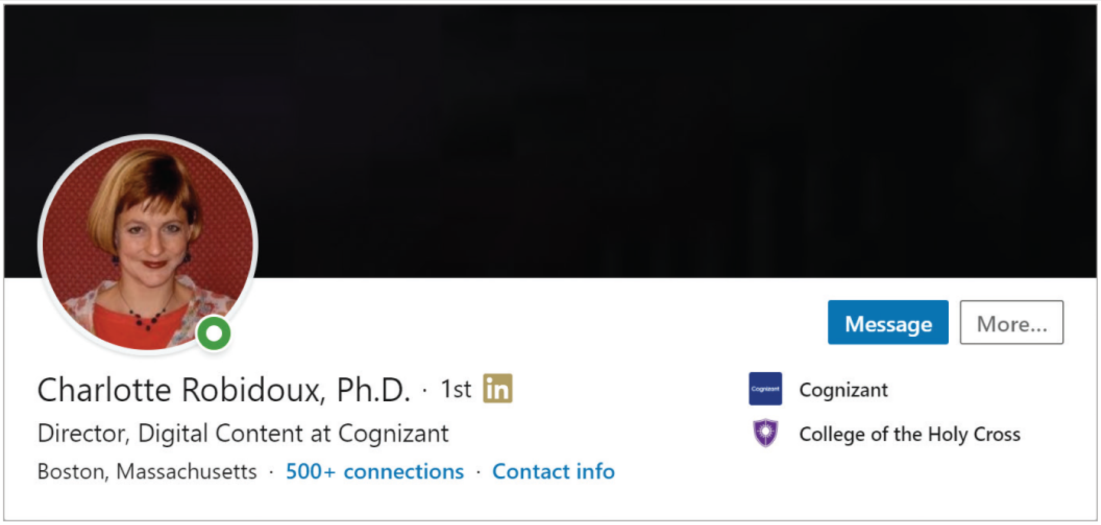
There are four major ways to find a job.

- **Through an organization's website.** Most organizations list their job offerings in a careers section on their websites and explain how to apply. If you are interested in a particular organization, start with its own site.
- **Through a job board on the internet.** Job boards are sites sponsored by federal agencies, internet service providers, and private organizations. Some sites merely list positions; you respond to such listings by email. Other sites let you upload your résumé electronically, so that employers can get in touch with you. Some job boards offer resources on how to prepare job-application materials; others do not. Among the biggest job boards are the following:
  — AfterCollege
  — Beyond

— CareerBuilder
— CareerOneStop (sponsored by the U.S. Department of Labor)
— Glassdoor
— Indeed (a metasearch engine for job seekers)
— Monster

- One caution about using job boards: once you upload your résumé to an internet site, you probably have lost control of it. Here are four questions to consider before you post to a job board:
  — Who has access to your résumé? You might want to remove your home address and phone number from it if anyone can view it.
  — How will you know if an employer requests your résumé? Will you be notified by the job board?
  — Can your current employer see your résumé? If your employer discovers that you are looking for a new job, your current position could be in jeopardy.
  — Can you update your résumé at no cost? Some job boards charge you each time you update your résumé.
- **Through your network.** A relative or an acquaintance can exert influence to help you get a job, or at least point out a new position. Other good contacts include past employers and professors. Also consider becoming active in the student chapter of a professional organization in your field, through which you can meet professionals in your local area. Many people use Twitter, Facebook, and — in particular — LinkedIn to connect with their contacts, as well as to try to identify hiring

officers and other professionals who can help them apply. Figure 10.1 shows excerpts from one professional's LinkedIn profile.


Charlotte Robidoux, Ph.D. · 1st

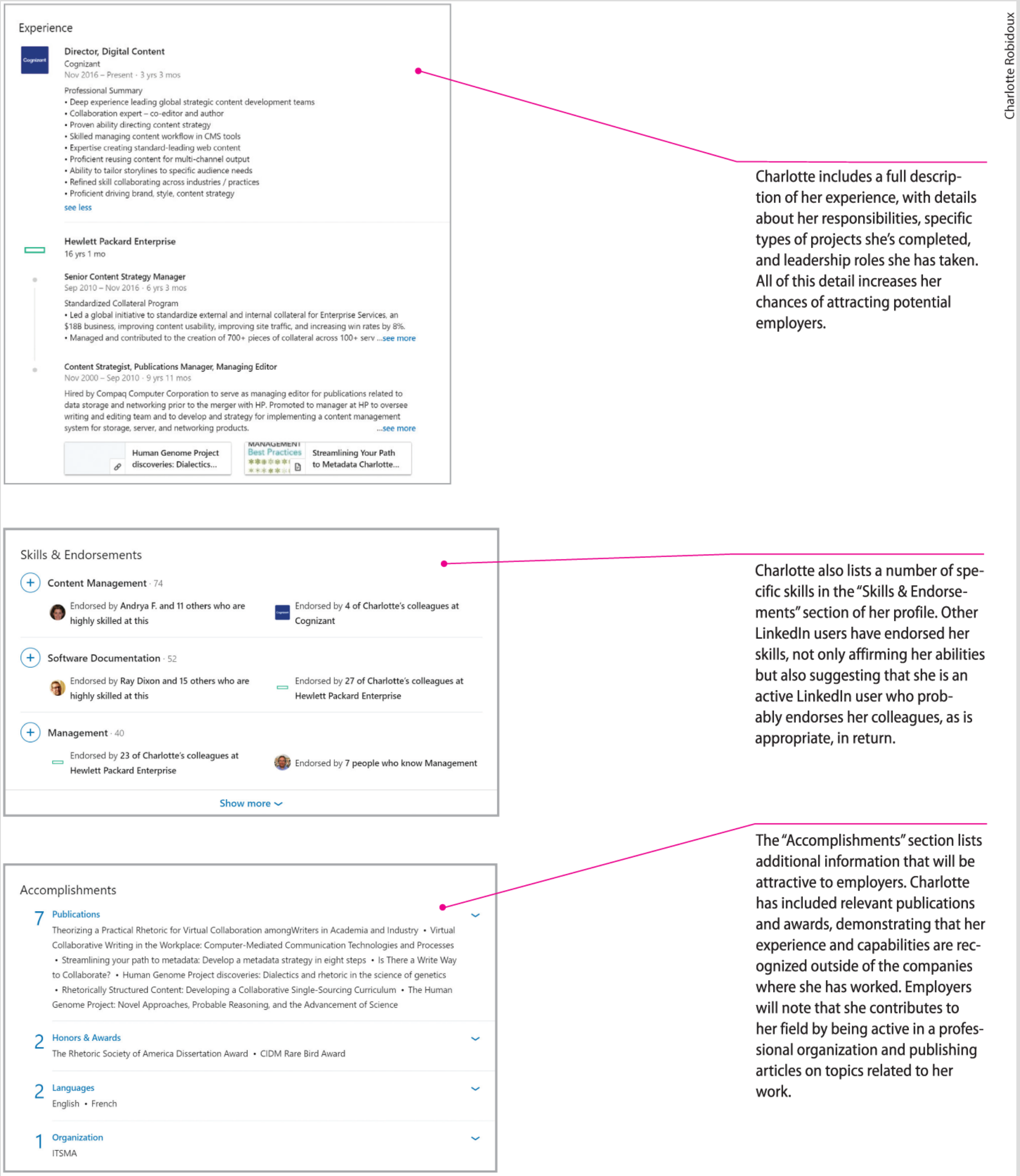
Director, Digital Content at Cognizant

Boston, Massachusetts · 500+ connections · Contact info

Message
More...
Cognizant
College of the Holy Cross

Charlotte Robidoux.

FIGURE 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional's LinkedIn Profile (continued)



Experience

Director, Digital Content
Cognizant
Nov 2016 – Present · 3 yrs 3 mos

Professional Summary
- Deep experience leading global strategic content development teams
- Collaboration expert – co-editor and author
- Proven ability directing content strategy
- Skilled managing content workflow in CMS tools
- Expertise creating standard-leading web content
- Proficient reusing content for multi-channel output
- Ability to tailor storylines to specific audience needs
- Refined skill collaborating across industries / practices
- Proficient driving brand, style, content strategy

see less

Hewlett Packard Enterprise
16 yrs 1 mo

Senior Content Strategy Manager
Sep 2010 – Nov 2016 · 6 yrs 3 mos

Standardized Collateral Program
- Led a global initiative to standardize external and internal collateral for Enterprise Services, an $18B business, improving content usability, improving site traffic, and increasing win rates by 8%.
- Managed and contributed to the creation of 700+ pieces of collateral across 100+ serv ...see more

Content Strategist, Publications Manager, Managing Editor
Nov 2000 – Sep 2010 · 9 yrs 11 mos

Hired by Compaq Computer Corporation to serve as managing editor for publications related to data storage and networking prior to the merger with HP. Promoted to manager at HP to oversee writing and editing team and to develop and strategy for implementing a content management system for storage, server, and networking products. ...see more

Human Genome Project discoveries: Dialectics...

Streamlining Your Path to Metadata Charlotte...

Skills & Endorsements

Content Management · 74
Endorsed by **Andrya F. and 11 others who are highly skilled at this**
Endorsed by **4 of Charlotte's colleagues at Cognizant**

Software Documentation · 52
Endorsed by **Ray Dixon and 15 others who are highly skilled at this**
Endorsed by **27 of Charlotte's colleagues at Hewlett Packard Enterprise**

Management · 40
Endorsed by **23 of Charlotte's colleagues at Hewlett Packard Enterprise**
Endorsed by **7 people who know Management**

Show more

Accomplishments

7 Publications
Theorizing a Practical Rhetoric for Virtual Collaboration amongWriters in Academia and Industry • Virtual Collaborative Writing in the Workplace: Computer-Mediated Communication Technologies and Processes • Streamlining your path to metadata: Develop a metadata strategy in eight steps • Is There a Write Way to Collaborate? • Human Genome Project discoveries: Dialectics and rhetoric in the science of genetics • Rhetorically Structured Content: Developing a Collaborative Single-Sourcing Curriculum • The Human Genome Project: Novel Approaches, Probable Reasoning, and the Advancement of Science

2 Honors & Awards
The Rhetoric Society of America Dissertation Award • CIDM Rare Bird Award

2 Languages
English • French

1 Organization
ITSMA

Charlotte Robidoux

Charlotte includes a full description of her experience, with details about her responsibilities, specific types of projects she's completed, and leadership roles she has taken. All of this detail increases her chances of attracting potential employers.

Charlotte also lists a number of specific skills in the "Skills & Endorsements" section of her profile. Other LinkedIn users have endorsed her skills, not only affirming her abilities but also suggesting that she is an active LinkedIn user who probably endorses her colleagues, as is appropriate, in return.

The "Accomplishments" section lists additional information that will be attractive to employers. Charlotte has included relevant publications and awards, demonstrating that her experience and capabilities are recognized outside of the companies where she has worked. Employers will note that she contributes to her field by being active in a professional organization and publishing articles on topics related to her work.

FIGURE 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional's LinkedIn Profile

Everything in this excerpt from Charlotte Robidoux's LinkedIn profile makes the argument that she is talented, hard-working, and successful.

- **Through a college or university placement office or professional placement bureau.** College and university placement offices bring companies and students together. Student résumés are made available to representatives of business, government, and industry, who arrange on-campus interviews. Students who do well in the campus interviews are then invited by the representatives to visit the organization for a tour and another interview. A professional placement bureau offers essentially the same service but charges a fee (payable by either the employer or the person who is hired for a job). Placement bureaus cater primarily to more advanced professionals who are changing jobs.

GUIDELINES Using LinkedIn's Employment Features

In 2015, 84 percent of employers used social media to recruit. Among those employers, 96 percent said they used LinkedIn (Society for Human Resource Management, 2016). The following five guidelines can help you take advantage of the employment features on the world's most influential networking site for professionals.

- ► **Use the profile section fully.** The profile section includes information from your résumé, but unlike a résumé, which needs to be concise and contains only words, the profile section can include any kind of digital file, such as presentation slides or videos. Describe your education and professional jobs in detail; remember that the keywords in your descriptions will enable potential employers to find you as they search for employees. If you add "skills" to your profile, others have an opportunity to "endorse" those skills, adding credibility to your profile.
- ► **Include a picture.** A picture increases by sevenfold the chances that a reader will read your profile (Halzack, 2013).

- **Post updates.** Post information about interesting articles you have read, conferences you are attending, and other professional activities. Be generous in praising co-workers and others you follow on the internet. Mention your volunteer activities. Nicole Williams, a career expert at LinkedIn, writes that posting an update once a week makes you 10 times more likely to have your profile viewed by a hiring manager (Halzack, 2013).
- **Write unique invitation requests.** You can ask one of your connections to introduce you to someone who is not one of your connections. In doing so, explain why you want to be introduced ("I plan to relocate to Bill's city later this year and want to describe the services I offer"), give your connection the opportunity to say no gracefully ("Would you be willing to help me make this introduction? If not, I understand"), and thank your connection ("I really appreciate your taking the time to consider my request").
- **Write unique invitations to connect.** When you want to connect with another LinkedIn member, especially one whom you do not know well in person, avoid the template invitation, "I'd like to add you to my professional network." Explain how you know the other person: "As a fellow Aggie who's admired your company's strategy for some time, I'd like to connect."

Writing Résumés

Although you will present your credentials on LinkedIn and other sites, you will also need to create a résumé, which you will upload to a job board or a company's website, email to the company, or paste into a web-based form.

Many of the job boards listed on p. 261 include samples of résumés.

Many students wonder whether to write their résumés themselves or use a résumé-preparation agency. It is best to write your own résumé, for three reasons:

- **You know yourself better than anyone else does.** No matter how professional the work of a résumé-preparation agency is, you can do a better job communicating important information about yourself.
- **Employment officers know the style of the local agencies.** Readers who recognize that you did not write your own résumé might wonder whether you are hiding any deficiencies.
- **If you write your own résumé, you will be more likely to adapt it to different situations.** You are unlikely to return to a résumé-preparation agency and pay an additional fee to make a minor revision.

Because most companies use résumé-application software to scan résumés into databases and search for keywords, a good résumé includes the right keywords. Only after a résumé has made it through that initial electronic pass will it be read by a person. Résumé consultant Ramsey Penegar puts it this way: “If your résumé doesn’t have the keywords that match their job requirements, your résumé may hit the ‘no’ pile early in the process” (Auerbach, 2012).

The best way to be sure you have the appropriate keywords in your résumé is to study the job description in the actual job posting you want to respond to. Then find 10 other ads for similar positions and identify the terms that come up frequently. Think in terms of job titles, names of products, companies, technologies, and professional organizations. For instance, if the job is to develop web pages, you will likely see many references to “web page,” “internet,” “XHTML,” “HTML5,” “Java,” “W3C,” and “CSS.” Also include keywords that refer to your communication skills, such as “public speaking,” “oral communication,” and “communication skills.”

But don’t just list the keywords. Instead, integrate them into sentences about your skills and accomplishments. For instance, a computer-science student might write, “Wrote applications for migrating data between systems/databases using C#, XML, and Excel Macros.” A chemical engineer might write, “Worked with polymers, mixing and de-gassing polydimethylsiloxane.”

How long should a résumé be? It should be long enough to include all pertinent information but not so long that it bores or irritates the reader. Although some hiring consultants have guidelines (such as that a student's résumé should be no longer than one page, or that applicants who are vice presidents at companies can write two-page résumés), the consensus is that length is unimportant. If an applicant has more experience, the résumé will be longer; if an applicant has less experience, it will be shorter. If all the information in the résumé helps make the case that the applicant is an excellent fit for the position, it's the right length.

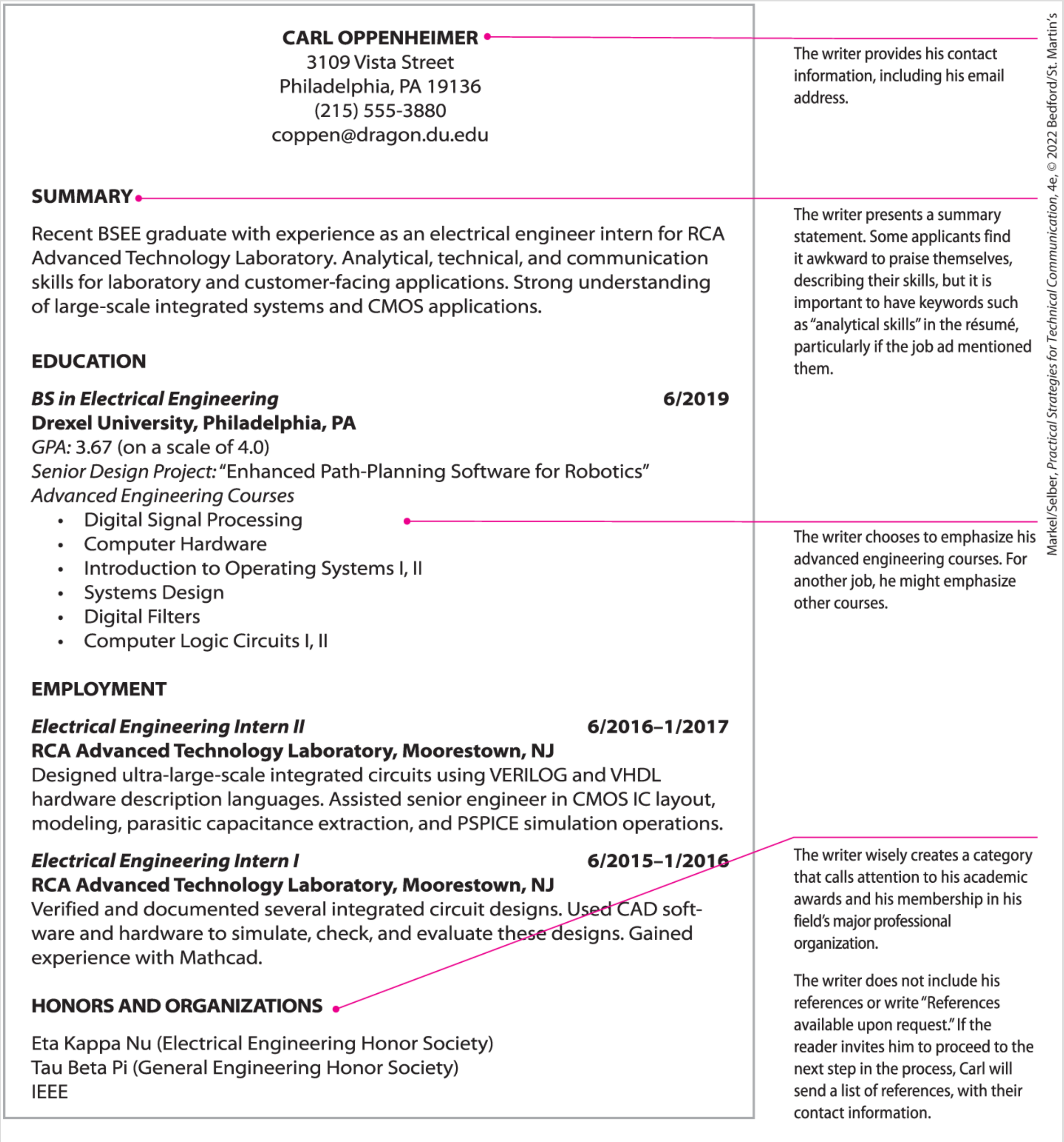
The information that goes into a résumé is commonly ordered either chronologically or by skills. In a *chronological résumé,* you use time as the organizing pattern for each section, including education and experience, and discuss your responsibilities for each job you have held. In a *skills résumé* (sometimes called a *functional résumé*), you merely list your previous jobs but include a skills section in which you describe your talents, skills, and achievements.

A chronological résumé focuses on the record of employment, giving an applicant the opportunity to describe the duties and accomplishments related to each job. The skills résumé highlights the skills that the candidate demonstrated at several different companies, such as supervising others, managing a large department, or reducing production costs. The skills résumé is a popular choice for applicants who have a gap in their employment history, who are re-entering the workforce, or who have changed jobs frequently.

In both types of résumé, you use reverse chronology; that is, you present the most recent jobs and degrees first, to emphasize them.

ELEMENTS OF THE CHRONOLOGICAL RÉSUMÉ

Most chronological résumés have five basic elements: identifying information, summary of qualifications, education, employment history, and interests and activities. Sometimes, writers include a sixth section: references. In filling in these basic sections, remember that you want to include the keywords that will attract employers. For a sample chronological résumé, see Figure 10.2.



CARL OPPENHEIMER
3109 Vista Street
Philadelphia, PA 19136
(215) 555-3880
coppen@dragon.du.edu

SUMMARY

Recent BSEE graduate with experience as an electrical engineer intern for RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory. Analytical, technical, and communication skills for laboratory and customer-facing applications. Strong understanding of large-scale integrated systems and CMOS applications.

EDUCATION

BS in Electrical Engineering **6/2019**
Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA
GPA: 3.67 (on a scale of 4.0)
Senior Design Project: "Enhanced Path-Planning Software for Robotics"
Advanced Engineering Courses

- Digital Signal Processing
- Computer Hardware
- Introduction to Operating Systems I, II
- Systems Design
- Digital Filters
- Computer Logic Circuits I, II

EMPLOYMENT

Electrical Engineering Intern II **6/2016–1/2017**
RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ
Designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and VHDL hardware description languages. Assisted senior engineer in CMOS IC layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and PSPICE simulation operations.

Electrical Engineering Intern I **6/2015–1/2016**
RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ
Verified and documented several integrated circuit designs. Used CAD software and hardware to simulate, check, and evaluate these designs. Gained experience with Mathcad.

HONORS AND ORGANIZATIONS

Eta Kappa Nu (Electrical Engineering Honor Society)
Tau Beta Pi (General Engineering Honor Society)
IEEE

The writer provides his contact information, including his email address.

The writer presents a summary statement. Some applicants find it awkward to praise themselves, describing their skills, but it is important to have keywords such as "analytical skills" in the résumé, particularly if the job ad mentioned them.

The writer chooses to emphasize his advanced engineering courses. For another job, he might emphasize other courses.

The writer wisely creates a category that calls attention to his academic awards and his membership in his field's major professional organization.

The writer does not include his references or write "References available upon request." If the reader invites him to proceed to the next step in the process, Carl will send a list of references, with their contact information.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 10.2 Chronological Résumé of a Traditional Student

Identifying Information

If you are submitting your résumé directly to a company, include your full name, address, phone number, and email address. Use your complete address, including the zip code. If your address during the academic year differs from your home address, list both and identify them clearly. An employer might call during an academic holiday to arrange an interview.

However, if you are posting your résumé to an internet job board, where it can be seen by anyone, you will be more vulnerable to scammers, spammers, and identity thieves. Don't include a mailing address or phone number, and use an email address that does not identify you.

Summary Statement

After the identifying information, add a summary statement, a brief paragraph that highlights three or four important skills or accomplishments. For example:

> **Summary**
>
> Six years' experience creating testing documentation to qualify production programs that run on Automated Test and Handling Equipment. Four years' experience running QA tests on software, hardware, and semiconductor products. Bilingual English and Italian. Secret security clearance.

Education

If you are a student or a recent graduate, place the education section next. If you have substantial professional experience, place the employment-history section before the education section.

Include at least the following information in the education section:

- **Your degree.** After the degree abbreviation (such as BS, BA, AA, or MS), list your academic major (and, if you have one, your minor) — for example, “BS in Materials Engineering, minor in General Business.”
- **The institution.** Identify the institution by its full name: “Louisiana State University,” not “LSU.”
- **The location of the institution.** Include the city and state.
- **The date of graduation.** If your degree has not yet been granted, add “Anticipated date of graduation” or a similar phrase.
- **Information about other schools you attended.** List any other institutions you attended beyond high school, even those from which you did not earn a degree. The description for other institutions should include the same information as in the main listing. Arrange entries in reverse chronological order: that is, list first the school you attended most recently.

GUIDELINES Elaborating on Your Education

The following four guidelines can help you develop the education section of your résumé.

- ► **List your grade-point average.** If your average is significantly above the median for the graduating class, list it. Or list your average in your major courses, or all your courses in the last two years. Calculate it however you wish, but be honest and clear.

- **Compile a list of courses.** Include courses that will interest an employer, such as advanced courses in your major or courses in technical communication, public speaking, or organizational communication. For example, a list of business courses on an engineer’s résumé might show special knowledge and skills. But don’t bother listing required courses; everyone else in your major took the same courses. Include the substantive titles of listed courses. Employers won’t know what “Chemistry 450” is; call it by its official title: “Chemistry 450. Organic Chemistry.”
- **Describe a special accomplishment.** If you completed a special senior design or research project, present the title and objective of the project, any special or advanced techniques or equipment you used, and, if you know them, the major results: “A Study of Shape Memory Alloys in Fabricating Actuators for Underwater Biomimetic Applications — a senior design project to simulate the swimming styles and anatomy of fish.” A project description makes you seem more like a professional: someone who designs and carries out projects.
- **List honors and awards you received.** Scholarships, internships, and academic awards suggest exceptional ability. If you have received a number of such honors, or some that were not exclusively academic, you might list them separately (in a section called “Honors” or “Awards”) rather than in the education section. Decide where this information will make the best impression.

The education section is the easiest part of the résumé to adapt in applying for different positions. For example, a student majoring in electrical engineering who is applying for a position requiring strong communication skills can emphasize communication courses in one version of the résumé and advanced electrical engineering courses in another version. As you compose the education section, emphasize those aspects of your background that meet the requirements for the particular job.

Employment History

Present at least the basic information about each job you have held: the dates of employment, the organization's name and location, and your position or title. Then add carefully selected details. Readers want to know what you did and accomplished. Provide at least a two- to three-line description for each position. For particularly important or relevant jobs, write more, focusing on one or more of the following factors:

- **Skills.** What technical skills did you use on the job?
- **Equipment.** What equipment did you operate or oversee? In particular, mention computer equipment or software with which you are familiar.
- **Money.** How much money were you responsible for? Even if you considered your data-entry position fairly easy, the fact that the organization grossed, say, $2 million a year shows that the position involved real responsibility.
- **Documents.** What important documents did you write or assist in writing, such as brochures, reports, manuals, proposals, or websites?
- **Personnel.** How many people did you supervise?
- **Clients.** What kinds of clients, and how many, did you do business with in representing your organization?

Whenever possible, emphasize *accomplishments.* If you reorganized the shifts of the weekend employees you supervised, state the results:

> Reorganized the weekend shift, resulting in a cost savings of more than $3,000 per year.

> Wrote and produced (with Adobe InDesign) a 56-page parts catalog that is still used by the company and that increased our phone inquiries by more than 25 percent.

For more about using strong verbs, see “Structuring Effective Sentences” in Ch. 6 on p. 125.

When you describe positions, functions, or responsibilities, use the active voice (“supervised three workers”) rather than the passive voice (“three workers were supervised by me”). The active voice highlights action. Note that writers often omit the *I* at the start of sentences: “Prepared bids,” rather than “I prepared bids.” Whichever style you use, be consistent. Table 10.1 (on page 271) lists some strong verbs to use in describing your experience.

TABLE 10.1 Strong Action Verbs Used In Résumés

administered	coordinated	evaluated	maintained	provided
advised	corresponded	examined	managed	purchased
analyzed	created	expanded	monitored	recorded
assembled	delivered	hired	obtained	reported
built	developed	identified	operated	researched
collected	devised	implemented	organized	solved

completed	directed	improved	performed	supervised
conducted	discovered	increased	prepared	trained
constructed	edited	instituted	produced	wrote

Here is a sample listing of employment history:

> June–September 2019: Student Dietitian
> Millersville General Hospital, Millersville, TX
> Gathered dietary histories and assisted in preparing menus for a 300-bed hospital.
> Received “excellent” on all seven items in evaluation by head dietitian.

In just a few lines, you can show that you sought and accepted responsibility and that you acted professionally. Do not write, “I accepted responsibility”; instead, present facts that lead the reader to that conclusion.

Naturally, not all jobs entail professional skills and responsibilities. Many students find summer work as laborers, sales clerks, and so forth. If you have not held a professional position, list the jobs you have held, even if they were unrelated to your career plans. If the job title is self-explanatory, such as restaurant server or service-station attendant, don’t elaborate. If you can write that you contributed to your tuition or expenses, such as by earning 50 percent of your annual expenses through a job, employers will be impressed by your self-reliance.

If you have held a number of nonprofessional as well as several professional positions, group the nonprofessional ones:

> Other Employment: cashier (summer 2016), salesperson (part-time, 2017), clerk (summer 2018)

This strategy prevents the nonprofessional positions from drawing the reader’s attention away from the more important positions.

If you have gaps in your employment history — because you were raising children, attending school, recovering from an accident, or for other reasons — consider using a skills résumé, which focuses more on your skills and less on your job history. You can explain the gaps in the job-application letter (if you write one) or in an interview. For instance, you could say, “I spent 2017 and part of 2018 caring for my elderly parent, but during that time I was able to do some substitute teaching and study at home to prepare for my A+ and Network+ certification, which I earned in late 2018.” Do not lie or mislead about your dates of employment.

If you have had several positions with the same employer, you can present one description that encompasses all the positions or present a separate description for each position.

> **PRESENTING ONE DESCRIPTION**
>
> **Blue Cross of Iowa**, Ames, Iowa (January 2012–present)
>
> - *Internal Auditor II (2016–present)*
> - *Member Service Representative/Claims Examiner II (2014–2016)*
> - *Claims Examiner II (2012–2014)*
>
> As Claims Examiner II, processed national account inquiries and claims in accordance with … After promotion to Member Service Representative/Claims

> Examiner II position, planned policies and procedures … As Internal Auditor II, audit claims, enrollment, and inquiries; run dataset population and sample reports …

This format enables you to mention your promotions and to create a clear narrative that emphasizes your progress within the company.

> **PRESENTING SEPARATE DESCRIPTIONS**
>
> **Blue Cross of Iowa**, Ames, Iowa (January 2012–present)
>
> - *Internal Auditor II (2016–present)*
>   Audit claims, enrollment, and inquiries …
> - *Member Service Representative/Claims Examiner II (2014–2016)*
>   Planned policies and procedures …
> - *Claims Examiner II (2012–2014)*
>   Processed national account inquiries and claims in accordance with …

This format, which enables you to create a fuller description of each position, is effective if you are trying to show that each position is distinct and you wish to describe the more recent positions more fully.

Interests and Activities

The interests-and-activities section of the résumé is the appropriate place for several kinds of information about you:

- participation in community-service organizations, such as Big Brothers/Big Sisters or volunteer work in a hospital
- hobbies related to your career (for example, electronics for an engineer)

- sports, especially those that might be socially useful in your professional career, such as tennis, racquetball, and golf
- university-sanctioned activities, such as membership on a team, work on the college newspaper, or election to a responsible position in an academic organization or a residence hall

Do not include activities that might create a negative impression, such as gambling or performing in a death-metal rock band. And always omit such activities as meeting people and reading. Everybody does these things.

References

Potential employers will want to learn more about you from your professors and previous employers. These people who are willing to speak or write on your behalf are called *references*.

Some applicants list their references on their résumé. The advantage of this strategy is that the potential employer can contact the references without having to contact the applicant. Other applicants prefer to wait until the potential employer has asked for the list. The advantage of this strategy is that the applicant can assemble a different set of references for each position without having to create different résumés. Although applicants in the past added a note stating “References available upon request” at the end of their résumés, many applicants today do not do so because they think the comment is unnecessary: employers assume that applicants can provide a list of references — and that they would love to do so.

Regardless of whether you list your references on your résumé, choose your references carefully. Solicit references only from those who know your work best and for whom you have done your best work — for instance, a previous employer with whom you worked closely or a professor from whom you received A's. Don't ask prominent professors who do not know your work well; they will be unable to write informative letters.

Do not simply assume that someone is willing to serve as a reference for you. Give the potential reference writer an opportunity to decline gracefully. The person might not have been as impressed with your work as you think. If you simply ask the person to serve as a reference, he or she might accept and then write a lukewarm letter. It is better to ask, "Would you be able to write an enthusiastic letter for me?" or "Do you feel you know me well enough to write a strong recommendation?" If the person shows any signs of hesitation or reluctance, withdraw the request. It may be a little embarrassing, but it is better than receiving a weak recommendation.

In listing their references, some applicants add, for each reference, a sentence or two describing their relationship with the person, as shown in this sample listing for a reference.

Dr. Dale Cletis
Professor of English
Boise State University
Boise, ID 83725
208.555.2637
dcletis@boisestate.edu

Dr. Cletis was my instructor in three literature courses, as well as my adviser.

Other Elements

The sections discussed so far appear on almost everyone's résumé. Other sections are either optional or appropriate for only some job seekers.

- **Computer skills.** Classify your skills in categories such as hardware, software, languages, and operating systems. List any professional certifications you have earned.
- **Military experience.** If you are a veteran, describe your military service as if it were a job, citing dates, locations, positions, ranks, and tasks. List positive job-performance evaluations.
- **Language ability.** A working knowledge of another language can be very valuable, particularly if the potential employer has international interests and you could be useful in translation or foreign service. List your proficiency, using terms such as *beginner, intermediate*, or *advanced*. Some applicants distinguish among reading, writing, and speaking abilities. Don't overstate your abilities; you could be embarrassed — and without a job —

when the potential employer hands you a business letter written in the language you say you know, or invites a native speaker of that language to sit in on the interview.

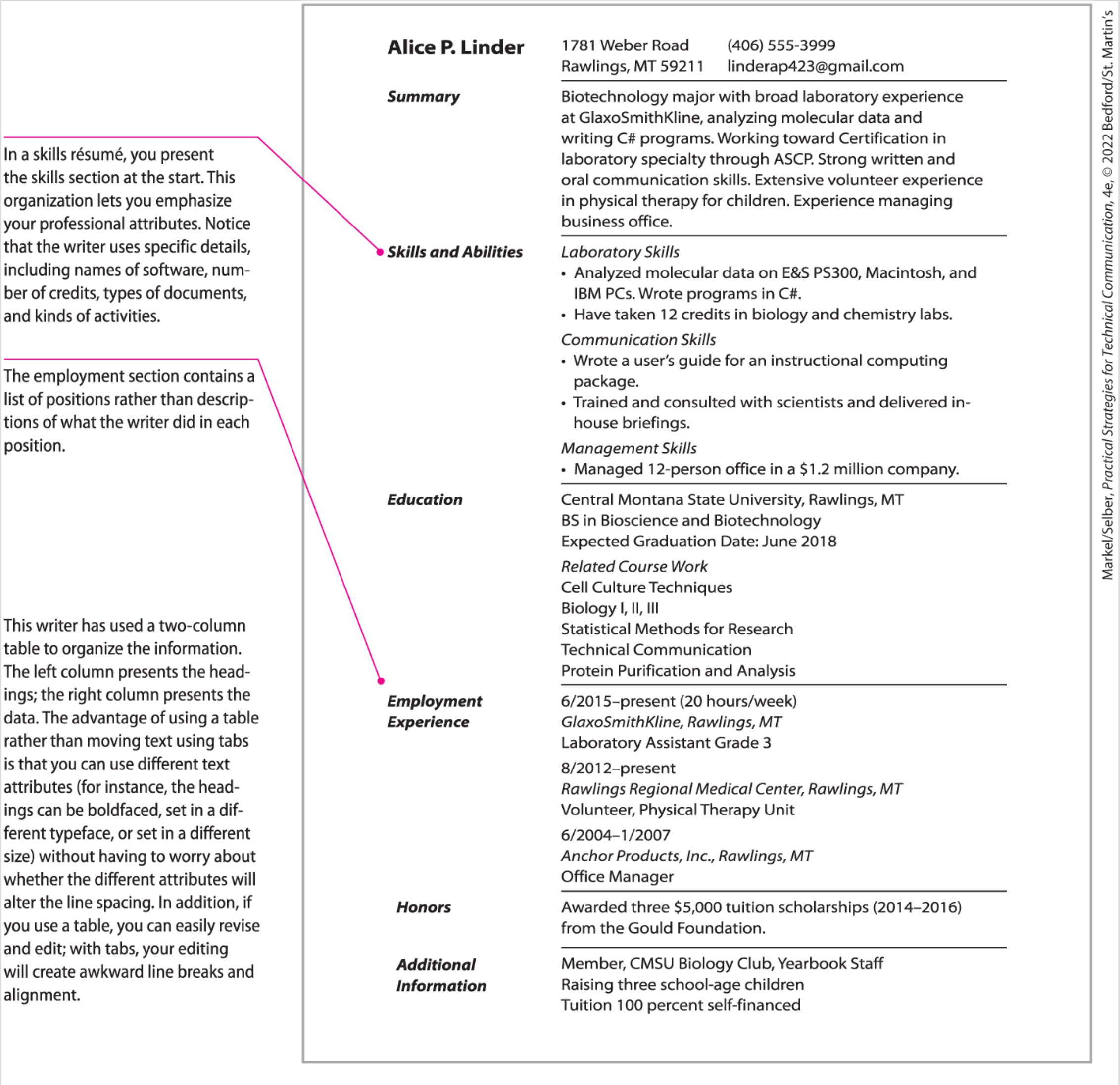
- **Willingness to relocate.** If you are willing to relocate, say so. Many organizations will find this flexibility attractive.

ELEMENTS OF THE SKILLS RÉSUMÉ

A skills résumé differs from a chronological résumé in that it includes a separate section, usually called “Skills” or “Skills and Abilities,” that emphasizes job skills and knowledge. In a skills résumé, the employment section becomes a brief list of information about your employment history: companies, dates of employment, and positions. Here is an example of a skills section.

> **Skills and Abilities**
>
> *Management*
> Served as weekend manager of six employees in a retail clothing business. Also trained three summer interns at a health-maintenance organization.
>
> *Writing and Editing*
> Wrote status reports, edited performance appraisals, participated in assembling and producing an environmental impact statement using desktop publishing.
>
> *Teaching and Tutoring*
> Tutored in the university writing center. Taught a two-week course in electronics for teenagers. Coached youth basketball.

In a skills section, you choose the headings, the arrangement, and the level of detail. Your goal, of course, is to highlight the skills an employer is seeking. See Figure 10.3 (on page 274) for an example of a skills résumé.



Alice P. Linder	1781 Weber Road (406) 555-3999 Rawlings, MT 59211 linderap423@gmail.com
Summary	Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C# programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty through ASCP. Strong written and oral communication skills. Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children. Experience managing business office.
Skills and Abilities	*Laboratory Skills* • Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and IBM PCs. Wrote programs in C#. • Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs. *Communication Skills* • Wrote a user's guide for an instructional computing package. • Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered in-house briefings. *Management Skills* • Managed 12-person office in a $1.2 million company.
Education	Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology Expected Graduation Date: June 2018 *Related Course Work* Cell Culture Techniques Biology I, II, III Statistical Methods for Research Technical Communication Protein Purification and Analysis
Employment Experience	6/2015–present (20 hours/week) *GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT* Laboratory Assistant Grade 3 8/2012–present *Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT* Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit 6/2004–1/2007 *Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT* Office Manager
Honors	Awarded three $5,000 tuition scholarships (2014–2016) from the Gould Foundation.
Additional Information	Member, CMSU Biology Club, Yearbook Staff Raising three school-age children Tuition 100 percent self-financed

In a skills résumé, you present the skills section at the start. This organization lets you emphasize your professional attributes. Notice that the writer uses specific details, including names of software, number of credits, types of documents, and kinds of activities.

The employment section contains a list of positions rather than descriptions of what the writer did in each position.

This writer has used a two-column table to organize the information. The left column presents the headings; the right column presents the data. The advantage of using a table rather than moving text using tabs is that you can use different text attributes (for instance, the headings can be boldfaced, set in a different typeface, or set in a different size) without having to worry about whether the different attributes will alter the line spacing. In addition, if you use a table, you can easily revise and edit; with tabs, your editing will create awkward line breaks and alignment.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 10.3 Skills Résumé of a Nontraditional Student

PREPARING A PLAIN-TEXT RÉSUMÉ

Most companies use computerized *applicant-tracking systems*, such as RESUMate, Bullhorn, or HRsmart, to evaluate the dozens, hundreds, or even thousands of job applications they receive every day. The information from these applications is stored in databases, which can be searched electronically for keywords to generate a pool of applicants for specific positions. Once a pool of candidates has been generated, someone at the company reads their résumés. Prepare a plain-text résumé so that you can survive this two-stage process.

A *plain-text résumé*, also called a *text résumé, ASCII résumé*, or *electronic résumé*, is a résumé that uses a very limited character set and has little formatting so that it can be stored in any database and read by any software. It will not be as attractive as a fully formatted document created with a word processor, but if you prepare it carefully it will say what you want it to say and be easy to read.

GUIDELINES Formatting a Plain-Text Résumé

Start with the résumé that you prepared in Word or with some other word-processing software. Save it as “Plain text” and then paste it into Notepad or another text editor. Revise the Notepad version so that it has these five characteristics:

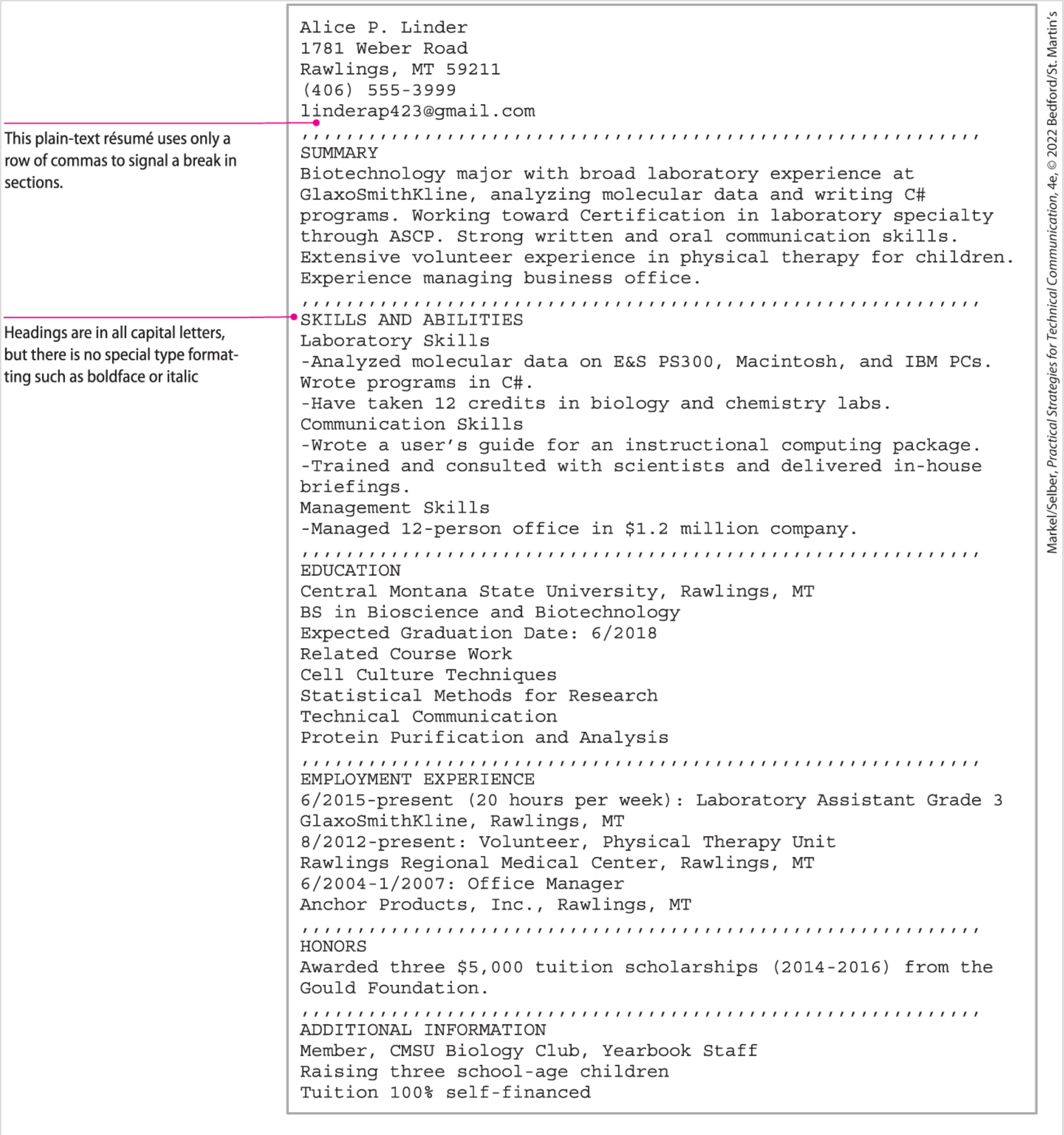
- **It has no special characters.** It uses only the letters, numbers, and basic punctuation marks visible on your keyboard. That is, it *does not* use boldface, italics, bullets, or tabs.
- **It has a line length of 65 or fewer characters.** Use the space bar to break longer lines or, in Notepad, set the left and right margins (in File/Page Setup) to 1.5 inches.

- **It uses a nonproportional typeface such as Courier.** (A nonproportional typeface is one in which each letter takes up the same amount of space on the line; narrow letters are surrounded by a lot of space, whereas wider letters are surrounded by a smaller space.) Using a nonproportional typeface makes it easier to keep the line length to 65 characters.
- **Most of the information is left justified.** If you want, you can use the space bar (not the Tab key) to move text to the right. For instance, you might want to center the main headings.
- **It uses ALL UPPERCASE or repeated characters for emphasis.** For example, a series of equal signs or hyphens might signal a new heading.

You might want to create two versions of your plain-text résumé: a version using word wrap (in Notepad's Format tab) to be attached to an email, and a version *not* using word wrap to be pasted into the body of an email.

Check each new version to be sure the information has converted properly. Copy and paste the version not using word wrap into an email and send it to yourself, and then review it. Attach the new file using word wrap to an email, open it in your text editor, and review it.

Figure 10.4 (on p. 276) shows a plain-text skills résumé.



```
Alice P. Linder
1781 Weber Road
Rawlings, MT 59211
(406) 555-3999
linderap423@gmail.com
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
SUMMARY
Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at
GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C#
programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty
through ASCP. Strong written and oral communication skills.
Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children.
Experience managing business office.
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
SKILLS AND ABILITIES
Laboratory Skills
-Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and IBM PCs.
Wrote programs in C#.
-Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs.
Communication Skills
-Wrote a user’s guide for an instructional computing package.
-Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered in-house
briefings.
Management Skills
-Managed 12-person office in $1.2 million company.
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
EDUCATION
Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT
BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology
Expected Graduation Date: 6/2018
Related Course Work
Cell Culture Techniques
Statistical Methods for Research
Technical Communication
Protein Purification and Analysis
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE
6/2015-present (20 hours per week): Laboratory Assistant Grade 3
GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT
8/2012-present: Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit
Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT
6/2004-1/2007: Office Manager
Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
HONORS
Awarded three $5,000 tuition scholarships (2014-2016) from the
Gould Foundation.
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
Member, CMSU Biology Club, Yearbook Staff
Raising three school-age children
Tuition 100% self-financed
```

This plain-text résumé uses only a row of commas to signal a break in sections.

Headings are in all capital letters, but there is no special type formatting such as boldface or italic

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

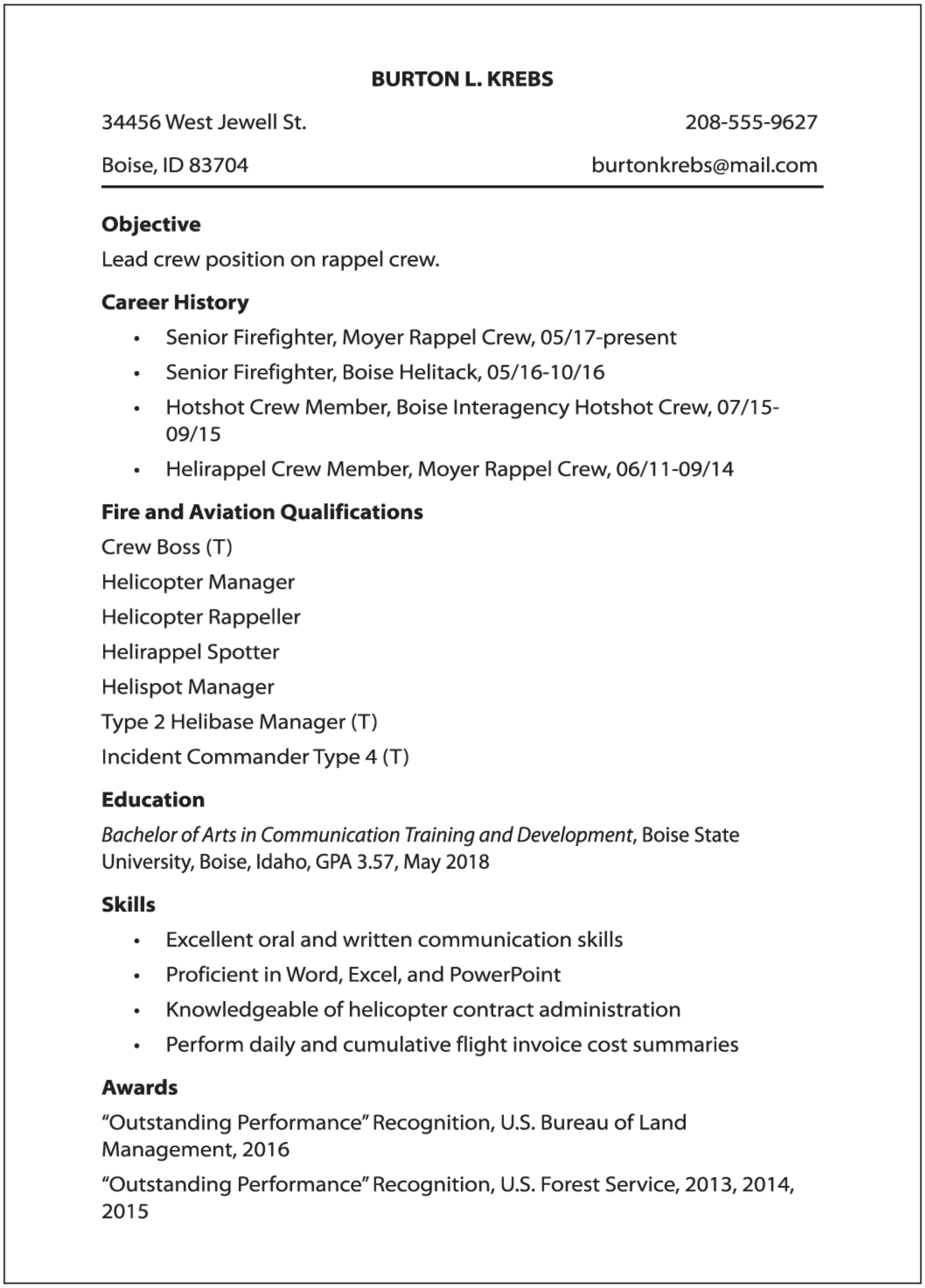
FIGURE 10.4 Plain-Text Version of a Skills Résumé

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Preparing a Résumé

This résumé was written by a graduating college senior who wanted to work for a wildland firefighting agency such as the U.S. Bureau of Land Management or U.S. Forest Service. The writer plans to save the résumé as a .txt file and enter it directly into these agencies' employment databases. The questions below ask you to think about electronic résumés.

1. How effectively has the writer formatted this résumé?
2. What elements are likely to be problematic when the writer saves this résumé as a .txt file?
3. What is the function of the industry-specific jargon in this résumé?
4. Why does the writer place the education section below the sections on career history and fire and aviation qualifications?



BURTON L. KREBS

34456 West Jewell St. 208-555-9627
Boise, ID 83704 burtonkrebs@mail.com

Objective

Lead crew position on rappel crew.

Career History

- Senior Firefighter, Moyer Rappel Crew, 05/17-present
- Senior Firefighter, Boise Helitack, 05/16-10/16
- Hotshot Crew Member, Boise Interagency Hotshot Crew, 07/15-09/15
- Helirappel Crew Member, Moyer Rappel Crew, 06/11-09/14

Fire and Aviation Qualifications

Crew Boss (T)
Helicopter Manager
Helicopter Rappeller
Helirappel Spotter
Helispot Manager
Type 2 Helibase Manager (T)
Incident Commander Type 4 (T)

Education

Bachelor of Arts in Communication Training and Development, Boise State University, Boise, Idaho, GPA 3.57, May 2018

Skills

- Excellent oral and written communication skills
- Proficient in Word, Excel, and PowerPoint
- Knowledgeable of helicopter contract administration
- Perform daily and cumulative flight invoice cost summaries

Awards

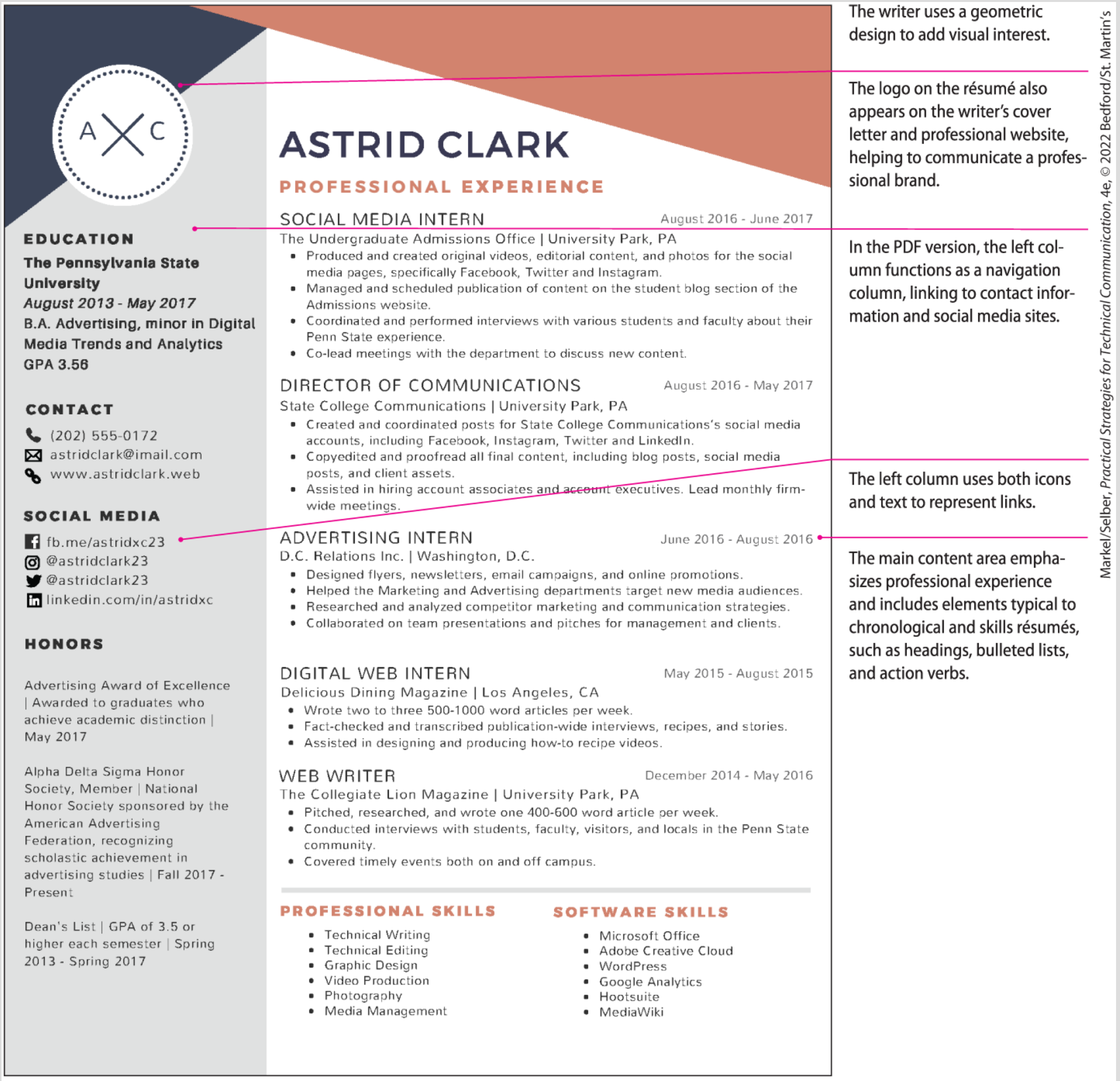
"Outstanding Performance" Recognition, U.S. Bureau of Land Management, 2016

"Outstanding Performance" Recognition, U.S. Forest Service, 2013, 2014, 2015

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

CONSIDERING NONTRADITIONAL RÉSUMÉS

In applying for a job, you have the option of submitting a nontraditional résumé. Nontraditional résumés include elements of chronological and skills résumés, but draw on a broader range of characteristics from print and digital media. Some approaches expand the use of visual design techniques to organize and emphasize résumé content. Others use video to present résumé content or a professional introduction. You will need to think carefully about your job-search contexts and if nontraditional résumés are an appropriate option. Figures 10.5, 10.6 (on pages 279–80), and 10.7 (on page 281) show a visually enhanced résumé, an infographic résumé, and a video résumé.



ASTRID CLARK

EDUCATION

The Pennsylvania State University
August 2013 - May 2017
B.A. Advertising, minor in Digital Media Trends and Analytics
GPA 3.56

CONTACT

☎ (202) 555-0172
✉ astridclark@imail.com
www.astridclark.web

SOCIAL MEDIA

fb.me/astridxc23
@astridclark23
@astridclark23
linkedin.com/in/astridxc

HONORS

Advertising Award of Excellence | Awarded to graduates who achieve academic distinction | May 2017

Alpha Delta Sigma Honor Society, Member | National Honor Society sponsored by the American Advertising Federation, recognizing scholastic achievement in advertising studies | Fall 2017 - Present

Dean's List | GPA of 3.5 or higher each semester | Spring 2013 - Spring 2017

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE

SOCIAL MEDIA INTERN August 2016 - June 2017
The Undergraduate Admissions Office | University Park, PA
- Produced and created original videos, editorial content, and photos for the social media pages, specifically Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.
- Managed and scheduled publication of content on the student blog section of the Admissions website.
- Coordinated and performed interviews with various students and faculty about their Penn State experience.
- Co-lead meetings with the department to discuss new content.

DIRECTOR OF COMMUNICATIONS August 2016 - May 2017
State College Communications | University Park, PA
- Created and coordinated posts for State College Communications's social media accounts, including Facebook, Instagram, Twitter and LinkedIn.
- Copyedited and proofread all final content, including blog posts, social media posts, and client assets.
- Assisted in hiring account associates and account executives. Lead monthly firm-wide meetings.

ADVERTISING INTERN June 2016 - August 2016
D.C. Relations Inc. | Washington, D.C.
- Designed flyers, newsletters, email campaigns, and online promotions.
- Helped the Marketing and Advertising departments target new media audiences.
- Researched and analyzed competitor marketing and communication strategies.
- Collaborated on team presentations and pitches for management and clients.

DIGITAL WEB INTERN May 2015 - August 2015
Delicious Dining Magazine | Los Angeles, CA
- Wrote two to three 500-1000 word articles per week.
- Fact-checked and transcribed publication-wide interviews, recipes, and stories.
- Assisted in designing and producing how-to recipe videos.

WEB WRITER December 2014 - May 2016
The Collegiate Lion Magazine | University Park, PA
- Pitched, researched, and wrote one 400-600 word article per week.
- Conducted interviews with students, faculty, visitors, and locals in the Penn State community.
- Covered timely events both on and off campus.

PROFESSIONAL SKILLS
- Technical Writing
- Technical Editing
- Graphic Design
- Video Production
- Photography
- Media Management

SOFTWARE SKILLS
- Microsoft Office
- Adobe Creative Cloud
- WordPress
- Google Analytics
- Hootsuite
- MediaWiki

The writer uses a geometric design to add visual interest.

The logo on the résumé also appears on the writer's cover letter and professional website, helping to communicate a professional brand.

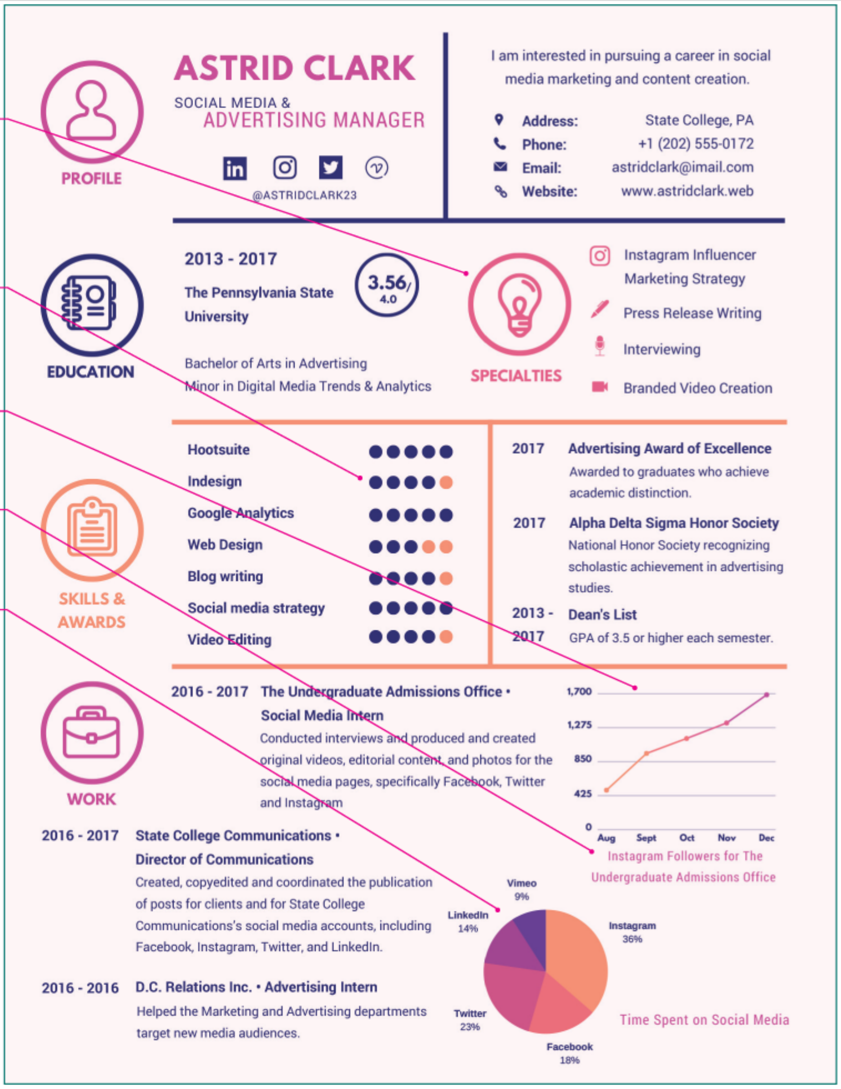
In the PDF version, the left column functions as a navigation column, linking to contact information and social media sites.

The left column uses both icons and text to represent links.

The main content area emphasizes professional experience and includes elements typical to chronological and skills résumés, such as headings, bulleted lists, and action verbs.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 10.5 Visually Enhanced Résumé



ASTRID CLARK

SOCIAL MEDIA &
ADVERTISING MANAGER

@ASTRIDCLARK23

PROFILE

I am interested in pursuing a career in social media marketing and content creation.

Address: State College, PA
Phone: +1 (202) 555-0172
Email: astridclark@imail.com
Website: www.astridclark.web

EDUCATION

2013 - 2017

The Pennsylvania State University

3.56/4.0

Bachelor of Arts in Advertising
Minor in Digital Media Trends & Analytics

SPECIALTIES

- Instagram Influencer Marketing Strategy
- Press Release Writing
- Interviewing
- Branded Video Creation

SKILLS & AWARDS

Hootsuite	●●●●●
Indesign	●●●●○
Google Analytics	●●●●●
Web Design	●●●○○
Blog writing	●●●●○
Social media strategy	●●●●●
Video Editing	●●●●○

2017 **Advertising Award of Excellence**
Awarded to graduates who achieve academic distinction.

2017 **Alpha Delta Sigma Honor Society**
National Honor Society recognizing scholastic achievement in advertising studies.

2013 - 2017 **Dean's List**
GPA of 3.5 or higher each semester.

WORK

2016 - 2017 **The Undergraduate Admissions Office • Social Media Intern**
Conducted interviews and produced and created original videos, editorial content, and photos for the social media pages, specifically Facebook, Twitter and Instagram

Instagram Followers for The Undergraduate Admissions Office

2016 - 2017 **State College Communications • Director of Communications**
Created, copyedited and coordinated the publication of posts for clients and for State College Communications's social media accounts, including Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, and LinkedIn.

2016 - 2016 **D.C. Relations Inc. • Advertising Intern**
Helped the Marketing and Advertising departments target new media audiences.

Time Spent on Social Media

The overall visual design, which is oriented vertically, encourages audiences to read from top to bottom, left to right.

The approach blends elements from traditional and visually enhanced résumés, but also emphasizes icons and includes graphics to enliven statistical information.

The horizontal dots create a visual rating system for self-evaluation, replacing phrases like "skilled in" or "experienced with."

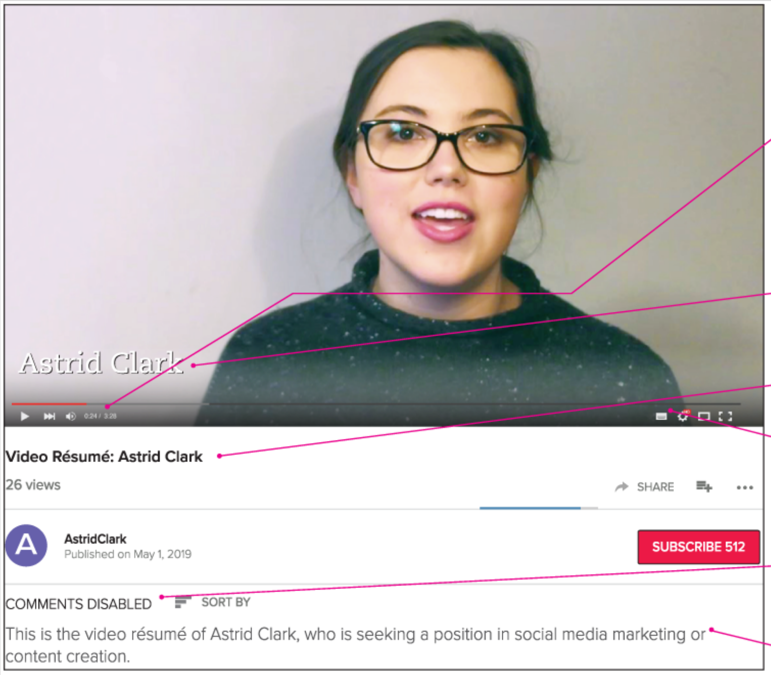
The line graph supports the job description by illustrating the impact of the work.

Captions help audiences interpret the graphics.

The pie chart supports the job description by illustrating where online work time is spent.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 10.6 Infographic Résumé



This is the video résumé of Astrid Clark, who is seeking a position in social media marketing or content creation.

The video is brief, just a few minutes long. It includes a beginning that serves as an introduction, a middle that highlights key experiences, and an end that serves as a conclusion.

The video uses text overlays to provide context or additional information.

The title for the video is meaningful to audiences.

The video includes a closed captioning option, to accommodate audiences who are hard of hearing.

The video does not allow audiences to leave public comments.

The description of the video provides additional context.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 10.7 Video Résumé: Astrid Clark

GUIDELINES Planning a Nontraditional Résumé

The following five planning tasks will help you prepare a nontraditional résumé.

- ▶ **Analyze the job-search context.** Determine whether a nontraditional résumé is appropriate to the workplace culture for the job. Does the job posting invite applicants to submit a nontraditional résumé? If not, what is your reasoning for submitting one?
- ▶ **Consider your résumé content.** Think about which aspects of your content lend themselves to being redesigned for a nontraditional résumé, especially whether there are words and numbers that can be represented visually. Ask yourself what content might be well-suited to a video, and why.
- ▶ **Research software programs.** What software programs will you need to access in order to produce a nontraditional résumé? Will your current programs work, or will

you need to learn new programs? Keep in mind that if you are using free programs, there may be limits to what you can do with them.

- **Research delivery options.** Consider whether you will host a video résumé on your own website, through a streaming service such as YouTube or Vimeo, or by using a job-search portal that allows candidates to upload videos. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the different options?
- **Draft an element.** Test your ideas by drafting an element of a nontraditional résumé. What's a good starting point? Why? You may need to change your plans depending on the results of your draft.

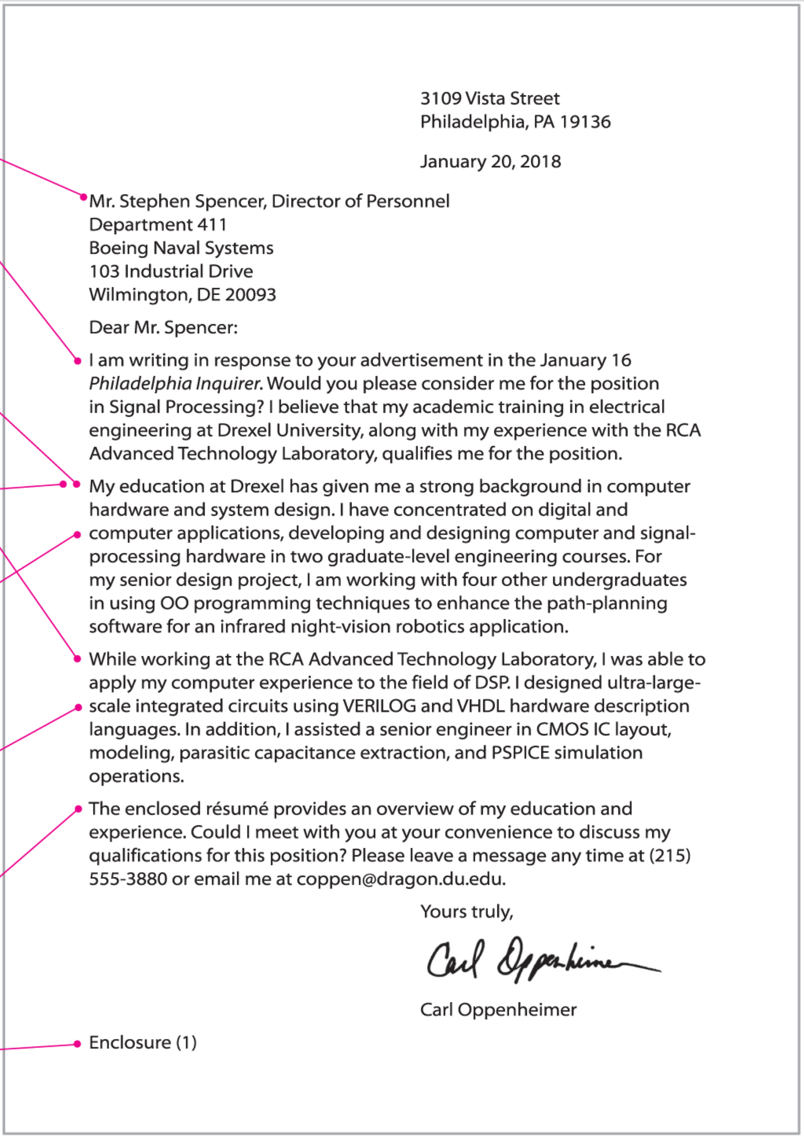
Writing Job-Application Letters

Although the job-application letter (sometimes called a *cover letter*) may seem obsolete, many experts agree that it is still important. Applicants can explain more clearly in a letter than in a résumé how their qualifications match the employer's requirements. They can explain their professional relationship with someone in the employer's organization or gaps in their employment history. Perhaps most important, applicants can show that they can write well.

At a minimum, the cover letter serves as the applicant's introduction to the hiring manager, identifying the position being applied for and providing an overview of qualifications. The letter can't include as many details as the résumé, but it can emphasize a few key points. It can also include a specific request for an interview.

Many of the job boards listed on p. 261 in "Understanding Job-Search Strategies" include samples of job-application letters.

Figure 10.8 shows a job-application letter that can be printed and mailed, uploaded to a job-application website, or attached to a brief email. In all three cases, a résumé would be included along with the cover letter.



3109 Vista Street
Philadelphia, PA 19136

January 20, 2018

Mr. Stephen Spencer, Director of Personnel
Department 411
Boeing Naval Systems
103 Industrial Drive
Wilmington, DE 20093

Dear Mr. Spencer:

I am writing in response to your advertisement in the January 16 *Philadelphia Inquirer*. Would you please consider me for the position in Signal Processing? I believe that my academic training in electrical engineering at Drexel University, along with my experience with the RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, qualifies me for the position.

My education at Drexel has given me a strong background in computer hardware and system design. I have concentrated on digital and computer applications, developing and designing computer and signal-processing hardware in two graduate-level engineering courses. For my senior design project, I am working with four other undergraduates in using OO programming techniques to enhance the path-planning software for an infrared night-vision robotics application.

While working at the RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, I was able to apply my computer experience to the field of DSP. I designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and VHDL hardware description languages. In addition, I assisted a senior engineer in CMOS IC layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and PSPICE simulation operations.

The enclosed résumé provides an overview of my education and experience. Could I meet with you at your convenience to discuss my qualifications for this position? Please leave a message any time at (215) 555-3880 or email me at coppen@dragon.du.edu.

Yours truly,

Carl Oppenheimer

Carl Oppenheimer

Enclosure (1)

For information about letter formatting, see "Writing Letters" in Ch. 9 on p. 237.

Notice that the writer's own name does not appear at the top of his letter.

In the inside address, he uses the reader's courtesy title, "Mr."

The introductory paragraph identifies the writer's source of information about the job, identifies the position he is applying for, states that he wishes to be considered, and forecasts the rest of the letter.

In a letter, you can't discuss everything in the résumé. Rather, you select a few key points from the résumé to emphasize.

Note that both the education paragraph and the employment paragraph begin with a clear topic sentence.

The writer points out that he has taken two graduate courses, and he discusses his senior design project, which makes him look more like an engineer solving a problem than a recent graduate.

Notice how the writer makes a smooth transition from the discussion of his college education to the discussion of his internship experience.

A concluding paragraph usually includes a reference to the résumé, a polite but confident request for an interview, and the writer's contact information.

The enclosure notation refers to the writer's résumé. Do not use an enclosure notation unless you are literally enclosing something along with the letter in the envelope.

FIGURE 10.8 Job-Application Letter

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Preparing for a Job Interview

If your résumé is successful, you will be invited to a job interview, where both you and the organization can start to see whether you would be a good fit there. Job boards on the internet can help you prepare for a job interview. They discuss questions such as the following:

- When should you arrive for the interview?
- What should you wear?
- How might interviewers interpret your body language?
- What questions are you likely to be asked?
- How long should your answers be?
- How do you know when the interviewer wishes to end the interview?
- How can you get the interviewer's contact information so you can write a follow-up letter?

GUIDELINES Preparing for a Job Interview

For every hour you spend in a job interview, you need to spend many hours in preparation.

- ▶ **Study job interviews.** The hundreds of books and websites devoted to job interviews cover everything from how to do your initial research to common interview questions to how to dress. Although you can't prepare for everything that will happen, you can prepare for a lot of things.

- **Study the organization to which you applied.** If you show that you haven't done your homework, the interviewer might conclude that you're always unprepared. Learn what products or services the organization provides, how well it has done in recent years, what its plans are, and so forth. Start with the organization's own website, especially corporate blogs, and then proceed to other online and print resources. Search for the organization's name on the internet.

For more about research techniques, see Ch. 5.

- **Think about what you can offer the organization.** Your goal during the interview is to show how you can help the organization accomplish its goals. Think about how your academic career, your work experience, and your personal characteristics and experiences have prepared you to solve problems and carry out projects to help the organization succeed. Make notes about projects you carried out in courses, experiences on the job, and experiences in your personal life that can serve as persuasive evidence to support claims about your qualifications.
- **Study lists of common interview questions.** Interviewers study these lists; you should, too. You're probably familiar with some of the favorites:
  — Can you tell me about yourself?
  — Where do you see yourself in five years?
  — Why did you apply to our company?
  — What do you see as your greatest strengths and weaknesses?
  — Tell me about an incident that taught you something important about yourself.
  — What was your best course in college? Why?
- **Compile a list of questions you wish to ask.** Near the end of the interview, the interviewer will probably ask if you have any questions. The interviewer expects you to have compiled a brief list of questions about working for the organization. Do not focus on salary, vacation days, or sick leave. Instead, ask about ways you can continue to develop as a professional, improving your ability to contribute to the organization.
- **Rehearse for the interview.** It's one thing to think about how you might answer an interview question. It's another to have to answer it. Rehearse for the interview by asking friends or colleagues to play the role of the interviewer, making up questions that you haven't thought about. Then ask these people for constructive criticism.

GUIDELINES Preparing for an Online Job Interview

Some employers now hold interviews online using video-based software such as Skype or Zoom, especially if the position attracts applicants from around the country, or even the world. Although online interviews involve some of the same preparation activities as face-to-face interviews, they also require applicants to consider a range of additional issues.

- **Prepare your physical environment.** The environment for your interview should be business-like and tidy. Remove any embarrassing personal effects. The space should be well lit but free of light sources that can cast a shadow on your face. The space should also be as quiet as possible, and you should make arrangements to ensure that people or pets will not interrupt the interview. Of course, be sure to silence your cell phone. Set out paper and a writing utensil for any necessary note taking, and have a copy of your resume on hand for easy reference.
- **Test your computer setup.** It is important to become familiar with how the software and hardware works. The best way to do this is to ask a friend to conduct a mock online interview with you. Then evaluate how well the session went. Be sure to resolve any technical issues with your video and audio equipment. Also, be sure that your internet connection is fast and stable enough to support a smooth video-based interview.
- **Rehearse how you deliver nonverbal feedback.** Good eye contact and body language are essential to a successful online interview. If you position your webcam so that it is around eye level, you will be centered on the screen. And practice looking at your webcam while answering questions instead of at the interviewer on the screen. This approach will simulate good eye contact. Answers to interview questions should be accompanied by appropriate nonverbal gestures. Nod and smile when appropriate to indicate you are listening, and avoid fidgeting. Hand gestures should be kept to a minimum and close to the body to stay within the frame of the webcam. Be sure to ask your practice partners to assess your nonverbal feedback.

Following Up After an Interview

After an interview, you should write a letter of appreciation, typically in the form of an email for speed of delivery. If you are offered the job, you also may have to write a letter accepting or rejecting the position.

- **Letter of appreciation after an interview.** Thank the interviewer for taking the time to see you, and emphasize your particular qualifications. You can also restate your interest in the position and mention a specific topic of conversation you found particularly interesting or a fact about the position you found exciting. A follow-up letter can do more good with less effort than any other step in the job-application procedure because so few candidates take the time to write one.

> Dear Mr. Weaver:
>
> Thank you for taking the time yesterday to show me your facilities and to introduce me to your colleagues.
>
> Your company's advances in piping design were particularly impressive. As a person with hands-on experience in piping design, I can appreciate the advantages your design will have.
>
> The vitality of your projects and the good fellowship among your employees further confirm my initial belief that Cynergo would be a fine place to work. I would look forward to joining your staff.

Sincerely yours,

Harriet Bommarito

- **Letter accepting a job offer.** This one is easy: express appreciation, show enthusiasm, and repeat the major terms of your employment.

  Dear Mr. Weaver:

  Thank you very much for the offer to join your staff. I accept.

  I look forward to joining your design team on Monday, July 19. The salary, as you indicate in your letter, is $48,250.

  As you have recommended, I will get in touch with Mr. Matthews in Personnel to get a start on the paperwork.

  I appreciate the trust you have placed in me, and I assure you that I will do what I can to be a productive team member at Cynergo.

  Sincerely yours,

  Mark Greenberg

- **Letter rejecting a job offer.** If you decide not to accept a job offer, express your appreciation for the offer and, if appropriate, explain why you are declining it. Remember, you might want to work for this company at some time in the future.

  Dear Mr. Weaver:

  I appreciate very much the offer to join your staff.

Although I am certain that I would benefit greatly from working at Cynergo, I have decided to take a job with a firm in Baltimore, where I have been accepted at Johns Hopkins to pursue my master's degree at night.

Again, thank you for your generous offer.

Sincerely yours,

Cynthia O'Malley

- **Letter acknowledging a rejection.** Why write back after you have been rejected for a job? To maintain good relations. You might get a phone call the next week explaining that the person who accepted the job has had a change of plans and offering you the position.

  Dear Mr. Weaver:

  I was disappointed to learn that I will not have a chance to join your staff, because I feel that I could make a substantial contribution. However, I realize that job decisions are complex, involving many candidates and many factors.

  Thank you very much for the courtesy you have shown me.

  Sincerely yours,

  Paul Goicochea

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

Your Professional Brand

☐ Have you researched how others in your field present themselves online?
☐ Is the information you present about yourself online truthful, well written, and appropriate?
☐ Does your online information describe your job skills and focus on problem-solving and accomplishments?
☐ Have you created a strong online presence, perhaps by creating your own website?
☐ Do you participate actively and professionally online through sites such as LinkedIn, Facebook, and Twitter?
☐ Do you have a business card?
☐ Have you practiced an “elevator pitch”?

When presenting yourself online, have you avoided

☐ provocative or inappropriate photos?
☐ suggestion of drug or alcohol use?
☐ negative comments about a former employer or co-worker?
☐ showing poor communication skills?
☐ discriminatory comments about others?

Finding a Job

☐ Have you tried searching on organizations' websites?
☐ Have you tried searching on internet job boards?
☐ Have you tried networking in person and online?
☐ Have you tried using university or professional placement services?
☐ Have you made the most of LinkedIn's employment features?

Résumé

☐ Does the résumé include appropriate keywords?
☐ Does the identifying information contain your name, address, phone number, and email address?
☐ Does the résumé include a clear summary of your qualifications?
☐ Does the education section include your degree, your institution and its location, and your (anticipated) date of graduation, as well as any other information that will help a reader appreciate your qualifications?
☐ Does the employment section include, for each job, the dates of employment, the organization's name and location, and (if you are writing a chronological résumé) your position or title, as well as a description of your duties and accomplishments?
☐ Have you used strong action verbs?
☐ Does the interests-and-activities section include relevant hobbies or activities, including extracurricular interests?

☐ Have you omitted any personal information that might reflect poorly on you?
☐ Does the résumé include any other appropriate sections?

Job-Application Letter

☐ Does the introductory paragraph identify the position you are applying for, state that you wish to be considered, and forecast the rest of the letter?
☐ Do the education and employment paragraphs respond to your reader's needs with a unified idea introduced by a topic sentence?
☐ Does the concluding paragraph include a reference to your résumé, a request for an interview, your phone number, and your email address?
☐ Does the letter include an enclosure notation?

Preparing for a Job Interview

Did you

☐ study job interviews?
☐ study the organization to which you applied?
☐ think about what you can offer the organization?
☐ study lists of common interview questions?
☐ compile a list of questions you wish to ask?
☐ rehearse for the interview?

Following Up

☐ Does your letter of appreciation for a job interview thank the interviewer and briefly restate your qualifications?
☐ Does your letter accepting a job offer show enthusiasm and repeat the major terms of your employment?
☐ Does your letter rejecting a job offer express your appreciation for the offer and, if appropriate, explain why you are declining it?
☐ Does your letter acknowledging a rejection have a positive tone that will help you maintain good relations?

EXERCISES

1. Browse a job-search website such as Indeed.com. Then, list and briefly describe five positions being offered in a field that interests you. What skills, experience, and background does each position require? What is the salary range for each position?
2. Locate three job websites that provide interactive forms for creating a résumé automatically. In a brief memo to your instructor, note the three URLs and describe the strengths and weaknesses of each site. Which job board appears to be the easiest to use? Why?

3. **TEAM EXERCISE** The following résumé was submitted in response to this ad: “CAM Technician to work with other technicians and manage some GIS and mapping projects. Also perform updating of the GIS database. Experience required.” In a small group, analyze the effectiveness of the résumé. What are some of its problems?

Kenneth Bradley	
530 Maplegrove	Bozeman, Mont. 59715 (406)-484-2916
Objective	Entry level position as a CAM Technician. I am also interested in staying with the company until after graduation, possibly moving into a position as a Mechanical Engineer.
Education	Enrolled at Montana State University August 2017- Present
Employment	Fred Meyer 65520 Chinden Garden City, MT (208)-323-7030 ***Janitor- 7/16-6/17*** Responsible for cleaning entire store, as well as equipment maintenance and floor maintenance and repair. ***Assistant Janitorial Manager- 6/17-9/17*** Responsible for cleaning entire store, equipment maintenance, floor

	maintenance and repair, scheduling, and managing personnel ***Head of Freight- 9/17-Present*** In charge of braking down all new freight, stocking shelves, cleaning the stock room, and managing personnel **Montana** State University Bozeman, MT ***Teachers Aide ME 120- 1/16-5/16*** ***Teachers Aide ME 120*** In charge of keeping students in line and answering any questions related to drafting.
References	Timothy Rayburn Janitorial Manager (406)-555-8571 Eduardo Perez Co-worker (406)-555-2032

4. **TEAM EXERCISE** The following job-application letter responds to this ad: “CAM Technician to work with other technicians and manage some GIS and mapping projects. Also perform updating of the GIS database. Experience required.” In a small group, analyze the effectiveness of the letter and suggest how it could be improved.

   530 Maplegrove
   Bozeman, Mont. 59715
   November 11, 2020

Mr. Bruce Hedley
Adecco Technical
Bozeman, Mont. 59715

Dear Mr. Hedley,

I am writing you in response to your ad on Monsterjobs.com. Would you please consider me for the position of CAM technician? I believe that my academic schooling at Montana State University, along with my work experience would make me an excellent candidate for the position.

While at Montana State University, I took one class in particular that applies well to this job. It was a CAD drafting class, which I received a 97% in. The next semester I was a Teachers Aid for that same class, where I was responsible for answering questions about drafting from my peers. This gave me a much stronger grasp on all aspects of CAD work than I could have ever gotten from simply taking the class.

My employment at Fred Meyer is also a notable experience. While there is no technical aspects of either positions I have held, I believe that my experience there will shed light on my work ethic and interpersonal skills. I started out as a graveyard shift janitor, with no previous experience. All of my coworkers were at least thirty years older than me, and had a minimum of five years of janitorial experience. However after working there for only one year I was promoted to assistant manager. Three months after I received this position, I was informed that Fred Meyer was going to contract out the janitorial work and that all of us would be losing our jobs. I decided that I wanted to stay within the company, and I was able to receive a position as head of freight.

The enclosed resumé provides an overview of my education and work experience. I would appreciate an opportunity to meet with you at your convenience to discuss my qualifications for this position. Please write me at the above address or leave a message any time. If you would like to contact me by email, my email address is kbradley@montanastate.edu.

Yours truly,
Ken Bradley

CASE 10: Writing a Cover Letter

After the director of the Career Center at your school visits one of your classes, you decide to visit the Career Center's website. You study the available resources, but you find that they don't offer as much support as you and your fellow classmates need to create effective job applications or cover letters. You decide to write the director with your concerns. She agrees with your critique and asks you to put together a model resource for seniors at your college. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started with your project.

CHAPTER 11

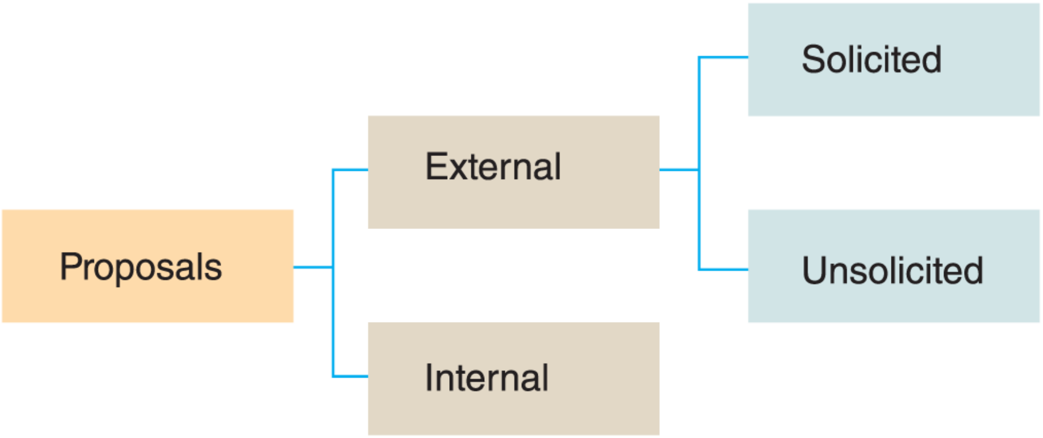
Writing Proposals

The Logistics of Proposals
The "Deliverables" of Proposals
Persuasion and Proposals
The Structure of the Proposal
Sample Internal Proposal

A PROPOSAL IS an offer to carry out research or to provide a product or service. For instance, a physical therapist might write a proposal to her supervisor for funding to attend a convention to learn about current rehabilitation practices. A defense contractor might submit a proposal to design and build a fleet of drones for the Air Force. A homeless shelter might submit a proposal to a philanthropic organization for funding to provide more services to the homeless community. Whether a project is small or big, within your own company or outside it, it is likely to call for a proposal.

The Logistics of Proposals

Proposals can be classified as either internal or external; external proposals are either solicited or unsolicited. Figure 11.1 shows the relationships among these four terms.



Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.1 The Logistics of Proposals

FOCUS ON PROCESS Writing Proposals

When writing a proposal, pay special attention to these steps in the writing process.

PLANNING	Consider your readers' knowledge about and attitudes toward what you are proposing. Use the techniques discussed in Chapters 4 and 5 to learn as much as you can about your readers' needs and about the subject. Also consider whether you have the personnel, facilities, and equipment to do what you propose to do.

DRAFTING	Collaboration is critical for large proposals because no one person has the time and expertise to do all the work. See Chapter 4 for more about collaboration. In writing the proposal, follow the instructions in any request for proposal (RFP) or information for bid (IFB) from the prospective customer. If there are no instructions, follow the structure for proposals outlined in this chapter.
REVISING	External proposals usually have a firm deadline. Build in time to revise, edit, and proofread the proposal thoroughly and still get it to readers on time. See the Writer's Checklist at the end of this chapter.
EDITING	See Chapter 6 for advice on writing correct and effective sentences.
PROOFREADING	See Appendix, Part B, for proofreading tips.

INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL PROPOSALS

Internal proposals are submitted to the writer's own organization; external proposals are submitted to another organization.

Internal Proposals

An internal proposal is an argument, submitted within an organization, for carrying out an activity that will benefit the organization. An internal proposal might recommend that the organization conduct research, purchase a product, or change some aspect of its policies or procedures.

For example, while working on a project in the laboratory, you realize that if you had a fiber-curl measurement system, you could do your job better and faster. The increased productivity would save your company the cost of the system in a few months. Your supervisor asks you to write a memo describing what you want, why you want it, what you're going to do with it, and what it costs; if your request seems reasonable and the money is available, you'll likely get the new system.

Often, the scope of a proposal determines its format. A request for a small amount of money might be conveyed orally or by email or a brief memo. A request for a large amount, however, is likely to be presented in a formal report.

External Proposals

No organization produces all the products or provides all the services it needs. Websites need to be designed, written, and maintained; inventory databases need to be created; facilities need to be constructed. Sometimes, projects require unusual expertise, such as sophisticated market analyses. Because many companies supply such products and services, most organizations require a prospective supplier to compete for the business by submitting a proposal, a document arguing that it deserves the business.

SOLICITED AND UNSOLICITED PROPOSALS

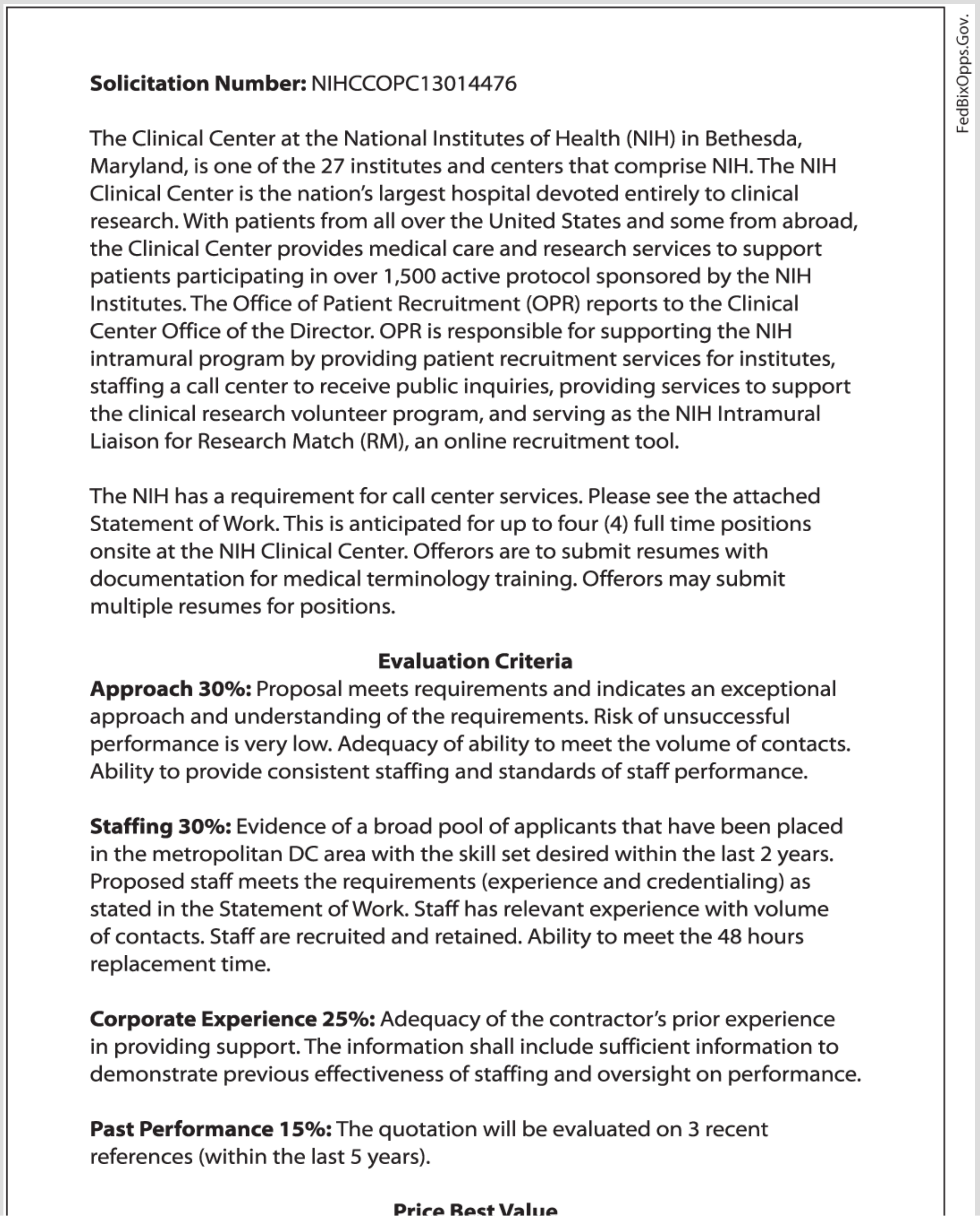
External proposals are either solicited or unsolicited. A *solicited proposal* is submitted in response to a request from the prospective customer. An *unsolicited proposal* is submitted by a supplier who believes that the prospective customer has a need for goods or services.

Solicited Proposals

When an organization wants to purchase a product or service, it publishes one of two basic kinds of statements:

- An *information for bid (IFB)* is used for standard products. When a state agency needs desktop computers, for instance, it informs computer manufacturers of the configuration it needs. All other things being equal, the supplier that offers the lowest bid for a product with that configuration wins the contract. When an agency solicits bids for a specific brand and model, the solicitation is sometimes called a *request for quotation (RFQ)*.
- A *request for proposal (RFP)* is used for more customized products or services. For example, if the Air Force needs an “identification, friend or foe” system, the RFP it publishes might be a long and detailed set of technical specifications. The supplier that can design, produce, and deliver the device most closely resembling the specifications — at a reasonable price — will probably win the contract.

Most organizations issue IFBs and RFPs in print and online. Government solicitations are published on the beta.SAM.gov website. Figure 11.2 (on page 294) shows a portion of an RFQ for the National Institutes of Health that originally appeared on that site.



Solicitation Number: NIHCCOPC13014476

The Clinical Center at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in Bethesda, Maryland, is one of the 27 institutes and centers that comprise NIH. The NIH Clinical Center is the nation’s largest hospital devoted entirely to clinical research. With patients from all over the United States and some from abroad, the Clinical Center provides medical care and research services to support patients participating in over 1,500 active protocol sponsored by the NIH Institutes. The Office of Patient Recruitment (OPR) reports to the Clinical Center Office of the Director. OPR is responsible for supporting the NIH intramural program by providing patient recruitment services for institutes, staffing a call center to receive public inquiries, providing services to support the clinical research volunteer program, and serving as the NIH Intramural Liaison for Research Match (RM), an online recruitment tool.

The NIH has a requirement for call center services. Please see the attached Statement of Work. This is anticipated for up to four (4) full time positions onsite at the NIH Clinical Center. Offerors are to submit resumes with documentation for medical terminology training. Offerors may submit multiple resumes for positions.

Evaluation Criteria

Approach 30%: Proposal meets requirements and indicates an exceptional approach and understanding of the requirements. Risk of unsuccessful performance is very low. Adequacy of ability to meet the volume of contacts. Ability to provide consistent staffing and standards of staff performance.

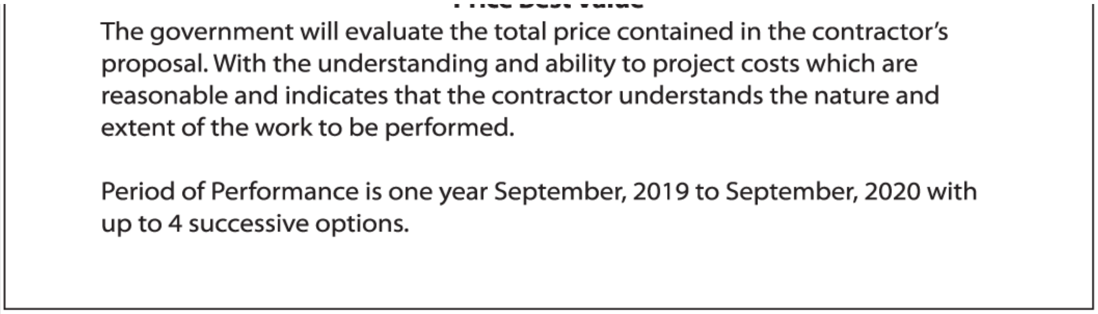
Staffing 30%: Evidence of a broad pool of applicants that have been placed in the metropolitan DC area with the skill set desired within the last 2 years. Proposed staff meets the requirements (experience and credentialing) as stated in the Statement of Work. Staff has relevant experience with volume of contacts. Staff are recruited and retained. Ability to meet the 48 hours replacement time.

Corporate Experience 25%: Adequacy of the contractor’s prior experience in providing support. The information shall include sufficient information to demonstrate previous effectiveness of staffing and oversight on performance.

Past Performance 15%: The quotation will be evaluated on 3 recent references (within the last 5 years).

Price Best Value

FedBixOpps.Gov.



The government will evaluate the total price contained in the contractor's proposal. With the understanding and ability to project costs which are reasonable and indicates that the contractor understands the nature and extent of the work to be performed.

Period of Performance is one year September, 2019 to September, 2020 with up to 4 successive options.

FIGURE 11.2 Excerpt from an RFQ

This is an excerpt from an RFQ from the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The NIH is seeking to hire up to four call-center personnel. The specific details of the skills and experience required for the four persons are provided in a separate file.

This RFQ spells out the evaluation criteria by which the "offerors" will be judged.

The RFQ states that the solicitation is for "price best value." In other words, the contract will not necessarily be awarded to the lowest bidder. It will be awarded to the bidder that offers what the evaluators consider to be the best value, regardless of price.

Unsolicited Proposals

An unsolicited proposal is like a solicited proposal except that it does not refer to an RFP. In most cases, even though the potential customer did not formally request the proposal, the supplier was invited to submit the proposal after people from the two organizations met and discussed the project. Because proposals are expensive to write, suppliers are reluctant to submit them without assurances that they will be considered carefully. Thus, the word *unsolicited* is only partially accurate.

The “Deliverables” of Proposals

A *deliverable* is what a supplier will deliver at the end of a project. Deliverables can be classified into two major categories: research or goods and services.

RESEARCH PROPOSALS

In a research proposal, you are promising to perform research and then provide a report about it. For example, a biologist for a state bureau of land management writes a proposal to the National Science Foundation requesting resources to build a window-lined tunnel in the forest to study tree and plant roots and the growth of fungi. The biologist also wishes to investigate the relationship between plant growth and the activity of insects and worms. The deliverable will be a report submitted to the National Science Foundation and, perhaps, an article published in a professional journal.

Research proposals often lead to two other applications: progress reports and recommendation reports.

After a proposal has been approved and the researchers have begun work, they often submit one or more *progress reports,* which tell the sponsor of the project how the work is proceeding. Is it following the plan of work outlined in the proposal? Is it going according to schedule? Is it staying within budget?

For more about progress reports and recommendation reports, see Chs. 12 and 13.

At the end of the project, researchers prepare a *recommendation report,* often called a *final report,* a *project report,* a *completion report,* or simply a *report*. A recommendation report tells the whole story of a research project, beginning with the problem or opportunity that motivated it and continuing with the methods used in carrying it out, the results, and the researchers' conclusions and recommendations.

People carry out research projects to satisfy their curiosity and to advance professionally. Organizations often require that their professional employees carry out research and publish in appropriate journals or books. Government researchers and university professors, for instance, are expected to remain active in their fields. Writing proposals is one way to get the resources — time and money for travel, equipment, and assistants — to carry out research.

GOODS AND SERVICES PROPOSALS

A *goods and services proposal* is an offer to supply a tangible product (a fleet of automobiles), a service (building maintenance), or some combination of the two (the construction of a building).

A vast network of goods and services contracts spans the working world. The U.S. government, the world's biggest customer, spent over $375 billion in 2019 buying military equipment from organizations that submitted proposals (USAspending.gov, 2019). But goods and services contracts are by no means limited to government contractors. An auto manufacturer might buy its engines from another manufacturer; a company that makes spark plugs might buy its steel and other raw materials from another company.

Another kind of goods and services proposal requests funding to support a local organization. For example, a women's shelter might receive some of its funding from a city or county but might rely on grants from private philanthropies. Typically, an organization such as a shelter would apply for a grant to fund increased demand for its services because of a natural disaster or an economic slowdown in the community. Or it might apply for a grant to fund a pilot program to offer job training at the shelter. Most large corporations have philanthropic programs offering grants to help local colleges and universities, arts organizations, and social-service agencies.

Persuasion and Proposals

A proposal is an argument. You must convince readers that the future benefits will outweigh the immediate and projected costs. Basically, you must persuade your readers of three things:

1. that you understand the context: what your readers need
2. that you have already determined what you plan to do and that you are able to do it
3. that you are a professional and are committed to fulfilling your promises

UNDERSTANDING CONTEXTS

For more about analyzing your audience, see Ch. 4.

The most crucial element of the proposal is the definition of the problem or opportunity to which the proposed project responds. Although this point seems obvious, people who evaluate proposals agree that the most common weakness they see is an inadequate or inaccurate understanding of the problem or opportunity.

Internal Contexts

Writing an internal proposal is both simpler and more complicated than writing an external one. It is simpler because you have greater access to internal readers than you do to external readers and you can get information more easily. However, it is more complicated because you might find it hard to understand the situation in your organization. Some colleagues will not tell you that your proposal is a long shot or that your ideas might threaten someone in the organization. Before you write an internal proposal, discuss your ideas with as many potential readers as you can to learn what those in the organization really think of them.

External Contexts

When you receive an RFP, study it thoroughly. If you don't understand something in it, contact the organization. People there will be happy to clarify it: a proposal based on misunderstood needs wastes everyone's time.

When you write an unsolicited proposal, analyze your audience carefully. How can you define the problem or opportunity so that readers will understand it? Keep in mind readers' needs and, if possible, their backgrounds. Concentrate on how the problem has decreased productivity or quality or how your ideas would create new opportunities. When you submit an unsolicited proposal, your task in many cases is to convince readers that a need exists. Even if you have reached an understanding with some of your potential customer's representatives, your proposal will still have to persuade other officials in the company. Most readers will reject a proposal as soon as they realize that it doesn't address their needs.

When you are preparing a proposal to be submitted to an organization in another culture, keep in mind the following six suggestions (Newman, 2011):

- **Understand that what makes an argument persuasive can differ from one culture to another.** Paying attention to the welfare of the company or the community might be more persuasive than offering a low bottom-line price. Representatives of an American company were surprised to learn that the Venezuelan readers of their proposal had selected a French company whose staff "had been making personal visits for years, bringing their families, and engaging in social activities long before there was any question of a contract" (Thrush, 2000).
- **Budget enough time for translating.** If your proposal has to be translated into another language, build in plenty of time. Translating long technical documents is a lengthy process because, even though some of the work can be done by computer software, the machine translation needs to be reviewed by native speakers of the target language.

For more about graphics, see Ch. 8

- **Use simple graphics, with captions.** To reduce the chances of misunderstanding, use a lot of simple graphics, such as pie charts and bar graphs. Include captions so that readers can understand the graphics easily, without having to look through the text to see what each graphic means.

- **Write short sentences, using common vocabulary.** Short sentences are easier to understand than long sentences. Choose words that have few meanings. For example, use the word *right* as the opposite of *left*; use *correct* as the opposite of *incorrect*.
- **Use local conventions regarding punctuation, spelling, and mechanics.** Be aware that these conventions differ from place to place, even in the English-speaking world.
- **Ask if the prospective customer will do a read-through.** A *read-through* is the process of reading a draft of a proposal to look for any misunderstandings due to language or cultural differences. Why do prospective customers do this? Because it's in everyone's interest for the proposal to respond clearly to the customer's needs.

DESCRIBING WHAT YOU PLAN TO DO

Once you have shown that you understand what needs to be done and why, describe what you plan to do. Convince your readers that you can respond effectively to the situation you have just described. Discuss procedures and equipment you would use. If appropriate, justify your choices. For example, if you say you want to do ultrasonic testing on a structure, explain why, unless the reason is obvious.

Present a complete picture of what you would do from the first day of the project to the last. You need more than enthusiasm and good faith; you need a detailed plan showing that you have already started to do the work. Although no proposal can anticipate every question about what you plan to do, the more planning you have done before you submit the proposal, the greater the chances you will be able to do the work successfully if it is approved.

DEMONSTRATING YOUR PROFESSIONALISM

Once you have shown that you understand readers' needs and can offer a well-conceived plan, demonstrate that you are the kind of person (or that yours is the kind of organization) that is committed to delivering what you promise. Convince readers that you have the pride, ingenuity, and perseverance to solve the problems that are likely to occur. In short, show that you are a professional.

GUIDELINES Demonstrating Your Professionalism in a Proposal

In your proposal, demonstrate your ability to carry out the project by providing four kinds of information:

- **Credentials and work history.** Show that you know how to do this project because you have done similar ones. Who are the people in your organization with the qualifications to carry out the project? What equipment and facilities do you have that will enable you to do the work? What management structure will you use to coordinate the activities and keep the project running smoothly?
- **Work schedule.** Sometimes, called a *task schedule*, a work schedule is a graph or chart that shows when the various phases of the project will be carried out. The work schedule reveals more about your attitudes toward your work than about what you will be doing on any given day. A detailed work schedule shows that you have tried to foresee problems that might threaten the project.

- ▶ **Quality-control measures.** Describe how you will evaluate the effectiveness and efficiency of your work. Quality-control procedures might consist of technical evaluations carried out periodically by the project staff, on-site evaluations by recognized authorities or by the prospective customer, or progress reports.
- ▶ **Budget.** Most proposals conclude with a detailed budget, a statement of how much the project will cost. Including a budget is another way of showing that you have done your homework on a project.

ETHICS NOTE

WRITING HONEST PROPOSALS

When an organization approves a proposal, it needs to trust that the people who will carry out the project will do it professionally. Dishonest proposal writers, however, have perfected a number of ways to trick prospective customers into thinking the project will go smoothly:

- saying that certain qualified people will participate in the project, even though they will not
- saying that the project will be finished by a certain date, even though it will not
- saying that the deliverable will have certain characteristics, even though it will not
- saying that the project will be completed under budget, even though it will not

Copying from another company's proposal is another common dishonest tactic. Proposals are protected by copyright law. An employee may not copy from a proposal he or she wrote while working for a different company.

There are three reasons to be honest in writing a proposal:

- to avoid serious legal trouble stemming from breach-of-contract suits
- to avoid acquiring a bad reputation, thus ruining your business
- to do the right thing

The Structure of the Proposal

Proposal structures vary greatly from one organization to another. A long, complex proposal might have 10 or more sections, including introduction, problem, objectives, solution, methods and resources, and management. If the authorizing agency provides an IFB, an RFP, an RFQ, or a set of guidelines, follow it closely. If you have no guidelines, or if you are writing an unsolicited proposal, use the structure shown here as a starting point. Then modify it according to your subject, your purpose, and the needs of your audience. An example of a proposal is presented in Figure 11.6 (pp. 306–12).

SUMMARY

For more about summaries, see “Executive Summary” in Ch. 13 on p. 350.

For a proposal of more than a few pages, provide a summary. Many organizations impose a length limit — such as 250 words — and ask the writer to present the summary, single-spaced, on the title page. The summary is crucial, because it might be the only item that readers study in their initial review of the proposal.

The summary covers the major elements of the proposal but devotes only a few sentences to each. Define the problem in a sentence or two. Next, describe the proposed program and provide a brief statement of your qualifications and experience. Some organizations wish to see the completion date and the final budget figure in the summary; others prefer that this information be presented separately on the title page along with other identifying information about the supplier and the proposed project.

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of the introduction is to help readers understand the context, scope, and organization of the proposal.

GUIDELINES Introducing a Proposal

The introduction to a proposal should answer the following seven questions:

- **What is the problem or opportunity?** Describe the problem or opportunity in specific monetary terms because the proposal itself will include a budget, and you want to convince your readers that spending money on what you propose is smart. Don’t say that a design problem is slowing down production; say that it is costing $4,500 a day in lost productivity.
- **What is the purpose of the proposal?** The purpose of the proposal is to describe a solution to a problem or an approach to an opportunity and propose activities that will culminate in a deliverable. Be specific in explaining what you want to do.
- **What is the background of the problem or opportunity?** Although you probably will not be telling your readers anything they don’t already know, show them that you understand the problem or opportunity, the circumstances that led to its discovery, the relationships or events that will affect the problem and its solution, and so on.
- **What are your sources of information?** Review the relevant literature, ranging from internal reports and memos to published articles or even books, so that readers will understand the context of your work.
- **What is the scope of the proposal?** If appropriate, indicate not only what you are proposing to do but also what you are not proposing to do.
- **What is the organization of the proposal?** Explain the organizational pattern you will use.

- **What are the key terms that you will use in the proposal?** If you will use any specialized or unusual terms, define them in the introduction.

PROPOSED PROGRAM

In the section on the proposed program, sometimes called the *plan of work*, explain what you want to do. Be specific. You won't persuade anyone by saying that you plan to "gather the data and analyze it." *How* will you gather and analyze the data? Justify your claims. Every word you say — or don't say — will give your readers evidence on which to base their decision.

If your project concerns a subject written about in the professional literature, show your familiarity with the scholarship by referring to the pertinent studies. However, don't just string together a bunch of citations. For example, don't write, "Carruthers (2015), Harding (2016), and Vega (2016) have all researched the relationship between global warming and groundwater contamination." Rather, use the recent literature to sketch the necessary background and provide the justification for your proposed program. For instance:

> Carruthers (2015), Harding (2016), and Vega (2016) have demonstrated the relationship between global warming and groundwater contamination. None of these studies, however, included an analysis of the long-term contamination of the aquifer. The current study will consist of....

For more about researching a subject, see Ch. 5.

You might include only a few references to recent research. However, if your topic is complex, you might devote several paragraphs or even several pages to recent scholarship.

Whether your project calls for primary research, secondary research, or both, the proposal will be unpersuasive if you haven't already done a substantial amount of research. For instance, say you are writing a proposal to do research on purchasing new industrial-grade lawn mowers for your company. Simply stating that you will visit Walmart, Lowe's, and Home Depot to see what kinds of lawn mowers they carry would be unpersuasive for two reasons:

- You need to justify why you are going to visit those three retailers rather than others. Anticipate your readers' questions: Why did you choose these three retailers? Why didn't you choose specialized dealers?
- You should already have determined what stores carry what kinds of lawn mowers and completed any other preliminary research. If you haven't done the homework, readers have no assurance that you will in fact do it or that it will pay off. If your supervisor authorizes the project and then you learn that none of the lawn mowers in these stores meets your organization's needs, you will have to go back and submit a different proposal — an embarrassing move.

Unless you can show in your proposed program that you have done the research — and that the research indicates that the project is likely to succeed — the reader has no reason to authorize the project.

QUALIFICATIONS AND EXPERIENCE

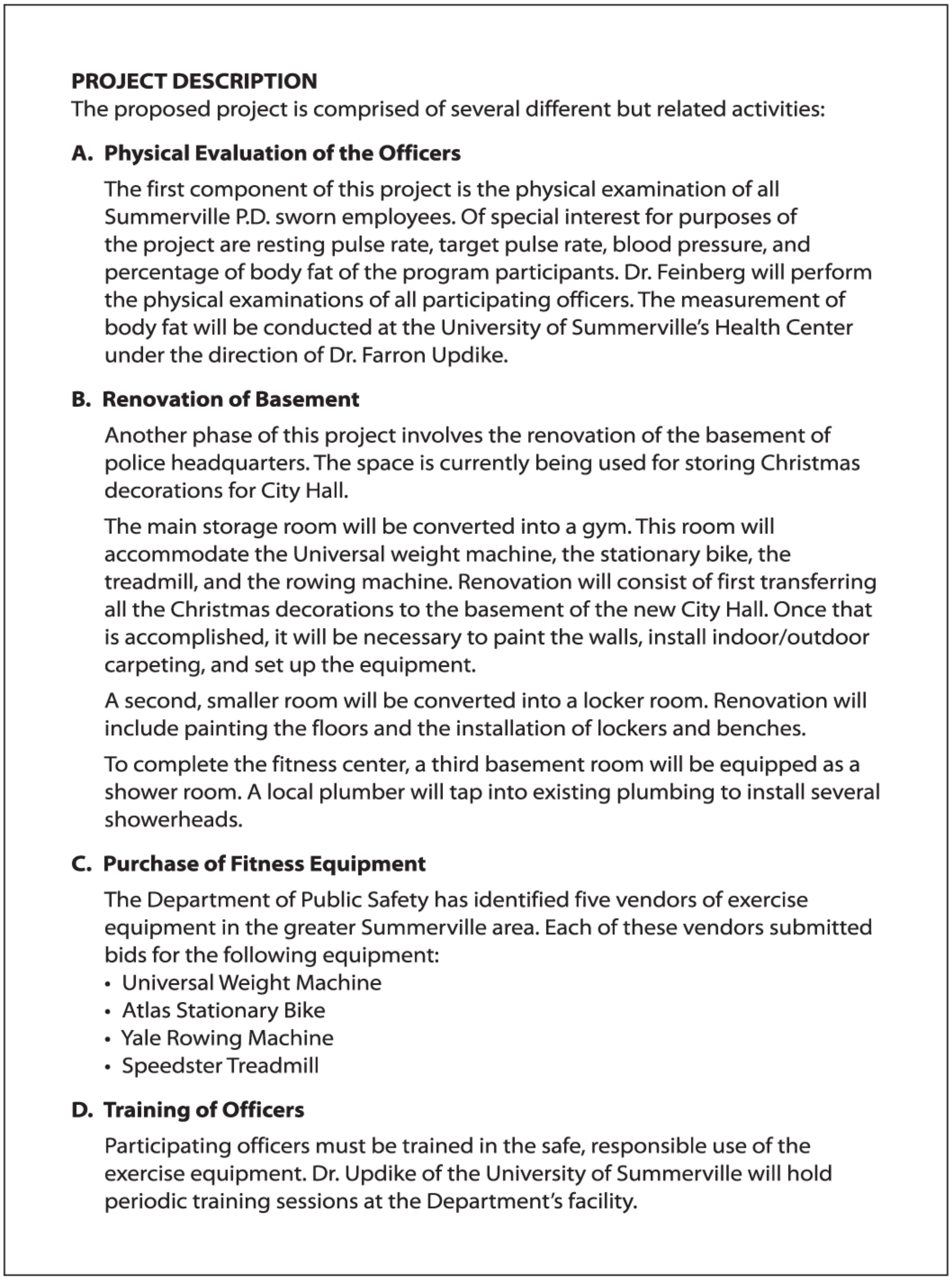
After you have described how you would carry out the project, show that you can do it. The more elaborate the proposal, the more substantial the discussion of your qualifications and experience has to be. For a small project, include a few paragraphs describing your credentials and those of your co-workers. For larger projects, include the résumés of the project leader, often called the *principal investigator*, and the other primary participants.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Writing the Proposed Program

The following project description is excerpted from a sample grant proposal seeking funding to begin a project to help police officers stay healthy. The questions in the margin ask you to think about how to describe the project in a proposal.

1. The writer has used a lettering system to describe the four main tasks that will be undertaken if the project receives funding. Is the lettering system effective?
2. How effective is the description of Task A? What factors contribute to the description's effectiveness or lack of effectiveness?
3. The descriptions of the tasks do not include cost estimates. Where would those estimates be presented in the proposal? Why would they be presented there?
4. How effective is the description of Task D? What additional information would improve its effectiveness?



PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The proposed project is comprised of several different but related activities:

A. Physical Evaluation of the Officers

The first component of this project is the physical examination of all Summerville P.D. sworn employees. Of special interest for purposes of the project are resting pulse rate, target pulse rate, blood pressure, and percentage of body fat of the program participants. Dr. Feinberg will perform the physical examinations of all participating officers. The measurement of body fat will be conducted at the University of Summerville's Health Center under the direction of Dr. Farron Updike.

B. Renovation of Basement

Another phase of this project involves the renovation of the basement of police headquarters. The space is currently being used for storing Christmas decorations for City Hall.

The main storage room will be converted into a gym. This room will accommodate the Universal weight machine, the stationary bike, the treadmill, and the rowing machine. Renovation will consist of first transferring all the Christmas decorations to the basement of the new City Hall. Once that is accomplished, it will be necessary to paint the walls, install indoor/outdoor carpeting, and set up the equipment.

A second, smaller room will be converted into a locker room. Renovation will include painting the floors and the installation of lockers and benches.

To complete the fitness center, a third basement room will be equipped as a shower room. A local plumber will tap into existing plumbing to install several showerheads.

C. Purchase of Fitness Equipment

The Department of Public Safety has identified five vendors of exercise equipment in the greater Summerville area. Each of these vendors submitted bids for the following equipment:

- Universal Weight Machine
- Atlas Stationary Bike
- Yale Rowing Machine
- Speedster Treadmill

D. Training of Officers

Participating officers must be trained in the safe, responsible use of the exercise equipment. Dr. Updike of the University of Summerville will hold periodic training sessions at the Department's facility.

Ohio Office of Criminal Justice Services.

External proposals should also discuss the qualifications of the supplier's organization, describing similar projects the supplier has completed successfully. For example, a company bidding on a contract to build a large suspension bridge should describe other suspension bridges it has built. It should also focus on the equipment and facilities the company already has and on the management structure that will ensure the project will go smoothly.

BUDGET

Good ideas aren't good unless they're affordable. The budget section of a proposal specifies how much the proposed program will cost.

Budgets vary greatly in scope and format. For simple internal proposals, add the budget request to the statement of the proposed program: "This study will take me two days, at a cost of about $400" or "The variable-speed recorder currently costs $225, with a 10 percent discount on orders of five or more." For more complicated internal proposals and for all external proposals, include a more explicit and complete budget.

Many budgets are divided into two parts: direct costs and indirect costs. *Direct costs* include such expenses as salaries and fringe benefits of program personnel, travel costs, and costs of necessary equipment, materials, and supplies. *Indirect costs* cover expenses that are sometimes called *overhead*: general secretarial and clerical expenses not devoted exclusively to any one project, as well as operating expenses such as costs of utilities and maintenance. Indirect costs are usually expressed as a percentage — ranging from less than 20 percent to more than 100 percent — of the direct expenses.

APPENDIXES

Many types of appendixes might accompany a proposal. Most organizations have boilerplate descriptions of the organization and of the projects it has completed. Another item commonly included in an appendix is a supporting letter: a testimonial to the supplier's skill and integrity, written by a reputable and well-known person in the field.

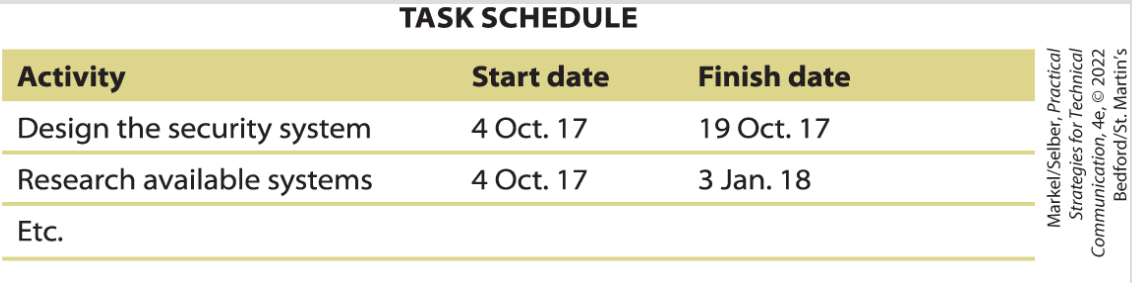
Two other sections commonly found in proposals can be positioned either in the appendix or in the main body of the document: the task schedule and the description of evaluation techniques.

TASK SCHEDULE

A *task schedule* is almost always presented in one of three graphical formats: as a table, a bar chart, or a network diagram.

Tables

The simplest but least informative way to present a schedule is in a table, as shown in Figure 11.3. As with all graphics, provide a textual reference that introduces and, if necessary, explains the table.



TASK SCHEDULE

Activity	Start date	Finish date
Design the security system	4 Oct. 17	19 Oct. 17
Research available systems	4 Oct. 17	3 Jan. 18
Etc.		

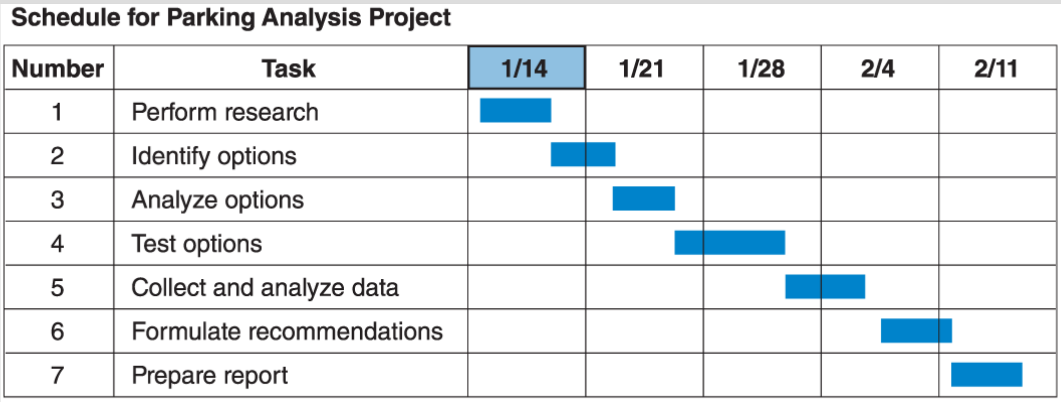
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.3 Task Schedule Presented as a Table

Although displaying information in a table is better than writing it out in sentences, readers still cannot “see” the information. They have to read the table to figure out how long each activity will last, and they cannot tell whether any of the activities are interdependent. They have no way of determining what would happen to the overall project schedule if one of the activities faced delays.

Bar Charts

Bar charts, also called *Gantt charts* after the early twentieth-century civil engineer who first used them, are more informative than tables. The basic bar chart shown in Figure 11.4 allows readers to see how long each task will take and whether different tasks will occur simultaneously. Like tables, however, bar charts do not indicate the interdependence of tasks.



Schedule for Parking Analysis Project

Number	Task	1/14	1/21	1/28	2/4	2/11
1	Perform research	■				
2	Identify options	■	■			
3	Analyze options		■			
4	Test options		■	■		
5	Collect and analyze data			■	■	
6	Formulate recommendations				■	■
7	Prepare report					■

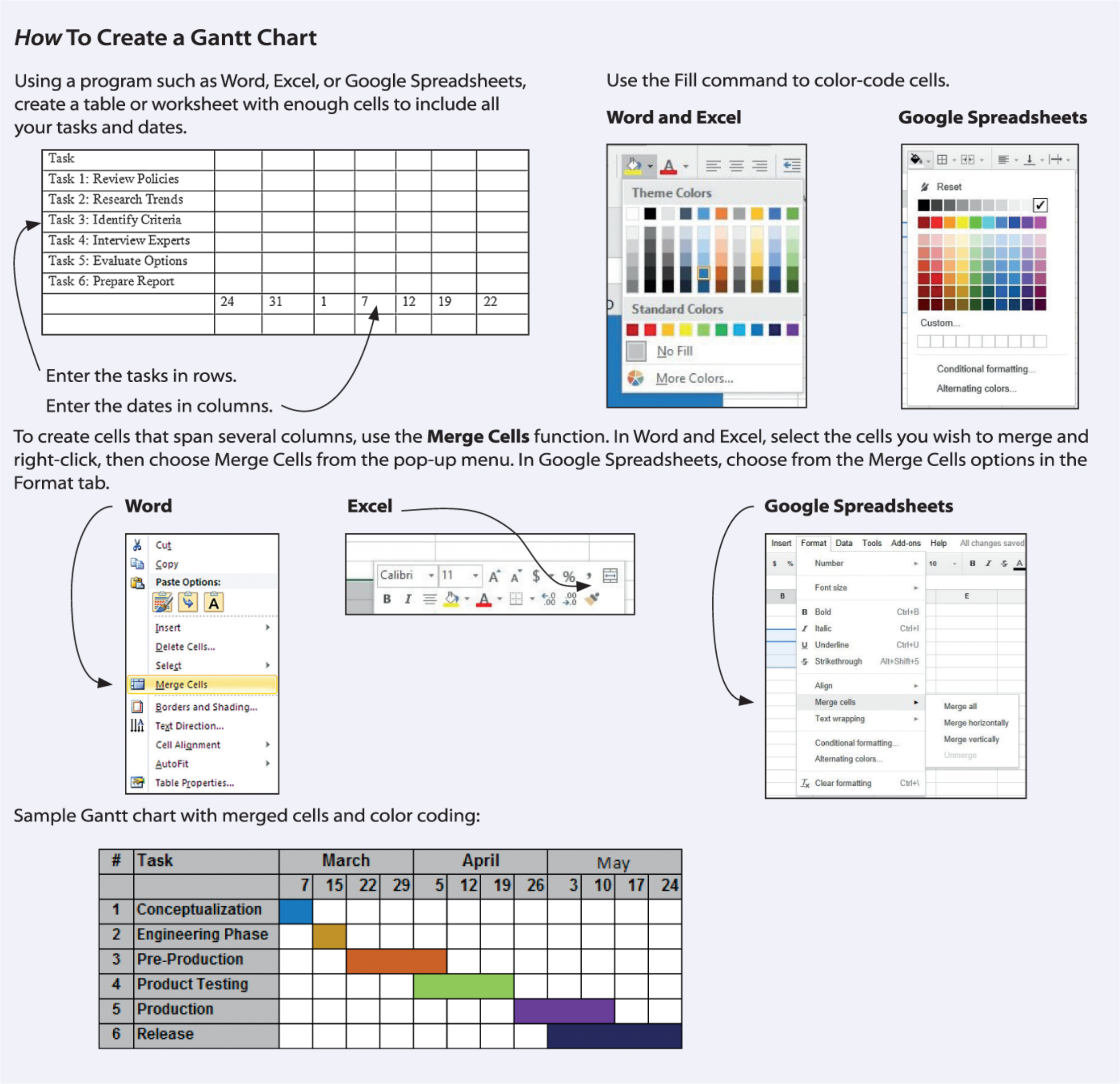
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.4 Task Schedule Presented as a Bar Chart

TECH TIP

Why To Create a Gantt Chart

A Gantt chart is useful for showing how activities occur over time. Although they do not indicate the interdependence of tasks, Gantt charts can show overlaps in a schedule. In addition, color coding can visually indicate task priorities, task completion, task responsibilities, and so on.



How To Create a Gantt Chart

Using a program such as Word, Excel, or Google Spreadsheets, create a table or worksheet with enough cells to include all your tasks and dates.

Task							
Task 1: Review Policies							
Task 2: Research Trends							
Task 3: Identify Criteria							
Task 4: Interview Experts							
Task 5: Evaluate Options							
Task 6: Prepare Report							
	24	31	1	7	12	19	22

Enter the tasks in rows.

Enter the dates in columns.

Use the Fill command to color-code cells.

Word and Excel

Theme Colors
Standard Colors
No Fill
More Colors...

Google Spreadsheets

Reset
Custom...
Conditional formatting...
Alternating colors...

To create cells that span several columns, use the **Merge Cells** function. In Word and Excel, select the cells you wish to merge and right-click, then choose Merge Cells from the pop-up menu. In Google Spreadsheets, choose from the Merge Cells options in the Format tab.

Word

Cut
Copy
Paste Options:
Insert
Delete Cells...
Select
Merge Cells
Borders and Shading...
Text Direction...
Cell Alignment
AutoFit
Table Properties...

Excel

Google Spreadsheets

Insert
Format
Data
Tools
Add-ons
Help
All changes saved
Number
Font size
Bold Ctrl+B
Italic Ctrl+I
Underline Ctrl+U
Strikethrough Alt+Shift+5
Align
Merge cells
Text wrapping
Conditional formatting...
Alternating colors...
Clear formatting Ctrl+\
Merge all
Merge horizontally
Merge vertically
Unmerge

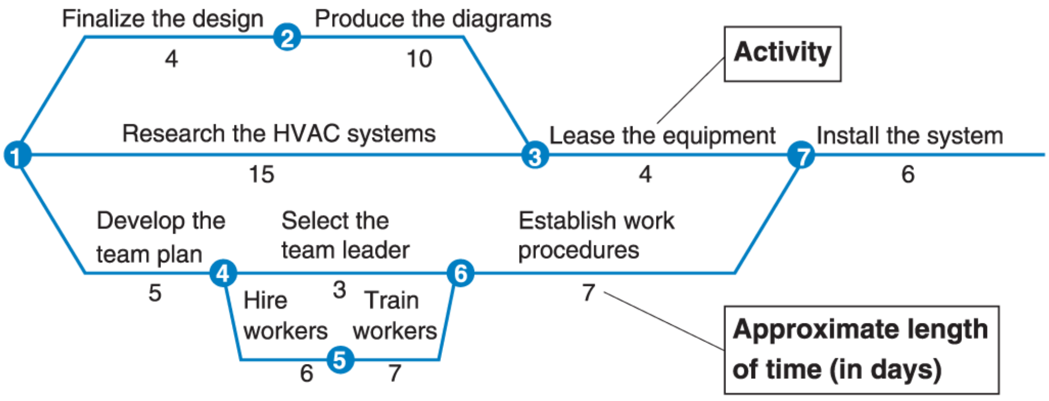
Sample Gantt chart with merged cells and color coding:

#	Task	March				April				May			
		7	15	22	29	5	12	19	26	3	10	17	24
1	Conceptualization	🟦											
2	Engineering Phase		🟨										
3	Pre-Production			🟧	🟧	🟧							
4	Product Testing					🟩	🟩	🟩					
5	Production								🟪	🟪	🟪		
6	Release									⬛	⬛	⬛	⬛

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Network Diagrams

Network diagrams show interdependence among various activities, clearly indicating which must be completed before others can begin. However, even a relatively simple network diagram, such as the one shown in Figure 11.5, can be difficult to read. You would probably not use this type of diagram in a document intended for general readers.


Finalize the design
4
2
Produce the diagrams
10
Activity
1
Research the HVAC systems
15
3
Lease the equipment
4
7
Install the system
6
Develop the team plan
5
4
Select the team leader
3
6
Establish work procedures
7
Hire workers
6
5
Train workers
7
Approximate length of time (in days)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.5 Task Schedule Presented as a Network Diagram

A network diagram provides more useful information than either a table or a bar chart.

DESCRIPTION OF EVALUATION TECHNIQUES

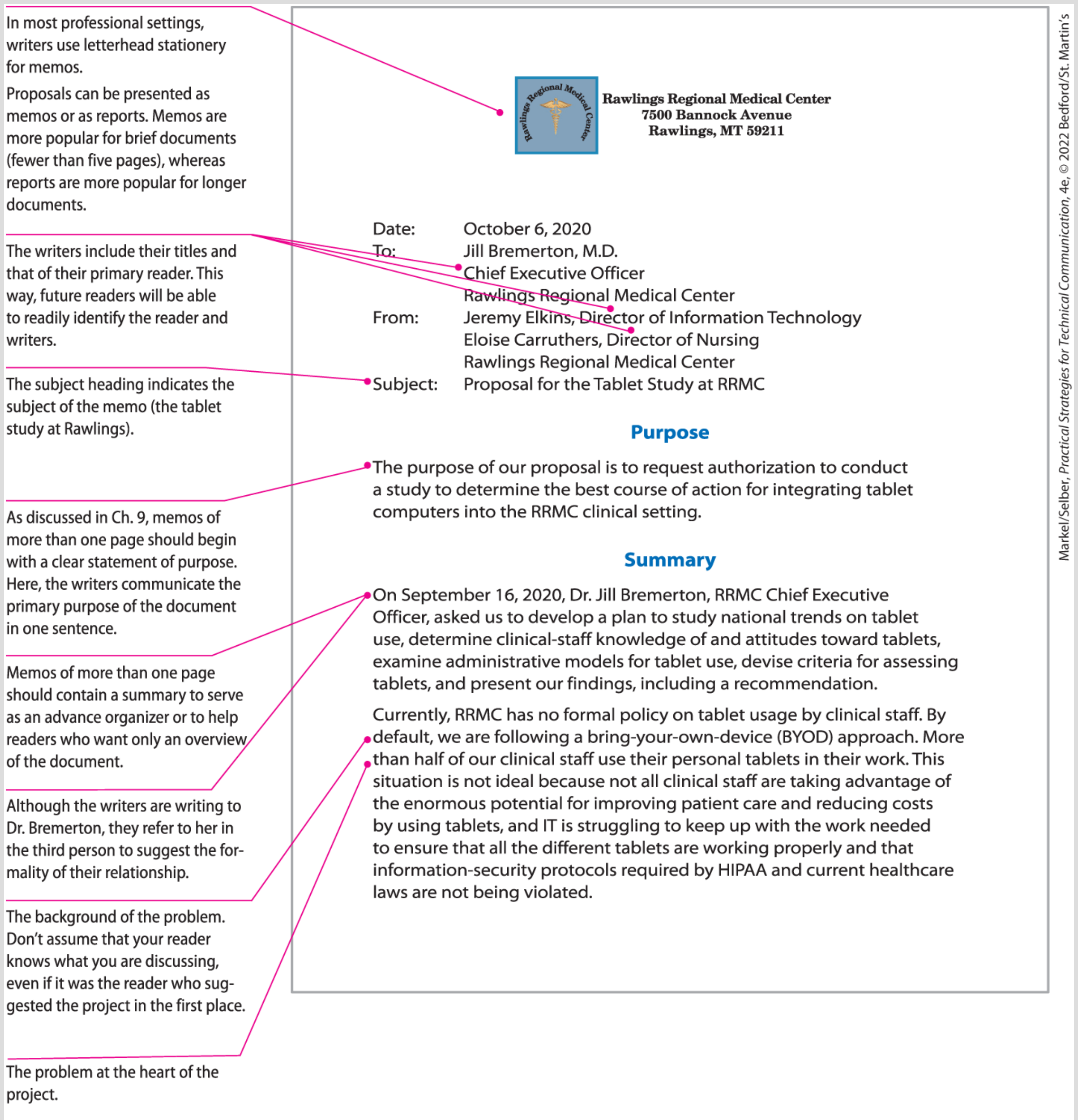
Although *evaluation* can mean different things to different people, an *evaluation technique* typically refers to any procedure used to determine whether the proposed program is both effective and efficient. Evaluation techniques can range from writing simple progress reports to conducting sophisticated statistical analyses. Some proposals call for evaluation by an outside agent, such as a consultant, a testing laboratory, or a university. Other proposals describe evaluation techniques that the supplier will perform, such as cost-benefit analyses.

The issue of evaluation is complicated by the fact that some people think in terms of *quantitative evaluations* — tests of measurable quantities, such as production increases — whereas others think in terms of *qualitative evaluations* — tests of whether a proposed program is improving, say, the workmanship on a product. And some people include both qualitative and quantitative testing when they refer to evaluation. An additional complication is that projects can be tested while they are being carried out (*formative evaluations*) as well as after they have been completed (*summative evaluations*).

When an RFP calls for “evaluation,” experienced proposal writers contact the prospective customer’s representatives to determine precisely what the word means.

Sample Internal Proposal

The following example of an internal proposal has been formatted as a memo rather than as a formal proposal. (See Chapter 12, Figure 12.4, on pp. 323–330, for the progress report written after this project was under way and Chapter 13, Figure 13.8, on pp. 354–377, for the recommendation report.)



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

Date: October 6, 2020
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Proposal for the Tablet Study at RRMC

Purpose

The purpose of our proposal is to request authorization to conduct a study to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Summary

On September 16, 2020, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to study national trends on tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current healthcare laws are not being violated.

In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos.

Proposals can be presented as memos or as reports. Memos are more popular for brief documents (fewer than five pages), whereas reports are more popular for longer documents.

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings).

As discussed in Ch. 9, memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence.

Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document.

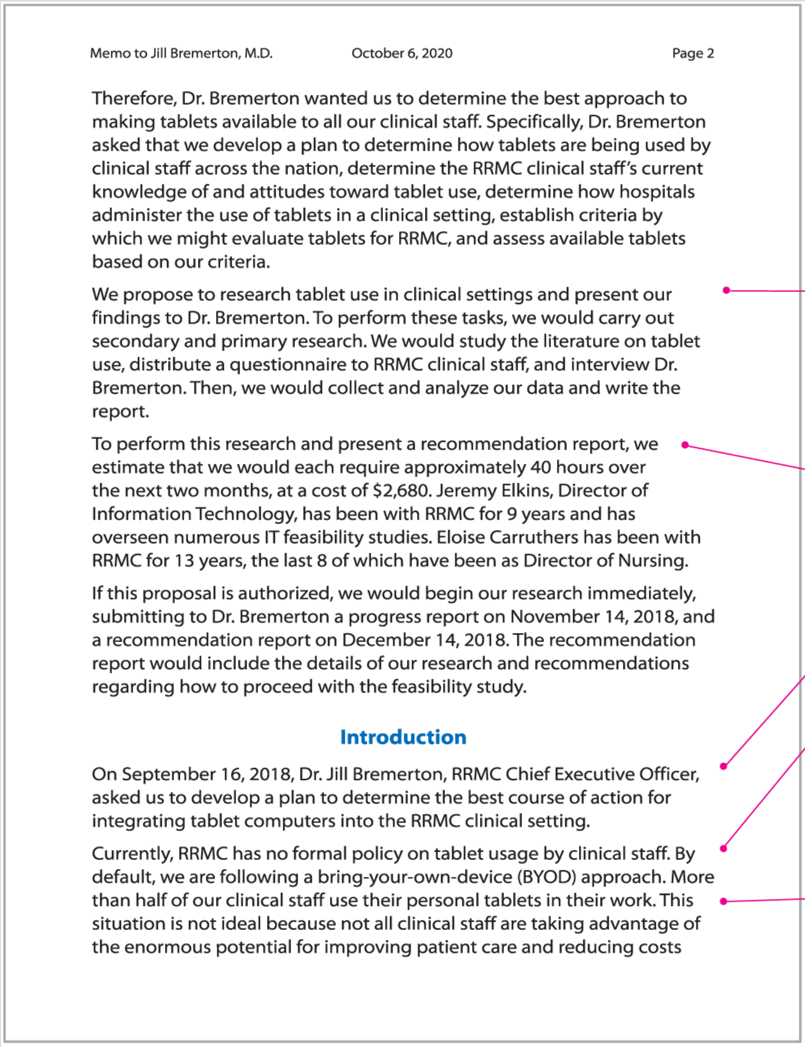
Although the writers are writing to Dr. Bremerton, they refer to her in the third person to suggest the formality of their relationship.

The background of the problem. Don't assume that your reader knows what you are discussing, even if it was the reader who suggested the project in the first place.

The problem at the heart of the project.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 2

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation, determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting, establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC, and assess available tablets based on our criteria.

We propose to research tablet use in clinical settings and present our findings to Dr. Bremerton. To perform these tasks, we would carry out secondary and primary research. We would study the literature on tablet use, distribute a questionnaire to RRMC clinical staff, and interview Dr. Bremerton. Then, we would collect and analyze our data and write the report.

To perform this research and present a recommendation report, we estimate that we would each require approximately 40 hours over the next two months, at a cost of $2,680. Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has been with RRMC for 9 years and has overseen numerous IT feasibility studies. Eloise Carruthers has been with RRMC for 13 years, the last 8 of which have been as Director of Nursing.

If this proposal is authorized, we would begin our research immediately, submitting to Dr. Bremerton a progress report on November 14, 2018, and a recommendation report on December 14, 2018. The recommendation report would include the details of our research and recommendations regarding how to proceed with the feasibility study.

Introduction

On September 16, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs

The proposal. The writers have already begun to plan what they will do if the proposal is accepted, but they use the conditional tense ("would") because they cannot assume that their proposal will be approved.

A summary of the schedule and the credentials of the writers. Because the reader will likely want to read this entire proposal, the summary functions as an advance organizer.

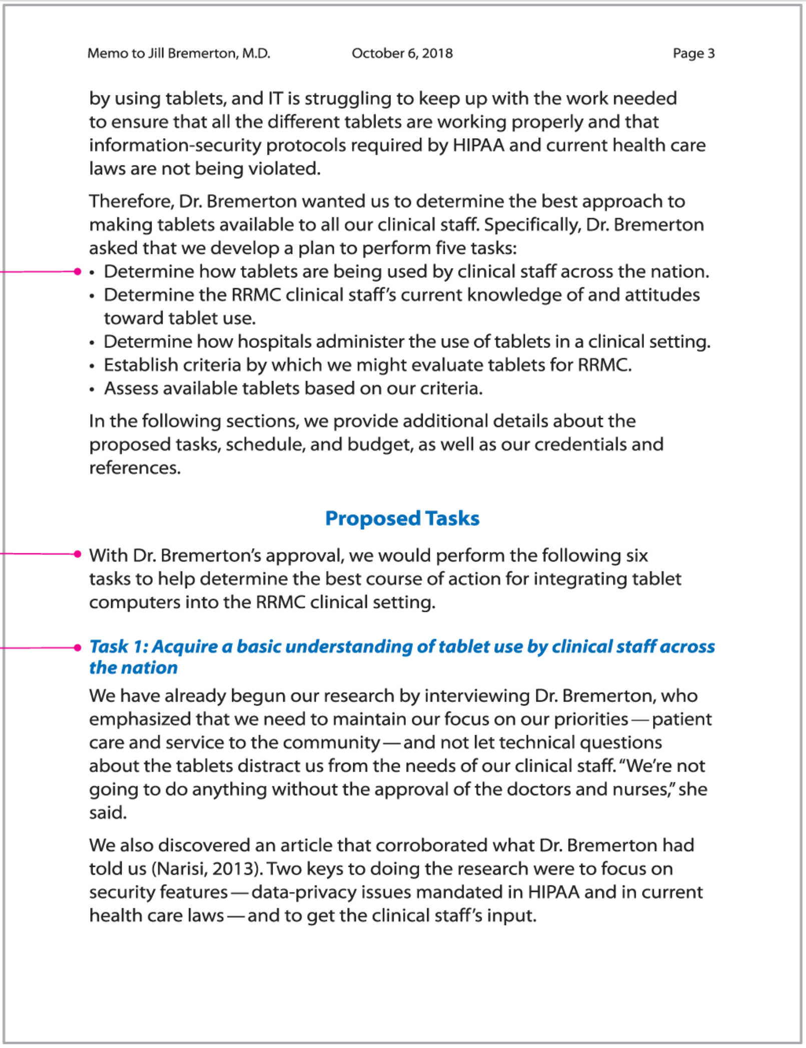
A brief statement of the context for the proposal.

An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because IT is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements.

This same paragraph appeared in the "Summary" section of the proposal. In technical communication, writers often present the same information several times because some readers will read only selected portions of the document.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2018 Page 3

by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria.

In the following sections, we provide additional details about the proposed tasks, schedule, and budget, as well as our credentials and references.

Proposed Tasks

With Dr. Bremerton's approval, we would perform the following six tasks to help determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

We have already begun our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. "We're not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses," she said.

We also discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and in current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff's input.

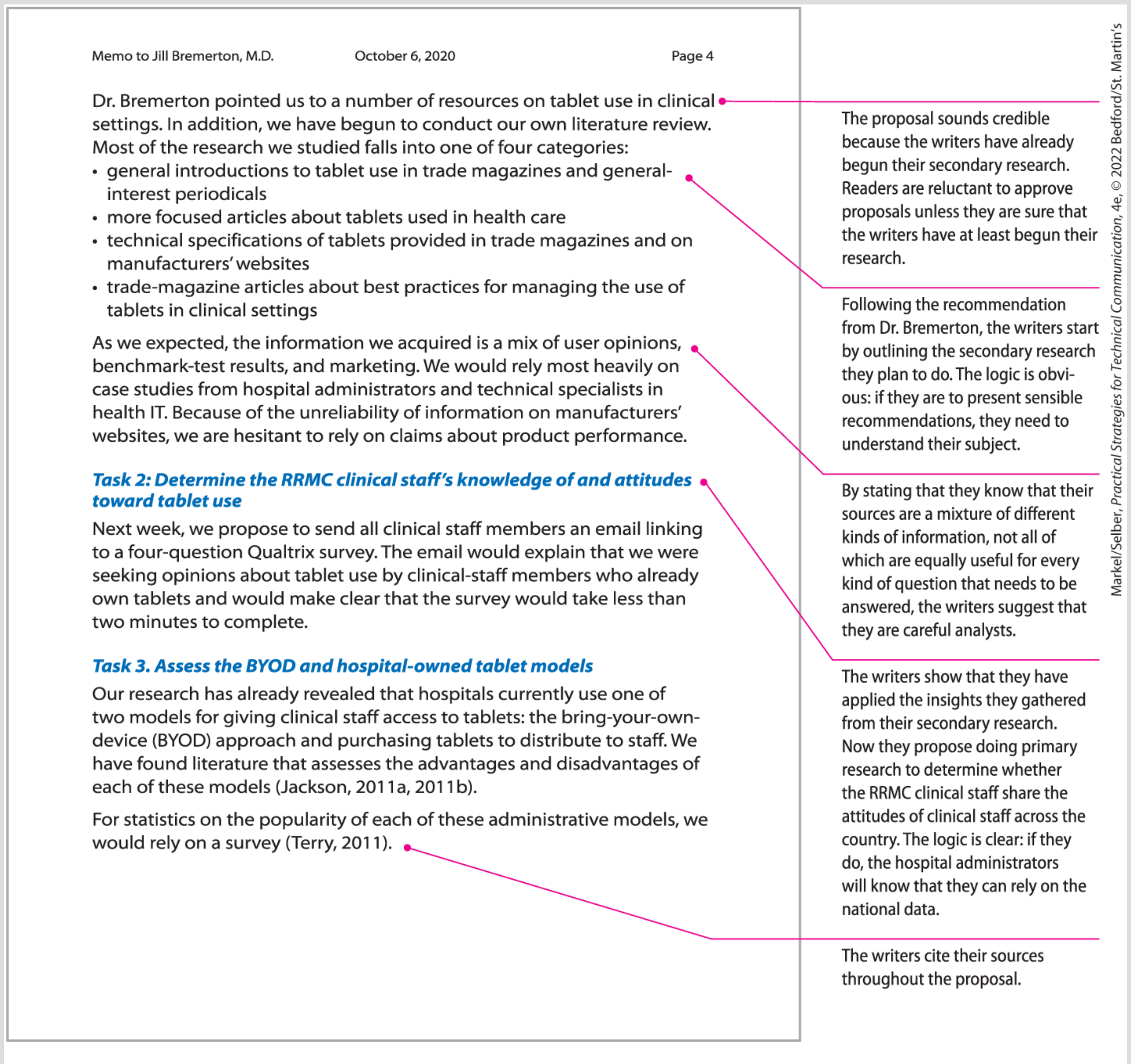
The writers paraphrase text from a memo Dr. Bremerton had written to them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase your reader's words to remind him or her of the context and to show that you are carrying out your tasks professionally — and to give the reader the opportunity to change the direction of the study before it officially begins.

The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal.

By presenting the project as a set of tasks, the writers show that they are well organized. This organization by tasks will be used in the progress report (see Ch. 12, Figure 12.4, on pp. 323–330) and the recommendation report (see Ch. 13, Figure 13.8, on pp. 354–377).

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 4

Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we have begun to conduct our own literature review. Most of the research we studied falls into one of four categories:

- general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general-interest periodicals
- more focused articles about tablets used in health care
- technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers' websites
- trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings

As we expected, the information we acquired is a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We would rely most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health IT. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we are hesitant to rely on claims about product performance.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

Next week, we propose to send all clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrix survey. The email would explain that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and would make clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

Task 3. Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Our research has already revealed that hospitals currently use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. We have found literature that assesses the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b).

For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we would rely on a survey (Terry, 2011).

The proposal sounds credible because the writers have already begun their secondary research. Readers are reluctant to approve proposals unless they are sure that the writers have at least begun their research.

Following the recommendation from Dr. Bremerton, the writers start by outlining the secondary research they plan to do. The logic is obvious: if they are to present sensible recommendations, they need to understand their subject.

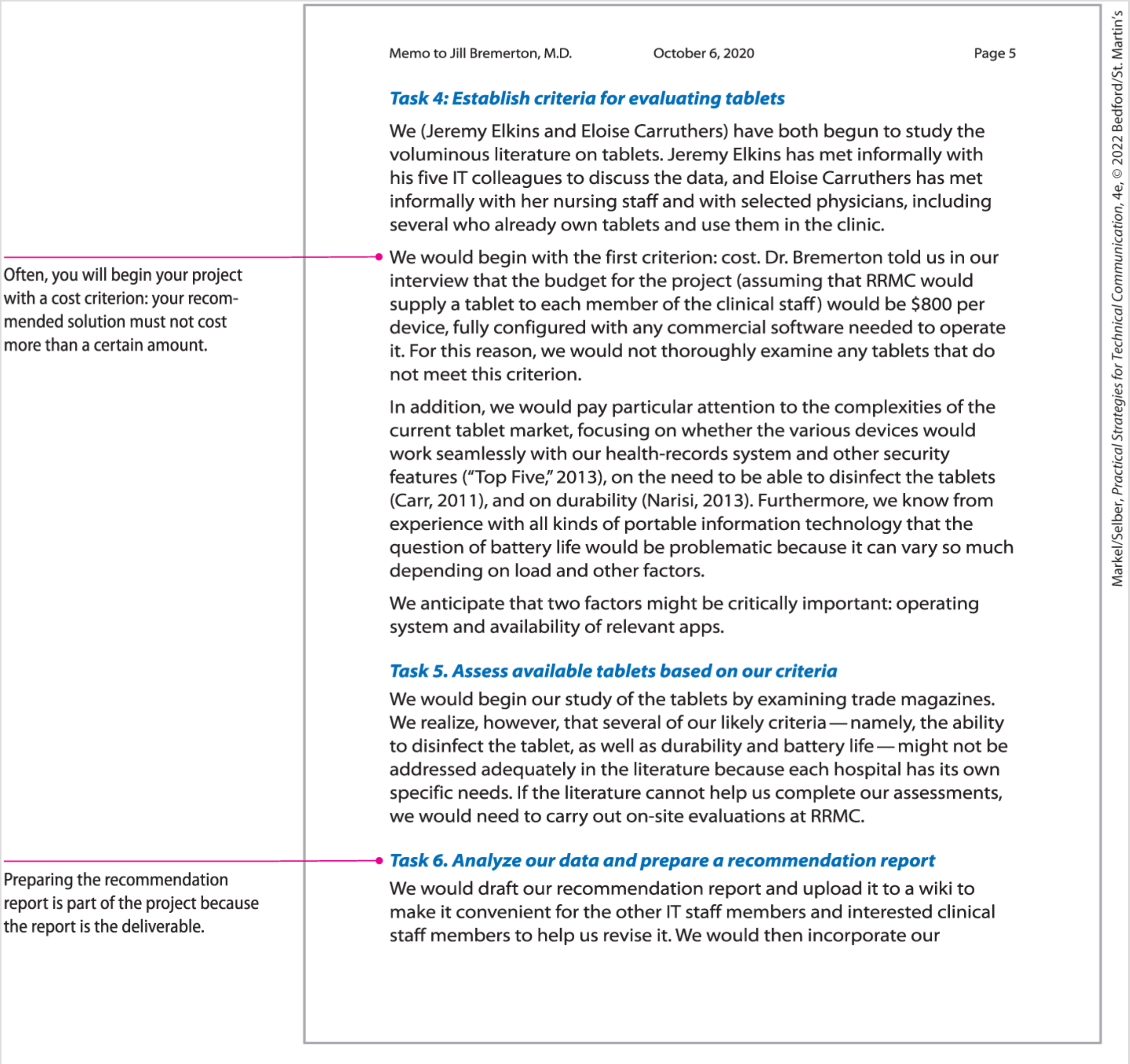
By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which are equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts.

The writers show that they have applied the insights they gathered from their secondary research. Now they propose doing primary research to determine whether the RRMC clinical staff share the attitudes of clinical staff across the country. The logic is clear: if they do, the hospital administrators will know that they can rely on the national data.

The writers cite their sources throughout the proposal.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 5

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We (Jeremy Elkins and Eloise Carruthers) have both begun to study the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins has met informally with his five IT colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers has met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who already own tablets and use them in the clinic.

We would begin with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that RRMC would supply a tablet to each member of the clinical staff) would be $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we would not thoroughly examine any tablets that do not meet this criterion.

Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion: your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount.

In addition, we would pay particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security features ("Top Five," 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). Furthermore, we know from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors.

We anticipate that two factors might be critically important: operating system and availability of relevant apps.

Task 5. Assess available tablets based on our criteria

We would begin our study of the tablets by examining trade magazines. We realize, however, that several of our likely criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — might not be addressed adequately in the literature because each hospital has its own specific needs. If the literature cannot help us complete our assessments, we would need to carry out on-site evaluations at RRMC.

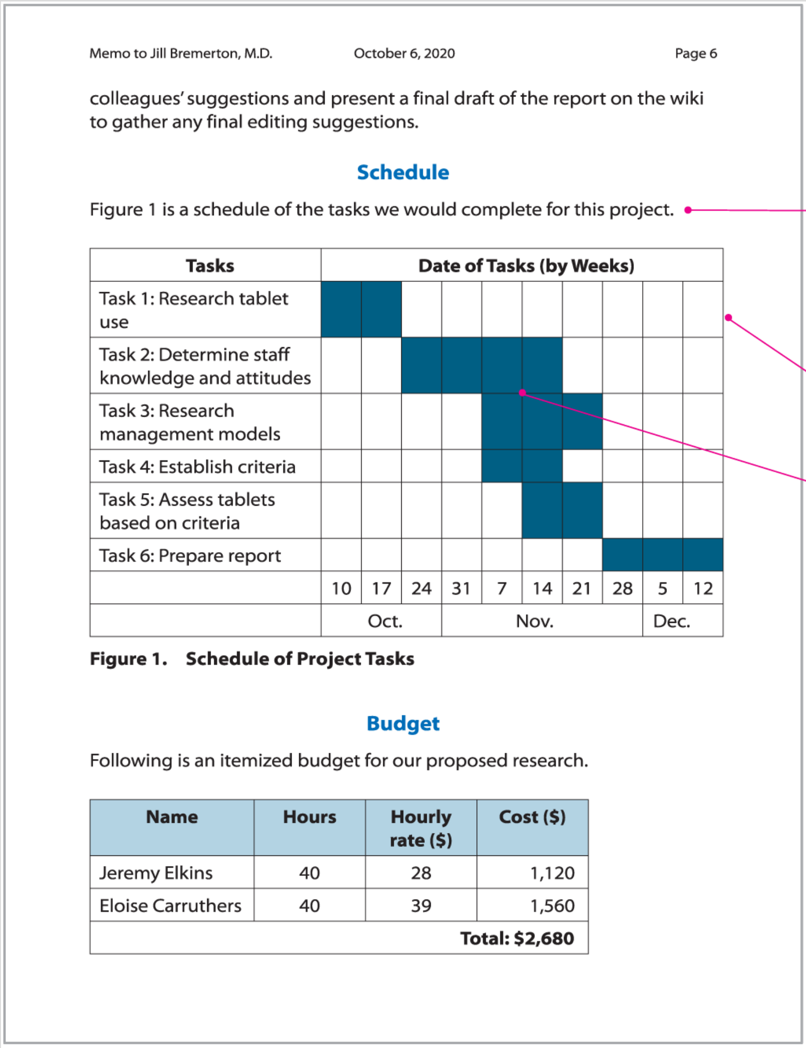
Task 6. Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report

We would draft our recommendation report and upload it to a wiki to make it convenient for the other IT staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We would then incorporate our

Preparing the recommendation report is part of the project because the report is the deliverable.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 6

colleagues' suggestions and present a final draft of the report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

Schedule

Figure 1 is a schedule of the tasks we would complete for this project.

Tasks	Date of Tasks (by Weeks)									
Task 1: Research tablet use	■	■								
Task 2: Determine staff knowledge and attitudes			■	■	■	■				
Task 3: Research management models					■	■	■			
Task 4: Establish criteria					■	■				
Task 5: Assess tablets based on criteria						■	■			
Task 6: Prepare report								■	■	■
	10	17	24	31	7	14	21	28	5	12
	Oct.			Nov.					Dec.	

Figure 1. Schedule of Project Tasks

Budget

Following is an itemized budget for our proposed research.

Name	Hours	Hourly rate ($)	Cost ($)
Jeremy Elkins	40	28	1,120
Eloise Carruthers	40	39	1,560
			Total: $2,680

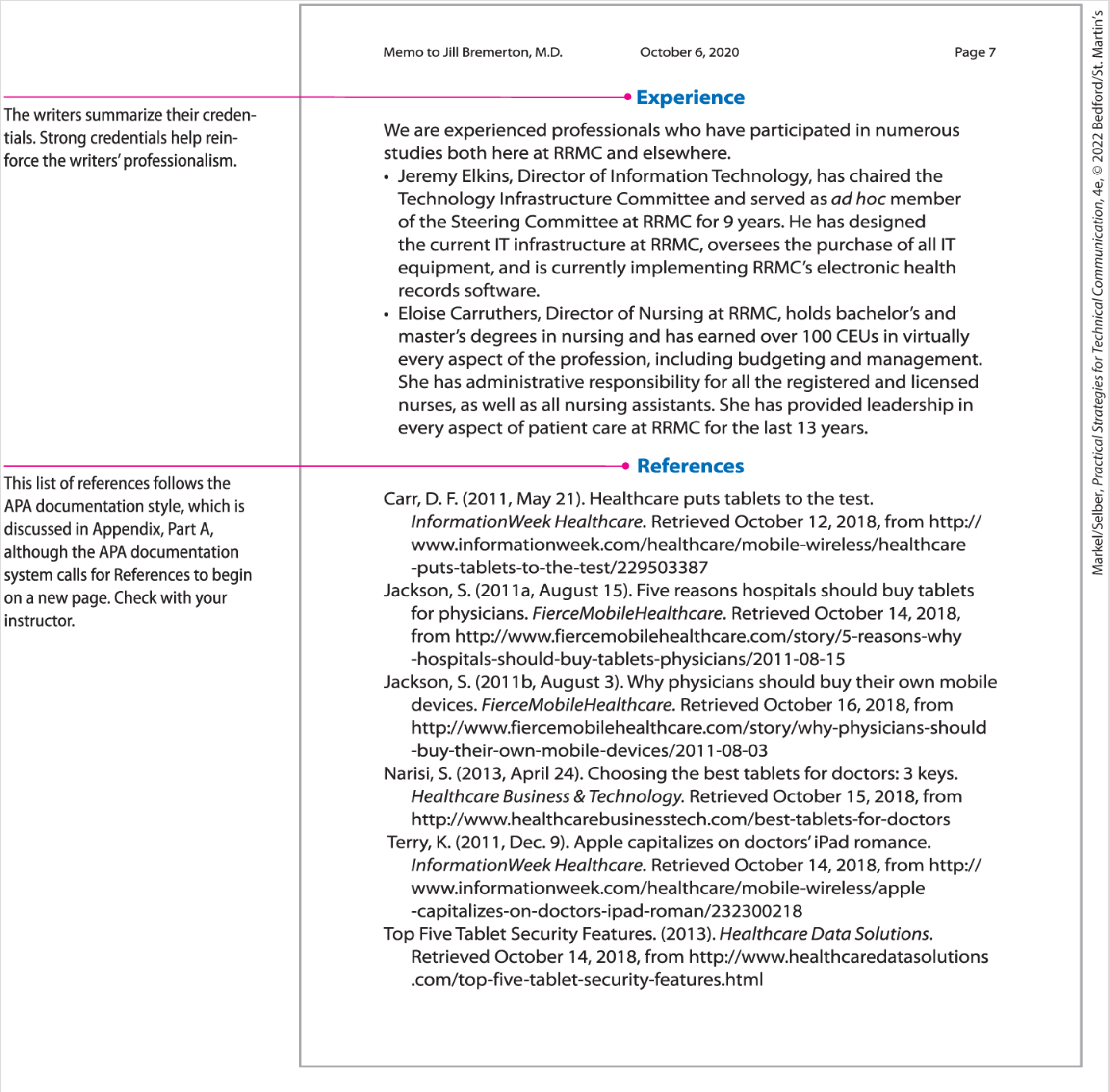
Organizing the project by tasks makes it easy for the writers to present a Gantt chart. In addition, the task organization will help the writers stay on track if the proposal is approved and they continue their research.

Each task is presented with parallel grammar, which shows that the writers are careful and professional.

Some tasks overlap in time: researchers often work on several tasks simultaneously.

The Tech Tip on p. 304 explains how to create a Gantt chart.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 7

The writers summarize their credentials. Strong credentials help reinforce the writers' professionalism.

Experience

We are experienced professionals who have participated in numerous studies both here at RRMC and elsewhere.

- Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has chaired the Technology Infrastructure Committee and served as *ad hoc* member of the Steering Committee at RRMC for 9 years. He has designed the current IT infrastructure at RRMC, oversees the purchase of all IT equipment, and is currently implementing RRMC's electronic health records software.
- Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing at RRMC, holds bachelor's and master's degrees in nursing and has earned over 100 CEUs in virtually every aspect of the profession, including budgeting and management. She has administrative responsibility for all the registered and licensed nurses, as well as all nursing assistants. She has provided leadership in every aspect of patient care at RRMC for the last 13 years.

This list of references follows the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A, although the APA documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

References

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/5-reasons-why-hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians/2011-08-15

Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. *Healthcare Business & Technology*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.healthcarebusinesstech.com/best-tablets-for-doctors

Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors' iPad romance. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman/232300218

Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). *Healthcare Data Solutions*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.healthcaredatasolutions.com/top-five-tablet-security-features.html

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

The following checklist covers the basic elements of a proposal. Guidelines established by the recipient of the proposal should take precedence over these general suggestions.

Does the summary provide an overview of

☐ the problem or the opportunity?
☐ the proposed program?
☐ your qualifications and experience?

Does the introduction indicate

☐ the problem or opportunity?
☐ the purpose of the proposal?
☐ the background of the problem or opportunity?
☐ your sources of information?
☐ the scope and organization of the proposal?
☐ the key terms that you will use in the proposal?
☐ a clear, specific plan of action and justify the tasks you propose performing?

Does the description of qualifications and experience clearly outline

☐ the skills and background of you and the other participants?

☐ your department's (or organization's) relevant equipment, facilities, and experience?

Is the budget

☐ complete?
☐ correct?
☐ Do the appendixes include the relevant supporting materials?
☐ Did you include other relevant sections

EXERCISES

For more about memos, see Ch. 9, p. 245.

1. Study the National Science Foundation's (NSF) Proposal & Award Policies & Procedures Guide (www.nsf.gov/publications/pub_summ.jsp?ods_key=papp). In what important ways does the NSF's guide differ from the advice provided in this chapter? What accounts for these differences? Present your findings in a 500-word memo to your instructor.
2. **TEAM EXERCISE** Form groups according to major. Using the government contracting website (beta.sam.gov/), find and study an RFP for a project related to your academic field. What can you learn about the needs of the organization that issued the RFP? How effectively does the

RFP describe what the issuing organization expects to see in the proposal? Is it relatively general or specific? What sorts of evaluation techniques does it call for? In your response, include a list of questions that you would ask the issuing organization if you were considering responding to the RFP. Present your results in a memo to your instructor.

3. Write a proposal for a research project that will constitute a major assignment in this course. Your instructor will tell you whether the proposal is to be written individually or collaboratively. Start by defining a technical subject that interests you. (This subject could be one that is relevant to your job or that you have encountered in another course.) Using abstract services and other bibliographic tools, compile a bibliography of articles and books on the subject. (See Chapter 6 for a discussion of finding information.) Create a reasonable real-world context. Here are three common scenarios from the business world:
    1. Our company uses Technology X to perform Task A. Should we instead be using Technology Y to perform Task A? For instance, our company uses standard surveying tools in its contracting business. Should we be using 3D-equipped stations instead?
    2. Our company has decided to purchase a tool to perform Task A. Which make and model of the tool should we purchase, and from which supplier should we buy it? For instance, our company has decided to purchase 10 laptop computers. Which brand and model should we

buy, and from whom should we buy them? Is leasing the tool a better option than purchasing?

3. Our company does not currently perform Function X. Is it feasible to perform Function X? For instance, we do not currently offer day care for our employees. Should we? What are the advantages and disadvantages of doing so? What forms can day care take? How is it paid for?

Following are some additional ideas for topics:

- the value of using social media to form ties with students in a technical-communication class on another campus
- the need for expanded opportunities for internships or service learning in your major
- the need to create an advisory board of industry professionals to provide expertise about your major
- the need to raise money to keep the college’s computer labs up to date
- the need to evaluate the course of study offered by your university in your major to ensure that it is responsive to students’ needs
- the advisability of starting a campus branch of a professional organization in your field
- the need to improve parking facilities on campus
- the need to create or improve organizations for minorities or women on campus

CASE 11: Writing an Introduction for a Proposal

You work for a company that provides web-development services to external clients. Your job is to seek out requests for proposals (RFPs) posted by organizations looking for companies like yours. You have found an RFP posted by the borough council of a small town, seeking help in updating and enhancing the town's website. You know that your company is capable of providing these services. Your supervisor agrees and asks you to draft an introduction to the proposal while other team members work on incorporating boilerplate language and handle the scheduling and budgeting details. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started drafting the introduction.

CHAPTER 12

Writing Informational Reports

Writing Directives
Writing Field Reports
Writing Progress and Status Reports
Sample Progress Report
Writing Incident Reports
Writing Meeting Minutes

COMPLEX, EXPENSIVE PROJECTS call for a lot of documents. Before a project begins, a vendor might write a *proposal* to interest prospective clients in its work. After a project is completed, an organization might write a *completion report* to document the project or a *recommendation report* to argue for a future course of action. In between, many people will write various *informational reports.*

Whether they are presented as memos, emails, reports, or web pages, informational reports share one goal: to describe something that has happened or is happening now. Their main purpose is to provide clear, accurate, specific information to an audience.

Sometimes, informational reports also analyze the situation. An *analysis* is an explanation of why something happened or how it happened. For instance, in an incident report about an accident on the job, the writer might speculate about how and why the accident occurred.

This chapter discusses five kinds of informational reports:

- A supervisor writes a *directive* explaining a company's new policy on recycling and describing informational sessions that the company will offer to help employees understand how to implement the policy.
- An insurance adjuster writes a *field report* presenting the results of his inspection of a building after a storm caused extensive damage.
- A research team writes a *progress report* explaining what the team has accomplished in the first half of the project, speculating on whether it will finish on time and within budget, and describing how it has responded to unexpected problems.
- A worker at a manufacturing company writes an *incident report* after a toxic chemical spill.
- A recording secretary writes a set of *meeting minutes* that will become the official record of what occurred at a meeting of the management team of a government agency.

Other types of informational reports are *recommendation reports* (see Chapter 13).

FOCUS ON PROCESS

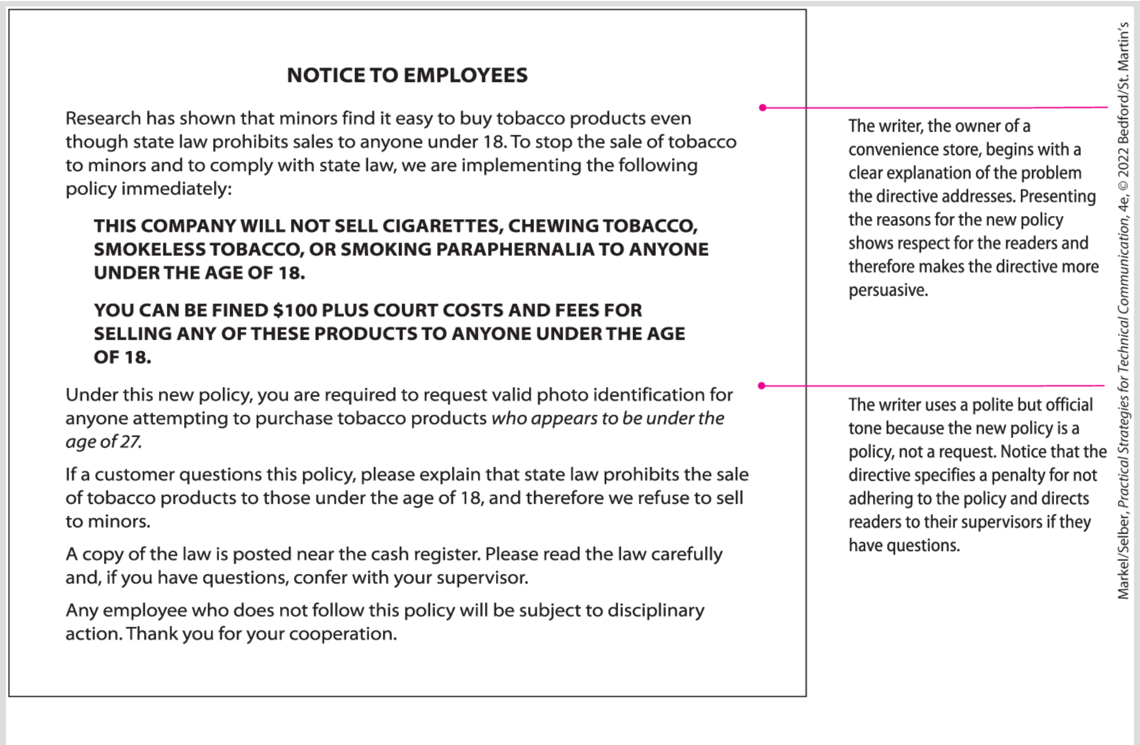
Informational Reports

In writing informational reports, pay special attention to these steps in the writing process.

PLANNING	In some cases, determining your audience and to whom to address the report is difficult. Choosing the appropriate format for your report can also be difficult. Consider whether your organization has a preferred format for reports and whether your report will be read by readers from other cultures who might expect a formal style and application. See Chapter 4 for more about analyzing your audience.
DRAFTING	Some informational reports are drafted on site. For instance, an engineer might use a tablet computer to “draft” a report as she walks around a site. For routine reports, you can sometimes use sections of previous reports or boilerplate. In a status report, for instance, you can copy the description of your current project from the previous report and then update it as necessary. See the Ethics Note in Chapter 2 on page 24 for more about boilerplate.
REVISING	Because reports are often complex and have multiple audiences and purposes, revising carefully to ensure you have included all of the necessary information in a clear and consistent format is particularly important. See the Writer’s Checklist at the end of this chapter for detailed advice.
EDITING	See Chapter 6 for advice on writing correct and effective sentences.
PROOFREADING	Even brief or informal reports sent by email should be free of errors. Revise, edit, and proofread the report thoroughly.

Writing Directives

In a *directive*, you explain a policy or a procedure you want your readers to follow. Even though you have the authority to require your readers to follow the policy, you want to explain why the policy is desirable or at least necessary. You are most persuasive when you present clear, compelling evidence (in the form of commonsense arguments, numerical data, and examples); when you consider opposing arguments effectively; and when you present yourself as cooperative, moderate, fair-minded, and modest. If appropriate, include arguments that appeal to your readers' broader goals of security, recognition, personal and professional growth, and connectedness. Figure 12.1 is an example of a directive.



NOTICE TO EMPLOYEES

Research has shown that minors find it easy to buy tobacco products even though state law prohibits sales to anyone under 18. To stop the sale of tobacco to minors and to comply with state law, we are implementing the following policy immediately:

> **THIS COMPANY WILL NOT SELL CIGARETTES, CHEWING TOBACCO, SMOKELESS TOBACCO, OR SMOKING PARAPHERNALIA TO ANYONE UNDER THE AGE OF 18.**
>
> **YOU CAN BE FINED $100 PLUS COURT COSTS AND FEES FOR SELLING ANY OF THESE PRODUCTS TO ANYONE UNDER THE AGE OF 18.**

Under this new policy, you are required to request valid photo identification for anyone attempting to purchase tobacco products *who appears to be under the age of 27.*

If a customer questions this policy, please explain that state law prohibits the sale of tobacco products to those under the age of 18, and therefore we refuse to sell to minors.

A copy of the law is posted near the cash register. Please read the law carefully and, if you have questions, confer with your supervisor.

Any employee who does not follow this policy will be subject to disciplinary action. Thank you for your cooperation.

The writer, the owner of a convenience store, begins with a clear explanation of the problem the directive addresses. Presenting the reasons for the new policy shows respect for the readers and therefore makes the directive more persuasive.

The writer uses a polite but official tone because the new policy is a policy, not a request. Notice that the directive specifies a penalty for not adhering to the policy and directs readers to their supervisors if they have questions.

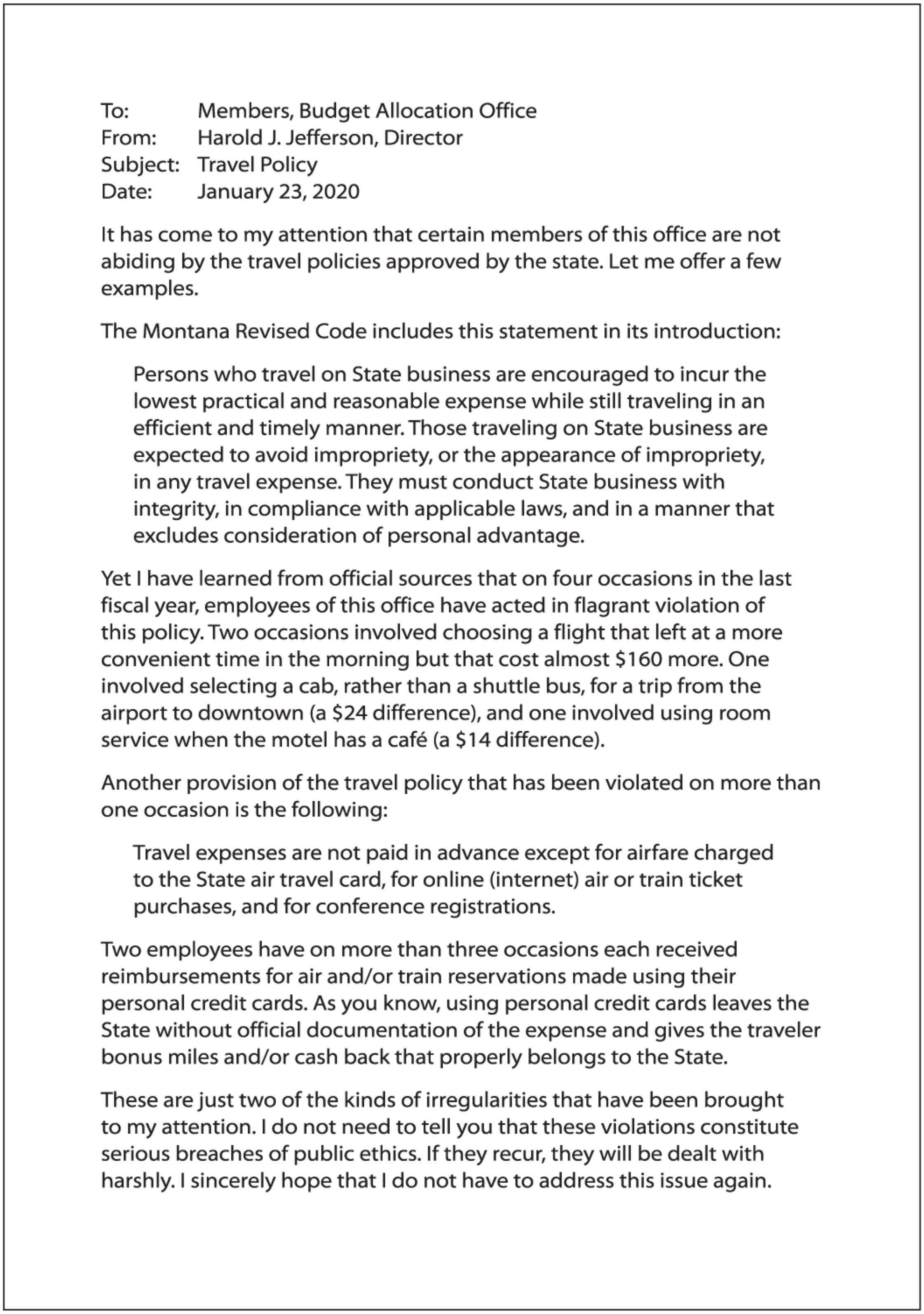
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.1 A Directive

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Writing a Persuasive Directive

This directive was sent to the members of a Montana government department. The questions below ask you to think about the process of writing persuasive directives.



To: Members, Budget Allocation Office
From: Harold J. Jefferson, Director
Subject: Travel Policy
Date: January 23, 2020

It has come to my attention that certain members of this office are not abiding by the travel policies approved by the state. Let me offer a few examples.

The Montana Revised Code includes this statement in its introduction:

> Persons who travel on State business are encouraged to incur the lowest practical and reasonable expense while still traveling in an efficient and timely manner. Those traveling on State business are expected to avoid impropriety, or the appearance of impropriety, in any travel expense. They must conduct State business with integrity, in compliance with applicable laws, and in a manner that excludes consideration of personal advantage.

Yet I have learned from official sources that on four occasions in the last fiscal year, employees of this office have acted in flagrant violation of this policy. Two occasions involved choosing a flight that left at a more convenient time in the morning but that cost almost $160 more. One involved selecting a cab, rather than a shuttle bus, for a trip from the airport to downtown (a $24 difference), and one involved using room service when the motel has a café (a $14 difference).

Another provision of the travel policy that has been violated on more than one occasion is the following:

> Travel expenses are not paid in advance except for airfare charged to the State air travel card, for online (internet) air or train ticket purchases, and for conference registrations.

Two employees have on more than three occasions each received reimbursements for air and/or train reservations made using their personal credit cards. As you know, using personal credit cards leaves the State without official documentation of the expense and gives the traveler bonus miles and/or cash back that properly belongs to the State.

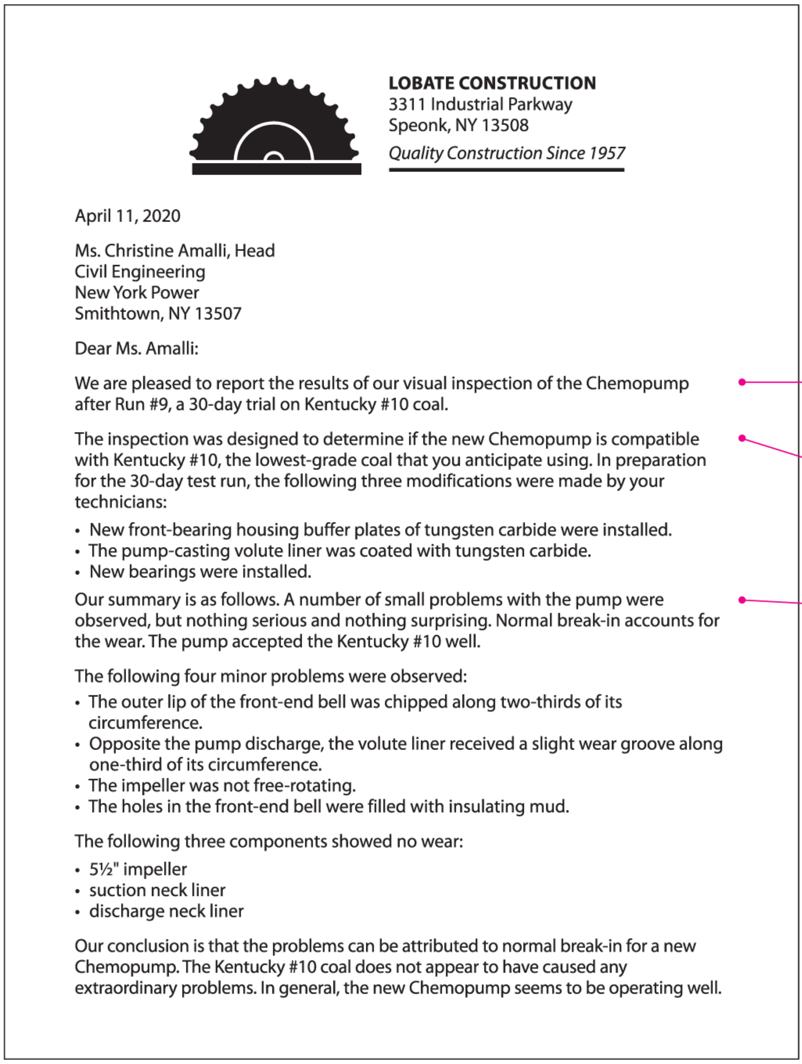
These are just two of the kinds of irregularities that have been brought to my attention. I do not need to tell you that these violations constitute serious breaches of public ethics. If they recur, they will be dealt with harshly. I sincerely hope that I do not have to address this issue again.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

1. How would you describe the tone used by the writer? Provide an example to support your claim.
2. The writer presents examples of what he calls violations of the state travel policy. Do these examples provide solid evidence that violations of the policy have, in fact, occurred?
3. How effectively has the writer encouraged his staff to abide by the travel policy? How might he improve the persuasiveness of the directive?

Writing Field Reports

A common kind of informational report describes inspections, maintenance, and site studies. Such reports, often known as *field reports*, explain problems, methods, results, and conclusions, but they deemphasize methods and can include recommendations. The report in Figure 12.2 illustrates a possible variation on this standard report structure.



LOBATE CONSTRUCTION
3311 Industrial Parkway
Speonk, NY 13508
Quality Construction Since 1957

April 11, 2020

Ms. Christine Amalli, Head
Civil Engineering
New York Power
Smithtown, NY 13507

Dear Ms. Amalli:

We are pleased to report the results of our visual inspection of the Chemopump after Run #9, a 30-day trial on Kentucky #10 coal.

The inspection was designed to determine if the new Chemopump is compatible with Kentucky #10, the lowest-grade coal that you anticipate using. In preparation for the 30-day test run, the following three modifications were made by your technicians:

- New front-bearing housing buffer plates of tungsten carbide were installed.
- The pump-casting volute liner was coated with tungsten carbide.
- New bearings were installed.

Our summary is as follows. A number of small problems with the pump were observed, but nothing serious and nothing surprising. Normal break-in accounts for the wear. The pump accepted the Kentucky #10 well.

The following four minor problems were observed:

- The outer lip of the front-end bell was chipped along two-thirds of its circumference.
- Opposite the pump discharge, the volute liner received a slight wear groove along one-third of its circumference.
- The impeller was not free-rotating.
- The holes in the front-end bell were filled with insulating mud.

The following three components showed no wear:

- 5½" impeller
- suction neck liner
- discharge neck liner

Our conclusion is that the problems can be attributed to normal break-in for a new Chemopump. The Kentucky #10 coal does not appear to have caused any extraordinary problems. In general, the new Chemopump seems to be operating well.

Because the writer and the reader work for different companies, a letter is the appropriate format for this brief informational report.

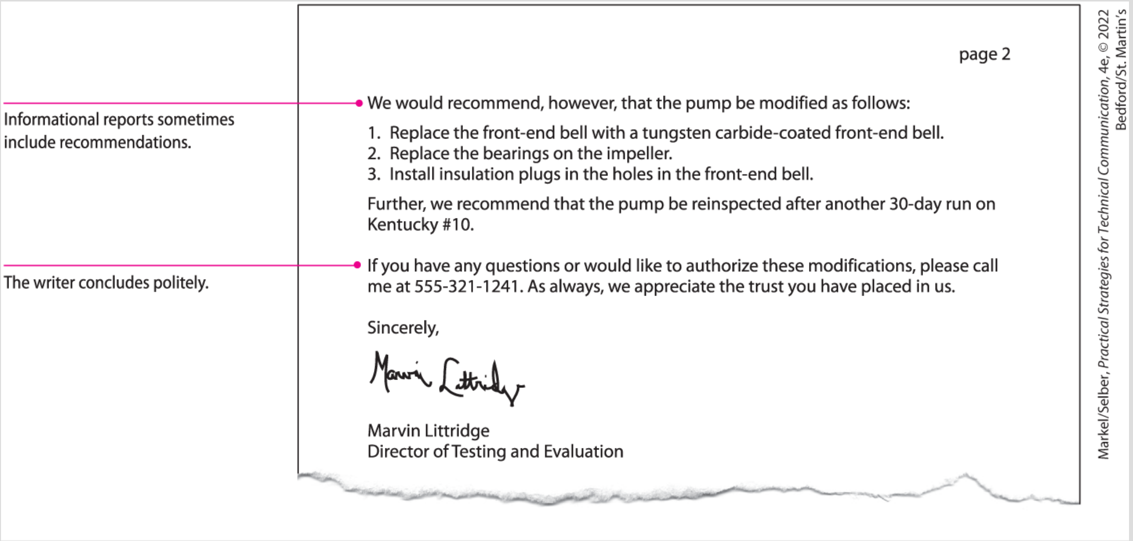
The word *visual* describes the method.

The writer states the purpose of the inspection.

The writer has chosen to incorporate the words *summary* and *conclusion* in the body of the letter rather than use headings as a method of organization.

Image: Kamil Abbasov/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.2 A Field Report (continued)



page 2

Informational reports sometimes include recommendations.

We would recommend, however, that the pump be modified as follows:

1. Replace the front-end bell with a tungsten carbide-coated front-end bell.
2. Replace the bearings on the impeller.
3. Install insulation plugs in the holes in the front-end bell.

Further, we recommend that the pump be reinspected after another 30-day run on Kentucky #10.

The writer concludes politely.

If you have any questions or would like to authorize these modifications, please call me at 555-321-1241. As always, we appreciate the trust you have placed in us.

Sincerely,

Marvin Littridge
Director of Testing and Evaluation

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.2 A Field Report

GUIDELINES Responding to Readers' Questions in a Field Report

When you write a field report, be sure to answer the following six questions:

- What is the purpose of the report?
- What are the main points covered in the report?
- What were the problems leading to the decision to perform the procedure?
- What methods were used?
- What were the results?
- What do the results mean?

If appropriate, also discuss what you think should be done next.

Writing Progress and Status Reports

A *progress report* describes an ongoing project. A *status report,* sometimes called an *activity report,* describes the entire range of operations of a department or division. For example, the director of marketing for a manufacturing company might submit a monthly status report.

A progress report is an intermediate communication between a proposal (the argument that a project be undertaken) and a completion report (the comprehensive record of a completed project) or a recommendation report (an argument to take further action). Progress reports let you check in with your audience.

Regardless of how well the project is proceeding, explain clearly and fully what has happened and how those activities or events will affect the overall project. Your tone should be objective, neither defensive nor casual. Unless your own ineptitude or negligence caused a problem, you're not to blame. Regardless of the news you are delivering — good, bad, or mixed — your job is the same: to provide a clear and complete account of your activities and to forecast the next stage of the project.

When things go wrong, you might be tempted to cover up problems and hope that you can solve them before the next progress report. This course of action is unwise and unethical. Chances are that problems will multiply, and you will have a harder time explaining why you didn't alert your readers earlier.

ETHICS NOTE

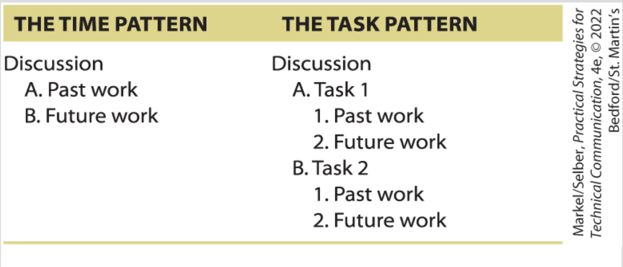
REPORTING YOUR PROGRESS HONESTLY

Withholding bad news is unethical because it can mislead readers. As sponsors or supervisors of the project, readers have a right to know how it is going. If you find yourself faced with any of the following three common problems, consider responding in these ways:

- **The deliverable — the document or product you will submit at the end of the project — won't be what you thought it would be.** Without being defensive, describe the events that led to the situation and explain how the deliverable will differ from what you described in the proposal.
- **You won't meet your schedule.** Explain why you are going to be late, and state when the project will be complete.
- **You won't meet the budget.** Explain why you need more money, and state how much more you will need.

ORGANIZING PROGRESS AND STATUS REPORTS

The time pattern and the task pattern, two organizational patterns frequently used in progress and status reports, are illustrated in Figure 12.3. A status report is usually organized according to task; by its nature, this type of report covers a specified time period.



THE TIME PATTERN	THE TASK PATTERN
Discussion	Discussion
A. Past work	A. Task 1
B. Future work	1. Past work
	2. Future work
	B. Task 2
	1. Past work
	2. Future work

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.3 Organizational Patterns in Reports

In the time pattern, you describe all the work that you have completed in the present reporting period and then sketch in the work that remains. Some writers include a section on present work, which enables them to focus on a long or complex task still in progress.

The task pattern enables you to describe, in order, what has been accomplished on each task. Often, a task-oriented structure incorporates the chronological structure.

CONCLUDING PROGRESS AND STATUS REPORTS

In the conclusion of a progress or status report, evaluate how the project is proceeding. In the broadest sense, there are two possible messages: things are going well, or things are not going as well as anticipated.

If appropriate, use appendixes for supporting materials, such as computations, schematics, diagrams, tables, or a revised task schedule. Be sure to cross-reference these appendixes in the body of the report, so that readers can find them easily.

GUIDELINES Projecting an Appropriate Tone in a Progress or Status Report

Whether the news is positive or negative, these two suggestions will help you sound like a professional.

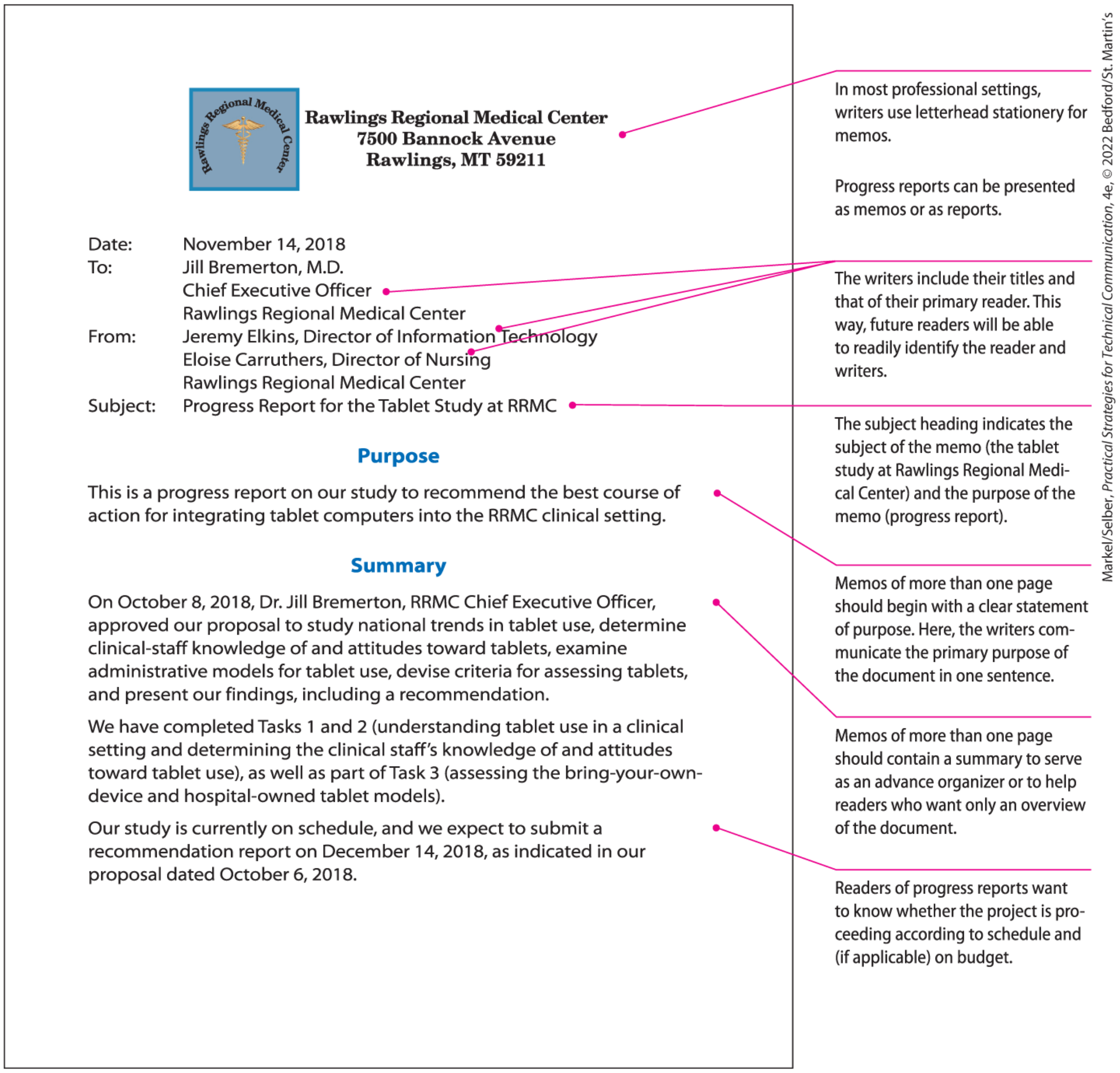
- **If the news is good, convey your optimism but avoid overstatement.**

OVERSTATED	We are sure the device will do all that we ask of it, and more.
REALISTIC	We expect that the device will perform well and that, in addition, it might offer some unanticipated advantages.

- **Beware of promising early completion.** Such optimistic forecasts rarely prove accurate, and it is embarrassing to have to report a failure to meet an optimistic deadline.
- **Don't panic if the preliminary results are not as promising as you had planned or if the project is behind schedule.** Even the best-prepared proposal writers cannot anticipate all problems. As long as the original proposal was well planned and contained no wildly inaccurate computations, don't feel responsible. Just do your best to explain unanticipated problems and the status of the project. If your news is bad, at least give the reader as much time as possible to deal with it effectively.

Sample Progress Report

The progress report in Figure 12.4 (pp. 323–33) was written for the project proposed in Figure 11.6 (pp. 306–12) in Chapter 11. [The recommendation report for this study is in Figure 13.8 (pp. 354–77) in Chapter 13.]



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos.

Progress reports can be presented as memos or as reports.

Date: November 14, 2018
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Progress Report for the Tablet Study at RRMC

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings Regional Medical Center) and the purpose of the memo (progress report).

Purpose

This is a progress report on our study to recommend the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence.

Summary

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to study national trends in tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation.

Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document.

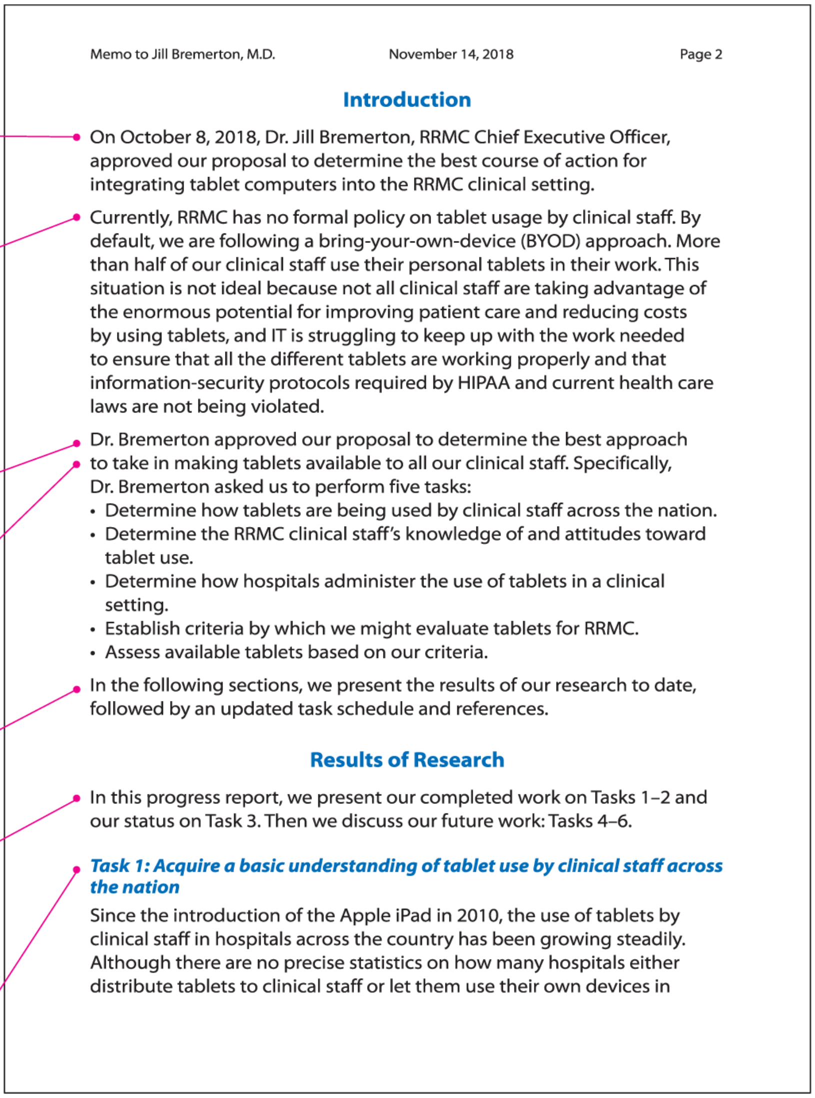
We have completed Tasks 1 and 2 (understanding tablet use in a clinical setting and determining the clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use), as well as part of Task 3 (assessing the bring-your-own-device and hospital-owned tablet models).

Our study is currently on schedule, and we expect to submit a recommendation report on December 14, 2018, as indicated in our proposal dated October 6, 2018.

Readers of progress reports want to know whether the project is proceeding according to schedule and (if applicable) on budget.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 2

Introduction

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Dr. Bremerton approved our proposal to determine the best approach to take in making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria.

In the following sections, we present the results of our research to date, followed by an updated task schedule and references.

Results of Research

In this progress report, we present our completed work on Tasks 1–2 and our status on Task 3. Then we discuss our future work: Tasks 4–6.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in

A brief statement of the context for the proposal. Note that the writers refer to the reader's having authorized the proposal.

An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because IT is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements.

A formal statement of the task that Dr. Bremerton asked the writers to perform.

Most of the information in the introduction is taken directly from the proposal. This reuse of text is ethical because the writers created it for that earlier document.

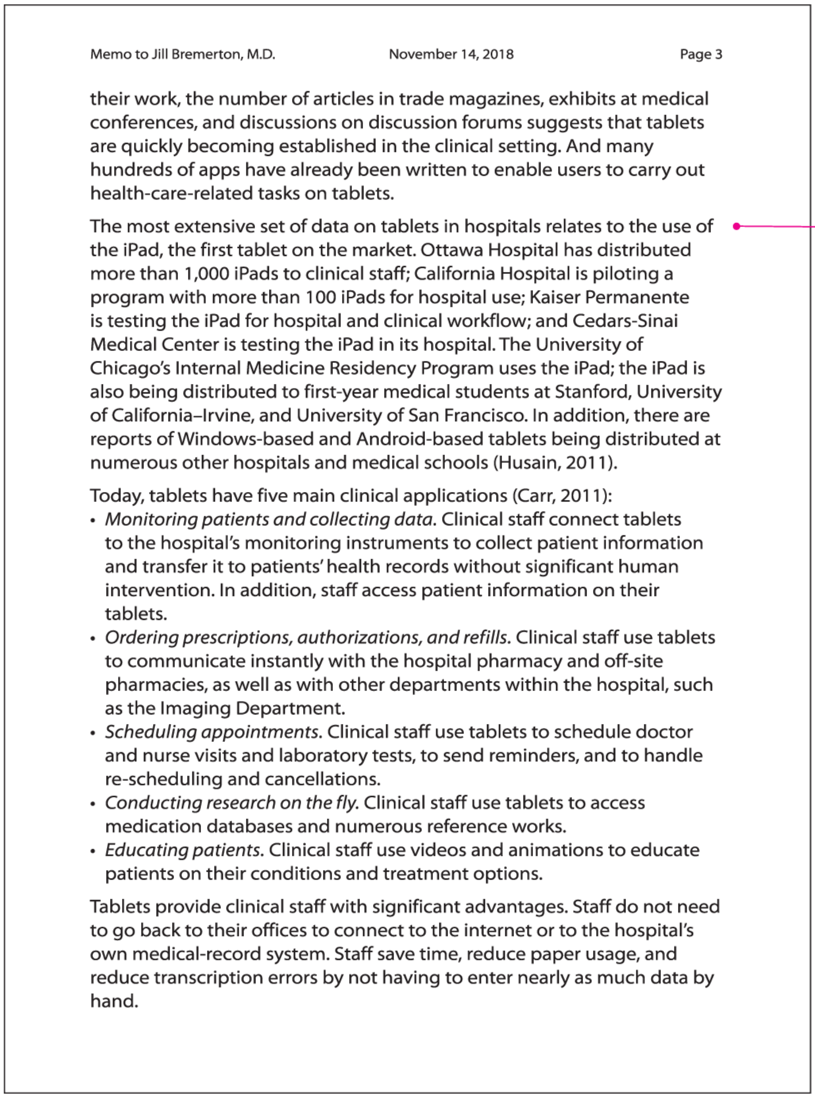
The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal.

The writers begin by describing the organization of the results section. For a progress report, a chronological organization — completed work, then future work — makes good sense.

The writers follow the task structure that they used in the proposal.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 3

their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets.

The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago’s Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California–Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011).

Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011):

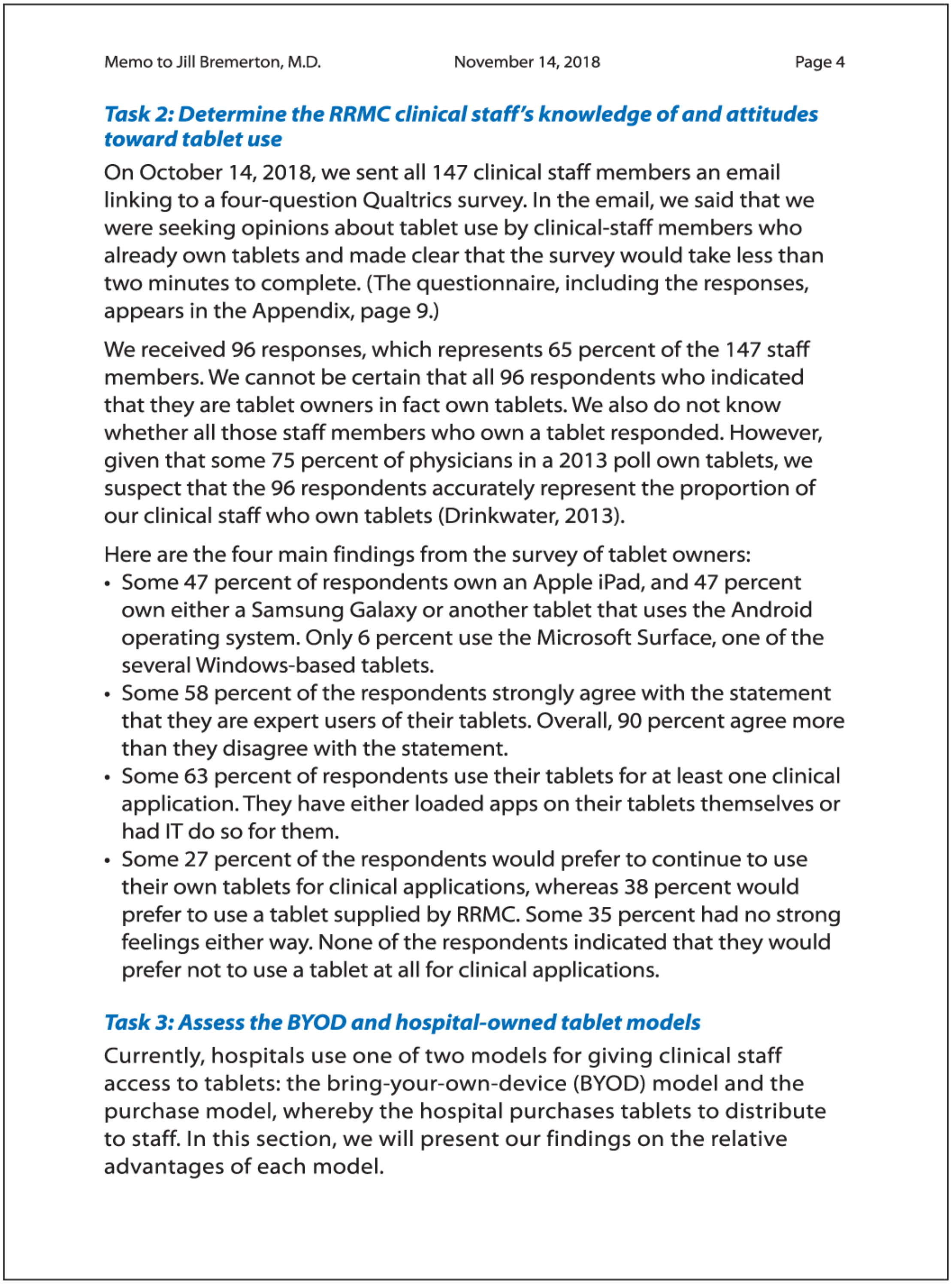
- *Monitoring patients and collecting data*. Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital’s monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients’ health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets.
- *Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills*. Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.
- *Scheduling appointments*. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations.
- *Conducting research on the fly*. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works.
- *Educating patients*. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educate patients on their conditions and treatment options.

Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital’s own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand.

The writers skillfully integrate their secondary research into their discussion of the task. By doing so, they enhance their credibility.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 4

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete. (The questionnaire, including the responses, appears in the Appendix, page 9.)

We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013).

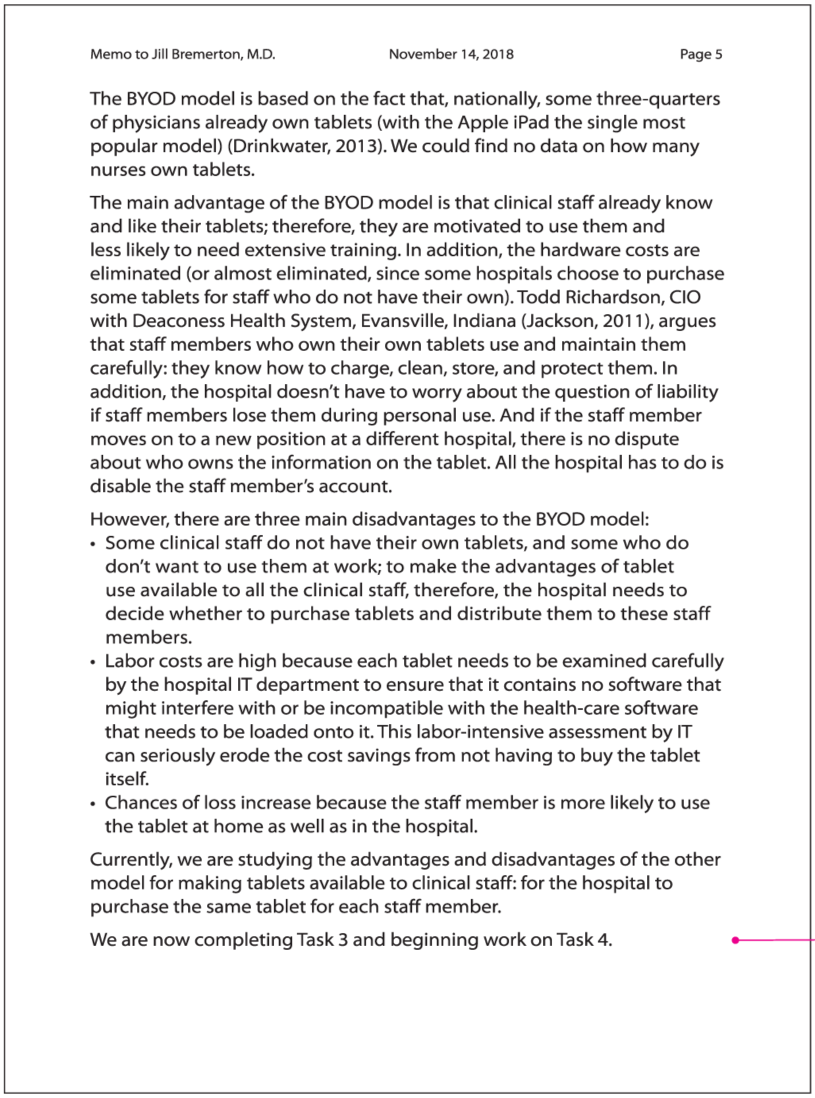
Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners:
- Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets.
- Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement.
- Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had IT do so for them.
- Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by RRMC. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all for clinical applications.

Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 5

The BYOD model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets.

The main advantage of the BYOD model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not have their own). Todd Richardson, CIO with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn't have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account.

However, there are three main disadvantages to the BYOD model:

- Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members.
- Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital IT department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by IT can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself.
- Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital.

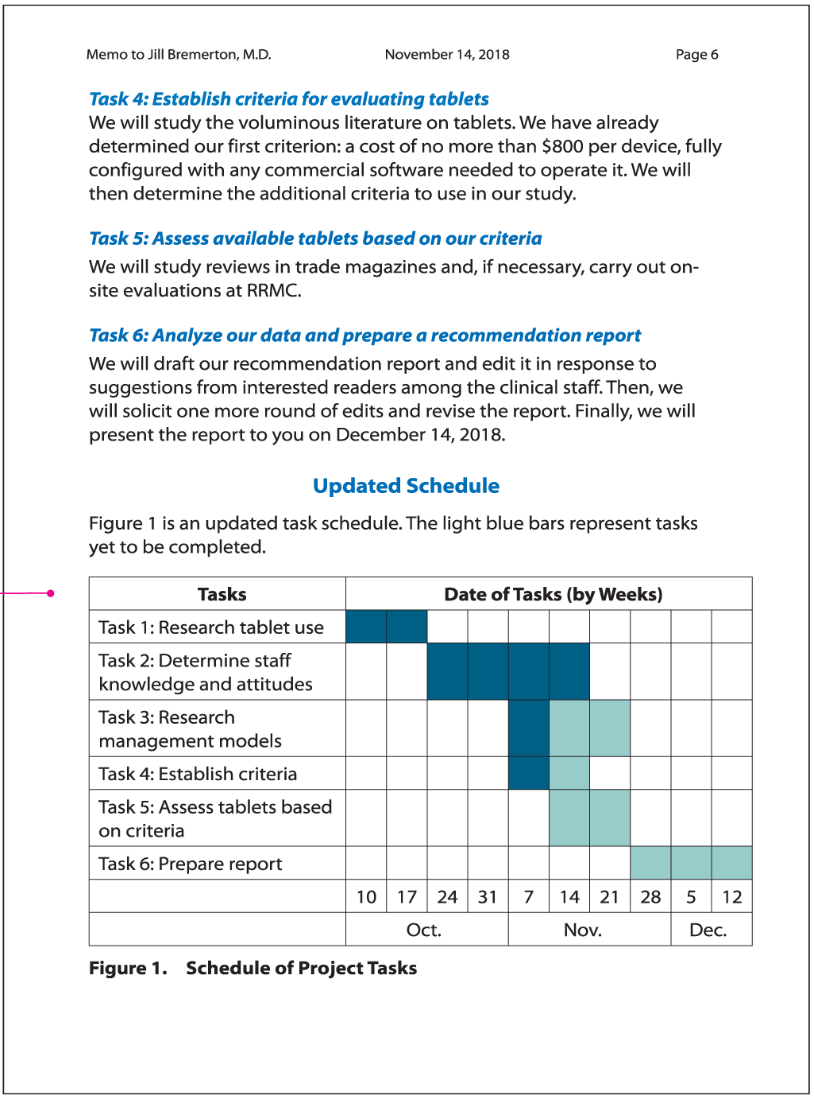
Currently, we are studying the advantages and disadvantages of the other model for making tablets available to clinical staff: for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member.

We are now completing Task 3 and beginning work on Task 4.

The writers explain that they are in the process of completing Task 3.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We will study the voluminous literature on tablets. We have already determined our first criterion: a cost of no more than $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. We will then determine the additional criteria to use in our study.

Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

We will study reviews in trade magazines and, if necessary, carry out on-site evaluations at RRMC.

Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report

We will draft our recommendation report and edit it in response to suggestions from interested readers among the clinical staff. Then, we will solicit one more round of edits and revise the report. Finally, we will present the report to you on December 14, 2018.

Updated Schedule

Figure 1 is an updated task schedule. The light blue bars represent tasks yet to be completed.

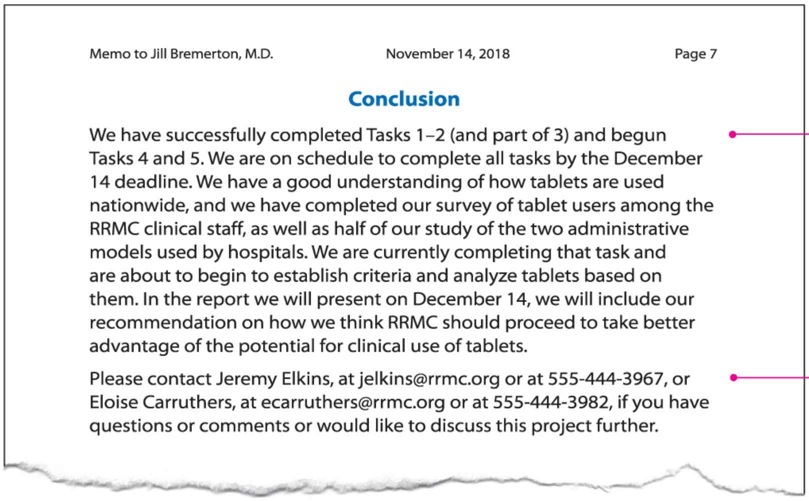
The Gantt chart shows the progress toward completing each of the project tasks. See the Tech Tip "*How To Create a Gantt Chart*" in Ch. 11 on p. 304 for advice on how to create Gantt charts.

Tasks	Date of Tasks (by Weeks)									
Task 1: Research tablet use	■	■								
Task 2: Determine staff knowledge and attitudes			■	■	■	■				
Task 3: Research management models					■	▨	▨			
Task 4: Establish criteria					■	▨				
Task 5: Assess tablets based on criteria						▨	▨			
Task 6: Prepare report								▨	▨	▨
	10	17	24	31	7	14	21	28	5	12
	Oct.				Nov.				Dec.	

Figure 1. Schedule of Project Tasks

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report (continued)



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 7

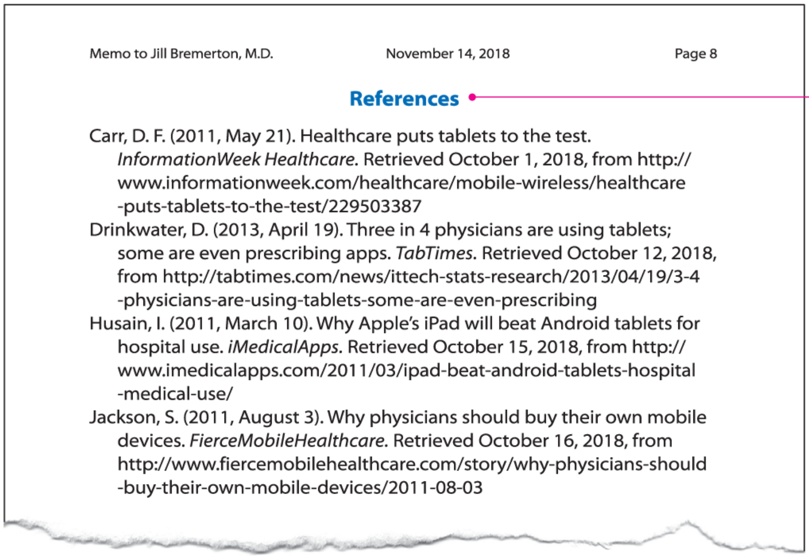
Conclusion

We have successfully completed Tasks 1–2 (and part of 3) and begun Tasks 4 and 5. We are on schedule to complete all tasks by the December 14 deadline. We have a good understanding of how tablets are used nationwide, and we have completed our survey of tablet users among the RRMC clinical staff, as well as half of our study of the two administrative models used by hospitals. We are currently completing that task and are about to begin to establish criteria and analyze tablets based on them. In the report we will present on December 14, we will include our recommendation on how we think RRMC should proceed to take better advantage of the potential for clinical use of tablets.

Please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3967, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3982, if you have questions or comments or would like to discuss this project further.

The conclusion summarizes the status of the project.

The writers end with a polite offer to provide additional information.



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 8

References

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

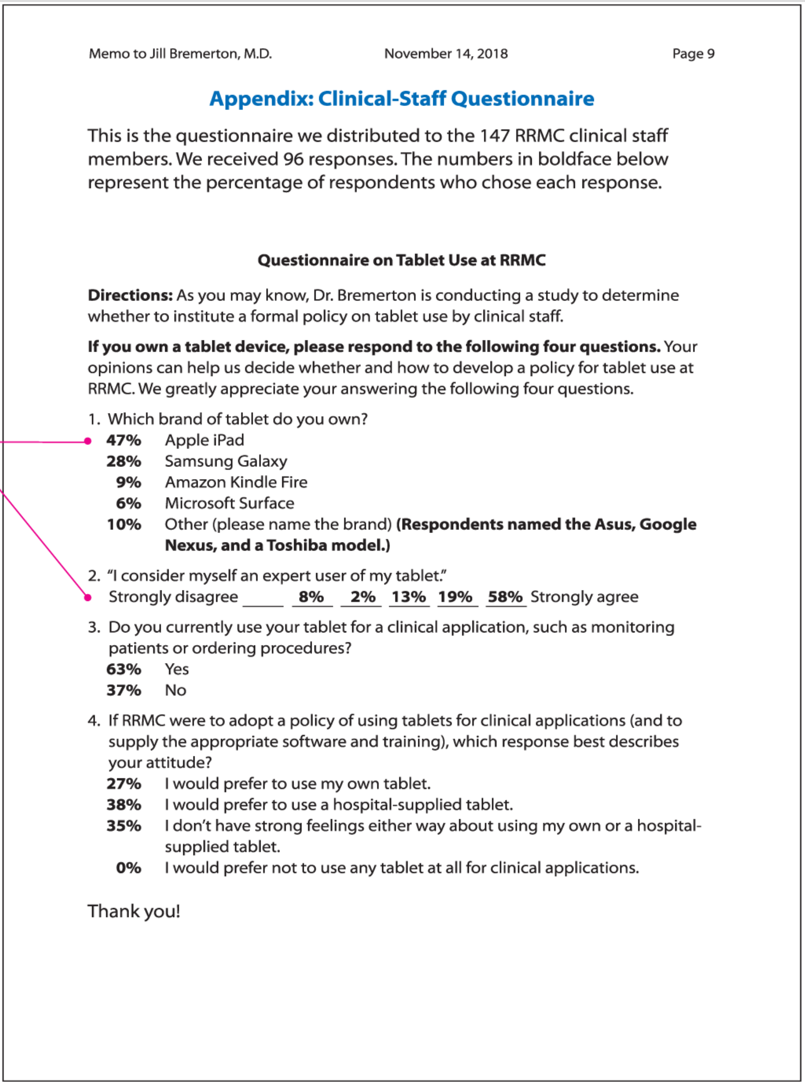
Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. *TabTimes*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://tabtimes.com/news/ittech-stats-research/2013/04/19/3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing

Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. *iMedicalApps*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.imedicalapps.com/2011/03/ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital-medical-use/

Jackson, S. (2011, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

This list of references follows the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A. The APA documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 9

Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire

This is the questionnaire we distributed to the 147 RRMC clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response.

Questionnaire on Tablet Use at RRMC

Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff.

If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at RRMC. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions.

1. Which brand of tablet do you own?
   47% Apple iPad
   28% Samsung Galaxy
   9% Amazon Kindle Fire
   6% Microsoft Surface
   10% Other (please name the brand) **(Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.)**
2. "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."
   Strongly disagree _____ **8%** **2%** **13%** **19%** **58%** Strongly agree
3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures?
   63% Yes
   37% No
4. If RRMC were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude?
   27% I would prefer to use my own tablet.
   38% I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet.
   35% I don't have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet.
   0% I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications.

Thank you!

Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will.

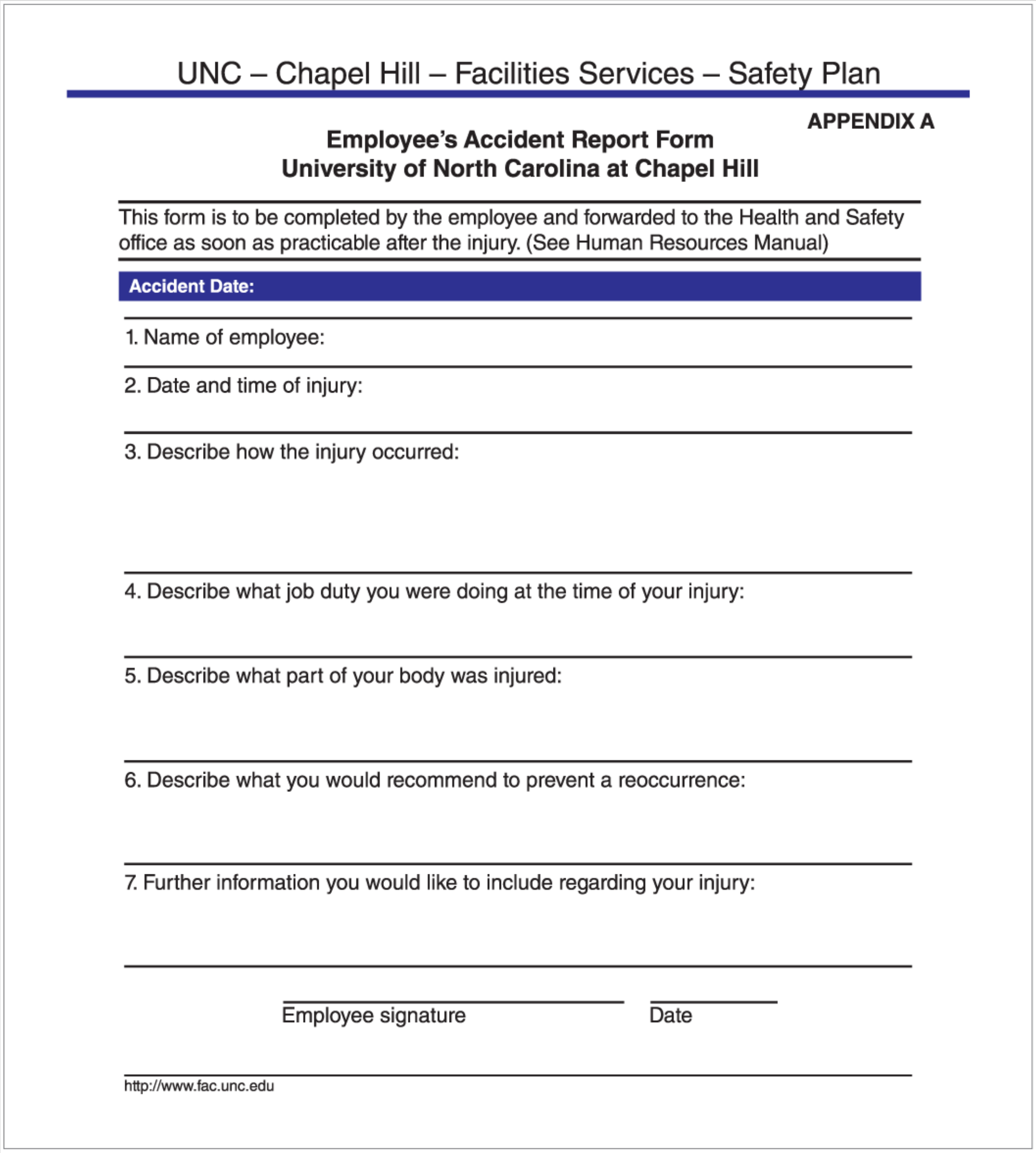
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Writing Incident Reports

An incident report describes an event such as a workplace accident, a health or safety emergency, or an equipment problem. (Specialized kinds of incident reports go by other names, such as *accident reports* or *trouble reports*.) The purpose of an incident report is to explain what happened, why it happened, and what the organization did (or is going to do) to follow up on the incident. Incident reports often contain a variety of graphics, including tables, drawings, diagrams, and photographs, as well as videos.

Incident reports can range from single-page forms that are filled out on paper or online to reports hundreds of pages long. Figure 12.5 shows an accident form used at a university.



UNC – Chapel Hill – Facilities Services – Safety Plan

APPENDIX A

Employee's Accident Report Form
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

This form is to be completed by the employee and forwarded to the Health and Safety office as soon as practicable after the injury. (See Human Resources Manual)

Accident Date:

1. Name of employee:
2. Date and time of injury:
3. Describe how the injury occurred:
4. Describe what job duty you were doing at the time of your injury:
5. Describe what part of your body was injured:
6. Describe what you would recommend to prevent a reoccurrence:
7. Further information you would like to include regarding your injury:

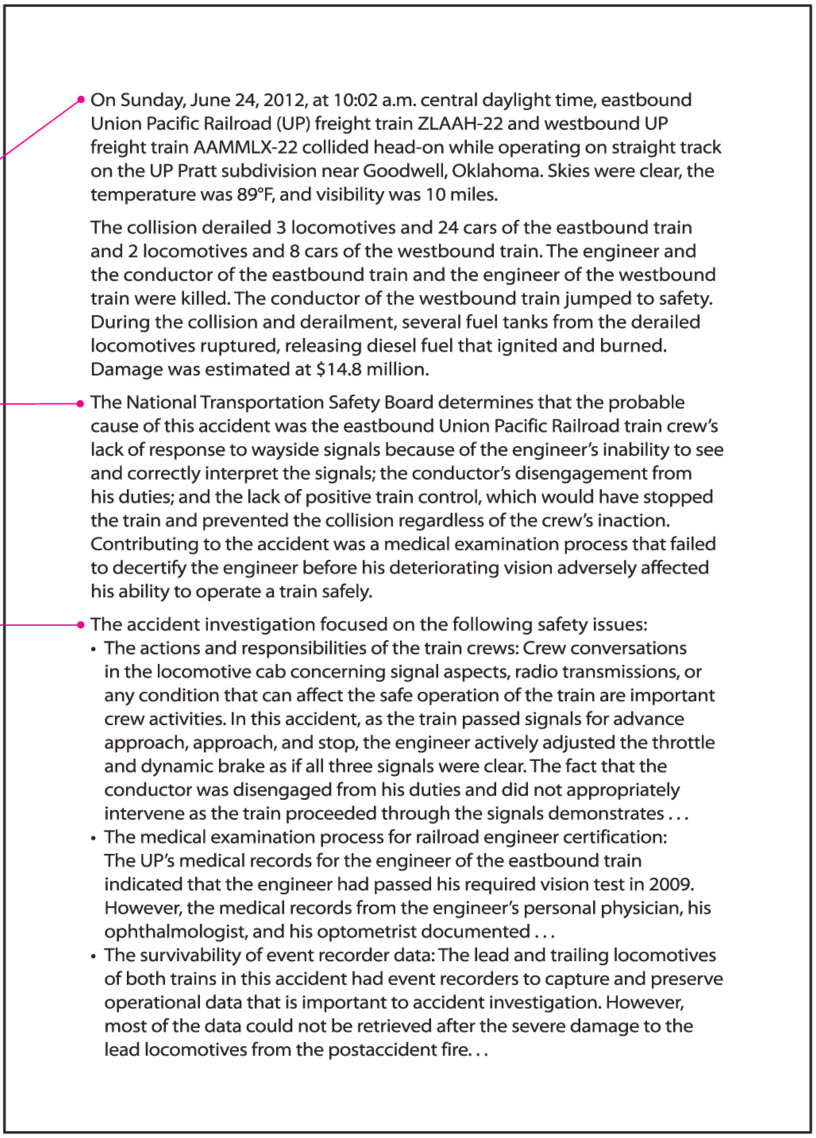
Employee signature Date

http://www.fac.unc.edu

Source: University of North Carolina–Chapel Hill Environment, Health, and Safety.

FIGURE 12.5 An Accident Report Form

Figure 12.6 is the executive summary of a National Transportation Safety Board accident report on a 2012 head-on collision between two freight trains in Oklahoma. Investigators spent many months researching and writing the full report.



On Sunday, June 24, 2012, at 10:02 a.m. central daylight time, eastbound Union Pacific Railroad (UP) freight train ZLAAH-22 and westbound UP freight train AAMMLX-22 collided head-on while operating on straight track on the UP Pratt subdivision near Goodwell, Oklahoma. Skies were clear, the temperature was 89°F, and visibility was 10 miles.

The collision derailed 3 locomotives and 24 cars of the eastbound train and 2 locomotives and 8 cars of the westbound train. The engineer and the conductor of the eastbound train and the engineer of the westbound train were killed. The conductor of the westbound train jumped to safety. During the collision and derailment, several fuel tanks from the derailed locomotives ruptured, releasing diesel fuel that ignited and burned. Damage was estimated at $14.8 million.

The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of this accident was the eastbound Union Pacific Railroad train crew's lack of response to wayside signals because of the engineer's inability to see and correctly interpret the signals; the conductor's disengagement from his duties; and the lack of positive train control, which would have stopped the train and prevented the collision regardless of the crew's inaction. Contributing to the accident was a medical examination process that failed to decertify the engineer before his deteriorating vision adversely affected his ability to operate a train safely.

The accident investigation focused on the following safety issues:

- The actions and responsibilities of the train crews: Crew conversations in the locomotive cab concerning signal aspects, radio transmissions, or any condition that can affect the safe operation of the train are important crew activities. In this accident, as the train passed signals for advance approach, approach, and stop, the engineer actively adjusted the throttle and dynamic brake as if all three signals were clear. The fact that the conductor was disengaged from his duties and did not appropriately intervene as the train proceeded through the signals demonstrates . . .
- The medical examination process for railroad engineer certification: The UP's medical records for the engineer of the eastbound train indicated that the engineer had passed his required vision test in 2009. However, the medical records from the engineer's personal physician, his ophthalmologist, and his optometrist documented . . .
- The survivability of event recorder data: The lead and trailing locomotives of both trains in this accident had event recorders to capture and preserve operational data that is important to accident investigation. However, most of the data could not be retrieved after the severe damage to the lead locomotives from the postaccident fire. . .

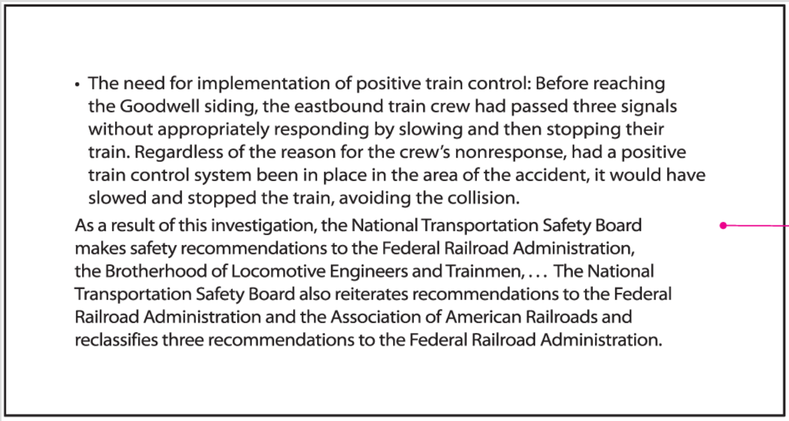
The summary — two pages near the beginning of a 65-page report — begins with the basic facts about the accident.

The writers discuss the probable cause of the accident and the resulting damage to the trains.

The writers explain the issues raised by this fatal accident.

Information from National Transportation Safety Board, 2013: www.ntsb.gov/investigations/AccidentReports/Pages/RAR1302.aspx.

FIGURE 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report (continued)



- The need for implementation of positive train control: Before reaching the Goodwell siding, the eastbound train crew had passed three signals without appropriately responding by slowing and then stopping their train. Regardless of the reason for the crew's nonresponse, had a positive train control system been in place in the area of the accident, it would have slowed and stopped the train, avoiding the collision.

As a result of this investigation, the National Transportation Safety Board makes safety recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration, the Brotherhood of Locomotive Engineers and Trainmen, . . . The National Transportation Safety Board also reiterates recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration and the Association of American Railroads and reclassifies three recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration.

Finally, the writers list the results of the investigation.

Information from National Transportation Safety Board, 2013: www.ntsb.gov/investigations/AccidentReports/Pages/RAR1302.aspx.

FIGURE 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report

Writing Meeting Minutes

Minutes, an organization's official record of a meeting, are distributed to all those who belong to the committee or group represented at the meeting. Sometimes, minutes are written by administrative assistants; other times they are written by technical professionals or technical communicators.

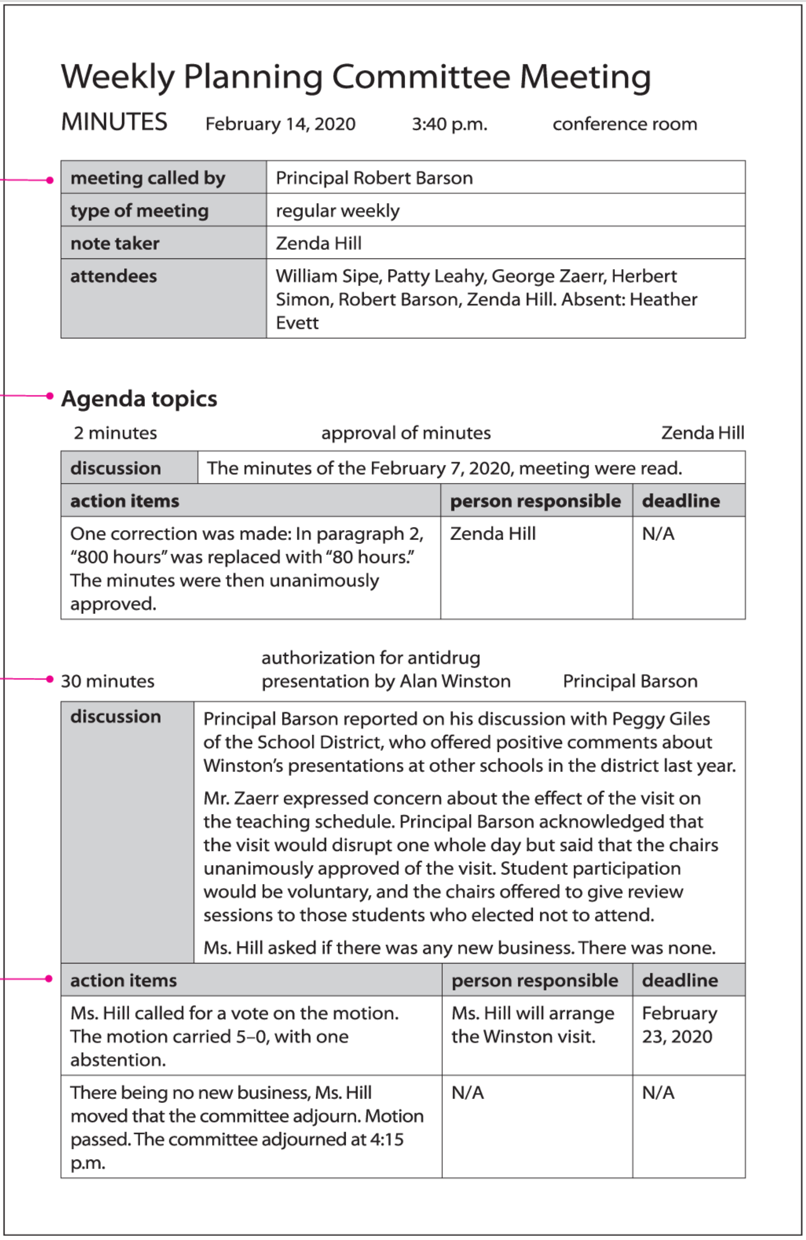
> *For more about conducting meetings, see Ch. 3.*

In writing minutes, be clear, comprehensive, objective, and diplomatic. Do not interpret what happened; simply report it. Because meetings rarely follow the agenda perfectly, you might find it challenging to provide an accurate record of the meeting. If necessary, interrupt the discussion to request a clarification.

Do not record emotional exchanges between participants. Because minutes are the official record of the meeting, you want them to reflect positively on the participants and the organization. For example, in a meeting a person might say, undiplomatically, that another person's idea is stupid, a comment that might lead to an argument. Don't record the argument. Instead, describe the outcome: "After a discussion of the merits of the two approaches, the chair asked the Facilities Committee to consider the approaches and report back to membership at the next meeting."

Figure 12.7 (on p. 334), an example of an effective set of minutes, was written using a Microsoft template. (For more on templates, see Chapter 3.) Many organizations today use templates like this one, which has three advantages:

1. Because it is a word-processing template, the note taker can enter information on his or her computer or tablet during the meeting, reducing the time it takes to publish the minutes.
2. Because the template is a form, it prompts the note taker to fill in the appropriate information, thus reducing the chances that he or she will overlook something important.
3. Because the template is a table, readers quickly become accustomed to reading it and thereby learn where to look for the information they seek.



Weekly Planning Committee Meeting

MINUTES February 14, 2020 3:40 p.m. conference room

meeting called by	Principal Robert Barson
type of meeting	regular weekly
note taker	Zenda Hill
attendees	William Sipe, Patty Leahy, George Zaerr, Herbert Simon, Robert Barson, Zenda Hill. Absent: Heather Evett

Agenda topics

2 minutes approval of minutes Zenda Hill

discussion	The minutes of the February 7, 2020, meeting were read.

action items	**person responsible**	**deadline**
One correction was made: In paragraph 2, "800 hours" was replaced with "80 hours." The minutes were then unanimously approved.	Zenda Hill	N/A

30 minutes authorization for antidrug presentation by Alan Winston Principal Barson

discussion	Principal Barson reported on his discussion with Peggy Giles of the School District, who offered positive comments about Winston's presentations at other schools in the district last year. Mr. Zaerr expressed concern about the effect of the visit on the teaching schedule. Principal Barson acknowledged that the visit would disrupt one whole day but said that the chairs unanimously approved of the visit. Student participation would be voluntary, and the chairs offered to give review sessions to those students who elected not to attend. Ms. Hill asked if there was any new business. There was none.

action items	**person responsible**	**deadline**
Ms. Hill called for a vote on the motion. The motion carried 5–0, with one abstention.	Ms. Hill will arrange the Winston visit.	February 23, 2020
There being no new business, Ms. Hill moved that the committee adjourn. Motion passed. The committee adjourned at 4:15 p.m.	N/A	N/A

The first section of this template calls for information about the logistics of the meeting. You can modify the template to make it appropriate for your organization.

The second section of this template is devoted to the agenda items for the meeting.

Note that for each agenda item, the note taker is prompted to state how long the discussion took, the subject of the discussion, and the name of the person leading the discussion.

For each agenda item, the note taker records the main points of the discussion and the action items. Because the template calls for the action item (such as a vote or a task to be done), the name of the person responsible for doing the task, and the deadline for the task, there should be no confusion about who is to do which task and when it is due.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 12.7 A Set of Meeting Minutes

WRITER’S CHECKLIST

☐ Did you choose an appropriate application for the informational report?

Does the directive

☐ clearly and politely explain your message?
☐ explain your reasoning, if appropriate?

Does the field report

☐ clearly explain the important information?
☐ use, if appropriate, a problem–methods–results–conclusion–recommendations organization?

Does the progress or status report

☐ clearly indicate the type of report?
☐ use an appropriate organization?
☐ clearly and honestly report on the subject and forecast the problems and possibilities of the future work?
☐ include, if appropriate, an appendix of supporting materials that substantiate the discussion?

Does the incident report

☐ explain what happened?

☐ explain why it happened?
☐ explain how the organization did or will respond?

Do the minutes

☐ provide the necessary housekeeping details about the meeting?
☐ explain the events of the meeting accurately?
☐ reflect positively on the participants and the organization?

EXERCISES

1. As the manager of a busy downtown store, you have been informed by one of your employees that a customer tripped on the sidewalk and was injured. The customer tripped because the sidewalk was crowded with commuter bikes which, for convenience, employees lock to street signs and benches versus using the designated racks around the corner. Write an incident report that explains what happened to the customer and why. Invent relevant details as needed.
2. In response to the situation outlined in Exercise 1, write a directive in the form of a memo defining a new policy: Employees commuting to work on bicycles must lock them to designated racks. Invent relevant details as needed.

3. **TEAM EXERCISE** You are one of three members of the administrative council of your college's student association. Recently, the three of you have concluded that your weekly meetings, which are open to all students, have become chaotic. There are two main reasons for this: you do not use parliamentary procedure (rules for conducting meetings so that they are efficient and fair), and controversial issues have arisen that have attracted an increasing number of students. You have decided that it is time to consider adopting parliamentary procedures. Look on the web for models of parliamentary procedure. Is there one that you can adopt? Could you combine elements of several models to create an effective process? Find or write a brief set of procedures, being sure to cite your sources. In a memo to your instructor, discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the model you propose, and submit it along with the procedures.

CASE 12: Writing a Directive

You work for a company that is implementing a new waste-reduction initiative, with the goal of saving money and benefiting the environment. Your supervisor has given you an outline of the new policy and asked you to draft a directive that she will distribute to department heads. The directive should explain the purpose and importance of the policy and outline ways department heads and their employees will be expected to participate. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started drafting the directive.

CHAPTER 13

Writing Recommendation Reports

Understanding the Role of Recommendation Reports
Using a Problem-Solving Model for Preparing Recommendation Reports
Writing Recommendation Reports
Sample Recommendation Report

CHAPTER 12 DISCUSSED informational reports: those in which the writer's main purpose is to present information. This chapter discusses recommendation reports. A recommendation report also presents information but goes one step further by offering suggestions about what the readers ought to do next.

Here are examples of the kinds of questions a recommendation report might address:

- **What should we do about Problem X?** What should we do about the increased cost of copper, which we use in manufacturing our line of electronic components?

- **Should we do Function X?** Although we cannot afford to pay tuition for all college courses our employees wish to take, can we reimburse them for classes directly related to their work?
- **Should we use Technology A or Technology B to do Function X?** Should we continue to supply our employees with laptops, or should we switch to tablets?
- **We currently use Method A to do Function X. Should we be using Method B?** We sort our bar-coded mail by hand; should we buy an automatic sorter?

Each of these questions can lead to a wide variety of recommendations, ranging from “do nothing” to “study this some more” to “take the following actions immediately.”

Understanding the Role of Recommendation Reports

A recommendation report can be the final link in a chain of documents that begins with a proposal and continues with one or more progress reports. This last, formal report is often called a *final report*, a *project report*, a *recommendation report*, a *completion report*, or simply a *report.* The sample report shown in Figure 13.8 (pp. 354–77) is the recommendation report in the series about tablet computers at Rawlings Regional Medical Center presented in Chapters 11 and 12.

For more about proposals and progress reports, see Chs. 11 and 12.

A recommendation report can also be a freestanding document, one that was not preceded by a proposal or by progress reports. For instance, you might be asked for a recommendation on whether your company should offer employees comp time (compensating those who work overtime with time off) instead of overtime pay. This task would call for you to research the subject and write a single recommendation report.

Most recommendation reports discuss questions of feasibility. *Feasibility* is a measure of the practicality of a course of action. For instance, a company might conduct a *feasibility study* of whether it should acquire a competing company. In this case, the two courses of action are to acquire the competing company or not to acquire it. Or a company might do a study to determine which make and model of truck to buy for its fleet.

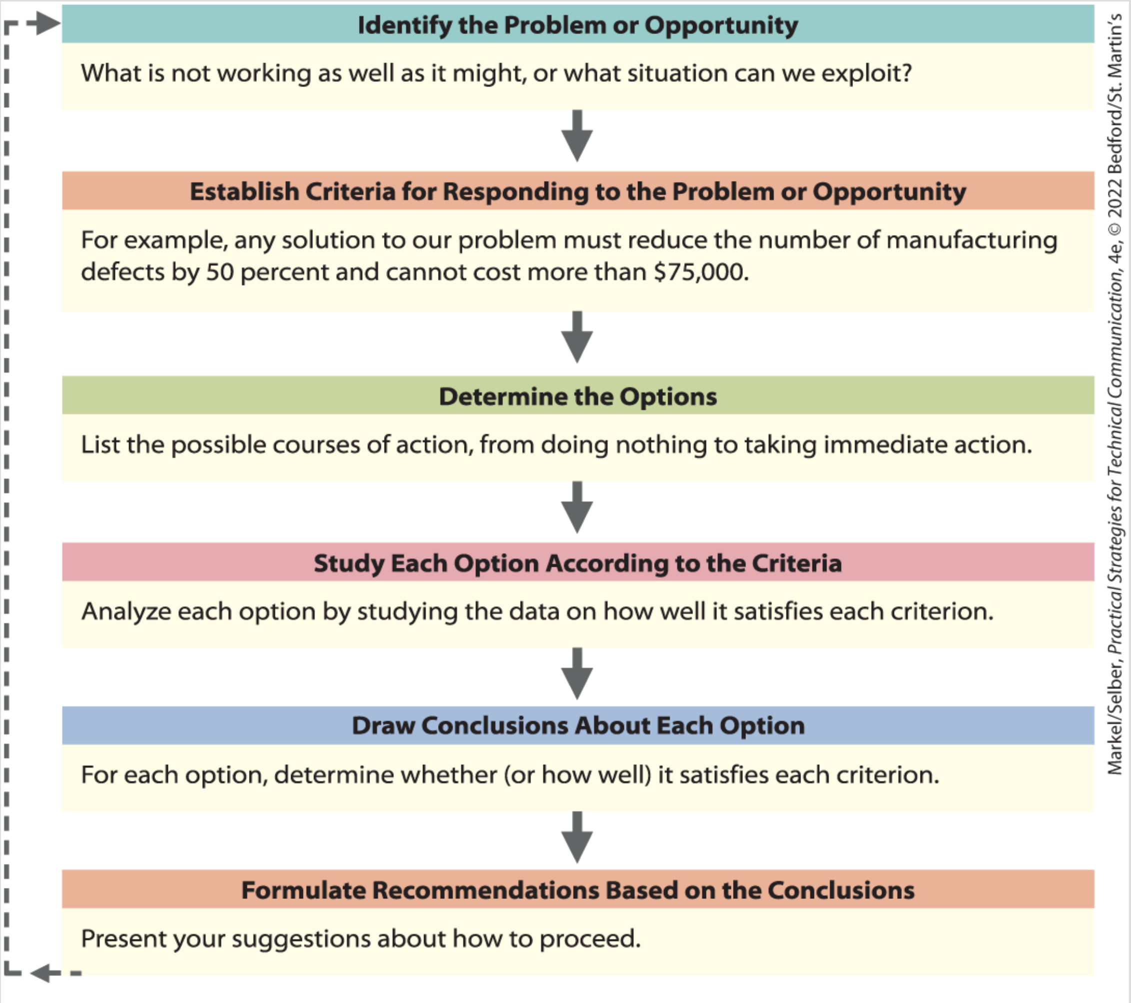
A feasibility report is a report that answers three kinds of questions:

- **Questions of possibility.** We would like to build a new rail line to link our warehouse and our retail outlet, but if we cannot raise the money, the project is not possible. Even if we can find the money, do we have government authorization? If we do, are the soil conditions appropriate for the rail link?
- **Questions of economic wisdom.** Even if we can afford to build the rail link, should we do so? If we use all our resources on this project, what other projects will have to be postponed or canceled? Is there a less expensive or a less financially risky way to achieve the same goals?
- **Questions of perception.** Because our company's workers have recently accepted a temporary wage freeze, they might view the rail link as an inappropriate use of funds. The truckers' union might see it as a threat to truckers' job security. Some members of the public might also be interested parties, because any large-scale construction might affect the environment.

Using a Problem-Solving Model for Preparing Recommendation Reports

The writing process for a recommendation report is similar to that for any other technical document.

In addition to this model of the writing process, you need a problem-solving model for conducting the analysis that will enable you to write the recommendation report. The following discussion explains in more detail the problem-solving model shown in Figure 13.1 below.



Identify the Problem or Opportunity

What is not working as well as it might, or what situation can we exploit?

Establish Criteria for Responding to the Problem or Opportunity

For example, any solution to our problem must reduce the number of manufacturing defects by 50 percent and cannot cost more than $75,000.

Determine the Options

List the possible courses of action, from doing nothing to taking immediate action.

Study Each Option According to the Criteria

Analyze each option by studying the data on how well it satisfies each criterion.

Draw Conclusions About Each Option

For each option, determine whether (or how well) it satisfies each criterion.

Formulate Recommendations Based on the Conclusions

Present your suggestions about how to proceed.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.1 A Problem-Solving Model for Recommendation Reports

As you work through this process, you might find that you need to go back to a previous step — or even to the first step — as you think more about your subject, audience, and purpose.

IDENTIFY THE PROBLEM OR OPPORTUNITY

What is not working or is not working as well as it might? What situation presents an opportunity to decrease costs or improve the quality of a product or service? Without a clear statement of your problem or opportunity, you cannot plan your research.

For example, your company has found that employees who smoke are absent and ill more often than those who don't smoke. Your supervisor has asked you to investigate whether the company should offer a free smoking-cessation program. The company can offer the program only if the company's insurance carrier will pay for it. The first thing you need to do is talk with the insurance agent; if the insurance carrier will pay for the program, you can proceed with your investigation. If the agent says no, you have to determine whether another insurance carrier offers better coverage or whether there is some other way to encourage employees to stop smoking.

ESTABLISH CRITERIA FOR RESPONDING TO THE PROBLEM OR OPPORTUNITY

Criteria are standards against which you measure your options. Criteria can be classified into two categories: *necessary* and *desirable.* For example, if you want to buy a photocopier for your business, necessary criteria might be that each copy cost less than two cents to produce and that the photocopier be able to handle oversized documents. If the photocopier doesn't fulfill those two criteria, you will not consider it further. By contrast, desirable criteria might include that the photocopier be capable of double-sided copying and stapling. Desirable criteria let you make distinctions among a variety of similar objects, objectives, actions, or effects. If a photocopier does not fulfill a desirable criterion, you will still consider it, although it will be less attractive.

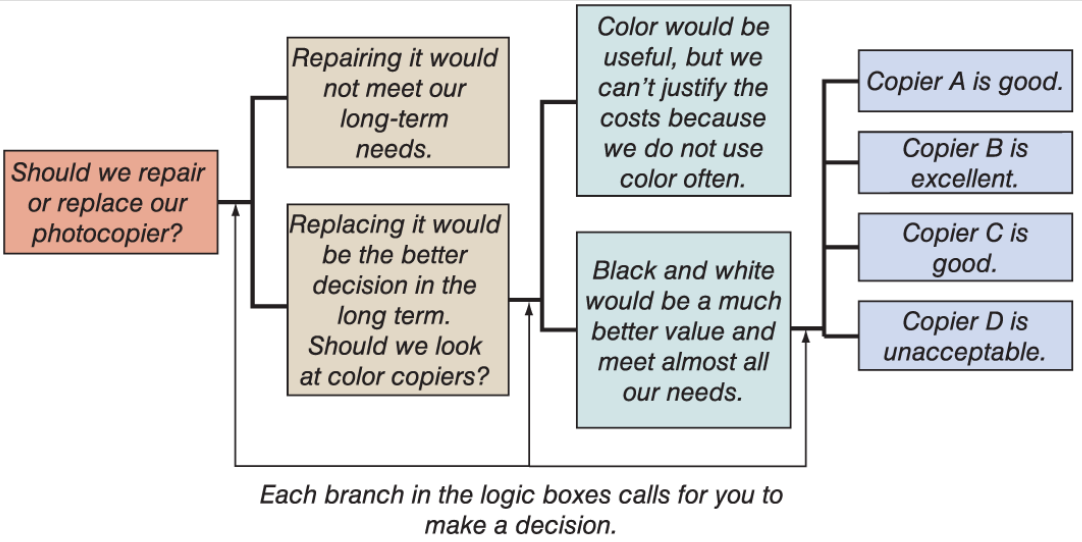
Until you establish your criteria, you don't know what your options are. Sometimes, you are given your criteria: your supervisor tells you how much money you can spend, for instance, and that figure becomes one of your necessary criteria. Other times, you derive your criteria from your research.

DETERMINE THE OPTIONS

After you establish your criteria, you determine your options. *Options* are potential courses of action you can take in responding to a problem or opportunity. Determining your options might be simple or complicated.

Sometimes, your options are presented to you. For instance, your supervisor asks you to study two vendors for accounting services and recommend one of them. The options are Vendor A or Vendor B. That's simple.

In other cases, you have to consider a series of options. For example, your department's photocopier is old and breaking down. Your first decision is whether to repair it or replace it. Once you have answered that question, you might have to make more decisions. If you are going to replace it, what features should you look for in a new one? Each time you make a decision, you have to answer more questions until, eventually, you arrive at a recommendation. For a complicated scenario like this, you might find it helpful to use logic boxes or flowcharts to sketch the logic of your options, as shown in Figure 13.2.


Should we repair or replace our photocopier?
Repairing it would not meet our long-term needs.
Replacing it would be the better decision in the long term. Should we look at color copiers?
Color would be useful, but we can't justify the costs because we do not use color often.
Black and white would be a much better value and meet almost all our needs.
Copier A is good.
Copier B is excellent.
Copier C is good.
Copier D is unacceptable.
Each branch in the logic boxes calls for you to make a decision.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.2 Using Logic Boxes To Plot a Series of Options

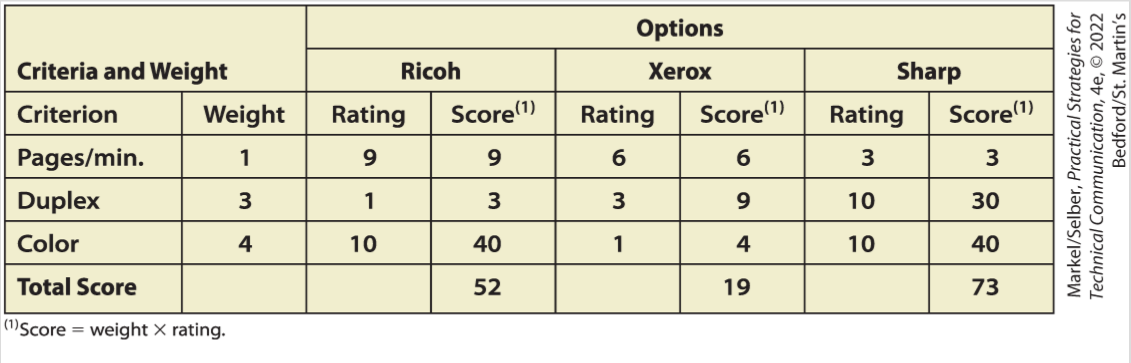
As you research your topic, your understanding of your options will likely change. At this point, however, it is useful to understand the basic logic of your options or series of options.

STUDY EACH OPTION ACCORDING TO THE CRITERIA

Once you have identified your options (or series of options), study each one according to the criteria. For the photocopier project, secondary research would include studying articles about photocopiers in technical magazines or reputable websites and specification sheets from the different manufacturers. Primary research might include observing product demonstrations as well as interviewing representatives from different manufacturers and managers who have purchased different brands.

For more about research techniques, see Ch. 5.

To make the analysis of the options as objective as possible, professionals sometimes create a *decision matrix*, a tool for systematically evaluating each option according to each criterion. A decision matrix is a table (or a spreadsheet), as shown in Figure 13.3. Here the writer is nearly at the end of his series of options: he is evaluating three similar photocopiers according to three criteria. Each criterion has its own weight, which suggests how important it is. The greater the weight, the more important the criterion.



Criteria and Weight		Options					
		Ricoh		Xerox		Sharp	
Criterion	Weight	Rating	Score(1)	Rating	Score(1)	Rating	Score(1)
Pages/min.	1	9	9	6	6	3	3
Duplex	3	1	3	3	9	10	30
Color	4	10	40	1	4	10	40
Total Score			52		19		73

(1)Score = weight × rating.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.3 A Decision Matrix

Spreadsheet programs often contain templates for creating decision matrices.

As shown in Figure 13.3, the criterion of pages per minute is relatively unimportant: it receives a weight of 1. For this reason, the Ricoh copier, even though it receives a high rating for pages per minute (9), receives only a modest score of 9 (1 × 9 = 9) on this criterion. However, the criterion of color copying is quite important, with a weight of 4. On this criterion, the Ricoh, with its rating of 10, achieves a very high score (4 × 10 = 40).

But a decision matrix cannot stand on its own. You need to explain your methods. That is, in the discussion or in footnotes to the matrix, you need to explain the following three decisions:

1. **Why you chose each criterion — or didn't choose a criterion the reader might have expected to see included.** For instance, why did you choose duplexing (double-sided printing) but not image scanning?

2. **Why you assigned a particular weight to each criterion.** For example, why is the copier's ability to make color copies four times more important than its speed?
3. **Why you assigned a particular rating to each option.** For example, why does one copier receive a rating of only 1 on duplexing, whereas another receives a 3 and a third receives a 10?

A decision matrix is helpful only if your readers understand your methods and agree with the logic you used in choosing the criteria and assigning the weight and ratings for each option.

Although a decision matrix has its limitations, it is useful for both you and your readers. For you as the writer, the main advantage is that it helps you do a methodical analysis. For your readers, it makes your analysis easier to follow because it clearly presents your methods and results.

DRAW CONCLUSIONS ABOUT EACH OPTION

Whether you use a decision matrix or a less formal means of recording your evaluations, the next step is to draw conclusions about the options you studied — by interpreting your results and writing evaluative statements about the options.

For the study of photocopiers, your conclusion might be that the Sharp model is the best copier: it meets all your necessary criteria and the greatest number of desirable criteria, or it scores highest on your matrix. Depending on your readers' preferences, you can present your conclusions in any one of three ways.

- **Rank all the options:** the Sharp copier is the best option, the Ricoh copier is second best, and so forth.
- **Classify all the options in one of two categories:** acceptable and unacceptable.
- **Present a compound conclusion:** the Sharp offers the most technical capabilities; the Ricoh is the best value.

FORMULATE RECOMMENDATIONS BASED ON THE CONCLUSIONS

If you conclude that Option A is better than Option B — and you see no obvious problems with Option A — recommend Option A. But if the problem has changed or your company's priorities or resources have changed, you might decide to recommend a course of action that is inconsistent with the conclusions you derived. Your responsibility is to use your judgment and recommend the best course of action.

ETHICS NOTE

PRESENTING HONEST RECOMMENDATIONS

As you formulate your recommendations, you might know what your readers want you to say. For example, they might want you to recommend the cheapest option, or one that uses a certain kind of technology, or one that is supplied by a certain vendor. Naturally, you want to be able to recommend what they want, but sometimes the facts won't let you. Your responsibility is to tell the truth — to do the research honestly and competently and then present the findings honestly. Your name goes on the report. You want to be able to defend your recommendations based on the evidence and your reasoning.

One worrisome situation that arises frequently is that none of the options would be a complete success or none would work at all. What should you do? You should tell the truth about the options, warts and all. Give the best advice you can, even if that advice is to do nothing.

Writing Recommendation Reports

The following discussion presents a basic structure for a recommendation report. Remember that every document you write should reflect its audience, purpose, and subject. Therefore, you might need to modify, add to, or delete some of the elements discussed here.

Reports that are lengthy and complex are often written collaboratively. As you begin the project that will culminate in the report, consider whether it would make sense to set up a shared writing space, a wiki, or some other method for you and your team members to write and edit the report collaboratively.

For more on collaboration, see Ch. 3.

The easiest way to draft a report is to think of it as consisting of three sections: the front matter, the body, and the back matter. Table 13.1 shows the purposes of and typical elements in these three sections.

TABLE 13.1 Elements of a Typical Report

SECTION OF THE REPORT	PURPOSES OF THE SECTION	TYPICAL ELEMENTS IN THE SECTION

Front matter	• to orient the reader to the subject • to provide summaries for technical and managerial readers • to help readers navigate the report • to help readers decide whether to read the document	• letter of transmittal (p. 346) • cover (p. 346) • title page (p. 346) • abstract (p. 346) • table of contents (p. 347) • list of illustrations (p. 348) • executive summary (p. 350)
Body	• to provide the most comprehensive account of the project, from the problem or opportunity that motivated it to the methods and the most important findings	• introduction (p. 343) • methods (p. 344) • results (p. 344) • conclusions (p. 345) • recommendations (p. 345)
Back matter	• to present supplementary information, such as more detailed explanations than are provided in the body • to enable readers to consult the secondary sources the writers used	• glossary (p. 351) • list of symbols (p. 351) • references (p. 353) • appendixes (p. 353)

You will probably draft the body before the front and the back matter. This sequence is easiest because you think through what you want to say in the body and then draft the front and back matter based on it.

If you are writing your recommendation report for readers from other cultures, keep in mind that conventions differ from one culture to another. In the United States, reports are commonly organized from general to specific. That is, the most general information (the abstract and the executive summary) appears early in the report. In many cultures, however, reports are organized from specific to general. Detailed discussions of methods and results precede discussions of the important findings.

Similarly, elements of the front and back matter are rooted in culture. For instance, in some cultures — or in some organizations — writers do not create executive summaries, or their executive summaries differ in length or organization from those discussed here. According to interface designer Pia Honold (1999), German users of high-tech products rely on the table of contents in a manual because they like to understand the scope and organization of the manual. Therefore, writers of manuals for German readers should include comprehensive, detailed tables of contents.

Study samples of writing produced by people from the culture you are addressing to see how they organize their reports and use front and back matter.

WRITING THE BODY OF THE REPORT

The elements that make up the body of a report are discussed here in the order in which they usually appear in a report. However, you should draft the elements in whatever order you prefer. The sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 includes these elements.

Introduction

The introduction helps readers understand the discussion that follows. Start by analyzing who your readers are. Then consider these questions:

- **What is the subject of the report?** If the report follows a proposal and a progress report, you can probably copy this information from one of those documents, modifying it as necessary. Reusing this information is efficient and ethical.
- **What is the purpose of the report?** The purpose of the report is not the purpose of the project. The purpose of the report is to explain a project from beginning (identifying a problem or an opportunity) to end (presenting recommendations).
- **What is the background of the report?** Include this information, even if you have presented it before; some of your readers might not have read your previous documents or might have forgotten them.
- **What are your sources of information?** Briefly describe your primary and secondary research, to prepare your readers for a more detailed discussion of your sources in subsequent sections of the report.

- **What is the scope of the report?** Indicate the topics you are including, as well as those you are not.
- **What are the most significant findings?** Summarize the most significant findings of the project.
- **What are your recommendations?** In a short report containing a few simple recommendations, include those recommendations in the introduction. In a lengthy report containing many complex recommendations, briefly summarize them in the introduction, then refer readers to the more detailed discussion in the recommendations section.
- **What is the organization of the report?** Indicate your organizational pattern so that readers can understand where you are going and why.
- **What key terms are you using in the report?** The introduction is an appropriate place to define new terms. If you need to define many terms, place the definitions in a glossary and refer readers to it in the introduction.

Methods

The methods section answers the question, “What did you do?” In drafting the methods section, consider your readers’ knowledge of the field, their perception of you, and the uniqueness of the project, as well as their reasons for reading the report and their attitudes toward the project. Provide enough information to enable readers to understand what you did and why you did it that way. If others will be using the report to duplicate your methods, include sufficient detail.

Results

Whereas the methods section answers the question, “What did you do?” the results section answers the question, “What did you see or determine?”

Results are the data you discovered or compiled. Present the results objectively, without comment. Save the interpretation of the results — your conclusions — for later. If you combine results and conclusions, your readers might be unable to follow your reasoning and might not be able to tell whether the evidence justifies your conclusions.

Your audience’s needs will help you decide how to structure the results. How much they know about the subject, what they plan to do with the report, what they expect your recommendation(s) to be — these and many other factors will affect how you present the results. For instance, suppose that your company is considering installing a VoIP phone system that will enable employees to make telephone calls over the internet, and you conducted the research on the available systems. In the introduction, you explain the disadvantages of the company’s current phone system. In the methods section, you describe how you established the criteria you applied to the available phone systems, as well as your research procedures. In the results section, you provide the details of each phone system you are considering, as well as the results of your evaluation of each system.

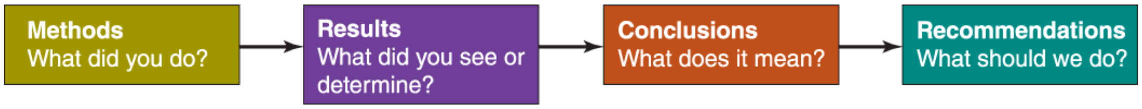
Conclusions

Conclusions answer the question, “What does it mean?” They are the implications of the results. To draw conclusions, you need to think carefully about your results, weighing whether they point clearly to a single meaning.

For more about evaluating evidence and drawing conclusions, see Ch. 5, pp. 88–90.

Recommendations

Recommendations answer the question, “What should we do?” As discussed earlier in this chapter, recommendations do not always flow directly from conclusions. Always consider recommending that the organization take no action or no action at this time.


Methods
What did you do?
Results
What did you see or determine?
Conclusions
What does it mean?
Recommendations
What should we do?

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

GUIDELINES Writing Recommendations

As you draft your recommendations, consider the following four factors:

- **Content.** Be clear and specific. If the project has been unsuccessful, don't simply recommend that your readers "try some other alternatives." What alternatives do you recommend and why?
- **Tone.** When you recommend a new course of action, be careful not to offend whoever formulated the earlier course. Do not write that following your recommendations will "correct the mistakes" that have been made. Instead, your recommendations should "offer great promise for success." A restrained, understated tone is more persuasive because it shows that you are interested only in the good of your organization, not personal rivalries.
- **Form.** If the report leads to only one recommendation, use traditional paragraphs. If the report leads to more than one recommendation, consider a numbered list.
- **Location.** Consider including a summary of the recommendations — or, if they are brief, the full list — after the executive summary or in the introduction as well as at the end of the body of the report.

WRITING THE FRONT MATTER

Front matter is common in reports, proposals, and manuals. As indicated in Table 13.1 on page 343, front matter helps readers understand the whole report and find the information they seek. Most organizations have established formats for front matter. Study the style guide used in your company or, if there isn't one, examples from the files to see how other writers have assembled their reports.

Letter of Transmittal

In the letter of transmittal, which can take the form of a letter, a memo, or even an email, the writer introduces the primary reader to the purpose and content of the report. In addition, the writer often states who authorized or commissioned the report and acknowledges any assistance he or she received in carrying out the project. The letter of transmittal is attached to the report, bound in with it, or simply placed on top of it. Even though the letter likely contains little information that is not included elsewhere in the report, it is important because it is the first thing the reader sees. It establishes a courteous and professional tone. Letters of transmittal are customary even when the writer and the reader both work for the same organization. See the beginning of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 (pp. 354–77) for an example of a transmittal letter in the form of a memo.

For more about formatting a letter, see "Writing Letters" in Ch. 9 on p. 237.

Cover

Although some reports do not have covers, reports that will be handled a lot or that will be exposed to harsh environmental conditions, such as water or grease, often do. The cover usually contains the title of the report, the name and position of the writer, the date of submission, and the name or logo of the writer's company. Sometimes, the cover also includes a security notice or a statement of proprietary information.

Title Page

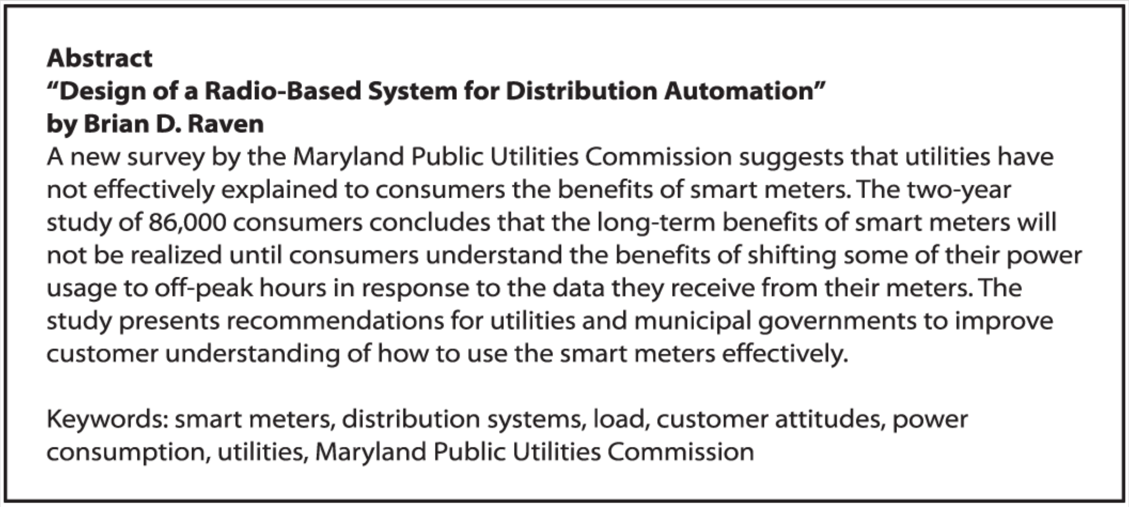
A title page includes at least the title of the report, the name of the writer, and the date of submission. A more complex title page might also include a project number, a list of additional personnel who contributed to the report, and a distribution list. See the third page of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of a title page.

Abstract

An abstract is a brief technical summary of the report, usually no more than 200 words. It addresses readers who are familiar with the technical subject and who need to decide whether they want to read the full report. In an abstract, you can use technical terminology and refer to advanced concepts in the field. Abstracts are sometimes published by abstract services, which are useful resources for researchers.

Abstracts often contain a list of half a dozen or so keywords, which are entered into electronic databases. As the writer, one of your tasks is to think of the various keywords that should lead people to the information in your report.

There are two types of abstracts: descriptive and informative. A *descriptive abstract* — sometimes called a *topical, indicative*, or *table-of-contents abstract* — describes the kinds of information contained in the report. It does not provide the major findings (important results, conclusions, or recommendations). It simply lists the topics covered, giving equal emphasis to each. Figure 13.4 is a descriptive abstract from a report by a utility company about its pilot program for measuring how much electricity its customers are using. A descriptive abstract is used most often when space is at a premium. Some government proposals, for example, call for a descriptive abstract to be placed at the bottom of the title page.



Abstract
"Design of a Radio-Based System for Distribution Automation"
by Brian D. Raven
A new survey by the Maryland Public Utilities Commission suggests that utilities have not effectively explained to consumers the benefits of smart meters. The two-year study of 86,000 consumers concludes that the long-term benefits of smart meters will not be realized until consumers understand the benefits of shifting some of their power usage to off-peak hours in response to the data they receive from their meters. The study presents recommendations for utilities and municipal governments to improve customer understanding of how to use the smart meters effectively.

Keywords: smart meters, distribution systems, load, customer attitudes, power consumption, utilities, Maryland Public Utilities Commission

FIGURE 13.4 Descriptive Abstract

This abstract is descriptive rather than informative because it does not present any of the major data from the survey or present the recommendations that are mentioned in the final sentence.

An *informative abstract* presents the major findings. If you don't know which kind of abstract the reader wants, write an informative one.

The distinction between descriptive and informative abstracts is not clear-cut. Sometimes, you might have to combine elements of both in a single abstract. For instance, if there are 15 recommendations — far too many to list — you might simply note that the report includes numerous recommendations.

See page ii of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of an informative abstract.

Table of Contents

The table of contents, the most important guide to navigating the report, has two main functions: to help readers find the information they want and to help them understand the scope and organization of the report.

A table of contents uses the same headings as the report itself. Therefore, to create an effective table of contents, you must first make sure that the headings are clear and that you have provided enough of them. If the table of contents shows no entry for five or six pages, you probably need to partition that section of the report into additional subsections. In fact, some tables of contents have one entry, or even several, for every report page.

The following table of contents, which relies exclusively on generic headings (those that describe an entire class of items), is too general to be useful.

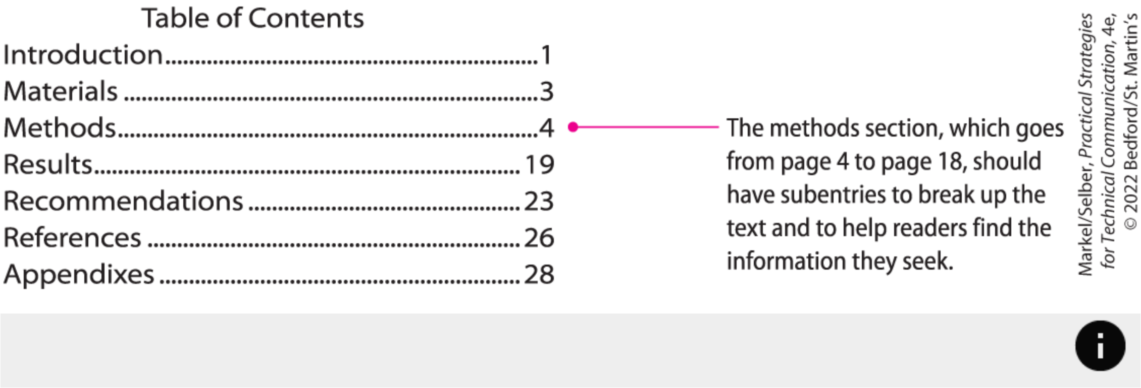


Table of Contents

Introduction........1
Materials........3
Methods........4
Results........19
Recommendations........23
References........26
Appendixes........28

The methods section, which goes from page 4 to page 18, should have subentries to break up the text and to help readers find the information they seek.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

For more informative headings, combine the generic and the specific:

> Recommendations: Five Ways to Improve Information-Retrieval Materials Used in the Calcification Study
> Results of the Commuting-Time Analysis

Then build more subheadings into the report itself. For instance, for the "Recommendations" example above, you could create a subheading for each of the five recommendations. Once you have established a clear system of headings within the report, use the same text attributes — capitalization, boldface, italics, and outline style (traditional or decimal) — in the table of contents.

For more about text attributes, see Ch. 7.

When adding page numbers to your report, remember two points:

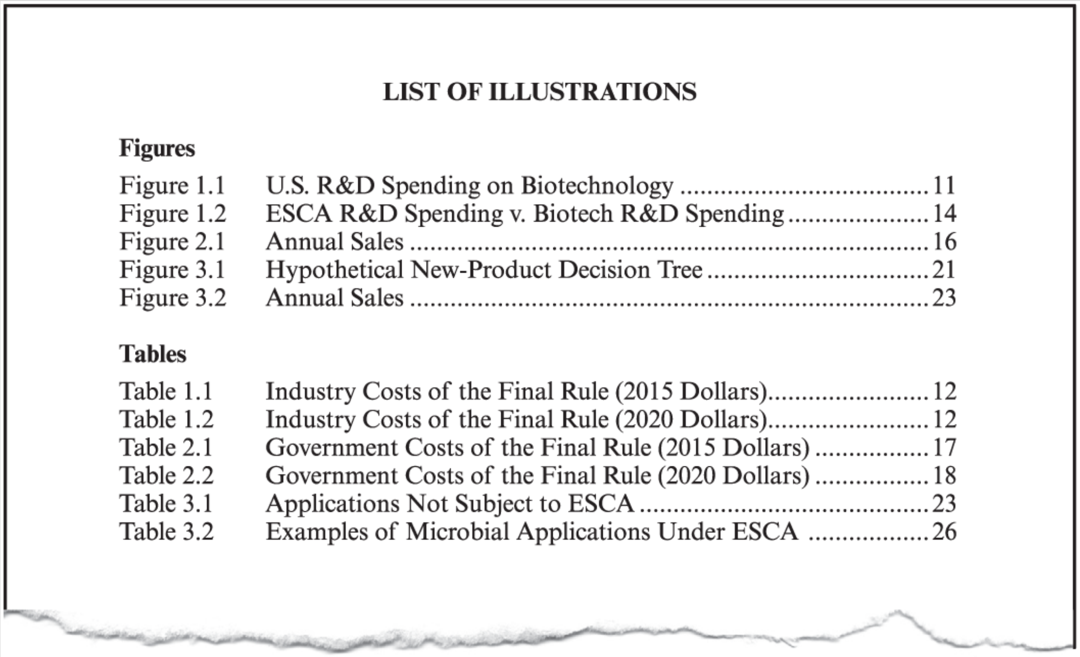
- The table of contents page does not contain an entry for itself.
- Front matter is numbered using lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, and so forth), often centered at the bottom of the page. The

> title page of a report is not numbered, although it represents page i. The abstract is usually numbered page ii. The table of contents is usually not numbered, although it represents page iii. The body of the report is numbered with Arabic numerals (1, 2, and so on), typically in the upper outside corner of the page.

See page iii of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of a table of contents.

List of Illustrations

A *list of illustrations* is a table of contents for the figures and tables. List the figures first, then the tables. (If the report contains only figures, call it a *list of figures*. If it contains only tables, call it a *list of tables*.) You may begin the list of illustrations on the same page as the table of contents, or you may begin the list on a separate page and include it in the table of contents. Figure 13.5 shows a list of illustrations.



LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Figures

Figure 1.1 U.S. R&D Spending on Biotechnology 11
Figure 1.2 ESCA R&D Spending v. Biotech R&D Spending 14
Figure 2.1 Annual Sales 16
Figure 3.1 Hypothetical New-Product Decision Tree 21
Figure 3.2 Annual Sales 23

Tables

Table 1.1 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars)........................ 12
Table 1.2 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars)........................ 12
Table 2.1 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars) 17
Table 2.2 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars) 18
Table 3.1 Applications Not Subject to ESCA 23
Table 3.2 Examples of Microbial Applications Under ESCA 26

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.5 List of Illustrations

TECH TIP

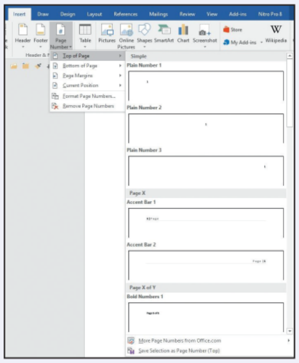
Why To Make a Long Report Navigable

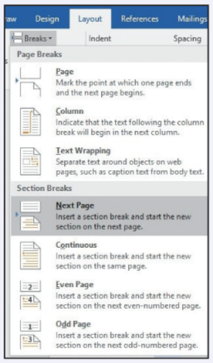
Whether your report is being read in print or online, your readers will appreciate page navigation guides to help them find the information they need. Headers, footers, and page numbers are useful, especially in print documents and PDFs, to help readers know where they are in a document. A table of contents can direct or link readers to the right location as well as provide them with a sense of the scope and organization of the report.

How To Make a Long Report Navigable

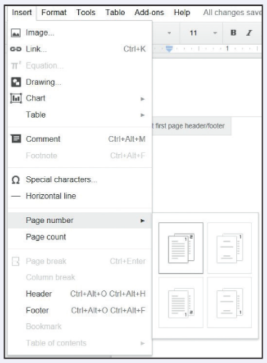
With programs such as Microsoft Word or Google Docs, you can easily format a report to include page navigation tools. To insert headers, footers, and page numbers, choose the function you want from the **Insert** tab. Both Word and Google Docs allow you to set up the header differently on the first page of the document. Word offers additional design options, allowing you to insert **section breaks** (in the **Layout** tab) so that you can have different headers and footers in different sections of a long report.

Microsoft Word


Insert
Header
Footer
Page Number
Top of Page
Bottom of Page
Page Margins
Current Position
Format Page Numbers...
Remove Page Numbers
Simple
Plain Number 1
Plain Number 2
Plain Number 3
Page X
Accent Bar 1
Accent Bar 2
Page X of Y
Bold Numbers 1
More Page Numbers from Office.com
Save Selection as Page Number (Top)


Design
Layout
References
Mailings
Breaks
Indent
Spacing
Page Breaks
Page
Mark the point at which one page ends and the next page begins.
Column
Indicate that the text following the column break will begin in the next column.
Text Wrapping
Separate text around objects on web pages, such as caption text from body text.
Section Breaks
Next Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next page.
Continuous
Insert a section break and start the new section on the same page.
Even Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next even-numbered page.
Odd Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next odd-numbered page.

Google Docs


Insert
Format
Tools
Table
Add-ons
Help
All changes saved
Image...
Link...
Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Comment
Ctrl+Alt+M
Footnote
Ctrl+Alt+F
Special characters...
Horizontal line
Page number
Page count
Page break
Ctrl+Enter
Column break
Header
Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+H
Footer
Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+F
Bookmark
Table of contents
first page header/footer

To create a preformatted table of contents, use Word's Table of Contents drop-down menu in the Reference tab; in Google Docs, choose the Table of Contents feature from the Insert tab. For online documents, you can choose to use hyperlinks instead of page numbers in your table of contents. As with headers, footers, and page numbers, Word offers additional customization tools for the table of contents.

Microsoft Word **Google Docs**

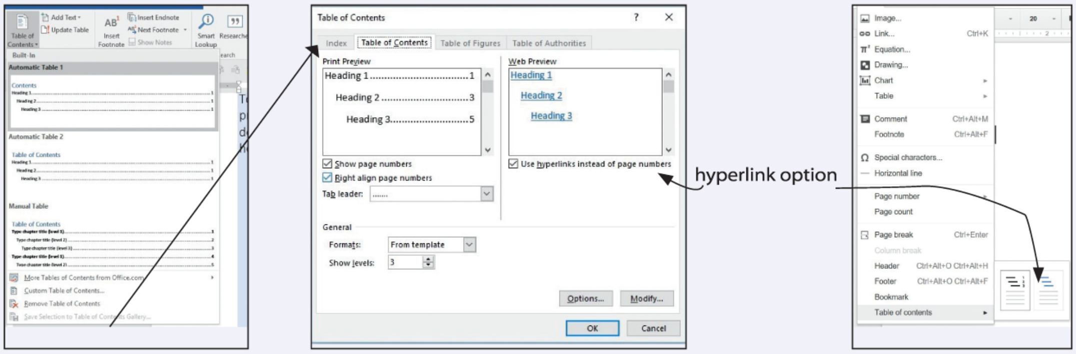


Table of Contents
Add Text
Update Table
Insert Footnote
Insert Endnote
Next Footnote
Show Notes
Smart Lookup
Researcher
Built-In
Automatic Table 1
Contents
Heading 1
Heading 2
Heading 3
Automatic Table 2
Table of Contents
Manual Table
More Tables of Contents from Office.com
Custom Table of Contents...
Remove Table of Contents
Save Selection to Table of Contents Gallery...
Index
Table of Contents
Table of Figures
Table of Authorities
Print Preview
Heading 1 1
Heading 2 3
Heading 3 5
Web Preview
Heading 1
Heading 2
Heading 3
☑ Show page numbers
☑ Right align page numbers
Tab leader: ....
☑ Use hyperlinks instead of page numbers
General
Formats: From template
Show levels: 3
Options...
Modify...
OK
Cancel
hyperlink option
Image...
Link...
Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Comment
Ctrl+Alt+M
Footnote
Ctrl+Alt+F
Special characters...
Horizontal line
Page number
Page count
Page break
Ctrl+Enter
Column break
Header
Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+H
Footer
Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+F
Bookmark
Table of contents

Executive Summary

The executive summary (sometimes called the *epitome, executive overview, management summary*, or *management overview*) is a brief condensation of the report addressed to managers. Most managers need only a broad understanding of the projects that an organization undertakes and how they fit together into a coherent whole.

An executive summary for a report of under 20 pages is typically one page (double-spaced). For longer reports, the maximum length is often calculated as a percentage of the report, such as 5 percent.

The executive summary presents information to managers in two parts:

- **Background.** This section explains the problem or opportunity: what was not working or was not working effectively or efficiently, or what potential modification of a procedure or product had to be analyzed.
- **Major findings and implications.** This section might include a brief description — only one or two sentences — of the methods, followed by a full paragraph about the conclusions and recommendations.

An executive summary differs from an informative abstract. Whereas an abstract focuses on the technical subject (such as whether the public is taking advantage of the data from smart electric meters), an executive summary concentrates on the managerial implications of the subject for a particular company (such as whether PECO, the Philadelphia utility company, should carry out a public-information campaign to educate customers about how to use their smart meters).

GUIDELINES Writing an Executive Summary

Follow these five suggestions in writing executive summaries.

- **Use specific evidence in describing the background.** For most managers, the best evidence is in the form of costs and savings. Instead of writing that the equipment you are now using to cut metal foil is ineffective, write that the equipment jams once every 72 hours on average, costing $400 in materials and $2,000 in productivity each time. Then add up these figures for a monthly or an annual total.
- **Be specific in describing research.** For instance, research suggests that a computerized energy-management system could cut your company's energy costs by 20 to 25 percent. If the company's energy costs last year were $300,000, it could save $60,000 to $75,000.
- **Describe the methods briefly.** If you think your readers are interested, include a brief description of your methods — no more than a sentence or two.
- **Describe the findings according to your readers' needs.** If your readers want to know your results, provide them. If your readers are unable to understand the technical data or are uninterested, go directly to the conclusions and recommendations.
- **Ask an outside reader to review your draft.** Give the summary to someone who has no connection to the project. That person should be able to read your summary and understand what the project means to the organization.

See page 1 of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of an executive summary.

WRITING THE BACK MATTER

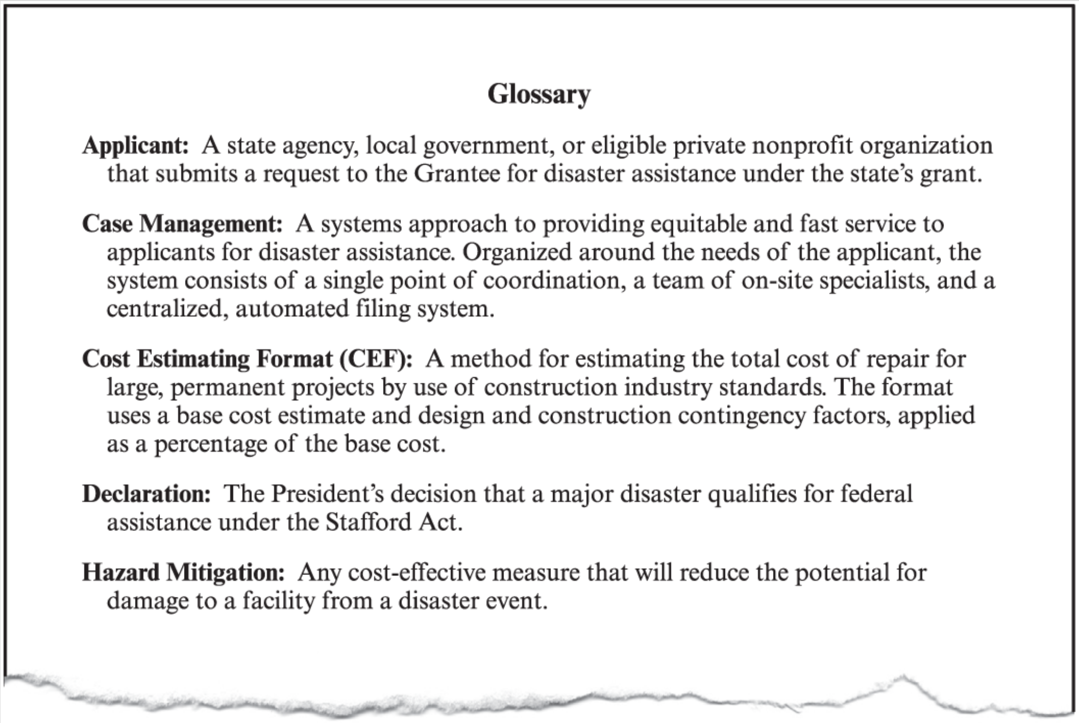
The back matter of a recommendation report might include the following items: glossary, list of symbols, references, and appendixes.

Glossary and List of Symbols

A *glossary*, an alphabetical list of definitions, is particularly useful if some of your readers are unfamiliar with the technical vocabulary in your report. Instead of slowing down your discussion by defining technical terms as they appear, you can use boldface, or some similar method of highlighting words, to indicate that the term is defined in the glossary. The first time a boldfaced term appears, explain this system in a footnote. For example, the body of the report might say, “Thus the **positron*** acts as the …,” while a note at the bottom of the page explains:

> *This and all subsequent terms in boldface are defined in the Glossary, page 97.

Although a glossary is usually placed near the end of the report, before the appendixes, it can also be placed immediately after the table of contents if the glossary is brief (less than a page) and if it defines essential terms. Figure 13.6 shows an excerpt from a glossary.



Glossary

Applicant: A state agency, local government, or eligible private nonprofit organization that submits a request to the Grantee for disaster assistance under the state's grant.

Case Management: A systems approach to providing equitable and fast service to applicants for disaster assistance. Organized around the needs of the applicant, the system consists of a single point of coordination, a team of on-site specialists, and a centralized, automated filing system.

Cost Estimating Format (CEF): A method for estimating the total cost of repair for large, permanent projects by use of construction industry standards. The format uses a base cost estimate and design and construction contingency factors, applied as a percentage of the base cost.

Declaration: The President's decision that a major disaster qualifies for federal assistance under the Stafford Act.

Hazard Mitigation: Any cost-effective measure that will reduce the potential for damage to a facility from a disaster event.

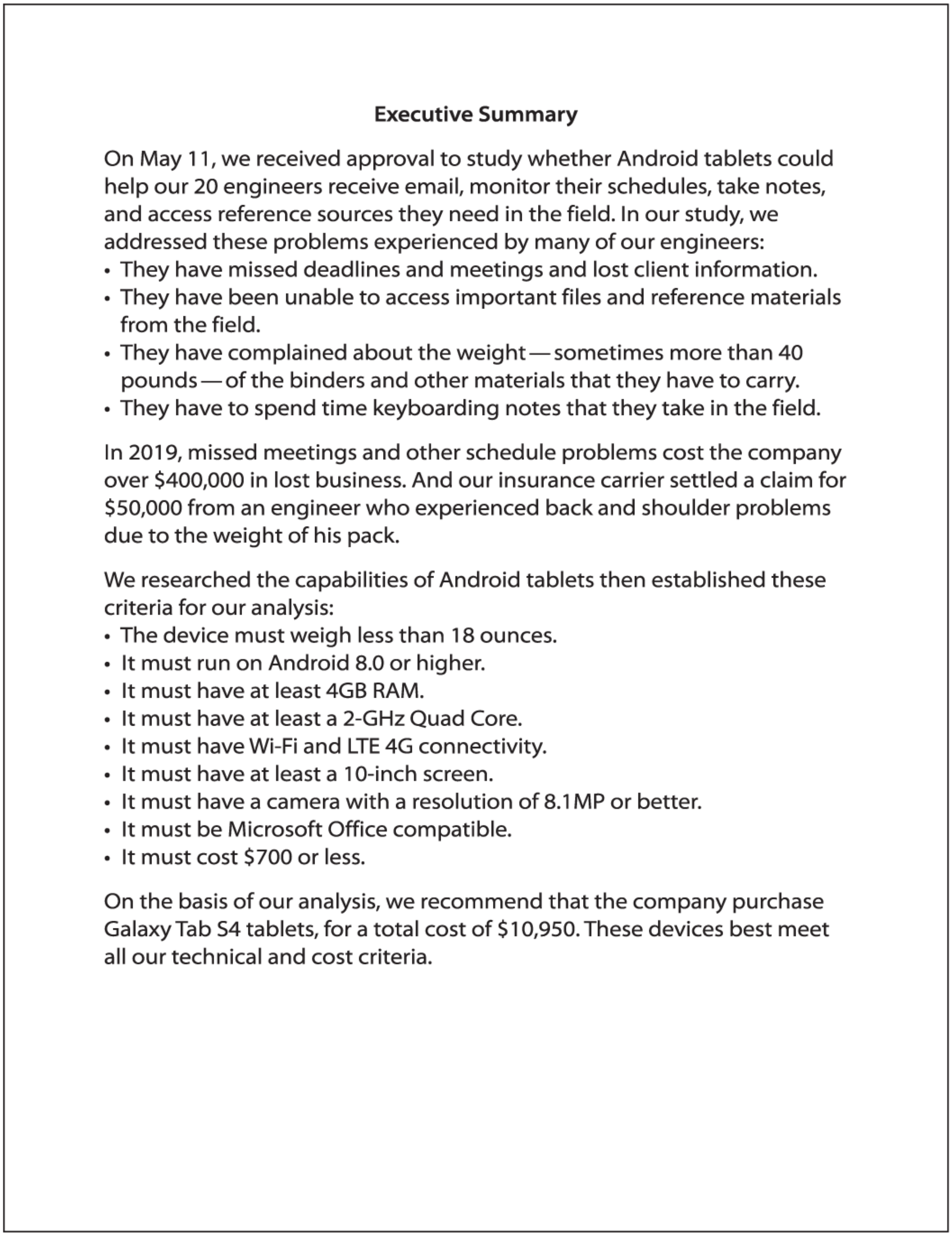
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.6 Glossary

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Analyzing an Executive Summary

This executive summary comes from a corporate report on purchasing Android tablets for employees. The questions below ask you to think about the discussion of executive summaries (beginning on p. 350).



Executive Summary

On May 11, we received approval to study whether Android tablets could help our 20 engineers receive email, monitor their schedules, take notes, and access reference sources they need in the field. In our study, we addressed these problems experienced by many of our engineers:

- They have missed deadlines and meetings and lost client information.
- They have been unable to access important files and reference materials from the field.
- They have complained about the weight — sometimes more than 40 pounds — of the binders and other materials that they have to carry.
- They have to spend time keyboarding notes that they take in the field.

In 2019, missed meetings and other schedule problems cost the company over $400,000 in lost business. And our insurance carrier settled a claim for $50,000 from an engineer who experienced back and shoulder problems due to the weight of his pack.

We researched the capabilities of Android tablets then established these criteria for our analysis:

- The device must weigh less than 18 ounces.
- It must run on Android 8.0 or higher.
- It must have at least 4GB RAM.
- It must have at least a 2-GHz Quad Core.
- It must have Wi-Fi and LTE 4G connectivity.
- It must have at least a 10-inch screen.
- It must have a camera with a resolution of 8.1MP or better.
- It must be Microsoft Office compatible.
- It must cost $700 or less.

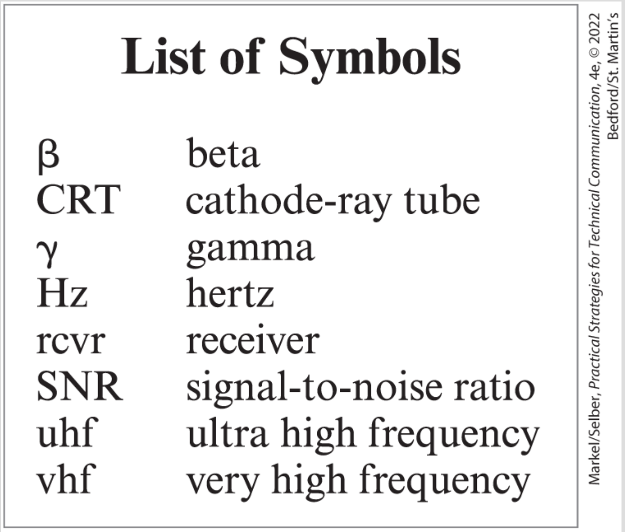
On the basis of our analysis, we recommend that the company purchase Galaxy Tab S4 tablets, for a total cost of $10,950. These devices best meet all our technical and cost criteria.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

1. How clearly do the writers explain the background? Identify the problem or opportunity they describe in this executive summary.
2. Do the writers discuss the methods? If so, identify the discussion.

3. Identify the findings: the results, conclusions, and recommendations. How clearly have the writers explained the benefits to the company?

A list of symbols is formatted like a glossary, but it defines symbols and abbreviations rather than terms. It, too, may be placed before the appendixes or after the table of contents. Figure 13.7 shows a list of symbols.



List of Symbols

β	beta
CRT	cathode-ray tube
γ	gamma
Hz	hertz
rcvr	receiver
SNR	signal-to-noise ratio
uhf	ultra high frequency
vhf	very high frequency

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.7 List of Symbols

References

Many reports contain a list of references (sometimes called a *bibliography* or *list of works cited*) as part of the back matter. References and the accompanying textual citations throughout the report are called *documentation*. Documentation acknowledges your debt to your sources, establishes your credibility as a writer, and helps readers locate and review your sources. See Appendix, Part A, for a detailed discussion of documentation. See page 18 of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of a reference list.

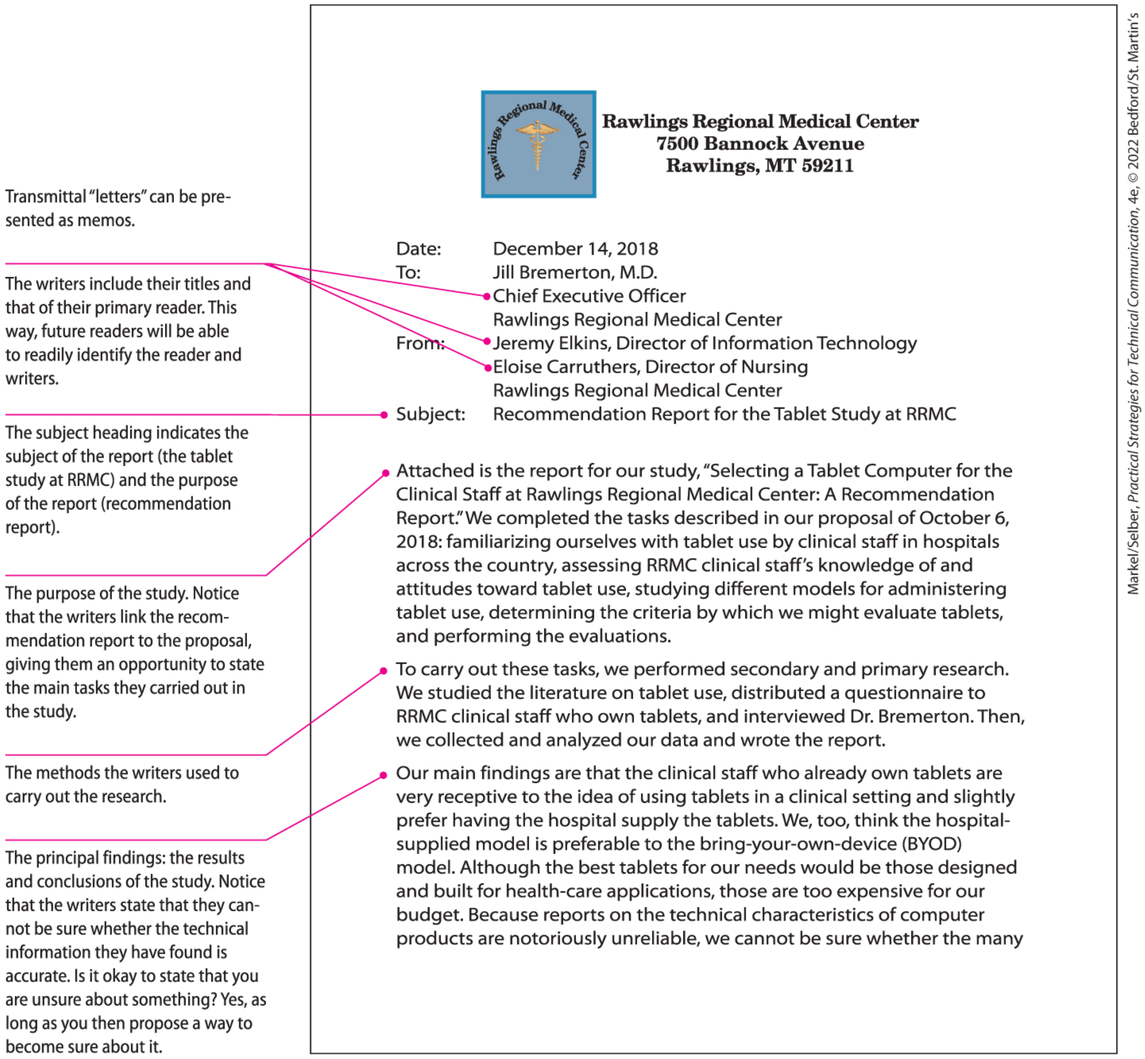
Appendixes

An *appendix* is any section that follows the body of the report (and the glossary, list of symbols, or reference list). Appendixes (or *appendices*) convey information that is too bulky for the body of the report or that will interest only a few readers. Appendixes might include maps, large technical diagrams or charts, computations, test data, and texts of supporting documents.

Appendixes, usually labeled with letters rather than numbers (Appendix A, Appendix B, and so on), are listed in the table of contents and are referred to at appropriate points in the body of the report. Therefore, they are accessible to any reader who wants to consult them. See page 19 of the sample recommendation report shown in Figure 13.8 for an example of an appendix.

Sample Recommendation Report

Figure 13.8 (pp. 354–77) is the recommendation report on the tablet project proposed in Chapter 11. The progress report for this project appears in Chapter 12.



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

Date: December 14, 2018
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Recommendation Report for the Tablet Study at RRMC

Attached is the report for our study, "Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report." We completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: familiarizing ourselves with tablet use by clinical staff in hospitals across the country, assessing RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, studying different models for administering tablet use, determining the criteria by which we might evaluate tablets, and performing the evaluations.

To carry out these tasks, we performed secondary and primary research. We studied the literature on tablet use, distributed a questionnaire to RRMC clinical staff who own tablets, and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report.

Our main findings are that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model. Although the best tablets for our needs would be those designed and built for health-care applications, those are too expensive for our budget. Because reports on the technical characteristics of computer products are notoriously unreliable, we cannot be sure whether the many

Transmittal "letters" can be presented as memos.

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the report (the tablet study at RRMC) and the purpose of the report (recommendation report).

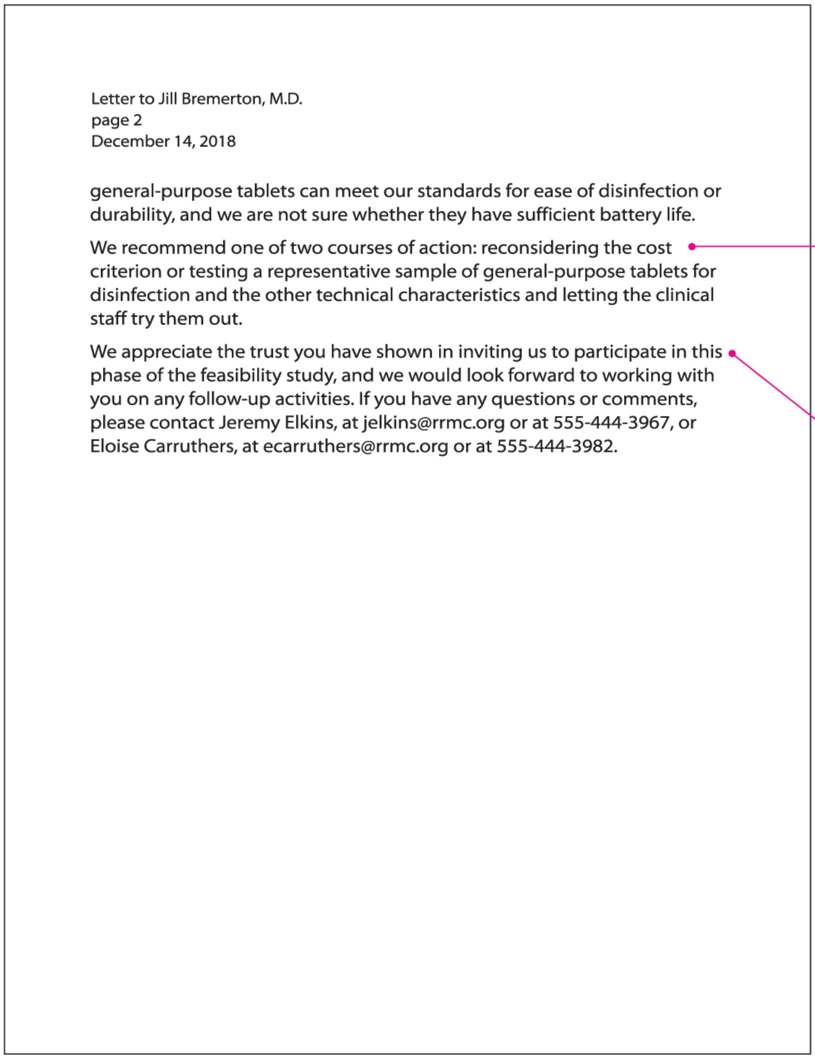
The purpose of the study. Notice that the writers link the recommendation report to the proposal, giving them an opportunity to state the main tasks they carried out in the study.

The methods the writers used to carry out the research.

The principal findings: the results and conclusions of the study. Notice that the writers state that they cannot be sure whether the technical information they have found is accurate. Is it okay to state that you are unsure about something? Yes, as long as you then propose a way to become sure about it.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Letter to Jill Bremerton, M.D.
page 2
December 14, 2018

general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life.

We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering the cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and letting the clinical staff try them out.

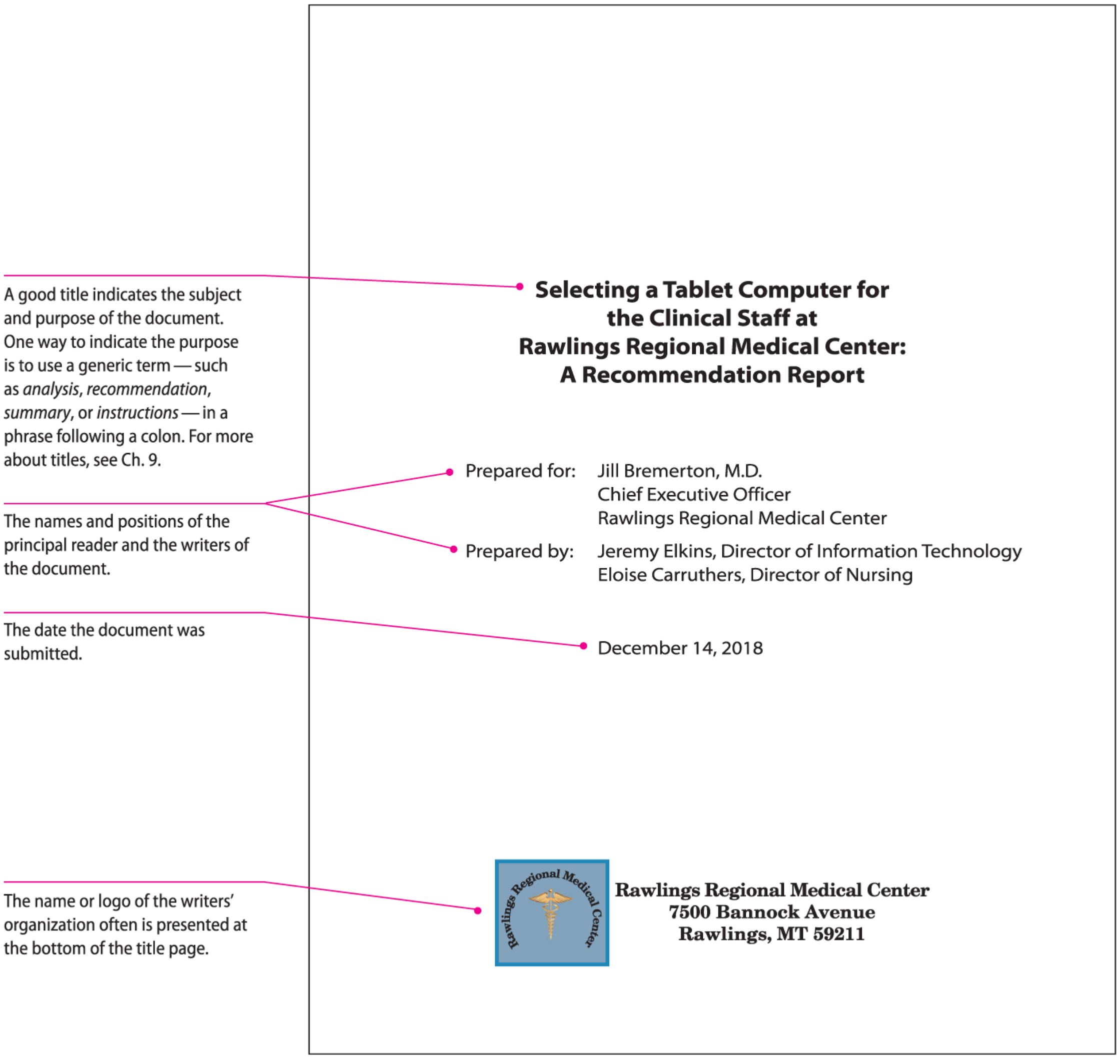
We appreciate the trust you have shown in inviting us to participate in this phase of the feasibility study, and we would look forward to working with you on any follow-up activities. If you have any questions or comments, please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3967, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3982.

The major recommendation. The writers ask their supervisor if she will reconsider whether the hospital can afford tablets specifically designed for health-care environments. That's not insubordination. Just be polite about it.

A polite offer to participate further or to provide more information.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Selecting a Tablet Computer for
the Clinical Staff at
Rawlings Regional Medical Center:
A Recommendation Report

Prepared for: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center

Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 14, 2018

Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

A good title indicates the subject and purpose of the document. One way to indicate the purpose is to use a generic term — such as *analysis*, *recommendation*, *summary*, or *instructions* — in a phrase following a colon. For more about titles, see Ch. 9.

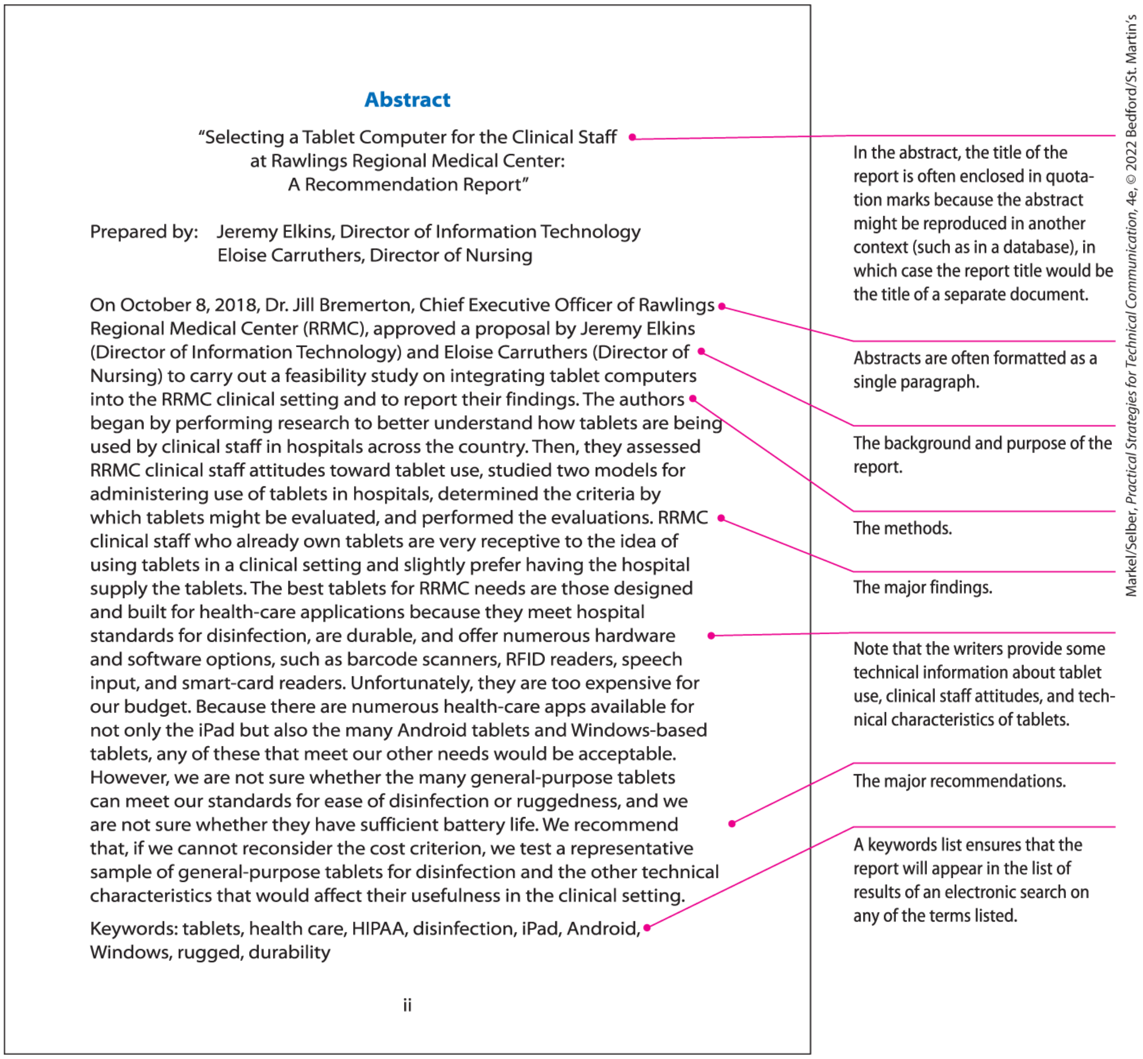
The names and positions of the principal reader and the writers of the document.

The date the document was submitted.

The name or logo of the writers' organization often is presented at the bottom of the title page.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Abstract

"Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff
at Rawlings Regional Medical Center:
A Recommendation Report"

Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer of Rawlings Regional Medical Center (RRMC), approved a proposal by Jeremy Elkins (Director of Information Technology) and Eloise Carruthers (Director of Nursing) to carry out a feasibility study on integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting and to report their findings. The authors began by performing research to better understand how tablets are being used by clinical staff in hospitals across the country. Then, they assessed RRMC clinical staff attitudes toward tablet use, studied two models for administering use of tablets in hospitals, determined the criteria by which tablets might be evaluated, and performed the evaluations. RRMC clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. The best tablets for RRMC needs are those designed and built for health-care applications because they meet hospital standards for disinfection, are durable, and offer numerous hardware and software options, such as barcode scanners, RFID readers, speech input, and smart-card readers. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. Because there are numerous health-care apps available for not only the iPad but also the many Android tablets and Windows-based tablets, any of these that meet our other needs would be acceptable. However, we are not sure whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or ruggedness, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life. We recommend that, if we cannot reconsider the cost criterion, we test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics that would affect their usefulness in the clinical setting.

Keywords: tablets, health care, HIPAA, disinfection, iPad, Android, Windows, rugged, durability

ii

In the abstract, the title of the report is often enclosed in quotation marks because the abstract might be reproduced in another context (such as in a database), in which case the report title would be the title of a separate document.

Abstracts are often formatted as a single paragraph.

The background and purpose of the report.

The methods.

The major findings.

Note that the writers provide some technical information about tablet use, clinical staff attitudes, and technical characteristics of tablets.

The major recommendations.

A keywords list ensures that the report will appear in the list of results of an electronic search on any of the terms listed.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

Note that the typeface and design of the headings in the table of contents mirror the typeface and design of the headings in the report itself.

In this table of contents, the two levels of headings are distinguished by type style (boldface versus italic) and indentation.

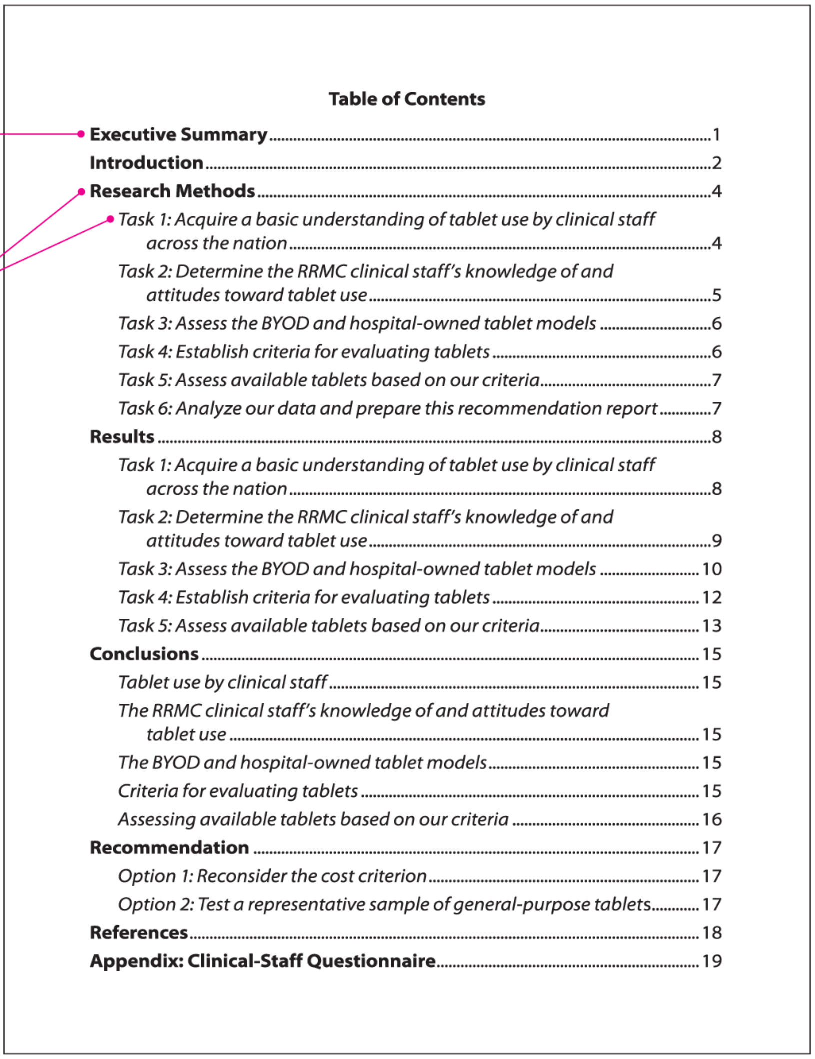
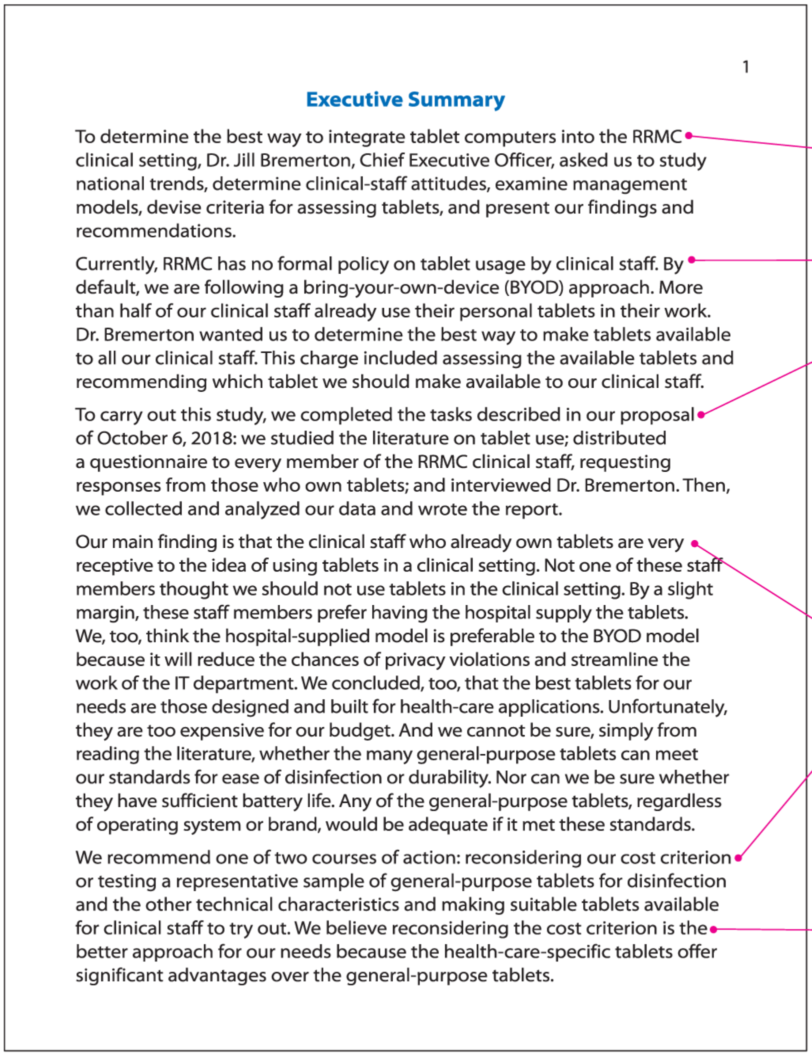


Table of Contents

Executive Summary 1
Introduction 2
Research Methods 4
  Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation 4
  Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 5
  Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 6
  Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets 6
  Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria 7
  Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report 7
Results 8
  Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation 8
  Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 9
  Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 10
  Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets 12
  Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria 13
Conclusions 15
  Tablet use by clinical staff 15
  The RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 15
  The BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 15
  Criteria for evaluating tablets 15
  Assessing available tablets based on our criteria 16
Recommendation 17
  Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion 17
  Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets 17
References 18
Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire 19

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



1

Executive Summary

To determine the best way to integrate tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff attitudes, examine management models, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff already use their personal tablets in their work. Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. This charge included assessing the available tablets and recommending which tablet we should make available to our clinical staff.

To carry out this study, we completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: we studied the literature on tablet use; distributed a questionnaire to every member of the RRMC clinical staff, requesting responses from those who own tablets; and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report.

Our main finding is that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting. Not one of these staff members thought we should not use tablets in the clinical setting. By a slight margin, these staff members prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the BYOD model because it will reduce the chances of privacy violations and streamline the work of the IT department. We concluded, too, that the best tablets for our needs are those designed and built for health-care applications. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. And we cannot be sure, simply from reading the literature, whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability. Nor can we be sure whether they have sufficient battery life. Any of the general-purpose tablets, regardless of operating system or brand, would be adequate if it met these standards.

We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering our cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and making suitable tablets available for clinical staff to try out. We believe reconsidering the cost criterion is the better approach for our needs because the health-care-specific tablets offer significant advantages over the general-purpose tablets.

The executive summary describes the project with a focus on the managerial aspects, particularly the recommendation. Note the writers' emphasis on the problem at RRMC.

Here the writers present a brief statement of the subject of their report.

The background of the feasibility study that Dr. Bremerton is funding.

A brief statement of the methods the writers used to carry out their research. Note that throughout this report the writers use the active voice ("We studied the literature . . ."). See Ch. 10 for more on the active voice. Note, too, that the discussion of the methods is brief: most managers are less interested in the details of the methods you used than in your findings.

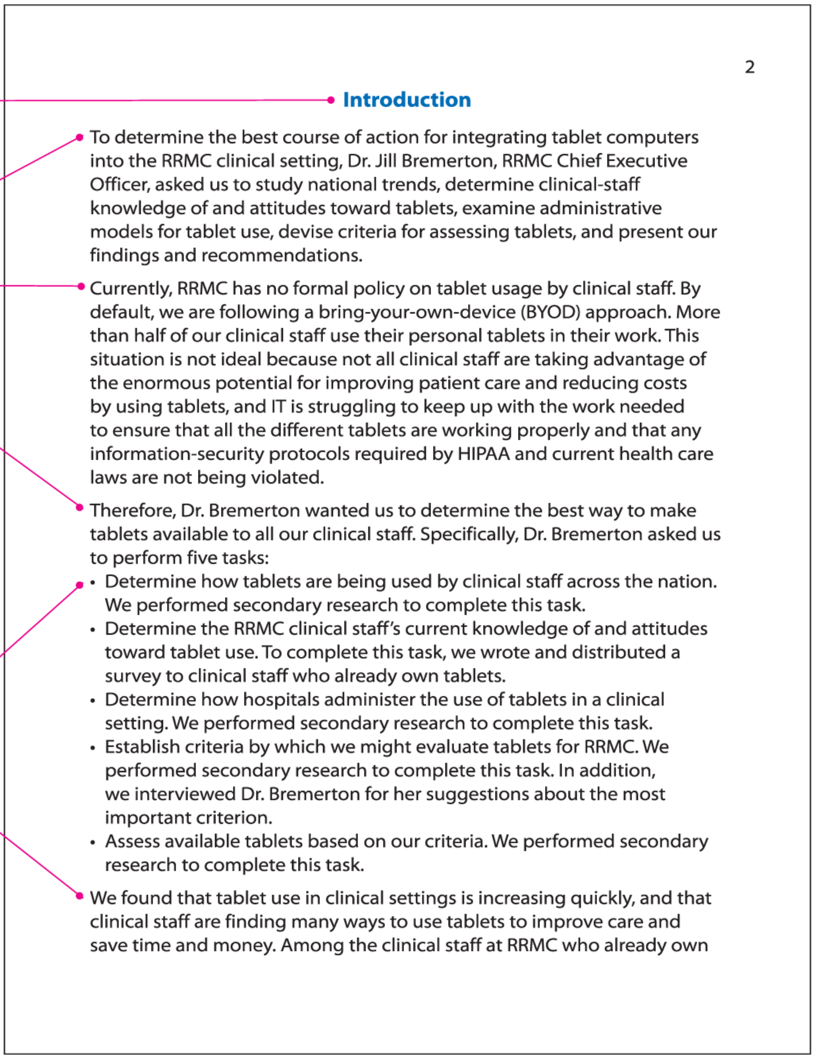
Findings are the important results and conclusions of a study.

Note that the writers use the word *recommend*. Using key generic terms such as *problem*, *methods*, *results*, *conclusions*, and *recommendations* helps readers understand the role that each section plays in the document.

Because the executive summary is the report element addressed most directly to management, the writers make clear why they prefer looking again at whether the hospital can afford to purchase health-care-specific tablets.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Introduction

To determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that any information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation. We performed secondary research to complete this task.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. To complete this task, we wrote and distributed a survey to clinical staff who already own tablets.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting. We performed secondary research to complete this task.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC. We performed secondary research to complete this task. In addition, we interviewed Dr. Bremerton for her suggestions about the most important criterion.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria. We performed secondary research to complete this task.

We found that tablet use in clinical settings is increasing quickly, and that clinical staff are finding many ways to use tablets to improve care and save time and money. Among the clinical staff at RRMC who already own

Some organizations require that each first-level heading begin on a new page.

A brief statement of the context for the report.

Note that the word *currently* is used to introduce the background of the study: the current situation is unsatisfactory for several reasons.

A formal statement of the task the committee was asked to perform. The writers paraphrase from the memo Dr. Bremerton gave them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase words your reader wrote to you. This practice reminds the reader of the context and shows that you are carrying out your tasks professionally.

The writers incorporate a brief overview of their methods into the list of tasks.

The writers devote two paragraphs to their principal findings. The introduction can present the major findings of a report; technical communication is not about drama and suspense.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

3

tablets, nearly half own an iPad and nearly half an Android tablet, most consider themselves expert users of their tablets, and more than two-thirds already use them in the clinical setting; by a slim margin, they would prefer a hospital-supplied model for tablet use to a BYOD model. Our research on the two models for making tablets available also found more advantages and fewer disadvantages to the hospital-supplied model.

Our principal finding regarding tablets themselves is that the best tablets for our use would be those designed and built for health-care applications. These tablets are rugged and easy to disinfect, and they offer a wealth of hardware and software options that would streamline our daily tasks without introducing any risks either to patient care or to data privacy. Unfortunately, purchasing enough of these tablets for all clinical staff would exceed our budget. To determine whether any of the general-purpose tablets meet all our needs, we would need to conduct hands-on testing regarding disinfection, battery life, durability, and several other technical criteria.

We recommend, first, that we reassess whether the budget will permit consideration of any of the health-care-specific tablets. If that is not possible, we recommend that we ask manufacturers of a small set of general-purpose tablets to let us test their products and invite our clinical staff to try them. This option would yield data that would help us decide how to proceed.

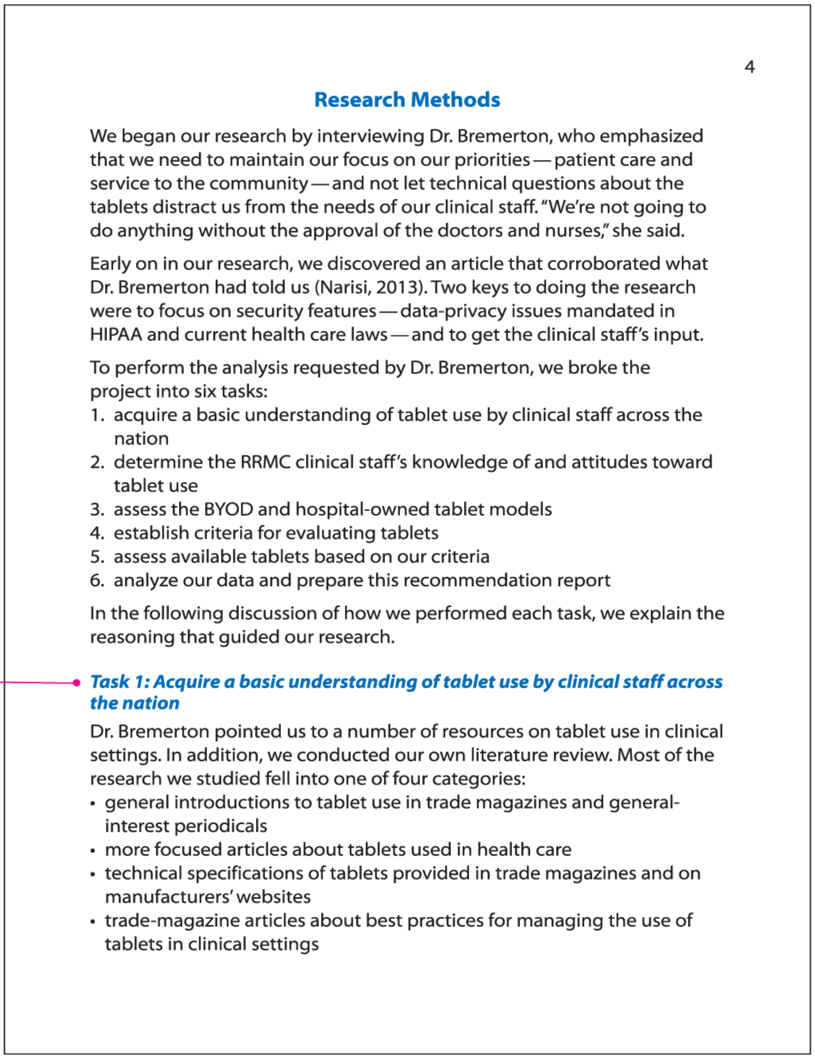
In the following sections, we provide additional details about our research methods, the results we obtained, the conclusions we drew from those results, and our recommendation.

Notice the writers' use of the phrase "we recommend." Repeating key terms in this way helps readers understand the logic of a report and concentrate on the technical information it contains.

An advance organizer for the rest of the report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Research Methods

We began our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. "We're not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses," she said.

Early on in our research, we discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff's input.

To perform the analysis requested by Dr. Bremerton, we broke the project into six tasks:

1. acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation
2. determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use
3. assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models
4. establish criteria for evaluating tablets
5. assess available tablets based on our criteria
6. analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report

In the following discussion of how we performed each task, we explain the reasoning that guided our research.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

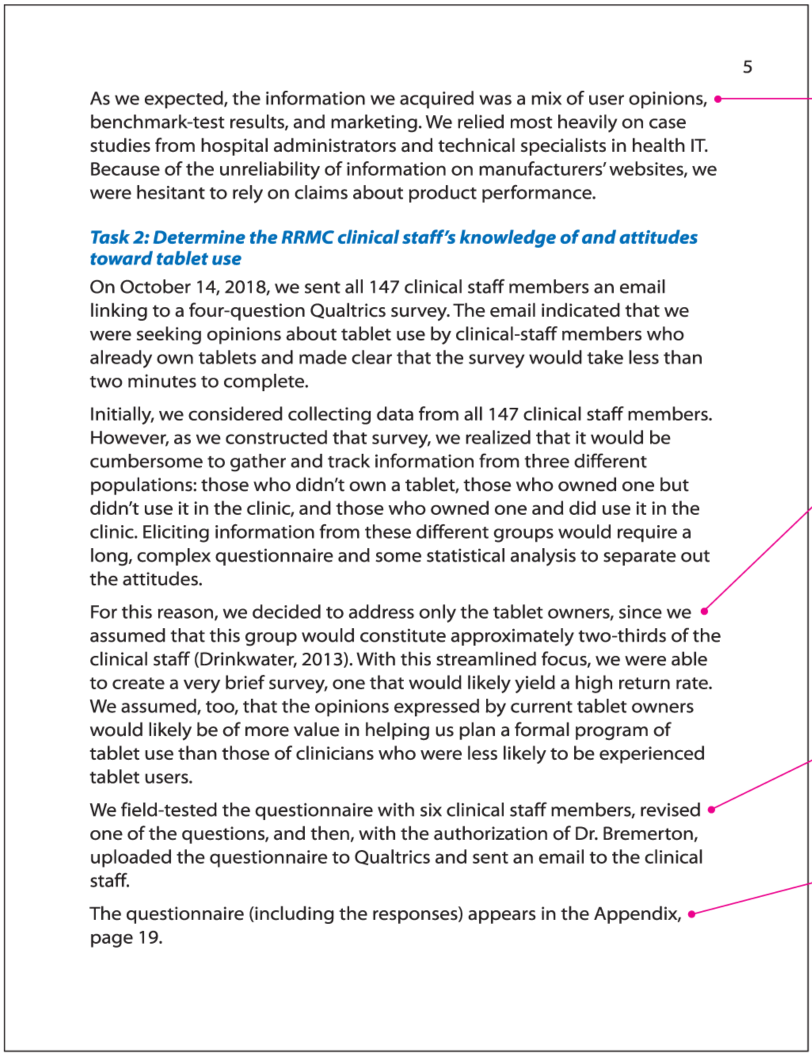
Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we conducted our own literature review. Most of the research we studied fell into one of four categories:

- general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general-interest periodicals
- more focused articles about tablets used in health care
- technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers' websites
- trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings

The writers use the same task organization as in the proposal and the progress report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



5

As we expected, the information we acquired was a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We relied most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health IT. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we were hesitant to rely on claims about product performance.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. The email indicated that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

Initially, we considered collecting data from all 147 clinical staff members. However, as we constructed that survey, we realized that it would be cumbersome to gather and track information from three different populations: those who didn't own a tablet, those who owned one but didn't use it in the clinic, and those who owned one and did use it in the clinic. Eliciting information from these different groups would require a long, complex questionnaire and some statistical analysis to separate out the attitudes.

For this reason, we decided to address only the tablet owners, since we assumed that this group would constitute approximately two-thirds of the clinical staff (Drinkwater, 2013). With this streamlined focus, we were able to create a very brief survey, one that would likely yield a high return rate. We assumed, too, that the opinions expressed by current tablet owners would likely be of more value in helping us plan a formal program of tablet use than those of clinicians who were less likely to be experienced tablet users.

We field-tested the questionnaire with six clinical staff members, revised one of the questions, and then, with the authorization of Dr. Bremerton, uploaded the questionnaire to Qualtrics and sent an email to the clinical staff.

The questionnaire (including the responses) appears in the Appendix, page 19.

By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which is equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts.

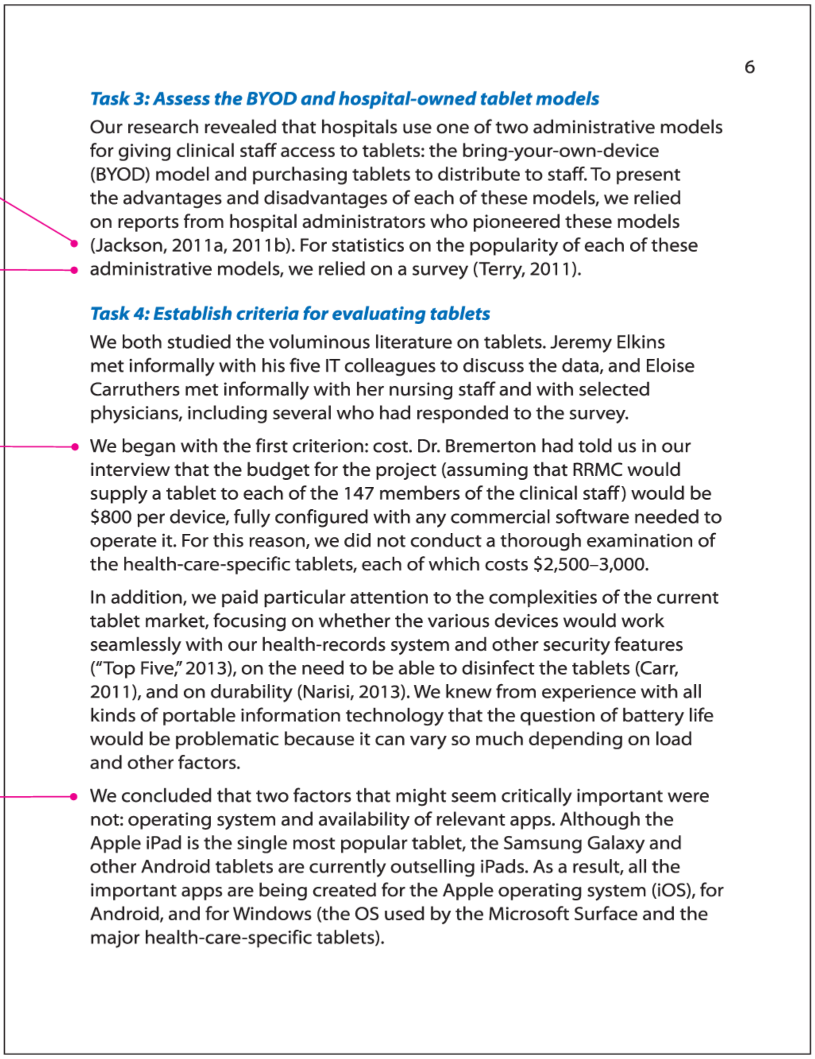
The writers carefully explain the logic of their methods. Do not assume that your readers will automatically understand why you did what you did. Sometimes, it is best to explain your thinking. Although technical communication contains a lot of facts and figures, like other kinds of writing it relies on clear, logical arguments.

As discussed in Ch. 6, some questions will misfire. Therefore, it is smart to field-test a questionnaire before you distribute it.

Including a page number in the cross reference to the appendix is a convenience to the reader. When you do so, remember to add the correct page number after you determine where the appendix (or the several appendixes) will appear in the report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Our research revealed that hospitals use one of two administrative models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. To present the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models, we relied on reports from hospital administrators who pioneered these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b). For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we relied on a survey (Terry, 2011).

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We both studied the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins met informally with his five IT colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who had responded to the survey.

We began with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton had told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that RRMC would supply a tablet to each of the 147 members of the clinical staff) would be $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we did not conduct a thorough examination of the health-care-specific tablets, each of which costs $2,500–3,000.

In addition, we paid particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security features ("Top Five," 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). We knew from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors.

We concluded that two factors that might seem critically important were not: operating system and availability of relevant apps. Although the Apple iPad is the single most popular tablet, the Samsung Galaxy and other Android tablets are currently outselling iPads. As a result, all the important apps are being created for the Apple operating system (iOS), for Android, and for Windows (the OS used by the Microsoft Surface and the major health-care-specific tablets).

Note that the writers present their references to their sources throughout the report.

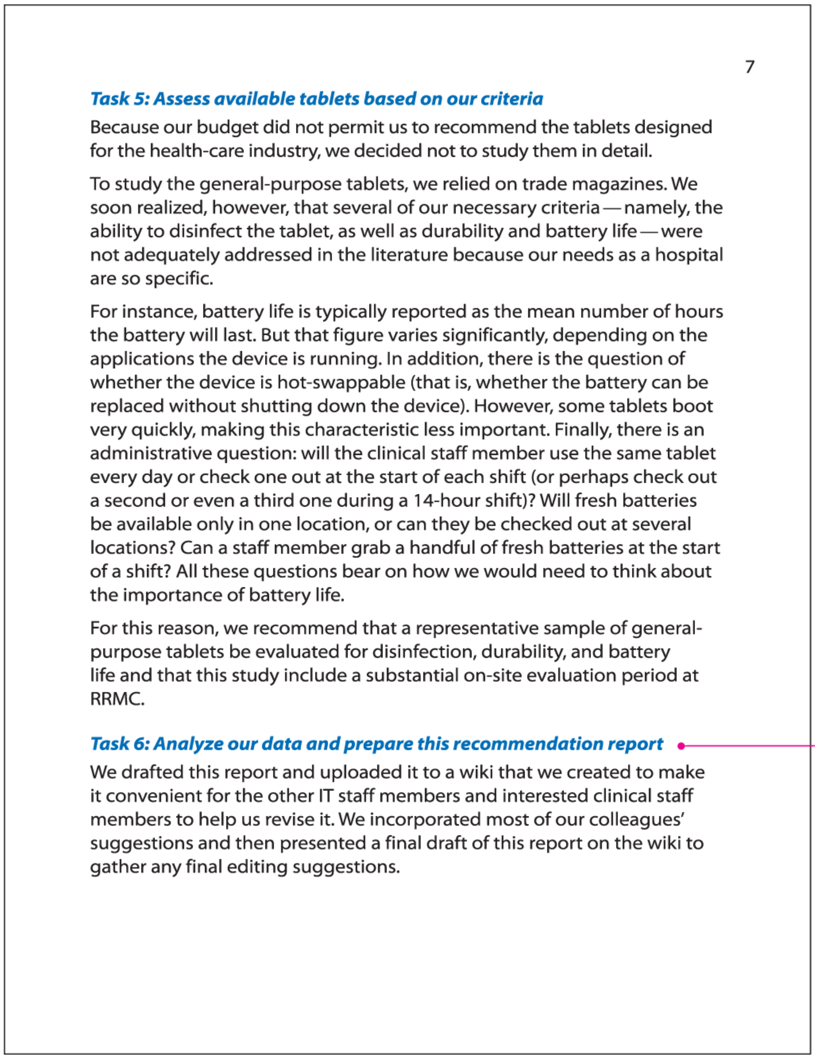
Here, again, the writers explain the logic of their methods. They decided to rely on the experiences of hospital administrators. This approach will likely appeal to Dr. Bremerton.

Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion; your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount.

The writers present just enough information about the technologies to help the reader understand their logic. Writers sometimes present too much information; include only as much as your readers need to be able to follow your report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

Because our budget did not permit us to recommend the tablets designed for the health-care industry, we decided not to study them in detail.

To study the general-purpose tablets, we relied on trade magazines. We soon realized, however, that several of our necessary criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — were not adequately addressed in the literature because our needs as a hospital are so specific.

For instance, battery life is typically reported as the mean number of hours the battery will last. But that figure varies significantly, depending on the applications the device is running. In addition, there is the question of whether the device is hot-swappable (that is, whether the battery can be replaced without shutting down the device). However, some tablets boot very quickly, making this characteristic less important. Finally, there is an administrative question: will the clinical staff member use the same tablet every day or check one out at the start of each shift (or perhaps check out a second or even a third one during a 14-hour shift)? Will fresh batteries be available only in one location, or can they be checked out at several locations? Can a staff member grab a handful of fresh batteries at the start of a shift? All these questions bear on how we would need to think about the importance of battery life.

For this reason, we recommend that a representative sample of general-purpose tablets be evaluated for disinfection, durability, and battery life and that this study include a substantial on-site evaluation period at RRMC.

Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report

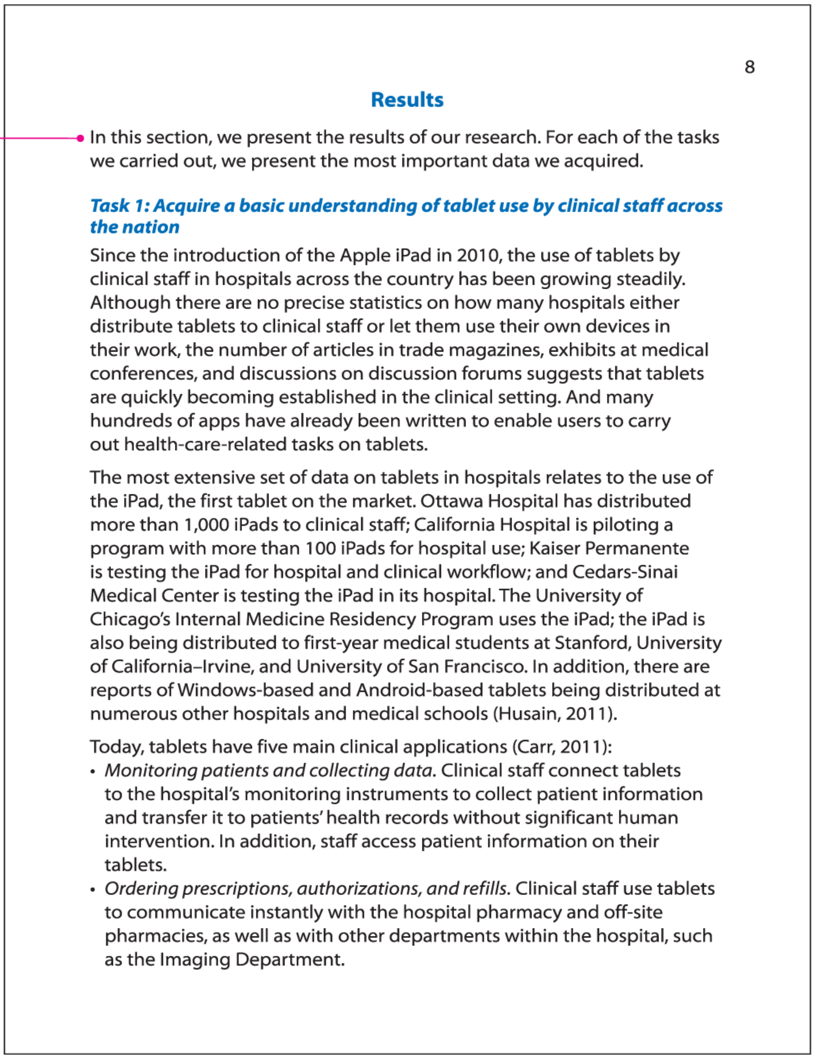
We drafted this report and uploaded it to a wiki that we created to make it convenient for the other IT staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We incorporated most of our colleagues' suggestions and then presented a final draft of this report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

Because analyzing their data and writing this report is part of the study, it is appropriate to include it as one of the steps. In some organizations, however, this task is assumed to be part of the study and is therefore not presented in the report.

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The writers present an advance organizer for the results section.



Results

In this section, we present the results of our research. For each of the tasks we carried out, we present the most important data we acquired.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets.

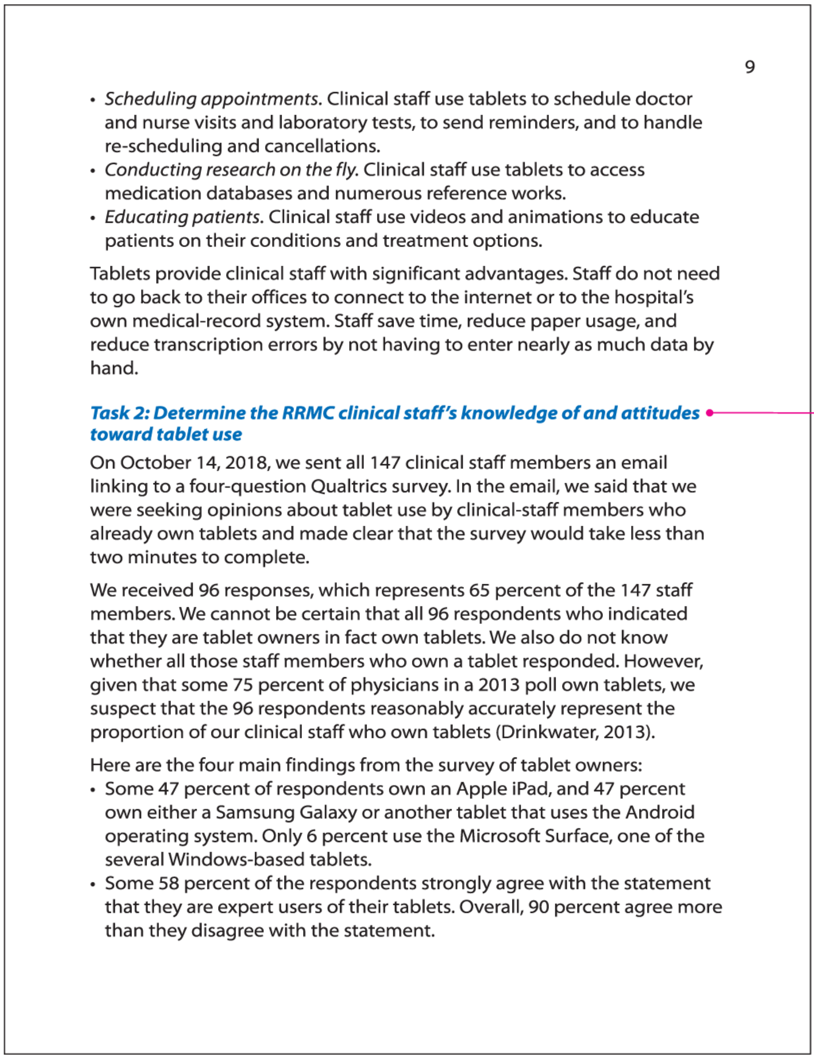
The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago’s Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California–Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011).

Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011):

- *Monitoring patients and collecting data.* Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital’s monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients’ health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets.
- *Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills.* Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s



- *Scheduling appointments*. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations.
- *Conducting research on the fly*. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works.
- *Educating patients*. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educate patients on their conditions and treatment options.

Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital's own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents reasonably accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013).

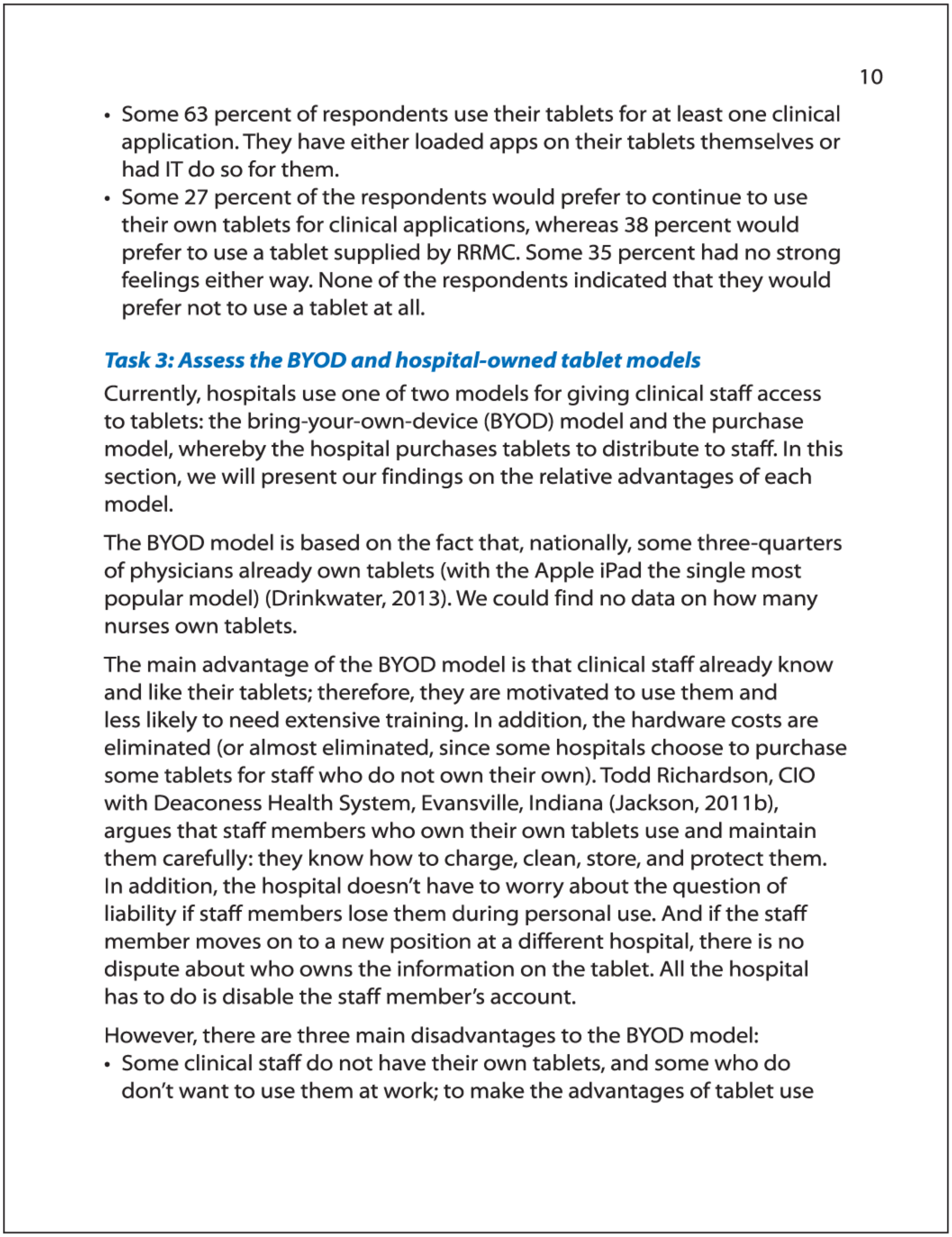
Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners:

- Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets.
- Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement.

The writers continue to use the task structure that they used in the methods section.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



- Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had IT do so for them.
- Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by RRMC. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all.

Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model.

The BYOD model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets.

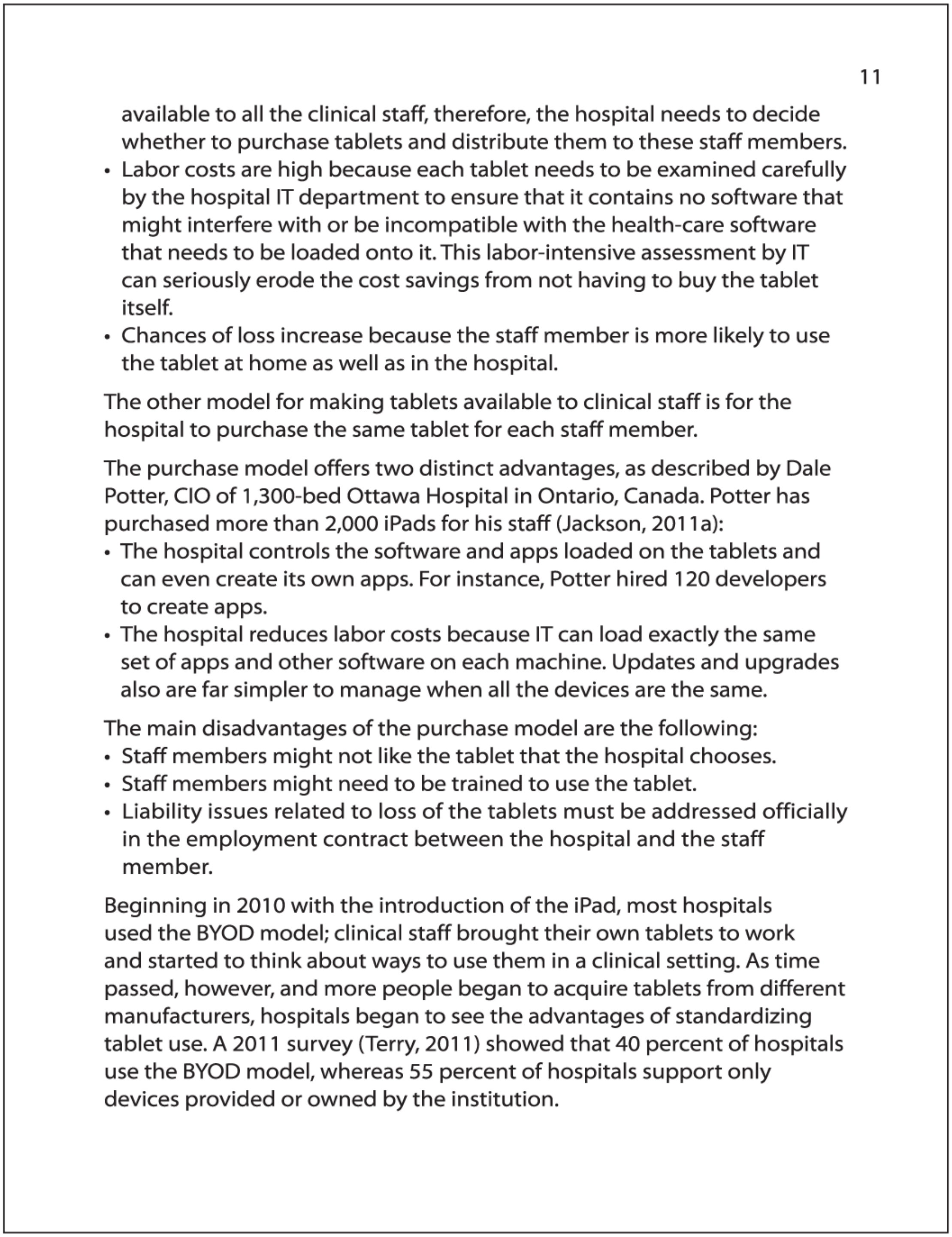
The main advantage of the BYOD model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not own their own). Todd Richardson, CIO with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011b), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn't have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account.

However, there are three main disadvantages to the BYOD model:

- Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members.
- Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital IT department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by IT can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself.
- Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital.

The other model for making tablets available to clinical staff is for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member.

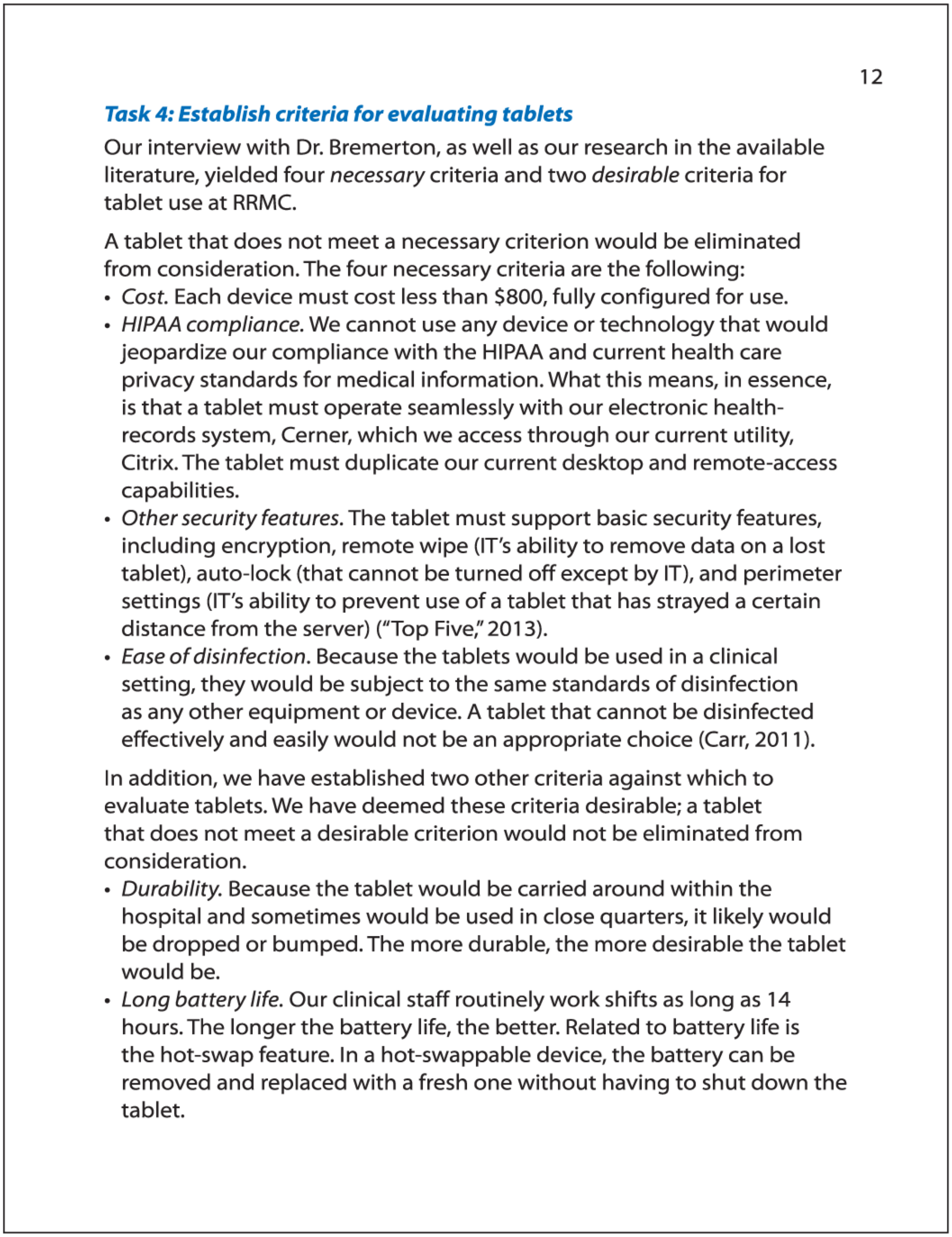
The purchase model offers two distinct advantages, as described by Dale Potter, CIO of 1,300-bed Ottawa Hospital in Ontario, Canada. Potter has purchased more than 2,000 iPads for his staff (Jackson, 2011a):
- The hospital controls the software and apps loaded on the tablets and can even create its own apps. For instance, Potter hired 120 developers to create apps.
- The hospital reduces labor costs because IT can load exactly the same set of apps and other software on each machine. Updates and upgrades also are far simpler to manage when all the devices are the same.

The main disadvantages of the purchase model are the following:
- Staff members might not like the tablet that the hospital chooses.
- Staff members might need to be trained to use the tablet.
- Liability issues related to loss of the tablets must be addressed officially in the employment contract between the hospital and the staff member.

Beginning in 2010 with the introduction of the iPad, most hospitals used the BYOD model; clinical staff brought their own tablets to work and started to think about ways to use them in a clinical setting. As time passed, however, and more people began to acquire tablets from different manufacturers, hospitals began to see the advantages of standardizing tablet use. A 2011 survey (Terry, 2011) showed that 40 percent of hospitals use the BYOD model, whereas 55 percent of hospitals support only devices provided or owned by the institution.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

Our interview with Dr. Bremerton, as well as our research in the available literature, yielded four *necessary* criteria and two *desirable* criteria for tablet use at RRMC.

A tablet that does not meet a necessary criterion would be eliminated from consideration. The four necessary criteria are the following:

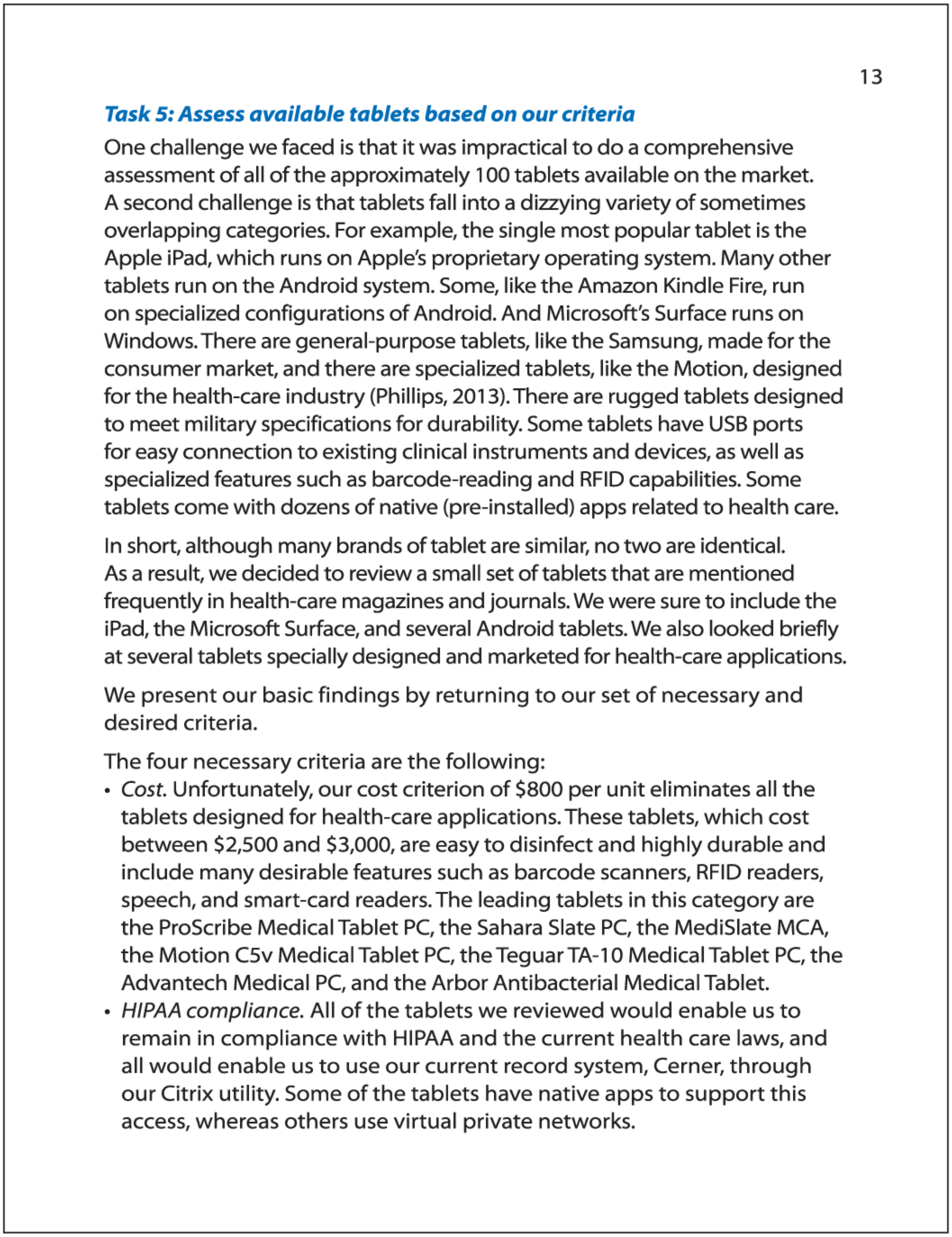
- *Cost*. Each device must cost less than $800, fully configured for use.
- *HIPAA compliance*. We cannot use any device or technology that would jeopardize our compliance with the HIPAA and current health care privacy standards for medical information. What this means, in essence, is that a tablet must operate seamlessly with our electronic health-records system, Cerner, which we access through our current utility, Citrix. The tablet must duplicate our current desktop and remote-access capabilities.
- *Other security features*. The tablet must support basic security features, including encryption, remote wipe (IT’s ability to remove data on a lost tablet), auto-lock (that cannot be turned off except by IT), and perimeter settings (IT’s ability to prevent use of a tablet that has strayed a certain distance from the server) (“Top Five,” 2013).
- *Ease of disinfection*. Because the tablets would be used in a clinical setting, they would be subject to the same standards of disinfection as any other equipment or device. A tablet that cannot be disinfected effectively and easily would not be an appropriate choice (Carr, 2011).

In addition, we have established two other criteria against which to evaluate tablets. We have deemed these criteria desirable; a tablet that does not meet a desirable criterion would not be eliminated from consideration.

- *Durability*. Because the tablet would be carried around within the hospital and sometimes would be used in close quarters, it likely would be dropped or bumped. The more durable, the more desirable the tablet would be.
- *Long battery life*. Our clinical staff routinely work shifts as long as 14 hours. The longer the battery life, the better. Related to battery life is the hot-swap feature. In a hot-swappable device, the battery can be removed and replaced with a fresh one without having to shut down the tablet.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

One challenge we faced is that it was impractical to do a comprehensive assessment of all of the approximately 100 tablets available on the market. A second challenge is that tablets fall into a dizzying variety of sometimes overlapping categories. For example, the single most popular tablet is the Apple iPad, which runs on Apple's proprietary operating system. Many other tablets run on the Android system. Some, like the Amazon Kindle Fire, run on specialized configurations of Android. And Microsoft's Surface runs on Windows. There are general-purpose tablets, like the Samsung, made for the consumer market, and there are specialized tablets, like the Motion, designed for the health-care industry (Phillips, 2013). There are rugged tablets designed to meet military specifications for durability. Some tablets have USB ports for easy connection to existing clinical instruments and devices, as well as specialized features such as barcode-reading and RFID capabilities. Some tablets come with dozens of native (pre-installed) apps related to health care.

In short, although many brands of tablet are similar, no two are identical. As a result, we decided to review a small set of tablets that are mentioned frequently in health-care magazines and journals. We were sure to include the iPad, the Microsoft Surface, and several Android tablets. We also looked briefly at several tablets specially designed and marketed for health-care applications.

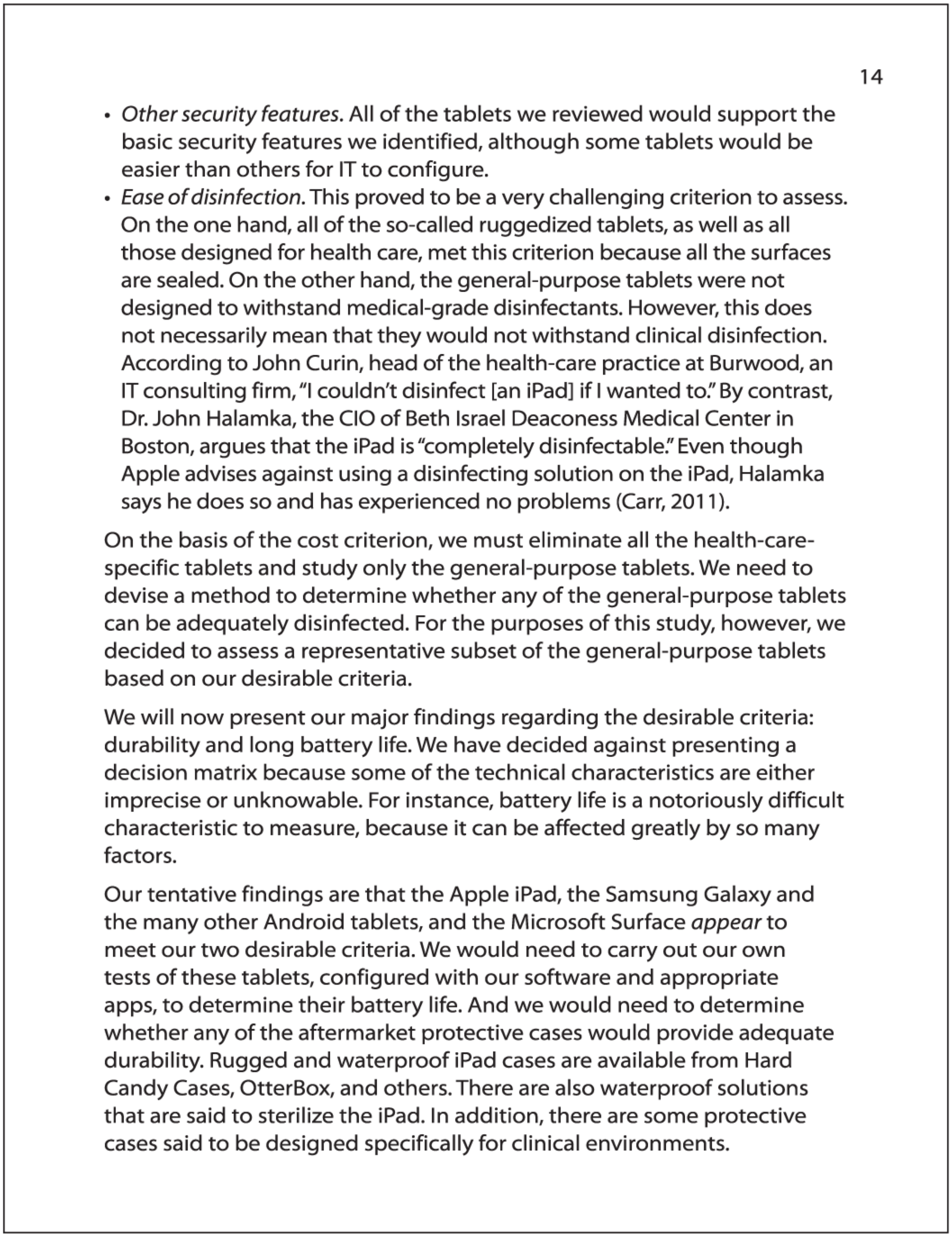
We present our basic findings by returning to our set of necessary and desired criteria.

The four necessary criteria are the following:

- *Cost*. Unfortunately, our cost criterion of $800 per unit eliminates all the tablets designed for health-care applications. These tablets, which cost between $2,500 and $3,000, are easy to disinfect and highly durable and include many desirable features such as barcode scanners, RFID readers, speech, and smart-card readers. The leading tablets in this category are the ProScribe Medical Tablet PC, the Sahara Slate PC, the MediSlate MCA, the Motion C5v Medical Tablet PC, the Teguar TA-10 Medical Tablet PC, the Advantech Medical PC, and the Arbor Antibacterial Medical Tablet.
- *HIPAA compliance.* All of the tablets we reviewed would enable us to remain in compliance with HIPAA and the current health care laws, and all would enable us to use our current record system, Cerner, through our Citrix utility. Some of the tablets have native apps to support this access, whereas others use virtual private networks.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



14

- *Other security features*. All of the tablets we reviewed would support the basic security features we identified, although some tablets would be easier than others for IT to configure.
- *Ease of disinfection*. This proved to be a very challenging criterion to assess. On the one hand, all of the so-called ruggedized tablets, as well as all those designed for health care, met this criterion because all the surfaces are sealed. On the other hand, the general-purpose tablets were not designed to withstand medical-grade disinfectants. However, this does not necessarily mean that they would not withstand clinical disinfection. According to John Curin, head of the health-care practice at Burwood, an IT consulting firm, "I couldn't disinfect [an iPad] if I wanted to." By contrast, Dr. John Halamka, the CIO of Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center in Boston, argues that the iPad is "completely disinfectable." Even though Apple advises against using a disinfecting solution on the iPad, Halamka says he does so and has experienced no problems (Carr, 2011).

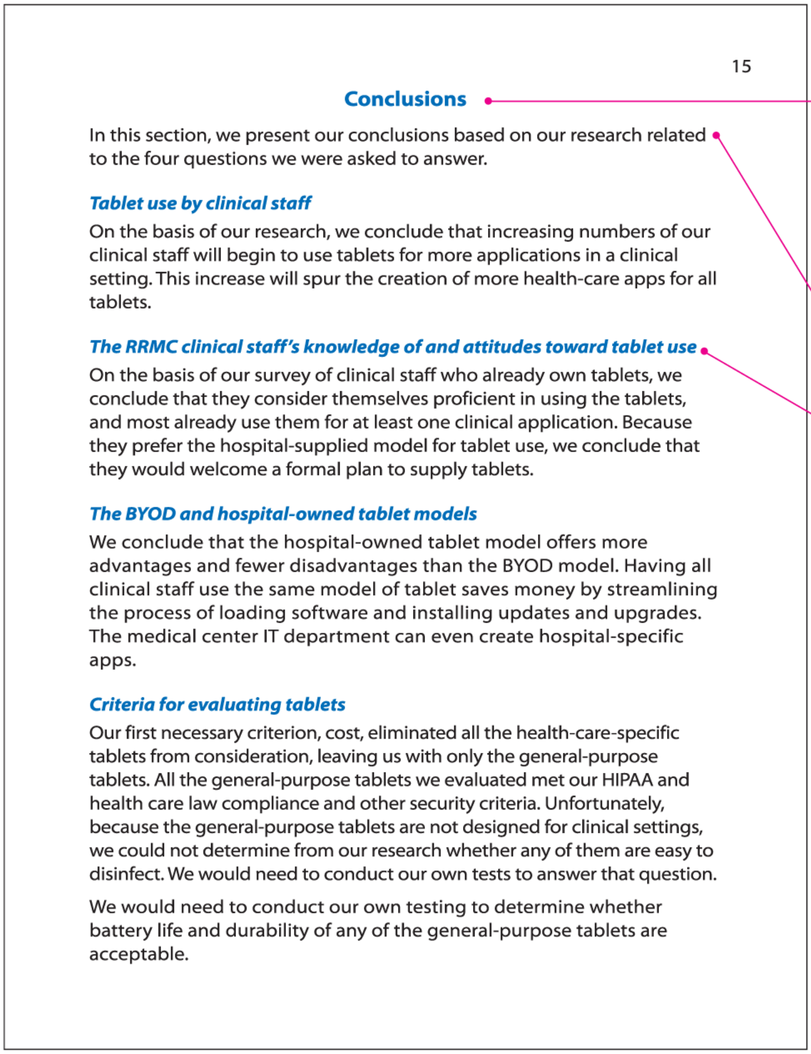
On the basis of the cost criterion, we must eliminate all the health-care-specific tablets and study only the general-purpose tablets. We need to devise a method to determine whether any of the general-purpose tablets can be adequately disinfected. For the purposes of this study, however, we decided to assess a representative subset of the general-purpose tablets based on our desirable criteria.

We will now present our major findings regarding the desirable criteria: durability and long battery life. We have decided against presenting a decision matrix because some of the technical characteristics are either imprecise or unknowable. For instance, battery life is a notoriously difficult characteristic to measure, because it can be affected greatly by so many factors.

Our tentative findings are that the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy and the many other Android tablets, and the Microsoft Surface *appear* to meet our two desirable criteria. We would need to carry out our own tests of these tablets, configured with our software and appropriate apps, to determine their battery life. And we would need to determine whether any of the aftermarket protective cases would provide adequate durability. Rugged and waterproof iPad cases are available from Hard Candy Cases, OtterBox, and others. There are also waterproof solutions that are said to sterilize the iPad. In addition, there are some protective cases said to be designed specifically for clinical environments.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



15

Conclusions

In this section, we present our conclusions based on our research related to the four questions we were asked to answer.

Tablet use by clinical staff

On the basis of our research, we conclude that increasing numbers of our clinical staff will begin to use tablets for more applications in a clinical setting. This increase will spur the creation of more health-care apps for all tablets.

The RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On the basis of our survey of clinical staff who already own tablets, we conclude that they consider themselves proficient in using the tablets, and most already use them for at least one clinical application. Because they prefer the hospital-supplied model for tablet use, we conclude that they would welcome a formal plan to supply tablets.

The BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

We conclude that the hospital-owned tablet model offers more advantages and fewer disadvantages than the BYOD model. Having all clinical staff use the same model of tablet saves money by streamlining the process of loading software and installing updates and upgrades. The medical center IT department can even create hospital-specific apps.

Criteria for evaluating tablets

Our first necessary criterion, cost, eliminated all the health-care-specific tablets from consideration, leaving us with only the general-purpose tablets. All the general-purpose tablets we evaluated met our HIPAA and health care law compliance and other security criteria. Unfortunately, because the general-purpose tablets are not designed for clinical settings, we could not determine from our research whether any of them are easy to disinfect. We would need to conduct our own tests to answer that question.

We would need to conduct our own testing to determine whether battery life and durability of any of the general-purpose tablets are acceptable.

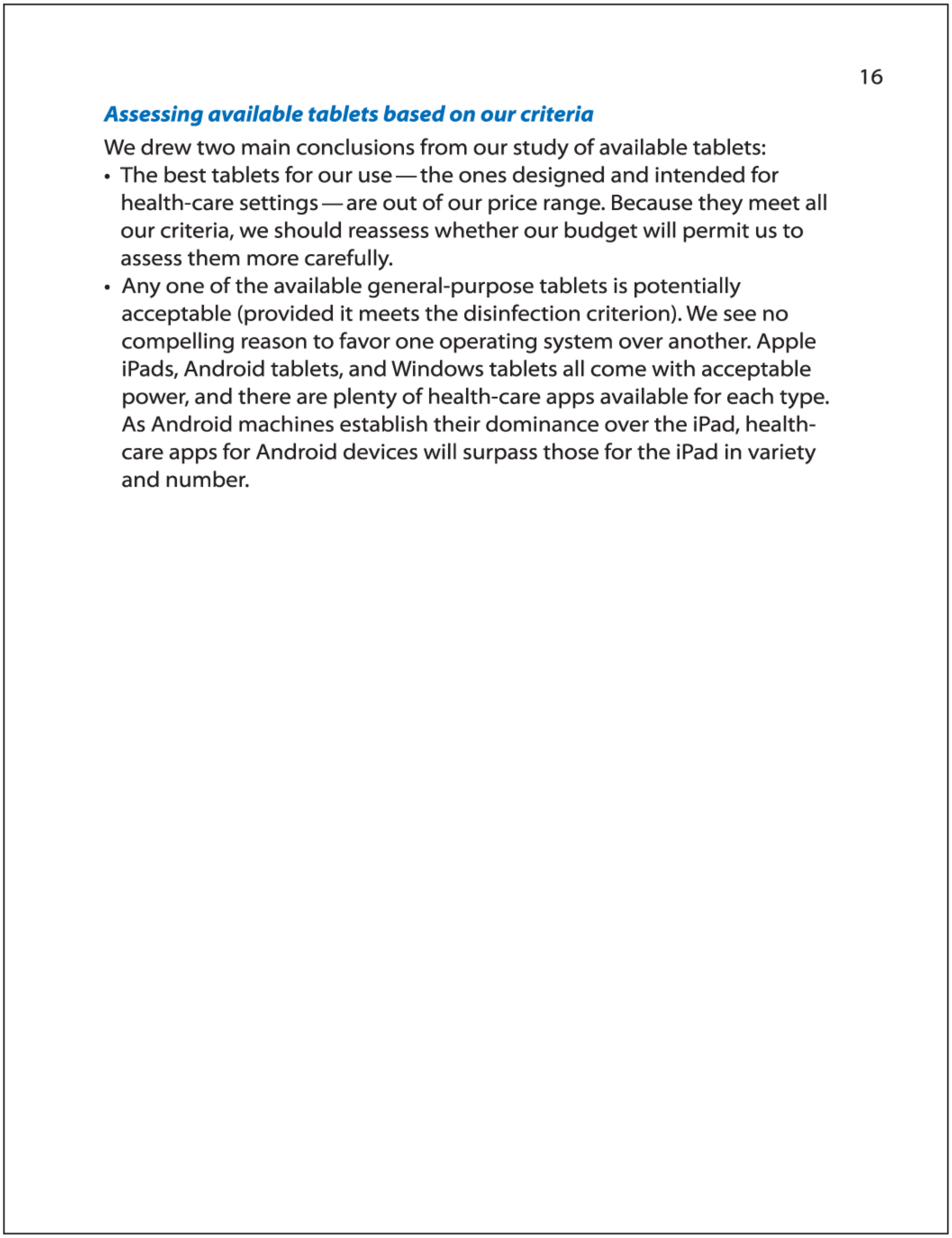
The function of a conclusion is to explain what the data mean. Here the writers explain how their results can help their readers determine how to proceed with the tablet study. Notice that a conclusion is not the same as a recommendation (which explains what writers think should be done next).

The writers present an advance organizer for the conclusions section.

At this point in the report, the writers have decided to abandon the "task" labels. Their thinking is that they are focusing less on what they did and more on the meaning of the information they gathered. However, they retain the headings that help readers understand the topic they are discussing.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



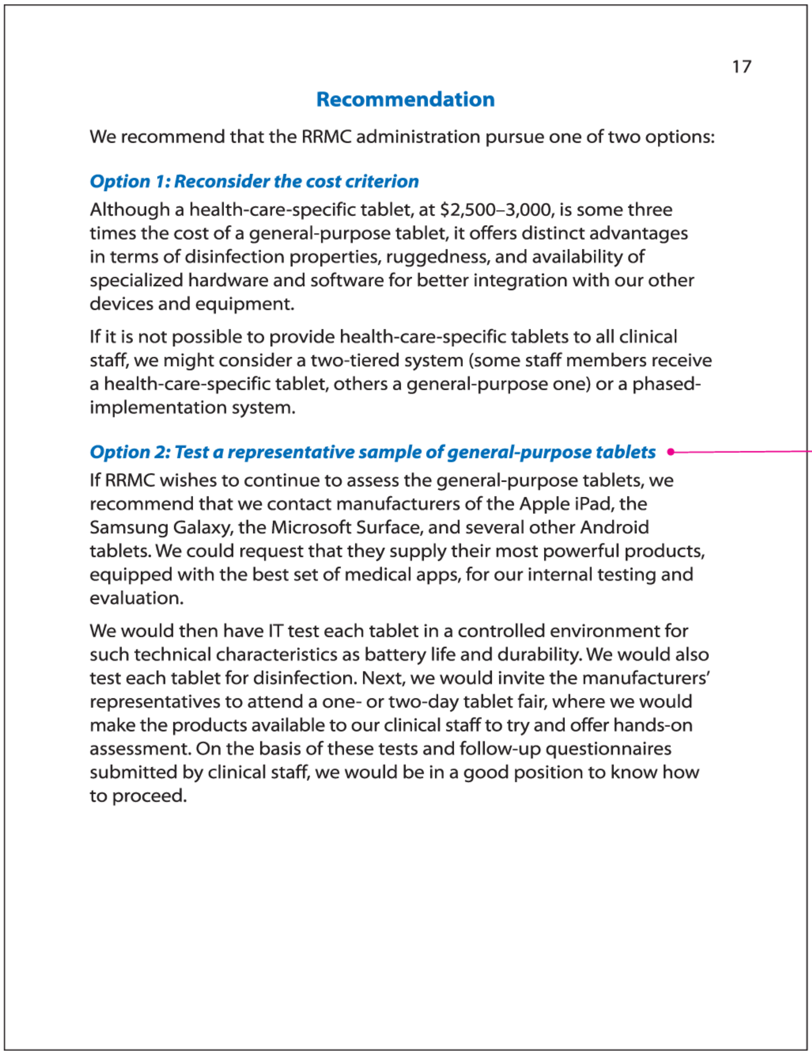
Assessing available tablets based on our criteria

We drew two main conclusions from our study of available tablets:

- The best tablets for our use — the ones designed and intended for health-care settings — are out of our price range. Because they meet all our criteria, we should reassess whether our budget will permit us to assess them more carefully.
- Any one of the available general-purpose tablets is potentially acceptable (provided it meets the disinfection criterion). We see no compelling reason to favor one operating system over another. Apple iPads, Android tablets, and Windows tablets all come with acceptable power, and there are plenty of health-care apps available for each type. As Android machines establish their dominance over the iPad, health-care apps for Android devices will surpass those for the iPad in variety and number.

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



17

Recommendation

We recommend that the RRMC administration pursue one of two options:

Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion

Although a health-care-specific tablet, at $2,500–3,000, is some three times the cost of a general-purpose tablet, it offers distinct advantages in terms of disinfection properties, ruggedness, and availability of specialized hardware and software for better integration with our other devices and equipment.

If it is not possible to provide health-care-specific tablets to all clinical staff, we might consider a two-tiered system (some staff members receive a health-care-specific tablet, others a general-purpose one) or a phased-implementation system.

Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets

If RRMC wishes to continue to assess the general-purpose tablets, we recommend that we contact manufacturers of the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy, the Microsoft Surface, and several other Android tablets. We could request that they supply their most powerful products, equipped with the best set of medical apps, for our internal testing and evaluation.

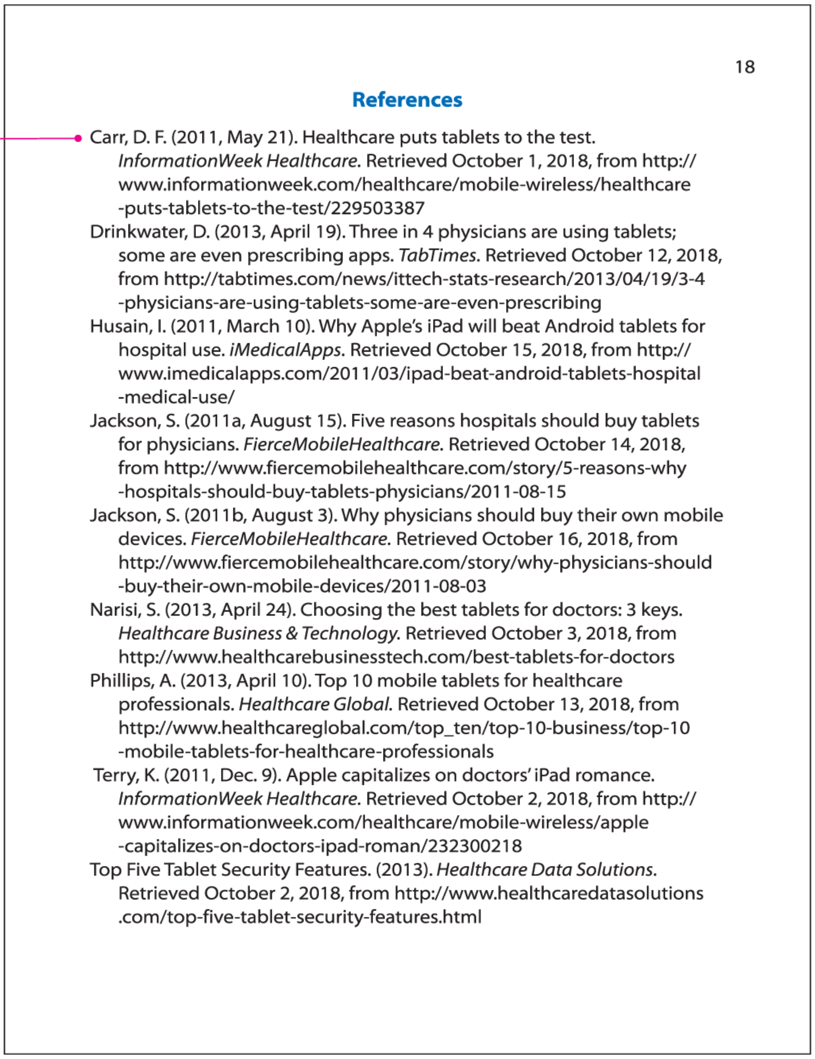
We would then have IT test each tablet in a controlled environment for such technical characteristics as battery life and durability. We would also test each tablet for disinfection. Next, we would invite the manufacturers' representatives to attend a one- or two-day tablet fair, where we would make the products available to our clinical staff to try and offer hands-on assessment. On the basis of these tests and follow-up questionnaires submitted by clinical staff, we would be in a good position to know how to proceed.

This recommendation states explicitly what the writers think the reader should do next. Note that they are sketching in ideas that they have not discussed in detail but that might interest their readers.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)

This list of references is written according to the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A.



18

References

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. *TabTimes*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://tabtimes.com/news/ittech-stats-research/2013/04/19/3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing

Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. *iMedicalApps*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.imedicalapps.com/2011/03/ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital-medical-use/

Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/5-reasons-why-hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians/2011-08-15

Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. *Healthcare Business & Technology*. Retrieved October 3, 2018, from http://www.healthcarebusinesstech.com/best-tablets-for-doctors

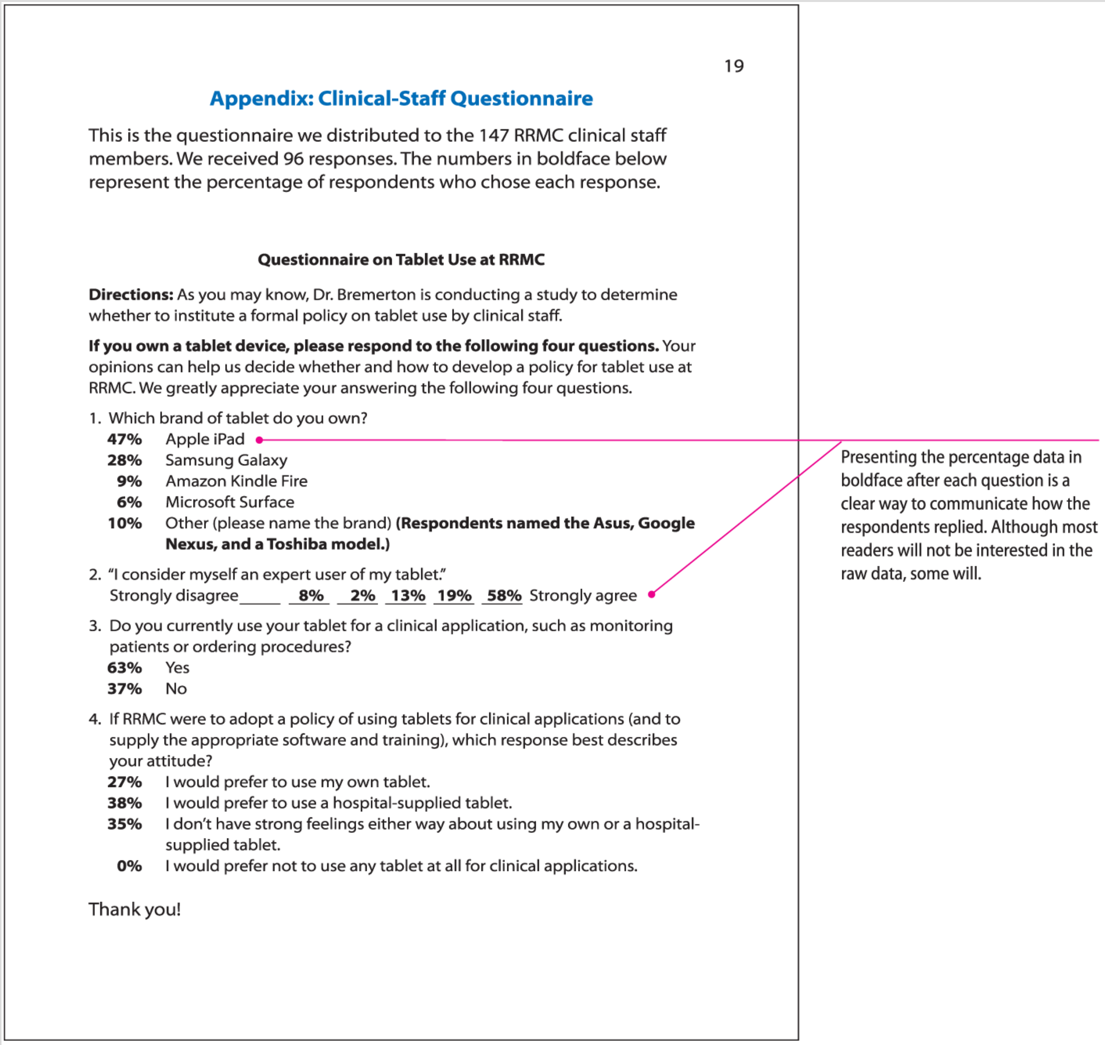
Phillips, A. (2013, April 10). Top 10 mobile tablets for healthcare professionals. *Healthcare Global*. Retrieved October 13, 2018, from http://www.healthcareglobal.com/top_ten/top-10-business/top-10-mobile-tablets-for-healthcare-professionals

Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors' iPad romance. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman/232300218

Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). *Healthcare Data Solutions*. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http://www.healthcaredatasolutions.com/top-five-tablet-security-features.html

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report (continued)



19

Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire

This is the questionnaire we distributed to the 147 RRMC clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response.

Questionnaire on Tablet Use at RRMC

Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff.

If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at RRMC. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions.

1. Which brand of tablet do you own?

47%	Apple iPad
28%	Samsung Galaxy
9%	Amazon Kindle Fire
6%	Microsoft Surface
10%	Other (please name the brand) **(Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.)**

2. "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."
Strongly disagree_____ **8%** **2%** **13%** **19%** **58%** Strongly agree

3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures?

63%	Yes
37%	No

4. If RRMC were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude?

27%	I would prefer to use my own tablet.
38%	I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet.
35%	I don't have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet.
0%	I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications.

Thank you!

Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

In planning your recommendation report, did you

☐ analyze your audience?
☐ determine your purpose?
☐ identify the questions that need to be answered?
☐ carry out appropriate research?
☐ draw valid conclusions about the results?
☐ formulate recommendations based on the conclusions?

Does the transmittal letter

☐ clearly state the title and, if necessary, the subject and purpose of the report?
☐ clearly state who authorized or commissioned the report?
☐ acknowledge any assistance you received?
☐ establish a courteous and professional tone?

Does the cover include

☐ the title of the report?
☐ your name and position?
☐ the date of submission?
☐ the company name or logo?

Does the title page

☐ include a title that clearly states the subject and purpose of the report?
☐ list your name and position and those of your principal reader(s)?
☐ include the date of submission of the report and any other identifying information?

Does the abstract

☐ list the report title, your name, and any other identifying information?
☐ clearly define the problem or opportunity that led to the project?
☐ briefly describe *(if appropriate)* the research methods?
☐ summarize the major results, conclusions, and recommendations?

Does the table of contents

☐ contain a sufficiently detailed breakdown of the major sections of the body of the report?
☐ reproduce the headings as they appear in your report?
☐ include page numbers?
☐ Does the list of illustrations (or tables or figures) include all the graphics found in the body of the report?

Does the executive summary

☐ clearly state the problem or opportunity that led to the project?
☐ explain the major results, conclusions, recommendations, and managerial implications of your report?
☐ avoid technical terms and concepts that a managerial audience is not likely to be interested in?

Does the introduction

☐ explain the subject and purpose of the report?
☐ explain the background of the report and your sources of information?
☐ indicate the scope of the report?
☐ briefly summarize the most significant findings and your recommendations?
☐ explain the organization of the report?
☐ define key terms used in the report?

Does the methods section

☐ describe your methods in sufficient detail?
☐ justify your methods, where necessary?

Are the results presented

☐ clearly?
☐ objectively and without interpretation?

Are the conclusions

☐ presented clearly?
☐ drawn logically from the results?

Are the recommendations

☐ clear and objective?
☐ stated politely in an appropriate form *(list or paragraph)*?
☐ in an appropriate location?
☐ Does the glossary include definitions of all the technical terms your readers might not know?
☐ Does the list of symbols include all the symbols and abbreviations your readers might not know?
☐ Does the list of references include all your sources and adhere to an appropriate documentation system?
☐ Do the appendixes include supporting materials that are too bulky to present in the report body or that are of interest to only a small number of your readers?

EXERCISES

1. An important element in carrying out a feasibility study is determining the criteria by which to judge each option. For each of the following topics, list five necessary criteria and five desirable criteria you might apply in assessing the options.
    a. buying a smartphone

    b. selecting a major
    c. choosing a company to work for
    d. buying a car
    e. choosing a place to live while you attend college

2. Go to www.usa.gov and select the “Government Agencies and Elected Officials” tab. Choose an agency and navigate to its website. Then find a recommendation report on a subject that interests you. In what ways does the structure of the report differ from the structure described in this chapter? In other words, does the report lack some of the elements described in this chapter, or does it have additional elements? Are the elements arranged in the order in which they are described in this chapter? In what ways do the differences reflect the audience, purpose, and subject of the report?
3. **TEAM EXERCISE** Write the recommendation report for the research project you proposed in response to Exercise 3 on page 313 in Chapter 11. Your instructor will tell you whether the report is to be written individually or collaboratively, but either way, work closely with a partner to review and revise your report. A partner can be very helpful during the planning phase, too, as you choose a topic, refine it, and plan your research.
4. Secure a recommendation report for a project subsidized by a city or federal agency, a private organization, or a university committee or task force. (Be sure to check your university’s website; universities routinely publish strategic

planning reports and other sorts of self-study reports. Also check www.nas.edu, which is the site for the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, the Institute of Medicine, and the National Research Council, all of which publish reports on the web.) In a memo to your instructor, analyze the report. Overall, how effective is the report? How could the writers have improved the report? Submit a copy of the report along with your memo.

CASE 13: Writing a Recommendation

As president of a music-instruction company, you are exploring the possibility of purchasing an electric guitar that can be used for digital recording. You ask your director of guitar instruction to investigate options for you, but you find some problems with her methodology. To get started helping her research the matter more successfully and provide helpful recommendations, go to Achieve.

CHAPTER 14

Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions

Writing Definitions
Writing Descriptions
Writing Instructions
Writing Manuals

THIS CHAPTER DISCUSSES definitions, descriptions, and instructions. The first step is to define these three terms:

- A *definition* is typically a brief explanation, using words and sometimes graphics, of what an item is or what a concept means. You could write a definition of *file format* or of *regenerative braking*.
- A *description* is typically a longer explanation — usually accompanied by graphics — of the physical or operational features of an object, mechanism, or process. You could write a description of a wind turbine, of global warming, or of shale-oil extraction.

- A set of *instructions* is a kind of process description, almost always accompanied by graphics, intended to enable a person to carry out a task. You could write a set of instructions for installing a new roof or for using an app on your tablet.

Although each can appear independently, definitions, descriptions, and instructions are often presented together in a set of product information. For instance, a store that sells building materials for homeowners might create a product-information set about how to lay a brick patio. In this set might be definitions of tools (such as a mason's line), descriptions of objects (such as different types of edging materials, including plastic, metal, masonry, and wood), and step-by-step instructions for planning, laying, and maintaining the patio.

Regardless of your field, you will write definitions, descriptions, and instructions frequently. Whether you are communicating with other technical professionals, managers, or the public, you must be able to define key concepts, describe processes, and explain how to carry out tasks.

FOCUS ON PROCESS

Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions

In writing definitions, descriptions, and instructions, pay special attention to these steps in the writing process. For a complete process for writing technical documents, see page 11.

PLANNING	For definitions, you will need to decide where to place the definition. Parenthetical and sentence definitions can be placed in the text, in a marginal gloss, in a separate hyperlinked file, in a footnote, or in a glossary (an alphabetized list of definitions). An extended definition can be a section in the body of the larger document or can be placed in an appendix. For descriptions and instructions, consider whether they would be most effective in text, voiceover, a visual guide, or some combination.
DRAFTING	For definitions and descriptions, draft with your audience and purpose in mind. For descriptions, you will need to indicate clearly the nature and scope of the description, introduce the description clearly, provide additional detail, and conclude the description. For instructions, you will need to design the instructions based on how your readers will be using them, and you should include appropriate graphics. Do everything you can to ensure readers' safety.
REVISING	Remember to keep audience and purpose in mind for definitions and descriptions. If you can, carry out usability testing on any instructions you write.

Writing Definitions

The world of business and industry depends on clear definitions. Suppose you learn at a job interview that the prospective employer pays tuition and expenses for employees' job-related education. You would need to study the employee-benefits manual to understand just what the company would pay for. Who, for instance, is an *employee*? Is it anyone who works for the company, or is it someone who has worked for the company full-time (40 hours per week) for at least six uninterrupted months? What is *tuition*? Does it include incidental laboratory or student fees? What is *job-related education*? Does a course about time management qualify? What, in fact, constitutes *education*?

Definitions are common in communicating policies and standards "for the record." Definitions also have many uses outside legal or contractual contexts. Two such uses occur frequently:

- **Definitions clarify a description of a new development or a new technology in a technical field.** For instance, a zoologist who has discovered a new animal species names and defines it.
- **Definitions help specialists communicate with less knowledgeable readers.** A manual explaining how to tune up a car includes definitions of parts and tools.

Definitions, then, are crucial in many kinds of technical communication, from brief letters and memos to technical reports, manuals, and journal articles. All readers, from the general reader to the expert, need effective definitions to carry out their jobs.

The writing process for a definition is similar to that for any other technical communication. The Focus on Process box that follows outlines this process.

ANALYZING THE WRITING SITUATION FOR DEFINITIONS

The first step in writing effective definitions is to analyze the writing situation: the audience and the purpose of the document.

Unless you know who your readers will be and how much they know about the subject, you cannot determine which terms to define or what kind of definition to write. Physicists wouldn't need a definition of *entropy*, but lawyers might. Builders know what a molly bolt is, but many insurance agents don't.

For more about audience and purpose, see Ch. 4.

The appropriate type of definition depends on your audience and purpose. You have three major choices: parenthetical, sentence, and extended.

CHOICES AND STRATEGIES Choosing the Appropriate Type of

Definition

IF THE TERM IS …	AND THE DOCUMENT IS …	TRY THIS TYPE OF DEFINITION
Relatively simple	**Relatively informal**	**Parenthetical.** A *parenthetical definition* is a brief clarification within an existing sentence. Sometimes, a parenthetical definition is simply a word or phrase enclosed in parentheses or commas or introduced by a colon or a dash: “The computers were infected by a *Trojan horse* (a destructive program that appears to be benign).”
Relatively simple	**Relatively formal**	**Sentence.** A *sentence definition* usually follows a standard pattern in which the item to be defined is placed in a category of similar items and then distinguished from them: “Open-source software is computer software whose programming code is freely available to users.” Here, “open-source software” is the category and the words that follow “computer software” are the distinguishing information. Writers often use sentence definitions to present a working definition for a particular document: “In this report, *electron microscope* refers to any microscope that uses electrons rather than visible light to produce magnified images.” Such a definition is called a *stipulative definition.* See the Guidelines box for more about writing sentence definitions.
Relatively complex	**Informal or formal**	**Extended.** An *extended definition* is a detailed explanation — usually one or more paragraphs — of an object, process, or idea. Often, an extended definition begins with a sentence definition, which is then elaborated. For instance, the sentence definition “An electrophorus is a laboratory instrument used to generate static electricity” tells you the basic function of the device, but it doesn’t explain how it works, what it is used for, and its strengths and limitations. An extended definition would address these and other topics. See pages 385–88 for more about extended definitions.

Think, too, about your purpose. For readers who need only a basic understanding of a concept — say, travelers researching lodging options who want to learn more about *time-sharing vacation resorts* — a brief, informal definition is usually sufficient. However, readers who need to understand an object, process, or concept thoroughly and be able to carry out tasks related to it need a more formal and elaborate definition. For example, the definition of a "Class 2 Alert" written for operators at a nuclear power plant must be comprehensive, specific, and precise.

WRITING SENTENCE DEFINITIONS

A *sentence definition* — a one-sentence clarification — is more formal than a parenthetical definition. A sentence definition usually follows a standard pattern: the item to be defined is placed in a category of similar items and then distinguished from them.

ITEM	=	CATEGORY	+	DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS
Open-source software	is	computer software		whose programming code is freely available to users.
Hypnoanalysis	is	a psychoanalytical technique		in which hypnosis is used to elicit information from a patient's unconscious mind.

In many cases, a sentence definition also includes a graphic. For example, a definition of an electron microscope would probably include a photograph, diagram, or drawing.

Writers often use sentence definitions to present a working definition for a particular document: “In this report, *electron microscope* refers to any microscope that uses electrons rather than visible light to produce magnified images.” Such definitions are sometimes called *stipulative definitions* because the writer is stipulating how the term will be used in the context of the document rather than offering a general definition of the term.

GUIDELINES Writing Effective Sentence Definitions

The following suggestions can help you write effective sentence definitions.

- **Be specific in stating the category and the distinguishing characteristics.** If you write, “A Bunsen burner is a burner that consists of a vertical metal tube connected to a gas source,” the imprecise category — “a burner” — ruins the definition: many types of large-scale burners use vertical metal tubes connected to gas sources.
- **Don’t describe a specific item if you are defining a general class of items.** If you wish to define *catamaran*, don’t describe a particular catamaran. The catamaran you see on the beach in front of you might be made by Hobie and have a white hull and blue sails, but those characteristics are not features of catamarans in general.
- **Avoid writing circular definitions — that is, definitions that merely repeat the key words or the distinguishing characteristics of the item being defined in the category.** The definition “A required course is a course that is required” is useless: required of whom, by whom? However, in defining electron microscopes, you can repeat *microscope* because *microscope* is not the difficult part of the item. The purpose of defining *electron microscope* is to clarify *electron* as it applies to a particular type of microscope.
- **Be sure the category contains a noun or a noun phrase rather than a phrase beginning with *when*, *what*, or *where*.**

INCORRECT	A brazier is what is used to …

CORRECT	A brazier is a metal pan used to …
INCORRECT	Hypnoanalysis is when hypnosis is used to …
CORRECT	Hypnoanalysis is a psychoanalytical technique in which …

WRITING EXTENDED DEFINITIONS

An *extended definition* is a more detailed explanation — usually one or more paragraphs — of an object, process, or idea. Often, an extended definition begins with a sentence definition, which is then elaborated. For instance, the sentence definition “An electrophorus is a laboratory instrument used to generate static electricity” tells you the basic function of the device, but it doesn’t explain how it works, what it is used for, or its strengths and limitations. An extended definition would address these and other topics.

There is no one way to “extend” a definition. Your analysis of your audience and the purpose of your communication will help you decide which method to use. In fact, an extended definition sometimes employs several of the eight techniques discussed here.

Graphics

Perhaps the most common way to present an extended definition in technical communication is to include a graphic and then explain it. Graphics are useful in defining not only physical objects but also concepts and ideas. A definition of *temperature inversion,* for instance, might include a diagram showing the forces that create temperature inversions. The extended definition of a *global positioning system* in Figure 14.1 is made up of both words and graphics.

Examples

Examples are particularly useful in making an abstract or difficult-to-explain term easier to understand. The following excerpt is an extended definition of *marine protected areas* from the website of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA.gov, 2016).

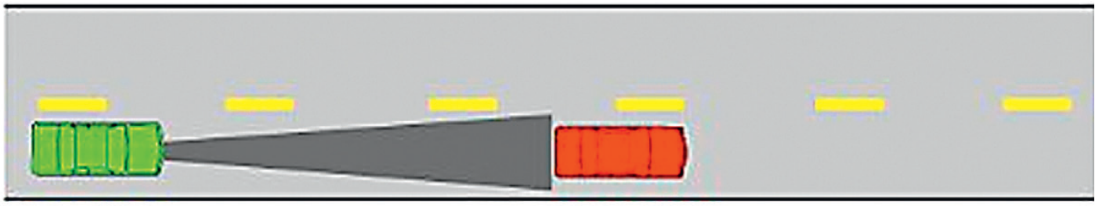
> Marine protected areas (MPAs) in the U.S. come in a variety of forms and are established and managed by all levels of government. There are marine sanctuaries, estuarine research reserves, ocean parks, and marine wildlife refuges. Each of these sites differs. MPAs may be established to protect ecosystems, preserve cultural resources such as shipwrecks and archaeological sites, or sustain fisheries production.
>
> There is often confusion and debate regarding what the term “marine protected area” really means. Some people interpret MPAs to mean areas closed to all human activities, while others interpret them as special areas set aside for recreation (e.g., national parks) or to sustain commercial use (e.g., fishery management areas). These are just a few examples of the many types of MPAs.
>
> In reality, “marine protected area” is a term that encompasses a variety of conservation and management methods in the United States. If you have been fishing in central California, diving near a shipwreck in the Florida Keys, camping in Acadia, snorkeling in the Virgin Islands, or hiking along the Olympic Coast, you were probably one of thousands of visitors to an MPA.

In the U.S., MPAs span a range of habitats, including the open ocean, coastal areas, intertidal zones, estuaries, and the Great Lakes. They also vary widely in purpose, legal authorities, agencies, management approaches, level of protection, and restrictions on human uses.

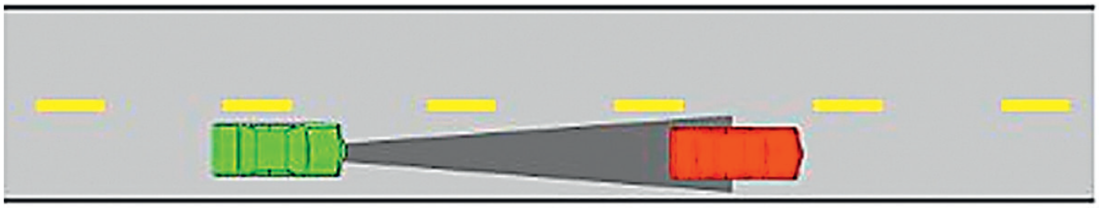
This extended definition includes examples of the many types of MPAs.

Principle of Operation

Describing the principle of operation — the way something works — is an effective way to develop an extended definition, especially for an object or a process. The following excerpt from an extended definition of *adaptive cruise control* (Canadian Association, 2009) is based on the mechanism's principle of operation.

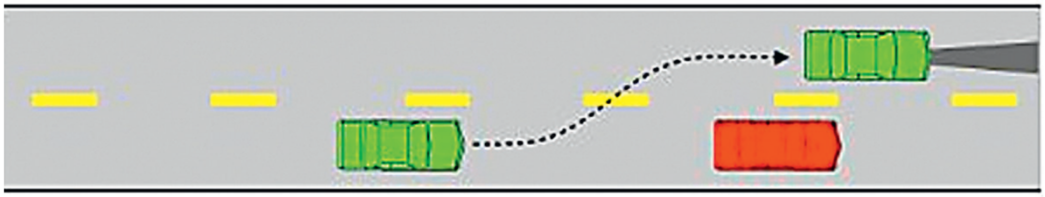


The ACC system in the green car detects the slower-moving red car.



ACC reduces the green car's speed and maintains the preset headway.

High-tech vehicle safety systems. Used with permission from Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals.



The green car overtakes the red car. The road ahead is clear. The ACC system resumes the vehicle's preset cruising speed.

High-tech vehicle safety systems. Used with permission from Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) employs sensing and control systems to monitor the vehicle's position with respect to any vehicle ahead. When a vehicle equipped with ACC approaches a slower moving vehicle, the ACC system reduces the vehicle speed in order to maintain a preset following distance (headway). However, when the traffic ahead clears, the ACC system automatically accelerates the vehicle back to the preset travel speed.

ACC systems use forward-looking radar or laser detection (lidar) systems to monitor the vehicle's position with respect to any vehicle in front and change the speed in order to maintain a preset following distance (headway).

The system typically allows the driver to preset a "following time," for example a two-second gap between vehicles. The ACC computer makes calculations of speed, distance, and time based on the sensor inputs and makes appropriate adjustments to the vehicle's speed to maintain the desired headway.

Comparison and Contrast

Using comparison and contrast, a writer discusses the similarities or differences between the item being defined and an item with which readers are more familiar. The following definition of VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) contrasts this new form of phone service to the form we all know.

> Voice over Internet Protocol is a form of phone service that lets you connect to the internet through your cable or DSL modem. VoIP service uses a device called a telephony adapter, which attaches to the broadband modem, transforming phone pulses into IP packets sent over the internet.

> In this excerpt, the second and third paragraphs briefly compare VoIP and traditional phone service. Notice that this passage is organized according to the part-by-part comparison-and-contrast pattern.

> VoIP is considerably cheaper than traditional phone service: for as little as $20 per month, users get unlimited local and domestic long-distance service. For international calls, VoIP service is only about three cents per minute, about a third the rate of traditional phone service. In addition, any calls from one person to another person with the same VoIP service provider are free.

> However, sound quality on VoIP cannot match that of a traditional land-based phone. On a good day, the sound is fine on VoIP, but frequent users comment on clipping and dropouts that can last up to a second. In addition, sometimes the sound has the distant, tinny quality of some of today's cell phones.

Analogy

An *analogy* is a specialized kind of comparison. In a traditional comparison, the writer compares one item to another, similar item: an electron microscope to a light microscope, for example. In an analogy, however, the item being defined is compared to an item that is in some ways completely different but that shares some essential characteristic. For instance, the central processing unit of a computer is often compared to a brain. Obviously, these two items are very different, except that the relationship of the central processing unit to the computer is similar to that of the brain to the body.

The following example from a definition of *decellularization* (Falco, 2008) shows an effective use of an analogy.

> Researchers at the University of Minnesota were able to create a beating [rat] heart using the outer structure of one heart and injecting heart cells from another rat. Their findings are reported in the journal *Nature Medicine*. Rather than building a heart from scratch, which has often been mentioned as a possible use for stem cells, this procedure takes a heart and breaks it down to the outermost shell. It's similar to taking a house and gutting it, then rebuilding everything inside. In the human version, the patient's own cells would be used.

The writer of this passage uses the analogy of gutting a house to clarify the meaning of *decellularization*.

Negation

A special kind of contrast is *negation,* sometimes called *negative statement.* Negation clarifies a term by distinguishing it from a different term with which readers might confuse it. The following example uses negation to distinguish the term *ambulatory* from *ambulance*.

> An ambulatory patient is not a patient who must be moved by ambulance. On the contrary, an ambulatory patient is one who can walk without assistance from another person.

Negation is rarely the only technique used in an extended definition; in fact, it is used most often in a sentence or two at the start. Once you have explained what something is not, you still have to explain what it is.

Etymology

Citing a word's *etymology,* or derivation, is often a useful and interesting way to develop a definition. The following example uses the etymology of *spam* — unsolicited junk email — to define it.

> For many decades, Hormel Foods has manufactured a luncheon meat called Spam, which stands for "Shoulder Pork and hAM"/"SPiced hAM." Then, in the 1970s, the English comedy team Monty Python broadcast a skit about a restaurant that served Spam with every dish. In describing each dish, the waitress repeats the word *Spam* over and over, and several Vikings standing in the corner chant the word repeatedly. In the mid-1990s, two businessmen hired a programmer to write a program that would send unsolicited ads to thousands of electronic newsgroups. Just as Monty Python's chanting Vikings drowned out other conversation in the restaurant, the ads began drowning out regular communication online. As a result, people started calling unsolicited junk email *spam.*

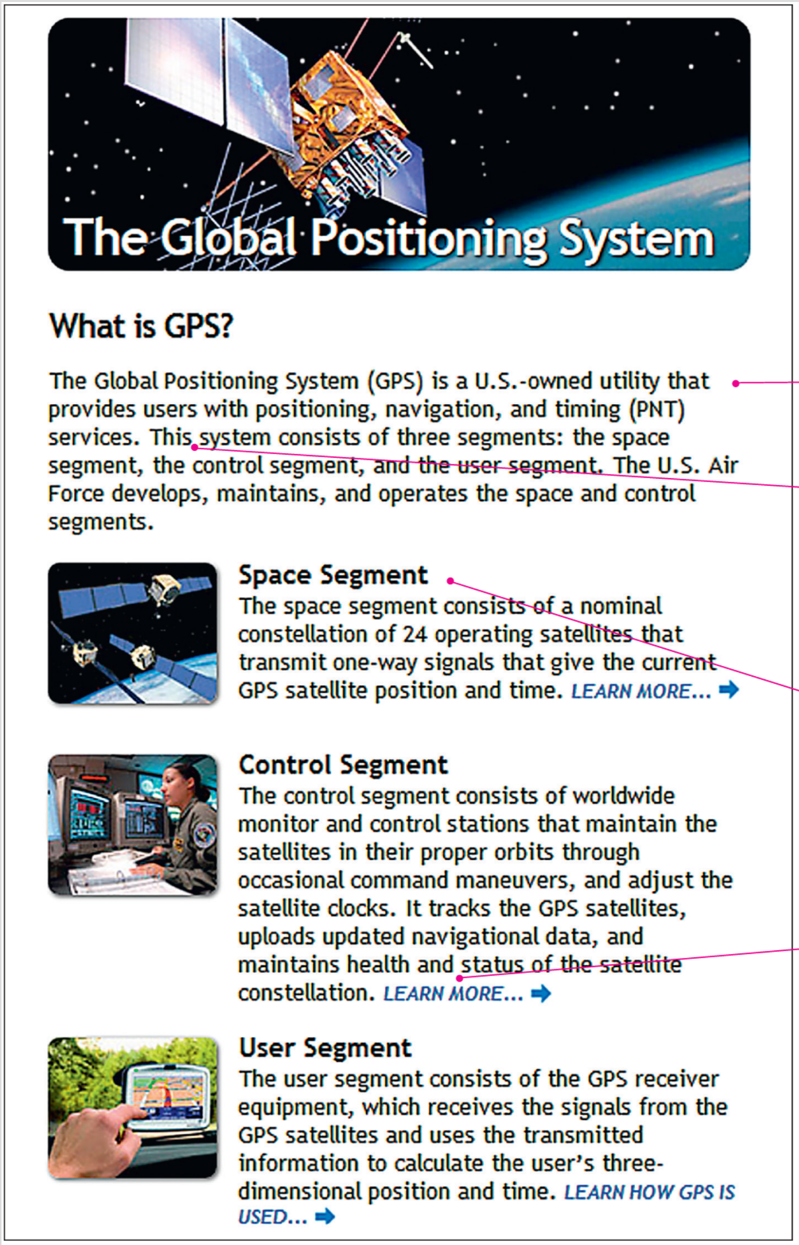
Etymology is a popular way to begin definitions of *acronyms,* which are abbreviations pronounced as words:

> RAID, which stands for redundant array of independent (or inexpensive) disks, refers to a computer storage system that can withstand a single (or, in some cases, even double) disk failure.

Etymology, like negation, is rarely used alone in technical communication, but it provides an effective way to introduce an extended definition.

A Sample Extended Definition

Figure 14.1 on page 389 is an example of an extended definition addressed to a general audience.



The Global Positioning System

What is GPS?

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a U.S.-owned utility that provides users with positioning, navigation, and timing (PNT) services. This system consists of three segments: the space segment, the control segment, and the user segment. The U.S. Air Force develops, maintains, and operates the space and control segments.

Space Segment

The space segment consists of a nominal constellation of 24 operating satellites that transmit one-way signals that give the current GPS satellite position and time. *LEARN MORE...* ➡

Control Segment

The control segment consists of worldwide monitor and control stations that maintain the satellites in their proper orbits through occasional command maneuvers, and adjust the satellite clocks. It tracks the GPS satellites, uploads updated navigational data, and maintains health and status of the satellite constellation. *LEARN MORE...* ➡

User Segment

The user segment consists of the GPS receiver equipment, which receives the signals from the GPS satellites and uses the transmitted information to calculate the user's three-dimensional position and time. *LEARN HOW GPS IS USED...* ➡

The first paragraph of this extended definition of GPS begins with a sentence definition.

The second sentence serves as an advance organizer for the definition, explaining that the definition will be extended by partition: GPS consists of three segments.

The body of this extended definition consists of three sections, each of which is introduced by a graphic and a topic sentence explaining the segment.

Links lead the reader to much more information about each segment, including more text, diagrams, and videos.

GPS.gov, 2013: www.gps.gov/systems/gps/
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.1 An Extended Definition

Writing Descriptions

Technical communication often requires descriptions: verbal and visual representations of the physical or operational features of objects, mechanisms, and processes.

- **Objects.** An object is anything from a natural physical site, such as a volcano, to a synthetic artifact, such as a battery. A tomato plant is an object, as is an automobile tire or a book.
- **Mechanisms.** A mechanism is a synthetic object consisting of a number of identifiable parts that work together. A cell phone is a mechanism, as is a voltmeter, a lawnmower, or a submarine.
- **Processes.** A process is an activity that takes place over time. Species evolve; steel is made; plants perform photosynthesis. *Descriptions of processes*, which explain how something happens, differ from *instructions,* which explain how to do something. Readers of a process description want to *understand* the process; readers of instructions want a step-by-step guide to help them *perform* the process.

Descriptions of objects, mechanisms, and processes appear in virtually every kind of technical communication. For example, an employee who wants to persuade management to buy some equipment includes a description of the equipment in the proposal to buy it. A company manufacturing a consumer product provides a description and a photograph of the product on its website to attract buyers. A developer who wants to build a housing project includes in his proposal to municipal authorities descriptions of the geographical area and of the process he will use in developing that area.

Typically, a description is part of a larger document. For example, a maintenance manual for an air-conditioning system might begin with a description of the system to help the reader understand first how it operates and then how to fix or maintain it.

The writing process for a description is similar to that for any other type of technical communication. The Focus on Process box that follows outlines this process.

ANALYZING THE WRITING SITUATION FOR DESCRIPTIONS

Before you begin to write a description, consider carefully how the audience and the purpose of the document will affect what you write. What does the audience already know about the general subject? For example, if you want to describe how the next generation of industrial robots will affect car manufacturing, you first have to know whether your readers understand the current process and whether they understand robotics.

Your sense of your audience will determine not only how technical your vocabulary should be but also how long your sentences and paragraphs should be. Another audience-related factor is your use of graphics. Less knowledgeable readers need simple graphics; they might have trouble understanding sophisticated schematics or decision charts. As you consider your audience, think about whether any of your readers are from other cultures and might therefore expect different topics, organization, or writing style in the description.

Consider, too, your purpose. What are you trying to accomplish with this description? If you want your readers to understand how a personal computer works, write a *general description* that applies to several brands and sizes of computers. If you want your readers to understand how a specific computer works, write a *particular description.* A general description of personal computers might classify them by size, then go on to describe desktops, laptops, and tablets in general terms. A particular description, however, will describe only one model of personal computer, such as a Millennia 2500. Your purpose will determine every aspect of the description, including its length, the amount of detail, and the number and type of graphics.

There is no single organization or format used for descriptions. Because descriptions are written for different audiences and different purposes, they can take many shapes and forms. However, the following four suggestions will guide you in most situations:

1. Indicate clearly the nature and scope of the description.
2. Introduce the description clearly.
3. Provide appropriate detail.
4. End the description with a brief conclusion.

INDICATING CLEARLY THE NATURE AND SCOPE OF THE DESCRIPTION

If the description is to be a separate document, give it a title. If the description is to be part of a longer document, give it a section heading. In either case, clearly state the subject and indicate whether the description is general or particular. For instance, a general description of an object might be entitled “Description of a Minivan,” and a particular description, “Description of the 2020 Honda Odyssey.” A general description of a process might be called “Description of the Process of Designing a New Production Car,” and a particular description, “Description of the Process of Designing the Chevrolet Malibu.”

For more about titles and headings, see Ch. 6.

INTRODUCING THE DESCRIPTION CLEARLY

Provide any information that readers need in order to understand the detailed information that follows. Most introductions to descriptions are general: you want to give readers a broad understanding of the object, mechanism, or process. You might also provide a graphic that introduces your readers to the overall concept. For example, for a process, you might include a flowchart summarizing the steps in the body of the description; for an object, such as a robot, you might include a photograph or a drawing showing the major components you will describe in detail in the body.

Table 14.1 (on p. 392) shows some of the basic kinds of questions you might want to answer in introducing object, mechanism, and process descriptions. If the answer is obvious, simply move on to the next question.

TABLE 14.1 Questions To Answer in Introducing a Description

FOR OBJECT AND MECHANISM DESCRIPTIONS	FOR PROCESS DESCRIPTIONS
• **What is the item?** You might start with a sentence definition. • **What is the function of the item?** If the function is not implicit in the sentence definition, state it: “Electron microscopes	• **What is the process?** You might start with a sentence definition. • **What is the function of the process?** Unless the function is obvious, state it: “The main purpose of performing a census

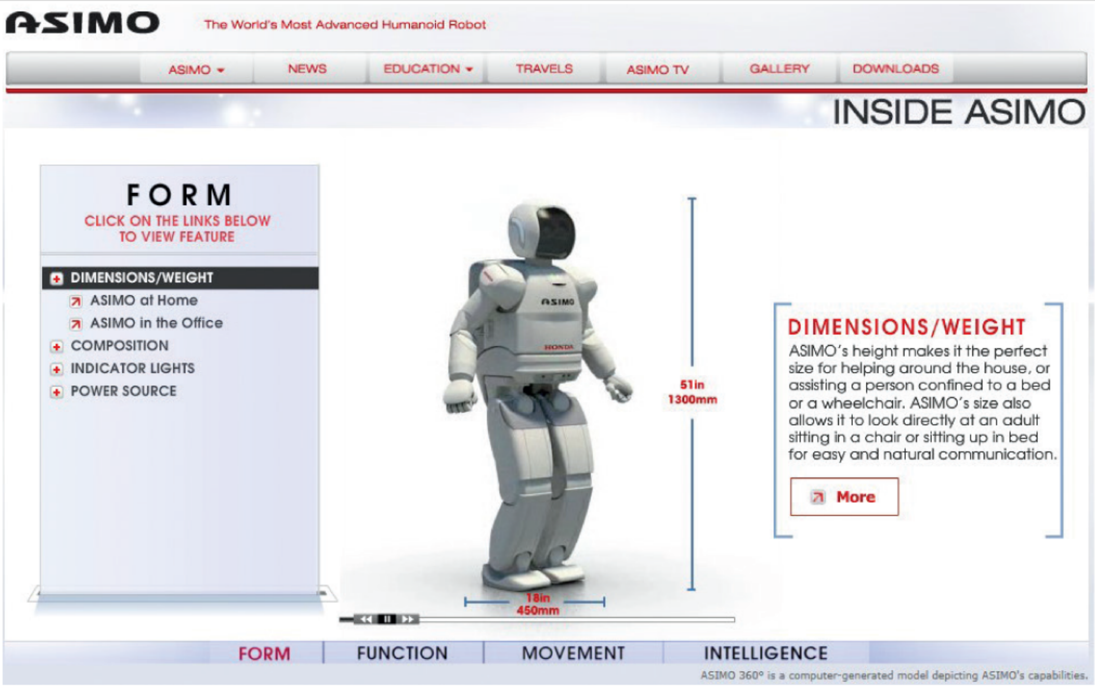
magnify objects that are smaller than the wavelengths of visible light.”

- **What does the item look like?** Sometimes, an object is best pictured with both graphics and words. Include a photograph or drawing if possible. (See Chapter 12 for more about incorporating graphics into your text.) If you cannot use a graphic, use an analogy or comparison: “The USB drive is a plastic- or metal-covered device, much smaller than a pack of gum, often with a removable cap that covers the type-A USB connection.” Mention the material, texture, color, and other physical characteristics, if relevant.
- **How does the item work?** In a few sentences, define the operating principle. Sometimes, objects do not “work”; they merely exist. For instance, a ship model has no operating principle.
- **What are the principal parts of the item?** Limit your description to the principal parts. A description of a bicycle, for instance, would not mention the many nuts and bolts that hold the mechanism together; it would focus on the chain, gears, pedals, wheels, and frame.

is to obtain current population figures, which government agencies use to revise legislative districts and determine revenue sharing.”

- **Where and when does the process take place?** “Each year the stream is stocked with hatchery fish in the first week of March.” Omit these facts only if your readers already know them.
- **Who or what performs the process?** If there is any doubt about who or what performs the process, state that information.
- **How does the process work?** “The four-treatment lawn-spray plan is based on the theory that the most effective way to promote a healthy lawn is to apply different treatments at crucial times during the growing season. The first two treatments — in spring and early summer — consist of …”
- **What are the principal steps in the process?** Name the steps in the order in which you will describe them. The principal steps in changing an automobile tire, for instance, are jacking up the car, replacing the old tire with the new one, and lowering the car back to the ground. Changing a tire also includes secondary steps, such as placing chocks against the tires to prevent the car from moving once it is jacked up. Explain or refer to these secondary steps at the appropriate points in the description.

Figure 14.2 (on p. 392) shows the introductory graphic accompanying a description of a robot.


ASIMO
The World's Most Advanced Humanoid Robot
ASIMO
NEWS
EDUCATION
TRAVELS
ASIMO TV
GALLERY
DOWNLOADS
INSIDE ASIMO
FORM
CLICK ON THE LINKS BELOW TO VIEW FEATURE
DIMENSIONS/WEIGHT
ASIMO at Home
ASIMO in the Office
COMPOSITION
INDICATOR LIGHTS
POWER SOURCE
ASIMO
HONDA
51in
1300mm
18in
450mm
More
FORM
FUNCTION
MOVEMENT
INTELLIGENCE

DIMENSIONS/WEIGHT

ASIMO's height makes it the perfect size for helping around the house, or assisting a person confined to a bed or a wheelchair. ASIMO's size also allows it to look directly at an adult sitting in a chair or sitting up in bed for easy and natural communication.

ASIMO 360° is a computer-generated model depicting ASIMO's capabilities.

Honda, 2016: http://asimo.honda.com/inside-asimo/.Honda.

FIGURE 14.2 Graphic with Linked Descriptions

This web-based description includes overview videos on four main topics: Form, Function, Movement, and Intelligence. Within each main topic, more specific information is given. For example, the ***Form*** *tab includes specifics about features such as size, composition, and power source. Clicking on any of the links provides more detailed information about the robot's features.*

PROVIDING APPROPRIATE DETAIL

In the body of a description — the part-by-part or step-by-step section — treat each major part or step as a separate item. In describing an object or a mechanism, define each part and then, if applicable, describe its function, operating principle, and appearance. In discussing the appearance, include shape, dimensions, material, and physical details such as texture and color (if essential). Some descriptions might include other qualities, such as weight or hardness.

In describing a process, treat each major step as if it were a separate process. Do not repeat your answer to the question about who or what performs the action unless a new agent performs it, but do answer the other important questions: what the step is; what its function is; and when, where, and how it occurs.

A description can have not only parts or steps but also subparts or substeps. A description of a computer system includes a keyboard as one of its main parts, and the description of the keyboard includes the numeric keypad as one of its subparts. And the description of the numeric keypad includes the arrow keys as one of its subparts. The level of detail depends on the complexity of the item and the readers' needs. The same principle applies in describing processes: if a step has substeps, you need to describe who or what performs each substep (if that is not obvious) as well as what the substep is, what its function is, and when, where, and how it occurs.

GUIDELINES Providing Appropriate Detail in Descriptions

Use the following techniques to flesh out your descriptions.

FOR MECHANISM AND OBJECT DESCRIPTIONS

- **Choose an appropriate organizational principle.** Descriptions can be organized in various ways. Two organizational principles are common:
  — Functional: how the item works or is used. In a radio, the sound begins at the receiver, travels into the amplifier, and then flows out through the speakers.
  — Spatial: based on the physical structure of the item (from top to bottom, east to west, outside to inside, and so forth).
  The description of a house, for instance, could be organized functionally (covering the different electrical and mechanical systems) or spatially (top to bottom, inside to outside, east to west, and so on). A complex description can use different patterns at different levels.
- **Use graphics.** Present a graphic for each major part. Use photographs to show external surfaces, drawings to emphasize particular items on the surface, and cutaways and exploded diagrams to show details beneath the surface. Other kinds of graphics, such as graphs and charts, are often useful supplements (see Chapter 8).

FOR PROCESS DESCRIPTIONS

- **Structure the step-by-step description chronologically.** If the process is a closed system — such as the cycle of evaporation and condensation — and therefore has no first step, begin with any principal step.
- **Explain causal relationships among steps.** Don’t present the steps as if they had nothing to do with one another. In many cases, one step causes another. In the operation of a four-stroke gasoline engine, for instance, each step creates the conditions for the next step.
- **Use the present tense.** Discuss steps in the present tense unless you are writing about a process that occurred in the historical past. For example, use the past tense in describing how the Snake River aquifer was formed: “The molten material condensed …” However, use the present tense in describing how steel is made: “The molten material is then poured into …” The present tense helps readers understand that, in general, steel is made this way.
- **Use graphics.** Whenever possible, use graphics to clarify each point. Consider flowcharts or other kinds of graphics, such as photographs, drawings, and graphs. For example, in a description of how a four-stroke gasoline engine operates, use

diagrams to illustrate the position of the valves and the activity occurring during each step.

ENDING THE DESCRIPTION WITH A BRIEF CONCLUSION

A typical description has a brief conclusion that summarizes it and prevents readers from overemphasizing the part or step discussed last.

A common technique for concluding descriptions of mechanisms and of some objects is to state briefly how the parts function together. At the end of a description of how the Apple iPhone touch screen works, for example, the conclusion might include the following paragraph:

> When you touch the screen, electrical impulses travel from the screen to the iPhone processor, which analyzes the characteristics of the touch. These characteristics include the size, shape, and location of the touch, as well as whether you touched the screen in several places at once or moved your fingers. The processor then begins to process this data by removing any background noise and mapping and calculating the touch area or areas. Using its gesture-interpreting software, which combines these data with what it already knows about which function (such as the music player) you were using, the processor then sends commands to the music-player software and to the iPhone screen. How long does this process take? A nanosecond.

Like an object or mechanism description, a process description usually has a brief conclusion: a short paragraph summarizing the principal steps. Here, for example, is the concluding section of a description of how a four-stroke gasoline engine operates:

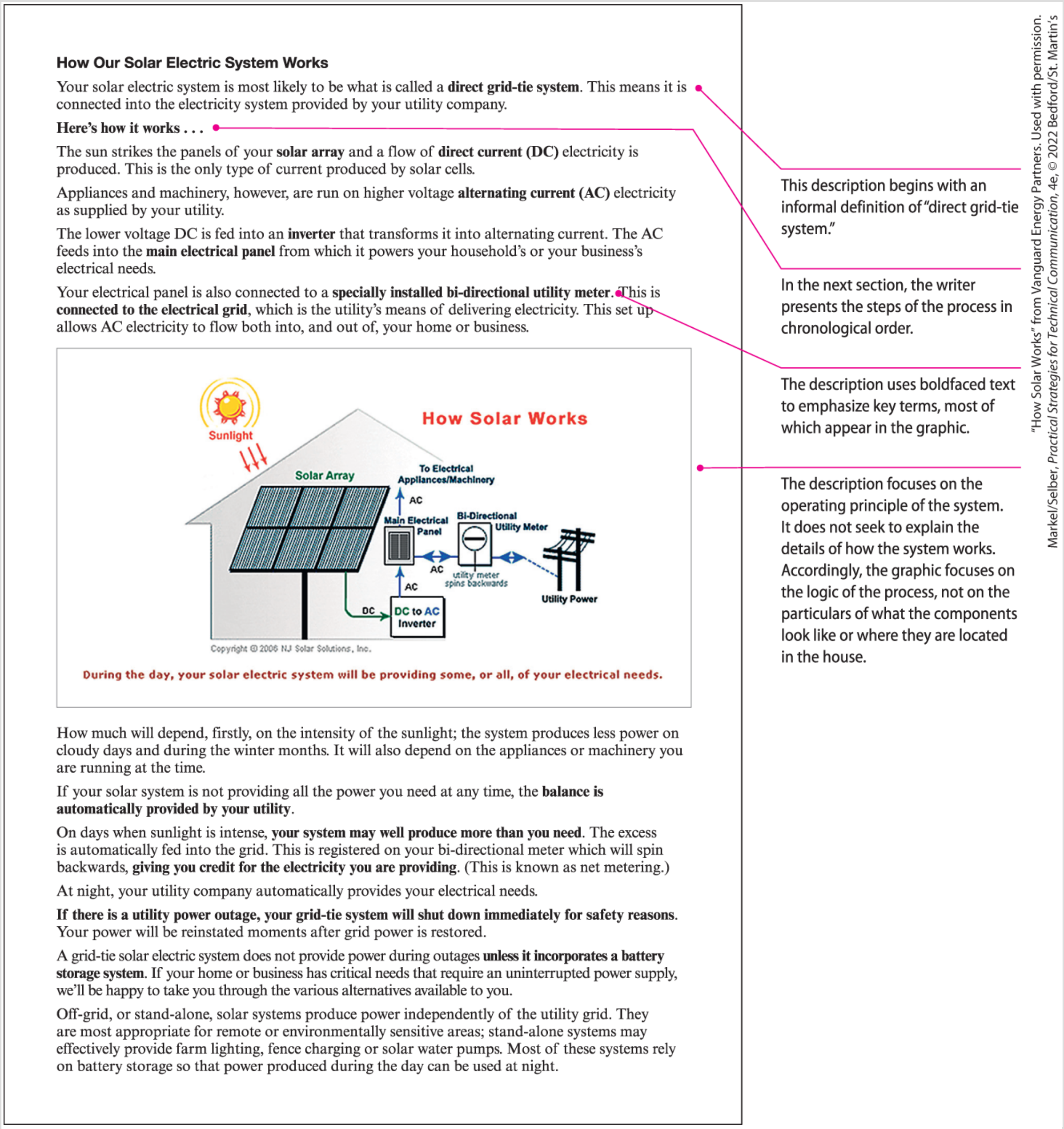
> In the intake stroke, the piston moves down, drawing the air–fuel mixture into the cylinder from the carburetor. As the piston moves up, it compresses this mixture in the compression stroke, creating the conditions necessary for combustion. In the power stroke, a spark from the spark plug ignites the mixture, which burns rapidly, forcing the piston down. In the exhaust stroke, the piston moves up, expelling the burned gases.

For descriptions of more than a few pages, a discussion of the implications of the process might be appropriate. For instance, a description of the Big Bang might conclude with a discussion of how the theory has been supported and challenged by recent astronomical discoveries and theories.

A LOOK AT SEVERAL SAMPLE DESCRIPTIONS

A look at some sample descriptions will give you an idea of how different writers adapt basic approaches for a particular audience and purpose.

Figure 14.3 shows the extent to which a process description can be based on a graphic. The topic is a household solar array. The audience is the general reader.



How Our Solar Electric System Works

Your solar electric system is most likely to be what is called a **direct grid-tie system**. This means it is connected into the electricity system provided by your utility company.

Here's how it works . . .

The sun strikes the panels of your **solar array** and a flow of **direct current (DC)** electricity is produced. This is the only type of current produced by solar cells.

Appliances and machinery, however, are run on higher voltage **alternating current (AC)** electricity as supplied by your utility.

The lower voltage DC is fed into an **inverter** that transforms it into alternating current. The AC feeds into the **main electrical panel** from which it powers your household's or your business's electrical needs.

Your electrical panel is also connected to a **specially installed bi-directional utility meter**. This is **connected to the electrical grid**, which is the utility's means of delivering electricity. This set up allows AC electricity to flow both into, and out of, your home or business.

How Solar Works
Sunlight
Solar Array
To Electrical Appliances/Machinery
AC
Main Electrical Panel
Bi-Directional Utility Meter
AC
utility meter spins backwards
AC
Utility Power
DC
DC to AC Inverter
Copyright © 2006 NJ Solar Solutions, Inc.

During the day, your solar electric system will be providing some, or all, of your electrical needs.

How much will depend, firstly, on the intensity of the sunlight; the system produces less power on cloudy days and during the winter months. It will also depend on the appliances or machinery you are running at the time.

If your solar system is not providing all the power you need at any time, the **balance is automatically provided by your utility**.

On days when sunlight is intense, **your system may well produce more than you need**. The excess is automatically fed into the grid. This is registered on your bi-directional meter which will spin backwards, **giving you credit for the electricity you are providing**. (This is known as net metering.)

At night, your utility company automatically provides your electrical needs.

If there is a utility power outage, your grid-tie system will shut down immediately for safety reasons. Your power will be reinstated moments after grid power is restored.

A grid-tie solar electric system does not provide power during outages **unless it incorporates a battery storage system**. If your home or business has critical needs that require an uninterrupted power supply, we'll be happy to take you through the various alternatives available to you.

Off-grid, or stand-alone, solar systems produce power independently of the utility grid. They are most appropriate for remote or environmentally sensitive areas; stand-alone systems may effectively provide farm lighting, fence charging or solar water pumps. Most of these systems rely on battery storage so that power produced during the day can be used at night.

This description begins with an informal definition of "direct grid-tie system."

In the next section, the writer presents the steps of the process in chronological order.

The description uses boldfaced text to emphasize key terms, most of which appear in the graphic.

The description focuses on the operating principle of the system. It does not seek to explain the details of how the system works. Accordingly, the graphic focuses on the logic of the process, not on the particulars of what the components look like or where they are located in the house.

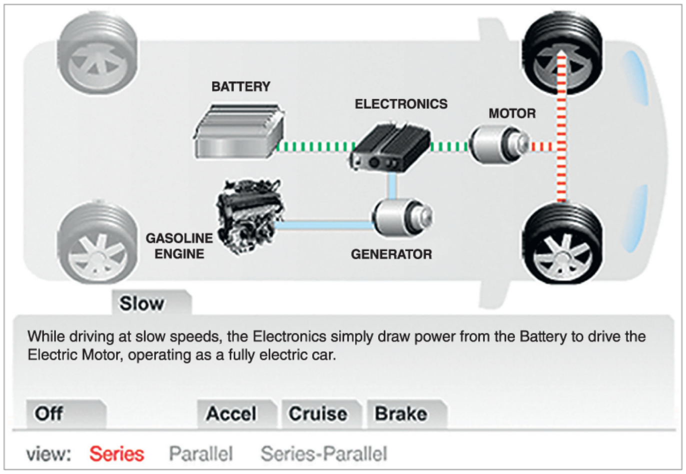
"How Solar Works" from Vanguard Energy Partners. Used with permission. Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.3 A Process Description Based on a Graphic

Figure 14.4 shows an excerpt from a mechanism description of three different types of hybrid drivetrains used in automobiles: series, parallel, and series/parallel.

Drivetrains

Now that we've covered the basic technology that defines hybrid vehicles, let's take a look at how they are put together to move the vehicle. The drivetrain of a vehicle is composed of the components that are responsible for transferring power to the drive wheels of your vehicle. With hybrids there are three possible setups for the drivetrain: the series drivetrain, the parallel drivetrain, and the series/parallel drivetrain.



While driving at slow speeds, the Electronics simply draw power from the Battery to drive the Electric Motor, operating as a fully electric car.

Series Drivetrain
This is the simplest hybrid configuration. In a series hybrid, the electric motor is the only means of providing power to get your wheels turning. The motor receives electric power from either the battery pack or from a generator run by a gasoline engine. A computer determines how much of the power comes from the battery or the engine/generator set. Both the engine/generator and regenerative braking recharge the battery pack. . . . While the engine in a conventional vehicle is forced to operate inefficiently in order to satisfy varying power demands of stop-and-go driving, series hybrids perform at their best in such conditions. This is because the gasoline engine in a series hybrid is not coupled to the wheels. This means the engine is no longer subject to the widely varying power demands experienced in stop-and-go driving and can instead operate in a narrow power range at near optimum efficiency. . . .

Parallel Drivetrain
Some up-and-coming hybrid models use a second electric motor to drive the rear wheels, providing electronic all-wheel drive that can improve handling and driving in bad weather conditions.

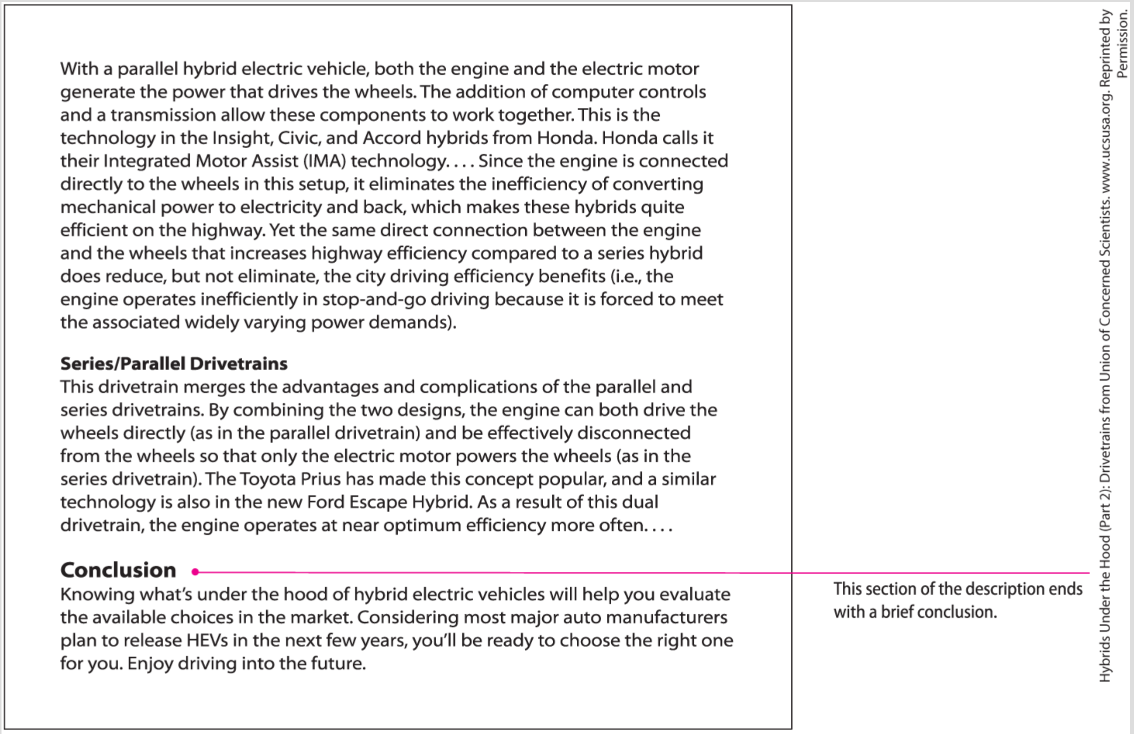
This excerpt from a mechanism description begins with an advance organizer that helps the reader make the transition from the previous section (a basic description of hybrid technology) to the present section, which discusses the three types of drivetrains.

The interactive graphic enables the reader to view the principle of operation of three types of hybrid drivetrains, each during five modes. Here, the graphic shows how the components of the series drivetrain work together as the car operates at slow speeds. On the UCS website, the red and green striped lines are animated to highlight the components operating during the mode the reader has selected.

For each of the three types of drivetrains, the text begins with a description of the operating principle, followed by explanations of the strengths and weaknesses of the drivetrain. Notice that the audience and purpose of this description determine the kind of information it contains. Because this description seeks to explain the operating principle behind each of the three types of drivetrains, it focuses on the drivetrains' functions, not on the materials they are made of or on their technical specifications.

Hybrids Under the Hood (Part 2): Drivetrains from Union of Concerned Scientists. www.ucsusa.org. Reprinted by permission.

FIGURE 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description (continued)



With a parallel hybrid electric vehicle, both the engine and the electric motor generate the power that drives the wheels. The addition of computer controls and a transmission allow these components to work together. This is the technology in the Insight, Civic, and Accord hybrids from Honda. Honda calls it their Integrated Motor Assist (IMA) technology. . . . Since the engine is connected directly to the wheels in this setup, it eliminates the inefficiency of converting mechanical power to electricity and back, which makes these hybrids quite efficient on the highway. Yet the same direct connection between the engine and the wheels that increases highway efficiency compared to a series hybrid does reduce, but not eliminate, the city driving efficiency benefits (i.e., the engine operates inefficiently in stop-and-go driving because it is forced to meet the associated widely varying power demands).

Series/Parallel Drivetrains
This drivetrain merges the advantages and complications of the parallel and series drivetrains. By combining the two designs, the engine can both drive the wheels directly (as in the parallel drivetrain) and be effectively disconnected from the wheels so that only the electric motor powers the wheels (as in the series drivetrain). The Toyota Prius has made this concept popular, and a similar technology is also in the new Ford Escape Hybrid. As a result of this dual drivetrain, the engine operates at near optimum efficiency more often. . . .

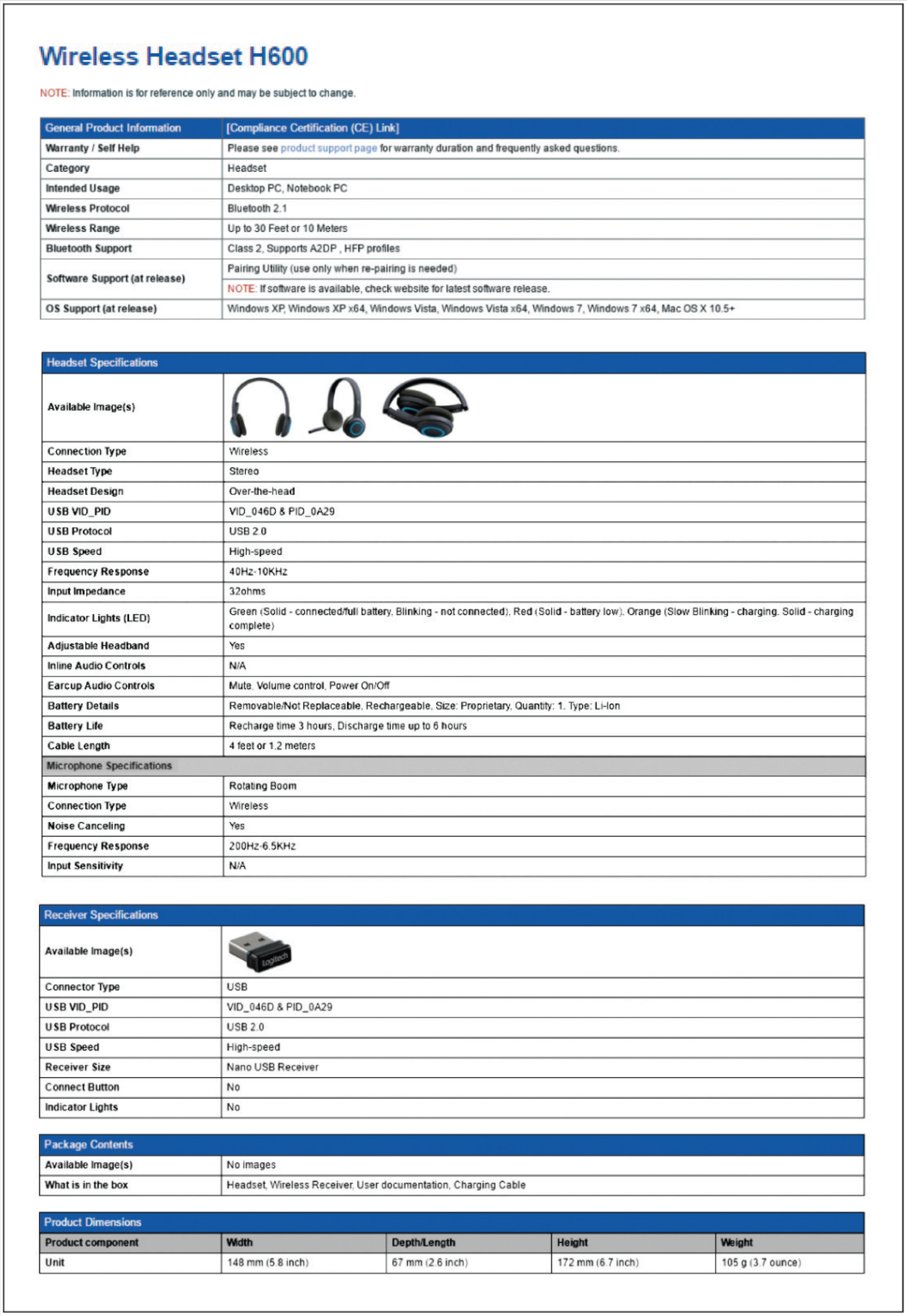
Conclusion
Knowing what's under the hood of hybrid electric vehicles will help you evaluate the available choices in the market. Considering most major auto manufacturers plan to release HEVs in the next few years, you'll be ready to choose the right one for you. Enjoy driving into the future.

This section of the description ends with a brief conclusion.

Hybrids Under the Hood (Part 2): Drivetrains from Union of Concerned Scientists. www.ucsusa.org. Reprinted by Permission.

FIGURE 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description

Figure 14.5 on page 398 shows an excerpt from a set of specifications for Logitech headphones.



Wireless Headset H600

NOTE: Information is for reference only and may be subject to change.

General Product Information	[Compliance Certification (CE) Link]
Warranty / Self Help	Please see product support page for warranty duration and frequently asked questions.
Category	Headset
Intended Usage	Desktop PC, Notebook PC
Wireless Protocol	Bluetooth 2.1
Wireless Range	Up to 30 Feet or 10 Meters
Bluetooth Support	Class 2, Supports A2DP , HFP profiles
Software Support (at release)	Pairing Utility (use only when re-pairing is needed) NOTE: If software is available, check website for latest software release.
OS Support (at release)	Windows XP, Windows XP x64, Windows Vista, Windows Vista x64, Windows 7, Windows 7 x64, Mac OS X 10.5+

Headset Specifications	
Available Image(s)	
Connection Type	Wireless
Headset Type	Stereo
Headset Design	Over-the-head
USB VID_PID	VID_046D & PID_0A29
USB Protocol	USB 2.0
USB Speed	High-speed
Frequency Response	40Hz-10KHz
Input Impedance	32ohms
Indicator Lights (LED)	Green (Solid - connected/full battery, Blinking - not connected), Red (Solid - battery low), Orange (Slow Blinking - charging, Solid - charging complete)
Adjustable Headband	Yes
Inline Audio Controls	N/A
Earcup Audio Controls	Mute, Volume control, Power On/Off
Battery Details	Removable/Not Replaceable, Rechargeable, Size: Proprietary, Quantity: 1, Type: Li-Ion
Battery Life	Recharge time 3 hours, Discharge time up to 6 hours
Cable Length	4 feet or 1.2 meters
Microphone Specifications	
Microphone Type	Rotating Boom
Connection Type	Wireless
Noise Canceling	Yes
Frequency Response	200Hz-6.5KHz
Input Sensitivity	N/A

Receiver Specifications	
Available Image(s)	
Connector Type	USB
USB VID_PID	VID_046D & PID_0A29
USB Protocol	USB 2.0
USB Speed	High-speed
Receiver Size	Nano USB Receiver
Connect Button	No
Indicator Lights	No

Package Contents	
Available Image(s)	No images
What is in the box	Headset, Wireless Receiver, User documentation, Charging Cable

Product Dimensions				
Product component	**Width**	**Depth/Length**	**Height**	**Weight**
Unit	148 mm (5.8 inch)	67 mm (2.6 inch)	172 mm (6.7 inch)	105 g (3.7 ounce)

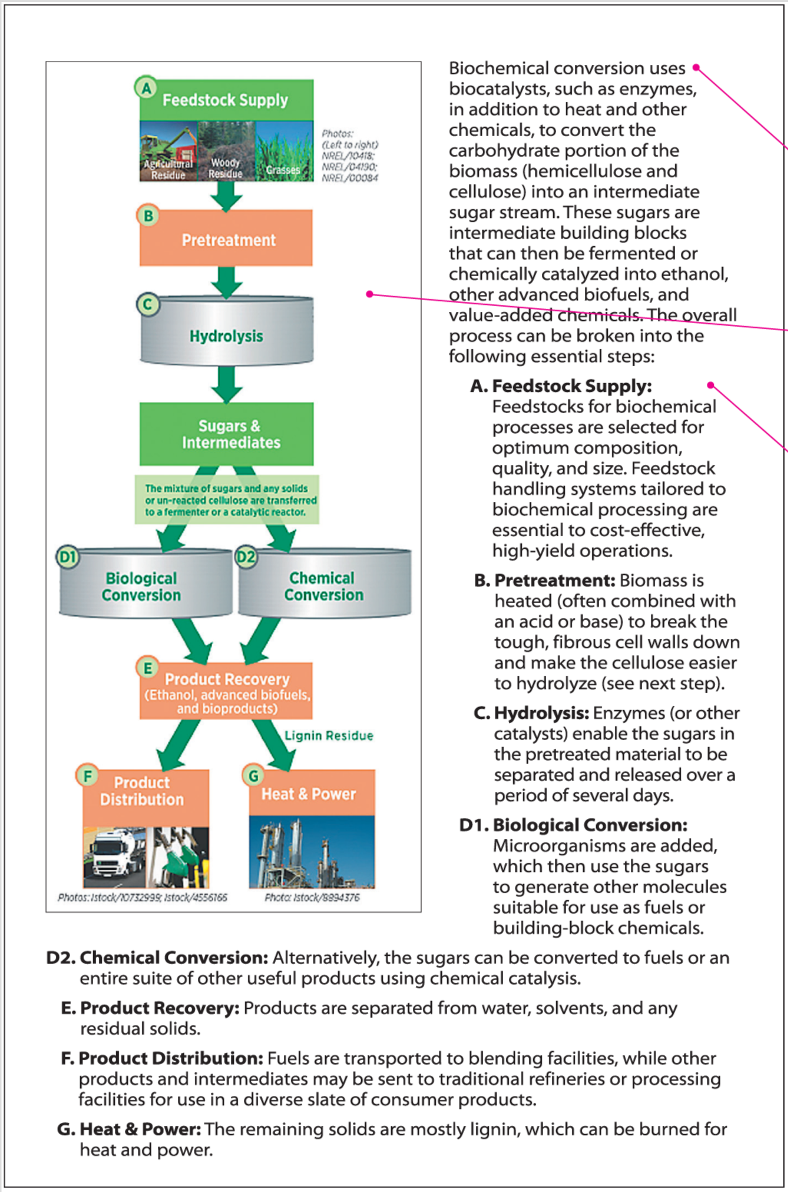
Courtesy of Logitech

FIGURE 14.5 Specifications

An important kind of description is called a *specification*. A typical specification (or spec) consists of a graphic and a set of statistics about the device and its performance characteristics. Specifications help readers understand the capabilities of an item. You will see specifications on devices as small as transistors and as large as aircraft carriers.

Because this web-based spec sheet accompanies a consumer product, the arrangement of the specs is geared toward the interests of the likely purchasers. The audio specs are presented before the power specs because potential purchasers of high-end headphones will be most interested in the sound quality.

Figure 14.6 on page 399 is a description of the process of turning biomass into useful fuels and other products.


A
Feedstock Supply
Agricultural Residue
Woody Residue
Grasses
Photos: (Left to right) NREL/10418; NREL/04190; NREL/00084
B
Pretreatment
C
Hydrolysis
Sugars & Intermediates
The mixture of sugars and any solids or un-reacted cellulose are transferred to a fermenter or a catalytic reactor.
D1
Biological Conversion
D2
Chemical Conversion
E
Product Recovery (Ethanol, advanced biofuels, and bioproducts)
Lignin Residue
F
Product Distribution
G
Heat & Power
Photos: Istock/10732999; Istock/4556166
Photo: Istock/8994376

Biochemical conversion uses biocatalysts, such as enzymes, in addition to heat and other chemicals, to convert the carbohydrate portion of the biomass (hemicellulose and cellulose) into an intermediate sugar stream. These sugars are intermediate building blocks that can then be fermented or chemically catalyzed into ethanol, other advanced biofuels, and value-added chemicals. The overall process can be broken into the following essential steps:

A. Feedstock Supply: Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected for optimum composition, quality, and size. Feedstock handling systems tailored to biochemical processing are essential to cost-effective, high-yield operations.

B. Pretreatment: Biomass is heated (often combined with an acid or base) to break the tough, fibrous cell walls down and make the cellulose easier to hydrolyze (see next step).

C. Hydrolysis: Enzymes (or other catalysts) enable the sugars in the pretreated material to be separated and released over a period of several days.

D1. Biological Conversion: Microorganisms are added, which then use the sugars to generate other molecules suitable for use as fuels or building-block chemicals.

D2. Chemical Conversion: Alternatively, the sugars can be converted to fuels or an entire suite of other useful products using chemical catalysis.

E. Product Recovery: Products are separated from water, solvents, and any residual solids.

F. Product Distribution: Fuels are transported to blending facilities, while other products and intermediates may be sent to traditional refineries or processing facilities for use in a diverse slate of consumer products.

G. Heat & Power: The remaining solids are mostly lignin, which can be burned for heat and power.

This description begins with an overview of the process of biochemical conversion: the process of using fermentation and catalysis to make fuels and products.

The description includes a flowchart explaining the major steps in the process. The designers included photographs to add visual interest to the flowchart.

The lettered steps in the flowchart correspond to the textual descriptions of the steps in the process.

Most of the description is written in the passive voice (such as "Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected . . ."). The passive voice is appropriate because the focus of this process description is on what happens to the materials, not on what a person does. By contrast, in a set of instructions the focus is on what a person does.

FIGURE 14.6 An Effective Process Description

U.S. Department of Energy, 2013: www1.eere.energy.gov/bioenergy/pdfs/biochemical_four_pager.pdf.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Writing Instructions

This section discusses *instructions,* which are process descriptions written to help readers perform a specific task — for instance, installing a water heater in a house.

Although written instructions are still produced today, the growth of social media has radically changed how organizations instruct people on how to use their products and services. Now that technology has made it easy for people to participate in writing instructions and to view and make videos, most organizations try to present instructional material not only as formal written text but also through discussion forums, wikis, and videos. And users do not rely exclusively on the organizations themselves to create and present instructions. Rather, they create their own text and videos.

Your first job, then, in presenting instructions is to devise a strategy for incorporating user participation in the process and to choose the best mix of media for encouraging that participation. Written instructions (whether presented online or printed and put in the box with the product) will always have a role because they are portable and can include as much detail as necessary for even the most complex tasks and systems. But consider whether your users will also benefit from access to other people's ideas (in a discussion forum or wiki) or from watching a video. On the next page, help forum moderator Suzanne Barnhill discusses her strategies for giving instructions that respond to the needs and knowledge level of each person posting to the forum. The Focus on Process box above outlines additional steps in the process of writing instructions.

UNDERSTANDING THE ROLE OF INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS

The explosive growth of YouTube and other video-hosting sites has revolutionized how instructions are created and used. Product manufacturers and users alike make videos to help people understand how to perform tasks.

If you are producing instructional videos on behalf of your company, think about what style of video will be most effective for your audience, purpose, and subject. Companies often use simple, cartoon-style videos for basic conceptual information (“what can you do with a microblog?”), screenshot-based videos for computer-based tasks (“how to use master slides in PowerPoint”), and live-action videos for physical tasks (“how to install a ground-fault interrupter”).

Video is particularly useful for communicating about physical tasks that call for subtle physical movements or that involve both sight and sound. For instance, a video would be more effective than written instructions in communicating how a guitarist uses the tremolo bar to create different sonic effects. The viewer can focus on the way the guitarist holds his or her hand on the tremolo and on the range of movement that he or she uses. In addition, the viewer can hear how these physical actions change the sound.

Although there are many software tools available for making videos, making professional-quality videos calls for professional skills, experience, and tools. If you are going to be making many videos, it makes sense to learn the process and acquire professional tools and equipment; otherwise, consult your company's media department or consider hiring freelance video producers. They can help you create videos that reflect positively on your organization.

Instructional videos tend to be brief. Whereas a reader of a document can navigate easily among various parts or steps, viewers of a video can only hit play, pause, and stop. For this reason, you should break long tasks into a series of brief videos: ideally 2–3 minutes, but no more than 12–15 minutes. Give each one a clear, specific title so viewers can easily tell whether they want to view it.

STRATEGIES FOR ONLINE COMMUNICATION

Suzanne Barnhill on Moderating User Forums

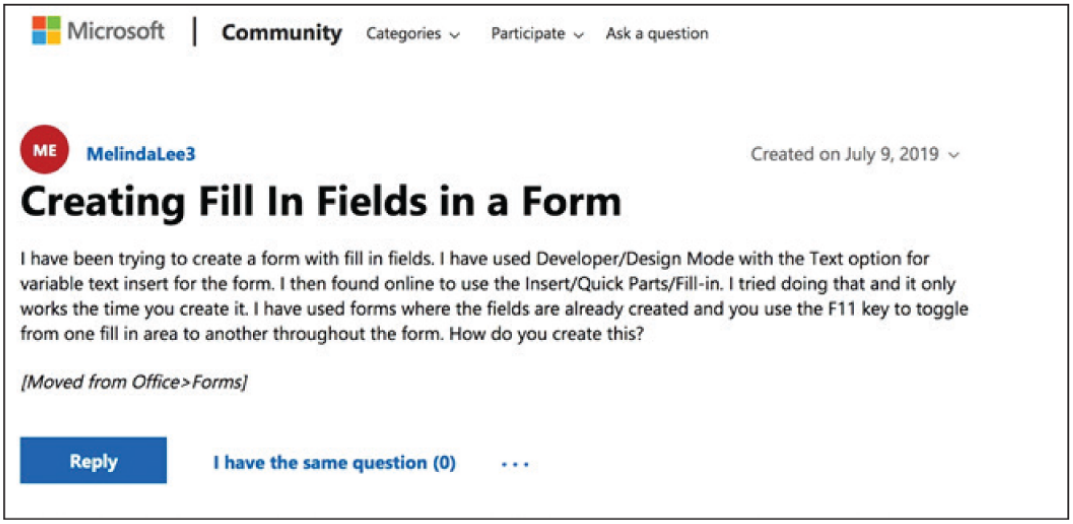
Technical communicators moderate user forums for all types of products and services. User forums are online discussion spaces that supplement manuals, instruction sets, descriptions, and other support documents. If users cannot solve their problems by

using the support documents that come with a product or service, online discussion spaces can serve as a secondary source of help. A major benefit of user forums is that the posted questions are answered by actual people, who themselves can ask questions if needed and even orchestrate an extended dialogue about the issue. In addition, the technical communicators who moderate user forums often have knowledge that goes beyond the life of a particular product or service, providing a longer-term view that can aid problem solving. Suzanne Barnhill is a moderator in the user forum for Microsoft Word. She illustrates the added value of user forums in technical communication contexts.

Courtesy of Suzanne Barnhill

SUZANNE BARNHILL

Suzanne Barnhill has been a moderator in the Microsoft Word user forum since 2011, and in fact has consistently earned Microsoft's Most Valuable Professional (MVP) award, which is given to people who actively share their knowledge with relevant communities. As you can imagine, the user forum for Word is quite lively, seeing hundreds of posts on a typical day. Barnhill is not the only moderator in the forum, so she can focus much of the time on her areas of expertise: creating and formatting large documents, including typesetting for print. She answers a lot of questions about tables of contents, indexes, page numbers, headers and footers, and the like, but she also has shareable knowledge about other Word features. In this example, Barnhill responds to a user who is struggling to create a Word form with fill-in fields. Moderators will work in any area in which they feel confident.



MelindaLee3

Created on July 9, 2019

Creating Fill In Fields in a Form

I have been trying to create a form with fill in fields. I have used Developer/Design Mode with the Text option for variable text insert for the form. I then found online to use the Insert/Quick Parts/Fill-in. I tried doing that and it only works the time you create it. I have used forms where the fields are already created and you use the F11 key to toggle from one fill in area to another throughout the form. How do you create this?

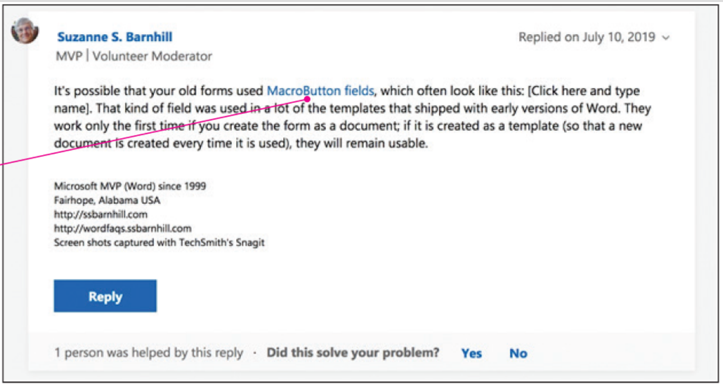
[Moved from Office>Forms]

FIGURE 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word (continued)

The moderator explains how to solve the problem but also recommends an entirely different approach to the task. The moderator's knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here.

The moderator also links to a third-party document, drawing on a wider circle of experts to help provide solutions.

In addition to answering questions, moderators also merge and split threads to keep them on topic and prevent duplication, report spam, and keep discussions civil and productive.



Suzanne S. Barnhill

MVP | Volunteer Moderator

Replied on July 10, 2019

It's possible that your old forms used MacroButton fields, which often look like this: [Click here and type name]. That kind of field was used in a lot of the templates that shipped with early versions of Word. They work only the first time if you create the form as a document; if it is created as a template (so that a new document is created every time it is used), they will remain usable.

Microsoft MVP (Word) since 1999
Fairhope, Alabama USA
http://ssbarnhill.com
http://wordfaqs.ssbarnhill.com
Screen shots captured with TechSmith's Snagit

1 person was helped by this reply · Did this solve your problem? Yes No

The moderator provides a description of the legacy method the user seems to be describing, with a link to a third-party document explaining how to use that method, and adds advice for best practices using the method. The moderator's knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here, but the moderator concludes by recommending a more modern method that has already been suggested by another Word MVP.

Courtesy of Suzanne Barnhill
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word

The original post (OP) is from a user who is having a problem creating fill-in fields in a Word form. Technical communicators use fill-in fields, for example, to collect information from users or allow users to request information from a company.

The user attempts to describe the problem. One feature of user forums is that they require people to describe their problems in writing, making them explicit, which is an important step in trying to understand what's going on.

The user also shares the solutions they've already tried. When faced with a problem, users have several options beyond the documents that come with a product or service. In typical fashion, this user tried to find answers using an internet search engine.

Internet searches can provide solutions, but sometimes you need to involve human beings.

Similarly, you should make your instructional videos simple and uncluttered. Software makes it easy to add a lot of cinematic effects, but less is often more. Your purpose is not to win an Academy Award; it is to help your audience learn how to carry out a task. The fewer distractions in the video, the easier it will be for viewers to see what to do. And remember that video is a warm medium. Connect with the viewer by being friendly, informal, and direct. Don’t say, “Next, the right mouse button is pushed.” Say, “Press the right mouse button.” But do not confuse being warm and informal with not needing to prepare. You *do* need to plan, write a script, and rehearse.

Be sure to build in the time and resources to revise the video. Good technical communication calls for reviewing, revising, and testing. This concept applies to video. Start testing even before production. Make sure your script and visuals are right for your audience and purpose. And repeat the process after you have created the rough cut of the video and after each major revision.

Use other sources responsibly. You need to obtain written permission to use any copyrighted text, images, videos, or music that will appear in your video. Because this process can be lengthy, difficult, and expensive, many organizations have a simple standing rule: do not use any copyrighted material. Instead, they generate their own images and text, and even their own music.

DESIGNING A SET OF WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS

As you plan to write instructions, think about how readers will use them. Analyzing your audience and purpose and gathering and organizing your information will help you decide whether you should write a one-page set of instructions or a longer document that needs to be bound. You might realize that the information would work better as a web-based document that can include videos, be updated periodically, and provide readers with links to the information they need. Or you might decide to write several versions of the information: a brief printed set of instructions and a longer, web-based document with links.

As always in technical communication, imagining how readers will use what you write will help you plan your document. For example, having decided that your audience, purpose, and subject call for a printed set of instructions of perhaps 1,000 words and a dozen drawings and photographs, you can start to design the document. You will need to consider your resources, especially your budget: long documents cost more than short ones; color costs more than black and white; heavy paper costs more than light paper; secure bindings cost more than staples.

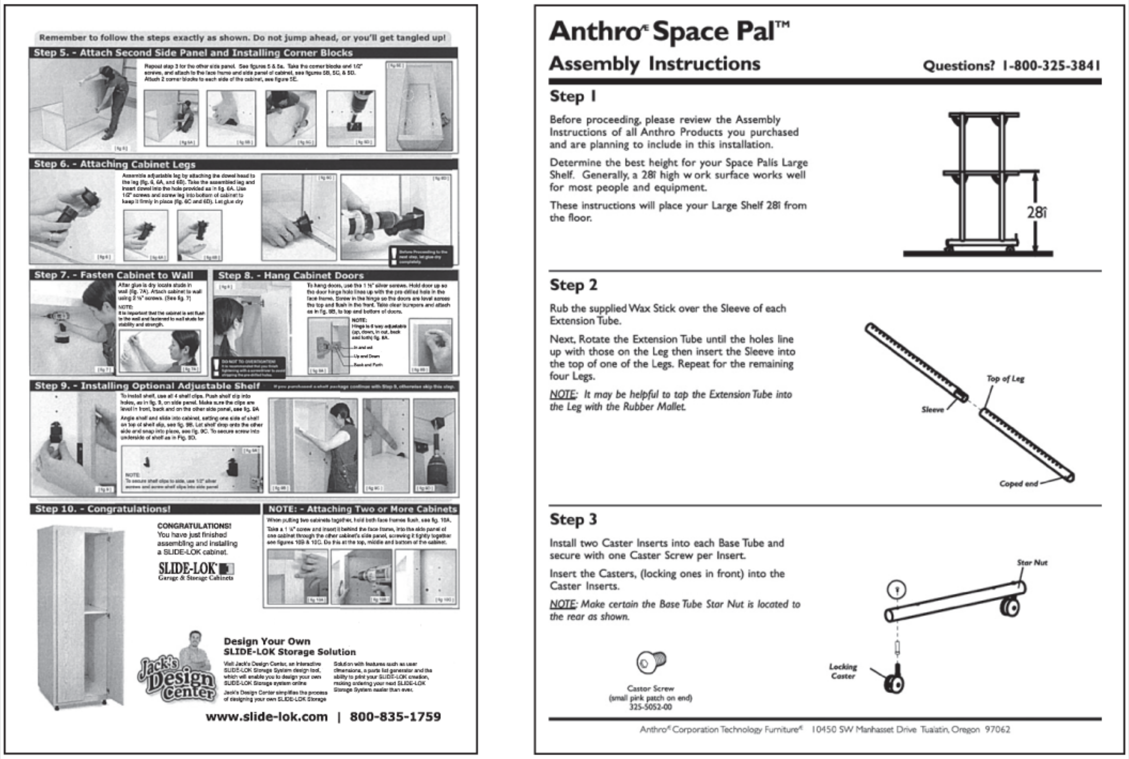
Designing a set of instructions is much like designing any other kind of technical document. As discussed in Chapter 7, you want to create a document that is attractive and easy to use. When you design a set of instructions, you need to consider a number of issues related to document design and page design:

- **What are your readers' expectations?** For a simple, inexpensive product, such as a light switch, readers will expect to find instructions written on the back of the package or printed in black and white on a small sheet of paper folded inside the package. For an expensive consumer product, such as a high-definition TV, readers will expect to find instructions in a more sophisticated full-color document printed on high-quality paper.
- **What are your readers' abilities?** If you're creating an instructional video on how to use a smartphone for banking transactions, will you need to include closed captioning for people who are hard of hearing? In addition to closed captioning, you might also want to provide a stand-alone transcript of the video narration.
- **Do you need to create more than one set of instructions for different audiences?** If you are writing about a complex device such as an electronic thermostat, you might decide to create one set of instructions for electricians (who will install and

maintain the device) and one set for homeowners (who will operate the device). In addition to producing paper copies of the documents, you might want to post them on the internet, along with a brief video of the tasks you describe.

- **What languages should you use?** In most countries, several languages are spoken. You might decide to include instructions in two or more languages. Doing so will help you communicate better with more people, and it can help you avoid legal problems. In liability cases, U.S. courts sometimes find that if a company knows that many of its customers speak only Spanish, for example, the instructions should appear in Spanish as well as in English. You have two choices for presenting information in multiple languages: simultaneous presentation or sequential presentation. In a *simultaneous design,* you might use a multicolumn page on which one column presents the graphics, another has the text in English, and another has the text in Spanish. Obviously, this won't work if you need to present information in more than two or three languages. But it is efficient because you include each graphic only once. In a *sequential design,* you present all the information in English (say, on pages 1–8), then all the information in Spanish (on pages 9–16). The sequential design is easier for readers to use because they are not distracted by text in other languages, but you will have to include the graphics more than once, which will make the instructions longer.

- **Will readers be anxious about the information?** If readers will find the information intimidating, make sure the design is not intimidating. For instance, if you are writing for general readers about how to set up a wireless network for home computers, create open pages with a lot of white space and graphics. Use large type and narrow text columns so that each page contains a relatively small amount of information. Figure 14.8 (on p. 405) illustrates the advantages of an open design.
- **Will the environment in which the instructions are read affect the document design?** If people will be using the instructions outdoors, you will need to use a coated paper that can tolerate moisture or dirt. If people will be reading the instructions while sitting in a small, enclosed area, you might select a small paper size and a binding that allows the reader to fold the pages over to save space. If people have a lot of room, you might decide to create poster-size instructions that can be taped to the wall and that are easy to read from across the room.



Remember to follow the steps exactly as shown. Do not jump ahead, or you'll get tangled up!

Step 5. - Attach Second Side Panel and Installing Corner Blocks

Step 6. - Attaching Cabinet Legs

Step 7. - Fasten Cabinet to Wall

Step 8. - Hang Cabinet Doors

Step 9. - Installing Optional Adjustable Shelf

Step 10. - Congratulations!

CONGRATULATIONS!
You have just finished
assembling and installing
a SLIDE-LOK cabinet.

SLIDE-LOK
Garage & Storage Cabinets

NOTE: - Attaching Two or More Cabinets

Design Your Own
SLIDE-LOK Storage Solution

www.slide-lok.com | 800-835-1759

Anthro® Space Pal™

Assembly Instructions

Questions? 1-800-325-3841

Step 1

Before proceeding, please review the Assembly Instructions of all Anthro Products you purchased and are planning to include in this installation.

Determine the best height for your Space Palís Large Shelf. Generally, a 28ì high w ork surface works well for most people and equipment.

These instructions will place your Large Shelf 28ì from the floor.

Step 2

Rub the supplied Wax Stick over the Sleeve of each Extension Tube.

Next, Rotate the Extension Tube until the holes line up with those on the Leg then insert the Sleeve into the top of one of the Legs. Repeat for the remaining four Legs.

NOTE: It may be helpful to tap the Extension Tube into the Leg with the Rubber Mallet.

Step 3

Install two Caster Inserts into each Base Tube and secure with one Caster Screw per Insert.

Insert the Casters, (locking ones in front) into the Caster Inserts.

NOTE: Make certain the Base Tube Star Nut is located to the rear as shown.

Anthro® Corporation Technology Furniture® 10450 SW Manhasset Drive Tualatin, Oregon 97062

FIGURE 14.8 Cluttered and Attractive Page Designs for Instructions

a. Cluttered design

This page is cluttered, containing far too much information. In addition, the page is not chunked effectively. As a result, the reader's eyes don't know where to focus. Would you look forward to using these instructions to assemble a cabinet?

b. Attractive design

This page is well designed, containing an appropriate amount of information presented in a simple two-column format. Notice the effective use of white space and the horizontal rules separating the steps.

GUIDELINES Designing Clear, Attractive Pages

To design pages that are clear and attractive, follow these guidelines:

- **Create an open, airy design.** Do not squeeze too much information onto the page. Build in space for wide margins and effective line spacing, use large type, and chunk the information effectively.

For more about chunking, see Ch. 7.

- **Clearly relate the graphics to the text.** In the step-by-step portion of a set of instructions, present graphics to accompany every step or almost every step. Create a design that makes it clear which graphics go with each text passage. One easy way to do this is to use a table, with the graphics in one column and the text in the other. A horizontal rule or extra line spacing separates the text and graphics for one step from the text and graphics for the next step.

PLANNING FOR SAFETY

If the subject you are writing about involves safety risks, your most important responsibility is to do everything you can to ensure your readers' safety.

ETHICS NOTE

ENSURING YOUR READERS' SAFETY

To a large extent, the best way to keep your readers safe is to be honest and write clearly. If readers will encounter safety risks, explain what those risks are and how to minimize them. Doing so is a question of rights. Readers have a right to the best information they can get.

Ensuring your readers' safety is also a question of law. People who get hurt can sue the company that made the product or provided the service. As discussed in Chapter 2, this field of law is called *liability law.* Your company is likely to have legal professionals on staff or on retainer whose job is to ensure that the company is not responsible for putting people at unnecessary risk.

When you write safety information, be clear and concise. Avoid complicated sentences.

COMPLICATED	It is required that safety glasses be worn when inside this laboratory.
SIMPLE	You must wear safety glasses in this laboratory.
SIMPLE	Wear safety glasses in this laboratory.

Sometimes, a phrase works better than a sentence: "Safety Glasses Required."

Because a typical manual or set of instructions can contain dozens of comments — some related to safety and some not — experts have devised *signal words* to indicate the seriousness of the advice. Unfortunately, signal words are not used consistently. For instance, the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and the U.S. military's MILSPEC publish definitions that differ significantly, and many private companies have their own definitions. Table 14.2 presents the four most commonly used signal words. The first three signal words are accompanied by symbols showing the color combinations endorsed by ANSI in its standard Z535.4.

TABLE 14.2 Signal Words

SIGNAL WORD	EXPLANATION	EXAMPLE
Danger 	*Danger* is used to alert readers about an immediate and serious hazard that will likely be fatal. Writers often use all uppercase letters for danger statements.	DANGER: EXTREMELY HIGH VOLTAGE. STAND BACK.
Warning 	*Warning* is used to alert readers about the potential for serious injury or death or serious damage to equipment. Writers often use all uppercase letters for warning statements.	WARNING: TO PREVENT SERIOUS INJURY TO YOUR ARMS AND HANDS, YOU MUST MAKE SURE THE ARM RESTRAINTS ARE IN PLACE BEFORE OPERATING THIS MACHINE.
Caution 	*Caution* is used to alert readers about the potential for anything from moderate injury to serious equipment damage or destruction.	Caution: Do not use nonrechargeable batteries in this charging unit; they could damage the charging unit.
Note	*Note* is used for a tip or suggestion to help readers carry out a procedure successfully.	Note: Two kinds of washers are provided — regular washers and locking washers. Be sure to use the locking washers here.

Whether safety information is printed in a document or on machinery or equipment, it should be prominent and easy to read. Many organizations use visual symbols to represent levels of danger, but these symbols are not standardized.

Organizations that create products that are used only in the United States design safety information to conform with standards published by ANSI and by the federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA). Organizations that create products that are also used outside the United States design safety information to conform with standards published by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). Figure 14.9 shows a safety label that incorporates both ANSI and ISO standards.

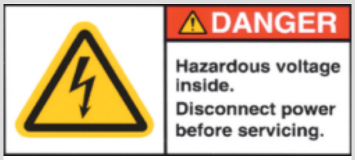

DANGER
Hazardous voltage inside.
Disconnect power before servicing.

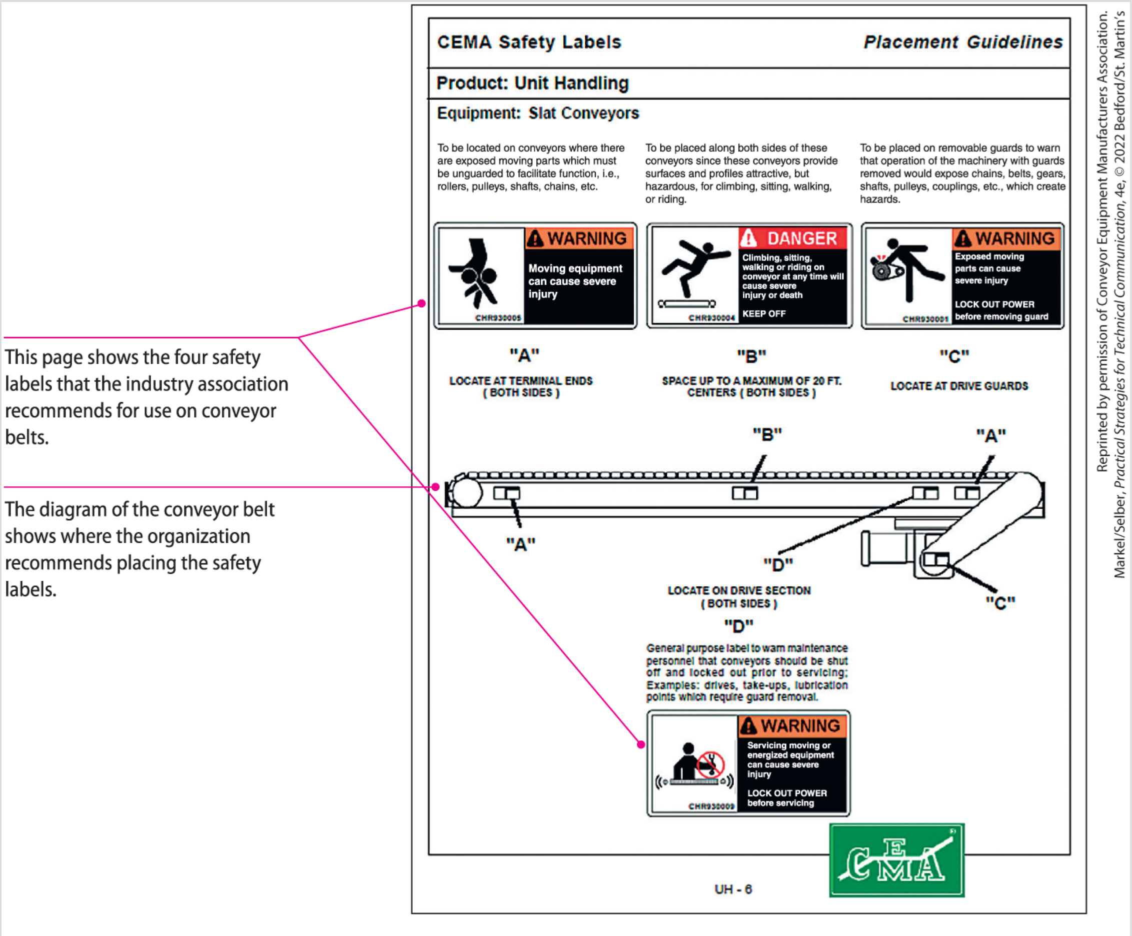
FIGURE 14.9 A Typical Safety Label

The yellow triangle on the left is consistent with the ISO approach. Because ISO creates standards for international use, its safety labels use icons, not words, to represent safety hazards.

The signal word "Danger" and the text are consistent with the ANSI approach. The information is presented in English.

Part of planning for safety is determining the best location for safety information. This question has no easy answer because you cannot control how your audience reads your document. Be conservative: put safety information wherever you think the reader is likely to see it, and don't be afraid to repeat yourself. A reasonable amount of repetition — such as including the same safety comment at the top of each page — is effective. But don't repeat the same piece of advice in each of 20 steps, because readers will stop paying attention to it. If your company's format for instructions calls for a safety section near the beginning of the document, place the information there and repeat it just before the appropriate step in the step-by-step section.

Figure 14.10 shows one industry association's guidelines for placing safety information on conveyor belts.



This page shows the four safety labels that the industry association recommends for use on conveyor belts.

The diagram of the conveyor belt shows where the organization recommends placing the safety labels.

CEMA Safety Labels *Placement Guidelines*

Product: Unit Handling

Equipment: Slat Conveyors

To be located on conveyors where there are exposed moving parts which must be unguarded to facilitate function, i.e., rollers, pulleys, shafts, chains, etc.

To be placed along both sides of these conveyors since these conveyors provide surfaces and profiles attractive, but hazardous, for climbing, sitting, walking, or riding.

To be placed on removable guards to warn that operation of the machinery with guards removed would expose chains, belts, gears, shafts, pulleys, couplings, etc., which create hazards.

WARNING
Moving equipment can cause severe injury
CHR930005

DANGER
Climbing, sitting, walking or riding on conveyor at any time will cause severe injury or death
KEEP OFF
CHR930004

WARNING
Exposed moving parts can cause severe injury
LOCK OUT POWER before removing guard
CHR930001

"A"
LOCATE AT TERMINAL ENDS (BOTH SIDES)

"B"
SPACE UP TO A MAXIMUM OF 20 FT. CENTERS (BOTH SIDES)

"C"
LOCATE AT DRIVE GUARDS

LOCATE ON DRIVE SECTION (BOTH SIDES)

"D"

General purpose label to warn maintenance personnel that conveyors should be shut off and locked out prior to servicing; Examples: drives, take-ups, lubrication points which require guard removal.

WARNING
Servicing moving or energized equipment can cause severe injury
LOCK OUT POWER before servicing
CHR930009

UH - 6

Reprinted by permission of Conveyor Equipment Manufacturers Association.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.10 Placement of Safety Information on Equipment

DRAFTING EFFECTIVE INSTRUCTIONS

Instructions can be brief (a small sheet of paper) or extensive (20 pages or more). Brief instructions might be produced by a writer, a graphic artist, and a subject-matter expert. Longer instructions might call for the assistance of others, such as marketing and legal personnel.

Regardless of the size of the project, most instructions are organized like process descriptions. The main difference is that the conclusion of a set of instructions is not a summary but an explanation of how readers can make sure they have followed the instructions correctly. Most sets of instructions contain four elements: a title, a general introduction, step-by-step instructions, and a conclusion.

Drafting Titles

A good title for instructions is simple and clear. Two forms are common:

- **How-to.** This is the simplest: “How to Install the J112 Shock Absorber.”
- **Gerund.** The gerund form of a verb is the *-ing* form: “Installing the J112 Shock Absorber.”

One form to avoid is the noun string, which is awkward and difficult for readers to understand: “J112 Shock Absorber Installation Instructions.”

For more about noun strings, see Ch. 6.

Drafting General Introductions

The general introduction provides the preliminary information that readers will need to follow the instructions safely and easily.

GUIDELINES Drafting Introductions for Instructions

Every set of instructions is unique and therefore calls for a different introduction. Consider answering the following questions, as appropriate:

- **Who should carry out this task?** Sometimes, you need to identify or describe the person or persons who are to carry out a task. Aircraft maintenance, for example, may be performed only by those certified to do it.
- **Why should the reader carry out this task?** Sometimes, the reason is obvious: you don't need to explain why a backyard barbecue grill should be assembled. But you do need to explain the rationale for many tasks, such as changing antifreeze in a car's radiator.
- **When should the reader carry out this task?** Some tasks, such as rotating tires or planting seeds, need to be performed at particular times or at particular intervals.
- **What safety measures or other concerns should the reader understand?** In addition to the safety measures that apply to the whole task, mention any tips that will make the job easier:

  > NOTE: For ease of assembly, leave all nuts loose. Give only three or four complete turns on bolt threads.

- **What items will the reader need?** List necessary tools, materials, and equipment so that readers will not have to interrupt their work to hunt for something. If you think readers might not be able to identify these items easily, include drawings next to the names.

For more about graphics, see Ch. 8.

- **How long will the task take?** Consider stating how long the task will take readers with no experience, some experience, and a lot of experience.

Drafting Step-by-Step Instructions

The heart of a set of instructions is the step-by-step information.

GUIDELINES Drafting Steps in Instructions

Follow these six suggestions for writing steps that are easy to understand.

- ► **Number the instructions.** For long, complex instructions, use two-level numbering, such as a decimal system:

  1
      1.1
      1.2
  2
      2.1
      2.2
  etc.

  If you need to present a long list of steps, group the steps logically into sets and begin each set with a clear heading. A list of 50 steps, for example, could be divided into six sets of 8 or 9 steps each.
- ► **Present the right amount of information in each step.** Each step should define a single task the reader can carry out easily, without having to refer back to the instructions.

TOO MUCH INFORMATION	1. Mix one part cement with one part water, using the trowel. When the mixture is a thick consistency without any lumps bigger than a marble, place a strip of the mixture about 1″ high and 1″ wide along the face of the brick.
TOO LITTLE INFORMATION	1. Pick up the trowel.
RIGHT AMOUNT OF INFORMATION	1. Mix one part cement with one part water, using the trowel, until the

mixture is a thick consistency without any lumps bigger than a marble.

2. Place a strip of the mixture about 1″ high and 1″ wide along the face of the brick.

- **Use the imperative mood.** The imperative mood expresses a request or a command — for example, "Attach the red wire." The imperative is more direct and economical than the indicative mood ("You should attach the red wire" or "The operator should attach the red wire"). Avoid the passive voice ("The red wire is attached"), because it can be ambiguous: is the red wire already attached?

For more about the passive voice, see Ch. 6.

- **Do not confuse steps and feedback statements.** A *step* is an action that the reader is to perform. A *feedback statement* describes an event that occurs in response to a step. For instance, a step might read "Double-click on the install.cmd file." That step's feedback statement might read "The system will now install your software." Do not present a feedback statement as a numbered step. Present it as part of the step to which it refers. Some writers give feedback statements their own design.
- **Include graphics.** When appropriate, add a photograph or a drawing to show the reader what to do. Some activities — such as adding two drops of a reagent to a mixture — do not need an illustration, but they might be clarified by a chart or a table.
- **Do not omit articles (*a*, *an*, *the*) to save space.** Omitting articles can make the instructions unclear and hard to read. In the sentence "Locate midpoint and draw line," for example, the reader cannot tell if "draw line" is a noun (as in "locate the draw line") or a verb and its object (as in "draw a line").

Drafting Conclusions

Instructions often conclude by stating that the reader has now completed the task or by describing what the reader should do next. For example:

> Now that you have replaced the glass and applied the glazing compound, let the window sit for at least five days so that the glazing can cure. Then, prime and paint the window.

Some conclusions end with *maintenance tips* or a *troubleshooting guide*. A troubleshooting guide, usually presented as a table, identifies common problems and explains how to solve them.

GUIDELINES Testing Instructions for Usability

The following seven guidelines will help you test instructions for usability.

- **Decide what you need to test.** All but the simplest of instructions should be tested for usability. You should also determine if you need to test your title, the introduction, the conclusion, or other specific aspects of the instructions.
- **Decide what you want the test to accomplish.** This means identifying the kinds of problems you want the test to uncover, whether it's of organization, navigation, visual design, language, or accessibility. You may need more than one type of test to help you identify different kinds of problems.
- **Decide on a testing approach.** Instructions can be tested in a variety of settings, ranging from specific, confined environments to broad contexts with many variables. In guided evaluations, instructions are tested by participants based on criteria determined by the creator of the document. In testing in a lab setting, instructions are evaluated by participants who are assigned to perform certain tasks. The test is performed in a controlled environment with limited variables. And in testing in context, instructions are also evaluated by participants who are assigned to perform certain tasks. In this case, however, the test is performed in an actual working environment, where many uncontrolled variables exist. As the setting expands from controlled environments to actual workplaces, the context

more closely matches the real world and the testing approach grows more complex.

- **Decide when you need to conduct the test.** You might use a guided evaluation to test ideas for the design of your pages or screens, a lab test to evaluate a draft of the procedural steps themselves, or a test in context to see how well the final document is working for users. “Test early and often” is a good axiom for any technical communicator.
- **Decide who should be involved in the test.** Most usability tests should involve actual users, because they are the people most likely to help you improve your instructions. That said, there are cases in which it makes sense to enlist the help of user advocates or experts. For example, your test may be an informal evaluation of an early design of your document, conducted by your colleagues in a few hours. Or you may hire experts for their trained insights in a specialized area. But actual users should be the cornerstone of your testing.
- **Consider conducting a pilot test.** A pilot test is a usability test for the usability test. A pilot test can uncover problems with the equipment; the document, site, or software being tested; or the test design.
- **Decide what to do with the test results.** For small or informal tests, simply revise your instructions based on the feedback. For large or formal tests, write a clear, comprehensive report based on your findings. Writing a report will help you make sense of the test results and allow you to communicate them to relevant parties.

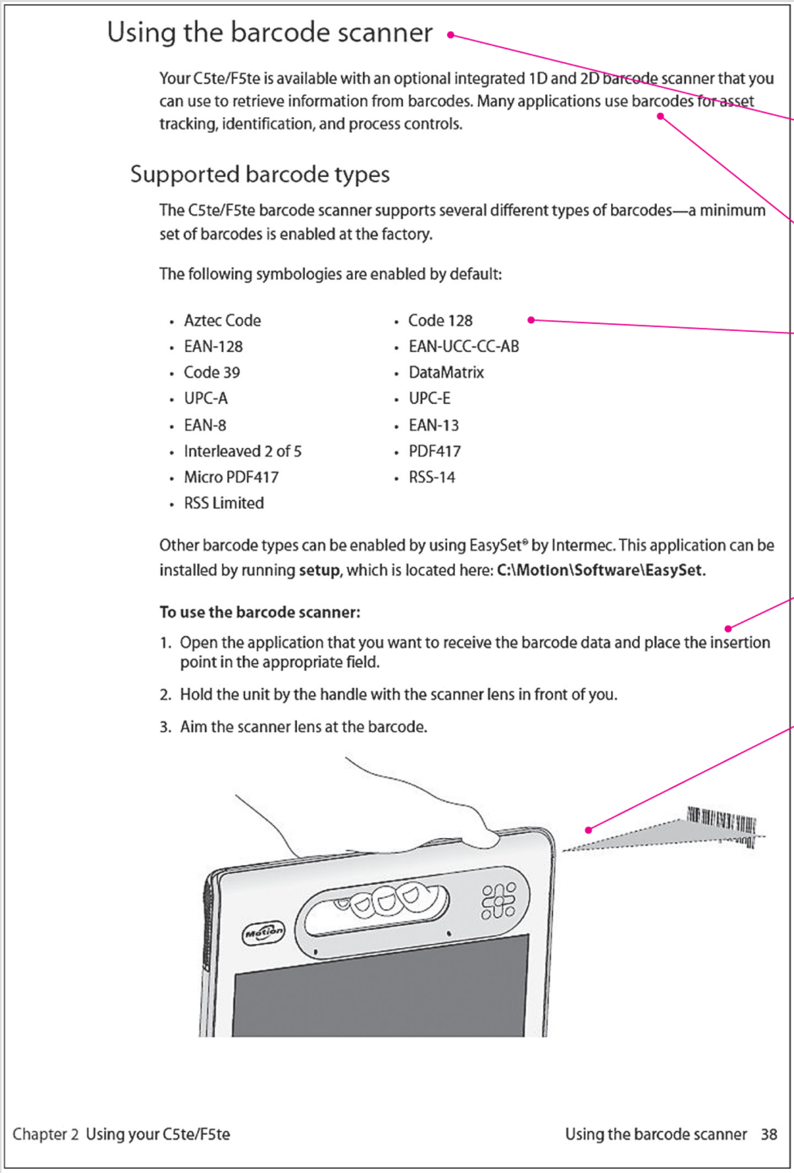
REVISING, EDITING, AND PROOFREADING INSTRUCTIONS

You know, of course, to revise, edit, and proofread all the documents you write to make sure they are honest, clear, accurate, comprehensive, accessible, concise, professional in appearance, and correct. When you write instructions, you should be extra careful, for two reasons.

First, your readers rely on your instructions to carry out a task. If they can't complete it — or they do complete it, but they don't achieve the expected outcome — they'll be unhappy. Nobody likes to spend a few hours assembling a garage-door opener, only to find half a dozen parts left over. Second, your readers rely on you to help them complete the task safely. To prevent injuries and liability actions, build time into the budget to revise, edit, and proofread the instructions carefully. Then, if you can, carry out usability testing on the instructions.

A LOOK AT SEVERAL SAMPLE SETS OF INSTRUCTIONS

Figure 14.11 is an excerpt from a set of instructions. Figure 14.12 on page 414 shows a list of tools and materials from a set of instructions. Figure 14.13 on page 415 is an excerpt from the safety information in a set of instructions. Figure 14.14 on page 416 is a portion of the troubleshooting guide in the instructions for a lawnmower. Figure 14.7 on page 401 is an excerpt from a thread in a discussion forum.



Using the barcode scanner

Your C5te/F5te is available with an optional integrated 1D and 2D barcode scanner that you can use to retrieve information from barcodes. Many applications use barcodes for asset tracking, identification, and process controls.

Supported barcode types

The C5te/F5te barcode scanner supports several different types of barcodes—a minimum set of barcodes is enabled at the factory.

The following symbologies are enabled by default:

- Aztec Code
- EAN-128
- Code 39
- UPC-A
- EAN-8
- Interleaved 2 of 5
- Micro PDF417
- RSS Limited
- Code 128
- EAN-UCC-CC-AB
- DataMatrix
- UPC-E
- EAN-13
- PDF417
- RSS-14

Other barcode types can be enabled by using EasySet® by Intermec. This application can be installed by running **setup**, which is located here: **C:\Motion\Software\EasySet.**

To use the barcode scanner:

1. Open the application that you want to receive the barcode data and place the insertion point in the appropriate field.
2. Hold the unit by the handle with the scanner lens in front of you.
3. Aim the scanner lens at the barcode.

Chapter 2 Using your C5te/F5te

Using the barcode scanner 38

This page from the user's manual for a tablet computer used in health-care environments discusses how to use the barcode scanner.

Note that the writer uses a gerund (-*ing* verb) in the major heading to describe the action ("Using the barcode scanner").

The writer explains why readers might want to scan barcodes.

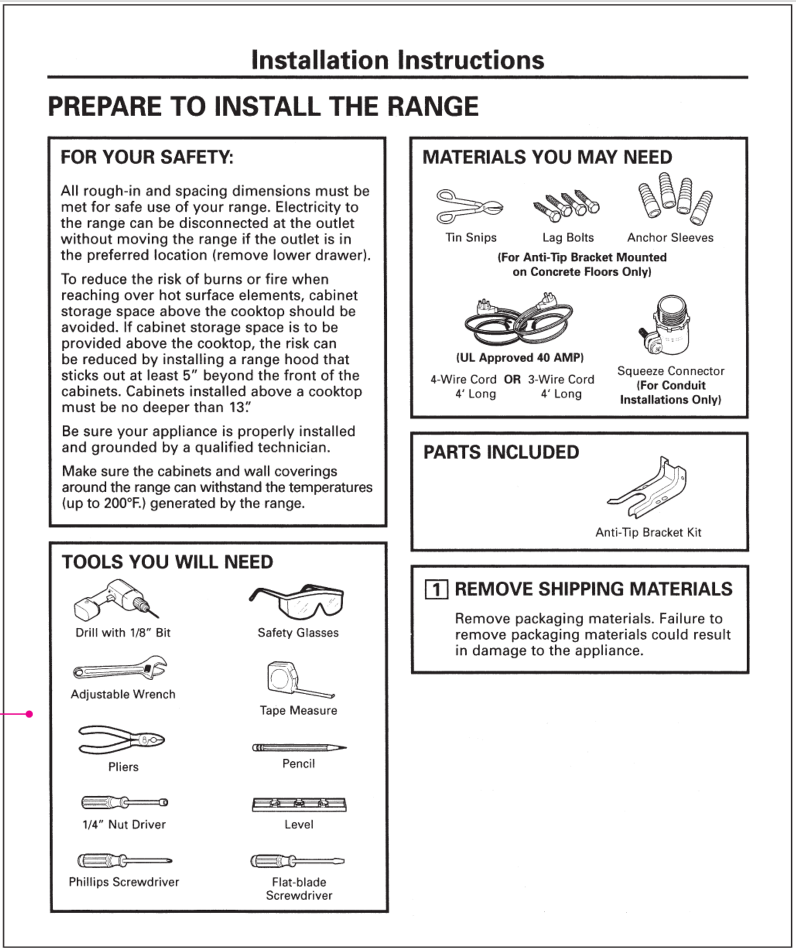
The writer lists the types of barcodes the tablet can scan and then explains how to enable the tablet to scan additional types. Note that the more conceptual information about the task precedes the instructional information. Why? Because readers want to understand the big picture before getting into the details.

The writer presents the steps. Note that the writer numbers the steps and uses the imperative mood for each one.

The drawing helps readers understand how to hold the tablet and aim it at the barcode. In cases such as this, simple drawings work better than photographs because they do not distract readers with unnecessary detail.

Courtesy of Xplore.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.11 Excerpt from a Set of Instructions



Installation Instructions

PREPARE TO INSTALL THE RANGE

FOR YOUR SAFETY:

All rough-in and spacing dimensions must be met for safe use of your range. Electricity to the range can be disconnected at the outlet without moving the range if the outlet is in the preferred location (remove lower drawer).

To reduce the risk of burns or fire when reaching over hot surface elements, cabinet storage space above the cooktop should be avoided. If cabinet storage space is to be provided above the cooktop, the risk can be reduced by installing a range hood that sticks out at least 5″ beyond the front of the cabinets. Cabinets installed above a cooktop must be no deeper than 13.″

Be sure your appliance is properly installed and grounded by a qualified technician.

Make sure the cabinets and wall coverings around the range can withstand the temperatures (up to 200°F.) generated by the range.

TOOLS YOU WILL NEED

Drill with 1/8″ Bit

Safety Glasses

Adjustable Wrench

Tape Measure

Pliers

Pencil

1/4″ Nut Driver

Level

Phillips Screwdriver

Flat-blade Screwdriver

MATERIALS YOU MAY NEED

Tin Snips

Lag Bolts

Anchor Sleeves

(For Anti-Tip Bracket Mounted on Concrete Floors Only)

(UL Approved 40 AMP)

4-Wire Cord 4′ Long **OR** 3-Wire Cord 4′ Long

Squeeze Connector **(For Conduit Installations Only)**

PARTS INCLUDED

Anti-Tip Bracket Kit

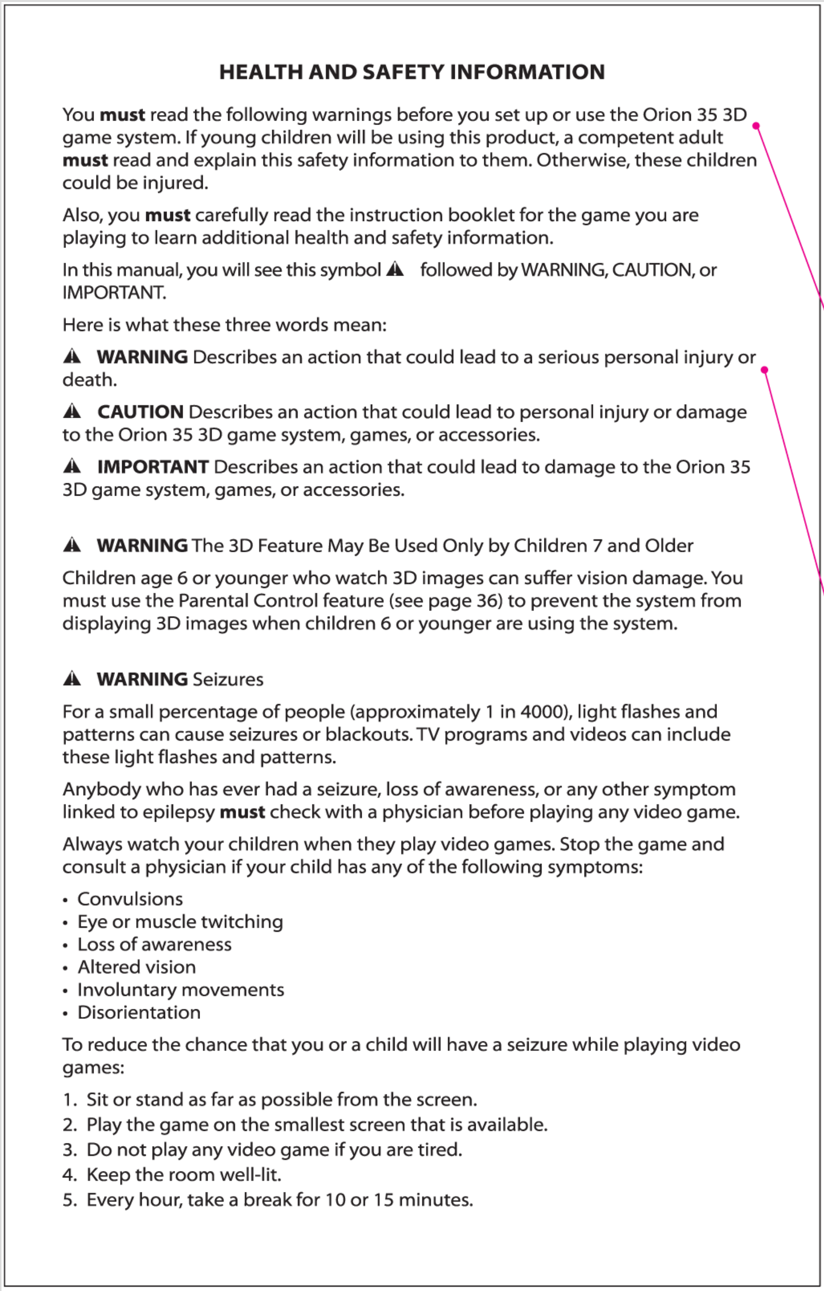
1 REMOVE SHIPPING MATERIALS

Remove packaging materials. Failure to remove packaging materials could result in damage to the appliance.

Prepare to Install the Range from General Electric, INSTALATION INSTRUCTIONS: FREE-STANDING ELECTRIC RANGES (Manual 229C4053P545-1 31-10556-1 04-03 JR). Used with permission.

Drawings of tools, materials, and parts are more effective than lists.

FIGURE 14.12 List of Tools and Materials



HEALTH AND SAFETY INFORMATION

You **must** read the following warnings before you set up or use the Orion 35 3D game system. If young children will be using this product, a competent adult **must** read and explain this safety information to them. Otherwise, these children could be injured.

Also, you **must** carefully read the instruction booklet for the game you are playing to learn additional health and safety information.

In this manual, you will see this symbol ⚠ followed by WARNING, CAUTION, or IMPORTANT.

Here is what these three words mean:

⚠ **WARNING** Describes an action that could lead to a serious personal injury or death.

⚠ **CAUTION** Describes an action that could lead to personal injury or damage to the Orion 35 3D game system, games, or accessories.

⚠ **IMPORTANT** Describes an action that could lead to damage to the Orion 35 3D game system, games, or accessories.

⚠ **WARNING** The 3D Feature May Be Used Only by Children 7 and Older

Children age 6 or younger who watch 3D images can suffer vision damage. You must use the Parental Control feature (see page 36) to prevent the system from displaying 3D images when children 6 or younger are using the system.

⚠ **WARNING** Seizures

For a small percentage of people (approximately 1 in 4000), light flashes and patterns can cause seizures or blackouts. TV programs and videos can include these light flashes and patterns.

Anybody who has ever had a seizure, loss of awareness, or any other symptom linked to epilepsy **must** check with a physician before playing any video game.

Always watch your children when they play video games. Stop the game and consult a physician if your child has any of the following symptoms:

- Convulsions
- Eye or muscle twitching
- Loss of awareness
- Altered vision
- Involuntary movements
- Disorientation

To reduce the chance that you or a child will have a seizure while playing video games:

1. Sit or stand as far as possible from the screen.
2. Play the game on the smallest screen that is available.
3. Do not play any video game if you are tired.
4. Keep the room well-lit.
5. Every hour, take a break for 10 or 15 minutes.

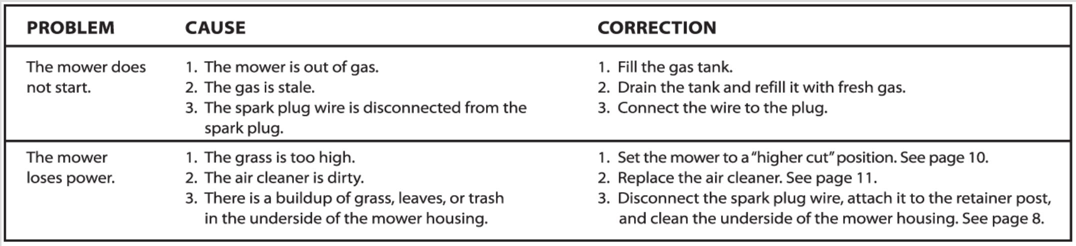
This excerpt from a user manual for a video-game player that displays 3D images describes two of the safety risks associated with playing video games.

Notice that the excerpt uses mandatory language: "You must . . ." Although politeness is desirable most of the time, you don't want to sound as if you are making suggestions or asking readers to do you favors. For instance, if a task calls for using safety goggles, do not write "You should consider wearing safety goggles." Instead, write "You must wear safety goggles when operating this equipment."

This set of safety information defines the keywords *warning*, *caution*, and *important*.

The safety information goes on to discuss eyestrain and motion sickness, repetitive motion injuries, and radio frequency interference.

FIGURE 14.13 Excerpt from Safety Information



PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTION
The mower does not start.	1. The mower is out of gas. 2. The gas is stale. 3. The spark plug wire is disconnected from the spark plug.	1. Fill the gas tank. 2. Drain the tank and refill it with fresh gas. 3. Connect the wire to the plug.
The mower loses power.	1. The grass is too high. 2. The air cleaner is dirty. 3. There is a buildup of grass, leaves, or trash in the underside of the mower housing.	1. Set the mower to a "higher cut" position. See page 10. 2. Replace the air cleaner. See page 11. 3. Disconnect the spark plug wire, attach it to the retainer post, and clean the underside of the mower housing. See page 8.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 14.14 Excerpt from a Troubleshooting Guide

Writing Manuals

There is no absolute distinction between a set of instructions and a manual. Typically, the two share a main purpose: to explain how to carry out a task safely, effectively, and efficiently. Both kinds of documents can include safety information. For example, a set of instructions on how to use an extension ladder explains how to avoid falling off the ladder. A manual for a laptop explains how to avoid electrocution when you open the case. However, a set of instructions (which can be anywhere from 1 to 20 or more pages) is typically shorter than a manual and more limited in its subject. Obviously, using a laptop requires knowing about many more topics than does using a ladder.

A manual likely also includes some sections not found in a set of instructions. For instance, it typically has a title page. The main difference between the two is that a manual has more elaborate front matter and back matter.

- **Front matter.** The introduction, sometimes called a *preface*, often contains an *overview of the contents*, frequently in the form of a table, which explains the main contents of each section and chapter. It also contains a *conventions* section, which explains the typography of the manual. For instance, *italics* are used for the titles of books, boldface for keyboard keys, and so forth. It also might include a *where to get help* section, referring readers to other sources of information, such as the company's website and customer-support center. And it might contain a section listing the *trademarks* of the company's own products and those of other companies.

For more about typography, see Ch. 7.

- **Back matter.** Manuals typically include a set of *specifications* of the device or system, a list of relevant government *safety regulations* and *industry standards* that the device or system supports, *tips on maintenance and servicing* the device, a *copyright page* listing bibliographic information about the manual, and an *index*. Many manuals also include *glossaries.*

Because they typically are longer and more complex than a set of instructions, manuals are almost always written collaboratively. Often, the writing team uses a wiki or other shared document workspace to make it easy for various subject-matter experts to contribute. When the manual is finished, the writing team often uses collaborative tools to enable users to evaluate and comment on it or even contribute to future versions of it.

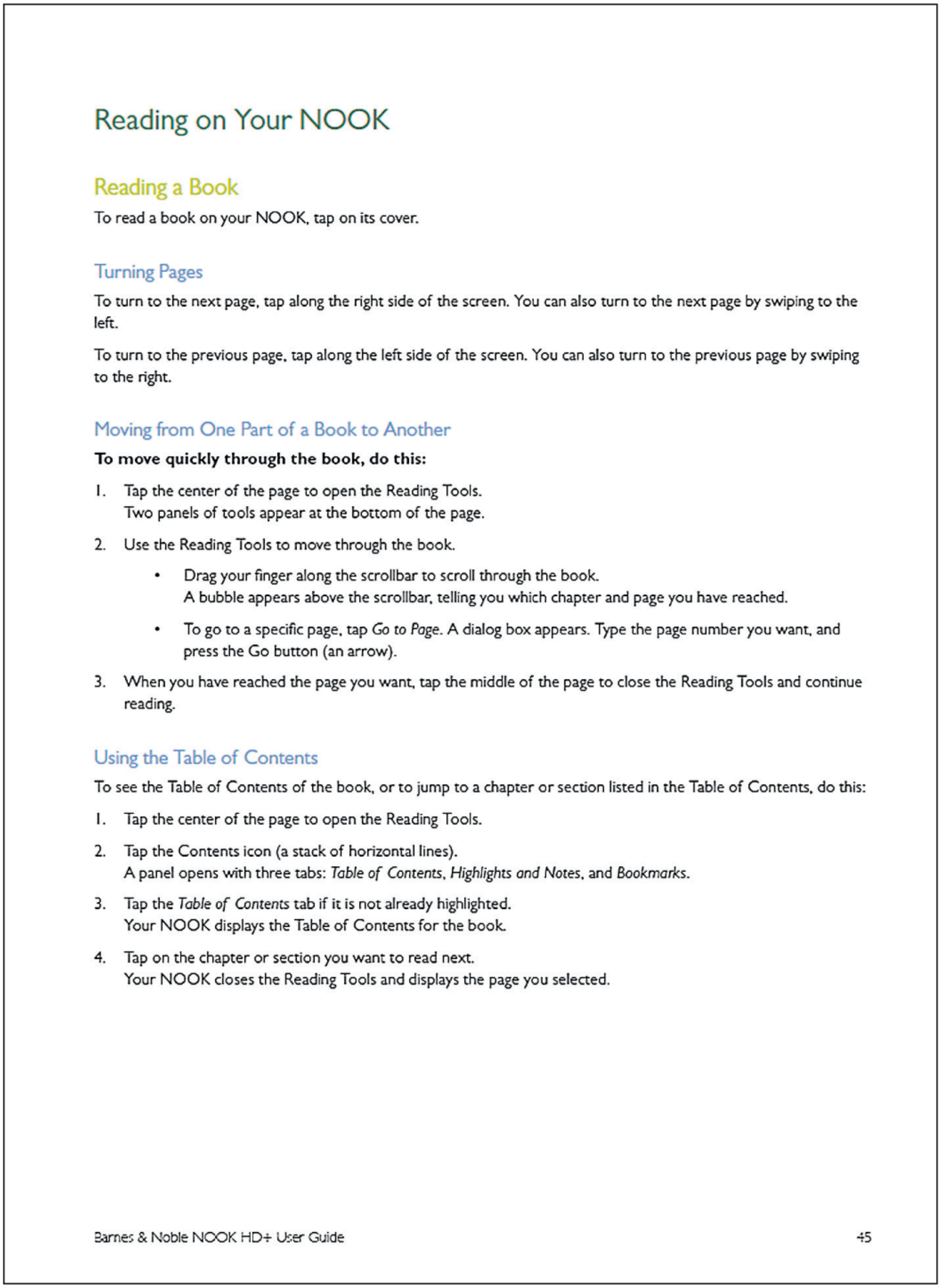
Organizations work hard to make their instructions and manuals appropriate for multicultural readers. Because important instructions and manuals might be read by readers from any number of cultures, you need to answer three important questions as you plan the documents:

- **In what language should the information be written?** You can either translate the document into readers' native languages or try to make the English easy to understand. Although translation is sometimes the best or only alternative, companies often use Simplified English or some other form of English with a limited grammar and vocabulary. Many organizations translate their manuals into various languages and post the translations on their websites as PDF documents for download.
- **Do the text and graphics need to be modified?** As discussed in Chapter 5, communicators need to be aware of cultural differences. For example, one printer manual aimed at an Italian audience presented nude models with strategically placed rectangles showing the various colors the machine could reproduce. Nudity would be inappropriate in almost all other countries. A software manual in the United States showed an illustration of a person's left hand. Because the left hand is considered unclean in many countries in the Middle East, the manual would need to be modified for those countries.
- **What is the readers' technological infrastructure?** If your readers don't have internet access, there is no point in making a web version of the information. If your readers pay by the minute for internet access, you will want to create web-based information that downloads quickly.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Presenting Clear Instructions

This page is from a set of instructions in an e-reader user's manual. The questions below ask you to think about the discussion of instructions earlier in this chapter.



Reading on Your NOOK

Reading a Book

To read a book on your NOOK, tap on its cover.

Turning Pages

To turn to the next page, tap along the right side of the screen. You can also turn to the next page by swiping to the left.

To turn to the previous page, tap along the left side of the screen. You can also turn to the previous page by swiping to the right.

Moving from One Part of a Book to Another

To move quickly through the book, do this:

1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading Tools.
   Two panels of tools appear at the bottom of the page.
2. Use the Reading Tools to move through the book.
   - Drag your finger along the scrollbar to scroll through the book.
     A bubble appears above the scrollbar, telling you which chapter and page you have reached.
   - To go to a specific page, tap *Go to Page*. A dialog box appears. Type the page number you want, and press the Go button (an arrow).
3. When you have reached the page you want, tap the middle of the page to close the Reading Tools and continue reading.

Using the Table of Contents

To see the Table of Contents of the book, or to jump to a chapter or section listed in the Table of Contents, do this:

1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading Tools.
2. Tap the Contents icon (a stack of horizontal lines).
   A panel opens with three tabs: *Table of Contents*, *Highlights and Notes*, and *Bookmarks*.
3. Tap the *Table of Contents* tab if it is not already highlighted.
   Your NOOK displays the Table of Contents for the book.
4. Tap on the chapter or section you want to read next.
   Your NOOK closes the Reading Tools and displays the page you selected.

© 2013 barnesandnoble.com llc. All rights reserved. Reprinted with permission.

1. This page includes no graphics. Point out two or three passages on the page that might be easier to understand if they included graphics. Describe the graphics you would include.
2. Is the amount of information presented in each step appropriate?
3. How effectively has the designer used typography to distinguish the various kinds of information presented on this page?

WRITER'S CHECKLIST

Parenthetical, Sentence, and Extended Definitions

☐ Are all necessary terms defined?

Are the parenthetical definitions

☐ clear and appropriate for the audience?
☐ smoothly integrated into the sentences?

Does each sentence definition

☐ contain a sufficiently specific category and distinguishing characteristics?
☐ avoid describing one particular item when a general class of items is intended?
☐ avoid circular definition?
☐ identify a category with a noun or noun phrase?
☐ Are the extended definitions developed logically and clearly?

Descriptions of Objects and Mechanisms

☐ Are the nature and scope of the description clearly indicated?

In introducing the description, did you answer, if appropriate, the following questions:

☐ What is the item?
☐ What is its function and how does it work?
☐ What does it look like and what are its principal parts?
☐ Is there a graphic identifying the principal parts?

In providing detailed information, did you

☐ answer, for each of the major components, the questions in the section on introducing the description?
☐ choose an appropriate organizational principle?
☐ include graphics for each of the components?

In concluding the description, did you

☐ summarize the major points in the part-by-part description?
☐ include (*where appropriate*) a description of the item performing its function?

Process Descriptions

☐ Are the nature and scope of the description clearly indicated?

In introducing the description, did you answer, if appropriate, the following questions:

☐ What is the process and who or what performs it?

☐ What is its function and how does it work?
☐ Where and when does it take place?
☐ What are its principal steps?
☐ Is there a graphic identifying the principal steps?

In providing detailed information, did you

☐ answer, for each of the major steps, the questions in the section on introducing the description?
☐ discuss the steps in chronological order or some other logical sequence?
☐ make clear the causal relationships among the steps?
☐ include graphics for each of the principal steps?
☐ In concluding the description, did you summarize the major points in the step-by-step description?

Instructions

☐ In planning the instructions, did you consider other media, such as wikis and videos?
☐ Are the instructions designed effectively, with adequate white space and a clear relationship between the graphics and the accompanying text?
☐ Do the instructions have a clear title?

Does the introduction to the set of instructions

☐ state the purpose of the task?

☐ describe safety measures or other concerns that readers should understand?
☐ list necessary tools and materials?

Are the step-by-step instructions

☐ numbered?
☐ expressed in the imperative mood?
☐ simple and direct?
☐ accompanied by appropriate graphics?

Does the conclusion

☐ include any necessary follow-up advice?
☐ include, if appropriate, a troubleshooting guide?

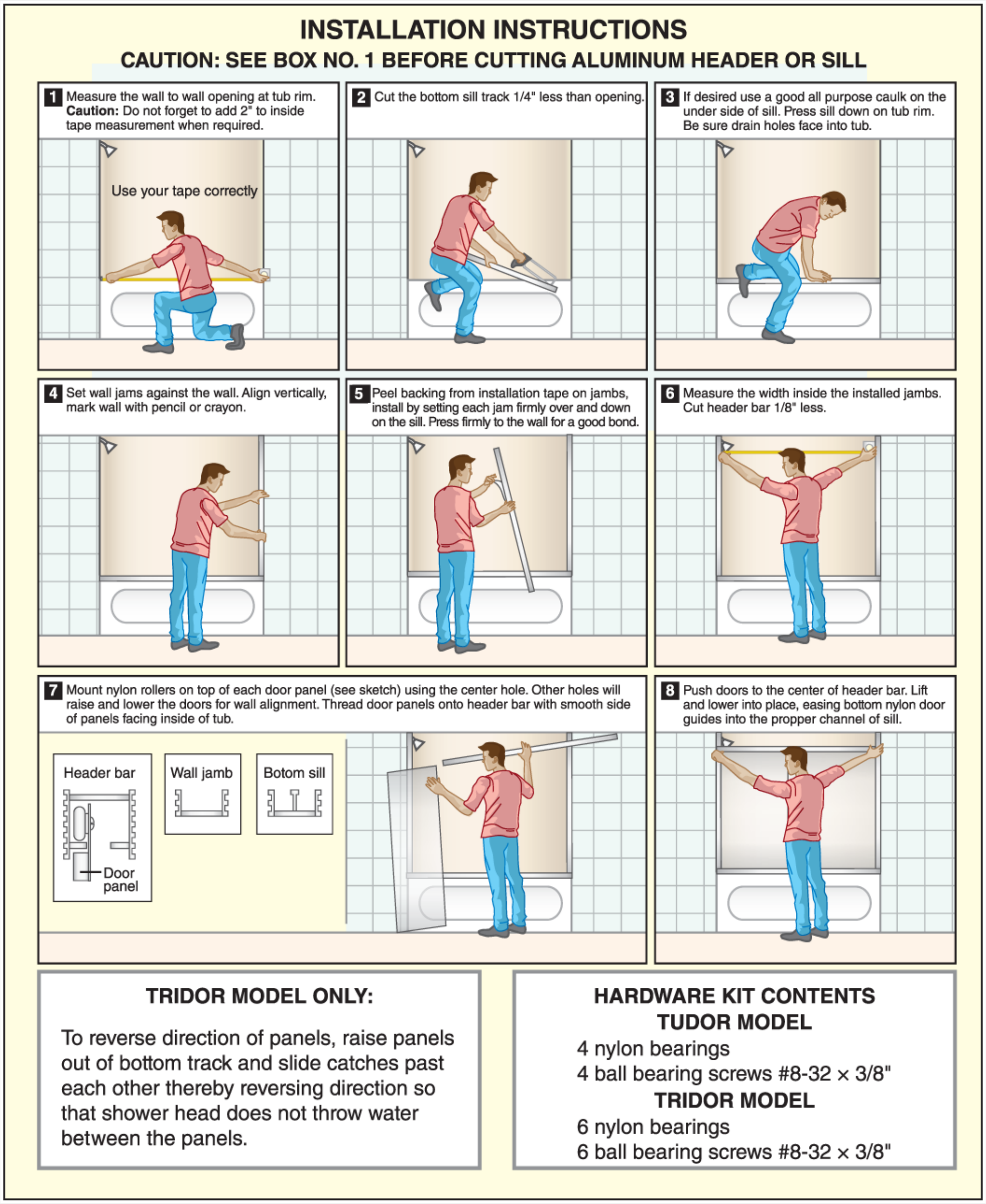
EXERCISES

1. Add a parenthetical definition for the italicized term in each of the following sentences:
   a. Reluctantly, he decided to *drop* the physics course.
   b. The Anthropology Club decided to use *crowdfunding* to finance the semester’s dig in Utah.
   c. The department is using *shareware* in its drafting course.
2. Write a sentence definition for each of the following terms:
   a. catalyst

   b. job interview
   c. website
3. Write a 500- to 1,000-word description of one of the following products or processes. In a note preceding the description, specify your audience and indicate the type of description (general or particular) you are writing. Include appropriate graphics, and be sure to cite their sources correctly if you did not create them (see Appendix, Part A, for documentation systems).
   a. GPS device
   b. how a food co-op works
   c. how a suspension bridge is constructed
   d. automobile jack
   e. how a baseball player becomes a free agent
4. You work in the customer-relations department of a company that makes plumbing supplies. The head of product development has just handed you a draft of installation instructions for a sliding tub door. She has asked you to comment on their effectiveness. Write a memo to her, evaluating the instructions and suggesting improvements.
5. **TEAM EXERCISE** Write instructions for one of the following activities or for a process used in your field. In a brief note preceding the instructions, indicate your audience and purpose. Include appropriate graphics.
   a. how to change a bicycle tire
   b. how to convert a WAV file to an MP3 file

c. how to find an online discussion board and subscribe to it

d. how to synchronize files and folders across two devices



INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

CAUTION: SEE BOX NO. 1 BEFORE CUTTING ALUMINUM HEADER OR SILL

1. Measure the wall to wall opening at tub rim. **Caution:** Do not forget to add 2" to inside tape measurement when required.

Use your tape correctly

2. Cut the bottom sill track 1/4" less than opening.

3. If desired use a good all purpose caulk on the under side of sill. Press sill down on tub rim. Be sure drain holes face into tub.

4. Set wall jams against the wall. Align vertically, mark wall with pencil or crayon.

5. Peel backing from installation tape on jambs, install by setting each jam firmly over and down on the sill. Press firmly to the wall for a good bond.

6. Measure the width inside the installed jambs. Cut header bar 1/8" less.

7. Mount nylon rollers on top of each door panel (see sketch) using the center hole. Other holes will raise and lower the doors for wall alignment. Thread door panels onto header bar with smooth side of panels facing inside of tub.

8. Push doors to the center of header bar. Lift and lower into place, easing bottom nylon door guides into the propper channel of sill.

TRIDOR MODEL ONLY:

To reverse direction of panels, raise panels out of bottom track and slide catches past each other thereby reversing direction so that shower head does not throw water between the panels.

HARDWARE KIT CONTENTS

TUDOR MODEL

4 nylon bearings

4 ball bearing screws #8-32 × 3/8"

TRIDOR MODEL

6 nylon bearings

6 ball bearing screws #8-32 × 3/8"

Exchange instructions with a partner. Each of you should observe the other person and take notes as he or she attempts to carry out the instructions. Then revise your instructions and share the revised version with your partner; discuss whether the revised instructions are easier to understand and apply and, if so, what made the difference. Submit the final version of your instructions to your instructor.

CASE 14: Writing Instructions

You work for the U.S. Department of Energy, which maintains an informational website called ENERGY STAR. One feature of the site is a series of videos on energy conservation produced for the general public. Your supervisor, concerned that few people are viewing most of the videos, has asked you to investigate the problem. Your assignment is to sample one of the videos and then develop a revised script that addresses any problems you see in the original video. Once you've completed both tasks, you will need to determine what media are best for delivering this information to the public. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started.

CHAPTER 15

Making Oral Presentations

Understanding the Role of Oral Presentations
Preparing the Presentation
Answering Questions After a Presentation

A RECENT SEARCH FOR “death by PowerPoint” on Google returned millions of hits. Apparently, a lot of people have been on the receiving end of boring presentations built around bullet slides. But an oral presentation — with or without slides — doesn’t have to be deadly dull.

And the process of creating and delivering a presentation doesn’t have to be frightening. You might not have had much experience in public speaking, and perhaps your few attempts have been difficult. However, if you approach it logically, an oral presentation is simply another application you need to master in your role as a technical communicator. Once you learn that the people in the room are there to hear what you have to say — not to stare at you or evaluate your clothing or catch you making a grammar mistake — you can calm down and deliver your information effectively while projecting your professionalism.

There are four basic types of presentations:

- **Impromptu presentations.** You deliver the presentation without advance notice. For instance, at a meeting, your supervisor calls on you to speak for a few minutes about a project you are working on.
- **Extemporaneous presentations.** You plan and rehearse the presentation, and you might refer to notes or an outline, but you create the sentences as you speak. At its best, an extemporaneous presentation is clear and sounds spontaneous.
- **Scripted presentations.** You read a text that was written out completely in advance (by you or someone else). You sacrifice naturalness for increased clarity and precision.
- **Memorized presentations.** You speak without notes or a script. Memorized presentations are not appropriate for most technical subjects because most people cannot memorize presentations longer than a few minutes.

This chapter discusses extemporaneous and scripted presentations.

Understanding the Role of Oral Presentations

An oral presentation has one big advantage over a written one: it enables a dialogue between the speaker and the audience. Listeners can make comments or ask questions, and the speaker and listeners can talk before and after the presentation. As a technical communicator, you can expect to give oral presentations to several types of audiences:

- **Clients and customers.** You present the features of your products or services and their advantages over those of the competition. After concluding the sale or landing the contract, you might provide oral operating instructions and maintenance tips to users.
- **Colleagues in your organization.** You might instruct co-workers on a subject you know well. After you return from an important conference or an out-of-town project, you might brief your supervisors. If you have an idea for improving operations at your organization, you might write an informal proposal and then present it orally to a small group of managers. Your presentation helps them determine whether to study the idea.
- **Fellow professionals at technical conferences.** You might speak about your own research project or about a team project to professionals in your field or in other fields.

- **Government agencies.** You might speak before local, state, or federal government officials to explain a project your organization carried out. Or you might explain a proposed project so that the government officials can assess its implications. For instance, if you represent a developer, you might need to speak about the possible environmental impacts of a project your organization is proposing.
- **The public.** You might deliver oral presentations to civic organizations and the general public to help these audiences understand your organization's activities and plans. Oral presentations can help your organization reinforce its brand.

Preparing the Presentation

When you see an excellent 20-minute presentation, you are seeing only the last 20 minutes of a process that took many hours. Experts recommend devoting 20 to 60 minutes of preparation time for each minute of the finished presentation (Nienow, 2013). That means that the average 20-minute presentation might take more than 13 hours to prepare. Obviously, there are many variables, including your knowledge of the subject and your experience creating graphics and giving presentations on that subject. But the point is that good presentations don't just happen.

FOCUS ON PROCESS

Oral Presentations

When preparing an oral presentation, pay special attention to these steps.

PLANNING	Think about how you can best prepare effective presentation graphics that are visible, legible, simple, clear, and correct. Choose the appropriate technology based on the speaking situation and the available resources.
DRAFTING	Choose effective and memorable language. Your listeners will not be able to read your presentation to help them understand your message.
REVISING	Rehearse at least three times, making any necessary changes to your transitions, the order of your slides, or your graphics. Get feedback

	from others on ways to improve your presentation. See the Speaker's Checklist at the end of this chapter.
EDITING	Make sure your spoken words and slides are well written. See Chapter 6 for advice on writing correct and effective sentences.
PROOFREADING	Make sure that your slides are free of errors.

As you start to prepare a presentation, think about ways to enlist others to help you prepare and deliver it. If possible, you should rehearse the presentation in front of others. You can also call on others to help you think about your audience and purpose, the organization of the information, the types of graphics to use, appropriate designs for slides, and so forth. The more extensively you work with other people as you plan, assemble, and rehearse, the more successful the presentation is likely to be.

Preparing an oral presentation requires the following steps:

- analyzing the speaking situation
- organizing and developing the presentation
- preparing presentation graphics
- choosing effective language
- rehearsing the presentation

ANALYZING THE SPEAKING SITUATION

First, analyze your audience and purpose. Also determine how much information you can deliver in the allotted time, and consider matters of setting, such as where the presentation will take place and what tools will be available to you.

Analyzing Your Audience and Purpose

In planning an oral presentation, consider audience and purpose, just as you would in writing a document.

- **Audience.** What does the audience know about your subject? Your answer will help you determine the level of technical vocabulary and concepts you will use, as well as the types of graphics. Why are audience members listening to your presentation? Are they likely to be hostile, enthusiastic, or neutral? A presentation on the benefits of free trade, for instance, will be received one way by conservative economists and another way by U.S. steelworkers. Does your audience include nonnative speakers of English? If so, prepare to slow down the pace of the delivery and avoid unfamiliar slang or idioms.
- **Purpose.** Are you attempting to inform or to both inform and persuade? If you are explaining how wind-turbine farms work, you will describe a process. If you are explaining why your company's wind turbines are an economical way to generate power, you will compare them with other power sources.

Your analysis of your audience and purpose will affect the content and the form of your presentation. For example, you might have to emphasize some aspects of your subject and ignore others altogether. Or you might have to arrange topics to accommodate an audience's needs.

Budgeting Your Time

At most professional meetings, each speaker is given a maximum time, such as 20 minutes. If the question-and-answer period is part of your allotted time, plan accordingly. Even for an informal presentation, you will probably have to work within an unstated time limit that you must determine from the speaking situation. If you take more than the appropriate amount of time, eventually your listeners will resent you or simply stop paying attention.

For a 20-minute presentation, the time allotment shown in Table 15.1 is typical. For scripted presentations, most speakers need a little over a minute to deliver a double-spaced page of text effectively.

TABLE 15.1 Time Allotment for a 20-Minute Presentation

TASK	TIME (MINUTES)
• Introduction	2
• Body – First Major Point – Second Major Point	 4 4

– Third Major Point	4
• Conclusion	2
• Questions	4

Considering Setting

You may be delivering your presentation in person or remotely, with or without technical aids, to an audience ranging from 1 person to 1,000 or more people. All of these variables will affect the type of presentation you prepare and the way you prepare it. For example, if you will be speaking without technical aids to a small group of people, you may want to prepare handouts for them to take along. If you are preparing a remote online presentation on a platform such as WebEx or JoinMe, keep in mind that viewers will be focused on the materials they see on their computer or tablet screens — so your presentation materials will be perhaps even more important than the words you speak.

ORGANIZING AND DEVELOPING THE PRESENTATION

The speaking situation will help you decide how to organize and develop the information you will present.

Start by considering the organizational patterns used typically in technical communication. One of them might fit the speaking situation. For instance, if you are a quality-assurance engineer for a computer-chip manufacturer and must address your technical colleagues on why one of the company’s products is experiencing a higher-than-normal failure rate, think in terms of cause and effect: the high failure rate is the effect, but what is the cause? Or think in terms of problem–method–solution: the high failure rate is the problem; the research you conducted to determine its cause is the method; your recommended action is the solution. Of course, you can combine and adapt several organizational patterns.

As you create an effective organizational pattern for your presentation, note the kinds of information you will need for each section of the presentation. Some of this information will be data; some of it will be graphics that you can use in your presentation; some might be objects that you want to pass around in the audience.

Some presenters like to outline their presentations on paper or in a word-processing document. However, more and more, people are outlining with their presentation software.

As you organize your presentation, you will want to plan the introduction and the conclusion.

GUIDELINES Introducing the Presentation

In introducing a presentation, consider these five suggestions.

- **Introduce yourself.** Unless you are speaking to colleagues you work with every day, begin with an introduction: “Good morning. My name is Omar Castillo, and I’m the Director of Facilities here at United.” If you are using slides, include your name and position on the title slide.
- **State the title of your presentation.** Like all titles, titles of presentations should name the subject and purpose, such as “Replacing the HVAC System in Building 3: Findings from the Feasibility Study.” Include the title of your presentation on your title slide.
- **Explain the purpose of the presentation.** This explanation can be brief: “My purpose today is to present the results of the feasibility study carried out by the Facilities Group. As you may recall, last quarter we were charged with determining whether it would be wise to replace the HVAC system in Building 3.”
- **State your main point.** An explicit statement can help your audience understand the rest of the presentation: “Our main finding is that the HVAC system should be replaced as soon as possible. Replacing it would cost approximately $120,000. The payback period would be 2.5 years. We recommend that we start soliciting bids now, for an installation date in the third week of November.”
- **Provide an advance organizer.** Listeners need an advance organizer that specifically states where you are going: “First, I’d like to describe our present system, highlighting the recent problems we have experienced. Next, I’d like to … Then, I’d like to … Finally, I’d like to invite your questions.”

GUIDELINES Concluding the Presentation

In concluding a presentation, consider these four suggestions.

- **Announce that you are concluding.** For example, “At this point, I’d like to conclude my talk with …” This statement helps the audience focus on your conclusions.
- **Summarize the main points.** Because listeners cannot replay what you have said, you should briefly summarize your main points. If you are using slides, you should present a slide that lists each of your main points in one short phrase.

- **Look to the future.** If appropriate, speak briefly about what you think (or hope) will happen next: “If the president accepts our recommendation, you can expect the renovation to begin in late November. After a few hectic weeks, we’ll have the ability to control our environment much more precisely than we can now — and start to reduce our expenses and our carbon footprint.”
- **Invite questions politely.** You want to invite questions because they help you clarify what you said or communicate information that you did not present in the formal presentation. You want to ask politely to encourage people to speak up.

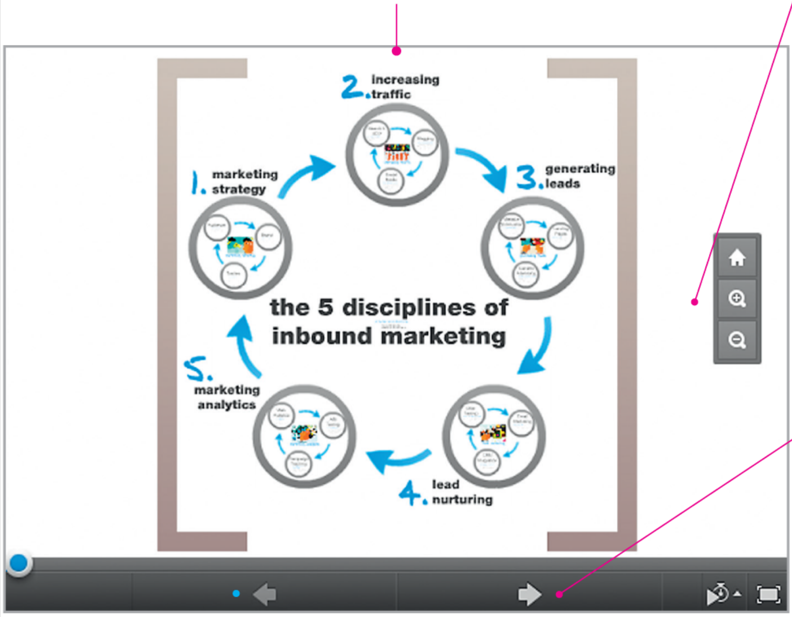
PREPARING PRESENTATION GRAPHICS

Graphics clarify or highlight important ideas or facts. Statistical data, in particular, lend themselves to graphical presentation, as do abstract relationships and descriptions of equipment or processes. Researchers have known for decades that audiences remember information better if it is presented to them verbally and visually rather than only verbally. One other advantage of using presentation graphics is that the audience is not always looking at you. Giving the audience another visual focus can reduce your nervousness.

For more about creating graphics, see Ch. 8.

Most speakers use presentation software to develop graphics. By far the most popular program is PowerPoint, but other programs are becoming popular as well. One that has gained a lot of attention is Prezi, which takes a different approach from PowerPoint. Whereas PowerPoint uses a linear organization — the speaker presents each slide in sequence — Prezi uses a network or web pattern of organization. Figure 15.1 shows an example of a Prezi slide.

The free version of Prezi is cloud-based; that is, you have to be connected to the internet to use it. This feature means that you can deliver your Prezi presentation from any computer with an internet connection, that your team members can collaborate from remote locations, and that your presentation is stored in the cloud. However, your presentation is visible to all who visit the Prezi site, so you should be sure that it contains no confidential information or information you do not wish to share with those beyond your original audience.



When the speaker clicks on any object on this overview slide, the software zooms in to reveal more objects within or next to that object. After discussing an object, the speaker can zoom out to the overview or zoom in to another object.

This capability of Prezi not only makes it easy for the speaker to navigate within the presentation but also helps audience members remember the big picture because they see the overview graphic frequently as the speaker moves from point to point. Whereas PowerPoint is linear like a book — page 6 always precedes page 7 — Prezi is more like a website in that the speaker can easily jump from one object to another.

Although the speaker can present each slide in sequence using the arrows at the bottom of the screen, Prezi makes it simple for the speaker to create a new sequence each time he or she delivers the presentation or to come back to a particular slide or set of slides during the question-and-answer period.

Shade Wilson, Scalability Project LLC. Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

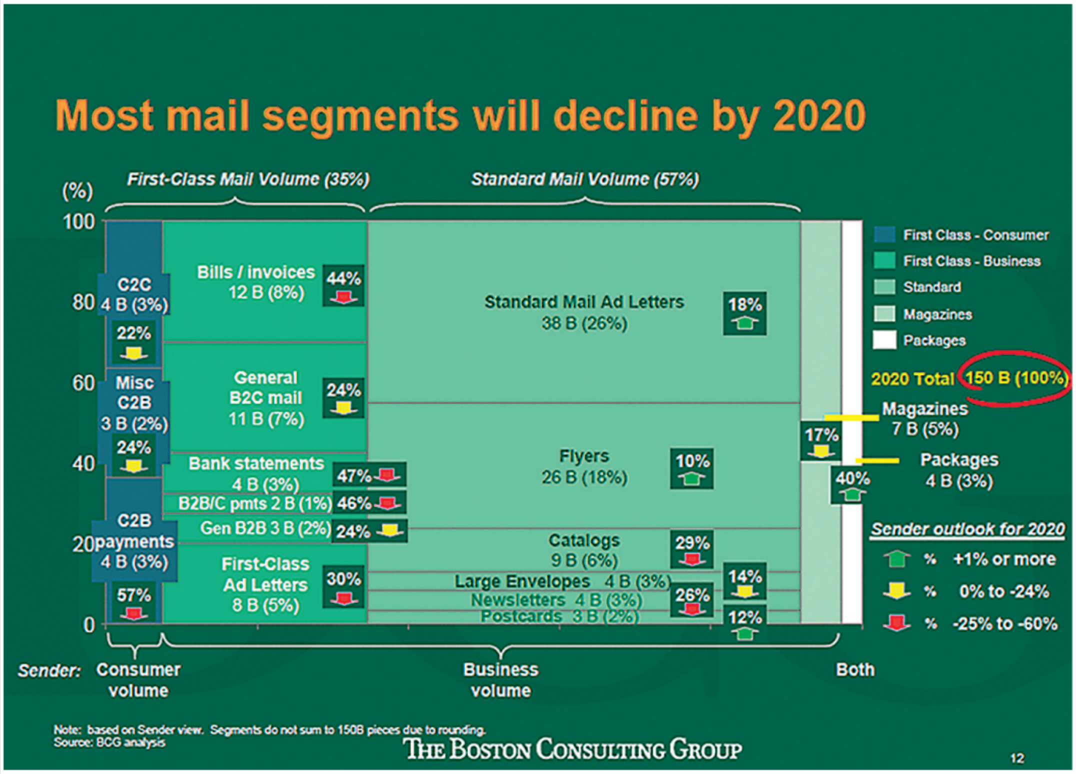
FIGURE 15.1 The Network Organization of Prezi

Characteristics of an Effective Slide

An effective presentation graphic has five characteristics:

- **It presents a clear, well-supported claim.** In a presentation slide, the best way to present a claim and to support it is to put the claim in the headline section of the slide and the support in the body of the slide.

- **It is easy to see.** The most common problem with presentation graphics is that they are too small. In general, text has to be in 24-point type or larger to be visible on a screen. Figure 15.2 on page 428 shows a slide that contains so much information that most of it is too small to see easily.



Most mail segments will decline by 2020

Note: based on Sender view. Segments do not sum to 150B pieces due to rounding.
Source: BCG analysis

THE BOSTON CONSULTING GROUP

Information from Boston Group, 2010: www.usps.com/strategicplanning/_pdf/BCG_Detailedpresentation.pdf.

FIGURE 15.2 Too Much Information on a Slide

Most of the information on this slide is too small to see easily.

This slide attempts to compare too many types of data at once, including differences between firstclass and standard mail, between consumer and business mail, and among various types of mail within those segments. The main point of the slide — the overall decline in the volume of mail — is difficult for the audience to see.

- **It is easy to read.** Use clear, legible lines for drawings and diagrams; black on white works best. Use legible typefaces for text; a boldface sans-serif typeface such as Arial or Helvetica is effective because it reproduces clearly on a screen. Avoid shadowed and outlined letters.
- **It is simple.** Text and drawings must be simple. Each graphic should present only one idea. Your listeners have not seen the graphic before and will not be able to linger over it.
- **It is correct.** Proofread your graphics carefully. Everyone makes mistakes in grammar, punctuation, or spelling, but mistakes are particularly embarrassing when they are 10 inches tall on a screen.

When preparing a presentation using a program such as PowerPoint or Prezi, it may be best to create your own simple design rather than relying on preexisting templates. (For more on creating templates in PowerPoint and Prezi, see the TechTip on page 430.)

Presentation software programs contain many fancy animation effects. For example, you can set the software so that when a new slide appears, it is accompanied by the sound of applause or of breaking glass, and the heading text spins around like a pinwheel. Do not use animation effects that are unrelated to your subject. They undercut your professionalism and quickly become tiresome.

However, one animation effect in PowerPoint, sometimes called *appear and dim*, is useful. When you create a bulleted list, you can set the software to show just the first bullet item and then make the next bullet item appear when you click the mouse. When you do so, the previous bullet item dims. This feature is useful because it focuses the audience's attention on the bullet item you are discussing.

Regardless of whether you are using the appear-and-dim feature, set the software so that you use the mouse (or a colleague does) to advance from one graphic to the next. If you set the software so that the graphics advance automatically at a specified interval, such as 60 seconds, you will have to speed up or slow down your presentation to keep up with the graphics.

One more point: you cannot use copyrighted material — images, text, music, video, or other material — in your presentation without written permission to do so. (Your presentations in class, however, do not require permission because they are covered by the fair-use exemption.)

Graphics and the Speaking Situation

To plan your graphics, analyze four aspects of the speaking situation:

- **Length of the presentation.** How many slides should you have? Smith (1991) suggests showing a different slide approximately every 30 seconds of the presentation. This figure is only a guideline; base your decision on your subject and audience. Still, the general point is valid: it is far better to have a series of simple slides than to have one complicated one that stays on the screen for five minutes.

- **Audience aptitude and experience.** What kinds of graphics can your audience understand easily? You don't want to present scatter plots, for example, if your audience does not know how to interpret them.
- **Setting.** What size images are most appropriate for the presentation context? Graphics suitable for a remote online WebEx presentation differ from those suitable for presentation in a small conference room or a 500-seat auditorium. In WebEx or other webcasting platforms, you can provide more detail because viewers will most likely be sitting close to their computer or tablet screen as they watch your presentation. For use in a large auditorium, by contrast, your slides should have larger, more simplified text and graphics.
- **Equipment.** Find out what kind of equipment will be available to you. Ask about backups in case of equipment failure. If possible, bring your own equipment — then you can be confident that the equipment works and you know how to use it. Some speakers bring graphics in two media just in case; that is, they have slides, but they also have handouts of the same graphics. If your presentation is going to be recorded to be made available on a website or as a podcast, try to arrange to have the recording technicians visit the site beforehand to see if there are any problems they will need to solve.

TECH TIP

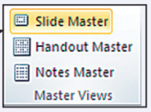
Why To Create a Presentation Template

Master slides and templates allow you to maintain a consistent look throughout your presentation graphics without needing to design each individual slide. Although the templates provided by Prezi and PowerPoint can be useful, they often violate basic design principles, and they may not fit the needs of your presentation. When possible, create an original design that suits your topic and will appear fresh and original to your audience members, who have probably seen many of the predesigned templates used before.

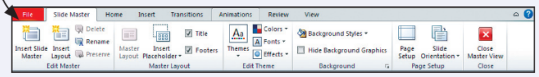
How To Create a Presentation Template

PowerPoint

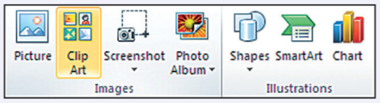
In PowerPoint, select **Slide Master** from the **Master Views** group on the **View** tab.


Slide Master
Handout Master
Notes Master
Master Views

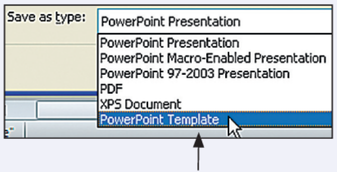
By selecting elements on the master slide and then using the commands on the **Slide Master** tab, you can add a background, choose a color scheme, and choose type styles and sizes.


File
Slide Master
Home
Insert
Transitions
Animations
Review
View
Insert Slide Master
Insert Layout
Delete
Rename
Preserve
Edit Master
Master Layout
Insert Placeholder
Title
Footers
Master Layout
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Effects
Edit Theme
Background Styles
Hide Background Graphics
Background
Page Setup
Slide Orientation
Page Setup
Close Master View
Close

To add graphics to the master slide, use the **Images** and **Illustrations** groups on the **Insert** tab.

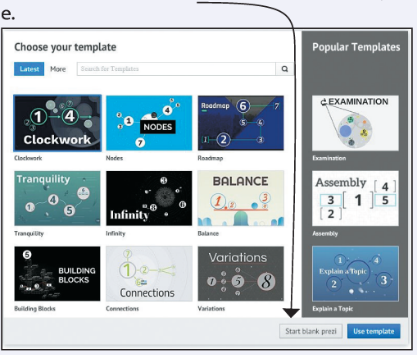

Picture
Clip Art
Screenshot
Photo Album
Images
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Illustrations

To save your page design so that you can use this design for another presentation, select **Save As** from the **File** tab, and then select **PowerPoint Template** from the drop-down menu.

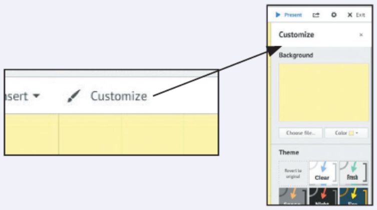

Save as type:
PowerPoint Presentation
PowerPoint Presentation
PowerPoint Macro-Enabled Presentation
PowerPoint 97-2003 Presentation
PDF
XPS Document
PowerPoint Template

Prezi

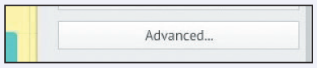
In Prezi, select **Start blank prezi** on the **Choose your template** page.


Choose your template
Latest
More
Search for Templates
Clockwork
Nodes
Roadmap
Tranquility
Infinity
Balance
Building Blocks
Connections
Variations
Popular Templates
Examination
Assembly
Explain a Topic
Start blank prezi
Use template

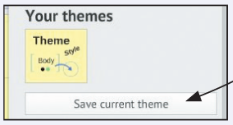
Click on the **Customize** option to launch the **Customize** panel, where you can choose the background colors and insert your own background images or content from your computer.


Insert
Customize
Present
Exit
Customize
Background
Choose file...
Color
Theme
Reset to original
Clear
fresh

More background options are available from the **Advanced** button at the bottom of the **Customize** panel.



To save your customized background theme, choose **Save current theme**.


Your themes
Theme
Body
style
Save current theme

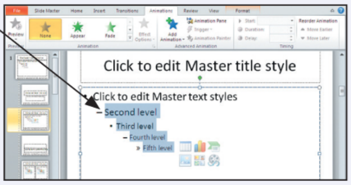
TECH TIP

Why To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation

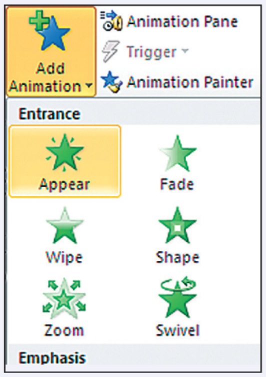
To help your audience focus on the point you are discussing, you can apply PowerPoint's custom animation feature to the **Master Page** so that a list item appears and then dims when the next item appears.

How To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation

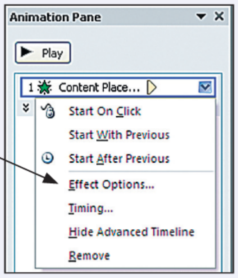
1. To apply a **custom animation**, select the **Title and Content Layout** slide in the **Slide Master** view, and then highlight the list on the slide.


Click to edit Master title style
Click to edit Master text styles
Second level
Third level
Fourth level
Fifth level

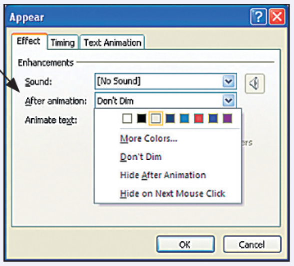
2. In the **Advanced Animation** group, select **Add Animation**, and then select the **Entrance** category and the **Appear** effect.


Add Animation
Animation Pane
Trigger
Animation Painter
Entrance
Appear
Fade
Wipe
Shape
Zoom
Swivel
Emphasis

3. Select the **Animation Pane** button in the **Advanced Animation** group. In the **Animation Pane**, click the drop-down menu and select **Effect Options**.

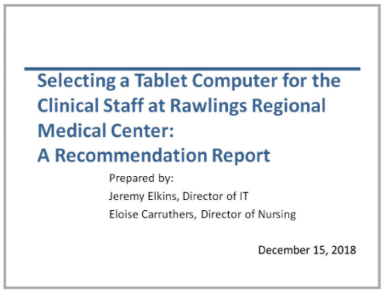

Animation Pane
Play
1 Content Place...
Start On Click
Start With Previous
Start After Previous
Effect Options...
Timing...
Hide Advanced Timeline
Remove

4. On the **Effect** tab in the **Appear** dialog box, click the **After Animation** drop-down menu and select a dim color.


Sound: [No Sound]
After animation: Don't Dim
Appear
Effect
Timing
Text Animation
Enhancements
Animate text:
More Colors...
Don't Dim
Hide After Animation
Hide on Next Mouse Click
OK
Cancel

Using Graphics To Signal the Organization of a Presentation

Used effectively, graphics can help you communicate how your presentation is organized. For example, you can use the transition from one graphic to the next to indicate the transition from one point to the next. Figure 15.3 shows the slides for a presentation that accompanied the report in Chapter 15 on tablet computer use at Rawlings Regional Medical Center.

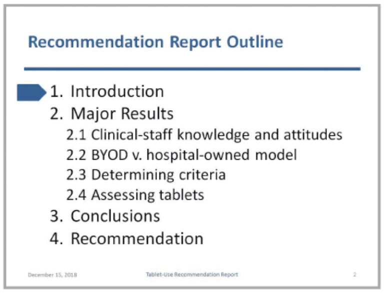


Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report

Prepared by:
Jeremy Elkins, Director of IT
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 15, 2018

The title slide shows the title of the presentation and the name and affiliation of each speaker. You might also want to include the date of the presentation.

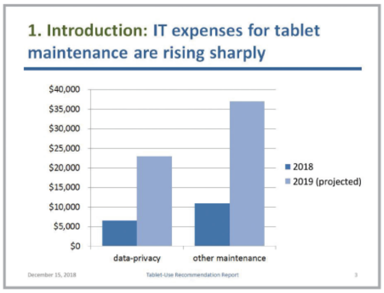


Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

The next slide presents an overview, which outlines the presentation. The arrow identifies the point the speaker is addressing.

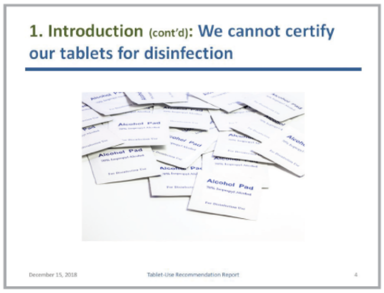
At the bottom of each slide in the body of the presentation is a footer with the date, the title of the presentation, and the number of the slide. The slide number gives audience members a way to refer to the slide when they ask questions.



1. Introduction: IT expenses for tablet maintenance are rising sharply

This slide uses a simple bar graph created in PowerPoint. Don't try to present a lot of information on a single slide.

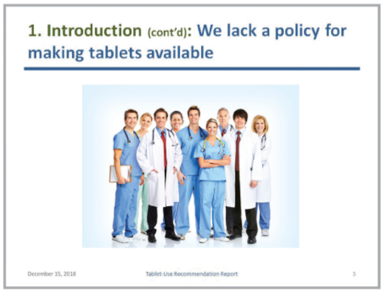
The title of this slide uses the numbering system introduced in the previous slide. This cue helps the audience understand the structure of the presentation. Following the colon is an independent clause that presents the claim that will be supported in the slide.



1. Introduction (cont'd): We cannot certify our tablets for disinfection

If the images in your presentation are your own intellectual property or are clip art that comes with the software, you can legally display them anywhere. If they are not, you need to cite their sources and obtain written permission. You have three choices for placing the source statements: at the bottom of the appropriate slides, in a sources slide that you show at the end of the presentation, or on a paper handout that you distribute at the end of the presentation.

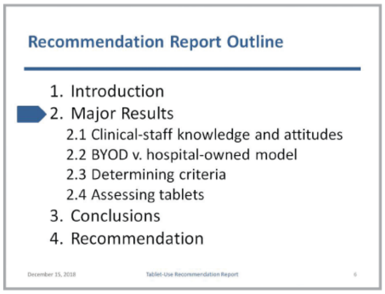
BeeBright/Shutterstock.com



1. Introduction (cont'd): We lack a policy for making tablets available

For second and subsequent slides within the same section of the presentation, use the "continued" abbreviation shown here. Notice that the speakers use one color for the generic term ("Introduction") and a different color for the claim.

Photo: kurhan/Shutterstock.com



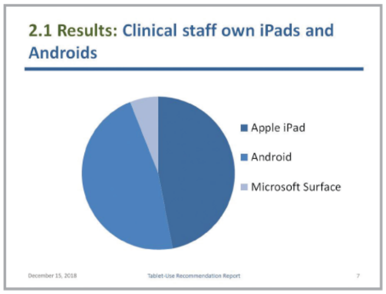
Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

This slide is identical to Slide 2, except that the arrow has moved. Use this organizing slide to help your audience remember the overall organization of your presentation. Don't overdo it; if you presented this organizing slide just a few slides ago, don't use it again until you make the transition to the next major unit in the presentation.

FIGURE 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation (continued)

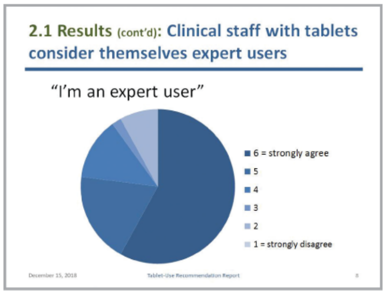
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



2.1 Results: Clinical staff own iPads and Androids

A pie chart is a logical choice for representing a small number of components (usually seven or fewer) that add up to 100 percent.

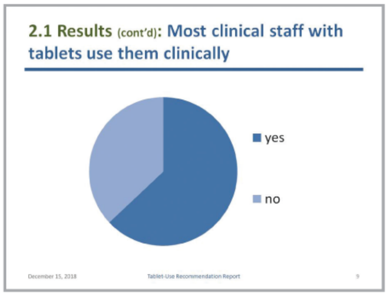
Note that the speakers use conservative blues for all their graphics on the slide set. You don't need a rainbow full of colors. You need just enough difference so that the audience can distinguish between the different slices.



2.1 Results (cont'd)**: Clinical staff with tablets consider themselves expert users**

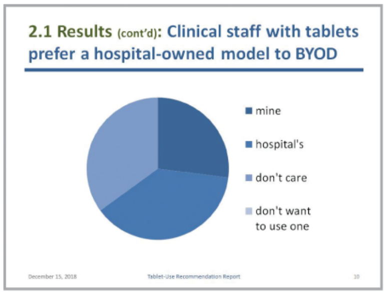
"I'm an expert user"

Slides work best if the text is brief. The speaker will explain that here are the responses to the statement "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."

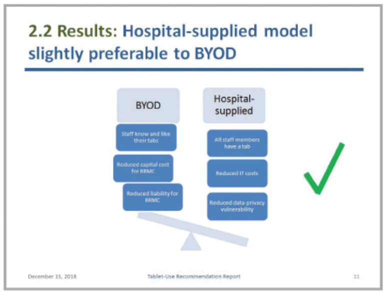


2.1 Results (cont'd)**: Most clinical staff with tablets use them clinically**

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



2.1 Results (cont'd)**: Clinical staff with tablets prefer a hospital-owned model to BYOD**



2.2 Results: Hospital-supplied model slightly preferable to BYOD

BYOD

Staff know and like their tabs

Reduced capital cost for RRMC

Reduced liability for RRMC

Hospital-supplied

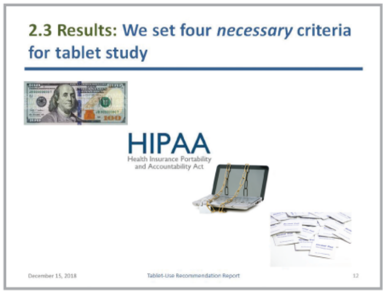
All staff members have a tab

Reduced IT costs

Reduced data-privacy vulnerability

This slide was made using SmartArt graphics, which are part of PowerPoint. SmartArt graphics help you show logical relationships. Here, the relationship is that the hospital-supplied model is "heavier"—that is, has more to recommend it—than the BYOD model.

The speakers added the checkmark to emphasize that the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the BYOD model.

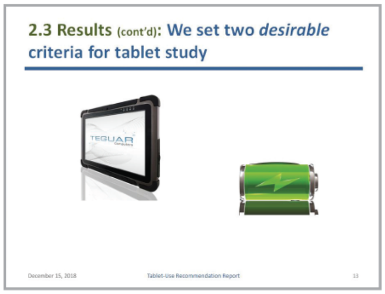


2.3 Results: We set four *necessary* criteria for tablet study

If the images you show are not your own intellectual property, you can legally display them in a college classroom because they are covered by the fair-use provisions of U.S. copyright law. However, if you display them in a business presentation, you would need formal written permission from the copyright holders. See Ch. 2, pp. 22–24, for more information.

Money: Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Chains on laptop: Elnur/Shutterstock.com. Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com.

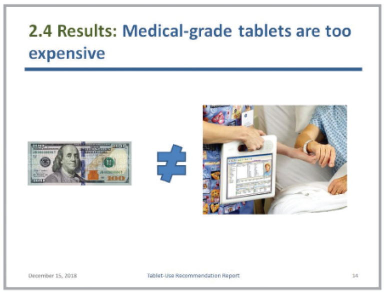
FIGURE 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation (continued)



2.3 Results (cont'd): We set two *desirable* criteria for tablet study

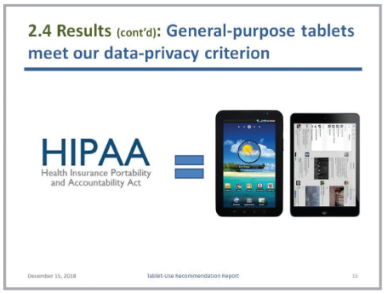
The speakers used the "appear" animation to display first the picture of the tablet and then the picture of the battery. This feature lets the speakers display on the screen only what they are discussing so that the audience is not distracted by other images.

TMT-1830-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. Battery: oxanaart/Shutterstock.com.



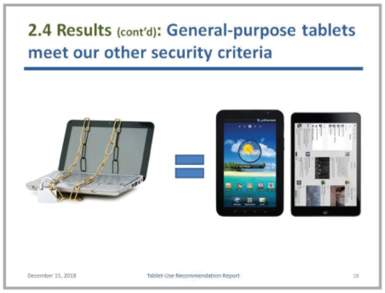
2.4 Results: Medical-grade tablets are too expensive

Money: Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore.



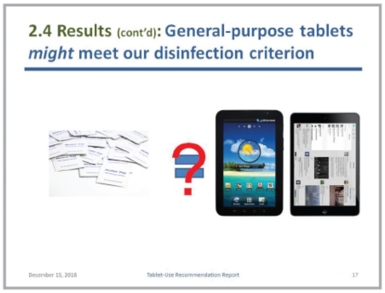
2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets meet our data-privacy criterion

HootSuite App for iPod: HootSuite.



2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets meet our other security criteria

Chains on laptop: Elnur/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

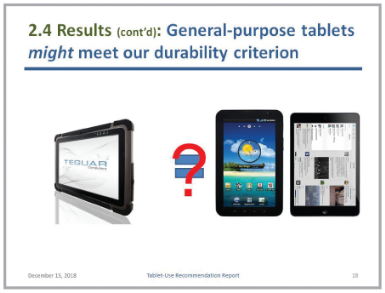


2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets *might* meet our disinfection criterion

The formatting that appears throughout the slide set — the background color, the horizontal rule, and the footer — is created in the Slide-Master view. This formatting appears in every slide unless you modify or delete it for that slide.

Note that the speakers use color — sparingly — for emphasis.

Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

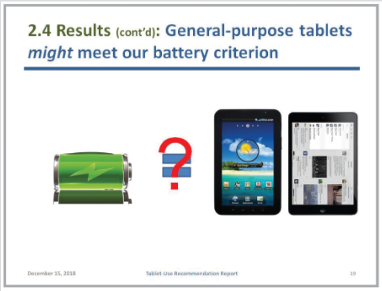


2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets *might* meet our durability criterion

TMT-1830-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

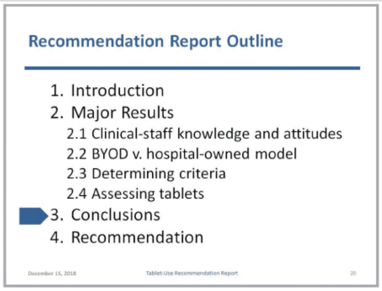
FIGURE 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation (continued)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



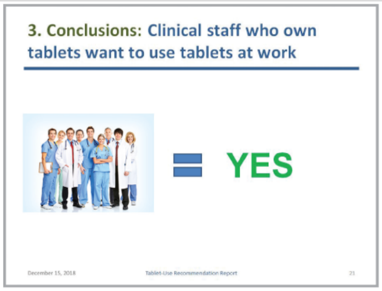
2.4 Results (cont'd): **General-purpose tablets *might* meet our battery criterion**

Battery: oxanaart/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.



Recommendation Report Outline

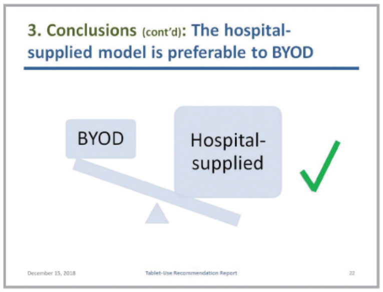
1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation



3. Conclusions: Clinical staff who own tablets want to use tablets at work

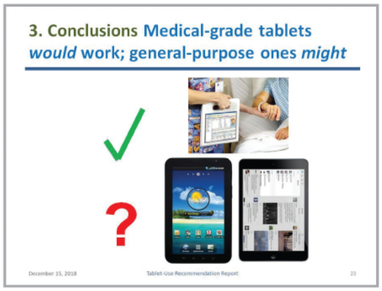
As discussed in Ch. 13, conclusions are inferences you draw from results.

Photo: kurhan/Shutterstock.com.



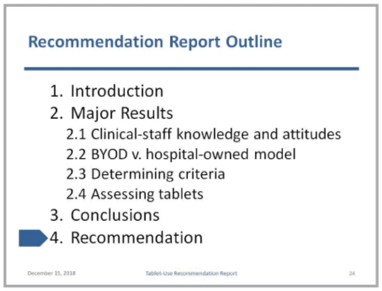
3. Conclusions (cont'd): **The hospital-supplied model is preferable to BYOD**

BYOD
Hospital-supplied
✓



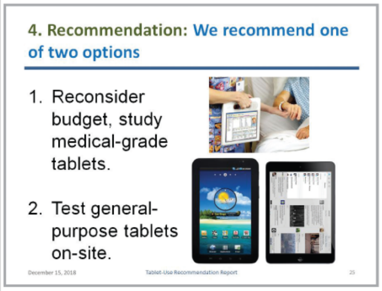
3. Conclusions Medical-grade tablets *would* work; general-purpose ones *might*

Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.



Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation



4. Recommendation: We recommend one of two options

1. Reconsider budget, study medical-grade tablets.
2. Test general-purpose tablets on-site.

As discussed in Ch. 13, recommendations are statements about what you think should be done next.

Some speakers like to make a final slide with the word *Questions?* on it to signal the end of the presentation. You can also display contact information (such as your email address) to encourage audience members to get in touch with you.

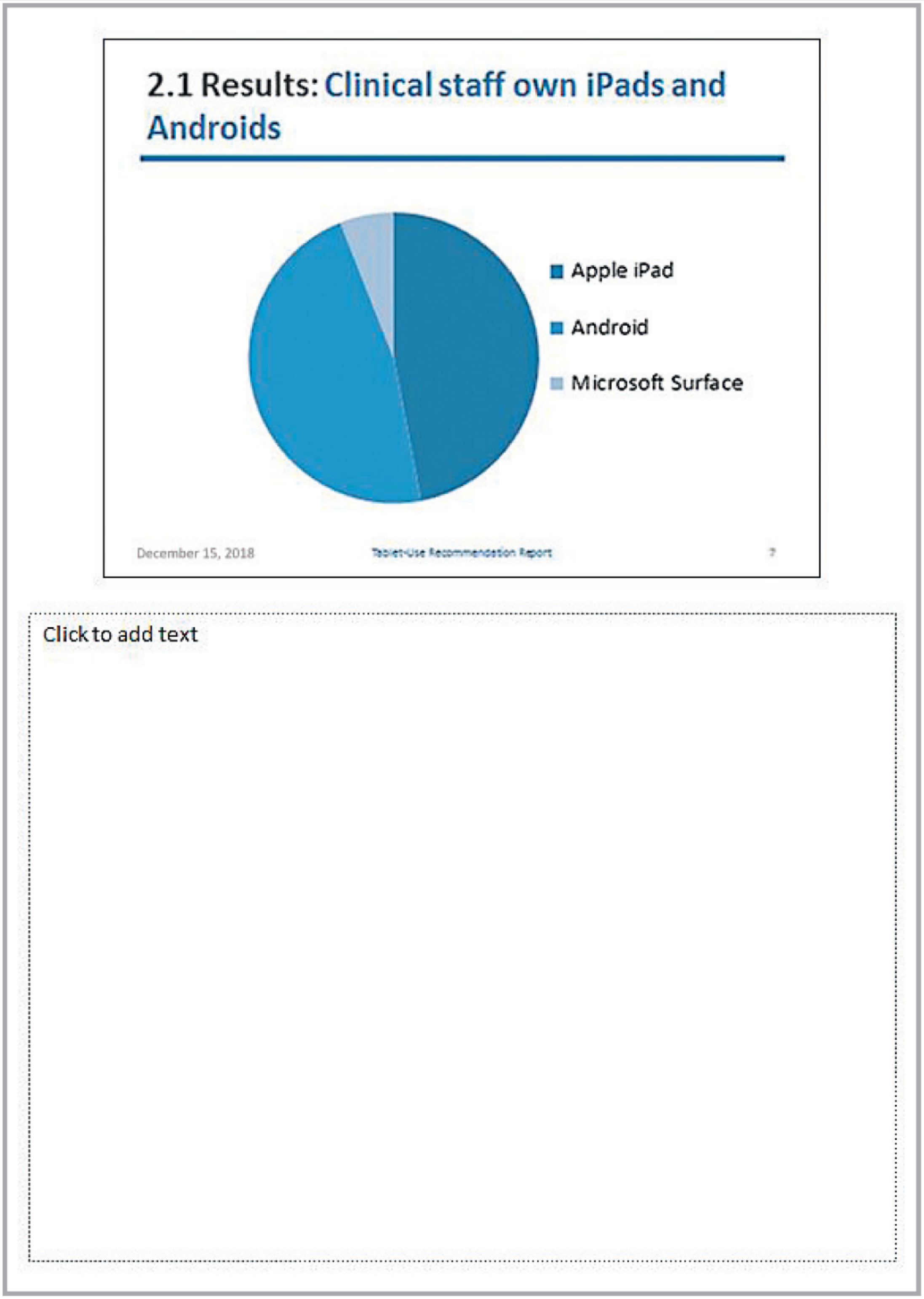
Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

Presentation software allows you to create two other kinds of documents — *speaking notes* and *handouts* — that can enhance a presentation. Figure 15.4 (on p. 436) shows a page of speaking notes.

Figure 15.5 (on p. 436) shows a page from a handout created from PowerPoint slides.



2.1 Results: Clinical staff own iPads and Androids

■ Apple iPad
■ Android
■ Microsoft Surface

December 15, 2018

Tablet-Use Recommendation Report

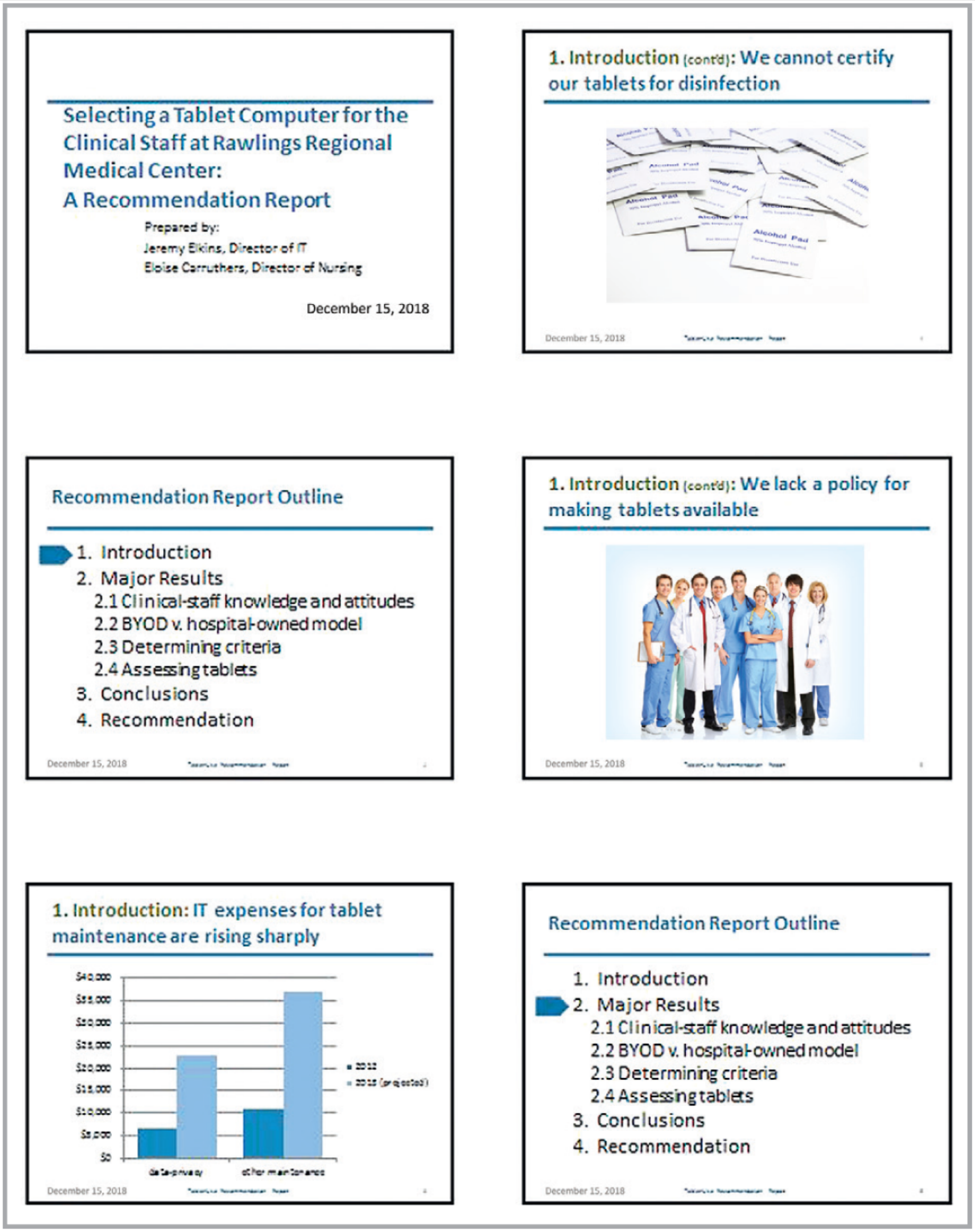
7

Click to add text

FIGURE 15.4 Speaking Notes

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

To create speaking notes for each slide, type the notes in the box under the picture of the slide, and then print the notes pages. You can print the slides on your notes pages in color or black and white. The problem with using speaking notes is that you cannot read your notes and maintain eye contact at the same time.



Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report

Prepared by:
Jeremy Elkins, Director of IT
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction (cont'd): We cannot certify our tablets for disinfection

December 15, 2018

Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction (cont'd): We lack a policy for making tablets available

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction: IT expenses for tablet maintenance are rising sharply

December 15, 2018

Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

December 15, 2018

Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com. Photo of health-care workers: kurhan/Shutterstock.com.

FIGURE 15.5 Handout

In PowerPoint, you use the Page Setup tab to configure the file for printing. You can set the software to display from one to nine slides on a page.

CHOOSING EFFECTIVE LANGUAGE

Delivering an oral presentation is more challenging than writing a document for two reasons:

1. Listeners can't reread something they didn't understand.
2. Because you are speaking live, you must maintain your listeners' attention, even if they are hungry or tired or the room is too hot.

Using language effectively helps you meet these two challenges.

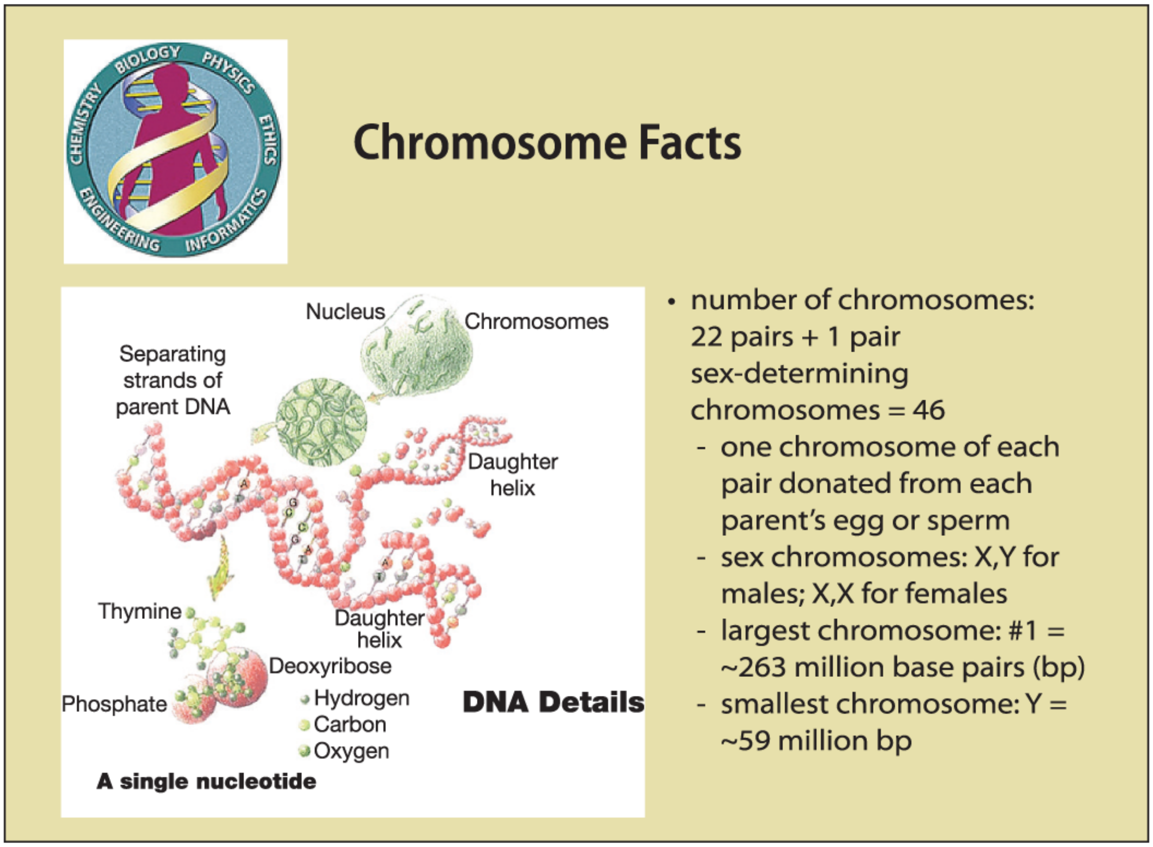
Using Language To Signal Advance Organizers, Summaries, and Transitions

Even if you use graphics effectively, listeners cannot "see" the organization of a presentation as well as readers can. For this reason, use language to alert your listeners to advance organizers, summaries, and transitions.

DOCUMENT ANALYSIS ACTIVITY

Integrating Graphics and Text on a Presentation Slide

The following slide is part of a presentation about the Human Genome Project. The questions below ask you to think about the discussion of preparing presentation graphics in this chapter.



BIOLOGY
PHYSICS
ETHICS
INFORMATICS
ENGINEERING
CHEMISTRY
Nucleus
Chromosomes
Separating strands of parent DNA
Daughter helix
Thymine
Daughter helix
Deoxyribose
Phosphate
Hydrogen
Carbon
Oxygen
A single nucleotide
DNA Details

Chromosome Facts

- number of chromosomes: 22 pairs + 1 pair sex-determining chromosomes = 46
  - one chromosome of each pair donated from each parent's egg or sperm
  - sex chromosomes: X,Y for males; X,X for females
  - largest chromosome: #1 = ~263 million base pairs (bp)
  - smallest chromosome: Y = ~59 million bp

1. How effective is the Human Genome Project logo in the upper left-hand corner of the slide?
2. How well does the graphic of DNA support the accompanying text on chromosome facts?
3. Overall, how effective is the presentation graphic?

- **Advance organizers.** Use an advance organizer (a statement that tells the listener what you are about to say) in the introduction. In addition, use advance organizers when you introduce main ideas in the body of the presentation.

- **Summaries.** The major summary is in the conclusion, but you might also summarize at strategic points in the body of the presentation. For instance, after a three- to four-minute discussion of a major point, you might summarize it in one sentence before going on to the next major point. Here is a sample summary from a conclusion:

  > Let me conclude by summarizing my three main points about the implications of the new RCRA regulations on the long-range waste-management strategy for Radnor Township. The first point is … The second point is … The third point is … I hope this presentation will give you some ideas as you think about the challenges of implementing the RCRA.

- **Transitions.** As you move from one point to the next, signal the transition clearly. Summarize the previous point, and then announce that you are moving to the next point:

  > It is clear, then, that the federal government has issued regulations without indicating how it expects county governments to comply with them. I'd like to turn now to my second main point.…

Using Memorable Language

Effective presentations require memorable language.

GUIDELINES Using Memorable Language in Oral Presentations

Draw on these three techniques to help make a lasting impression on your audience.

- **Involve the audience.** People are more interested in their own concerns than in yours. Talk to the audience about their problems and their solutions. In the introduction, establish a link between your topic and the audience's interests. For instance, a presentation to a city council about waste management might begin like this:

  > Picture yourself on the Radnor Township Council two years from now. After exhaustive hearings, proposals, and feasibility studies, you still don't have a waste-management plan that meets federal regulations. What you do have is a mounting debt: the township is being fined $1,000 per day until you implement an acceptable plan.

- **Refer to people, not to abstractions.** People remember specifics; they forget abstractions. To make a point memorable, describe it in human terms:

  > What could you do with that $365,000 every year? In each computer lab in each school in the township, you could replace each laptop every three years instead of every four years. Or you could expand your school-lunch program to feed every needy child in the township. Or you could extend your after-school programs to cover an additional 3,000 students.

- **Use interesting facts, figures, and quotations.** Search the internet for interesting information about your subject. For instance, you might find a brief quotation from an authoritative figure in the field or a famous person not generally associated with the field (for example, Theodore Roosevelt on waste management and the environment).

REHEARSING THE PRESENTATION

Even the most gifted speakers need to rehearse. It is a good idea to set aside enough time to rehearse your speech thoroughly.

Rehearsing the Extemporaneous Presentation

Rehearse your extemporaneous presentation at least three times.

- **First rehearsal.** Don't worry about posture or voice projection. Just deliver your presentation aloud with your presentation slides. Your goal is to see if the speech makes sense — if you can explain all the points and create effective transitions. If you have trouble, stop and try to figure out the problem. If you need more information, get it. If you need a better transition, create one. You are likely to learn that you need to revise the order of your slides. Pick up where you left off and continue the rehearsal, stopping again where necessary to revise.
- **Second rehearsal.** This time, the presentation should flow more easily. Make any necessary changes to the slides. When you have complete control over the organization and flow, check to see if you are within the time limit.
- **Third rehearsal.** After a satisfactory second rehearsal, try the presentation under more realistic circumstances — if possible, in front of others. The listeners might offer questions or constructive advice about your speaking style. If people aren't available, record a video of the presentation on your computer or phone, and then evaluate your own delivery. If you can visit the site of the presentation to rehearse there, you will find giving the actual speech a little easier.

Rehearse again until you are satisfied with your presentation, but don't try to memorize it.

THINKING VISUALLY

Delivering the Presentation

Calming Your Nerves

Apprehension about public speaking is common. Keep in mind three facts about nervousness:

- You are much more **AWARE** of your nervousness than the audience is.
- Nervousness gives you **ENERGY** and **ENTHUSIASM.**
- After a few minutes, your **NERVOUSNESS WILL PASS.**

Experienced speakers offer three tips for coping with nervousness:

- Realize that you are **PREPARED.**
- Realize that **THE AUDIENCE IS THERE TO HEAR YOU,** not to judge you.
- Realize that your audience is made up of **INDIVIDUAL PEOPLE** who happen to be sitting in the same room.

Releasing Nervous Energy

Experienced speakers suggest the following four strategies for dealing with nervousness before a presentation:

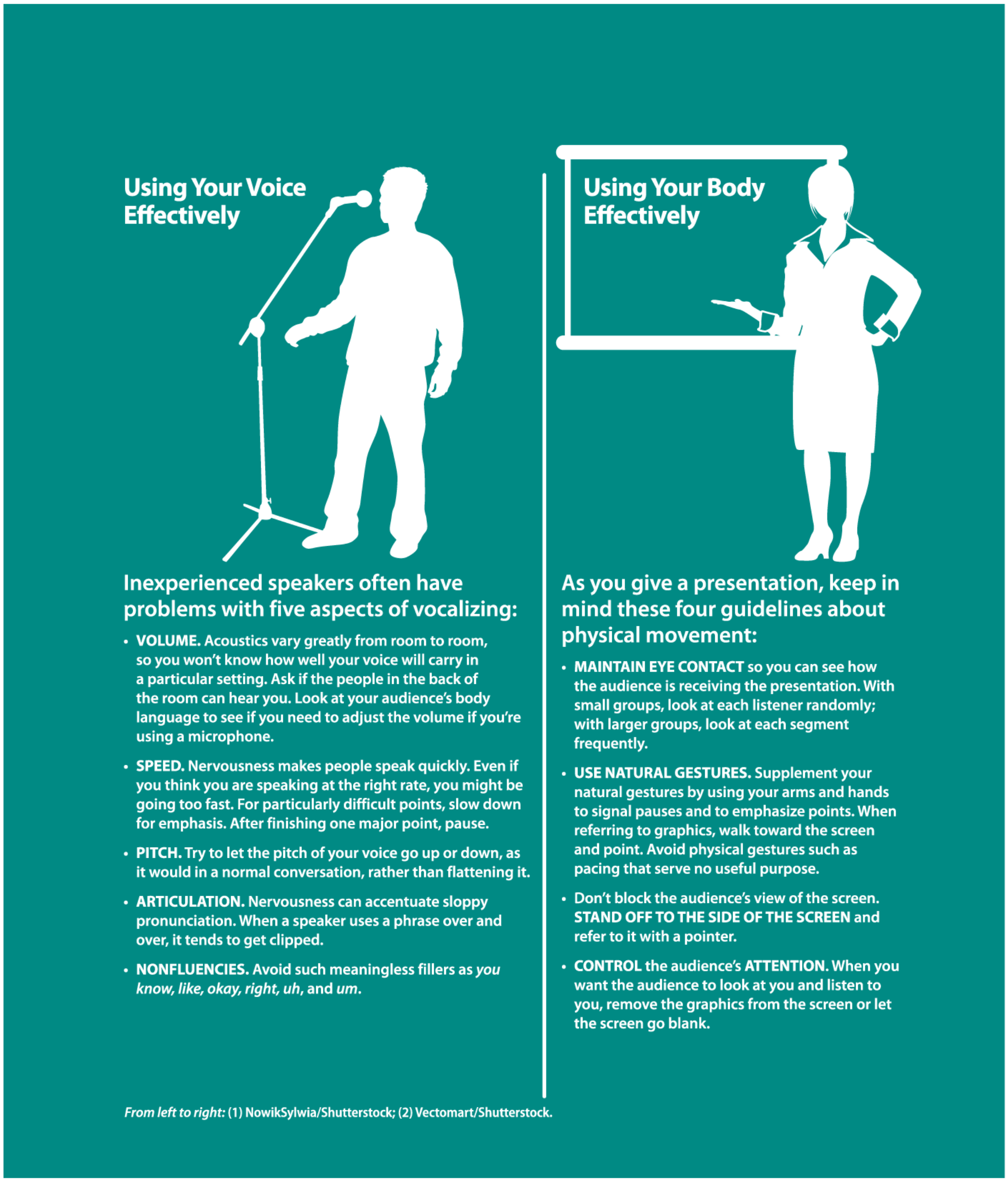
- **WALK AROUND BRISKLY** for a minute or two.
- **TALK WITH SOMEONE** for a few minutes.
- **GO OFF BY YOURSELF** for a few minutes and compose your thoughts.
- **TAKE SEVERAL DEEP BREATHS,** exhaling slowly.

Following these six recommendations can help you handle nervousness during a presentation:

- **WALK UP SLOWLY** and **ARRANGE YOUR NOTES** at the podium.
- **TAKE A SIP OF WATER** if it is available.
- **LOOK OUT AT THE AUDIENCE** for a few seconds before you begin.
- **BEGIN WITH "GOOD MORNING"** (or "Good afternoon" or "Good evening"), and refer to any officers and dignitaries present. If you have not been introduced, introduce yourself. In less-formal contexts, just begin.
- Use your voice and your body to **PROJECT AN ATTITUDE OF RESTRAINED SELF-CONFIDENCE.**
- **SHOW INTEREST** in your topic and knowledge about your subject.

From left to right: (1) Majivecka/Shutterstock; (2) Fiscus777/Shutterstock.

Left: Majivecka/Shutterstock; right: Fiscus777/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



Using Your Voice Effectively

Inexperienced speakers often have problems with five aspects of vocalizing:

- **VOLUME.** Acoustics vary greatly from room to room, so you won't know how well your voice will carry in a particular setting. Ask if the people in the back of the room can hear you. Look at your audience's body language to see if you need to adjust the volume if you're using a microphone.
- **SPEED.** Nervousness makes people speak quickly. Even if you think you are speaking at the right rate, you might be going too fast. For particularly difficult points, slow down for emphasis. After finishing one major point, pause.
- **PITCH.** Try to let the pitch of your voice go up or down, as it would in a normal conversation, rather than flattening it.
- **ARTICULATION.** Nervousness can accentuate sloppy pronunciation. When a speaker uses a phrase over and over, it tends to get clipped.
- **NONFLUENCIES.** Avoid such meaningless fillers as *you know, like, okay, right, uh,* and *um*.

Using Your Body Effectively

As you give a presentation, keep in mind these four guidelines about physical movement:

- **MAINTAIN EYE CONTACT** so you can see how the audience is receiving the presentation. With small groups, look at each listener randomly; with larger groups, look at each segment frequently.
- **USE NATURAL GESTURES.** Supplement your natural gestures by using your arms and hands to signal pauses and to emphasize points. When referring to graphics, walk toward the screen and point. Avoid physical gestures such as pacing that serve no useful purpose.
- Don't block the audience's view of the screen. **STAND OFF TO THE SIDE OF THE SCREEN** and refer to it with a pointer.
- **CONTROL** the audience's **ATTENTION.** When you want the audience to look at you and listen to you, remove the graphics from the screen or let the screen go blank.

From left to right: (1) NowikSylwia/Shutterstock; (2) Vectomart/Shutterstock.

Left: NowikSylwia/Shutterstock; right: Vectomart/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

PRESENTING TO ALL AUDIENCES

If your audience includes people of different cultures and languages, keep in mind the following suggestions:

- **Hire translators and interpreters if necessary.** If many people in the audience do not understand your language, hire interpreters (people who translate your words as you speak them) and translators (people who translate your written material in advance).
- **Use graphics effectively to reinforce your points.** Try to devise ways to present information using graphics — flowcharts, diagrams, and so forth — to help your listeners understand you. Putting more textual information on graphics will allow your listeners to see as well as hear your points.
- **Be aware that gestures can have culturally based meanings.** American hand gestures (such as the thumbs-up sign or the "okay" gesture) have different — and sometimes insulting — meanings in other cultures. Therefore, it's a good idea to avoid the use of these gestures. You can't go wrong with an arms-out, palms-up gesture that projects openness and inclusiveness.

If your audience includes people with varying abilities, keep in mind the following suggestions:

- Provide handouts in accessible formats ahead of time for audience members to study and review.
- Hire a sign-language specialist who can translate your presentation for audience members who are hard hearing.
- Make a transcript of your talk available for audience members who are hard of hearing.

- Provide a recording of the presentation for audience members who can’t take notes.

Answering Questions After a Presentation

When you finish a presentation, thank the audience simply and directly: “Thank you for your attention.” Then invite questions. Don’t abruptly ask, “Any questions?” This phrasing suggests that you don’t really want any questions. Instead, say something like this: “If you have any questions, I’ll be happy to try to answer them now.” If invited politely, people will be much more likely to ask questions, and you will be more likely to succeed in communicating your information effectively.

When you respond to questions, you might encounter any of these situations:

- **You’re not sure everyone heard the question.** Ask if people heard it. If they didn’t, repeat or paraphrase it, perhaps as an introduction to your response: “Your question is about the efficiency of these three techniques.” Some speakers always repeat the question, which gives them an extra moment to prepare an answer.
- **You don’t understand the question.** Ask for clarification. After responding, ask if you have answered the question adequately.
- **You have already answered the question during the presentation.** Restate the answer politely. Begin your answer

with a phrase such as the following: “I’m sorry I didn’t make that point clear in my talk. I wanted to explain how ...” Never insult an audience member by pointing out that you already answered the question.

- **A belligerent member of the audience rejects your response and insists on restating his or her original point.** Politely offer to discuss the matter further after the presentation. If you are lucky, the person won’t continue to bore or annoy the rest of the audience.

If it is appropriate to stay after the session to talk individually with members of the audience, offer to do so.

ETHICS NOTE

ANSWERING QUESTIONS HONESTLY

If an audience member asks a question to which you do not know the answer, admit it. Simply say, “I don’t know” or “I’m not sure, but I think the answer is . . .” Smart people know that they don’t know everything. If you have some ideas about how to find out the answer — by checking a particular reference source, for example — share them. If the question is obviously important to the person who asked it, you might offer to meet with him or her to discuss ways for you to provide a more complete response later, perhaps by email.

SPEAKER'S CHECKLIST

☐ Did you analyze the speaking situation — the audience and purpose of the presentation?
☐ Did you determine how much information you can communicate in your allotted time?
☐ Did you consider the variables of your presentation setting?
☐ Did you choose an appropriate organizational pattern and determine what kinds of information to present?
☐ Did you create an outline?
☐ Did you plan your introduction and your conclusion?

Does each presentation graphic have the following characteristics?

☐ It presents a clear, well-supported claim.
☐ It is easy to see.
☐ It is easy to read.
☐ It is simple.
☐ It is correct.
☐ In planning your graphics, did you consider the length of your presentation, your audience's aptitude and experience, the presentation setting, and the equipment available?
☐ Do your graphics help the audience understand the organization of your presentation?

☐ Did you use language to signal advance organizers, summaries, and transitions?
☐ Did you choose language that is vivid and memorable?
☐ Did you rehearse your presentation several times, recording it or using a live audience?
☐ Did you consider the needs of all audience members, including those from other cultures and those with varying physical abilities?

EXERCISES

1. Learn some of the basic functions of a presentation software program. For instance, modify a template, create your own original design, add footer information to a master slide, insert a graphic on a slide, and set the animation feature so that at first just the first bullet item on a slide appears and then a mouse click brings up the second bullet item.
2. Using PowerPoint, or Google Slides design a master slide for a presentation for one of your classes. If you are unfamiliar with how to create a master slide, consult PowerPoint's help files. Be prepared to explain the design to your classmates.
3. Prepare a five-minute presentation, including graphics, on one of the following topics. The audience for your

presentation will consist of the other students in your class, and your purpose will be to introduce them to an aspect of your academic field.

   a. Define a key term or concept in your field.
   b. Describe how a particular device or technology is used in your field.
   c. Describe how to carry out a procedure common in your field.

4. **TEAM EXERCISE** Prepare a five-minute presentation based either on the proposal for a research project that you prepared in Chapter 11 or on your recommendation report for that project. Your audience will consist of the other students in your class, and your purpose will be to introduce them to your topic. Your instructor might have you work on this assignment collaboratively.

CASE 15: Writing an Oral Presentation

You have been invited to a student conference to make an oral presentation of a paper you wrote for a class. You run a few ideas by a friend, who offers great pointers. She's offered to look at your revised speaking notes, so you need to get to work. If your instructor has assigned it, go to Achieve to get started.

Appendix:

Reference Handbook

Part A: Documenting Your Sources

- Note Taking
- APA Style
- IEEE Style
- MLA Style

Part B: Editing and Proofreading Your Documents

Punctuation

Mechanics

Part A: Documenting Your Sources

Documentation identifies the sources of the ideas and the quotations in your document. Documentation consists of the citations in the text throughout your document and the reference list (or list of works cited) at the end of your document. Documentation serves three basic functions:

- **It helps you acknowledge your debt to your sources.** Complete and accurate documentation is a professional obligation, a matter of ethics. Failure to document a source, whether intentional or unintentional, is plagiarism. At most colleges and universities, plagiarism can mean automatic failure of the course and, in some instances, suspension or expulsion. In many companies, it is grounds for immediate dismissal.
- **It helps you establish credibility.** Effective documentation helps you place your document within the general context of continuing research and helps you define it as a responsible contribution to knowledge in the field. Knowing how to use existing research is one mark of a professional.
- **It helps your readers find your source in case they want to read more about a particular subject.**

  Three kinds of material should always be documented:
- **Any quotation from a written source or an interview, even if it is only a few words.**

- **A paraphrased idea, concept, or opinion gathered from your reading.** There is one exception. An idea or concept so well known that it has become general knowledge, such as Einstein's theory of relativity, needs no citation. If you are unsure about whether an item is general knowledge, document it, just to be safe.
- **Any graphic from a written or an electronic source.** Cite the source for a graphic next to the graphic or in the reference list. For an online source, be sure to include a retrieval statement, URL, or DOI in the bibliographic entry. If you are publishing your work, you must also obtain permission to use any graphic protected by copyright unless your use falls under the Fair Use clause.

For more about using graphics from other sources, see Ch. 8, p. 196.

Just as organizations have their own rules for formatting and punctuation, many organizations also have their own documentation styles. For documents prepared in the workplace, find out your organization's style and abide by it. Check with your instructor to see which documentation system to use in the documents you write for class. The documentation systems included in this section of the appendix are based on the following style manuals:

- *Publication manual of the American Psychological Association* (7th ed.). (2019). APA. This system, referred to as *APA style,* is used widely in the social sciences.

- *IEEE editorial style manual*. (2019). IEEE. This manual provides editorial guidelines for IEEE transactions, journals, and letters, but it is often used for the production of technical documents in areas ranging from computer engineering, biomedical technology, and telecommunications to electric power, aerospace, and consumer electronics.
- *MLA handbook* (9th ed.). (2021). Modern Language Association. This system, referred to as *MLA style*, is used widely in the humanities.

Note Taking

Most note taking involves three kinds of activities: paraphrasing, quoting, and summarizing.

PARAPHRASING

A paraphrase is a restatement, in your own words, of someone else's words. If you simply copy someone else's words — even a mere two or three in a row if the phrasing is distinctive — you must use quotation marks.

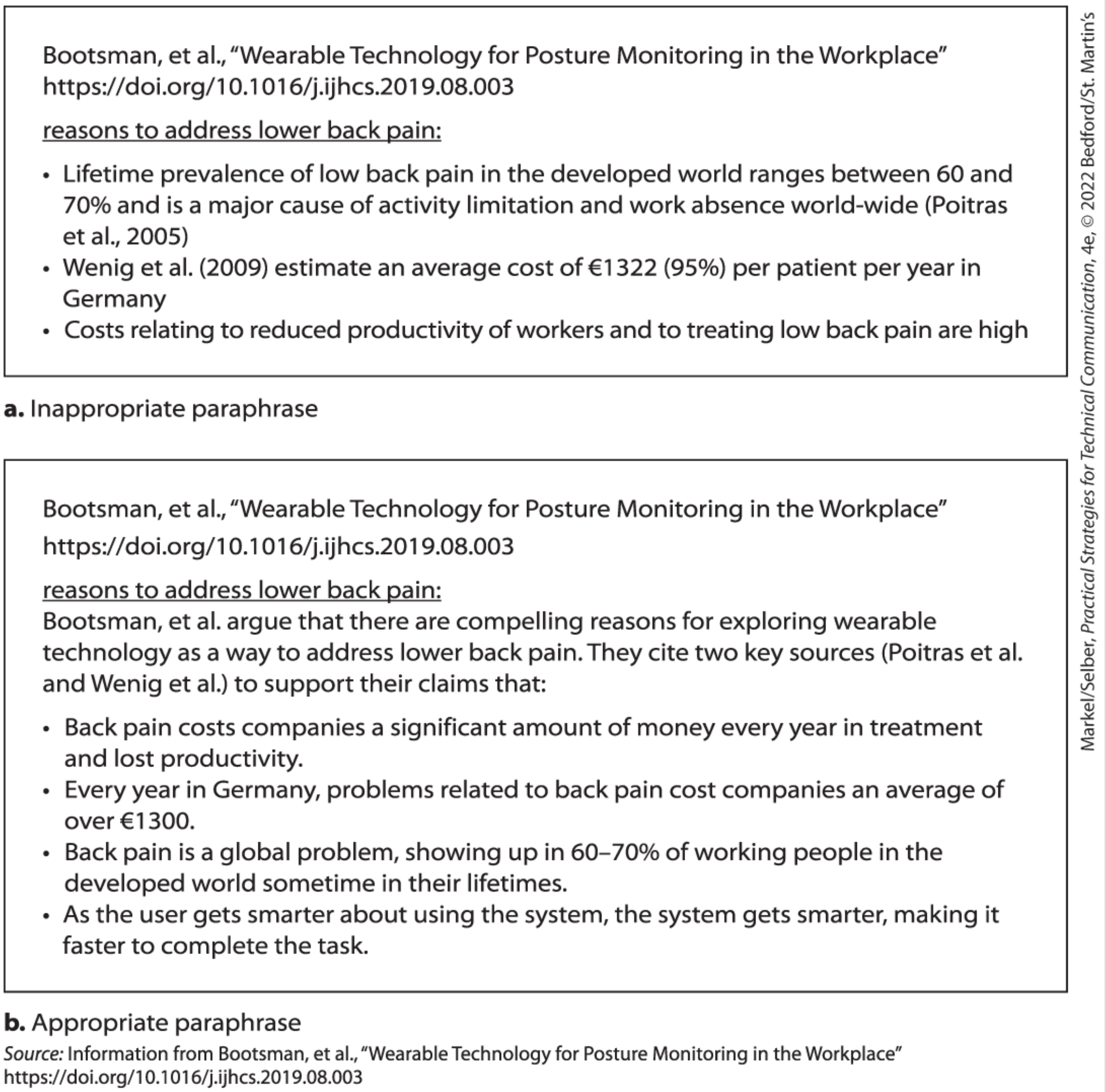
In taking notes, what kind of material should you paraphrase? Any information that you think might be useful: background data, descriptions of mechanisms or processes, test results, and so forth.

Figure A.1 shows a paraphrased passage based on the following discussion. The author is explaining the concept of performance-centered design.

Original Passage

Roughly a decade has elapsed since the introduction of commodity level activity trackers such as the Fitbit™. Currently there is a thriving industry and a fast-growing research field concerned with the development of wearable systems for personal health monitoring. The majority of available devices are wrist worn, placed inside pockets, or clipped onto clothing. As electronics are further miniaturized and as e-textiles are becoming increasingly available, it also becomes more feasible to integrate electronics into “smart” garments to support healthy living and rehabilitation. This emerging application area presents opportunities and corresponding challenges pertaining to industrial design, interaction design, and ensuring the potential effectiveness of these solutions. This paper presents a design driven investigation that combines these perspectives for the design and evaluation of BackUp: a smart garment to support occupational low back pain prevention for nurses.

Low back pain is widespread; the lifetime prevalence of low back pain in the developed world ranges between 60 and 70% and is a major cause of activity limitation and work absence worldwide (Poitras et al., 2005). Costs relating to reduced productivity of workers and to treating low back pain are high; for example, Wenig et al. (2009) estimate an average cost of €1322 (95%) per patient per year in Germany. Such observations motivate the development of technologies to help prevent and treat low back pain.



Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace"
https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

reasons to address lower back pain:

- Lifetime prevalence of low back pain in the developed world ranges between 60 and 70% and is a major cause of activity limitation and work absence world-wide (Poitras et al., 2005)
- Wenig et al. (2009) estimate an average cost of €1322 (95%) per patient per year in Germany
- Costs relating to reduced productivity of workers and to treating low back pain are high

a. Inappropriate paraphrase

Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace"
https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

reasons to address lower back pain:
Bootsman, et al. argue that there are compelling reasons for exploring wearable technology as a way to address lower back pain. They cite two key sources (Poitras et al. and Wenig et al.) to support their claims that:

- Back pain costs companies a significant amount of money every year in treatment and lost productivity.
- Every year in Germany, problems related to back pain cost companies an average of over €1300.
- Back pain is a global problem, showing up in 60–70% of working people in the developed world sometime in their lifetimes.
- As the user gets smarter about using the system, the system gets smarter, making it faster to complete the task.

b. Appropriate paraphrase

Source: Information from Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace" https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

FIGURE A.1 Inappropriate and Appropriate Paraphrased Notes

This paraphrase is inappropriate because the three bulleted points are taken word for word from the original. The fact that the student omitted the context from the original and that they cite third party sources is irrelevant. These are direct quotes, not paraphrases.

This paraphrase is appropriate because the words are different from those used in the original.

When you turn your notes into a document, you are likely to reword your paraphrases. As you revise your document, check a copy of the original source document to be sure you haven't unintentionally reverted to the wording from the original source.

GUIDELINES Paraphrasing Accurately

- **Study the original until you understand it thoroughly.**
- **Rewrite the relevant portions of the original**. Use complete sentences, fragments, or lists, but don’t compress the material so much that you’ll have trouble understanding it later.
- **Title the information so that you’ll be able to identify its subject at a glance**. The title should include the general subject and the author’s attitude or approach to it, such as “Criticism of open-sea pollution-control devices.”
- **Include the author’s last name, a short title of the article or book, and the page number of the original**. You will need this information later in citing your source.

QUOTING

Sometimes you will want to quote a source, either to preserve the author’s particularly well-expressed or emphatic phrasing or to lend authority to your discussion. Avoid quoting passages of more than two or three sentences, or your document will look like a mere compilation. Your job is to integrate an author’s words and ideas into your own thinking, not merely to introduce a series of quotations.

Although you probably won’t be quoting long passages in your document, recording a complete quotation in your notes will help you recall its meaning and context more accurately when you are ready to integrate it into your own work.

The simplest form of quotation is an author’s exact statement:

> As Jones states, “Solar energy won’t make much of a difference for at least a decade.”

To add an explanatory word or phrase to a quotation, use brackets:

> As Nelson states, “It [the oil glut] will disappear before we understand it.”

Use ellipses (three spaced dots) to show that you are omitting part of an author’s statement:

ORIGINAL STATEMENT	“The generator, which we purchased in May, has turned out to be one of our wisest investments.”
ELLIPTICAL QUOTATION	“The generator … has turned out to be one of our wisest investments.”

According to the documentation style recommended by the Modern Language Association (MLA), if the author’s original statement has ellipses, you should add brackets around the ellipses that you introduce:

ORIGINAL STATEMENT	“I think reuse adoption offers … the promise to improve business in a number of ways.”
ELLIPTICAL QUOTATION	“I think reuse adoption offers … the promise to improve business […] .”

SUMMARIZING

Summarizing is the process of rewriting a passage in your own words to make it shorter while still retaining its essential message. Writers summarize to help them learn a body of information or create a draft of one or more of the summaries that will go into the document.

GUIDELINES Summarizing

The following advice focuses on extracting the essence of a passage by summarizing it.

- **Read the passage carefully several times.**
- **Underline key ideas**. Look for them in the titles, headings, topic sentences, transitional paragraphs, and concluding paragraphs.
- **Combine key ideas**. Study what you have underlined. Paraphrase the underlined ideas. Don't worry about your grammar, punctuation, or style at this point.
- **Check your draft against the original for accuracy and emphasis**. Check that you have recorded statistics and names correctly and that your version of a complicated concept faithfully represents the original. Check that you got the proportions right; if the original devotes 20 percent of its space to a particular point, your draft should not devote 5 percent or 50 percent to that point.
- **Record the bibliographic information carefully**. Even though a summary might contain all your own words, you still must cite it, because the main ideas are someone else's. If you don't have the bibliographic information in an electronic form, put it on a card.

APA Style

APA (American Psychological Association) style consists of two elements: citations in the text and a list of references at the end of the document.

APA Style for Textual Citations

1. Summarized or Paraphrased Material
2. Quoted Material or Specific Fact

3. Source with Multiple Authors
4. Source Authored by an Organization
5. Source with an Unknown Author
6. Multiple Authors with the Same Last Name
7. Multiple Sources in One Citation
8. Personal Communication
9. Electronic Document

APA Style for Reference List Entries

BOOKS
- 10. Book by One Author
- 11. Book by Multiple Authors
- 12. Multiple Books by the Same Author
- 13. Book Authored by an Organization
- 14. Book by an Unknown Author
- 15. Edited Book
- 16. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book
- 17. Book in an Edition Other Than the First
- 18. Multivolume Work
- 19. Translated Book
- 20. Non-English Book
- 21. Entry in a Reference Work

PERIODICALS
- 22. Journal Article
- 23. Magazine Article
- 24. Newspaper Article
- 25. Newsletter Article

ELECTRONIC SOURCES
- 26. Nonperiodical Web Document

Journal Articles
- 27. Article with DOI Assigned
- 28. Article with No DOI Assigned
- 29. Preprint Version of Article

Electronic Books
- 30. Entire Book

Dissertations and Theses
- 31. Dissertation Retrieved from Database

Reference Materials
- 32. Online Encyclopedia
- 33. Online Dictionary
- 34. Wiki

Raw Data
- 35. Data Set
- 36. Graphic Representation of Data
- 37. Qualitative Data

Other Electronic Documents
- 38. Technical or Research Report
- 39. Presentation Slides

General-Interest Media and Alternative Presses
- 40. Newspaper Article
- 41. Audio Podcast
- 42. Online Magazine Content Not Found in Print Version

Online Communities
- 43. Message Posted to an Electronic Mailing List, Online Forum, or Discussion Group
- 44. Blog Post
- 45. Email Message or Real-Time Communication

OTHER SOURCES
- 46. Technical or Research Report
- 47. Government Document
- 48. Brochure or Pamphlet
- 49. Article from Conference Proceedings
- 50. Lecture or Speech
- 51. Audio Recording
- 52. Motion Picture
- 53. Television Program
- 54. Published Interview
- 55. Personal Interview
- 56. Personal Correspondence
- 57. Unpublished Data

APA TEXTUAL CITATIONS

In APA style, a textual citation typically includes the name of the source's author and the date of its publication. Textual citations vary depending on the type of information cited, the number of authors, and the context of the citation. The following models illustrate a variety of common textual citations; for additional examples, consult the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association.*

1. Summarized or Paraphrased Material

For material or ideas that you have summarized or paraphrased, include the author's name and the publication date in parentheses immediately following the borrowed information.

> This phenomenon was identified almost 70 years ago (Wilkinson, 1948).

If your sentence already includes the source's name, do not repeat it in the parenthetical notation.

> Wilkinson (1948) identified this phenomenon almost 70 years ago.

2. Quoted Material or Specific Fact

If the reference is to a specific fact, idea, or quotation, add the page number(s) from the source to your citation.

> This phenomenon was identified almost 70 years ago (Wilkinson, 1948, p. 36).

> Wilkinson (1948) identified this phenomenon almost 70 years ago (p. 36).

3. Source with Multiple Authors

For a source written by two authors, cite both names. Use an ampersand (&) in the parenthetical citation itself, but use the word *and* in regular text.

(Tyshenko & Paterson, 2020)

Tyshenko and Paterson (2020) argued …

For a source written by three or more authors, include only the last name of the first author followed by *et al.*

Citation

Cashman et al. (2020) found …

4. Source Authored by an Organization

If the author is an organization rather than a person, use the name of the organization.

There is ongoing discussion of the scope and practice of nursing informatics (American Nurses Association, 2019).

In a policy statement, the American Nurses Association (2019) discusses the scope and practice of nursing informatics.

If the organization name is commonly abbreviated, you may include the abbreviation in the first citation and use it in any subsequent citations.

First Text Citation
(International Business Machines [IBM], 2018)

Subsequent Citations
(IBM, 2018)

5. Source with an Unknown Author

If the source does not identify an author, use a shortened version of the title in your parenthetical citation.

> Hawking made the discovery that under precise conditions, thermal radiation could exit black holes ("World Scientists," 2016).

If the author is identified as anonymous — a rare occurrence — treat *Anonymous* as a real name.

> (Anonymous, 2020)

6. Multiple Authors with the Same Last Name

Use first initials if two or more sources have authors with the same last name.

> B. Porter (2019) created a more stable platform for database transfers, while A. L. Porter (2017) focused primarily on latitudinal peer-to-peer outcome interference.

7. Multiple Sources in One Citation

When you refer to two or more sources in one citation, present the sources in alphabetical order, separated by a semicolon.

> This phenomenon has been well documented (Houlding, 2019; Jessen, 2014).

8. Personal Communication

When you cite personal interviews, phone calls, letters, memos, and emails, include the words *personal communication* and the date of the communication.

> D. E. Walls (personal communication, April 3, 2019) provided the prior history of his …

9. Electronic Document

Cite the author and date for an electronic source as you would for other kinds of documents. If the author is unknown, give a shortened version of the title in your parenthetical citation. If the date is unknown, use *n.d.* (for *no date*).

> Interpersonal relationships are complicated by differing goals (Hoffman, n.d.).

If the document is posted as a PDF file, include the page number in the citation. If a page number is not available, give the paragraph number. If the source does not number its paragraphs, you may need to count them yourself.

> (Tong, 2017, para. 4)

If no page number is available and the source has headings, cite the appropriate heading and paragraph.

> The CDC (2017) warns that babies born to women who smoke during pregnancy are 30% more likely to be born prematurely (The Reality section, para. 3).

THE APA REFERENCE LIST

A reference list provides the information your readers will need in order to find each source you have cited in the text. It should not include sources you read but did not use.

For a sample APA-style reference list, see p. 461.

Following are some guidelines for an APA-style reference list.

- **Arranging entries.** Arrange the entries alphabetically by author's last name. If two or more works are by the same author, arrange them by date, earliest to latest. If two or more works are by the same author in the same year, list them alphabetically by title and include a lowercase letter after the date: 2010a, 2010b, and so on. Alphabetize works by an organization by the first significant word in the name of the organization.
- **Book titles.** Italicize titles of books. Capitalize only the first word of the book's title, the first word of the subtitle, and any proper nouns.
- **Publication information.** For books, give the publisher's name in as brief a form as is intelligible; retain the words *Books* and *Press*.
- **Periodical titles.** Italicize titles of periodicals and capitalize all major words.
- **Article titles.** Do not italicize titles of articles or place them in quotation marks. Capitalize only the first word of the article's title and subtitle and any proper nouns.
- **Electronic sources.** Include as much information as you can about electronic sources, such as author, date of publication, identifying numbers, and retrieval information. Include the digital object identifier (DOI) when one exists. Remember that electronic information changes frequently. If the content of an

electronic source is likely to change, be sure to record the date you retrieved the information.

- **Indenting.** Use a hanging indent, with the first line of each entry flush with the left margin and all subsequent lines indented one-half inch:

  > Ganegoda, D. B., & Bordia, P. (2019). I can be happy for you, but not all the time: A contingency model of envy and positive empathy in the workplace. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 104*(6), 776–795.

  Your instructor may prefer a paragraph indent, in which the first line of each entry is indented one-half inch:

  > Ganegoda, D. B., & Bordia, P. (2019). I can be happy for you, but not all the time: A contingency model of envy and positive empathy in the workplace. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 104*(6), 776–795.

- **Spacing.** Double-space the entire reference list. Do not add extra space between entries.
- **Page numbers.** When citing a range of page numbers for an article, always give the complete numbers (for example, 121–124, *not* 121–24 or 121–4). If an article continues on subsequent pages after being interrupted by other articles or advertisements, use a comma to separate the page numbers. Use the abbreviation *p.* or *pp.* only with articles in newspapers, chapters in edited books, and articles from proceedings published as a book.
- **Dates.** Follow the format year, month, day, with a comma after only the year: (2020, October 31).

Following are models of reference list entries for a variety of sources. For further examples of APA-style entries, consult the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association.*

BOOKS

10. Book by One Author

Begin with the author's last name, followed by the first initial or initials. Include a space between initials. Place the year of publication in parentheses, then give the title of the book, followed by the name of the publisher.

> Treuer, D. (2019). *The heartbeat of Wounded Knee: Native America from 1890 to the present*. Riverhead Books.

11. Book by Multiple Authors

When citing a work from two to twenty authors, separate the authors' names with a comma or commas, and use an ampersand (&) instead of *and* before the final author's name.

> Natterson-Horowitz, B., & Bowers, K. (2019). *Wildhood: The epic journey from adolescence to adulthood in humans and other animals*. Scribner.

To cite more than 20 authors, list only the first 19, followed by three dots (an ellipsis) and the last author's name.

12. Multiple Books by the Same Author

Arrange the entries by date, with the earliest date first. If you use multiple works by the same author written in the same year, arrange the books alphabetically by title and include *a*, *b*, and so forth after the year — both in your reference list and in your parenthetical citations.

Gladwell, M. (2019a). *Talking to strangers: What we should know about the people we don't know*. Little, Brown and Company.

Gladwell, M. (2019b, January 14). Is marijuana as safe as we think? *The New Yorker*. https://www.newyorker.com/magazine/2019/01/14/is-marijuana-assafe-as-we-think

Agger, B. (2007a). *Fast families, virtual children: A critical sociology of families and schooling*. Paradigm.

Agger, B. (2007b). *Public sociology: From social facts to literary acts.* Rowman & Littlefield.

13. Book Authored by an Organization

Use the full name of the organization in place of an author's name. If the organization is also the publisher, use the word *Author* in place of the publisher's name.

Human Rights Watch. (2018). *World report 2019: Events of 2018*. Seven Stories Press.

14. Book by an Unknown Author

If the author of the book is unknown, begin with the title in italics.

Atlas of the world. (2019). Oxford University Press.

15. Edited Book

Place the abbreviation *Ed.* (singular) or *Eds.* (plural) in parentheses after the name(s), followed by a period.

Yeh, K.-H. (Ed.). (2019). *Asian indigenous psychologies in the global context*. Palgrave.

16. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book

Pettigrew, D. (2018). The suppression of cultural memory and identity in Bosnia and Herzegovina. In J. Lindert & A. T. Marsoobian (Eds.), *Multidisciplinary perspectives on genocide and memory* (pp. 187–198). Springer.

17. Book in an Edition Other Than the First

Include the edition number in parentheses following the title.

Dessler, A. E., & Parson, E. A. (2019). *The science and politics of global climate change: A guide to the debate* (3rd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

18. Multivolume Work

Include the number of volumes after the title.

Zeigler-Hill, V., & Shackelford, T. K. (Eds.). (2018). *The SAGE handbook of personality and individual differences* (Vols. I–III). SAGE Publications.

19. Translated Book

Name the translator after the title.

Calasso, R. (2019). *The unnamable present* (R. Dixon, Trans.). Farrar, Straus and Giroux. (Original work published 2017)

20. Non-English Book

Give the original title, then the English translation in brackets.

> Hernandez, G. H., Moreno, A. M., Zaragoza, F. G., & Porras, A. C. (Eds.). (2010). *Tratado de medicina farmacéutica* [Treaty of pharmaceutical medicine]. Editorial Médica Panamericana.

21. Entry in a Reference Work

Begin with the title of the entry if it has no author.

> Synthetic food colors (2018). In P. Varelis, L. Melton, & F. Shahidi (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of food chemistry* (pp. 291–296). Elsevier.

PERIODICALS

22. Journal Article

Follow the author's name and the year of publication with the article title; then give the journal title, followed by a comma. For all journals, include the volume number (italicized). For journals that begin each issue with page 1, also include the issue number in parentheses (not italicized). Insert a comma and end with the page number(s).

> Ganegoda, D. B., & Bordia, P. (2019). I can be happy for you, but not all the time: A contingency model of envy and positive empathy in the workplace. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 104*(6), 776–795.

23. Magazine Article

Include the month after the year. If it’s a weekly magazine, include the day. Give the volume and issue numbers, if any, after the magazine title.

Koch, C. (2019, October). Is death reversible? *Scientific American, 321*(4), 34–37.

24. Newspaper Article

Include the specific publication date following the year.

Finucane, M. (2019, September 25). Americans still eating too many low-quality carbs. *The Boston Globe,* B2.

25. Newsletter Article

Cite a newsletter article as you would a magazine article. If the date is given as a season, insert a comma following the year and then include the season.

Bond, G. (2018, Fall). Celebrities as epidemiologists. *American College of Epidemiology Online Member Newsletter,* 4–5.

ELECTRONIC SOURCES

Generally, include all the same elements for electronic sources as you would for print sources. Include any information required to locate the item. Many scholarly publishers are now assigning a digital object identifier (DOI) to journal articles and other documents. A DOI is a unique alphanumeric string assigned by a registration agency. It provides a persistent link to unchanging content on the internet.

When available, substitute the DOI for a URL. If the content is subject to change, include the retrieval date before the URL. Use the exact URL wherever possible; use the home-page or menu-page URL for subscription-only material or content presented in frames, which make exact URLs unworkable. Long URLs may be shortened using a site such as bitly.com or shortdoi.org. Break URLs before a punctuation mark, and avoid using punctuation after a URL or DOI so as not to confuse the reader.

26. Nonperiodical Web Document

To cite a nonperiodical web document, provide as much of the following information as possible: author's name, date of publication or most recent update (use *n.d.* if there is no date), document title (in italics), and URL (or DOI, if available) for the document.

> Berchick, E. R., Barnett, J. C., & Upton, R. D. (2019, September 10). *Health insurance coverage in the United States: 2018* (Report No. P60-267). U.S. Census Bureau. https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2019/demo/p60-267.html

If the author of a document is not identified, begin the reference with the title of the document. If the document is from a university program's website, identify the host institution and the program or department, followed by a colon and the URL for the document.

> *Safety manual.* (2018, October 31). Retrieved from Harvard University, Center for Nanoscale Systems website: https://cns1.rc.fas.harvard .edu/documents/2018/06/cns-safety-manual.pdf

Journal Articles

27. Article with DOI Assigned

Le Texier, T. (2019). Debunking the Stanford prison experiment. *American Psychologist, 74*(7), 823–839. https://doi.org/10.1037/amp0000401

28. Article with No DOI Assigned

Hung, J. (2018). Educational investment and sociopsychological wellbeing among rural Chinese women. *Inquiries Journal, 10*(5). http://www.inquiriesjournal.com/a?id=1736[AJ2]

29. Preprint Version of Article

Wang, T. J., Larson, M. G., Vasan, R. S., Cheng, S., Rhee, E. P., McCabe, E., Lewis, G. D., Fox, S., Jacques, P. F., Fernandez, C., O'Donnell, C. J., Carr, S. A., Mootha, V. K., Florez, J. C., Souza, A., Melander, O., Clish, C. B., & Gerszten, R. E. (2011). Metabolite profiles and the risk of developing diabetes. *Nature Medicine.* Advance online publication. https://doi/10.1038/nm.2307

Electronic Books

30. Entire Book

Use "Retrieved from" if the URL leads to the information itself and "Available from" if the URL leads to information on how to obtain the content.

Einstein, A. (n.d.). *Relativity: The special and general theory.* Project Gutenberg. Retrieved from: http://www.gutenberg.org/etext/5001

Dissertations and Theses

31. Dissertation Retrieved from Database

For a commercial database, include the database name, followed by the accession number. For an institutional database, include the URL.

Degli-Esposti, M. (2019). *Child maltreatment and antisocial behaviour in the United Kingdom: Changing risks over time* [Doctoral dissertation, University of Oxford]. Oxford University Research Archive. https://ora.ox.ac.uk/objects /uuid:6d5a8e55-bd19-41a1-8ef5-ef485642af89

Reference Materials

Give the home-page or index-page URL for reference works. If the entry has a DOI, include that instead.

32. Online Encyclopedia

Brue, A. W., & Wilmshurst, L. (2018). Adaptive behavior assessments. In B. B. Frey (Ed.), *The SAGE encyclopedia of educational research, measurement, and evaluation* (pp. 40–44). SAGE Publications. https://doi .org/10.4135/9781506326139.n21

33. Online Dictionary

Merriam-Webster. (n.d.). Adscititious. In *Merriam-Webster.com dictionary*. Retrieved September 5, 2019, from https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary /adscititious

34. Wiki

Behaviorism. (2019, October 11). In *Wikipedia*. https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index .php?title=Behaviorism&oldid=915544724

Raw Data

35. Data Set

Reid, L. (2019). *Smarter homes: Experiences of living in low carbon homes 2013–2018* [Data set]. UK Data Service. http://doi.org/10.5255/UKDA-SN-853485

36. Graphic Representation of Data

Pew Research Center. (2018, November 15). *U.S. public is closely divided about overall health risk from food additives* [Chart]. https://www.pewinternet .org/2018/11/19/public-perspectives-on-food-risks/ps_2018-11 -19_food_0-01/

37. Qualitative Data

Jaques, C. (2010). They called it slums but it was never a slum to me [Audio stream]. StoryCorps. http://storycorps.org/listen/stories/category/historias

Other Electronic Documents

38. Technical or Research Report

Berchick, E. R., Barnett, J. C., & Upton, R. D. (2019, September 10). *Health insurance coverage in the United States: 2018* (Report No. P60-267). U.S. Census Bureau. https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2019/demo/p60-267.html

39. Presentation Slides

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2019, April 16). *Building local response capacity to protect families from emerging health threats* [Presentation slides]. CDC Stacks. https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/77687

General-Interest Media and Alternative Presses

40. Newspaper Article

Daly, J. (2019, August 2). Duquesne's med school plan part of national trend to train more doctors. *Pittsburgh Post-Gazette*. https://bit.ly/2Vzrm2l

41. Audio Podcast

Include the presenter, producer, or other authority, if known; date; episode title; any episode or show identifier in brackets, such as *[Show 13]*; show name; the words *Audio podcast* in brackets; and retrieval information.

West, S. (Host). (2003–present). *Philosophize this!* [Audio podcast]. https://philosophizethis.org/category/episode

42. Online Magazine Content Not Found in Print Version

Vlahos, J. (2019, March). Alexa, I want answers. *Wired*. https://www.wired.com/story/amazon-alexa-search-for-the-one-perfect-answer/

Online Communities

43. Message Posted to an Electronic Mailing List, Online Forum, or Discussion Group

If an online posting is not archived and therefore is not retrievable, cite it as a personal communication and do not include it in the reference list. If the posting can be retrieved from an archive, provide the author's name (or the author's screen name if the real name is not available), the exact date of the posting, the title or subject line or thread name, and a description of the type of post in brackets. Finish with the address.

ScienceModerator. (2018, November 16). *Science discussion: We are researchers working with some of the largest and most innovative companies using DNA to help people* [Online forum post]. Reddit. https://www.reddit.com/r/science/comments/9xlnm2/science_discussion_we_are_researchers_working/

44. Blog Post

Fister, B. (2019, February 14). Information literacy's third wave. *Library Babel Fish*. https://www.insidehighered.com/blogs/library-babel-fish/information-literacy%E2%80%99s-third-wave

Mollie F. (2019, February 14). It's a daunting task, isn't it? Last year, I got a course on Scholarly Communication and Information Literacy approved for [Comment on the blog post "Information literacy's third wave"]. *Library Babel Fish*. http://disq.us/p/1zr92uc

45. Email Message or Real-Time Communication

Do not cite email messages in the reference list. Instead, cite them in the text as personal communications. (See item 8 on p. 452.)

OTHER SOURCES

46. Technical or Research Report

Include an identifying number in parentheses after the report title. If appropriate, include the name of the service used to locate the item in parentheses after the publisher.

Tahseen, M., Ahmed, S., & Ahmed, S. (2018). *Bullying of Muslim youth: A review of research and recommendations*. The Family and Youth Institute.

47. Government Document

For most government agencies, use the abbreviation *U.S.* instead of spelling out *United States*. Include any identifying document number after the publication title.

National Park Service. (2019, April 11). *Travel where women made history: Ordinary and extraordinary places of American women*. U.S. Department of the Interior. https://www.nps.gov/subjects/travelwomenshistory/index.htm

48. Brochure or Pamphlet

After the title of the document, include the word *Brochure* or *Pamphlet* in brackets.

National Council of State Boards of Nursing. (2018). *A nurse manager's guide to substance use disorder in nursing* [Brochure].

49. Article from Conference Proceedings

After the proceedings title, give the page numbers on which the article appears.

Sebastianelli, R., Tamimi, N., Gnanendran, K., & Stark, R. (2010). An examination of factors affecting perceived quality and satisfaction in online MBA courses. In *Proceedings of the 41st Annual Meeting of the Decision Sciences Institute* (pp. 1641–1646). Decision Sciences Institute.

50. Lecture or Speech

Grigas, A. (2019, October 8). *The new geopolitics of energy* [Address]. Freeman Spogli Institute for International Studies, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, United States.

51. Audio Recording

Give the role (narrator, producer, director, or the like) of the person whose name appears at the beginning of the entry in parentheses after the name. Give the medium in brackets after the title.

Nielsen, C. (Composer). (2014). *Carl Nielsen: Symphonies 1 & 4* [Album recorded by the New York Philharmonic Orchestra]. Dacapo Records. (Original work published 1892–1916)

52. Motion Picture

Give the name of at least one primary contributor, such as the producer or director, and follow the film's title with the words *Motion picture* in brackets. List the studio's name. If the film was not widely distributed, give instead the distributor's name and address in parentheses.

Peele, J. (Director). (2017). *Get out* [Film]. Universal Pictures.

53. Television Program

Start with the director, producer, or other principal contributor and the date the program aired. Include the words *Television broadcast* or *Television series* in brackets after the program title.

Waller-Bridge, P., Williams, H., & Williams, J. (Executive Producers). (2016–2019). *Fleabag* [Television series]. Two Brothers Pictures; BBC.

For a single episode in a television series, start with the writer and director of the episode or other relevant production personnel. Include the words *Television series episode* in brackets after the episode title. Also include information about the series. End with the name of the station or network.

Waller-Bridge, P. (Writer), & Bradbeer, H. (Director). (2019, March 18). The provocative request (Season 2, Episode 3) [TV series episode]. In P. Waller-Bridge, H. Williams, & J. Williams (Executive Producers), *Fleabag*. Two Brothers Pictures; BBC.

54. Published Interview

If it is not clear from the title that the entry is an interview, or if there is no title, include the words *Interview with* and the subject's name in brackets.

Parrado, N. (2011, March 27). *Nando Parrado, plane crash survivor* [Interview with C. Gracie; audio file]. The Interview Archive; BBC World Service. https://www.bbc.co.uk/programmes/p00fhjnb

55. Personal Interview

Consider interviews you conduct, whether in person or over the telephone, as personal communications, and do not include them in the reference list. Instead, cite them in the text. (See item 8 on p. 452.)

56. Personal Correspondence

Like emails, personal letters and memos should not be included in the reference list. Instead, cite them in the text. (See item 8 on p. 452.)

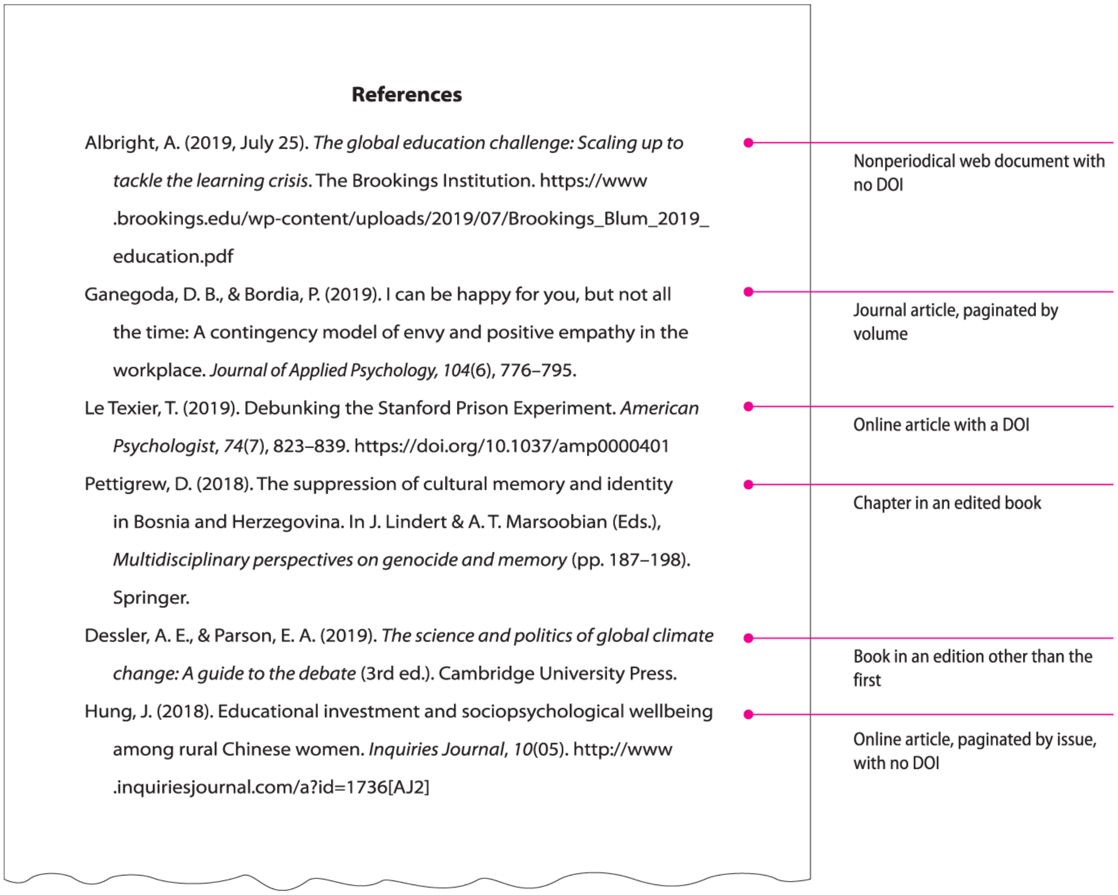
57. Unpublished Data

Where the title would normally appear, include a description of the data in brackets.

Standifer, M. (2007). [Daily temperatures, 2007, Barton Springs municipal pool, Austin, TX]. Unpublished raw data.

SAMPLE APA REFERENCE LIST

Following is a sample reference list using the APA citation system.



References

Albright, A. (2019, July 25). *The global education challenge: Scaling up to tackle the learning crisis*. The Brookings Institution. https://www.brookings.edu/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/Brookings_Blum_2019_education.pdf

Nonperiodical web document with no DOI

Ganegoda, D. B., & Bordia, P. (2019). I can be happy for you, but not all the time: A contingency model of envy and positive empathy in the workplace. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 104*(6), 776–795.

Journal article, paginated by volume

Le Texier, T. (2019). Debunking the Stanford Prison Experiment. *American Psychologist, 74*(7), 823–839. https://doi.org/10.1037/amp0000401

Online article with a DOI

Pettigrew, D. (2018). The suppression of cultural memory and identity in Bosnia and Herzegovina. In J. Lindert & A. T. Marsoobian (Eds.), *Multidisciplinary perspectives on genocide and memory* (pp. 187–198). Springer.

Chapter in an edited book

Dessler, A. E., & Parson, E. A. (2019). *The science and politics of global climate change: A guide to the debate* (3rd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Book in an edition other than the first

Hung, J. (2018). Educational investment and sociopsychological wellbeing among rural Chinese women. *Inquiries Journal, 10*(05). http://www.inquiriesjournal.com/a?id=1736[AJ2]

Online article, paginated by issue, with no DOI

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

IEEE Style

IEEE style consists of two elements: citations in the text and a reference list at the end of the document.

IEEE Style for Reference List Entries

BOOKS

1. Book by One Author
2. Book by Multiple Authors
3. Book Authored by an Organization
4. Edited Book
5. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book
6. Book in an Edition Other Than the First

PRINT PERIODICALS

  - 7. Journal Article
  - 8. Magazine Article
  - 9. Newspaper Article
- **ELECTRONIC SOURCES**
  - 10. Article in an Online Journal or Magazine
  - 11. Website
  - 12. Document on a Government Website
- **OTHER SOURCES**
  - 13. Thesis or Dissertation
  - 14. Standard
  - 15. Scientific or Technical Report
  - 16. Paper Published in Conference Proceedings
  - 17. Government Document
  - 18. Unpublished Document

IEEE TEXTUAL CITATIONS

In the IEEE (originally, Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) documentation system, citations in the text are bracketed numbers, keyed to a numbered list of references that appears at the end of the document. Entries in the list are arranged in the order in which they are cited in the text and are numbered sequentially. Once a reference has been listed, the same number is used in all subsequent citations of that source.

To cite references in the text, place the reference number or numbers immediately after the author's name, in square brackets, before any punctuation. Use *et al.* if there are more than six author names.

> A recent study by Goldfinkel [5] shows that this is not an efficient solution. Murphy [8]–[10] comes to a different conclusion.

You can also use the bracketed citation number or numbers as a noun.

> In addition, [5] shows that this is not an efficient solution; however, [8]–[10] come to a different conclusion.

NOTE: Because references are listed *in the order in which they first appear in the text*, if you add a new citation within the text while rewriting or editing, you will need to renumber the reference list as well as the citations in the text. For example, if in rewriting you were to add a new reference between the first citations of the Murphy references originally numbered [8] and [9], the previous example would then read

> [8], [10], [11] come to a different conclusion.

To make a reference more precise, you can provide extra information.

> A recent study by Goldfinkel [5, pp. 12–19] shows that this is not an efficient solution.

THE IEEE REFERENCE LIST

The following guidelines will help you prepare IEEE-style references. For additional information on formatting entries, consult the latest edition of the *IEEE Editorial Style Manual* available at www.ieee.org.

For a sample IEEE-style reference list, see p. 466.

- **Arranging entries.** Arrange the entries in the order in which they first are cited in the text, and then number them sequentially. Place the numbers in square brackets and set them flush left in a column of their own, separate from the body of the references.

Place the entries in the next column, with no indents for turnovers.

- **Authors.** List the author's first initial (or first and middle initials, separated by spaces), followed by the last name. In the case of multiple authors, use up to six names; use *et al.* after the first author's name if there are more than six. If an entry has an editor in place of an author, add the abbreviation *Ed.* (or *Eds.* for *editors*) following the name.
- **Book titles.** Italicize titles of books. In English, capitalize the first word and all major words. In foreign languages, capitalize the first word of the title and subtitle, as well as any words that would be capitalized in that language.
- **Publication information.** For books, give the city of publication, the state abbreviation (if in the United States), the country, the publisher's name (abbreviated), and the year of publication. When two or more cities are given on a book's copyright page, include only the first.
- **Periodical titles.** Italicize and abbreviate titles of periodicals. Capitalize all major words in the title.
- **Article titles.** Place titles of articles in quotation marks. Capitalize the first word of the title and subtitle. Do not capitalize the remaining words unless they are proper nouns.
- **Electronic sources.** Provide the same information you would for a print source, including city, state, country, and page range, if available. You may include a date of access (*Accessed:*) or a DOI, if available. Always include the medium in square brackets (*[Online]*) and the URL or file path.

- **Spacing.** Single-space the reference list, and do not add extra space between entries.
- **Page numbers.** To give a page or a range of pages for a specific article in a book or periodical, use the abbreviation *p*. or *pp.* Write numbers in full (152–159, *not* 152–59 or 152–9).
- **Dates.** Follow the format month (abbreviated), day, year (for example, Apr. 3, 2020 or Feb. 22–23, 2018). Do not abbreviate May, June, or July.

BOOKS

1. Book by One Author

Include the author's first initial and middle initial (if available), the author's last name, the book title (in italics), the place of publication, the publisher (abbreviated), the year of publication, and the page range of the material referenced.

[1] M. Lee, *How to Grow a Robot: Developing Human-Friendly, Social AI.* Cambridge, MA, USA: MIT Press, 2020, pp. 22–28.

2. Book by Multiple Authors

List all the authors' names. Use *et al.* after the first author's name if there are more than six authors. Do not invert names, and include a comma before *and* only if there are three or more names.

[2] E. Karsh and A. S. Fox, *The Only Grant-Writing Book You'll Ever Need.* New York , NY, USA: Basic Books, 2019, pp. 254–255.

3. Book Authored by an Organization

The organization takes the place of the author.

[3] World Bank, *World Development Report 2020: Trading for Development in the Age of Global Value Chains.* Washington, DC, USA: World Bank, 2019, pp. 25–31.

4. Edited Book

Include the abbreviation *Ed.* (singular) or *Eds.* (plural) after the name(s).

[4] S. Kean, Ed., *The Best American Science and Nature Writing 2018.* New York, NY, USA: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2018, pp. 157–162.

5. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book

Give the author and the title of the chapter or section first (enclosed in quotation marks and with only the first word capitalized), followed by the word *in*, the book title, and the book editor(s). Then give the publication information for the book and the page numbers where the chapter or section appears.

[5] E. Castronova, “The changing meaning of play,” in *Online Communication and Collaboration: A Reader,* H. M. Donelan, K. L. Kear, and M. Ramage, Eds. New York, NY, USA: Routledge, 2010, pp. 184–189.

6. Book in an Edition Other Than the First

The edition number follows the title of the book and is preceded by a comma.

[6] L. Xinju, *Laser Technology*, 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL, USA: CRC Press, 2018, pp. 203–205.

PRINT PERIODICALS

7. Journal Article

Include the author, the article title, and the journal title (abbreviated where possible), followed by the volume number, issue number, page number(s), abbreviated month, and year (or abbreviated month, day, and year for weekly periodicals).

[7] R. C. Weber, P.-Y. Lin, E. J. Garnero, Q. Williams, and P. Lognonne, "Seismic detection of the lunar core," *Science*, vol. 331, no. 6015, pp. 309–312, Jan. 21, 2011.

8. Magazine Article

List the author, the article title, and the magazine title (abbreviated where possible), followed by the page number(s) and the issue date.

[8] C. Koch, "Is death reversible?" *Scientific Amer.*, pp. 34–37, Oct. 2019.

9. Newspaper Article

List the author, the article title, and the newspaper name, followed by the section and the date.

[9] M. Finucane, "Americans still eating too many low-quality carbs," *Boston Globe*, sec. B, Sept. 25, 2019.

ELECTRONIC SOURCES

10. Article in an Online Journal or Magazine

[10] R. Marani and A. G. Perri, “An electronic medical device for preventing and improving the assisted ventilation of intensive care unit patients,” *Open Elect. Electron. Eng. J.,* vol. 4, pp. 16–20, 2010. [Online]. Available: http://www.benthamscience.com/open/toeej/openaccess2.htm

11. Website

[11] American Institute of Physics, “History of AIP.” Accessed on: Aug. 17, 2020. [Online]. Available: https://www.aip.org/aip/history

12. Document on a Government Website

[12] U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Preparation and Planning for Bioterrorism Emergencies.* [Online]. Available: http://emergency.cdc.gov/bioterrorism/prep.asp

OTHER SOURCES

13. Thesis or Dissertation

[13] M. J. Polo, “Chill responses to post-tonal music: Musical structures and physiological reactions,” Ph.D. dissertation, Dept. Philos., Univ. of Florida, Gainesville, FL, 2017.

14. Standard

For standards, include the title in italics, the standard number, and the date.

[14] *Testing and Evaluation Protocol for Spectroscopic Personal Radiation Detectors (SPRDs) for Homeland Security*, ANSI Standard T&E Protocol N42.48, 2010.

15. Scientific or Technical Report

[15] E. G. Fernando, "Investigation of rainfall and regional factors for maintenance cost allocation," Texas Transportation Inst. Texas A&M, College Station, TX, USA, Report 5-4519-01-1, Aug. 2010.

16. Paper Published in Conference Proceedings

[16] T. O'Brien, A. Ritz, B. J. Raphael, and D. H. Laidlaw, "Gremlin: An interactive visualization model for analyzing genomic rearrangements," in *Proc. IEEE Information Visualization Conf.*, 2010, vol. 16, no. 6, pp. 918–926.

17. Government Document

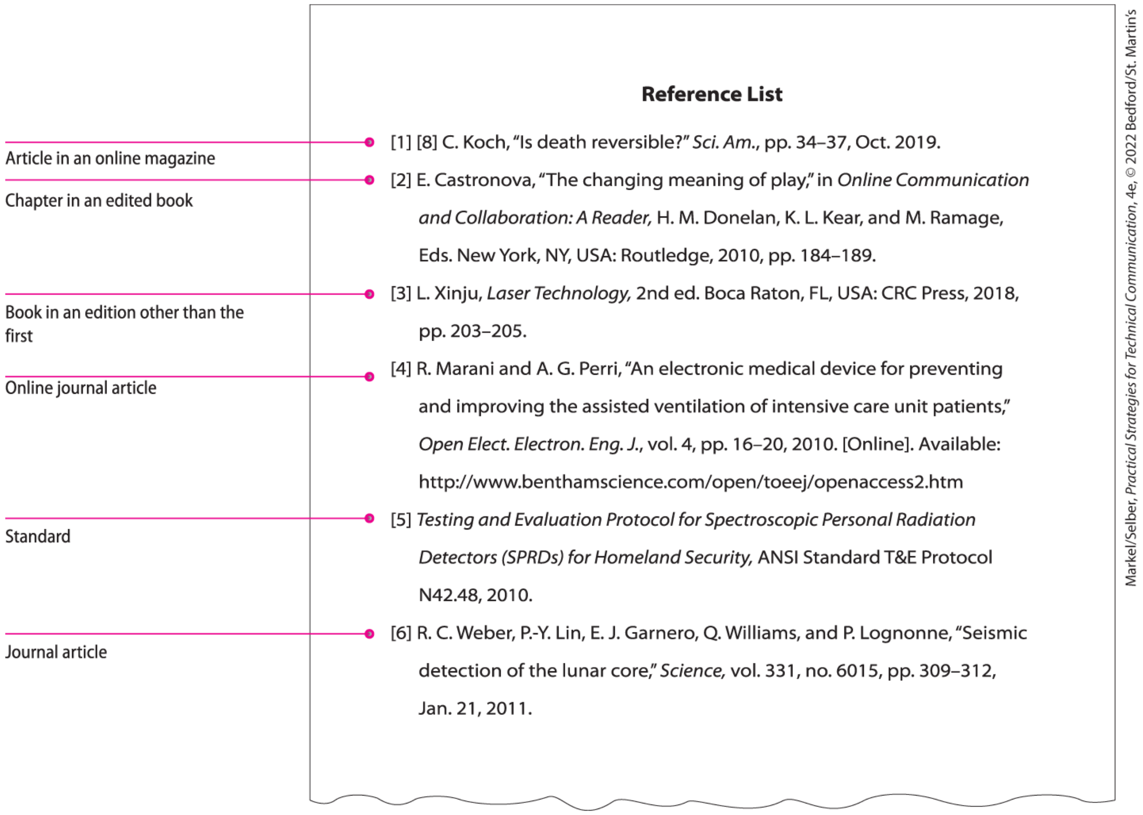
[17] W. R. Selbig and R. T. Bannerman, "Characterizing the size distribution of particles in urban stormwater by use of fixed-point sample-collection methods," U.S. Geological Survey, Open-File Report 2011-1052, 2011.

18. Unpublished Document

[18] S. Reed, "An approach to evaluating the autistic spectrum in uncooperative adolescents," unpublished.

SAMPLE IEEE REFERENCE LIST

Following is a sample reference list using the IEEE numbered reference system. The references are listed in the order in which they might appear in a fictional document.


Article in an online magazine
Chapter in an edited book
Book in an edition other than the first
Online journal article
Standard
Journal article

Reference List

[1] [8] C. Koch, "Is death reversible?" *Sci. Am.*, pp. 34–37, Oct. 2019.

[2] E. Castronova, "The changing meaning of play," in *Online Communication and Collaboration: A Reader,* H. M. Donelan, K. L. Kear, and M. Ramage, Eds. New York, NY, USA: Routledge, 2010, pp. 184–189.

[3] L. Xinju, *Laser Technology,* 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL, USA: CRC Press, 2018, pp. 203–205.

[4] R. Marani and A. G. Perri, "An electronic medical device for preventing and improving the assisted ventilation of intensive care unit patients," *Open Elect. Electron. Eng. J.*, vol. 4, pp. 16–20, 2010. [Online]. Available: http://www.benthamscience.com/open/toeej/openaccess2.htm

[5] *Testing and Evaluation Protocol for Spectroscopic Personal Radiation Detectors (SPRDs) for Homeland Security,* ANSI Standard T&E Protocol N42.48, 2010.

[6] R. C. Weber, P.-Y. Lin, E. J. Garnero, Q. Williams, and P. Lognonne, "Seismic detection of the lunar core," *Science,* vol. 331, no. 6015, pp. 309–312, Jan. 21, 2011.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

MLA Style

MLA (Modern Language Association) style consists of citations in the text as well as a list of works cited at the end of the document. In-text citations and works-cited entries are made up of elements (such as author, title, and publication date) from the original source work.

MLA Style for Works-Cited Entries

BOOKS

- 1. Book by One Author
- 2. Book by Multiple Authors
- 3. Book Authored by an Organization
- 4. Edited Book
- 5. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book
- 6. Book in an Edition Other Than the First

PRINT PERIODICALS

- 7. Journal Article
- 8. Magazine Article
- 9. Newspaper Article
- 10. Unsigned Article

ELECTRONIC SOURCES

- 11. Entire Website
- 12. Article in an Online Periodical
- 13. Email Message
- 14. Other Online Sources

OTHER SOURCES

- 15. Government Document
- 16. Article from Conference Proceedings
- 17. Report
- 18. Interview
- 19. Letter or Memo
- 20. Lecture or Speech
- 21. Map or Chart
- 22. Legal Source

MLA TEXTUAL CITATIONS

In MLA style, the textual citation typically includes the name of the source's author and the number of the page being referred to. Textual citations vary depending on the type of source cited and the context of the citation. The following models illustrate a variety of common situations; for additional examples, consult the *MLA Handbook*.

If you are referring to the whole source, not to a particular page or pages, use only the author's name.

> Harwood's work gives us a framework for understanding the aging process and how it affects communication.

Immediately following the material you are quoting or paraphrasing, include a parenthetical reference with the author's name and the page number(s) being referred to. Do not add a comma between the name and the page number, and do not use the abbreviation *p.* or *pp.*

> Each feature evolves independently, so there can't be a steady progression of fossils representing change (Prothero 27).

If your sentence already includes the author's name, put only the page number in the parenthetical citation.

> Prothero explains why we won't find a steady progression of human fossils approaching modern humans, as each feature evolves independently (27).

For a work without page numbers, give a paragraph, section, or screen number only if the number is provided in the source. Use *par.* (singular) or *pars.* (plural) to indicate paragraph numbers. Either spell out or use standard abbreviations (such as *col.*, *fig.*, *pt.*, *ch.*, or *l.*) for other identifying words. Use a comma after the author's name if it appears in the parenthetical citation.

> Under the right conditions, humanitarian aid forestalls health epidemics in the aftermath of natural disasters (Bourmah, pars. 3–6).

> Maternal leave of at least three months has a significantly positive effect on the development of attachment in the infant (Ling, screen 2).

For a source written by two authors, cite both names.

> Grendel and Chang assert that …

> This phenomenon was verified in the late 1970s (Grendel and Chang 281).

For a source written by three or more authors, give only the first author, followed by *and others* or *and colleagues* in a signal phrase. (You will use the Latin phrase *et al.* in your parenthetical citations and your works-cited list.)

> Studies show that incidences of type 2 diabetes are widespread and rising quickly (Gianarikas et al.).

Multiple Sources in One Citation, when you refer to two or more sources at the same point, separate the sources with a semicolon.

> Much speculation exists about the origin of this theory (Brady 42; Yao 388).

THE MLA LIST OF WORKS CITED

A list of works cited provides the information your readers will need to find each source you have cited in the text. It should not include sources you consulted for background reading. For each works-cited entry, include as many of the following elements as apply:

For a sample MLA-style list of works cited, see p. 474.

- The author.
- The title of the work.
- The title of the larger work in which the source is located, such as a collection, a journal, or a website. MLA calls this larger work a

"container." If you are citing an entire book, journal, website, or other large work, there will be no separate container.

- The editor, translator, director, producer, or other important contributor.
- The version number.
- The volume and issue numbers.
- The publisher or sponsor.
- The date of publication.
- The location of the source (page numbers, DOI, or URL).
- A second container, such as the database from which a journal was accessed, as well as any available information about it (for example, version number, publisher or sponsor, and URL).

For an example of a works-cited entry with no container, see item 1; for an entry with one container, see item 3; for an entry with two containers, see item 12.

Following are some guidelines for an MLA-style list of works cited.

- **Arranging entries.** Arrange the entries alphabetically by the author's last name. If two or more works are by the same author, arrange them alphabetically by title. Alphabetize works by an organization by the first significant word in the name of the organization.
- **Book titles.** Italicize titles of books and capitalize all major words. Note that in MLA style, prepositions are not capitalized.
- **Publishers.** Give the full name of the publisher, including any words such as *Books* or *Publisher*. Omit terms such as *Inc.* or

Company and omit articles at the beginning such as *The*. If the publisher is a university press, you may use the abbreviation *UP*. If a source lists two equal publishers, use both names separated by a slash (/). For imprints, use the name of the parent company. For divisions, use the division name.

- **Periodical titles.** Italicize titles of periodicals and capitalize all major words. Omit any initial article.
- **Article titles.** Place titles of articles and other short works in quotation marks and capitalize all major words.
- **Electronic sources.** Include as much information as you can about electronic sources, such as author, date of publication, identifying numbers, and retrieval information. If no date of publication is provided, include the date you accessed the information at the end of the citation. If no author is known, start with the title of the website. Italicize titles of entire websites; treat titles of works within websites, such as articles and video clips, as you would titles of works within print sources. Include the URL for any sources you access on the internet. If you access a source through a database, include the DOI (digital object identifier), if provided, or a stable URL.
- **Indenting.** Use a hanging indent, with the first line of each entry flush with the left margin and all subsequent lines indented one-half inch.
- **Spacing.** Double-space the entire works-cited list. Do not add extra space between entries.
- **Page numbers.** Use the abbreviation *p.* or *pp.* when giving page numbers in the works-cited list. For a range of pages, give only

the last two digits of the second number if the previous digits are identical (for example, 243–47, *not* 243–247 or 243–7). Use a plus sign (+) to indicate that an article continues on subsequent pages, interrupted by other articles or advertisements.

- **Dates.** Follow the format day, month, year, with no commas (for example, 20 Feb. 2020). Spell out *May, June,* and *July*; abbreviate all other months (except *Sept.*) using the first three letters followed by a period. For journals, give the season or month and year in addition to volume and issue numbers.

Following are models of works-cited-list entries for a variety of sources. For further examples of MLA-style citations, consult the *MLA Handbook*.

BOOKS

1. Book by One Author

Include the author's full name, in reverse order, followed by the book title. Next give the name of the publisher, followed by the year of publication.

> Demm, Eberhard. *Censorship and Propaganda in World War I: A Comprehensive History*. Bloomsbury Academic, 2019.

2. Book by Multiple Authors

For a book by two authors, present the names in the sequence in which they appear on the title page. Use reverse order for the name of the first author only. Use a comma to separate the names of the authors.

Baier, Bret, and Catherine Whitney. *Three Days at the Brink: FDR's Daring Gamble to Win World War II*. William Morrow, 2019.

For a book by three or more authors, use the abbreviation *et al.* after the first author's name.

Feng, Kuishuang, et al. *Local Consumption and Global Environmental Impacts: Accounting, Trade-Offs and Sustainability*. Routledge, 2020.

3. Book Authored by an Organization

The organization takes the position of the author. Omit articles such as *The* from organization names.

Mental Health America. "Position Statement 21: Rights of Persons with Mental Health and Substance Use Conditions." *Mental Health America,* nmha.org/go/position - statements/21. Accessed 30 Sept. 2019.

4. Edited Book

List the book editor's name, followed by *editor* or *editors* (if more than one), in place of the author's name.

Valentine, Scott Victor, et al., editors. *After Tobacco: What Would Happen If Americans Stopped Smoking?* Columbia UP, 2011.

5. Chapter or Section in an Edited Book

Give the author and title of the chapter or section first, followed by the book title and editor. Present the editor's name in normal order, preceded by *edited by* and followed by a comma. After the publication information, give the pages on which the material appears.

Marx, Karl. "Proletarians and Communists." *Marx Today: Selected Works and Recent Debates,* edited by John F. Sitton, Macmillan, 2010, pp. 51–56.

6. Book in an Edition Other Than the First

List the edition number after the title of the book.

Geary, Patrick, editor. *Readings in Medieval History.* 5th ed., U of Toronto P, 2015.

PRINT PERIODICALS

7. Journal Article

List the author's name, the article title (in quotation marks), and the journal title (italicized), followed by the volume number, issue number, month or season, year, and page number(s).

Ganegoda, Deshani B. and Prashant Bordia. "I Can Be Happy For You, But Not All the Time: A Contingency Model of Envy and Positive Empathy in the Workplace." *Applied Psychology,* vol. 104, no. 6, 2019, pp. 776–795.

8. Magazine Article

List the author's name, the article title (in quotation marks), and the magazine title (italicized), followed by the issue date and page number(s).

Vlahos, James. “Alexa, I Want Answers.” *Wired,* Mar. 2019, pp. 58–65.

9. Newspaper Article

List the author’s name, the article title (in quotation marks), and the newspaper name (italicized), followed by the issue date and the page number(s) (which might include a section letter).

Finucane, Martin. “Americans Still Eating Too Many Low-Quality Carbs.” *Boston Globe,* 25 Sept. 2019, p. B2.

10. Unsigned Article

If the author of an article is not indicated, begin with the title. Alphabetize the work by title, ignoring any initial article.

“Denver Men Charged in Case Involving 2-Pound Brick of Fentanyl.” *Denver Post,* 16 Feb. 2019, p. 5A.

ELECTRONIC SOURCES

11. Entire Website

If you are citing an entire website, begin with the name of the author or editor (if given) and the title of the site (italicized). Then give the name of the publisher (often an institution or an organization), the date of publication or most recent update, and the URL, followed by a period. If no publication date is available, include the date you accessed the site at the end of the entry.

Poets.org. Academy of American Poets, www.poets org. Accessed 12 Jan. 2020.

12. Article in an Online Periodical

Begin with the author's name and include the title of the document, the name of the periodical, and the date of publication. If the periodical is a scholarly journal, include relevant identifying numbers, such as volume, issue, and page numbers, before the date. End with the URL.

Torpy, Janet M., et al. "Panic Disorder." *Journal of the American Medical Association,* vol. 305, no. 12, 2011, pp. 20–30, jama.jamanetwork.com/article .aspx?articleid=646264.

For magazine and newspaper articles found online, give the author, the title of the article (in quotation marks), the title of the magazine or newspaper (italicized), the date of publication, and the URL.

Blakemore, Erin. "Idealistic and tough, Catherine the Great sought to modernize Russia." *National Geographic,* Nov. 2019, www.nationalgeographic.com/history /reference/people/who-was-catherine-great/.

13. Email Message

Use the email's subject line as the title. Include the words *Received by* followed by the name of the recipient (if you were the recipient, use the phrase *the author*). End with the date the email was sent.

Lange, Frauke. "Data for Genealogical Project." Received by the author, 26 Dec. 2020.

14. Other Online Sources

Follow the MLA guidelines already discussed, adapting them as appropriate to the electronic medium. The following examples are for a podcast and a blog post, respectively.

> "Episode 128: A Hole in the Head." *Lore*. Narrated by Aaron Mahnke, 28 Oct. 2019, www.lorepodcast.com/episodes/128. Podcast.

> Cimons, Marlene. "Why Cities Could Be the Key to Solving the Climate Crisis." *Thinkprogress.org*, Center for American Progress Action Fund, 10 Dec. 2015, thinkprogress.org/climate/2015/12/10/3730938/cities-key-to-climate-crisis/.

OTHER SOURCES

15. Government Document

Begin with the author. If the author is a government agency, begin with the name of the country and the agency. Follow with the document title, publisher, and date.

> Canada, Minister of Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development. *2015–16 Report on Plans and Priorities*. Minister of Public Works and Government Services Canada, 2015.

For an online source, include the URL.

> United States, Department of Agriculture, Food and Nutrition Service, Child Nutrition Programs. *Eligibility Manual for School Meals: Determining and Verifying Eligibility*. National School Lunch Program, July 2015, www.fns.usda.gov/sites/default/files/cn/SP40_CACFP18_SFSP20-2015a1.pdf.

16. Article from Conference Proceedings

List the author's name, the article title, the proceedings title, and the editor's name, followed by the publication information.

> Glicksman, Robert. "Climate Change Adaptation and the Federal Lands." *The Past, Present, and Future of Our Public Lands: Celebrating the 40th Anniversary of the Public Land Law Review Commission's Report,* edited by Gary C. Bryner, Natural Resources Law Center, 2010.

17. Report

Cite a report as you would a book.

> Liebreich, Michael, et al. *Green Investing 2010: Policy Mechanisms to Bridge the Financing Gap.* World Economic Forum, 2010.

18. Interview

For a published interview, begin with the name of the person interviewed. If the interview has a title, enclose it in quotation marks. Insert the words *Interview by* and give the interviewer's name followed by the information on the work in which the interview was published.

> Caro, Robert. "Robert Caro Reflects on Robert Moses, L.B.J., and His Own Career in Nonfiction." Interview by David Remnick, *New Yorker,* 1 Jul. 2019, www.newyorker.com/culture/the-new-yorker-interview/robert-caro-reflects-on-robert-moses-lbj-and-his-own-career-in-nonfiction

If you conducted the interview yourself, include the interviewee's name, the words *Personal interview,* and the date.

> Youngblood, Adelaide. Personal interview, 5 Jan. 2020.

19. Letter or Memo

If the letter or memo was addressed to you, include the writer's name, the words *Letter* [or *Memo*] *to the author*, and the date it was written.

> Jakobiak, Ursula. Letter to the author, 27 Oct. 2019.

If the letter or memo was addressed to someone other than you, give the recipient's name in place of the words *the author.*

20. Lecture or Speech

Give the speaker's name, the title of the lecture or speech (if known), the event and sponsoring organization (if applicable), and the place and date. End with a descriptive term such as *Lecture* or *Keynote speech*.

> Wang, Samuel. "Neuroscience and Everyday Life." Freshman Assembly, Princeton University, Princeton, NJ, 12 Sept. 2010. Lecture.

21. Map or Chart

Give the author (if known), the title (in quotation marks), and the publication information. For an online source, include the name of the website (italicized), the name of the site's publisher, the date of publication, and the URL.

> "Malaysia." *Lonely Planet,* 2019. www.lonelyplanet.com/maps/asia/malaysia/

22. Legal Source

For a legal case, give the name of the first plaintiff and first defendant, the law report number, the name of the court, and the year of the decision, followed by the publication information.

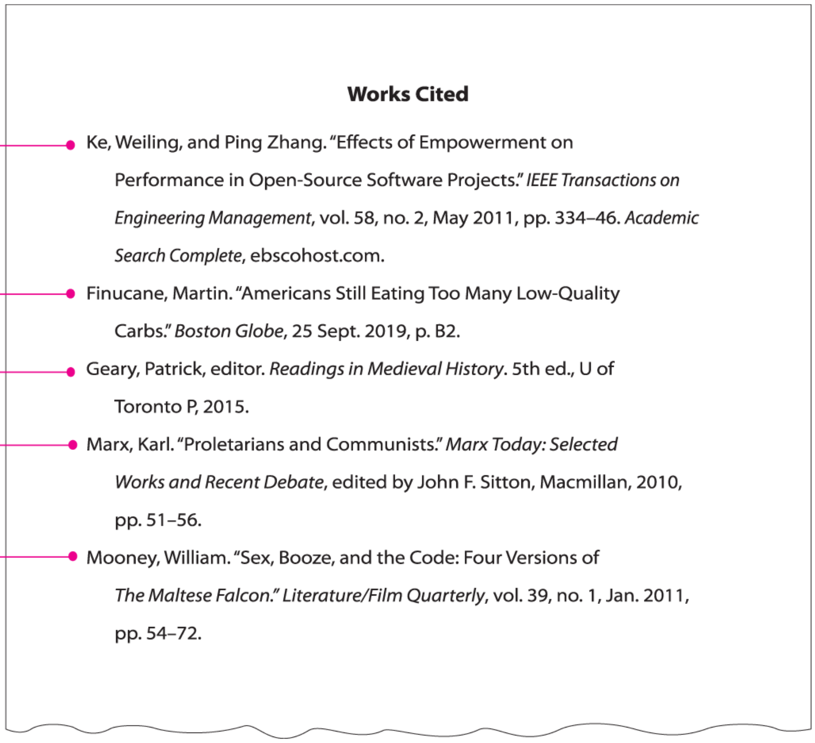
Utah v. Evans. 536 US 452. Supreme Court of the US. 2002. *Legal Information Institute,* Cornell U Law School, www.law.cornell.edu/supremecourt /text/536/452.

For a legislative act, give the name of the act, the Public Law number, the Statutes at Large volume and page numbers, and the date the law was enacted.

Protect America Act of 2007. Pub. L. 110-55. 5 Stat. 121–552. 5 Aug. 2007.

SAMPLE MLA LIST OF WORKS CITED

Following is a sample list of works cited using the MLA citation system.



Works Cited

Article from a database

Ke, Weiling, and Ping Zhang. "Effects of Empowerment on Performance in Open-Source Software Projects." *IEEE Transactions on Engineering Management*, vol. 58, no. 2, May 2011, pp. 334–46. *Academic Search Complete*, ebscohost.com.

Article in a newspaper

Finucane, Martin. "Americans Still Eating Too Many Low-Quality Carbs." *Boston Globe*, 25 Sept. 2019, p. B2.

Book in an edition other than the first

Geary, Patrick, editor. *Readings in Medieval History*. 5th ed., U of Toronto P, 2015.

Chapter in an edited book

Marx, Karl. "Proletarians and Communists." *Marx Today: Selected Works and Recent Debate*, edited by John F. Sitton, Macmillan, 2010, pp. 51–56.

Journal article

Mooney, William. "Sex, Booze, and the Code: Four Versions of *The Maltese Falcon*." *Literature/Film Quarterly*, vol. 39, no. 1, Jan. 2011, pp. 54–72.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Part B: Editing and Proofreading Your Documents

This part of the handbook contains advice on editing your documents for grammar, punctuation, and mechanics. If your organization or professional field has a style guide with different recommendations about grammar and usage, you should follow those guidelines.

Your instructor might use the following abbreviations to refer you to specific topics in the text.

Abbreviation	Topic	Page Number
abbr	abbreviation	490
cap	capitalization	491
ital	italics (underlining)	486
num	number	488
.	period	481
!	exclamation point	481
?	question mark	481
,	comma	476
;	semicolon	479

:	colon	480
—	dash	482
( )	parentheses	482
-	hyphen	487
’	apostrophe	483
“ ”	quotation marks	484
…	ellipses	486
[ ]	square brackets	486

Punctuation

, COMMAS

The comma is the most frequently used punctuation mark, as well as the one about whose usage writers most often disagree. Examples of common misuses of the comma accompany the following guidelines. The section concludes with advice about editing for unnecessary commas.

1. **Use a comma in a compound sentence to separate two independent clauses linked by a coordinating conjunction (*and, or, nor, but, so, for,* or *yet*).**

INCORRECT The mixture was prepared from the two premixes and the remaining ingredients were then combined.

CORRECT	The mixture was prepared from the two premixes, and the remaining ingredients were then combined.

2. **Use a comma to separate items in a series composed of three or more elements.**

> The manager of spare parts is responsible for ordering, stocking, and disbursing all spare parts for the entire plant.

Despite the presence of the conjunction and, most technical-communication style manuals require a comma after the next-to-last item. The comma clarifies the separation and prevents misreading.

CONFUSING	The report will be distributed to Operations, Research and Development and Accounting.
CLEAR	The report will be distributed to Operations, Research and Development, and Accounting.

3. **Use a comma to separate introductory words, phrases, and clauses from the main clause of the sentence.**

> However, we will have to calculate the effect of the wind.

> To facilitate trade, the government holds a yearly international conference.

In the following example, the comma actually prevents misreading:

> Just as we finished eating, the rats discovered the treadmill.

NOTE: Writers sometimes make errors by omitting commas following introductory words, phrases, or clauses. A comma is optional only if the introductory text is brief and cannot be misread.

CORRECT	First, let’s take care of the introductions.
CORRECT	First let’s take care of the introductions.
INCORRECT	As the researchers sat down to eat the laboratory rats awakened.
CORRECT	As the researchers sat down to eat, the laboratory rats awakened.

4. **Use a comma to separate a dependent clause from the main clause.**

   Although most of the executive council saw nothing wrong with it, the advertising campaign was canceled.

   Most tablet computers use green technology, even though it is relatively expensive.

5. **Use commas to separate nonrestrictive modifiers (parenthetical clarifications) from the rest of the sentence.**

   Jones, the temporary chairman, called the meeting to order.

NOTE: Writers sometimes introduce an error by dropping one of the commas around a nonrestrictive modifier.

INCORRECT	The data line, which was installed two weeks ago had to be disconnected.
CORRECT	The data line, which was installed two weeks ago, had to be disconnected.

For more about restrictive and nonrestrictive modifiers, see Ch. 6, p. 132.

6. **Use a comma to separate interjections and transitional elements from the rest of the sentence.**

   Yes, I admit that your findings are correct.

   Their plans, however, have great potential.

   NOTE: Writers sometimes introduce an error by dropping one of the commas around an interjection or a transitional element.

INCORRECT	Our new statistician, however used to work for Konaire, Inc.
CORRECT	Our new statistician, however, used to work for Konaire, Inc.

7. **Use a comma to separate coordinate adjectives.**

   The finished product was a sleek, comfortable cruiser.

   The heavy, awkward trains are still being used.

   The commas in these examples take the place of the conjunction *and*.

   If the adjectives are not coordinate — that is, if one of the adjectives modifies the combined adjective and noun — do not use a comma:

   They decided to go to the first general meeting.

For more about coordinate adjectives, see Ch. 6, p. 123.

8. **Use a comma to signal that a word or phrase has been omitted from a sentence because it is implied.**

   Smithers is in charge of the accounting; Harlen, the data management; Demarest, the publicity.

   The commas after *Harlen* and *Demarest* show that the phrase *is in charge of* has not been repeated.

9. **Use a comma to separate a proper noun from the rest of the sentence in direct address.**

   John, have you seen the purchase order from United?

   What I'd like to know, Betty, is why we didn't see this problem coming.

10. **Use a comma to introduce most quotations.**

    He asked, "What time were they expected?"

11. **Use a comma to separate cities or towns, states, and countries.**

    Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, is the home of Lehigh University.

    He attended Lehigh University in Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, and the University of California at Berkeley.

    Note that a comma precedes and follows Pennsylvania.

12. **Use a comma to set off the year in a date.**

    August 1, 2019, is the anticipated completion date.

If the month separates the date and the year, you do not need to use commas because the numbers are not next to each other:

> The anticipated completion date is 1 August 2019.

13. **Use a comma to clarify numbers.**

> 12,013,104

NOTE: European practice is to reverse the use of commas and periods in writing numbers: periods separate hundreds and thousands, thousands and millions, and so on, while commas separate whole numbers from decimals.

> 12.013,4

14. **Use a comma to separate names from professional or academic titles.**

> Harold Clayton, PhD
> Marion Fewick, CLU
> Joyce Carnone, PE

A comma also follows the title in a sentence:

> Harold Clayton, PhD, is the featured speaker.

Unnecessary Commas

Writers often introduce errors by using unnecessary commas. Commas are not used in the following situations:

For more about comma splices, see Ch. 6, p. 119.

- Commas are not used to link two independent clauses without a coordinating conjunction (an error known as a “comma splice”).

INCORRECT	All the motors were cleaned and dried after the water had entered, had they not been, additional damage would have occurred.
CORRECT	All the motors were cleaned and dried after the water had entered; had they not been, additional damage would have occurred.
CORRECT	All the motors were cleaned and dried after the water had entered. Had they not been, additional damage would have occurred.

- Commas are not used to separate the subject from the verb in a sentence.

INCORRECT	Another of the many possibilities, is to use a “first in, first out” sequence.
CORRECT	Another of the many possibilities is to use a “first in, first out” sequence.

- Commas are not used to separate the verb from its complement.

INCORRECT	The schedules that have to be updated every month are, numbers 14, 16, 21, 22, 27, and 31.
CORRECT	The schedules that have to be updated every month are numbers 14, 16, 21, 22, 27, and 31.

- Commas are not used with a restrictive modifier.

INCORRECT	New and old employees, who use the processed order form, do not completely understand the basis of the system.

	The phrase *who use the processed order form* is a restrictive modifier necessary to the meaning: it defines which employees do not understand the system.
CORRECT	New and old employees who use the processed order form do not completely understand the basis of the system.
INCORRECT	A company, that has grown so big, no longer finds an informal evaluation procedure effective.
	The clause *that has grown so big* is a restrictive modifier.
CORRECT	A company that has grown so big no longer finds an informal evaluation procedure effective.

- Commas are not used to separate two elements in a compound subject.

INCORRECT	Recent studies, and reports by other firms confirm our experience.
CORRECT	Recent studies and reports by other firms confirm our experience.

; SEMICOLONS

Use semicolons in the following instances:

1. **Use a semicolon to separate independent clauses not linked by a coordinating conjunction.**

   The second edition of the handbook is more up-to-date; however, it is also more expensive.

2. **Use a semicolon to separate items in a series that already contains commas.**

   The members elected three officers: Jack Resnick, president; Carol Wayshum, vice president; Ahmed Jamoogian, recording secretary.

   Here the semicolon acts as a "supercomma," grouping each name with the correct title.

Misuse of Semicolons

Sometimes writers incorrectly use a semicolon when a colon is called for:

INCORRECT	We still need one ingredient; luck.
CORRECT	We still need one ingredient: luck.

: COLONS

Use colons in the following instances:

1. **Use a colon to introduce a word, phrase, or clause that amplifies, illustrates, or explains a general statement.**

   The project team lacked one crucial member: a project leader.

   Here is the client's request: we are to provide the preliminary proposal by November 13.

   We found three substances in excessive quantities: potassium, cyanide, and asbestos.

> The week was productive: 14 projects were completed, and another dozen were initiated.

NOTE: The text preceding a colon should be able to stand on its own as a sentence:

INCORRECT	We found: potassium, cyanide, and asbestos.
CORRECT	We found the following: potassium, cyanide, and asbestos.
CORRECT	We found potassium, cyanide, and asbestos.

2. **Use a colon to introduce items in a vertical list if the sense of the introductory text would be incomplete without the list.**

   We found the following:
   - potassium
   - cyanide
   - asbestos

3. **Use a colon to introduce long or formal quotations.**

   > The president began: “In the last year ….”

Misuse of Colons

Writers sometimes incorrectly use a colon to separate a verb from its complement:

INCORRECT	The tools we need are: a plane, a level, and a T square.

CORRECT	The tools we need are a plane, a level, and a T square.
CORRECT	We need three tools: a plane, a level, and a T square.

. PERIODS

Use periods in the following instances:

1. **Use a period at the end of sentences that do not ask questions or express strong emotion.**

   The lateral stress still needs to be calculated.

2. **Use a period after some abbreviations.**

   U.S.A.
   etc.

> *For more about abbreviations, see p. 490.*

3. **Use a period with decimal fractions.**

   4.056
   $6.75
   75.6 percent

! EXCLAMATION POINTS

The exclamation point is used at the end of a sentence that expresses strong emotion, such as surprise.

> The nuclear plant, which was originally expected to cost $1.6 billion, eventually cost more than $8 billion!

In technical documents, which require objectivity and a calm, understated tone, exclamation points are rarely used.

? QUESTION MARKS

The question mark is used at the end of a sentence that asks a direct question.

> What did the commission say about effluents?

NOTE: When a question mark is used within quotation marks, no other end punctuation is required.

> She asked, “What did the commission say about effluents?”

Misuse of Question Marks

Do not use a question mark at the end of a sentence that asks an indirect question.

> He wanted to know whether the procedure had been approved for use.

– DASHES

To make a dash, use two uninterrupted hyphens (—). Do not add a space before or after the dash. Some word-processing programs turn two hyphens into a dash, but with others, you have to use a special combination of keys to make a dash; there is no dash key on the keyboard.

Use dashes in the following instances:

1. **Use a dash to set off a sudden change in thought or tone.**

   The committee found — can you believe this? — that the company bore full responsibility for the accident.

   That's what she said — if I remember correctly.

2. **Use a dash to emphasize a parenthetical element.**

   The managers' reports — all 10 of them — recommend production cutbacks for the coming year.

   Arlene Kregman — the first woman elected to the board of directors — is the next scheduled speaker.

3. **Use a dash to set off an introductory series from its explanation.**

   Wetsuits, weight belts, tanks — everything will have to be shipped in.

   NOTE: When a series follows the general statement, a colon replaces the dash.

   Everything will have to be shipped in: wetsuits, weight belts, and tanks.

Misuse of dashes

Sometimes writers incorrectly use a dash as a substitute for other punctuation marks:

INCORRECT The regulations — which were issued yesterday — had been anticipated for months.

	There would be no reason to emphasize this parenthetical element.
CORRECT	The regulations, which were issued yesterday, had been anticipated for months.
INCORRECT	Many candidates applied — however, only one was chosen.
CORRECT	Many candidates applied; however, only one was chosen.

() PARENTHESES

Use parentheses in the following instances:

1. **Use parentheses to set off incidental information.**

   Please call me (x3104) when you get the information.

   Galileo (1564–1642) is often considered the father of modern astronomy.

   The cure rate for lung cancer almost doubled in thirty years (Capron, 2019).

2. **Use parentheses to enclose numbers or letters that label items listed in a sentence.**

   To transfer a call within the office, (1) place the party on HOLD, (2) press TRANSFER, (3) press the extension number, and (4) hang up.

   Use both a left and a right parenthesis — not just a right parenthesis — in this situation.

Misuse of Parentheses

Sometimes writers incorrectly use parentheses instead of brackets to enclose their insertion within a quotation:

For more about square brackets, see p. 486.

INCORRECT	He said, “The new manager (Farnham) is due in next week.”
CORRECT	He said, “The new manager [Farnham] is due in next week.”

’ APOSTROPHES

Use apostrophes in the following instances:

1. **Use an apostrophe to indicate possession.**

    the manager’s goals
    the workers’ lounge
    the employees’ credit union
    Charles’s T square

    For joint possession, add an apostrophe and an *s* only to the last noun or proper noun:

    Watson and Crick’s discovery

    For separate possession, add an apostrophe and an ***s*** to each of the nouns or pronouns:

    Newton’s and Galileo’s theories

    NOTE: Do not add an apostrophe or an *s* to possessive pronouns: *his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs.*

2. **Use an apostrophe to indicate possession when a noun modifies a gerund.**

We were all looking forward to Bill's joining the company.

The gerund *joining* is modified by the proper noun *Bill*.

3. **Use an apostrophe to form contractions.**

I've
can't
shouldn't
it's

The apostrophe usually indicates an omitted letter or letters:

can(no)t = can't
it (i)s = it's

NOTE: Some organizations discourage the use of contractions. Find out what the policy of your organization is.

4. **Use an apostrophe to indicate special plurals.**

three 9's
two different JCL's
the why's and how's of the problem

NOTE: For plurals of numbers and abbreviations, some style guides omit the apostrophe: *9s, JCLs*. Because usage varies considerably, check with your organization.

Misuse of Apostrophes

Writers sometimes incorrectly use the contraction *it's* in place of the possessive pronoun *its*.

INCORRECT The company's management does not believe that the problem is it's responsibility.

CORRECT	The company's management does not believe that the problem is its responsibility.

“ ” QUOTATION MARKS

Use quotation marks in the following instances:

1. **Use quotation marks to indicate titles of short works, such as articles, essays, or chapters.**

   Smith's essay “Solar Heating Alternatives” was short but informative.

2. **Use quotation marks to call attention to a word or phrase used in an unusual way or in an unusual context.**

   A proposal is “wired” if the sponsoring agency has already decided who will be granted the contract.

   NOTE: Do not use quotation marks to excuse poor word choice:

INCORRECT	The new director has been a real “pain.”

3. **Use quotation marks to indicate a direct quotation.**

   “In the future,” he said, “check with me before authorizing any large purchases.”

   As Breyer wrote, “Morale *is* productivity.”

   NOTE: Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotations:

INCORRECT	He said that “third-quarter profits will be up.”

CORRECT	He said that third-quarter profits will be up.
CORRECT	He said, “Third-quarter profits will be up.”

Also note that quotation marks are not used with quotations that are longer than four lines; instead, set the quotation in block format. In a word-processed manuscript, a block quotation is usually introduced by a complete sentence followed by a colon and indented one-half inch from the left-hand margin.

Different style manuals recommend variations on the basic rules; the following example illustrates APA style.

McFarland (2020) writes:

> The extent to which organisms adapt to their environment is still being charted. Many animals, we have recently learned, respond to a dry winter with an automatic birth control chemical that limits the number of young to be born that spring. This prevents mass starvation among the species in that locale. (p. 49)

Hollins (2017) concurs. She writes, “Biological adaptation will be a major research area during the next decade” (p. 2).

For more about quoting sources, see Appendix, Part A, p. 448.

Using Quotation Marks with Other Punctuation

- If the sentence contains a *tag* — a phrase identifying the speaker or writer — a comma separates it from the quotation:

Wilson replied, “I’ll try to fly out there tomorrow.”

“I’ll try to fly out there tomorrow,” Wilson replied.

Informal and brief quotations require no punctuation before a quotation mark:

> She asked herself “Why?” several times a day.

- In the United States (unlike most other nations where English is spoken), commas and periods following quotations are placed within the quotation marks:

> The project engineer reported, “A new factor has been added.”

> “A new factor has been added,” the project engineer reported.

- Question marks, dashes, and exclamation points are placed inside quotation marks when they are part of the quoted material:

> He asked, “Did the shipment come in yet?”

- When question marks, dashes, and exclamation points apply to the whole sentence, they are placed outside the quotation marks:

> Did he say “This is the limit”?

- When a punctuation mark appears inside a quotation mark at the end of a sentence, do not add another punctuation mark:

INCORRECT	Did she say “What time is it?”?
CORRECT	Did she say “What time is it?”

… ELLIPSES

Ellipses (three spaced periods) indicate the omission of material from a direct quotation.

SOURCE	My team will need three extra months for market research and quality-assurance testing to successfully complete the job.
QUOTE	She responded, “My team will need three extra months … to successfully complete the job.”

Insert an ellipsis after a period if you are omitting entire sentences that follow:

> Larkin refers to the project as “an attempt … to clarify the issue of compulsory arbitration.… We do not foresee an end to the legal wrangling … but perhaps the report can serve as a definition of the areas of contention.”

> The writer has omitted words from the source after *attempt* and after *wrangling*. After *arbitration,* the writer has inserted an ellipsis after a period to indicate that a sentence or more has been omitted.

NOTE: If the author’s original statement has ellipses, MLA style recommends that you insert brackets around an ellipsis that you introduce in a quotation.

> Sexton thinks “reuse adoption offers … the promise to improve business […] worldwide.”

[ ] SQUARE BRACKETS

Use square brackets in the following instances:

1. **Use square brackets around words added to a quotation.**

> As noted in the minutes of the meeting, “He [Pearson] spoke out against the proposal.”

A better approach would be to shorten the quotation:

> The minutes of the meeting note that Pearson “spoke out against the proposal.”

2. **Use square brackets to indicate parenthetical information within parentheses.**

> (For further information, see Charles Houghton’s *Civil Engineering Today* [2016].)

Mechanics

ital ITALICS

Although italics are generally preferred, you may use underlining in place of italics. Whichever method you choose, be consistent throughout your document. Use italics (or underlining) in the following instances:

1. **Use italics for words used as words.**

> In this report, the word *operator* will refer to any individual who is in charge of the equipment, regardless of that individual’s certification.

2. **Use italics to indicate titles of long works (books, manuals, and so on), periodicals and newspapers, long films, long plays, and long musical works.**

> See Houghton’s *Civil Engineering Today*.

> We subscribe to the *Wall Street Journal*.

> Note that *the* is not italicized or capitalized when the title is used in a sentence.

NOTE: The MLA style guide recommends that the names of websites be italicized.

> The Library of Congress maintains *Thomas,* an excellent site for legislative information.

3. **Use italics to indicate the names of ships, trains, and airplanes.**

> The shipment is expected to arrive next week on the *Penguin*.

4. **Use italics to set off foreign expressions that have not become fully assimilated into English.**

> Grace's *joie de vivre* makes her an engaging presenter.

Check a dictionary to determine whether a foreign expression has become assimilated.

5. **Use italics to emphasize words or phrases.**

> *Do not* press the red button.

- HYPHENS

Use hyphens in the following instances:

1. **Use hyphens to form compound adjectives that precede nouns.**

> general-purpose register
> meat-eating dinosaur
> chain-driven saw

NOTE: Hyphens are not used after adverbs that end in -*ly*.

newly acquired terminal

Also note that hyphens are not used when the compound adjective follows the noun:

The Woodchuck saw is chain driven.

Many organizations have their own policy about hyphenating compound adjectives. Check to see if your organization has a policy.

2. **Use hyphens to form some compound nouns.**

once-over
go-between

NOTE: There is a trend away from hyphenating compound nouns (*vice president, photomicroscope, drawbridge*); check your dictionary for proper spelling.

3. **Use hyphens to form fractions and compound numbers.**

one-half
fifty-six

4. **Use hyphens to attach some prefixes and suffixes.**

post-1945
president-elect

5. **Use hyphens to divide a word at the end of a line.**

We will meet in the pavilion in one hour.

Whenever possible, however, avoid such line breaks; they slow the reader down. Even when your word processor is determining the line breaks, you may have to check the dictionary occasionally to make sure a word has been divided between syllables. If you need to break a URL at the end of a line, do not add a hyphen. Instead, break the URL before a single slash or before a period or other punctuation mark:

> http://www.stc.org
>
> /ethical.asp

num NUMBERS

Ways of handling numbers vary considerably. Therefore, in choosing between words and numerals, consult your organization's style guide. Many organizations observe the following guidelines:

1. **Express technical quantities of any size in numerals, especially if a unit of measurement is included.**

3 feet	43,219 square miles
12 grams	36 hectares

2. **Express nontechnical quantities of fewer than 10 in words.**

> three persons
> six whales

3. **Express nontechnical quantities of 10 or more in numerals.**

300 persons
12 whales

4. **Write out approximations.**

approximately ten thousand people
about two million trees

5. **Express round numbers over nine million in a combination of words and numerals.**

14 million light-years
$64 billion

6. **Express decimals in numerals.**

3.14
1,013.065

Decimals of less than one should be preceded by a zero:

0.146
0.006

7. **Write out fractions, unless they are linked to units of measurement.**

two-thirds of the members
3½ hp

8. **Express time of day in numerals if A.M. or P.M. is used; otherwise, write it out.**

6:10 A.M.
six o’clock
the nine-thirty train

9. **Express page numbers and figure and table numbers in numerals.**

   Figure 1
   Table 13
   page 261

10. **Write back-to-back numbers using a combination of words and numerals.**

    six 3-inch screws
    fourteen 12-foot ladders
    3,012 five-piece starter units

    In general, the quantity linked to a unit of measurement should be expressed with the numeral. If the nontechnical quantity would be cumbersome in words, however, use the numeral for it instead.

11. **Use both words and numerals to represent numbers in legal contracts or in documents intended for international readers.**

    thirty-seven thousand dollars ($37,000)
    five (5) relays

12. **Use both words and numerals in some street addresses.**

    3801 Fifteenth Street

Special Cases

- A number at the beginning of a sentence should be spelled out:

  Thirty-seven acres was the size of the lot.

Many writers would revise the sentence to avoid spelling out the number:

> The lot was 37 acres.

- Within a sentence, numbers with the same unit of measurement should be expressed consistently in either numerals or words:

INCORRECT	On Tuesday, the attendance was 13; on Wednesday, eight.
CORRECT	On Tuesday, the attendance was 13; on Wednesday, 8.
CORRECT	On Tuesday, the attendance was thirteen; on Wednesday, eight.

- In general, months should not be expressed as numbers. In the United States, 3/7/20 means March 7, 2020; in many other countries, it means July 3, 2020. The following forms, in which the months are written out, are preferable:

> March 7, 2020
> 7 March 2020

abbr ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviations save time and space, but you should use them carefully because your readers may not understand them. Many companies and professional organizations provide lists of approved abbreviations.

Analyze your audience to determine whether and how to abbreviate. If your readers include a general audience unfamiliar with your field, either write out the technical terms or attach a list of abbreviations. If you are new to an organization or are publishing in a field for the first time, find out which abbreviations are commonly used. If for any reason you are unsure about a term, write it out.

The following are general guidelines about abbreviations:

1. **When an unfamiliar abbreviation is introduced for the first time, give the full term, followed by the abbreviation in parentheses. In subsequent references, the abbreviation may be used alone. For long works, the full term and its abbreviation may be written out at the start of major units, such as chapters.**

   The heart of the new system is the self-loading cartridge (SLC).
   The liquid crystal display (LCD) is your control center.

2. **To form the plural of an abbreviation, add an *s*, either with or without an apostrophe, depending on the style used by your organization.**

   GNP's or GNPs
   PhD's or PhDs

   Abbreviations for most units of measurement do not take plurals:

   10 in.
   3 qt

3. **Do not use periods with most abbreviations in scientific writing.**

   lb
   cos

dc

If an abbreviation can be confused with another word, however, a period should be used:

in.
Fig.

4. **If no number appears with a unit of measurement, do not use an abbreviation.**

INCORRECT	How many sq meters is the site?
CORRECT	How many square meters is the site?

cap CAPITALIZATION

For the most part, the conventions of capitalization in general writing apply in technical communication:

1. **Capitalize proper nouns, titles, trade names, and names of places, languages, religions, and organizations.**

William Rusham
Director of Personnel
Quick-Fix Erasers
Bethesda, Maryland
Italian
Methodism
Society for Technical Communication

In some organizations, job titles are not capitalized unless they refer to specific people.

> Valerie Cruz, Director of Personnel, is interested in being considered for vice president of marketing.

2. **Capitalize headings and labels.**

> A Proposal to Implement the Wilkins Conversion System
> Mitosis
> Table 3
> Section One
> The Problem
> Rate of Inflation, 2007–2017
> Figure 6

References

CHAPTER 1: Introduction to Technical Communication

Adecco Staffing. (2013). *Lack of soft skills negatively impacts today's workforce.* Retrieved September 23, 2019, from http://www.adeccousa.comabout/press/Pages/20130930-lack-of-soft-skills-negatively-impacts-todays-us-workforce.aspx

The Industry Report. (2018). (L. Freifeld, Ed.) Retrieved August 29, 2019, from trainingmag.com/trgmag -article/2018-training-industry-report/

Hart Research Associates. (2015, January 20). *Falling short? College learning and career success*. Retrieved November 5, 2016, from www.aacu.org/leap/public-opinion-research/2015-survey-results

National Association of Colleges and Employers. (2019). *Job outlook 2019*, p. 30. Retrieved August 29, 2019, from www.naceweb.org/talent-acquisition/candidate-selection/employers-want-to-see-these-attributes-on-students-resumes/

TIME. (2013). *The real reason new college grads can't get hired.* Retrieved September 23, 2019, from http://business.time.com/2013/11/10/the-real-reason-new-college-grads-cant-get-hired/

CHAPTER 2: Understanding Ethical and Legal Considerations

Bettinger, B. (2010). *Social media implications for intellectual property law*. Retrieved May 23, 2013, from www.slideshare.net/blaine_5/social-media-implications-for-intellectual-property-law

Donaldson, T. (1991). *The ethics of international business*. Oxford University Press.

Ethics and Compliance Initiative. (2018). *2018 Global Business Ethics Survey*. Retrieved August 30, 2019, from https://www.ethics.org/knowledge-center/2018-gbes-2/

Ethics Resource Center. (2014). 2013 national business ethics survey: Workplace ethics in transition. Retrieved October 1, 2019, from www.ethics.org/nbes/files/FinalNBES-web.pdf

Federal Trade Commission. (2017, September). *The FTC's endorsement guides: What people are asking*. Retrieved August 30, 2019, from www.ftc.gov/tips-advice/business-center/guidance/ftcs-endorsement-guides-what-people-are-asking

Lipus, T. (2006). International consumer protection: Writing adequate instructions for global audiences. *Journal of Technical Writing and Communication, 36*(1), 75–91.

Pew Research Center. (2016). *Workers use social media at work for many reasons; taking a mental break is one of the most common.*

Retrieved October 1, 2019, from www.pewinternet.org/2016/06/22/social-media-and-the-workplace/pi_2016-06-22_social-media-and-work_0-01/

Proskauer Rose LLP. (2014). *Social media in the workplace around the world 3.0*. Retrieved September 21, 2016, from www.proskauer.com/files/News/4b7b2510-9529-46ae-8832-1784ef8d2927/Presentation/NewsAttachment/a4678020-1e5e-4427-b157-245425d994d5/social-media-in-the-workplace-2014.pdf

Salary.com. (2013). *Your employees are wasting more time at work than ever.* Retrieved September 21, 2016, from http://business.salary.com/your-employees-wasting-time-2013/

Sigma Xi. (2000). *Honor in science*. New Haven, CT: Author.

Trillos-Decarie, J. (2012). Marketing + sales + communication + legal = social strategy (PowerPoint presentation). Retrieved May 23, 2013, from www.slideshare.net/JasmineTrillos-Decarie/jasmine-vegas-conf-final

U.S. Census Bureau. (2016). *U.S. international trade in goods and services: 2015*. Retrieved September 15, 2016, from www.census.gov/foreign-trade/Press-Release/current_press_release/exh1.pdf

U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission. (2017). *2017 annual report to the president and Congress*. Retrieved August 30, 2019, from www.cpsc.gov/s3fs-public/FY17-CPSC-Annual-Report.pdf?nuKsFE7Ex450hc9Efs2GU9EwYbBlPEFxU.S.

Velasquez, M. G. (2011). *Business ethics: Concepts and cases* (7th ed.). Pearson.

CHAPTER 3: Writing Collaboratively

Cisco Systems, Inc. (2010). *Cisco 2010 midyear security report*. Retrieved July 22, 2010, from www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/vpndevc/security_annual_report_mid2010.pdf

Duin, A. H., Jorn, L. A., & DeBower, M. S. (1991). Collaborative writing — courseware and telecommunications. In M. M. Lay & W. M. Karis (Eds.), *Collaborative writing in industry: Investigations in theory and practice* (pp. 146–169). Baywood.

Karten, N. (2002). *Communication gaps and how to close them.* Dorset House.

Kaupins, G., & Park, S. (2010, June 2). Legal and ethical implications of corporate social networks. *Employee Responsibilities and Rights Journal.* Retrieved July 9, 2010, from www.springerlink.com/content/446x810tx0134588/fulltext.pdfDOI10.1007/s10672-010-9149-8

Lustig, M. W., & Koester, J. (2012). *Intercultural competence: Interpersonal communication across cultures* (7th ed.). Allyn & Bacon.

Shaban, H. (2019). Twitter reveals its daily active user numbers for the first time. *The Washington Post.* Retrieved October 1, 2019, from www.washingtonpost.com/technology/2019/02/07/twitter-reveals-its-daily-active-user-numbers-first-time/

CHAPTER 4: Analyzing Your Audience and Purpose

Bell, A. H. (1992). *Business communication: Toward 2000.* South-Western.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2013). *CDC .gov and social media metrics: April 2013*. Retrieved July 9, 2013, from www.cdc.gov/metrics/reports/2013/oadcmetricsreportapril2013.pdf

Hoft, N. L. (1995). *International technical communication: How to export information about high technology.* Wiley.

"Culture and the shape of rhetoric: Protocols of international document design" (1999). In C. R. Lovitt & D. Goswami (Eds.), *Exploring the rhetoric of international professional communication: An agenda for teachers and researchers* (pp. 211–251). Baywood.

U.S. Census Bureau. (2019). *Foreign trade.* Retrieved October 1, 2019, from www.census.gov/foreign-trade/statistics/highlights/annual.html

U.S. Department of Homeland Security. (2019). *Table 1. Persons obtaining lawful permanent resident status: Fiscal years 1820 to 2017.* Retrieved October 1, 2019, from https://www.dhs.gov/immigration-statistics/yearbook/2017/table1#wcm-survey-target-id

Yan, S. (2015, September 24). Microsoft ditches Bing for Baidu in China. *CNN*. Retrieved September 8, 2016, from

http://money.cnn.com/2015/09/24/technology/microsoft-baidu-xiaomi-china-deal/

CHAPTER 5: Researching Your Subject

DeVault, G. (2013). *Market research case study — Nielsen Twitter TV rating metric*. Retrieved June 26, 2013, from http://marketresearch.about.com/od/market.research.social.media/a/Market-Research-Case-Study-Nielsen-Twitter-Tv-Rating-Metric.htm

McCaney, K. (2013, June 18). Energy lab team explores new ways of analyzing social media. *GCN*. Retrieved June 26, 2013, from http://gcn.com/articles/2013/06/18/Energy-lab-new-ways-analyzing-social-media.aspx

CHAPTER 6: Writing for Your Readers

Institute on Disability. (2017). *2017 Disability statistics annual report.* Retrieved October 1, 2019, from disabilitycompendium.org/sites/default/files/user-uploads/2017_AnnualReport_2017_FINAL.pdf.

Snow, K. (2009). *People first language*. Retrieved August 2, 2010, from www.disabilityisnatural.com/images/PDF/pfl-sh09.pdf

CHAPTER 7: Designing Print and Online Documents

Haley, A. (1991). All caps: A typographic oxymoron. *U&lc, 18*(3), 14–15.

Internet World Stats. (2019). *Internet users in the world by regions*. Retrieved October 21, 2019, from www.internetworldstats.com/stats.htm

Keyes, E. (1993). Typography, color, and information structure. *Tehcnical Communication*, 40, 638–654.

Lynch, P. J., & Horton, S. (2011). *Web style guide online* (3rd ed.). Retrieved July 12, 2013, from http://webstyleguide.com/index.html

Poulton, E. (1968). Rate of comprehension of an existing teleprinter output and of possible alternatives. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 52,* 16–21.

U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2002, March 5). *Thermometer usage messages and delivery mechanisms for parents of young children*. Retrieved April 4, 2002, from www.fsis.usda.gov/oa/research/rti_thermy.pdf

WebAIM. (2016). *Introduction to web accessibility*. Retrieved October 15, 2016, from http://webaim.org/intro/

Williams, R. (2015). *The non-designer's design book* (4th ed.). Peachpit Press.

Williams, T., & Spyridakis, J. (1992). Visual discriminability of headings in text. *IEEE Transactions on Professional Communication, 35*, 64–70.

CHAPTER 8: Creating Graphics

Brockmann, R. J. (1990). *Writing better computer user documentation: From paper to hypertext.* Wiley.

Gatlin, P. L. (1988). Visuals and prose in manuals: The effective combination. In *Proceedings of the 35th International Technical Communication Conference* (pp. RET 113–115). Society for Technical Communication.

Grimstead, D. (1987). Quality graphics: Writers draw the line. In *Proceedings of the 34th International Technical Communication Conference* (pp. VC 66–69). Society for Technical Communication.

Horton, W. (1992). Pictures please — presenting information visually. In C. Barnum & S. Carliner (Eds.), *Techniques for technical communicators*. Longman.

Horton, W. (1993). The almost universal language: Graphics for international documentation. *Technical Communication, 40,* 682–693.

Levie, W. H., & Lentz, R. (1982). Effects of text illustrations: A review of research. *Journal of Educational Psychology, 73,* 195–232.

Morrison, C., & Jimmerson, W. (1989, July). Business presentations for the 1990s. *Video Manager, 4,* 18.

Straker Translations. (2019). *Translation rates per word.* Retrieved October 21, 2019, from strakertranslations .com/translation-price-guide/rates-per-word/

White, J. V. (1984). *Using charts and graphs: 1000 ideas for visual persuasion.* R. R. Bowker.

White, J. V. (1990). *Color for the electronic age.* Watson-Guptill.

CHAPTER 9: Corresponding in Print and Online

Hall, S. (2009, August 21). Twitter fan companies say it helps them get closer to customers. *ITBusinessEdge*. Retrieved November 11, 2013, from www.itbusinessedge.com/cm/community/features/articles/blog/twitter-fan-companies-say-it-helps-them-get-closer-to-customers

Meyer, K. (2016, January 9). 2015: The year in social media disasters. *Medium.com.* Retrieved November 11, 2016, from https://medium.com/the-social-reader/2015-the-year-in-social-media-disasters-9cf0d53b60aa#.9xptx7afx

Sasaki, U. (2010). *Japanese business etiquette for email*. Retrieved September 3, 2010, from www.ehow.com/about_6523223_japanese-business-etiquette-email.html

CHAPTER 10: Applying for a Job

Auerbach, D. (2012, August 29). *How to get that computer to send your résumé to a real person*. Retrieved August 4, 2013, from www.careerbuilder.com/Article/CB-3185-Résumés-Cover-Letters-How-to-get-that-computer-to-send-your-résumé-to-a-real-person

Bowers, T. (2013, March 18). Would you hire someone with poor grammar skills? *TechRepublic.* Retrieved August 6, 2013, from www.techrepublic.com/blog/career-management/would-you-hire-someone-with-poor-grammar-skills/

Cohen, S. (2013, May 15). Online hiring tools are changing recruiting techniques. *New York Times.* Retrieved August 4, 2013, from www.nytimes.com/2013/05/16/business/smallbusiness/online-recruiting-efforts-gain-ground.html

Halzack, S. (2013, August 4). Tips for using LinkedIn to find a job. *Washington Post.* Retrieved August 4, 2013, from www.washingtonpost.com/business/capitalbusiness/tips-for-using-linkedin-to-find-a-job/2013/08/01/7c50c418-e0ff-11e2-8ae9-5db15d3c0fca_story.html

Isaacs, K. (2012). *Lying on your résumé: What are the consequences?* Retrieved August 10, 2013, from http://college.monster.com/training/articles/51-lying-on-your-resume-what-are-the-consequences

Lorenz, M. (2012, May 31). *Six ways hiring managers are spotting résumé lies*. Retrieved August 5, 2013, from www.careerbuilder.com/Article/CB-3077-Résumés-Cover-Letters-6-ways-hiring-managers-are-spotting-résumé-lies

Society for Human Resource Management. (2016, January 7). *SHRM survey findings: Using social media for talent acquisition — recruitment and screening*. Retrieved November 13, 2016, from www.shrm.org/hr-today/trends-and-forecasting/research-and-surveys/Documents/SHRM-Social-Media-Recruiting-Screening-2015.pdf

Tarpey, M. (2015, May 14). More employers checking out candidates on social media. *The HiringSite Blog*. Retrieved October 10, 2016, from http://thehiringsite.careerbuilder.com/employers-checking-candidates-social-media/

U.S. Department of Labor. (2019, February 12). Number of jobs held, labor market activity, and earnings growth among the youngest baby boomers: Results from a longitudinal survey summary. *Economic News Release* (Document USDL-15-0528), p. 1. Retrieved November 19, 2019, from https://www.bls.gov/nls/nlsfaqs.htm

CHAPTER 11: Writing Proposals

Newman, L. (2011). *Proposal guide for business and technical professionals* (4th ed.). Shipley Associates.

Thrush, E. (2000, January 20). *Writing for an international audience: Part I. Communication skills*. Retrieved November 5, 2002, from www.suite101.com/article.cfm/5381/32233

USAspending.gov. (2019). *Advanced data search*. Retrieved November 4, 2019, from www.usaspending.gov/Pages/AdvancedSearch.aspx?sub=y&ST=C&FY=2015&A=0&SS=USA&AA=9700

CHAPTER 13: Writing Recommendation Reports

Honold, P. (1999). Learning how to use a cellular phone: Comparison between German and Chinese users. *Technical Communication, 46*(2)*,* 195–205.

CHAPTER 14: Writing Definitions, Descriptions, and Instructions

Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals. (2009). *High-tech vehicle safety systems: Adaptive cruise control.* Retrieved August 29, 2013, from www.carsp.ca/hitech /hitech_acc.htm

Falco, M. (2008, January 14). *New hope may lie in lab-created heart.* Retrieved March 21, 2008, from www.cnn.com/2008/HEALTH/01/14/rebuilt.heart

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. (2016, October 19). *What is a marine protected area?* Retrieved November 30, 2016, from http://oceanservice.noaa.gov/facts/mpa.html

CHAPTER 15: Making Oral Presentations

Nienow, S. (2013, July 6). *How long does it take to create a really great presentation?* Retrieved August 28, 2013, from http://redzestdesign.com/2013/10/how-long-does-it-take-to-create-a-really-great-presentation

Smith, T. C. (1991). *Making successful presentations: A self-teaching guide*. Wiley.

Index

Note: *f* indicates a figure and *t* indicates a table.

A

abbreviations, 490–91
    acronyms and, 388
    editing and, 475
    in lists of symbols, 353
    for multicultural audiences, 67
    plurals of, 484, 490
"About Us page," 184*f*
abstract, in recommendation reports, 346–47, 347*f*, 357*f*, 378
abstract services, 83
academic research, 78
accessibility
    as measure of excellence, 9*f*
    in online documents, 180–81
accident reports, 331, 331*f*, 332*f*–33*f*. *See also* incident reports
accomplishments, on résumés, 268, 269
accuracy
    as measure of excellence, 9*f*

in research data, 88, 90

acronyms

definitions of, 388

for multicultural audiences, 67

action, graphics for, 221, 223, 223*f*

action items, in meeting minutes, 334*f*

action verbs, in résumés, 270*t*

active voice, 67, 136–38

in résumés, 269–70

activities, in résumés, 271–72

activity reports, 320–22. *See also* status reports

addition, transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*

adjectives, 122–23

adjustment letters, 237, 243*f*–44*f*

Adobe Creative Cloud, 43

advance organizer, 109, 110, 426, 436

AfterCollege, 261

agenda, 36–38

agenda topics, in meeting minutes, 334*f*

alignment, 154*f*, 155, 170*t*

almanacs, 83

“The Almost Universal Language: Graphics for International Documents” (Horton), 228

alternative presses, APA documentation style for, 458

alternative text, 180

ambiguity

    - avoiding, 138
    - passive voice and, 137
- ambiguous pronoun references, 120–22
- American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 406, 407
- American Psychological Association (APA) style. *See* APA style
- analogy, in extended definitions, 387
- analysis, 315
- animation effects, 428
- APA style, 449–65
    - digital object identifier, 453, 456
    - nonperiodical web document, 456
    - one author, 454
    - periodical, 455–456
    - for reference list entries, 452–65
    - sample reference list, 461
    - for textual citations, 451–52
- apologies, 252
- apostrophes, 483–84
- appear and dim feature, 429, 431
- appendixes, 157
    - in progress and status reports, 322, 330*f*
    - in proposals, 302
    - in recommendation reports, 353, 377*f*
- applicant-tracking systems, 274
- appreciation, letter of after an interview, 285
- appropriate line spacing, 167*f*

appropriately technical information, 88
area graph, 211
Arial typeface, 165
articles, 80
    APA documentation style for, 453, 455–56, 457
    IEEE documentation style for, 465
    MLA documentation style for, 472, 473
articles, omitting, 410
articulation, in oral presentations, 440*f*
ASCII résumé, 275. *See also* plain-text résumés
atlases, 83
attention line, in letters, 238*f*
audience, 4
    analysis of, 12, 151
    applying knowledge about, 70
    characteristics of, determining, 60*f*–61*f*
    checklist for, 75
    for definitions, 383
    for descriptions, 390
    design and, 151
    factor to consider, 6
    formality level and, 135, 233
    format expectations for graphics, 194
    graphics and, 194–95
    for instructions, 403
    in microblogs, 252

    for oral presentations, 424, 441
    profile sheet, 57–58
    research and, 78
    techniques for learning about, 58–62
    technological infrastructure and, 416
    understanding, 55–57
    writing for multiple, 70, 73
audio podcasts, APA documentation style for, 458
audio recordings, APA documentation style for, 460
authorship, 89
awards, on résumés, 268

B

back matter
    in manuals, 412
    in recommendation reports, 343*t*, 351, 353
“back to top” links, 178
background, in executive summary, 350
back-to-back headings, 108, 110
“bad news” adjustment letters, 244*f*, 254
bar (Gantt) charts, 163*f*, 304
    creating, 209–10
    example of, 432*f*
    for numerical information, 203, 207–11, 208*f*
    in progress and status reports, 328*f*

  proportions in, 209
  in proposals, 303, 303*f*
  variations, 210*t*
Barnhill, Suzanne, 401
Bell, Arthur H., 67
beta.SAM.gov website, 293
Beyond, 261
bias, in research, 94–95
bibliography, in recommendation reports, 353
Bing, 62
biographical dictionaries, 83
Bitly, 252
blind courtesy copy, in emails, 248
blog post
  APA documentation style for, 459
blogroll, 89
blogs
  interactive resources, 86
  as research tool, 80
body
  of letters, 237, 239*f*
  of recommendation reports, 343–45, 343*t*
body paragraph, 110, 113
boilerplate, 24
bold type, 166, 168, 169
books, 83–84

  - APA documentation style for, 454–55, 457
  - IEEE documentation style for, 464
  - MLA documentation style for, 470–71
- borders, 172
- borrowing, 20
- boxes, 171*t*
- brochures
  - APA documentation style for, 459
- budget, in proposals, 298, 302
- bulleted lists, 126
- Bullhorn, 274
- business cards, 259–60
- business customs, 63
- business letter, cross-cultural, 68–69

C

- Calibri typeface, 165
- Cambria typeface, 165
- candor, 20. *See also* honesty
- capitalization, 491
- captions, 180
- care standard, 17, 18
- CareerBuilder, 260, 261
- CareerOneStop, 261
- Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), 181
- case, 166, 166*f*

Cash, Ivan, 212*f*

causal relationships, 393

cause-and-effect organizational pattern, 105

cause-and-effect, transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 59, 62, 92

chapter in edited book

- APA documentation style for, 455
- IEEE documentation style for, 464
- MLA documentation style for, 471

chat threads, 43, 44*f*, 45*f*

checklists, 204, 220, 220*f*

Chemical Abstracts Service, 83

Christian Science Monitor, 84

chronological organizational pattern, 105

chronological résumés

- education, 268–69
- elements of, 266–73
- employment history, 269–71
- example of, 267*f*
- identifying information, 266
- interests and activities, 271–72
- other elements, 273
- references, 272
- summary statement, 266

chunking, 158, 158*f*, 182, 183

circular definitions, 385

Cisco Systems, 48
citing sources, 24
claim letters, 237, 242*f*, 254
claims, in infographics, 211
clarity
  as measure of excellence, 9*f*
  in online documents, 183–84
  in questions for interviews, 95
  in words and phrases, 136
classification organizational pattern, 105
The Cleanest Line blog, 14*f*
clear information, 88
clichés, 140
  in correspondence, 235, 235*t*, 236*f*
Clicky, 90
closed-system flowchart, 221, 222*f*
cloud-based services, 43
code of conduct, 25, 30*f*
coherence, in paragraphs, 115–17
collaboration
  advantages and disadvantages of, 34*f*
  checklist for, 50
  culture and, 48–49
  documents, 33
  using electronic tools, 41–48
  ethical dimension, 38

  gender and, 48–49
  patterns, 33
  project management, 35
  for recommendation reports, 342
college courses, on résumés, 268
college/university placement offices, 264
colons, 480–81
color, 156, 181, 183
  in graphics, 199–201, 200*f*
  patterns and, 199–200, 200*f*
  symbolic meaning, 201, 201*f*
Color for the Electronic Age (White), 199
columns, 160, 161–2, 163*f*–64*f*
comma splices, 119–20, 478
commas, 476–79
comment feature, in word-processing tools, 41
common interview questions
  job interview, preparation of, 283
communicating verbs, 74
communication, factors to consider, 6–7
communication skills, employers and, 4–5
communities, online, 179, 179*f*
community culture, microblogs and, 252
comparison and contrast
  in extended definitions, 387
  organizational pattern, 105

  transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*
competence, 19
completion report, 293, 315, 337. *See also* recommendation reports
complimentary close, in letters, 237, 239*f*
compound adjectives, 123, 487
compound sentences, 476
comprehensive information, 88
comprehensiveness
  as measure of excellence, 9*f*
computer skills, in résumés, 273
concise phrases, 143*t*
conciseness, 141–45, 145*f*
  as measure of excellence, 9*f*
conclusions
  in descriptions, 394
  in instructions, 410–11
  in oral presentations, 426
  in progress and status reports, 322, 329*f*
  in recommendation reports, 341–42, 345, 373*f*–74*f*, 379
  transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*
conference proceedings
  APA documentation style for, 460
  IEEE documentation style for, 466
  MLA documentation style for, 473
confidentiality, 20
conflict resolution, 37

Confluence, 43

conjunctions

  coordinating, 119, 120

  subordinating, 121

consumer products and services

  failures of, 21

  safety of, 21

content, in recommendation reports, 345

contexts, in proposals

  external, 296–97

  internal, 296

contrast, 153*f*, 155, 200, 200*f*

convincing verbs, 74

cooking, 20

cooperativeness, 104

coordinating adjectives, 123

coordinating conjunctions, 119, 120

copy line, in letters, 237, 239*f*

copyright law, 22, 31*f*, 433*f*

  fair use, 23, 433*f*

  graphics and, 197–99

  legal obligations to holders, 22–23

  online documents, 182

  plagiarism, 22

  proposals and, 298

Corn Refiners Association, 91

corporate blog post, 14*f*
corporate culture, ethics and, 24–26
correctness
  in correspondence, 234
  importance of, 234
  as measure of excellence, 9*f*
  in netiquette, 249
correlative constructions, 134
correspondence, 232–53
  APA documentation style for, 461
  checklist for, 254–55
  clichés, 235, 235*t*, 236*f*
  correctness, 234
  emails, 247–49, 248, 251
  formality, level of, 233, 234
  letters, 237–44
  memos, 245–47
  microblogging, 249–50, 252
  to multicultural readers, 253
  process of writing, 232–33
  types of, 233
  “you attitude,” 235
cost, planning graphics and, 196
courtesy copy, in emails, 248
cover, in recommendation reports, 346, 378
cover letters, 281–82. *See also* job-application letters

Creative Commons symbols, 23, 23*f*

credentials, in proposals, 298

criteria, in recommendation reports, 339, 339–41, 340*f*

critiques, 38–40

cropping photographs, 225*f*

cross-cultural communication, 62–70

- business letter, 68–69
- differing ethical beliefs, 29
- differing laws, 29
- ethical and legal issues in, 29
- graphics and design for, 70
- guidelines for, 67
- numerical and date formats, 63
- variables, considering as you write, 66–67
- variables “beneath the surface,” 64–67
- variables “on the surface,” 62–63
- writing guidelines, 67

cross-reference tables, 157

crowdsourcing platforms, 43–48

culture, collaboration and, 49

Culture and the Shape of Rhetoric, 64

current information, 88

customizable services, 44

cutaway view, 227*f*

D

Dallas Mavericks, 252
dangling modifiers, 134–35
dashes, 482
data sets, APA documentation style for, 458
data tables, 180
date formats, 63
deadlines, 35
decellularization, 387
decimal-tab feature, 206
decision makers, 71*f*
decision matrix, 340–41, 340*f*
decisions in project management, 35
decorative graphics, 183
defamation, 27, 28
defamatory, 48
definitions, 382–88
    audience and purpose, 383
    checklist for, 418
    defined, 381
    extended, 382, 385–88, 389*f*
    parenthetical, 382, 383*t*
    sentence, 382, 383*t*, 384–85
    stipulative, 384
    types of, 383*t*
    uses of, 382
    writing process, 382

deliverables, of proposals, 293, 295

demographics of audience, 58

demonstrations, 81

- as primary research, 92

demonstrative pronouns, 117

dependent clause, 121

- commas and, 477

deployment flowchart, 222*f*

descenders, 169

descriptions, 388–97

- audience and purpose, 390
- checklist for, 418
- defined, 381
- example of, 395*f*, 399*f*
- introduction, 391, 392*t*
- nature and scope of, 391
- writing process, 382

descriptive abstracts, 347, 347*f*

design, 150–88. *See also* online document design; print document design

- alignment, 154*f*, 155
- audience and, 151
- borders, 172
- boxes, 171*t*
- checklist for, 188
- contrast, 153*f*, 155

  - goals of, 151
  - highlighting ethical and legal information, 31*f*
  - marginal glosses, 171*t*
  - multicultural audiences, 152
  - planning, 151–2
  - principles of, 152–5
  - proximity, 153*f*, 155
  - pull quotes, 172*t*
  - purpose, 152
  - repetition, 153*f*, 155
  - resources, 152
  - rules, 170*t*
  - screens, 171*t*, 172
- design standards, 181
- desirable criteria, 339
- details
  - in cross-cultural communication, 65
  - in descriptions, 391, 393–94
- deviation bar graph, 211*t*
- diagrams, 203, 217, 218*f*
- dictionaries, 83
  - APA documentation style for, 457
- digital object identifier
  - APA style, 453, 456
- digitization days, 46
- diligence, 19, 48

direct costs, 302

directives, 315, 317–18, 317*f*, 335

disabilities, people with, 146–47

  online-document design, 180–81

discussion, in memos, 246*f*

discussion boards, 80, 81, 85*f*

discussion forums, 85

  APA documentation style for, 459

dissertations

  APA documentation style for, 457

  IEEE documentation style for, 465

dividers, 156

document, factor to consider, 7

document design. *See* design; online document design; print document design

document structure, 180

document websites, MLA documentation style for, 471

documentation, 353

documentation of sources, 445–83. *See also* APA style; IEEE style; MLA style

Donaldson, Thomas, 29

dot leaders, 206, 207

double-blind experiment, 94

Dozuki, 257

drafting

  of correspondence, 233

- for definitions, descriptions, and instructions, 382
- informational reports, 316
- instructions, 407–11
- oral presentations, 423
- proposals, 291
- in writing process, 12

drawing tools, 215

E

economic variables, 63

edited books
- APA documentation style for, 455
- IEEE documentation style for, 464
- MLA documentation style for, 470

editing, 475–491
- correspondence, 233
- informational reports, 316
- instructions, 411–12
- mechanics, 486–91
- in microblogs, 252
- oral presentations, 423
- proposals, 291
- punctuation, 476–86
- in writing process, 12

edition number
- APA documentation style for, 455

  IEEE documentation style for, 464
  MLA documentation style for, 471
education, in résumés, 268–69
educational variables, 63
electronic books, 83–84
  APA documentation style for, 457
electronic documents, APA citation style for, 452
electronic mailing lists, posts to, APA documentation style for, 459
electronic résumé, 275. *See also* plain-text résumés
electronic sources
  APA documentation style for, 456–59
  IEEE documentation style for, 465
  MLA citation style for, 468
  MLA documentation style for, 471–72
electronic tools
  collaboration, 41–48
  crowdsourcing platforms, 43–48
  messaging technologies, 41
  shared document workspaces, 43–45
  videoconferencing, 42
  wikis, 43–45
  word-processing tools, 41
"elevator pitch," 260
ellipses, 486
email collaboration vs. Wiki collaboration, 13*f*
emails, 41, 247–49, 251

APA documentation style for, 459
checklist for, 254–55
elements of, 247, 248
follow-up, to job interview, 285
formality level and, 233
MLA documentation style for, 472
netiquette, 249, 250*f*, 251
reasons for use, 248
with and without clichés, 236*f*
emotional intelligence, 11
emphasis, in sentences, 125–26
employees, basic rights, 19
employers, ethical obligations to, 19–20
employment history
gaps in, 270–71
in proposals, 298
in résumés, 269–71
enclosure line, in letters, 237, 239*f*
encyclopedias, 80, 83
APA documentation style for, 457
ENERGY STAR, 420
environment, ethical obligations to, 21–22
epitome, 350
equipment, planning graphics and, 196
ethics
bad news and, 112

- in business correspondence, 236
- checklist for, 32
- code of conduct, 25
- corporate culture and, 24–26
- cross-cultural communication, 29
- defined, 17
- euphemisms, 140–41
- graphics and, 194
- introduction to, 17–19
- in job applications, 260–61
- obligations to the employer, 19–20
- obligations to the environment, 21–22
- obligations to the public, 20–21
- online-document design, 182
- principles for ethical communication, 31*f*
- in proposals, 298
- in recommendation reports, 342
- resources for, 31*f*
- type size, 167

Ethics & Compliance Initiative, 26
Ethics Resource Center, 24
etymology, in extended definitions, 388
euphemisms, 140–41
evaluation materials, 37
evaluation techniques
- in proposals, 305

evidence, in executive summary, 351
examples, in extended definitions, 385–86
excessive line spacing, 167*f*
exclamation points, 481
executive overview, 350
executive summary
    guidelines for, 351
    in recommendation reports, 350–52, 359*f*, 378
expectations of audience, 58
experience, in proposals, 300, 302
experiments, 81
    as primary research, 93–94
expertise, planning graphics and, 196
expletives, 130
exploded view, 227*f*
exporting, 29
extemporaneous presentations, 421
extended definitions, 382, 383*t*, 385–88, 389*f*
external contexts, 296–97
external proposals, 292, 302
eye contact
    in oral presentations, 440*f*
    in videoconferencing, 42

F

Facebook
    audience analysis and, 54–55*f*
    professional brand and, 259
    professional networks and, 262
fair use, 23, 433*f*
fair-mindedness, 104
Falls, Jason, 54
false endorsements, 28
fancy words, 144, 144*t*
FAQ pages, 178
feasibility, in recommendation reports, 337
feasibility study, 337
Federal Trade Commission, 28
feedback, 36
feedback statements, 410
field reports, 315, 319–20, 319*f*–20*f*, 335
field research, 81, 94–95
figures
    list of, 348
    in technical documents, 201, 203
filler, 142
films
    APA documentation style for, 460
filtering, 158, 159*f*
final report, 293, 337. *See also* recommendation reports
firewall, 44

flaming, in emails and microblogs, 249
flexibility, 35
flowcharts, 204, 221, 222*f*
follow-up letters or emails
    after interviews, 96
    checklist for, 287
follow-up questions, 96
footers
    example of, 177*f*
    in online documents, 176, 177*f*
    in print documents, 157
footnotes, 166, 207
forging, 20
form, in recommendation reports, 345
formality
    in correspondence, 233, 234
    in microblogs, 249
    for multicultural readers, 253
    in netiquette, 249
    of words and phrases, 135–36
formative evaluations, 305
forms, 180
forwarding messages, 249
"Fracking In Our Backyard" post, 14*f*
Freakonomics (Levitt), 261
front matter

    in manuals, 412
    in recommendation reports, 343*t*, 346–51
full-justified text, 168
functional organization principle, 393
functional résumé, 269. *See also* skills résumés
fused sentences, 120

G

Gantt chart, 303, 304, 328*f*
gaps in employment history, 270–71
gender, collaboration and, 48–49
gender-neutral language, 146
general audience, 72*f*
general descriptions, 390
general-interest media, APA documentation style for, 458
general-to-specific organizational pattern, 105
gerunds, 407, 413*f*
gestures, in oral presentations, 440*f*, 441
Gilbert, Jenny, 46
GitHub, 45
Glassdoor, 261
glossary, 67, 351, 353, 353*f*
Golden Rule, 17
“good news” adjustment letters, 243*f*, 254
goods and services proposals, 295

Google Docs, table of contents, 349
Google Drive, 43
government documents, 84
    APA documentation style for, 459
    IEEE documentation style for, 466
    MLA documentation style for, 472
government website, IEEE documentation style for, 465
grade-point average, 268
grammar, 118–25
    adjectives, 122–23
    ambiguous pronoun references, 120–22
    comma splices, 119–20, 478
    comparisons, 122
    pronoun-antecedent agreement, 124
    run-on sentences, 120
    sentence fragments, 118–19
    subject-verb agreement, 123–24
    tenses, 124–25
grammatical subjects, 129–30, 136
graphic representation of data, APA documentation style for, 458
graphics
    audience and purpose, 71–72, 71*f*, 72*f*, 194–95
    bar (Gantt) charts, 207–11, 208*f*
    characteristics of, 193*f*
    checklist for, 229
    citing sources, 194, 198–99, 207, 210

color and, 199–201
creating, 191–229
in cross-cultural communication, 70
decorative, 183
in definitions, 383, 385
in descriptions, 390, 392*f*, 393, 395*f*, 396*f*–97*f*
drawing tools, 215
examples of, 13*f* , 202*f*
in extended definitions, 385
functions of, 191–94
inserting, 197
in instructions, 204, 410
for logical relationships, 203, 217, 218*f*
modifying, 197–98
multicultural audiences and, 194, 228, 441
for numerical information, 205–17
for oral presentations, 426–35
planning, 194–96
for process descriptions, 204
process of creating, 194–99
producing, 196–98
for proposals, 297
revising, 198
to show action or motion, 221, 223, 223*f*
space saving, 192
tables, 205–7, 205*f*

    thumbnail, 183
    types of, 205–27
    using existing, 196–98
    visual and spatial characteristics, 204
grid lines, 207, 208*f*, 214*f*, 215
grouped bar graph, 210*t*
group-oriented cultures, 64
groups, in emails, 248

H

hand gestures, 228
handbooks, 80
handicap, vs. disability, 147
handouts, 431, 436*f*, 441
hashtags, 86, 252
headers
    in letters, 239*f*
    in online documents, 176, 176*f*
    in print documents, 157
headings
    checklist for, 147
    clear and informative, 107–10
    for data tables, 180
    as hierarchy of information, 107
    in letters, 237, 238*f*

- in memos, 247
- in print documents, 169–70
- repetition and, 153*f*, 155
- revising, 109–10

Helvetica, 165, 165*f*

hierarchy of information, 107

high power distance, 253

high-context cultures, 65, 66

highlighting feature, in word-processing tools, 41

highly formal style, 135

hobbies, in résumés, 271

Hoft, Nancy L., 63

home page, link to, 178

honesty, 10, 20

- answering questions, 442
- data, reporting and analyzing, 100
- in graphics, 194
- as measure of excellence, 9*f*
- in online documents, 182
- in progress reports, 321
- in proposals, 298

Honold, Pia, 342–43

honors, on résumés, 268

HootSuite, 92

horizontal bar graphs, 208*f*

Horton, William, 203, 228

Houston Rockets, 252
HRsmart, 274
100-percent bar graph, 210*t*
hyphens, 123, 140, 487–88
hypothesis, 93

I

IBM Sametime, 43
icons, 156
ideas, generation of, 11
identifying information, in résumés, 266
idioms, 67, 182
IEEE style, 462–66
  electronic sources, 465
  one author, 464
  print periodical, 464–65
  reference lists, 463–66
  sample reference list, 466
  textual citations, 462–63
iFixit, 257
illustrations, list of, 348, 350*f*
imperative mood, 135, 410
impersonation, 28
important information, emphasis of, 173, 176
impromptu presentations, 421
inadequate line spacing, 167*f*

incident reports, 316, 331–33, 331*f*, 332*f*–33*f*, 335

Indeed, 261

independent clause, 119, 120, 476

indexes

  in online documents, 177

  type size for, 166

indicative abstracts, 347

indicative mood, 135

indirect costs, 302

individualistic cultures, 64

infographic résumés, 280*f*

infographics, 203, 211–13, 212*f*–13*f*

informal writing, 135, 136

  in correspondence, 233

information, monitoring, 11

information analysis, 10

information center, 82

information for bid (IFB), 292, 298

information graphic. *See* infographics

information verification, 90

informational reports, 315–34

  checklist for, 335

  directives, 315, 317–18, 317*f*, 335

  field reports, 315, 319–20, 319*f*–20*f*, 335

  incident reports, 316, 331–33, 331*f*, 332*f*–33*f*, 335

  meeting minutes, 316, 333–34, 334*f*, 335

- progress reports, 316, 320–22, 335
- status reports, 320–22, 335
- writing process, 316

informative abstracts, 347

inoffensive language, 145–47

inquiries, 81
- as primary research, 97

inquiry letters, 237, 240*f*, 254
- response to, 237, 241*f*

inside address, in letters, 237, 238*f*

insider information, 20

inspections, 81
- as primary research, 93

instant messaging (IM), 41

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), 462

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers style. *See* IEEE style

instructional videos, 400, 402

instructions, 397–412
- audience and purpose, 403–4
- checklist for, 418–19
- conclusions, 410–11
- defined, 381
- designing, 403–4
- drafting, 407–11
- examples of, 413*f*–17*f*
- graphics for, 204, 220–23

  - instructional videos, 400, 402
  - introduction, 407–9
  - for multicultural audiences, 228
  - page design, 405*f*
  - revising, editing, and proofreading, 411–12
  - safety, planning for, 405–7, 407*f*, 408*f*
  - step-by-step, 409–10
  - titles, 407
  - usability, 411
  - writing process, 382
- integrated services, 44
- intellectual property, 22
- interactive resources, 85–87
- interests, in résumés, 271–72
- interjections, 477
- internal contexts, 296
- internal proposals, 292–93, 302, 305, 306*f*–12*f*
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 407
- *International Technical Communication (Hoft)*, 63
- international trade, 62
- interpersonal skills, employers and, 4–5
- interviews, 58–59, 81
  - APA documentation style for, 460, 461
  - follow-up letters or emails, 285–86
  - MLA documentation style for, 473
  - as primary research, 95–97

introduction
    to descriptions, 391, 392*t*
    to instructions, 407–9
    of oral presentations, 425–26
    in progress and status reports, 324*f*
    in proposals, 299
    in recommendation reports, 343–44, 360*f*–61*f*, 378
invitation requests, on LinkedIn, 264
italics, 166, 486–87

J

jargon, 67, 138–39
job boards/websites, 261–62, 266
job interview, preparing for, 283–84
    checklists, 287
job offers
    letters accepting, 285
    letters rejecting, 285–86
Job Outlook 2019, 5
job searches, 261–64
    checklists for, 286
job skills, in professional brand, 258
job-application letters, 281–82, 282*f*
    checklist for, 287
    gaps in employment history, 270–71

JoinMe, 425
Jones, Calvin, 185
journal articles, 80, 81
    APA documentation style for, 455, 457
    IEEE documentation style for, 464
    MLA documentation style for, 471
journals, 84
justice standard, 17, 18
justification, 168
justified text, 168

K

key words, repeating, 115
keywords
    in abstracts, 346–47
    in recommendation reports, 357*f*
    in résumés, 265
    in safety information, 415*f*

L

labels, for graphics, 193*f*
language ability, in résumés, 273
languages
    discriminatory, 31*f*
    inoffensive, 145–47

- for instructions, 403–4
- for manuals, 416
- for multicultural audiences, 182
- nonsexist, 146
- oral presentations and, 436–38
- Simplified English, 416
- use and tone for multicultural readers, 253

layout. *See* page layout

lead-in to lists, 127

leading, 167. *See also* line spacing

learning theory, and page design, 158–9

lectures

- APA documentation style for, 460
- MLA documentation style for, 473

left-justified text, 168

legal obligations. *See also* ethics

- copyright law, 22–23

legal sources, MLA documentation style for, 474

letter of transmittal, in recommendation reports, 346

letters, 237–44. *See also* correspondence

- adjustment, 237, 243*f*–44*f*
- checklist for, 254
- claim, 237, 242*f*
- elements of, 237, 238*f*–39*f*
- follow-up to job interview, 285–86
- formality level and, 233

  - inquiry, 237, 240*f*
  - job-application, 281–82, 282*f*
  - line spacing, 168
  - MLA documentation style for, 473
  - types of, 237, 254

Levitt, Steven D., 261

liability law, 405

libel, 28

library catalogs, 82

line drawings, 204, 224–26, 225*f*, 227*f*

line graph, 195, 203, 213–15, 214*f*

line length, 167

line spacing, 167–68, 167*f*, 169*f*, 170

linguistic variables, 63

link text, 180, 184

LinkedIn, 59
  - employment features, 264
  - professional brand and, 259
  - professional networks and, 262

links, in microblogs, 252

list of figures, 348

list of illustrations, 348, 350*f*

list of tables, 348

list of works cited, in recommendation reports, 353

listening, 36

lists, 114, 126–29

  - break up, 127
  - checklist for, 147
  - lead-in, 127
  - parallel structure, 127
  - punctuation, 127–28
  - vs. traditional sentences, 126*f*

live streaming, 28

live-action videos, 400

location, in recommendation reports, 345

logic boxes, 340*f*

logic trees, 204, 221, 223*f*

logical relationships
  - diagrams, 217, 218*f*
  - graphics for, 192, 203, 217, 218*f*
  - organization charts, 217, 218*f*

long sentences, 126, 128–29

low-context cultures, 65, 66

lowercase, 166, 166*f*

loyalty, 20

M

magazine articles, 80, 81
  - APA documentation style for, 456
  - IEEE documentation style for, 465
  - MLA documentation style for, 471

magazines, 84
main clauses, 477
main ideas, listening for, 36
main point, in oral presentations, 426
maintenance tips, 410
male-gender words, 146
management summary, 350
manuals, 412, 416
maps, 204, 227, 227*f*
    MLA documentation style for, 473
March of Dimes, 54
marginal glosses, 171*t*
margins, 160, 161*f*
marine protected areas (MPAs), 46
McDonald's Corporation, 56
mechanism descriptions, 388, 390, 392*t*, 393, 396*f*–97*f*, 418
MediaWiki, 43
meeting minutes, 316, 333–34, 334*f*, 335
meetings, conducting, 36–40
    agenda, 36–38
    critiques, 38–40
    diplomatic communication, 38
    efficiency in, 38
    listening, 36
memorable language, 438
memorized presentations, 422

memos, 245–47
    checklist for, 254
    formality level and, 233
    identifying information, 245*f*
    line spacing, 168
    organizing, 247
    progress reports as, 323*f*
    proposals as, 306*f*
    sample, 246*f*
messaging technologies, 41
methods
    in executive summary, 351
    in recommendation reports, 344, 362*f*–65*f*, 378
metric system, 63
microblogging, 41
microblogs
    checklist for, 255
    formality level and, 233
    representing organization in, 252
    writing, 249–50, 252
Microsoft, 62
    templates, 333, 334*f*
    Word, table of contents, 349
Microsoft SharePoint, 43
Microsoft Word, 401, 401*f*–2*f*
military experience, in résumés, 273

MILSPEC, 406

misplaced modifiers, 134

MLA style, 467–74

- electronic sources, 471–72
- list of works cited, 468–74
- one author, 470
- print periodical, 471
- sample list of works cited, 474
- textual citations, 467–68

mobile applications, 176*f*

moderately formal style, 135

moderation, 104

Modern Language Association style. *See* MLA style

modesty, 104

modifiers, 132–35

- dangling, 134–35
- misplaced, 133–34
- restrictive vs. nonrestrictive, 132–33

modular reports, 70, 73, 73*t*

monitoring projects, 35

Monster, 261

moods

- imperative, 135, 410
- indicative, 135

moral minimum, 29

more important to less important organizational pattern, 105

Most Valuable Professional (MVP), 401
motion, graphics for, 221, 223, 223*f*
motion pictures
  APA documentation style for, 460
Mount Auburn Cemetery, crowdsourcing, 46, 47*f*
multicolumn design, 161, 163*f*
multicultural audiences
  checklist for, 75
  correspondence to, 253
  design and, 152
  gestures and, 441
  graphics for, 194, 228
  instructions and, 416
  online document design, 182
  oral presentations and, 441
  people-first language, 146–47
  persuasion and, 296
  recommendation reports and, 342–43
multiple authors
  APA citation style for, 451
  APA documentation style for, 454
  IEEE documentation style for, 464
  MLA documentation style for, 470
multiple books by the same author
  APA documentation style for, 454
multiple sources in one citation

- APA citation style for, 452

multivolume work

- APA documentation style for, 455

N

NASA, 179, 179*f*

National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5

National Institutes of Health (NIH), 294*f*

National Labor Relations Board, 27

navigation aids

- in online documents, 173, 177–78, 177*f*
- in print documents, 155, 156–57

navigation of long reports, 349

necessary criteria, 339

negation, in extended definitions, 387–88

negative constructions, 139

negative space, 160. *See also* white space

negative statement, 387

nervousness, and oral presentations, 439*f*

netiquette

- in emails, 249, 250*f*, 251
- in microblogs, 249

network diagrams, in proposals, 305, 305*f*

networks, professional, in job searching, 262

New York Times, 84

newsletter articles, APA documentation style for, 456
newspaper articles
    APA documentation style for, 456, 458
    IEEE documentation style for, 465
    MLA documentation style for, 471
newspaper indexes, 83
newspapers, 84
Nielsen, 90
nominalizations, 130, 131, 136–38
The Non-designer's Design Book (Williams), 152
non-English book
    APA documentation style for, 455
nonfluencies, in oral presentations, 440*f*
non-gender-specific words, 146
non-HTML content, accessibility of
    online document design, 180
nonparallel structure, 131
nonprofessional positions, in résumés, 270
nonrestrictive modifiers, 132–33, 477
nonsexist language, 146
nontraditional résumés, 278
nonverbal communication, 39
note taking, 446–49
noun phrases, in definitions, 385
noun strings, 109, 140
nouns, in definitions, 385

numbered lists, 126
numbering, of instructions, 409
numbers, 488–90
numerical formats, 63
numerical information, illustrating, 205–17
    bar (Gantt) charts, 203, 207–11, 208*f*
    graphics for, 192
    infographics, 203, 211–13, 212*f*–13*f*
    line graphs, 203, 213–15, 214*f*
    pie charts, 203, 216–17, 216*f*
    tables, 205–7, 205*f*

O

object descriptions, 388, 390, 392*t*, 393, 418
observations, 81
    as primary research, 92
obvious statements, 141
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 407
one-column design, 164*f*
one-sentence paragraphs, 113
online databases, 82–83
online dictionaries, APA documentation style for, 457
online encyclopedias, APA documentation style for, 457
online forums, posts to, APA documentation style for, 459
online job interview

  - preparing for, 284
- online journal, IEEE documentation style for, 465
- online magazine content, APA documentation style for, 458
- online presence
  - professional brand and, 259
- online sources, 84
  - evaluation of, 89–90
- online-document design, 173–82
  - accessibility, 180–81
  - analysis of, 182–84
  - checklist for, 188
  - clarity, 183–84
  - combined with print document, 185–87
  - communities, 179, 179*f*
  - extra features, 178–79
  - headers and footers, 176–77
  - important information, emphasis of, 173, 176
  - mobile applications, 176*f*
  - for multicultural audiences, 182
  - navigation aids in, 173, 177–78, 177*f*
  - printable version, 179
  - readers with disabilities, 180–81
  - screen size, 152
  - simplicity, 182–83
  - table of contents, 178, 178*f*
  - text-only version, 179

  using multiple modalities, 185, 186*f*–87*f*
open questions, 96
open-system flowchart, 221, 222*f*
operable, in “POUR” principles, 181
options, in recommendation reports, 339–41, 340*f*
oral communication, 65
oral presentations, 421–43
  advance organizer, 426, 436
  answering questions, 442
  audience, 424, 441
  checklist for, 443
  conclusions, 426
  delivery, 439*f*–40*f*
  effective language, 436–38
  graphics, 426–35
  introduction, 425–26
  organizing, 425–26
  preparation process, 423
  preparation time, 423
  purpose, 424, 425
  rehearsing, 438–41
  setting, 424–25
  speaking situation, 424–25
  time allotment for sections, 424*t*
  time budgeting, 424
  types of, 421–22

organization
    of oral presentations, 425–26
    presentation graphics and, 431–36
    of progress and status reports, 321–22, 321*f*
organization charts, 203, 217, 218*f*
organization of information, 151
organizational authors
    APA citation style for, 451
    APA documentation style for, 454
    IEEE documentation style for, 464
    MLA documentation style for, 470
organizational patterns, 104–5, 425
organizational principles, 393
original post (OP), 401
overhead, 302

P

page design. *See* print-document design
page grids, 159–60, 160*f*
page layout, 155–62
    columns, 161, 162, 163*f*–64*f*
    margins, 160, 161*f*
    navigation aids in, 156–57
    page grids, 159–60, 160*f*
    white space, 155, 160–1, 161*f*

page numbering, 157
page numbers, works without, MLA citation style for, 468
pamphlets
    APA documentation style for, 459
paper published, conference proceedings
    MLA documentation style for, 466
paragraphs. *See also* grammar
    bad news in, 112
    body, 110, 113
    checklist for, 147
    clear and informative, 110–17
    coherence within and between, 115–17
    demonstrative pronouns, 117
    dividing long, 114
    key words, 115
    length of, 113–15
    logical place to divide, 114
    one-sentence, 113
    sentences, structure of, 125–36
    structure of, 110–15
    supporting information, 112–13
    topic sentence, 110–12, 111*f*
    transitional, 110, 113
    transitional words and phrases, 115–17, 115*t*
parallel structure, 127, 131–32
paraphrasing, 446–47

  APA citation style for, 451

parentheses, 482–83

parenthetical definitions, 382, 383*t*

Park Tool website, 185, 186*f*–87*f*

particular descriptions, 390

partition organizational pattern, 105

passive voice, 136–38

  in résumés, 269

past participles, 138

past perfect tense, 124–25

PDF documents, 180

Peitrequin, Hervé, 213

Penegar, Ramsey, 265

people-first language, 146–47

perceivable, in “POUR” principles, 181

periodical indexes, 83

periodicals, 84

  APA documentation style for, 455–56

  IEEE documentation style for, 464–65

  MLA documentation style for, 471

periods, 120, 481

permission, copyright and, 23, 432*f*

persona, professional, 103–4

personal brand, 258. *See also* professional brand

personal communication, APA citation style for, 452

personal correspondence, APA documentation style for, 461

personal interviews, APA documentation style for, 461
perspective, 224
persuasion, in proposals, 295–98
Pew Research Center, 27
phantom view, 227*f*
photographs, 204, 224, 225*f*
phrases
    checklist for, 148
    clarity, 136
    clichés, 140
    conciseness, 141–45, 145*f*
    fancy words, 144, 144*t*
    filler, 142
    formality level and, 135–36
    jargon, 138–39
    noun strings, 140
    obvious statements, 141
    positive constructions, 139
    prepositional phrases, unnecessary, 142
    specificity, 138
    wordy phrases, 143, 143*t*
physical conditions, and graphics, 196
pictograms, 215
"Pictures Please—Presenting Information Visually" (Horton), 203
pie charts, 203, 216–17, 216*f*, 433*f*
pilot test, 411

pitch, in oral presentations, 440*f*
placement offices, 264
plagiarism, 22, 24, 28
plain-text résumés, 274–77, 276*f*
    formatting, 275
    preparing, 274–76
plan of work, in proposals, 300
planning
    of correspondence, 233
    for definitions, descriptions, and instructions, 382
    document design, 151–2
    graphics, 194–96
    informational reports, 316
    oral presentations, 423
    proposals, 291
    recommendation reports, 378
    research, 78–79
    in writing process, 11
planning documents, 35
plural, nonsexist language and, 146
podcasts, APA documentation style for, 458
points, 166
political variables, 63
pollution, 21
positive constructions, 139
Potts, Liza, 48

"POUR" principles, 181
PowerPoint
    appear and dim feature, 429, 431
    creating templates in, 430
    linear organization of, 426
    sample of, 432–35
    SmartArt graphics, 433*f*
precision, in titles, 106
prepositional phrases, unnecessary, 142
prepositions, objects of, 123
presence awareness, 44
present tense, 124, 393–94
presentation graphics, 426–35
    available equipment, 429
    characteristics of, 427–29
    checklist for, 443
    example of too much information, 428*f*
    graphics size, 427
    handouts, 436*f*
    length of, 429
    organization of presentation and, 431–36
    PowerPoint example, 432–35
    settings for, 429
    speaking notes, 436*f*
    speaking situation and, 429
    templates, 428, 430–31

- type size for, 166
- typefaces, 428

presentation slides, APA documentation style for, 458

Prezi
- creating templates in, 430
- network/web pattern of organization, 427, 427*f*

price best value, 294*f*

primary headings, 107

primary research, 10, 90–100
- defined, 77
- demonstrations, 92
- experiments, 93–94
- field research, 94–95
- inquiries, 97
- inspections, 93
- interviews, 95–97
- observations, 92
- planning, 79
- questionnaires, 97–100
- social media, 90–92

principal investigator, 302

principle of operation, in extended definitions, 386, 386*f*

print-document design, 155–72
- checklist for, 188
- chunking, 158, 158*f*
- combined with online documents, 185–87

  examples of, 163*f*, 164*f*
  filtering, 158, 159*f*
  headings in, 169–70
  learning theory and, 158–9
  navigation aids in, 155, 156–57
  queuing, 158, 159*f*
  titles, 168–69
  typography, 162–68
  using multiple modalities, 185, 186*f*–87*f*
printed books, 83–84
printed sources, evaluation of, 89–90
priorities, 11
private information, publishing, 48
private life, distance from business life, 64
problem-methods-solution organizational pattern, 105
problem-solving model, for recommendation reports, 337–42, 338*f*
problem-solving skills
  employers and, 4–5
  in professional brand, 258
process, factors to consider, 7
process descriptions
  based on a graphic, 395*f*
  checklist for, 418
  defined, 388, 390
  detail, level of, 393–94
  examples of, 399*f*

  - graphics for, 192, 204, 220–23
  - introduction to, 392*t*
- professional appearance, 42
  - as measure of excellence, 9*f*
- professional brand
  - checklist for, 286
  - crafting, 259–60
  - establishing, 257–61
  - presenting, 259–60
- professional communication, 10–11
- professional persona, 103–4
- professional placement bureaus, 264
- professional presence online, 48
- professionalism, in proposals, 298
- profile sheet, audience, 57–58
- progress reports, 316, 320–22
  - checklist for, 335
  - concluding, 322
  - as memos, 323*f*
  - organizing, 321–22, 321*f*
  - research reports and, 293
  - sample, 323*f*–30*f*
- project management, 35
- project report, 293, 337. *See also* recommendation reports
- pronoun references, 120–22
- pronoun-antecedent agreement, 124

pronouns
    nonsexist language and, 146
    plural, 124
proofreading
    of correspondence, 233
    informational reports, 316
    instructions, 411–12
    in microblogs, 252
    oral presentations, 423
    proposals, 291
    in writing process, 12
proposals, 290–312, 315
    appendixes, 302
    budget, 302
    checklist for, 313
    contexts in, 295–97
    defined, 290
    deliverables, 293, 295
    description of plan, 297
    evaluation techniques, 294*f*, 305
    goods and services proposals, 295
    internal vs. external, 292–93
    introduction, 299
    line spacing, 168
    logistics of, 290–93, 291*f*
    as memos, 306*f*

  persuasion and, 295–98
  plan of work, or proposed program, 300, 301
  professionalism in, 298
  qualifications and experience, 300, 302
  research proposals, 293, 295
  sample, 305, 306*f*–12*f*
  solicited vs. unsolicited, 292–93
  structure of, 298–305
  summary, 299
  task schedules, 302–5, 303*f*
  writing process, 291
proposed program, in proposals, 300, 301
Proskauer Rose LLP, 27
proximity, 153*f*, 155
public, ethical obligations to, 20–21
Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association, 451
published interviews, APA documentation style for, 460
publisher's reputation, 89
pull quotes, 172*t*
punctuation, 120, 127–128, 476–86
  apostrophes, 483–84
  colons, 480–81
  commas, 476–79
  dashes, 482
  ellipses, 486
  exclamation points, 481

    hyphens, 487–88
    of lists, 127–28
    numbers, 488–90
    parentheses, 482–83
    periods, 481
    question marks, 481
    quotation marks, 481, 484–85
    semicolons, 479–80
    square brackets, 486
purpose
    analysis of, 11
    defined, 56
    for definitions, 383
    for descriptions, 390
    design and, 152
    determining, 73–74
    factor of consider, 6
    formality level and, 135–36, 233
    of graphics, 193*f*, 195
    for instructions, 403
    in microblogs, 252
    of oral presentations, 424, 425
    of proposal, 299
    research and, 78
    understanding, 55–57
purpose statement, in memos, 247

Q

qualifications, in proposals, 300, 302
qualitative data, APA documentation style for, 458
qualitative evaluations, 94, 305
quality-control measures, in proposals, 298
quantitative evaluations, 94, 305
quantity scale, 209, 215
question marks, 481
questionnaires, 81
    administering, 98
    data, presentation of, 98–100
    effective questions, 98
    as primary research, 97–100
    testing, 98
    types of questions for, 99
questions
    in field reports, 320
    for interviews, 95
    in oral presentations, 442
    in questionnaires, 98, 99
queuing, 158, 159*f*
Quick Response (QR) code, 260
Quip, 43, 44*f*, 45*f*
quotation marks, 481, 484–85
quotations, commas and, 478
quoted material, APA citation style for, 451

quoting, 448

R

ragged right, 168
rank, in cross-cultural communication, 65
raw data, APA documentation style for, 458
readers' safety, 405
read-through, 297
really simple syndication (RSS) technology, 86, 87*f*. *See also* RSS feeds
real-time communication, APA documentation style for, 459
recommendation reports, 293, 315, 336–79
    checklist for, 378–79
    defined, 337
    elements of, 343*t*
    front matter, 346–51
    problem-solving model, 337–42, 338*f*
    role of, 337
    sample of, 354*f*–77*f*
    writing process, 342–53
recommendations
    in memos, 246*f*, 247
    in recommendation reports, 345, 375*f*, 379
recordings of oral presentations, 441
reference lists
    APA style, 452–61

  IEEE style, 463–66
reference works, 83
  APA documentation style for, 455, 457
references
  in progress and status reports, 329*f*
  in recommendation reports, 353, 376*f*
  in résumés, 272
rehearsal, for job interviews, 284
rehearsal, of oral presentations, 438–41
rejection, letters acknowledging, 286
religious variables, 63
relocate, willingness to, 273
repetition
  color and, 199
  in design, 153*f*, 155
  of safety information, 407
repurpose, 24
request for proposal (RFP), 84, 292, 296, 298, 305
request for quotation (RFQ), 292, 294*f*, 298
research, 10, 77–101
  academic vs. workplace, 78
  checklist for, 101
  in executive summary, 351
  methods of, 79–82
  planning, 78–79
  primary research, 90–92

  process of, 78–79
  secondary research, 82–90
research proposals, 293, 295
research reports, APA documentation style for, 458, 459
research tools
  abstract services, 83
  library catalogs, 82
  newspaper indexes, 83
  online databases, 82–83
  periodical indexes, 83
  reference works, 83
  web search engines, 83
resource links, 179
resources, design and, 152
restrictive modifiers, 132–33
results, in recommendation reports, 344–45, 366*f*–72*f*
RESUMate, 274
résumé-preparation agencies, 265
résumés
  checklist for, 287
  chronological, 266–73, 267*f*
  infographic, 280*f*
  length of, 265–66
  nontraditional, 278
  plain-text, 274–77, 276*f*
  posting on job boards/websites, 261–62, 266

- skills, 266, 273, 274*f*, 276*f*
- video, 281*f*
- visually enhanced, 279*f*
- writing, 265–81

résumé-preparation agencies, 265

revising
- correspondence, 233
- definitions, descriptions, and instructions, 382
- graphics, 198
- headings, 109–10
- informational reports, 316
- instructions, 411–12
- oral presentations, 423
- proposals, 291
- in writing process, 12

revision feature, in word-processing tools, 41

rich site summary (RSS) technology, 86, 87*f*

rights
- employees, 19
- standard, 17, 18

robust, in “POUR” principles, 181

RSS aggregator, 86

RSS feeds, 86, 87*f*

rules, 170*t*, 207

run-on sentences, 120

S

safety, planning for in instructions, 405–7

safety information, 415*f*

safety labels, 407*f*, 408*f*

salutation, in letters, 237, 238*f*

sans-serif typeface, 165, 165*f*, 167

schedule in project management, 35, 37, 79

scientific reports

- IEEE documentation style for, 465

screen shots, 204, 224, 225*f*, 226

screen size, 152

screens, 171*t*, 172

screenshot-based videos, 400

scripted presentations, 422

search page/engine, 179

secondary headings, 107

secondary research, 10

- defined, 77
- evaluation of information, 88–90
- interactive resources, 85–87
- planning, 79
- social media, 85–87
- sources, 83–84
- tools, 82–83

section, edited book

  APA documentation style for, 455
  IEEE documentation style for, 464
  MLA documentation style for, 471
secured services, 44
self-discipline, 11
self-plagiarism, 28
semicolons, 120, 479–80
sentence definitions, 382, 383*t*, 384–85
sentence fragments, 118–19
sentences
  checklist for, 147
  emphasis in, 125–26
  length of, 126, 128–29, 297
  lists of, 126, 126*f*, 127–28
  modifiers, 132–33
  parallel structure, 131–32
  “real” subjects of, 129–30
  “real” verbs of, 131
  structure of, 125–36
  traditional vs. list, 126*f*
sequential design, 404
serif typeface, 165, 165*f*, 167
setting
  factor of consider, 6–7
  for oral presentations, 424–25
sexist language, 146

sexual discrimination, 29
Shankman, Peter, 26
shared document workspaces, 43–45
sharing, vs. selling, in online communication, 252
short sentences, 129
Siegmeth, Sydney, 43, 45
signal words, 406, 406*t*
signature
    in emails, 248
    in letters, 237, 239*f*
sign-language specialists, 441
simplicity, 182–83, 193*f*
Simplified English, 416
simultaneous design, 404
site map, 177, 177*f*
skills, for workplace communication, 10–11
skills résumés, 266, 273, 274*f*, 276*f*
Skype, 42, 43
slander, 28
slang, 67
slides, 166
SmartArt graphics, 433*f*
Smith, Terry C., 429
social media
    analytics of, 91–92
    audience research and, 59

  during critical emergencies, 48
  data analysis, 59, 62
  defamation, 27, 28
  ethical and legal issues, 26–28
  false endorsements, 28
  guidelines for using, 29
  impersonation, 28
  instructions and, 397
  job applicants and, 260
  links to, 183, 184*f*
  personal vs. company-sponsored accounts, 27
  policies for, 26–27, 31*f*
  professional brand and, 258, 259
  as research tool, 80, 90–92
  self-plagiarism, 28
  sources, 84, 85–87
  terms of service, 28
  trademark, 28
"Social Media in the Workplace Around the World 3.0" (Proskauer Rose LLP), 27
social variables, 63
social-bookmarking sites, 86
soft skills, employers and, 4–5
software, for nontraditional résumés, 278
software as a service, 43
solicited proposals, 292–93

sources. *See* documentation of sources
space, transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*
spatial characteristics, graphics for, 192, 204, 224–27
spatial organizational pattern, 105
spatial organizational principle, 393
speaker's checklist, for oral presentations, 443
speaking, 3, 10
speaking notes, 431, 436*f*
speaking situations, 424–25
    presentation graphics and, 429
specific facts, APA citation style for, 451
specifications, 398*f*
specificity
    in questionnaires, 98
    in words and phrases, 138
speeches
    APA documentation style for, 460
    MLA documentation style for, 473
speed, in oral presentations, 440*f*
sports, in résumés, 271
square brackets, 486
Squarespace, 259
squinting modifiers, 134
standards, MLA documentation style for, 465
standards, IEEE documentation style for, 465
statistical data, graphical presentation of, 426

status reports, 320–22, 335
  concluding, 322
  organizing, 321–22, 321*f*
stealing, 20
step-by-step descriptions, 393
step-by-step instructions, 409–10
stipulative definitions, 384
stratum graph, 211*t*
stub, 205*f*, 206
style sheets, 37
styles, 12
Styles function, 107, 108
subdivided bar graph, 210*t*
subheadings, in table of contents, 348
subject line
  in emails, 248
  in letters, 237, 238*f*
  in memos, 246*f*, 247
subject-verb agreement, 123–24
subordinating conjunctions, 121
summarizing, 448–49
  APA citation style for, 451
summary
  in memos, 246*f*, 247
  in oral presentations, 437
  in progress and status reports, 323*f*

  in proposals, 299

  in résumés, 266, 267*f*

  transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*

summative evaluations, 305

Superintendent of Documents system, 84

supporting information, 112–13

survey software, 97

SurveyMonkey, 97

symbols, list of, 353, 353*f*

T

table of contents

  in online documents, 178, 178*f*

  in recommendation reports, 347–48, 358*f*, 378

table-of-contents abstracts, 347

tables, 180, 195, 205–7, 205*f*

  creating, 206–7

  parts of, 205*f*

  for process descriptions and instructions, 204, 221*f*

  in proposals, 303, 303*f*

  in technical documents, 201, 203

  width of, 207

tabs, 156

tagged content, 86, 87*f*

TASER, 43, 44*f*, 45*f*

task pattern of organization, 321*f*
task schedules, 298, 302–5, 303*f*
tasks
    breaking large project into, 35, 37
    defining, 37
team leaders, 37
technical communication
    audience, 4, 6, 55–57
    defined, 2–4
    importance of, 4–5
    meeting reader's needs, 70
    modes, 3
    process of, 2
    production challenges, 6–7
    purpose, 2, 3, 6, 55–57
    writing process, 11–12
technical communicator, 2
technical documents
    characteristics of, 8*f*
    examples of, 12–14
    measures of excellence in, 9*f*
    process for writing, 11–12
technical reports
    APA documentation style for, 458, 459
    IEEE documentation style for, 465
technical skills, employers and, 4–5

Techniques for Technical Communicators (Horton), 203
technological infrastructure, of audience, 416
technological variables, 63
technology, in social media, 252
television programs
    APA documentation style for, 460
templates, 12
    for meeting minutes, 333, 334*f*
    Microsoft, 333, 334*f*
tenses, 124–25
terminal punctuation, 120
terms of service, 28
testing, for usability, 411
text messaging, 41
text résumé, 275. *See also* plain-text résumés
text size, 169
textual citations
    APA style, 451–52
    IEEE style, 462–66
    MLA style, 467–68
textual navigation links, 178
thank you letters, 285
thesis
    APA documentation style for, 457
    IEEE documentation style for, 465
thumbnail graphics, 183

thumbnail sketches, 159, 160*f*
tick marks, 210
time
    pattern of organization, 321*f*
    planning graphics and, 196
    transitional words and phrases for, 115*t*
time frame, 17
timeliness of research data, 90
Times New Roman typeface, 165
TinyURL, 252
title page, in recommendation reports, 346, 356*f*, 378
titles
    checklist for, 147
    clear and informative, 104–7
    in instructions, 407
    in line graphs, 214*f*
    in print documents, 169–70
    for tables, 205, 205*f*
tone
    in progress and status reports, 322
    in recommendation reports, 345
    “you attitude,” 235
tools and materials, list of, 414*f*
topic sentence, 110–12, 111*f*, 114
topical abstracts, 347
trade publications, 89

trademark, 28
transcripts, 97, 180, 441
transitional elements, 477
transitional paragraph, 110, 113
transitional words and phrases, 115–17, 115*t*
transitions, in oral presentations, 437
translated book
  APA documentation style for, 455
translation
  cost of, 194
  for proposals, 296
translators/interpreters, 441
transmittal letter, for recommendation reports, 378
trimming, 20
trouble reports, 331. *See also* incident reports
troubleshooting guide, 410, 416*f*
truth, 31*f*
  in professional brand, 258
TV viewing habits, 90
Twitter, 41
  professional brand and, 259
  professional networks and, 262
Twitter Earthquake Detector (TED), 92
type families, 165–66, 165*f*
type size, 166–67, 172*f*
typefaces, 165, 165*f*

typography, 162–68
    case, 166, 166*f*
    justification, 168
    line length, 167
    line spacing, 167–68, 167*f*, 169*f*, 170
    navigation and, 177
    type families, 165–66, 165*f*
    type size, 166–67, 172*f*
    typefaces, 165, 165*f*

U

unbiased information, 88
unbiased language, 98
uncertainty, in cross-cultural communication, 65–66
underlining, 169
understandable, in “POUR” principles, 181
units of measure, 206
unknown authors
    APA citation style for, 452
    APA documentation style for, 455
unpublished data, APA documentation style for, 461
unpublished document
    IEEE documentation style for, 466
unsolicited proposals, 293
uppercase, 166, 166*f*

U.S. Census Bureau, 62
U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, 21
U.S. Department of Energy, 420
U.S. Department of Labor, 257
U.S. federal agency, 92
U.S. Geological Survey, 92
usability
    in instructions, 411
    as measure of excellence, 9*f*
USA.gov, 84
user participation, instructions and, 400
user-generated content, 10, 26
utility standard, 17

V

Velasquez, Manuel G., 17, 26
verbs
    communicating vs. convincing, 73–74
    nominalized, 131
    nonsexist language and, 146
    in sentences, 131
verifiability of research data, 90
vertical bar graphs, 208*f*
victimization, 147
video résumés, 281*f*
video-based software, for online job interview, 284

videoconferencing, 42
videos
    example of, 13*f*
    instructional, 400, 402
Vimeo, for video résumés, 278
visual characteristics, graphics for, 204, 224–27
visually enhanced résumés, 279*f*
vocabulary
    in cross-cultural communication, 67
    for multicultural readers, 297
vocalizing, 440*f*
voice
    active, 67, 269
    active vs. passive, 136–38
    passive, 130
volume, in oral presentations, 440*f*
volunteer activities, 271

W

Wall Street Journal, 84
Web Accessibility in Mind (WebAIM), 180, 181
web search engines, 83
WebAIM, 180, 181
web-based documents, APA documentation style for, 456
WebEx, 425, 429

websites. *See also* online-document design
    headers and footers, 176*f*
    IEEE documentation style for, 465
    for job searches, 261
    MLA documentation style for, 471
    professional brand and, 259
    research and, 80, 81, 85
Weebly, 259
whistle-blowing, 26
White, Jan V., 199
white space, 155, 159, 160–1, 161*f*
Wiens, Kyle, 257
wiki.com, 86
Wikipedia, 43, 89
wikis, 43–45, 85–86
    APA documentation style for, 458
Williams, Nicole, 264
Williams, Robin, 152
Word wrap, 275
WordPress, 259
word-processing tools, 41
words
    checklist for, 148
    clarity, 136
    clichés, 140
    conciseness, 141–45, 145*f*

  fancy, 144, 144*t*
  filler, 142
  formality level and, 135–36
  inoffensive language, 145–47
  jargon, 138–39
  noun strings, 140
  obvious statements, 141
  positive constructions, 139
  prepositional phrases, unnecessary, 142
  specificity, 138
  wordy phrases, 143, 143*t*
work made for hire, 22
work schedule, in proposals, 298
Workforce Solutions Group, 5
working procedures, 37
working title, 106
workplace communication, skills and qualities for, 10–11
workplace research, 78. *See also* research
works cited, list of, MLA style for, 468–74
Worldwide Web Consortium (W3C), 181
writer's checklists
  audience and purpose analysis, 75
  collaboration, 50
  corresponding in print and online, 254
  definitions, descriptions, and instructions, 418–19
  ethical and legal considerations, 32

  - follow-up letters or emails, 287
  - graphics, 229
  - informational reports, 335
  - job-application letters, 287
  - job interview preparation, 287
  - job search, 286
  - lists, 147
  - online-document design, 188
  - paragraphs, 147
  - print-document design, 188
  - professional brand, 286
  - proposals, 313
  - recommendation reports, 378–79
  - research, 101
  - résumés, 287
  - sentences, 147
  - titles and headings, 147
  - words and phrases, 148
- writing instructions, 420
- writing process, 3
  - correspondence, 232–33
  - definitions, descriptions, and instructions, 382
  - informational reports, 316
  - proposals, 291
  - recommendation reports, 342–53
  - steps in, 11–12
- writing sentence

  definitions, 384

Y

Yammer, 41
“you attitude,” 235
YouTube
  instructional videos, 400
  for video résumés, 278

Z

Zappos, 252
Zooniverse, 46

Extended Descriptions

The front cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber

An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Characteristics of a Technical Document

An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents

Figure 1.1 A Video That Educates the Public About a Technical Subject

Figure 1.2 A Graphic Comparing Two Communication Media

Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint

Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint

Figure 2.1 Selected Licensing Symbols from Creative Commons

A document shows how to present guidelines for social media

An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Principles for Ethical Communication

Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread

A report with five comments

Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread

Figure 3.2 Crowdsourcing Content for a Database

An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration
Figure 4.1 Analysis of Facebook Users
Text shows a business letter
Text shows a business letter
Figure 4.2 Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers’ Needs and Interests
Figure 4.2 Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers’ Needs and Interests
Figure 4.3 Table of Contents for a Modular Report
An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience
An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience
Figure 5.1 A Discussion Board Exchange
Figure 5.2 Search Results for Pages Tagged with “Driverless Cars”
Figure 5.3 A Website Offering RSS Feeds
A screenshot shows a page from Corn Naturally with the heading Evaluating Information from Internet Sources
A paragraph with notations shows how to create a professional persona
Figure 6.1 A Topic Sentence Works Better at the Start of the Paragraph
Figure 6.2 A Traditional Sentence and a Sentence List
A passage shows how to revise for conciseness and simplicity
Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles
Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles

Figure 7.3 Queuing
Figure 7.4 Filtering
Figure 7.5 Thumbnail Sketches
Figure 7.6 Sample Grids Using Picas and Inches
Figure 7.7 Typical Margins for a Document That Is Bound Like a Book
An annotated illustration depicts how to format columns
Figure 7.8 A Multicolumn Design
Figure 7.9 A One-Column Design
An illustration depicts type sizes in inches, points, and picas
Figure 7.15 Line Spacing Used To Distinguish One Section from Another
A page shows how rules are used in design
An illustration shows how to use boxes when composing a page
Annotated screen shots explain how to create borders and screens in Microsoft Word
An illustration shows a page from a government report
An illustration shows a page from a government report
Figure 7.16 Screen for a Mobile Application
Figure 7.18 Website Footer
Figure 7.19 Site Map
Figure 7.20 Table of Contents
Figure 7.21 Maintaining Communities
Figure 7.22 An About Us Page with Clear, Informative Links
Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities

Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities
An illustration shows a page from a user guide for a Micron product
Figure 7.2 Chunking
Figure 7.14 Line Spacing
Two annotated paragraphs show left justified and full justified paragraphs
A radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but it is harder to make a direct comparison
A line graph shows dollars spent on men’s and women’s athletics for years 2017 through 2019
Five screenshots and text explain how to insert and modify graphics
Figure 8.1 Color Used for Emphasis
Figure 8.2 Color Used to Establish Patterns
Figure 8.5 Colors Have Clear Associations for Readers
An illustration depicts ways to highlight type to a reader with three text boxes
Figure 8.6 Different Graphics Emphasizing Different Points
An infographic, titled The Current Minimum Wage Is Not Enough for Workers and Their Families to Get Out of Poverty, contains a line graph showing changes to the poverty line over time
An illustration titled Block-Diagram Version shows an organizational chart
A table with the title Light Use contains check marks for various items
A sample flowchart demonstrates use of various symbols
Figure 8.7 Parts of a Table

Figure 8.8 Structures of Horizontal and Vertical Bar Graphs
Figure 8.9 Effective Bar Graph with Grid Lines
Two sample bar graphs show how to proportion these graphs
Two horizontal bar graphs show accurate and misleading axes
A sample horizontal bar graph shows how to represent data if it is not practical to start the quantity scale at zero
A sample grouped bar graph illustrates the format
A sample subdivided bar graph illustrates the format
A sample 100 percent horizontal bar graph illustrates the format
A sample bar graph shows deviation from a norm
A pie chart gives a critique of infographics
Figure 8.12 Line Graph
An infographic shows how to use drawing tools in Microsoft Word
Figure 8.13 Pie Charts
Figure 8.14 Diagram
An illustration shows a graphic and associated text
Figure 8.17 A Table Used To Illustrate a Maintenance Schedule
Figure 8.18 Flowcharts
Figure 8.19 Deployment Flowchart
Figure 8.20 Logic Tree
Figure 8.21 Showing Action from the Reader’s Perspective
Figure 8.22 Showing Action or Motion
Figure 8.23 Cropping a Photograph
An illustration is titled, how to create and insert screen shots. It shows two screen shots, for Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat Reader, with accompanying text
Figure 8.25 Line Drawing

Figure 8.26 Phantom, Cutaway, and Exploded Views
Figure 8.27 Map
A bar graph shows the number of members of the U S Armed Forces in 2012 in thousands. The bars are replaced by images of a soldier in uniform of various heights
A three-dimensional pie chart shows expenses at Hillway Corporation
A line graph shows costs of the components of a P C
A three-dimensional stacked bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2 by quarters
A three-dimensional cluster bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters
A grouped bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters
A bar chart and an accompanying text illustrate characteristics of effective graphics
Figure 8.15 Organization Chart
Figure 9.4 Response to an Inquiry
Figure 9.5 Claim Letter
Figure 9.9 Sample Memo
Figure 9.1 Sample Emails With and Without Clichés
Figure 9.2 Elements of a Letter
Figure 9.3 Inquiry Letter
Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional’s LinkedIn Profile
Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional’s LinkedIn Profile
Figure 10.2 Chronological Résumé of a Traditional Student
Figure 10.5 Visually Enhanced Résumé

Figure 10.6 Infographic Résumé

Figure 10.7 Video Résumé: Astrid Clark

Figure 10.3 Skills Résumé of a Nontraditional Student

Figure 10.4 Plain-Text Version of a Skills Résumé

An illustration shows a completed résumé for a graduating senior

Figure 10.8 Job-Application Letter

Figure 11.4 Task Schedule Presented as a Bar Chart

Figure 11.5 Task Schedule Presented as a Network Diagram

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.2 Excerpt from an RFQ

An illustration shows a project description and its formatting

Figure 11.3 Task Schedule Presented as a Table

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

An illustration explains how to create a Gantt chart

Figure 12.2 A Field Report

Figure 12.2 A Field Report

Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Figure 12.5 An Accident Report Form

Figure 12.1 A Directive

A letter illustrates a persuasive directive

Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

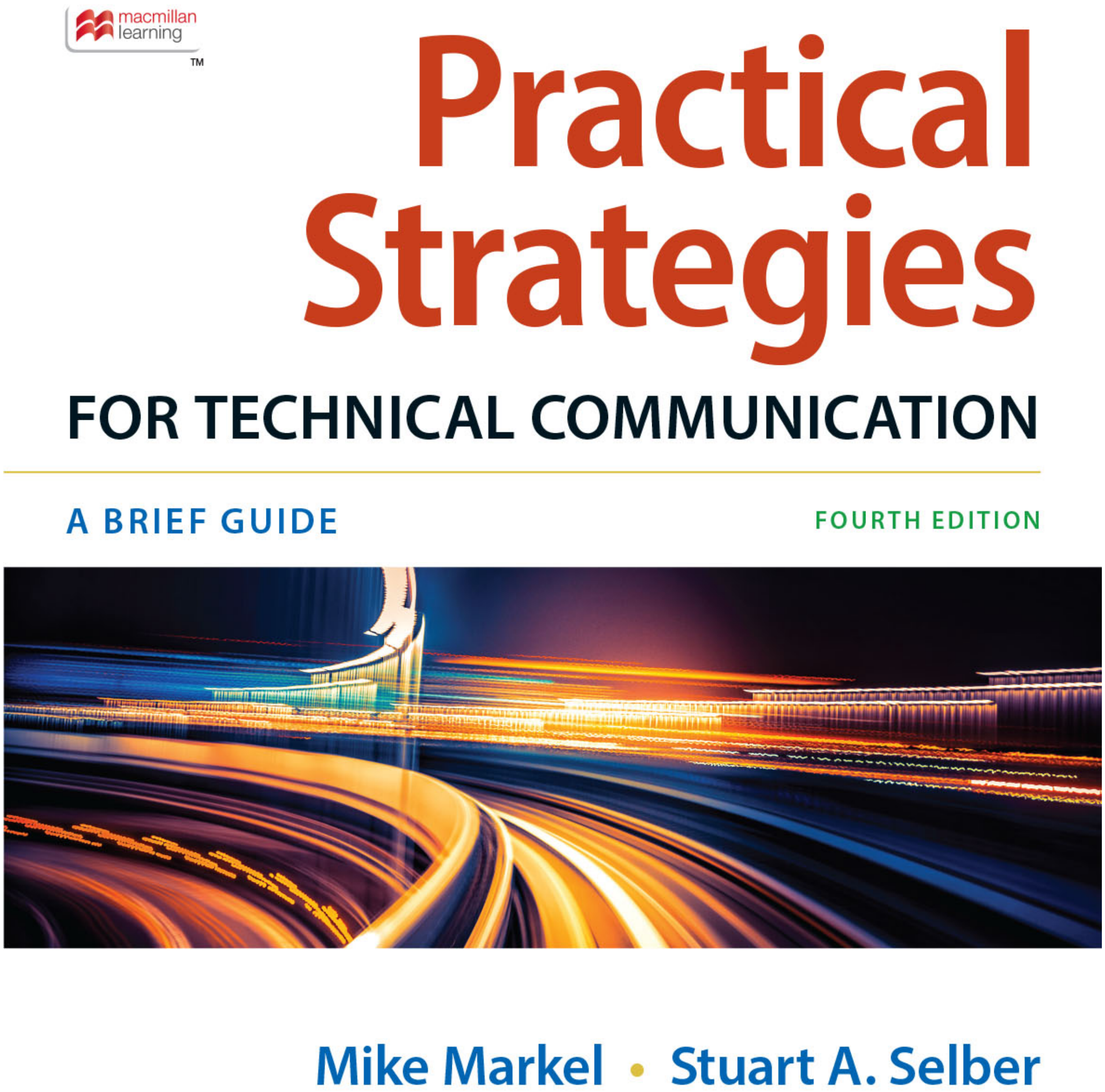
Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report
Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report
Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report
Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report
Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report
Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report
Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report
Figure 12.7 A Set of Meeting Minutes
Figure 13.2 Using Logic Boxes To Plot a Series of Options
Figure 13.3 A Decision Matrix
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.1 A Problem-Solving Model for Recommendation Reports
Figure 13.4 Descriptive Abstract
An illustration shows a table of contents with a notation
Figure 13.5 List of Illustrations
An illustration of a page shows an executive summary
Figure 13.6 Glossary
Figure 13.7 List of Symbols
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report
Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report](#)
[Four text boxes with arrows from left to right show steps for writing recommendations](#)
[Figure 14.1 An Extended Definition](#)
[Figure 14.2 Graphic with Linked Descriptions](#)
[Figure 14.3 A Process Description Based on a Graphic](#)
[Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description](#)
[Figure 14.5 Specifications](#)
[Figure 14.6 An Effective Process Description](#)
[Figure 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word](#)
[Figure 14.8 Cluttered and Attractive Page Designs for Instructions](#)
[Figure 14.9 A Typical Safety Label](#)
[Figure 14.10 Placement of Safety Information on Equipment](#)
[Figure 14.11 Excerpt from a Set of Instructions](#)

Figure 14.12 List of Tools and Materials
Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description
Figure 14.13 Excerpt from Safety Information
Figure 14.14 Excerpt from a Troubleshooting Guide
A document is titled, Reading on Your NOOK
A page containing images and text is titled, Installation Instructions
Figure 15.1 The Network Organization of Prezi
Figure 15.2 Too Much Information on a Slide
Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation
Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation
Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation
Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation
Figure 15.5 Handout
An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text
An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text
An illustration is titled How to Create A Presentation Template in PowerPoint and Prezi, and contains text illustrated with screenshots
An illustration is titled How To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation in PowerPoint. Four steps are shown with text and screenshots
An illustration shows how to integrate graphics and text on a presentation slide
Figure A.1 Inappropriate and Appropriate Paraphrased Notes
The back cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and

Stuart A. Selber

Extended description for The front cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber



macmillan learning™

Practical Strategies

FOR TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

A BRIEF GUIDE

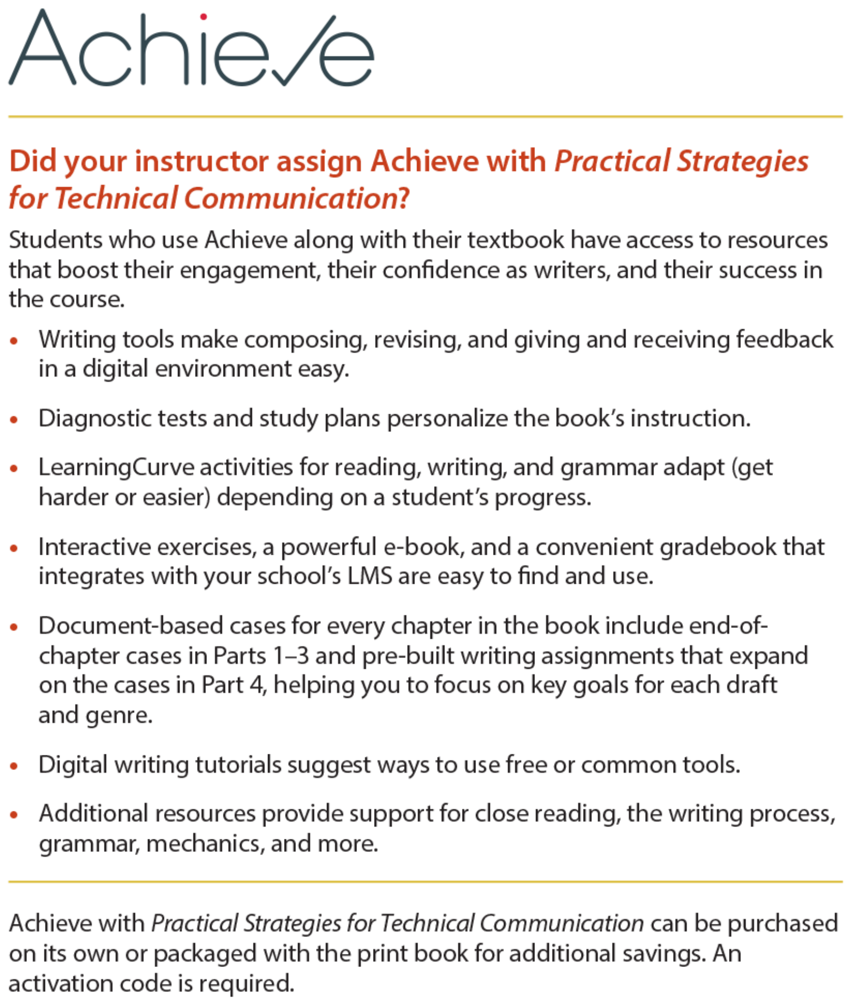
FOURTH EDITION

Mike Markel • Stuart A. Selber

The cover features multiple rays of light on a curvy road during nighttime. The title is positioned at the top and the authors’ names are positioned at the bottom of the cover page. A logo of Macmillan learning is on the top left corner of the page.

Return to The front cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber

Extended description for The inside front cover of the book, Practical Strategies for Technical Communication shows a text at the center that reads, practical workplace advice that helps you navigate new technologies.



Achieve

Did your instructor assign Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*?

Students who use Achieve along with their textbook have access to resources that boost their engagement, their confidence as writers, and their success in the course.

- Writing tools make composing, revising, and giving and receiving feedback in a digital environment easy.
- Diagnostic tests and study plans personalize the book's instruction.
- LearningCurve activities for reading, writing, and grammar adapt (get harder or easier) depending on a student's progress.
- Interactive exercises, a powerful e-book, and a convenient gradebook that integrates with your school's LMS are easy to find and use.
- Document-based cases for every chapter in the book include end-of-chapter cases in Parts 1–3 and pre-built writing assignments that expand on the cases in Part 4, helping you to focus on key goals for each draft and genre.
- Digital writing tutorials suggest ways to use free or common tools.
- Additional resources provide support for close reading, the writing process, grammar, mechanics, and more.

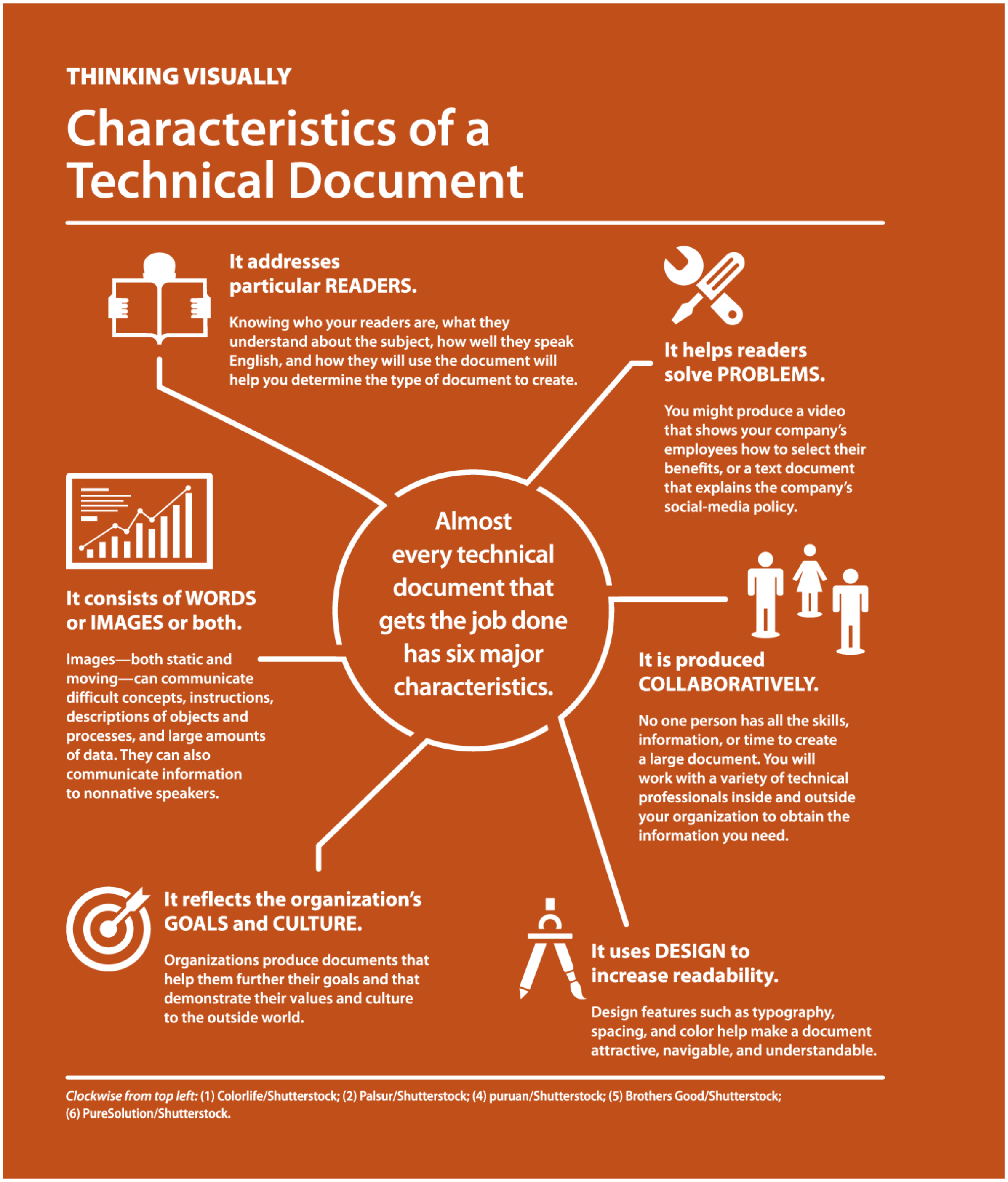
Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication* can be purchased on its own or packaged with the print book for additional savings. An activation code is required.

Did your instructor assign Achieve with Practical Strategies for Technical Communication? Students who use Achieve along with their textbook have access to resources that boost their engagement,

their confidence as writers, and their success in the course. • Writing tools make composing, revising, and giving and receiving feedback in a digital environment easy. • Diagnostic tests and study plans personalize the book’s instruction. • LearningCurve activities for reading, writing, and grammar adapt (get harder or easier) depending on a student’s progress. • Interactive exercises, a powerful e-book, and a convenient gradebook that integrates with your school’s L M S are easy to find and use. • Document-based cases for every chapter in the book include end-of-chapter cases in Parts 1 to 3 and pre-built writing assignments that expand on the cases in Part 4, helping you to focus on key goals for each draft and genre. • Digital writing tutorials suggest ways to use free or common tools. • Additional resources provide support for close reading, the writing process, grammar, mechanics, and more. Achieve with Practical Strategies for Technical Communication can be purchased on its own or packaged with the print book for additional savings. An activation code is required.

Return to The inside front cover of the book, Practical Strategies for Technical Communication shows a text at the center that reads, practical workplace advice that helps you navigate new technologies.

Extended description for an illustration titled, Thinking Visually, Characteristics of a Technical Document



THINKING VISUALLY

Characteristics of a Technical Document

Almost every technical document that gets the job done has six major characteristics.

It addresses particular READERS.

Knowing who your readers are, what they understand about the subject, how well they speak English, and how they will use the document will help you determine the type of document to create.

It helps readers solve PROBLEMS.

You might produce a video that shows your company's employees how to select their benefits, or a text document that explains the company's social-media policy.

It is produced COLLABORATIVELY.

No one person has all the skills, information, or time to create a large document. You will work with a variety of technical professionals inside and outside your organization to obtain the information you need.

It uses DESIGN to increase readability.

Design features such as typography, spacing, and color help make a document attractive, navigable, and understandable.

It reflects the organization's GOALS and CULTURE.

Organizations produce documents that help them further their goals and that demonstrate their values and culture to the outside world.

It consists of WORDS or IMAGES or both.

Images—both static and moving—can communicate difficult concepts, instructions, descriptions of objects and processes, and large amounts of data. They can also communicate information to nonnative speakers.

Clockwise from top left: (1) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (2) Palsur/Shutterstock; (4) puruan/Shutterstock; (5) Brothers Good/Shutterstock; (6) PureSolution/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The title is Thinking Visually: Characteristics of a Technical Document.

At the center is the following text: “Almost every technical document that gets the job done has six major characteristics.”

Lines lead from this center text to each of the following:

Text corresponding to an icon of person reading, reads It addresses particular READERS. Knowing who your readers are, what they understand about the subject, how well they speak English, and how they will use the document will help you determine the type of document to create.

Text corresponding to an icon of tools reads It helps readers solve PROBLEMS. You might produce a video that shows your company’s employees how to select their benefits, or a text document that explains the company’s social-media policy.

Text corresponding to an icon of a graph with text reads It consists of WORDS or IMAGES or both. Images, both static and moving, can communicate difficult concepts, instructions, descriptions of objects and processes, and large amounts of data. They can also communicate information to nonnative speakers.

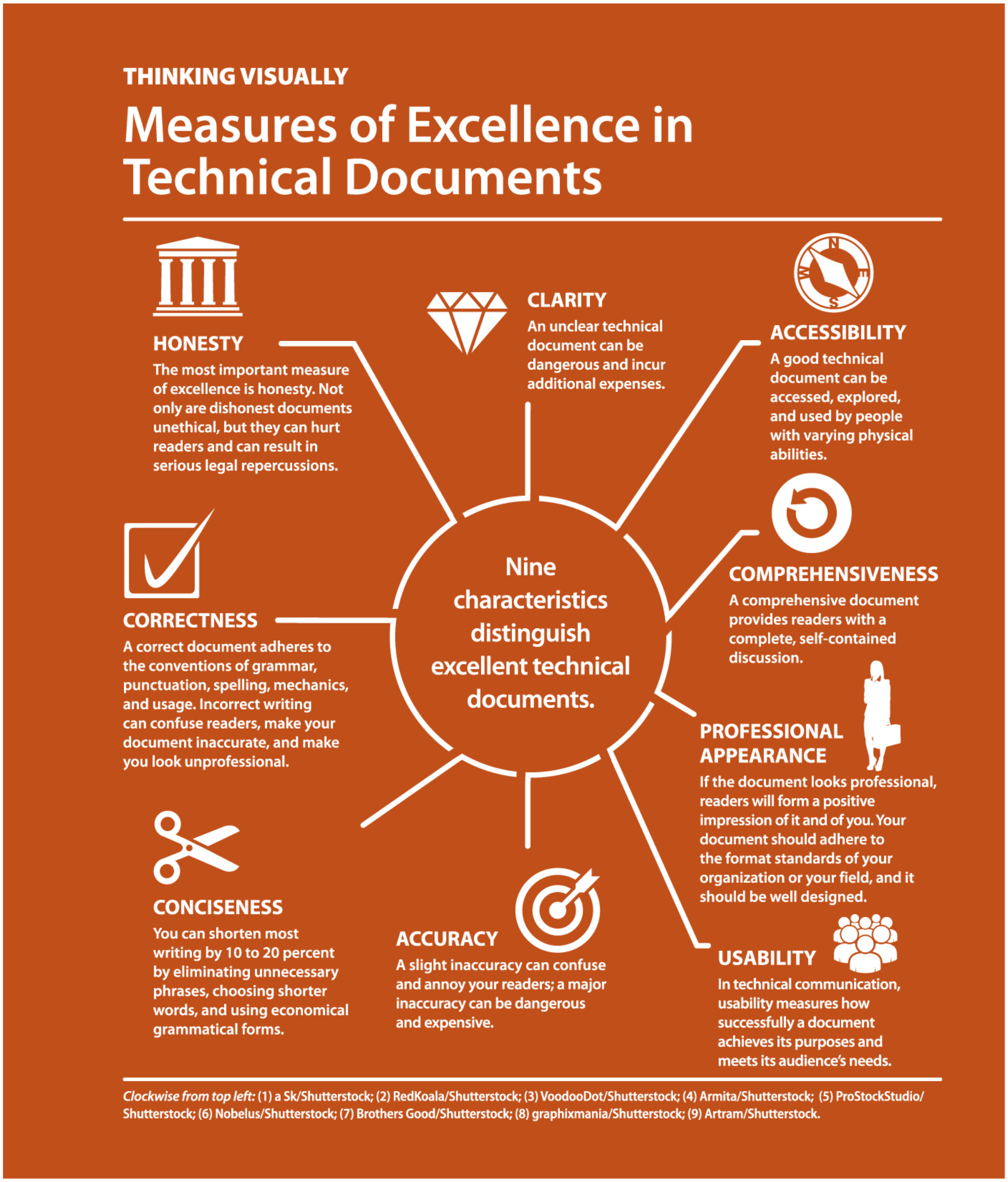
Text corresponding to an icon of people (two men and a woman at the center) reads It is produced COLLABORATIVELY. No one person has all the skills, information, or time to create a large document. You will work with a variety of technical professionals inside and outside your organization to obtain the information you need.

Text corresponding to an icon of a target with an arrow at the center reads It reflects the organization's GOALS and CULTURE. Organizations produce documents that help them further their goals and that demonstrate their values and culture to the outside world.

Text corresponding to an icon of a pencil compass reads It uses DESIGN to increase readability. Design features such as typography, spacing, and color help make a document attractive, navigable, and understandable.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Characteristics of a Technical Document

Extended description for An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents



THINKING VISUALLY

Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents

Nine characteristics distinguish excellent technical documents.

HONESTY
The most important measure of excellence is honesty. Not only are dishonest documents unethical, but they can hurt readers and can result in serious legal repercussions.

CLARITY
An unclear technical document can be dangerous and incur additional expenses.

ACCESSIBILITY
A good technical document can be accessed, explored, and used by people with varying physical abilities.

COMPREHENSIVENESS
A comprehensive document provides readers with a complete, self-contained discussion.

PROFESSIONAL APPEARANCE
If the document looks professional, readers will form a positive impression of it and of you. Your document should adhere to the format standards of your organization or your field, and it should be well designed.

USABILITY
In technical communication, usability measures how successfully a document achieves its purposes and meets its audience's needs.

ACCURACY
A slight inaccuracy can confuse and annoy your readers; a major inaccuracy can be dangerous and expensive.

CONCISENESS
You can shorten most writing by 10 to 20 percent by eliminating unnecessary phrases, choosing shorter words, and using economical grammatical forms.

CORRECTNESS
A correct document adheres to the conventions of grammar, punctuation, spelling, mechanics, and usage. Incorrect writing can confuse readers, make your document inaccurate, and make you look unprofessional.

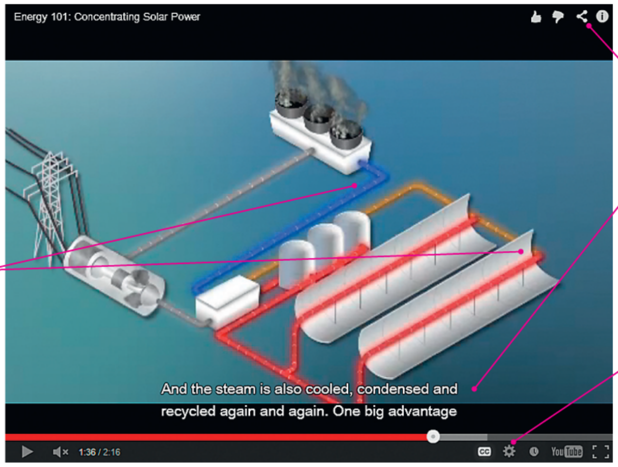
Clockwise from top left: (1) a Sk/Shutterstock; (2) RedKoala/Shutterstock; (3) VoodooDot/Shutterstock; (4) Armita/Shutterstock; (5) ProStockStudio/Shutterstock; (6) Nobelus/Shutterstock; (7) Brothers Good/Shutterstock; (8) graphixmania/Shutterstock; (9) Artram/Shutterstock.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The title is Thinking Visually: Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents. At the center is the following text: Eight characteristics distinguish excellent technical documents. Lines lead from this center text to eight icons with associated text. A icon of a courthouse is followed by text reading, Honesty. The most-important measure of excellence is honesty. Not only are dishonest documents unethical, but they can hurt readers and can result in serious legal repercussions. An icon of a diamond is followed by text reading, Clarity. An unclear technical document can be dangerous and incur additional expenses. An icon of a compass is followed by text reading,Accessibility. Because few people will read a document from beginning to end, your job is to make its various parts easy to locate. An icon of a checkbox us followed by text reading, Correctness. A correct document adheres to the conventions of grammar, punctuation, spelling, mechanics, and usage. Incorrect writing can confuse readers, make your document inaccurate, and make you look unprofessional. An icon of a circular arrow is followed by text reading, Comprehensiveness. A comprehensive document provides readers with a complete, self-contained discussion. An icon of a professional carrying a briefcase is followed by text Professional Appearance. If the document looks professional, readers will form a positive impression of it and of you. Your document should adhere to the format standards of your organization or your field, and it should be well designed. An icon of a pair of scissors is followed by text reading, Conciseness. You can shorten most writing by 10 to 20 percent by eliminating unnecessary phrases, choosing shorter words, and using economical grammatical forms. An icon of a target with arrow at its center is followed by text reading, A slight inaccuracy can confuse and annoy your readers; a major inaccuracy can be dangerous and expensive.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents

Extended description for Figure 1.1 A Video That Educates the Public About a Technical Subject



And the steam is also cooled, condensed and recycled again and again. One big advantage

This screen is from a video produced by the Department of Energy and is intended to educate the general public about the basics of solar energy. Because the document includes narration, still images, video, and animation, creating it required the efforts of many professionals.

The video takes advantage of our cultural assumptions about color: red suggests heat, blue suggests cold.

The video is meant to be easy to share on social media.

The video was designed to accommodate people with disabilities: the viewer can listen to the narration or turn on the subtitles.

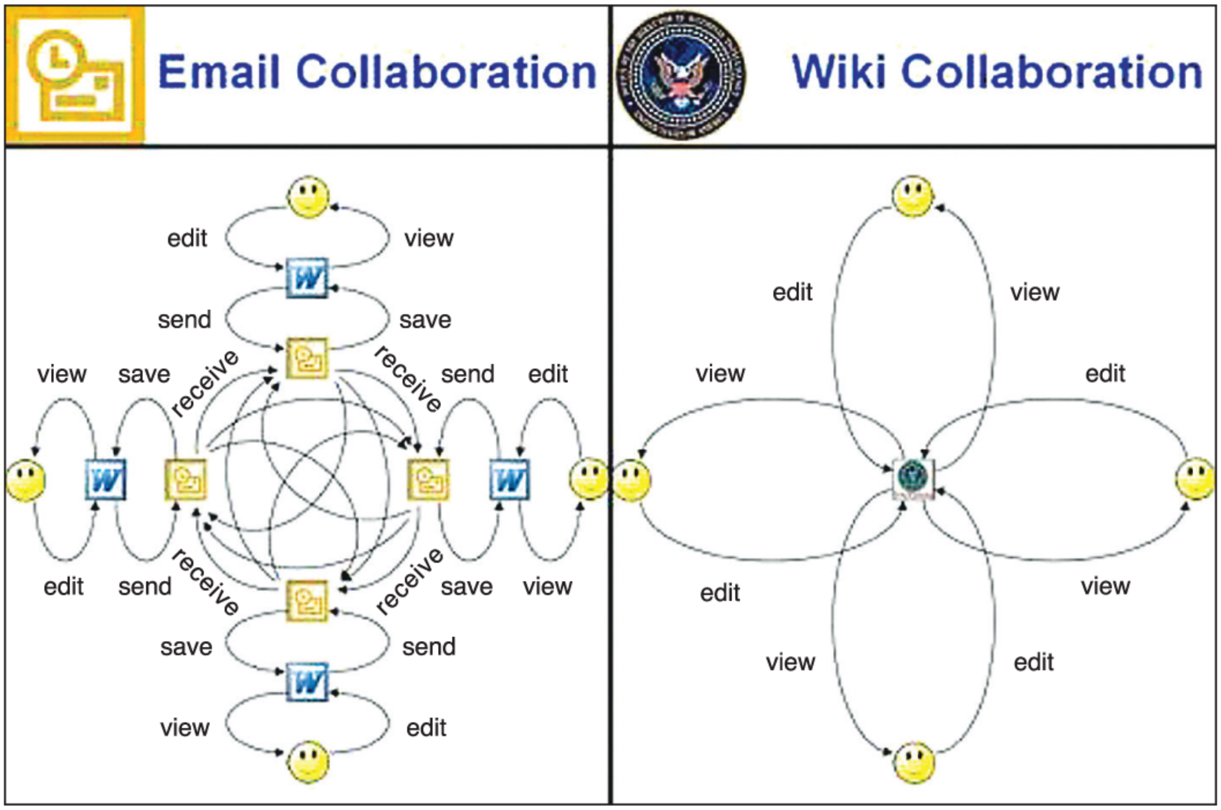
The document includes a text-only version that provides a complete transcript of the narration and describes the images.

The image educates the general public about the basics of solar energy. Because the document includes narration, still images, video, and animation, creating it required the efforts of many professionals. The “sharing” icon is annotated with the text: The video is meant to be easy to share on social media. The content of the video and its use of color is annotated with the text: The video takes advantage of our cultural assumptions about color: red suggests heat, blue suggests cold.

Subtitles are annotated, with the text: The video was designed to accommodate people with disabilities: the viewer can listen to the narration or turn on the subtitles. In the settings icon at the bottom, text notes: The document includes a text-only version that provides a complete transcript of the narration and describes the images.

Return to Figure 1.1 A Video That Educates the Public About a Technical Subject

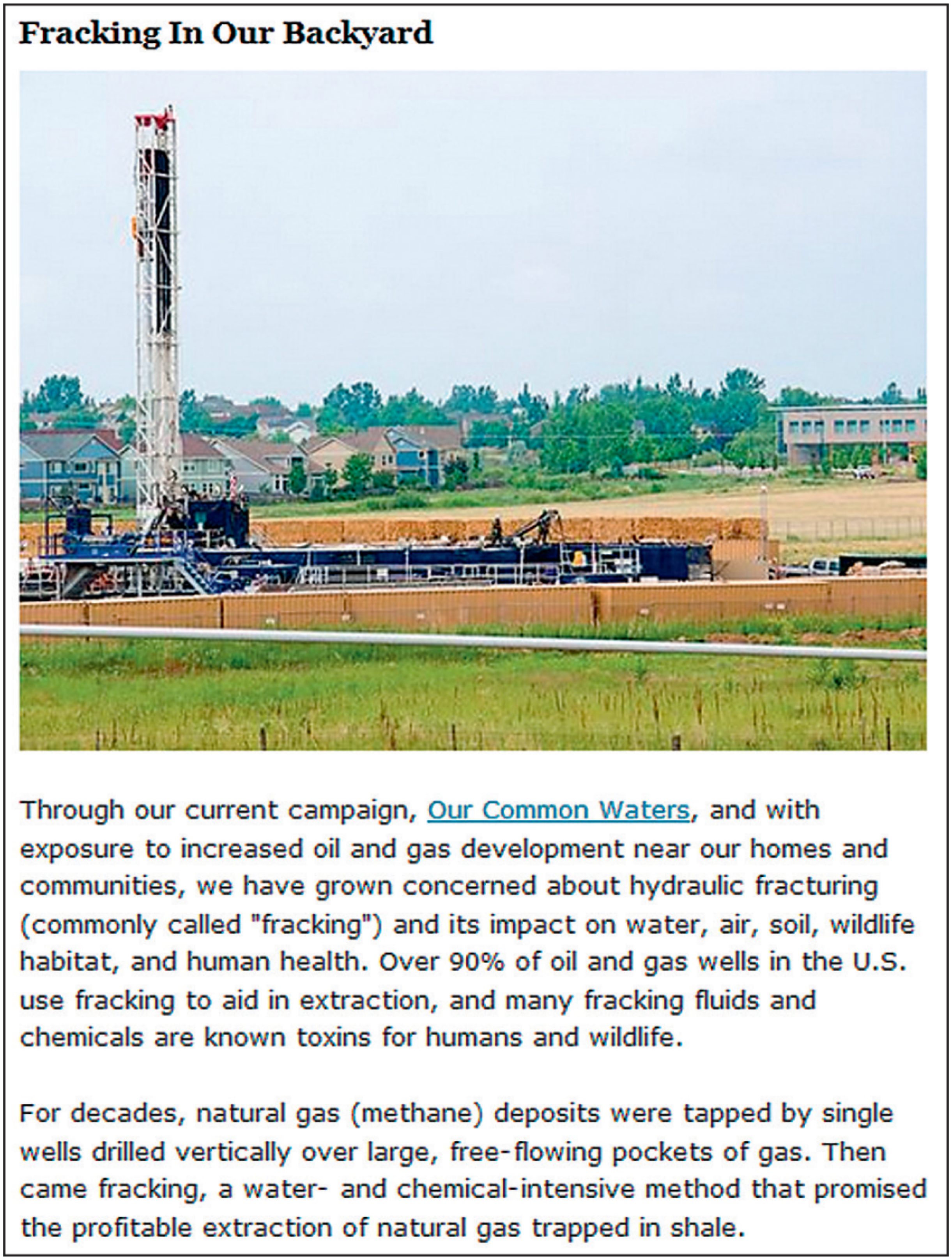
Extended description for Figure 1.2 A Graphic Comparing Two Communication Media


Email Collaboration
Wiki Collaboration
edit
view
send
save
view
save
receive
receive
send
edit
edit
send
receive
receive
save
view
save
send
view
edit
edit
view
view
edit
edit
view
view
edit

The email collaboration shows many circles of communication arranged in four sections with each section consisting of an email icon, a word icon, and a smiley representing a user. The sections are arranged around a circle. The email icons are randomly interconnected by arrows that represent information transfer. The email icons of the four sections are interconnected with each other in a circle by arrows labeled receive. An arrow labeled save from each email icon points toward the corresponding word icon, and an arrow from each word icon points toward the corresponding email icon. An arrow labeled view extends from each word icon and points toward the corresponding user icon. An arrow labeled edit extends from each user icon points toward the corresponding word icon. The drawing representing wiki collaboration is much simpler, showing just four paths with a wiki icon at the center and four user icons arranged in an outer circle. An arrow labeled view extends from the wiki icon toward each user icon, and an arrow labeled edit points from each user icon toward the wiki icon.

Return to Figure 1.2 A Graphic Comparing Two Communication Media

Extended description for Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint



Fracking In Our Backyard

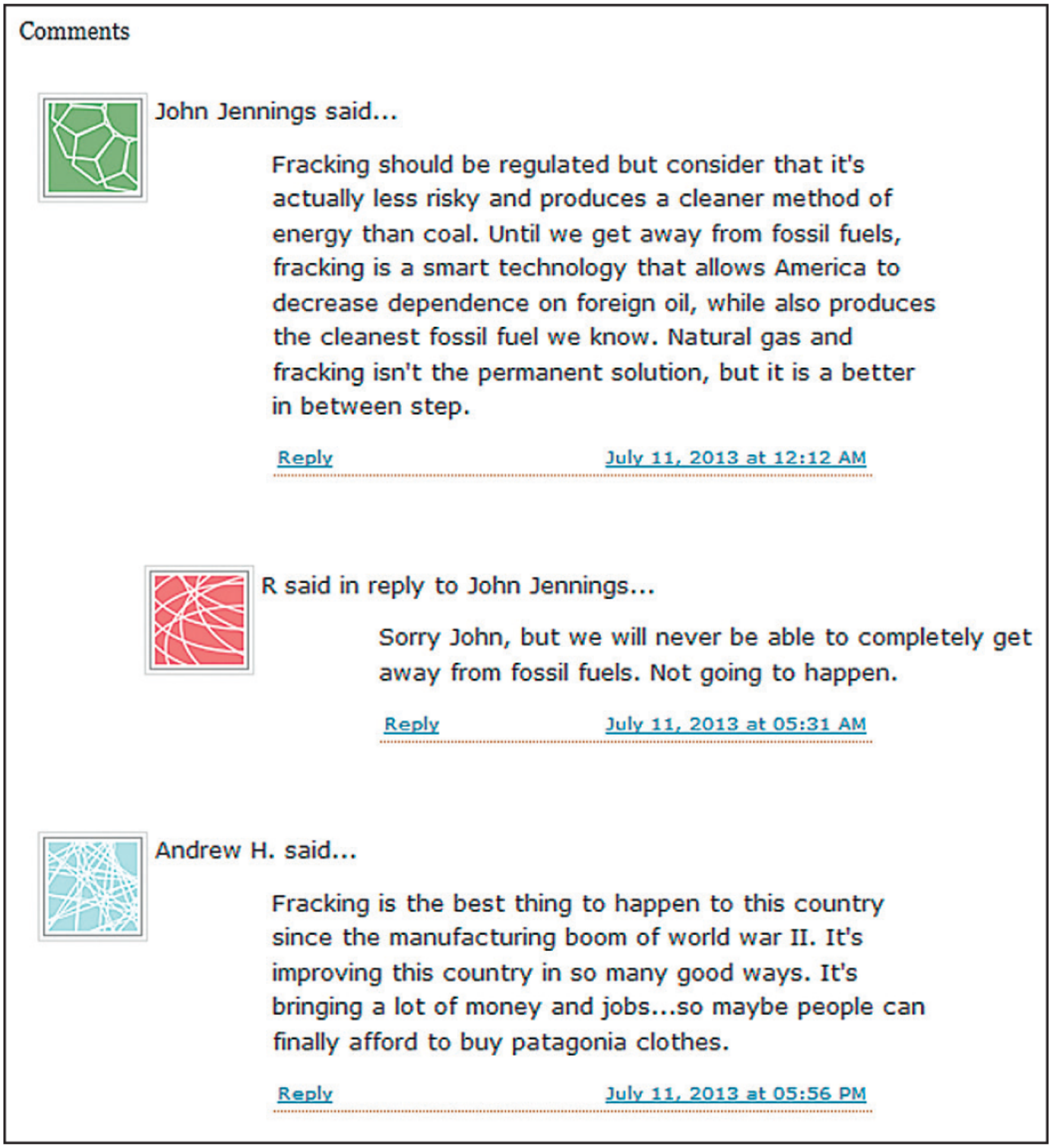
Through our current campaign, Our Common Waters, and with exposure to increased oil and gas development near our homes and communities, we have grown concerned about hydraulic fracturing (commonly called "fracking") and its impact on water, air, soil, wildlife habitat, and human health. Over 90% of oil and gas wells in the U.S. use fracking to aid in extraction, and many fracking fluids and chemicals are known toxins for humans and wildlife.

For decades, natural gas (methane) deposits were tapped by single wells drilled vertically over large, free-flowing pockets of gas. Then came fracking, a water- and chemical-intensive method that promised the profitable extraction of natural gas trapped in shale.

The fracking installation involved a well tower with associated pipes in a field. Text reads, Through our current campaign, Our Common Waters, and with exposure to increased oil and gas development near our homes and communities, we have grown concerned about hydraulic fracturing (commonly called 'fracking') and its impact on water, air, soil, wildlife habitat, and human health. Over 90 percent of oil and gas wells in the U.S. use fracking to aid in extraction, and many fracking fluids and chemicals are known toxins for humans and wildlife. For decades, natural gas (methane) deposits were tapped by single wells drilled vertically over large, free-flowing pockets of gas. Then came fracking, a water- and chemical-intensive method that promised the profitable extraction of natural gas trapped in shale.

Return to Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint

Extended description for Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint



Comments

John Jennings said...

Fracking should be regulated but consider that it's actually less risky and produces a cleaner method of energy than coal. Until we get away from fossil fuels, fracking is a smart technology that allows America to decrease dependence on foreign oil, while also produces the cleanest fossil fuel we know. Natural gas and fracking isn't the permanent solution, but it is a better in between step.

Reply July 11, 2013 at 12:12 AM

R said in reply to John Jennings...

Sorry John, but we will never be able to completely get away from fossil fuels. Not going to happen.

Reply July 11, 2013 at 05:31 AM

Andrew H. said...

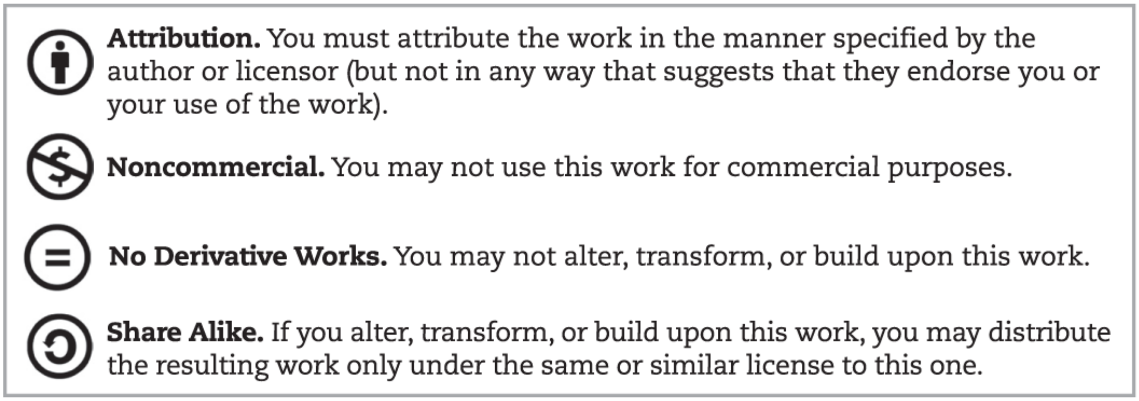
Fracking is the best thing to happen to this country since the manufacturing boom of world war II. It's improving this country in so many good ways. It's bringing a lot of money and jobs...so maybe people can finally afford to buy patagonia clothes.

Reply July 11, 2013 at 05:56 PM

The full text of Comments reads as follows. John Jennings said: Fracking should be regulated but consider that it's actually less risky and produces a cleaner method of energy than coal. Until we get away from fossil fuels, fracking is a smart technology that allows America to decrease dependency on foreign oil while also produces the cleanest fossil fuel we know. Natural gas and fracking isn't the permanent solution, but it is a better in between step. R said in reply to John Jennings: Sorry John, but we will never be able to completely get away from fossil fuels. Not going to happen. Andrew H. said: Fracking is the best thing to happen to this country since the manufacturing boom of world war II. It's improving this country in so many good ways. It's bringing a lot of money and jobs ellipsis so maybe people can finally afford to buy patagonia clothes.

Return to Figure 1.3 A Corporate Blog Post Presenting a Public-Policy Viewpoint

Extended description for Figure 2.1 Selected Licensing Symbols from Creative Commons



Attribution. You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).

Noncommercial. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.

No Derivative Works. You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

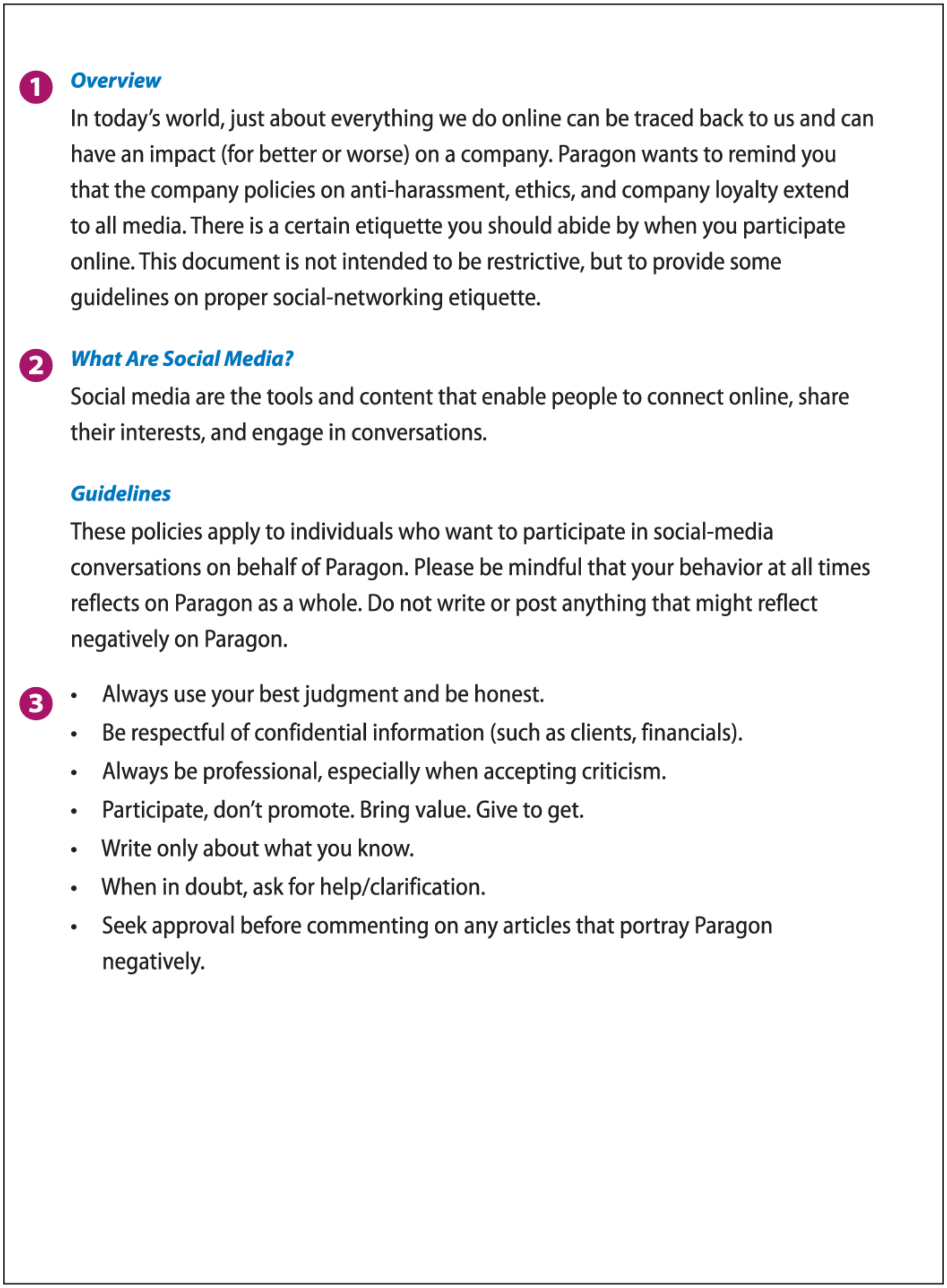
Share Alike. If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one.

Licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License, https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/.

Attribution. You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work). An icon of a person is shown. Noncommercial. You may not use this work for commercial purposes. An icon of a dollar sign with a strike-through is shown. No Derivative Works. You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work. An icon of an equal sign is shown. Share Alike. If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one. An icon of a circular arrow is shown.

Return to Figure 2.1 Selected Licensing Symbols from Creative Commons

Extended description for A document shows how to present guidelines for social media



① *Overview*

In today's world, just about everything we do online can be traced back to us and can have an impact (for better or worse) on a company. Paragon wants to remind you that the company policies on anti-harassment, ethics, and company loyalty extend to all media. There is a certain etiquette you should abide by when you participate online. This document is not intended to be restrictive, but to provide some guidelines on proper social-networking etiquette.

② *What Are Social Media?*

Social media are the tools and content that enable people to connect online, share their interests, and engage in conversations.

Guidelines

These policies apply to individuals who want to participate in social-media conversations on behalf of Paragon. Please be mindful that your behavior at all times reflects on Paragon as a whole. Do not write or post anything that might reflect negatively on Paragon.

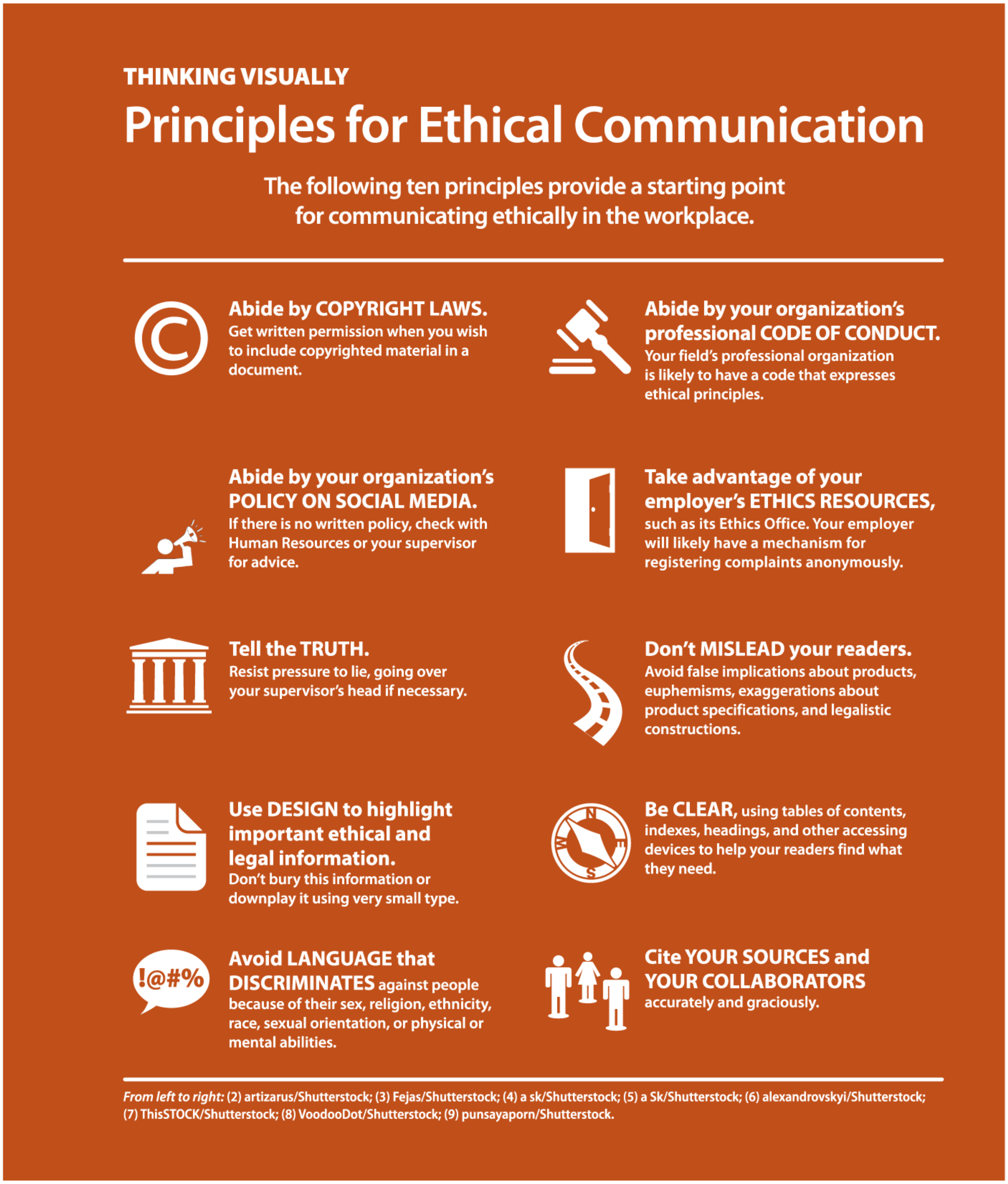
③

- Always use your best judgment and be honest.
- Be respectful of confidential information (such as clients, financials).
- Always be professional, especially when accepting criticism.
- Participate, don't promote. Bring value. Give to get.
- Write only about what you know.
- When in doubt, ask for help/clarification.
- Seek approval before commenting on any articles that portray Paragon negatively.

Text is in three numbered sections, and reads, 1 Overview. In today’s world, just about everything we do online can be traced back to us and can have an impact (for better or worse) on a company. Paragon wants to remind you that the company policies on anti-harassment, ethics, and company loyalty extend to all media. There is a certain etiquette you should abide by when you participate online. This document is not intended to be restrictive, but to provide some guidelines on proper social-networking etiquette. 2 What Are Social Media? Social media are the tools and content that enable people to connect online, share their interests, and engage in conversations. Guidelines: These policies apply to individuals who want to participate in social-media conversations on behalf of Paragon. Please be mindful that your behavior at all times reflects on Paragon as a whole. Do not write or post anything that might reflect negatively on Paragon. 3 bullet Always use your best judgment and be honest. Bullet Be respectful of confidential information (such as clients, financials). Bullet Always be professional, especially when accepting criticism. Bullet Participate, don’t promote. Bring value. Give to get. Bullet Write only about what you know. Bullet When in doubt, ask for help/clarification. Bullet Seek approval before commenting on any articles that portray Paragon negatively.

Return to A document shows how to present guidelines for social media

Extended description for An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Principles for Ethical Communication



THINKING VISUALLY

Principles for Ethical Communication

The following ten principles provide a starting point for communicating ethically in the workplace.

Abide by COPYRIGHT LAWS. Get written permission when you wish to include copyrighted material in a document.

Abide by your organization's professional CODE OF CONDUCT. Your field's professional organization is likely to have a code that expresses ethical principles.

Abide by your organization's POLICY ON SOCIAL MEDIA. If there is no written policy, check with Human Resources or your supervisor for advice.

Take advantage of your employer's ETHICS RESOURCES, such as its Ethics Office. Your employer will likely have a mechanism for registering complaints anonymously.

Tell the TRUTH. Resist pressure to lie, going over your supervisor's head if necessary.

Don't MISLEAD your readers. Avoid false implications about products, euphemisms, exaggerations about product specifications, and legalistic constructions.

Use DESIGN to highlight important ethical and legal information. Don't bury this information or downplay it using very small type.

Be CLEAR, using tables of contents, indexes, headings, and other accessing devices to help your readers find what they need.

Avoid LANGUAGE that DISCRIMINATES against people because of their sex, religion, ethnicity, race, sexual orientation, or physical or mental abilities.

Cite YOUR SOURCES and YOUR COLLABORATORS accurately and graciously.

From left to right: (2) artizarus/Shutterstock; (3) Fejas/Shutterstock; (4) a sk/Shutterstock; (5) a Sk/Shutterstock; (6) alexandrovskyi/Shutterstock; (7) ThisSTOCK/Shutterstock; (8) VoodooDot/Shutterstock; (9) punsayaporn/Shutterstock.

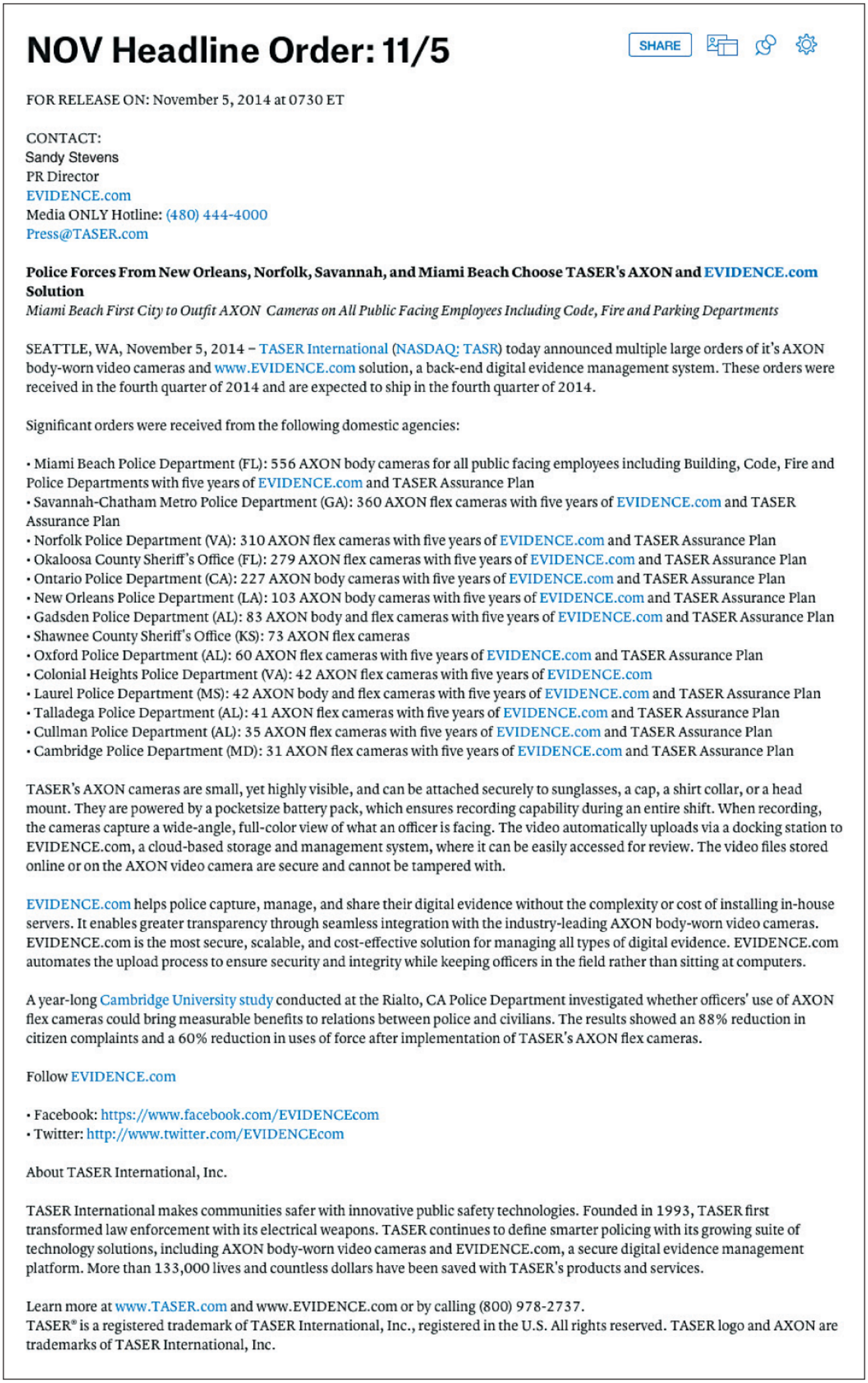
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The infographic has ten icons and corresponding text, with each icon representing a principle. The first icon shows a copyright symbol with the letter C inside a circle. The corresponding text reads, Abide by COPYRIGHT LAWS. Get written permission when you wish to include copyrighted material in a document. The second icon shows a gavel. The corresponding text reads, Abide by your organization's professional CODE OF CONDUCT. Your field's professional organization is likely to have a code that expresses ethical principles. The third icon shows a person speaking through a loudspeaker. The corresponding text reads, Abide by your organization's POLICY ON SOCIAL MEDIA. If there is no written policy, check with Human Resources or your supervisor for advice. The fourth icon shows an open door. The corresponding text reads, Take advantage of your employer's ETHICS RESOURCES, such as its Ethics Office. Your employer will likely have a mechanism for registering complaints anonymously. The fifth icon shows the front view of the court building. The corresponding text reads, Tell the TRUTH. Resist pressure to lie, going over your supervisor's head if necessary. The sixth icon shows a road. The corresponding text reads, Don't MISLEAD your readers. Avoid false implications about products, euphemisms, exaggerations about product specifications, and legalistic constructions. The seventh icon shows a text document. The corresponding text reads, Use DESIGN to highlight important ethical and legal information. Don't bury this information or downplay it using very small type. The eighth icon shows a nautical compass. The corresponding text reads, Be CLEAR, using tables of contents, indexes, headings, and other accessing devices to help your readers find what they need. The ninth icon shows a text bubble with the following symbols: exclamatory mark, at, hash, and percentage. The corresponding text reads, Avoid LANGUAGE that

DISCRIMINATES against people because of their sex, religion, ethnicity, race, sexual orientation, or physical or mental abilities. The tenth icon shows two men on either side of a woman. The corresponding text reads Cite YOUR SOURCES and YOUR COLLABORATORS accurately and graciously. Text at the bottom reads, From left to right: (2) artizarus slash Shutterstock; (3) Fejas slash Shutterstock; (4) Sk slash Shutterstock; (5) Sk slash Shutterstock; (6) alexandrovskyi slash Shutterstock; (7) ThisSTOCK slash Shutterstock; (8) VoodooDot slash Shutterstock; (9) punsayaporn slash Shutterstock.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Principles for Ethical Communication

Extended description for Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread



NOV Headline Order: 11/5

FOR RELEASE ON: November 5, 2014 at 0730 ET

CONTACT:
Sandy Stevens
PR Director
EVIDENCE.com
Media ONLY Hotline: (480) 444-4000
Press@TASER.com

Police Forces From New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach Choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com Solution
Miami Beach First City to Outfit AXON Cameras on All Public Facing Employees Including Code, Fire and Parking Departments

SEATTLE, WA, November 5, 2014 – TASER International (NASDAQ: TASR) today announced multiple large orders of it's AXON body-worn video cameras and www.EVIDENCE.com solution, a back-end digital evidence management system. These orders were received in the fourth quarter of 2014 and are expected to ship in the fourth quarter of 2014.

Significant orders were received from the following domestic agencies:

- Miami Beach Police Department (FL): 556 AXON body cameras for all public facing employees including Building, Code, Fire and Police Departments with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Savannah-Chatham Metro Police Department (GA): 360 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Norfolk Police Department (VA): 310 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Okaloosa County Sheriff's Office (FL): 279 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Ontario Police Department (CA): 227 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- New Orleans Police Department (LA): 103 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Gadsden Police Department (AL): 83 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Shawnee County Sheriff's Office (KS): 73 AXON flex cameras
- Oxford Police Department (AL): 60 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Colonial Heights Police Department (VA): 42 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com
- Laurel Police Department (MS): 42 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Talladega Police Department (AL): 41 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Cullman Police Department (AL): 35 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan
- Cambridge Police Department (MD): 31 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE.com and TASER Assurance Plan

TASER's AXON cameras are small, yet highly visible, and can be attached securely to sunglasses, a cap, a shirt collar, or a head mount. They are powered by a pocketsize battery pack, which ensures recording capability during an entire shift. When recording, the cameras capture a wide-angle, full-color view of what an officer is facing. The video automatically uploads via a docking station to EVIDENCE.com, a cloud-based storage and management system, where it can be easily accessed for review. The video files stored online or on the AXON video camera are secure and cannot be tampered with.

EVIDENCE.com helps police capture, manage, and share their digital evidence without the complexity or cost of installing in-house servers. It enables greater transparency through seamless integration with the industry-leading AXON body-worn video cameras. EVIDENCE.com is the most secure, scalable, and cost-effective solution for managing all types of digital evidence. EVIDENCE.com automates the upload process to ensure security and integrity while keeping officers in the field rather than sitting at computers.

A year-long Cambridge University study conducted at the Rialto, CA Police Department investigated whether officers' use of AXON flex cameras could bring measurable benefits to relations between police and civilians. The results showed an 88% reduction in citizen complaints and a 60% reduction in uses of force after implementation of TASER's AXON flex cameras.

Follow EVIDENCE.com

- Facebook: https://www.facebook.com/EVIDENCEcom
- Twitter: http://www.twitter.com/EVIDENCEcom

About TASER International, Inc.

TASER International makes communities safer with innovative public safety technologies. Founded in 1993, TASER first transformed law enforcement with its electrical weapons. TASER continues to define smarter policing with its growing suite of technology solutions, including AXON body-worn video cameras and EVIDENCE.com, a secure digital evidence management platform. More than 133,000 lives and countless dollars have been saved with TASER's products and services.

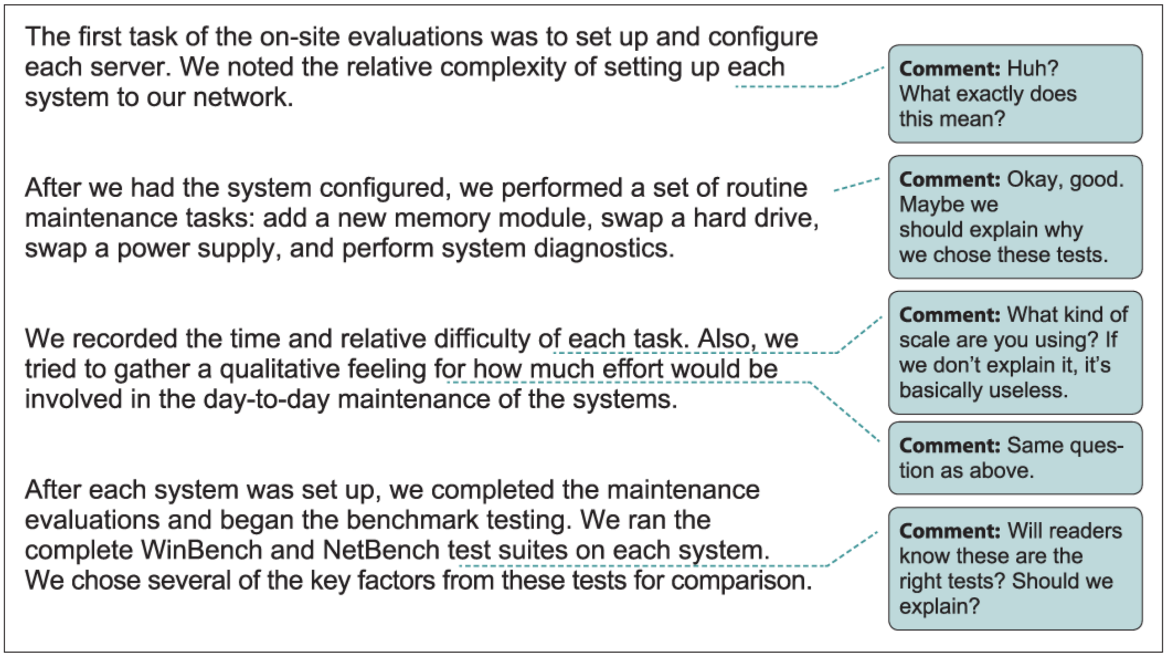
Learn more at www.TASER.com and www.EVIDENCE.com or by calling (800) 978-2737.
TASER® is a registered trademark of TASER International, Inc., registered in the U.S. All rights reserved. TASER logo and AXON are trademarks of TASER International, Inc.

The full text of the press release follows: NOV Headline Order: 11/5 FOR RELEASE ON: November 5, 2014 at 0730 E T. CONTACT: Sandy Stevens, PR Director, EVIDENCE.com, Media ONLY Hotline: (480) 444-4000, Press at TASER dot com Police Forces From New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach Choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE dot com SOLUTION. Miami Beach First City to Outfit AXON Cameras on All Public Facing Employees Including Code, Fire and Parking Departments. SEATTLE, W A, November 5, 2014: TASER International (NASDAQ: TASR) today announced multiple large orders of its AXON body-worn video cameras and www dot EVIDENCE dot com solution, a back-end digital evidence management system. These orders were received in the fourth quarter of 2014 and are expected to ship in the fourth quarter of 2014. Significant orders were received from the following domestic agencies: Bullet point Miami Beach Police Department (F L): 556 AXON body cameras for all public facing employees including Building, Code, Fire and Police. Departments with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Savannah hyphen Chatham Metro Police Department (G A): 360 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Norfolk Police Department (V A): 310 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Okaloosa County Sheriff's Office (F L): 279 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Ontario Police Department (C

A): 227 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point New Orleans Police Department (L A): 103 AXON body cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Gadsden Police Department (A L): 83 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Shawnee County Sheriff's Office (K S): 73 AXON flex cameras. Bullet point Oxford Police Department (A L): 60 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Colonial Heights Police Department (V A): 42 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Laurel Police Department (M S): 42 AXON body and flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Talladega Police Department (A L): 41 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Cullman Police Department (A L): 35 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan. Bullet point Cambridge Police Department (M D): 31 AXON flex cameras with five years of EVIDENCE dot com and TASER Assurance Plan end list. TASER's AXON cameras are small, yet highly visible, and can be attached securely to sunglasses, a cap, a shirt collar, or a head mount. They are powered by a pocketsize battery pack, which ensures recording capability during an entire shift. When recording, the cameras capture a wide-angle, full-color view of what an officer is facing. The video automatically uploads via a docking station to EVIDENCE dot com, a cloud-based storage and management system, where it can be easily accessed for review. The video files stored online or on the AXON video camera are secure and cannot be tampered with. EVIDENCE dot com helps police capture, manage, and share their digital evidence without the complexity or cost of installing in-house servers. It enables greater transparency through seamless integration with the industry-leading AXON body-worn video cameras. EVIDENCE dot com is the most secure, scalable, and cost-effective solution for managing all types of digital evidence. EVIDENCE dot com automates the upload process to ensure security and integrity while keeping officers in the field rather than sitting at computers. A year-long Cambridge University study (live link) conducted at the Rialto, C A Police Department investigated whether officers' use of AXON flex cameras could bring measurable benefits to relations between police and civilians. The results showed an 88% reduction in citizen complaints and a 60% reduction in uses of force after implementation of TASER's AXON flex cameras. Follow EVIDENCE dot com (live link). Bullet point Facebook: https: slash slash www dot facebook dot com slash EVIDENCE dot com. Bullet point Twitter: http: slash slash www dot twitter dot com slash EVIDENCE dot com. About TASER International, Inc. TASER International makes communities safer with innovative public safety technologies. Founded in 1993, TASER first transformed law enforcement with its electrical weapons. TASER continues to define smarter policing with its growing suite of technology solutions, including AXON body-worn video cameras and EVIDENCE dot com, a secure digital evidence management platform. More than 133,000 lives and countless dollars have been saved with TASER's products and services. Learn more at www dot TASER dot com (live link) and www dot EVIDENCE dot com or by calling (800) 978-2737. TASER (register mark) is a registered trademark of TASER International, Inc., registered in the U.S. All rights reserved. TASER logo and AXON are trademarks of TASER International, Inc.

Return to Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread

Extended description for A report with five comments



The first task of the on-site evaluations was to set up and configure each server. We noted the relative complexity of setting up each system to our network.

Comment: Huh? What exactly does this mean?

After we had the system configured, we performed a set of routine maintenance tasks: add a new memory module, swap a hard drive, swap a power supply, and perform system diagnostics.

Comment: Okay, good. Maybe we should explain why we chose these tests.

We recorded the time and relative difficulty of each task. Also, we tried to gather a qualitative feeling for how much effort would be involved in the day-to-day maintenance of the systems.

Comment: What kind of scale are you using? If we don't explain it, it's basically useless.

Comment: Same question as above.

After each system was set up, we completed the maintenance evaluations and began the benchmark testing. We ran the complete WinBench and NetBench test suites on each system. We chose several of the key factors from these tests for comparison.

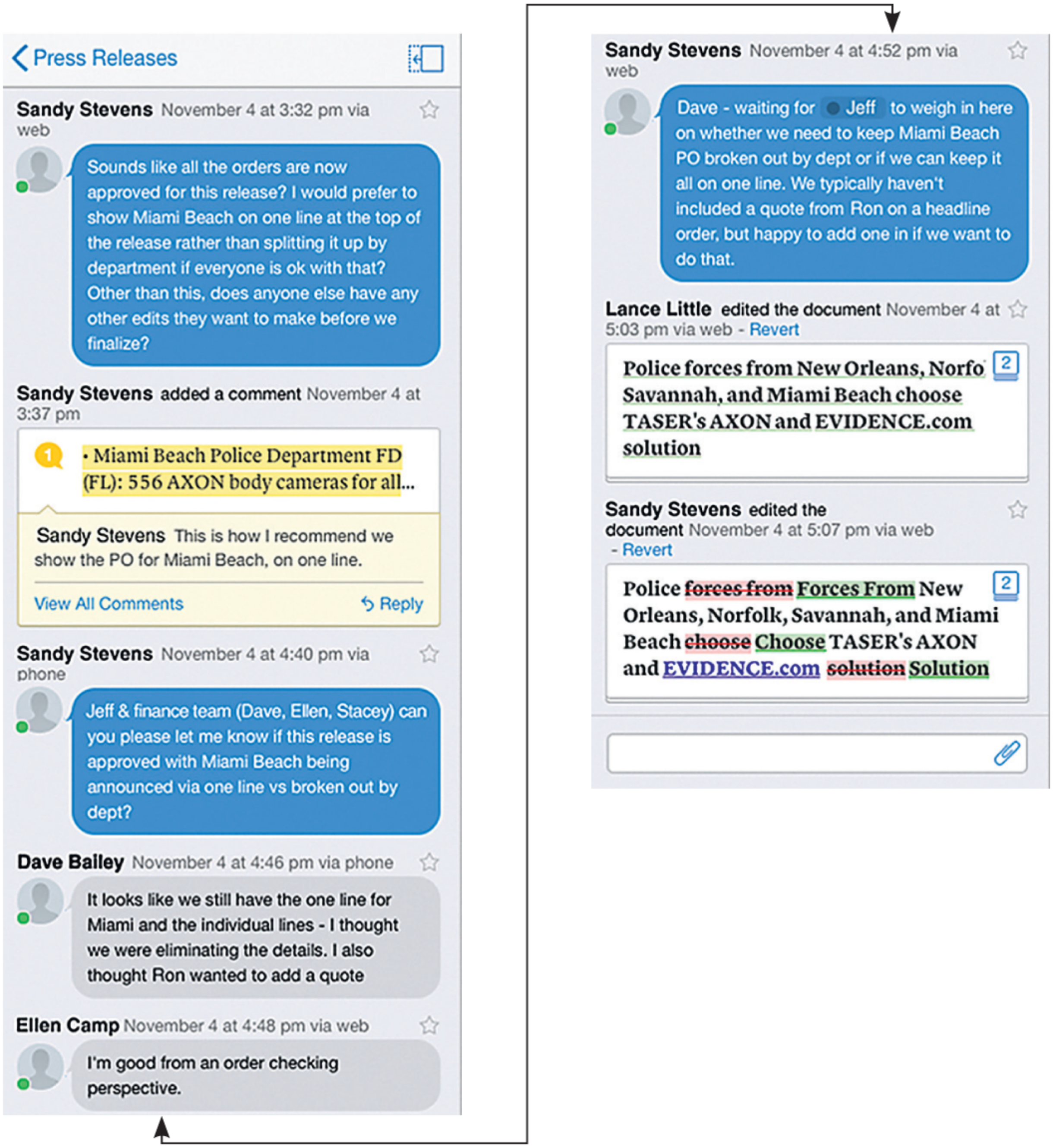
Comment: Will readers know these are the right tests? Should we explain?

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Full text of the report with comments: Text: The first task of the on-site evaluations was to set up and configure each server. We noted the relative complexity of setting up each system to our network. Comment: Huh? What exactly does this mean? Text: After we had the system configured, we performed a set of routine maintenance tasks: add a new memory module, swap a hard drive, swap a power supply, and perform system diagnostics. Comment: Okay, good. Maybe we should explain why we chose these tests. Text: We recorded the time and relative difficulty of each task. Also, we tried to gather a qualitative feeling for how much effort would be involved in the day-to-day maintenance of the systems. Comment: 1. What kind of scale are you using? If we don't explain it, it's basically useless. 2. Same question as above. Text: After each system was set up, we completed the maintenance evaluations and began the benchmark testing. We ran the complete WinBench and NetBench test suites on each system. We chose several of the key factors from these tests for comparison. Comment: Will readers know these are the right tests? Should we explain?

Return to A report with five comments

Extended description for Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread



Sandy Stevens November 4 at 3:32 pm via web

Sounds like all the orders are now approved for this release? I would prefer to show Miami Beach on one line at the top of the release rather than splitting it up by department if everyone is ok with that? Other than this, does anyone else have any other edits they want to make before we finalize?

Sandy Stevens added a comment November 4 at 3:37 pm

1 • Miami Beach Police Department FD (FL): 556 AXON body cameras for all...

Sandy Stevens This is how I recommend we show the PO for Miami Beach, on one line.

Sandy Stevens November 4 at 4:40 pm via phone

Jeff & finance team (Dave, Ellen, Stacey) can you please let me know if this release is approved with Miami Beach being announced via one line vs broken out by dept?

Dave Bailey November 4 at 4:46 pm via phone

It looks like we still have the one line for Miami and the individual lines - I thought we were eliminating the details. I also thought Ron wanted to add a quote

Ellen Camp November 4 at 4:48 pm via web

I'm good from an order checking perspective.

Sandy Stevens November 4 at 4:52 pm via web

Dave - waiting for Jeff to weigh in here on whether we need to keep Miami Beach PO broken out by dept or if we can keep it all on one line. We typically haven't included a quote from Ron on a headline order, but happy to add one in if we want to do that.

Lance Little edited the document November 4 at 5:03 pm via web - Revert

Police forces from New Orleans, Norfo Savannah, and Miami Beach choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com solution

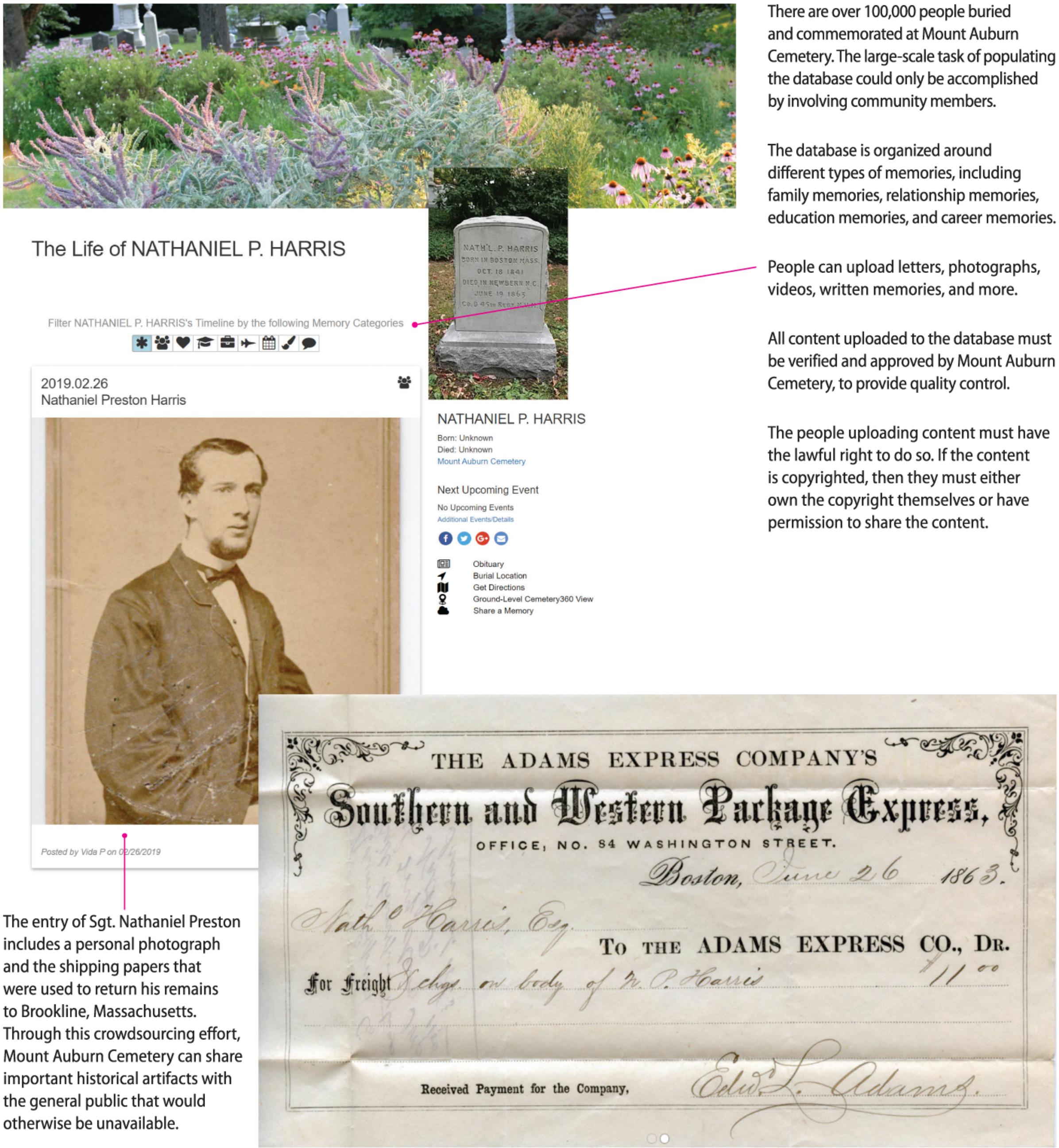
Sandy Stevens edited the document November 4 at 5:07 pm via web - Revert

Police ~~forces from~~ Forces From New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach ~~choose~~ Choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE.com ~~solution~~ Solution

The chat group is named Press Release, and toward its left is a back button. The full text of the discussion follows: Sandy Stevens, November 4 at 3:32 pm via web: Sounds like all the orders are now approved for this release? I would prefer to show Miami Beach on one line at the top of the release rather than splitting it up by department if everyone is ok with that? Other than this, does anyone else have any other edits they want to make before we finalize? Sandy Stevens added a comment on November 4 at 3:37 pm: Miami Beach Police Department FD (FL): 556 AXON body cameras for all. Sandy Stevens: This is how I recommend we show the PO for Miami Beach, on one line. (Live links are shown: View All Comments, Reply) Sandy Stevens, November 4 at 4:40 pm via phone: Jeff and finance team (Dave, Ellen, Stacey) can you please let me know if this release is approved with Miami Beach being announced via one line versus broken out by department? Dave Bailey, November 4 at 4:46 pm via phone: It looks like we still have the one line for Miami and the individual lines. I thought we were eliminating the details. I also thought Ron wanted to add a quote. Ellen Camp, November 4 at 4:48 pm via web: I'm good from an order checking perspective. Sandy Stevens, November 4 at 4:52 pm via web: Dave: waiting for Jeff to weigh in here on whether we need to keep Miami Beach PO broken out by department or if we can keep it all on one line. We typically haven't included a quote from Ron on a headline order, but happy to add one in if we want to do that. Lance Little edited the document November 4 at 5:03 pm via web (live link: Revert). Police forces from New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach choose TASER's AXON and EVIDENCE dot com solution. Sandy Stevens edited the document November 4 at 5:07 pm via web (live link: revert). Edits are shown with strikethroughs, and deleted items are in red; replacement items are in green. Police (start strikethrough and red) forces from (end strikethrough and red) (start green)capital F Forces capital F From (end green) New Orleans, Norfolk, Savannah, and Miami Beach (start strikethrough and red) choose (end strikethrough and red) (start green) capital C choose (end green) Taser's AXON and EVIDENCE.com (start strikethrough and red) solution (end strikethrough and red) (start green) capital S Solution (end green).

Return to Figure 3.1 A Quip Document and Chat Thread

Extended description for Figure 3.2 Crowdsourcing Content for a Database



The Life of NATHANIEL P. HARRIS

Filter NATHANIEL P. HARRIS's Timeline by the following Memory Categories

2019.02.26
Nathaniel Preston Harris

Posted by Vida P on 02/26/2019

NATHANIEL P. HARRIS

Born: Unknown
Died: Unknown
Mount Auburn Cemetery

Next Upcoming Event

No Upcoming Events
Additional Events/Details

Obituary
Burial Location
Get Directions
Ground-Level Cemetery360 View
Share a Memory

THE ADAMS EXPRESS COMPANY'S
Southern and Western Package Express,
OFFICE, NO. 84 WASHINGTON STREET.

Boston, June 26 1863.

Nath^l Harris, Esq

To the ADAMS EXPRESS CO., Dr.

For Freight & chgs. on body of N. P. Harris $11.00

Received Payment for the Company, Edw. L. Adams.

Mount Auburn Cemetery

There are over 100,000 people buried and commemorated at Mount Auburn Cemetery. The large-scale task of populating the database could only be accomplished by involving community members.

The database is organized around different types of memories, including family memories, relationship memories, education memories, and career memories.

People can upload letters, photographs, videos, written memories, and more.

All content uploaded to the database must be verified and approved by Mount Auburn Cemetery, to provide quality control.

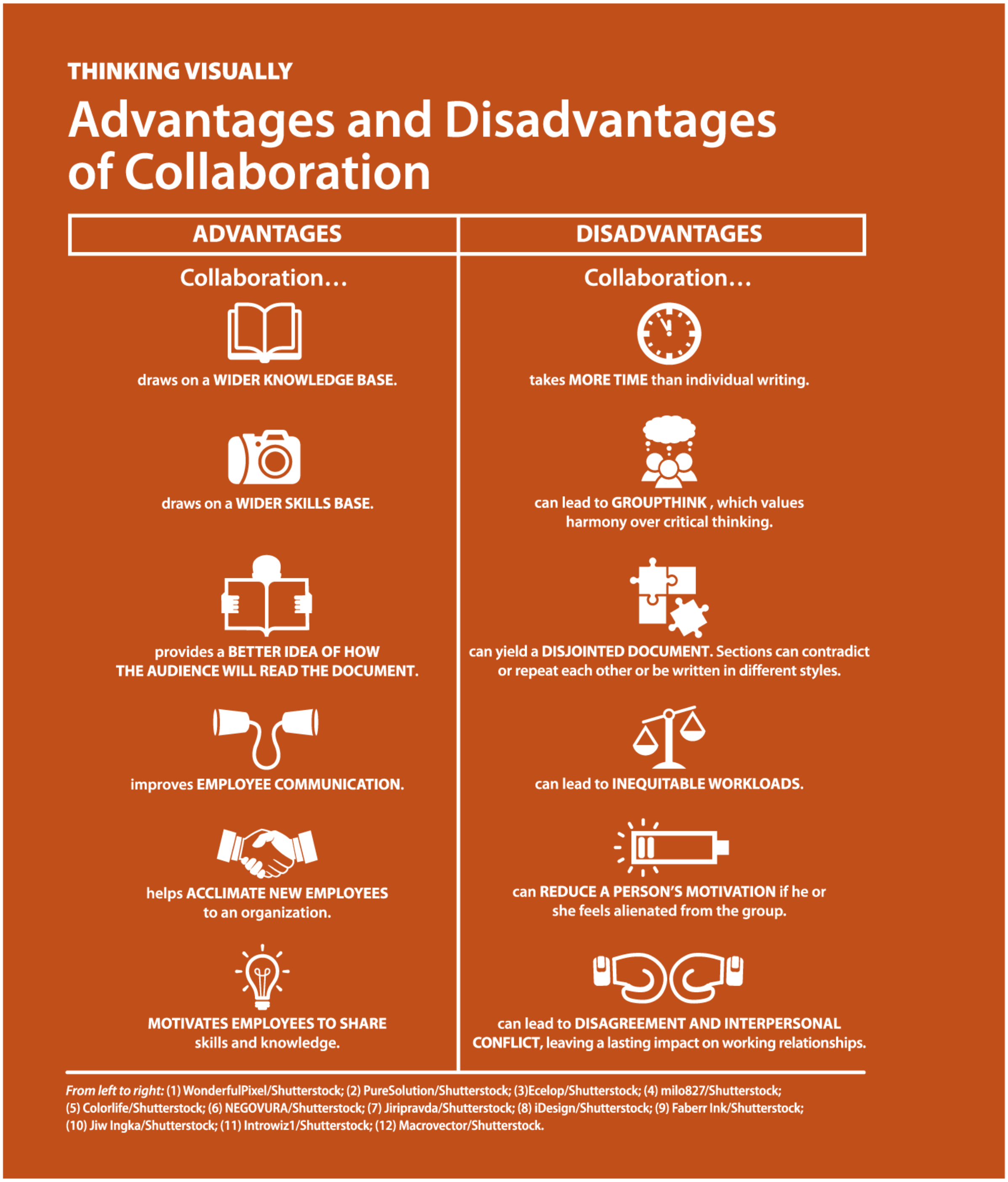
The people uploading content must have the lawful right to do so. If the content is copyrighted, then they must either own the copyright themselves or have permission to share the content.

The entry of Sgt. Nathaniel Preston includes a personal photograph and the shipping papers that were used to return his remains to Brookline, Massachusetts. Through this crowdsourcing effort, Mount Auburn Cemetery can share important historical artifacts with the general public that would otherwise be unavailable.

A photo of the cemetery is at the top of the entry showing flowers and headstones. Overlapping is a picture of the headstone of Harris. Text below the headstone reads: Nathaniel P. Harris; Born: unknown; Died: unknown; Mount Auburn Cemetery. Next Upcoming Event, No Upcoming Events; Additional Events/Details. Below are options for obituary, burial location, get directions, ground-level cemetery 360 view, and share a memory. A photo of Harris is at the left with the text reading, 2019.02.26. Posted by Vida P on 02/26/2019. Text below and pointing to the photo reads, The entry of Sgt. Nathaniel Preston includes a personal photograph and the shipping papers that were used to return his remains to Brookline, Massachusetts. Through this crowdsourcing effort, Mount Auburn Cemetery can share important historical artifacts with the general public that would otherwise be unavailable. Text to the right of the entry points to an option to filter Harris's timeline by memory categories, and reads, There are over 100,000 people buried and commemorated at Mount Auburn Cemetery. The large-scale task of populating the database could only be accomplished by involving community members. The database is organized around different types of memories, including family memories, relationship memories, education memories, and career memories. People can upload letters, photographs, videos, written memories, and more. All content uploaded to the database must be verified and approved by Mount Auburn Cemetery, to provide quality control. The people uploading content must have the lawful right to do so. If the content is copyrighted, then they must either own the copyright themselves or have permission to share the content. At the bottom right is a photo of the shipping notice reading, The Adams Express Company’s Southern and Western Package Express, Office, No. 84 Washington Street. Boston, June 26, 1863. Nath Harris, Esq. to the Adams Express Co., Dr. for freight chgs on body of N. P. Harris. Received payment for the company, Edw. L. Adams.

Return to Figure 3.2 Crowdsourcing Content for a Database

Extended description for An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration



THINKING VISUALLY

Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration

ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Collaboration…	Collaboration…
draws on a **WIDER KNOWLEDGE BASE.**	takes **MORE TIME** than individual writing.
draws on a **WIDER SKILLS BASE.**	can lead to **GROUPTHINK**, which values harmony over critical thinking.
provides a **BETTER IDEA OF HOW THE AUDIENCE WILL READ THE DOCUMENT.**	can yield a **DISJOINTED DOCUMENT.** Sections can contradict or repeat each other or be written in different styles.
improves **EMPLOYEE COMMUNICATION.**	can lead to **INEQUITABLE WORKLOADS.**
helps **ACCLIMATE NEW EMPLOYEES** to an organization.	can **REDUCE A PERSON'S MOTIVATION** if he or she feels alienated from the group.
MOTIVATES EMPLOYEES TO SHARE skills and knowledge.	can lead to **DISAGREEMENT AND INTERPERSONAL CONFLICT,** leaving a lasting impact on working relationships.

From left to right: (1) WonderfulPixel/Shutterstock; (2) PureSolution/Shutterstock; (3)Ecelop/Shutterstock; (4) milo827/Shutterstock; (5) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (6) NEGOVURA/Shutterstock; (7) Jiripravda/Shutterstock; (8) iDesign/Shutterstock; (9) Faberr Ink/Shutterstock; (10) Jiw Ingka/Shutterstock; (11) Introwiz1/Shutterstock; (12) Macrovector/Shutterstock.

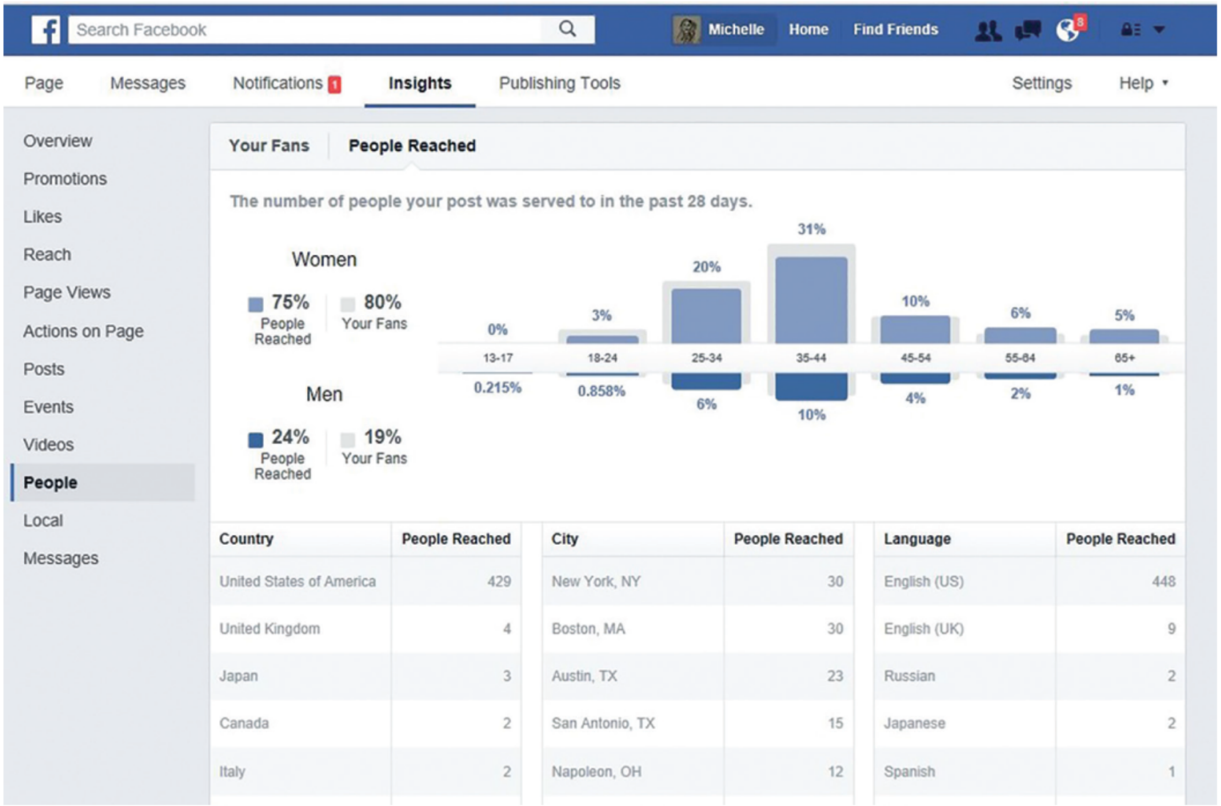
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The advantages of collaboration are as follows: The first icon shows an open book, and the corresponding text reads, draws on a WIDER KNOWLEDGE BASE. The second icon shows a camera, and the corresponding text reads draws on a WIDER SKILLS BASE. The third icon shows person reading a book. The corresponding text reads, provides a BETTER IDEA OF HOW THE AUDIENCE WILL READ THE DOCUMENT. The fourth icon shows a string telephone. The corresponding text reads, improves EMPLOYEE COMMUNICATION. The fifth icon shows a handshake. The corresponding text reads, helps ACCLIMATE NEW EMPLOYEES to an organization. The sixth icon shows a lit light bulb, and the corresponding text reads, MOTIVATES EMPLOYEES TO SHARE skills and knowledge. The disadvantages of collaboration: The first icon shows a clock, and the corresponding text reads, takes MORE TIME than individual writing. The second icon shows three people with thought bubbles over their heads. The corresponding text reads, can lead to GROUP THINK, which values harmony over critical thinking. The third icon shows three pieces that fit and one piece that doesn't fit. The corresponding text reads, can yield a DISJOINTED DOCUMENT. Sections can contradict or repeat each other or be written in different styles. The fourth icon shows a pair of scales not in balance. The corresponding text reads, can lead to INEQUITABLE WORKLOADS. The fifth icon shows a battery low on energy. The corresponding text reads, can REDUCE A PERSON'S MOTIVATION if he or she feels alienated from the group. The sixth icon shows two boxing gloves facing each other. The corresponding text reads, can lead to DISAGREEMENT AND INTERPERSONAL CONFLICT, leaving a lasting impact on working relationships. Text at the bottom reads, From left to right: (1) WonderfulPixel slash Shutterstock; (2) Introwiz1 slash Shutterstock; (3) Ecelop slash Shutterstock; (4)

milo827 slash Shutterstock; (5) Colorlife slash Shutterstock; (6) NEGOVURA slash Shutterstock; (7) Jiripravda slash Shutterstock; (8) iDesign slash Shutterstock; (9) Faberr Ink slash Shutterstock; (10) Jiw Ingka slash Shutterstock; (11) Colorlife slash Shutterstock; (12) Macrovector slash Shutterstock.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration

Extended description for Figure 4.1 Analysis of Facebook Users


Search Facebook
Michelle
Home
Find Friends
8
Page
Messages
Notifications 1
Insights
Publishing Tools
Settings
Help
Overview
Promotions
Likes
Reach
Page Views
Actions on Page
Posts
Events
Videos
People
Local
Messages
Your Fans
People Reached
Women
75% People Reached
80% Your Fans
Men
24% People Reached
19% Your Fans
13-17
18-24
25-34
35-44
45-54
55-64
65+
0%
3%
20%
31%
10%
6%
5%
0.215%
0.858%
6%
10%
4%
2%
1%

The number of people your post was served to in the past 28 days.

Country	People Reached
United States of America	429
United Kingdom	4
Japan	3
Canada	2
Italy	2

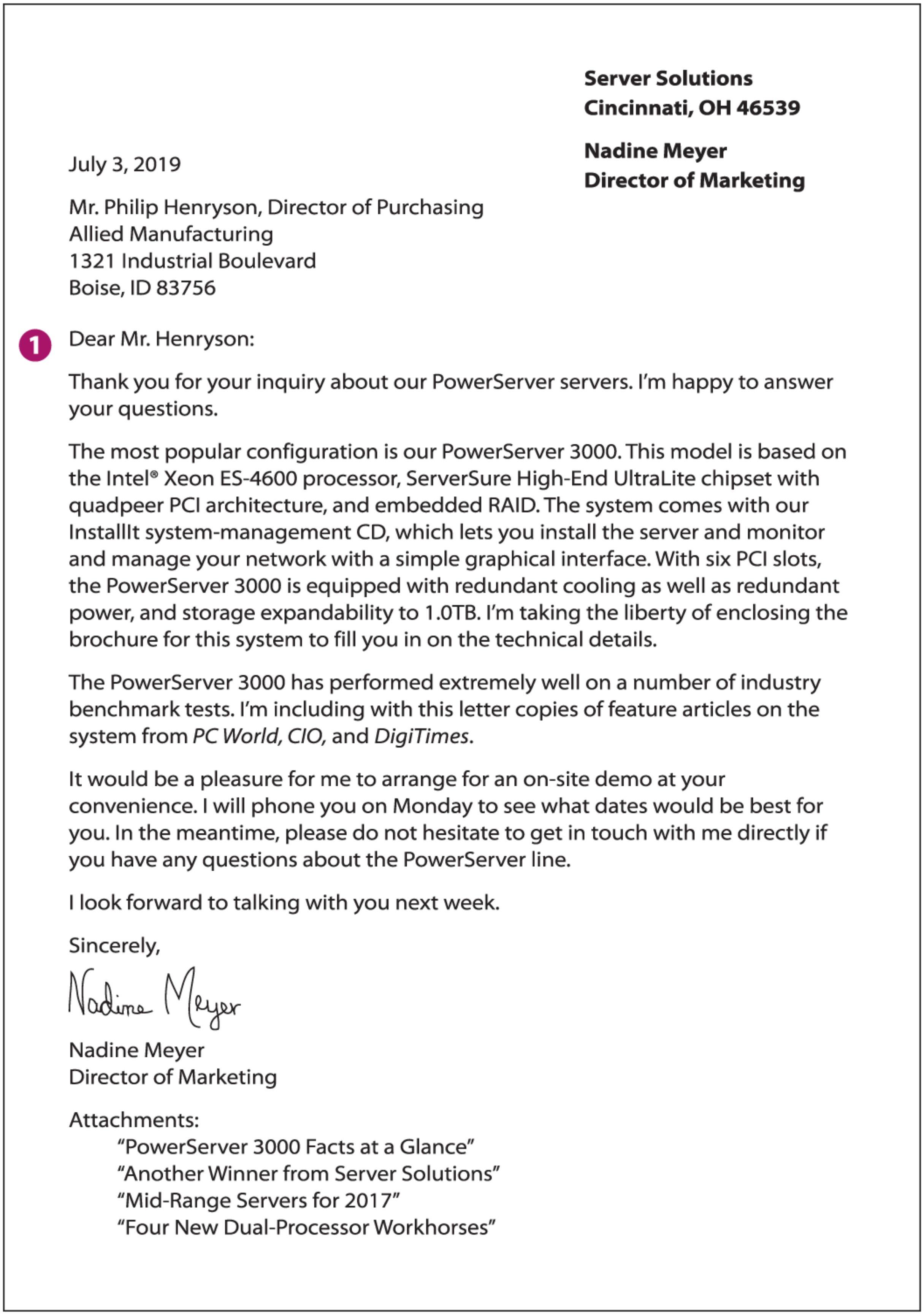
City	People Reached
New York, NY	30
Boston, MA	30
Austin, TX	23
San Antonio, TX	15
Napoleon, OH	12

Language	People Reached
English (US)	448
English (UK)	9
Russian	2
Japanese	2
Spanish	1

The Facebook page has the following tabs at the top section: Page, Messages, Notifications, Insights, and Publishing Tools. The left pane has the following links: Overview, Promotions, Likes, Reach, Page Views, Actions on Page, Posts, Events, Videos, People, Local, and Messages. Two tabs named Your Fans and People Reached are shown at the top section of the Insights page. The People Reached tab is selected. The text below the People Reached tab reads, The number of people your post was served to in the past 28 days. The reach of the post is represented with bars. The post has reached 75 percent of women, and 80 percent of women are fans. The post has reached 24 percent of men, and 19 percent of men are fans. A bar chart toward the right shows number of views for the post every day. The bottom section categorizes the number of people who reacted to the post based on their countries, cities, and language spoken.

Return to Figure 4.1 Analysis of Facebook Users

Extended description for Text shows a business letter



Server Solutions
Cincinnati, OH 46539

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

July 3, 2019

Mr. Philip Henryson, Director of Purchasing
Allied Manufacturing
1321 Industrial Boulevard
Boise, ID 83756

① Dear Mr. Henryson:

Thank you for your inquiry about our PowerServer servers. I'm happy to answer your questions.

The most popular configuration is our PowerServer 3000. This model is based on the Intel® Xeon ES-4600 processor, ServerSure High-End UltraLite chipset with quadpeer PCI architecture, and embedded RAID. The system comes with our InstallIt system-management CD, which lets you install the server and monitor and manage your network with a simple graphical interface. With six PCI slots, the PowerServer 3000 is equipped with redundant cooling as well as redundant power, and storage expandability to 1.0TB. I'm taking the liberty of enclosing the brochure for this system to fill you in on the technical details.

The PowerServer 3000 has performed extremely well on a number of industry benchmark tests. I'm including with this letter copies of feature articles on the system from *PC World, CIO,* and *DigiTimes*.

It would be a pleasure for me to arrange for an on-site demo at your convenience. I will phone you on Monday to see what dates would be best for you. In the meantime, please do not hesitate to get in touch with me directly if you have any questions about the PowerServer line.

I look forward to talking with you next week.

Sincerely,

Nadine Meyer

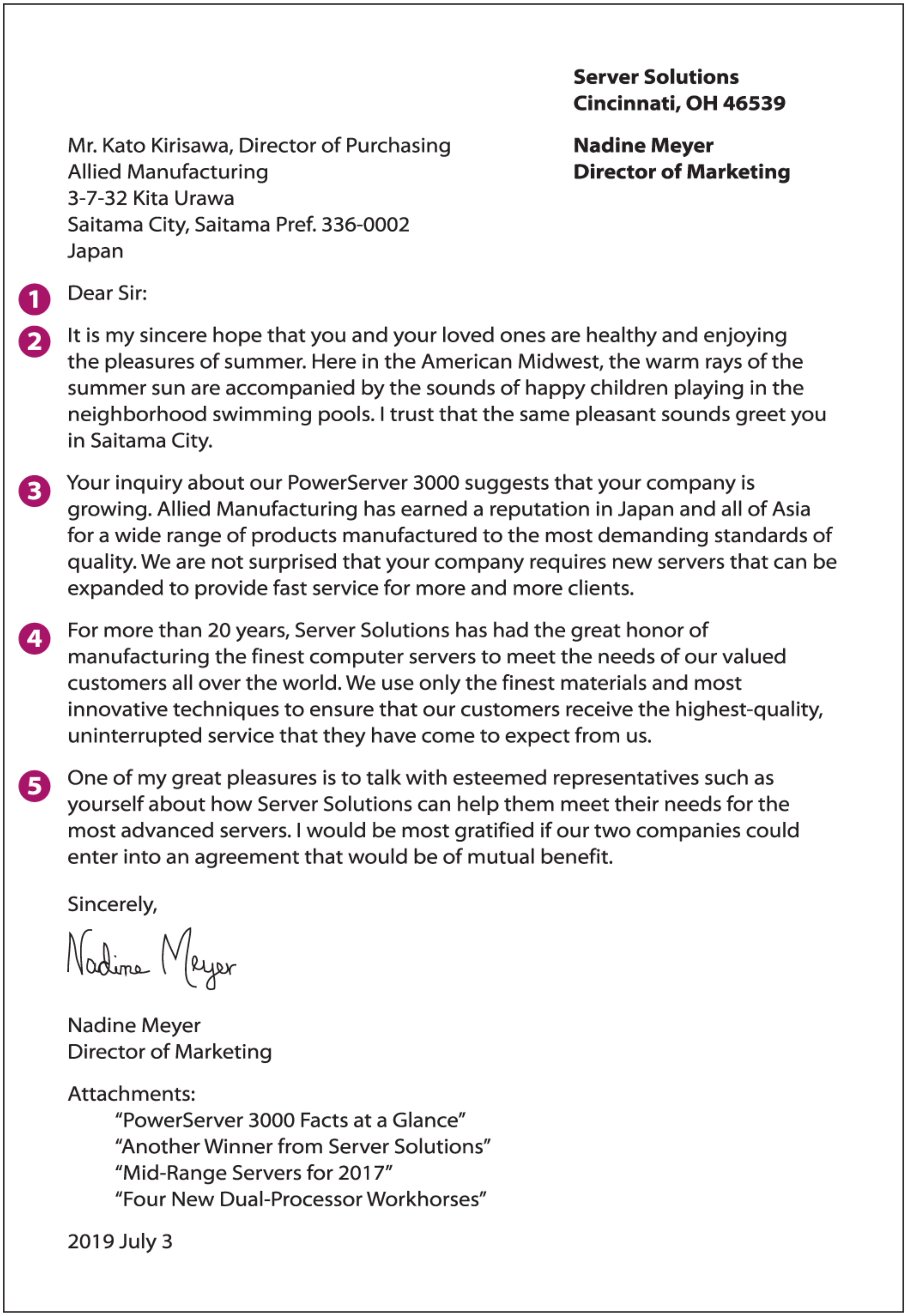
Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

Attachments:
  "PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance"
  "Another Winner from Server Solutions"
  "Mid-Range Servers for 2017"
  "Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses"

The letter reads, Server Solutions Cincinnati, O H 46539 Nadine Meyer Director of Marketing, July 3, 2017. Mr. Philip Henryson, Director of Purchasing, Allied Manufacturing, 1321 Industrial Boulevard, Boise, ID 83756. Dear Mr. Henryson: Thank you for your inquiry about our PowerServer servers. I'm happy to answer your questions. The most popular configuration is our PowerServer 3000. This model is based on the Intel Xeon ES hyphen 4600 processor, ServerSure High hyphen End UltraLite chipset with quadpeer PCI architecture, and embedded RAID. The system comes with our InstallIt system-management CD, which lets you install the server and monitor and manage your network with a simple graphical interface. With six PCI slots, the PowerServer 3000 is equipped with redundant cooling as well as redundant power, and storage expandability to 1.0TB. I'm taking the liberty of enclosing the brochure for this system to fill you in on the technical details. The PowerServer 3000 has performed extremely well on a number of industry benchmark tests. I'm including with this letter copies of feature articles on the system from PC World, CIO, and DigiTimes. It would be a pleasure for me to arrange for an on-site demo at your convenience. I will phone you on Monday to see what dates would be best for you. In the meantime, please do not hesitate to get in touch with me directly if you have any questions about the PowerServer line. I look forward to talking with you next week. Sincerely, Signed Nadine Meyer, Director of Marketing. Attachments: Open quotes PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance close quotes. Open quotes Another Winner from Server Solutions close quotes. Open quotes Mid-Range Servers for 2016 close quotes. Open quotes Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses close quotes.

Return to Text shows a business letter

Extended description for Text shows a business letter



Server Solutions
Cincinnati, OH 46539

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

Mr. Kato Kirisawa, Director of Purchasing
Allied Manufacturing
3-7-32 Kita Urawa
Saitama City, Saitama Pref. 336-0002
Japan

① Dear Sir:

② It is my sincere hope that you and your loved ones are healthy and enjoying the pleasures of summer. Here in the American Midwest, the warm rays of the summer sun are accompanied by the sounds of happy children playing in the neighborhood swimming pools. I trust that the same pleasant sounds greet you in Saitama City.

③ Your inquiry about our PowerServer 3000 suggests that your company is growing. Allied Manufacturing has earned a reputation in Japan and all of Asia for a wide range of products manufactured to the most demanding standards of quality. We are not surprised that your company requires new servers that can be expanded to provide fast service for more and more clients.

④ For more than 20 years, Server Solutions has had the great honor of manufacturing the finest computer servers to meet the needs of our valued customers all over the world. We use only the finest materials and most innovative techniques to ensure that our customers receive the highest-quality, uninterrupted service that they have come to expect from us.

⑤ One of my great pleasures is to talk with esteemed representatives such as yourself about how Server Solutions can help them meet their needs for the most advanced servers. I would be most gratified if our two companies could enter into an agreement that would be of mutual benefit.

Sincerely,

Nadine Meyer

Nadine Meyer
Director of Marketing

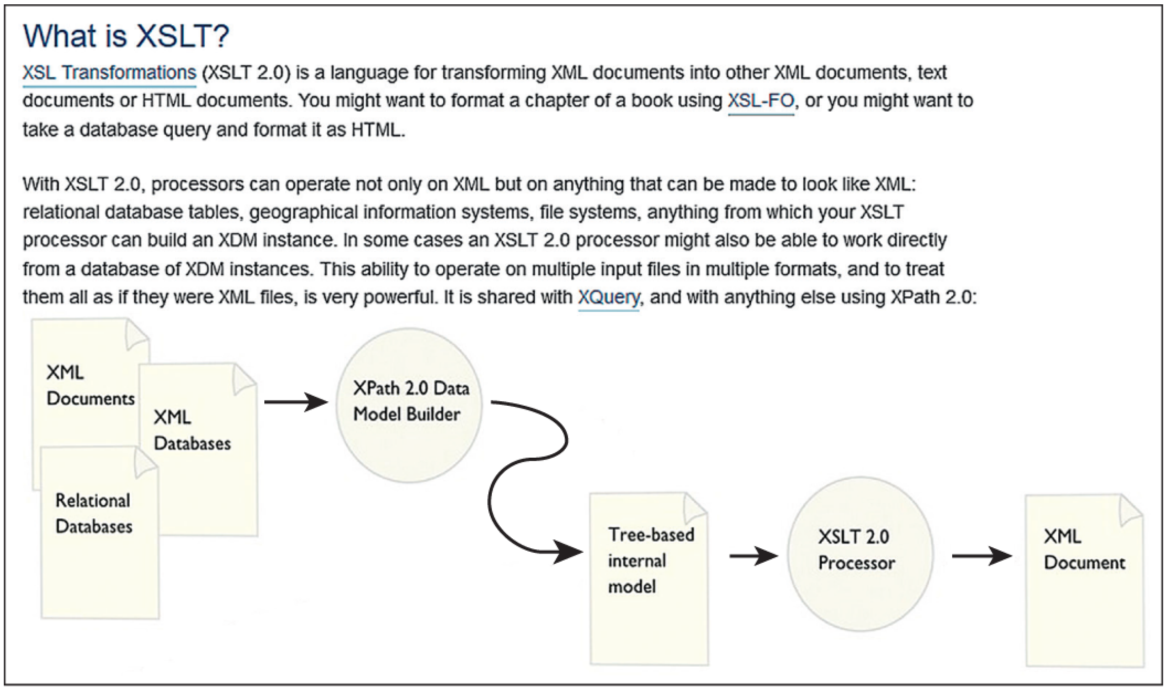
Attachments:
  "PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance"
  "Another Winner from Server Solutions"
  "Mid-Range Servers for 2017"
  "Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses"

2019 July 3

The letter reads, Server Solutions, Cincinnati, OH 46539. Nadine Meyer, Director of Marketing, Mr. Kato Kirisawa, Director of Purchasing, Allied Manufacturing, 3-7-32 Kita Urawa, Saitama City, Saitama Pref. 336-0002. Japan. Dear Sir: Mr. Kato Kirisawa, Director of Purchasing, Allied Manufacturing. 3-7-32 Kita Urawa. Saitama City, Saitama Pref. 336-0002. Japan 1. Dear Sir: 2. It is my sincere hope that you and your loved ones are healthy and enjoying the pleasures of summer. Here in the American Midwest, the warm rays of the summer sun are accompanied by the sounds of happy children playing in the neighborhood swimming pools. I trust that the same pleasant sounds greet you in Saitama City. 3. Your inquiry about our PowerServer 3000 suggests that your company is growing. Allied Manufacturing has earned a reputation in Japan and all of Asia for a wide range of products manufactured to the most demanding standards of quality. We are not surprised that your company requires new servers that can be expanded to provide fast service for more and more clients. 4. For more than 20 years, Server Solutions has had the great honor of manufacturing the finest computer servers to meet the needs of our valued customers all over the world. We use only the finest materials and most innovative techniques to ensure that our customers receive the highest quality, uninterrupted service that they have come to expect from us. 5. One of my great pleasures is to talk with esteemed representatives such as yourself about how Server Solutions can help them meet their needs for the most advanced servers. I would be most gratified if our two companies could enter into an agreement that would be of mutual benefit. Sincerely, Signed Nadine Meyer, Director of Marketing. Attachments: Open quotes PowerServer 3000 Facts at a Glance close quotes Open quotes Another Winner from Server Solutions close quotes Open quotes Mid-Range Servers for 2016 close quotes Open quotes Four New Dual-Processor Workhorses close quotes 2016 July 3

Return to Text shows a business letter

Extended description for Figure 4.2 Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers’ Needs and Interests



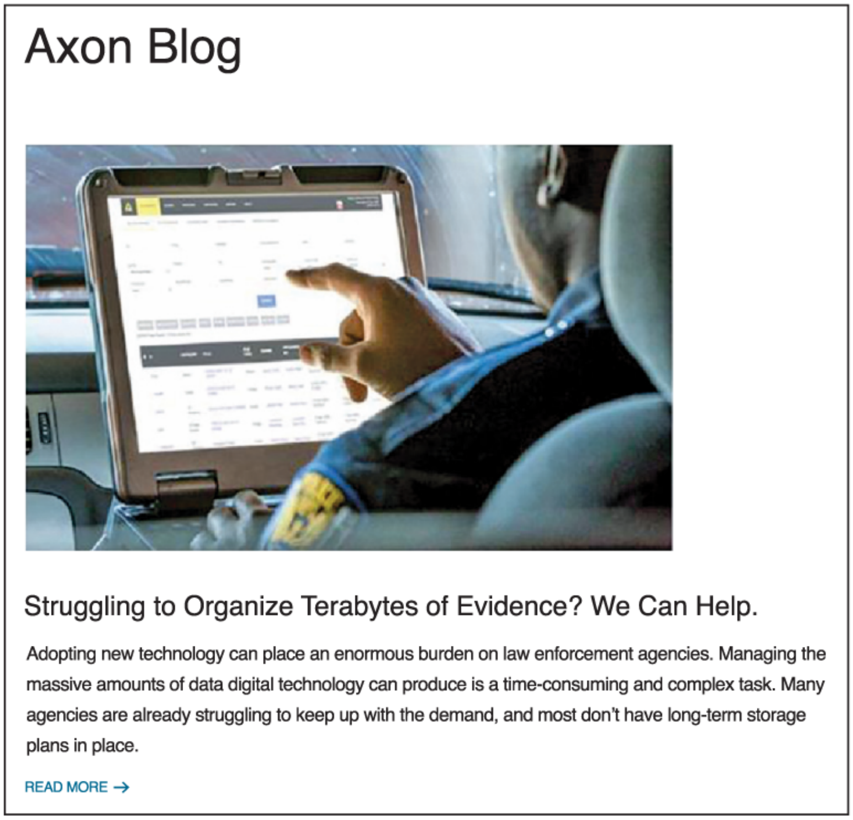
What is XSLT?

XSL Transformations (XSLT 2.0) is a language for transforming XML documents into other XML documents, text documents or HTML documents. You might want to format a chapter of a book using XSL-FO, or you might want to take a database query and format it as HTML.

With XSLT 2.0, processors can operate not only on XML but on anything that can be made to look like XML: relational database tables, geographical information systems, file systems, anything from which your XSLT processor can build an XDM instance. In some cases an XSLT 2.0 processor might also be able to work directly from a database of XDM instances. This ability to operate on multiple input files in multiple formats, and to treat them all as if they were XML files, is very powerful. It is shared with XQuery, and with anything else using XPath 2.0:

a. Document presenting technical information to an expert audience

a: Information from World Wide Web Consortium, 2015: www.w3.org/standards/xml/transformation.html.



Axon Blog

Struggling to Organize Terabytes of Evidence? We Can Help.

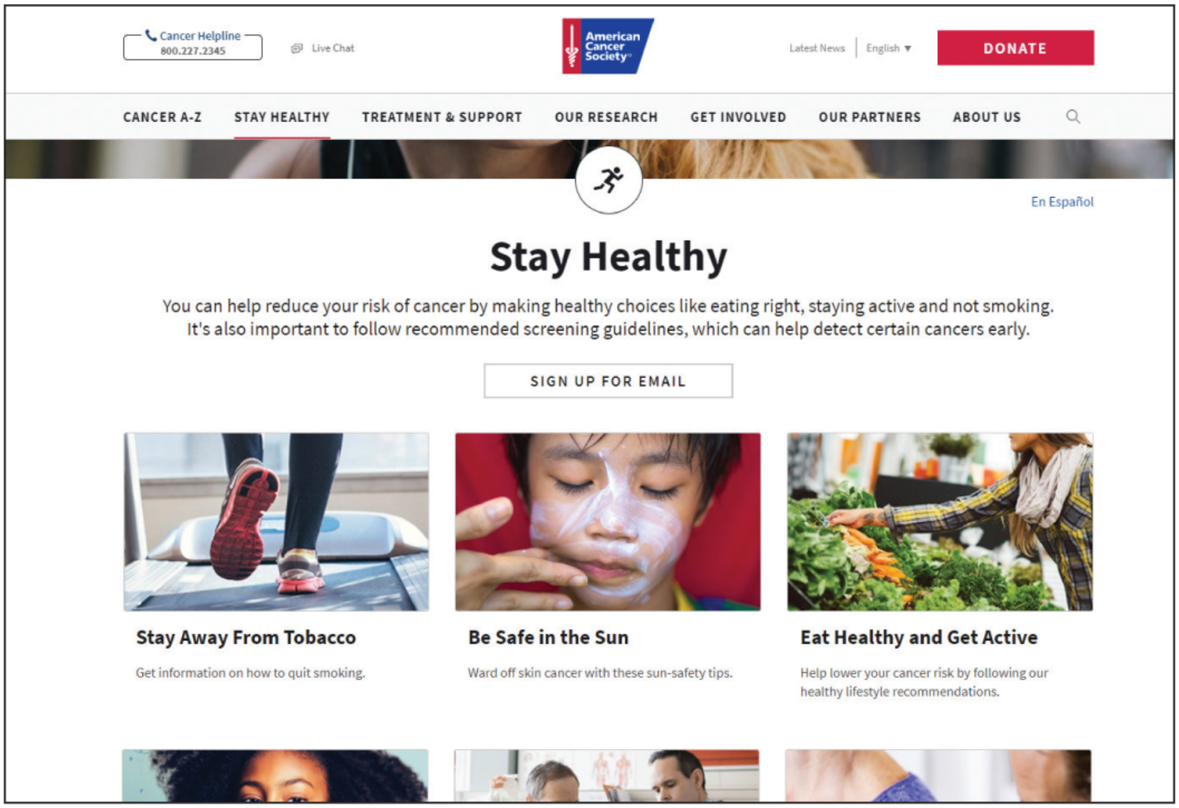
Adopting new technology can place an enormous burden on law enforcement agencies. Managing the massive amounts of data digital technology can produce is a time-consuming and complex task. Many agencies are already struggling to keep up with the demand, and most don't have long-term storage plans in place.

b. Document motivating decision makers to learn about a product
Information from Axon, 2016: www.axon.io/blog.

In illustration a there is text at the top and a graphic below it. It reads as follows: a. Document presenting technical information to an expert audience. Information from World Wide Web Consortium, 2015: www dot w3 dot org slash standards slash xml slash transformation dot html. The title of the graphic reads, What is XSLT? Following is text reading, XSL Transformations parens XSLT 2 point 0 close parens is a language for transforming XML documents into other XML documents, text documents or HTML documents. You might want format a chapter of a book using XSL-FO, or you might want to take a database query and format it as HTML. With XSLT 2 point 0, processors can operate not only XML but on anything that can be made to look like XML. Relational database tables, geographical information systems, file systems, anything from which your XSLT processor can build an XDM instance. In some cases an XSLT 2 point 0 processor might be able to work directly from a database of XDM instances. This ability to operate on multiple input files in multiple formats, and to treat them all as if they were XML files, is very powerful. It is shared with XQuery, and with anything else using XPath 2 point 0: A flow chart below the text shows how software language works. Three documents labeled XML Documents, XML Databases, and Relational Databases have an arrow pointing right to a circle labeled XPath 2 point 0 Data Model Builder. A series of arrows points from this to a document labeled Tree-based internal model, then to a circle labeled XSLT 2 point 0 Processor, then to a document labeled XML Document. In illustration b, a photo and associated text are shown. A caption reads, b. Document motivating decision makers to learn about a product Information from Axon, 2016: www dot axon dot io slash blog. The photo shows a policeman in his car using a laptop and pointing to the screen. The corresponding text reads, Struggling to Organize Terabytes of Evidence? We Can Help. Adopting new technology can place an enormous burden on law enforcement agencies. Managing the massive amounts of data digital technology can produce is a time-consuming and complex task. Many agencies are already struggling to keep up with the demand, and most don't have long-term storage plans in place. At the bottom is a read more icon with an arrow.

Return to Figure 4.2 Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers' Needs and Interests

Extended description for Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers’ Needs and Interests


Cancer Helpline
800.227.2345
Live Chat
American Cancer Society
Latest News
English ▾
DONATE
CANCER A-Z
STAY HEALTHY
TREATMENT & SUPPORT
OUR RESEARCH
GET INVOLVED
OUR PARTNERS
ABOUT US
En Español
SIGN UP FOR EMAIL

Stay Healthy

You can help reduce your risk of cancer by making healthy choices like eating right, staying active and not smoking. It's also important to follow recommended screening guidelines, which can help detect certain cancers early.

Stay Away From Tobacco

Get information on how to quit smoking.

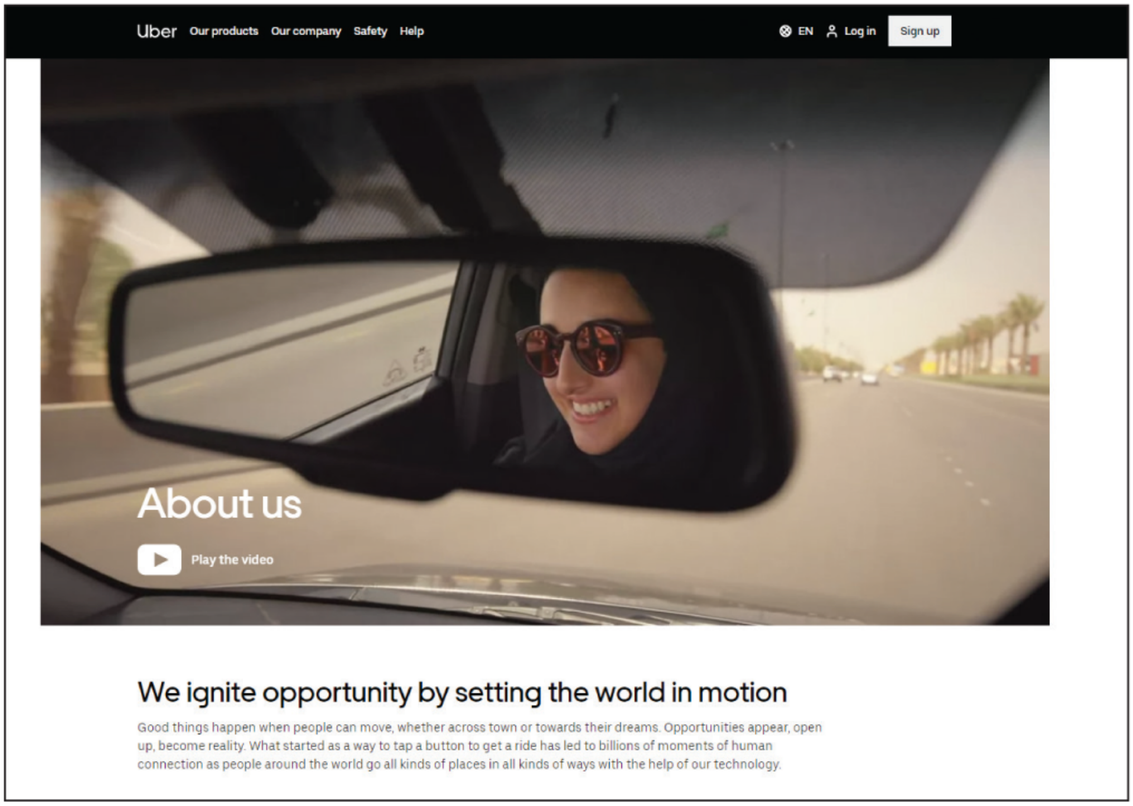
Be Safe in the Sun

Ward off skin cancer with these sun-safety tips.

Eat Healthy and Get Active

Help lower your cancer risk by following our healthy lifestyle recommendations.

c. Document presenting educational resources to a general audience


Uber
Our products
Our company
Safety
Help
EN
Log in
Sign up
About us
Play the video

We ignite opportunity by setting the world in motion

Good things happen when people can move, whether across town or towards their dreams. Opportunities appear, open up, become reality. What started as a way to tap a button to get a ride has led to billions of moments of human connection as people around the world go all kinds of places in all kinds of ways with the help of our technology.

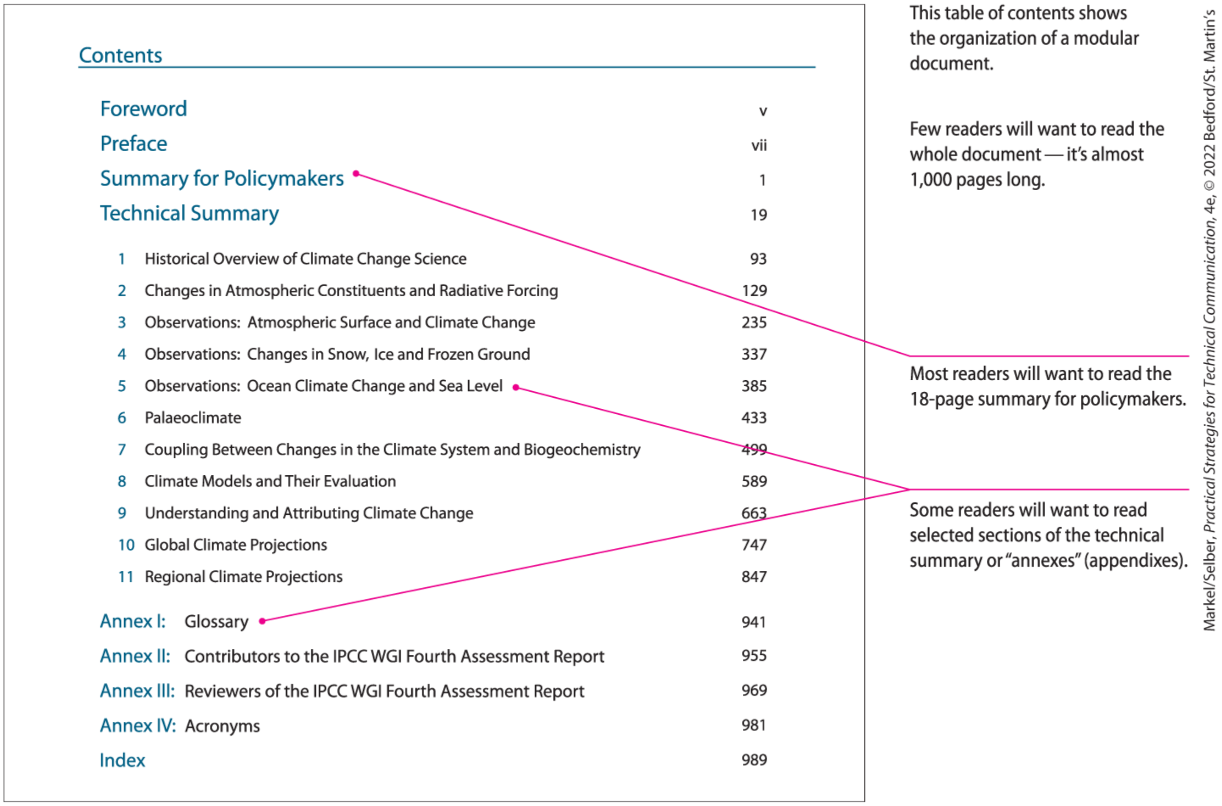
d. Document reinforcing a brand

Text under the American Cancer Society page reads, c. Document presenting educational resources to a general audience. Information from American Cancer Society, 2019: www dot cancer dot org slash healthy slash index. The top of the page shows the cancer help line, the logo, and a donate button. Tabs read, Cancer A through Z; Stay healthy; Treatment and support; Our research; Get involved; Our partners; About us; and a search option. Below this, a centered heading reads, Stay Healthy. Following text reads, You can help reduce your risk of cancer by making healthy choices like eating right, staying active and not smoking. It’s also important to follow recommended screening guidelines, which can help certain cancers early. A button to sign up for email follows. Below, a photo of a woman on a treadmill is labeled, Stay away from tobacco. Get information on how to quit smoking. A child’s face covered with sunscreen is shown with text reading, Be safe in the sun. Ward off skin cancer with these sun-safety tips. A photo of a woman at a fresh market reads, Eat healthy and get active. Help lower your cancer risk by following our healthy lifestyle recommendations. Three other photos are clipped at the top in the next row. The page for Uber is marked, d. Document reinforcing a brand. Information from Uber, 2019: https: slash slash www dot uber dot com slash us slash en slash about. The logo is at the top of the page with menu options for Our products, Our company, Safety, Help, and login and sign up buttons. Below this, a photo shows a rear view mirror with a woman’s face wearing sunglasses. The road is in the background of the photo.

Copy reads, About us. Below the photo is text that reads, We ignite opportunity by setting the world in motion. Good things happen when people can move, whether across town or towards their dreams. Opportunities appear, open up, become reality. What started as a way to tap a button to get a ride has led to billions of moments of human connection as people around the world go all kinds of places in all kinds of ways with the help of our technology.

Return to Using Text and Graphics to Appeal to Readers' Needs and Interests

Extended description for Figure 4.3 Table of Contents for a Modular Report



Contents

Foreword v

Preface vii

Summary for Policymakers 1

Technical Summary 19

1 Historical Overview of Climate Change Science 93
2 Changes in Atmospheric Constituents and Radiative Forcing 129
3 Observations: Atmospheric Surface and Climate Change 235
4 Observations: Changes in Snow, Ice and Frozen Ground 337
5 Observations: Ocean Climate Change and Sea Level 385
6 Palaeoclimate 433
7 Coupling Between Changes in the Climate System and Biogeochemistry 499
8 Climate Models and Their Evaluation 589
9 Understanding and Attributing Climate Change 663
10 Global Climate Projections 747
11 Regional Climate Projections 847

Annex I: Glossary 941

Annex II: Contributors to the IPCC WGI Fourth Assessment Report 955

Annex III: Reviewers of the IPCC WGI Fourth Assessment Report 969

Annex IV: Acronyms 981

Index 989

This table of contents shows the organization of a modular document.

Few readers will want to read the whole document — it's almost 1,000 pages long.

Most readers will want to read the 18-page summary for policymakers.

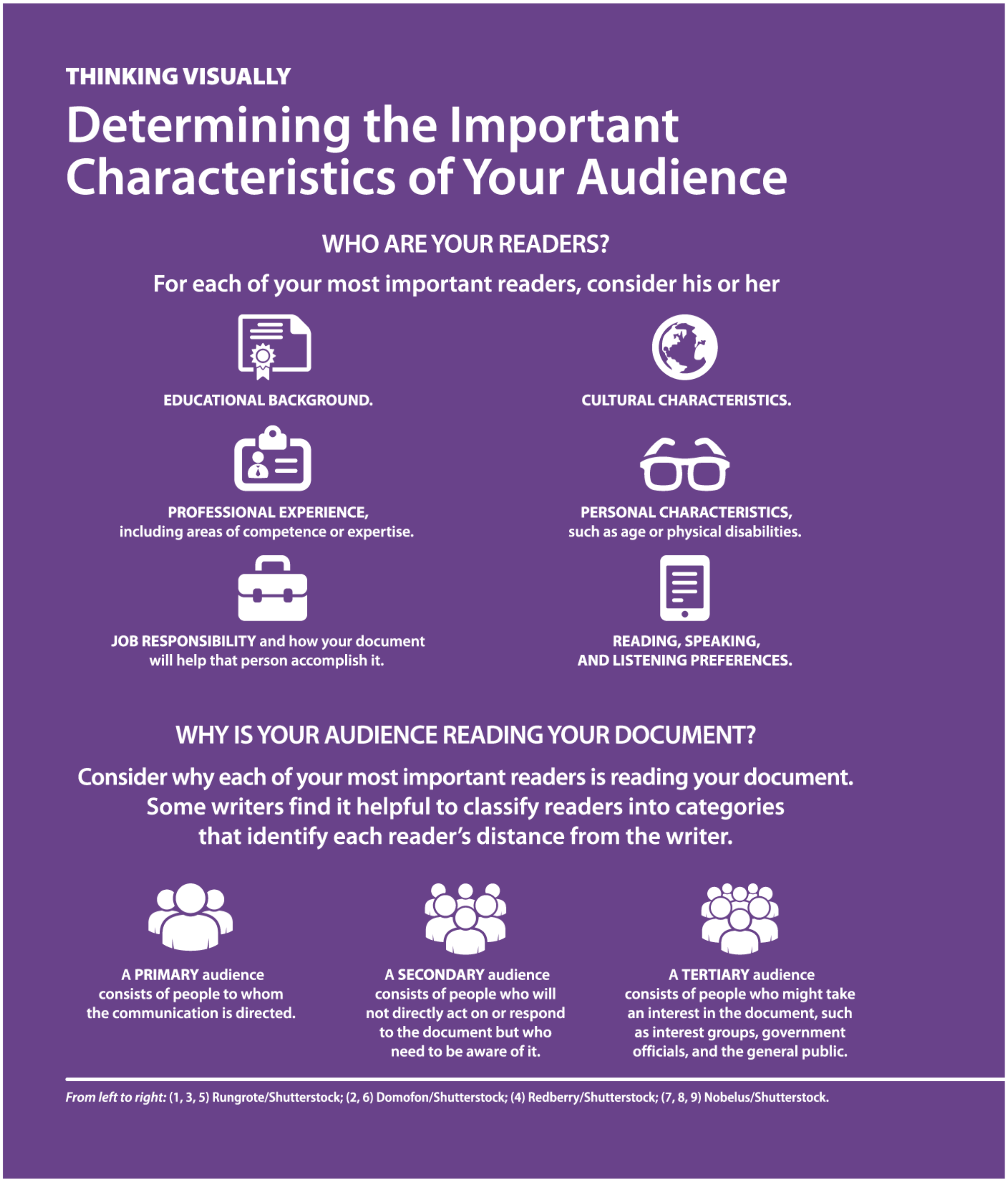
Some readers will want to read selected sections of the technical summary or "annexes" (appendixes).

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text headings on the page read, Contents, Foreword, Preface, Summary for Policymakers. Corresponding notations read, This table of contents shows the organization of a modular document; Few readers will want to read the whole document dash it's almost 1,000 pages long; and Most readers will want to read the 18-page summary for policymakers. Following is a list of sections with page numbers. A notation pointing to one section and the Glossary reads, Some readers will want to read selected sections of the technical summary or "annexes" (appendixes).

Return to Figure 4.3 Table of Contents for a Modular Report

Extended description for An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience



THINKING VISUALLY

Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience

WHO ARE YOUR READERS?

For each of your most important readers, consider his or her

EDUCATIONAL BACKGROUND.

CULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS.

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE, including areas of competence or expertise.

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS, such as age or physical disabilities.

JOB RESPONSIBILITY and how your document will help that person accomplish it.

READING, SPEAKING, AND LISTENING PREFERENCES.

WHY IS YOUR AUDIENCE READING YOUR DOCUMENT?

Consider why each of your most important readers is reading your document. Some writers find it helpful to classify readers into categories that identify each reader's distance from the writer.

A **PRIMARY** audience consists of people to whom the communication is directed.

A **SECONDARY** audience consists of people who will not directly act on or respond to the document but who need to be aware of it.

A **TERTIARY** audience consists of people who might take an interest in the document, such as interest groups, government officials, and the general public.

From left to right: (1, 3, 5) Rungrote/Shutterstock; (2, 6) Domofon/Shutterstock; (4) Redberry/Shutterstock; (7, 8, 9) Nobelus/Shutterstock.

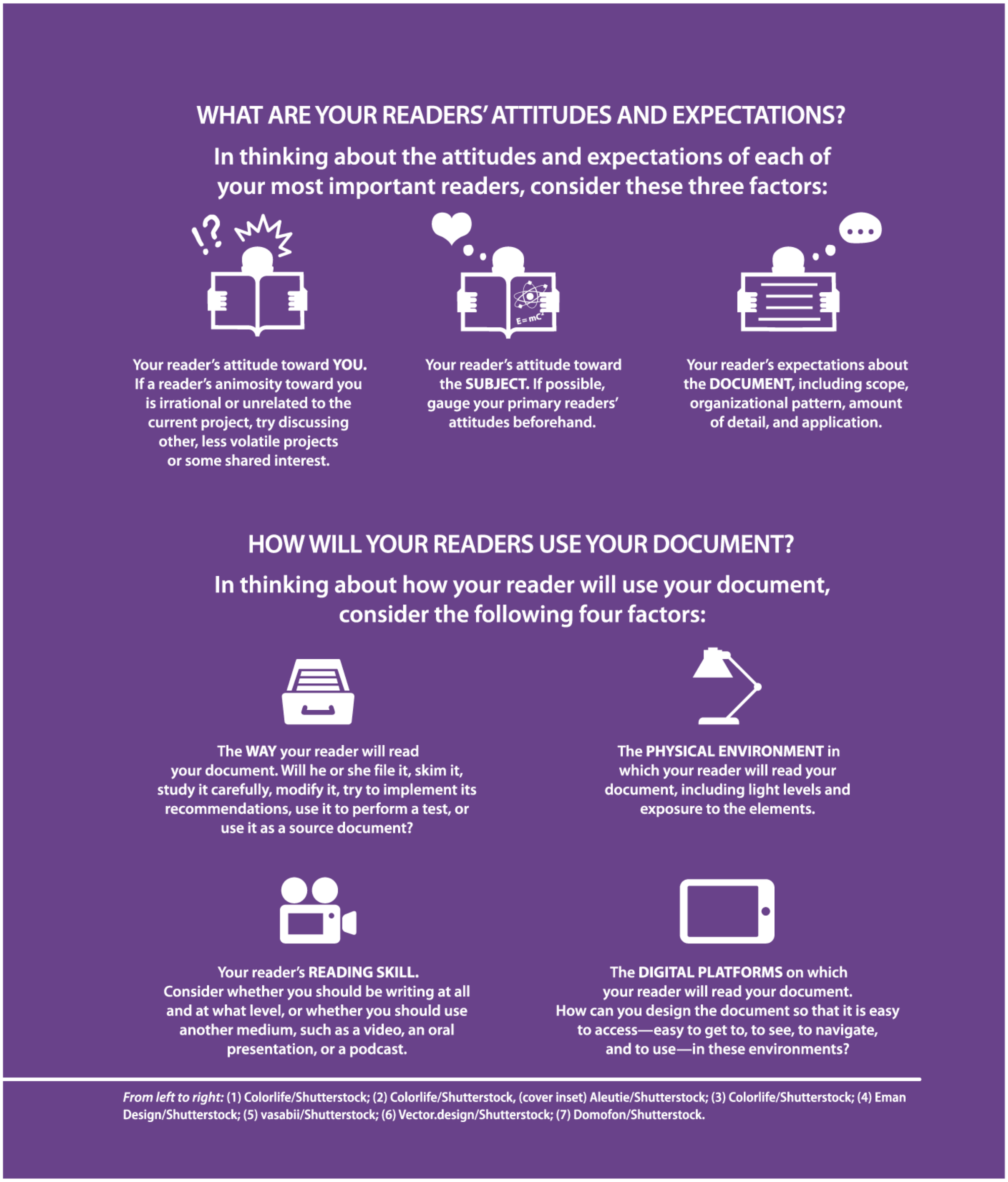
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The introductory text reads, WHO ARE YOUR READERS? For each of your most important readers, consider his or her [ellipsis] The first icon shows a diploma certificate and is followed by text that reads, EDUCATIONAL BACKGROUND. The second icon shows a globe, and the corresponding text reads, CULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS. The third icon shows a clipboard with a drawing of a person and some text on the front. The corresponding text reads, PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE, including areas of competence or expertise. The fourth icon shows a pair of eye glasses, and the corresponding text reads, PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS, such as age or physical impairments. The fifth icon shows a briefcase, and the corresponding text reads, JOB RESPONSIBILITY and how your document will help that person accomplish it. The sixth icon shows a tablet computer, and the corresponding text reads, READING, SPEAKING, AND LISTENING PREFERENCES. Text reads, WHY IS YOUR AUDIENCE READING YOUR DOCUMENT? Consider why each of your most important readers is reading your document. Some writers find it helpful to classify readers into categories that identify each reader's distance from the writer. The seventh icon shows a group of three people, and the corresponding text reads, A PRIMARY audience consists of people to whom the communication is directed. The eighth icon shows a group of six people, and the corresponding text reads, A SECONDARY audience consists of people who will not directly act on or respond to the document but who need to be aware of it. The ninth icon shows a group of eight people, and the corresponding text reads, A TERTIARY audience consists of people who might take an interest in the document, such as interest groups, government officials, and the general public. Text below reads, From left to right: (1, 3, 5) Rungrote slash Shutterstock;

(2, 6) Domofon slash Shutterstock; (4) Redberry slash Shutterstock; (7, 8, 9) Nobelus slash Shutterstock.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience

Extended description for An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience



WHAT ARE YOUR READERS' ATTITUDES AND EXPECTATIONS?

In thinking about the attitudes and expectations of each of your most important readers, consider these three factors:

Your reader's attitude toward **YOU.** If a reader's animosity toward you is irrational or unrelated to the current project, try discussing other, less volatile projects or some shared interest.

Your reader's attitude toward the **SUBJECT.** If possible, gauge your primary readers' attitudes beforehand.

Your reader's expectations about the **DOCUMENT,** including scope, organizational pattern, amount of detail, and application.

HOW WILL YOUR READERS USE YOUR DOCUMENT?

In thinking about how your reader will use your document, consider the following four factors:

The **WAY** your reader will read your document. Will he or she file it, skim it, study it carefully, modify it, try to implement its recommendations, use it to perform a test, or use it as a source document?

The **PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT** in which your reader will read your document, including light levels and exposure to the elements.

Your reader's **READING SKILL.** Consider whether you should be writing at all and at what level, or whether you should use another medium, such as a video, an oral presentation, or a podcast.

The **DIGITAL PLATFORMS** on which your reader will read your document. How can you design the document so that it is easy to access—easy to get to, to see, to navigate, and to use—in these environments?

From left to right: (1) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (2) Colorlife/Shutterstock, (cover inset) Aleutie/Shutterstock; (3) Colorlife/Shutterstock; (4) Eman Design/Shutterstock; (5) vasabii/Shutterstock; (6) Vector.design/Shutterstock; (7) Domofon/Shutterstock.

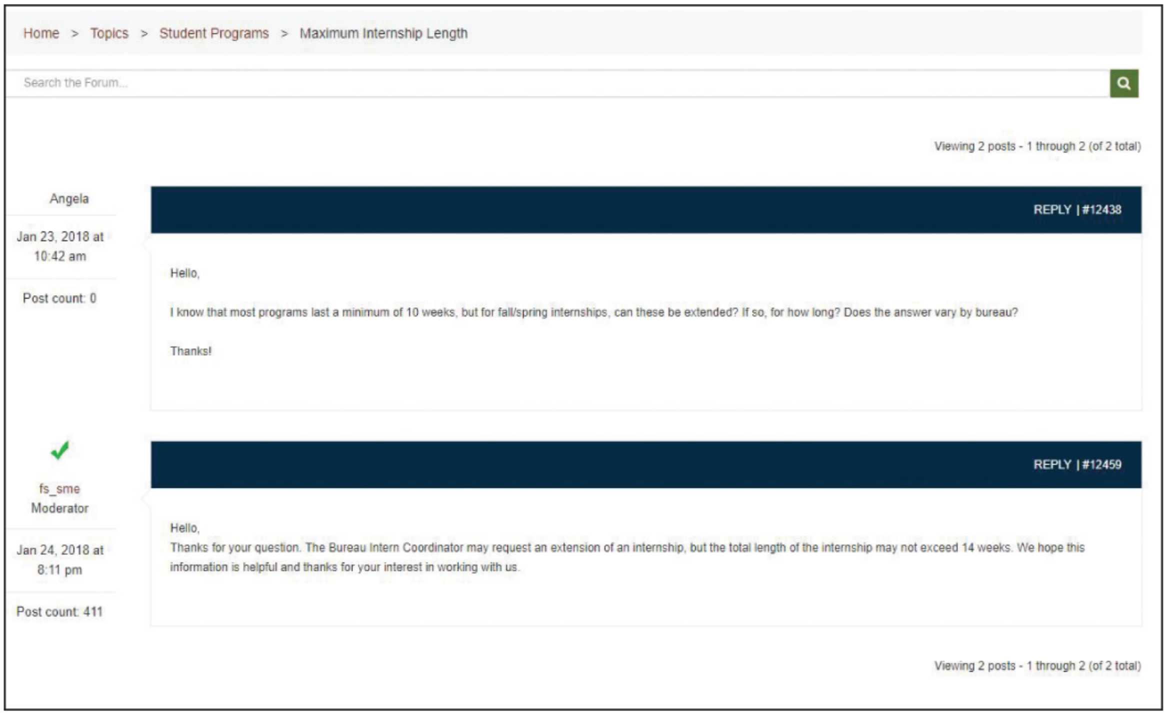
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text at the top reads, WHAT ARE YOUR READERS' ATTITUDES AND EXPECTATIONS? In thinking about the attitudes and expectations of each of your most important readers, consider these three factors:

An icon shows a person reading a book with surprise symbols followed by the text, Your reader's attitude toward YOU. If a reader's animosity toward you is irrational or unrelated to the current project, try discussing other, less volatile projects or some shared interest. An icon shows a person reading a book with a heart symbol followed by the text, Your reader's attitude toward the SUBJECT. If possible, gauge your primary readers' attitudes beforehand. An icon shows a person reading a document with an ellipsis symbol. Text follows reading, Your reader's expectations about the DOCUMENT, including scope, organizational pattern, amount of detail, and application. The next section reads, HOW WILL YOUR READERS USE YOUR DOCUMENT? In thinking about how your reader will use your document, consider the following four factors: An icon of a file drawer is followed by the text, The WAY your reader will read your document. Will he or she file it, skim it, study it carefully, modify it, try to implement its recommendations, use it to perform a test, or use it as a source document? An icon of a lamp is followed by the text The PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT in which your reader will read your document, including light levels and exposure to the elements. An icon of a cellphone is followed by the text The DIGITAL PLATFORMS on which your reader will read your document. How can you design the document so that it is easy to access dash easy to get to, to see, to navigate, and to use dash in these environments? The bottom text reads, From left to right: (1) Colorlife slash Shutterstock; (2) Colorlife slash Shutterstock, (cover inset) Aleutie slash Shutterstock; (3) Colorlife slash Shutterstock; (4) Eman Design slash Shutterstock; (5) vasabii slash Shutterstock; (6) Vector.design slash Shutterstock; (7) Domofon slash Shutterstock.

Return to An illustration is titled, Thinking Visually, Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience

Extended description for Figure 5.1 A Discussion Board Exchange


Home > Topics > Student Programs > Maximum Internship Length
Search the Forum...
Viewing 2 posts - 1 through 2 (of 2 total)
REPLY | #12438
REPLY | #12459
Viewing 2 posts - 1 through 2 (of 2 total)

Angela
Jan 23, 2018 at 10:42 am
Post count: 0

Hello,

I know that most programs last a minimum of 10 weeks, but for fall/spring internships, can these be extended? If so, for how long? Does the answer vary by bureau?

Thanks!

✓
fs_sme
Moderator
Jan 24, 2018 at 8:11 pm
Post count: 411

Hello,
Thanks for your question. The Bureau Intern Coordinator may request an extension of an internship, but the total length of the internship may not exceed 14 weeks. We hope this information is helpful and thanks for your interest in working with us.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The image shows an exchange between Angela and the discussion board moderator. The discussion is as follows:

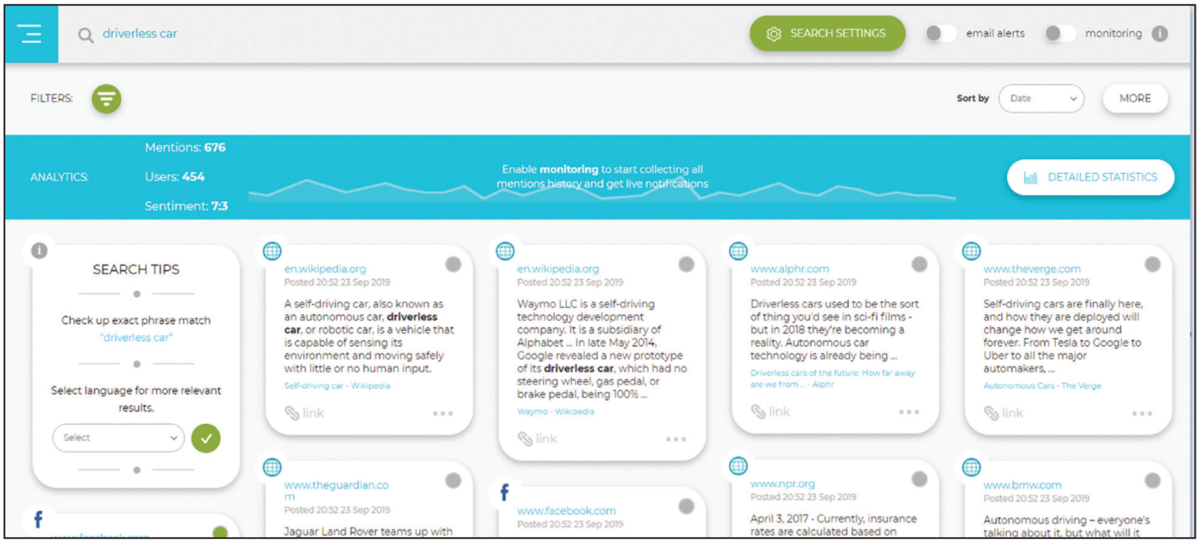
Angela: January 23, 2018 at 10:42 A M. Hello, I know that most programs last a minimum of 10 weeks, but for fall/spring internships, can these be extended? If so, for how long? Does the answer vary by bureau? Thanks!

Moderator: January 24, 2018 at 8:11 P M. Hello, Thanks for your question. The Bureau Intern Coordinator may request an extension of an internship, but the total length of the internship may not exceed 14 seeks. We hope this information is helpful and thanks for your interest in working with us.

There were 2 posts total.

Return to A Figure 5.1 A Discussion Board Exchange

Extended description for Figure 5.2 Search Results for Pages Tagged with “Driverless Cars”



driverless car

Mentions: **676**

Users: **454**

Sentiment: **7:3**

Enable **monitoring** to start collecting all mentions history and get live notifications

Check up exact phrase match "driverless car"

Select language for more relevant results.

en.wikipedia.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

A self-driving car, also known as an autonomous car, **driverless car**, or robotic car, is a vehicle that is capable of sensing its environment and moving safely with little or no human input.

Self-driving car - Wikipedia

en.wikipedia.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

Waymo LLC is a self-driving technology development company. It is a subsidiary of Alphabet ... In late May 2014, Google revealed a new prototype of its **driverless car**, which had no steering wheel, gas pedal, or brake pedal, being 100% ...

Waymo - Wikipedia

www.alphr.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

Driverless cars used to be the sort of thing you'd see in sci-fi films - but in 2018 they're becoming a reality. Autonomous car technology is already being ...

Driverless cars of the future: How far away are we from ... - Alphr

www.theverge.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

Self-driving cars are finally here, and how they are deployed will change how we get around forever. From Tesla to Google to Uber to all the major automakers, ...

Autonomous Cars - The Verge

www.theguardian.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

Jaguar Land Rover teams up with

www.facebook.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

www.npr.org
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

April 3, 2017 · Currently, insurance rates are calculated based on

www.bmw.com
Posted 20:52 23 Sep 2019

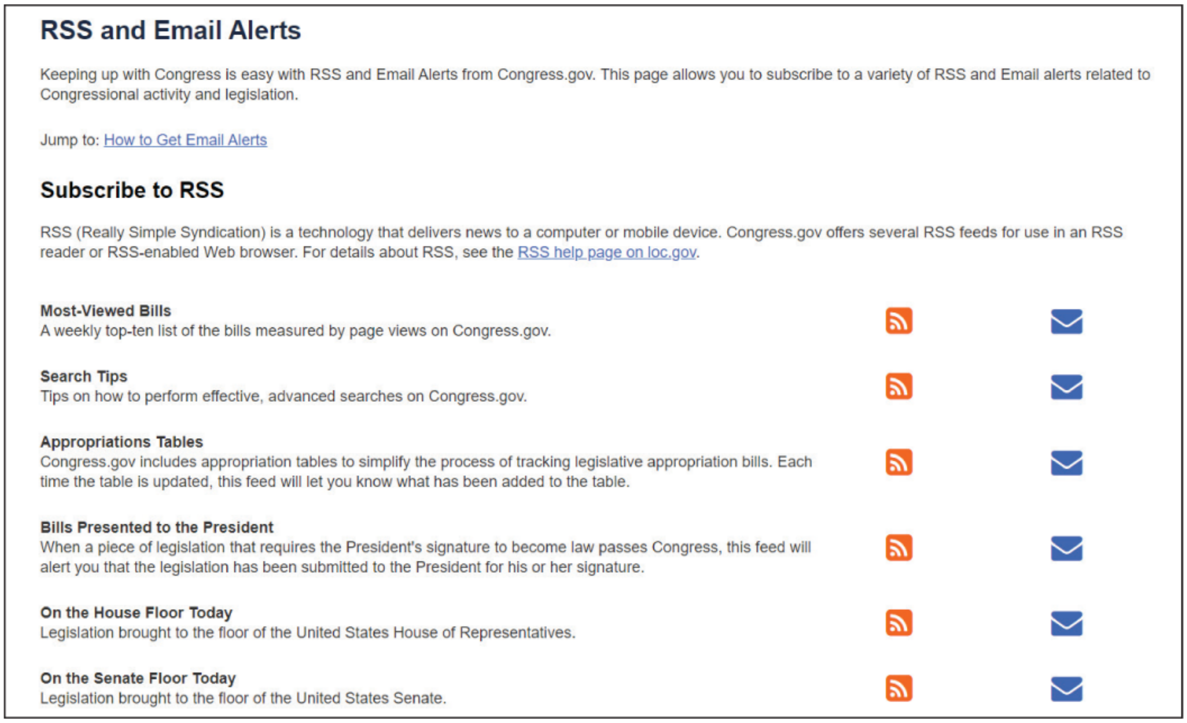
Autonomous driving – everyone's talking about it, but what will it

Social Searcher.com.

The top of the page shows the analytics as 676 mentions, 454 users, 7:3 sentiments. A jagged line graphic has the text that reads, Enable monitoring to start collecting all mentions and get live notifications. The next section shows search tips and eight search results from multiple websites.

Return to Figure 5.2 Search Results for Pages Tagged with “Driverless Cars”

Extended description for Figure 5.3 A Website Offering RSS Feeds



RSS and Email Alerts

Keeping up with Congress is easy with RSS and Email Alerts from Congress.gov. This page allows you to subscribe to a variety of RSS and Email alerts related to Congressional activity and legislation.

Jump to: How to Get Email Alerts

Subscribe to RSS

RSS (Really Simple Syndication) is a technology that delivers news to a computer or mobile device. Congress.gov offers several RSS feeds for use in an RSS reader or RSS-enabled Web browser. For details about RSS, see the RSS help page on loc.gov.

Most-Viewed Bills
A weekly top-ten list of the bills measured by page views on Congress.gov.

Search Tips
Tips on how to perform effective, advanced searches on Congress.gov.

Appropriations Tables
Congress.gov includes appropriation tables to simplify the process of tracking legislative appropriation bills. Each time the table is updated, this feed will let you know what has been added to the table.

Bills Presented to the President
When a piece of legislation that requires the President's signature to become law passes Congress, this feed will alert you that the legislation has been submitted to the President for his or her signature.

On the House Floor Today
Legislation brought to the floor of the United States House of Representatives.

On the Senate Floor Today
Legislation brought to the floor of the United States Senate.

Congress.gov.

The text on the page reads as follows:

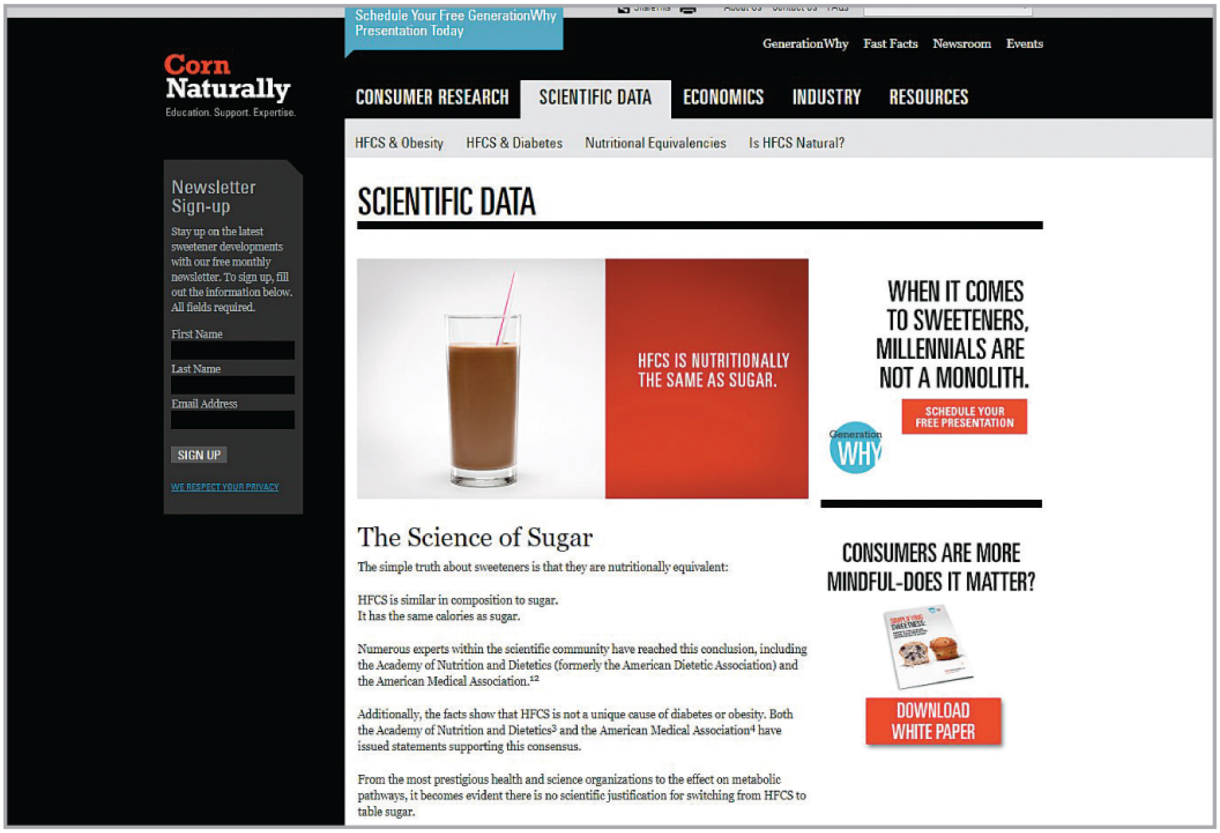
RSS and Email alerts

Keeping up with Congress with RSS and email alerts from Congress.gov. This page allows you to subscribe to a variety of email alerts related to Congressional activity and legislation. Jump to: How to get email alerts; Subscribe to RSS. RSS (Really Simple Syndication) is a technology that delivers news to a computer or mobile device. Congress dot gov offers several RSS feeds for use in an RSS reader or

RSS-enabled web browser. For details about RSS, see the RSS help page on loc dot gov. Below is a list of pages and icons for call or email. It reads as follows: Most-viewed bills: A weekly top-ten list of the bills measured by page views on Congress dot gov. Search tips: Tips on how to perform effective, advanced searches on Congress dot gov. Appropriations tables: Congress dot gov includes appropriation tables to simplify the process of tracking legislative appropriation bills. Each time the table is updated, this feed will let you know what has been added to the table. Bills presented to the President: When a piece of legislation that requires the president's signature to become law passes Congress, this feed will alert you that the legislation has been submitted to the President for his or her signature. On the House floor today: Legislation brought to the floor of the United States House of Representatives. On the Senate floor today: Legislation brought to the floor of the United States Senate.

Return to Figure 5.3 A Website Offering RSS Feeds

Extended description for A screenshot shows a page from Corn Naturally with the heading Evaluating Information from Internet Sources


Schedule Your Free GenerationWhy Presentation Today
GenerationWhy
Fast Facts
Newsroom
Events
Corn Naturally
Education. Support. Expertise.
CONSUMER RESEARCH
SCIENTIFIC DATA
ECONOMICS
INDUSTRY
RESOURCES
HFCS & Obesity
HFCS & Diabetes
Nutritional Equivalencies
Is HFCS Natural?
SCIENTIFIC DATA
HFCS IS NUTRITIONALLY THE SAME AS SUGAR.
WHEN IT COMES TO SWEETENERS, MILLENNIALS ARE NOT A MONOLITH.
SCHEDULE YOUR FREE PRESENTATION
Generation WHY
CONSUMERS ARE MORE MINDFUL-DOES IT MATTER?
DOWNLOAD WHITE PAPER
SIGN UP
WE RESPECT YOUR PRIVACY

Newsletter Sign-up

Stay up on the latest sweetener developments with our free monthly newsletter. To sign up, fill out the information below. All fields required.

First Name

Last Name

Email Address

The Science of Sugar

The simple truth about sweeteners is that they are nutritionally equivalent:

HFCS is similar in composition to sugar.
It has the same calories as sugar.

Numerous experts within the scientific community have reached this conclusion, including the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (formerly the American Dietetic Association) and the American Medical Association.[1,2]

Additionally, the facts show that HFCS is not a unique cause of diabetes or obesity. Both the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics[3] and the American Medical Association[4] have issued statements supporting this consensus.

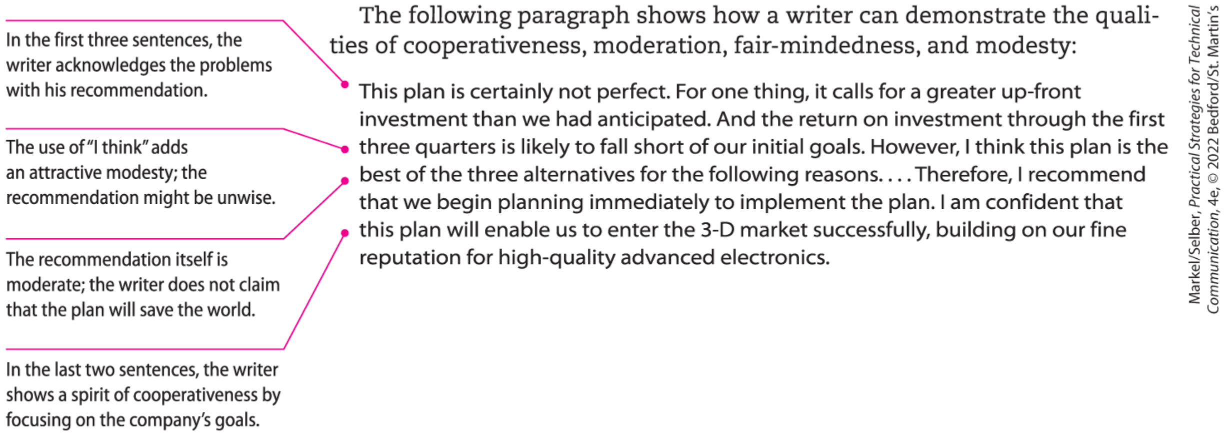
From the most prestigious health and science organizations to the effect on metabolic pathways, it becomes evident there is no scientific justification for switching from HFCS to table sugar.

Under the logo is a section for newsletter sign up. Tabs at the top of the page are Consumer research, Scientific data, Economics, Industry, and Resources. Scientific data is selected. The page shows a picture of a glass of chocolate milk with a straw and text that reads, H F C S is nutritionally the same as sugar. When it comes to sweeteners, millennials are not a monolith. Schedule a free presentation. Below the photo is text that reads, The Science of

Sugar. The simple truth about sweeteners is that they are nutritionally equivalent: H F C S is similar in composition to sugar. It has the same calories as sugar. Numerous experts within the scientific community reached the conclusion, including the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (formerly the American Dietetic Association) and the American Medical Association superscript 12. Additionally, the facts show that H F C S is not a unique case of diabetes or obesity. Both the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics superscript 3 and the American Medical Association superscript 4 have issued statements supporting this consensus. From the most prestigious health and science organizations to the effect on metabolic pathways, it becomes evident there is no scientific justification for switching from H F C S to table sugar. To the right is an ad to download a white paper, Consumers are more Mindful dash Does it Matter?

Return to A screenshot shows a page from Corn Naturally with the heading Evaluating Information from Internet Sources

Extended description for A paragraph with notations shows how to create a professional persona



The following paragraph shows how a writer can demonstrate the qualities of cooperativeness, moderation, fair-mindedness, and modesty:

This plan is certainly not perfect. For one thing, it calls for a greater up-front investment than we had anticipated. And the return on investment through the first three quarters is likely to fall short of our initial goals. However, I think this plan is the best of the three alternatives for the following reasons. . . . Therefore, I recommend that we begin planning immediately to implement the plan. I am confident that this plan will enable us to enter the 3-D market successfully, building on our fine reputation for high-quality advanced electronics.

In the first three sentences, the writer acknowledges the problems with his recommendation.

The use of "I think" adds an attractive modesty; the recommendation might be unwise.

The recommendation itself is moderate; the writer does not claim that the plan will save the world.

In the last two sentences, the writer shows a spirit of cooperativeness by focusing on the company's goals.

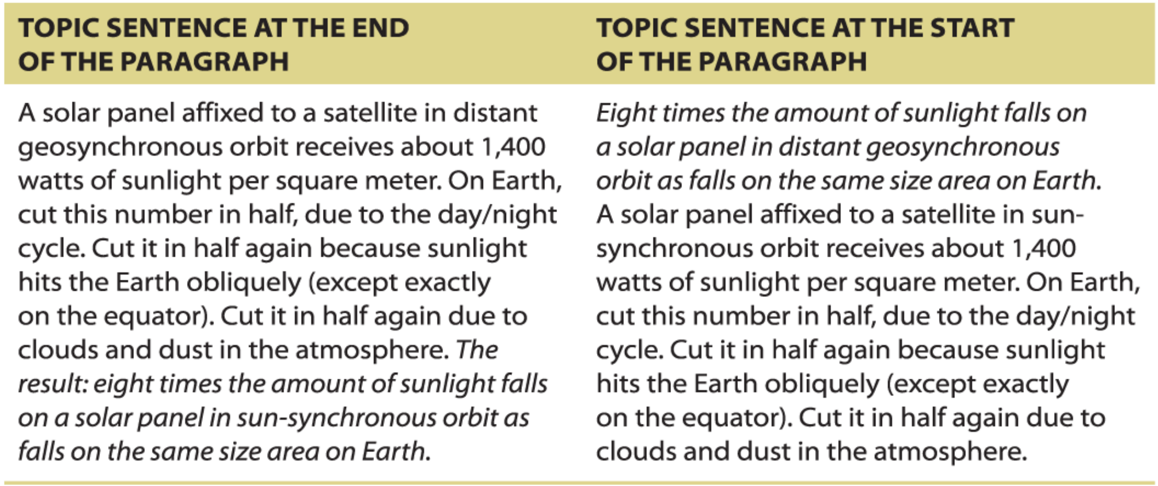
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text reads, This plan is certainly not perfect. For one thing, it calls for a greater up-front investment than we had anticipated. And the return on investment through the first three quarters is likely to fall short of our initial goals. However, I think this plan is the best of the three alternatives for the following reasons. ellipsis Therefore, I recommend that we begin planning immediately to implement the plan. I am confident that this plan will enable us to enter the 3-D market successfully, building on our fine reputation for high-quality advanced electronics.

Notations read: In the first three sentences, the writer acknowledges the problems with his recommendation; The use of "I think" adds an attractive modesty; the recommendation might be unwise; The recommendation itself is moderate; the writer does not claim that the plan will save the world.; In the last two sentences, the writer shows a spirit of cooperativeness by focusing on the company’s goals.

Return to A paragraph with notations shows how to create a professional persona

Extended description for Figure 6.1 A Topic Sentence Works Better at the Start of the Paragraph



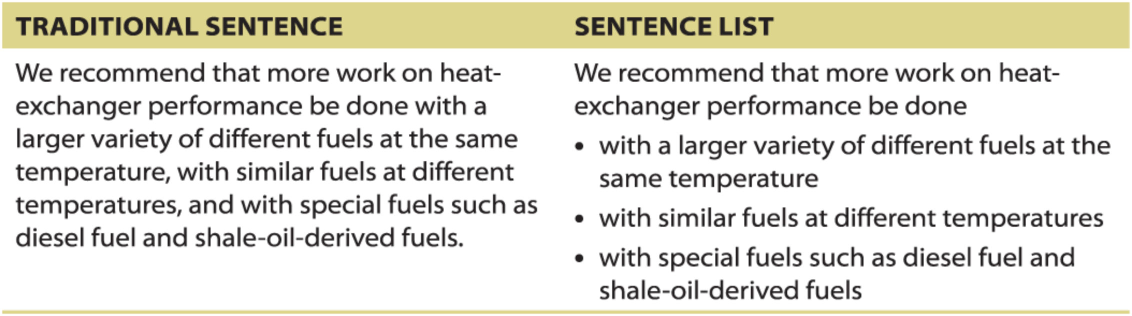
TOPIC SENTENCE AT THE END OF THE PARAGRAPH	TOPIC SENTENCE AT THE START OF THE PARAGRAPH
A solar panel affixed to a satellite in distant geosynchronous orbit receives about 1,400 watts of sunlight per square meter. On Earth, cut this number in half, due to the day/night cycle. Cut it in half again because sunlight hits the Earth obliquely (except exactly on the equator). Cut it in half again due to clouds and dust in the atmosphere. *The result: eight times the amount of sunlight falls on a solar panel in sun-synchronous orbit as falls on the same size area on Earth.*	*Eight times the amount of sunlight falls on a solar panel in distant geosynchronous orbit as falls on the same size area on Earth.* A solar panel affixed to a satellite in sun-synchronous orbit receives about 1,400 watts of sunlight per square meter. On Earth, cut this number in half, due to the day/night cycle. Cut it in half again because sunlight hits the Earth obliquely (except exactly on the equator). Cut it in half again due to clouds and dust in the atmosphere.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The paragraph with the topic sentence at the end reads, A solar panel affixed to a satellite in distant geosynchronous orbit receives about 1,400 watts of sunlight per square meter. On Earth, cut this number in half, due to the da or night cycle. Cut it in half again because sunlight hits the Earth obliquely (except exactly on the equator). Cut it in half again due to clouds and dust in the atmosphere. Begin italics The result: eight times the amount of sunlight falls on a solar panel in sun synchronous orbit as falls on the same size area on Earth. End italics.

Return to Figure 6.1 A Topic Sentence Works Better at the Start of the Paragraph

Extended description for Figure 6.2 A Traditional Sentence and a Sentence List



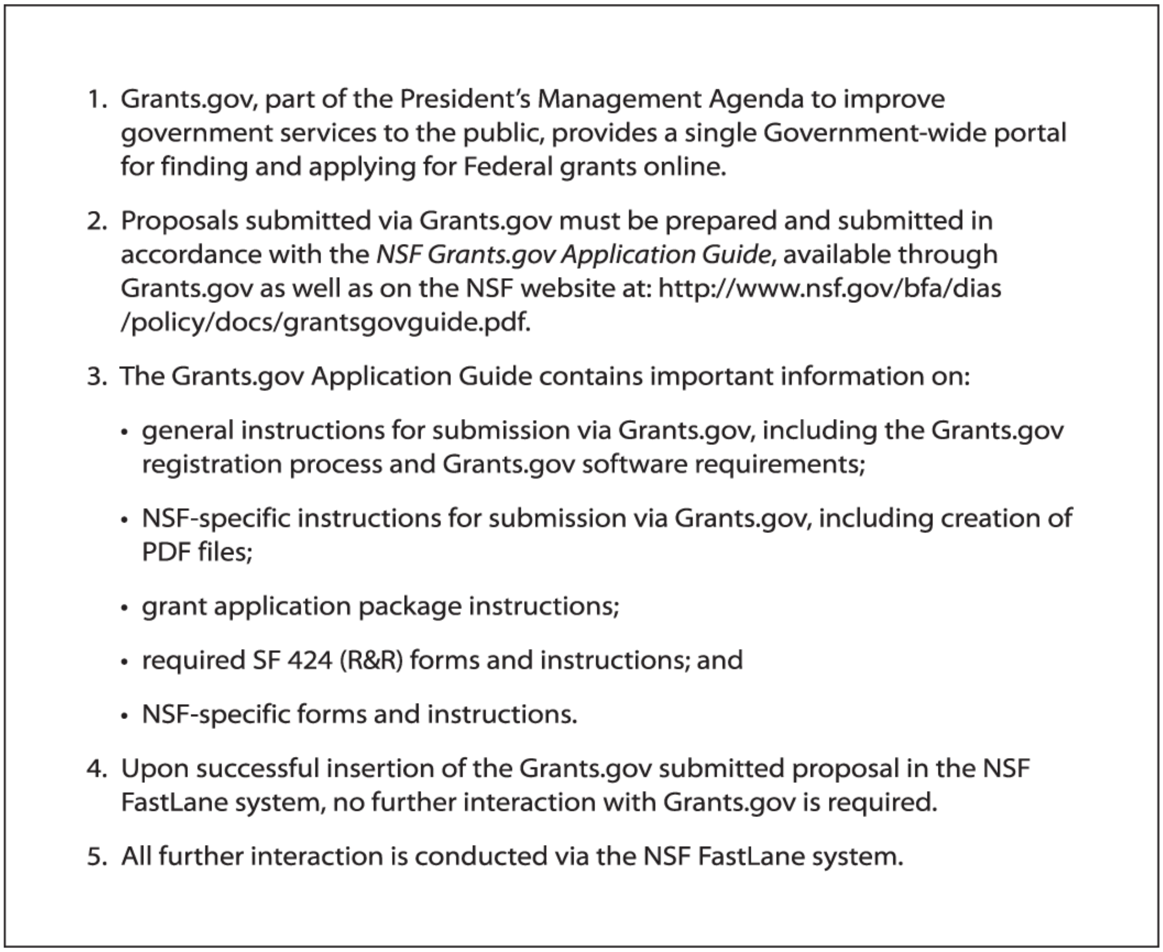
TRADITIONAL SENTENCE	SENTENCE LIST
We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature, with similar fuels at different temperatures, and with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels.	We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done • with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature • with similar fuels at different temperatures • with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The traditional sentence reads, We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature, with similar fuels at different temperatures, and with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels. The sentence list reads, We recommend that more work on heat-exchanger performance be done bullet with a larger variety of different fuels at the same temperature; bullet with similar fuels at different temperatures; bullet with special fuels such as diesel fuel and shale-oil-derived fuels.

Return to Figure 6.2 A Traditional Sentence and a Sentence List

Extended description for A passage shows how to revise for conciseness and simplicity



1. Grants.gov, part of the President’s Management Agenda to improve government services to the public, provides a single Government-wide portal for finding and applying for Federal grants online.
2. Proposals submitted via Grants.gov must be prepared and submitted in accordance with the *NSF Grants.gov Application Guide*, available through Grants.gov as well as on the NSF website at: http://www.nsf.gov/bfa/dias/policy/docs/grantsgovguide.pdf.
3. The Grants.gov Application Guide contains important information on:
   - general instructions for submission via Grants.gov, including the Grants.gov registration process and Grants.gov software requirements;
   - NSF-specific instructions for submission via Grants.gov, including creation of PDF files;
   - grant application package instructions;
   - required SF 424 (R&R) forms and instructions; and
   - NSF-specific forms and instructions.
4. Upon successful insertion of the Grants.gov submitted proposal in the NSF FastLane system, no further interaction with Grants.gov is required.
5. All further interaction is conducted via the NSF FastLane system.

Information from National Science Foundation, 2008: www.nsf.gov/ pubs/ policydocs/ pappguide/ nsf08_1/gpg_1.jsp#IA1.

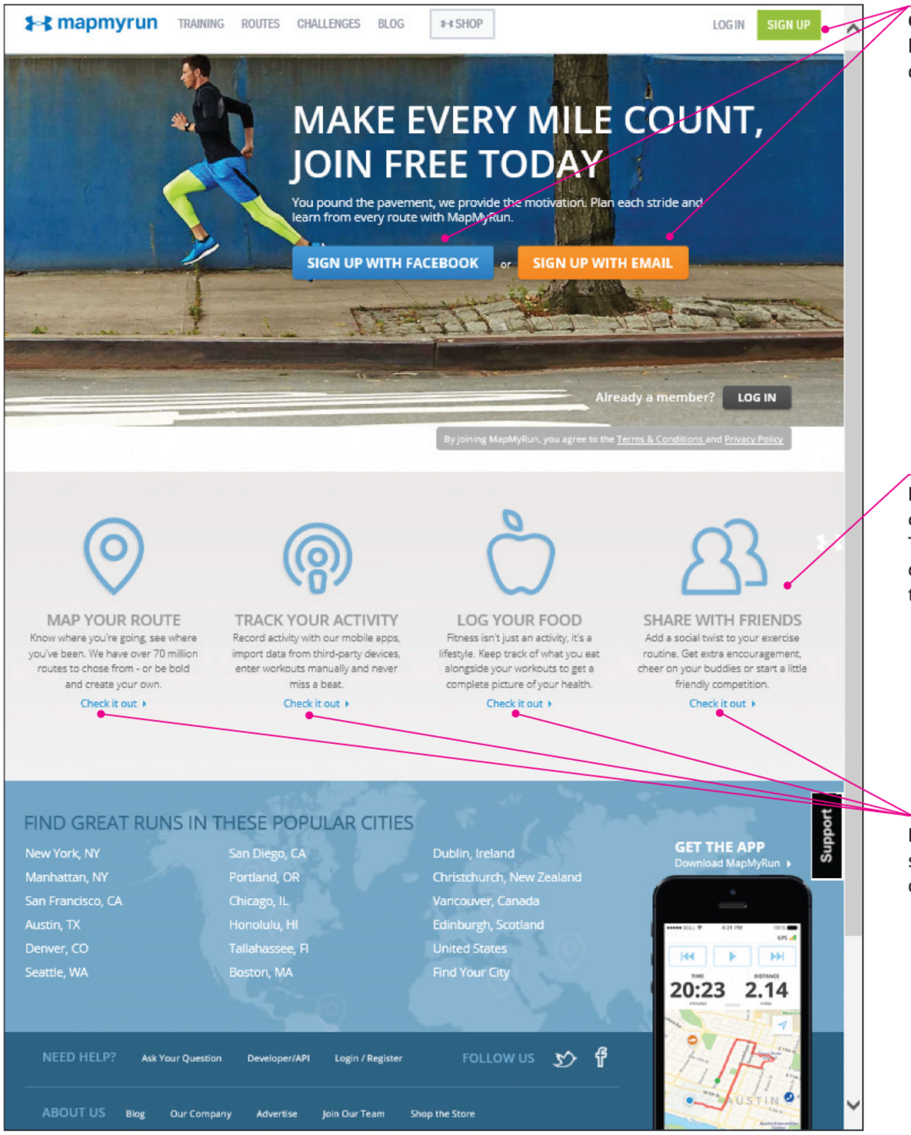
The passage reads as follows: 1. Grants dot gov, part of the President’s Management Agenda to improve government services to the public, provides a single Government-wide portal for finding and applying for Federal grants online. 2. Proposals submitted via Grants dot gov must be prepared and submitted in accordance with the N S F Grants dot gov Application Guide, available through Grants dot gov as well as on the N S F website at: http: slash slash www dot n s f dot govslash bfa slash dias slash policy slash docs slash grantsgovguide dot p d f. 3. The Grants dot gov Application Guide contains important information on: bullet general instructions for submission via Grants dot gov, including the Grants dot gov registration process and Grants dot gov software requirements; bullet NSF-specific instructions for submission via Grants dot gov, including creation of PDF files; bullet grant application package instructions; bullet required SF 424 (R&R) forms and instructions; and

bullet N S F-specific forms and instructions. 4. Upon successful insertion of the Grants dot gov submitted proposal in the NSF Fast Lane system, no further interaction with Grants dot gov is required. 5. All further interaction is conducted via the N S F FastLane system.

Below the passage text reads, Information from National Science Foundation, 2008: www dot n s f dot gov slash pubs slash policydocs slash pappguide slash nsf08 underscore 1 slash g p g underscore 1 dot jsp hash mark I A 1.

Return to A passage shows how to revise for conciseness and simplicity

Extended description for Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles


mapmyrun
TRAINING
ROUTES
CHALLENGES
BLOG
SHOP
LOG IN
SIGN UP
SIGN UP WITH FACEBOOK
or
SIGN UP WITH EMAIL
Already a member?
LOG IN
Check it out
Check it out
Check it out
Check it out
GET THE APP
Download MapMyRun
Support
NEED HELP?
Ask Your Question
Developer/API
Login / Register
FOLLOW US
ABOUT US
Blog
Our Company
Advertise
Join Our Team
Shop the Store
TIME
DISTANCE
20:23
2.14
AUSTIN

MAKE EVERY MILE COUNT, JOIN FREE TODAY

You pound the pavement, we provide the motivation. Plan each stride and learn from every route with MapMyRun.

By joining MapMyRun, you agree to the Terms & Conditions and Privacy Policy

MAP YOUR ROUTE

Know where you're going, see where you've been. We have over 70 million routes to chose from - or be bold and create your own.

TRACK YOUR ACTIVITY

Record activity with our mobile apps, import data from third-party devices, enter workouts manually and never miss a beat.

LOG YOUR FOOD

Fitness isn't just an activity, it's a lifestyle. Keep track of what you eat alongside your workouts to get a complete picture of your health.

SHARE WITH FRIENDS

Add a social twist to your exercise routine. Get extra encouragement, cheer on your buddies or start a little friendly competition.

FIND GREAT RUNS IN THESE POPULAR CITIES

New York, NY
Manhattan, NY
San Francisco, CA
Austin, TX
Denver, CO
Seattle, WA
San Diego, CA
Portland, OR
Chicago, IL
Honolulu, HI
Tallahassee, Fl
Boston, MA
Dublin, Ireland
Christchurch, New Zealand
Vancouver, Canada
Edinburgh, Scotland
United States
Find Your City

Contrast: Brightly colored buttons highlight the places the web designer wants users to click.

Proximity: Text and graphics are clearly related by their position. The textual descriptions are placed directly below the icons to which they refer.

Repetition: Repeated type styles, sizes, and colors indicate headings, descriptions, and links.

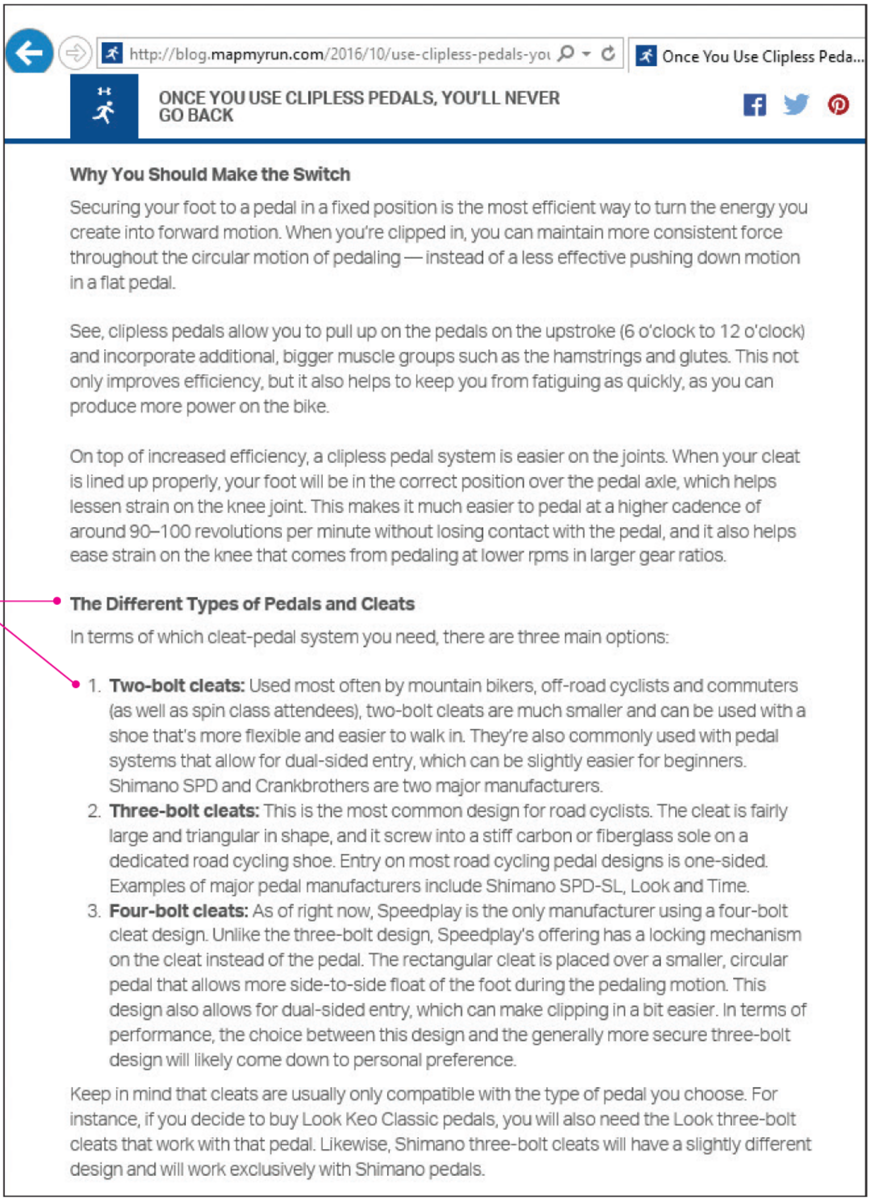
MapMyRun.

The webpage shows the content area with two headings. Below the second heading, a numbered list is shown with subheadings. An annotation points toward the heading and subheading and reads, “

Alignment: The writer uses two levels of headings, each reinforced by a different alignment.”

Return to Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles

Extended description for Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles



http://blog.mapmyrun.com/2016/10/use-clipless-pedals-yo
Once You Use Clipless Peda...

ONCE YOU USE CLIPLESS PEDALS, YOU'LL NEVER GO BACK

Why You Should Make the Switch

Securing your foot to a pedal in a fixed position is the most efficient way to turn the energy you create into forward motion. When you're clipped in, you can maintain more consistent force throughout the circular motion of pedaling — instead of a less effective pushing down motion in a flat pedal.

See, clipless pedals allow you to pull up on the pedals on the upstroke (6 o'clock to 12 o'clock) and incorporate additional, bigger muscle groups such as the hamstrings and glutes. This not only improves efficiency, but it also helps to keep you from fatiguing as quickly, as you can produce more power on the bike.

On top of increased efficiency, a clipless pedal system is easier on the joints. When your cleat is lined up properly, your foot will be in the correct position over the pedal axle, which helps lessen strain on the knee joint. This makes it much easier to pedal at a higher cadence of around 90–100 revolutions per minute without losing contact with the pedal, and it also helps ease strain on the knee that comes from pedaling at lower rpms in larger gear ratios.

The Different Types of Pedals and Cleats

In terms of which cleat-pedal system you need, there are three main options:

1. **Two-bolt cleats:** Used most often by mountain bikers, off-road cyclists and commuters (as well as spin class attendees), two-bolt cleats are much smaller and can be used with a shoe that's more flexible and easier to walk in. They're also commonly used with pedal systems that allow for dual-sided entry, which can be slightly easier for beginners. Shimano SPD and Crankbrothers are two major manufacturers.
2. **Three-bolt cleats:** This is the most common design for road cyclists. The cleat is fairly large and triangular in shape, and it screw into a stiff carbon or fiberglass sole on a dedicated road cycling shoe. Entry on most road cycling pedal designs is one-sided. Examples of major pedal manufacturers include Shimano SPD-SL, Look and Time.
3. **Four-bolt cleats:** As of right now, Speedplay is the only manufacturer using a four-bolt cleat design. Unlike the three-bolt design, Speedplay's offering has a locking mechanism on the cleat instead of the pedal. The rectangular cleat is placed over a smaller, circular pedal that allows more side-to-side float of the foot during the pedaling motion. This design also allows for dual-sided entry, which can make clipping in a bit easier. In terms of performance, the choice between this design and the generally more secure three-bolt design will likely come down to personal preference.

Keep in mind that cleats are usually only compatible with the type of pedal you choose. For instance, if you decide to buy Look Keo Classic pedals, you will also need the Look three-bolt cleats that work with that pedal. Likewise, Shimano three-bolt cleats will have a slightly different design and will work exclusively with Shimano pedals.

Alignment: The writer uses two levels of headings, each reinforced by a different alignment.

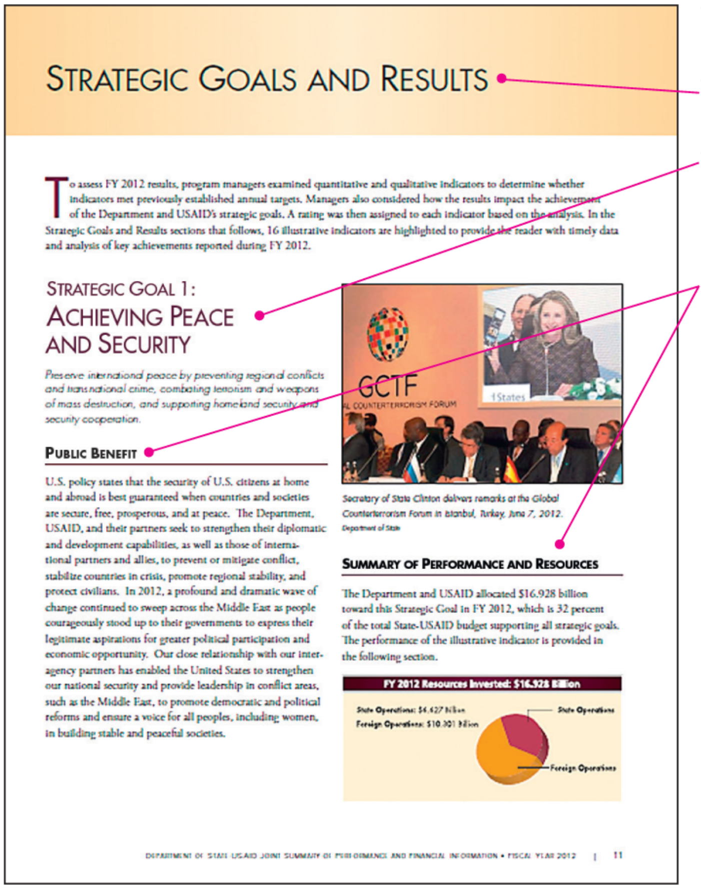
MapMyRun.

The webpage shows the content area with two headings. Below the second heading, a numbered list is shown with subheadings. An annotation points toward the heading and subheading and reads, “

Alignment: The writer uses two levels of headings, each reinforced by a different alignment.”

Return to Figure 7.1 Effective Use of Design Principles

Extended description for Figure 7.3 Queuing



STRATEGIC GOALS AND RESULTS

To assess FY 2012 results, program managers examined quantitative and qualitative indicators to determine whether indicators met previously established annual targets. Managers also considered how the results impact the achievement of the Department and USAID's strategic goals. A rating was then assigned to each indicator based on the analysis. In the Strategic Goals and Results sections that follows, 16 illustrative indicators are highlighted to provide the reader with timely data and analysis of key achievements reported during FY 2012.

STRATEGIC GOAL 1:
ACHIEVING PEACE AND SECURITY

Preserve international peace by preventing regional conflicts and transnational crime, combating terrorism and weapons of mass destruction, and supporting homeland security and security cooperation.

PUBLIC BENEFIT

U.S. policy states that the security of U.S. citizens at home and abroad is best guaranteed when countries and societies are secure, free, prosperous, and at peace. The Department, USAID, and their partners seek to strengthen their diplomatic and development capabilities, as well as those of international partners and allies, to prevent or mitigate conflict, stabilize countries in crisis, promote regional stability, and protect civilians. In 2012, a profound and dramatic wave of change continued to sweep across the Middle East as people courageously stood up to their governments to express their legitimate aspirations for greater political participation and economic opportunity. Our close relationship with our interagency partners has enabled the United States to strengthen our national security and provide leadership in conflict areas, such as the Middle East, to promote democratic and political reforms and ensure a voice for all peoples, including women, in building stable and peaceful societies.

Secretary of State Clinton delivers remarks at the Global Counterterrorism Forum in Istanbul, Turkey, June 7, 2012.
Department of State

SUMMARY OF PERFORMANCE AND RESOURCES

The Department and USAID allocated $16.928 billion toward this Strategic Goal in FY 2012, which is 32 percent of the total State-USAID budget supporting all strategic goals. The performance of the illustrative indicator is provided in the following section.

FY 2012 Resources Invested: $16.928 Billion

State Operations: $6.627 Billion
Foreign Operations: $10.301 Billion

DEPARTMENT OF STATE-USAID JOINT SUMMARY OF PERFORMANCE AND FINANCIAL INFORMATION • FISCAL YEAR 2012 | 11

The size of the type used for the various headings indicates their importance.

The largest type suggests that *Strategic Goals and Results* is a chapter heading.

The next largest type indicates that *Strategic Goal 1: Achieving Peace and Security* is an A head (the highest level within a chapter).

Public Benefit and *Summary of Performance and Resources* are B heads (the next highest level).

U.S. Department of State

The print document title is Strategic Goals and Results. An annotation pointing to the heading reads, The size of the type used for the various headings indicates their importance. The largest type suggests that Strategic Goals and Results is a chapter heading. The heading is followed by a wide paragraph of text. Below the paragraph are two columns. The left column is text, and the right column is a photo with a caption followed by other elements.

The left column contains a sub-heading followed by an introductory paragraph. An annotation reads, The next largest type indicates that Strategic Goal 1: Achieving Peace and Security is an A head (the highest level within a chapter).

The next section on the left is titled Public Benefit. Text pointing to this heading and a heading in the right column reads, Public Benefit and Summary of Performance and Resources are B heads (the next highest level). Following Public Benefit is a long paragraph.

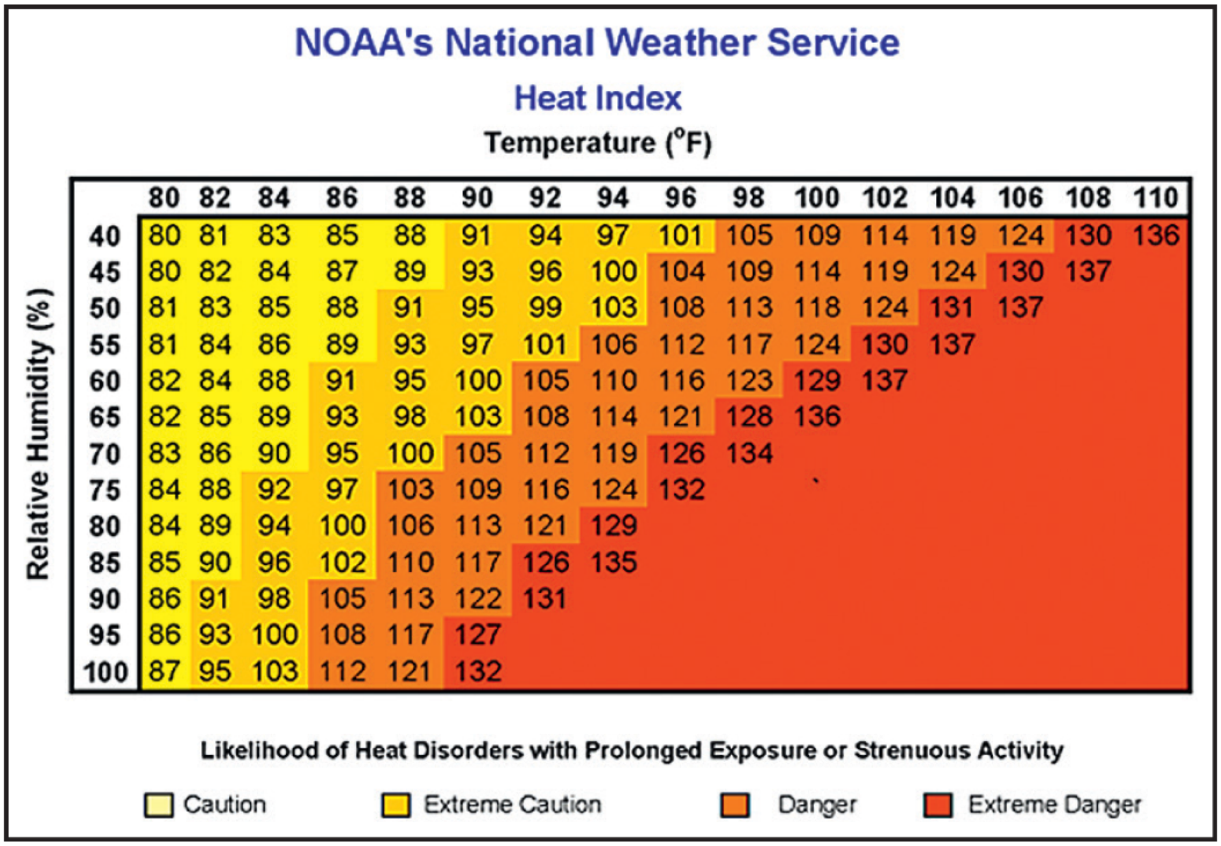
The right column begins with a photo and a caption below it, then the heading Summary of Performance and Resources and another block of text. At the bottom is a three-dimensional pie chart with a heading and callouts.

Beside the print document is a table titled NOAA's National Weather Service Heat Index. The side of the graph reads Relative Humidity in percentage. The top of the table reads Temperature in Fahrenheit degrees.

Temperatures read 80 through 110, and relative humidity reads 40 at the top to 100 at the bottom. The table shows the heat index for each temperature and humidity level in color-coded format. Yellow indicates caution, dark yellow indicates extreme caution, orange indicates danger, and red indicates extreme danger. The colors appear in roughly diagonal bands, with yellow at the top left and red at the bottom right.

Return to Figure 7.3 Queuing

Extended description for Figure 7.4 Filtering



NOAA's National Weather Service

Heat Index

Temperature (°F)

Relative Humidity (%)	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98	100	102	104	106	108	110
40	80	81	83	85	88	91	94	97	101	105	109	114	119	124	130	136
45	80	82	84	87	89	93	96	100	104	109	114	119	124	130	137	
50	81	83	85	88	91	95	99	103	108	113	118	124	131	137		
55	81	84	86	89	93	97	101	106	112	117	124	130	137			
60	82	84	88	91	95	100	105	110	116	123	129	137				
65	82	85	89	93	98	103	108	114	121	128	136					
70	83	86	90	95	100	105	112	119	126	134						
75	84	88	92	97	103	109	116	124	132							
80	84	89	94	100	106	113	121	129								
85	85	90	96	102	110	117	126	135								
90	86	91	98	105	113	122	131									
95	86	93	100	108	117	127										
100	87	95	103	112	121	132										

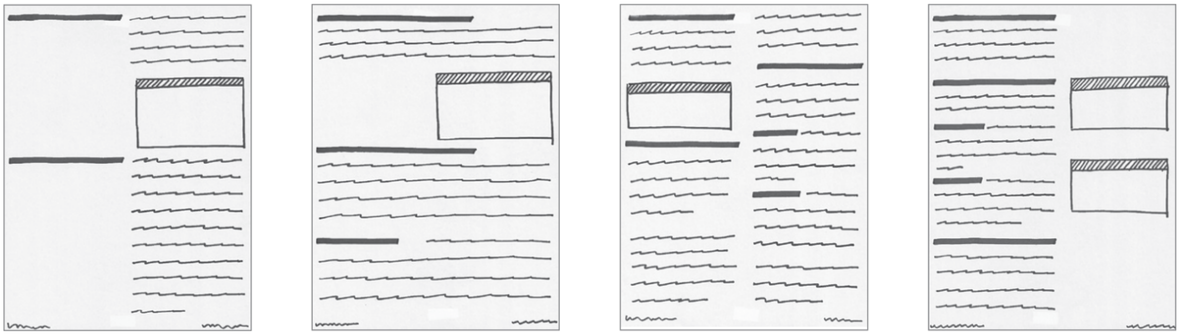
Likelihood of Heat Disorders with Prolonged Exposure or Strenuous Activity

🟨 Caution 🟨 Extreme Caution 🟧 Danger 🟥 Extreme Danger

The heat index rises in a pattern from upper left to the lower right. Bands of color from yellow, to yellow-orange, to orange, to orange-red, to red, indicate increasing danger as the heat index rises, providing a visual filter at a glance.

Return to Figure 7.4 Filtering

Extended description for Figure 7.5 Thumbnail Sketches

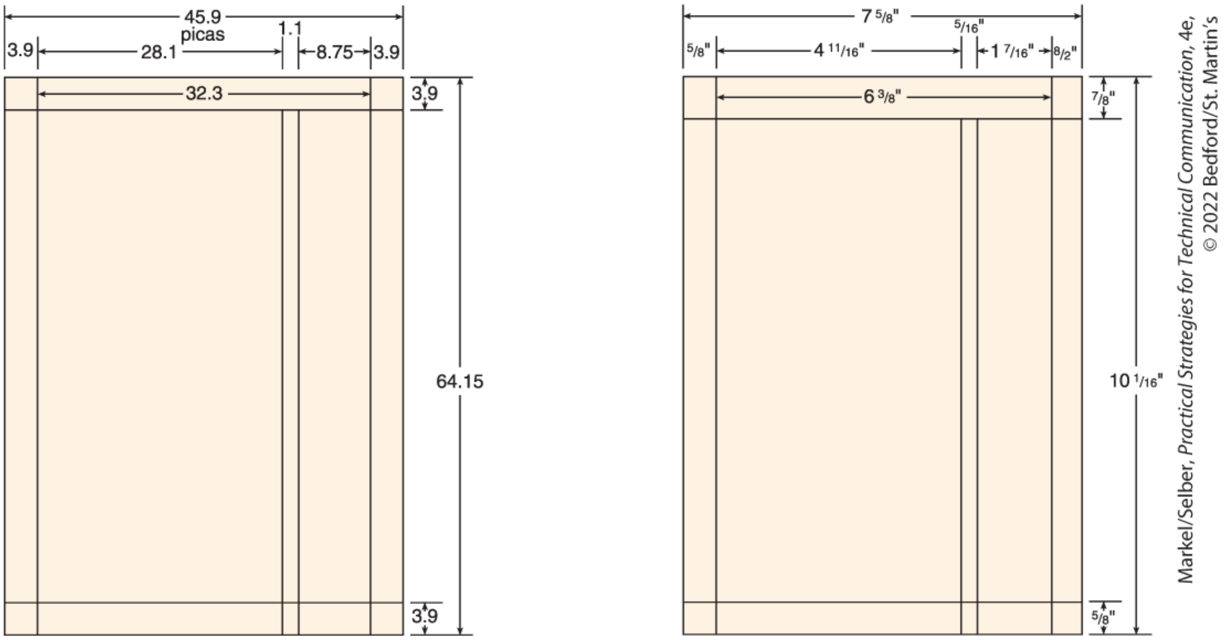


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

These are thumbnail sketches of possible page layouts. Images are represented by boxes, and text by lines. Heads are shown with darker lines. The designer has tried several layouts, one hanging the heads to one side, one with the images in a minor column, one in a two-column layout, and one as running text and images. 2.These are thumbnail sketches of possible page layouts. Images are represented by boxes, and text by lines. Heads are shown with darker lines. The designer has tried several layouts, one hanging the heads to one side, one with the images in a minor column, one in a two-column layout, and one as running text and images. 3. These are thumbnail sketches of possible page layouts. Images are represented by boxes, and text by lines. Heads are shown with darker lines. The designer has tried several layouts, one hanging the heads to one side, one with the images in a minor column, one in a two-column layout, and one as running text and images. These are thumbnail sketches of possible page layouts. Images are represented by boxes, and text by lines. Heads are shown with darker lines. The designer has tried several layouts, one hanging the heads to one side, one with the images in a minor column, one in a two-column layout, and one as running text and images.

Return to Figure 7.5 Thumbnail Sketches

Extended description for Figure 7.6 Sample Grids Using Picas and Inches


45.9 picas
3.9
28.1
1.1
8.75
3.9
32.3
3.9
64.15
3.9
7 5/8"
5/8"
4 11/16"
5/16"
1 7/16"
8/2"
6 3/8"
7/8"
10 1/16"
5/8"

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication, 4e,* © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

This example page set-up is presented in picas:

Total page width: 45.9 picas

Left margin: 3.9 picas

Major column: 26.1 picas

Gutter: 1.1 picas

Minor column: 8.75 picas

Right margin: 3.9 picas

Top margin: 3.9 picas

Depth of type area: 64.15 picas

Bottom margin: 3.9 picas. This example page set-up is presented in inches:

Total page width: 7 and five eighths inches

Left margin: five eighths inches

Major column: 4 and eleven sixteenths inches

Gutter: five sixteenths inches

Minor column: 1 and seven sixteenths inches

Right margin: five eighths inches

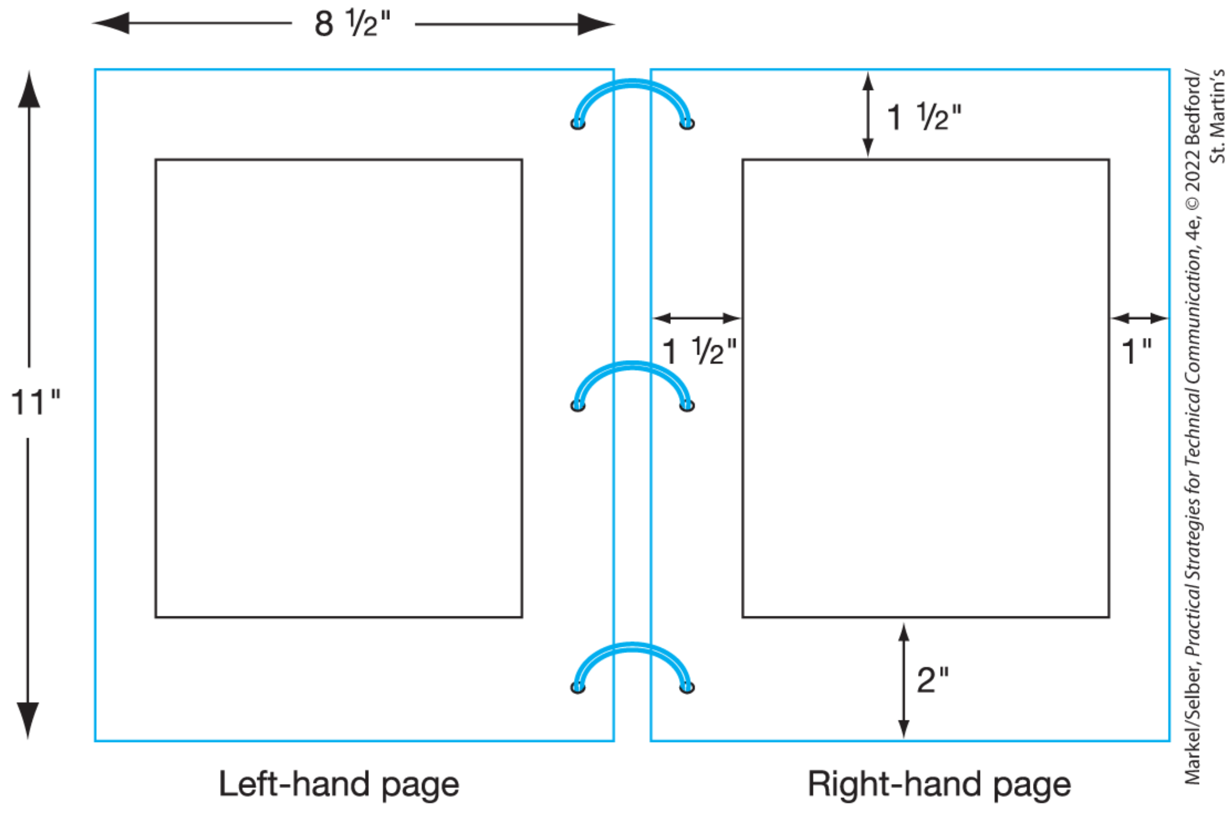
Top margin: seven eighths inches

Depth of type area: 10 and one sixteenth inches

Bottom margin: five eighths inches.

Return to Figure 7.6 Sample Grids Using Picas and Inches

Extended description for Figure 7.7 Typical Margins for a Document That Is Bound Like a Book

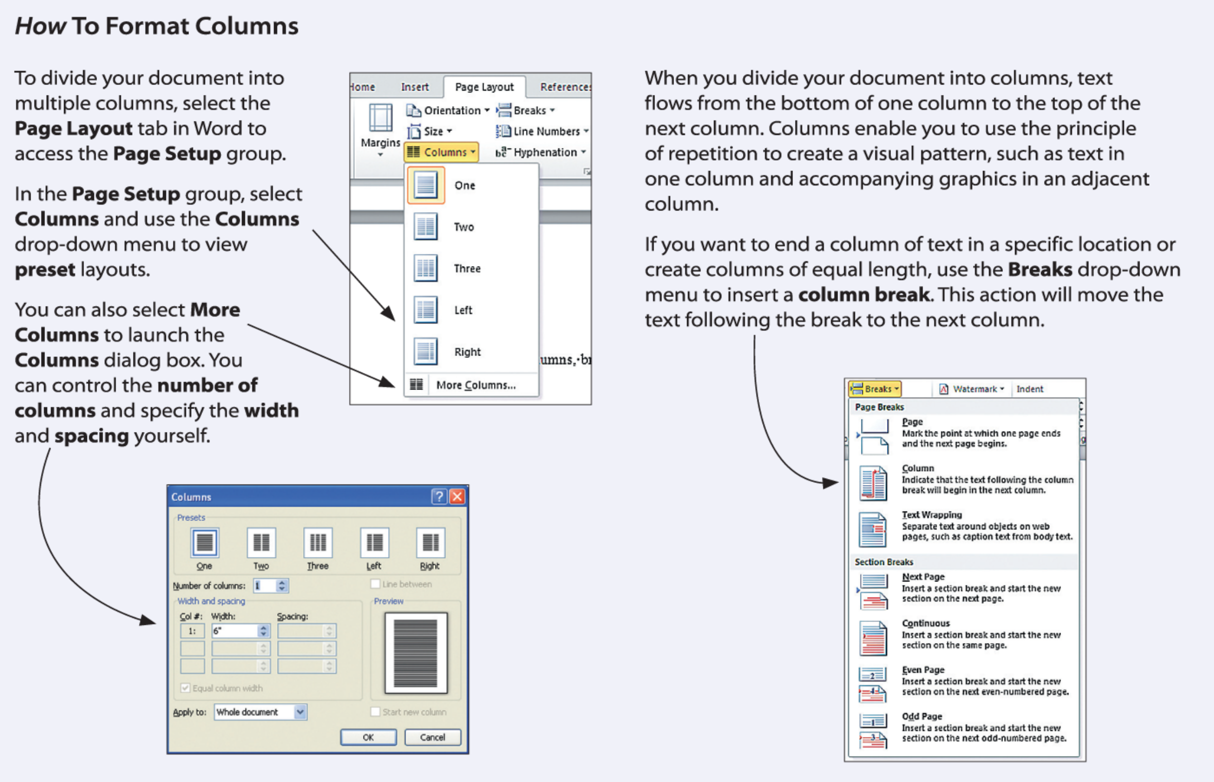


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The illustration shows a line drawing of pages in a three-ring binder. Page size is 8.5 inches by 11 inches. The top margin on both pages is 1.5 inches. The bottom is 2 inches. When the page is on the left side of the binder, the left margin is 1 inch and the right 1.5 inches. When the page is on the right, the left margin is 1.5 inches and the right margin is 1 inch.

Return to Figure 7.7 Typical Margins for a Document That Is Bound Like a Book

Extended description for An annotated illustration depicts how to format columns



How To Format Columns

To divide your document into multiple columns, select the **Page Layout** tab in Word to access the **Page Setup** group.

In the **Page Setup** group, select **Columns** and use the **Columns** drop-down menu to view **preset** layouts.

You can also select **More Columns** to launch the **Columns** dialog box. You can control the **number of columns** and specify the **width** and **spacing** yourself.

When you divide your document into columns, text flows from the bottom of one column to the top of the next column. Columns enable you to use the principle of repetition to create a visual pattern, such as text in one column and accompanying graphics in an adjacent column.

If you want to end a column of text in a specific location or create columns of equal length, use the **Breaks** drop-down menu to insert a **column break**. This action will move the text following the break to the next column.

Home
Insert
Page Layout
References
Margins
Orientation
Size
Columns
Breaks
Line Numbers
Hyphenation
One
Two
Three
Left
Right
More Columns...
umns,·br
Columns
Presets
One
Two
Three
Left
Right
Line between
Width and spacing
Preview
Col #:
Width:
Spacing:
Equal column width
Start new column
OK
Cancel
Breaks
Watermark
Indent
Page Breaks
Section Breaks

Number of columns: 1

1: 6"

Apply to: Whole document

Page
Mark the point at which one page ends and the next page begins.

Column
Indicate that the text following the column break will begin in the next column.

Text Wrapping
Separate text around objects on web pages, such as caption text from body text.

Next Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next page.

Continuous
Insert a section break and start the new section on the same page.

Even Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next even-numbered page.

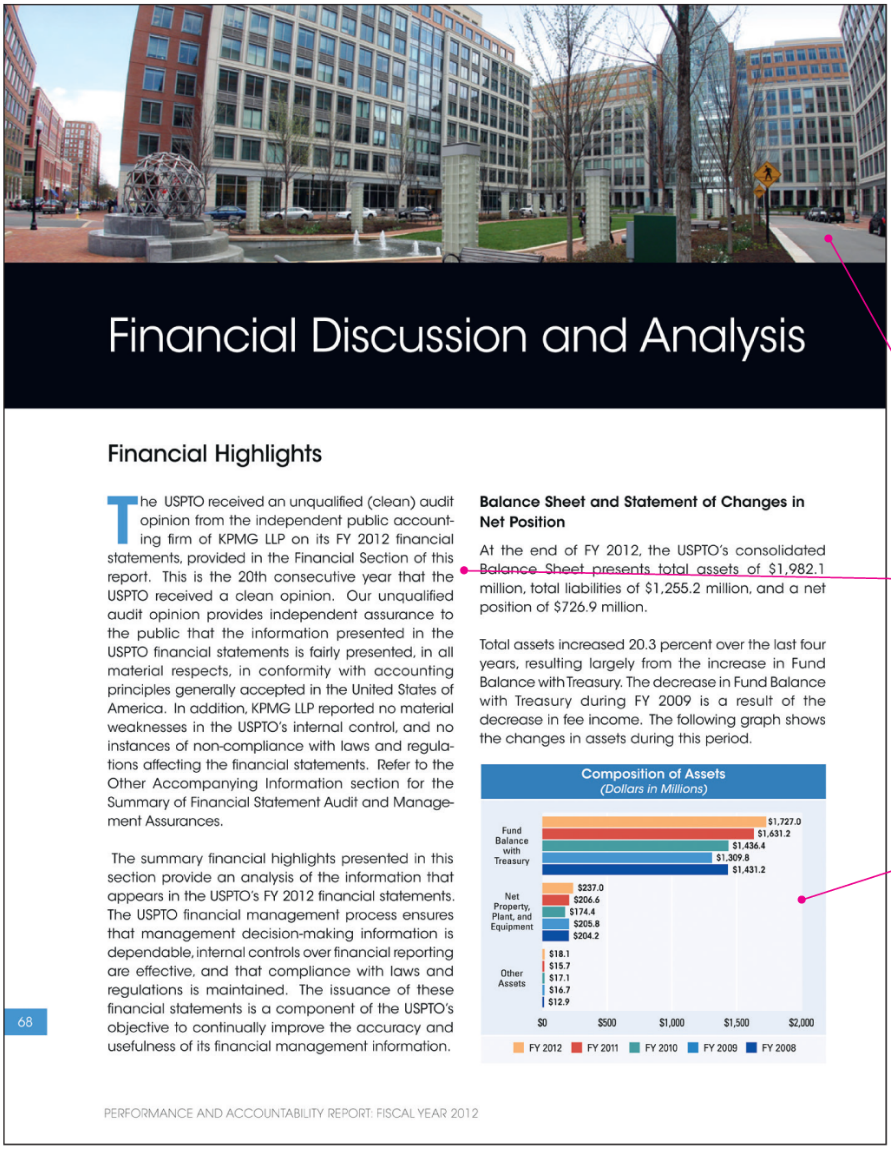
Odd Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next odd-numbered page.

A screenshot from the page layout tab shows columns with options for one, two, three, left, right and more column options. Below is the columns dialog box showing how to format the columns with multiple options for column number, width, and spacing. Text pointing to these screenshots reads, To divide your document into multiple columns, select the Page Layout tab in Word to access the Page Setup group. In the Page Setup group, select Columns and use the Columns drop-down menu to view preset layouts. You can also select More Columns to launch the Columns dialog box. You can control the number of columns and specify the width and spacing yourself.

To the right is a drop down menu for setting breaks in a page with columns. Text pointing to this reads, When you divide your document into columns, text flows from the bottom of one column to the top of the next column. Columns enable you to use the principle of repetition to create a visual pattern, such as text in one column and accompanying graphics in an adjacent column. If you want to end a column of text in a specific location or create columns of equal length, use the Breaks drop-down menu to insert a column break. This action will move the text following the break to the next column.

Return to An annotated illustration depicts how to format columns

Extended description for Figure 7.8 A Multicolumn Design



Financial Discussion and Analysis

Financial Highlights

The USPTO received an unqualified (clean) audit opinion from the independent public accounting firm of KPMG LLP on its FY 2012 financial statements, provided in the Financial Section of this report. This is the 20th consecutive year that the USPTO received a clean opinion. Our unqualified audit opinion provides independent assurance to the public that the information presented in the USPTO financial statements is fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. In addition, KPMG LLP reported no material weaknesses in the USPTO's internal control, and no instances of non-compliance with laws and regulations affecting the financial statements. Refer to the Other Accompanying Information section for the Summary of Financial Statement Audit and Management Assurances.

The summary financial highlights presented in this section provide an analysis of the information that appears in the USPTO's FY 2012 financial statements. The USPTO financial management process ensures that management decision-making information is dependable, internal controls over financial reporting are effective, and that compliance with laws and regulations is maintained. The issuance of these financial statements is a component of the USPTO's objective to continually improve the accuracy and usefulness of its financial management information.

Balance Sheet and Statement of Changes in Net Position

At the end of FY 2012, the USPTO's consolidated Balance Sheet presents total assets of $1,982.1 million, total liabilities of $1,255.2 million, and a net position of $726.9 million.

Total assets increased 20.3 percent over the last four years, resulting largely from the increase in Fund Balance with Treasury. The decrease in Fund Balance with Treasury during FY 2009 is a result of the decrease in fee income. The following graph shows the changes in assets during this period.

68

PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT: FISCAL YEAR 2012

A multicolumn design enables you to present a lot of text and graphics of different sizes.

Notice how the designer has used the whole width of the page for one graphic and a single column for a smaller graphic.

Note that the alley — the space between the two columns of text — need not be wide. Nor do you need to include a vertical rule to keep the columns separate. The human brain easily understands that each column is a separate space.

In this sample, the bar graph is exactly the width of the column in which it appears. But it doesn't have to be. It could break the shape of the column and extend into the other column or even into the margin. Or it could be narrower than its column, with the text wrapping around it. The design you see here looks neat and professional. If the graph were wider or narrower than the column, the design might appear somewhat more creative.

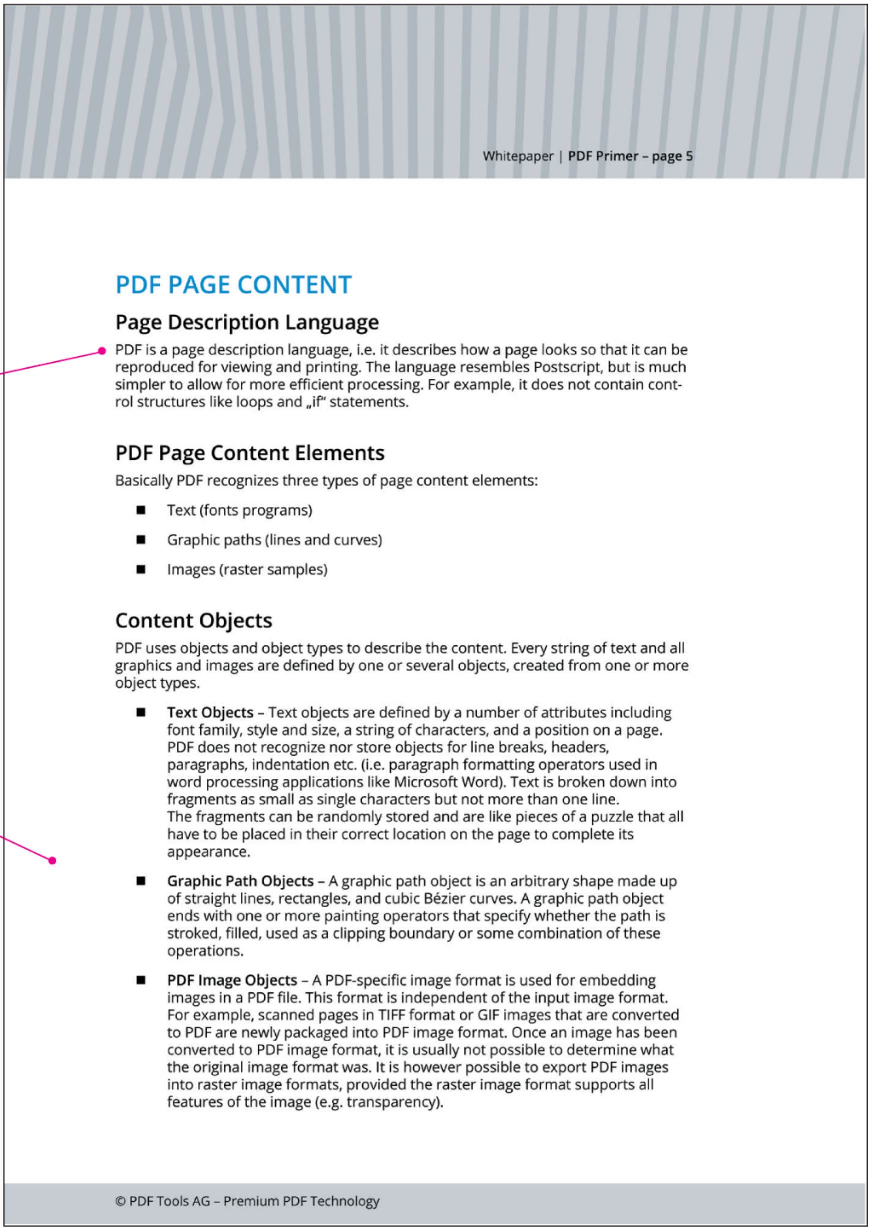
At the top of the page is a photo of a city mall with buildings, a fountain, and a street in the background with other buildings and cars. The headline reads Financial Discussion and Analysis. An annotation pointing to the photo reads, Notice how the designer has used the whole width of the page for one graphic and a single column for a smaller graphic.

Below the headline are two columns. The first column has a B heading that reads, Financial Highlights. Two long paragraphs follow it. An annotation pointing to the paragraphs reads, Note that the alley — the space between the two columns of text — need not be wide. Nor do you need to include a vertical rule to keep the columns separate. The human brain easily understands that each column is a separate space.

The second column has a sub-heading which reads, Balance Sheet and Statement of Changes in Net Position. The sub-heading is followed by two related paragraphs. At the bottom of the column is a horizontal bar graph titled, Composition of Assets (Dollars in Millions). Along the y-axis, the graph has bars labeled Fund Balance with Treasury; Net Property, Plant and Equipment; and Other Assets. The x-axis is labeled 0 dollars through 2,000 dollars in increments of 500. An annotation corresponding to the graph reads, In this sample, the bar graph is exactly the width of the column in which it appears. But it doesn't have to be. It could break the shape of the column and extend into the other column or even into the margin. Or it could be narrower than its column, with the text wrapping around it. The design you see here looks neat and professional. If the graph were wider or narrower than the column, the design might appear somewhat more creative.

Return to Figure 7.8 A Multicolumn Design

Extended description for Figure 7.9 A One-Column Design



Whitepaper | **PDF Primer – page 5**

PDF PAGE CONTENT

Page Description Language

PDF is a page description language, i.e. it describes how a page looks so that it can be reproduced for viewing and printing. The language resembles Postscript, but is much simpler to allow for more efficient processing. For example, it does not contain control structures like loops and „if" statements.

PDF Page Content Elements

Basically PDF recognizes three types of page content elements:

- Text (fonts programs)
- Graphic paths (lines and curves)
- Images (raster samples)

Content Objects

PDF uses objects and object types to describe the content. Every string of text and all graphics and images are defined by one or several objects, created from one or more object types.

- **Text Objects** – Text objects are defined by a number of attributes including font family, style and size, a string of characters, and a position on a page. PDF does not recognize nor store objects for line breaks, headers, paragraphs, indentation etc. (i.e. paragraph formatting operators used in word processing applications like Microsoft Word). Text is broken down into fragments as small as single characters but not more than one line. The fragments can be randomly stored and are like pieces of a puzzle that all have to be placed in their correct location on the page to complete its appearance.
- **Graphic Path Objects** – A graphic path object is an arbitrary shape made up of straight lines, rectangles, and cubic Bézier curves. A graphic path object ends with one or more painting operators that specify whether the path is stroked, filled, used as a clipping boundary or some combination of these operations.
- **PDF Image Objects** – A PDF-specific image format is used for embedding images in a PDF file. This format is independent of the input image format. For example, scanned pages in TIFF format or GIF images that are converted to PDF are newly packaged into PDF image format. Once an image has been converted to PDF image format, it is usually not possible to determine what the original image format was. It is however possible to export PDF images into raster image formats, provided the raster image format supports all features of the image (e.g. transparency).

© PDF Tools AG – Premium PDF Technology

PDF Tools AG.

This page from a software company's white paper — a marketing document usually distributed on the web — shows one approach to a one-column design.

A one-column design allows greater flexibility for a variety of elements, such as a bulleted list with paragraphs of text, which would be dense and difficult to read in a two-column design.

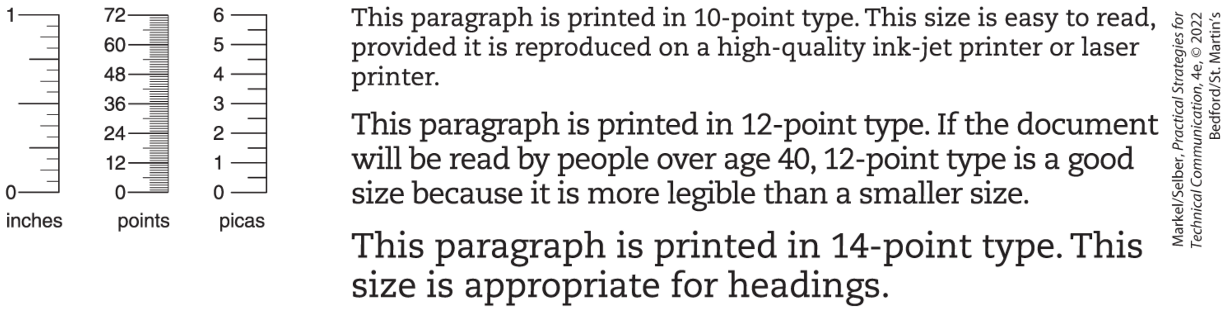
There is more white space in the right margin than the left, an asymmetric design that focuses attention of the main headings running on the left. One goal of document design is to reduce the number of pages needed — but when you design a page, you want to make the text inviting and easy to read. Figuring out how to balance these two priorities is one of the major challenges of designing a page.

The page contains a heading reading, PDF Page Content. Below it is a subheading reading Page Description Language followed by an introductory paragraph. A notation reads, A one-column design allows greater flexibility for a variety of elements, such as a bulleted list with paragraphs of text, which would be dense and difficult to read in a two-column design.

Following is another subheading reading PDF Page Content Elements, a line of introductory text, and three square bullet points slightly indented. Another subheading reads Content Objects and is followed by an introductory paragraph and three bullet point paragraphs with bold run-in heads: text objects, graphic path objects, and pdf objects. The paragraphs are set on a hanging indent. A notation reads, There is more white space in the right margin than the left, an asymmetric design that focuses attention of the main headings running on the left. One goal of document design is to reduce the number of pages needed — but when you design a page, you want to make the text inviting and easy to read. Figuring out how to balance these two priorities is one of the major challenges of designing a page.

Return to Figure 7.9 A One-Column Design

Extended description for An illustration depicts type sizes in inches, points, and picas



This paragraph is printed in 10-point type. This size is easy to read, provided it is reproduced on a high-quality ink-jet printer or laser printer.

This paragraph is printed in 12-point type. If the document will be read by people over age 40, 12-point type is a good size because it is more legible than a smaller size.

This paragraph is printed in 14-point type. This size is appropriate for headings.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

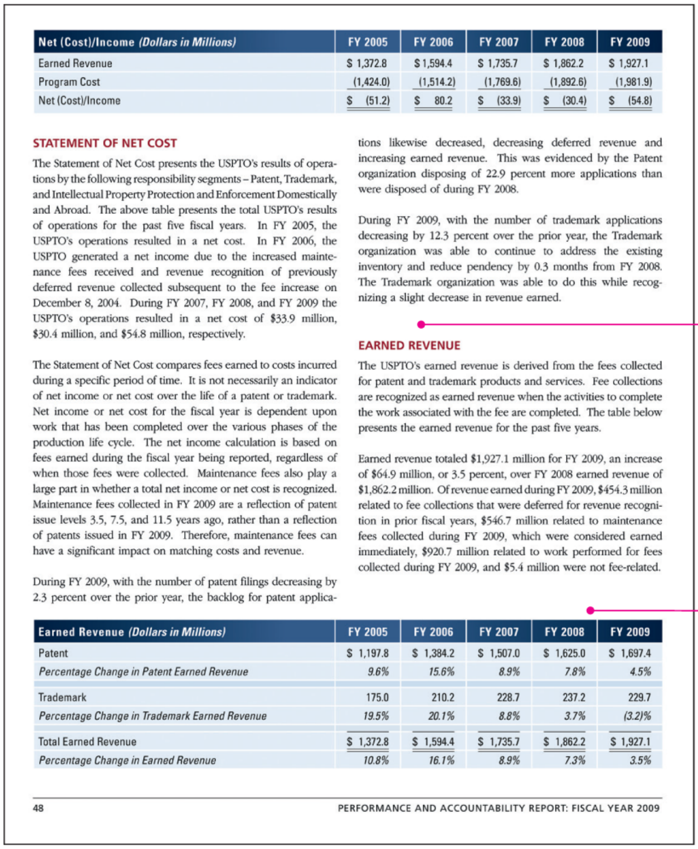
Three relative scales appear to the left of the text. One is in inches, the second in points, the third is picas. They show there are 72 points to one inch and 6 picas to one inch. To the right are three paragraphs in increasing size fonts. Text reads, This paragraph is printed in 10-point type. This size is easy to read, provided it is reproduced on a high-quality ink-jet printer or laser printer.

This paragraph is printed in 12-point type. If the document will be read by people over age 40, 12-point type is a good size because it is more legible than a smaller size.

This paragraph is printed in 14-point type. This size is appropriate for headings.

Return to An illustration depicts type sizes in inches, points, and picas

Extended description for Figure 7.15 Line Spacing Used To Distinguish One Section from Another



Net (Cost)/Income ***(Dollars in Millions)***	**FY 2005**	**FY 2006**	**FY 2007**	**FY 2008**	**FY 2009**
Earned Revenue	$ 1,372.8	$ 1,594.4	$ 1,735.7	$ 1,862.2	$ 1,927.1
Program Cost	(1,424.0)	(1,514.2)	(1,769.6)	(1,892.6)	(1,981.9)
Net (Cost)/Income	$ (51.2)	$ 80.2	$ (33.9)	$ (30.4)	$ (54.8)

STATEMENT OF NET COST

The Statement of Net Cost presents the USPTO's results of operations by the following responsibility segments – Patent, Trademark, and Intellectual Property Protection and Enforcement Domestically and Abroad. The above table presents the total USPTO's results of operations for the past five fiscal years. In FY 2005, the USPTO's operations resulted in a net cost. In FY 2006, the USPTO generated a net income due to the increased maintenance fees received and revenue recognition of previously deferred revenue collected subsequent to the fee increase on December 8, 2004. During FY 2007, FY 2008, and FY 2009 the USPTO's operations resulted in a net cost of $33.9 million, $30.4 million, and $54.8 million, respectively.

The Statement of Net Cost compares fees earned to costs incurred during a specific period of time. It is not necessarily an indicator of net income or net cost over the life of a patent or trademark. Net income or net cost for the fiscal year is dependent upon work that has been completed over the various phases of the production life cycle. The net income calculation is based on fees earned during the fiscal year being reported, regardless of when those fees were collected. Maintenance fees also play a large part in whether a total net income or net cost is recognized. Maintenance fees collected in FY 2009 are a reflection of patent issue levels 3.5, 7.5, and 11.5 years ago, rather than a reflection of patents issued in FY 2009. Therefore, maintenance fees can have a significant impact on matching costs and revenue.

During FY 2009, with the number of patent filings decreasing by 2.3 percent over the prior year, the backlog for patent applications likewise decreased, decreasing deferred revenue and increasing earned revenue. This was evidenced by the Patent organization disposing of 22.9 percent more applications than were disposed of during FY 2008.

During FY 2009, with the number of trademark applications decreasing by 12.3 percent over the prior year, the Trademark organization was able to continue to address the existing inventory and reduce pendency by 0.3 months from FY 2008. The Trademark organization was able to do this while recognizing a slight decrease in revenue earned.

EARNED REVENUE

The USPTO's earned revenue is derived from the fees collected for patent and trademark products and services. Fee collections are recognized as earned revenue when the activities to complete the work associated with the fee are completed. The table below presents the earned revenue for the past five years.

Earned revenue totaled $1,927.1 million for FY 2009, an increase of $64.9 million, or 3.5 percent, over FY 2008 earned revenue of $1,862.2 million. Of revenue earned during FY 2009, $454.3 million related to fee collections that were deferred for revenue recognition in prior fiscal years, $546.7 million related to maintenance fees collected during FY 2009, which were considered earned immediately, $920.7 million related to work performed for fees collected during FY 2009, and $5.4 million were not fee-related.

Earned Revenue ***(Dollars in Millions)***	**FY 2005**	**FY 2006**	**FY 2007**	**FY 2008**	**FY 2009**
Patent	$ 1,197.8	$ 1,384.2	$ 1,507.0	$ 1,625.0	$ 1,697.4
Percentage Change in Patent Earned Revenue	*9.6%*	*15.6%*	*8.9%*	*7.8%*	*4.5%*
Trademark	175.0	210.2	228.7	237.2	229.7
Percentage Change in Trademark Earned Revenue	*19.5%*	*20.1%*	*8.8%*	*3.7%*	*(3.2)%*
Total Earned Revenue	$ 1,372.8	$ 1,594.4	$ 1,735.7	$ 1,862.2	$ 1,927.1
Percentage Change in Earned Revenue	*10.8%*	*16.1%*	*8.9%*	*7.3%*	*3.5%*

48 PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT: FISCAL YEAR 2009

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

The line spacing between two sections is greater than the line spacing within a section.

Line spacing is also used to separate the text from the graphics.

There are three sections to the page: a table at the top, then a body of text, then another table at the bottom.

The top of the page contains a table titled Net (Cost) slash Income (Dollars in Millions) for years 2005 through 2009. It further shows earned revenue, program cost, and net (cost) slash income. Each column and cell in the table has values with faint lines between them.

The following section contains two columns of text with two headings. The left column of text continues into the right column. Each heading has more space above it to separate it from the previous block of text. A notation reads, The line spacing between two sections is greater than the line spacing within a section.

The blocks of text are followed by another table titled Earned Revenue (Dollars in Millions) and years 2005 through 2009. A notation reads, Line spacing is also used to separate the text from the graphics. At the bottom of the page is a horizontal line above the page number and title of the document.

Return to Figure 7.15 Line Spacing Used To Distinguish One Section from Another

Extended description for A page shows how rules are used in design

In the country rankings, Switzerland is the top performer, thanks to effective reports from Novartis, Nestlé and Crédit Suisse. With just two companies Statoil and Norsk Hydro in Europe's top 100, Norway comes second, while Germany comes third with its 16 companies and strong performances from SAP, Bayer, BASF and BMW. The UK is fourth, up two from 2003, and Italy drops to bottom place.

Content Management Europe enjoys successful second year

From 30 November to 2 December, over 10,600 visitors attended Content Management Europe in London. The opening keynote session from best-selling author and founding father of Web and Internet usability, Jakob Nielsen, left only standing room in the main conference auditorium. Moreover, the Online Information conference attracted around 900 delegates from over 40 countries. With about 230 exhibitors, the event had three new show features — Enterprise Document and Records Management (EDRM), Enterprise Search Solutions and e-Publishing Solutions. These features provided visitors with exhibition trails and seminar programmes focusing on these topical areas within the information management field.

Arbortext acquires Advent3B2

Provider of XML-based Enterprise Publishing Software, Arbortext, says it is a world leader in enterprise publishing software, after its acquisition of Advent Publishing Systems (Advent3B2) in October. Arbortext maintains that its Enterprise Publishing software now offers unparalleled capabilities, with the world's most complete and powerful XML technology-based publishing software.

Senior Analyst at The Gilbane Report, Mark Walter, explains, 'The 3B2 software complements Arbortext's well-known XML editing tools. It will enable Arbortext to target more typographically complex publishing applications in the corporate setting as well as make a more concerted effort to sell into commercial Scientific, Technical and Medical (STM) publishing, where many publishers are in the midst of migrating to XML.'

Broadband to cover UK by the Summer

British Telecom (BT) predicts that more than 99% of UK homes and businesses will be able to receive broadband Internet via telephone line (ADSL) by the summer. This will position the UK ahead of any other G7 country (Britain, Germany, France, Italy, United States, Canada and Japan) in terms of DSL availability.

By December, Internet via ADSL had soared to above four million users, with more than 95% of UK homes and businesses already able to receive this broadband service. In addition to the four million ADSL subscribers, there are also an estimated 1.7 million cable broadband customers in the UK.

According to figures from the regulator for UK communications industries, Ofcom, the rapid uptake in broadband follows several years in which the UK lagged behind in broadband uptake.

More country-specific search engines in Europe

This year, European search engine company, Seekport, is planning to roll-out country-specific search engines in Spain, Italy, Scandinavia and Eastern Europe. These search engines, which will have higher hit quality than traditional US-centric search engines, follow last year's launch of www.seekport.co.uk in December, www.seekport.fr in France in October and www.seekport.de in Germany in June.

The company uses new ranking algorithms, subject-specific website categorisation and an indexing team of people to help cut spam and ensure that users gain faster access to relevant country- and market-specific content.

Large WiFi work environment open to public

Mobile workers will be pleased to hear that the British Library and Building Zones have been showcasing Central London's largest WiFi (Wireless Fidelity) hotspot at the Library's St Pancras site in London. From 18 January to 11 March, a special interactive installation demonstrated the integration of the latest in practical furniture design and wireless technology. Chairman of Building Zones, Philip Ross, says 'The Library is a popular location for mobile workers and its strategic location between the three major transportation hubs of Kings Cross, Euston Station and the soon to be opened Eurostar terminal is a huge factor in attracting these users who need to be able to access email and the Internet.' He adds, 'In the near future, wireless technology will change building design, urban planning and how people work, and the launch of The British Library project is a major success story for this technology.'

British Library website wins innovation award

The British Library's *Turning The Pages* website has won the 'Innovative' category in Yahoo! UK and Ireland's Top 10 Finds of the Year competition. The site, at www.bl.uk/collections/treasures/digitisation2.html, enables Internet users worldwide to browse and magnify the handwritten pages of masterpieces, including the Lindisfarne Gospels, Leonardo's Notebook and Sultan Baybars' Qur'an.

The site's three-dimensional animation mimics the action of turning each page, which can be done using a mouse or by scrolling. Users can magnify the images and read or listen to notes explaining the beauty and significance of each page.

SDL International appointed Microsoft Premier Supplier

Provider of translation services and technology solutions, SDL International, has been appointed as a 'premier supplier' of translation and localisation services to Microsoft. The agreement, which is not constrained by language or by Microsoft product choice, includes a multi-million dollar minimum commitment each year for three years.

In addition, The Gallup Organization has awarded SDL International a contract to localise market research and management consulting content into over 40 languages. Gallup publishes thousands of surveys and reports each year through offices in 20 countries worldwide.

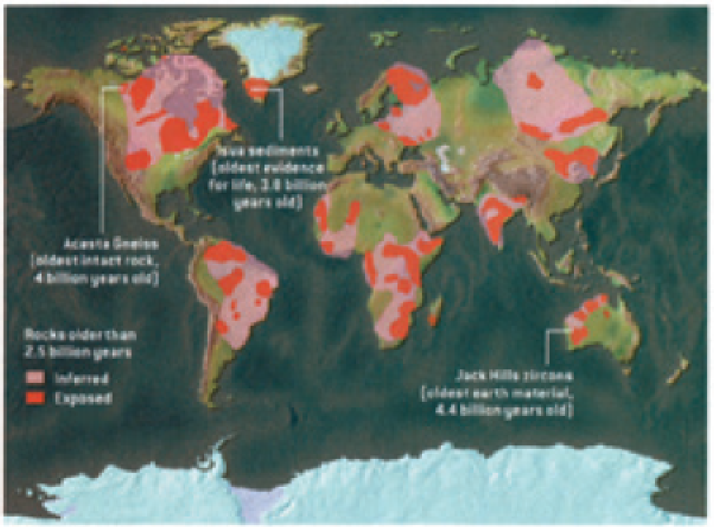
Written by Kathryn Valdal Fourie.
If you have a story for the news pages contact us at newsdesk@istc.org.uk

The page has three columns, a header, a footnote, and a footer. Columns have vertical rules between them, and short text items in each column have horizontal rules between them. A horizontal rule is also above the footnote and at the header and footer spearating them from the body of the document.

Return to A page shows how rules are used in design

Extended description for An illustration shows how to use boxes when composing a page

OLDEST PIECES OF THE PLANET


Isua sediments [oldest evidence for life, 3.8 billion years old]
Acasta Gneiss [oldest intact rock, 4 billion years old]
Rocks older than 2.5 billion years
Inferred
Exposed
Jack Hills zircons [oldest earth material, 4.4 billion years old]

Ancient rocks older than 2.5 billion years crop out or lie just underneath the soil in many spots around the globe (*red*) and are probably hidden below younger rocks across even broader regions (*pink*). Zircon crystals as old as those discovered in the Jack Hills of Western Australia may eventually be discovered at another of these locations.

Fossilized gravel bed in the Jack Hills (*above*) contained the world's oldest zircons yet discovered. Geologists crushed and sorted hundreds of kilograms of this rock (*below*) to find the 20 crystals that bear signs of cool conditions more than four billion years ago.

port the surviving grains great distances before they become incorporated into deposits of sand and gravel that may later solidify into sedimentary rock. Indeed, the Jack Hills zircons—separated by perhaps thousands of kilometers from their source—were found embedded in a fossilized gravel bar called the Jack Hills conglomerate.

So, despite the excitement of finding such primeval pieces of the earth, most scientists, including me, continued to accept the view that the climate of our young planet was Hadean. It was not until 1999 that technological advances allowed further study of the ancient zircon crystals from Western Australia—and challenged conventional wisdom about the earth's earliest history.

Digging Deep

THE AUSTRALIAN ZIRCONS did not give up their secrets easily. For one thing, the Jack Hills and their surroundings are dusty barrens at the edge of vast sheep stations, called Berringarra and Mileura, situated some 800 kilometers north of Perth, Australia's most isolated city. The Jack Hills conglomerate was deposited three billion years ago and marks the northwestern edge of a widespread assembly of rock formations that are all older than 2.6 billion years. To recover less than a thimbleful of zircons, my colleagues and I collected hundreds of kilograms of rock from these remote outcrops and hauled them back to the laboratory for crushing and sorting, similar to searching for a few special grains of sand on a beach.

Once extracted from their source rock, individual crystals could be dated because zircons make ideal timekeepers. In addition to their longevity, they contain trace amounts of radioactive uranium, which decays at a known rate to lead. When a zircon forms from a solidifying magma, atoms of zirconium, silicon and oxygen combine in exact proportions ($ZrSiO_4$) to create a crystal structure unique to zircon; uranium occasionally substitutes as a trace impurity. Atoms of lead, on the other hand, are too large to comfortably replace any of the elements in the lattice, so zircons start out virtually lead-free. The uranium-lead clock starts ticking as soon as the zircon crystallizes. Thus, the ratio of lead to uranium increases with the age of the crystal. Scientists can reliably determine the age of an undamaged zircon within 1 percent accuracy, which for the early earth is about plus or minus 40 million years.

THE AUTHOR

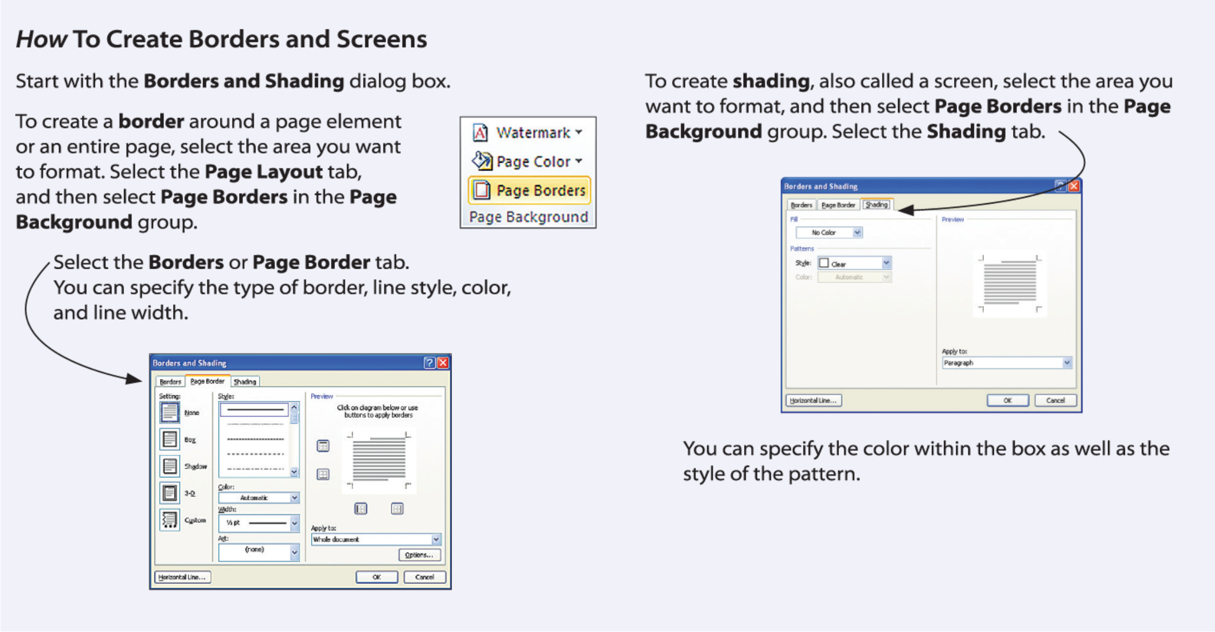
JOHN W. VALLEY received his Ph.D. in 1980 from the University of Michigan at Ann Arbor, where he first became interested in the early earth. He and his students have since explored the ancient rock record throughout North America and in Western Australia, Greenland and Scotland. Currently Valley is president of the Mineralogical Society of America and Charles R. Van Hise Professor of Geology at the University of Wisconsin–Madison, where he founded a multimillion-dollar laboratory called WiscSIMS. The cutting-edge capabilities of the lab's new CAMECA IMS 1280 ion microprobe will enable a diverse range of research; besides zircons, Valley and his colleagues will probe many rare or extremely small materials ranging from stardust to cancer cells.

LUCY READING-IKKANDA; SOURCE: WILLIAM H. PECK Colgate University (map); JOHN W. VALLEY (photographs)

The top of the page shows a box with a heading followed by a large map on the left and two stacked photos on the right with captions. Below the box are three columns of text. The left column uses the remaining length of the page with one heading, and text is continued in the next two columns. The center and right columns are shorter, and at the bottom right of the pages is another box the width of the two columns, containing text.

Return to An illustration shows how to use boxes when composing a page

Extended description for Annotated screen shots explain how to create borders and screens in Microsoft Word



***How* To Create Borders and Screens**

Start with the **Borders and Shading** dialog box.

To create a **border** around a page element or an entire page, select the area you want to format. Select the **Page Layout** tab, and then select **Page Borders** in the **Page Background** group.

Select the **Borders** or **Page Border** tab. You can specify the type of border, line style, color, and line width.

To create **shading**, also called a screen, select the area you want to format, and then select **Page Borders** in the **Page Background** group. Select the **Shading** tab.

You can specify the color within the box as well as the style of the pattern.

A heading reads, How to Create Borders and Screens. At the left, text reads, Start with the Borders and Shading dialog box. The Page Background drop-down menu is shown with Page Borders selected. Text continues, To create a border around a page element or an entire page, select the area you want to format. Select the Page Layout tab, and then select Page Borders in the Page Background group. An arrow points to a screen shot of the Borders and Shading dialog box with the border tab selected. Text reads, Select the Borders or Page Border tab. You can specify the type of border, line style, color, and line width. To the right of the image, an arrow points to the dialog box the Shading tab selected. Text reads, To create shading, also called a screen, select the area you want to format, and then select Page Borders in the Page Background group. Select the Shading tab. You can specify the color within the box as well as the style of the pattern.

Return to Annotated screen shots explain how to create borders and screens in Microsoft Word

Extended description for An illustration shows a page from a government report

(f) *Drug Purity - DEA Form 7*

(1) The presentence report will normally provide drug weight/purity information from DEA Form 7. This is a complicated form. "Total net weight" [normally in Item 31] refers to the amount of the pure drug. This is the weight used in calculation of the Commission's severity rating. For your information, "gross weight" is the weight of the drug plus adulterants plus the container (normally found in Item 24). Also normally found in Item 24 is "net weight" (the weight of the drug plus adulterants). "Strength" (the percent purity of the drug) is normally found in Item 28. Multiplying "net weight" x "strength" is how DEA arrives at the "total net weight". Remember, "total net weight" is the weight of the pure drug to be used in assessing the Commission's severity rating.

(2) If a presentence report does not specify "total net weight", the probation officer should be contacted for clarification (please be specific as to the clarification necessary; this will enhance feedback/training). Note: DEA lab reports (DEA Form 7), if necessary, also may be obtained directly from the DEA field office for the geographic area in which the offense occurred. If a request to the DEA field office is required, provide the subject's name, date of birth, place of offense, and dates of offense.

(g) If neither weight nor purity is available, but only a money value, DEA may be requested to provide an estimate of the amount of pure drug associated with that money value. In the absence of a specific estimate from DEA pertaining to the particular case, DEA publishes a report (Domestic Drug Prices) providing estimates of average drug prices by year and region from which an estimate may be obtained.

(h) *Determining Offense Severity Relative to Simple Possession of Drugs*. In certain cases, the Commission must determine whether the offense behavior should be considered as "simple possession" of a controlled substance or "possession with intent to distribute." In making this determination, the Commission shall examine a variety of factors (if available). These factors are shown below. The presence of any of the following factors may be considered as a presumption of possession with intent to distribute. However, this presumption may be rebutted if there are circumstances in the individual case which indicate that there was no intention to distribute.

(1) *Weight/amount/purity of the substance*: Possession of the following amounts of controlled substances are presumed to indicate possession with intent to distribute:

Heroin	1 gm. at 100% purity, or equivalent amount; or more
Cocaine	5 gms. at 100% purity, or equivalent amount; or more
Marijuana	10 lbs. or more
Hashish	3 lbs. or more
Hash Oil	.3 lbs. or more
Drugs (other than above)	1,000 doses or more.

(2) *Other Factors*: The presence of any of the following factors may be considered indicative of intent to distribute: (A) the substance has been separated into multiple, individual packets; (B) the offender is a non-user of the substance in question; (C) the presence of instruments used in preparing

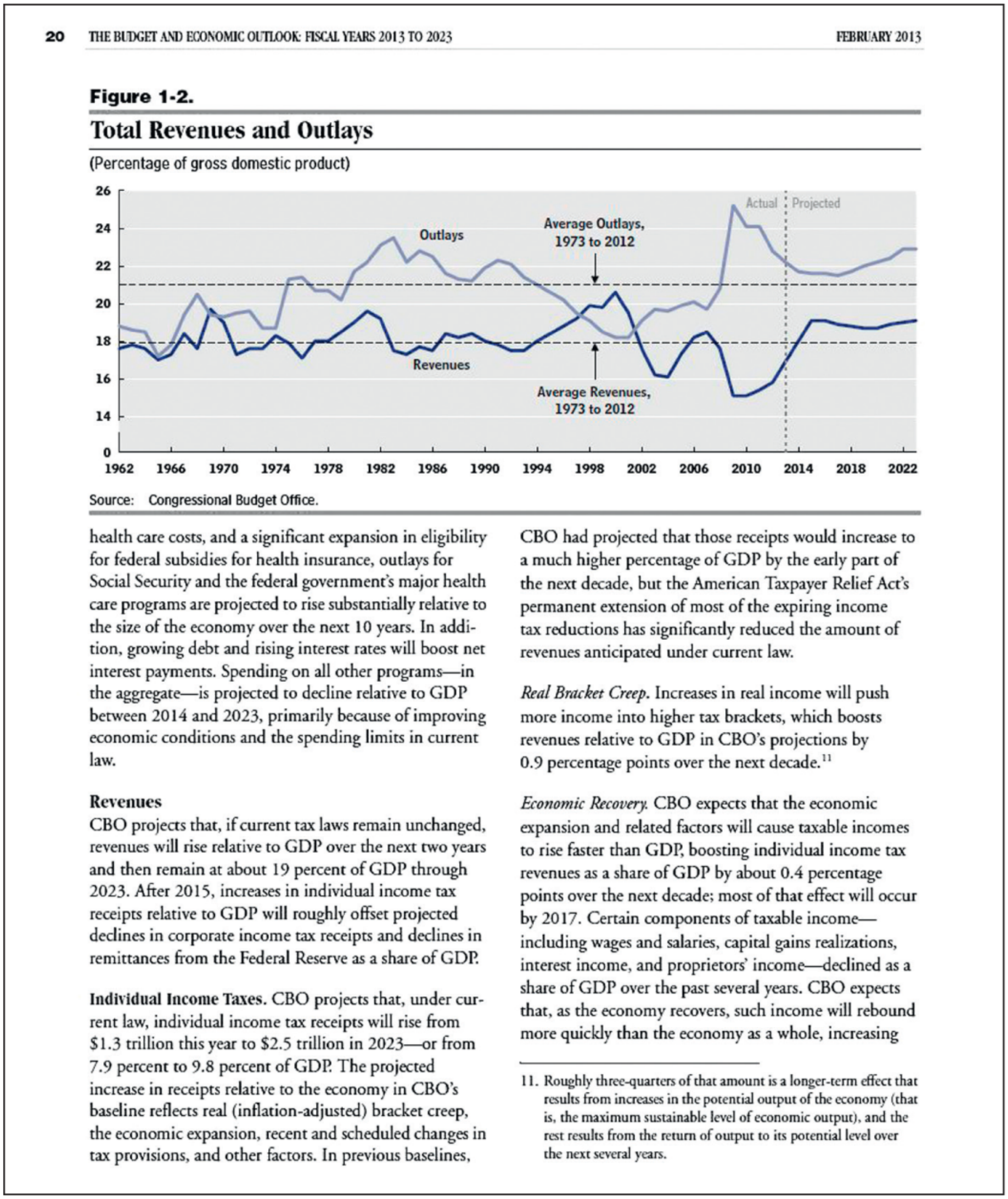
---

***Terms marked by an asterisk are defined in Chapter Thirteen.**

The page shows fully justified text in block format with sections numbered or lettered like an outline. Each section has one paragraph except one at the bottom which contains a list. The page contains a footnote and a footer.

Return to An illustration shows a page from a government report

Extended description for An illustration shows a page from a government report



20 THE BUDGET AND ECONOMIC OUTLOOK: FISCAL YEARS 2013 TO 2023 FEBRUARY 2013

Figure 1-2.

Total Revenues and Outlays

(Percentage of gross domestic product)

26
24
22
20
18
16
14
0
1962
1966
1970
1974
1978
1982
1986
1990
1994
1998
2002
2006
2010
2014
2018
2022
Outlays
Revenues
Average Outlays, 1973 to 2012
Average Revenues, 1973 to 2012
Actual
Projected

Source: Congressional Budget Office.

health care costs, and a significant expansion in eligibility for federal subsidies for health insurance, outlays for Social Security and the federal government's major health care programs are projected to rise substantially relative to the size of the economy over the next 10 years. In addition, growing debt and rising interest rates will boost net interest payments. Spending on all other programs—in the aggregate—is projected to decline relative to GDP between 2014 and 2023, primarily because of improving economic conditions and the spending limits in current law.

Revenues

CBO projects that, if current tax laws remain unchanged, revenues will rise relative to GDP over the next two years and then remain at about 19 percent of GDP through 2023. After 2015, increases in individual income tax receipts relative to GDP will roughly offset projected declines in corporate income tax receipts and declines in remittances from the Federal Reserve as a share of GDP.

Individual Income Taxes. CBO projects that, under current law, individual income tax receipts will rise from $1.3 trillion this year to $2.5 trillion in 2023—or from 7.9 percent to 9.8 percent of GDP. The projected increase in receipts relative to the economy in CBO's baseline reflects real (inflation-adjusted) bracket creep, the economic expansion, recent and scheduled changes in tax provisions, and other factors. In previous baselines, CBO had projected that those receipts would increase to a much higher percentage of GDP by the early part of the next decade, but the American Taxpayer Relief Act's permanent extension of most of the expiring income tax reductions has significantly reduced the amount of revenues anticipated under current law.

Real Bracket Creep. Increases in real income will push more income into higher tax brackets, which boosts revenues relative to GDP in CBO's projections by 0.9 percentage points over the next decade.[11]

Economic Recovery. CBO expects that the economic expansion and related factors will cause taxable incomes to rise faster than GDP, boosting individual income tax revenues as a share of GDP by about 0.4 percentage points over the next decade; most of that effect will occur by 2017. Certain components of taxable income—including wages and salaries, capital gains realizations, interest income, and proprietors' income—declined as a share of GDP over the past several years. CBO expects that, as the economy recovers, such income will rebound more quickly than the economy as a whole, increasing

---

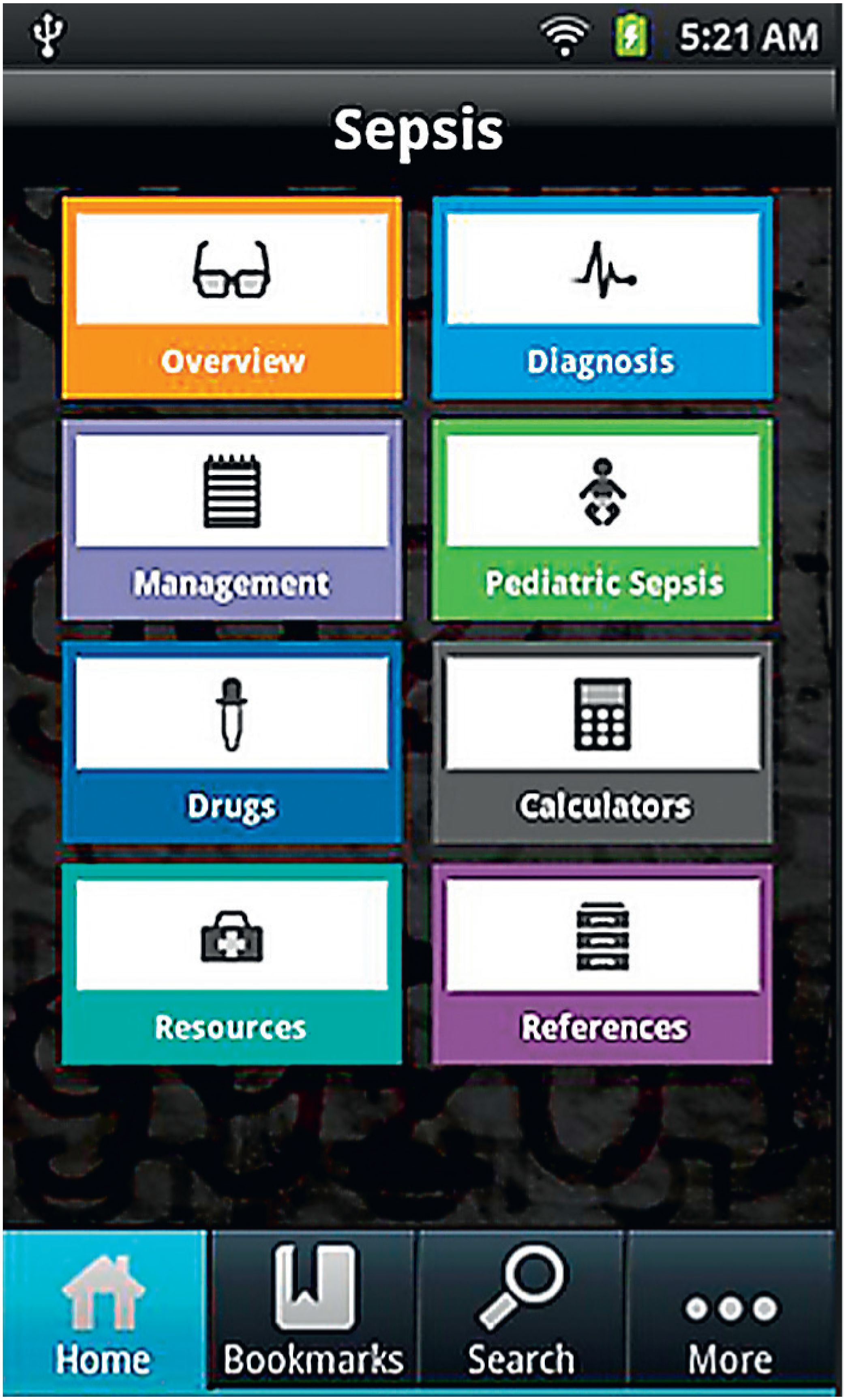
[11] Roughly three-quarters of that amount is a longer-term effect that results from increases in the potential output of the economy (that is, the maximum sustainable level of economic output), and the rest results from the return of output to its potential level over the next several years.

U.S. Congressional Budget Office, 2013: www.cbo.gov/sites/default/files/cbofiles/attachments/43907-BudgetOutlook.pdf.

A header contains the page number, title, and date of the report. The top of the page contains a graph titled Figure 1-2, Total Revenues and Outlays. A subtitle reads (Percentage of gross domestic product). The graph is the full width and fills the top third of the page. Below the graph are two columns of text separated by headings and sub-headings with spacing to allow easy reading. A footnote is placed at the bottom of the second column. Below the page is the source of the information.

Return to An illustration shows a page from a government report

Extended description for Figure 7.16 Screen for a Mobile Application

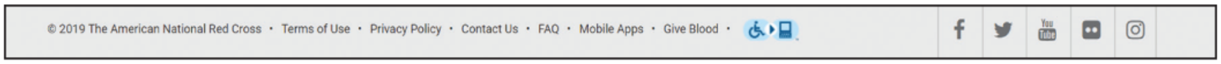

5:21 AM
Sepsis
Overview
Diagnosis
Management
Pediatric Sepsis
Drugs
Calculators
Resources
References
Home
Bookmarks
Search
More

Sepsis Clinical Guide mobile app,Escavo, Inc. (www.escavo.com). Used by permission.

Device icons appear at the top of the screen above a horizontal rule. Below, the title is centered. Below the title are eight different colored boxes total in two columns, each containing an icon and a title. Options are Overview, Diagnosis, Management, Pediatric Sepsis, Drugs, Calculators, Resources, and References. The bottom of the screen contains device options for Home, Bookmarks, Search, and More.

Return to Figure 7.16 Screen for a Mobile Application

Extended description for Figure 7.18 Website Footer

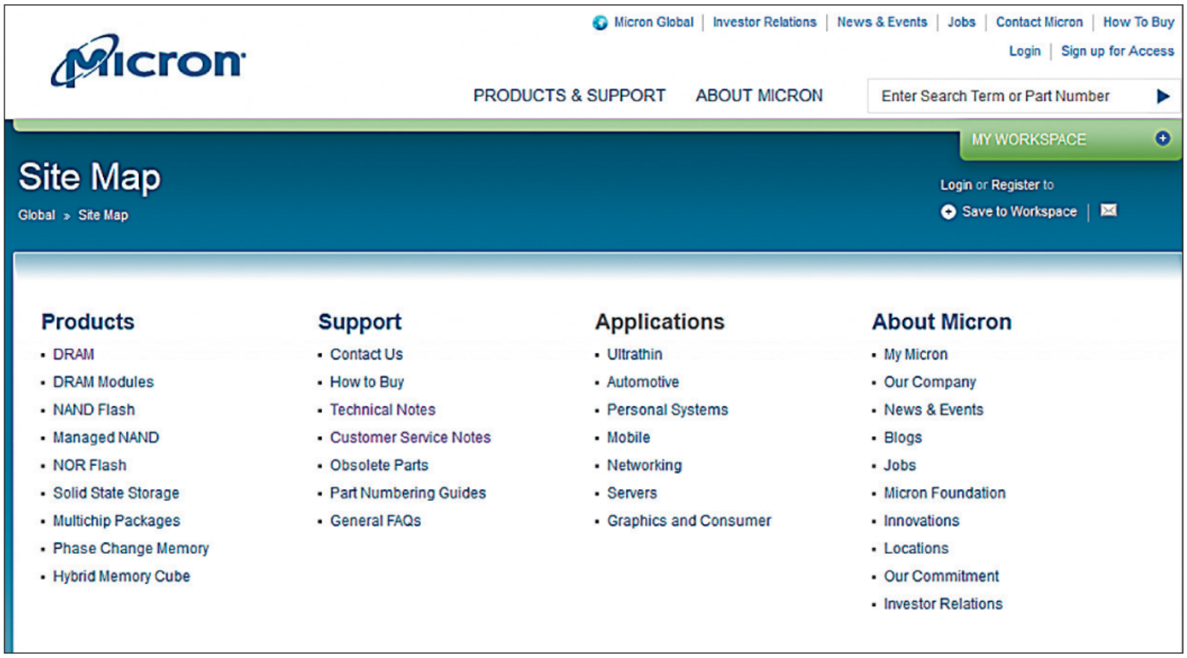

© 2019 The American National Red Cross
Terms of Use
Privacy Policy
Contact Us
FAQ
Mobile Apps
Give Blood
You Tube

Courtesy of the American Red Cross. © 2020 The American National Red Cross ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

From left to right, the footer shows the copyright date for the American National Red Cross, Terms of Use, Privacy Policy, Contact Us, FAQ, Mobile App, Give Blood, followed by icons for various social media.

[Return to Figure 7.18 Website Footer]

Extended description for Figure 7.19 Site Map


Micron
Micron Global | Investor Relations | News & Events | Jobs | Contact Micron | How To Buy
Login | Sign up for Access
PRODUCTS & SUPPORT
ABOUT MICRON
Enter Search Term or Part Number
MY WORKSPACE
Login or Register to
Save to Workspace

Site Map

Global » Site Map

Products

- DRAM
- DRAM Modules
- NAND Flash
- Managed NAND
- NOR Flash
- Solid State Storage
- Multichip Packages
- Phase Change Memory
- Hybrid Memory Cube

Support

- Contact Us
- How to Buy
- Technical Notes
- Customer Service Notes
- Obsolete Parts
- Part Numbering Guides
- General FAQs

Applications

- Ultrathin
- Automotive
- Personal Systems
- Mobile
- Networking
- Servers
- Graphics and Consumer

About Micron

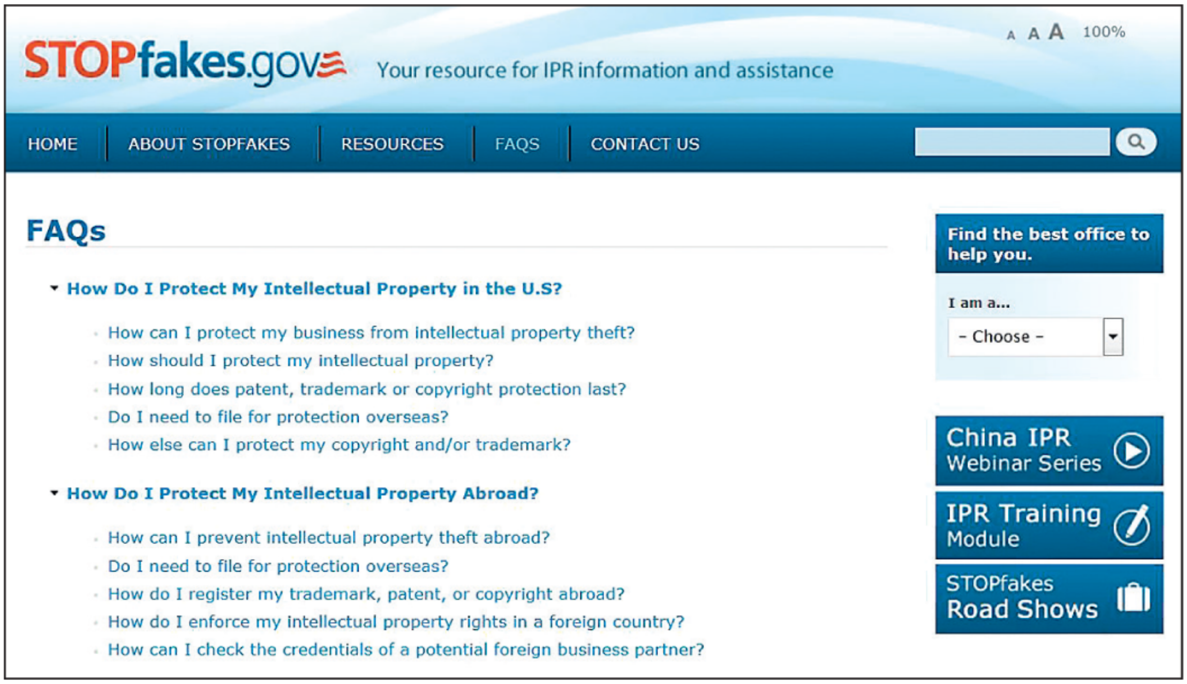
- My Micron
- Our Company
- News & Events
- Blogs
- Jobs
- Micron Foundation
- Innovations
- Locations
- Our Commitment
- Investor Relations

© 2017 Micron Technology, Inc. All rights reserved. Used with permission.

At the top is the logo on the left and options for Investor Relations, News And Events, Jobs, Contact Micron, How to Buy, Login, and Sign Up are on the right in small type. Three tabs are on the header: products and support, about Micron, and a search bar. A green bar with the words My Workspace at the right separates the header from the site map. The center section contains the heading Site Map. In a large white box is the site map itself with headings that read Products, Support, Applications, and about Micron. Each heading is followed by several bulleted links.

Return to Figure 7.19 Site Map

Extended description for Figure 7.20 Table of Contents


STOPfakes.gov
Your resource for IPR information and assistance
A A A 100%
HOME
ABOUT STOPFAKES
RESOURCES
FAQS
CONTACT US

FAQs

- **How Do I Protect My Intellectual Property in the U.S?**
  - How can I protect my business from intellectual property theft?
  - How should I protect my intellectual property?
  - How long does patent, trademark or copyright protection last?
  - Do I need to file for protection overseas?
  - How else can I protect my copyright and/or trademark?
- **How Do I Protect My Intellectual Property Abroad?**
  - How can I prevent intellectual property theft abroad?
  - Do I need to file for protection overseas?
  - How do I register my trademark, patent, or copyright abroad?
  - How do I enforce my intellectual property rights in a foreign country?
  - How can I check the credentials of a potential foreign business partner?

Find the best office to help you.

I am a...

- Choose -

China IPR Webinar Series
IPR Training Module
STOPfakes Road Shows

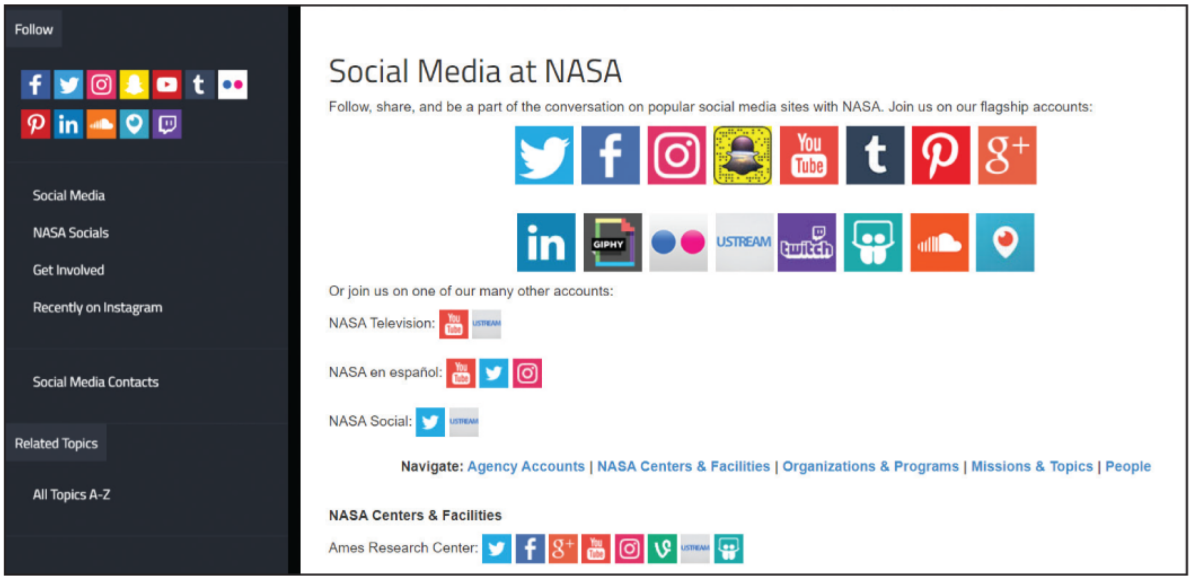
U.S. Department of Commerce, 2013: www.stopfakes.gov/faqs.

Tabs in the navigation bar read Home, About Stopfakes, Resources, F A Qs, and Contact Us followed by a search window.

Below the navigation bar is a header reading, F A Qs, followed by two headings containing down arrows, each followed by a list of questions. At the right are four links to different pages.

Return to Figure 7.20 Table of Contents

Extended description for Figure 7.21 Maintaining Communities


Follow
Social Media
NASA Socials
Get Involved
Recently on Instagram
Social Media Contacts
Related Topics
All Topics A-Z
You Tube
GIPHY
USTREAM
twitch

Social Media at NASA

Follow, share, and be a part of the conversation on popular social media sites with NASA. Join us on our flagship accounts:

Or join us on one of our many other accounts:

NASA Television:

NASA en español:

NASA Social:

Navigate: Agency Accounts | NASA Centers & Facilities | Organizations & Programs | Missions & Topics | People

NASA Centers & Facilities

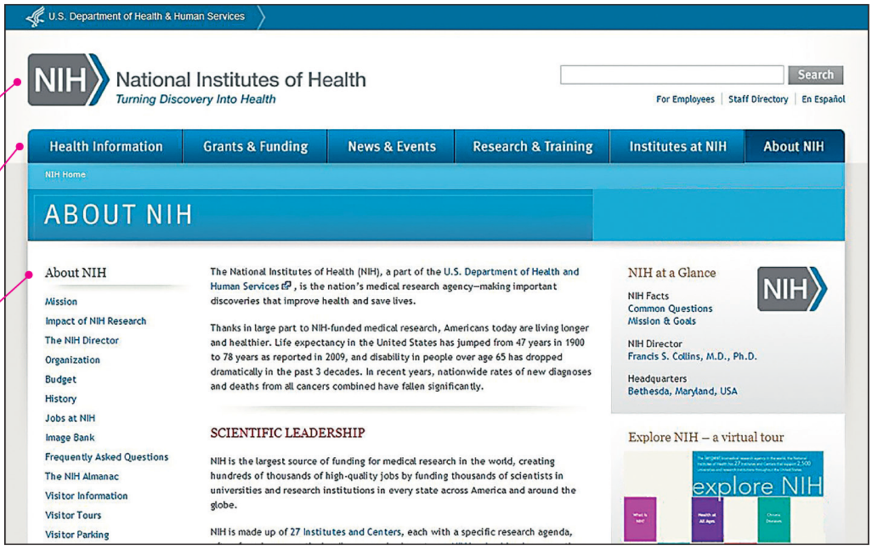
Ames Research Center:

NASA

The left portion of the screen shows multiple social media icons and a follow button at the top. Below are several related links. The largest part of the screen is to the right and has the heading Social Media at NASA and text that reads, Follow, share, and be a part of the conversation on popular social media sites with N A S A. Join us on our flagship accounts. Beneath the text are 16 icons for various sites arranged in two rows. Text reads, Or join us on one of our many other accounts: N A S A Television: followed by two icons; N A S A en espanol: followed by three icons; N A S A Social: followed by two icons. Below these is a Navigation line containing links to various pages separated by vertical pipes. At the bottom is a subheading that reads, N A S A Centers and Facilities. Below, text reads, Ames Research Center: followed by eight icons.

Return to Figure 7.21 Maintaining Communities

Extended description for Figure 7.22 An About Us Page with Clear, Informative Links


U.S. Department of Health & Human Services
NIH
National Institutes of Health
Turning Discovery Into Health
Search
For Employees
Staff Directory
En Español
Health Information
Grants & Funding
News & Events
Research & Training
Institutes at NIH
About NIH
NIH Home
Mission
Impact of NIH Research
The NIH Director
Organization
Budget
History
Jobs at NIH
Image Bank
Frequently Asked Questions
The NIH Almanac
Visitor Information
Visitor Tours
Visitor Parking
NIH
NIH Facts
Common Questions
Mission & Goals
explore NIH

The About NIH page on the National Institutes of Health website conveys its message simply but effectively.

The top row is reserved for the name of this government agency.

Below the agency's name is the main navigation pane, beginning with "Health Information."

Below the main navigation pane is the navigation pane for the section in which this page appears: "About NIH." The About NIH page has 18 sections, beginning with "Mission."

ABOUT NIH

About NIH

The National Institutes of Health (NIH), a part of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, is the nation's medical research agency—making important discoveries that improve health and save lives.

Thanks in large part to NIH-funded medical research, Americans today are living longer and healthier. Life expectancy in the United States has jumped from 47 years in 1900 to 78 years as reported in 2009, and disability in people over age 65 has dropped dramatically in the past 3 decades. In recent years, nationwide rates of new diagnoses and deaths from all cancers combined have fallen significantly.

SCIENTIFIC LEADERSHIP

NIH is the largest source of funding for medical research in the world, creating hundreds of thousands of high-quality jobs by funding thousands of scientists in universities and research institutions in every state across America and around the globe.

NIH is made up of 27 Institutes and Centers, each with a specific research agenda,

NIH at a Glance

NIH Director
Francis S. Collins, M.D., Ph.D.

Headquarters
Bethesda, Maryland, USA

Explore NIH – a virtual tour

National Institutes of Health: www.nih.gov.

The top of the screen contains the logo for the National Institutes of Health and a search bar. A notation reads, The top row is reserved for the name of this government agency.

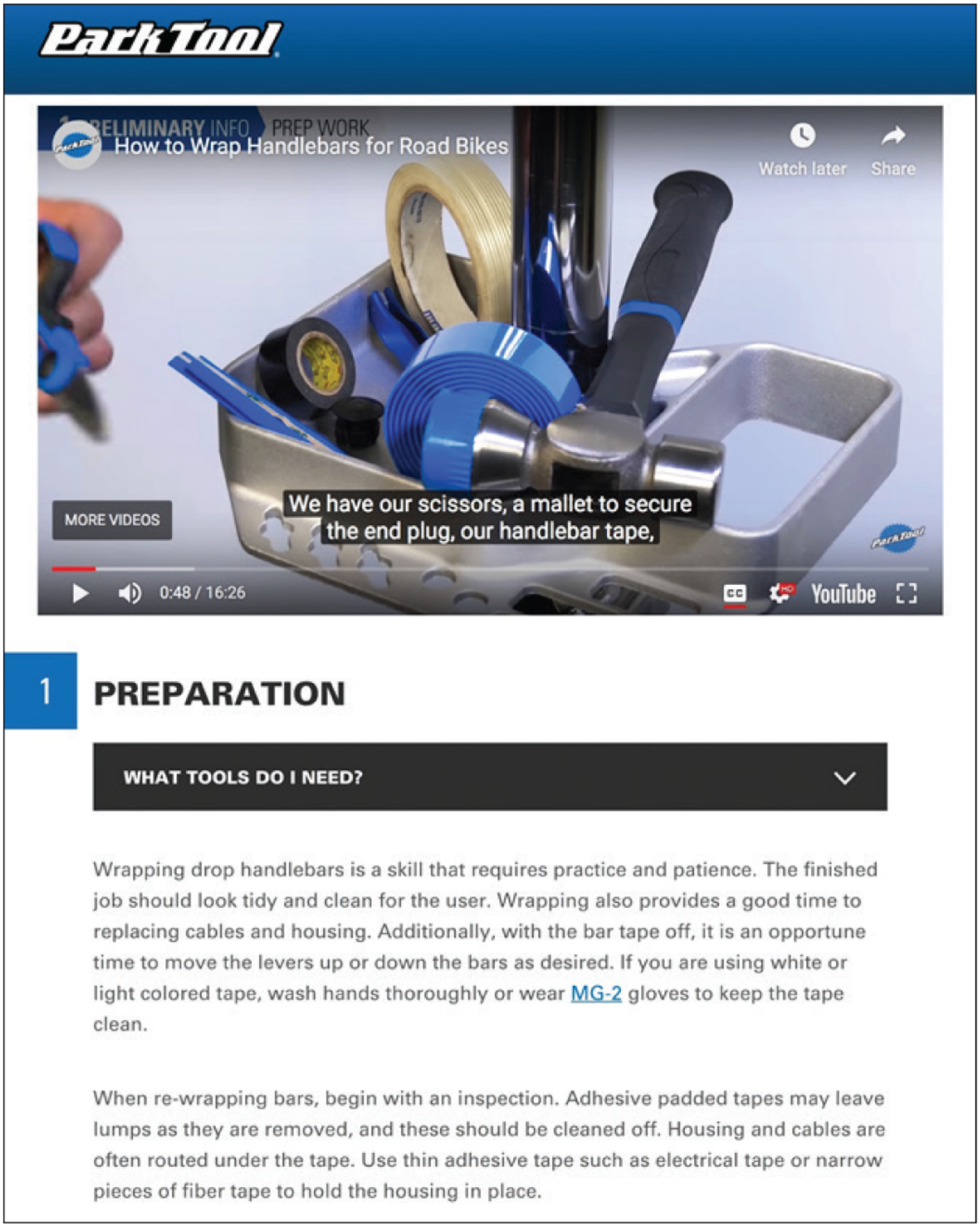
The body of the page contains six navigation tabs with About N I H selected. The title of the page reads the same. A notation reads, Below the agency's name is the main navigation pane, beginning with "Health Information."

Below the navigation pane on the left are links for that particular section. A notation reads, Below the main navigation pane is the navigation pane for the section in which this page appears: "About N I H." The About NIH page has 18 sections, beginning with "Mission."

The center of the page contains text with one heading. On the right is a section titled N I H at a Glance with the logo and more optional links.

Return to Figure 7.22 An About Us Page with Clear, Informative Links

Extended description for Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities


PRELIMINARY INFO
PREP WORK
How to Wrap Handlebars for Road Bikes
Watch later
Share
MORE VIDEOS
We have our scissors, a mallet to secure the end plug, our handlebar tape,
0:48 / 16:26
YouTube

1 PREPARATION

WHAT TOOLS DO I NEED?

Wrapping drop handlebars is a skill that requires practice and patience. The finished job should look tidy and clean for the user. Wrapping also provides a good time to replacing cables and housing. Additionally, with the bar tape off, it is an opportune time to move the levers up or down the bars as desired. If you are using white or light colored tape, wash hands thoroughly or wear MG-2 gloves to keep the tape clean.

When re-wrapping bars, begin with an inspection. Adhesive padded tapes may leave lumps as they are removed, and these should be cleaned off. Housing and cables are often routed under the tape. Use thin adhesive tape such as electrical tape or narrow pieces of fiber tape to hold the housing in place.

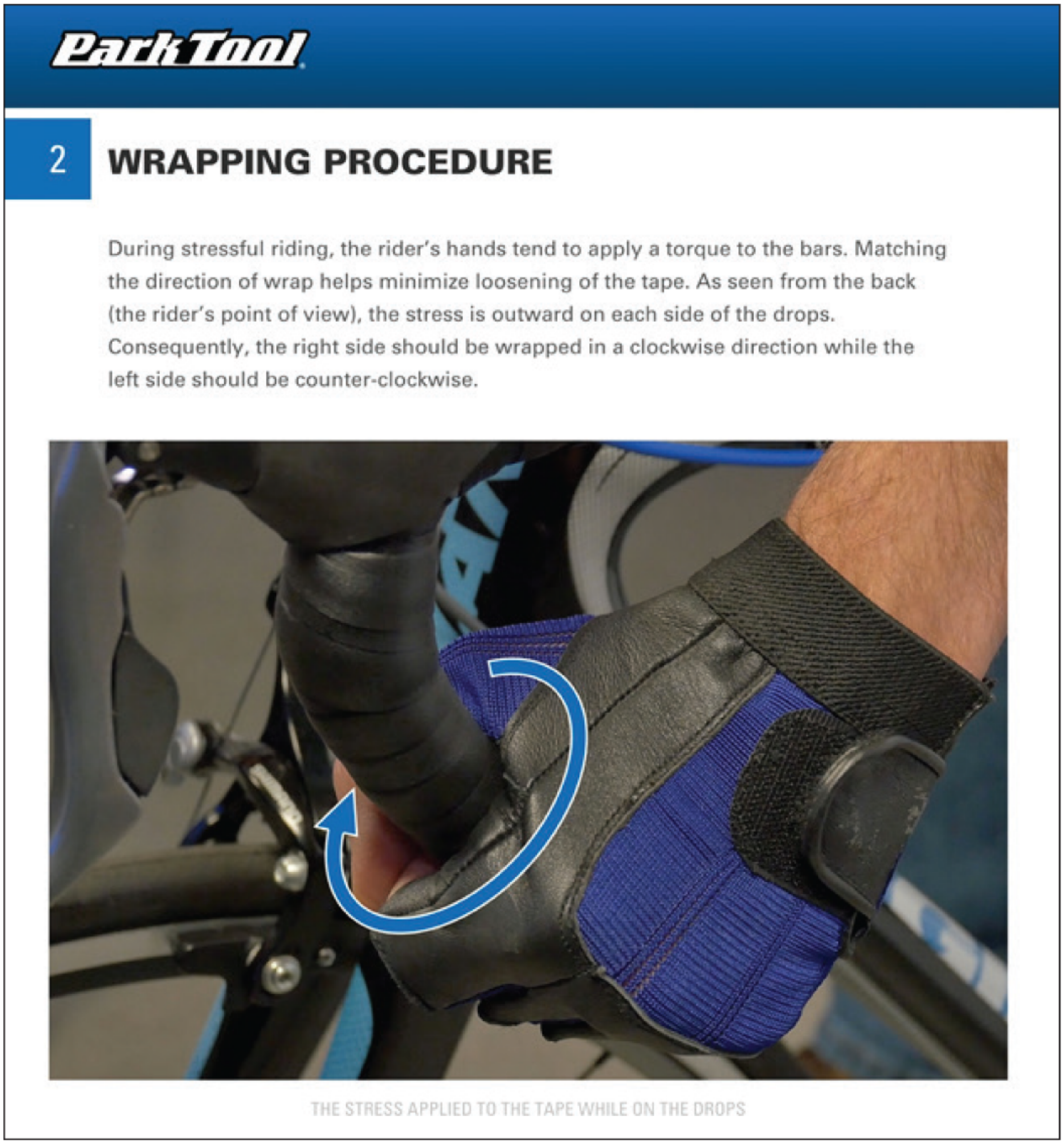
Courtesy Park Tool.

The header shows the logo for Park Tool. Below the header is a full-width video titled Explaining How to Wrap Handlebars for Road

Bikes. The video shows a box of tools and contains overlaid closed captioning. Under the video is a title for section 1 reading, Preparation. It begins with a subheading which reads, What Tools Do I Need? and a down arrow button. The bottom of the page is text explaining what steps to take.

Return to Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities

Extended description for Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities



Park Tool

2 WRAPPING PROCEDURE

During stressful riding, the rider's hands tend to apply a torque to the bars. Matching the direction of wrap helps minimize loosening of the tape. As seen from the back (the rider's point of view), the stress is outward on each side of the drops. Consequently, the right side should be wrapped in a clockwise direction while the left side should be counter-clockwise.

THE STRESS APPLIED TO THE TAPE WHILE ON THE DROPS

Courtesy Park Tool.

The header shows the logo for Park Tool. Below the header is the title for section 2, Wrapping Procedure, followed by text explaining the process. A full-width photo shows the wrapping procedure. The photo shows a hand with a riding glove wrapping tape around a bicycle handle with a prominent directional arrow.

Return to Figure 7.23 Excerpt from Online Instructions Incorporating Multiple Modalities

Extended description for An illustration shows a page from a user guide for a Micron product

Customer Service Note

BGA Manufacturer's User Guide for Micron BGA Parts

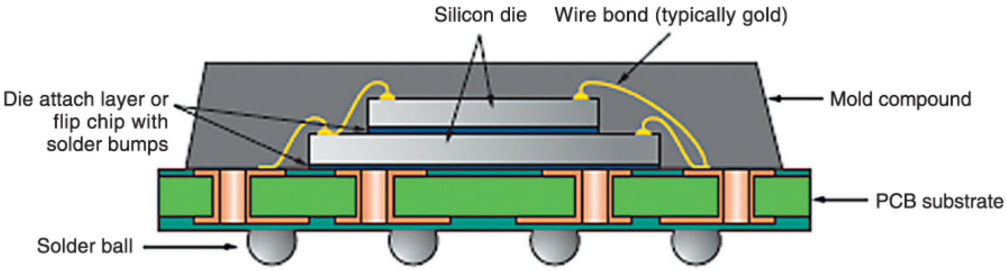
Introduction

This customer service note provides information that will enable customers to easily integrate both leading-edge and legacy Micron® ball grid array (BGA) packages into their manufacturing processes. It is intended as a set of high-level guidelines and a reference manual describing typical package-related and manufacturing process-flow practices. The recommendations and suggestions provided in this customer service note serve as a guideline to help the end user to develop user-specific solutions. It is the responsibility of the end user to optimize the process to obtain the desired results.

Because the package landscape changes rapidly and information can become outdated very quickly, refer to the latest product specifications. Contact your sales representative for any additional questions not covered within this guide.

An overview of a typical BGA package and its components are shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Ball Grid Array Package (Dual Die, Wire Bonded)


Silicon die
Wire bond (typically gold)
Die attach layer or flip chip with solder bumps
Mold compound
PCB substrate
Solder ball

JEDEC Terminology

This document uses JEDEC terminology. JEDEC-based BGA devices in the semiconductor industry are identified by two key attributes:

- Maximum package height (profile)
- Ball pitch

For example: TFBGA - 1.2mm package height and less than 1.0mm ball pitch.

Package descriptors F1 through F6 have been added to provide more detailed ball pitch information for devices with a ball pitch of less than 0.8mm. Within the industry, many memory manufacturers continue to use only the "F" descriptor for any ball pitch of 1.0mm or less (see JEDEC JESD30E for additional information). Maximum package height profile and ball pitch codes based on the JEDEC standard are shown in Tables 1

©2011 Micron Technology, Inc. All rights reserved.

Products and specifications discussed herein are for evaluation and reference purposes only and are subject to change by Micron without notice. Products are only warranted by Micron to meet Micron's production data sheet specifications. All information discussed herein is provided on an "as is" basis, without warranties of any kind.

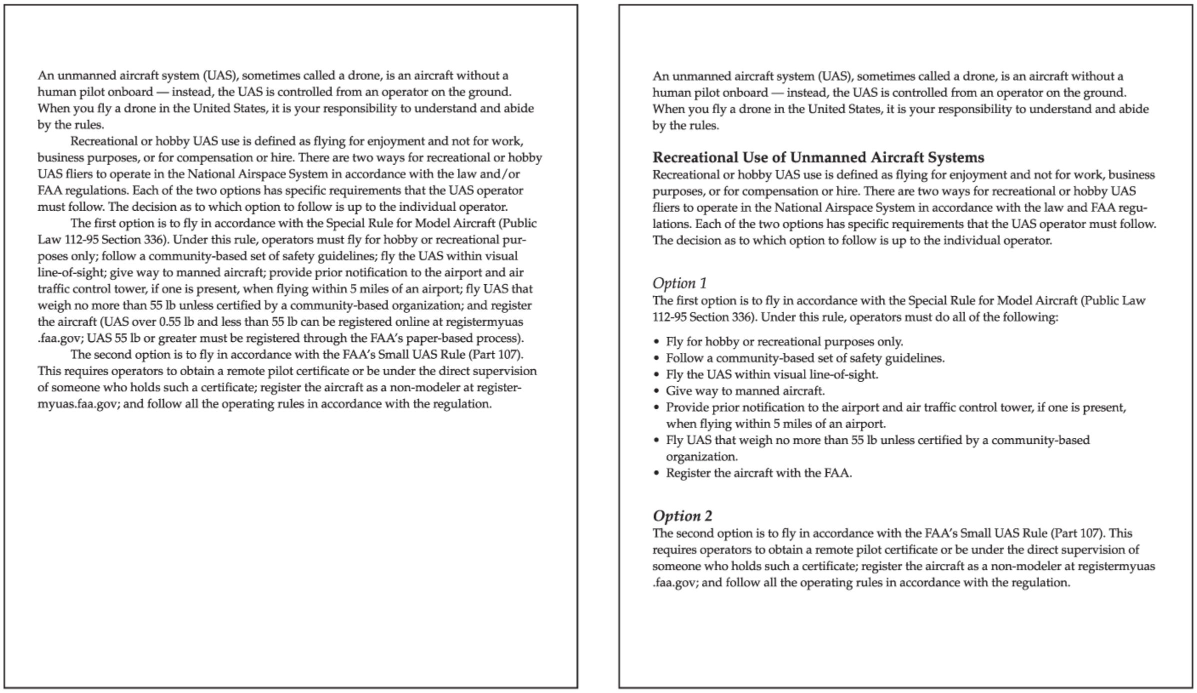
© 2011 Micron Technology, Inc. All Rights reserved. Used with Permission.

The page is divided into six sections from top to bottom. Micron’s logo is at the top left with the title of the user guide to the right.

The next section is the headline Customer Service Note, B G A Manufacturer’s User Guide for Micron BGA Parts. The third section is the heading Introduction justified left with paragraphs using the right three quarters of the page. The fourth section is Figure 1: Ball Grid Array Package (Dual Die, Wire Bonded), which shows a diagram of the item with each part labeled. The fifth section is titled J E D E C Terminology, also justified left above text on the right three quarters of the page and two bullet points. The sixth portion of the page is the footer with website, pertinent copyright information, and a disclaimer.

Return to An illustration shows a page from a user guide for a Micron product

Extended description for Figure 7.2 Chunking



An unmanned aircraft system (UAS), sometimes called a drone, is an aircraft without a human pilot onboard — instead, the UAS is controlled from an operator on the ground. When you fly a drone in the United States, it is your responsibility to understand and abide by the rules.

Recreational or hobby UAS use is defined as flying for enjoyment and not for work, business purposes, or for compensation or hire. There are two ways for recreational or hobby UAS fliers to operate in the National Airspace System in accordance with the law and/or FAA regulations. Each of the two options has specific requirements that the UAS operator must follow. The decision as to which option to follow is up to the individual operator.

The first option is to fly in accordance with the Special Rule for Model Aircraft (Public Law 112-95 Section 336). Under this rule, operators must fly for hobby or recreational purposes only; follow a community-based set of safety guidelines; fly the UAS within visual line-of-sight; give way to manned aircraft; provide prior notification to the airport and air traffic control tower, if one is present, when flying within 5 miles of an airport; fly UAS that weigh no more than 55 lb unless certified by a community-based organization; and register the aircraft (UAS over 0.55 lb and less than 55 lb can be registered online at registermyuas.faa.gov; UAS 55 lb or greater must be registered through the FAA's paper-based process).

The second option is to fly in accordance with the FAA's Small UAS Rule (Part 107). This requires operators to obtain a remote pilot certificate or be under the direct supervision of someone who holds such a certificate; register the aircraft as a non-modeler at registermyuas.faa.gov; and follow all the operating rules in accordance with the regulation.

a. Without chunking

An unmanned aircraft system (UAS), sometimes called a drone, is an aircraft without a human pilot onboard — instead, the UAS is controlled from an operator on the ground. When you fly a drone in the United States, it is your responsibility to understand and abide by the rules.

Recreational Use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems

Recreational or hobby UAS use is defined as flying for enjoyment and not for work, business purposes, or for compensation or hire. There are two ways for recreational or hobby UAS fliers to operate in the National Airspace System in accordance with the law and FAA regulations. Each of the two options has specific requirements that the UAS operator must follow. The decision as to which option to follow is up to the individual operator.

Option 1

The first option is to fly in accordance with the Special Rule for Model Aircraft (Public Law 112-95 Section 336). Under this rule, operators must do all of the following:

- Fly for hobby or recreational purposes only.
- Follow a community-based set of safety guidelines.
- Fly the UAS within visual line-of-sight.
- Give way to manned aircraft.
- Provide prior notification to the airport and air traffic control tower, if one is present, when flying within 5 miles of an airport.
- Fly UAS that weigh no more than 55 lb unless certified by a community-based organization.
- Register the aircraft with the FAA.

Option 2

The second option is to fly in accordance with the FAA's Small UAS Rule (Part 107). This requires operators to obtain a remote pilot certificate or be under the direct supervision of someone who holds such a certificate; register the aircraft as a non-modeler at registermyuas.faa.gov; and follow all the operating rules in accordance with the regulation.

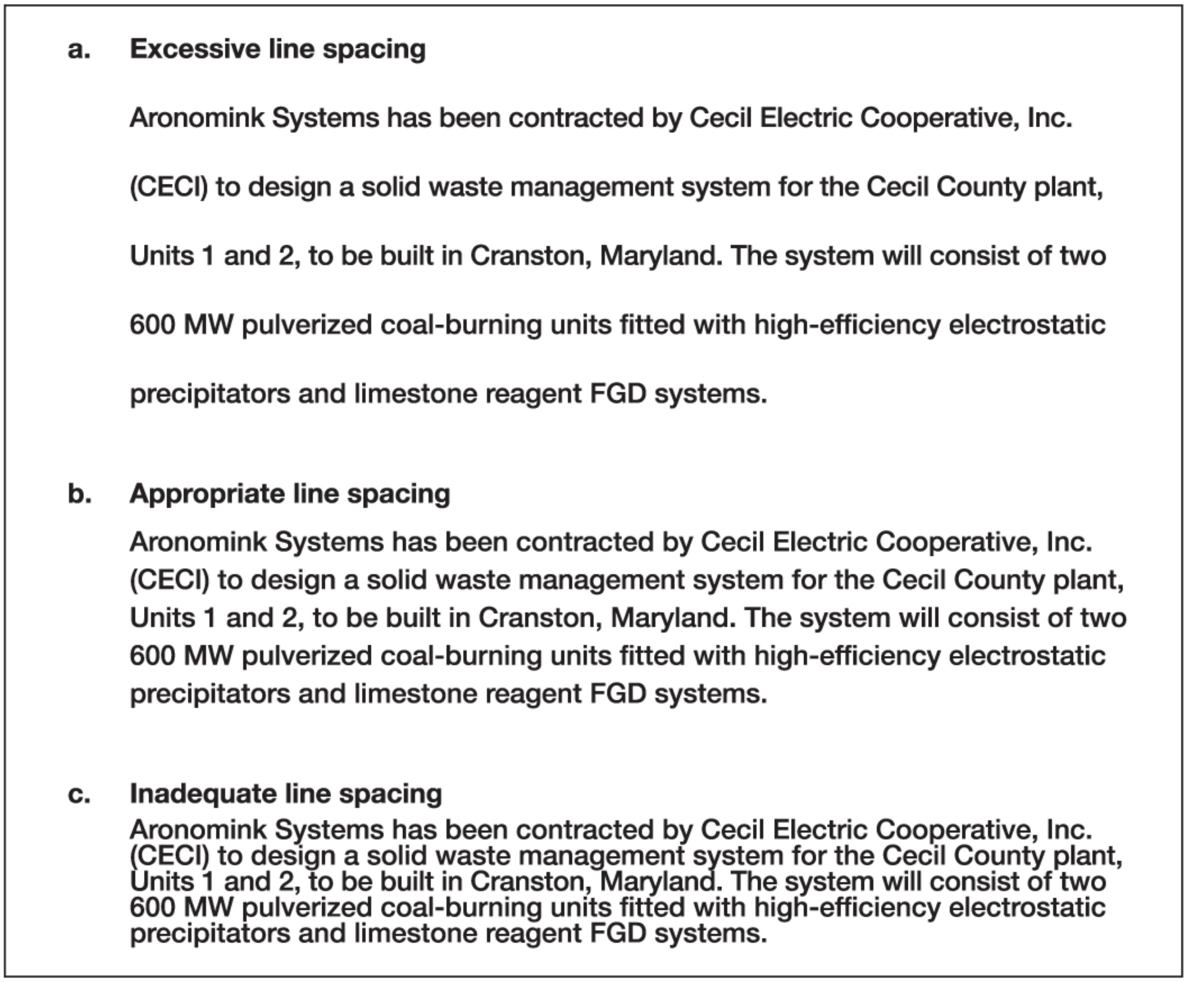
b. With chunking

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The left page, labeled "a," shows four paragraphs without any headings or lists to separate information. The right, labeled "b," shows an introductory paragraph, a heading (Recreational Use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems), two subheadings (Option 1 and Option 2), and information using bullet points clearly separating details in chunks of copy.

Return to Figure 7.2 Chunking

Extended description for Figure 7.14 Line Spacing



a. **Excessive line spacing**

Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

b. **Appropriate line spacing**

Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

c. **Inadequate line spacing**

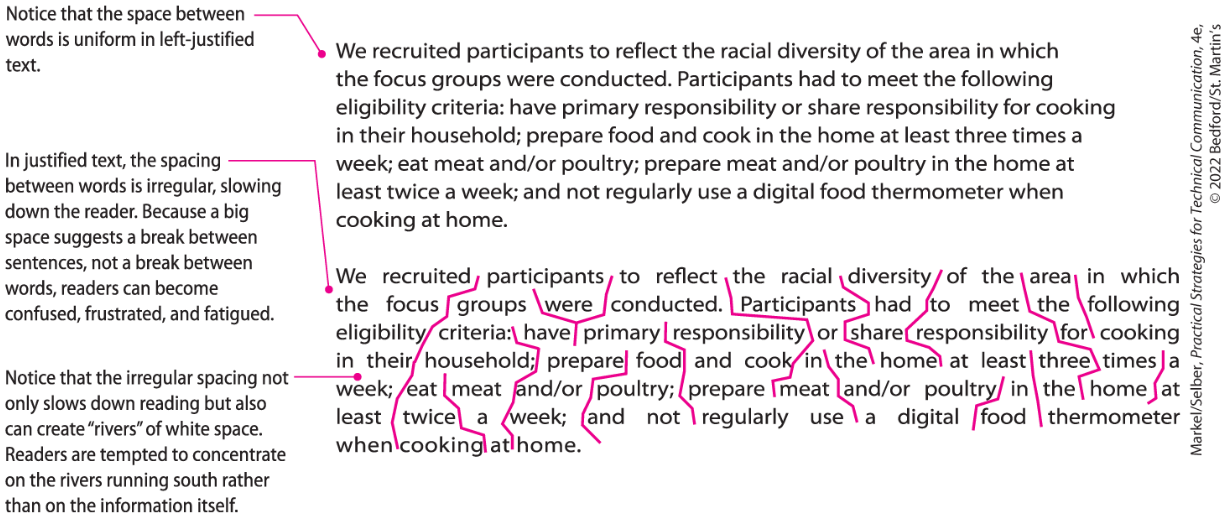
Aronomink Systems has been contracted by Cecil Electric Cooperative, Inc. (CECI) to design a solid waste management system for the Cecil County plant, Units 1 and 2, to be built in Cranston, Maryland. The system will consist of two 600 MW pulverized coal-burning units fitted with high-efficiency electrostatic precipitators and limestone reagent FGD systems.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Paragraph a, Excessive line spacing, shows wide space between lines, approximately double-spaced. Paragraph b, Appropriate line spacing, shows approximately one-and-a-half line spacing. Paragraph c, Inadequate line spacing, shows very little space between lines.

Return to Figure 7.14 Line Spacing

Extended description for Two annotated paragraphs show left justified and full justified paragraphs



Notice that the space between words is uniform in left-justified text.

We recruited participants to reflect the racial diversity of the area in which the focus groups were conducted. Participants had to meet the following eligibility criteria: have primary responsibility or share responsibility for cooking in their household; prepare food and cook in the home at least three times a week; eat meat and/or poultry; prepare meat and/or poultry in the home at least twice a week; and not regularly use a digital food thermometer when cooking at home.

In justified text, the spacing between words is irregular, slowing down the reader. Because a big space suggests a break between sentences, not a break between words, readers can become confused, frustrated, and fatigued.

We recruited participants to reflect the racial diversity of the area in which the focus groups were conducted. Participants had to meet the following eligibility criteria: have primary responsibility or share responsibility for cooking in their household; prepare food and cook in the home at least three times a week; eat meat and/or poultry; prepare meat and/or poultry in the home at least twice a week; and not regularly use a digital food thermometer when cooking at home.

Notice that the irregular spacing not only slows down reading but also can create “rivers” of white space. Readers are tempted to concentrate on the rivers running south rather than on the information itself.

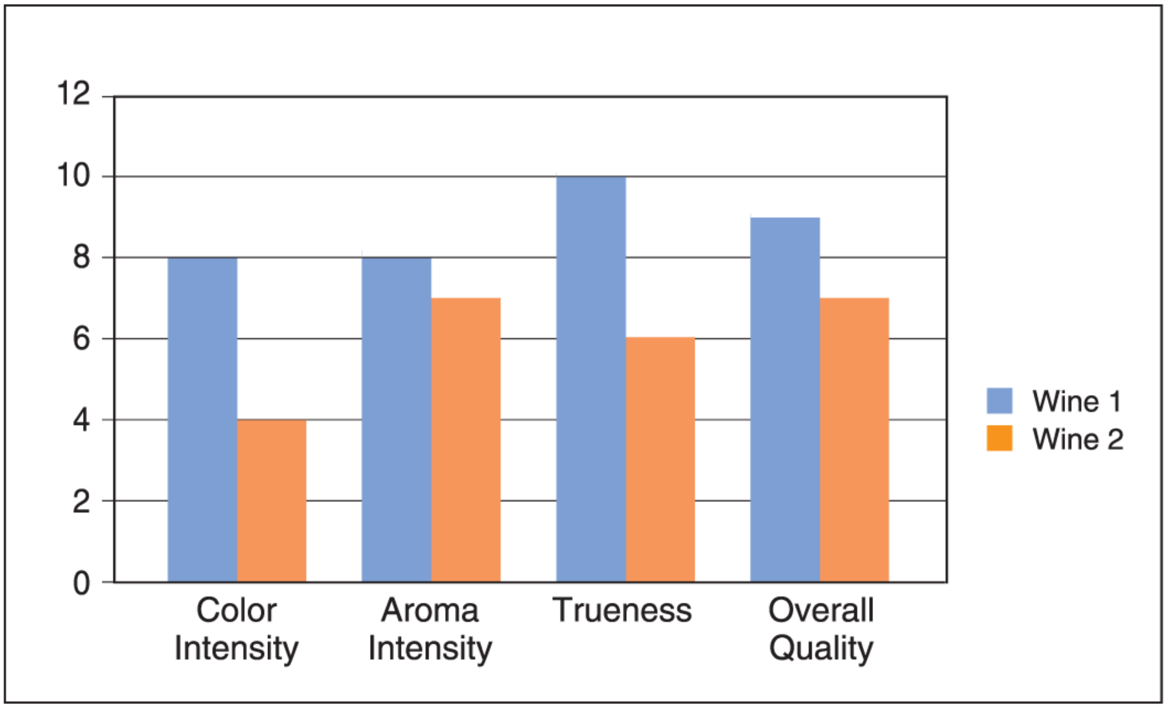
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The text in the left justified paragraph shows even spacing between words without large gaps, but has a ragged right margin. The notation reads, Notice that the space between words is uniform in left-justified text.

Text in full justified paragraph shows wide gaps between words in a non-uniform manner. Notations read, In justified text, the spacing between words is irregular, slowing down the reader. Because a big space suggests a break between sentences, not a break between words, readers can become confused, frustrated, and fatigued. Notice that the irregular spacing not only slows down reading but also can create “rivers” of white space. Readers are tempted to concentrate on the rivers running south rather than on the information itself. Red lines between words and rows indicate rivers of white space.

Return to Two annotated paragraphs show left justified and full justified paragraphs

Extended description for A radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but it is harder to make a direct comparison

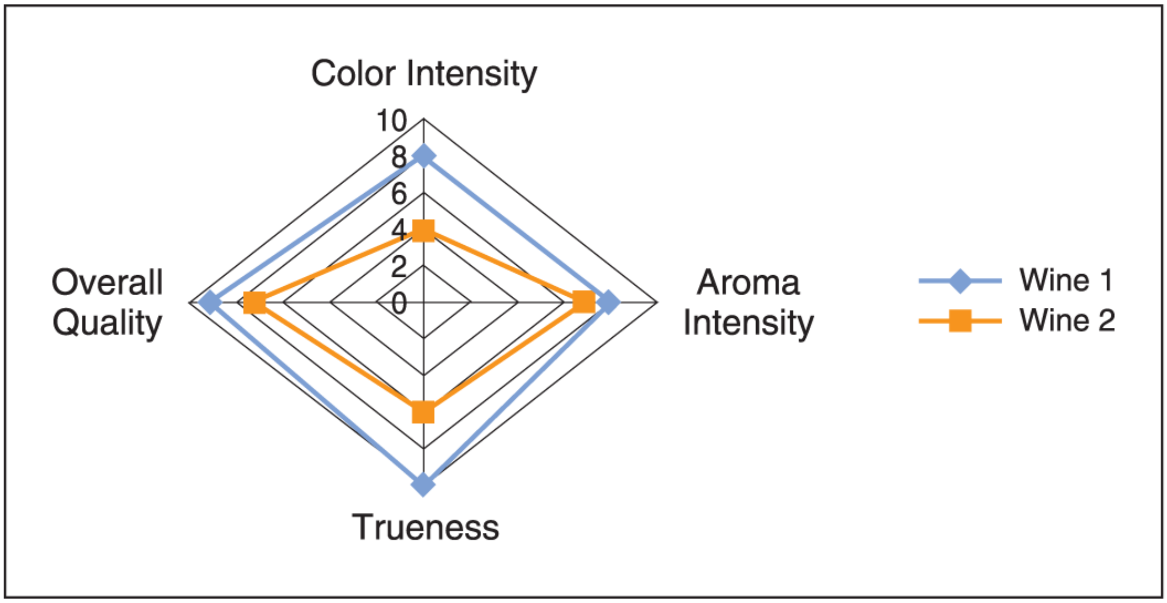


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The vertical axis shows values from 0 to 12 in increments of 2. Color Intensity. Wine 1: 8, Wine 2: 4. Aroma Intensity. Wine 1: 8, Wine 2: 7. Trueness. Wine 1: 10, Wine 2: 6. Overall quality. Wine 1: 9, Wine 2: 7.

Return to A radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but it is harder to make a direct comparison.

Extended description for A radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but it is harder to make a direct comparison

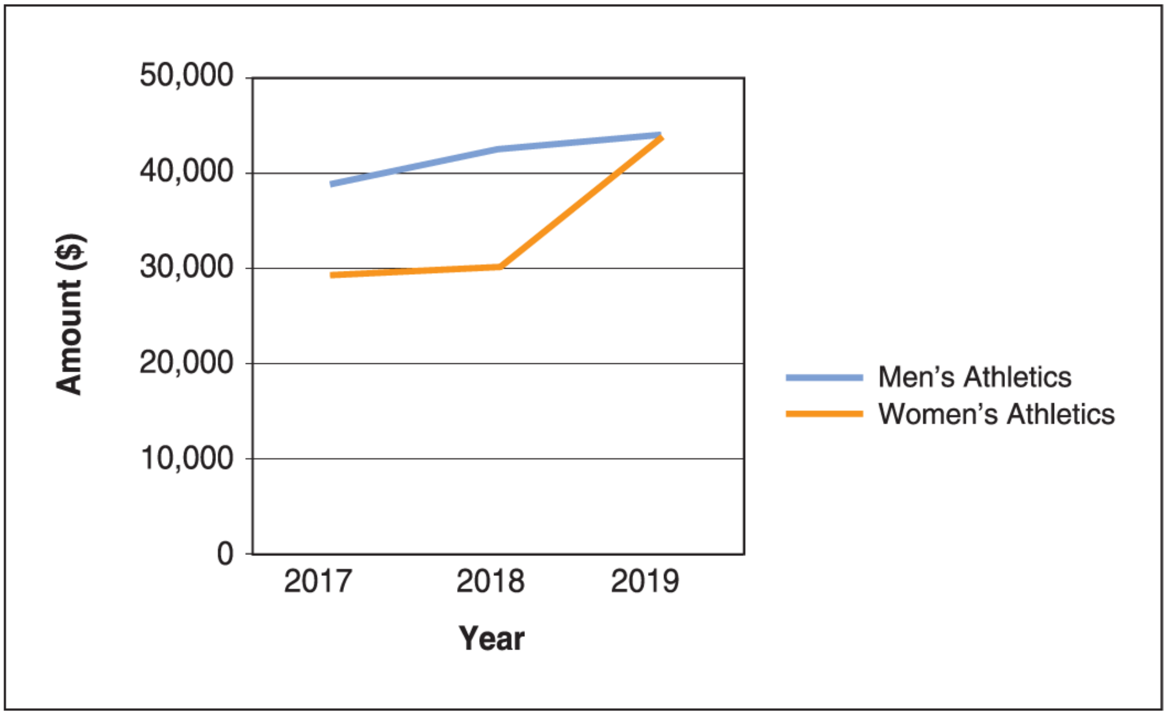


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

This radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but is harder to make a direct comparison. A diamond has the four qualities Color Intensity, Aroma Intensity, Trueness, and Overall Quality at each corner. Concentric diamonds are labeled 2, 4, 6, 8, 10. Each wine's score in each area is plotted around the diamond. Values can be derived, but a comparison is difficult.

Return to A radar graph conveys the same information as the previous bar graph, but it is harder to make a direct comparison

Extended description for A line graph shows dollars spent on men’s and women’s athletics for years 2017 through 2019

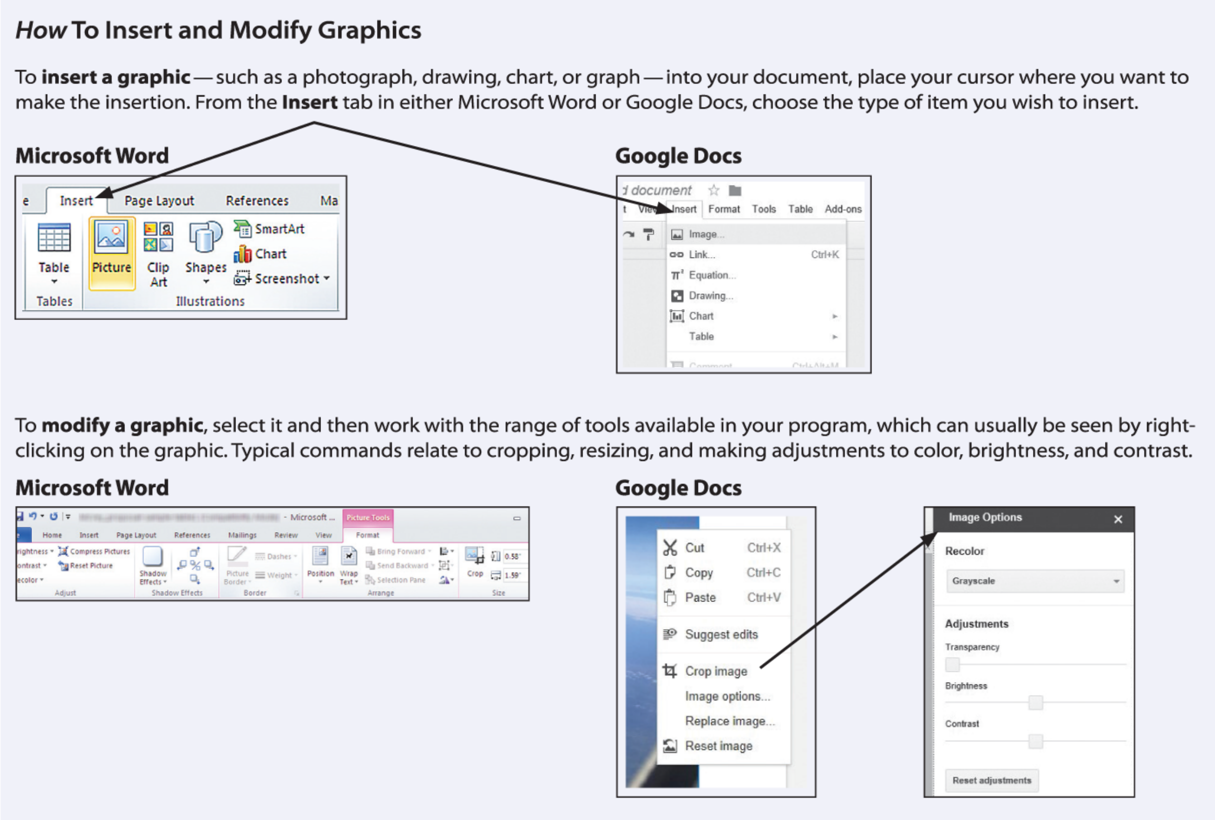


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

The x-axis shows year in one year increments, and the y-axis reads 0 to 50,000 dollars in increments of 10,000. The approximate data are as follows: Men’s athletic spending began at about 39,000 dollars in 2017, increasing to 42,000 dollars in 2018, and ending at 44,000 dollars in 2019. Women’s athletic spending began at 29,000 dollars in 2017, leveled to about 31,000 dollars in 2018, and spiked to almost 44,000 dollars in 2019.

Return to A line graph shows dollars spent on men's and women's athletics for years 2017 through 2019

Extended description for Five screenshots and text explain how to insert and modify graphics



How **To Insert and Modify Graphics**

To **insert a graphic**—such as a photograph, drawing, chart, or graph—into your document, place your cursor where you want to make the insertion. From the **Insert** tab in either Microsoft Word or Google Docs, choose the type of item you wish to insert.

Microsoft Word

Google Docs

To **modify a graphic**, select it and then work with the range of tools available in your program, which can usually be seen by right-clicking on the graphic. Typical commands relate to cropping, resizing, and making adjustments to color, brightness, and contrast.

Microsoft Word

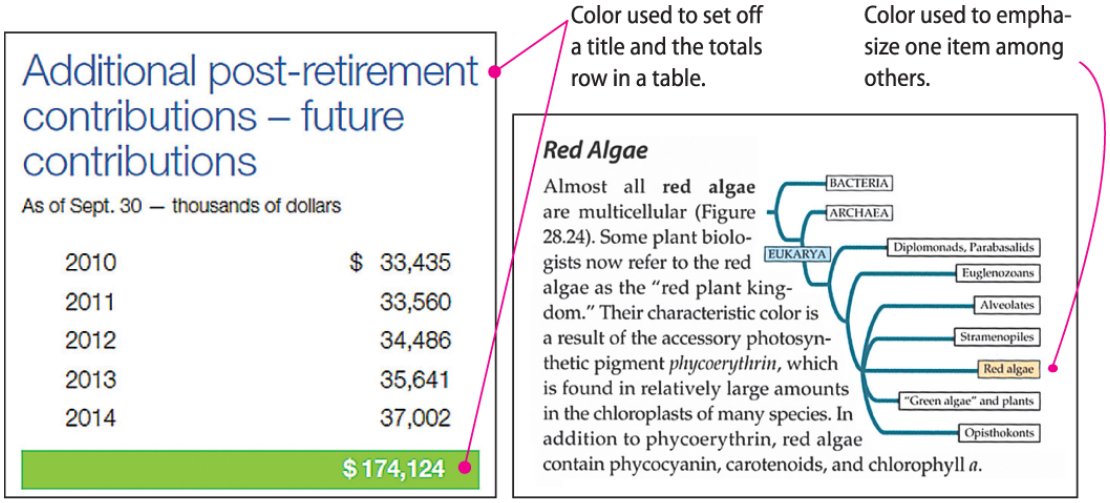
Google Docs

Insert
Page Layout
References
Table
Picture
Clip Art
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Screenshot
Tables
Illustrations
document
View
Insert
Format
Tools
Table
Add-ons
Image...
Link...
Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Picture Tools
Home
Insert
Page Layout
References
Mailings
Review
View
Format
Compress Pictures
Reset Picture
Shadow Effects
Picture Border
Dashes
Weight
Position
Wrap Text
Bring Forward
Send Backward
Selection Pane
Crop
Adjust
Shadow Effects
Border
Arrange
Size
Cut
Ctrl+X
Copy
Ctrl+C
Paste
Ctrl+V
Suggest edits
Crop image
Image options...
Replace image...
Reset image
Image Options
Recolor
Grayscale
Adjustments
Transparency
Brightness
Contrast
Reset adjustments

Text reads as follows: To insert a graphic — such as a photograph, drawing, chart, or graph — into your document, place your cursor where you want to make the insertion. From the Insert tab in either Microsoft Word or Google Docs, choose the type of item you wish to insert. Arrows point from the word “insert” to two screenshots of Microsoft Word and Google Docs showing where the Insert tabs are located.Additional text below the screenshots reads, To modify a graphic, select it and then work with the range of tools available in your program, which can usually be seen by right-clicking on the graphic. Typical commands relate to cropping, resizing, and making adjustments to color, brightness, and contrast. Three screenshots show a Microsoft Word task bar with the Picture Tools Format tab selected, and two Google Docs windows showing where to edit an image. From the right-click menu, selecting Image Options opens a menu with various options.

Return to Five screenshots and text explain how to insert and modify graphics

Extended description for FIGURE 8.1 Color Used for Emphasis



Color used to set off a title and the totals row in a table.

Color used to emphasize one item among others.

Additional post-retirement contributions – future contributions

As of Sept. 30 — thousands of dollars

2010	$ 33,435
2011	33,560
2012	34,486
2013	35,641
2014	37,002
	$ 174,124

Red Algae

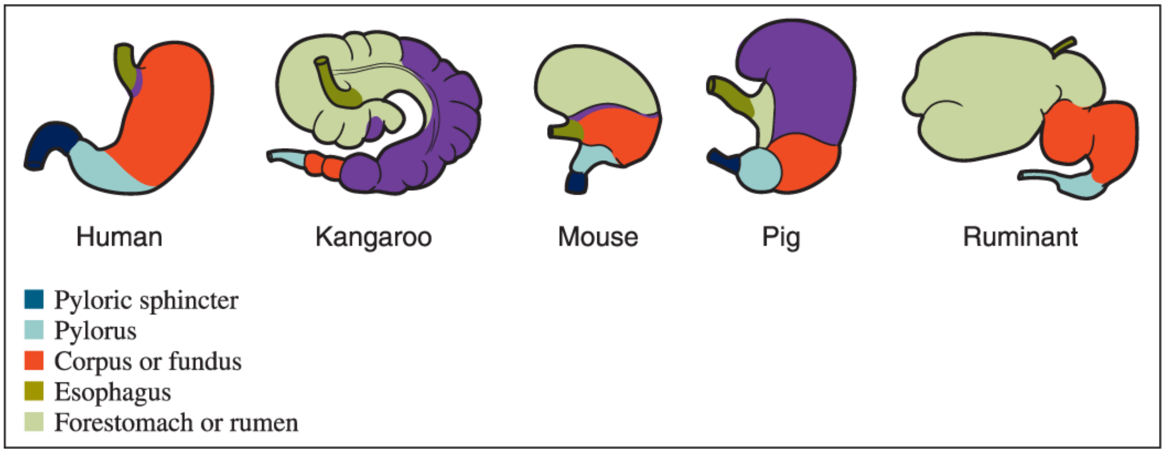
Almost all **red algae** are multicellular (Figure 28.24). Some plant biologists now refer to the red algae as the "red plant kingdom." Their characteristic color is a result of the accessory photosynthetic pigment *phycoerythrin*, which is found in relatively large amounts in the chloroplasts of many species. In addition to phycoerythrin, red algae contain phycocyanin, carotenoids, and chlorophyll *a*.

Left: bpa.gov; right: LIFE: THE SCIENCE OF BIOLOGY 7E edited by W. K. Purves, D. Sadava, G. H. Orians, and H. C. Heller (2004); Figure: 'Red Algae' (p. 560). By permission of Oxford University Press USA.

The illustration shows two windows. The left window heading reads, Additional post-retirement contributions –– future contributions, colored in blue. It lists contributions as of September 30 in thousands of dollars for 2010 through 2014. Data reads as follows: 2010, 33,435 dollars; 2011, 33,560 dollars; 2012, 34,486 dollars; 2013, 35,641 dollars; 2014, 37,002 dollars. The total is 174,124 dollars, highlighted in green. Text pointing to the heading and the total reads, Color used to set off a title and the totals row in a table.The second window reads, Red Algae. Almost all red algae are multicellular (Figure 28.24). Some plant biologists now refer to the red algae as the "red plant kingdom." Their characteristic color is a result of the accessory photosynthetic pigment phycoerythrin, which is found in relatively large amounts in the chloroplasts of many species. In addition to phycoerythrin, red algae contain phycocyanin, carotenoids, and chlorophyll a. To the right of the text is the figure mentioned, which is a tree diagram showing the different types of bacteria with “red algae” highlighted in yellow. Text pointing to red algae reads, Color used to emphasize one item among others. The source below reads, Life: The Science of Biology 7 E edited by W. K. Purves, D. Sadava, G. H. Orians, and H. C. Heller (2004): Figure: ‘Red Algae’ (p. 560). By permission of Oxford University Press U S A.

Return to Figure 8.1 Color Used for Emphasis

Extended description for Figure 8.2 Color Used to Establish Patterns

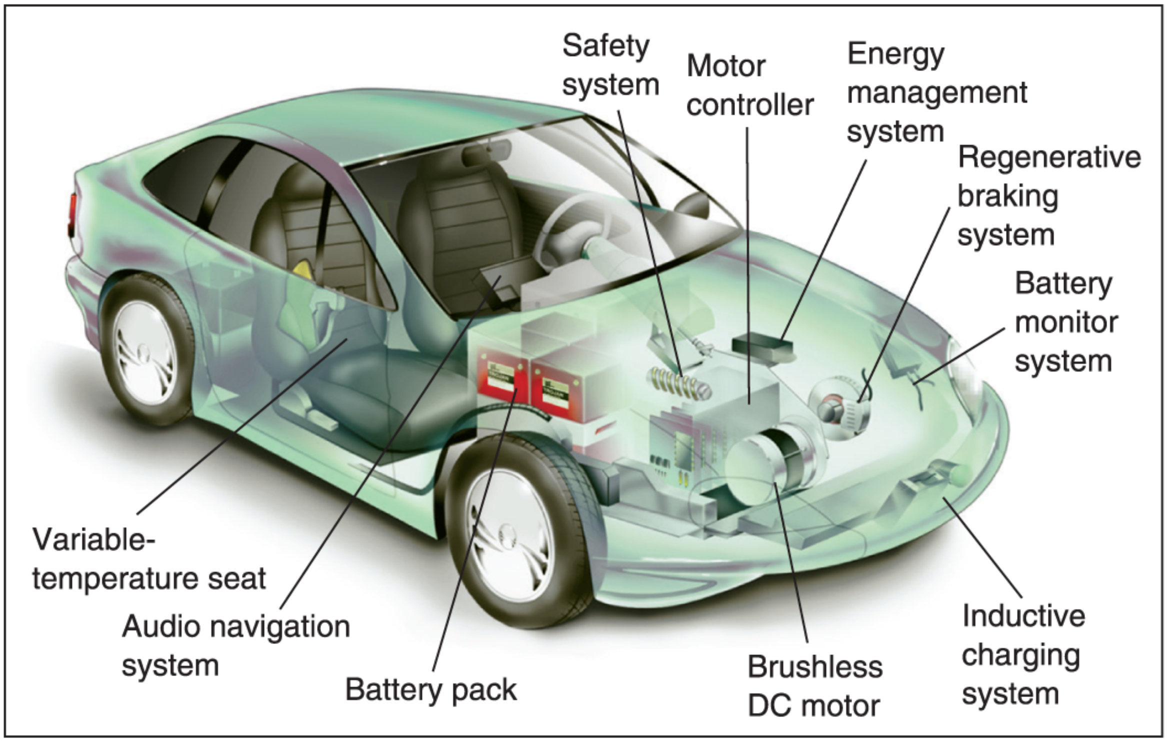

Human
Kangaroo
Mouse
Pig
Ruminant
Pyloric sphincter
Pylorus
Corpus or fundus
Esophagus
Forestomach or rumen

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Parts are Pyloric sphincter, Pylorus, Corpus or fundus, Esophagus, Forestomach or rumen. The bowel systems are shaped differently, and some do not contain all the parts listed. The use of color makes it possible to compare the systems.

Return to Figure 8.2 Color Used to Establish Patterns

Extended description for Figure 8.5 Colors Have Clear Associations for Readers

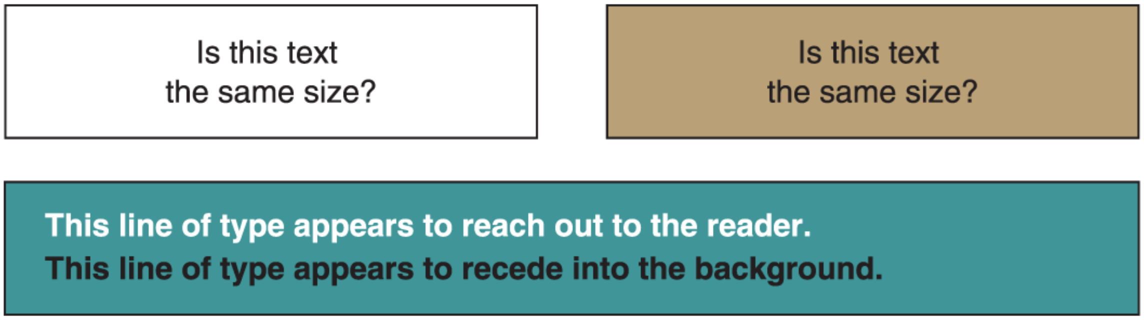

Safety system
Motor controller
Energy management system
Regenerative braking system
Battery monitor system
Variable-temperature seat
Audio navigation system
Battery pack
Brushless DC motor
Inductive charging system

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Most of the car and its parts are in muted greens and greys. The only item colored in red is the battery pack. Parts are labeled as follows: Variable-temperature seat; audio navigation system; battery pack; brushless D C motor; inductive charging system; battery monitor system; regenerative braking system; energy management system; motor controller; and safety system.

[Return to Figure 8.5 Colors Have Clear Associations for Readers]

Extended description for An illustration depicts ways to highlight type to a reader with three text boxes


Is this text
the same size?
Is this text
the same size?
This line of type appears to reach out to the reader.
This line of type appears to recede into the background.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

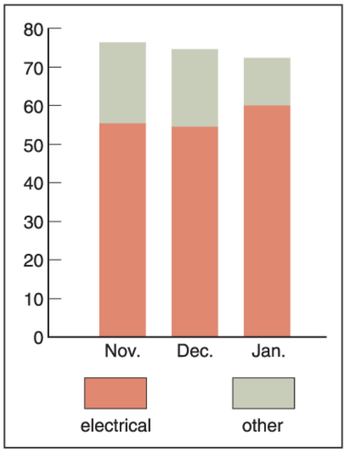
Two text boxes are above a longer one. The top left shows black text on a white background and reads, Is this text the same size? The right one shows black text on a tan background and also reads, Is this text the same size? The long text box below it shows white text on an aqua background and black text on the same background. White text reads, This line of type appears to reach out to the reader. Black text reads, This line of type appears to recede into the background.

Return to An illustration depicts ways to highlight type to a reader with three text boxes

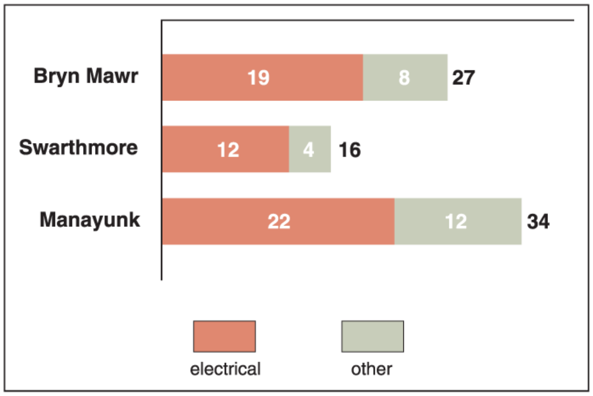
Extended description for Figure 8.6 Different Graphics Emphasizing Different Points

Rail Line	November		December		January	
	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled	Disabled by electrical problems (%)	Total disabled
Bryn Mawr	**19 (70)**	**27**	**17 (60)**	**28**	**20 (76)**	**26**
Swarthmore	**12 (75)**	**16**	**9 (52)**	**17**	**13 (81)**	**16**
Manayunk	**22 (64)**	**34**	**26 (83)**	**31**	**24 (72)**	**33**

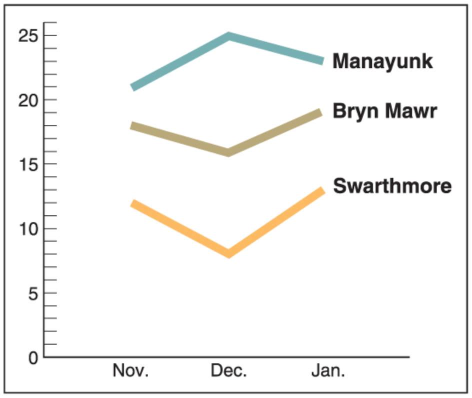
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's



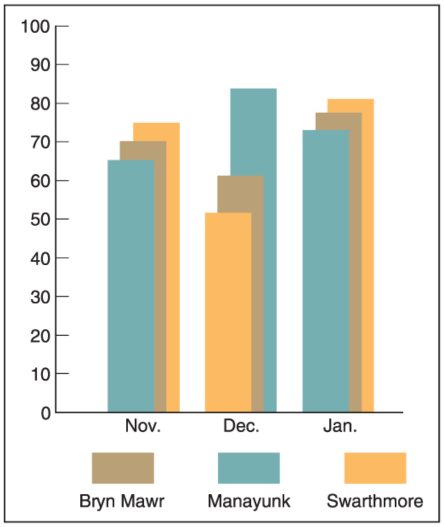
a. Number of railcars disabled, November–January



b. Number of railcars disabled in November



c. Number of railcars disabled by electrical problems, November–January



d. Range in percentage of railcars, disabled by electrical problems, November–January

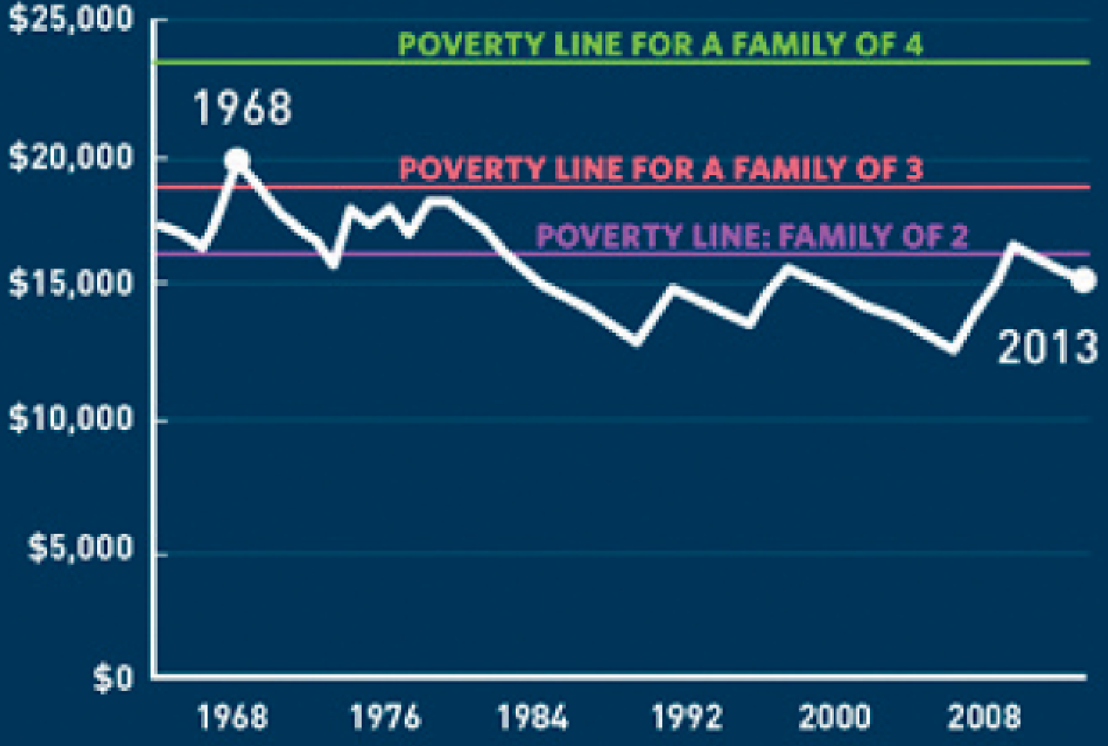
The topmost part contains a table showing rail lines that are disabled by electrical problems in percentages during the months of November, December, and January. Each month shows disabled percentages and total disabled. To the left is the name of the rail line, and data for each month are as follows. Bryn Mawr: 19 (70), 27; 17 (60), 28; 20 (76), 26. Swarthmore: 12 (75), 16; 9 (52), 17; 13 (81), 16. Manayunk: 22 (64), 34; 26 (83), 31; 24 (72), 33.A stacked vertical bar graph at center left is marked “a” and is titled Number of railcars disabled, November through January. The x-axis shows months and the y-axis is labeled from 0 to 80 in increments of 10. Electrical is shown as orange, and Other is grey. Each month shows the data for both types with electrical being the bulk of disabilities.At center right is a horizontal stacked bar graph marked “b” and is titled Number of railcars disabled in November. Electrical is shown as orange, and Other is grey. The names of the rail lines are at the left. Data are labeled electrical, other, and total, respectively. Data are as follows: Bryn Mawr, 19, 8, 27; Swarthmore, 12, 4, 16; Manayunk, 22, 12, 34.At the bottom left is a line graph labeled “c” and titled Number of railcars disabled by electrical problems, November through January. The x-axis shows the months, and the y-axis is labeled 0 to 25 in increments of 5. The line with the highest number is Manayunk, then Bryn Mawr, then Swarthmore.At the bottom right is a cluster bar graph labeled “d” and titled Range in percentage of railcars, disabled by electrical problems, November through January. It shows all three railways for each month on the x-axis, and the y-axis is labeled 0 to 100 percent in increments of 10. In November, Swarthmore has the highest percentage, in December

Manayunk has the highest, and in January again Swarthmore has the highest. Bryn Mawr falls in the middle during all three months.

Return to Figure 8.6 Different Graphics Emphasizing Different Points

Extended description for An infographic, titled The Current Minimum Wage Is Not Enough for Workers and Their Families to Get Out of Poverty, contains a line graph showing changes to the poverty line over time

THE CURRENT MINIMUM WAGE IS NOT ENOUGH FOR WORKERS AND THEIR FAMILIES TO GET OUT OF POVERTY



Annual minimum wage earnings and poverty line for families of two to four, 1964–2013 (2013 dollars)

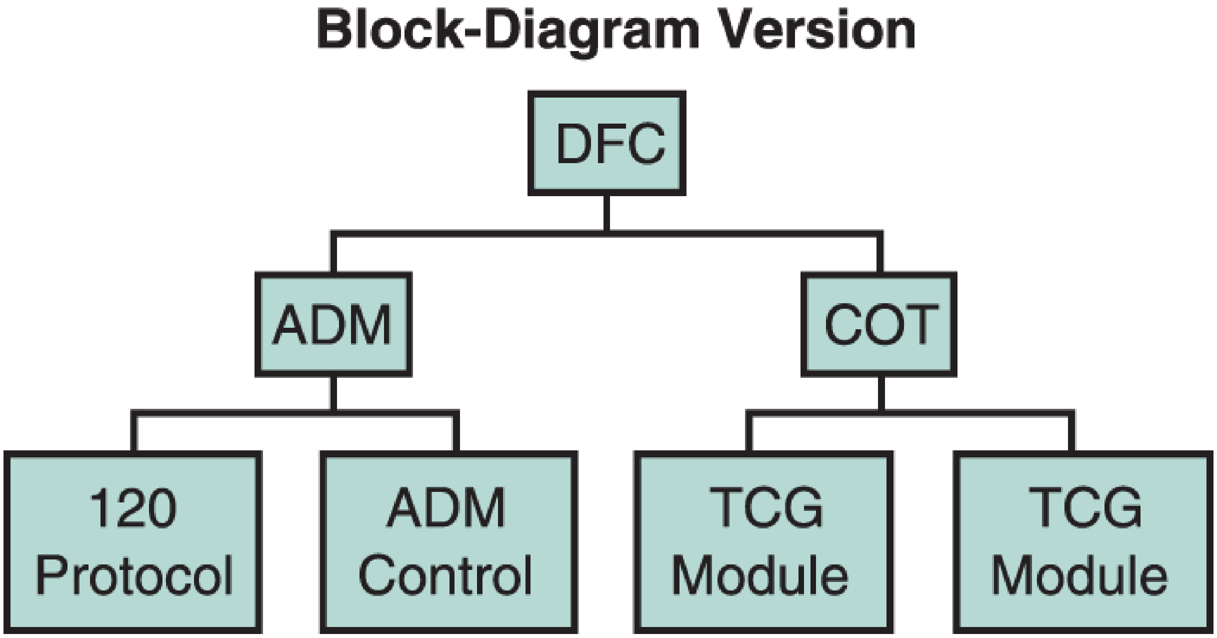
#RaiseTheWage

SOURCE: EPI

The x-axis shows years 1968 through 2008 in increments of 8 years. The y-axis shows 0 dollars to 25,000 dollars in increments of 5,000 dollars. Three lines parallel to the horizontal axis show the poverty lines for families of 4, 3, and 2 people, at about 24,000 dollars, 19,000 dollars, and 16,000 dollars, respectively. A jagged line begins at about 17,000 dollars, spikes in 1968 to 20,000 dollars, then shows drops and spikes to less than 15,000 dollars around 1992, then fluctuates to end at about 15,000 dollars in 2013.The bottom of the infographic reads, Annual minimum wage earnings and poverty line for families of two to four 1964 through 2013 (2013 dollars).

Return to An infographic, titled The Current Minimum Wage Is Not Enough for Workers and Their Families to Get Out of Poverty, contains a line graph showing changes to the poverty line over time

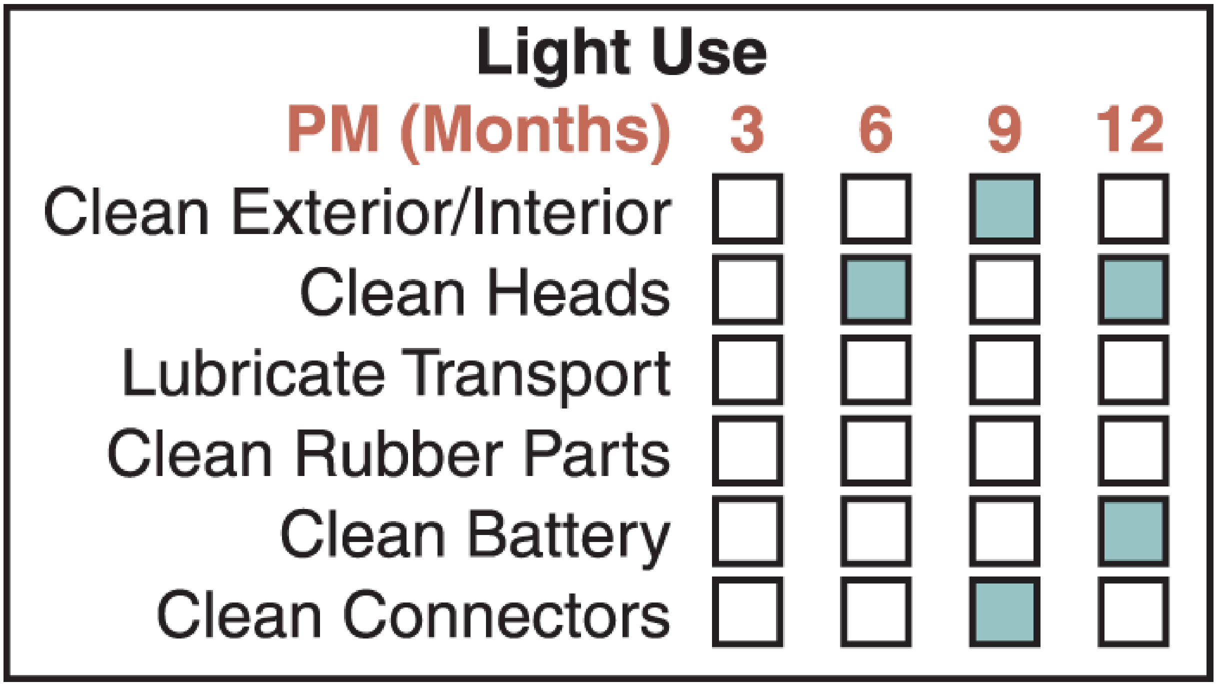
Extended description for An illustration titled Block-Diagram Version shows an organizational chart


Block-Diagram Version
DFC
ADM
COT
120 Protocol
ADM Control
TCG Module
TCG Module

The top of the diagram, labeled D F C, breaks into two, A D M and C O T. They in turn split into two each; A D M splits into 120 Protocol and A D M Control. C O T splits into two T C G Modules.

Return to An illustration titled Block-Diagram Version shows an organizational chart

Extended description for A table with the title Light Use contains check marks for various items



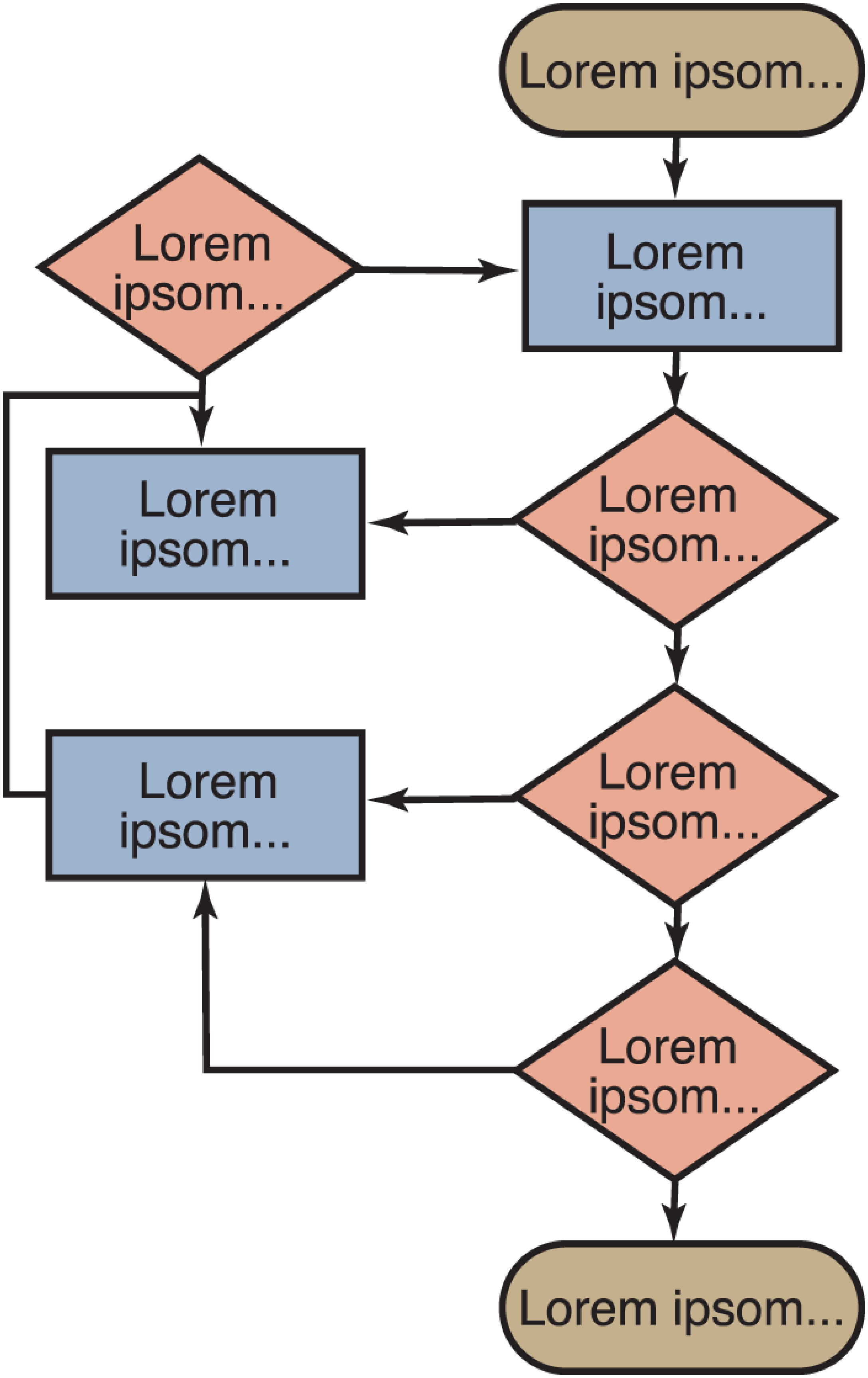
Light Use

PM (Months)	3	6	9	12
Clean Exterior/Interior	☐	☐	▨	☐
Clean Heads	☐	▨	☐	▨
Lubricate Transport	☐	☐	☐	☐
Clean Rubber Parts	☐	☐	☐	☐
Clean Battery	☐	☐	☐	▨
Clean Connectors	☐	☐	▨	☐

The headings read PM (Months), 3, 6, 9, 12. Row titles are as follows: Clean Exterior/Interior, Clean Heads, Lubricate Transport, Clean Rubber Parts, Clean Battery, Clean Connectors. Each row has a check box under each heading. Some of the check boxes are colored in.

Return to A table with the title Light Use contains check marks for various items

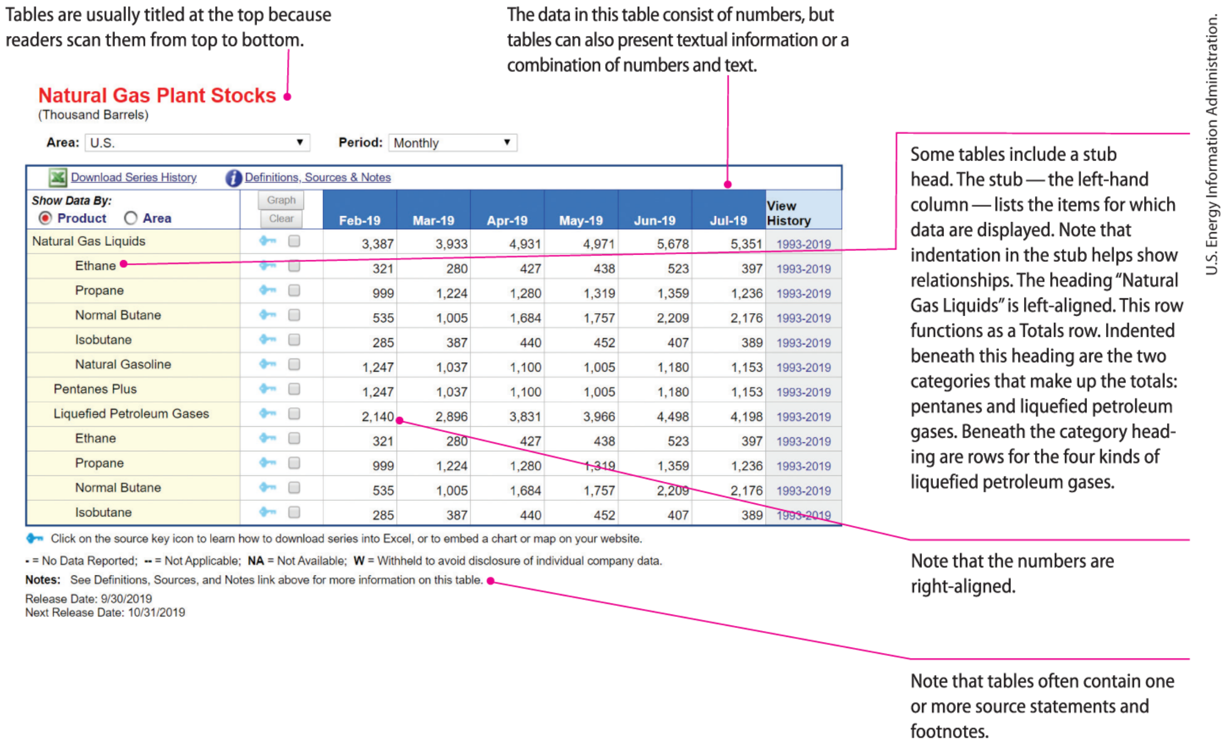
Extended description for A sample flowchart demonstrates use of various symbols


Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...
Lorem ipsom...

The flowchart starts with an oval at the top right, and arrows move down to a rectangle, then three diamonds, then, another oval. The two first diamonds also have arrows pointing left to two rectangles, and the bottom diamond also points to the bottom rectangle. The bottom rectangle points to another diamond at the top left, which points to the first rectangle on the right and also down to the top rectangle on the left. All these geometric shapes read, Lorem ipsom ellipsis.

Return to A sample flowchart demonstrates use of various symbols

Extended description for Figure 8.7 Parts of a Table



Tables are usually titled at the top because readers scan them from top to bottom.

The data in this table consist of numbers, but tables can also present textual information or a combination of numbers and text.

Natural Gas Plant Stocks

(Thousand Barrels)

Area: U.S. ▼ **Period:** Monthly ▼

Download Series History Definitions, Sources & Notes

Show Data By: ● **Product** ○ **Area**	Graph Clear	Feb-19	Mar-19	Apr-19	May-19	Jun-19	Jul-19	View History
Natural Gas Liquids	☐	3,387	3,933	4,931	4,971	5,678	5,351	1993-2019
Ethane	☐	321	280	427	438	523	397	1993-2019
Propane	☐	999	1,224	1,280	1,319	1,359	1,236	1993-2019
Normal Butane	☐	535	1,005	1,684	1,757	2,209	2,176	1993-2019
Isobutane	☐	285	387	440	452	407	389	1993-2019
Natural Gasoline	☐	1,247	1,037	1,100	1,005	1,180	1,153	1993-2019
Pentanes Plus	☐	1,247	1,037	1,100	1,005	1,180	1,153	1993-2019
Liquefied Petroleum Gases	☐	2,140	2,896	3,831	3,966	4,498	4,198	1993-2019
Ethane	☐	321	280	427	438	523	397	1993-2019
Propane	☐	999	1,224	1,280	1,319	1,359	1,236	1993-2019
Normal Butane	☐	535	1,005	1,684	1,757	2,209	2,176	1993-2019
Isobutane	☐	285	387	440	452	407	389	1993-2019

Click on the source key icon to learn how to download series into Excel, or to embed a chart or map on your website.

- = No Data Reported; -- = Not Applicable; **NA** = Not Available; **W** = Withheld to avoid disclosure of individual company data.

Notes: See Definitions, Sources, and Notes link above for more information on this table.

Release Date: 9/30/2019
Next Release Date: 10/31/2019

Some tables include a stub head. The stub — the left-hand column — lists the items for which data are displayed. Note that indentation in the stub helps show relationships. The heading "Natural Gas Liquids" is left-aligned. This row functions as a Totals row. Indented beneath this heading are the two categories that make up the totals: pentanes and liquefied petroleum gases. Beneath the category heading are rows for the four kinds of liquefied petroleum gases.

Note that the numbers are right-aligned.

Note that tables often contain one or more source statements and footnotes.

U.S. Energy Information Administration.

The table is titled Natural Gas Plant Stocks in thousands of barrels. Text pointing to the title reads, Tables are usually titled at the top because readers scan them from top to bottom. The table is below the title with a list of products to the left and months listed as column headings from February 2019 through July 2019. Text pointing to the months reads, The data in this table consist of numbers, but tables can also present textual information or a combination of numbers and text. The last column heading is View History. Text pointing to the list of products reads, Some tables include a stub head. The stub — the left-hand column — lists the items for which data are displayed. Note that indentation in the stub helps show relationships. The heading “Natural Gas Liquids” is left-aligned. This row functions as a Totals row. Indented beneath this heading are the two categories that make up the totals: pentanes and liquefied petroleum gases. Beneath the category heading are rows for the four kinds of liquefied petroleum gases. Columns under the months display numbers. Text pointing to these reads, Note that the numbers are right-aligned. Below the table is text that reads, key icon Click on the source key icon to learn how to download series into Excel or to embed a chart or map on your website. Hyphen equals no data reported, dash equals not applicable; N A equals not available; W equals withheld to avoid disclosure of individual company data. Notes: see definitions, sources and notes link above for more information on this table. Release date: 9 slash 30 slash 2019. Next release date: 10 slash 31 slash 2019. Text pointing to the notes reads, Note that tables often contain one or more source statements and footnotes.

Return to Figure 8.7 Parts of a Table

Extended description for Figure 8.8 Structures of Horizontal and Vertical Bar Graphs

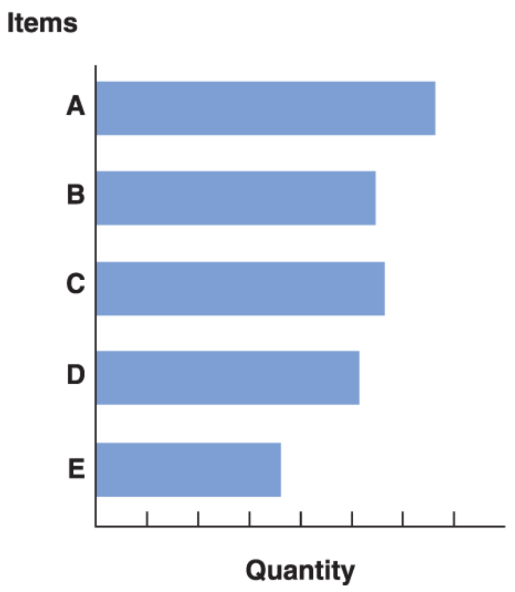


Figure 1. Horizontal graph

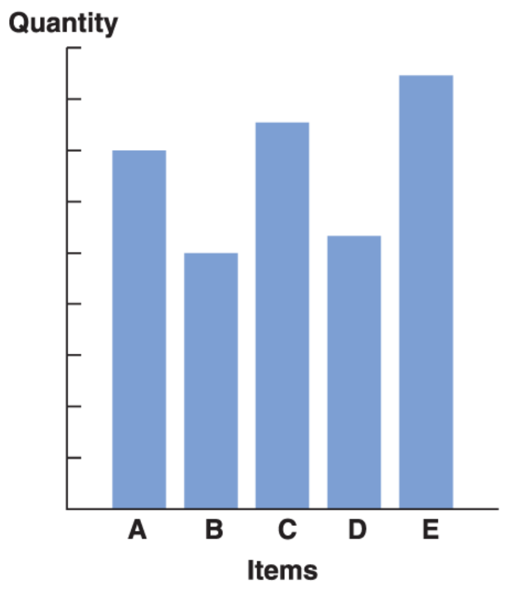


Figure 1. Vertical graph

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Bars on the horizontal chart are marked A, B, C, D, and E on the y-axis. There are tic marks on the x-axis. Bars on the vertical graph are labeled A, B, C, D, and E on the x-axis. There are tic marks on the y-axis.

Return to Figure 8.8 Structures of Horizontal and Vertical Bar Graphs

Extended description for Figure 8.9 Effective Bar Graph with Grid Lines

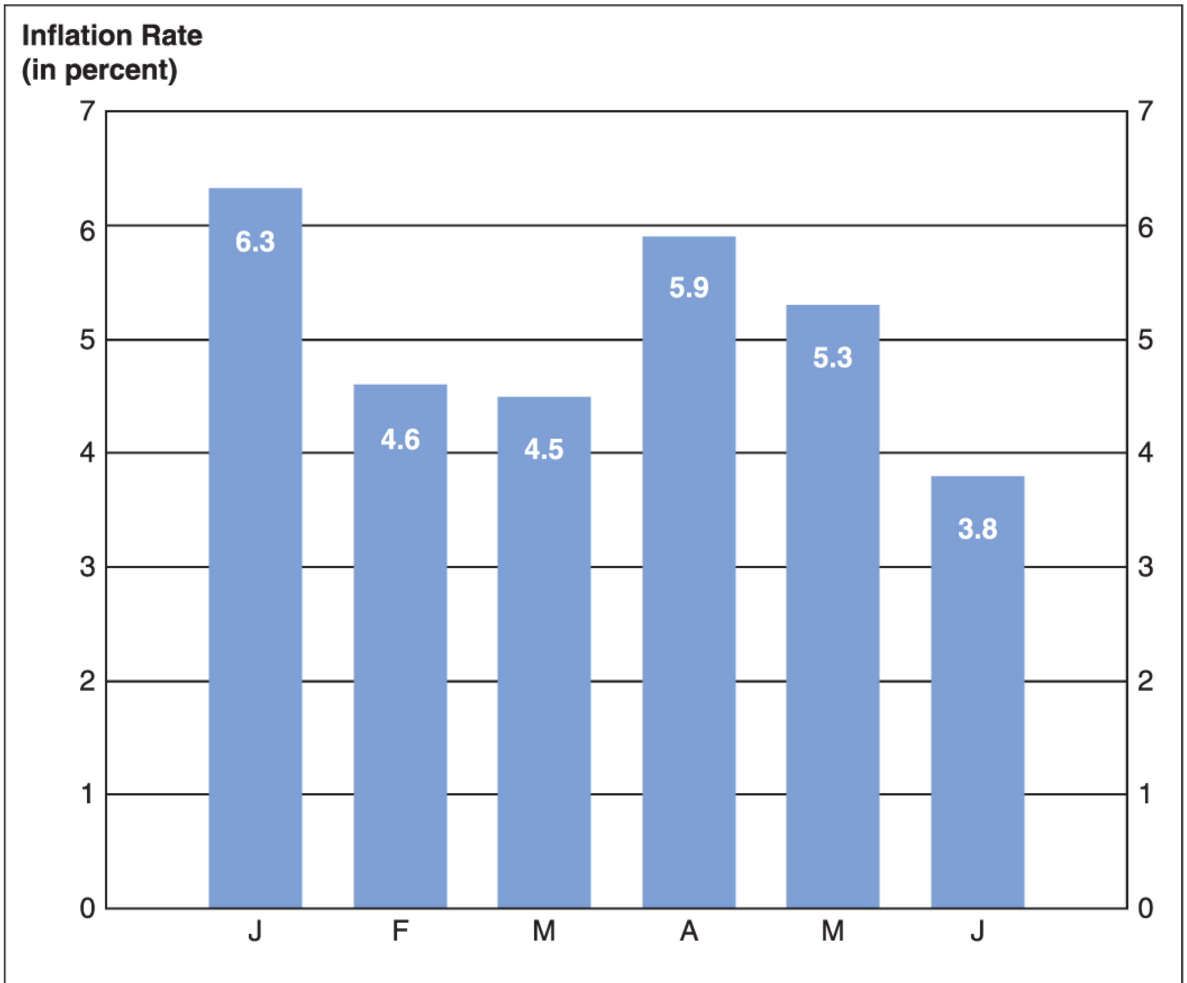


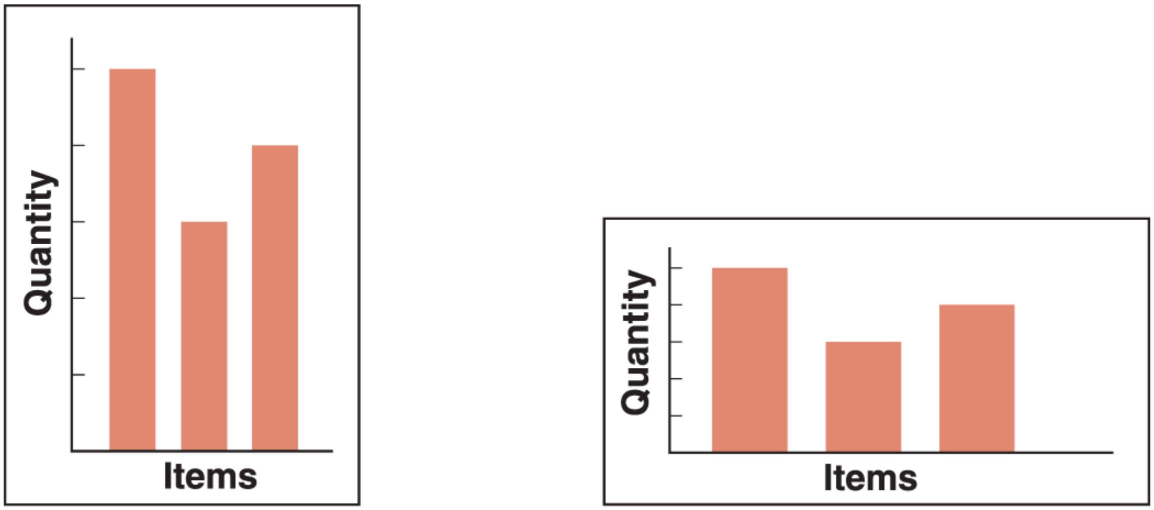
Figure 1. Tri-County Inflation Rate This Year to Date

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The y-axis shows Inflation rate in percent, with values from 0 through 7. The x-axis shows time in months. Bars show inflation as follows: January: 6.3 percent; February 4.6 percent; March 4.5 percent; April 5.9 percent; May 5.3 percent; June 3.8 percent.

Return to Figure 8.9 Effective Bar Graph with Grid Lines

Extended description for Two sample bar graphs show how to proportion these graphs



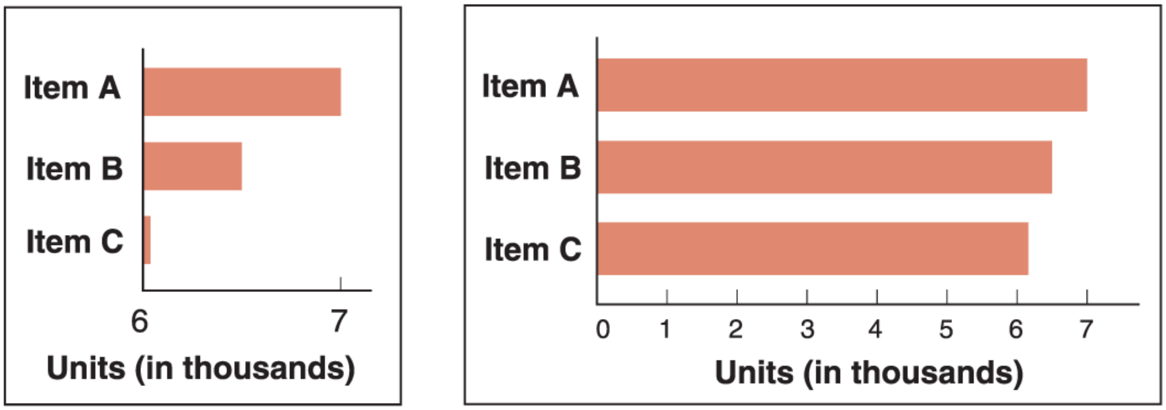
a. Excessively long vertical axis **b.** Excessively long horizontal axis

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first bar graph is labeled a. Excessively long vertical axis. It is tall and narrow. The second is labeled b. Excessively long horizontal axis. It is short and wide. Both graphs show Items as the x-axis label and Quantity as the y-axis label with five tic marks on the y-axis and three bars of varying heights.

Return to Two sample bar graphs show how to proportion these graphs

Extended description for Two horizontal bar graphs show accurate and misleading axes



c. Misleading

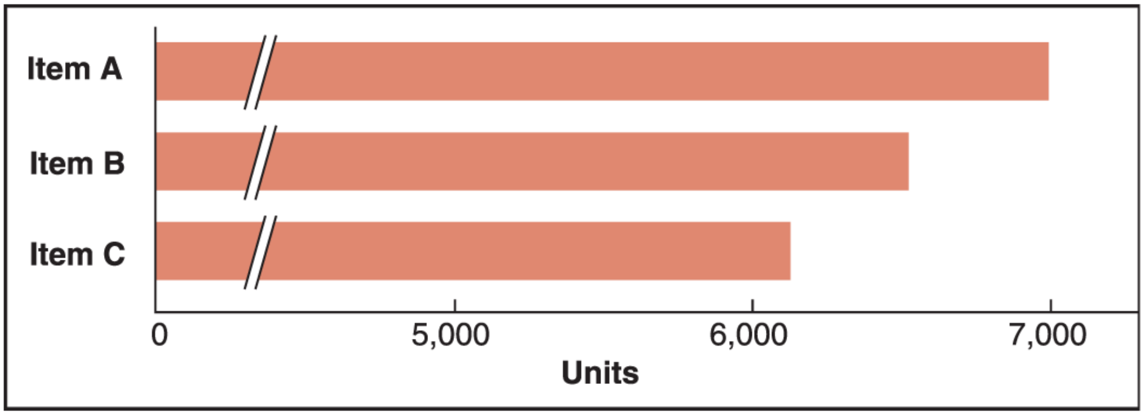
d. Accurately representative

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first graph is labeled, c. Misleading. The x-axis shows Units in thousands. It starts at 6 and goes to 7. The y-axis shows Items A, B, and C. Data are as follows: A, 7; B, 6.5; C, 6.2. Item C appears to be a small fraction of items A and B. The second graph is labeled, d. Accurately representative. The x-axis shows Units in thousands from 0 to 7 in increments of 1. The y-axis shows Items A, B, and C. Data are identical to the first graph, but now the bars are accurately proportioned and all close to the same length.

Return to Two horizontal bar graphs show accurate and misleading axes

Extended description for A sample horizontal bar graph shows how to represent data if it is not practical to start the quantity scale at zero

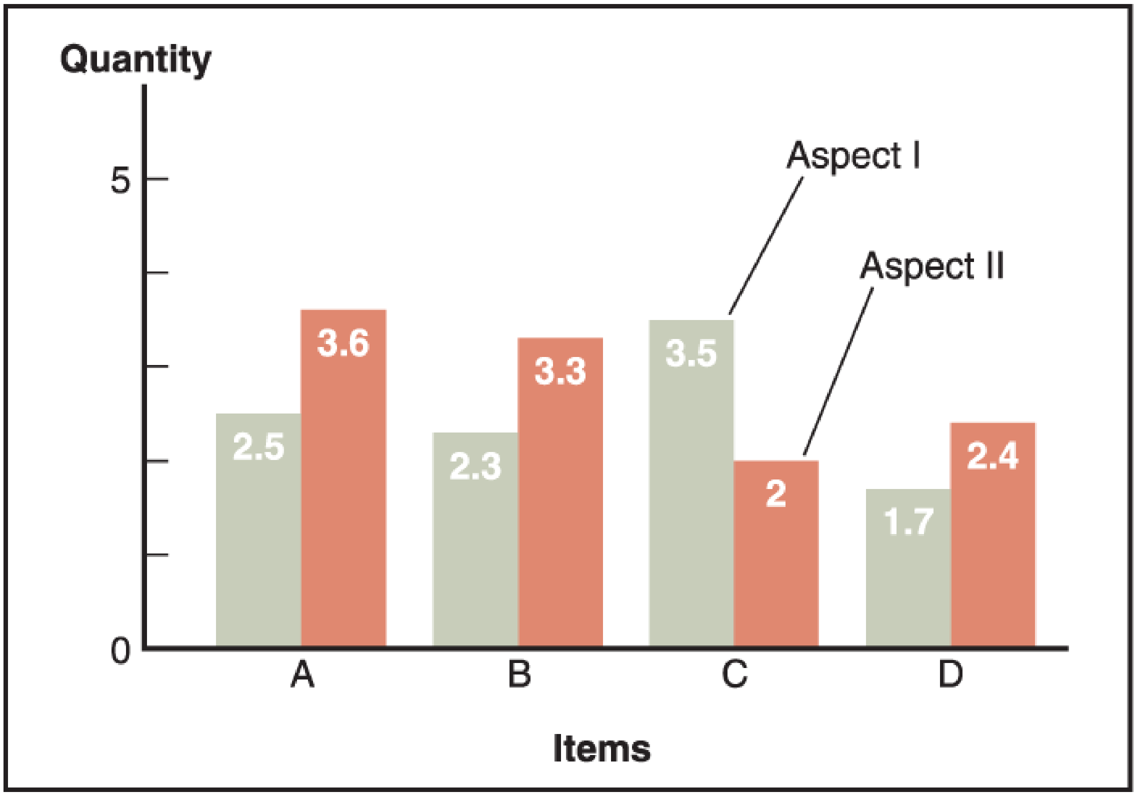


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The x-axis reads, 0; 5,000; 6,000; 7,000 in Units. The y-axis shows from top to bottom Items A, B, and C. The bars are broken with double slash lines between 0 and 5,000. Approximate data are as follows: A, 7; B, 6.5; C, 6.2.

Return to A sample horizontal bar graph shows how to represent data if it is not practical to start the quantity scale at zero

Extended description for A sample grouped bar graph illustrates the format

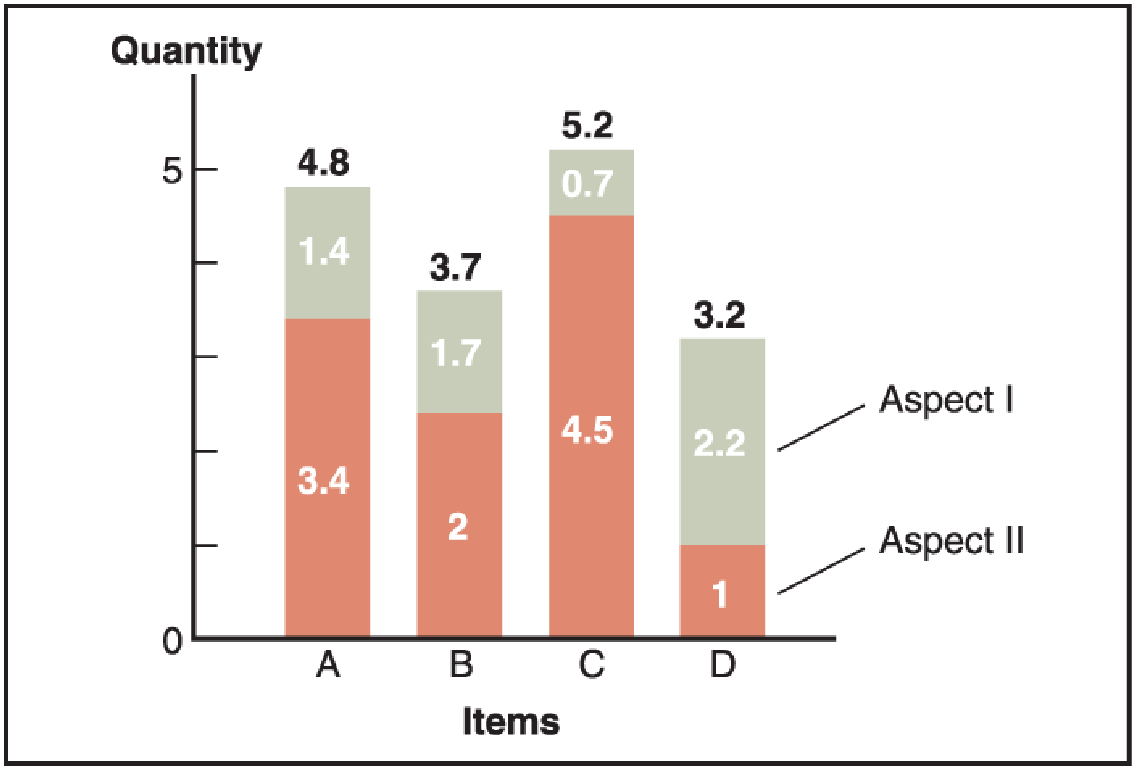


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The x-axis shows Items A, B, C, and D. The y-axis is labeled Quantity and reads 0 to 5 in increments of 1. Each item on the x-axis has two bars, with space between each item group. The bars on the left are labeled Aspect 1, and those on the right are labeled Aspect II. Data are as follows. Aspect 1: 2.5; 2.3; 3.5; 1.7. Aspect 2: 3.6; 3.3; 2; 2.4.

Return to A sample grouped bar graph illustrates the format

Extended description for A sample subdivided bar graph illustrates the format

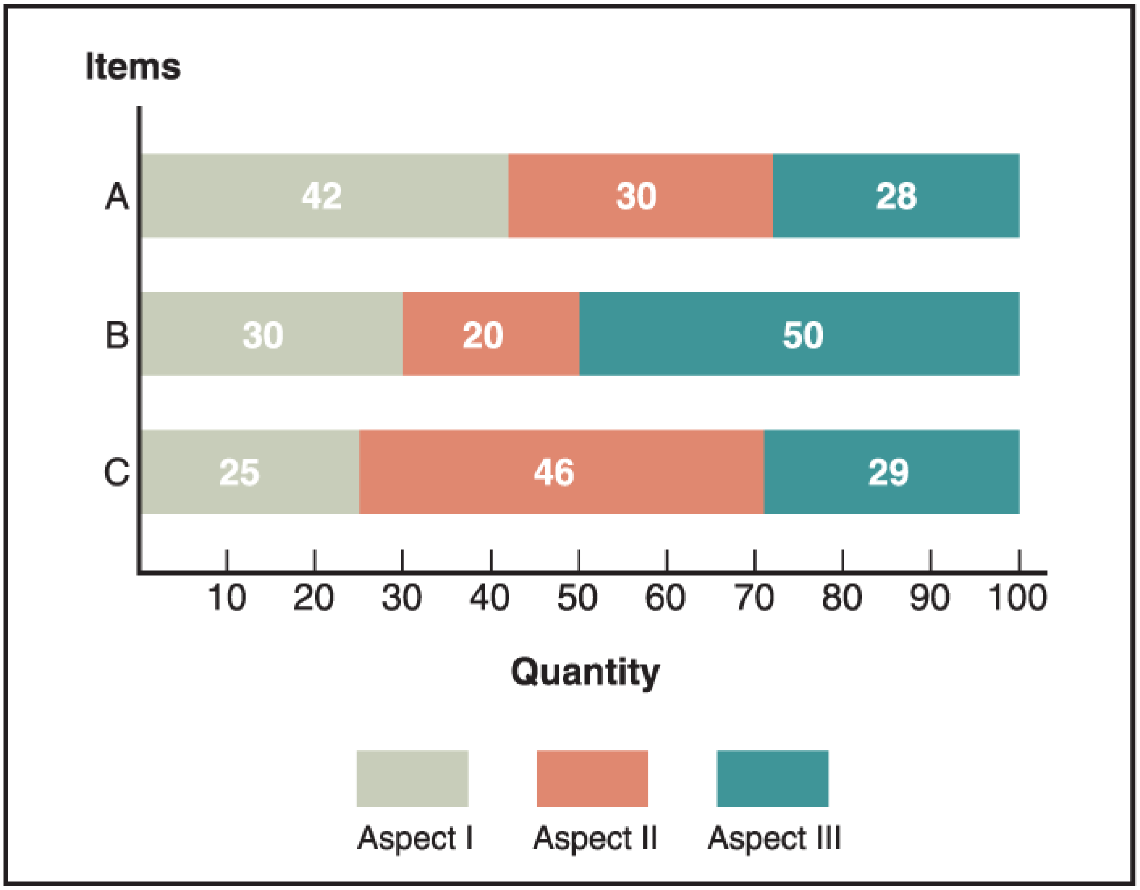


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The x-axis reads, Items A, B, C, and D. The y-axis is labeled Quantity and reads 0 to 5 in increments of 1. Each item on the x-axis has a vertical bar subdivided into two differently colored segments stacked on each other. The top segments are labeled Aspect 1, and the bottom segments are labeled Aspect II. Data are as follows. Aspect 1: 1.4; 1.7;0.7; 2.2. Aspect II: 3.4; 2; 4.5; 1. Totals: 4.8, 3.7, 5.2, 3.2.

[Return to A sample subdivided bar graph illustrates the format]

Extended description for A sample 100 percent horizontal bar graph illustrates the format

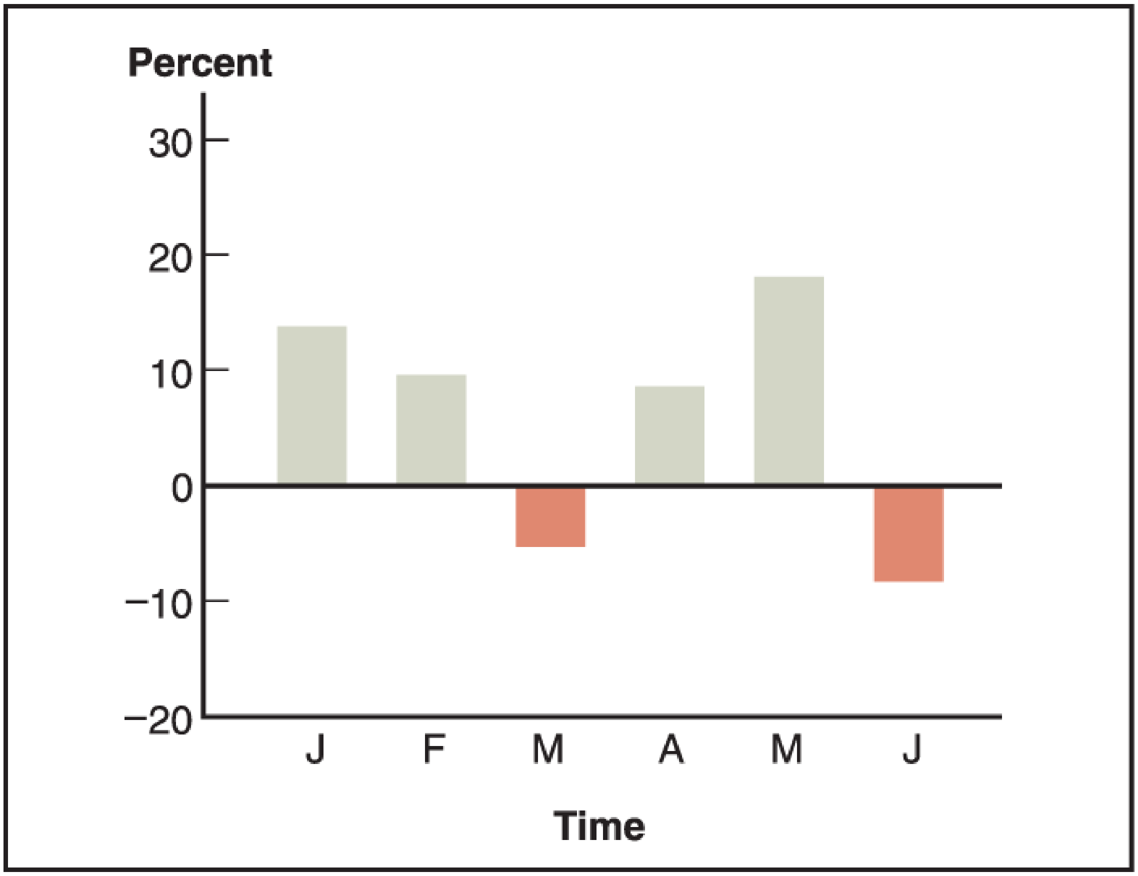


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The x axis reads Quantity and ranges from 10 to100 in increments of 10. The y axis reads, Items A, B, and C. Each item has a horizontal bar totaling 100 percent, subdivided into three differently colored sections of various lengths. A legend identifies the sections as Aspect 1, Aspect 2, and Aspect 3. Data for Items A, B, and C, respectively, are as follows: 42, 30, 28; 30, 20, 50; 25, 46, 29.

Return to A sample 100 percent horizontal bar graph illustrates the format

Extended description for A sample bar graph shows deviation from a norm

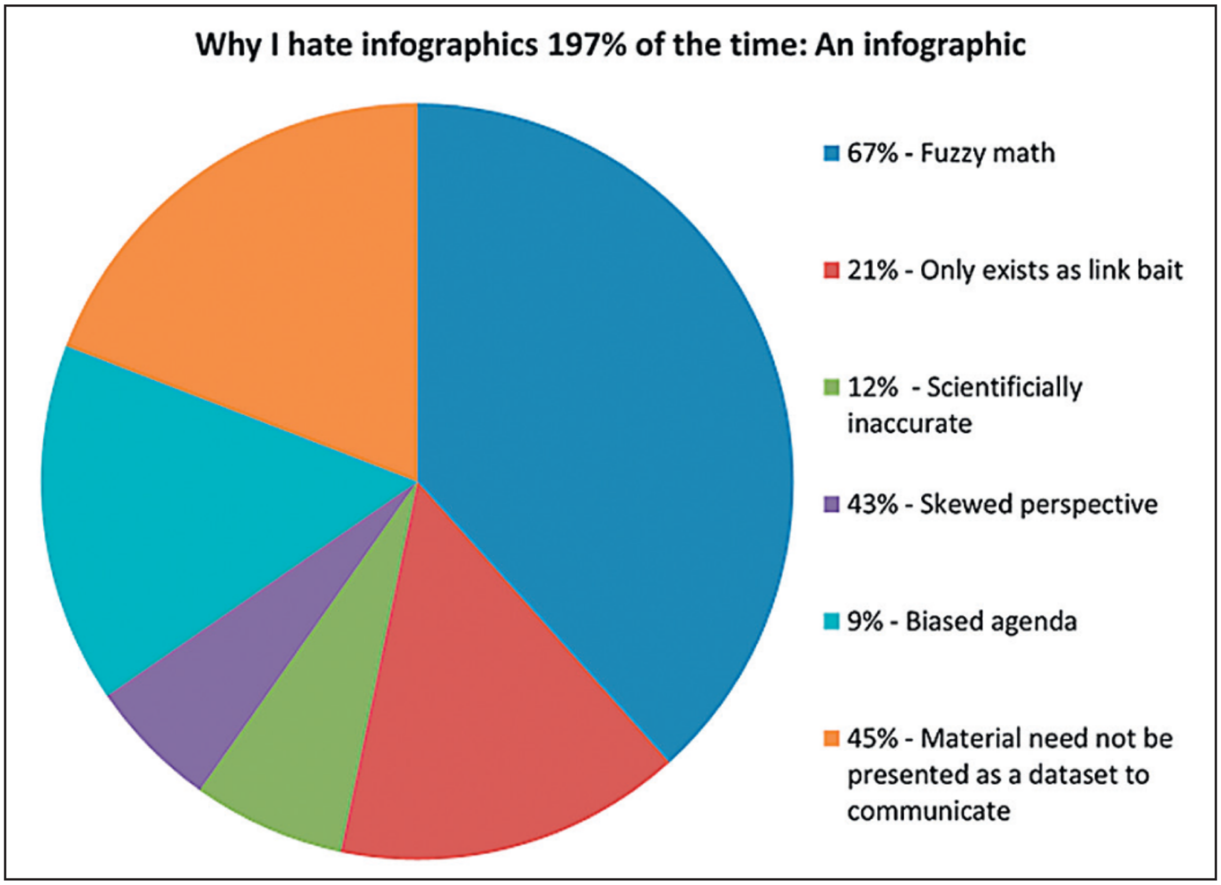


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e,
© 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The y-axis shows percentages from negative 20 to 30 in increments of 10. The x-axis shows various months and is placed at the zero mark. Some bars show positive deviation (above the zero line), and some show negative deviation (below the zero line).

Return to A sample bar graph shows deviation from a norm

Extended description for A Critique of Infographics



The pie chart is titled, Why I hate infographics 197 percent of the time: An infographic. It is divided into six slices of different colors and widths. A legend presents data as follows: 67 percent: fuzzy math; 21 percent: only exists as link bait; 12 percent: scientifically inaccurate; 43 percent: skewed perspective; 9 percent: biased agenda; 45 percent: material need not be presented as a dataset to communicate.

Return to A Critique of Infographics

Extended description for Figure 8.12 Line Graph

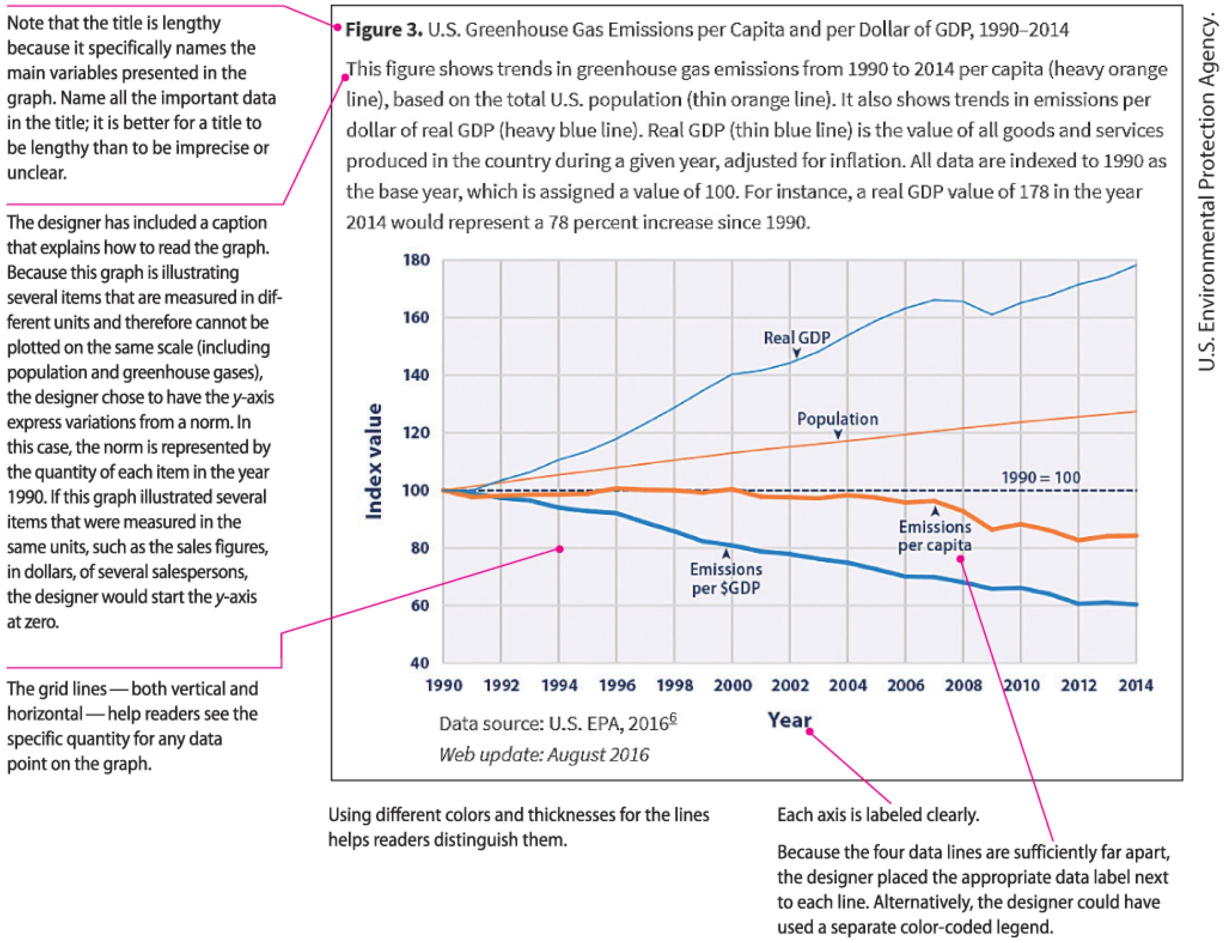


Figure 3. U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions per Capita and per Dollar of GDP, 1990–2014

This figure shows trends in greenhouse gas emissions from 1990 to 2014 per capita (heavy orange line), based on the total U.S. population (thin orange line). It also shows trends in emissions per dollar of real GDP (heavy blue line). Real GDP (thin blue line) is the value of all goods and services produced in the country during a given year, adjusted for inflation. All data are indexed to 1990 as the base year, which is assigned a value of 100. For instance, a real GDP value of 178 in the year 2014 would represent a 78 percent increase since 1990.

Data source: U.S. EPA, 2016[6]

Web update: August 2016

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Note that the title is lengthy because it specifically names the main variables presented in the graph. Name all the important data in the title; it is better for a title to be lengthy than to be imprecise or unclear.

The designer has included a caption that explains how to read the graph. Because this graph is illustrating several items that are measured in different units and therefore cannot be plotted on the same scale (including population and greenhouse gases), the designer chose to have the *y*-axis express variations from a norm. In this case, the norm is represented by the quantity of each item in the year 1990. If this graph illustrated several items that were measured in the same units, such as the sales figures, in dollars, of several salespersons, the designer would start the *y*-axis at zero.

The grid lines — both vertical and horizontal — help readers see the specific quantity for any data point on the graph.

Using different colors and thicknesses for the lines helps readers distinguish them.

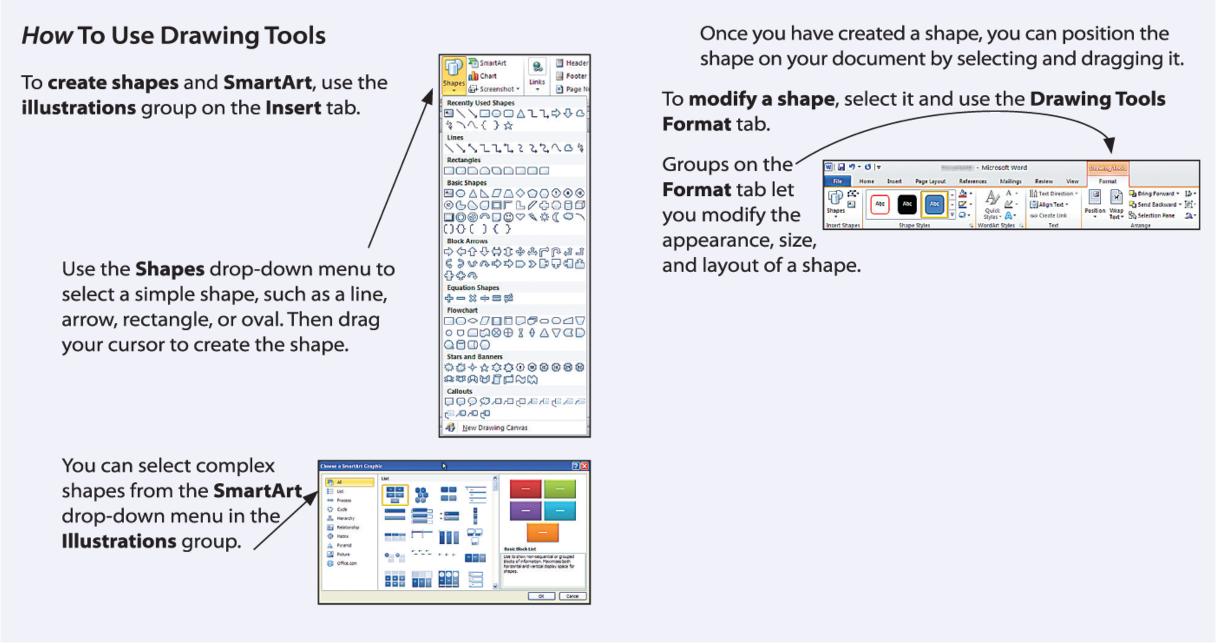
Each axis is labeled clearly.

Because the four data lines are sufficiently far apart, the designer placed the appropriate data label next to each line. Alternatively, the designer could have used a separate color-coded legend.

The caption above the graph reads, This figure shows trends in greenhouse gas emissions from 1990 to 2014 per capita (heavy orange line), based on the total U S population (thin orange line). It also shows trends in emissions per dollar of real G D P (heavy blue line). Real G D P (thin blue line) is the value of all goods and services produced in the country during a given year, adjusted for inflation. All data are indexed to 1990 as the base year, which is assigned a value of 100. For instance, a real G D P value of 178 in the year 2014 would represent a 78 percent increase since 1990. Text pointing to the title reads, Note that the title is lengthy because it specifically names the main variables presented in the graph. Name all the important data in the title; it is better for a title to be lengthy than to be imprecise or unclear. Text pointing to the caption below the title reads, The designer has included a caption that explains how to read the graph. Because this graph is illustrating several items that are measured in different units and therefore cannot be plotted on the same scale (including population and greenhouse gases), the designer chose to have the y-axis express variations from a norm. In this case, the norm is represented by the quantity of each item in the year 1990. If this graph illustrated several items that were measured in the same units, such as the sales figures, in dollars, of several salespersons, the designer would start the y-axis at zero.The graph shows Years on the x-axis from 1990 to 2014 and Index value from 40 to 180 on the y-axis. A grid is shown behind the graph. Corresponding text reads, The grid lines — both vertical and horizontal — help readers see the specific quantity for any data point on the graph. A horizontal dashed line at 100 on the y axis is labeled 1990 equals 100. Four differently colored lines all begin at this baseline in 1990 and diverge, with the thin orange and blue lines rising above it and the thicker lines descending below it.The data source is U S E P A, 2016. Web update: August 2016. A corresponding notation pointing to the year reads, Each axis is labeled clearly. Another notation pointing to Emissions per capita reads, Because the four data lines are sufficiently far apart, the designer placed the appropriate data label next to each line. Alternatively, the designer could have used a separate color-coded legend.

Return to Figure 8.12 Line Graph

Extended description for An infographic shows how to use drawing tools in Microsoft Word



How To Use Drawing Tools

To **create shapes** and **SmartArt**, use the **illustrations** group on the **Insert** tab.

Use the **Shapes** drop-down menu to select a simple shape, such as a line, arrow, rectangle, or oval. Then drag your cursor to create the shape.

You can select complex shapes from the **SmartArt** drop-down menu in the **Illustrations** group.

Once you have created a shape, you can position the shape on your document by selecting and dragging it.

To **modify a shape**, select it and use the **Drawing Tools Format** tab.

Groups on the **Format** tab let you modify the appearance, size, and layout of a shape.

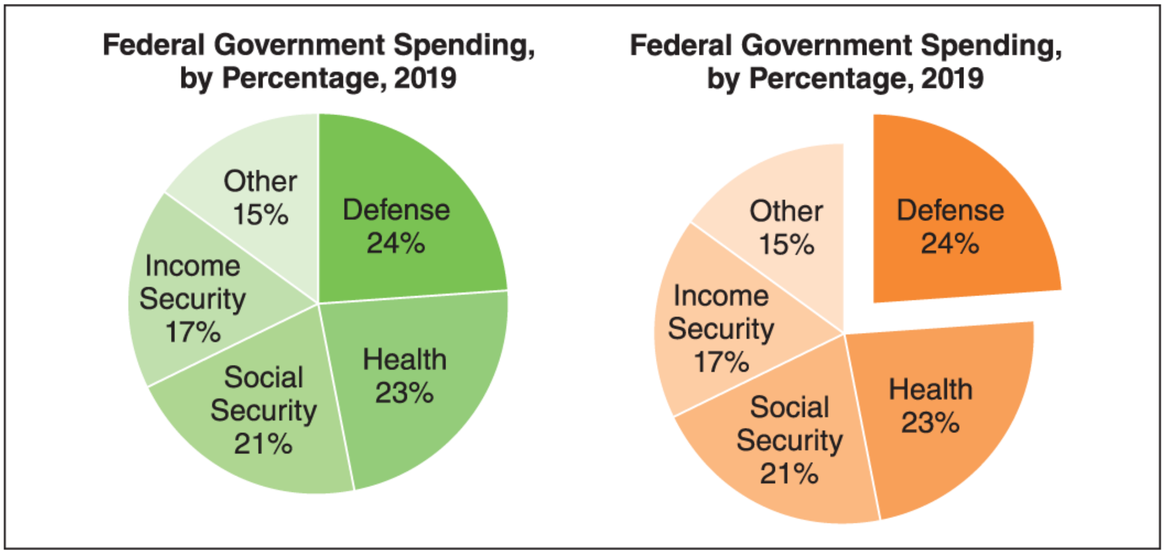
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Screenshot
Links
Header
Footer
Recently Used Shapes
Lines
Rectangles
Basic Shapes
Block Arrows
Equation Shapes
Flowchart
Stars and Banners
Callouts
New Drawing Canvas
Choose a SmartArt Graphic
List
Microsoft Word
Drawing Tools
File
Home
Insert
Page Layout
References
Mailings
Review
View
Format
Insert Shapes
Shape Styles
WordArt Styles
Text
Arrange
Text Direction
Align Text
Create Link
Position
Wrap Text
Bring Forward
Send Backward
Selection Pane
OK
Cancel

The graphic is titled How to use Drawing Tools. Text beneath the title reads, To create shapes and SmartArt, use the illustrations group on the Insert tab. The drop down window for Shapes with multiple options available is shown. Text pointing to the window reads, Use the Shapes drop-down menu to select a simple shape, such as a line, arrow, rectangle, or oval. Then drag your cursor to create the shape.Below this, the graphic also shows the Smart Art drop down menu in the Illustrations group. An arrow pointing to the menu reads, You can select complex shapes from the SmartArt drop-down menu in the Illustrations group. The menu shows the various options for using SmartArt.To the right is an screenshot of the

Groups in the Format tab. Text associated with the image reads, Once you have created a shape, you can position the shape on your document by selecting and dragging it. To modify a shape, select it and use the Drawing Tools Format tab. Groups on the Format tab let you modify the appearance, size, and layout of a shape. An arrow points to the Format tab.

Return to An infographic shows how to use drawing tools in Microsoft Word

Extended description for Figure 8.13 Pie Charts

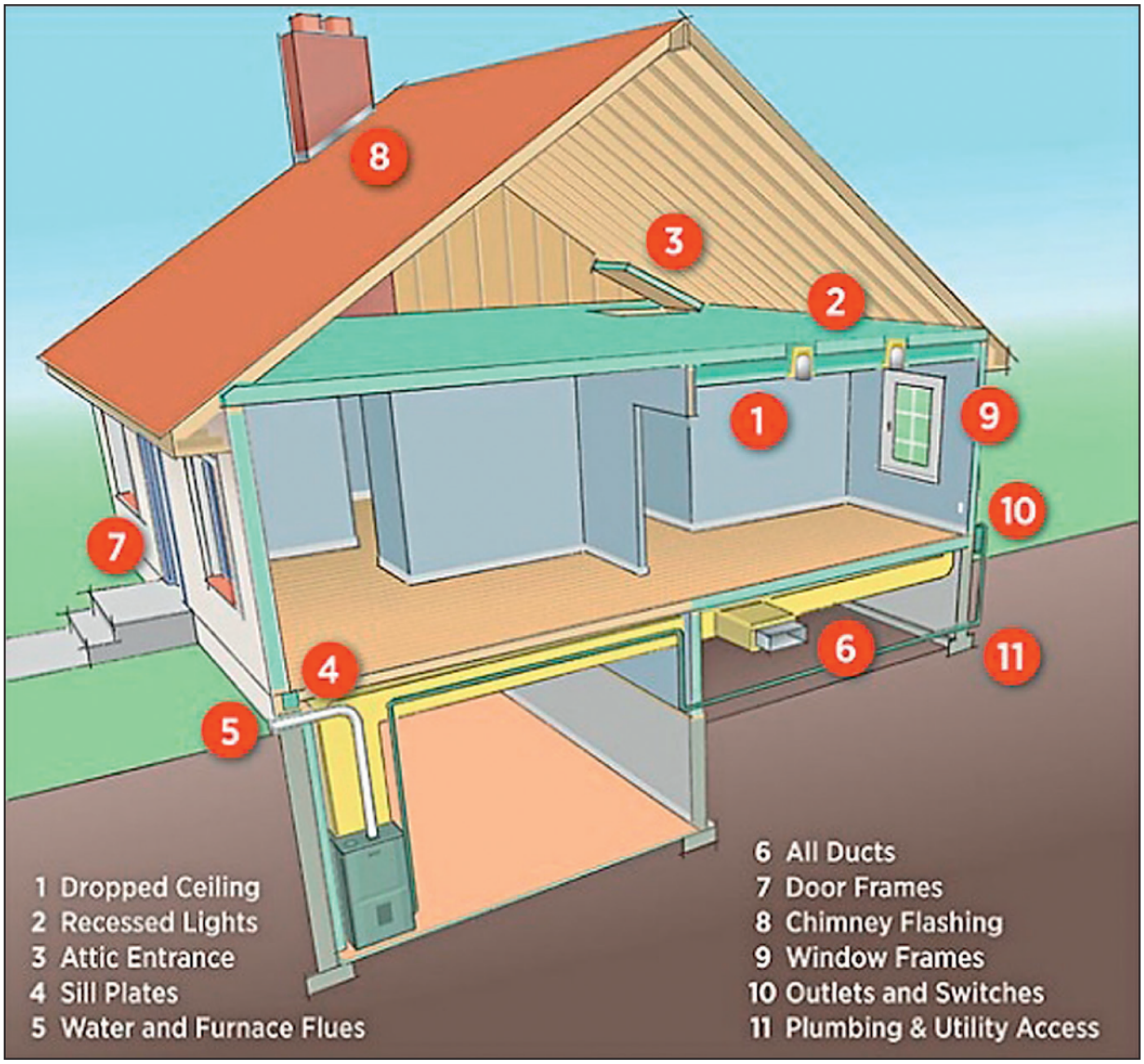


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The charts show Defense, 24 percent; Health, 23 percent; Social Security, 21 percent; Income Security, 17 percent; Other, 15 percent. Defense is the darkest color, and colors diminish in shade with each slice corresponding to the relative amounts. The pie chart on the left shows the pie all together, but the one on the right has the Defense slice broken out for emphasis.

Return to Figure 8.13 Pie Charts

Extended description for Figure 8.14 Diagram


8
3
2
1
9
10
7
6
11
4
5
1 Dropped Ceiling
2 Recessed Lights
3 Attic Entrance
4 Sill Plates
5 Water and Furnace Flues
6 All Ducts
7 Door Frames
8 Chimney Flashing
9 Window Frames
10 Outlets and Switches
11 Plumbing & Utility Access

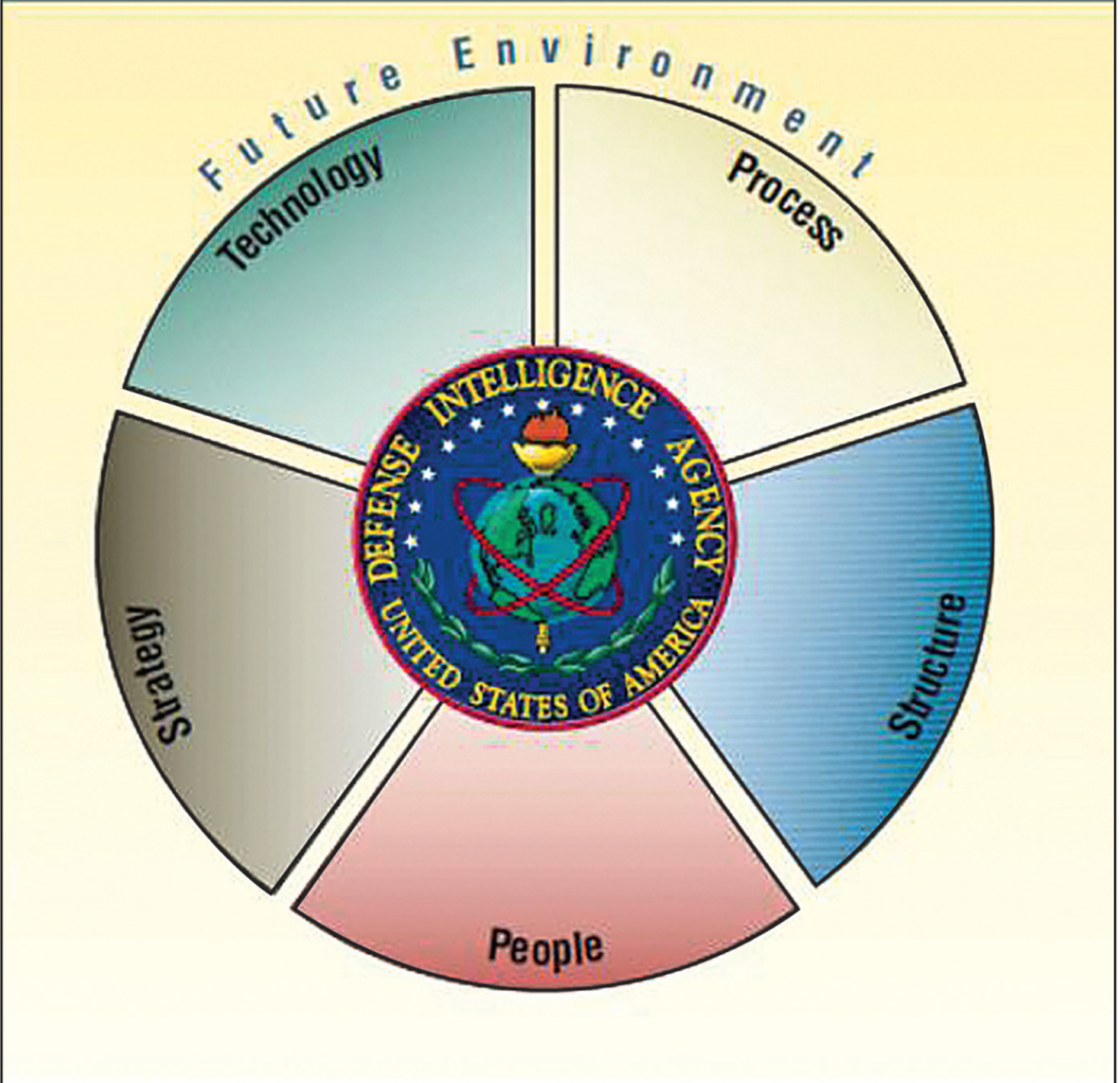
U.S. Department of Energy.

The legend reads as follows: 1 Dropped ceiling, 2 Recessed lights, 3 Attic entrance, 4 Sill plates, 5 Water and furnace flues, 6 All ducts, 7 Door frames, 8 Chimney flashing, 9 Window frames, 10 Outlets and switches, 11 Plumbing and utility access.

Return to Figure 8.14 Diagram

Extended description for An illustration shows a graphic and associated text

Context for Change


Future Environment
Technology
Process
Strategy
Structure
People

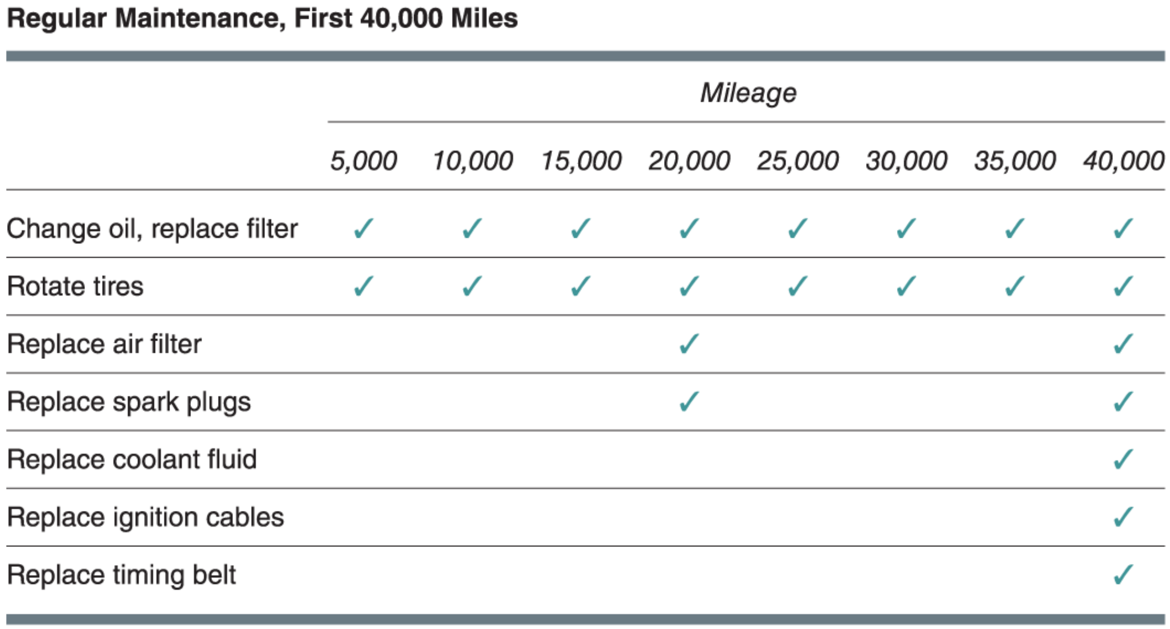
The graphic above illustrates the components of change that the Defense Intelligence Agency will consider as it embraces transformation. In the sections that follow, we discuss each component in turn, beginning with the Future Environment, progressing around the circle and ending with Recommendations.

Defense Intelligence Agency.

The image is titled Context for change. It shows a pie below divided into five broken out sections, each a different color. The entire pie is labeled Future Environment. The sections are labeled Technology, Process, Structure, People, and Strategy. Covering the center of the pie is a logo reading, United States of America, Defense Intelligence Agency with a drawing of the world in the center surrounded by red atomic-shaped loops. A torch is at the top of the world.Text below the graphic reads, The graphic above illustrates components of change that the Defense Intelligence Agency will consider as it embraces transformation. In the sections that follow, we discuss each component in turn, beginning with the Future Environment, progressing around the circle and ending with Recommendations.

Return to An illustration shows a graphic and associated text

Extended description for Figure 8.17 A Table Used To Illustrate a Maintenance Schedule



Regular Maintenance, First 40,000 Miles

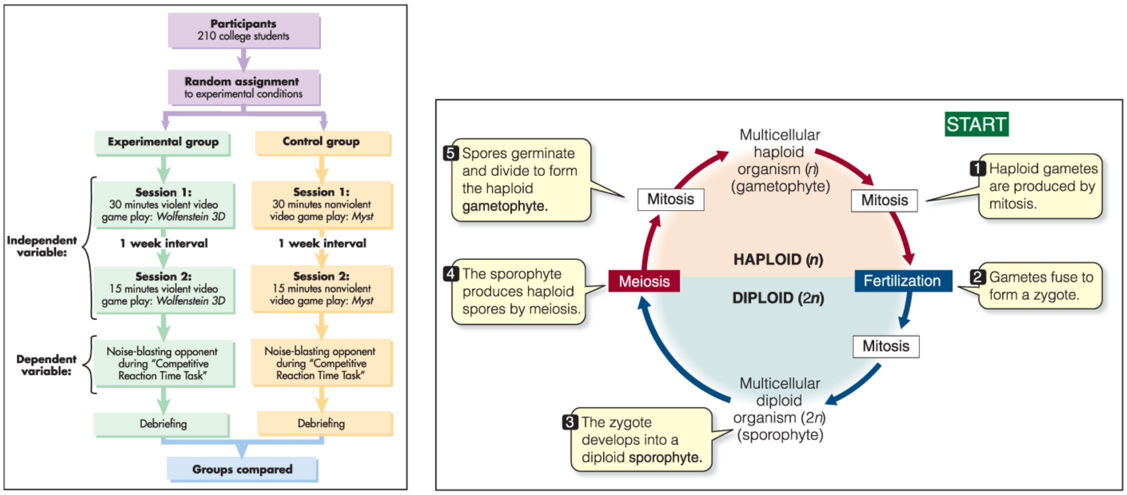
	Mileage							
	5,000	*10,000*	*15,000*	*20,000*	*25,000*	*30,000*	*35,000*	*40,000*
Change oil, replace filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Rotate tires	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace air filter				✓				✓
Replace spark plugs				✓				✓
Replace coolant fluid								✓
Replace ignition cables								✓
Replace timing belt								✓

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The table has seven rows and eight columns. Rows read change oil, replace filter; rotate tires; replace air filter; replace spark plugs; replace coolant fluid; replace ignition cables; replace timing belt. The headings are in miles and read 5,000 through 40,000 in increments of 5,000 miles. There are checkmarks in all columns for the first two rows, change oil, replace filter and rotate tires. Replace air filter and sparkplugs have check marks at 20,000 miles, and at 40,000 miles all rows are checked.

Return to Figure 8.17 A Table Used To Illustrate a Maintenance Schedule

Extended description for Figure 8.18 Flowcharts


Participants
210 college students
Random assignment
to experimental conditions
Experimental group
Control group
Independent variable:
Session 1:
30 minutes violent video game play: Wolfenstein 3D
1 week interval
Session 2:
15 minutes violent video game play: Wolfenstein 3D
Session 1:
30 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst
1 week interval
Session 2:
15 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst
Dependent variable:
Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction Time Task"
Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction Time Task"
Debriefing
Debriefing
Groups compared
START
Multicellular haploid organism (n) (gametophyte)
Mitosis
Mitosis
HAPLOID (n)
DIPLOID (2n)
Meiosis
Fertilization
Mitosis
Multicellular diploid organism (2n) (sporophyte)
1 Haploid gametes are produced by mitosis.
2 Gametes fuse to form a zygote.
3 The zygote develops into a diploid sporophyte.
4 The sporophyte produces haploid spores by meiosis.
5 Spores germinate and divide to form the haploid gametophyte.

a. Open-system flowchart

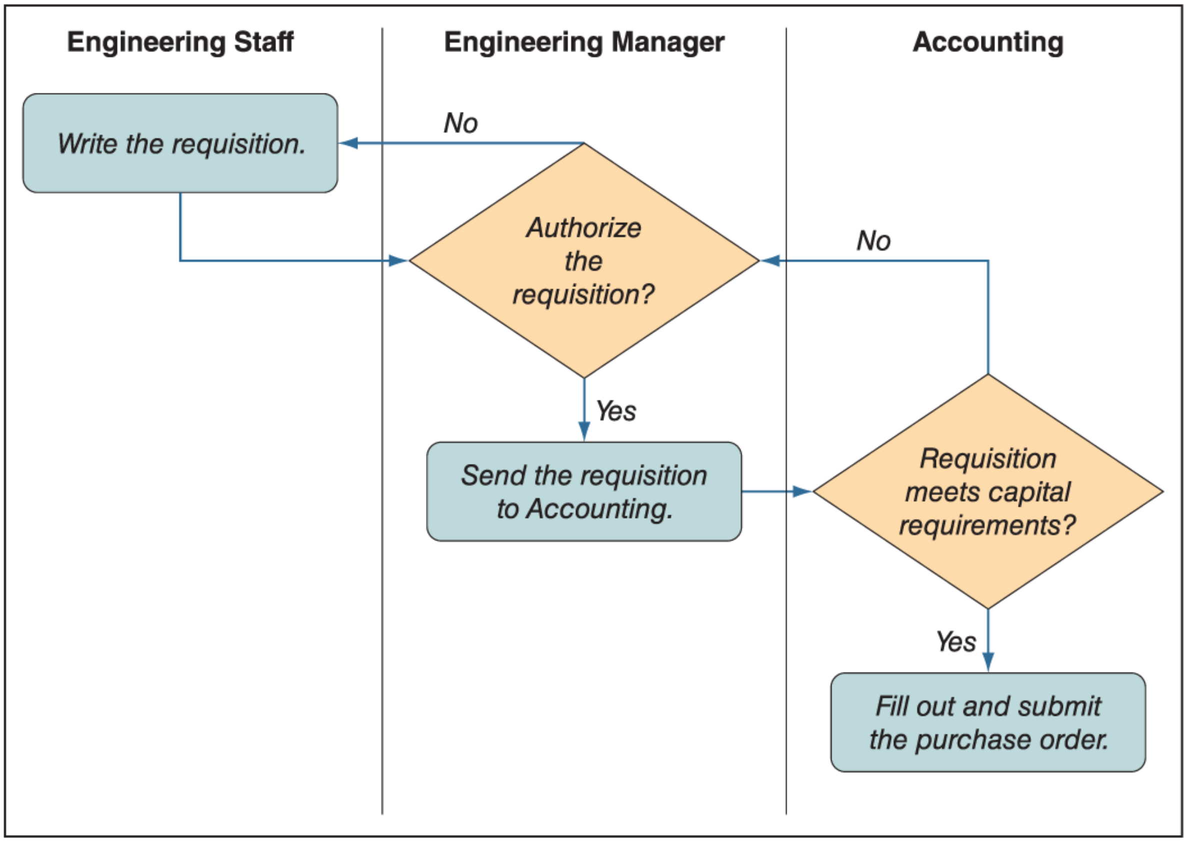
b. Closed-system flowchart

a: From Don Hockenbury and Sandra E. Hockenbury, DISCOVERING PSYCHOLOGY, Sixth Edition, Figure 1.3. Copyright © 2014 by Worth Publishers. Used by permission of the publisher; b: Studyguide for Life the Science of Biology by Purves (2004) Fig. 27.14, p. 594. By permission of Oxford University Press, USA.

The open-system flowchart from top to bottom is as follows. It begins with participants, 210 college students. An arrow points to Random assignment to experimental conditions. It branches into two columns; at the left is the experimental group. Arrows point to the following in succession: Session 1: 30 minutes violent video game play: Wolfstein 3 D; 1 week interval; Session 2: 15 minutes violent video game play: Wolfstein 3 D; Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction time task"; Debriefing. The control group is on the right. Arrows point to Session 1: 30 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst; 1 week interval; Session 2: 15 minutes nonviolent video game play: Myst; Noise-blasting opponent during "Competitive Reaction time task"; Debriefing. Both columns merge into one where groups are compared. Brackets show Sessions 1 and 2 are independent variables. Noise-blasting opponent is a dependent variable.The closed-system flowchart is circular and divided into two sections by a horizontal line: haploid (n) is on top, and diploid (2n) is on bottom. The flow chart begins with mitosis at the upper right, with a label reading, 1 haploid gametes are produced by mitosis. An arrow points clockwise to Fertilization at the right, which is blue and labeled 2 Gametes fuse to form a zygote. An arrow points to mitosis at lower right, which leads to multicellular diploid organism (2n) (sporophyte) at bottom. A label reads, 3 The zygote develops into a diploid sporophyte. An arrow leads to meiosis at left, which is labeled, 4 The sporophyte produces haploid spores by meiosis. An arrow to mitosis at top left, labeled 5 Spores germinate and divide to form the haploid gametophyte. An arrow points to multicellular haploid organism (n) or gametophyte at the top, and the circle is closed by an arrow pointing to the beginning mitosis.

Return to Figure 8.18 Flowcharts

Extended description for Figure 8.19 Deployment Flowchart

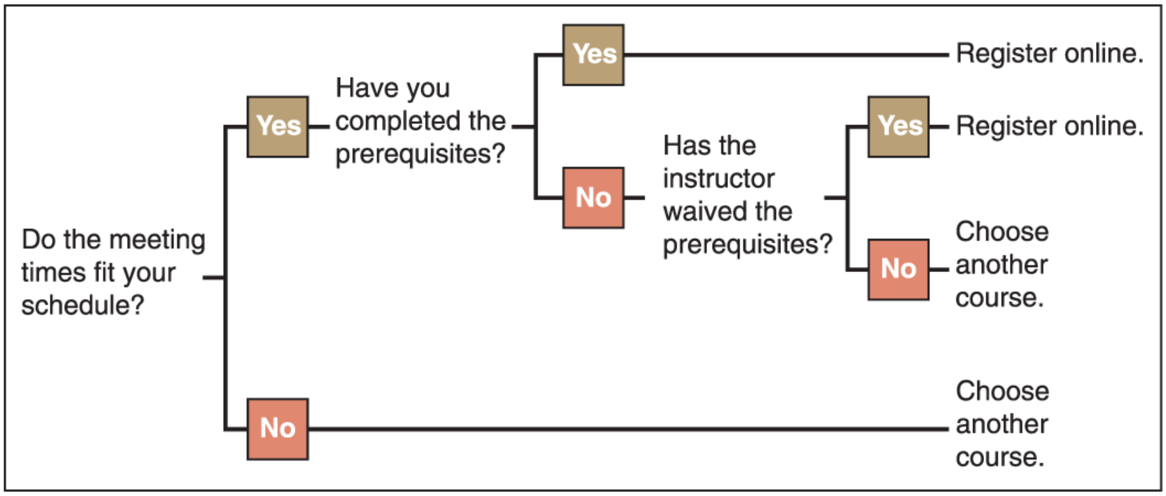

Engineering Staff
Engineering Manager
Accounting
Write the requisition.
No
Authorize the requisition?
No
Yes
Send the requisition to Accounting.
Requisition meets capital requirements?
Yes
Fill out and submit the purchase order.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Engineering staff writes the requisition, which is sent to the engineering manager. If rejected for authorization it goes back to the staff, if authorized, it moves to accounting. If the requistion does not meet capital requirements, it goes back to the manager. If it does meet the requirements, the purchase order is completed by accounting and submitted.

Return to Figure 8.19 Deployment Flowchart

Extended description for Figure 8.20 Logic Tree

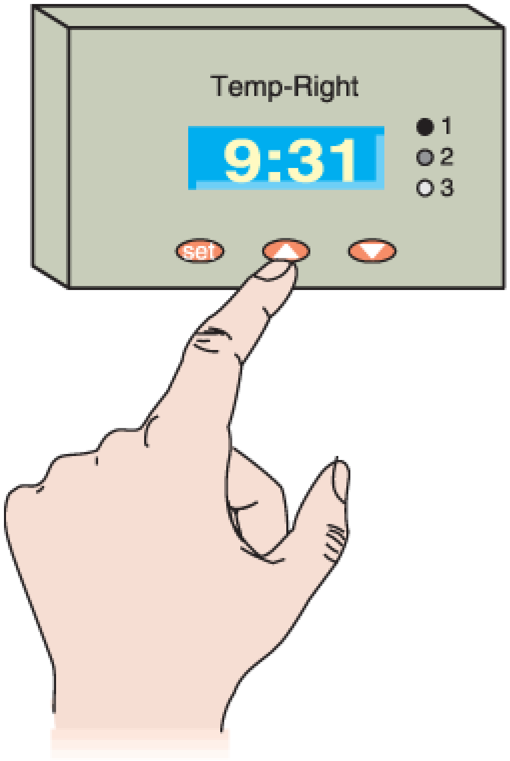

Do the meeting times fit your schedule?
Yes
Have you completed the prerequisites?
Yes
Register online.
No
Has the instructor waived the prerequisites?
Yes
Register online.
No
Choose another course.
No
Choose another course.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The tree begins with the question, Do the meeting times fit your schedule?If yes, the next question is, Have you completed the prerequisites? If yes, register online. If no, the question is, Has the instructor waived the prerequisites? If yes, register online. If no, choose another course.If the meeting does not fit your schedule, choose another course.

Return to Figure 8.20 Logic Tree

Extended description for Figure 8.21 Showing Action from the Reader’s Perspective

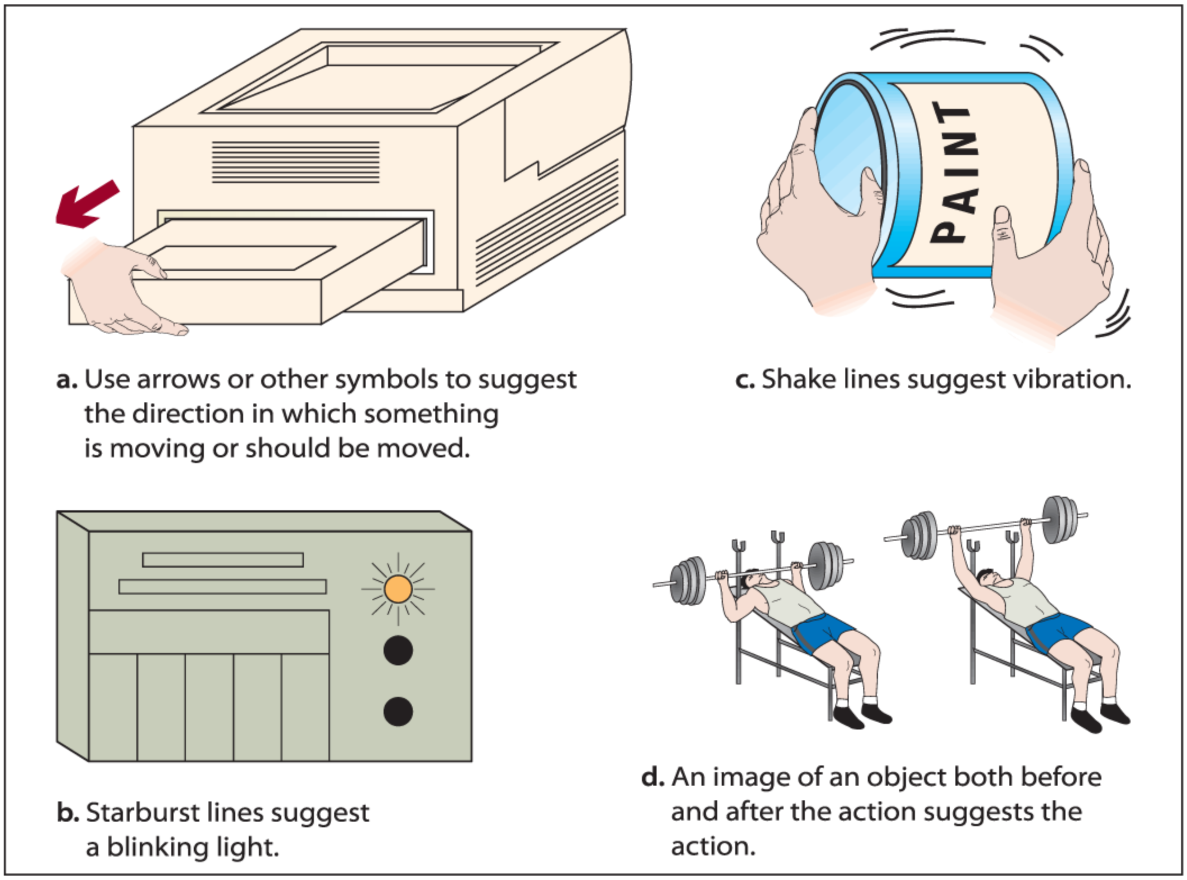


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

The drawing shows a thermostat. The thermostat is called Temp-Right. In the center is a digital display, and the device has the numbers 1, 2, and 3 with lights beside them at the left. The buttons set, up, and down are at the bottom. A hand extends from the bottom of the image with a finger pointing to the up button.

Return to Figure 8.21 Showing Action from the Reader’s Perspective

Extended description for Figure 8.22 Showing Action or Motion



a. Use arrows or other symbols to suggest the direction in which something is moving or should be moved.

c. Shake lines suggest vibration.

b. Starburst lines suggest a blinking light.

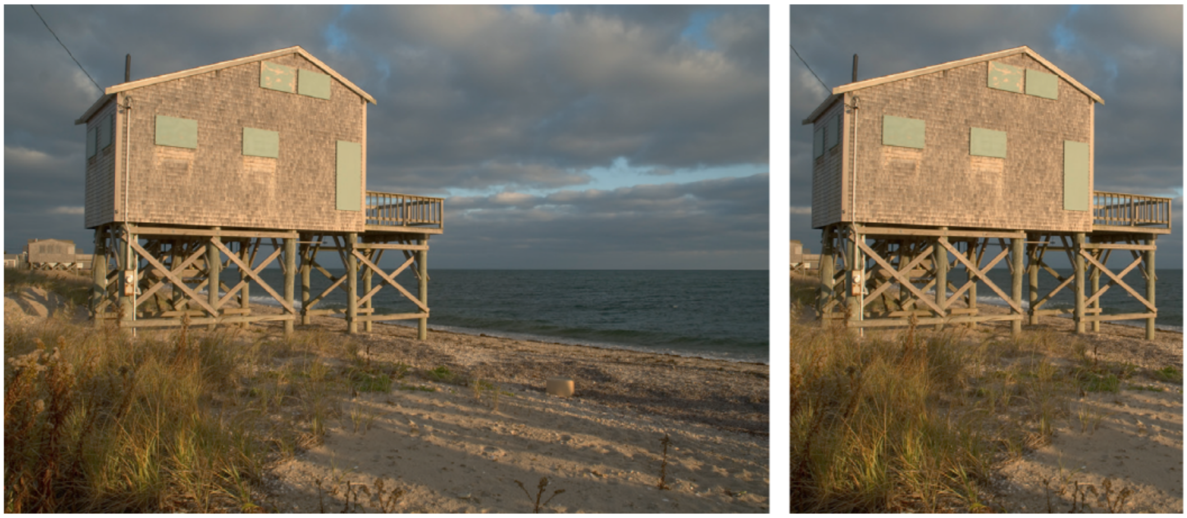
d. An image of an object both before and after the action suggests the action.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first drawing shows a hand pulling a paper tray from a printer. A red arrow depicts direction. Text reads, a. Use arrows or other symbols to suggest the direction in which something is moving or should be moved. The second drawing shows an alarm with a light surrounded by radiating lines. Text reads, b. Starburst lines suggest a blinking light. The third drawing shows two hands holding a can of paint, which is surrounded by short, concentric curved lines. Text reads, c. Shake lines suggest vibration. The fourth drawing consists of two images that depict a man lifting weights on a bench press, one with the weights down and the other with weights lifted up. Text reads, d. An image of an object both before and after the action suggests the action.

Return to Figure 8.22 Showing Action or Motion

Extended description for Figure 8.23 Cropping a Photograph

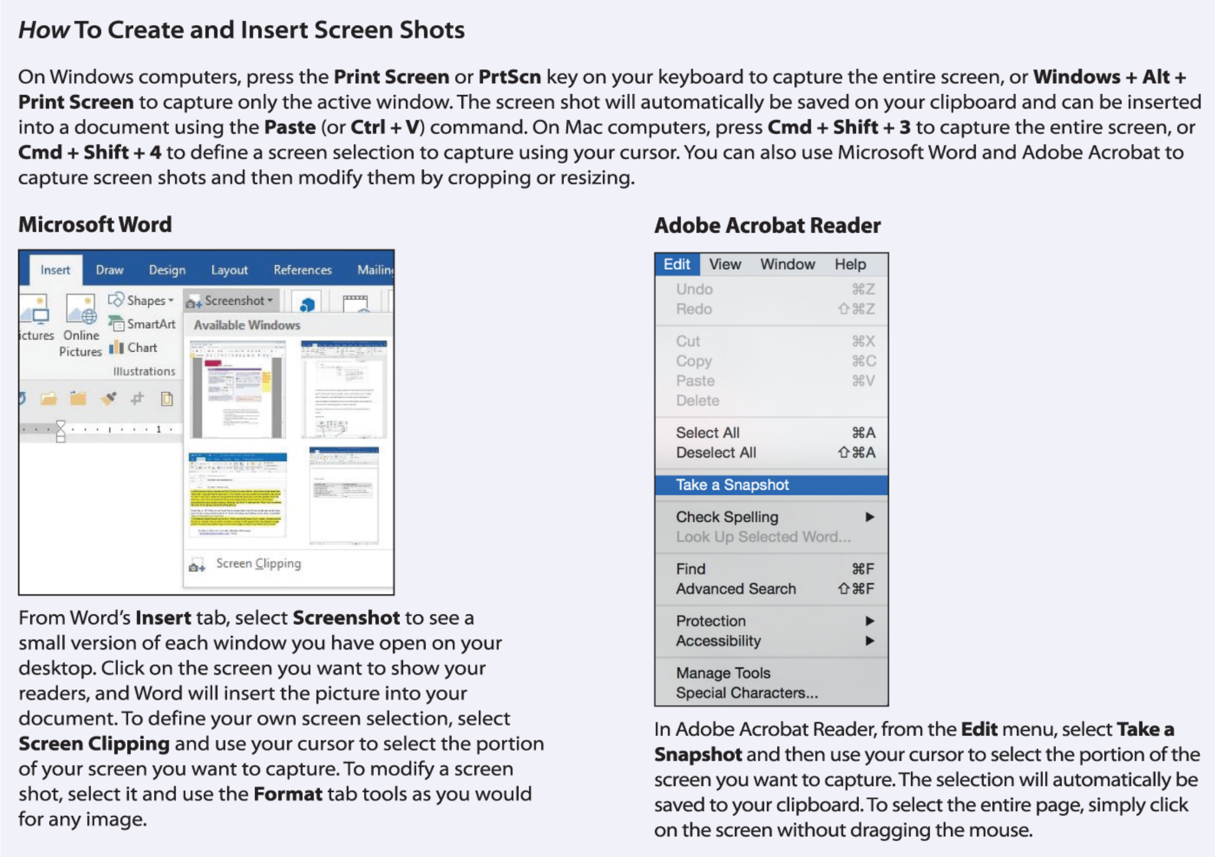


KenWiedemann/Getty Images.

Both photos show a beach house on stilts with a balcony and windows boarded up. Dune grasses are in the foreground. In the first photo, the beach is visible to the right. The second photo shows the beach house with the ocean cropped out.

Return to Figure 8.23 Cropping a Photograph

Extended description for An illustration is titled, how to create and insert screen shots. It shows two screen shots, for Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat Reader, with accompanying text


Insert
Draw
Design
Layout
References
Mailin
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Online Pictures
Illustrations
Screenshot
Available Windows
Screen Clipping
Edit
View
Window
Help
Undo ⌘Z
Redo ⇧⌘Z
Cut ⌘X
Copy ⌘C
Paste ⌘V
Delete
Select All ⌘A
Deselect All ⇧⌘A
Take a Snapshot
Check Spelling
Look Up Selected Word...
Find ⌘F
Advanced Search ⇧⌘F
Protection
Accessibility
Manage Tools
Special Characters...

***How* To Create and Insert Screen Shots**

On Windows computers, press the **Print Screen** or **PrtScn** key on your keyboard to capture the entire screen, or **Windows + Alt + Print Screen** to capture only the active window. The screen shot will automatically be saved on your clipboard and can be inserted into a document using the **Paste** (or **Ctrl + V**) command. On Mac computers, press **Cmd + Shift + 3** to capture the entire screen, or **Cmd + Shift + 4** to define a screen selection to capture using your cursor. You can also use Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat to capture screen shots and then modify them by cropping or resizing.

Microsoft Word

From Word's **Insert** tab, select **Screenshot** to see a small version of each window you have open on your desktop. Click on the screen you want to show your readers, and Word will insert the picture into your document. To define your own screen selection, select **Screen Clipping** and use your cursor to select the portion of your screen you want to capture. To modify a screen shot, select it and use the **Format** tab tools as you would for any image.

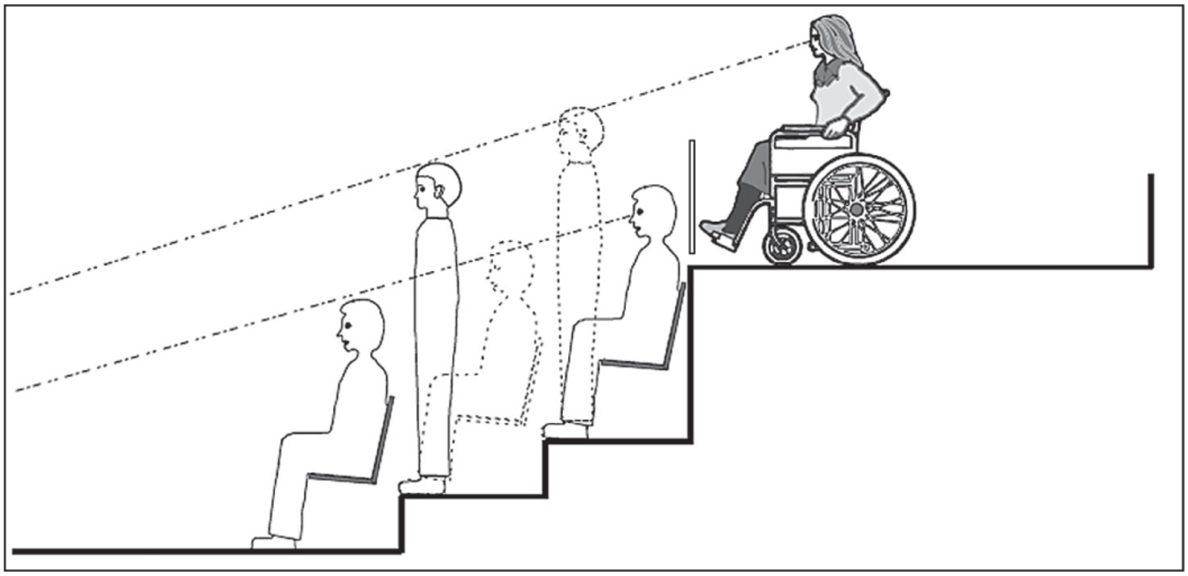
Adobe Acrobat Reader

In Adobe Acrobat Reader, from the **Edit** menu, select **Take a Snapshot** and then use your cursor to select the portion of the screen you want to capture. The selection will automatically be saved to your clipboard. To select the entire page, simply click on the screen without dragging the mouse.

Text below the heading reads, On Windows computers, press the Print Screen key on your keyboard to capture the entire screen, or Windows + Alt + Print Screen to capture only the active window. The screen shot will automatically be saved on your clipboard and can be inserted into a document using the Paste (or Control + V) command. On Mac computers, press Command + Shift + 3 to capture the entire screen, or Command + Shift + 4 to define a screen selection to capture using your cursor. You can also use Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat to capture screen shots and then modify them by cropping or resizing.Below are two screen shots. To the left is Microsoft Word. Text accompanying the image reads, From Word's Insert tab, select Screenshot to see a small version of each window you have open on your desktop. Click on the screen you want to show your readers, and Word will insert the picture into your document. To define your own screen selection, select Screen Clipping and use your cursor to select the portion of your screen you want to capture. To modify a screen shot, select it and use the Format tab tools as you would for any image.To the right is a screen shot for Adobe Acrobat Reader. Text below reads, In Adobe Acrobat Reader, from the Edit menu, select Take a Snapshot and then use your cursor to select the portion of the screen you want to capture. The selection will automatically be saved to your clipboard. To select the entire page, simply click on the screen without dragging the mouse.

Return to An illustration is titled, how to create and insert screen shots. It shows two screen shots, for Microsoft Word and Adobe Acrobat Reader, with accompanying text

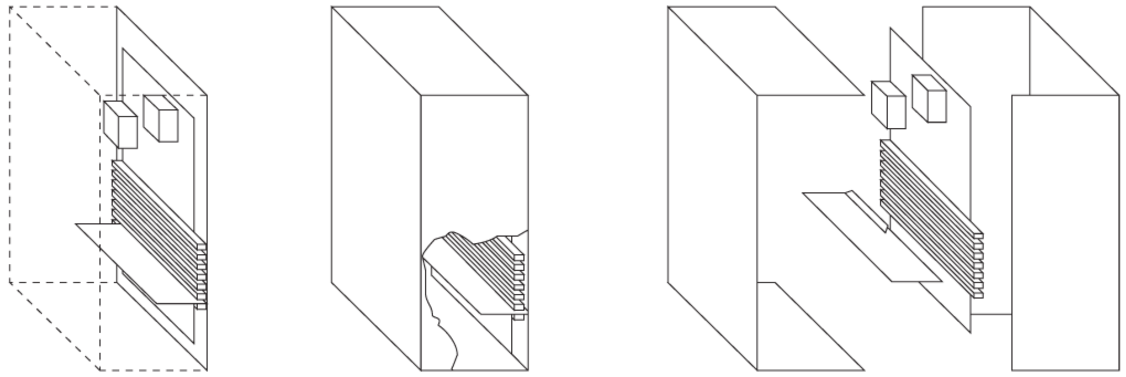
Extended description for Figure 8.25 Line Drawing


U.S. Department of Justice.

The drawing shows a woman in a wheelchair at the top of stairs in a stadium. It shows her line of sight from behind a barrier and three rows of people in front of her. The people in the first and third row are seated but the person in the second row is standing. Dotted line figures show the person in the first and second row standing and seated respectively. Dotted lines show her line of sight and the first person's line of sight and how they can see over those in front of them.

Return to Figure 8.25 Line Drawing

Extended description for Figure 8.26 Phantom, Cutaway, and Exploded Views



a. *Phantom drawings* show parts hidden from view by outlining external items that would ordinarily obscure them.

b. *Cutaway drawings* “remove” a part of the surface to expose what is underneath.

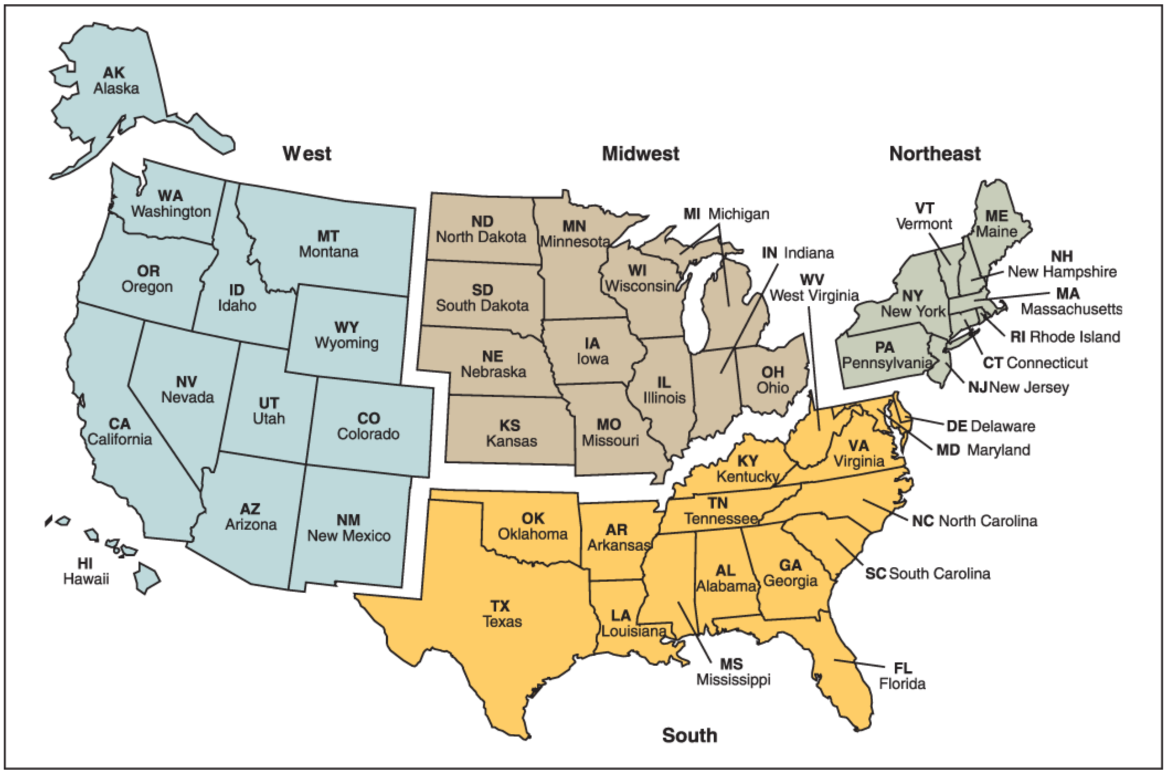
c. *Exploded drawings* separate components while maintaining their physical relationship.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

The first drawing depicts parts of the computer drawn in solid lines with the remaining portion and outline drawn in dotted lines. Accompanying text reads, a. Phantom drawings show parts hidden from view by outlining external items that would ordinarily obscure them.The second drawing depicts the outside of the computer with a portion cut away to view the inside. Text reads, b. Cutaway drawings “remove” a part of the surface to expose what is underneath.The third shows an exploded view where the computer is pulled apart with pieces separated but maintaining their original orientations. Accompanying text reads, c. Exploded drawings separate components while maintaining their physical relationship.

Return to Figure 8.26 Phantom, Cutaway, and Exploded Views

Extended description for Figure 8.27 Map

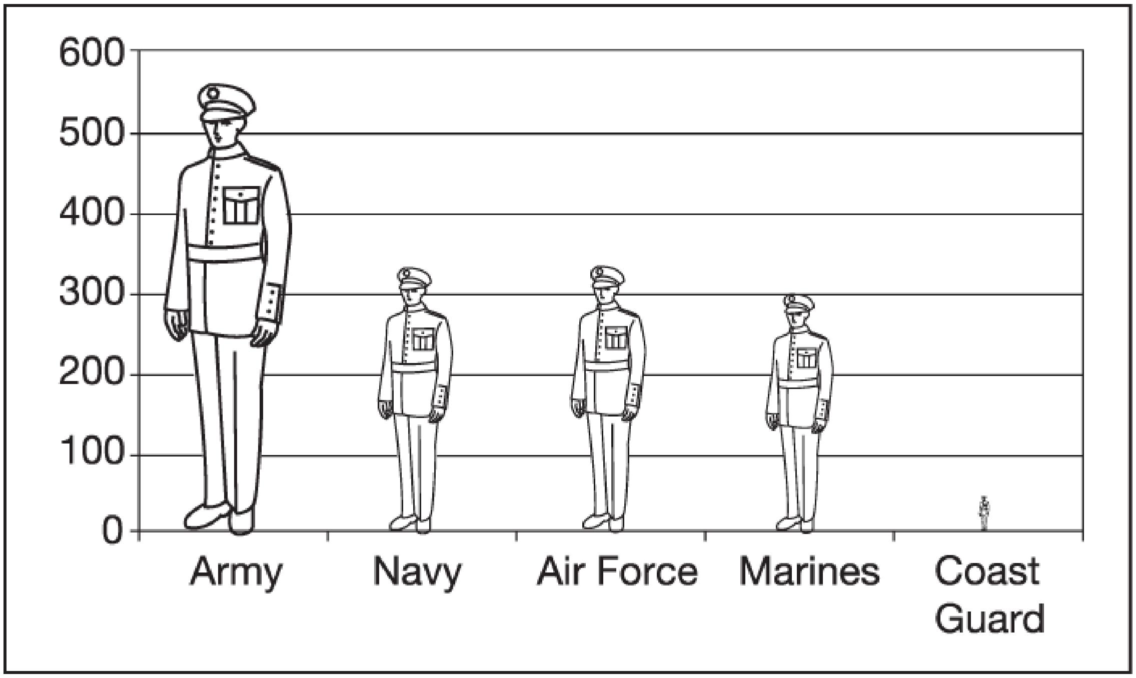

AK Alaska
West
Midwest
Northeast
WA Washington
MT Montana
ND North Dakota
MN Minnesota
MI Michigan
VT Vermont
ME Maine
OR Oregon
ID Idaho
SD South Dakota
WI Wisconsin
IN Indiana
WV West Virginia
NH New Hampshire
NY New York
MA Massachusetts
WY Wyoming
NE Nebraska
IA Iowa
PA Pennsylvania
RI Rhode Island
CT Connecticut
NJ New Jersey
NV Nevada
UT Utah
CO Colorado
IL Illinois
OH Ohio
CA California
KS Kansas
MO Missouri
DE Delaware
MD Maryland
KY Kentucky
VA Virginia
OK Oklahoma
TN Tennessee
AR Arkansas
NC North Carolina
AZ Arizona
NM New Mexico
AL Alabama
GA Georgia
HI Hawaii
SC South Carolina
TX Texas
LA Louisiana
MS Mississippi
FL Florida
South

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/ St. Martin's

The west includes Alaska, Washington, Oregon, California, Hawaii, Idaho, Nevada, Montana, Wyoming, Utah, Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico. The Midwest includes North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri, Wisconsin, Illinois, Michigan, Indian, and Ohio. The northeast includes Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New Jersey, New York, and Pennsylvania. The south encompasses West Virginia, Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, Arkansas, Oklahoma, Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Alabama, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida.

Return to Figure 8.27 Map

Extended description for A bar graph shows the number of members of the U S Armed Forces in 2012 in thousands. The bars are replaced by images of a soldier in uniform of various heights

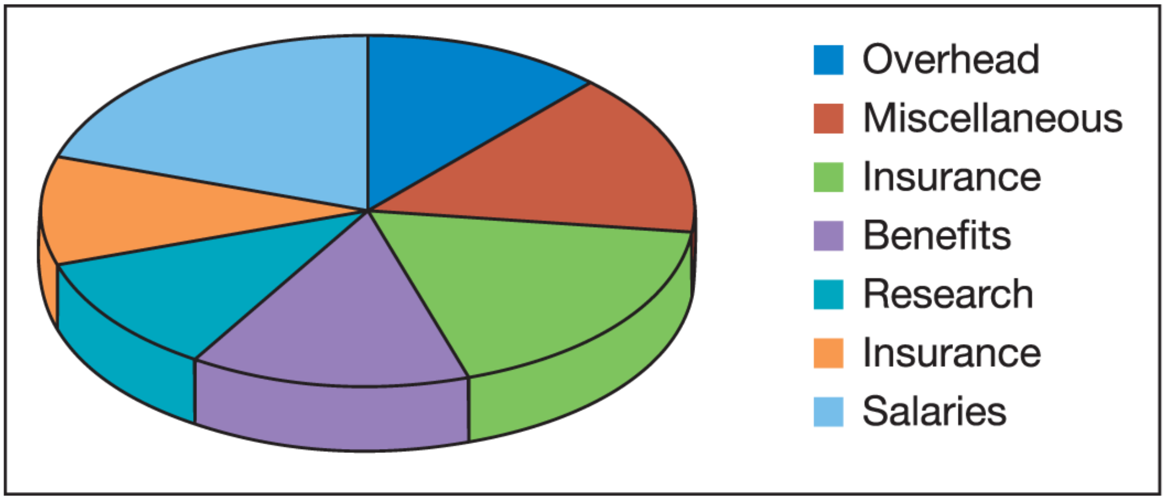


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The graph shows branches of the armed forces on the x-axis reading Army, Navy, Air Force, Marines, and Coast Guard. The y-axis shows number of forces on a scale starting at 0 to 600 in thousands in increments of 100. The graph has a horizontal grid behind the images of soldiers that represent amounts. Approximate data are as follows: Army, 550; Navy, 310; Air Force, 320; Marines, 300; and Coast Guard 50.

Return to A bar graph shows the number of members of the U S Armed Forces in 2012 in thousands. The bars are replaced by images of a soldier in uniform of various heights

Extended description for A three-dimensional pie chart shows expenses at Hillway Corporation

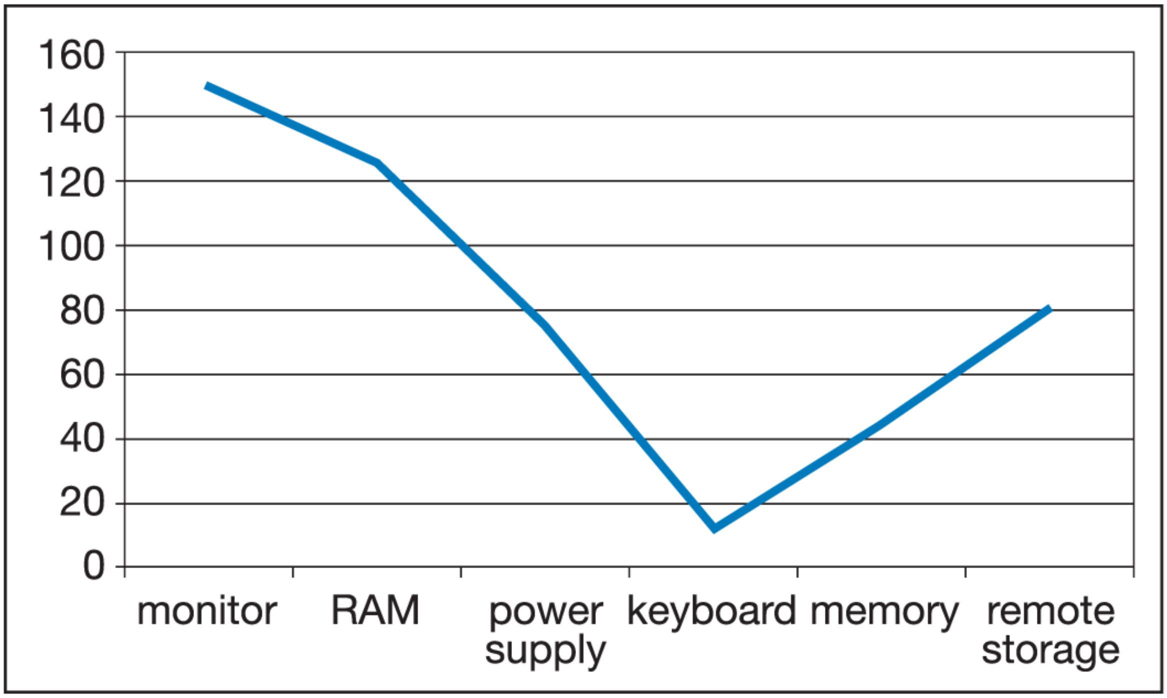


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The pie chart uses color and a legend to depict different expenses. They are as follows: overhead, blue; miscellaneous, red; insurance, green; benefits, purple; research, aqua; insurance, orange; salaries, light blue. The slices are mostly equal, with small variations in size.

Return to A three-dimensional pie chart shows expenses at Hillway Corporation

Extended description for A line graph shows costs of the components of a P C

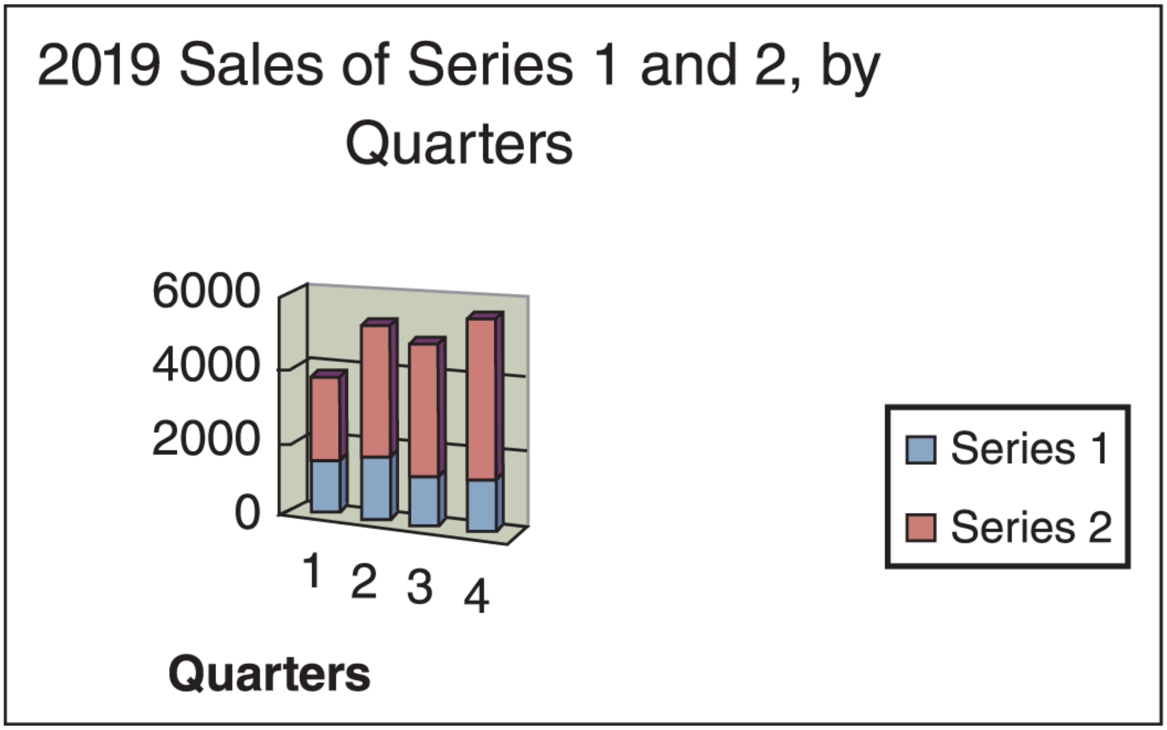


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The x-axis names the parts of the computer as follows: monitor, R A M, power supply, keyboard, memory, and remote storage. The y-axis shows costs from 0 to 160 in dollars with a horizontal grid behind the line. The line begins at 150 dollars for the monitor and drops to about 130 dollars for the R A M, then declines steadily to the keyboard at about 15 dollars and increases at memory to remote storage at about 80 dollars. All data are approximate.

[Return to A line graph shows costs of the components of a P C]

Extended description for A three-dimensional stacked bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2 by quarters

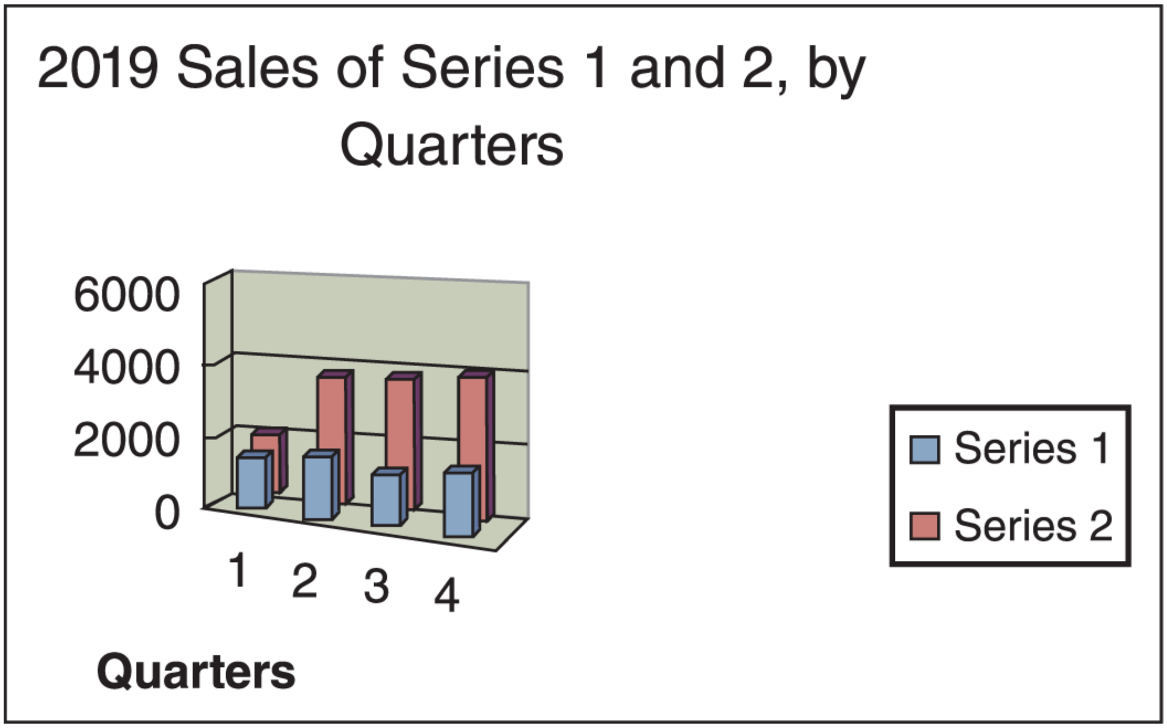


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Series 1 is displayed in blue and Series 2 is displayed in red. The x-axis reads 1, 2, 3, and 4 representing quarters. The y-axis reads 0 to 6,000 in increments of 2,000. Red is stacked on top of blue. Approximate data for the graph are as follows, reading blue then red. Q 1: 1,000; 2,500. Q 2: 1,200; 3,000. Q 3: 1,000; 2,800. Q 4: 1,180; 3,400.

Return to A three-dimensional stacked bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2 by quarters

Extended description for A three-dimensional cluster bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters

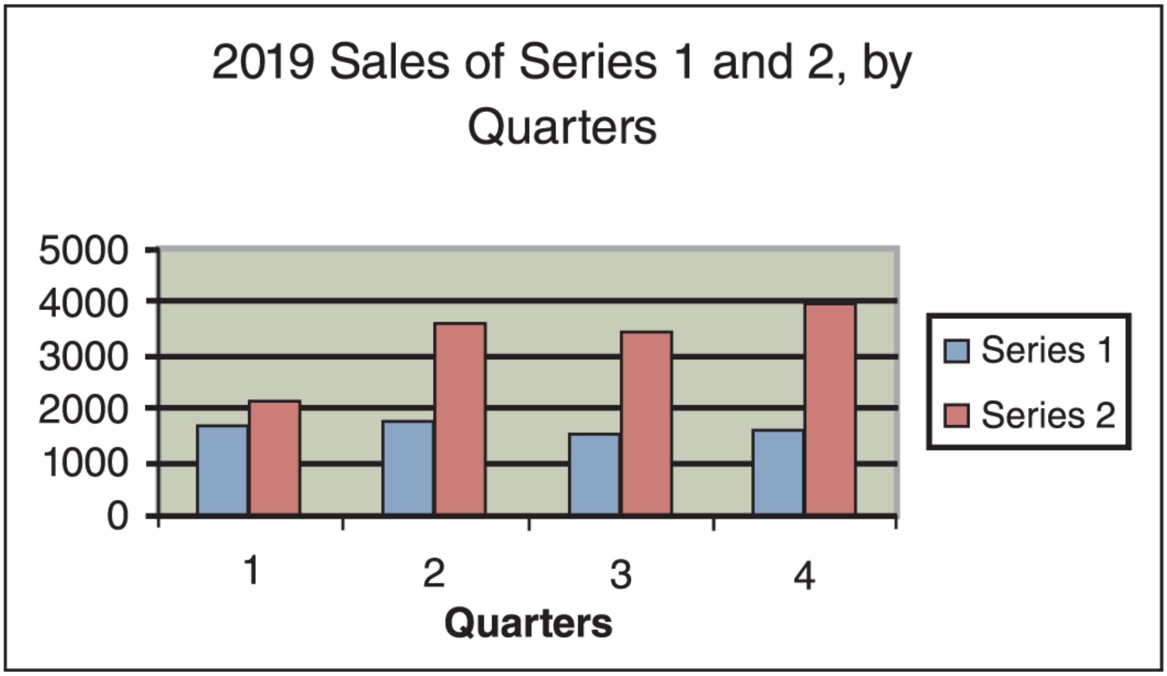


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A legend distinguishes Series 1 and 2 by color. The x-axis reads 1, 2, 3, and 4, representing quarters. The y-axis reads 0 to 6,000 in increments of 2,000. Series 1 and Series 2 are grouped for each quarter. Approximate data for the graph are as follows, reading Series 1, then Series 2. Q 1: 1,500; 2,000. Q 2: 1,700; 3,700. Q 3: 1,500; 3,900. Q 4: 1,600; 4,000.

Return to A three-dimensional cluster bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters

Extended description for A grouped bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters

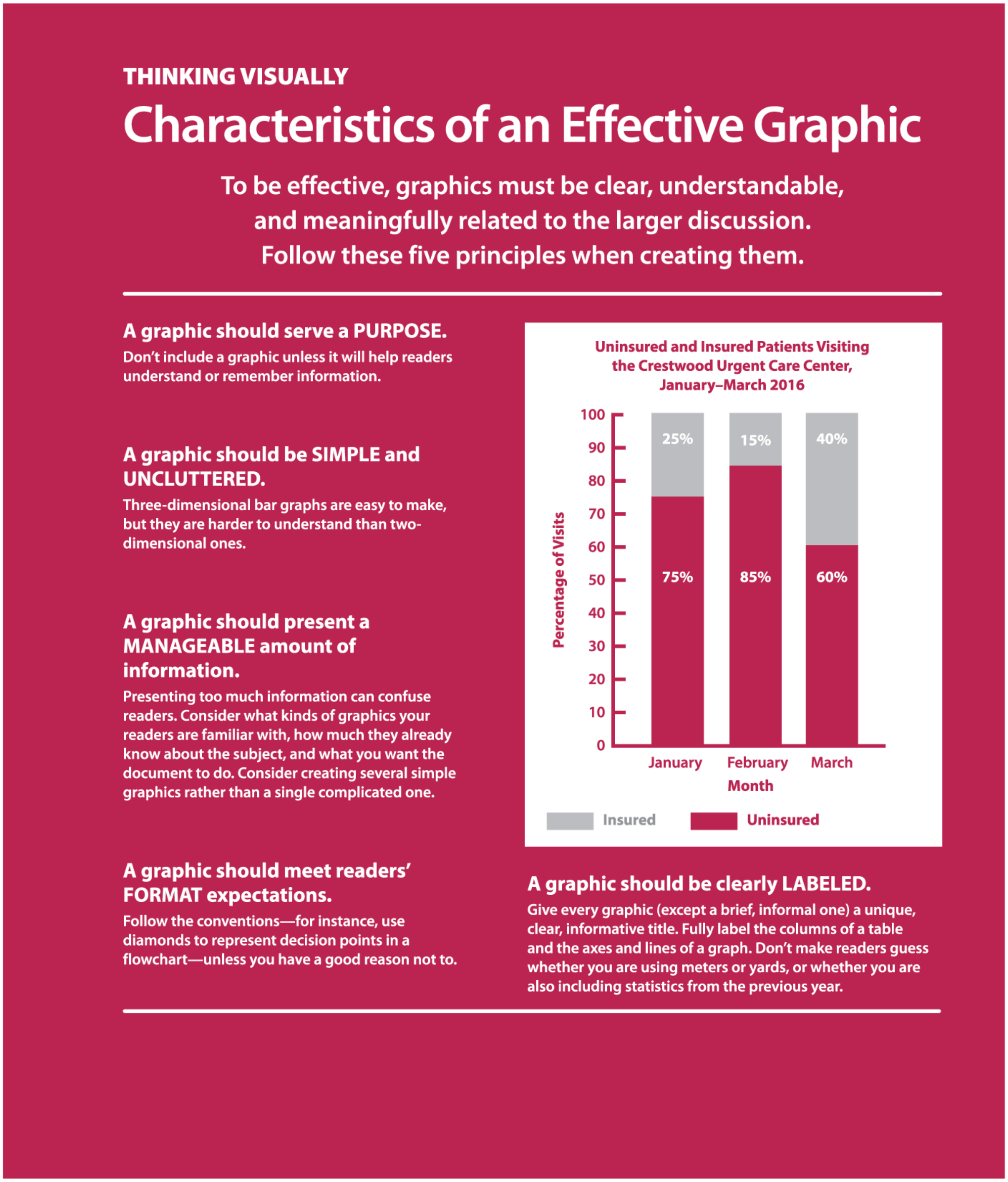


Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A legend distinguishes Series 1 and Series 2 by color. The x-axis reads 1, 2, 3, and 4, representing quarters. The y-axis reads 0 to 5,000 in increments of 1,000. Series 1 and Series 2 are grouped for each quarter. Approximate data for the graph are as follows, reading Series 1, then Series 2. Q 1: 1,500; 2,100. Q 2: 1,700; 3,500. Q 3: 1,500; 3,400. Q 4: 1,300; 4,000.

Return to A grouped bar graph displays 2019 sales of Series 1 and 2, by quarters

Extended description for A bar chart and an accompanying text illustrate characteristics of effective graphics



THINKING VISUALLY

Characteristics of an Effective Graphic

To be effective, graphics must be clear, understandable, and meaningfully related to the larger discussion. Follow these five principles when creating them.

A graphic should serve a PURPOSE.

Don't include a graphic unless it will help readers understand or remember information.

A graphic should be SIMPLE and UNCLUTTERED.

Three-dimensional bar graphs are easy to make, but they are harder to understand than two-dimensional ones.

A graphic should present a MANAGEABLE amount of information.

Presenting too much information can confuse readers. Consider what kinds of graphics your readers are familiar with, how much they already know about the subject, and what you want the document to do. Consider creating several simple graphics rather than a single complicated one.

A graphic should meet readers' FORMAT expectations.

Follow the conventions—for instance, use diamonds to represent decision points in a flowchart—unless you have a good reason not to.

Uninsured and Insured Patients Visiting the Crestwood Urgent Care Center, January–March 2016

A graphic should be clearly LABELED.

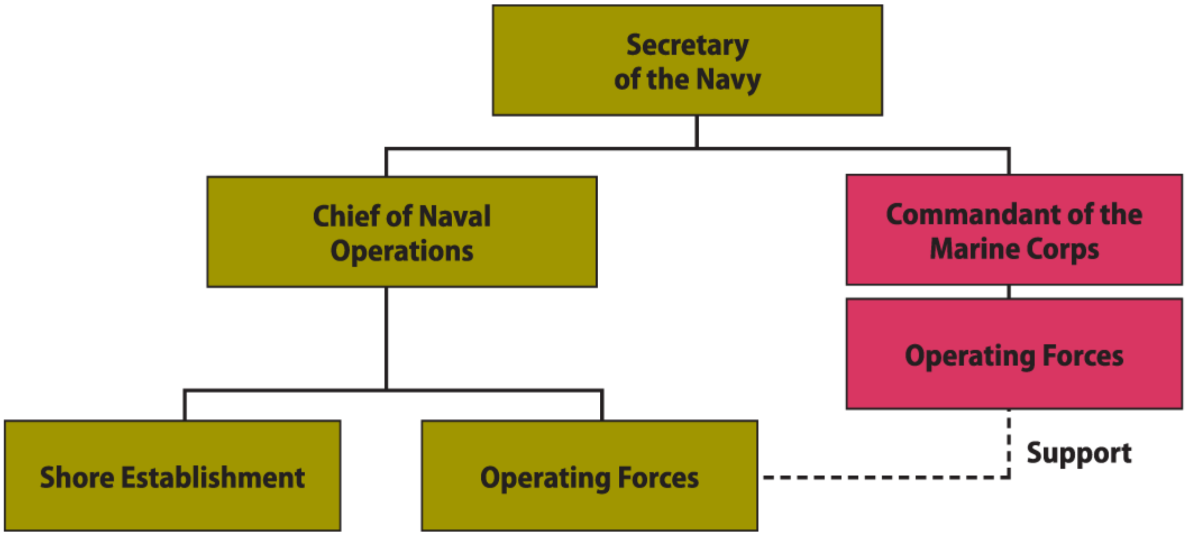
Give every graphic (except a brief, informal one) a unique, clear, informative title. Fully label the columns of a table and the axes and lines of a graph. Don't make readers guess whether you are using meters or yards, or whether you are also including statistics from the previous year.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bar chart appears at the top right, with text to the left and below it. Text reads,A graphic should serve a purpose. Don't include a graphic unless it will help readers understand or remember information.A graphic should be simple and uncluttered. Three-dimensional bar graphs are easy to make, but they are harder to understand than two-dimensional ones.A graphic should present a manageable amount of information. Presenting too much information can confuse readers. Consider what kinds of graphics your readers are familiar with, how much they already know about the subject, and what you want the document to do. Consider creating several simple graphics rather than a single complicated one.A graphic should meet readers' format expectations. Follow the conventions dash for instance, use diamonds to represent decision points in a flowchart dash unless you have a good reason not to.A graphic should be clearly labeled. Give every graphic (except a brief, informal one) a unique, clear, informative title. Fully label the columns of a table and the axes and lines of a graph. Don't make readers guess whether you are using meters or yards, or whether you are also including statistics from the previous year.The bar graph is titled Uninsured and Insured Patients Visiting the Crestwood Urgent Care Center, January-March 2016. Percentage of Visits is on the y-axis and months are on the x-axis. Three bars total to 100 percent each and are colored to show the percentage insured versus uninsured for January, February, and March, as follows: 25 percent, 75 percent; 15 percent, 85 percent; 40 percent, 60 percent, respectively.

Return to A bar chart and an accompanying text illustrate characteristics of effective graphics

Extended description for Figure 8.15 Organization Chart

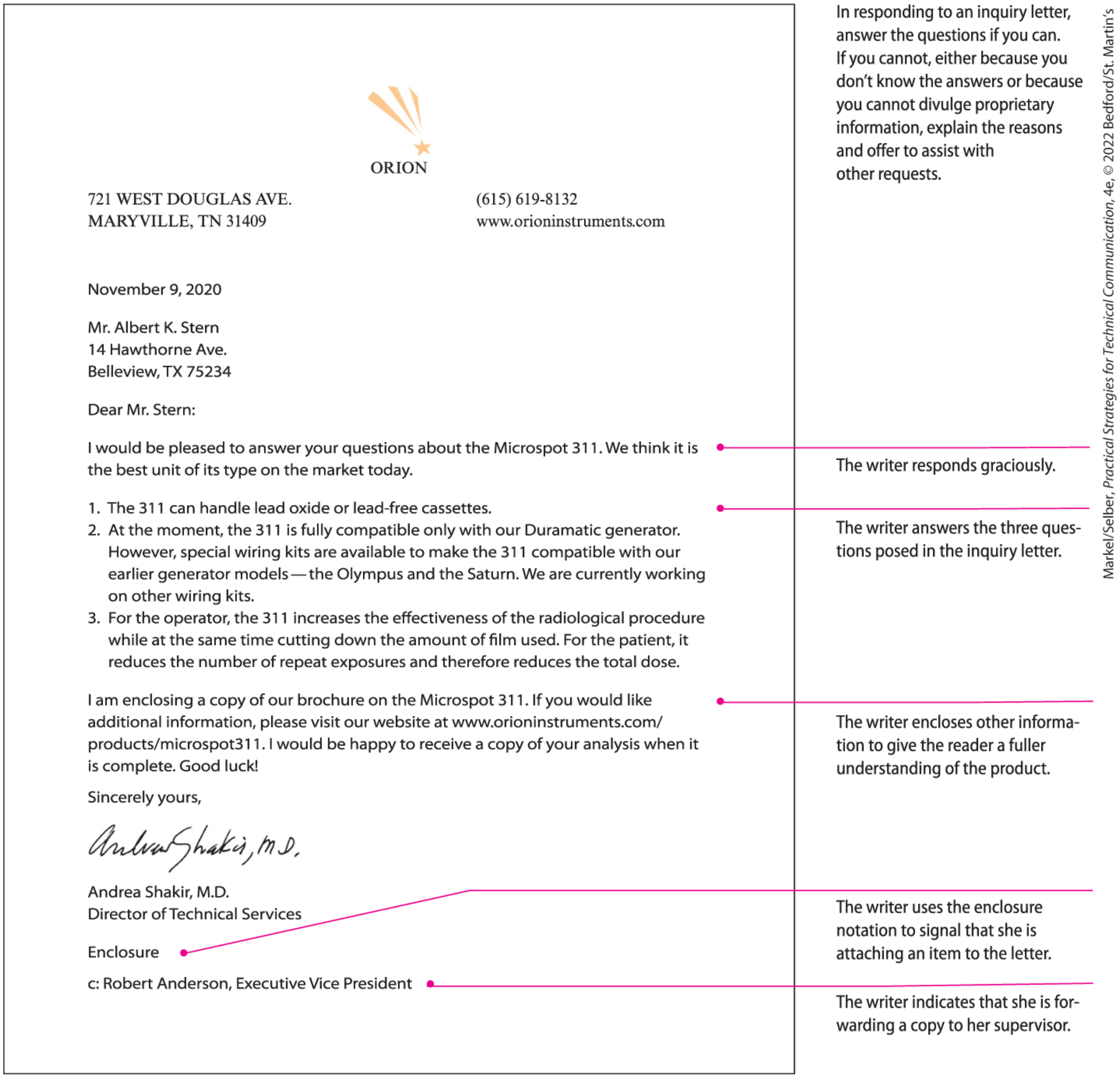

Secretary of the Navy
Chief of Naval Operations
Commandant of the Marine Corps
Operating Forces
Shore Establishment
Operating Forces
Support

United States Department of the Navy.

There are three levels to the chart, which consists of six rectangles. It begins with the Secretary of the Navy at the top, who oversees two sections, Commandant of the Marine Corps and Chief of Naval Operations. Chief of Naval Operations oversees two subcategories, Shore Establishment and Operating Forces. The Commandant of the Marine Corps oversees another subcategory of Operating Forces; these two rectangles are in a different color than the rest of the chart. There is a dotted line labeled Support connecting both Operating Forces rectangles.

Return to Figure 8.15 Organization Chart

Extended description for Figure 9.4 Response to an Inquiry



ORION

721 WEST DOUGLAS AVE.
MARYVILLE, TN 31409

(615) 619-8132
www.orioninstruments.com

November 9, 2020

Mr. Albert K. Stern
14 Hawthorne Ave.
Belleview, TX 75234

Dear Mr. Stern:

I would be pleased to answer your questions about the Microspot 311. We think it is the best unit of its type on the market today.

1. The 311 can handle lead oxide or lead-free cassettes.
2. At the moment, the 311 is fully compatible only with our Duramatic generator. However, special wiring kits are available to make the 311 compatible with our earlier generator models — the Olympus and the Saturn. We are currently working on other wiring kits.
3. For the operator, the 311 increases the effectiveness of the radiological procedure while at the same time cutting down the amount of film used. For the patient, it reduces the number of repeat exposures and therefore reduces the total dose.

I am enclosing a copy of our brochure on the Microspot 311. If you would like additional information, please visit our website at www.orioninstruments.com/products/microspot311. I would be happy to receive a copy of your analysis when it is complete. Good luck!

Sincerely yours,

Andrea Shakir, M.D.

Andrea Shakir, M.D.
Director of Technical Services

Enclosure

c: Robert Anderson, Executive Vice President

In responding to an inquiry letter, answer the questions if you can. If you cannot, either because you don't know the answers or because you cannot divulge proprietary information, explain the reasons and offer to assist with other requests.

The writer responds graciously.

The writer answers the three questions posed in the inquiry letter.

The writer encloses other information to give the reader a fuller understanding of the product.

The writer uses the enclosure notation to signal that she is attaching an item to the letter.

The writer indicates that she is forwarding a copy to her supervisor.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The annotation reads "In responding to an inquiry letter, answer the questions if you can.

If you cannot, either because you don't know the answers or because you cannot divulge proprietary information, explain the reasons and offer to assist with other requests."

The first callout reading "The writer responds graciously." points toward a line in the letter reading "I would be pleased to answer your questions about the Microspot 311. We think it is the best unit of its type on the market today."

The second callout reading "The writer answers the three questions posed in the inquiry letter." points toward the second paragraph in the letter reading "1. T he 311 can handle lead oxide or lead-free cassettes. 2. At the moment, the 311 is fully compatible only with our Duramatic generator.

However, special wiring kits are available to make the 311 compatible with our earlier generator models — the Olympus and the Saturn. We are currently working on other wiring kits. 3. For the operator, the 311 increases the effectiveness of the radiological procedure while at the same time cutting down the amount of film used. For the patient, it reduces the number of repeat exposures and therefore reduces the total dose."

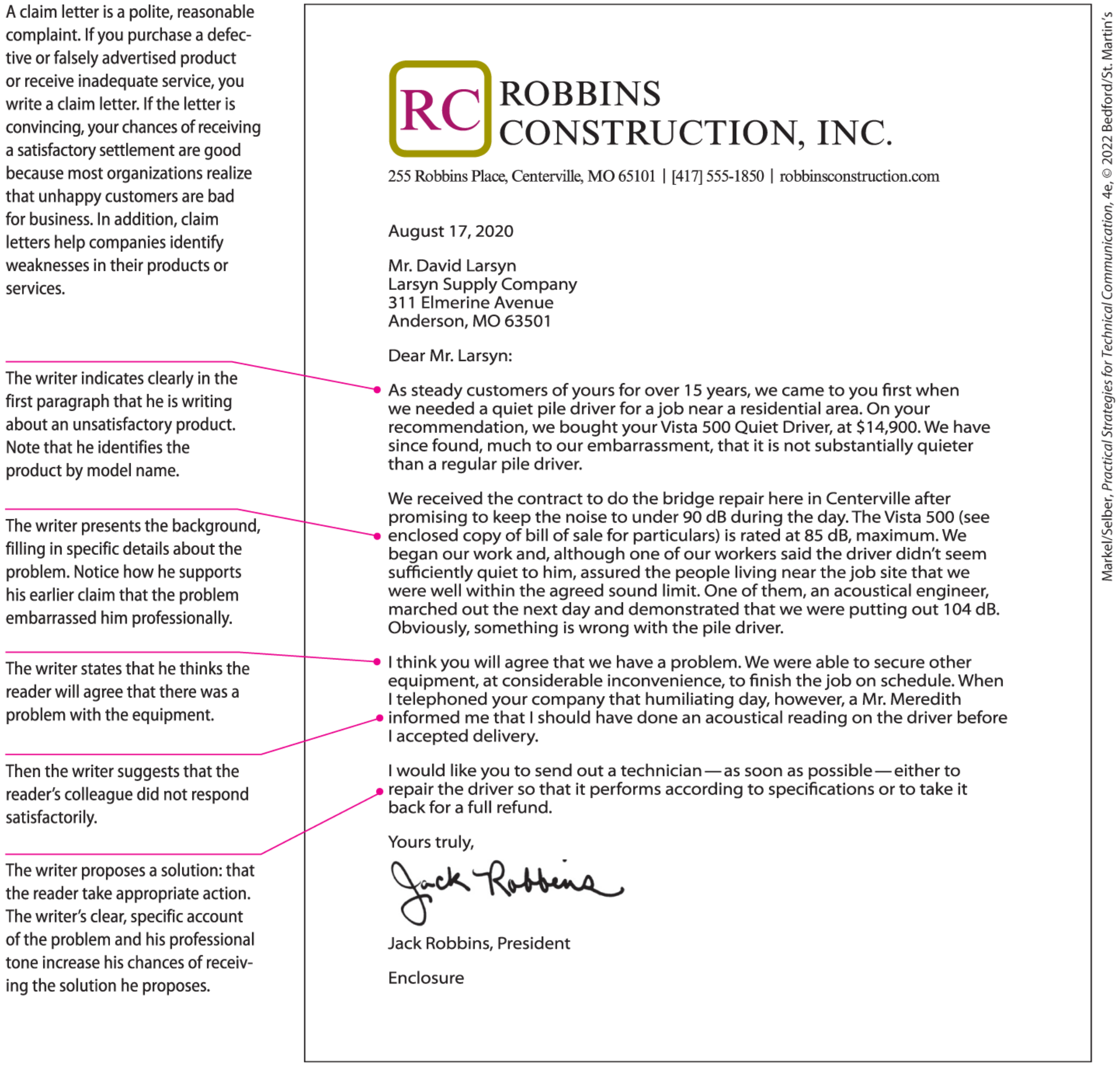
The third callout reading "The writer encloses other information to give the reader a fuller understanding of the product." points toward the last paragraph of the letter reading "I am enclosing a copy of our brochure on the Microspot 311. If you would like additional information, please visit our Web site at www.orioninstruments.com/ products/microspot311. I would be happy to receive a copy of your analysis when it is complete. Good luck!"

The fourth callout reading "The writer uses the enclosure notation to signal that she is attaching an item to the letter." points toward the text reading "Enclosure."

The fifth callout reading "The writer indicates that she is forwarding a copy to her supervisor." points toward the text reading "c: Robert Anderson, Executive Vice President."

Return to Figure 9.4 Response to an Inquiry

Extended description for Figure 9.5 Claim Letter



A claim letter is a polite, reasonable complaint. If you purchase a defective or falsely advertised product or receive inadequate service, you write a claim letter. If the letter is convincing, your chances of receiving a satisfactory settlement are good because most organizations realize that unhappy customers are bad for business. In addition, claim letters help companies identify weaknesses in their products or services.

RC ROBBINS
CONSTRUCTION, INC.

255 Robbins Place, Centerville, MO 65101 | [417] 555-1850 | robbinsconstruction.com

August 17, 2020

Mr. David Larsyn
Larsyn Supply Company
311 Elmerine Avenue
Anderson, MO 63501

Dear Mr. Larsyn:

As steady customers of yours for over 15 years, we came to you first when we needed a quiet pile driver for a job near a residential area. On your recommendation, we bought your Vista 500 Quiet Driver, at $14,900. We have since found, much to our embarrassment, that it is not substantially quieter than a regular pile driver.

We received the contract to do the bridge repair here in Centerville after promising to keep the noise to under 90 dB during the day. The Vista 500 (see enclosed copy of bill of sale for particulars) is rated at 85 dB, maximum. We began our work and, although one of our workers said the driver didn't seem sufficiently quiet to him, assured the people living near the job site that we were well within the agreed sound limit. One of them, an acoustical engineer, marched out the next day and demonstrated that we were putting out 104 dB. Obviously, something is wrong with the pile driver.

I think you will agree that we have a problem. We were able to secure other equipment, at considerable inconvenience, to finish the job on schedule. When I telephoned your company that humiliating day, however, a Mr. Meredith informed me that I should have done an acoustical reading on the driver before I accepted delivery.

I would like you to send out a technician—as soon as possible—either to repair the driver so that it performs according to specifications or to take it back for a full refund.

Yours truly,

Jack Robbins

Jack Robbins, President

Enclosure

The writer indicates clearly in the first paragraph that he is writing about an unsatisfactory product. Note that he identifies the product by model name.

The writer presents the background, filling in specific details about the problem. Notice how he supports his earlier claim that the problem embarrassed him professionally.

The writer states that he thinks the reader will agree that there was a problem with the equipment.

Then the writer suggests that the reader's colleague did not respond satisfactorily.

The writer proposes a solution: that the reader take appropriate action. The writer's clear, specific account of the problem and his professional tone increase his chances of receiving the solution he proposes.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The letterhead and logo for Dynacol Corporation appear at the top of the page. The bold, all caps heading Interoffice Communication is underneath, followed by a header reading To: G. Granby, R & D; From: P. Rabin, Technical Services, followed by the script initials P.

R.; Subject: Trip Report — Computer Dynamics, Inc.; Date: September 21, 2000

The first annotation points toward the subject line and reads, The subject line is specific: the reader can tell at a glance that the memo reports on a trip to Computer Dynamics, Inc. If the subject line read only “Computer Dynamics, Inc.,” the reader would not know what the writer was going to discuss about that company.

The second annotation points toward the first paragraph of the memo reading, The purpose of this memo is to present my impressions of the Computer Dynamics technical seminar of September 19. The goal of the seminar was to introduce their new P Q-500 line of high-capacity storage drives. The annotation reads, The memo begins with a clear statement of purpose, as discussed in Chapter 5, page 000.

The third annotation points toward heading Summary and a paragraph reading, In general, I was impressed with the technical capabilities and interface of the drives. Of the two models in the 500 series, I think we ought to consider the external drives, not the internal ones. I’d like to talk to you about this issue when you have a chance. The annotation reads, Note that the writer has provided a summary, even though the memo is less than a page. The summary gives the writer an opportunity to convey his main request: he would like to meet with the reader.

The fourth annotation points toward the heading, Discussion of Product Options, and two following paragraphs reading, Computer Dynamics offers two models in its 500 series: an internal drive and an external drive. Both models have the same capacity (1T of storage), and they both work the same way: they extend the storage capacity of a server by integrating an optical disk library into the file system. The concept is that they move files between the server's faster, but limited-capacity, storage devices (hard disks) and its slower, high-capacity storage devices (magnetooptical disks). This process, which they call data migration and demigration, is transparent to the user.

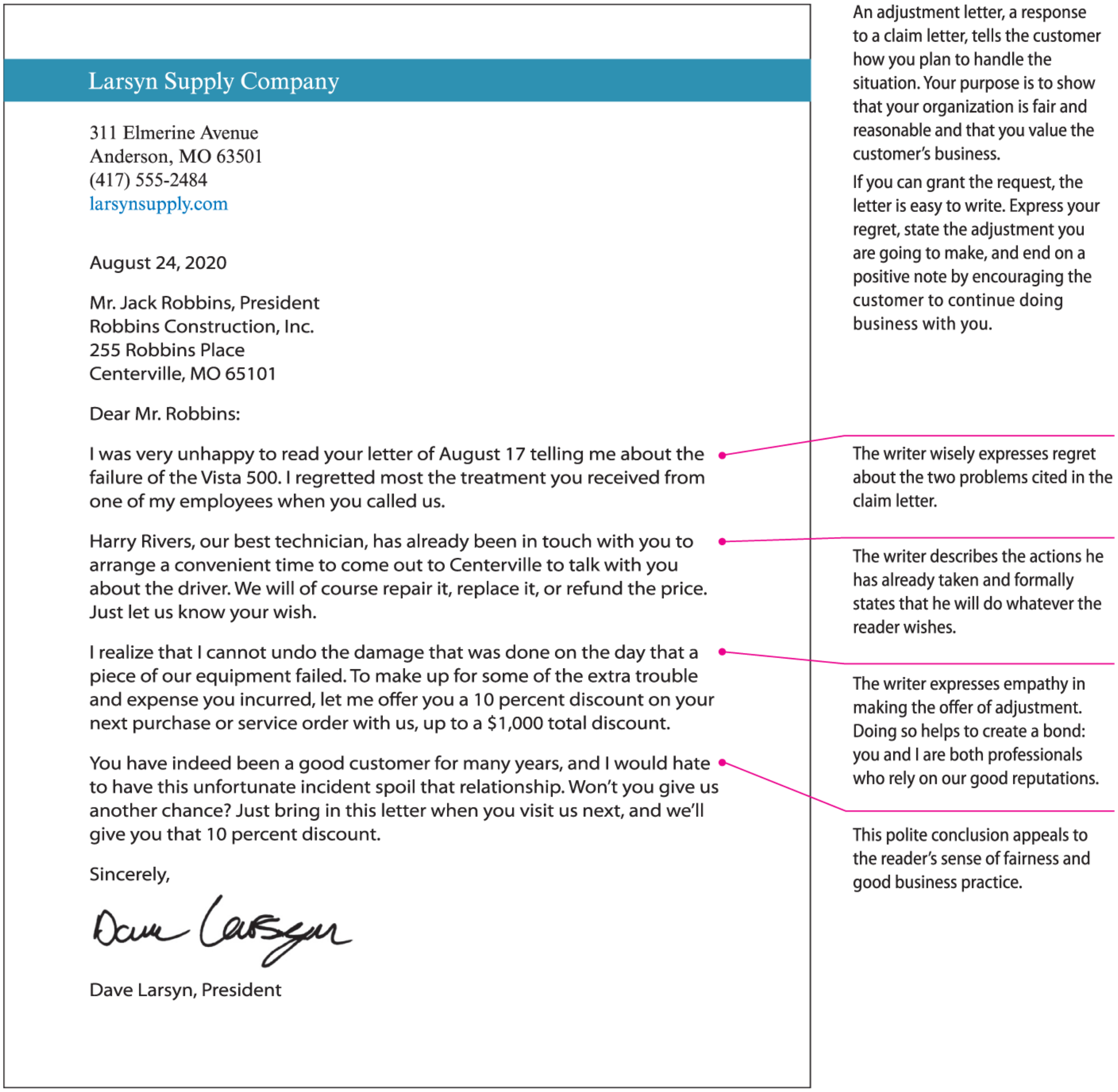
For the system administrator, integrating either of the models would require no more than one hour. The external model would be truly portable; the user would not need to install any drivers, as long as his or her device is docked on our network. The system administrator would push the necessary drivers onto all the networked devices without the user having to do anything. The annotation reads, The main section of the memo is the discussion, which conveys the detailed version of the writer's message. Often the discussion begins with the background: the facts that readers will need to know to understand the memo. In this case, the background consists of a two-paragraph discussion of the two models in the company's 500 series. Presumably, the reader already knows why the writer went on the trip.

The fifth annotation points toward a paragraph reading, Although the internal drive is convenient — it is already configured for the computer — I think we should consider only the external drive. Because so many of our employees do teleconferencing, the advantage of portability outweighs the disadvantage of inconvenience. The tech rep from Computer Dynamics walked me through the process of configuring both models. A second advantage of the external drive is that it can be salvaged easily when we take a computer out of service. The annotation reads, Note that the writer ends this discussion with a conclusion, or statement of the meaning of the facts. In this case, the writer's conclusion is that the company should consider only the external drive.

The sixth annotation points toward the bold heading Recommendation and a paragraph reading, I'd like to talk to you, when you get a chance, about negotiating with Computer Dynamics for a quantity discount. I think we should ask McKinley and Rossiter to participate in the discussion. Give me a call (x3442) and we'll talk. The annotation reads, A recommendation is the writer's statement of what he would like the reader to do next. In this case, the writer would like to sit down with the reader to discuss how to proceed.

Return to Figure 9.5 Claim Letter

Extended description for Figure 9.6 “Good News” Adjustment Letter



Larsyn Supply Company

311 Elmerine Avenue
Anderson, MO 63501
(417) 555-2484
larsynsupply.com

August 24, 2020

Mr. Jack Robbins, President
Robbins Construction, Inc.
255 Robbins Place
Centerville, MO 65101

Dear Mr. Robbins:

I was very unhappy to read your letter of August 17 telling me about the failure of the Vista 500. I regretted most the treatment you received from one of my employees when you called us.

Harry Rivers, our best technician, has already been in touch with you to arrange a convenient time to come out to Centerville to talk with you about the driver. We will of course repair it, replace it, or refund the price. Just let us know your wish.

I realize that I cannot undo the damage that was done on the day that a piece of our equipment failed. To make up for some of the extra trouble and expense you incurred, let me offer you a 10 percent discount on your next purchase or service order with us, up to a $1,000 total discount.

You have indeed been a good customer for many years, and I would hate to have this unfortunate incident spoil that relationship. Won't you give us another chance? Just bring in this letter when you visit us next, and we'll give you that 10 percent discount.

Sincerely,

Dave Larsyn

Dave Larsyn, President

An adjustment letter, a response to a claim letter, tells the customer how you plan to handle the situation. Your purpose is to show that your organization is fair and reasonable and that you value the customer's business.

If you can grant the request, the letter is easy to write. Express your regret, state the adjustment you are going to make, and end on a positive note by encouraging the customer to continue doing business with you.

The writer wisely expresses regret about the two problems cited in the claim letter.

The writer describes the actions he has already taken and formally states that he will do whatever the reader wishes.

The writer expresses empathy in making the offer of adjustment. Doing so helps to create a bond: you and I are both professionals who rely on our good reputations.

This polite conclusion appeals to the reader's sense of fairness and good business practice.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text to the right side of the letter reads, An adjustment letter, a response to a claim letter, tells the customer how you plan to handle the situation. Your purpose is to show that your organization is fair and reasonable and that you value the customer's business.

If you can grant the request, the letter is easy to write. Express your regret, state the adjustment you are going to make, and end on a positive note by encouraging the customer to continue doing business with you.

The letter reads as follows: Larsyn Supply Company

311 Elmerine Avenue

Anderson, MO 63501

(417) 555-2484

larsynsupply.com

August 24, 2020

Mr. Jack Robbins, President

Robbins Construction, Inc.

255 Robbins Place

Centerville, MO 65101

Dear Mr. Robbins:

I was very unhappy to read your letter of August 17 telling me about the failure of the Vista 500. I regretted most the treatment you received from one of my employees when you called us. An annotation reads, The writer wisely expresses regret about the two problems cited in the claim letter.

The letter continues, Harry Rivers, our best technician, has already been in touch with you to arrange a convenient time to come out to Centerville to talk with you about the driver. We will of course repair it, replace it, or refund the price. Just let us know your wish. An annotation reads, The writer describes the actions he has already taken and formally states that he will do whatever the reader wishes.

The letter continues, I realize that I cannot undo the damage that was done on the day that a piece of our equipment failed. To make up for some of the extra trouble and expense you incurred, let me offer you a 10 percent discount on your next purchase or service order with us, up to a 1,000 dollar total discount. An annotation reads, The writer expresses empathy in making the offer of adjustment. Doing so helps to create a bond: you and I are both professionals who rely on our good reputations.

The letter continues, You have indeed been a good customer for many years, and I would hate to have this unfortunate incident spoil that relationship. Won’t you give us another chance? Just bring in this letter when you visit us next, and we’ll give you that 10 percent discount. An annotation reads, This polite conclusion appeals to the reader’s sense of fairness and good business practice.

The letter continues, Sincerely,

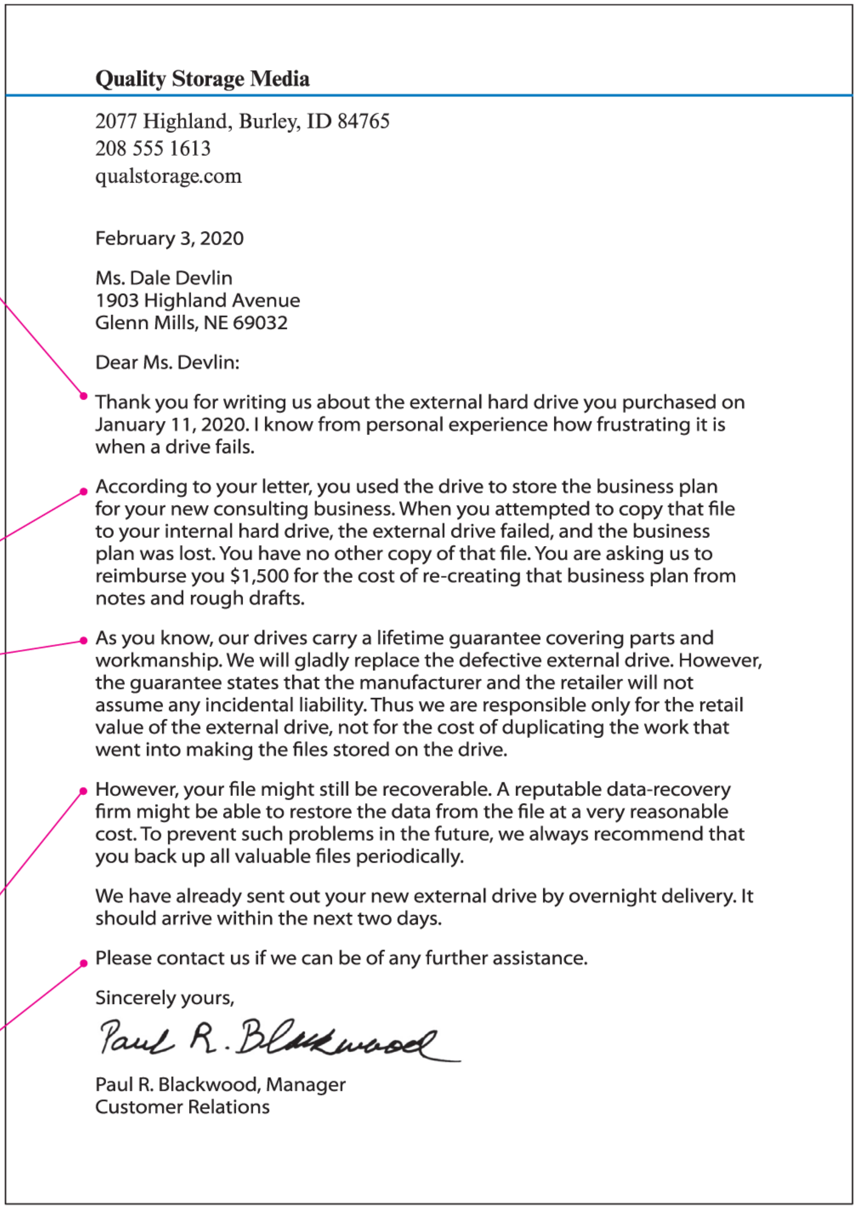
Signature of Dave Larsyn

Dave Larsyn, President

Return to Figure 9.6 “Good News” Adjustment Letter"

Extended description for Figure 9.7 “Bad News” Adjustment Letter

If you are writing a “bad news” adjustment letter, salvage as much goodwill as you can by showing that you have acted reasonably. In denying a request, explain your side of the matter, thus educating the customer about how the problem occurred and how to prevent it in the future.



Quality Storage Media

2077 Highland, Burley, ID 84765
208 555 1613
qualstorage.com

February 3, 2020

Ms. Dale Devlin
1903 Highland Avenue
Glenn Mills, NE 69032

Dear Ms. Devlin:

Thank you for writing us about the external hard drive you purchased on January 11, 2020. I know from personal experience how frustrating it is when a drive fails.

According to your letter, you used the drive to store the business plan for your new consulting business. When you attempted to copy that file to your internal hard drive, the external drive failed, and the business plan was lost. You have no other copy of that file. You are asking us to reimburse you $1,500 for the cost of re-creating that business plan from notes and rough drafts.

As you know, our drives carry a lifetime guarantee covering parts and workmanship. We will gladly replace the defective external drive. However, the guarantee states that the manufacturer and the retailer will not assume any incidental liability. Thus we are responsible only for the retail value of the external drive, not for the cost of duplicating the work that went into making the files stored on the drive.

However, your file might still be recoverable. A reputable data-recovery firm might be able to restore the data from the file at a very reasonable cost. To prevent such problems in the future, we always recommend that you back up all valuable files periodically.

We have already sent out your new external drive by overnight delivery. It should arrive within the next two days.

Please contact us if we can be of any further assistance.

Sincerely yours,

Paul R. Blackwood

Paul R. Blackwood, Manager
Customer Relations

The writer does not begin by stating that he is denying the reader’s request. Instead, he begins politely by trying to form a bond with the reader. In trying to meet the customer on neutral ground, be careful about admitting that the customer is right. If you say “We are sorry that the engine you purchased from us is defective,” it will bolster the customer’s claim if the dispute ends up in court.

The writer summarizes the facts of the incident, as he sees them.

The writer explains that he is unable to fulfill the reader’s request. Notice that the writer never explicitly denies the request. It is more effective to explain why granting the request is not appropriate. Also notice that the writer does not explicitly say that the reader failed to make a backup copy of the plan and therefore the problem is her fault.

The writer shifts from the bad news to the good news. The writer explains that he has already responded appropriately to the reader’s request.

The writer ends with a polite conclusion. A common technique is to offer the reader a special discount on a future purchase.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

Text to the left of the letter reads, If you are writing a “bad news” adjustment letter, salvage as much goodwill as you can by showing that you have acted reasonably. In denying a request, explain your side of the matter, thus educating the customer about how the problem occurred and how to prevent it in the future.

The letter reads, Quality Storage Media

2077 Highland, Burley, ID 84765

208 555 1613

qualstorage.com

February 3, 2020

Ms. Dale Devlin

1903 Highland Avenue

Glenn Mills, NE 69032

Dear Ms. Devlin:

Thank you for writing us about the external hard drive you purchased on January 11, 2020. I know from personal experience how frustrating it is when a drive fails. An annotation reads, the writer does not begin by stating that he is denying the reader's request. Instead, he begins politely by trying to form a bond with the reader. In trying to meet the customer on neutral ground, be careful about admitting that the customer is right. If you say "We are sorry that the engine you purchased from us is defective," it will bolster the customer's claim if the dispute ends up in court.

The letter continues, According to your letter, you used the drive to store the business plan for your new consulting business. When you attempted to copy that file to your internal hard drive, the external drive failed, and the business plan was lost. You have no other copy of that file. You are asking us to reimburse you 1,500 dollars for the cost of re-creating that business plan from notes and rough drafts. The annotation reads, The writer summarizes the facts of the incident as he sees them.

The letter continues, As you know, our drives carry a lifetime guarantee covering parts and workmanship. We will gladly replace the defective external drive. However, the guarantee states that the manufacturer and the retailer will not assume any incidental liability. Thus we are responsible only for the retail value of the external drive, not for the cost of duplicating the work that went into making the files stored on the drive. An annotation reads, The writer explains that he is unable to fulfill the reader's request. Notice that the writer never explicitly denies the request. It is more effective to explain why granting the request is not appropriate. Also, notice that the writer does not explicitly say that the reader failed to make a backup copy of the plan and therefore the problem is her fault.

The letter continues, However, your file might still be recoverable. A reputable data-recovery firm might be able to restore the data from the file at a very reasonable cost. To prevent such problems in the future, we always recommend that you back up all valuable files periodically. An annotation reads, The writer shifts from the bad news to the good news. The writer explains that he has already responded appropriately to the reader’s request.

The letter continues, We have already sent out your new external drive by overnight delivery. It should arrive within the next two days. An annotation reads, the writer ends with a polite conclusion. A common technique is to offer the reader a special discount on a future purchase.

The letter continues, Please contact us if we can be of any further assistance.

Sincerely yours,

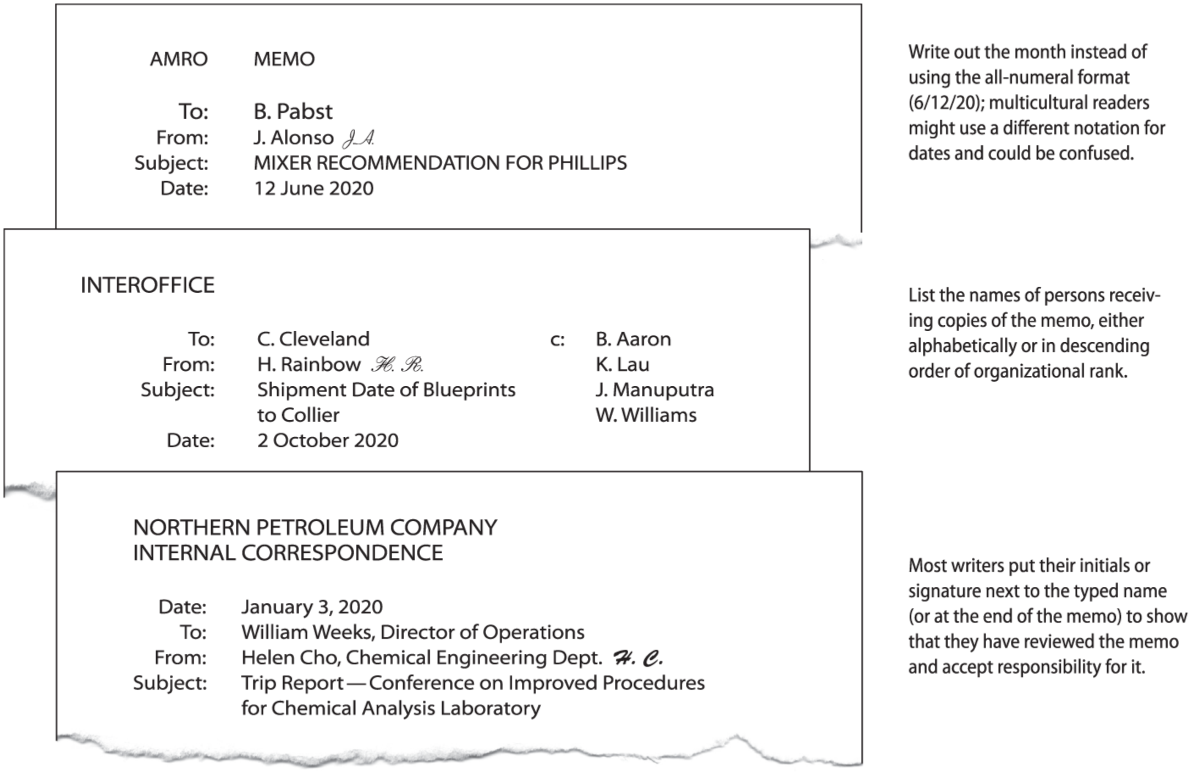
Signature of Paul R. Blackwood

Paul R. Blackwood, Manager

Customer Relations

Return to Figure 9.7 “Bad News” Adjustment Letter"

Extended description for Figure 9.8 Identifying Information in a Memo



AMRO MEMO

To: B. Pabst
From: J. Alonso J.A.
Subject: MIXER RECOMMENDATION FOR PHILLIPS
Date: 12 June 2020

INTEROFFICE

To: C. Cleveland
From: H. Rainbow H. R.
Subject: Shipment Date of Blueprints to Collier
Date: 2 October 2020

c: B. Aaron
K. Lau
J. Manuputra
W. Williams

NORTHERN PETROLEUM COMPANY
INTERNAL CORRESPONDENCE

Date: January 3, 2020
To: William Weeks, Director of Operations
From: Helen Cho, Chemical Engineering Dept. H. C.
Subject: Trip Report—Conference on Improved Procedures for Chemical Analysis Laboratory

Write out the month instead of using the all-numeral format (6/12/20); multicultural readers might use a different notation for dates and could be confused.

List the names of persons receiving copies of the memo, either alphabetically or in descending order of organizational rank.

Most writers put their initials or signature next to the typed name (or at the end of the memo) to show that they have reviewed the memo and accept responsibility for it.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text to the left of the letter reads, If you are writing a “bad news” adjustment letter, salvage as much goodwill as you can by showing that you have acted reasonably. In denying a request, explain your side of the matter, thus educating the customer about how the problem occurred and how to prevent it in the future.

The letter reads,

The identifying information in the first memo heading reads, AMRO MEMO

To: B. Pabst

From: J. Alonso J. A.

Subject: MIXER RECOMMENDATION FOR PHILLIPS

Date: 12 June 2020. An annotation reads, Write out the month instead of using the all-numeral format (6/12/20); multicultural readers might use a different notation for dates and could be confused.

The identifying information in the second memo heading reads, INTEROFFICE

To: C. Cleveland c: B. Aaron

From: H. Rainbow H. R.

Subject: Shipment Date of Blueprints

C: Collier

K. Lau

J. Manuputra

W. Williams

Date: 2 October 2020. An annotation reads, List the names of persons receiving copies of the memo, either alphabetically or in descending order of organizational rank.

The identifying information in the third memo heading reads, NORTHERN PETROLEUM COMPANY

INTERNAL CORRESPONDENCE

Date: January 3, 2020

To: William Weeks, Director of Operations

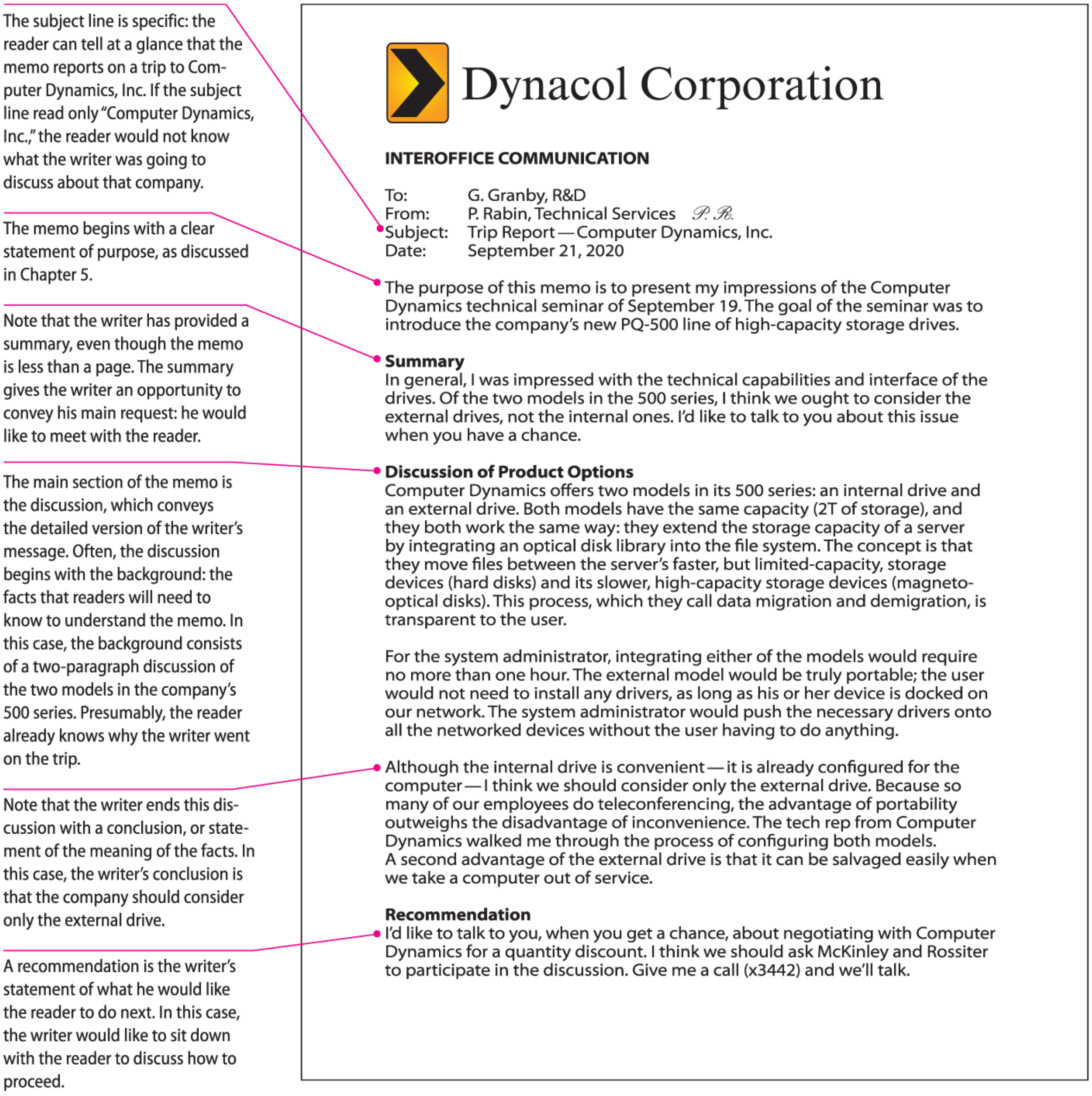
From: Helen Cho, Chemical Engineering Dept. H. C.

Subject: Trip Report dash Conference on Improved Procedures

for Chemical Analysis Laboratory. An annotation reads, Most writers put their initials or signature next to the typed name (or at the end of the memo) to show that they have reviewed the memo and accept responsibility for it.

Return to Figure 9.8 Identifying Information in a Memo

Extended description for Figure 9.9 Sample Memo



Dynacol Corporation

INTEROFFICE COMMUNICATION

To: G. Granby, R&D
From: P. Rabin, Technical Services P.R.
Subject: Trip Report — Computer Dynamics, Inc.
Date: September 21, 2020

The purpose of this memo is to present my impressions of the Computer Dynamics technical seminar of September 19. The goal of the seminar was to introduce the company's new PQ-500 line of high-capacity storage drives.

Summary

In general, I was impressed with the technical capabilities and interface of the drives. Of the two models in the 500 series, I think we ought to consider the external drives, not the internal ones. I'd like to talk to you about this issue when you have a chance.

Discussion of Product Options

Computer Dynamics offers two models in its 500 series: an internal drive and an external drive. Both models have the same capacity (2T of storage), and they both work the same way: they extend the storage capacity of a server by integrating an optical disk library into the file system. The concept is that they move files between the server's faster, but limited-capacity, storage devices (hard disks) and its slower, high-capacity storage devices (magneto-optical disks). This process, which they call data migration and demigration, is transparent to the user.

For the system administrator, integrating either of the models would require no more than one hour. The external model would be truly portable; the user would not need to install any drivers, as long as his or her device is docked on our network. The system administrator would push the necessary drivers onto all the networked devices without the user having to do anything.

Although the internal drive is convenient — it is already configured for the computer — I think we should consider only the external drive. Because so many of our employees do teleconferencing, the advantage of portability outweighs the disadvantage of inconvenience. The tech rep from Computer Dynamics walked me through the process of configuring both models. A second advantage of the external drive is that it can be salvaged easily when we take a computer out of service.

Recommendation

I'd like to talk to you, when you get a chance, about negotiating with Computer Dynamics for a quantity discount. I think we should ask McKinley and Rossiter to participate in the discussion. Give me a call (x3442) and we'll talk.

The subject line is specific: the reader can tell at a glance that the memo reports on a trip to Computer Dynamics, Inc. If the subject line read only "Computer Dynamics, Inc.," the reader would not know what the writer was going to discuss about that company.

The memo begins with a clear statement of purpose, as discussed in Chapter 5.

Note that the writer has provided a summary, even though the memo is less than a page. The summary gives the writer an opportunity to convey his main request: he would like to meet with the reader.

The main section of the memo is the discussion, which conveys the detailed version of the writer's message. Often, the discussion begins with the background: the facts that readers will need to know to understand the memo. In this case, the background consists of a two-paragraph discussion of the two models in the company's 500 series. Presumably, the reader already knows why the writer went on the trip.

Note that the writer ends this discussion with a conclusion, or statement of the meaning of the facts. In this case, the writer's conclusion is that the company should consider only the external drive.

A recommendation is the writer's statement of what he would like the reader to do next. In this case, the writer would like to sit down with the reader to discuss how to proceed.

Top left image: Bumbim/Shutterstock.com.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The letterhead and logo for Dynacol Corporation appear at the top of the page. The bold, all caps heading Interoffice Communication is underneath, followed by a header reading To: G. Granby, R & D; From: P. Rabin, Technical Services, followed by the script initials P.

R.; Subject: Trip Report — Computer Dynamics, Inc.; Date: September 21, 2000

The first annotation points toward the subject line and reads, The subject line is specific: the reader can tell at a glance that the memo reports on a trip to Computer Dynamics, Inc. If the subject line read only “ Computer Dynamics, Inc.,” the reader would not know what the writer was going to discuss about that company.

The second annotation points toward the first paragraph of the memo reading, The purpose of this memo is to present my impressions of the Computer Dynamics technical seminar of September 19. The goal of the seminar was to introduce their new P Q-500 line of high-capacity storage drives. The annotation reads, The memo begins with a clear statement of purpose, as discussed in Chapter 5, page 000.

The third annotation points toward heading Summary and a paragraph reading, In general, I was impressed with the technical capabilities and interface of the drives. Of the two models in the 500 series, I think we ought to consider the external drives, not the internal ones. I’d like to talk to you about this issue when you have a chance. The annotation reads, Note that the writer has provided a summary, even though the memo is less than a page. The summary gives the writer an opportunity to convey his main request: he would like to meet with the reader.

The fourth annotation points toward the heading, Discussion of Product Options, and two following paragraphs reading, Computer Dynamics offers two models in its 500 series: an internal drive and an external drive. Both models have the same capacity (1T of storage), and they both work the same way: they extend the storage capacity of a server by integrating an optical disk library into the file system. The concept is that they move files between the server's faster, but limited-capacity, storage devices (hard disks) and its slower, high-capacity storage devices (magnetooptical disks). This process, which they call data migration and demigration, is transparent to the user.

For the system administrator, integrating either of the models would require no more than one hour. The external model would be truly portable; the user would not need to install any drivers, as long as his or her device is docked on our network. The system administrator would push the necessary drivers onto all the networked devices without the user having to do anything. The annotation reads, The main section of the memo is the discussion, which conveys the detailed version of the writer's message. Often the discussion begins with the background: the facts that readers will need to know to understand the memo. In this case, the background consists of a two-paragraph discussion of the two models in the company's 500 series. Presumably, the reader already knows why the writer went on the trip.

The fifth annotation points toward a paragraph reading, Although the internal drive is convenient — it is already configured for the computer — I think we should consider only the external drive. Because so many of our employees do teleconferencing, the advantage of portability outweighs the disadvantage of inconvenience. The tech rep from Computer Dynamics walked me through the process of configuring both models. A second advantage of the external drive is that it can be salvaged easily when we take a computer out of service. The annotation reads, Note that the writer ends this discussion with a conclusion, or statement of the meaning of the facts. In this case, the writer's conclusion is that the company should consider only the external drive.

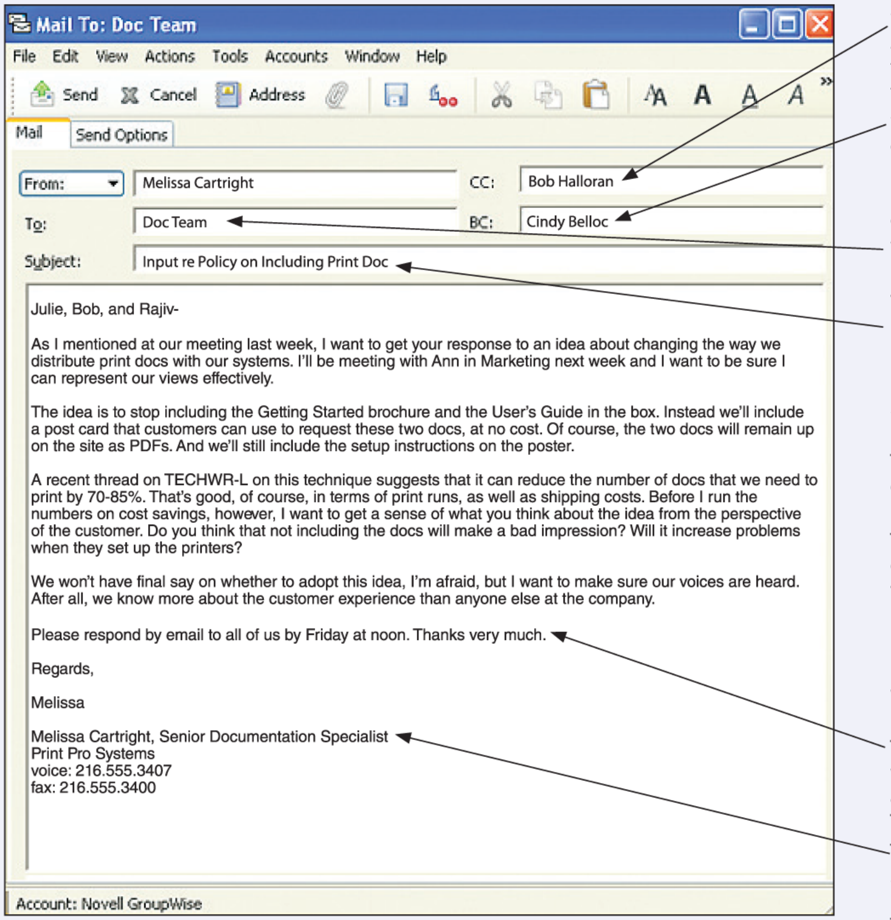
The sixth annotation points toward the bold heading Recommendation and a paragraph reading, I'd like to talk to you, when you get a chance, about negotiating with Computer Dynamics for a quantity discount. I think we should ask McKinley and Rossiter to participate in the discussion. Give me a call (x3442) and we'll talk. The annotation reads, A recommendation is the writer's statement of what he would like the reader to do next. In this case, the writer would like to sit down with the reader to discuss how to proceed.

Return to Figure 9.9 Sample Memo

Extended description for A screenshot of an email draft with annotations explains the points to be kept in mind while using email for business correspondence.

How To Use Email for Business Correspondence

When using an email as a substitute for a memo or letter, keep in mind the points illustrated below, as well as the Guidelines box "Following Netiquette" on page 249.


Mail To: Doc Team
File Edit View Actions Tools Accounts Window Help
Send Cancel Address
Mail Send Options
Account: Novell GroupWise

From: Melissa Cartright

CC: Bob Halloran

To: Doc Team

BC: Cindy Belloc

Subject: Input re Policy on Including Print Doc

Julie, Bob, and Rajiv-

As I mentioned at our meeting last week, I want to get your response to an idea about changing the way we distribute print docs with our systems. I'll be meeting with Ann in Marketing next week and I want to be sure I can represent our views effectively.

The idea is to stop including the Getting Started brochure and the User's Guide in the box. Instead we'll include a post card that customers can use to request these two docs, at no cost. Of course, the two docs will remain up on the site as PDFs. And we'll still include the setup instructions on the poster.

A recent thread on TECHWR-L on this technique suggests that it can reduce the number of docs that we need to print by 70-85%. That's good, of course, in terms of print runs, as well as shipping costs. Before I run the numbers on cost savings, however, I want to get a sense of what you think about the idea from the perspective of the customer. Do you think that not including the docs will make a bad impression? Will it increase problems when they set up the printers?

We won't have final say on whether to adopt this idea, I'm afraid, but I want to make sure our voices are heard. After all, we know more about the customer experience than anyone else at the company.

Please respond by email to all of us by Friday at noon. Thanks very much.

Regards,

Melissa

Melissa Cartright, Senior Documentation Specialist
Print Pro Systems
voice: 216.555.3407
fax: 216.555.3400

"CC" stands for courtesy copy. All of your recipients will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group.

"BC" or "Bcc" stands for blind copy or blind courtesy copy. None of your readers will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group.

You can create a "group" for people whom you email frequently.

Like a memo, an email should have a specific subject line.

By naming her readers at the start, the writer is showing respect for them.

The first paragraph of the email clarifies the writer's purpose.

The second paragraph describes the idea. You want to be sure your readers understand the context.

Notice that paragraphs are relatively brief and that the writer skips a line between paragraphs.

The writer explains what she would like her readers to do, and she states a deadline. Then she ends politely.

The writer has created a signature, which includes her contact information. This signature is attached automatically to her emails.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The text above the screenshot reads, When using an email as a substitute for a memo or letter, keep in mind the points illustrated below, as well as the Guidelines box “Following Netiquette” on page 249.

The screenshot shows an email draft to Doc Team from Melissa Cartright, Copied (CC) to Bob Halloran, and blind copied (Bcc) to Cindy Belloc. An annotation reads, “CC” stands for courtesy copy. All of your recipients will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group. “BC” or “Bcc” stands for blind copy or blind courtesy copy. None of your readers will know that you are sending a copy to this person or group. You can create a “group” for people whom you email frequently.

The email subject is Input re Policy on Including Print Doc. An annotation reads, Like a memo, an email should have a specific subject line.

The email reads, Julie, Bob, and Rajiv dash

As I mentioned at our meeting last week, I want to get your response to an idea about changing the way we distribute print docs with our systems. I’ll be meeting with Ann in Marketing next week and I want to be sure I can represent our views effectively.

The idea is to stop including the Getting Started brochure and the User’s Guide in the box. Instead, we’ll include a post card that customers can use to request these two docs, at no cost. Of course, the two docs will remain up on the site as PDFs. And we'll still include the setup instructions on the poster.

A recent thread on TECHWR-L on this technique suggests that it can reduce the number of docs that we need to print by 70-85%. That's good, of course, in terms of print runs, as well as shipping costs. Before I run the numbers on cost savings, however, I want to get a sense of what you think about the idea from the perspective of the customer. Do you think that not including the docs will make a bad impression? Will it increase problems when they set up the printers?

We won't have final say on whether to adopt this idea, I'm afraid, but I want to make sure our voices are heard. After all, we know more about the customer experience than anyone else at the company. An annotation reads, By naming her readers at the start, the writer is showing respect for them; The first paragraph of the email clarifies the writer's purpose; The second paragraph describes the idea. You want to be sure your readers understand the context; Notice that paragraphs are relatively brief and that the writer skips a line between paragraphs.

The email continues, Please respond by email to all of us by Friday at noon. Thanks very much. An annotation reads, The writer explains what she would like her readers to do, and she states a deadline. Then she ends politely.

The email continues, Regards,

Melissa

Melissa Cartright, Senior Documentation Specialist. An annotation reads, The writer has created a signature, which includes her contact information. This signature is attached automatically to her emails.

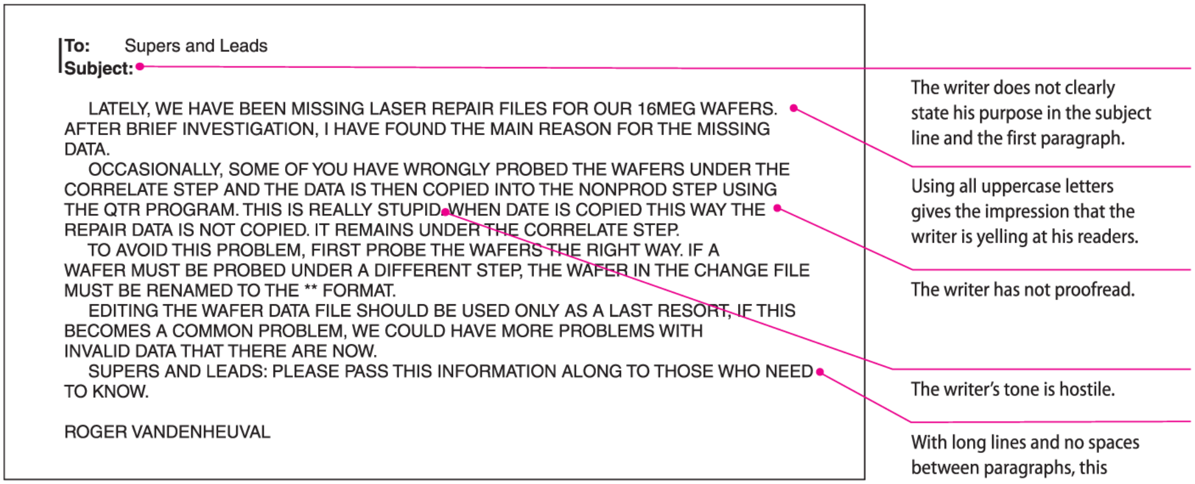
The email continues, Print Pro Systems

voice: 216.555.3407

fax: 216.555.3400

Return to A screenshot of an email draft with annotations explains the points to be kept in mind while using email for business correspondence.

Extended description for Figure 9.10 Netiquette



To: Supers and Leads
Subject:

LATELY, WE HAVE BEEN MISSING LASER REPAIR FILES FOR OUR 16MEG WAFERS. AFTER BRIEF INVESTIGATION, I HAVE FOUND THE MAIN REASON FOR THE MISSING DATA.

OCCASIONALLY, SOME OF YOU HAVE WRONGLY PROBED THE WAFERS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP AND THE DATA IS THEN COPIED INTO THE NONPROD STEP USING THE QTR PROGRAM. THIS IS REALLY STUPID. WHEN DATE IS COPIED THIS WAY THE REPAIR DATA IS NOT COPIED. IT REMAINS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP.

TO AVOID THIS PROBLEM, FIRST PROBE THE WAFERS THE RIGHT WAY. IF A WAFER MUST BE PROBED UNDER A DIFFERENT STEP, THE WAFER IN THE CHANGE FILE MUST BE RENAMED TO THE ** FORMAT.

EDITING THE WAFER DATA FILE SHOULD BE USED ONLY AS A LAST RESORT, IF THIS BECOMES A COMMON PROBLEM, WE COULD HAVE MORE PROBLEMS WITH INVALID DATA THAT THERE ARE NOW.

SUPERS AND LEADS: PLEASE PASS THIS INFORMATION ALONG TO THOSE WHO NEED TO KNOW.

ROGER VANDENHEUVAL

The writer does not clearly state his purpose in the subject line and the first paragraph.

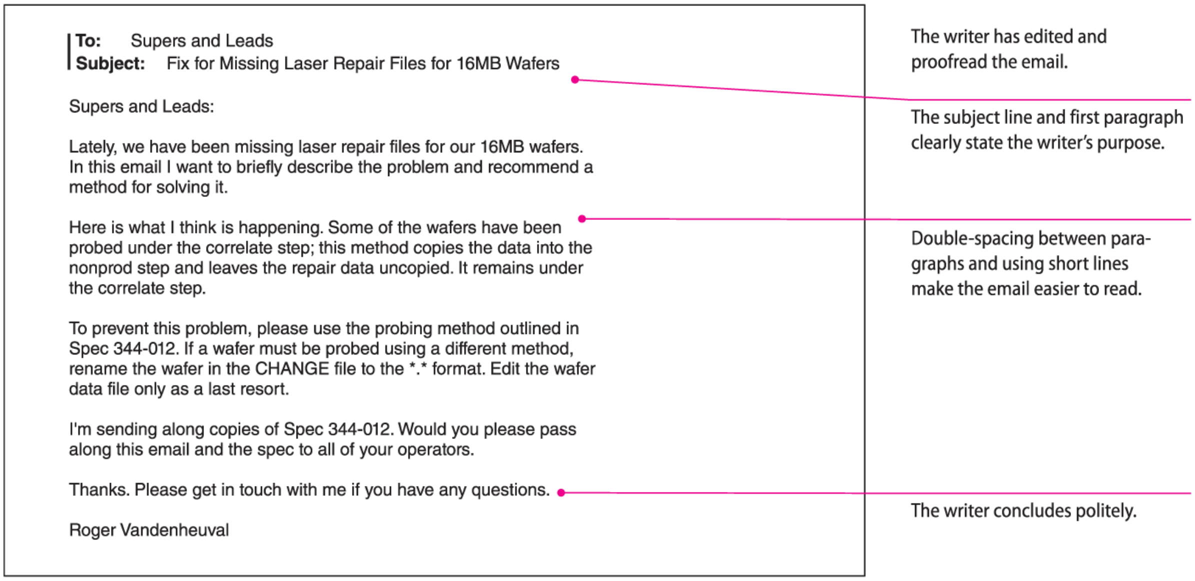
Using all uppercase letters gives the impression that the writer is yelling at his readers.

The writer has not proofread.

The writer's tone is hostile.

With long lines and no spaces between paragraphs, this email is difficult to read.

a. Email that violates netiquette guidelines



To: Supers and Leads
Subject: Fix for Missing Laser Repair Files for 16MB Wafers

Supers and Leads:

Lately, we have been missing laser repair files for our 16MB wafers. In this email I want to briefly describe the problem and recommend a method for solving it.

Here is what I think is happening. Some of the wafers have been probed under the correlate step; this method copies the data into the nonprod step and leaves the repair data uncopied. It remains under the correlate step.

To prevent this problem, please use the probing method outlined in Spec 344-012. If a wafer must be probed using a different method, rename the wafer in the CHANGE file to the *.* format. Edit the wafer data file only as a last resort.

I'm sending along copies of Spec 344-012. Would you please pass along this email and the spec to all of your operators.

Thanks. Please get in touch with me if you have any questions.

Roger Vandenheuval

The writer has edited and proofread the email.

The subject line and first paragraph clearly state the writer's purpose.

Double-spacing between paragraphs and using short lines make the email easier to read.

The writer concludes politely.

b. Email that adheres to netiquette guidelines

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

TThe first email reads, To: Supers and Leads

Subject: An annotation reads, The writer does not clearly state his purpose in the subject line and the first paragraph.

The email continues, in all capital letters, LATELY, WE HAVE BEEN MISSING LASER REPAIR FILES FOR OUR 16MEG WAFERS. AFTER BRIEF INVESTIGATION, I HAVE FOUND THE MAIN REASON FOR THE MISSING DATA. An annotation reads, Using all uppercase letters gives the impression that the writer is yelling at his readers.

The email continues, OCCASIONALLY, SOME OF YOU HAVE WRONGLY PROBED THE WAFERS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP AND THE DATA IS THEN COPIED INTO THE NONPROD STEP USING THE QTR PROGRAM. THIS IS REALLY STUPID. WHEN DATE IS COPIED THIS WAY THE REPAIR DATA IS NOT COPIED. IT REMAINS UNDER THE CORRELATE STEP. An annotation reads, The writer has not proofread; the writer's tone is hostile.

The email continues, TO AVOID THIS PROBLEM, FIRST PROBE THE WAFERS THE RIGHT WAY. IF A WAFER MUST BE PROBED UNDER A DIFFERENT STEP, THE WAFER IN THE CHANGE FILE MUST BE RENAMED TO THE ** FORMAT. EDITING THE WAFER DATA FILE SHOULD BE USED ONLY AS A LAST RESORT, IF THIS BECOMES A COMMON PROBLEM, WE COULD HAVE MORE PROBLEMS WITH INVALID DATA THAT THERE ARE NOW. SUPERS AND LEADS: PLEASE PASS THIS INFORMATION ALONG TO THOSE WHO NEED TO KNOW. An annotation reads, With long lines and no spaces between paragraphs, this email is difficult to read.

The email continues, ROGER VANDENHEUVAL

The second email reads, To: Supers and Leads.

Subject: Fix for Missing Laser Repair Files for 16MB Wafers. An annotation reads, The writer has edited and proofread the email; The subject line and first paragraph clearly state the writer’s purpose.

The email continues, Supers and Leads:

Lately, we have been missing laser repair files for our 16MB wafers. In this email I want to briefly describe the problem and recommend a method for solving it.

Here is what I think is happening. Some of the wafers have been probed under the correlate step; this method copies the data into the nonprod step and leaves the repair data uncopied. It remains under the correlate step. An annotation reads, Double-spacing between paragraphs and using short lines make the email easier to read.

The email continues, To prevent this problem, please use the probing method outlined in Spec 344-012. If a wafer must be probed using a different method, rename the wafer in the CHANGE file to the *.* format. Edit the wafer data file only as a last resort.

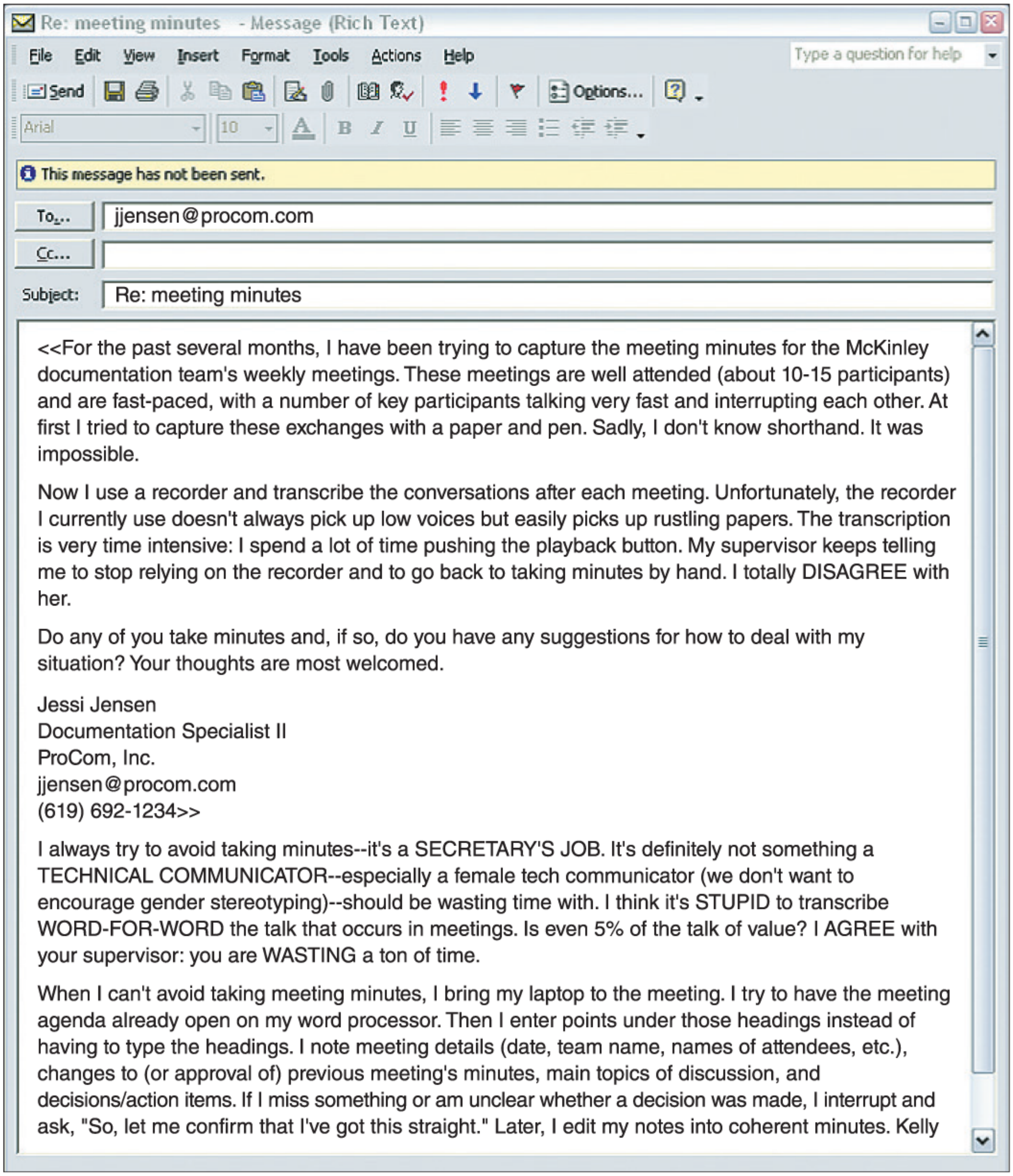
I'm sending along copies of Spec 344-012. Would you please pass along this email and the spec to all of your operators.

Thanks. Please get in touch with me if you have any questions. An annotation reads, The writer concludes politely.

The email continues, Roger Vandenheuval

Return to Figure 9.10 Netiquette

Extended description for A screenshot shows an email draft with the subject Re: meeting minutes to jjensen at the rate procom dot com.


Re: meeting minutes - Message (Rich Text)
File Edit View Insert Format Tools Actions Help
Type a question for help
Send
Options...
Arial
10
B I U
To...
Cc...
Subject:

This message has not been sent.

To... jjensen@procom.com

Cc...

Subject: Re: meeting minutes

<<For the past several months, I have been trying to capture the meeting minutes for the McKinley documentation team's weekly meetings. These meetings are well attended (about 10-15 participants) and are fast-paced, with a number of key participants talking very fast and interrupting each other. At first I tried to capture these exchanges with a paper and pen. Sadly, I don't know shorthand. It was impossible.

Now I use a recorder and transcribe the conversations after each meeting. Unfortunately, the recorder I currently use doesn't always pick up low voices but easily picks up rustling papers. The transcription is very time intensive: I spend a lot of time pushing the playback button. My supervisor keeps telling me to stop relying on the recorder and to go back to taking minutes by hand. I totally DISAGREE with her.

Do any of you take minutes and, if so, do you have any suggestions for how to deal with my situation? Your thoughts are most welcomed.

Jessi Jensen
Documentation Specialist II
ProCom, Inc.
jjensen@procom.com
(619) 692-1234>>

I always try to avoid taking minutes--it's a SECRETARY'S JOB. It's definitely not something a TECHNICAL COMMUNICATOR--especially a female tech communicator (we don't want to encourage gender stereotyping)--should be wasting time with. I think it's STUPID to transcribe WORD-FOR-WORD the talk that occurs in meetings. Is even 5% of the talk of value? I AGREE with your supervisor: you are WASTING a ton of time.

When I can't avoid taking meeting minutes, I bring my laptop to the meeting. I try to have the meeting agenda already open on my word processor. Then I enter points under those headings instead of having to type the headings. I note meeting details (date, team name, names of attendees, etc.), changes to (or approval of) previous meeting's minutes, main topics of discussion, and decisions/action items. If I miss something or am unclear whether a decision was made, I interrupt and ask, "So, let me confirm that I've got this straight." Later, I edit my notes into coherent minutes. Kelly

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The body of the email reads,

Now I use a recorder and transcribe the conversations after each meeting. Unfortunately, the recorder I currently use doesn't always pick up low voices but easily picks up rustling papers. The transcription is very time intensive: I spend a lot of time pushing the playback button. My supervisor keeps telling me to stop relying on the recorder and to go back to taking minutes by hand. I totally DISAGREE with her.

Do any of you take minutes and, if so, do you have any suggestions for how to deal with my situation? Your thoughts are most welcomed.

Jessi Jensen

Documentation Specialist II

ProCom, Inc.

jjensen@procom.com

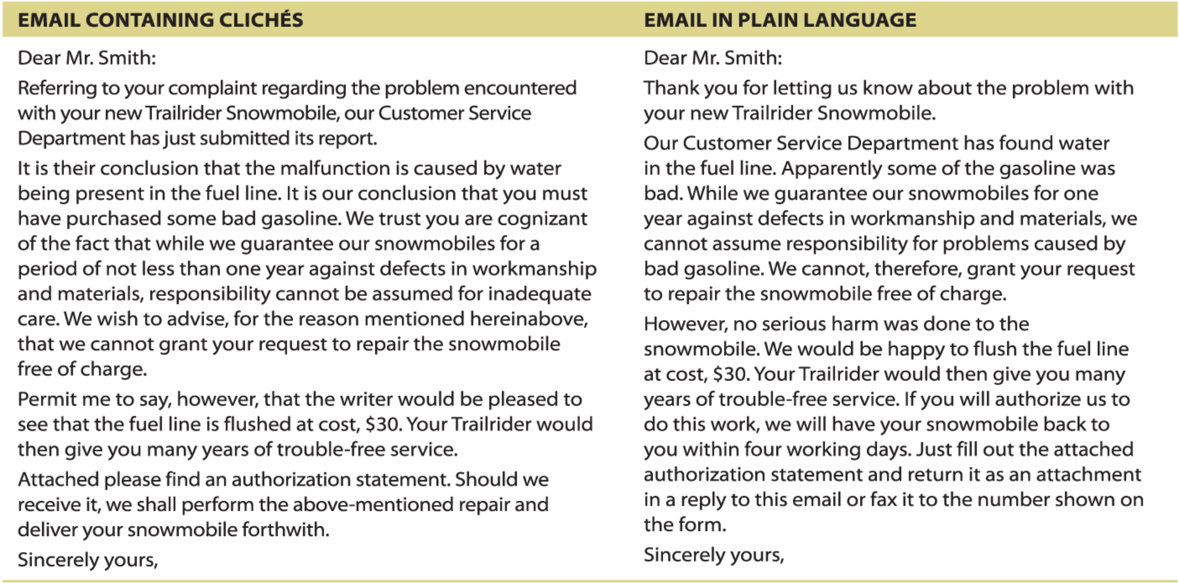
(619) 692-1234>>

I always try to avoid taking minutes--it's a SECRETARY'S JOB. It's definitely not something a TECHNICAL COMMUNICATOR--especially a female tech communicator (we don't want to encourage gender stereotyping)--should be wasting time with. I think it's STUPID to transcribe WORD-FOR-WORD the talk that occurs in meetings. Is even 5% of the talk of value? I AGREE with your supervisor: you are WASTING a ton of time.

When I can't avoid taking meeting minutes, I bring my laptop to the meeting. I try to have the meeting agenda already open on my word processor. Then I enter points under those headings instead of having to type the headings. I note meeting details (date, team name, names of attendees, etc.), changes to (or approval of) previous meeting's minutes, main topics of discussion, and decisions/action items. If I miss something or am unclear whether a decision was made, I interrupt and ask, "So, let me confirm that I've got this straight." Later, I edit my notes into coherent minutes. Kelly

Return to A screenshot shows an email draft with the subject Re: meeting minutes to jjensen at the rate procom dot com.

Extended description for Figure 9.1 Sample Emails With and Without Clichés



EMAIL CONTAINING CLICHÉS	EMAIL IN PLAIN LANGUAGE
Dear Mr. Smith:	Dear Mr. Smith:
Referring to your complaint regarding the problem encountered with your new Trailrider Snowmobile, our Customer Service Department has just submitted its report. It is their conclusion that the malfunction is caused by water being present in the fuel line. It is our conclusion that you must have purchased some bad gasoline. We trust you are cognizant of the fact that while we guarantee our snowmobiles for a period of not less than one year against defects in workmanship and materials, responsibility cannot be assumed for inadequate care. We wish to advise, for the reason mentioned hereinabove, that we cannot grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge. Permit me to say, however, that the writer would be pleased to see that the fuel line is flushed at cost, $30. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service. Attached please find an authorization statement. Should we receive it, we shall perform the above-mentioned repair and deliver your snowmobile forthwith.	Thank you for letting us know about the problem with your new Trailrider Snowmobile. Our Customer Service Department has found water in the fuel line. Apparently some of the gasoline was bad. While we guarantee our snowmobiles for one year against defects in workmanship and materials, we cannot assume responsibility for problems caused by bad gasoline. We cannot, therefore, grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge. However, no serious harm was done to the snowmobile. We would be happy to flush the fuel line at cost, $30. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service. If you will authorize us to do this work, we will have your snowmobile back to you within four working days. Just fill out the attached authorization statement and return it as an attachment in a reply to this email or fax it to the number shown on the form.
Sincerely yours,	Sincerely yours,

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The email with chiches reads,

Dear Mr. Smith:

Referring to your complaint regarding the problem encountered with your new Trailrider Snowmobile, our Customer Service Department has just submitted its report.

It is their conclusion that the malfunction is caused by water being present in the fuel line. It is our conclusion that you must have purchased some bad gasoline. We trust you are cognizant of the fact that while we guarantee our snowmobiles for a period of not less than one year against defects in workmanship and materials, responsibility cannot be assumed for inadequate care. We wish to advise, for the reason mentioned hereinabove, that we cannot grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge.

Permit me to say, however, that the writer would be pleased to see that the fuel line is flushed at cost, 30 dollars. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service.

Attached please find an authorization statement. Should we receive it, we shall perform the above-mentioned repair and deliver your snowmobile forthwith.

Sincerely yours,

The email in plain language reads,

Dear Mr. Smith:

Thank you for letting us know about the problem with your new Trailrider Snowmobile.

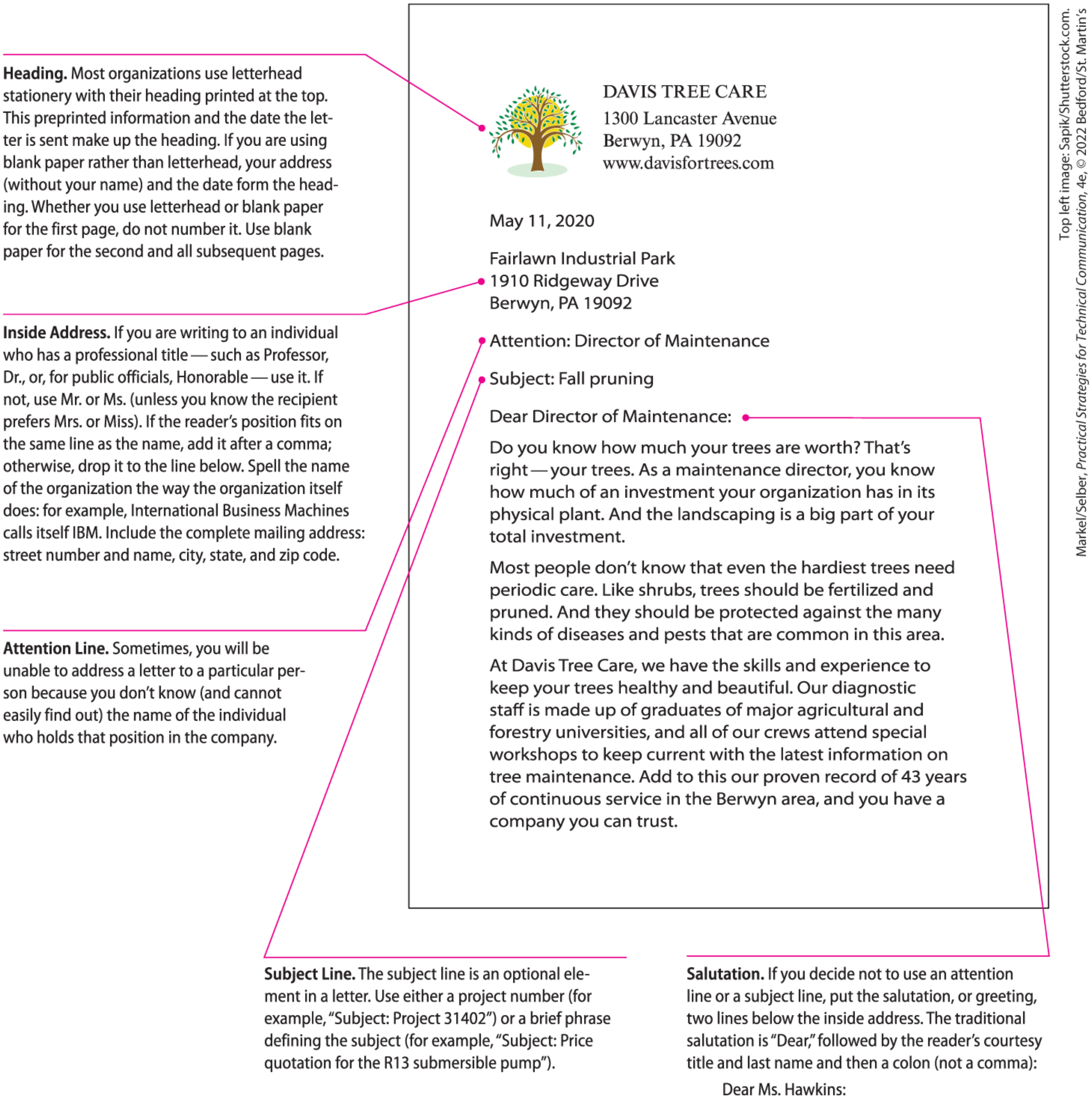
Our Customer Service Department has found water in the fuel line. Apparently some of the gasoline was bad. While we guarantee our snowmobiles for one year against defects in workmanship and materials, we cannot assume responsibility for problems caused by bad gasoline. We cannot, therefore, grant your request to repair the snowmobile free of charge.

However, no serious harm was done to the snowmobile. We would be happy to flush the fuel line at cost, 30 dollars. Your Trailrider would then give you many years of trouble-free service. If you will authorize us to do this work, we will have your snowmobile back to you within four working days. Just fill out the attached authorization statement and return it as an attachment in a reply to this email or fax it to the number shown on the form.

Sincerely yours,

Return to Figure 9.1 Sample Emails With and Without Clichés

Extended description for Figure 9.2 Elements of a Letter



DAVIS TREE CARE
1300 Lancaster Avenue
Berwyn, PA 19092
www.davisfortrees.com

May 11, 2020

Fairlawn Industrial Park
1910 Ridgeway Drive
Berwyn, PA 19092

Attention: Director of Maintenance

Subject: Fall pruning

Dear Director of Maintenance:

Do you know how much your trees are worth? That's right — your trees. As a maintenance director, you know how much of an investment your organization has in its physical plant. And the landscaping is a big part of your total investment.

Most people don't know that even the hardiest trees need periodic care. Like shrubs, trees should be fertilized and pruned. And they should be protected against the many kinds of diseases and pests that are common in this area.

At Davis Tree Care, we have the skills and experience to keep your trees healthy and beautiful. Our diagnostic staff is made up of graduates of major agricultural and forestry universities, and all of our crews attend special workshops to keep current with the latest information on tree maintenance. Add to this our proven record of 43 years of continuous service in the Berwyn area, and you have a company you can trust.

Heading. Most organizations use letterhead stationery with their heading printed at the top. This preprinted information and the date the letter is sent make up the heading. If you are using blank paper rather than letterhead, your address (without your name) and the date form the heading. Whether you use letterhead or blank paper for the first page, do not number it. Use blank paper for the second and all subsequent pages.

Inside Address. If you are writing to an individual who has a professional title — such as Professor, Dr., or, for public officials, Honorable — use it. If not, use Mr. or Ms. (unless you know the recipient prefers Mrs. or Miss). If the reader's position fits on the same line as the name, add it after a comma; otherwise, drop it to the line below. Spell the name of the organization the way the organization itself does: for example, International Business Machines calls itself IBM. Include the complete mailing address: street number and name, city, state, and zip code.

Attention Line. Sometimes, you will be unable to address a letter to a particular person because you don't know (and cannot easily find out) the name of the individual who holds that position in the company.

Subject Line. The subject line is an optional element in a letter. Use either a project number (for example, "Subject: Project 31402") or a brief phrase defining the subject (for example, "Subject: Price quotation for the R13 submersible pump").

Salutation. If you decide not to use an attention line or a subject line, put the salutation, or greeting, two lines below the inside address. The traditional salutation is "Dear," followed by the reader's courtesy title and last name and then a colon (not a comma):

Dear Ms. Hawkins:

Top left image: Sapik/Shutterstock.com. Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The heading of the letter reads (Logo) DAVIS TREE CARE, 1300 Lancaster Avenue, Berwyn, P A 1 9 0 9 2, www dot davisfortrees dot com. An annotation reads, Heading. Most organizations use letterhead stationery with their heading printed at the top. This preprinted information and the date the letter is sent make up the heading. If you are using blank paper rather than letterhead, your address (without your name) and the date form the heading. Whether you use letterhead or blank paper for the first page, do not number it. Use blank paper for the second and all subsequent pages.

The second annotation points toward the address in the letter, Fairlawn Industrial Park, 1910 Ridgeway Drive, Berwyn, P A 1 9 0 9 2. It reads, Inside Address. If you are writing to an individual who has a professional title — such as Professor, Dr., or, for public officials, Honorable — use it. If not, use Mr. or Ms. (unless you know the recipient prefers Mrs. or Miss). If the reader's position fits on the same line as the name, add it after a comma; otherwise, drop it to the line below. Spell the name of the organization the way the organization itself does: for example, International Business Machines calls itself IBM. Include the complete mailing address: street number and name, city, state, and zip code.

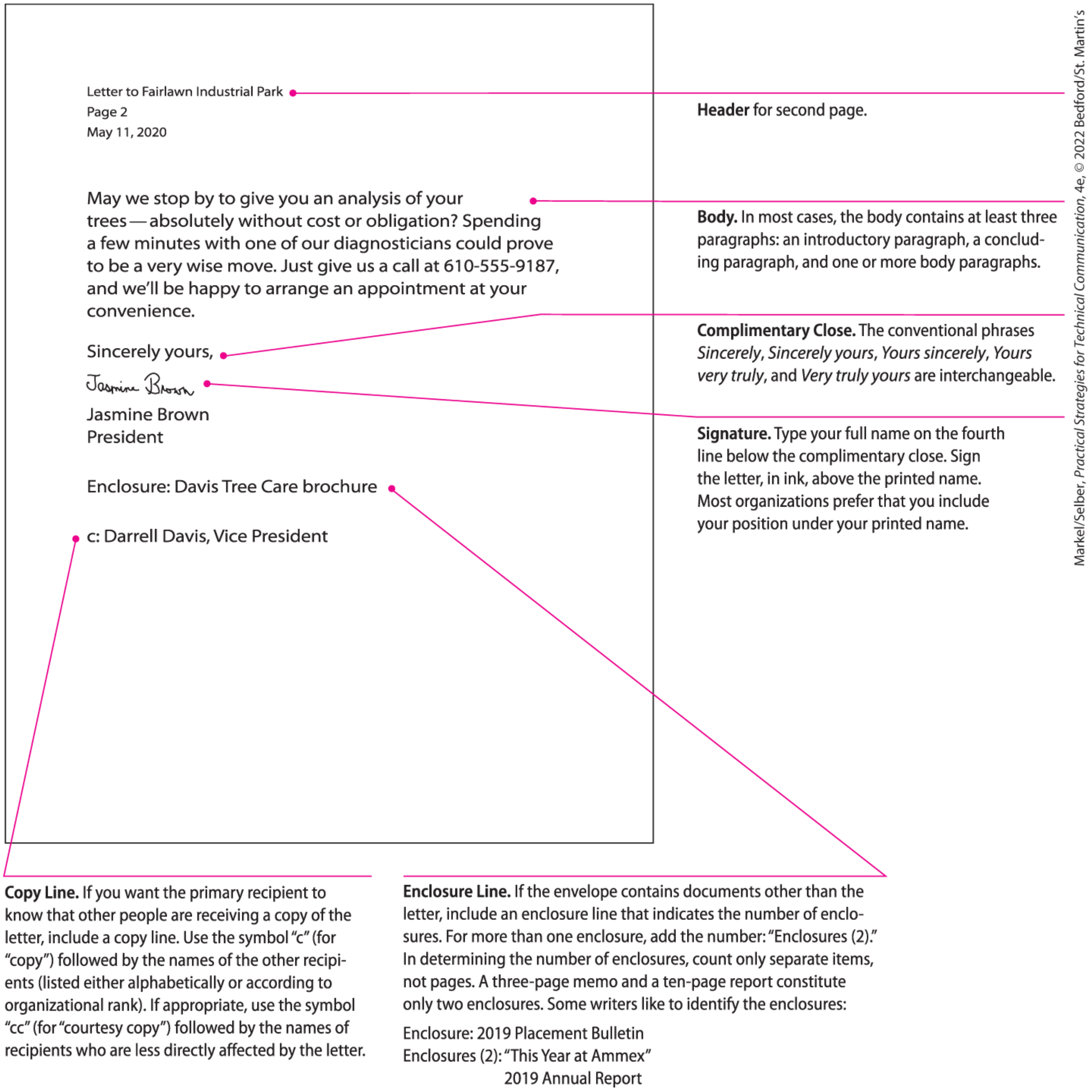
The third annotation points toward the attention line in the letter, which reads, Attention: Director of Maintenance. The annotation reads, Attention Line. Sometimes you will be unable to address a letter to a particular person because you don't know (and cannot easily find out) the name of the individual who holds that position in the company.

The fourth annotation points toward the subject line of the letter: Subject: Fall pruning. It reads, Subject Line. The subject line is an optional element in a letter. Use either a project number (for example, "Subject: Project 31402") or a brief phrase defining the subject (for example, "Subject: Price quotation for the R13 submersible pump").

The fifth annotation points toward the salutation, Dear Director of Maintenance:, and it reads, Salutation. If you decide not to use an attention line or a subject line, put the salutation, or greeting, two lines below the inside address. The traditional salutation is Dear, followed by the reader's courtesy title and last name and then a colon (not a comma): Dear Ms. Hawkins:

Return to Figure 9.2 Elements of a Letter

Extended description for Figure 9.2 Elements of a Letter



Letter to Fairlawn Industrial Park
Page 2
May 11, 2020

May we stop by to give you an analysis of your trees — absolutely without cost or obligation? Spending a few minutes with one of our diagnosticians could prove to be a very wise move. Just give us a call at 610-555-9187, and we'll be happy to arrange an appointment at your convenience.

Sincerely yours,

Jasmine Brown

Jasmine Brown
President

Enclosure: Davis Tree Care brochure

c: Darrell Davis, Vice President

Header for second page.

Body. In most cases, the body contains at least three paragraphs: an introductory paragraph, a concluding paragraph, and one or more body paragraphs.

Complimentary Close. The conventional phrases *Sincerely*, *Sincerely yours*, *Yours sincerely*, *Yours very truly*, and *Very truly yours* are interchangeable.

Signature. Type your full name on the fourth line below the complimentary close. Sign the letter, in ink, above the printed name. Most organizations prefer that you include your position under your printed name.

Copy Line. If you want the primary recipient to know that other people are receiving a copy of the letter, include a copy line. Use the symbol "c" (for "copy") followed by the names of the other recipients (listed either alphabetically or according to organizational rank). If appropriate, use the symbol "cc" (for "courtesy copy") followed by the names of recipients who are less directly affected by the letter.

Enclosure Line. If the envelope contains documents other than the letter, include an enclosure line that indicates the number of enclosures. For more than one enclosure, add the number: "Enclosures (2)." In determining the number of enclosures, count only separate items, not pages. A three-page memo and a ten-page report constitute only two enclosures. Some writers like to identify the enclosures:

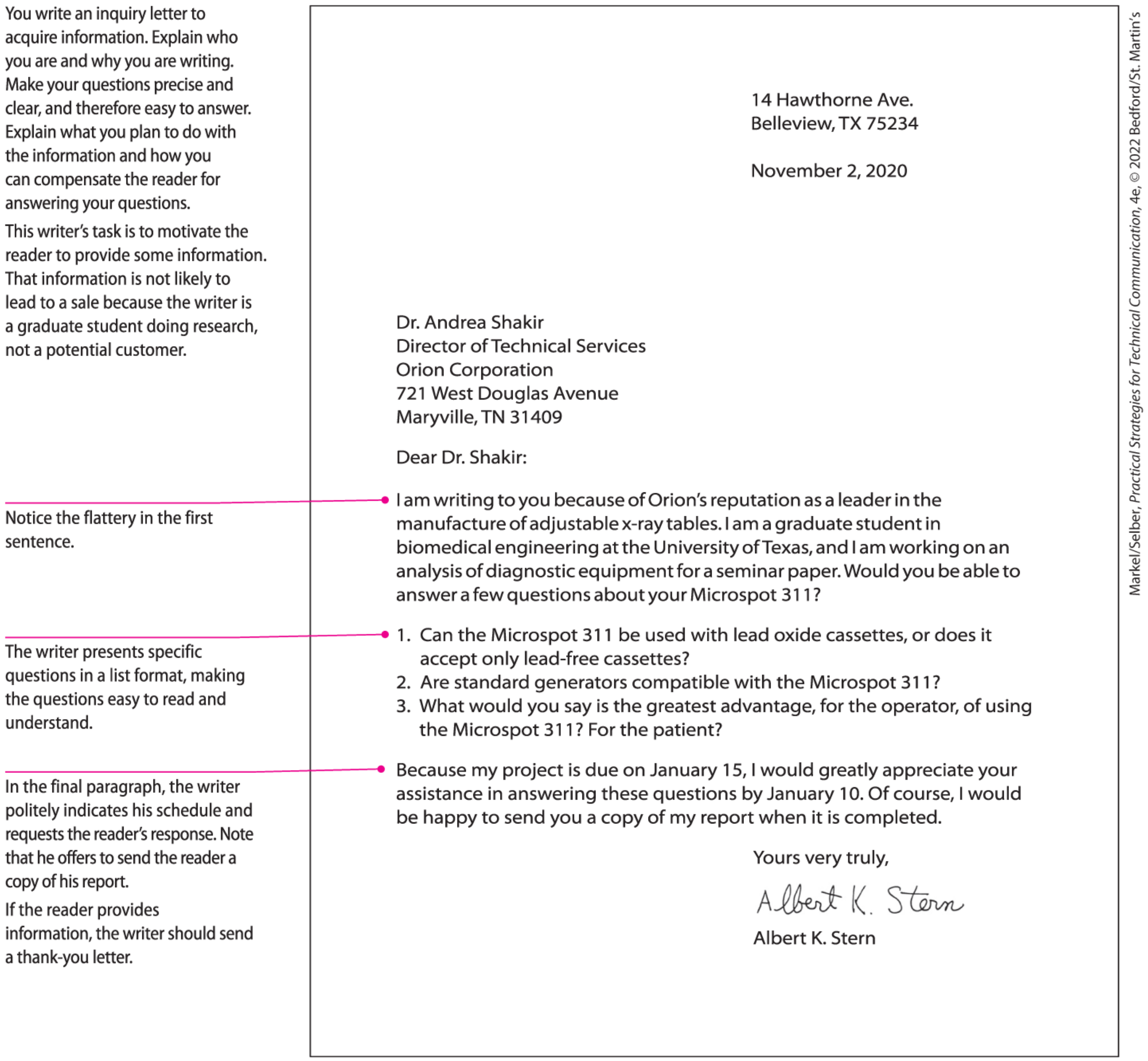
Enclosure: 2019 Placement Bulletin
Enclosures (2): "This Year at Ammex"
2019 Annual Report

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The letter reads, Letter to Fairlawn Industrial Park. An annotation reads, Header for second page. Letter continues, Page 2 May 11, 2020 May we stop by to give you an analysis of your trees dash absolutely without cost or obligation? Spending a few minutes with one of our diagnosticians could prove to be a very wise move. Just give us a call at 610-555-9187, and we'll be happy to arrange an appointment at your convenience. An annotation reads, Body. In most cases, the body contains at least three paragraphs: an introductory paragraph, a concluding paragraph, and one or more body paragraphs. Letter continues, Sincerely yours, and an annotation reads, Complimentary Close. The conventional phrases italic Sincerely, Sincerely yours, Yours sincerely, Yours very truly, and Very truly yours end italic are interchangeable. Signature of Jasmine Brown The annotation reads, Signature. Type your full name on the fourth line below the complimentary close. Sign the letter, in ink, above the printed name. Most organizations prefer that you include your position under your printed name. Letter continues, Jasmine Brown President Enclosure: Davis Tree Care brochure. An annotation reads, Enclosure Line. If the envelope contains documents other than the letter, include an enclosure line that indicates the number of enclosures. For more than one enclosure, add the number: "Enclosures (2)." In determining the number of enclosures, count only separate items, not pages. A three-page memo and a ten-page report constitute only two enclosures. Some writers like to identify the enclosures: Enclosure: 2019 Placement Bulletin Enclosures (2): "This Year at Ammex"; 2019 Annual Report Letter continues, c: Darrell Davis, Vice President. An annotation reads, Copy Line. If you want the primary recipient to know that other people are receiving a copy of the letter, include a copy line. Use the symbol “c” (for “copy”) followed by the names of the other recipients (listed either alphabetically or according to organizational rank). If appropriate, use the symbol “cc” (for “courtesy copy”) followed by the names of recipients who are less directly affected by the letter.

Return to Figure 9.2 Elements of a Letter

Extended description for Figure 9.3 Inquiry Letter



14 Hawthorne Ave.
Belleview, TX 75234

November 2, 2020

Dr. Andrea Shakir
Director of Technical Services
Orion Corporation
721 West Douglas Avenue
Maryville, TN 31409

Dear Dr. Shakir:

I am writing to you because of Orion's reputation as a leader in the manufacture of adjustable x-ray tables. I am a graduate student in biomedical engineering at the University of Texas, and I am working on an analysis of diagnostic equipment for a seminar paper. Would you be able to answer a few questions about your Microspot 311?

1. Can the Microspot 311 be used with lead oxide cassettes, or does it accept only lead-free cassettes?
2. Are standard generators compatible with the Microspot 311?
3. What would you say is the greatest advantage, for the operator, of using the Microspot 311? For the patient?

Because my project is due on January 15, I would greatly appreciate your assistance in answering these questions by January 10. Of course, I would be happy to send you a copy of my report when it is completed.

Yours very truly,

Albert K. Stern

Albert K. Stern

You write an inquiry letter to acquire information. Explain who you are and why you are writing. Make your questions precise and clear, and therefore easy to answer. Explain what you plan to do with the information and how you can compensate the reader for answering your questions.

This writer's task is to motivate the reader to provide some information. That information is not likely to lead to a sale because the writer is a graduate student doing research, not a potential customer.

Notice the flattery in the first sentence.

The writer presents specific questions in a list format, making the questions easy to read and understand.

In the final paragraph, the writer politely indicates his schedule and requests the reader's response. Note that he offers to send the reader a copy of his report.

If the reader provides information, the writer should send a thank-you letter.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Right justified text reads, 14 Hawthorne Ave.

Belleview, TX 75234

November 2, 2020

Left justified text reads, Dr. Andrea Shakir

Director of Technical Services

Orion Corporation

721 West Douglas Avenue

Maryville, TN 31409

Dear Dr. Shakir:

I am writing to you because of Orion's reputation as a leader in the manufacture of adjustable x-ray tables. I am a graduate student in biomedical engineering at the University of Texas, and I am working on an analysis of diagnostic equipment for a seminar paper. Would you be able to answer a few questions about your Microspot 311? An notation reads, Notice the flattery in the first sentence.

1. Can the Microspot 311 be used with lead oxide cassettes, or does it accept only lead-free cassettes? A notation reads, The writer presents specific questions in a list format, making the questions easy to read and understand.

2. Are standard generators compatible with the Microspot 311?

3. What would you say is the greatest advantage, for the operator, of using the Microspot 311? For the patient?

Because my project is due on January 15, I would greatly appreciate your assistance in answering these questions by January 10. Of course, I would be happy to send you a copy of my report when it is completed. A notation reads, In the final paragraph, the writer politely indicates his schedule and requests the reader's response. Note that he offers to send the reader a copy of his report. If the reader provides information, the writer should send a thank-you letter.

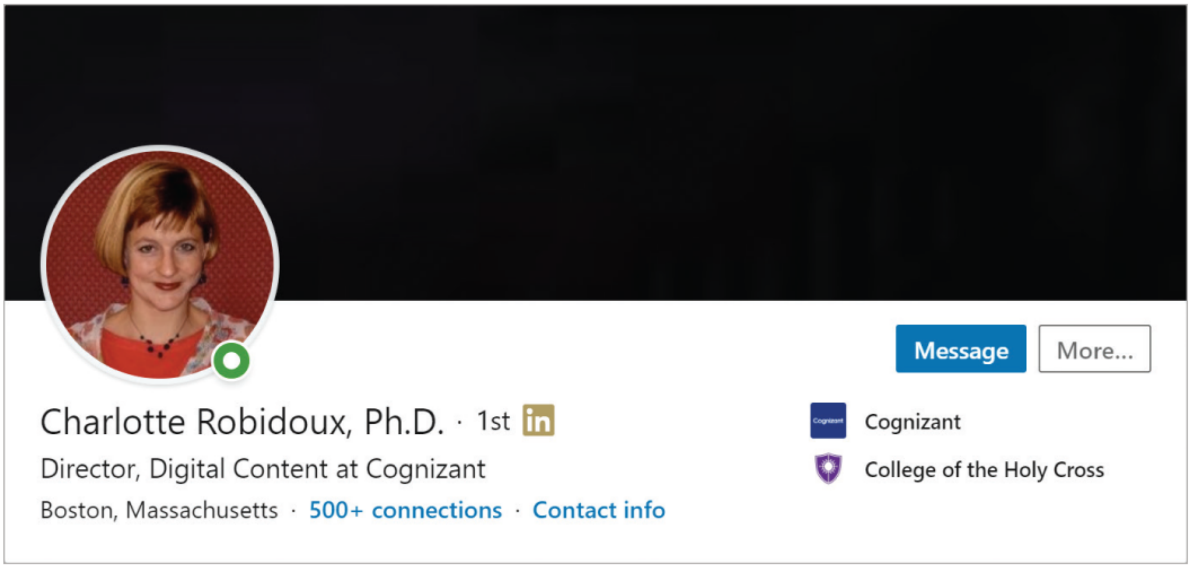
Yours very truly,

Signature

Albert K. Stern

Return to Figure 9.3 Inquiry Letter

Extended description for Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional’s LinkedIn Profile



Charlotte Robidoux, Ph.D. · 1st

Director, Digital Content at Cognizant

Boston, Massachusetts · 500+ connections · Contact info

Cognizant

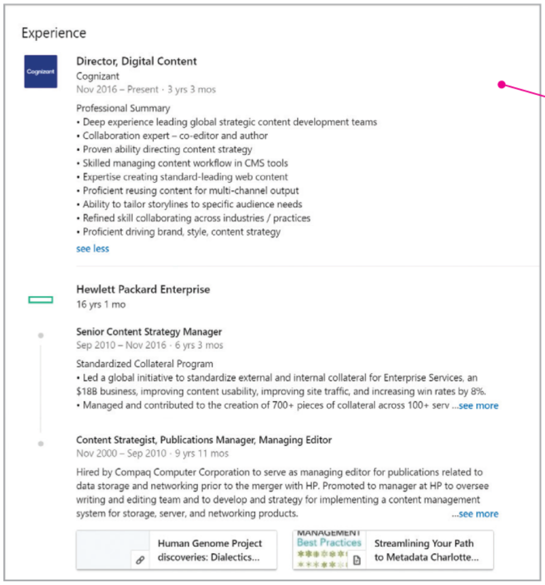
College of the Holy Cross

Charlotte Robidoux.

The image shows the photo of Charlotte Robidoux, Ph. D. First contact. Text below reads, Director, Digital Content at Cognizant, Boston, Massachusetts. She has 500+ connections, and a link for contact info is shown. There are options to Message and for More options, and text displays that she attended the College of the Holy Cross.

Return to Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional’s LinkedIn Profile

Extended description for Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional’s LinkedIn Profile



Experience

Director, Digital Content
Cognizant
Nov 2016 – Present · 3 yrs 3 mos

Professional Summary
- Deep experience leading global strategic content development teams
- Collaboration expert – co-editor and author
- Proven ability directing content strategy
- Skilled managing content workflow in CMS tools
- Expertise creating standard-leading web content
- Proficient reusing content for multi-channel output
- Ability to tailor storylines to specific audience needs
- Refined skill collaborating across industries / practices
- Proficient driving brand, style, content strategy

Hewlett Packard Enterprise
16 yrs 1 mo

Senior Content Strategy Manager
Sep 2010 – Nov 2016 · 6 yrs 3 mos

Standardized Collateral Program
- Led a global initiative to standardize external and internal collateral for Enterprise Services, an $18B business, improving content usability, improving site traffic, and increasing win rates by 8%.
- Managed and contributed to the creation of 700+ pieces of collateral across 100+ serv ...

Content Strategist, Publications Manager, Managing Editor
Nov 2000 – Sep 2010 · 9 yrs 11 mos

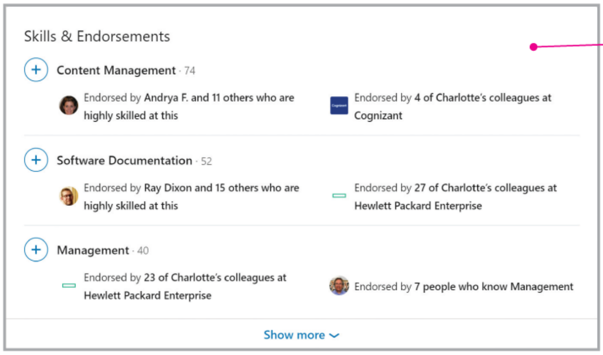
Hired by Compaq Computer Corporation to serve as managing editor for publications related to data storage and networking prior to the merger with HP. Promoted to manager at HP to oversee writing and editing team and to develop and strategy for implementing a content management system for storage, server, and networking products. ...

Human Genome Project discoveries: Dialectics...

Streamlining Your Path to Metadata Charlotte...

Charlotte includes a full description of her experience, with details about her responsibilities, specific types of projects she’s completed, and leadership roles she has taken. All of this detail increases her chances of attracting potential employers.

Charlotte Robidoux



Skills & Endorsements

Content Management · 74

Endorsed by **Andrya F. and 11 others who are highly skilled at this**

Endorsed by **4 of Charlotte’s colleagues at Cognizant**

Software Documentation · 52

Endorsed by **Ray Dixon and 15 others who are highly skilled at this**

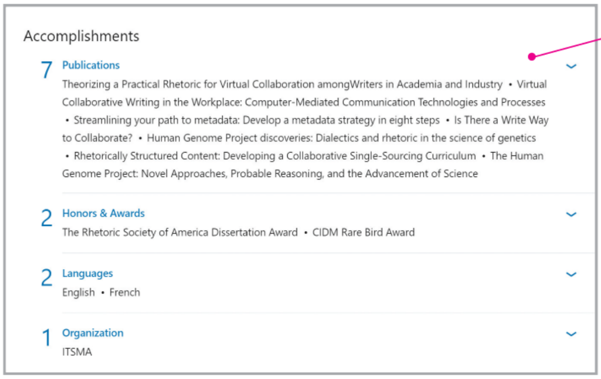
Endorsed by **27 of Charlotte’s colleagues at Hewlett Packard Enterprise**

Management · 40

Endorsed by **23 of Charlotte’s colleagues at Hewlett Packard Enterprise**

Endorsed by **7 people who know Management**

Charlotte also lists a number of specific skills in the “Skills & Endorsements” section of her profile. Other LinkedIn users have endorsed her skills, not only affirming her abilities but also suggesting that she is an active LinkedIn user who probably endorses her colleagues, as is appropriate, in return.



Accomplishments

7 Publications
Theorizing a Practical Rhetoric for Virtual Collaboration amongWriters in Academia and Industry • Virtual Collaborative Writing in the Workplace: Computer-Mediated Communication Technologies and Processes • Streamlining your path to metadata: Develop a metadata strategy in eight steps • Is There a Write Way to Collaborate? • Human Genome Project discoveries: Dialectics and rhetoric in the science of genetics • Rhetorically Structured Content: Developing a Collaborative Single-Sourcing Curriculum • The Human Genome Project: Novel Approaches, Probable Reasoning, and the Advancement of Science

2 Honors & Awards
The Rhetoric Society of America Dissertation Award • CIDM Rare Bird Award

2 Languages
English • French

1 Organization
ITSMA

The “Accomplishments” section lists additional information that will be attractive to employers. Charlotte has included relevant publications and awards, demonstrating that her experience and capabilities are recognized outside of the companies where she has worked. Employers will note that she contributes to her field by being active in a professional organization and publishing articles on topics related to her work.

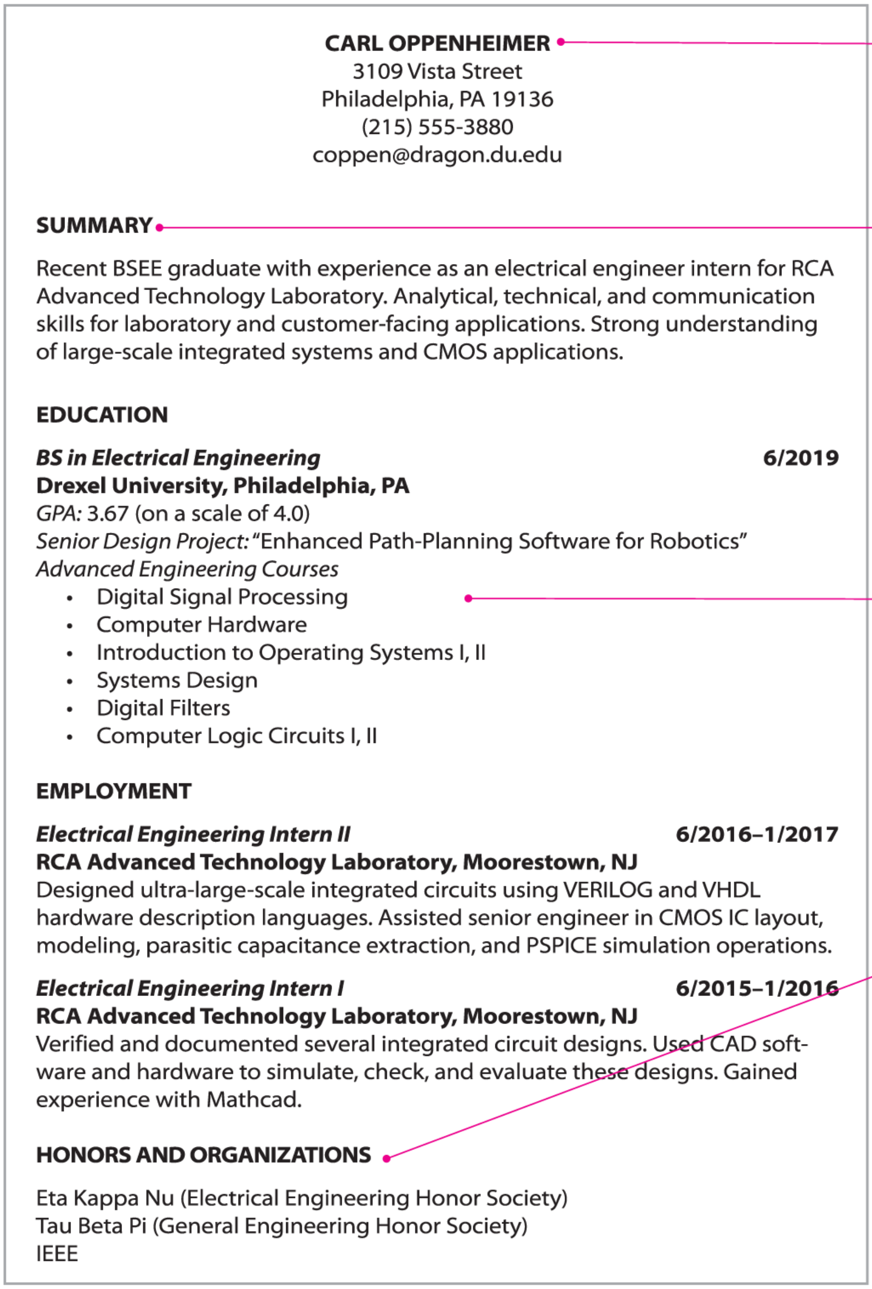
The first section depicts her work history details. The first is Director, Digital Content at Cognizant, with dates of employment November 2016 - present: 3 years, 3 months. Following is her professional summary with multiple bullet points and details. The next is Hewlett Packard Enterprise, where she worked for 16 years and 1 month. Her positions include Senior Content Strategy Manager for 6 years and 3 months and Content Strategist, Publications Manager, Managing editor for 9 years and 11 months. A notation pointing to this section reads, Charlotte includes a full description of her experience, with details about her responsibilities, specific types of projects she's completed, and leadership roles she has taken. All of this detail increases her chances of attracting potential employers.

The next section shows Skills and Endorsements. They include 74 for content management, 52 for software documentation, and 40 for management. Each endorsement has the logo or photo of the person giving it. Text pointing to this section reads, Charlotte also lists a number of specific skills in the "Skills & Endorsements" section of her profile. Other LinkedIn users have endorsed her skills, not only affirming her abilities but also suggesting that she is an active LinkedIn user who probably endorses her colleagues, as is appropriate, in return.

The next section is a list of Accomplishments including 7 publications, 2 Honors and Awards, 2 Languages, and 1 Organization. Notation to this section reads, The "Accomplishments" section lists additional information that will be attractive to employers. Charlotte has included relevant publications and awards, demonstrating that her experience and capabilities are recognized outside of the companies where she has worked. Employers will note that she contributes to her field by being active in a professional organization and publishing articles on topics related to her work.

Return to Figure 10.1 Excerpts from a Professional's LinkedIn Profile

Extended description for Figure 10.2 Chronological Résumé of a Traditional Student



CARL OPPENHEIMER
3109 Vista Street
Philadelphia, PA 19136
(215) 555-3880
coppen@dragon.du.edu

SUMMARY

Recent BSEE graduate with experience as an electrical engineer intern for RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory. Analytical, technical, and communication skills for laboratory and customer-facing applications. Strong understanding of large-scale integrated systems and CMOS applications.

EDUCATION

BS in Electrical Engineering **6/2019**
Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA
GPA: 3.67 (on a scale of 4.0)
Senior Design Project: "Enhanced Path-Planning Software for Robotics"
Advanced Engineering Courses

- Digital Signal Processing
- Computer Hardware
- Introduction to Operating Systems I, II
- Systems Design
- Digital Filters
- Computer Logic Circuits I, II

EMPLOYMENT

Electrical Engineering Intern II **6/2016–1/2017**
RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ
Designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and VHDL hardware description languages. Assisted senior engineer in CMOS IC layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and PSPICE simulation operations.

Electrical Engineering Intern I **6/2015–1/2016**
RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ
Verified and documented several integrated circuit designs. Used CAD software and hardware to simulate, check, and evaluate these designs. Gained experience with Mathcad.

HONORS AND ORGANIZATIONS

Eta Kappa Nu (Electrical Engineering Honor Society)
Tau Beta Pi (General Engineering Honor Society)
IEEE

The writer provides his contact information, including his email address.

The writer presents a summary statement. Some applicants find it awkward to praise themselves, describing their skills, but it is important to have keywords such as "analytical skills" in the résumé, particularly if the job ad mentioned them.

The writer chooses to emphasize his advanced engineering courses. For another job, he might emphasize other courses.

The writer wisely creates a category that calls attention to his academic awards and his membership in his field's major professional organization.

The writer does not include his references or write "References available upon request." If the reader invites him to proceed to the next step in the process, Carl will send a list of references, with their contact information.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

At the top is the name, address, and contact information. It reads as follows:

CARL OPPENHEIMER

3109 Vista Street

Philadelphia, PA 19136

(215) 555-3880

coppen@dragon.du.edu

A notation reads, The writer provides his contact information, including his email address.

It is followed by a Summary, Employment, and Honors and Organizations. It reads:

Summary

Recent BSEE graduate with experience as an electrical engineer intern for RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory. Analytical, technical, and communication skills for laboratory and customer-facing applications. Strong understanding of large-scale integrated systems and CMOS applications. A notation reads, The writer presents a summary statement. Some applicants find it awkward to praise themselves, describing their skills, but it is important to have keywords such as “analytical skills” in the résumé, particularly if the job ad mentioned them.

EDUCATION

BS in Electrical Engineering 6/2019

Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA

GPA: 3.67 (on a scale of 4.0)

Senior Design Project: “Enhanced Path-Planning Software for Robotics”

Advanced Engineering Courses

bullet Digital Signal Processing

bullet Computer Hardware

bullet Introduction to Operating Systems I, II

bullet Systems Design

bullet Digital Filters

bullet Computer Logic Circuits I, II

A notation reads, The writer chooses to emphasize his advanced engineering courses. For another job, he might emphasize other courses.

The next section is work history. It reads as follows:

EMPLOYMENT

Electrical Engineering Intern II 6/2016–1/2017

RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ

Designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and V H D L hardware description languages. Assisted senior engineer in C MOS I C layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and P SPICE simulation operations.

Electrical Engineering Intern I 6/2015–1/2016

RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, Moorestown, NJ

Verified and documented several integrated circuit designs. Used CAD software and hardware to simulate, check, and evaluate these designs. Gained experience with Mathcad.

HONORS AND ORGANIZATIONS

Eta Kappa Nu (Electrical Engineering Honor Society)

Tau Beta Pi (General Engineering Honor Society)

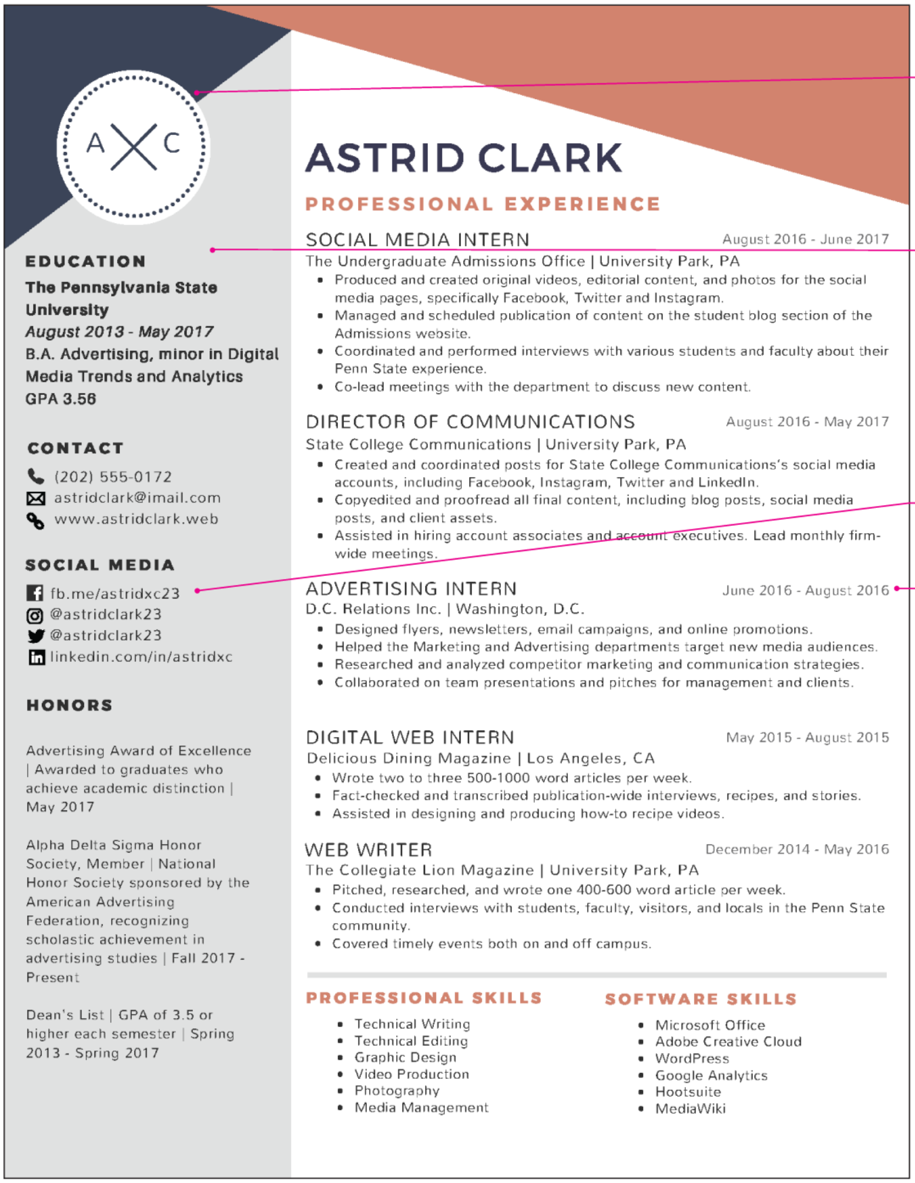
IEEE

Notations to Honors read, The writer wisely creates a category that calls attention to his academic awards and his membership in his field’s major professional organization.

The writer does not include his references or write “References available upon request.” If the reader invites him to proceed to the next step in the process, Carl will send a list of references, with their contact information.

Return to Figure 10.2 Chronological Résumé of a Traditional Student

Extended description for Figure 10.5 Visually Enhanced Résumé



A X C

ASTRID CLARK

EDUCATION

The Pennsylvania State University

August 2013 - May 2017

B.A. Advertising, minor in Digital Media Trends and Analytics

GPA 3.56

CONTACT

(202) 555-0172

astridclark@imail.com

www.astridclark.web

SOCIAL MEDIA

fb.me/astridxc23

@astridclark23

@astridclark23

linkedin.com/in/astridxc

HONORS

Advertising Award of Excellence | Awarded to graduates who achieve academic distinction | May 2017

Alpha Delta Sigma Honor Society, Member | National Honor Society sponsored by the American Advertising Federation, recognizing scholastic achievement in advertising studies | Fall 2017 - Present

Dean's List | GPA of 3.5 or higher each semester | Spring 2013 - Spring 2017

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE

SOCIAL MEDIA INTERN — August 2016 - June 2017

The Undergraduate Admissions Office | University Park, PA

- Produced and created original videos, editorial content, and photos for the social media pages, specifically Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.
- Managed and scheduled publication of content on the student blog section of the Admissions website.
- Coordinated and performed interviews with various students and faculty about their Penn State experience.
- Co-lead meetings with the department to discuss new content.

DIRECTOR OF COMMUNICATIONS — August 2016 - May 2017

State College Communications | University Park, PA

- Created and coordinated posts for State College Communications's social media accounts, including Facebook, Instagram, Twitter and LinkedIn.
- Copyedited and proofread all final content, including blog posts, social media posts, and client assets.
- Assisted in hiring account associates and account executives. Lead monthly firm-wide meetings.

ADVERTISING INTERN — June 2016 - August 2016

D.C. Relations Inc. | Washington, D.C.

- Designed flyers, newsletters, email campaigns, and online promotions.
- Helped the Marketing and Advertising departments target new media audiences.
- Researched and analyzed competitor marketing and communication strategies.
- Collaborated on team presentations and pitches for management and clients.

DIGITAL WEB INTERN — May 2015 - August 2015

Delicious Dining Magazine | Los Angeles, CA

- Wrote two to three 500-1000 word articles per week.
- Fact-checked and transcribed publication-wide interviews, recipes, and stories.
- Assisted in designing and producing how-to recipe videos.

WEB WRITER — December 2014 - May 2016

The Collegiate Lion Magazine | University Park, PA

- Pitched, researched, and wrote one 400-600 word article per week.
- Conducted interviews with students, faculty, visitors, and locals in the Penn State community.
- Covered timely events both on and off campus.

PROFESSIONAL SKILLS

- Technical Writing
- Technical Editing
- Graphic Design
- Video Production
- Photography
- Media Management

SOFTWARE SKILLS

- Microsoft Office
- Adobe Creative Cloud
- WordPress
- Google Analytics
- Hootsuite
- MediaWiki

The writer uses a geometric design to add visual interest.

The logo on the résumé also appears on the writer's cover letter and professional website, helping to communicate a professional brand.

In the PDF version, the left column functions as a navigation column, linking to contact information and social media sites.

The left column uses both icons and text to represent links.

The main content area emphasizes professional experience and includes elements typical to chronological and skills résumés, such as headings, bulleted lists, and action verbs.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The résumé begins with text explaining the writer uses a colored geometric design to add visual interest.

The top left contains a logo. A notation reads, The logo on the résumé also appears on the writer’s cover letter and professional website, helping to communicate a professional brand.

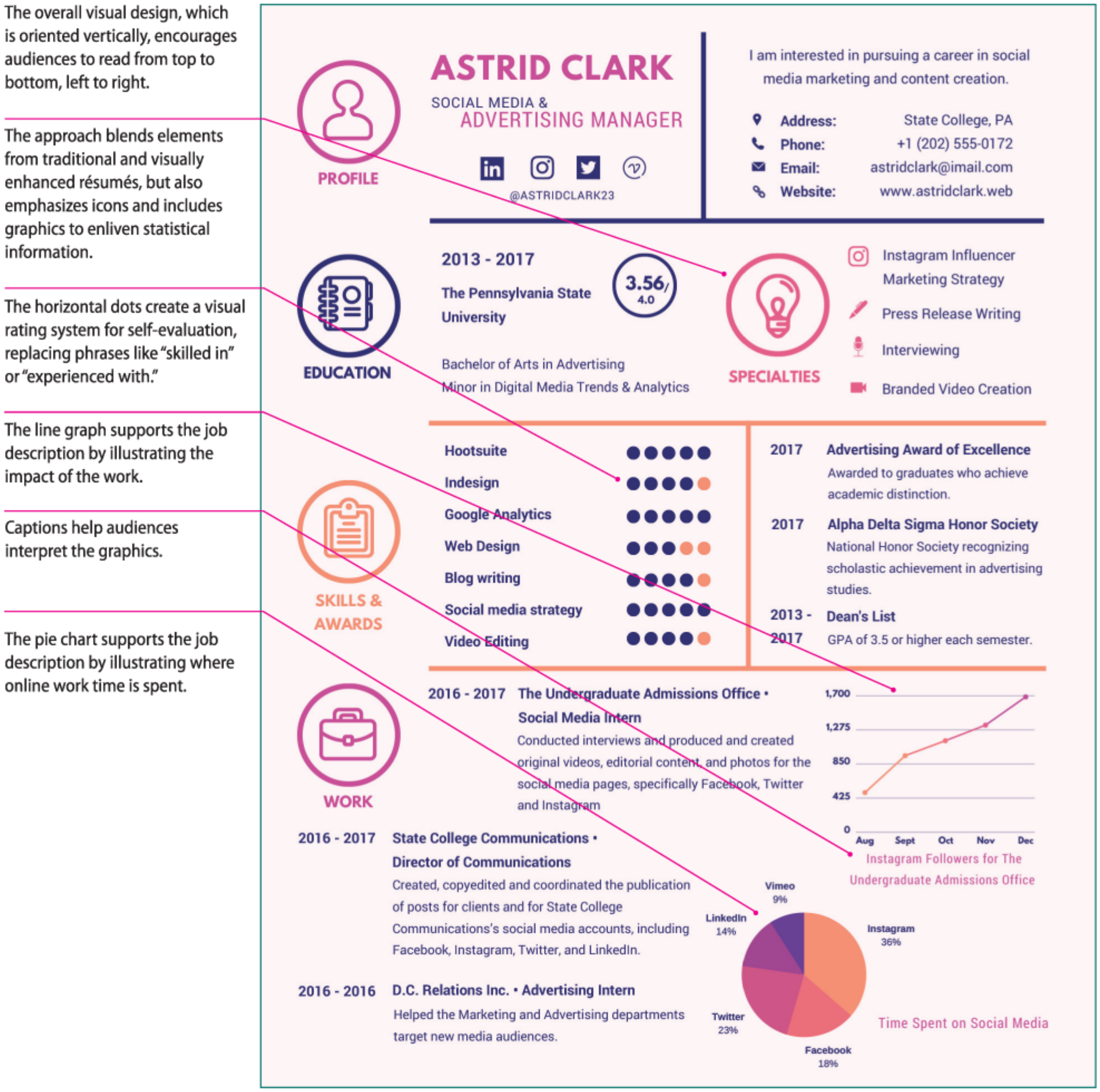
The logo and some details are in the left column, which is shaded in color. A colored graphic is behind the logo. The left column contains her education, contact information, social media sites, and honors achieved. Notations read, In the P D F version, the left column functions as a navigation column, linking to contact information and social media sites; The left column uses both icons and text to represent links.

The right two thirds of the page contain her name, Astrid Clark, and professional experience. A colored triangle is above her name and experience. Titles of her work experience are to the left and dates worked are to the right. Descriptions are below the titles and bulleted. A notation to the content reads, The main content area emphasizes professional experience and includes elements typical to chronological and skills résumés, such as headings, bulleted lists, and action verbs.

In the content area are professional skills and software skills in two separate columns.

Return to Figure 10.5 Visually Enhanced Résumé

Extended description for Figure 10.6 Infographic Résumé



The overall visual design, which is oriented vertically, encourages audiences to read from top to bottom, left to right.

The approach blends elements from traditional and visually enhanced résumés, but also emphasizes icons and includes graphics to enliven statistical information.

The horizontal dots create a visual rating system for self-evaluation, replacing phrases like "skilled in" or "experienced with."

The line graph supports the job description by illustrating the impact of the work.

Captions help audiences interpret the graphics.

The pie chart supports the job description by illustrating where online work time is spent.

ASTRID CLARK

SOCIAL MEDIA &
ADVERTISING MANAGER

@ASTRIDCLARK23

I am interested in pursuing a career in social media marketing and content creation.

Address: State College, PA
Phone: +1 (202) 555-0172
Email: astridclark@imail.com
Website: www.astridclark.web

PROFILE

EDUCATION

2013 - 2017

The Pennsylvania State University

3.56/4.0

Bachelor of Arts in Advertising
Minor in Digital Media Trends & Analytics

SPECIALTIES

- Instagram Influencer Marketing Strategy
- Press Release Writing
- Interviewing
- Branded Video Creation

SKILLS & AWARDS

Hootsuite	●●●●●
Indesign	●●●●○
Google Analytics	●●●●●
Web Design	●●●○○
Blog writing	●●●●○
Social media strategy	●●●●●
Video Editing	●●●●○

2017 **Advertising Award of Excellence**
Awarded to graduates who achieve academic distinction.

2017 **Alpha Delta Sigma Honor Society**
National Honor Society recognizing scholastic achievement in advertising studies.

2013 - 2017 **Dean's List**
GPA of 3.5 or higher each semester.

WORK

2016 - 2017 **The Undergraduate Admissions Office • Social Media Intern**
Conducted interviews and produced and created original videos, editorial content, and photos for the social media pages, specifically Facebook, Twitter and Instagram

Instagram Followers for The Undergraduate Admissions Office

2016 - 2017 **State College Communications • Director of Communications**
Created, copyedited and coordinated the publication of posts for clients and for State College Communications's social media accounts, including Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, and LinkedIn.

2016 - 2016 **D.C. Relations Inc. • Advertising Intern**
Helped the Marketing and Advertising departments target new media audiences.

Time Spent on Social Media

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The top left shows an icon named profile showing a symbol of a head. Her name is next to the icon with her title and her social media icons with her contact at astridclark23. At the top right is her goal and pertinent contact information. A notation reads, The overall visual design, which is oriented vertically, encourages audiences to read from top to bottom, left to right.

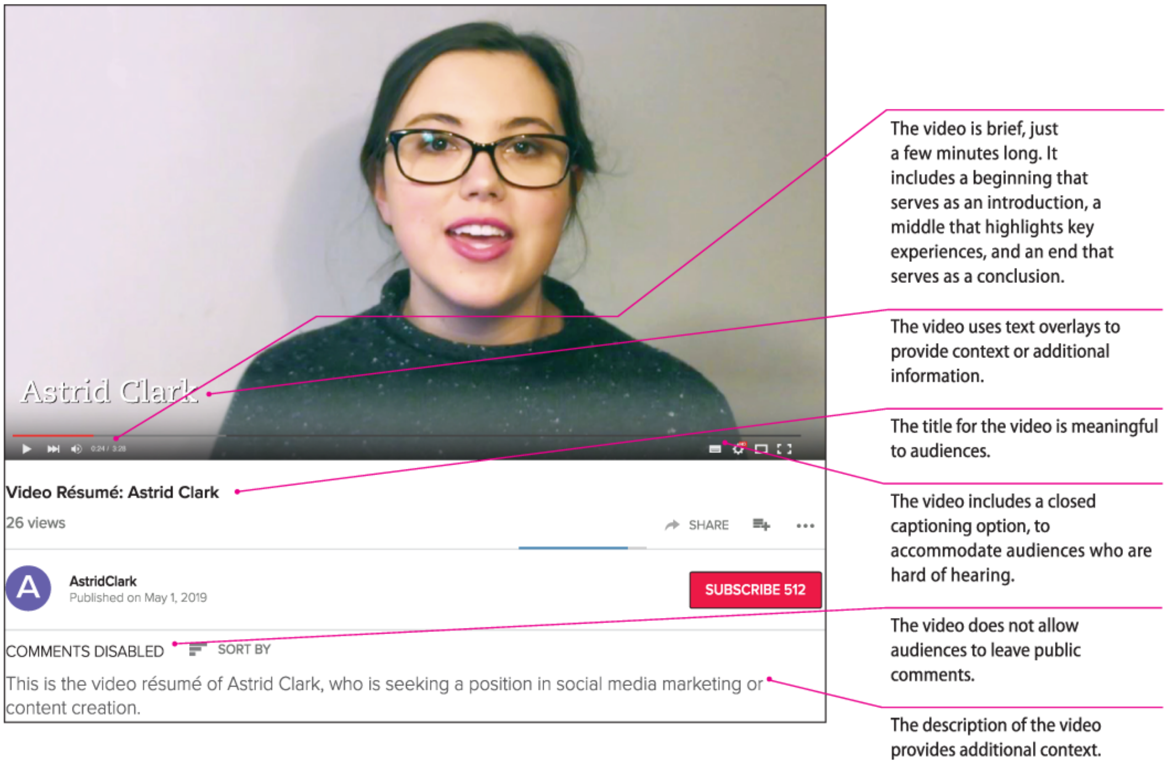
The remainder of the page is divided into three sections. Each section is divided by lines. The first section is education, represented by a notebook icon. Her university and years attended along with major and minor are listed with G P A. Next to that are her specialties, represented ty a light bulb. This section lists four specialties with icons. Notation reads, The approach blends elements from traditional and visually enhanced résumés, but also emphasizes icons and includes graphics to enliven statistical information.

The next section shows Skills and Awards. There is a list of software, and beside each item is a group of five dots representing expertise level. A notation reads, The horizontal dots create a visual rating system for self-evaluation, replacing phrases like “skilled in” or “experienced with.” A vertical line divides the skills and awards sections. There are four awards listed with years achieved.

The next section is named Work, represented by an icon of a briefcase. Her work experience is listed with years and work details. They are accompanied by a line graph showing Instagram followers and a pie chart showing time spent on social media. Notations read, Captions help audiences interpret the graphics; The pie chart supports the job description by illustrating where online work time is spent.

Return to Figure 10.6 Infographic Résumé

Extended description for Figure 10.7 Video Résumé: Astrid Clark



Video Résumé: Astrid Clark

26 views

AstridClark
Published on May 1, 2019

COMMENTS DISABLED

This is the video résumé of Astrid Clark, who is seeking a position in social media marketing or content creation.

The video is brief, just a few minutes long. It includes a beginning that serves as an introduction, a middle that highlights key experiences, and an end that serves as a conclusion.

The video uses text overlays to provide context or additional information.

The title for the video is meaningful to audiences.

The video includes a closed captioning option, to accommodate audiences who are hard of hearing.

The video does not allow audiences to leave public comments.

The description of the video provides additional context.

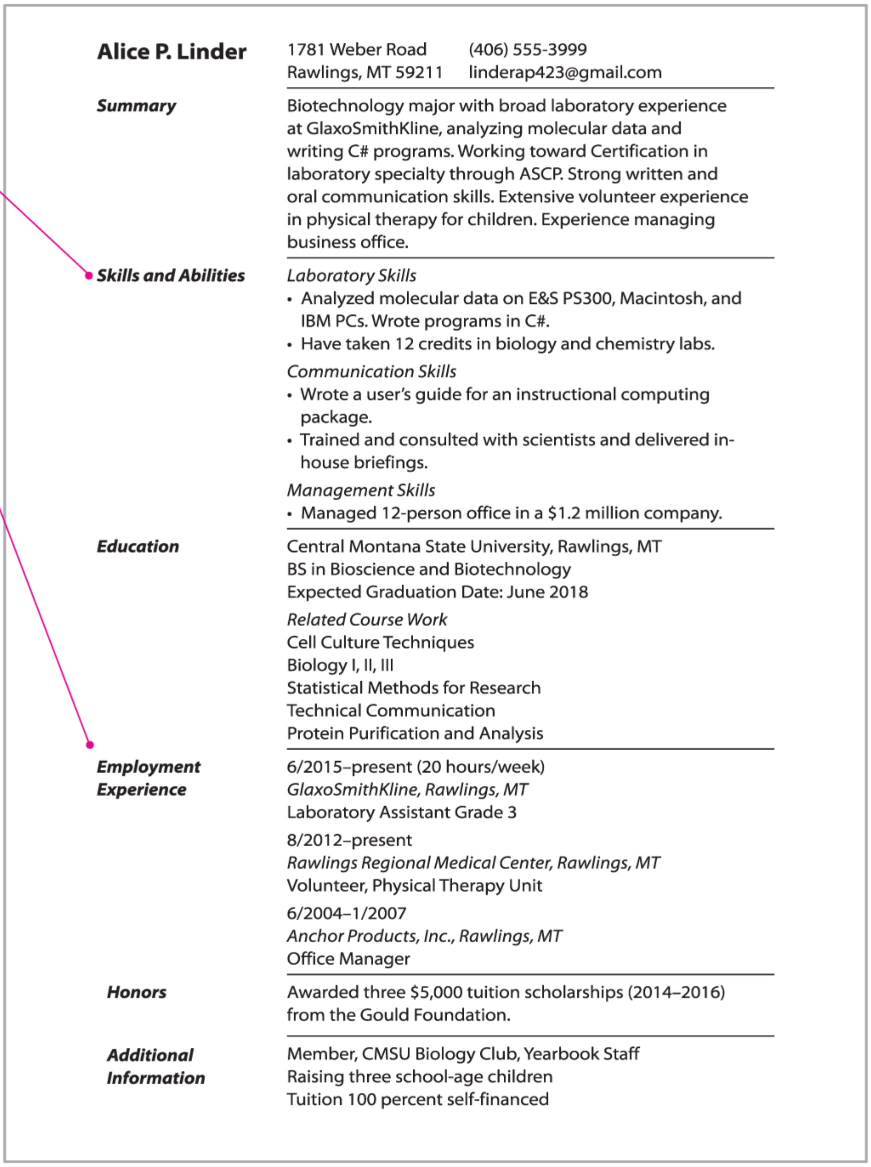
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The top half of the screen is the video and overlays text to provide context or additional information. Below the video is a title, Video résumé: Astrid Clark, with 26 views. A notation reads, The title for the video is meaningful to audiences. Four small icons overlay the video at the bottom right. A notation reads, The video includes a closed captioning option, to accommodate audiences who are hard of hearing.

The introduction follows the title with a logo initial, her name, a publication date of May 1, 2019 and description. It also shows she has 512 subscribers. At the bottom it shows comments disabled and a sort option. A notation reads, The video does not allow audiences to leave public comments. The description reads, This is the video résumé of Astrid Clark, who is seeking a position in social media marketing or content creation. A comment reads, The description of the video provides additional context.

Return to Figure 10.7 Video Résumé: Astrid Clark

Extended description for Figure 10.3 Skills Résumé of a Nontraditional Student



Alice P. Linder

1781 Weber Road
Rawlings, MT 59211
(406) 555-3999
linderap423@gmail.com

Summary

Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C# programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty through ASCP. Strong written and oral communication skills. Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children. Experience managing business office.

Skills and Abilities

Laboratory Skills

- Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and IBM PCs. Wrote programs in C#.
- Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs.

Communication Skills

- Wrote a user's guide for an instructional computing package.
- Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered in-house briefings.

Management Skills

- Managed 12-person office in a $1.2 million company.

Education

Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT
BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology
Expected Graduation Date: June 2018

Related Course Work
Cell Culture Techniques
Biology I, II, III
Statistical Methods for Research
Technical Communication
Protein Purification and Analysis

Employment Experience

6/2015–present (20 hours/week)
GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT
Laboratory Assistant Grade 3

8/2012–present
Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT
Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit

6/2004–1/2007
Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT
Office Manager

Honors

Awarded three $5,000 tuition scholarships (2014–2016) from the Gould Foundation.

Additional Information

Member, CMSU Biology Club, Yearbook Staff
Raising three school-age children
Tuition 100 percent self-financed

In a skills résumé, you present the skills section at the start. This organization lets you emphasize your professional attributes. Notice that the writer uses specific details, including names of software, number of credits, types of documents, and kinds of activities.

The employment section contains a list of positions rather than descriptions of what the writer did in each position.

This writer has used a two-column table to organize the information. The left column presents the headings; the right column presents the data. The advantage of using a table rather than moving text using tabs is that you can use different text attributes (for instance, the headings can be boldfaced, set in a different typeface, or set in a different size) without having to worry about whether the different attributes will alter the line spacing. In addition, if you use a table, you can easily revise and edit; with tabs, your editing will create awkward line breaks and alignment.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Section headings are all in a column to the left. They read Name, Summary, Skills and Abilities, Education, Employment Experience, Honors, and Additional Information. All other details are in a wide column to the right.

Name is Alice P. Linder. Contact information reads, 1781 Weber Road, (406) 555-3999,

Rawlings, MT 59211, linderap423 at gmail dot com.

Summary information reads, Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C sharp programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty through A S C P. Strong written and oral communication skills. Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children. Experience managing business office.

Skills and Abilities reads, Laboratory Skills

bullet Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and IBM PCs. Wrote programs in C#.

bullet Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs.

Communication Skills

bullet Wrote a user's guide for an instructional computing package.

bullet Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered inhouse briefings.

Management Skills

bullet Managed 12-person office in a $1.2 million company.

A notation to Skills reads, In a skills résumé, you present the skills section at the start. This organization lets you emphasize your professional attributes. Notice that the writer uses specific details, including names of software, number of credits, types of documents, and kinds of activities.

Education reads, Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT

BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology

Expected Graduation Date: June 2018

Related Course Work

Cell Culture Techniques

Biology I, II, III

Statistical Methods for Research

Technical Communication

Protein Purification and Analysis

Employment reads,

6 slash 2015–present (20 hours/week)

GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT

Laboratory Assistant Grade 3

8 slash 2012–present

Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT

Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit

6 slash 2004–1 slash 2007

Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT

Office Manager

A notation to Employment reads, The employment section contains a list of positions rather than descriptions of what the writer did in each position.

Honors reads, Awarded three 5,000 dollar tuition scholarships (2014–2016) from the Gould Foundation.

Additional Information reads, Member, C M S U Biology Club, Yearbook Staff

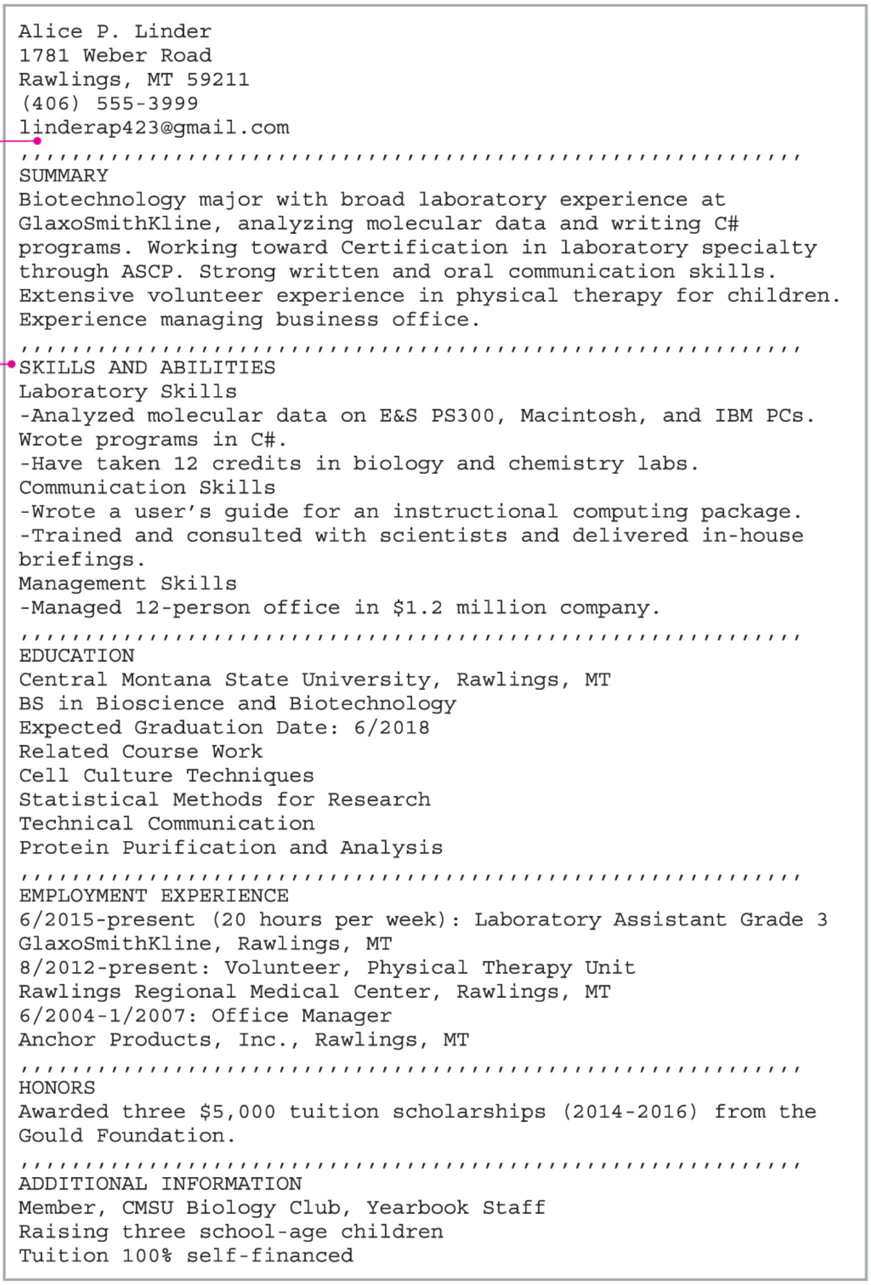
Raising three school-age children

Tuition 100 percent self-financed

A notation referring to the entire résumé reads, This writer has used a two-column table to organize the information. The left column presents the headings; the right column presents the data. The advantage of using a table rather than moving text using tabs is that you can use different text attributes (for instance, the headings can be boldfaced, set in a different typeface, or set in a different size) without having to worry about whether the different attributes will alter the line spacing. In addition, if you use a table, you can easily revise and edit; with tabs, your editing will create awkward line breaks and alignment.

Return to Figure 10.3 Skills Résumé of a Nontraditional Student

Extended description for Figure 10.4 Plain-Text Version of a Skills Résumé



Alice P. Linder
1781 Weber Road
Rawlings, MT 59211
(406) 555-3999
linderap423@gmail.com
,,,
SUMMARY
Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C# programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty through ASCP. Strong written and oral communication skills. Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children. Experience managing business office.
,,,
SKILLS AND ABILITIES
Laboratory Skills
-Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and IBM PCs. Wrote programs in C#.
-Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs.
Communication Skills
-Wrote a user's guide for an instructional computing package.
-Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered in-house briefings.
Management Skills
-Managed 12-person office in $1.2 million company.
,,,
EDUCATION
Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT
BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology
Expected Graduation Date: 6/2018
Related Course Work
Cell Culture Techniques
Statistical Methods for Research
Technical Communication
Protein Purification and Analysis
,,,
EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE
6/2015-present (20 hours per week): Laboratory Assistant Grade 3
GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT
8/2012-present: Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit
Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT
6/2004-1/2007: Office Manager
Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT
,,,
HONORS
Awarded three $5,000 tuition scholarships (2014-2016) from the Gould Foundation.
,,,
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
Member, CMSU Biology Club, Yearbook Staff
Raising three school-age children
Tuition 100% self-financed

This plain-text résumé uses only a row of commas to signal a break in sections.

Headings are in all capital letters, but there is no special type formatting such as boldface or italic

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

It reads as follows:

Alice P. Linder

1781 Weber Road

Rawlings, MT 59211

(406) 555-3999

linderap423@gmail.com

,,,

A notation reads, This plain-text résumé uses only a row of commas to signal a break in sections.

SUMMARY

Biotechnology major with broad laboratory experience at GlaxoSmithKline, analyzing molecular data and writing C sharp programs. Working toward Certification in laboratory specialty through A S C P. Strong written and oral communication skills. Extensive volunteer experience in physical therapy for children. Experience managing business office.

,,,

SKILLS AND ABILITIES

A notation reads, Headings are in all capital letters, but there is no special type formatting such as boldface or italic.

Laboratory Skills

- Analyzed molecular data on E&S PS300, Macintosh, and I B M PCs. Wrote programs in C#.

- Have taken 12 credits in biology and chemistry labs.

Communication Skills

- Wrote a user’s guide for an instructional computing package.

- Trained and consulted with scientists and delivered in-house briefings.

Management Skills

- Managed 12-person office in $1.2 million company.

,,,

EDUCATION

Central Montana State University, Rawlings, MT

BS in Bioscience and Biotechnology

Expected Graduation Date: 6 slash 2018

Related Course Work

Cell Culture Techniques

Statistical Methods for Research

Technical Communication

Protein Purification and Analysis

,,,

EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE

6 slash 2015 - present (20 hours per week): Laboratory Assistant Grade 3 GlaxoSmithKline, Rawlings, MT

8 slash 2012 - present: Volunteer, Physical Therapy Unit

Rawlings Regional Medical Center, Rawlings, MT

6 slash 2004-1 slash 2007: Office Manager

Anchor Products, Inc., Rawlings, MT

,,

HONORS

Awarded three $5,000 tuition scholarships (2014-2016) from the Gould Foundation.

,,

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

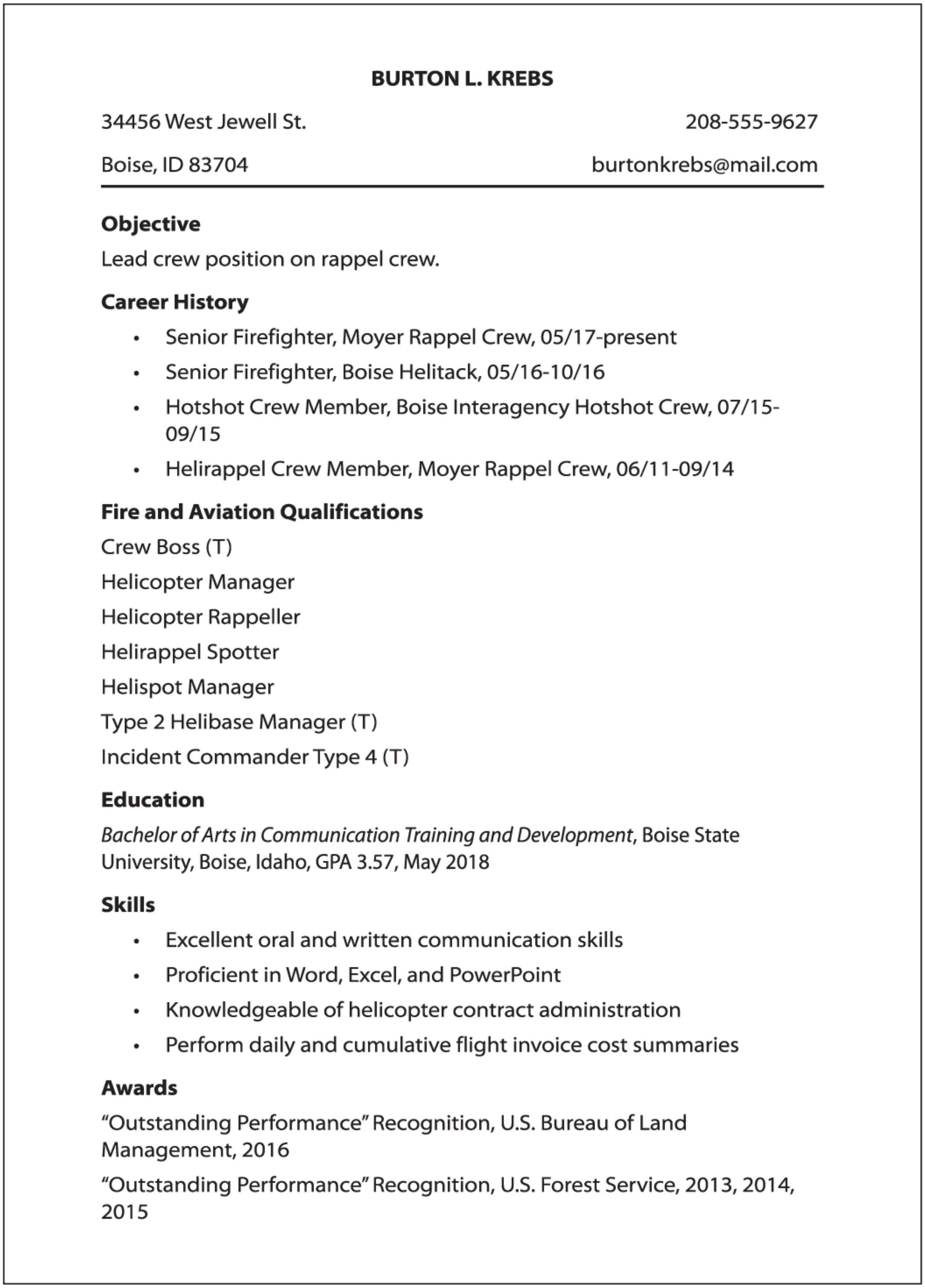
Member, C M S U Biology Club, Yearbook Staff

Raising three school-age children

Tuition 100% self-financed

Return to Figure 10.4 Plain-Text Version of a Skills Résumé

Extended description for An illustration shows a completed résumé for a graduating senior



BURTON L. KREBS

34456 West Jewell St. 208-555-9627

Boise, ID 83704 burtonkrebs@mail.com

Objective

Lead crew position on rappel crew.

Career History

- Senior Firefighter, Moyer Rappel Crew, 05/17-present
- Senior Firefighter, Boise Helitack, 05/16-10/16
- Hotshot Crew Member, Boise Interagency Hotshot Crew, 07/15-09/15
- Helirappel Crew Member, Moyer Rappel Crew, 06/11-09/14

Fire and Aviation Qualifications

Crew Boss (T)

Helicopter Manager

Helicopter Rappeller

Helirappel Spotter

Helispot Manager

Type 2 Helibase Manager (T)

Incident Commander Type 4 (T)

Education

Bachelor of Arts in Communication Training and Development, Boise State University, Boise, Idaho, GPA 3.57, May 2018

Skills

- Excellent oral and written communication skills
- Proficient in Word, Excel, and PowerPoint
- Knowledgeable of helicopter contract administration
- Perform daily and cumulative flight invoice cost summaries

Awards

"Outstanding Performance" Recognition, U.S. Bureau of Land Management, 2016

"Outstanding Performance" Recognition, U.S. Forest Service, 2013, 2014, 2015

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

It reads as follows:

BURTON L. KREBS centered

34456 West Jewell St.

Boise, ID 83704 flush left

208-555-9627

burtonkrebs at mail dot com flush right

Career History

Bullet Senior Firefighter, Moyer Rappel Crew, 05 flash 17 - present

Bullet Senior Firefighter, Boise Helitack, 05 slash 16 - 10 slash16

Bullet Hotshot Crew Member, Boise Interagency Hotshot Crew, 07 slash 15 - 09 slash 15

Bullet Helirappel Crew Member, Moyer Rappel Crew, 06 slash 11 - 09 slash 14

Fire and Aviation Qualifications

Crew Boss (T)

Helicopter Manager

Helicopter Rappeller

Helirappel Spotter

Helispot Manager

Type 2 Helibase Manager (T)

Incident Commander Type 4 (T)

Education

Bachelor of Arts in Communication Training and Development, Boise State University, Boise, Idaho, G P A 3.57, May 2018

Skills

Bullet Excellent oral and written communication skills

Bullet Proficient in Word, Excel, and PowerPoint

Bullet Knowledgeable of helicopter contract administration

Bullet Perform daily and cumulative flight invoice cost summaries

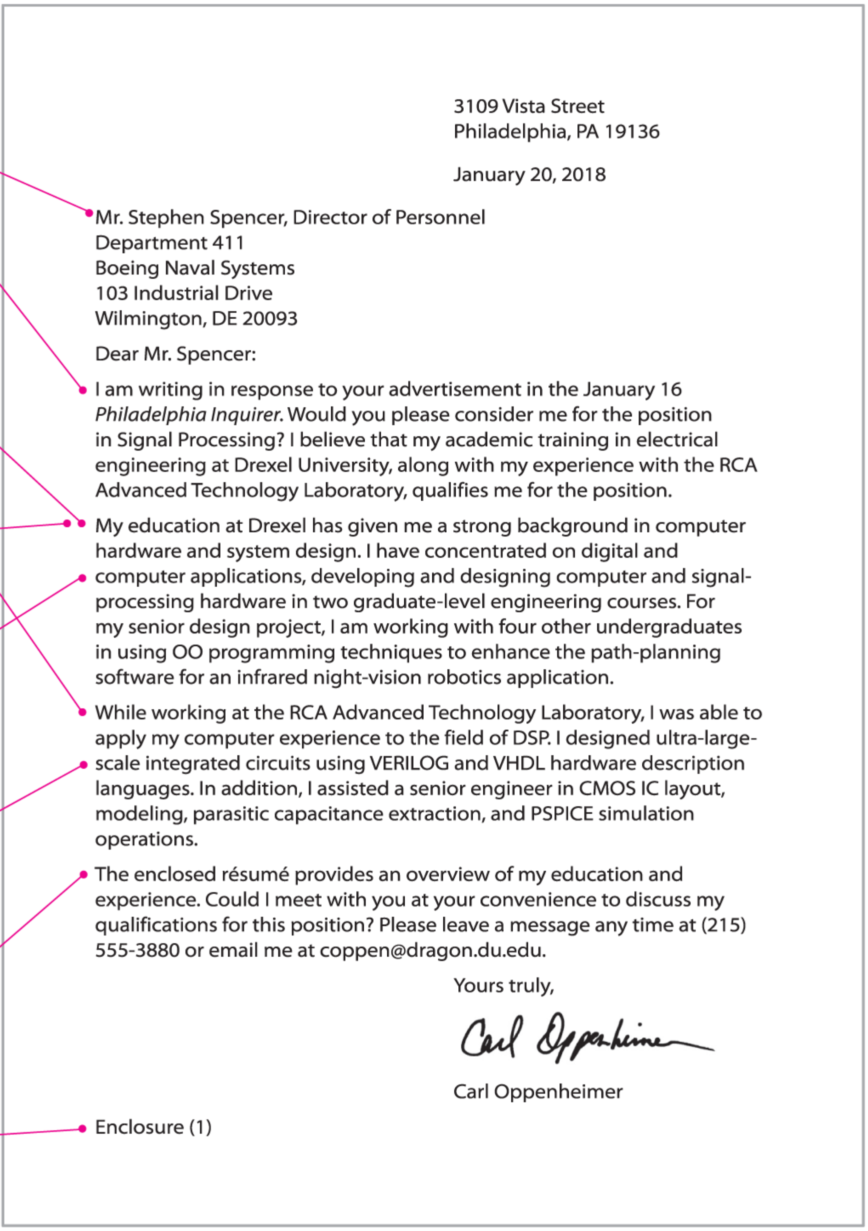
Awards

“Outstanding Performance” Recognition, U.S. Bureau of Land Management, 2016

“Outstanding Performance” Recognition, U.S. Forest Service, 2013, 2014, 2015

Return to An illustration shows a completed résumé for a graduating senior

Extended description for Figure 10.8 Job-Application Letter



3109 Vista Street
Philadelphia, PA 19136

January 20, 2018

Mr. Stephen Spencer, Director of Personnel
Department 411
Boeing Naval Systems
103 Industrial Drive
Wilmington, DE 20093

Dear Mr. Spencer:

I am writing in response to your advertisement in the January 16 *Philadelphia Inquirer*. Would you please consider me for the position in Signal Processing? I believe that my academic training in electrical engineering at Drexel University, along with my experience with the RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, qualifies me for the position.

My education at Drexel has given me a strong background in computer hardware and system design. I have concentrated on digital and computer applications, developing and designing computer and signal-processing hardware in two graduate-level engineering courses. For my senior design project, I am working with four other undergraduates in using OO programming techniques to enhance the path-planning software for an infrared night-vision robotics application.

While working at the RCA Advanced Technology Laboratory, I was able to apply my computer experience to the field of DSP. I designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and VHDL hardware description languages. In addition, I assisted a senior engineer in CMOS IC layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and PSPICE simulation operations.

The enclosed résumé provides an overview of my education and experience. Could I meet with you at your convenience to discuss my qualifications for this position? Please leave a message any time at (215) 555-3880 or email me at coppen@dragon.du.edu.

Yours truly,

Carl Oppenheimer

Carl Oppenheimer

Enclosure (1)

For information about letter formatting, see "Writing Letters" in Ch. 9 on p. 237.

Notice that the writer's own name does not appear at the top of his letter.

In the inside address, he uses the reader's courtesy title, "Mr."

The introductory paragraph identifies the writer's source of information about the job, identifies the position he is applying for, states that he wishes to be considered, and forecasts the rest of the letter.

In a letter, you can't discuss everything in the résumé. Rather, you select a few key points from the résumé to emphasize.

Note that both the education paragraph and the employment paragraph begin with a clear topic sentence.

The writer points out that he has taken two graduate courses, and he discusses his senior design project, which makes him look more like an engineer solving a problem than a recent graduate.

Notice how the writer makes a smooth transition from the discussion of his college education to the discussion of his internship experience.

A concluding paragraph usually includes a reference to the résumé, a polite but confident request for an interview, and the writer's contact information.

The enclosure notation refers to the writer's résumé. Do not use an enclosure notation unless you are literally enclosing something along with the letter in the envelope.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The return address and date are to the right of the page and read,
3109 Vista Street

Philadelphia, PA 19136

January 20, 2018.

The inside address is justified left and reads, Mr. Stephen Spencer, Director of Personnel

Department 411

Boeing Naval Systems

103 Industrial Drive

Wilmington, DE 20093

A notation to the inside address reads, In the inside address, he uses the reader's courtesy title, "Mr."

The letter reads, Dear Mr. Spencer:

I am writing in response to your advertisement in the January 16 Philadelphia Inquirer. Would you please consider me for the position in Signal Processing? I believe that my academic training in electrical engineering at Drexel University, along with my experience with the R C A Advanced Technology Laboratory, qualifies me for the position. A notation reads, The introductory paragraph identifies the writer's source of information about the job, identifies the position he is applying for, states that he wishes to be considered, and forecasts the rest of the letter.

My education at Drexel has given me a strong background in computer hardware and system design. I have concentrated on digital and computer applications, developing and designing computer and signal processing hardware in two graduate-level engineering courses. For my senior design project, I am working with four other undergraduates in using O O programming techniques to enhance the path-planning software for an infrared night-vision robotics application. Three notations read, first, In a letter, you can't discuss everything in the résumé. Rather, you select a few key points from the résumé to emphasize. Second, Note that both the education paragraph and the employment paragraph begin with a clear topic sentence. Third, The writer points out that he has taken two graduate courses, and he discusses his senior design project, which makes him look more like an engineer solving a problem than a recent graduate.

While working at the R C A Advanced Technology Laboratory, I was able to apply my computer experience to the field of D S P. I designed ultra-large-scale integrated circuits using VERILOG and V H D L hardware description languages. In addition, I assisted a senior engineer in C MOS I C layout, modeling, parasitic capacitance extraction, and P SPICE simulation operations. A notation reads, Notice how the writer makes a smooth transition from the discussion of his college education to the discussion of his internship experience.

The enclosed résumé provides an overview of my education and experience. Could I meet with you at your convenience to discuss my qualifications for this position? Please leave a message any time at (215) 555-3880 or email me at coppen at dragon dot du dot edu. A notation reads, A concluding paragraph usually includes a reference to the résumé, a polite but confident request for an interview, and the writer's contact information.

Yours truly,

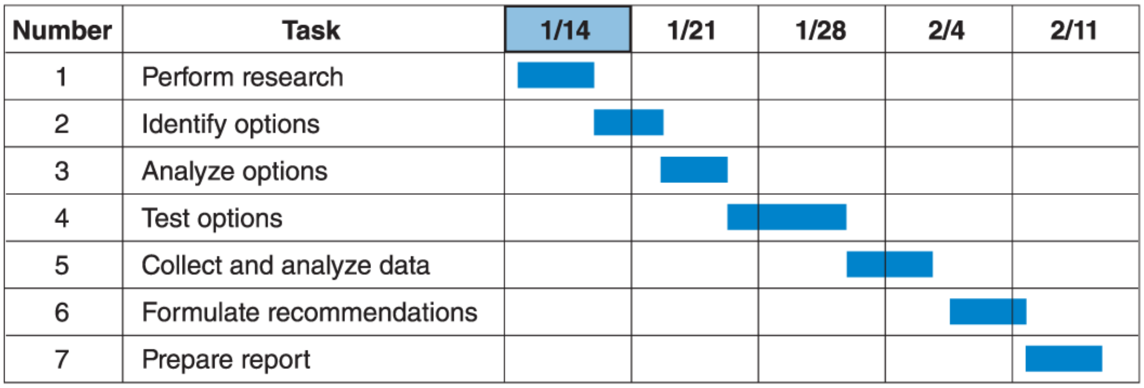
Carl Oppenheimer

Enclosure (1). A notation reads, The enclosure notation refers to the writer's résumé. Do not use an enclosure notation unless you are literally enclosing something along with the letter in the envelope.

Return to Figure 10.8 Job-Application Letter

Extended description for Figure 11.4 Task Schedule Presented as a Bar Chart

Schedule for Parking Analysis Project



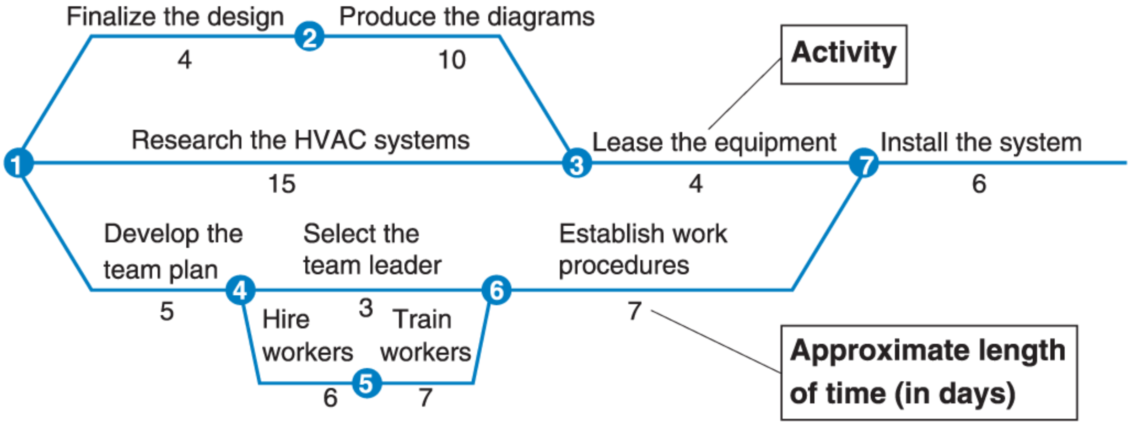
Number	Task	1/14	1/21	1/28	2/4	2/11
1	Perform research	█				
2	Identify options	█	█			
3	Analyze options		█			
4	Test options		█	█		
5	Collect and analyze data			█	█	
6	Formulate recommendations				█	█
7	Prepare report					█

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The chart has seven columns and eight rows. The top row contains the headings: Number, Task, 1 slash 14, 1 slash 21, 1 slash 28, 2 slash 4, 2 slash 11. 1 slash 14 is highlighted. Rows are numbered 1 through 7. Tasks listed are as follows, with approximate dates for the tasks to be completed shown as bars through the last five columns, as follows: Perform research: January 14 through January 16. Identify options: January 17 through January 22. Analyze options: January 23 through January 24. Test options: January 25 through January 30. Collect and analyze data: January 30 through February 2. Formulate recommendations: February 3 through February 11. Prepare report: February 12 through February 15.

Return to Figure 11.4 Task Schedule Presented as a Bar Chart

Extended description for Figure 11.5 Task Schedule Presented as a Network Diagram

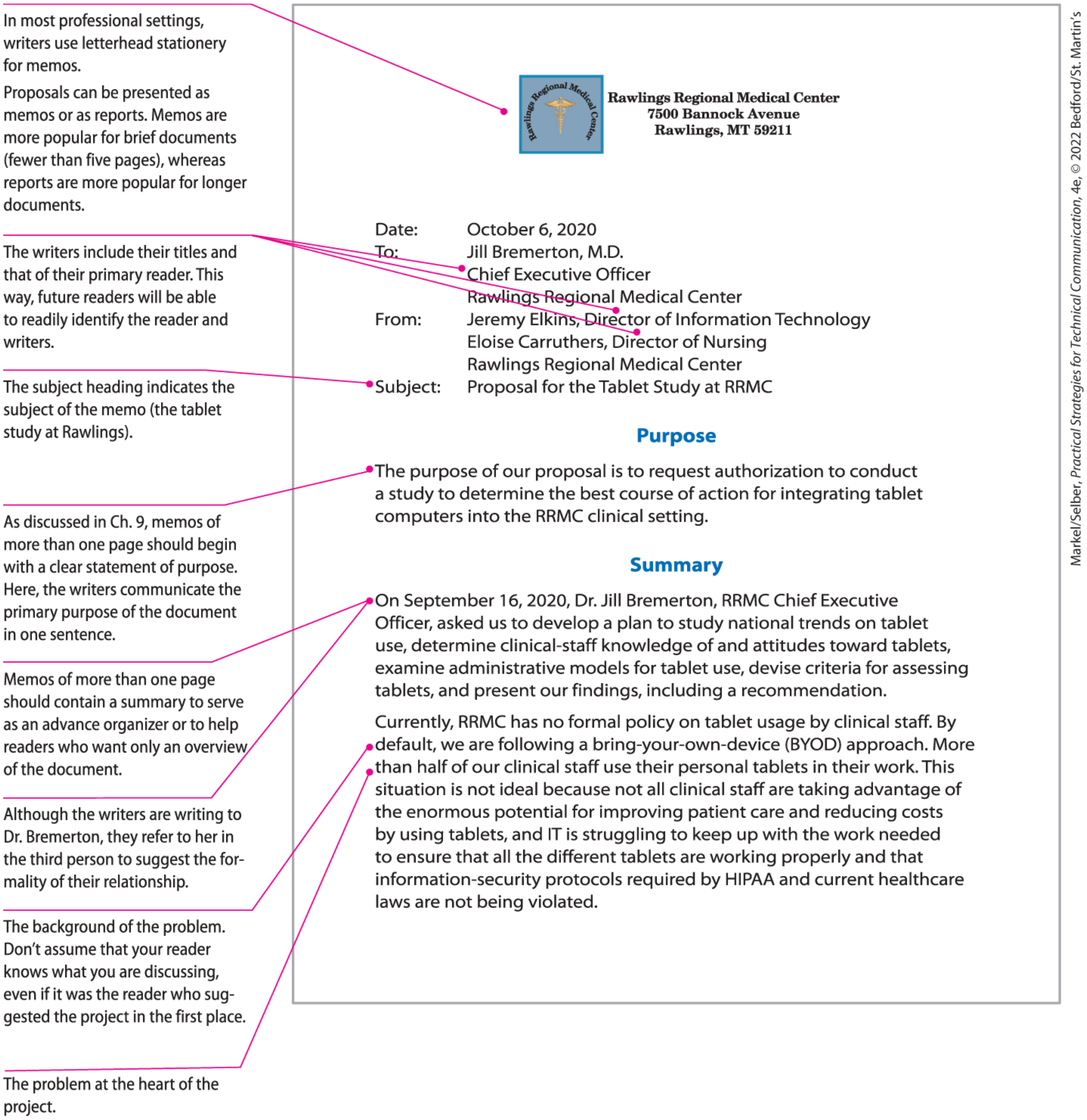

Finalize the design
4
2
Produce the diagrams
10
Activity
Research the HVAC systems
15
1
3
Lease the equipment
4
7
Install the system
6
Develop the team plan
5
4
Select the team leader
3
6
Establish work procedures
7
Hire workers
6
5
Train workers
7
Approximate length of time (in days)

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The network diagram shows steps 1 through 7 numbered with dots and connected with lines. Steps 1 to 3 include Research H V A C systems, taking 15 days. Step 2, shown as an offshoot between 1 and 3, involves finalizing design and producing the diagrams, which take 4 and 10 days, respectively. Concurrently with steps 1, 2, and 3 are steps 4, 5, and 6. Developing the team plan takes 5 days, selecting team leader takes 3 days, hiring workers takes 6 days, training workers takes 7 days. Concurrently with step 3, leasing the equipment (4 days), is establishing work procedures (7 days). Installing the system would take 6 days. Callouts identify activities and approximate length of time in days.

Return to Figure 11.5 Task Schedule Presented as a Network Diagram

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

Date: October 6, 2020
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Proposal for the Tablet Study at RRMC

Purpose

The purpose of our proposal is to request authorization to conduct a study to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Summary

On September 16, 2020, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to study national trends on tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current healthcare laws are not being violated.

In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos.

Proposals can be presented as memos or as reports. Memos are more popular for brief documents (fewer than five pages), whereas reports are more popular for longer documents.

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings).

As discussed in Ch. 9, memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence.

Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document.

Although the writers are writing to Dr. Bremerton, they refer to her in the third person to suggest the formality of their relationship.

The background of the problem. Don't assume that your reader knows what you are discussing, even if it was the reader who suggested the project in the first place.

The problem at the heart of the project.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The top of the page shows the logo for Rawlings Regional Medical Center with address, all centered, followed by the date, who the memo is to and who it is from with titles, then the subject. Notations read, In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos. Proposals can be presented as memos or as reports. Memos are more popular for brief documents (fewer than five pages), whereas reports are more popular for longer documents. The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers. The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings).

This text is followed by the Purpose heading, bold and centered. The following text reads, The purpose of our proposal is to request authorization to conduct a study to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting. A notation reads, As discussed in Chapter 9, memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence.

The next section follows the Summary heading, which is bold and centered. The summary reads, On September 16, 2020, Dr. Jill Bremerton, R R M C Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to study national trends on tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation. The notations read, Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document. Although the writers are writing to Dr. Bremerton, they refer to her in the third person to suggest the formality of their relationship.

Currently, R R M C has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and I T is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current healthcare laws are not being violated. Notations read, The background of the problem. Don’t assume that your reader knows what you are discussing, even if it was the reader who suggested the project in the first place. The problem at the heart of the project.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.2 Excerpt from an RFQ

FedBixOpps.Gov.

Solicitation Number: NIHCCOPC13014476

The Clinical Center at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in Bethesda, Maryland, is one of the 27 institutes and centers that comprise NIH. The NIH Clinical Center is the nation's largest hospital devoted entirely to clinical research. With patients from all over the United States and some from abroad, the Clinical Center provides medical care and research services to support patients participating in over 1,500 active protocol sponsored by the NIH Institutes. The Office of Patient Recruitment (OPR) reports to the Clinical Center Office of the Director. OPR is responsible for supporting the NIH intramural program by providing patient recruitment services for institutes, staffing a call center to receive public inquiries, providing services to support the clinical research volunteer program, and serving as the NIH Intramural Liaison for Research Match (RM), an online recruitment tool.

The NIH has a requirement for call center services. Please see the attached Statement of Work. This is anticipated for up to four (4) full time positions onsite at the NIH Clinical Center. Offerors are to submit resumes with documentation for medical terminology training. Offerors may submit multiple resumes for positions.

Evaluation Criteria

Approach 30%: Proposal meets requirements and indicates an exceptional approach and understanding of the requirements. Risk of unsuccessful performance is very low. Adequacy of ability to meet the volume of contacts. Ability to provide consistent staffing and standards of staff performance.

Staffing 30%: Evidence of a broad pool of applicants that have been placed in the metropolitan DC area with the skill set desired within the last 2 years. Proposed staff meets the requirements (experience and credentialing) as stated in the Statement of Work. Staff has relevant experience with volume of contacts. Staff are recruited and retained. Ability to meet the 48 hours replacement time.

Corporate Experience 25%: Adequacy of the contractor's prior experience in providing support. The information shall include sufficient information to demonstrate previous effectiveness of staffing and oversight on performance.

Past Performance 15%: The quotation will be evaluated on 3 recent references (within the last 5 years).

Price Best Value

The government will evaluate the total price contained in the contractor's proposal. With the understanding and ability to project costs which are reasonable and indicates that the contractor understands the nature and extent of the work to be performed.

Period of Performance is one year September, 2019 to September, 2020 with up to 4 successive options.

It reads as follows, bold Solicitation Number: end bold N I HC C O PC 13 01 4 4 7 6 (top left)

The Clinical Center at the National Institutes of Health (N I H) in Bethesda, Maryland, is one of the 27 institutes and centers that comprise N I H. The N I H Clinical Center is the nation's largest hospital devoted entirely to clinical research. With patients from all over the United States and some from abroad, the Clinical Center provides medical care and research services to support patients participating in over 1,500 active protocol sponsored by the N I H Institutes. The Office of Patient Recruitment (O P R) reports to the Clinical Center Office of the Director. O P R is responsible for supporting the N I H intramural program by providing patient recruitment services for institutes, staffing a call center to receive public inquiries, providing services to support the clinical research volunteer program, and serving as the N I H Intramural Liaison for Research Match (RM), an online recruitment tool.

The N I H has a requirement for call center services. Please see the attached Statement of Work. This is anticipated for up to four (4) full time positions onsite at the N I H Clinical Center. Offerors are to submit resumes with documentation for medical terminology training. Offerors may submit multiple résumés for positions.

Evaluation Criteria (centered and bold)

Bold Approach 30 percent: end bold Proposal meets requirements and indicates an exceptional approach and understanding of the requirements. Risk of unsuccessful performance is very low. Adequacy of ability to meet the volume of contacts. Ability to provide consistent staffing and standards of staff performance.

Bold Staffing 30 percent: end bold Evidence of a broad pool of applicants that have been placed in the metropolitan D C area with the skill set desired within the last 2 years. Proposed staff meets the requirements (experience and credentialing) as stated in the Statement of Work. Staff has relevant experience with volume of contacts. Staff are recruited and retained. Ability to meet the 48 hours replacement time.

Bold Corporate Experience 25 percent: end bold Adequacy of the contractor’s prior experience in providing support. The information shall include sufficient information to demonstrate previous effectiveness of staffing and oversight on performance.

Bold Past Performance 15 percent: end bold The quotation will be evaluated on 3 recent references (within the last 5 years).

Price Best Value (centered and bold)

The government will evaluate the total price contained in the contractor’s proposal. With the understanding and ability to project costs which are reasonable and indicates that the contractor understands the nature and extent of the work to be performed.

Period of Performance is one year September, 2019 to September, 2020 with up to 4 successive options.

Return to Figure 11.2 Excerpt from an RFQ

Extended description for An illustration shows a project description and its formatting

PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The proposed project is comprised of several different but related activities:

A. Physical Evaluation of the Officers

The first component of this project is the physical examination of all Summerville P.D. sworn employees. Of special interest for purposes of the project are resting pulse rate, target pulse rate, blood pressure, and percentage of body fat of the program participants. Dr. Feinberg will perform the physical examinations of all participating officers. The measurement of body fat will be conducted at the University of Summerville's Health Center under the direction of Dr. Farron Updike.

B. Renovation of Basement

Another phase of this project involves the renovation of the basement of police headquarters. The space is currently being used for storing Christmas decorations for City Hall.

The main storage room will be converted into a gym. This room will accommodate the Universal weight machine, the stationary bike, the treadmill, and the rowing machine. Renovation will consist of first transferring all the Christmas decorations to the basement of the new City Hall. Once that is accomplished, it will be necessary to paint the walls, install indoor/outdoor carpeting, and set up the equipment.

A second, smaller room will be converted into a locker room. Renovation will include painting the floors and the installation of lockers and benches.

To complete the fitness center, a third basement room will be equipped as a shower room. A local plumber will tap into existing plumbing to install several showerheads.

C. Purchase of Fitness Equipment

The Department of Public Safety has identified five vendors of exercise equipment in the greater Summerville area. Each of these vendors submitted bids for the following equipment:

- Universal Weight Machine
- Atlas Stationary Bike
- Yale Rowing Machine
- Speedster Treadmill

D. Training of Officers

Participating officers must be trained in the safe, responsible use of the exercise equipment. Dr. Updike of the University of Summerville will hold periodic training sessions at the Department's facility.

Ohio Office of Criminal Justice Services.

It reads as follows:

PROJECT DESCRIPTION (bold and left justified)

The proposed project is comprised of several different but related activities:

A. Physical Evaluation of the Officers (bold and left justified)

(Paragraph is indented and regular type) The first component of this project is the physical examination of all Summerville P D sworn employees. Of special interest for purposes of the project are resting pulse rate, target pulse rate, blood pressure, and percentage of body fat of the program participants. Dr. Feinberg will perform the physical examinations of all participating officers. The measurement of body fat will be conducted at the University of Summerville's Health Center under the direction of Dr. Farron Updike.

B. Renovation of Basement (bold and left justified)

(Paragraphs are indented and regular type)Another phase of this project involves the renovation of the basement of police headquarters. The space is currently being used for storing Christmas decorations for City Hall.

The main storage room will be converted into a gym. This room will accommodate the Universal weight machine, the stationary bike, the treadmill, and the rowing machine. Renovation will consist of first transferring all the Christmas decorations to the basement of the new City Hall. Once that is accomplished, it will be necessary to paint the walls, install indoor/outdoor carpeting, and set up the equipment.

A second, smaller room will be converted into a locker room. Renovation will include painting the floors and the installation of lockers and benches.

To complete the fitness center, a third basement room will be equipped as a shower room. A local plumber will tap into existing plumbing to install several showerheads.

C. Purchase of Fitness Equipment (bold and left justified)

(Paragraphs are indented and regular type) The Department of Public Safety has identified five vendors of exercise equipment in the greater Summerville area. Each of these vendors submitted

bids for the following equipment:

Bullet Universal Weight Machine

Bullet Atlas Stationary Bike

Bullet Yale Rowing Machine

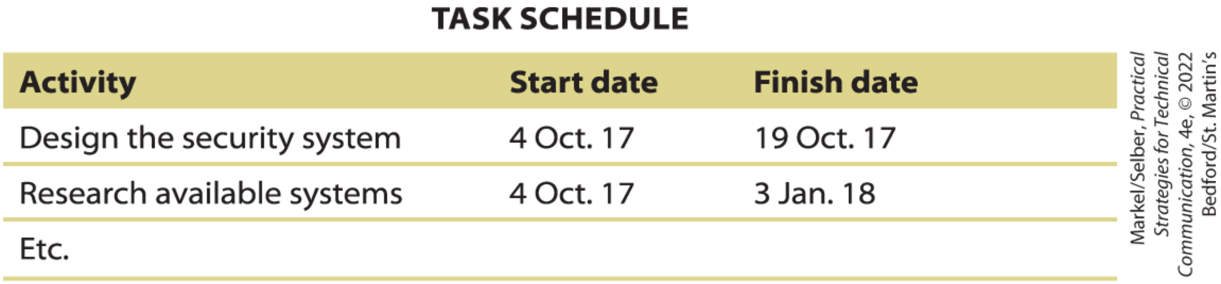
Bullet Speedster Treadmill

D. Training of Officers (bold and left justified)

(Paragraph is indented and regular type) Participating officers must be trained in the safe, responsible use of the exercise equipment. Dr. Updike of the University of Summerville will hold periodic training sessions at the Department’s facility.

Return to An illustration shows a project description and its formatting

Extended description for Figure 11.3 Task Schedule Presented as a Table



TASK SCHEDULE

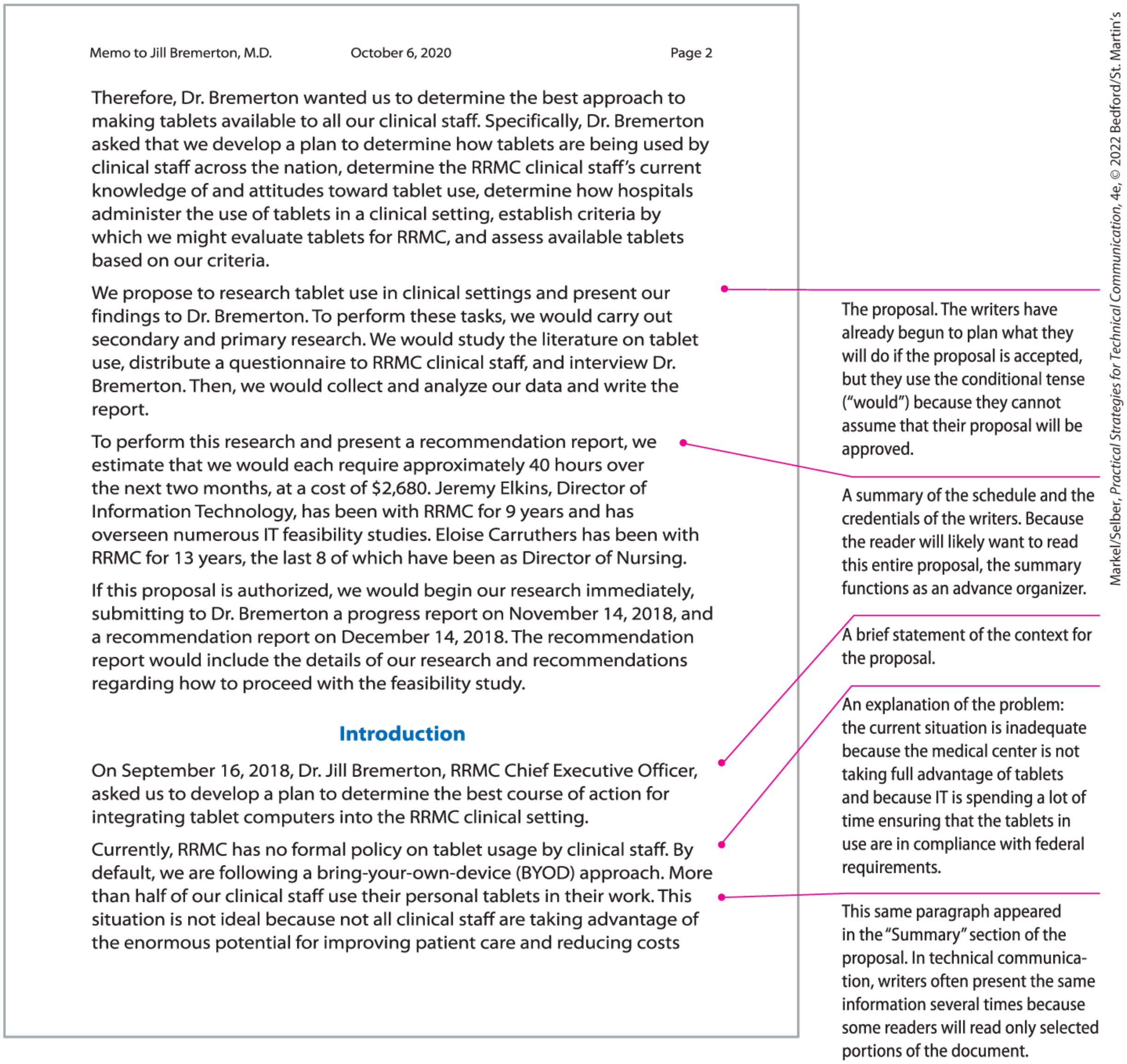
Activity	Start date	Finish date
Design the security system	4 Oct. 17	19 Oct. 17
Research available systems	4 Oct. 17	3 Jan. 18
Etc.		

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The table schedule has three columns and four rows. Row headings read, Activity, Start date, Finish date. Row 1: Design the security system, 4 October 17, 19 October 17. Row 2: Research available systems, 4 October 17, 3 January 18. Row 3 reads, Etcetera.

Return to Figure 11.3 Task Schedule Presented as a Table

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 2

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation, determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting, establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC, and assess available tablets based on our criteria.

We propose to research tablet use in clinical settings and present our findings to Dr. Bremerton. To perform these tasks, we would carry out secondary and primary research. We would study the literature on tablet use, distribute a questionnaire to RRMC clinical staff, and interview Dr. Bremerton. Then, we would collect and analyze our data and write the report.

To perform this research and present a recommendation report, we estimate that we would each require approximately 40 hours over the next two months, at a cost of $2,680. Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has been with RRMC for 9 years and has overseen numerous IT feasibility studies. Eloise Carruthers has been with RRMC for 13 years, the last 8 of which have been as Director of Nursing.

If this proposal is authorized, we would begin our research immediately, submitting to Dr. Bremerton a progress report on November 14, 2018, and a recommendation report on December 14, 2018. The recommendation report would include the details of our research and recommendations regarding how to proceed with the feasibility study.

Introduction

On September 16, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs

The proposal. The writers have already begun to plan what they will do if the proposal is accepted, but they use the conditional tense ("would") because they cannot assume that their proposal will be approved.

A summary of the schedule and the credentials of the writers. Because the reader will likely want to read this entire proposal, the summary functions as an advance organizer.

A brief statement of the context for the proposal.

An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because IT is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements.

This same paragraph appeared in the "Summary" section of the proposal. In technical communication, writers often present the same information several times because some readers will read only selected portions of the document.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 2 (right)

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation, determine the R R M C clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting, establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for R R M C, and assess available tablets based on our criteria.

We propose to research tablet use in clinical settings and present our findings to Dr. Bremerton. To perform these tasks, we would carry out secondary and primary research. We would study the literature on tablet use, distribute a questionnaire to R R M C clinical staff, and interview Dr. Bremerton. Then, we would collect and analyze our data and write the report. A notation reads, The proposal. The writers have already begun to plan what they will do if the proposal is accepted, but they use the conditional tense ("would") because they cannot assume that their proposal will be approved.

To perform this research and present a recommendation report, we estimate that we would each require approximately 40 hours over the next two months, at a cost of 2,680 dollars. Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has been with R R M C for 9 years and has overseen numerous I T feasibility studies. Eloise Carruthers has been with R R M C for 13 years, the last 8 of which have been as Director of Nursing. A notation reads, A summary of the schedule and the credentials of the writers. Because the reader will likely want to read this entire proposal, the summary functions as an advance organizer.

If this proposal is authorized, we would begin our research immediately, submitting to Dr. Bremerton a progress report on November 14, 2018, and a recommendation report on December 14, 2018. The recommendation report would include the details of our research and recommendations regarding how to proceed with the feasibility study.

Introduction (bold and centered)

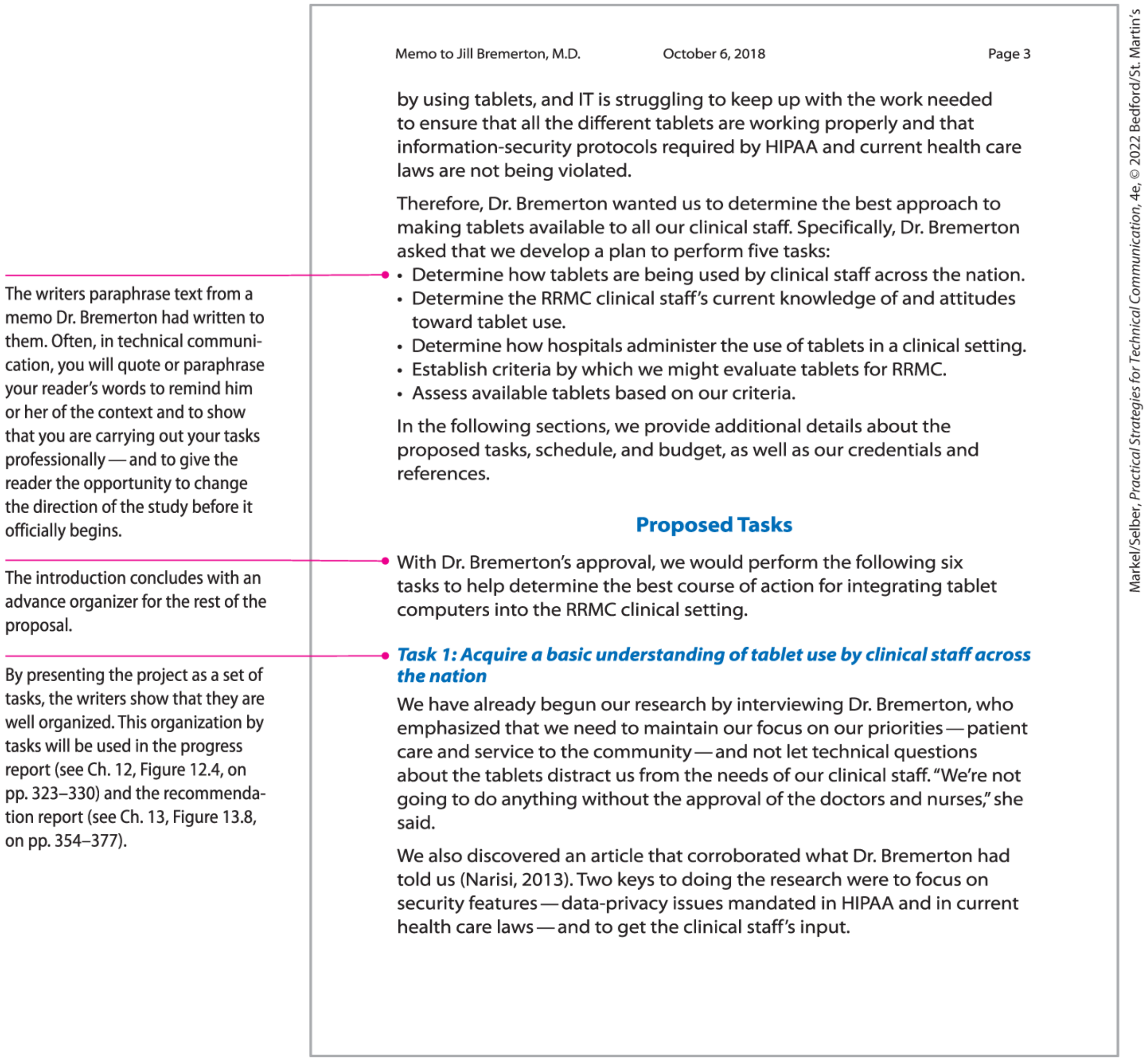
On September 16, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, R R M C Chief Executive Officer, asked us to develop a plan to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting. A notation reads, A brief statement of the context for the proposal.

Currently, R R M C has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs

Notations read, An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because IT is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements. This same paragraph appeared in the “Summary” section of the proposal. In technical communication, writers often present the same information several times because some readers will read only selected portions of the document.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2018 Page 3

by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria.

The writers paraphrase text from a memo Dr. Bremerton had written to them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase your reader's words to remind him or her of the context and to show that you are carrying out your tasks professionally — and to give the reader the opportunity to change the direction of the study before it officially begins.

In the following sections, we provide additional details about the proposed tasks, schedule, and budget, as well as our credentials and references.

Proposed Tasks

With Dr. Bremerton's approval, we would perform the following six tasks to help determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

By presenting the project as a set of tasks, the writers show that they are well organized. This organization by tasks will be used in the progress report (see Ch. 12, Figure 12.4, on pp. 323–330) and the recommendation report (see Ch. 13, Figure 13.8, on pp. 354–377).

We have already begun our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. "We're not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses," she said.

We also discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and in current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff's input.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The header reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 2 (right)

Text continues: by using tablets, and I T is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by H I P A A and current health care laws are not being violated.

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best approach to making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked that we develop a plan to perform five tasks:

Bullet Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation.

Bullet Determine the RRMC clinical staff’s current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use.

Bullet Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting.

Bullet Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC.

Bullet Assess available tablets based on our criteria.

A notation reads, The writers paraphrase text from a memo Dr. Bremerton had written to them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase your reader’s words to remind him or her of the context and to show that you are carrying out your tasks professionally — and to give the reader the opportunity to change the direction of the study before it officially begins.

In the following sections, we provide additional details about the proposed tasks, schedule, and budget, as well as our credentials and references.

Proposed Tasks (centered, bold)

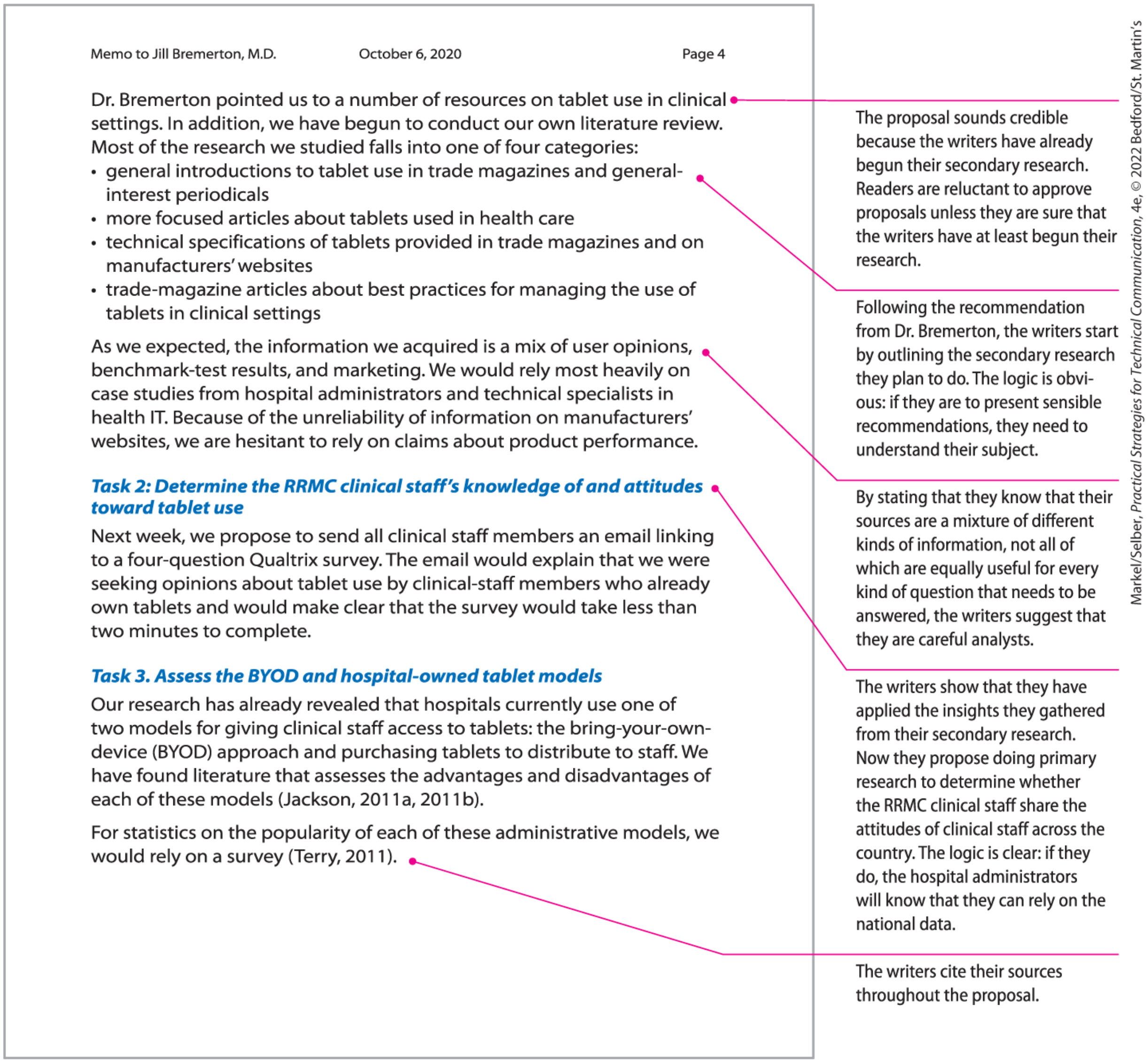
With Dr. Bremerton's approval, we would perform the following six tasks to help determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting. A notation reads, The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal.

Bold Task 1. Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation. End bold. A notation reads, By presenting the project as a set of tasks, the writers show that they are well organized. This organization by tasks will be used in the progress report (see Chapter 12, Figure 12.4, on pages 000–00) and the recommendation report (see Chapter 13, Figure 13.8, on pages 000–00).

We have already begun our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. Quote We're not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses, end quote she said. We also discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and in current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff's input.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 4

Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we have begun to conduct our own literature review. Most of the research we studied falls into one of four categories:

- general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general-interest periodicals
- more focused articles about tablets used in health care
- technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers' websites
- trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings

As we expected, the information we acquired is a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We would rely most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health IT. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we are hesitant to rely on claims about product performance.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

Next week, we propose to send all clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrix survey. The email would explain that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and would make clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

Task 3. Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Our research has already revealed that hospitals currently use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. We have found literature that assesses the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b).

For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we would rely on a survey (Terry, 2011).

The proposal sounds credible because the writers have already begun their secondary research. Readers are reluctant to approve proposals unless they are sure that the writers have at least begun their research.

Following the recommendation from Dr. Bremerton, the writers start by outlining the secondary research they plan to do. The logic is obvious: if they are to present sensible recommendations, they need to understand their subject.

By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which are equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts.

The writers show that they have applied the insights they gathered from their secondary research. Now they propose doing primary research to determine whether the RRMC clinical staff share the attitudes of clinical staff across the country. The logic is clear: if they do, the hospital administrators will know that they can rely on the national data.

The writers cite their sources throughout the proposal.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The header reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 2 (right)

Text continues: Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we have begun to conduct our own literature review. A notation reads, The proposal sounds credible because the writers have already begun their secondary research. Readers are reluctant to approve proposals unless they are sure that the writers have at least begun their research.

Most of the research we studied falls into one of four categories:

Bullet general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general interest periodicals

Bullet more focused articles about tablets used in health care

Bullet technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers' websites

Bullet trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings. A notation reads, Following the recommendation from Dr. Bremerton, the writers start by outlining the secondary research they plan to do. The logic is obvious: if they are to present sensible recommendations, they need to understand their subject.

As we expected, the information we acquired is a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We would rely most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health I T. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we are hesitant to rely on claims about product performance. A notation reads, By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which are equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts.

A bold heading reads, Task 2: Determine the R R M C clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

A notation reads, The writers show that they have applied the insights they gathered from their secondary research. Now they propose doing primary research to determine whether the R R M C clinical staff share the attitudes of clinical staff across the country. The logic is clear: if they do, the hospital administrators will know that they can rely on the national data.

Next week, we propose to send all clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrix survey. The email would explain that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and would make clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

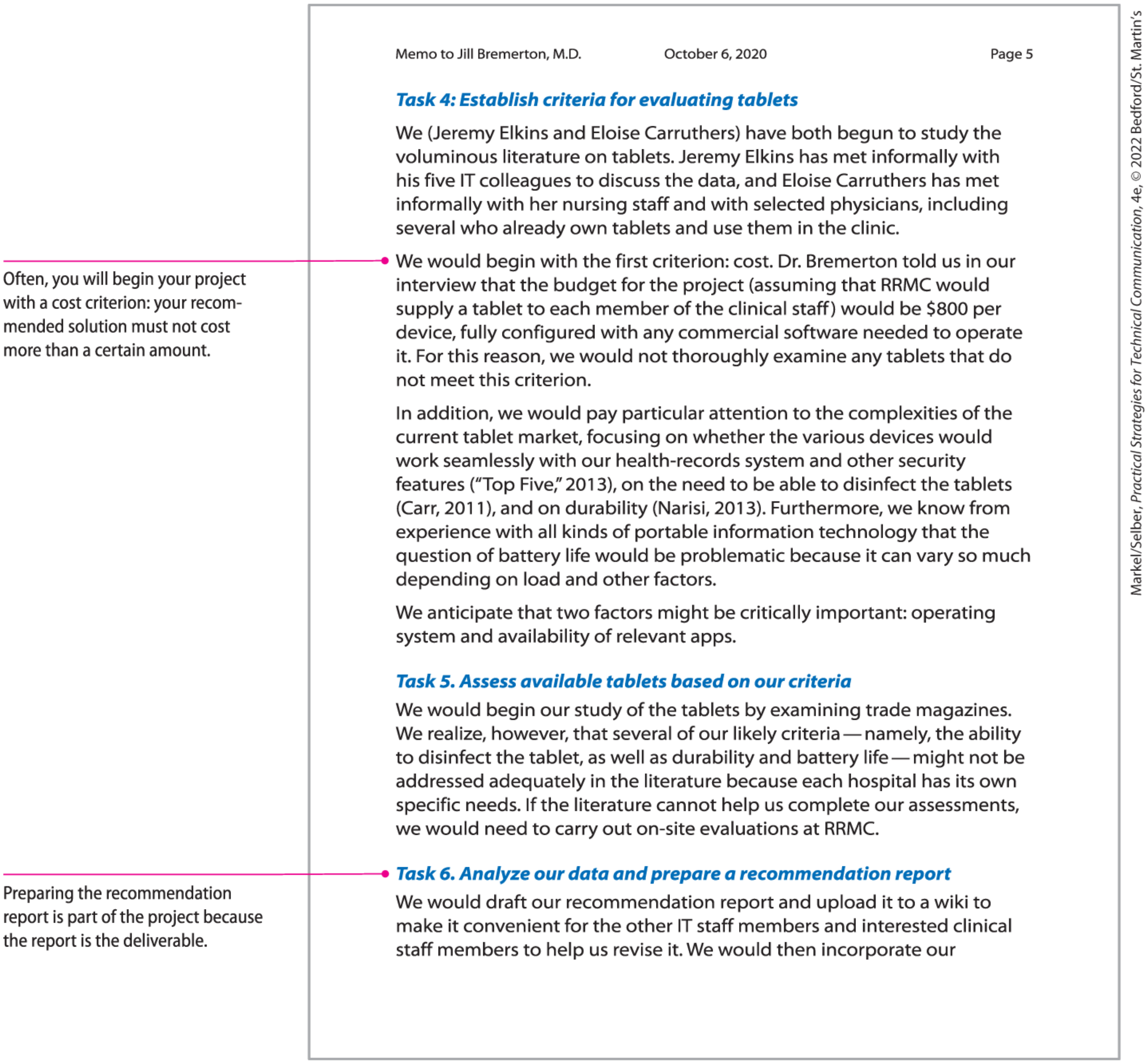
A bold heading reads, Task 3. Assess the B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models

Our research has already revealed that hospitals currently use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own device (B Y O D) approach and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. We have found literature that assesses the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b).

For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we would rely on a survey (Terry, 2011). A notation reads, The writers cite their sources throughout the proposal.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 5

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We (Jeremy Elkins and Eloise Carruthers) have both begun to study the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins has met informally with his five IT colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers has met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who already own tablets and use them in the clinic.

We would begin with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that RRMC would supply a tablet to each member of the clinical staff) would be $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we would not thoroughly examine any tablets that do not meet this criterion.

Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion: your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount.

In addition, we would pay particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security features ("Top Five," 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). Furthermore, we know from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors.

We anticipate that two factors might be critically important: operating system and availability of relevant apps.

Task 5. Assess available tablets based on our criteria

We would begin our study of the tablets by examining trade magazines. We realize, however, that several of our likely criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — might not be addressed adequately in the literature because each hospital has its own specific needs. If the literature cannot help us complete our assessments, we would need to carry out on-site evaluations at RRMC.

Task 6. Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report

Preparing the recommendation report is part of the project because the report is the deliverable.

We would draft our recommendation report and upload it to a wiki to make it convenient for the other IT staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We would then incorporate our

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The header reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 5 (right)

A bold heading reads, Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets (left)

We (Jeremy Elkins and Eloise Carruthers) have both begun to study the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins has met informally with his five I T colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers has met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who already own tablets and use them in the clinic.

We would begin with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that R R M C would supply a tablet to each member of the clinical staff) would be 800 dollars per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we would not thoroughly examine any tablets that do not meet this criterion. A note reads, Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion: your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount.

In addition, we would pay particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security features (quote Top Five, end quote 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). Furthermore, we know from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors.

We anticipate that two factors might be critically important: operating system and availability of relevant apps.

A bold heading reads, Task 5. Assess available tablets based on our criteria (left)

We would begin our study of the tablets by examining trade magazines. We realize, however, that several of our likely criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — might not be addressed adequately in the literature because each hospital has its own specific needs. If the literature cannot help us complete our assessments, we would need to carry out on-site evaluations at R R M C.

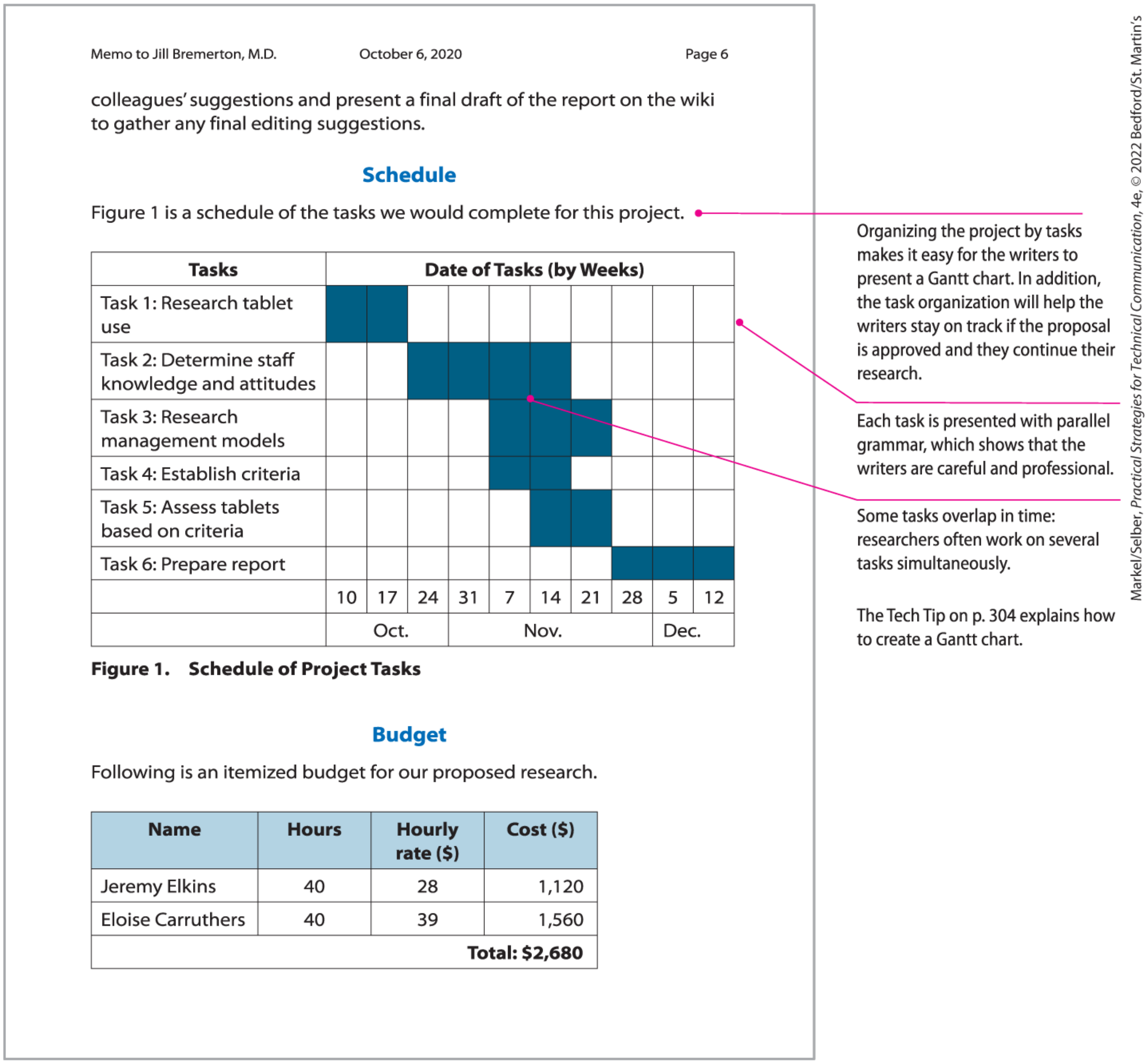
A bold heading reads, Task 6. Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report (left)

We would draft our recommendation report and upload it to a wiki to make it convenient for the other I T staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We would then incorporate our

A notation reads, Preparing the recommendation report is part of the project because the report is the deliverable.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 6

colleagues' suggestions and present a final draft of the report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

Schedule

Figure 1 is a schedule of the tasks we would complete for this project.

Tasks	Date of Tasks (by Weeks)									
Task 1: Research tablet use	■	■								
Task 2: Determine staff knowledge and attitudes			■	■	■	■				
Task 3: Research management models					■	■	■			
Task 4: Establish criteria					■	■				
Task 5: Assess tablets based on criteria						■	■			
Task 6: Prepare report								■	■	■
	10	17	24	31	7	14	21	28	5	12
	Oct.			Nov.					Dec.	

Figure 1. Schedule of Project Tasks

Budget

Following is an itemized budget for our proposed research.

Name	Hours	Hourly rate ($)	Cost ($)
Jeremy Elkins	40	28	1,120
Eloise Carruthers	40	39	1,560
			Total: $2,680

Organizing the project by tasks makes it easy for the writers to present a Gantt chart. In addition, the task organization will help the writers stay on track if the proposal is approved and they continue their research.

Each task is presented with parallel grammar, which shows that the writers are careful and professional.

Some tasks overlap in time: researchers often work on several tasks simultaneously.

The Tech Tip on p. 304 explains how to create a Gantt chart.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The header reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 6 (right).

Text continues, colleagues' suggestions and present a final draft of the report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

A bold, centered heading reads, Schedule.

Figure 1 is a schedule of the tasks we would complete for this project. A notation reads, Organizing the project by tasks makes it easy for the writers to present a Gantt chart. In addition, the task organization will help the writers stay on track if the proposal is approved and they continue their research.

A Gantt chart is shown below the text. It shows the tasks and their dates by weeks. Tasks are as follows: Task 1: Research tablet use; Task 2: Determine staff knowledge and attitudes; Task 3: Research management models; Task 4: Establish criteria; Task 5: Assess tablets based on criteria; Task 6: Prepare report. Below the heading date of tasks by weeks is a grid composed of cells. Cells are highlighted by date of tasks to be completed. Tasks are arranged in order of start date. Some tasks occur simultaneously. At the bottom are dates by week for October (3 weeks), November, and December (2 weeks). Notations pointing to the chart read, Each task is presented with parallel grammar, which shows that the writers are careful and professional. Some tasks overlap in time: researchers often work on several tasks simultaneously.

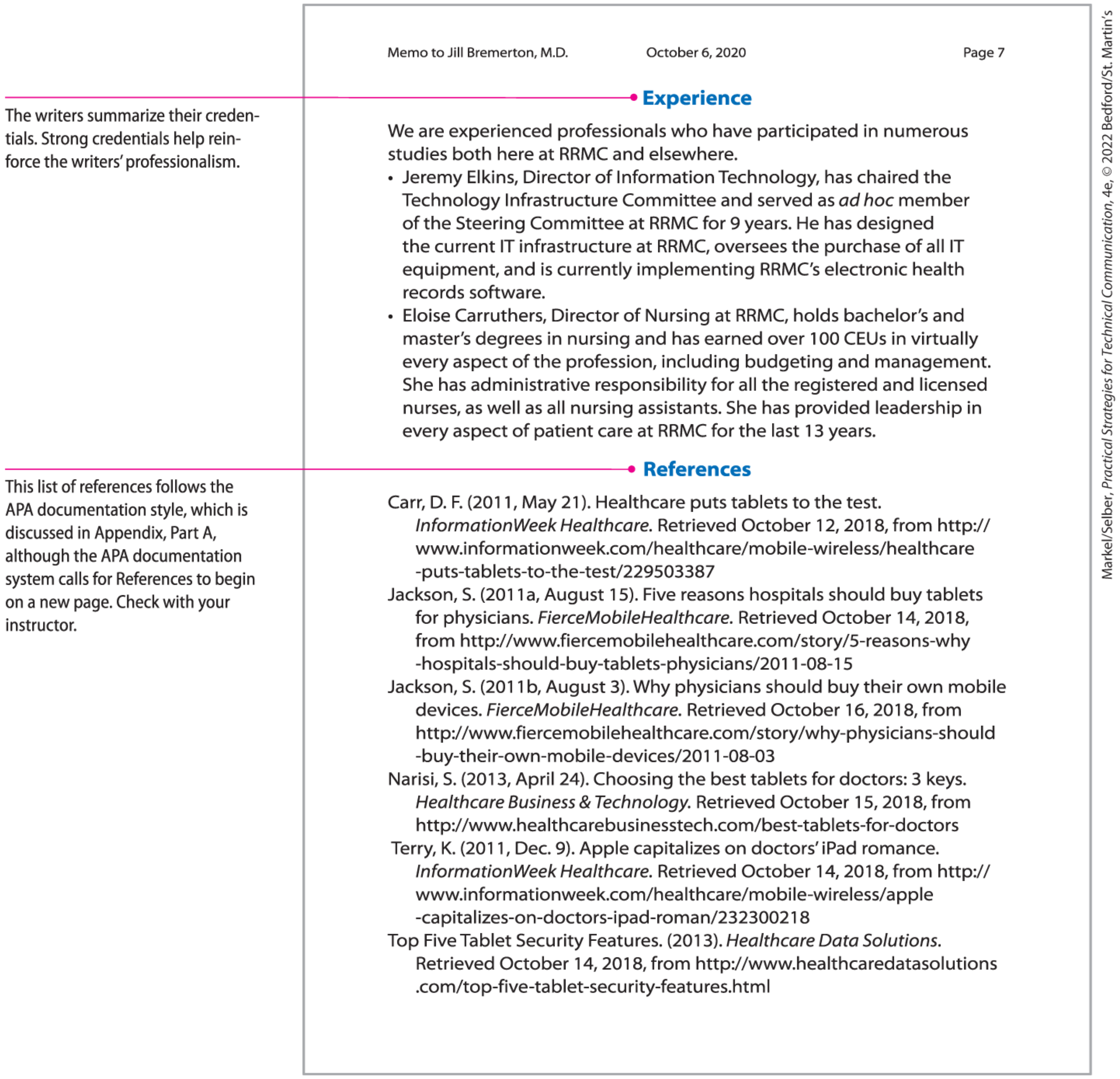
A bold, centered heading reads, Budget.

Following is an itemized budget for our proposed research. Following the text is a chart with headings that read, name, hours, hourly rate in dollars, and cost in dollars. The data from the chart are as follows: Jeremy Elkins 40, 28, 1,120; Eloise Carruthers 40, 39, 1,560.

Total: 2,680 dollars.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. October 6, 2020 Page 7

The writers summarize their credentials. Strong credentials help reinforce the writers' professionalism.

Experience

We are experienced professionals who have participated in numerous studies both here at RRMC and elsewhere.

- Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has chaired the Technology Infrastructure Committee and served as *ad hoc* member of the Steering Committee at RRMC for 9 years. He has designed the current IT infrastructure at RRMC, oversees the purchase of all IT equipment, and is currently implementing RRMC's electronic health records software.
- Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing at RRMC, holds bachelor's and master's degrees in nursing and has earned over 100 CEUs in virtually every aspect of the profession, including budgeting and management. She has administrative responsibility for all the registered and licensed nurses, as well as all nursing assistants. She has provided leadership in every aspect of patient care at RRMC for the last 13 years.

This list of references follows the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A, although the APA documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

References

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/5-reasons-why-hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians/2011-08-15

Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. *Healthcare Business & Technology*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.healthcarebusinesstech.com/best-tablets-for-doctors

Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors' iPad romance. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman/232300218

Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). *Healthcare Data Solutions*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.healthcaredatasolutions.com/top-five-tablet-security-features.html

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The header reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D (left) October 6, 2020 (centered) Page 7 (right).

A bold, centered heading reads, Experience. A notation reads, The writers summarize their credentials. Strong credentials help reinforce the writers’ professionalism.

We are experienced professionals who have participated in numerous studies both here at R R M C and elsewhere.

Bullet Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology, has chaired the Technology Infrastructure Committee and served as ad hoc member of the Steering Committee at R R M C for 9 years. He has designed the current IT infrastructure at R R M C, oversees the purchase of all I T equipment, and is currently implementing R R M C’s electronic health records software.

Bullet Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing at R R M C, holds bachelor’s and master’s degrees in nursing and has earned over 100 C E Us in virtually every aspect of the profession, including budgeting and management. She has administrative responsibility for all the registered and licensed nurses, as well as all nursing assistants. She has provided leadership in every aspect of patient care at R R M C for the last 13 years.

A bold, centered heading reads, References. A notation reads, This list of references follows the A P A documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A, although the A P A documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

All references are formatted with a hanging indent.

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. Italic InformationWeek Healthcare. End italic. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot informationweek dot com slash healthcare slash mobile-wireless slash healthcare -puts-tablets-to-the-test slash 229503387

Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. Italic FierceMobileHealthcare. End italic. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot fiercemobilehealthcare dot com slash story slash 5-reasons-why-hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians slash 2011-08-15

Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. Italic FierceMobileHealthcare. End italic Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot fiercemobilehealthcare dot com slash story slash why hyphen physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices slash 2011-08-03

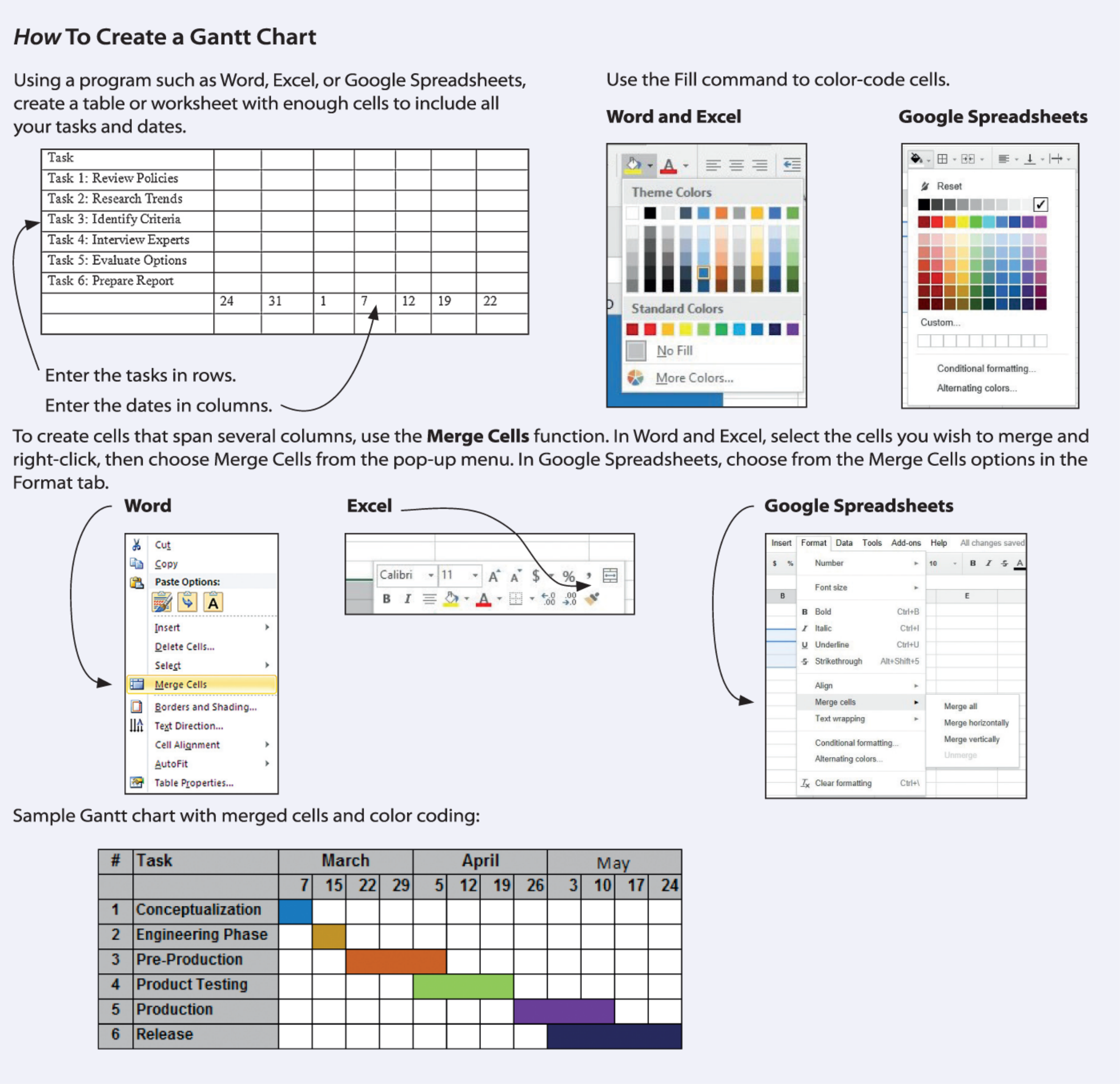
Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. Italic Healthcare Business & Technology. End italic. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot healthcarebusinesstech dot com slash best-tablets-for-doctors

Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors’ iPad romance. Italic InformationWeek Healthcare. End italic Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot informationweek.com slash healthcare slash mobile-wireless slash apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman slash 232300218

Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). Italic Healthcare Data Solutions. End italic. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http slash slash www dot healthcaredatasolutions dot com/top-five-tablet-security features dot html.

Return to Figure 11.6 Sample Internal Proposal

Extended description for An illustration explains how to create a Gantt chart



How **To Create a Gantt Chart**

Using a program such as Word, Excel, or Google Spreadsheets, create a table or worksheet with enough cells to include all your tasks and dates.

Task							
Task 1: Review Policies							
Task 2: Research Trends							
Task 3: Identify Criteria							
Task 4: Interview Experts							
Task 5: Evaluate Options							
Task 6: Prepare Report							
	24	31	1	7	12	19	22

Enter the tasks in rows.

Enter the dates in columns.

Use the Fill command to color-code cells.

Word and Excel

Theme Colors
Standard Colors
No Fill
More Colors...

Google Spreadsheets

Reset
Custom...
Conditional formatting...
Alternating colors...

To create cells that span several columns, use the **Merge Cells** function. In Word and Excel, select the cells you wish to merge and right-click, then choose Merge Cells from the pop-up menu. In Google Spreadsheets, choose from the Merge Cells options in the Format tab.

Word

Cut
Copy
Paste Options:
Insert
Delete Cells...
Select
Merge Cells
Borders and Shading...
Text Direction...
Cell Alignment
AutoFit
Table Properties...

Excel

Calibri
11
B
I

Google Spreadsheets

Insert
Format
Data
Tools
Add-ons
Help
All changes saved
Number
Font size
Bold Ctrl+B
Italic Ctrl+I
Underline Ctrl+U
Strikethrough Alt+Shift+5
Align
Merge cells
Text wrapping
Conditional formatting...
Alternating colors...
Clear formatting Ctrl+\
Merge all
Merge horizontally
Merge vertically
Unmerge

Sample Gantt chart with merged cells and color coding:

#	Task	March				April				May			
		7	15	22	29	5	12	19	26	3	10	17	24
1	Conceptualization	🟦											
2	Engineering Phase		🟨										
3	Pre-Production			🟧	🟧	🟧							
4	Product Testing					🟩	🟩	🟩					
5	Production								🟪	🟪	🟪		
6	Release									⬛	⬛	⬛	⬛

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

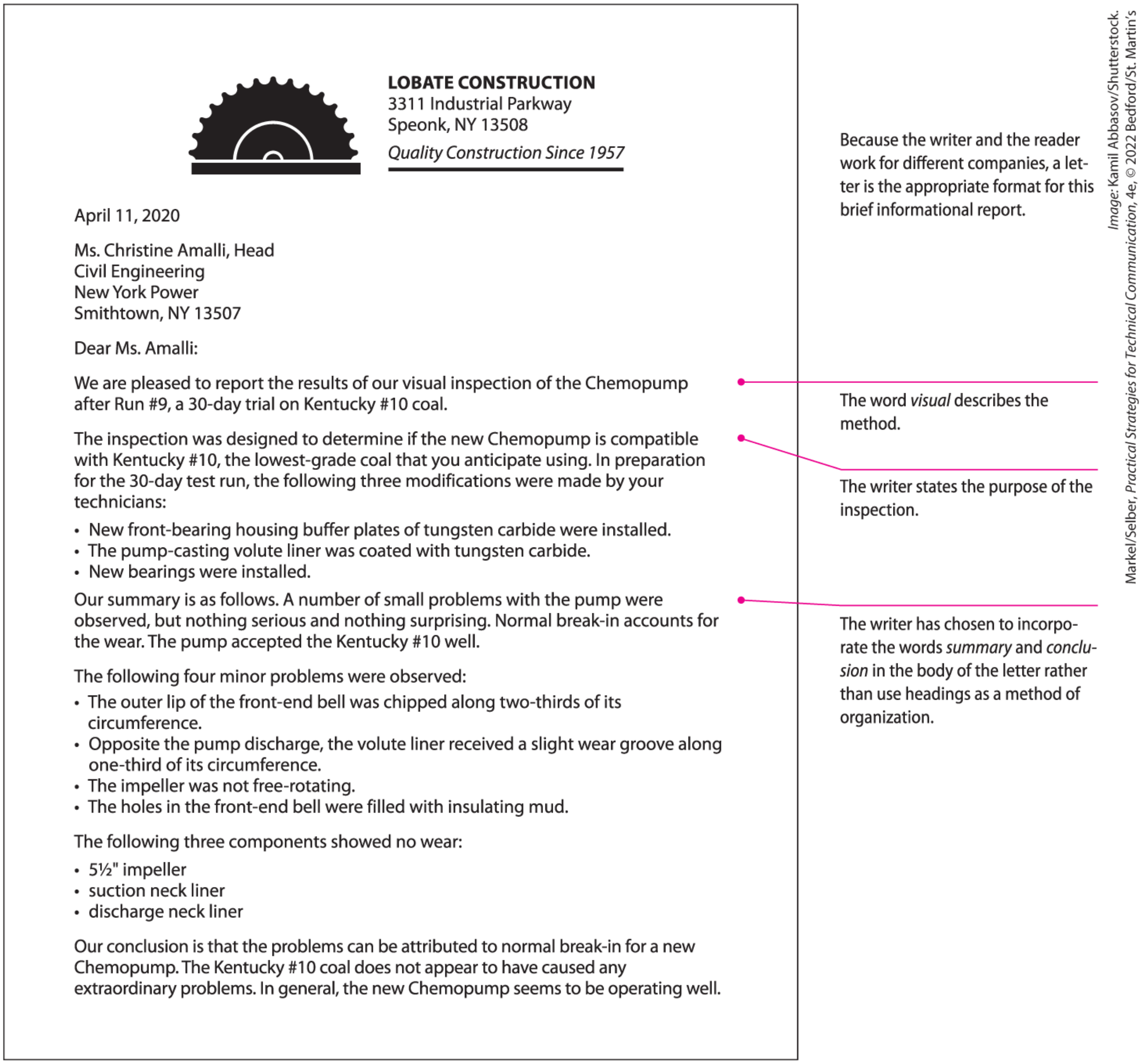
The page is divided into three parts. The top portion on the left shows a table listing tasks in the left column and dates in the row below the last task, beginning in the second column. Text above the table reads, Using a program such as Word, Excel, or Google Spreadsheets, create a table or worksheet with enough cells to include all your tasks and dates. A notation pointing to a task states, Enter the tasks in rows. A notation pointing to the dates reads, Enter the dates in columns. To the right of this section two screenshots show how to use the fill command to color-code cells in Word, or Excel, as well as Google spreadsheets. A window from Word or Excel shows the many color options available listed as themed colors, standard colors, no fill, and more colors. A window from Google spreadsheets shows the color options available, listed as reset, custom, and a myriad of shades and hues.

The next section explains how to Merge cells in Word, Excel, and Google spreadsheets. A window from each program is depicted. Corresponding text reads, To create cells that span several columns, use the Merge Cells function. In Word and Excel, select the cells you wish to merge and right-click, then choose Merge Cells from the pop-up menu. In Google Spreadsheets, choose from the Merge Cells options in the Format tab. Arrows show where to perform the functions in each program.

The last section shows a sample Gantt chart with merged cells and color coding. It has 14 columns and eight rows. The top row reads, number sign, March, April, and May. The months are all mergers of four cells each. The next row reads blank, blank, 7, 15, 22, 29, 5, 12, 19, 26, 3, 10, 17, and 24. Each row is numbered 1 through 6 in the first column, and they read Conceptualization, Engineering Phase, Pre-Production, Product Testing, Production, Release. In the dates columns are color coded bars showing dates for the various tasks, some of which are merged cells. The tasks are arranged by beginning date, and some tasks overlap with the previous task.

Return to An illustration explains how to create a Gantt chart

Extended description for Figure 12.2 A Field Report



LOBATE CONSTRUCTION
3311 Industrial Parkway
Speonk, NY 13508
Quality Construction Since 1957

April 11, 2020

Ms. Christine Amalli, Head
Civil Engineering
New York Power
Smithtown, NY 13507

Dear Ms. Amalli:

We are pleased to report the results of our visual inspection of the Chemopump after Run #9, a 30-day trial on Kentucky #10 coal.

The inspection was designed to determine if the new Chemopump is compatible with Kentucky #10, the lowest-grade coal that you anticipate using. In preparation for the 30-day test run, the following three modifications were made by your technicians:

- New front-bearing housing buffer plates of tungsten carbide were installed.
- The pump-casting volute liner was coated with tungsten carbide.
- New bearings were installed.

Our summary is as follows. A number of small problems with the pump were observed, but nothing serious and nothing surprising. Normal break-in accounts for the wear. The pump accepted the Kentucky #10 well.

The following four minor problems were observed:

- The outer lip of the front-end bell was chipped along two-thirds of its circumference.
- Opposite the pump discharge, the volute liner received a slight wear groove along one-third of its circumference.
- The impeller was not free-rotating.
- The holes in the front-end bell were filled with insulating mud.

The following three components showed no wear:

- 5½" impeller
- suction neck liner
- discharge neck liner

Our conclusion is that the problems can be attributed to normal break-in for a new Chemopump. The Kentucky #10 coal does not appear to have caused any extraordinary problems. In general, the new Chemopump seems to be operating well.

Because the writer and the reader work for different companies, a letter is the appropriate format for this brief informational report.

The word *visual* describes the method.

The writer states the purpose of the inspection.

The writer has chosen to incorporate the words *summary* and *conclusion* in the body of the letter rather than use headings as a method of organization.

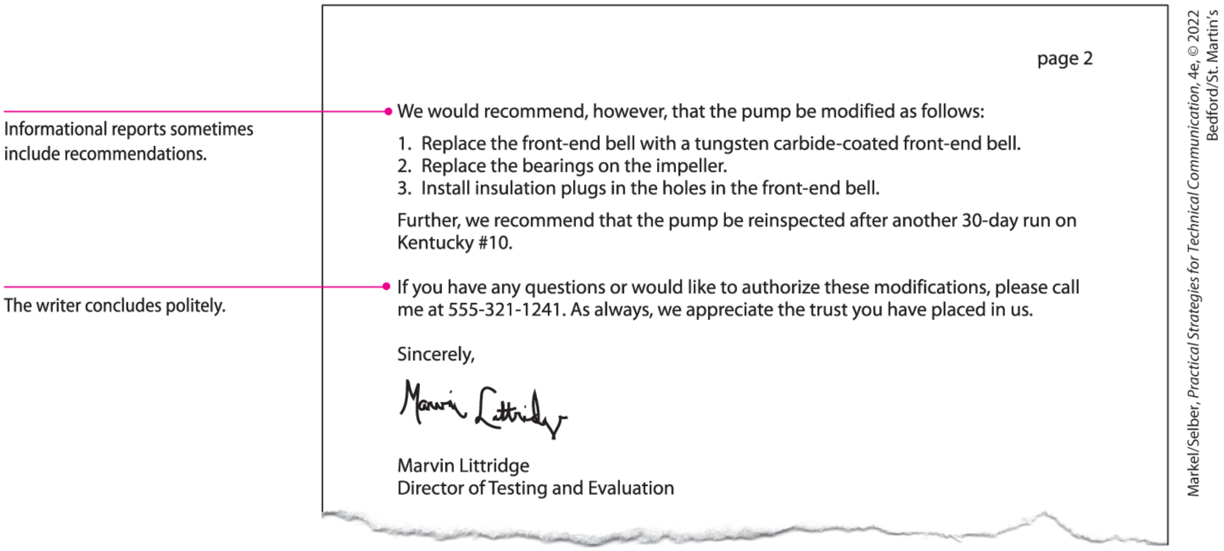
Image: Kamil Abbasov/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The report begins with the business letterhead including a logo and address centered at the top. It reads, all caps, Lobate Construction end all caps 3 3 1 1 Industrial Parkway Speonk, N Y 1 3 5 0 8 Quality Construction Since 1957 April 11, 2020 Ms. Christine Amalli, Head

Civil Engineering New York Power Smithtown, NY 1 3 5 0 7 A notation reads, Because the writer and the reader work for different companies, a letter is the appropriate format for this brief informational report. Dear Ms. Amalli: We are pleased to report the results of our visual inspection of the Chemopump after Run number 9, a 30-day trial on Kentucky number 10 coal. A note reads, The word visual describes the method. The inspection was designed to determine if the new Chemopump is compatible with Kentucky number 10, the lowest-grade coal that you anticipate using. In preparation for the 30-day test run, the following three modifications were made by your technicians: A note reads, The writer states the purpose of the inspection. Bullet New front-bearing housing buffer plates of tungsten carbide were installed. Bullet The pump-casting volute liner was coated with tungsten carbide. Bullet New bearings were installed. Our summary is as follows. A number of small problems with the pump were observed, but nothing serious and nothing surprising. Normal break-in accounts for the wear. The pump accepted the Kentucky number 10 well. A notation reads, The writer has chosen to incorporate the words summary and conclusion in the body of the letter rather than use headings as a method of organization. The following four minor problems were observed: Bullet The outer lip of the front-end bell was chipped along two-thirds of its circumference. Bullet Opposite the pump discharge, the volute liner received a slight wear groove along one-third of its circumference. Bullet The impeller was not free-rotating. Bullet The holes in the front-end bell were filled with insulating mud. The following three components showed no wear: Bullet 5 and one half inch impeller Bullet suction neck liner Bullet discharge neck liner Our conclusion is that the problems can be attributed to normal break-in for a new Chemopump. The Kentucky number 10 coal does not appear to have caused any extraordinary problems. In general, the new Chemopump seems to be operating well.

Return to Figure 12.2 A Field Report

Extended description for Figure 12.2 A Field Report



page 2

Informational reports sometimes include recommendations.

We would recommend, however, that the pump be modified as follows:

1. Replace the front-end bell with a tungsten carbide-coated front-end bell.
2. Replace the bearings on the impeller.
3. Install insulation plugs in the holes in the front-end bell.

Further, we recommend that the pump be reinspected after another 30-day run on Kentucky #10.

The writer concludes politely.

If you have any questions or would like to authorize these modifications, please call me at 555-321-1241. As always, we appreciate the trust you have placed in us.

Sincerely,

Marvin Littridge

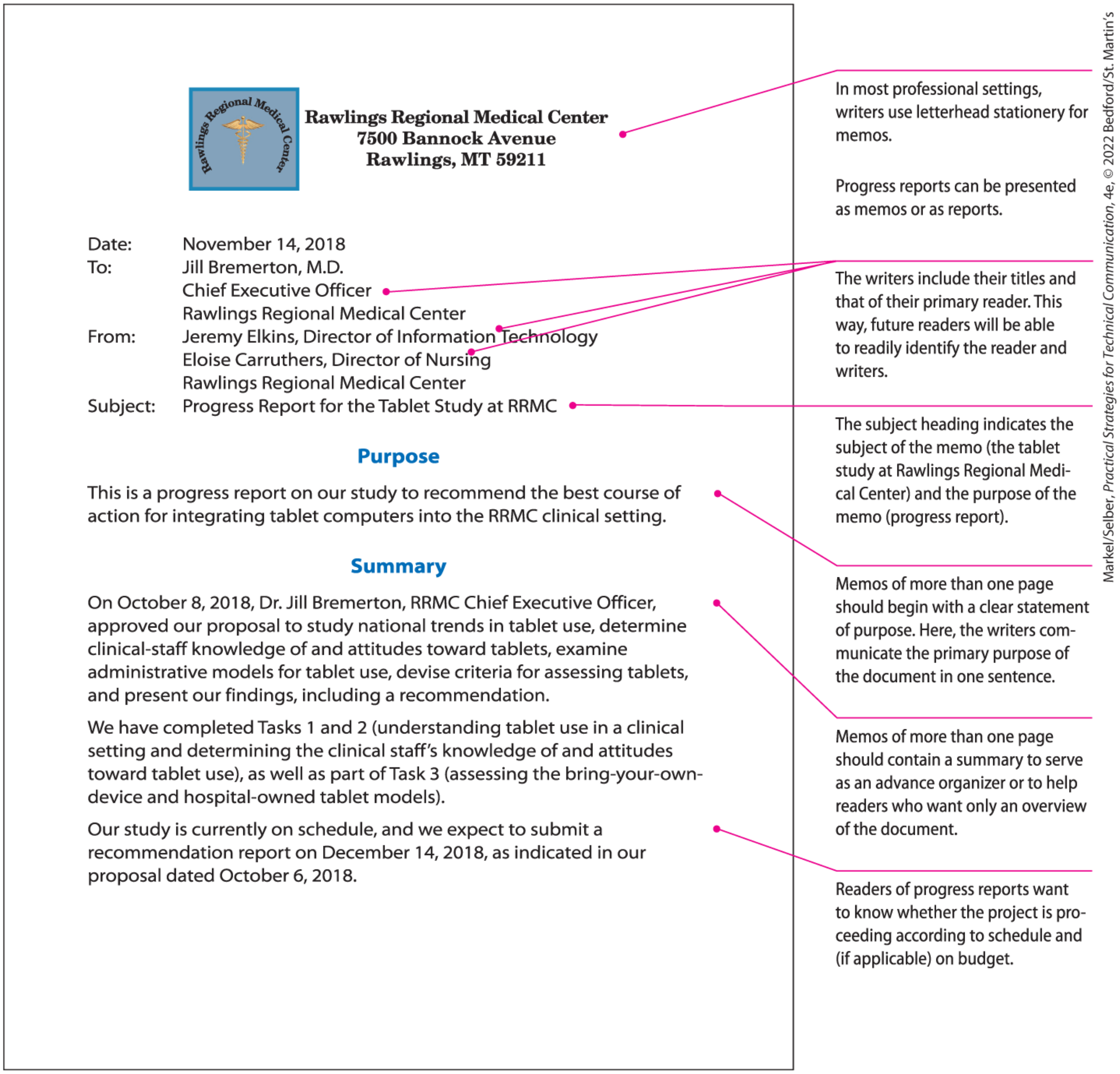
Marvin Littridge
Director of Testing and Evaluation

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The text reads, page 2 at the top right of the page. The report continues as follows. We would recommend, however, that the pump be modified as follows: A notation reads, Informational reports sometimes include recommendations. 1. Replace the front-end bell with a tungsten carbide-coated front-end bell. 2. Replace the bearings on the impeller. 3. Install insulation plugs in the holes in the front-end bell. Further, we recommend that the pump be reinspected after another 30-day run on Kentucky number 10. If you have any questions or would like to authorize these modifications, please call me at 5 5 5 3 2 1 1 2 4 1. As always, we appreciate the trust you have placed in us. A notation reads, The writer concludes politely. Sincerely, Signature Marvin Littridge Director of Testing and Evaluation

Return to Figure 12.2 A Field Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

Date: November 14, 2018
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Progress Report for the Tablet Study at RRMC

Purpose

This is a progress report on our study to recommend the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Summary

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to study national trends in tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation.

We have completed Tasks 1 and 2 (understanding tablet use in a clinical setting and determining the clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use), as well as part of Task 3 (assessing the bring-your-own-device and hospital-owned tablet models).

Our study is currently on schedule, and we expect to submit a recommendation report on December 14, 2018, as indicated in our proposal dated October 6, 2018.

In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos.

Progress reports can be presented as memos or as reports.

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings Regional Medical Center) and the purpose of the memo (progress report).

Memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence.

Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document.

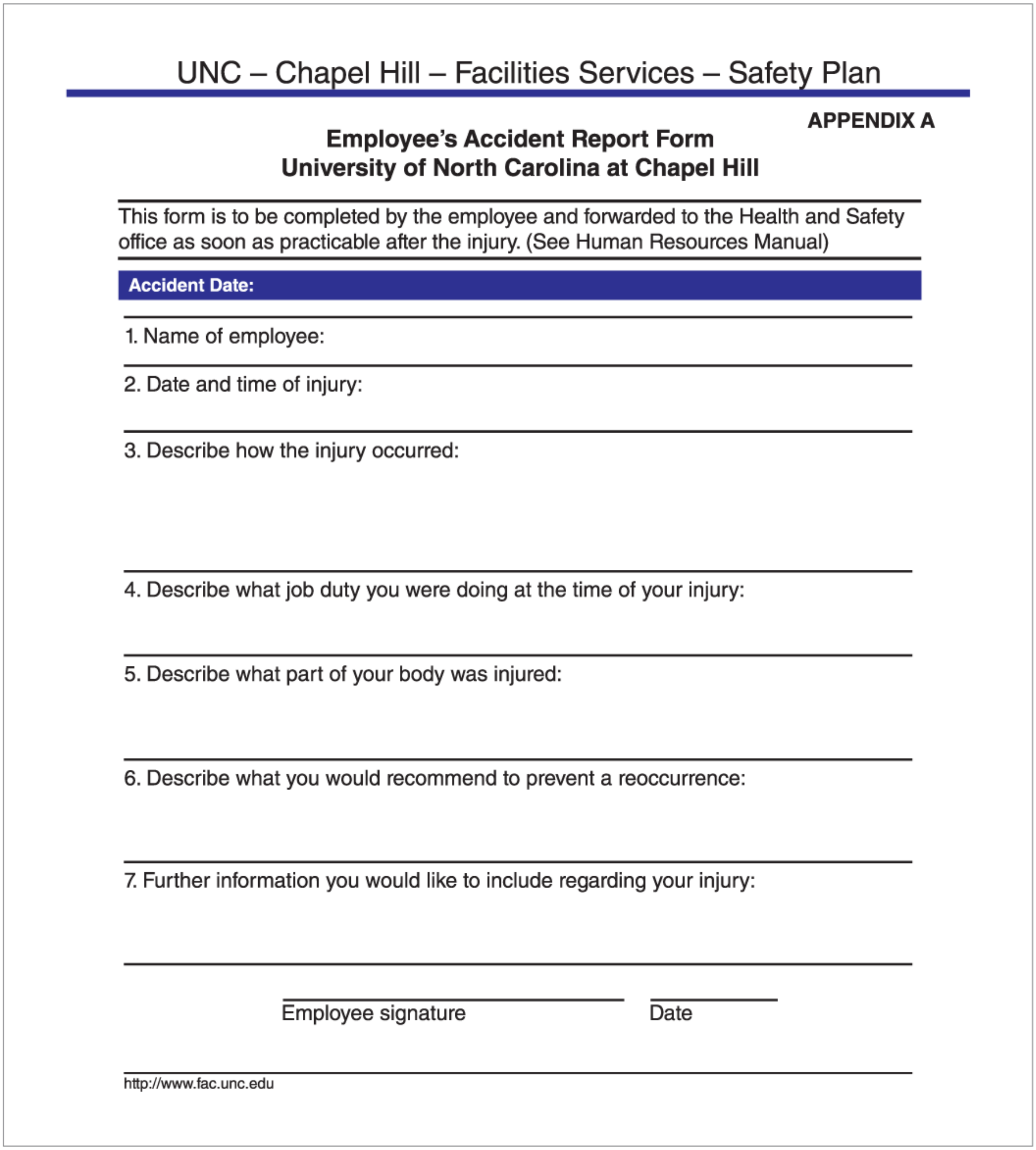
Readers of progress reports want to know whether the project is proceeding according to schedule and (if applicable) on budget.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The report begins with the letterhead centered at the top of the page. It reads, Rawlings Regional Medical Center 7 5 0 0 Bannock Avenue Rawlings, M T 5 9 2 1 1 A notation reads, In most professional settings, writers use letterhead stationery for memos. Progress reports can be presented as memos or as reports. Date: November 14, 2018 To: Jill Bremerton, M.D. Chief Executive Officer Rawlings Regional Medical Center From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing Rawlings Regional Medical Center A notation reads, The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers. Subject: Progress Report for the Tablet Study at RRMC A notation reads, The subject heading indicates the subject of the memo (the tablet study at Rawlings Regional Medical Center) and the purpose of the memo (progress report). A bold, centered heading reads, Purpose. This is a progress report on our study to recommend the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting. A notation reads, Memos of more than one page should begin with a clear statement of purpose. Here, the writers communicate the primary purpose of the document in one sentence. A bold, centered heading reads, Summary. A notation reads, Memos of more than one page should contain a summary to serve as an advance organizer or to help readers who want only an overview of the document. On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, R R M C Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to study national trends in tablet use, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings, including a recommendation. We have completed Tasks 1 and 2 (understanding tablet use in a clinical setting and determining the clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use), as well as part of Task 3 (assessing the bring-your-own device and hospital-owned tablet models). Our study is currently on schedule, and we expect to submit a recommendation report on December 14, 2018, as indicated in our proposal dated October 6, 2018. A notation reads, Readers of progress reports want to know whether the project is proceeding according to schedule and (if applicable) on budget.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.5 An Accident Report Form



UNC – Chapel Hill – Facilities Services – Safety Plan

APPENDIX A

Employee's Accident Report Form
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

This form is to be completed by the employee and forwarded to the Health and Safety office as soon as practicable after the injury. (See Human Resources Manual)

Accident Date:

1. Name of employee:

2. Date and time of injury:

3. Describe how the injury occurred:

4. Describe what job duty you were doing at the time of your injury:

5. Describe what part of your body was injured:

6. Describe what you would recommend to prevent a reoccurrence:

7. Further information you would like to include regarding your injury:

Employee signature

Date

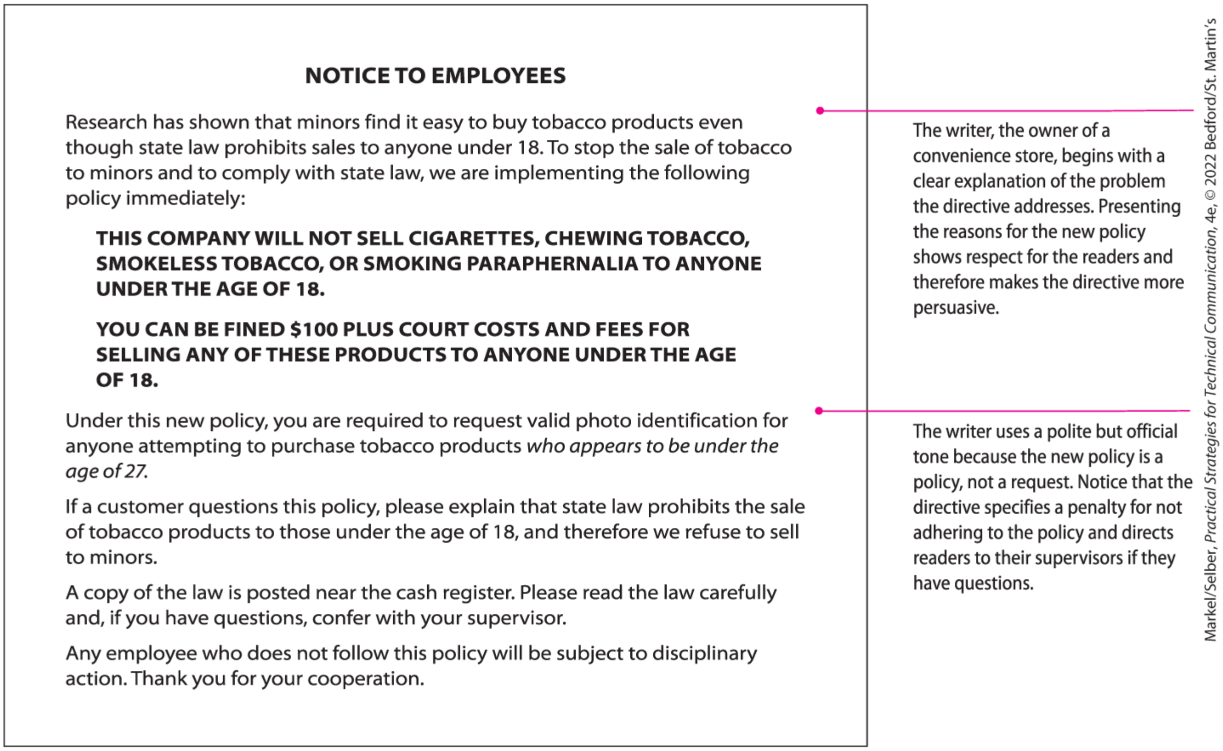
http://www.fac.unc.edu

Source: University of North Carolina–Chapel Hill Environment, Health, and Safety.

The header reads, UNC – Chapel Hill – Facilities Services – Safety Plan Appendix A Employee's Accident Report Form University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill This form is to be completed by the employee and forwarded to the Health and Safety office as soon as practicable after the injury. (See Human Resources Manual) Each of the following numbered questions is followed by a line for employees to write their response. Accident date: 1. Name of employee: 2. Date and time of injury: 3. Describe how the injury occurred: 4. Describe what job duty you were doing at the time of your injury: 5. Describe what part of your body was injured: 6. Describe what you would recommend to prevent a reoccurrence: 7. Further information you would like to include regarding your injury: Employee signature; Date http: slash slash w w w dot f a c dot u n c dot e d u

Return to Figure 12.5 An Accident Report Form

Extended description for Figure 12.1 A Directive



NOTICE TO EMPLOYEES

Research has shown that minors find it easy to buy tobacco products even though state law prohibits sales to anyone under 18. To stop the sale of tobacco to minors and to comply with state law, we are implementing the following policy immediately:

> **THIS COMPANY WILL NOT SELL CIGARETTES, CHEWING TOBACCO, SMOKELESS TOBACCO, OR SMOKING PARAPHERNALIA TO ANYONE UNDER THE AGE OF 18.**
>
> **YOU CAN BE FINED $100 PLUS COURT COSTS AND FEES FOR SELLING ANY OF THESE PRODUCTS TO ANYONE UNDER THE AGE OF 18.**

Under this new policy, you are required to request valid photo identification for anyone attempting to purchase tobacco products *who appears to be under the age of 27.*

If a customer questions this policy, please explain that state law prohibits the sale of tobacco products to those under the age of 18, and therefore we refuse to sell to minors.

A copy of the law is posted near the cash register. Please read the law carefully and, if you have questions, confer with your supervisor.

Any employee who does not follow this policy will be subject to disciplinary action. Thank you for your cooperation.

The writer, the owner of a convenience store, begins with a clear explanation of the problem the directive addresses. Presenting the reasons for the new policy shows respect for the readers and therefore makes the directive more persuasive.

The writer uses a polite but official tone because the new policy is a policy, not a request. Notice that the directive specifies a penalty for not adhering to the policy and directs readers to their supervisors if they have questions.

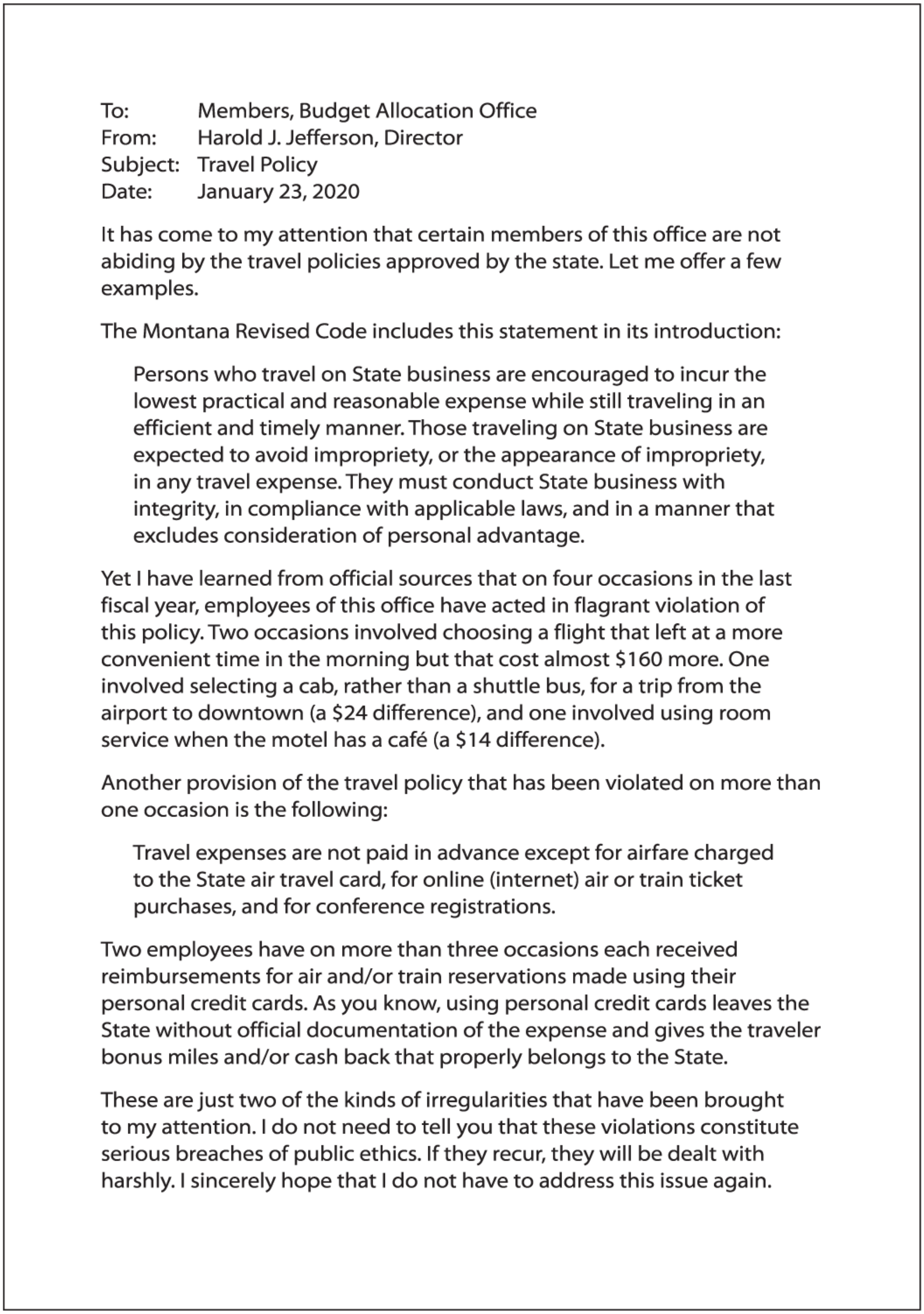
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The text reads, Notice to Employees (centered) Research has shown that minors find it easy to buy tobacco products even though state law prohibits sales to anyone under 18. To stop the sale of tobacco to minors and to comply with state law, we are implementing the following policy immediately: A notation reads, The writer, the owner of a convenience store, begins with a clear explanation of the problem the directive addresses. Presenting the reasons for the new policy shows respect for the readers and therefore makes the directive more persuasive. Indented paragraph, all caps: This company will not sell cigarettes, chewing tobacco, smokeless tobacco, or smoking paraphernalia to anyone under the age of 18.

Indented paragraph, all caps: You can be fined 100 dollars plus court costs and fees for selling any of these products to anyone under the age of 18 end all caps. Text continues, Under this new policy, you are required to request valid photo identification for anyone attempting to purchase tobacco products who appears to be under the age of 27. A notation reads, The writer uses a polite but official tone because the new policy is a policy, not a request. Notice that the directive specifies a penalty for not adhering to the policy and directs readers to their supervisors if they have questions. If a customer questions this policy, please explain that state law prohibits the sale of tobacco products to those under the age of 18, and therefore we refuse to sell to minors. A copy of the law is posted near the cash register. Please read the law carefully and, if you have questions, confer with your supervisor. Any employee who does not follow this policy will be subject to disciplinary action. Thank you for your cooperation.

Return to Figure 12.1 A Directive

Extended description for A letter illustrates a persuasive directive



To: Members, Budget Allocation Office
From: Harold J. Jefferson, Director
Subject: Travel Policy
Date: January 23, 2020

It has come to my attention that certain members of this office are not abiding by the travel policies approved by the state. Let me offer a few examples.

The Montana Revised Code includes this statement in its introduction:

> Persons who travel on State business are encouraged to incur the lowest practical and reasonable expense while still traveling in an efficient and timely manner. Those traveling on State business are expected to avoid impropriety, or the appearance of impropriety, in any travel expense. They must conduct State business with integrity, in compliance with applicable laws, and in a manner that excludes consideration of personal advantage.

Yet I have learned from official sources that on four occasions in the last fiscal year, employees of this office have acted in flagrant violation of this policy. Two occasions involved choosing a flight that left at a more convenient time in the morning but that cost almost $160 more. One involved selecting a cab, rather than a shuttle bus, for a trip from the airport to downtown (a $24 difference), and one involved using room service when the motel has a café (a $14 difference).

Another provision of the travel policy that has been violated on more than one occasion is the following:

> Travel expenses are not paid in advance except for airfare charged to the State air travel card, for online (internet) air or train ticket purchases, and for conference registrations.

Two employees have on more than three occasions each received reimbursements for air and/or train reservations made using their personal credit cards. As you know, using personal credit cards leaves the State without official documentation of the expense and gives the traveler bonus miles and/or cash back that properly belongs to the State.

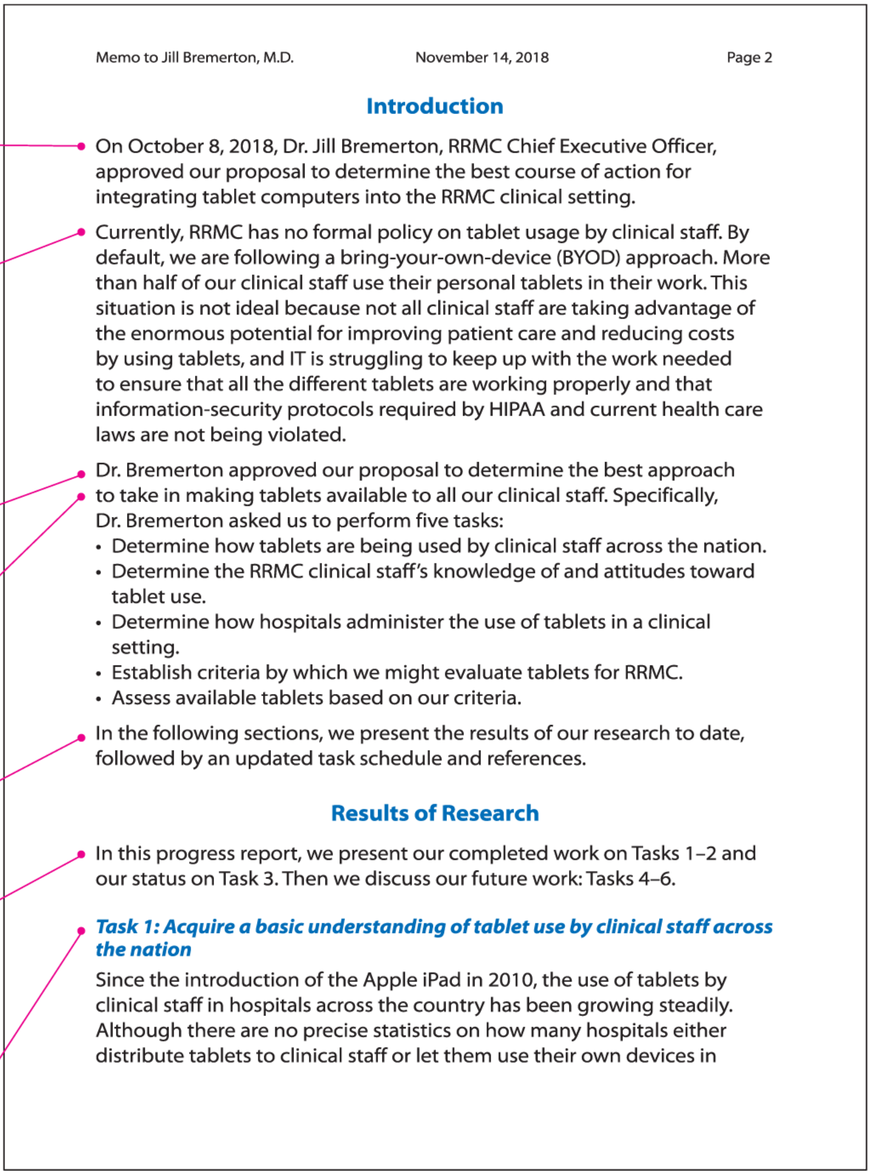
These are just two of the kinds of irregularities that have been brought to my attention. I do not need to tell you that these violations constitute serious breaches of public ethics. If they recur, they will be dealt with harshly. I sincerely hope that I do not have to address this issue again.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text reads as follows: To: Members, Budget Allocation Office From: Harold J. Jefferson, Director Subject: Travel Policy Date: January 23, 2020 It has come to my attention that certain members of this office are not abiding by the travel policies approved by the state. Let me offer a few examples. The Montana Revised Code includes this statement in its introduction: Indented paragraph, Persons who travel on State business are encouraged to incur the lowest practical and reasonable expense while still traveling in an efficient and timely manner. Those traveling on State business are expected to avoid impropriety, or the appearance of impropriety, in any travel expense. They must conduct State business with integrity, in compliance with applicable laws, and in a manner that excludes consideration of personal advantage. Persons who travel on State business are encouraged to incur the lowest practical and reasonable expense while still traveling in an efficient and timely manner. Those traveling on State business are expected to avoid impropriety, or the appearance of impropriety, in any travel expense. They must conduct State business with integrity, in compliance with applicable laws, and in a manner that excludes consideration of personal advantage. Another provision of the travel policy that has been violated on more than one occasion is the following: Indented paragraph, Travel expenses are not paid in advance except for airfare charged to the State air travel card, for online (internet) air or train ticket purchases, and for conference registrations. Two employees have on more than three occasions each received reimbursements for air and/or train reservations made using their personal credit cards. As you know, using personal credit cards leaves the State without official documentation of the expense and gives the traveler bonus miles and/or cash back that properly belongs to the State. These are just two of the kinds of irregularities that have been brought to my attention. I do not need to tell you that these violations constitute serious breaches of public ethics. If they recur, they will be dealt with harshly. I sincerely hope that I do not have to address this issue again.

Return to A letter illustrates a persuasive directive

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 2

Introduction

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Dr. Bremerton approved our proposal to determine the best approach to take in making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria.

In the following sections, we present the results of our research to date, followed by an updated task schedule and references.

Results of Research

In this progress report, we present our completed work on Tasks 1–2 and our status on Task 3. Then we discuss our future work: Tasks 4–6.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in

A brief statement of the context for the proposal. Note that the writers refer to the reader's having authorized the proposal.

An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because IT is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements.

A formal statement of the task that Dr. Bremerton asked the writers to perform.

Most of the information in the introduction is taken directly from the proposal. This reuse of text is ethical because the writers created it for that earlier document.

The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal.

The writers begin by describing the organization of the results section. For a progress report, a chronological organization — completed work, then future work — makes good sense.

The writers follow the task structure that they used in the proposal.

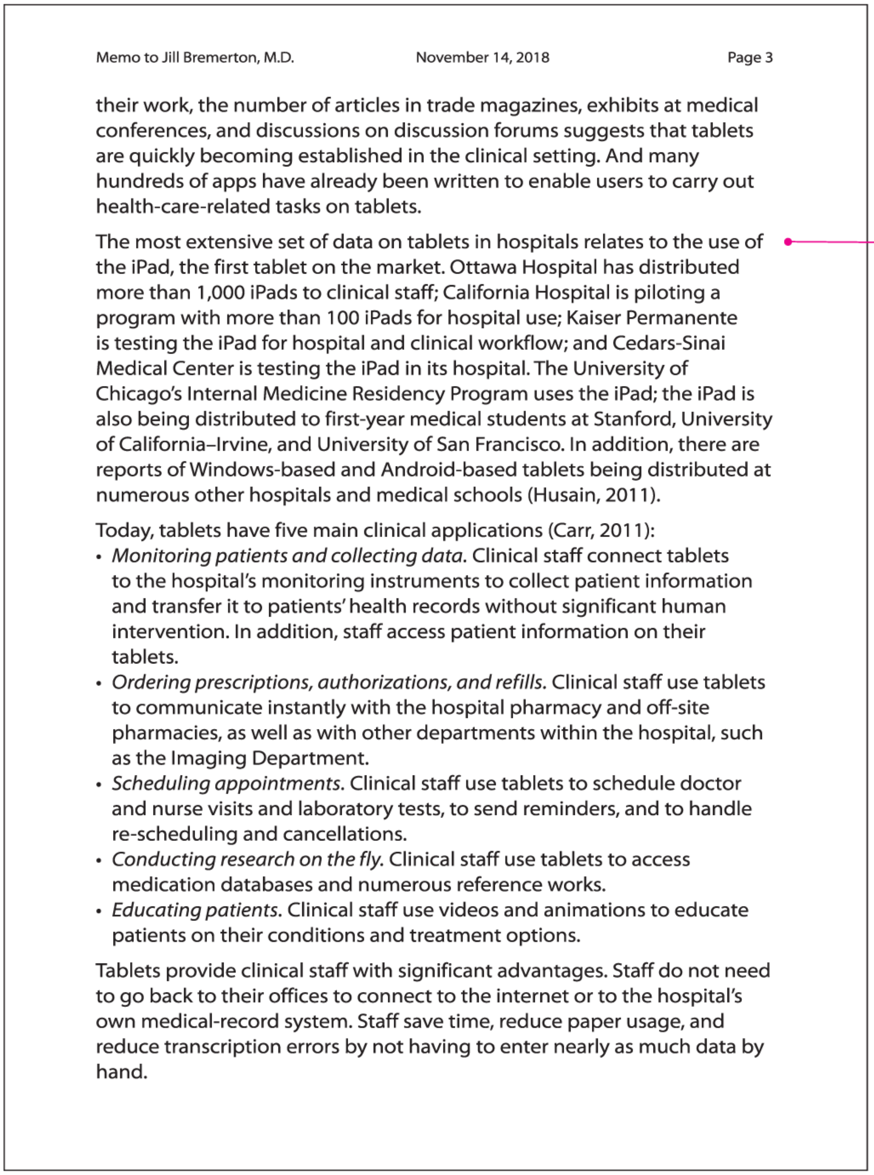
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues as follows: Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 2 A bold, centered heading reads, Introduction On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, R R M C Chief Executive Officer, approved our proposal to determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting. A notation reads, A brief statement of the context for the proposal. Note that the writers refer to the reader's having authorized the proposal. Currently, R R M C has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and I T is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that information-security protocols required by H I P A A and current health care laws are not being violated. A notation reads, An explanation of the problem: the current situation is inadequate because the medical center is not taking full advantage of tablets and because I T is spending a lot of time ensuring that the tablets in use are in compliance with federal requirements. Dr. Bremerton approved our proposal to determine the best approach to take in making tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks: Corresponding notes read, A formal statement of the task that Dr. Bremerton asked the writers to perform; Most of the information in the introduction is taken directly from the proposal. This reuse of text is ethical because the writers created it for that earlier document. Bullet Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation. Bullet Determine the R R M C clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. Bullet

Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting. Bullet Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for R R M C. Bullet Assess available tablets based on our criteria. In the following sections, we present the results of our research to date, followed by an updated task schedule and references. A notation reads, The introduction concludes with an advance organizer for the rest of the proposal. A bold, centered heading reads, Results of Research In this progress report, we present our completed work on Tasks 1–2 and our status on Task 3. Then we discuss our future work: Tasks 4–6. A notation reads, The writers begin by describing the organization of the results section. For a progress report, a chronological organization — completed work, then future work — makes good sense. A bold subheading reads, Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation A notation reads, The writers follow the task structure that they used in the proposal. Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in. Text continues on next image.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 3

their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets.

The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago's Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California–Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011).

Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011):

- *Monitoring patients and collecting data*. Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital's monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients' health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets.
- *Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills*. Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.
- *Scheduling appointments*. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations.
- *Conducting research on the fly*. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works.
- *Educating patients*. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educate patients on their conditions and treatment options.

Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital's own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand.

The writers skillfully integrate their secondary research into their discussion of the task. By doing so, they enhance their credibility.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 3. Text continues, their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets. The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago's Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011). A corresponding note reads, The writers skillfully integrate their secondary research into their discussion of the task. By doing so, they enhance their credibility. Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011): Bullet Monitoring patients and collecting data. Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital's monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients' health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets. Bullet Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills. Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.

Bullet Scheduling appointments. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations. Bullet Conducting research on the fly. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works. Bullet Educating patients. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educatepatients on their conditions and treatment options. Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital's own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete. (The questionnaire, including the responses, appears in the Appendix, page 9.)

We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013).

Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners:

- Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets.
- Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement.
- Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had IT do so for them.
- Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by RRMC. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all for clinical applications.

Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

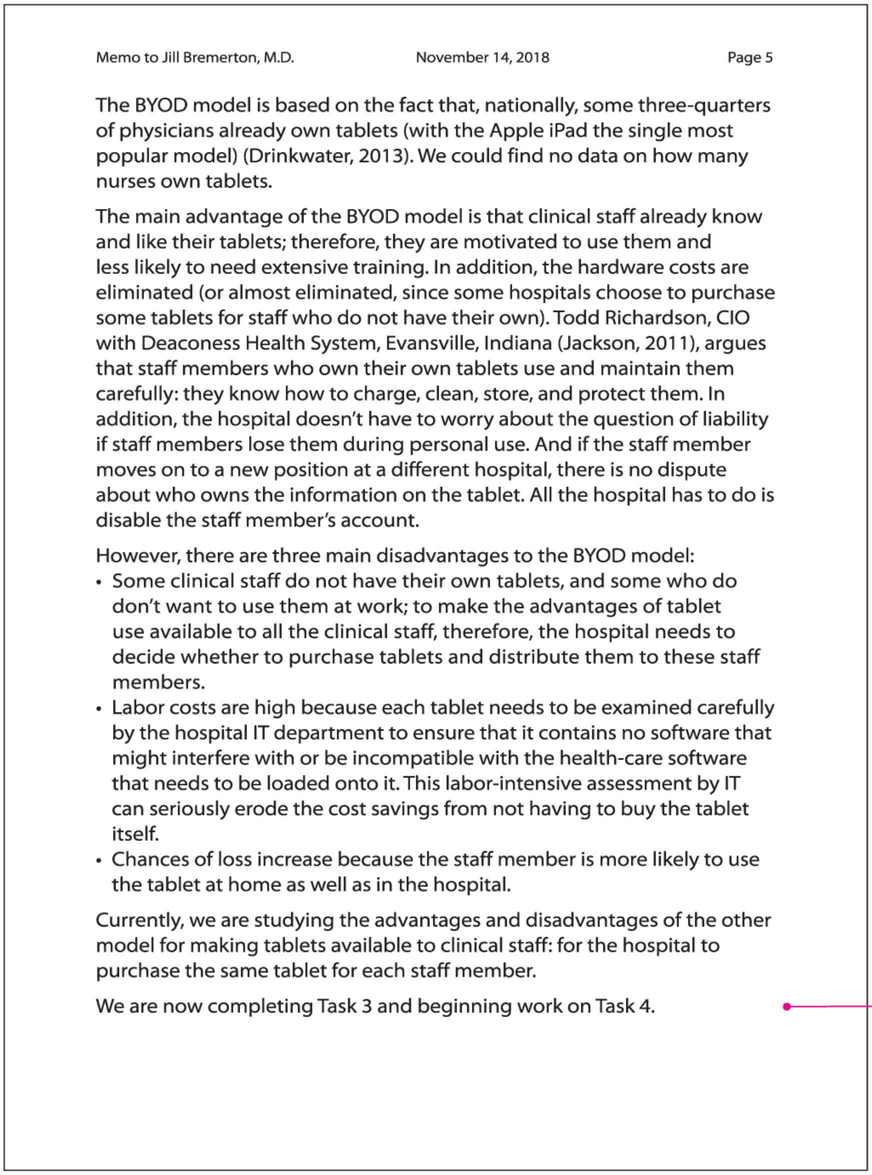
Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication, 4e*, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads,, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 4. A bold subheading reads, Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use On October 14, 20 18, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrix survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete. (The questionnaire, including the responses, appears in the Appendix, page 9.) We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013). Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners: Bullet Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets. Bullet Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement. Bullet Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had I T do so for them. Bullet Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by R R M C. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all for clinical applications. Task 3: Assess the B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models (bold) Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 5

The BYOD model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets.

The main advantage of the BYOD model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not have their own). Todd Richardson, CIO with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn't have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account.

However, there are three main disadvantages to the BYOD model:

- Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members.
- Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital IT department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by IT can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself.
- Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital.

Currently, we are studying the advantages and disadvantages of the other model for making tablets available to clinical staff: for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member.

We are now completing Task 3 and beginning work on Task 4.

The writers explain that they are in the process of completing Task 3.

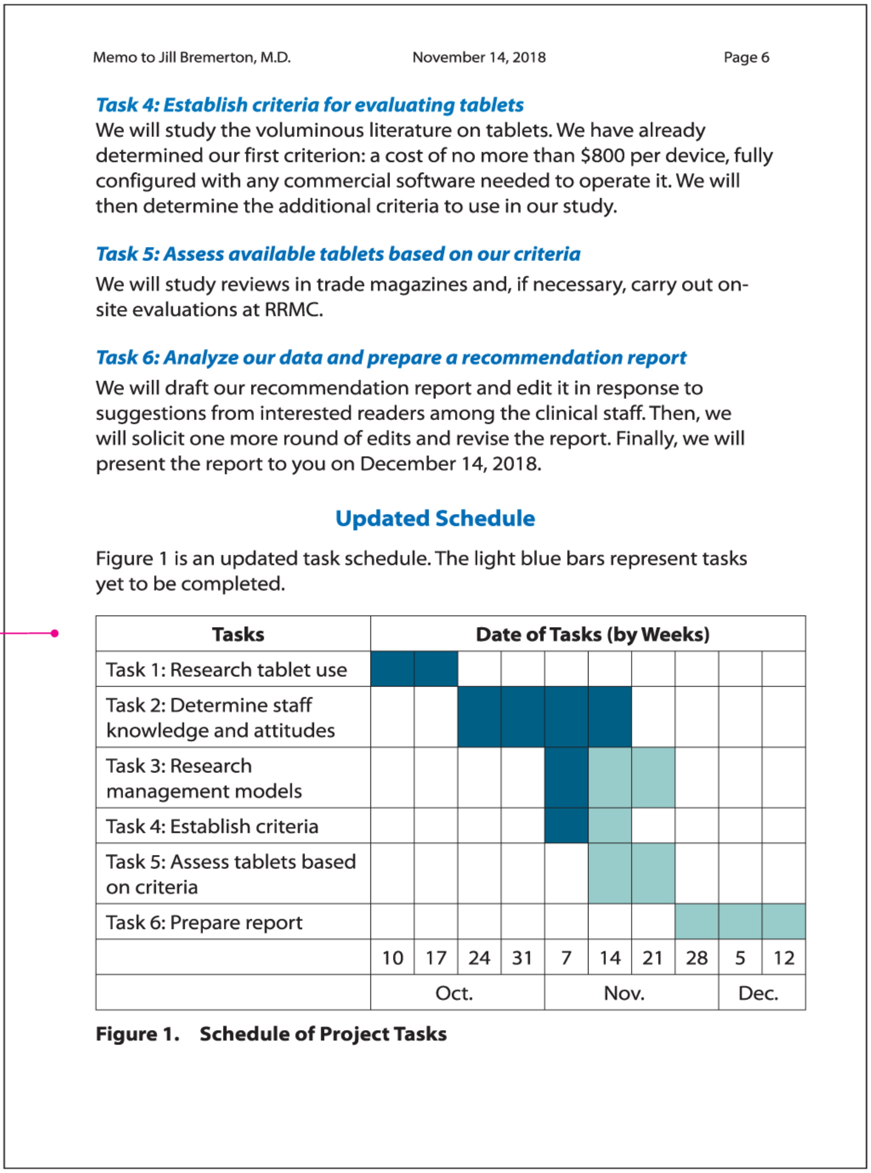
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 5. Text continues, The B Y O D model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets. The main advantage of the B Y O D model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not have their own). Todd Richardson, C I O with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn't have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account. However, there are three main disadvantages to the B Y O D model: Bullet Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members. Bullet Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital I T department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by I T can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself. Bullet

Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital. Currently, we are studying the advantages and disadvantages of the other model for making tablets available to clinical staff: for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member. We are now completing Task 3 and beginning work on Task 4. A corresponding note reads, The writers explain that they are in the process of completing Task 3.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 6

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We will study the voluminous literature on tablets. We have already determined our first criterion: a cost of no more than $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. We will then determine the additional criteria to use in our study.

Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

We will study reviews in trade magazines and, if necessary, carry out on-site evaluations at RRMC.

Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report

We will draft our recommendation report and edit it in response to suggestions from interested readers among the clinical staff. Then, we will solicit one more round of edits and revise the report. Finally, we will present the report to you on December 14, 2018.

Updated Schedule

Figure 1 is an updated task schedule. The light blue bars represent tasks yet to be completed.

Tasks	Date of Tasks (by Weeks)									
Task 1: Research tablet use	■	■								
Task 2: Determine staff knowledge and attitudes			■	■	■	■				
Task 3: Research management models					■	▨	▨			
Task 4: Establish criteria					■	▨				
Task 5: Assess tablets based on criteria						▨	▨			
Task 6: Prepare report								▨	▨	▨
	10	17	24	31	7	14	21	28	5	12
	Oct.				Nov.				Dec.	

Figure 1. Schedule of Project Tasks

The Gantt chart shows the progress toward completing each of the project tasks. See the Tech Tip "*How To Create a Gantt Chart*" in Ch. 11 on p. 304 for advice on how to create Gantt charts.

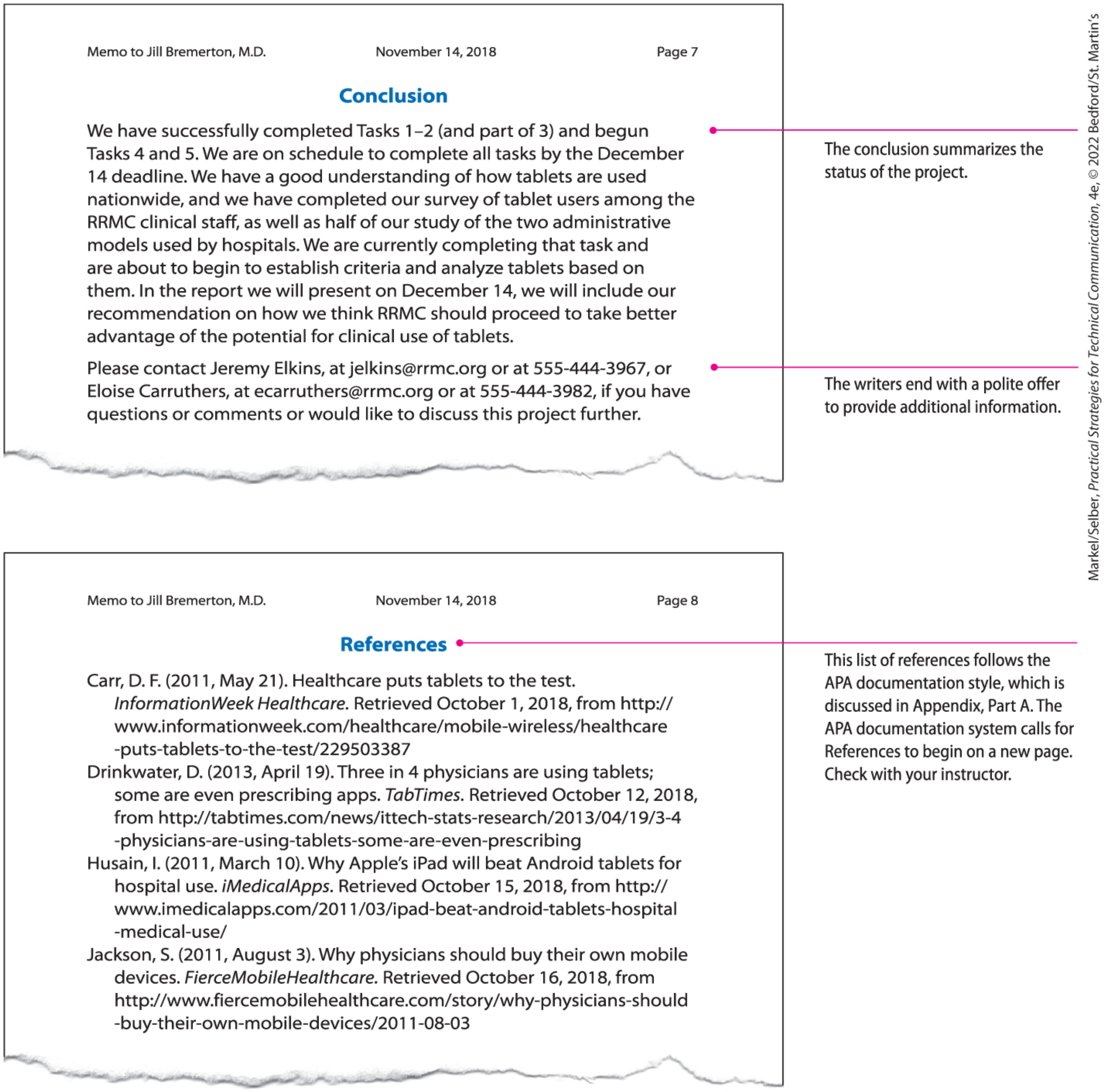
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 6. A bold subhead reads, Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets We will study the voluminous literature on tablets.

We have already determined our first criterion: a cost of no more than 800 dollars per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. We will then determine the additional criteria to use in our study. A bold subhead reads, Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria We will study reviews in trade magazines and, if necessary, carry out onsite evaluations at R R M C. A bold subhead reads, Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare a recommendation report We will draft our recommendation report and edit it in response to suggestions from interested readers among the clinical staff. Then, we will solicit one more round of edits and revise the report. Finally, we will present the report to you on December 14, 20 18. A bold, centered head reads, Updated Schedule Figure 1 is an updated task schedule. The light blue bars represent tasks yet to be completed. Following the text is a Gantt chart showing the progress of the project schedule. To the left is the list of tasks and to the right are dates of the tasks by weeks. It shows tasks 1-2 completed, task 3 in progress to be completed by November 21. Task 4 is to be completed November 14, and task 5 by November 21. Task 6 will be completed November 28 through December 12. Tasks completed are in dark blue. A notation reads, The Gantt chart shows the progress toward completing each of the project tasks. See the Tech Tip "How To Create a Gantt Chart" in Chapter 11 on page 304 for advice on how to create Gantt charts.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 7

Conclusion

We have successfully completed Tasks 1–2 (and part of 3) and begun Tasks 4 and 5. We are on schedule to complete all tasks by the December 14 deadline. We have a good understanding of how tablets are used nationwide, and we have completed our survey of tablet users among the RRMC clinical staff, as well as half of our study of the two administrative models used by hospitals. We are currently completing that task and are about to begin to establish criteria and analyze tablets based on them. In the report we will present on December 14, we will include our recommendation on how we think RRMC should proceed to take better advantage of the potential for clinical use of tablets.

Please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3967, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3982, if you have questions or comments or would like to discuss this project further.

The conclusion summarizes the status of the project.

The writers end with a polite offer to provide additional information.

Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 8

References

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. *TabTimes*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://tabtimes.com/news/ittech-stats-research/2013/04/19/3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing

Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. *iMedicalApps*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.imedicalapps.com/2011/03/ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital-medical-use/

Jackson, S. (2011, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

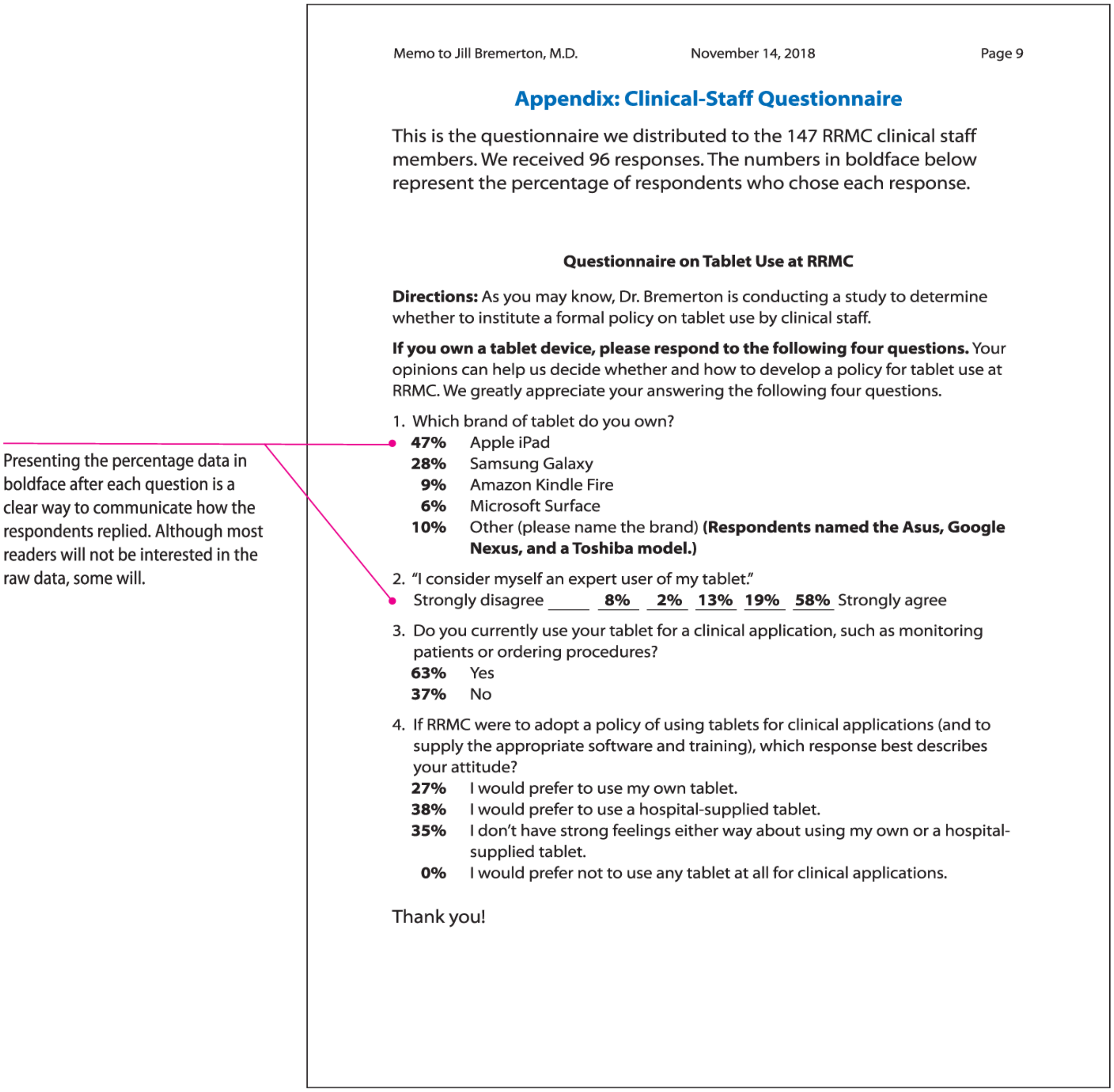
This list of references follows the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A. The APA documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 7. A bold, centered heading reads, Conclusion We have successfully completed Tasks 1–2 (and part of 3) and begun Tasks 4 and 5. We are on schedule to complete all tasks by the December 14 deadline. We have a good understanding of how tablets are used nationwide, and we have completed our survey of tablet users among the R R M C clinical staff, as well as half of our study of the two administrative models used by hospitals. We are currently completing that task and are about to begin to establish criteria and analyze tablets based on them. In the report we will present on December 14, we will include our recommendation on how we think R R M C should proceed to take better advantage of the potential for clinical use of tablets. A notation reads, The conclusion summarizes the status of the project. Please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins at r r m c dot org or at 5 5 5 4 4 4 3 9 6 7, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers at r r m c dot org or at 5 5 5 4 4 4 3 9 8 2, if you have questions or comments or would like to discuss this project further. A notation reads, The writers end with a polite offer to provide additional information. The page is ragged at the bottom before the reference page. A bold, centered head reads, References. The reference page reads as follows. Each reference has a hanging indent. First reference: Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. Italic InformationWeek Healthcare. end italic Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot informationweek dot com slash healthcare slash mobile-wireless slash healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test slash 229503387 Next reference: Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. Italic TabTimes end italic. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http: slash slash tabtimes dot com slash news slash ittech-stats-research slash 2013 slash 04 slash 19 slash 3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing Next reference: Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. Italic iMedicalApps end italic. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http: slash slash www dot imedicalapps dot com slash 2011 slash 03 slash ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital-medical-use slash Next reference: Jackson, S. (2011, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. Italic FierceMobileHealthcare end italic. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot fiercemobilehealthcare dot com slash story slash why-physicians-should -buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03 A notation reads, This list of references follows the A P A documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A. The A P A documentation system calls for References to begin on a new page. Check with your instructor.

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report



Memo to Jill Bremerton, M.D. November 14, 2018 Page 9

Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire

This is the questionnaire we distributed to the 147 RRMC clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response.

Questionnaire on Tablet Use at RRMC

Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff.

If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at RRMC. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions.

1. Which brand of tablet do you own?
   47% Apple iPad
   28% Samsung Galaxy
   9% Amazon Kindle Fire
   6% Microsoft Surface
   10% Other (please name the brand) **(Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.)**
2. "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."
   Strongly disagree _____ **8%** **2%** **13%** **19%** **58%** Strongly agree
3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures?
   63% Yes
   37% No
4. If RRMC were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude?
   27% I would prefer to use my own tablet.
   38% I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet.
   35% I don't have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet.
   0% I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications.

Thank you!

Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

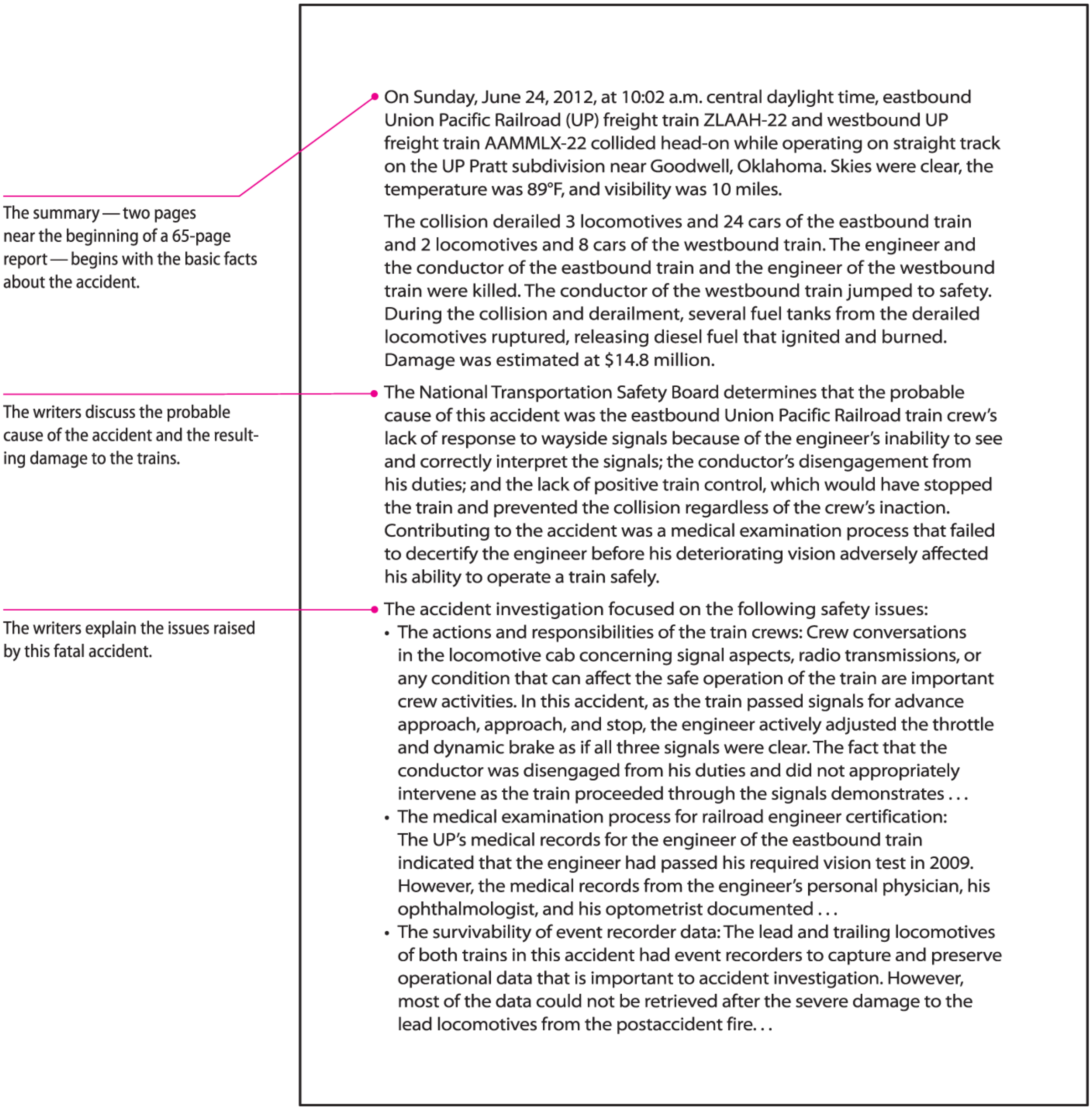
The running head reads, Memo to Jill Bremerton, M D; November 14, 2018; Page 9. A bold, centered head reads, Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire This is the questionnaire we distributed to the

147 R R M C clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response. A bold, centered head reads, Questionnaire on Tablet Use at R R M C Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff. If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at R R M C. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions. 1. Which brand of tablet do you own? 47 percent Apple iPad 28 percent Samsung Galaxy 9 percent Amazon Kindle Fire 6 percent Microsoft Surface 10 percent Other (please name the brand) (Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.) 2. "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet." Strongly disagree 8 percent 2 percent 13 percent 19 percent 58 percent Strongly agree 3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures? 63 percent Yes 37 percent No 4. If R R M C were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude? 27 percent I would prefer to use my own tablet. 38 percent I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet. 35 percent I don't have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet. 0 percent I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications. A notation reads, Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to

communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will. Thank you!

Return to Figure 12.4 Sample Progress Report

Extended description for Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report



On Sunday, June 24, 2012, at 10:02 a.m. central daylight time, eastbound Union Pacific Railroad (UP) freight train ZLAAH-22 and westbound UP freight train AAMMLX-22 collided head-on while operating on straight track on the UP Pratt subdivision near Goodwell, Oklahoma. Skies were clear, the temperature was 89°F, and visibility was 10 miles.

The collision derailed 3 locomotives and 24 cars of the eastbound train and 2 locomotives and 8 cars of the westbound train. The engineer and the conductor of the eastbound train and the engineer of the westbound train were killed. The conductor of the westbound train jumped to safety. During the collision and derailment, several fuel tanks from the derailed locomotives ruptured, releasing diesel fuel that ignited and burned. Damage was estimated at $14.8 million.

The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of this accident was the eastbound Union Pacific Railroad train crew's lack of response to wayside signals because of the engineer's inability to see and correctly interpret the signals; the conductor's disengagement from his duties; and the lack of positive train control, which would have stopped the train and prevented the collision regardless of the crew's inaction. Contributing to the accident was a medical examination process that failed to decertify the engineer before his deteriorating vision adversely affected his ability to operate a train safely.

The accident investigation focused on the following safety issues:

- The actions and responsibilities of the train crews: Crew conversations in the locomotive cab concerning signal aspects, radio transmissions, or any condition that can affect the safe operation of the train are important crew activities. In this accident, as the train passed signals for advance approach, approach, and stop, the engineer actively adjusted the throttle and dynamic brake as if all three signals were clear. The fact that the conductor was disengaged from his duties and did not appropriately intervene as the train proceeded through the signals demonstrates . . .
- The medical examination process for railroad engineer certification: The UP's medical records for the engineer of the eastbound train indicated that the engineer had passed his required vision test in 2009. However, the medical records from the engineer's personal physician, his ophthalmologist, and his optometrist documented . . .
- The survivability of event recorder data: The lead and trailing locomotives of both trains in this accident had event recorders to capture and preserve operational data that is important to accident investigation. However, most of the data could not be retrieved after the severe damage to the lead locomotives from the postaccident fire. . .

The summary — two pages near the beginning of a 65-page report — begins with the basic facts about the accident.

The writers discuss the probable cause of the accident and the resulting damage to the trains.

The writers explain the issues raised by this fatal accident.

National Transportation Safety Board, 2013: www.ntsb.gov/investigations/AccidentReports/Pages/RAR1302.aspx.

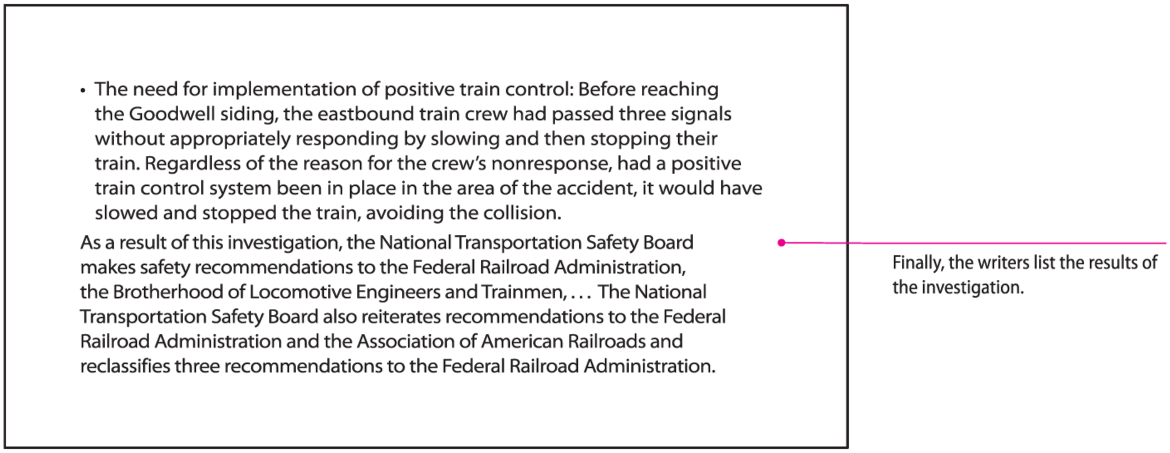
Text reads, On Sunday, June 24, 2012, at 10:02 a.m. central daylight time, eastbound Union Pacific Railroad (U P) freight train Z L A A H-

22 and westbound U P freight train A A M M L X-22 collided head-on while operating on straight track on the U P Pratt subdivision near Goodwell, Oklahoma. Skies were clear, the temperature was 89 degrees Farenheit, and visibility was 10 miles. A note reads, The summary — two pages near the beginning of a 65-page report — begins with the basic facts about the accident. The collision derailed 3 locomotives and 24 cars of the eastbound train and 2 locomotives and 8 cars of the westbound train. The engineer and the conductor of the eastbound train and the engineer of the westbound train were killed. The conductor of the westbound train jumped to safety. During the collision and derailment, several fuel tanks from the derailed locomotives ruptured, releasing diesel fuel that ignited and burned. Damage was estimated at 14.8 million dollars. The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of this accident was the eastbound Union Pacific Railroad train crew's lack of response to wayside signals because of the engineer's inability to see and correctly interpret the signals; the conductor's disengagement from his duties; and the lack of positive train control, which would have stopped the train and prevented the collision regardless of the crew's inaction. Contributing to the accident was a medical examination process that failed to decertify the engineer before his deteriorating vision adversely affected his ability to operate a train safely. A notation reads, The writers discuss the probable cause of the accident and the resulting damage to the trains. The accident investigation focused on the following safety issues: A notation reads, The writers explain the issues raised by this fatal accident. Bullet The actions and responsibilities of the train

crews: Crew conversations in the locomotive cab concerning signal aspects, radio transmissions, or any condition that can affect the safe operation of the train are important crew activities. In this accident, as the train passed signals for advance approach, approach, and stop, the engineer actively adjusted the throttle and dynamic brake as if all three signals were clear. The fact that the conductor was disengaged from his duties and did not appropriately intervene as the train proceeded through the signals demonstrates ellipsis Bullet The medical examination process for railroad engineer certification: The U P's medical records for the engineer of the eastbound train indicated that the engineer had passed his required vision test in 2009. However, the medical records from the engineer's personal physician, his ophthalmologist, and his optometrist documented ellipsis Bullet The survivability of event recorder data: The lead and trailing locomotives of both trains in this accident had event recorders to capture and preserve operational data that is important to accident investigation. However, most of the data could not be retrieved after the severe damage to the lead locomotives from the postaccident fire ellipsis

Return to Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report

Extended description for Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report



- The need for implementation of positive train control: Before reaching the Goodwell siding, the eastbound train crew had passed three signals without appropriately responding by slowing and then stopping their train. Regardless of the reason for the crew's nonresponse, had a positive train control system been in place in the area of the accident, it would have slowed and stopped the train, avoiding the collision.

As a result of this investigation, the National Transportation Safety Board makes safety recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration, the Brotherhood of Locomotive Engineers and Trainmen, . . . The National Transportation Safety Board also reiterates recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration and the Association of American Railroads and reclassifies three recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration.

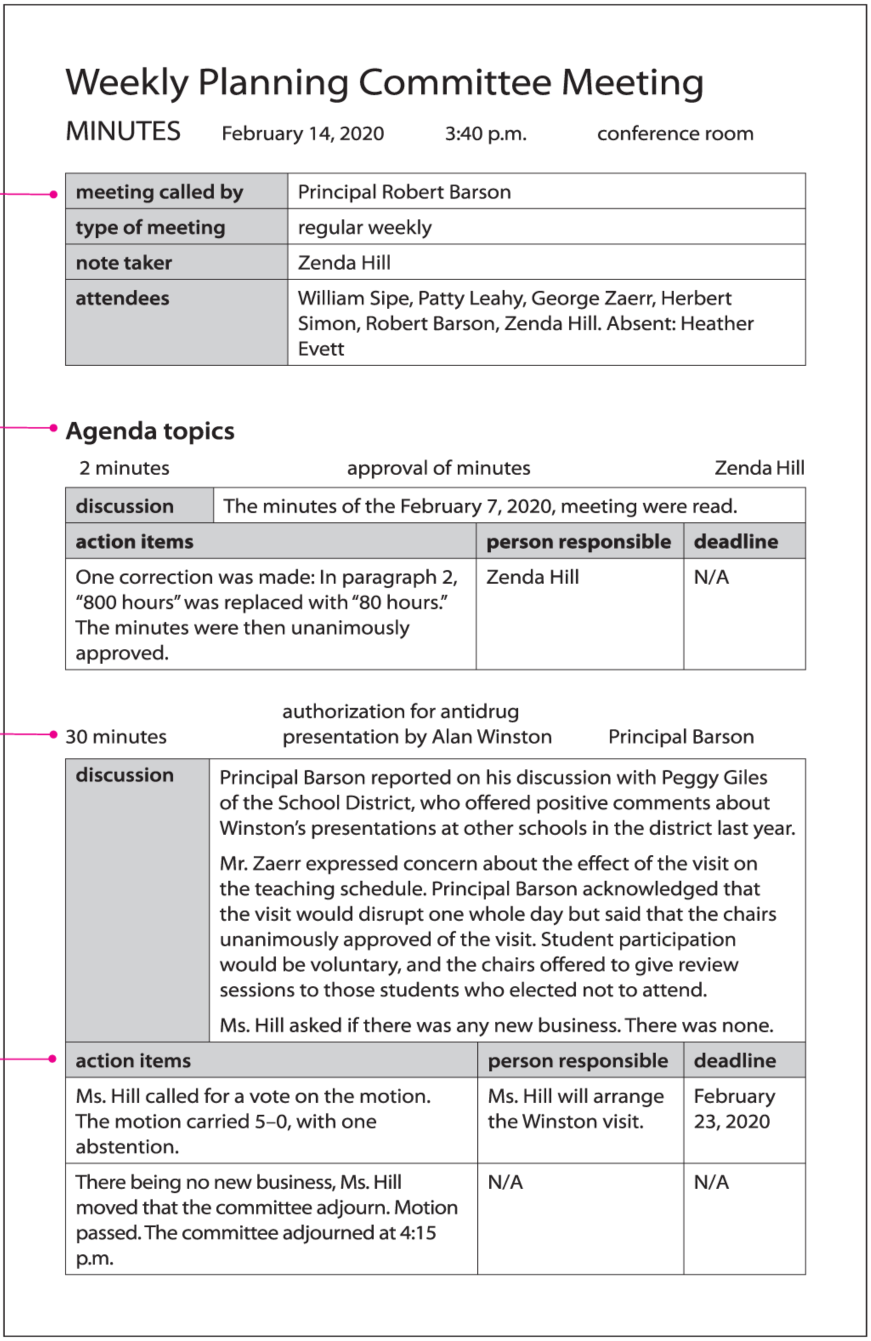
Finally, the writers list the results of the investigation.

National Transportation Safety Board, 2013: www.ntsb.gov/investigations/AccidentReports/Pages/RAR1302.aspx.

Text continues, Bullet The need for implementation of positive train control: Before reaching the Goodwell siding, the eastbound train crew had passed three signals without appropriately responding by slowing and then stopping their train. Regardless of the reason for the crew's nonresponse, had a positive train control system been in place in the area of the accident, it would have slowed and stopped the train, avoiding the collision. As a result of this investigation, the National Transportation Safety Board makes safety recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration, the Brotherhood of Locomotive Engineers and Trainmen, ellipsis The National Transportation Safety Board also reiterates recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration and the Association of American Railroads and reclassifies three recommendations to the Federal Railroad Administration. A note reads, Finally, the writers list the results of the investigation.

Return to Figure 12.6 Executive Summary of a Complex Accident Report

Extended description for Figure 12.7 A Set of Meeting Minutes



Weekly Planning Committee Meeting

MINUTES February 14, 2020 3:40 p.m. conference room

meeting called by	Principal Robert Barson
type of meeting	regular weekly
note taker	Zenda Hill
attendees	William Sipe, Patty Leahy, George Zaerr, Herbert Simon, Robert Barson, Zenda Hill. Absent: Heather Evett

Agenda topics

2 minutes approval of minutes Zenda Hill

discussion	The minutes of the February 7, 2020, meeting were read.

action items	**person responsible**	**deadline**
One correction was made: In paragraph 2, “800 hours” was replaced with “80 hours.” The minutes were then unanimously approved.	Zenda Hill	N/A

30 minutes authorization for antidrug presentation by Alan Winston Principal Barson

discussion	Principal Barson reported on his discussion with Peggy Giles of the School District, who offered positive comments about Winston’s presentations at other schools in the district last year. Mr. Zaerr expressed concern about the effect of the visit on the teaching schedule. Principal Barson acknowledged that the visit would disrupt one whole day but said that the chairs unanimously approved of the visit. Student participation would be voluntary, and the chairs offered to give review sessions to those students who elected not to attend. Ms. Hill asked if there was any new business. There was none.

action items	**person responsible**	**deadline**
Ms. Hill called for a vote on the motion. The motion carried 5–0, with one abstention.	Ms. Hill will arrange the Winston visit.	February 23, 2020
There being no new business, Ms. Hill moved that the committee adjourn. Motion passed. The committee adjourned at 4:15 p.m.	N/A	N/A

The first section of this template calls for information about the logistics of the meeting. You can modify the template to make it appropriate for your organization.

The second section of this template is devoted to the agenda items for the meeting.

Note that for each agenda item, the note taker is prompted to state how long the discussion took, the subject of the discussion, and the name of the person leading the discussion.

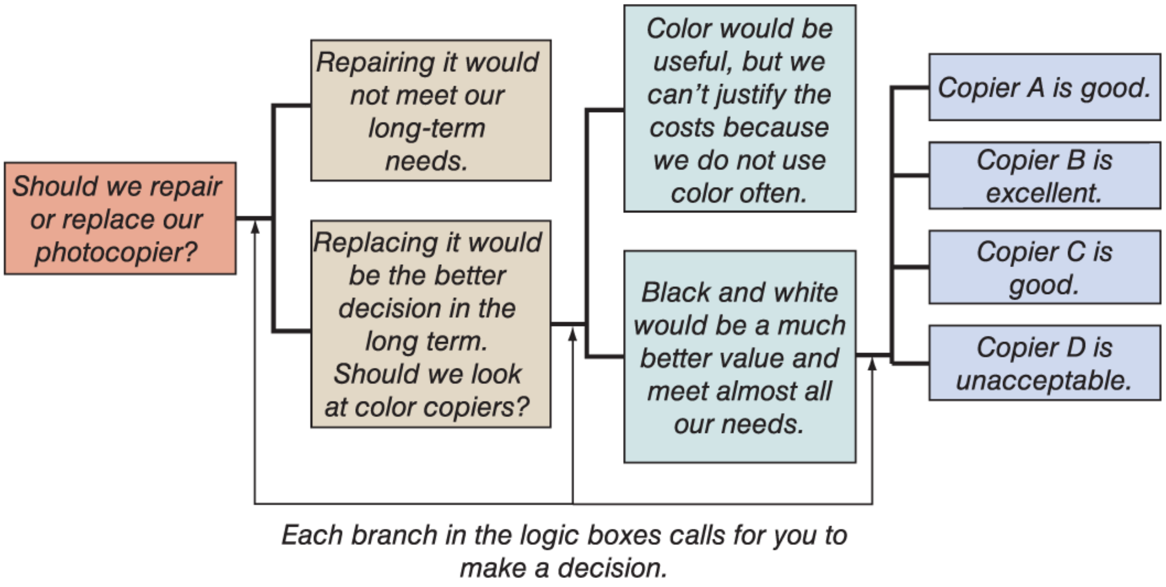
For each agenda item, the note taker records the main points of the discussion and the action items. Because the template calls for the action item (such as a vote or a task to be done), the name of the person responsible for doing the task, and the deadline for the task, there should be no confusion about who is to do which task and when it is due.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin’s

The page shows three sections. The first section reads as follows. meeting called by: Principal Robert Barson type of meeting: regular weekly note taker: Zenda Hill attendees: William Sipe, Patty Leahy, George Zaerr, Herbert Simon, Robert Barson, Zenda Hill. Absent: Heather Evett A note reads, The first section of this template calls for information about the logistics of the meeting. You can modify the template to make it appropriate for your organization. The second section reads, Agenda topics 2 minutes; approval of minutes; Zenda Hill discussion: The minutes of the February 7, 2020, meeting were read. action items: One correction was made: In paragraph 2, "800 hours" was replaced with "80 hours." The minutes were then unanimously approved. person responsible: Zenda Hill. deadline: N slash A A note reads, Note that for each agenda item, the note taker is prompted to state how long the discussion took, the subject of the discussion, and the name of the person leading the discussion. The third section reads, 30 minutes; authorization for antidrug presentation by Alan Winston; Principal Barson. discussion: Principal Barson reported on his discussion with Peggy Giles of the School District, who offered positive comments about Winston's presentations at other schools in the district last year. Mr. Zaerr expressed concern about the effect of the visit on the teaching schedule. Principal Barson acknowledged that the visit would disrupt one whole day but said that the chairs unanimously approved of the visit. Student participation would be voluntary, and the chairs offered to give review sessions to those students who elected not to attend. Ms. Hill asked if there was any new business. There was none. actions items: Ms. Hill called for a vote on the motion. The motion carried 5–0, with one abstention. Person responsible: Ms. Hill will arrange the Winston visit. Deadline: February 23, 2020. Action items: There being no new business, Ms. Hill moved that the committee adjourn. Motion passed. The committee adjourned at 4:15 p.m. Person responsible: N slash A. Deadline: N slash A A notation reads, For each agenda item, the note taker records the main points of the discussion and the action items. Because the template calls for the action item (such as a vote or a task to be done), the name of the person responsible for doing the task, and the deadline for the task, there should be no confusion about who is to do which task and when it is due.

Return to Figure 12.7 A Set of Meeting Minutes

Extended description for Figure 13.2 Using Logic Boxes To Plot a Series of Options

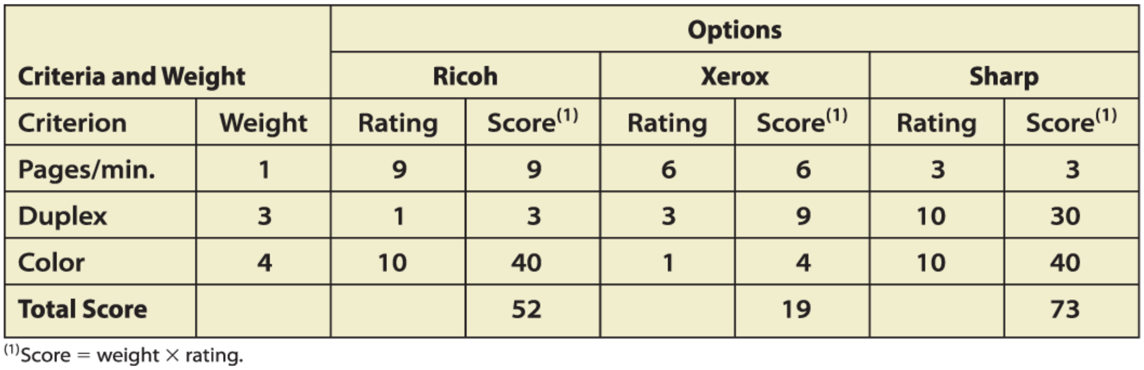

Should we repair or replace our photocopier?
Repairing it would not meet our long-term needs.
Replacing it would be the better decision in the long term. Should we look at color copiers?
Color would be useful, but we can't justify the costs because we do not use color often.
Black and white would be a much better value and meet almost all our needs.
Copier A is good.
Copier B is excellent.
Copier C is good.
Copier D is unacceptable.
Each branch in the logic boxes calls for you to make a decision.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first box reads, Should we repair or replace our photocopier? It leads to two options. The first option reads, Repairing it would not meet our long-term needs. The second option reads, Replacing it would be the better decision in the long term. Should we look at color copiers? Two branches lead from the second option to two more text boxes. The first box reads, Color would be useful, but we can't justify the costs because we do not use color often. The second box reads, Black and white would be a much better value and meet almost all our needs. From the second box, branches leads to four other options. They read, Copier A is good; Copier B is excellent; Copier C is good; Copier D is unacceptable. A note pointing to each connecting branch in the chart reads, Each branch in the logic boxes calls for you to make a decision.

Return to Figure 13.2 Using Logic Boxes To Plot a Series of Options

Extended description for Figure 13.3 A Decision Matrix



Criteria and Weight		Options					
		Ricoh		Xerox		Sharp	
Criterion	Weight	Rating	Score(1)	Rating	Score(1)	Rating	Score(1)
Pages/min.	1	9	9	6	6	3	3
Duplex	3	1	3	3	9	10	30
Color	4	10	40	1	4	10	40
Total Score			52		19		73

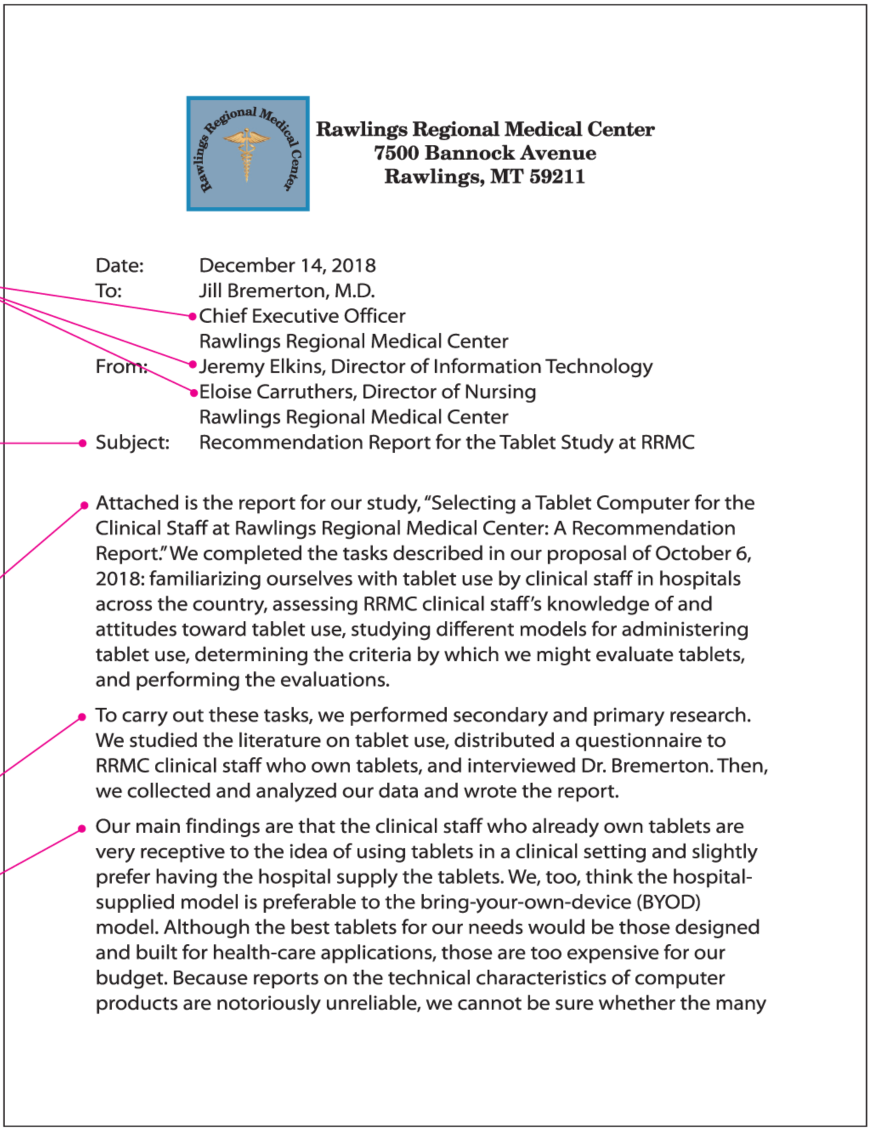
(1) Score = weight × rating.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first column heading reads, Criteria and weight, and is divided into two subcolumns, Criterion and Weight. Three more columns are grouped under the heading Options, and read Ricoh, Xerox, Sharp. Each brand has subcolumns reading Rating and Score superscript 1. A footnote reads, Superscript 1: Score equals weight times rating. Data are as follows: Pages per minute, weight 1: 9, 9, 6, 6, 3, 3; Duplex, weight 3: 1, 3, 3, 9, 10, 30; Color, weight 4: 10, 40, 1, 4, 10, 40; Total score, blank, blank, 52, blank, 19, blank, 73.

Return to Figure 13.3 A Decision Matrix

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

Date: December 14, 2018
To: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing
Rawlings Regional Medical Center
Subject: Recommendation Report for the Tablet Study at RRMC

Attached is the report for our study, "Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report." We completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: familiarizing ourselves with tablet use by clinical staff in hospitals across the country, assessing RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, studying different models for administering tablet use, determining the criteria by which we might evaluate tablets, and performing the evaluations.

To carry out these tasks, we performed secondary and primary research. We studied the literature on tablet use, distributed a questionnaire to RRMC clinical staff who own tablets, and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report.

Our main findings are that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model. Although the best tablets for our needs would be those designed and built for health-care applications, those are too expensive for our budget. Because reports on the technical characteristics of computer products are notoriously unreliable, we cannot be sure whether the many

Transmittal "letters" can be presented as memos.

The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers.

The subject heading indicates the subject of the report (the tablet study at RRMC) and the purpose of the report (recommendation report).

The purpose of the study. Notice that the writers link the recommendation report to the proposal, giving them an opportunity to state the main tasks they carried out in the study.

The methods the writers used to carry out the research.

The principal findings: the results and conclusions of the study. Notice that the writers state that they cannot be sure whether the technical information they have found is accurate. Is it okay to state that you are unsure about something? Yes, as long as you then propose a way to become sure about it.

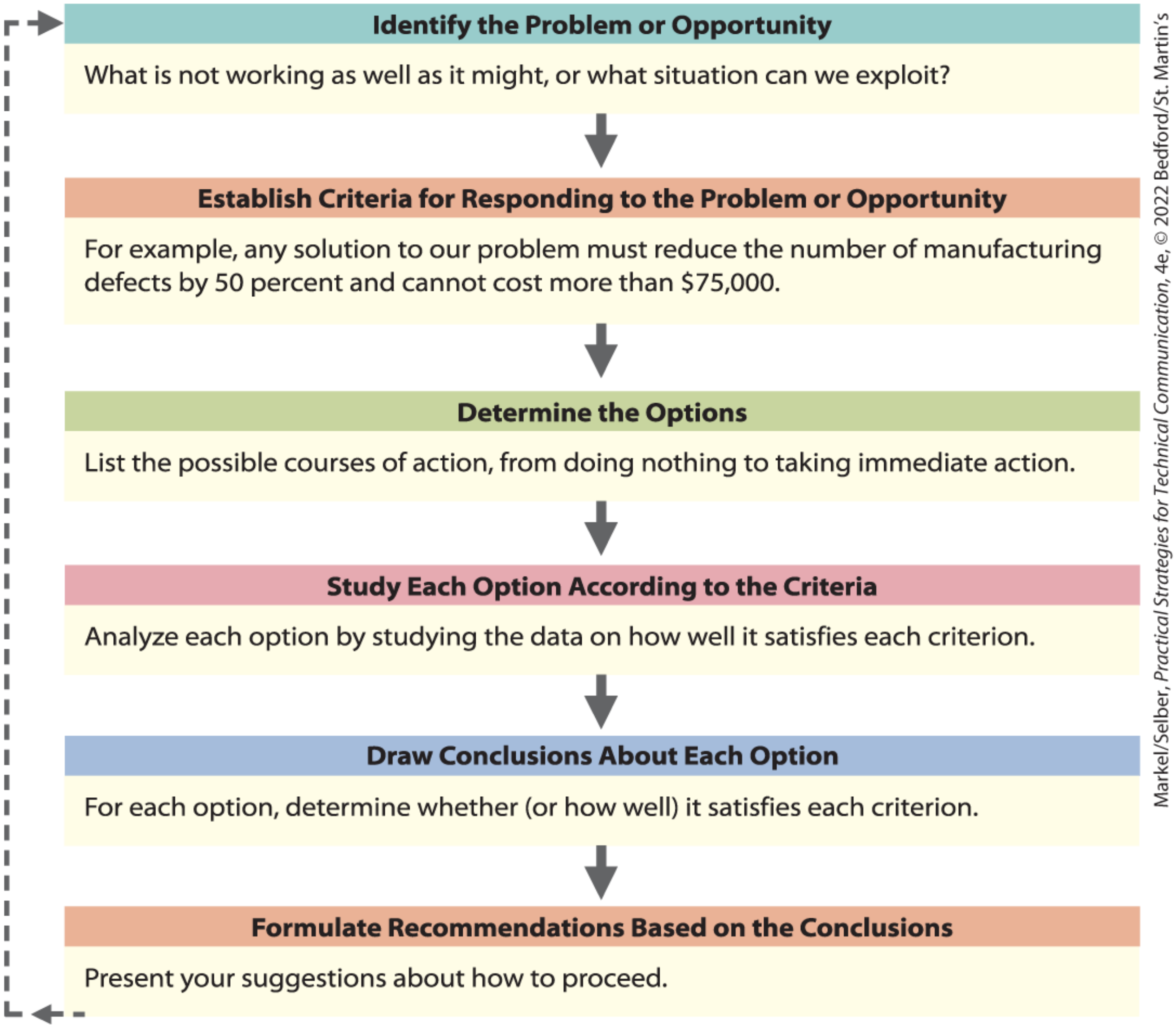
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Letterhead text beside the logo reads, Rawlings Regional Medical Center; 7 5 0 0 Bannock Avenue; Rawlings, MT 5 9 2 1 1 A notation reads, Transmittal "letters" can be presented as memos. Date: December 14, 2018 To: Jill Bremerton, M D Chief Executive Officer

Rawlings Regional Medical Center From: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing Rawlings Regional Medical Center A notation reads, The writers include their titles and that of their primary reader. This way, future readers will be able to readily identify the reader and writers. Subject: Recommendation Report for the Tablet Study at R R M C A notation reads, The subject heading indicates the subject of the report (the tablet study at R R M C) and the purpose of the report (recommendation report). Text continues, Attached is the report for our study, “Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report.” We completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: familiarizing ourselves with tablet use by clinical staff in hospitals across the country, assessing R R M C clinical staff’s knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use, studying different models for administering tablet use, determining the criteria by which we might evaluate tablets, and performing the evaluations. A notation reads, The purpose of the study. Notice that the writers link the recommendation report to the proposal, giving them an opportunity to state the main tasks they carried out in the study. To carry out these tasks, we performed secondary and primary research. We studied the literature on tablet use, distributed a questionnaire to R R M C clinical staff who own tablets, and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report. A note reads, The methods the writers used to carry out the research. Our main findings are that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital supplied model is preferable to the bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) model. Although the best tablets for our needs would be those designed and built for health-care applications, those are too expensive for our budget. Because reports on the technical characteristics of computer products are notoriously unreliable, we cannot be sure whether the many A note reads, The principal findings: the results and conclusions of the study. Notice that the writers state that they cannot be sure whether the technical information they have found is accurate. Is it okay to state that you are unsure about something? Yes, as long as you then propose a way to become sure about it.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.1 A Problem-Solving Model for Recommendation Reports



Identify the Problem or Opportunity

What is not working as well as it might, or what situation can we exploit?

Establish Criteria for Responding to the Problem or Opportunity

For example, any solution to our problem must reduce the number of manufacturing defects by 50 percent and cannot cost more than $75,000.

Determine the Options

List the possible courses of action, from doing nothing to taking immediate action.

Study Each Option According to the Criteria

Analyze each option by studying the data on how well it satisfies each criterion.

Draw Conclusions About Each Option

For each option, determine whether (or how well) it satisfies each criterion.

Formulate Recommendations Based on the Conclusions

Present your suggestions about how to proceed.

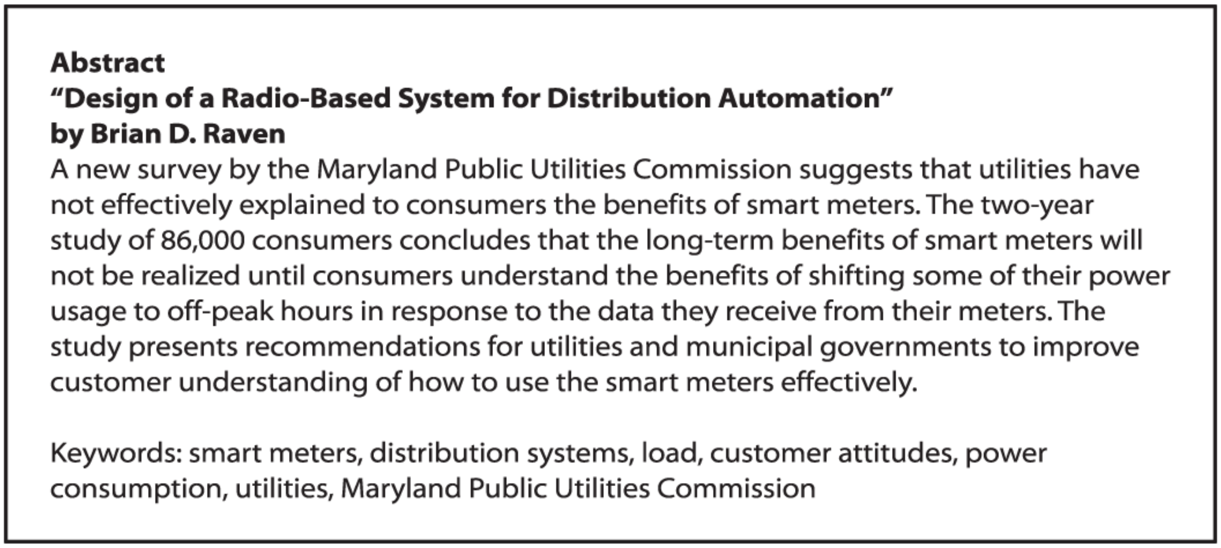
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Identify the Problem or Opportunity: What is not working as well as it might, or what situation can we exploit? Establish Criteria for Responding to the Problem or Opportunity: For example, any solution to our problem must reduce the number of manufacturing defects by 50 percent and cannot cost more than 75,000 dollars.

Determine the Options: List the possible courses of action, from doing nothing to taking immediate action. Study Each Option According to the Criteria: Analyze each option by studying the data on how well it satisfies each criterion. Draw Conclusions About Each Option: For each option, determine whether (or how well) it satisfies each criterion. Formulate Recommendations Based on the Conclusions: Present your suggestions about how to proceed. A dotted arrow leads back to the first step.

Return to Figure 13.1 A Problem-Solving Model for Recommendation Reports

Extended description for Figure 13.4 Descriptive Abstract



Abstract
“Design of a Radio-Based System for Distribution Automation”
by Brian D. Raven
A new survey by the Maryland Public Utilities Commission suggests that utilities have not effectively explained to consumers the benefits of smart meters. The two-year study of 86,000 consumers concludes that the long-term benefits of smart meters will not be realized until consumers understand the benefits of shifting some of their power usage to off-peak hours in response to the data they receive from their meters. The study presents recommendations for utilities and municipal governments to improve customer understanding of how to use the smart meters effectively.

Keywords: smart meters, distribution systems, load, customer attitudes, power consumption, utilities, Maryland Public Utilities Commission

Bold Text reads as follows: Abstract Quotes Design of a Radio-Based System for Distribution Automation close quotes. by Brian D. Raven end bold A new survey by the Maryland Public Utilities Commission suggests that utilities have not effectively explained to consumers the benefits of smart meters. The two-year study of 86,000 consumers concludes that the long-term benefits of smart meters will not be realized until consumers understand the benefits of shifting some of their power usage to off-peak hours in response to the data they receive from their meters. The study presents recommendations for utilities and municipal governments to improve customer understanding of how to use the smart meters effectively. Keywords: smart meters, distribution systems, load, customer attitudes, power consumption, utilities, Maryland Public Utilities Commission.

Return to Figure 13.4 Descriptive Abstract

Extended description for An illustration shows a table of contents with a notation

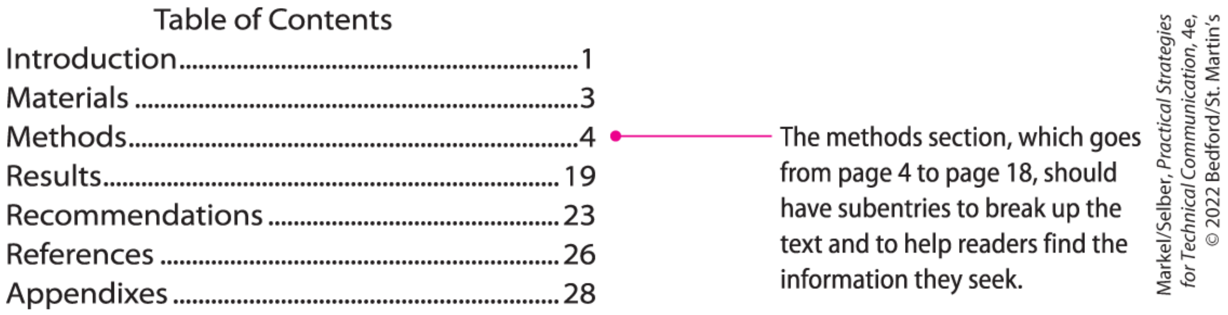


Table of Contents

Introduction....................................1
Materials 3
Methods..4
Results..19
Recommendations 23
References 26
Appendixes 28

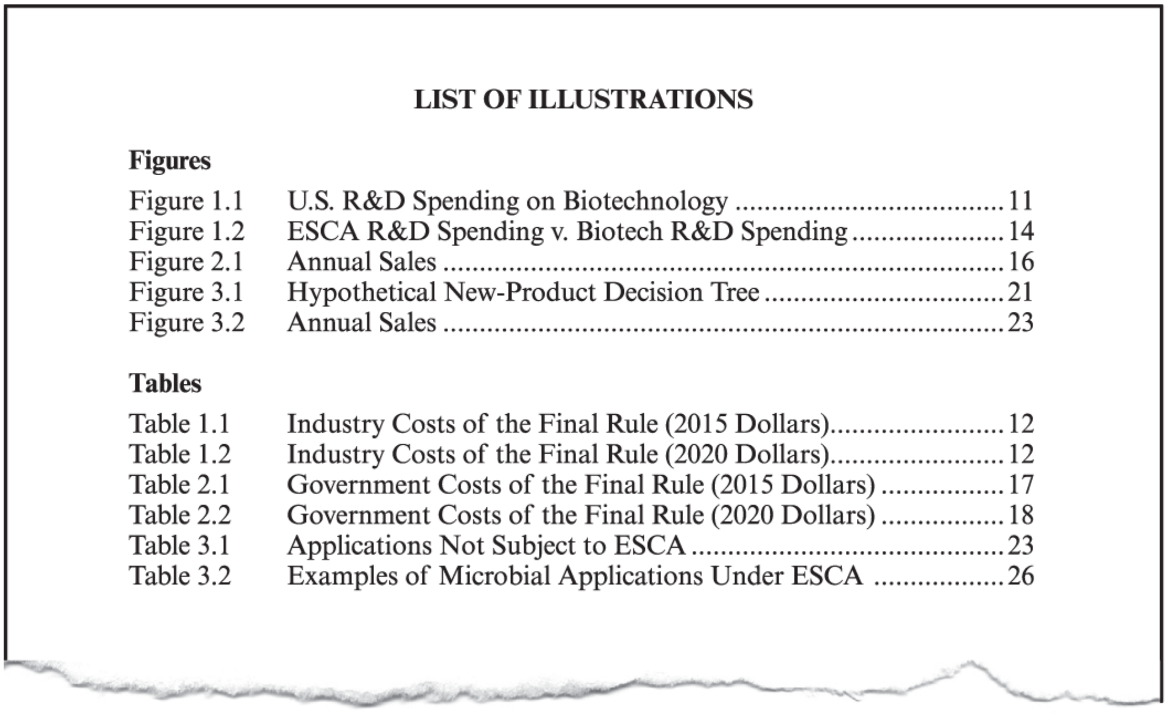
The methods section, which goes from page 4 to page 18, should have subentries to break up the text and to help readers find the information they seek.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Centered text reads, Table of Contents Introduction leader dots 1 Materials leader dots 3 Methods leader dots 4 Results leader dots 19 Recommendations leader dots 23 References leader dots 26 Appendixes leader dots 28 A notation to Methods reads, The methods section, which goes from page 4 to page 18, should have subentries to break up the text and to help readers find the information they seek.

[Return to An illustration shows a table of contents with a notation]

Extended description for Figure 13.5 List of Illustrations



LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Figures

Figure 1.1 U.S. R&D Spending on Biotechnology 11
Figure 1.2 ESCA R&D Spending v. Biotech R&D Spending 14
Figure 2.1 Annual Sales 16
Figure 3.1 Hypothetical New-Product Decision Tree 21
Figure 3.2 Annual Sales 23

Tables

Table 1.1 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars) 12
Table 1.2 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars) 12
Table 2.1 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars) 17
Table 2.2 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars) 18
Table 3.1 Applications Not Subject to ESCA 23
Table 3.2 Examples of Microbial Applications Under ESCA 26

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered header reads, List of Illustrations A bold, left-justified head reads, Figures Figure 1.1 U.S. R and D Spending on Biotechnology leader 11 Figure 1.2 ESCA R and D Spending v. Biotech R…D Spending leader 14 Figure 2.1 Annual Sales leader 16 Figure 3.1 Hypothetical New-Product Decision Tree leader 21 Figure 3.2 Annual Sales leader 23 A bold, left-justified head reads, Tables Table 1.1 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars) leader 12 Table 1.2 Industry Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars) leader 12 Table 2.1 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2015 Dollars) leader 17 Table 2.2 Government Costs of the Final Rule (2020 Dollars) leader 18 Table 3.1 Applications Not Subject to ESCA leader 23 Table 3.2 Examples of Microbial Applications Under ESCA leader 26

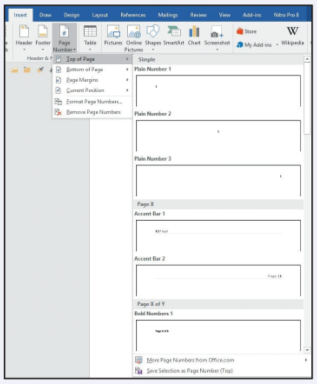
Return to Figure 13.5 List of Illustrations

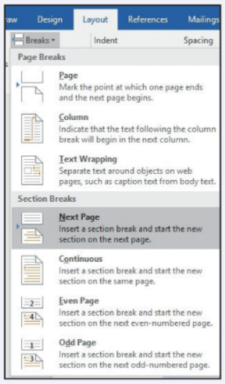
Extended description for An illustration shows how to include page navigational tools in a report in Microsoft Word and Google Docs

How To Make a Long Report Navigable

With programs such as Microsoft Word or Google Docs, you can easily format a report to include page navigation tools. To insert headers, footers, and page numbers, choose the function you want from the **Insert** tab. Both Word and Google Docs allow you to set up the header differently on the first page of the document. Word offers additional design options, allowing you to insert **section breaks** (in the **Layout** tab) so that you can have different headers and footers in different sections of a long report.

Microsoft Word


Insert
Draw
Design
Layout
References
Mailings
Review
View
Add-ins
Header
Footer
Page Number
Table
Pictures
Online Pictures
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Screenshot
Store
My Add-ins
Wikipedia
Top of Page
Bottom of Page
Page Margins
Current Position
Format Page Numbers...
Remove Page Numbers
Simple
Plain Number 1
Plain Number 2
Plain Number 3
Page X
Accent Bar 1
Accent Bar 2
Page X of Y
Bold Numbers 1
More Page Numbers from Office.com
Save Selection as Page Number (Top)


Design
Layout
References
Mailings
Breaks
Indent
Spacing
Page Breaks

Page
Mark the point at which one page ends and the next page begins.

Column
Indicate that the text following the column break will begin in the next column.

Text Wrapping
Separate text around objects on web pages, such as caption text from body text.

Section Breaks

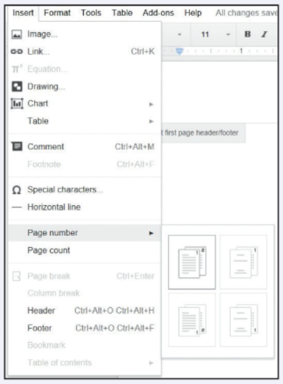
Next Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next page.

Continuous
Insert a section break and start the new section on the same page.

Even Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next even-numbered page.

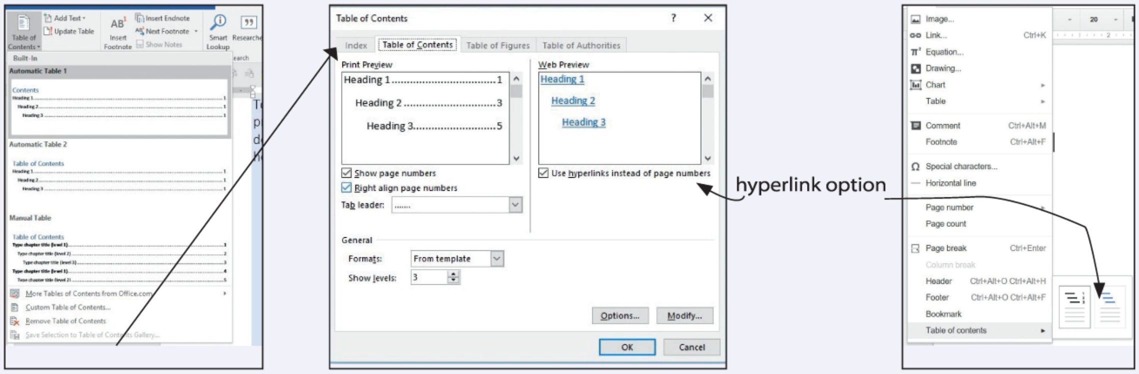
Odd Page
Insert a section break and start the new section on the next odd-numbered page.

Google Docs


Insert
Format
Tools
Table
Add-ons
Help
All changes save
Image...
Link... Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Comment Ctrl+Alt+M
Footnote Ctrl+Alt+F
Special characters...
Horizontal line
Page number
Page count
Page break Ctrl+Enter
Column break
Header Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+H
Footer Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+F
Bookmark
Table of contents
first page header/footer

To create a preformatted table of contents, use Word's Table of Contents drop-down menu in the Reference tab; in Google Docs, choose the Table of Contents feature from the Insert tab. For online documents, you can choose to use hyperlinks instead of page numbers in your table of contents. As with headers, footers, and page numbers, Word offers additional customization tools for the table of contents.

Microsoft Word **Google Docs**


Add Text
Update Table
Table of Contents
Insert Footnote
Insert Endnote
Next Footnote
Show Notes
Smart Lookup
Researcher
Built-In
Automatic Table 1
Contents
Automatic Table 2
Table of Contents
Manual Table
Table of Contents
More Tables of Contents from Office.com
Custom Table of Contents...
Remove Table of Contents
Save Selection to Table of Contents Gallery...
Table of Contents
?
×
Index
Table of Contents
Table of Figures
Table of Authorities
Print Preview
Web Preview
Options...
Modify...
OK
Cancel
hyperlink option
Image...
Link... Ctrl+K
Equation...
Drawing...
Chart
Table
Comment Ctrl+Alt+M
Footnote Ctrl+Alt+F
Special characters...
Horizontal line
Page number
Page count
Page break Ctrl+Enter
Column break
Header Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+H
Footer Ctrl+Alt+O Ctrl+Alt+F
Bookmark
Table of contents

Heading 1 1
Heading 2 3
Heading 3 5

Heading 1
Heading 2
Heading 3

☑ Show page numbers
☑ Right align page numbers
Tab leader: ....

☑ Use hyperlinks instead of page numbers

General
Formats: From template
Show levels: 3

The heading reads, How To Make a Long Report Navigable. The introductory text reads, With programs such as Microsoft Word or Google Docs, you can easily format a report to include page navigation tools. To insert headers, footers, and page numbers, choose the function you want from the Insert tab. Both Word and Google Docs allow you to set up the header differently on the first page of the document. Word offers additional design options, allowing you to insert section breaks (in the Layout tab) so that you can have different headers and footers in different sections of a long report.

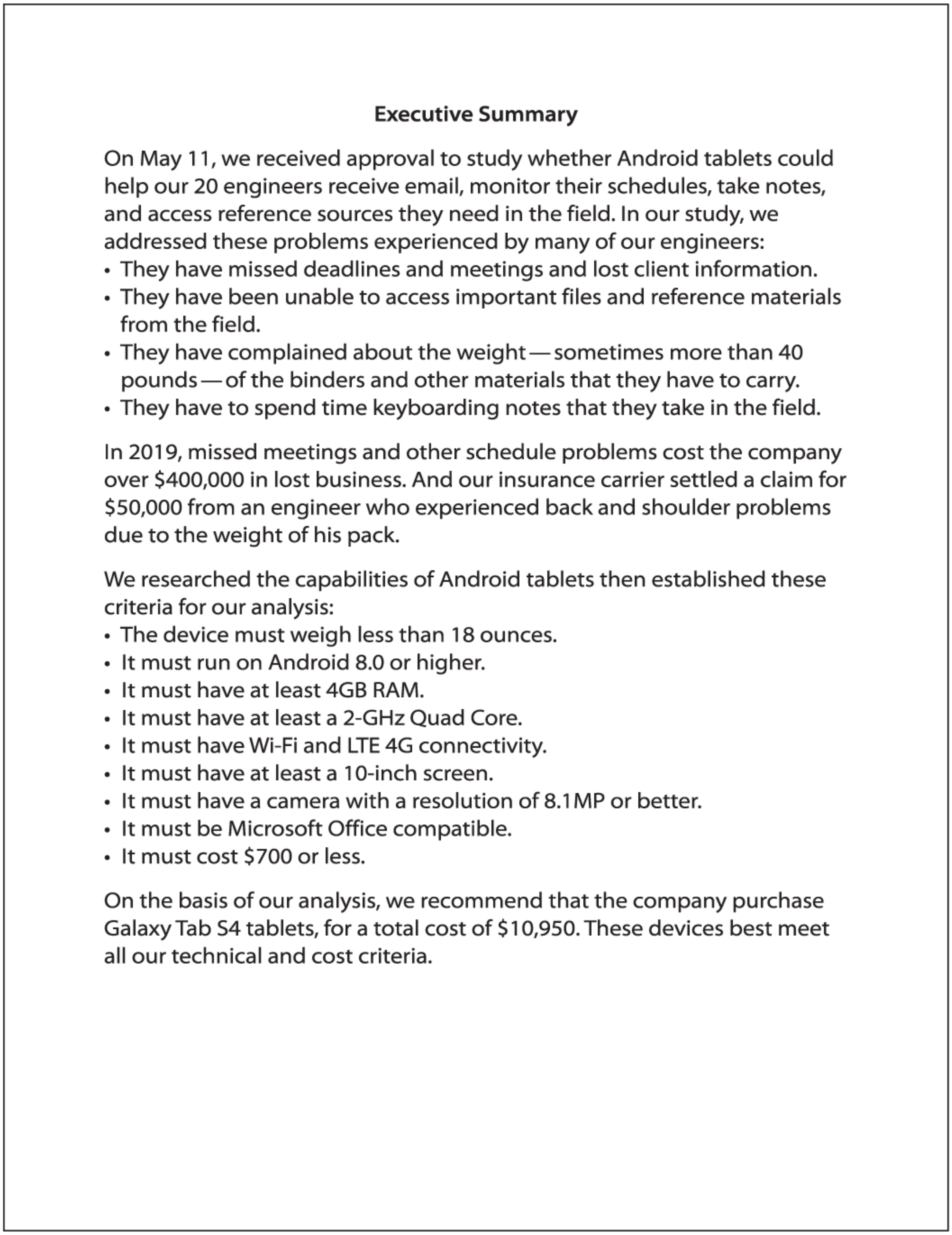
There are three screenshots below the text: two from Microsoft Word and one from Google Docs. The first from M S Word shows the Insert tab while the second shows the Layout tab. The Google Docs screenshot depicts the Insert tab.

The next section reads, To create a preformatted table of contents, use Word's Table of Contents drop-down menu in the Reference tab; in Google Docs, choose the Table of Contents feature from the Insert tab. For online documents, you can choose to use hyperlinks instead of page numbers in your table of contents. As with headers, footers, and page numbers, Word offers additional customization tools for the table of contents.

Three screenshots appear below the text: two from Microsoft Word and one from Google Docs. The first, from M S Word, shows the table of contents tab with an arrow pointing to the second screenshot with the Table of Contents tab highlighted. The Google Docs image shows the Table of Contents selected, and between the images is text that reads, hyperlink option with arrows to both program windows to show where it is located.

Return to An illustration shows how to include page navigational tools in a report in Microsoft Word and Google Docs.

Extended description for An illustration of a page shows an executive summary



Executive Summary

On May 11, we received approval to study whether Android tablets could help our 20 engineers receive email, monitor their schedules, take notes, and access reference sources they need in the field. In our study, we addressed these problems experienced by many of our engineers:

- They have missed deadlines and meetings and lost client information.
- They have been unable to access important files and reference materials from the field.
- They have complained about the weight — sometimes more than 40 pounds — of the binders and other materials that they have to carry.
- They have to spend time keyboarding notes that they take in the field.

In 2019, missed meetings and other schedule problems cost the company over $400,000 in lost business. And our insurance carrier settled a claim for $50,000 from an engineer who experienced back and shoulder problems due to the weight of his pack.

We researched the capabilities of Android tablets then established these criteria for our analysis:

- The device must weigh less than 18 ounces.
- It must run on Android 8.0 or higher.
- It must have at least 4GB RAM.
- It must have at least a 2-GHz Quad Core.
- It must have Wi-Fi and LTE 4G connectivity.
- It must have at least a 10-inch screen.
- It must have a camera with a resolution of 8.1MP or better.
- It must be Microsoft Office compatible.
- It must cost $700 or less.

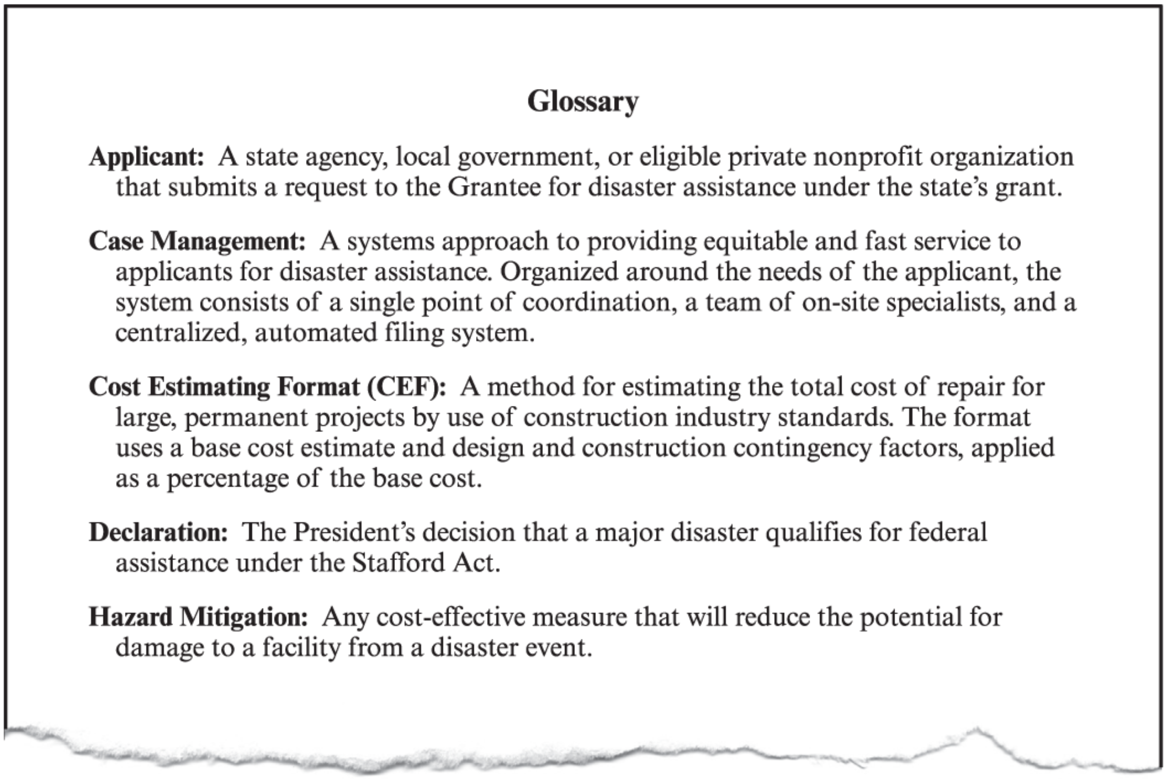
On the basis of our analysis, we recommend that the company purchase Galaxy Tab S4 tablets, for a total cost of $10,950. These devices best meet all our technical and cost criteria.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The heading is bold and centered and reads, Executive Summary. Text reads, On May 11, we received approval to study whether Android tablets could help our 20 engineers receive email, monitor their schedules, take notes, and access reference sources they need in the field. In our study, we addressed these problems experienced by many of our engineers: Bullet They have missed deadlines and meetings and lost client information. Bullet They have been unable to access important files and reference materials from the field. Bullet They have complained about the weight — sometimes more than 40 pounds — of the binders and other materials that they have to carry. Bullet They have to spend time keyboarding notes that they take in the field. In 2019, missed meetings and other schedule problems cost the company over 400,000 dollars in lost business. And our insurance carrier settled a claim for 50,000 dollars from an engineer who experienced back and shoulder problems due to the weight of his pack. We researched the capabilities of Android tablets then established these criteria for our analysis: Bullet The device must weigh less than 18 ounces. Bullet It must run on Android 8.0 or higher. Bullet It must have at least 4 gigabytes RAM. Bullet It must have at least a 2-gigahertz Quad Core. Bullet It must have Wi-Fi and L T E 4 G connectivity. Bullet It must have at least a 10-inch screen. Bullet It must have a camera with a resolution of 8.1 megapixel or better. Bullet It must be Microsoft Office compatible. Bullet It must cost 700 dollars or less. On the basis of our analysis, we recommend that the company purchase Galaxy Tab S 4 tablets, for a total cost of 10,950 dollars. These devices best meet all our technical and cost criteria.

Return to An illustration of a page shows an executive summary

Extended description for Figure 13.6 Glossary



Glossary

Applicant: A state agency, local government, or eligible private nonprofit organization that submits a request to the Grantee for disaster assistance under the state's grant.

Case Management: A systems approach to providing equitable and fast service to applicants for disaster assistance. Organized around the needs of the applicant, the system consists of a single point of coordination, a team of on-site specialists, and a centralized, automated filing system.

Cost Estimating Format (CEF): A method for estimating the total cost of repair for large, permanent projects by use of construction industry standards. The format uses a base cost estimate and design and construction contingency factors, applied as a percentage of the base cost.

Declaration: The President's decision that a major disaster qualifies for federal assistance under the Stafford Act.

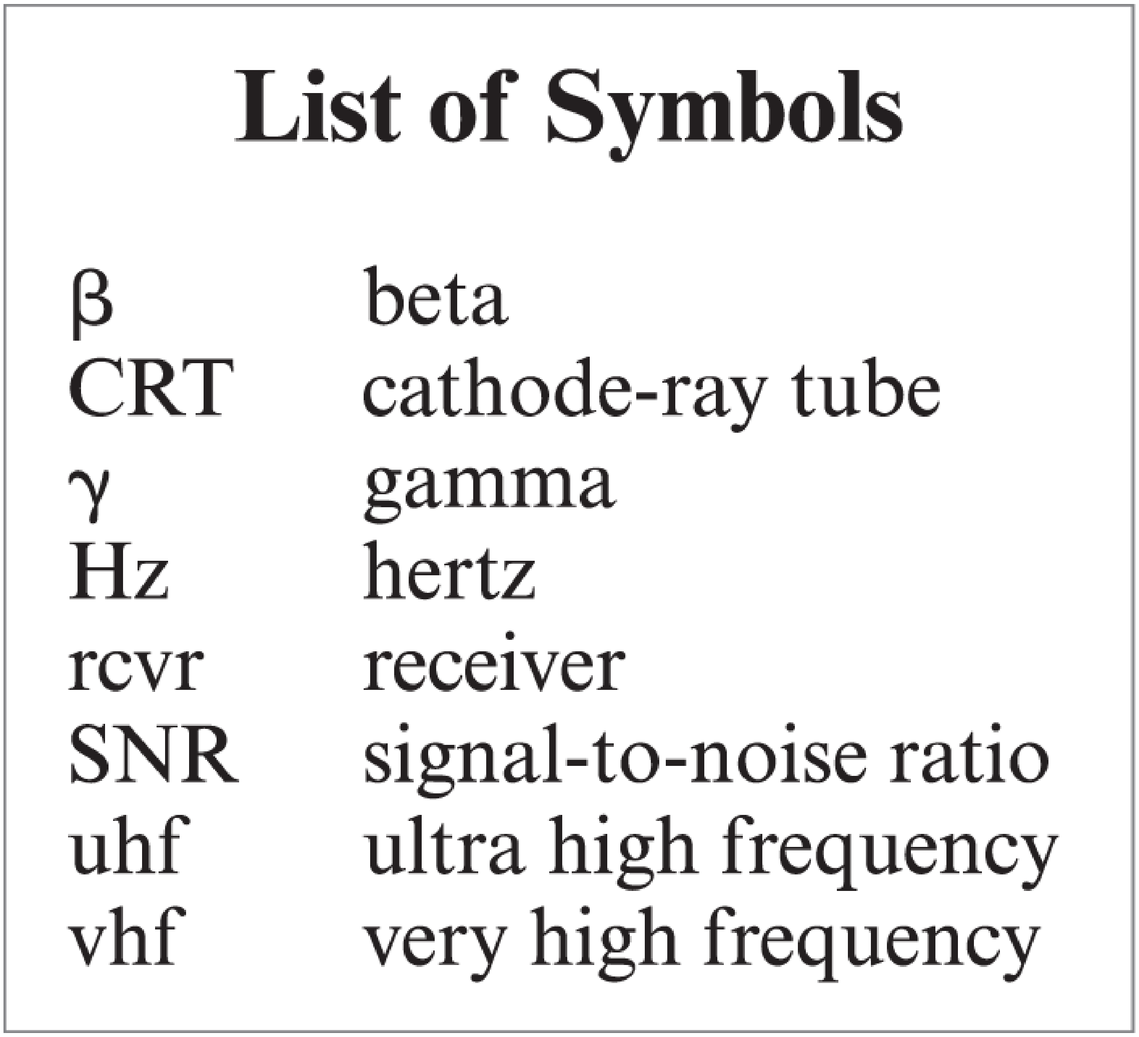
Hazard Mitigation: Any cost-effective measure that will reduce the potential for damage to a facility from a disaster event.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The heading Glossary is bold and centered. Text on the page reads, bold Applicant: end bold A state agency, local government, or eligible private nonprofit organization that submits a request to the Grantee for disaster assistance under the state's grant. Bold Case Management: end bold A systems approach to providing equitable and fast service to applicants for disaster assistance. Organized around the needs of the applicant, the system consists of a single point of coordination, a team of on-site specialists, and a centralized, automated filing system. bold Cost Estimating Format (C E F): end bold A method for estimating the total cost of repair for large, permanent projects by use of construction industry standards. The format uses a base cost estimate and design and construction contingency factors, applied as a percentage of the base cost. bold Declaration: end bold The President's decision that a major disaster qualifies for federal assistance under the Stafford Act. bold Hazard Mitigation: end bold Any cost-effective measure that will reduce the potential for damage to a facility from a disaster event.

Return to Figure 13.6 Glossary

Extended description for Figure 13.7 List of Symbols



List of Symbols

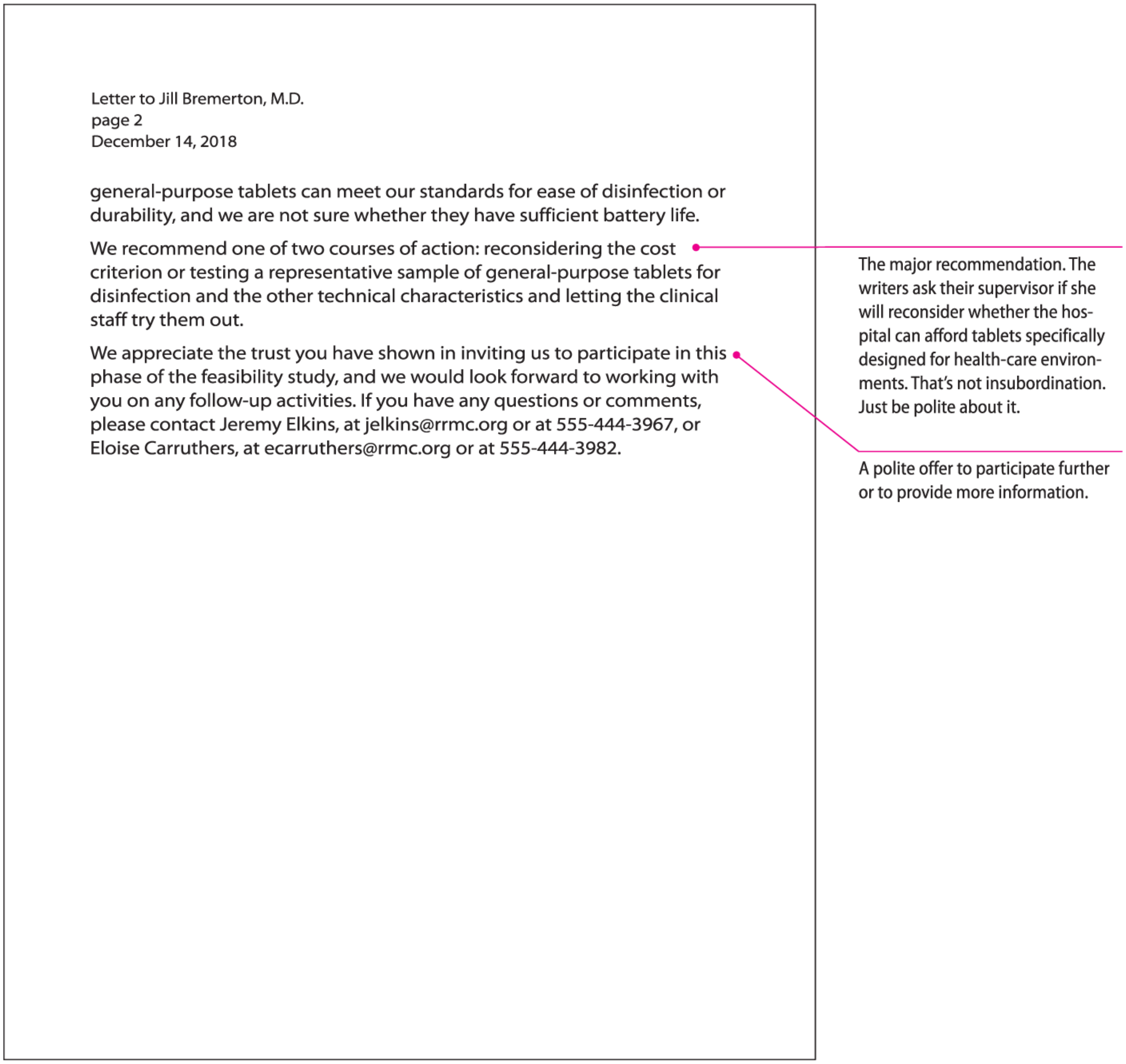
β	beta
CRT	cathode-ray tube
γ	gamma
Hz	hertz
rcvr	receiver
SNR	signal-to-noise ratio
uhf	ultra high frequency
vhf	very high frequency

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The heading List of Symbols is bold and centered Capital Greek letter Beta means beta C R T means cathode-ray tube Lowercase Greek letter Gamma means gamma H z means hertz R c v r means receiver S N R means signal-to-noise ratio U h f means ultra high frequency V h f means very high frequency

Return to Figure 13.7 List of Symbols

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Letter to Jill Bremerton, M.D.
page 2
December 14, 2018

general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life.

We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering the cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and letting the clinical staff try them out.

We appreciate the trust you have shown in inviting us to participate in this phase of the feasibility study, and we would look forward to working with you on any follow-up activities. If you have any questions or comments, please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3967, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers@rrmc.org or at 555-444-3982.

The major recommendation. The writers ask their supervisor if she will reconsider whether the hospital can afford tablets specifically designed for health-care environments. That's not insubordination. Just be polite about it.

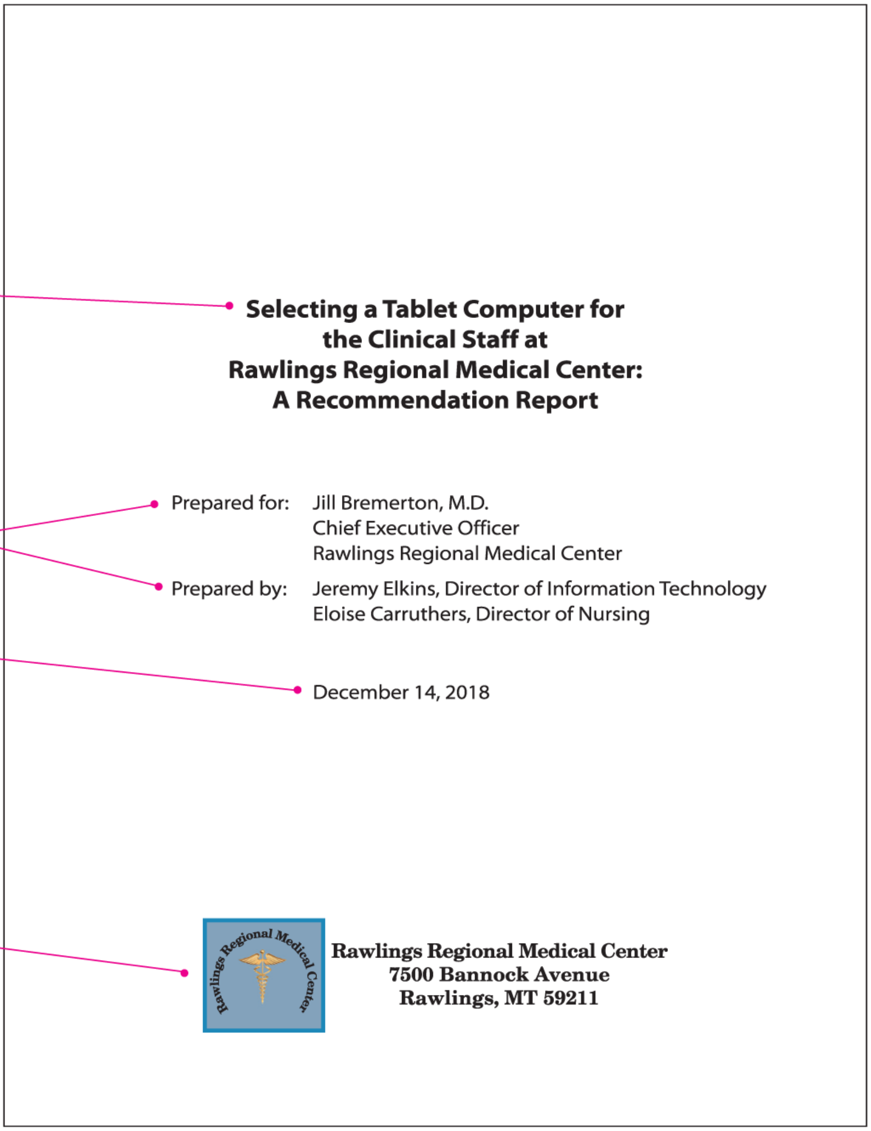
A polite offer to participate further or to provide more information.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The running head reads, Letter to Jill Bremerton, M D page 2 December 14, 2018 Text continues, general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life. We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering the cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and letting the clinical staff try them out. A notation reads, The major recommendation. The writers ask their supervisor if she will reconsider whether the hospital can afford tablets specifically designed for health-care environments. That's not insubordination. Just be polite about it. We appreciate the trust you have shown in inviting us to participate in this phase of the feasibility study, and we would look forward to working with you on any follow-up activities. If you have any questions or comments, please contact Jeremy Elkins, at jelkins at r r m c dot org or at 5 5 5 4 4 4 3 9 6 7, or Eloise Carruthers, at ecarruthers at r r m c dot org or at 5 5 5 4 4 4 3 9 8 2. A note reads, A polite offer to participate further or to provide more information.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Selecting a Tablet Computer for
the Clinical Staff at
Rawlings Regional Medical Center:
A Recommendation Report

Prepared for: Jill Bremerton, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer
Rawlings Regional Medical Center

Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 14, 2018

Rawlings Regional Medical Center
7500 Bannock Avenue
Rawlings, MT 59211

A good title indicates the subject and purpose of the document. One way to indicate the purpose is to use a generic term — such as *analysis*, *recommendation*, *summary*, or *instructions* — in a phrase following a colon. For more about titles, see Ch. 9.

The names and positions of the principal reader and the writers of the document.

The date the document was submitted.

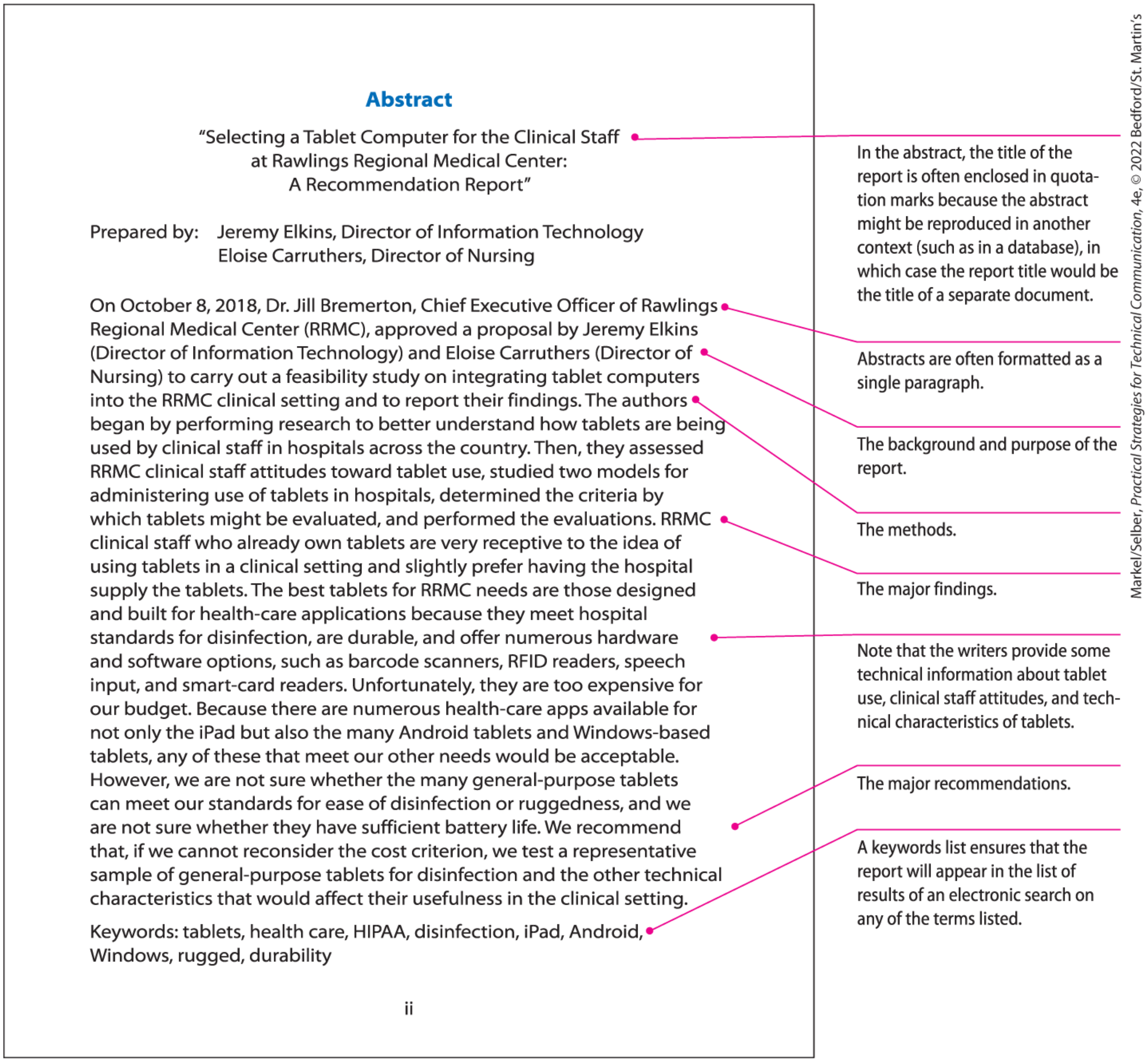
The name or logo of the writers' organization often is presented at the bottom of the title page.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report. A note reads, A good title indicates the subject and purpose of the document. One way to indicate the purpose is to use a generic term — such as analysis, recommendation, summary, or instructions — in a phrase following a colon. For more about titles, see Chapter 9. Prepared for: Jill Bremerton, M D Chief Executive Officer Rawlings Regional Medical Center Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing. A notation reads, The names and positions of the principal reader and the writers of the document. December 14, 2018. A note reads, The date the document was submitted. The company logo appears at the bottom of the page with text reading, Rawlings Regional Medical Center; 7 5 0 0 Bannock Avenue; Rawlings, M T 5 9 2 1 1 A note reads, The name or logo of the writers' organization often is presented at the bottom of the title page.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Abstract

"Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff
at Rawlings Regional Medical Center:
A Recommendation Report"

Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer of Rawlings Regional Medical Center (RRMC), approved a proposal by Jeremy Elkins (Director of Information Technology) and Eloise Carruthers (Director of Nursing) to carry out a feasibility study on integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting and to report their findings. The authors began by performing research to better understand how tablets are being used by clinical staff in hospitals across the country. Then, they assessed RRMC clinical staff attitudes toward tablet use, studied two models for administering use of tablets in hospitals, determined the criteria by which tablets might be evaluated, and performed the evaluations. RRMC clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. The best tablets for RRMC needs are those designed and built for health-care applications because they meet hospital standards for disinfection, are durable, and offer numerous hardware and software options, such as barcode scanners, RFID readers, speech input, and smart-card readers. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. Because there are numerous health-care apps available for not only the iPad but also the many Android tablets and Windows-based tablets, any of these that meet our other needs would be acceptable. However, we are not sure whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or ruggedness, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life. We recommend that, if we cannot reconsider the cost criterion, we test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics that would affect their usefulness in the clinical setting.

Keywords: tablets, health care, HIPAA, disinfection, iPad, Android, Windows, rugged, durability

ii

In the abstract, the title of the report is often enclosed in quotation marks because the abstract might be reproduced in another context (such as in a database), in which case the report title would be the title of a separate document.

Abstracts are often formatted as a single paragraph.

The background and purpose of the report.

The methods.

The major findings.

Note that the writers provide some technical information about tablet use, clinical staff attitudes, and technical characteristics of tablets.

The major recommendations.

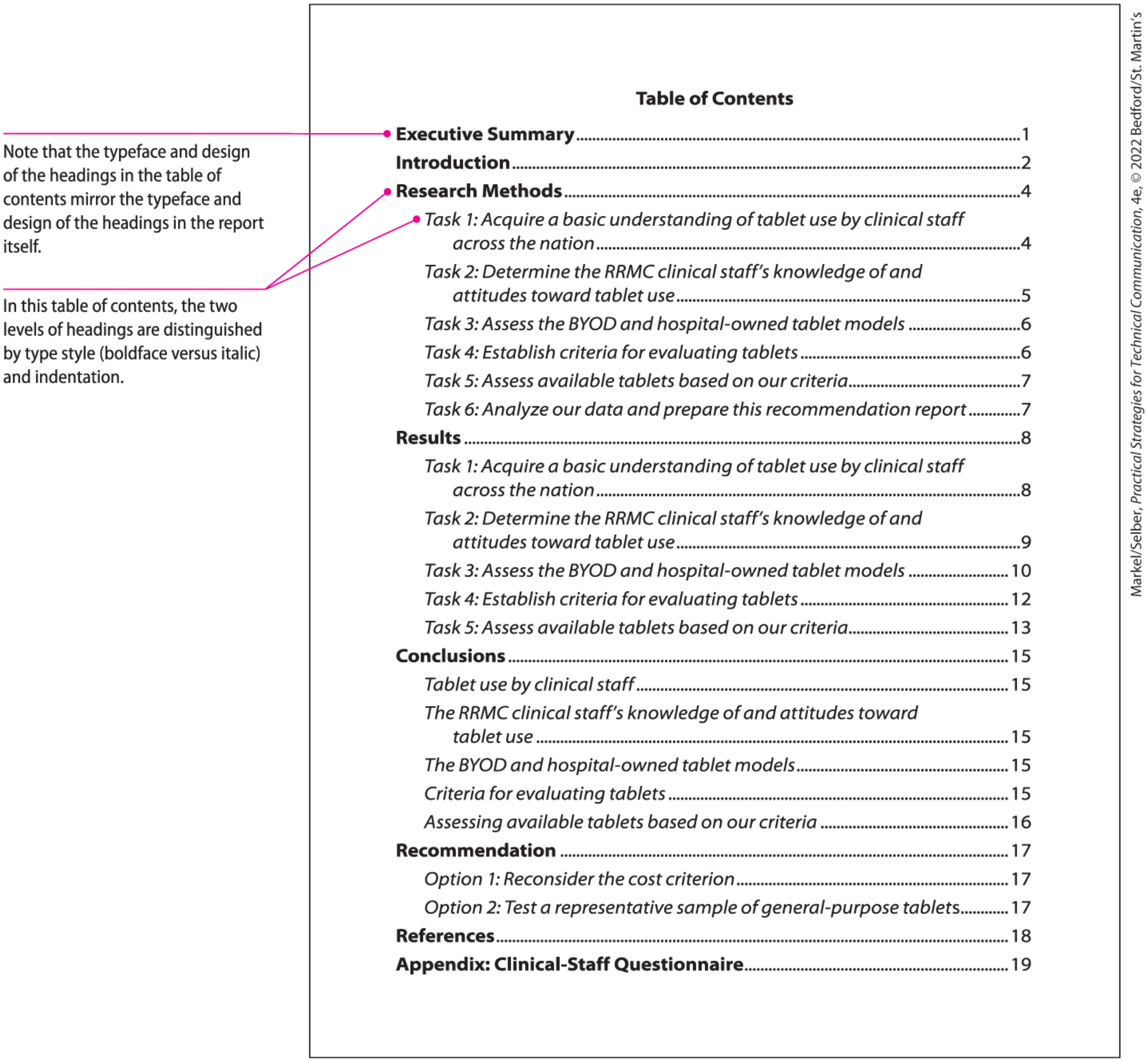
A keywords list ensures that the report will appear in the list of results of an electronic search on any of the terms listed.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Abstract. Centered text below the heading reads, quote Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report end quote. A notation reads, In the abstract, the title of the report is often enclosed in quotation marks because the abstract might be reproduced in another context (such as in a database), in which case the report title would be the title of a separate document. Prepared by: Jeremy Elkins, Director of Information Technology Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing A notation reads, Abstracts are often formatted as a single paragraph. On October 8, 2018, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer of Rawlings Regional Medical Center (R R M C), approved a proposal by Jeremy Elkins (Director of Information Technology) and Eloise Carruthers (Director of Nursing) to carry out a feasibility study on integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting and to report their findings. Notations read, The background and purpose of the report; The methods; The major findings. The authors began by performing research to better understand how tablets are being used by clinical staff in hospitals across the country. Then, they assessed R R M C clinical staff attitudes toward tablet use, studied two models for administering use of tablets in hospitals, determined the criteria by which tablets might be evaluated, and performed the evaluations. R R M C clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting and slightly prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. The best tablets for R R M C needs are those designed and built for health-care applications because they meet hospital standards for disinfection, are durable, and offer numerous hardware and software options, such as barcode scanners, R F I D readers, speech input, and smart-card readers. A note reads, Note that the writers provide some technical information about tablet use, clinical staff attitudes, and technical characteristics of tablets. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. Because there are numerous health-care apps available for not only the iPad but also the many Android tablets and Windows-based tablets, any of these that meet our other needs would be acceptable. However, we are not sure whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or ruggedness, and we are not sure whether they have sufficient battery life. We recommend that, if we cannot reconsider the cost criterion, we test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics that would affect their usefulness in the clinical setting. Notations read, The major recommendations. Keywords: tablets, health care, H I P A A, disinfection, iPad, Android, Windows, rugged, durability. A notation reads, A keywords list ensures that the report will appear in the list of results of an electronic search on any of the terms listed.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Note that the typeface and design of the headings in the table of contents mirror the typeface and design of the headings in the report itself.

In this table of contents, the two levels of headings are distinguished by type style (boldface versus italic) and indentation.

Table of Contents

Executive Summary 1
Introduction 2
Research Methods 4
  Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation 4
  Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 5
  Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 6
  Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets 6
  Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria 7
  Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report 7
Results 8
  Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation 8
  Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 9
  Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 10
  Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets 12
  Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria 13
Conclusions 15
  Tablet use by clinical staff 15
  The RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 15
  The BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models 15
  Criteria for evaluating tablets 15
  Assessing available tablets based on our criteria 16
Recommendation 17
  Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion 17
  Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets 17
References 18
Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire 19

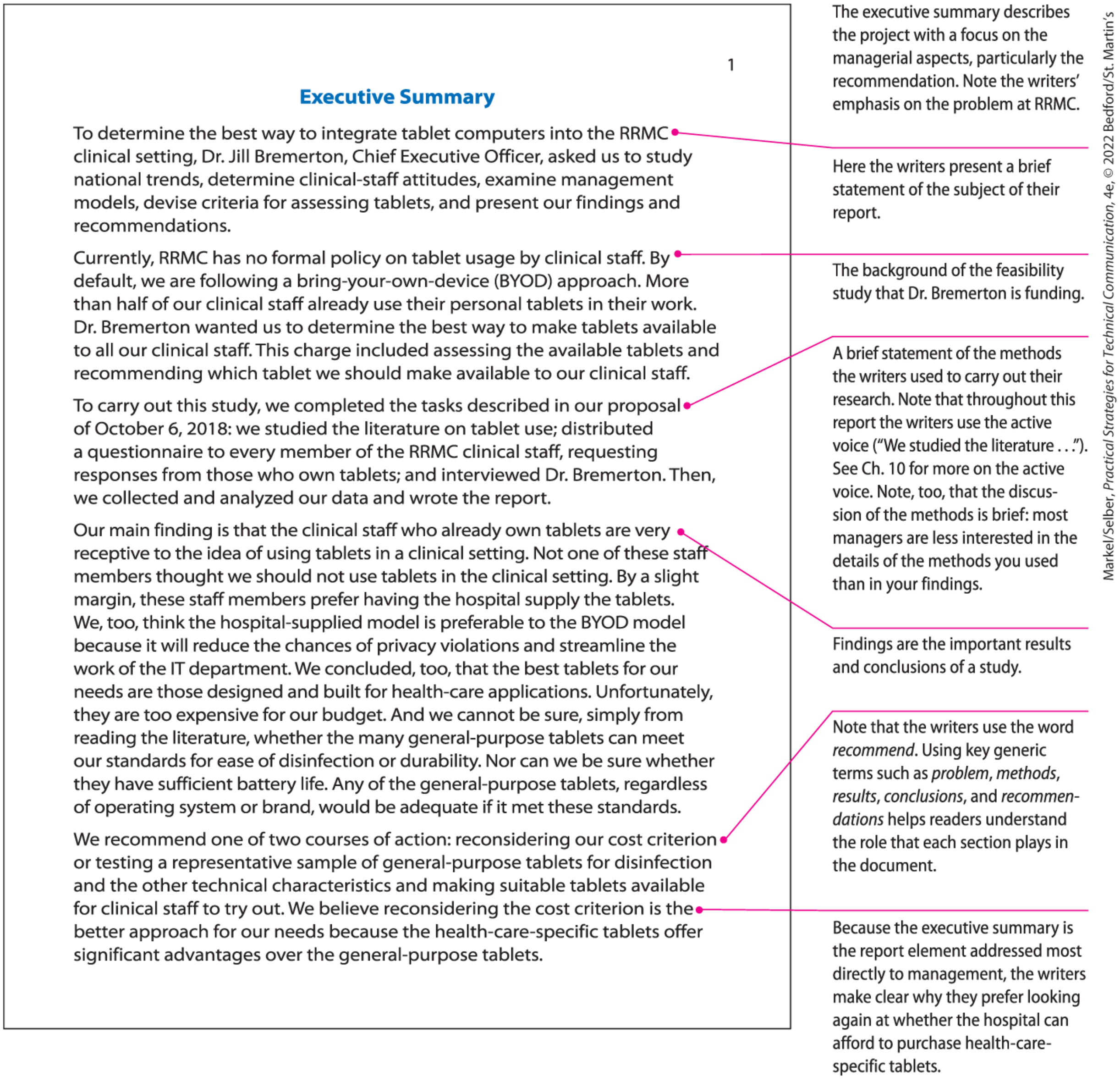
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Table of Contents Executive Summary leader 1 Introduction leader 2 Research Methods leader 4 The following tasks are indented. Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation leader

4 Task 2: Determine the R R M C clinical staff’s knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use leader 5 Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models leader 6 Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets leader 6 Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria. leader 7 Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report leader 7 No indent Results leader 8 The following tasks are indented. Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation leader 8 Task 2: Determine the R R M C clinical staff’s knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use leader 9 Task 3: Assess the B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models leader 10 Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets leader 12 Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria leader 13 No indent Conclusions leader 15 The following conclusions are indented: Tablet use by clinical staff leader 15 The R R M C clinical staff’s knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use leader 15 The B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models leader 15 Criteria for evaluating tablets leader 15 Assessing available tablets based on our criteria leader 16 No indent Recommendation leader 17 The following options are indented: Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion leader 17 Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets leader 17 No indent References leader 18 Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire leader 19 Notations read, Note that the typeface and design of the headings in the table of contents mirror the typeface and design of the headings in the report itself; In this table of contents, the two levels of headings are distinguished by type style (boldface versus italic) and indentation.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



1

Executive Summary

To determine the best way to integrate tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff attitudes, examine management models, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff already use their personal tablets in their work. Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. This charge included assessing the available tablets and recommending which tablet we should make available to our clinical staff.

To carry out this study, we completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: we studied the literature on tablet use; distributed a questionnaire to every member of the RRMC clinical staff, requesting responses from those who own tablets; and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report.

Our main finding is that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting. Not one of these staff members thought we should not use tablets in the clinical setting. By a slight margin, these staff members prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the BYOD model because it will reduce the chances of privacy violations and streamline the work of the IT department. We concluded, too, that the best tablets for our needs are those designed and built for health-care applications. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. And we cannot be sure, simply from reading the literature, whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability. Nor can we be sure whether they have sufficient battery life. Any of the general-purpose tablets, regardless of operating system or brand, would be adequate if it met these standards.

We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering our cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and making suitable tablets available for clinical staff to try out. We believe reconsidering the cost criterion is the better approach for our needs because the health-care-specific tablets offer significant advantages over the general-purpose tablets.

The executive summary describes the project with a focus on the managerial aspects, particularly the recommendation. Note the writers' emphasis on the problem at RRMC.

Here the writers present a brief statement of the subject of their report.

The background of the feasibility study that Dr. Bremerton is funding.

A brief statement of the methods the writers used to carry out their research. Note that throughout this report the writers use the active voice ("We studied the literature . . ."). See Ch. 10 for more on the active voice. Note, too, that the discussion of the methods is brief: most managers are less interested in the details of the methods you used than in your findings.

Findings are the important results and conclusions of a study.

Note that the writers use the word *recommend*. Using key generic terms such as *problem*, *methods*, *results*, *conclusions*, and *recommendations* helps readers understand the role that each section plays in the document.

Because the executive summary is the report element addressed most directly to management, the writers make clear why they prefer looking again at whether the hospital can afford to purchase health-care-specific tablets.

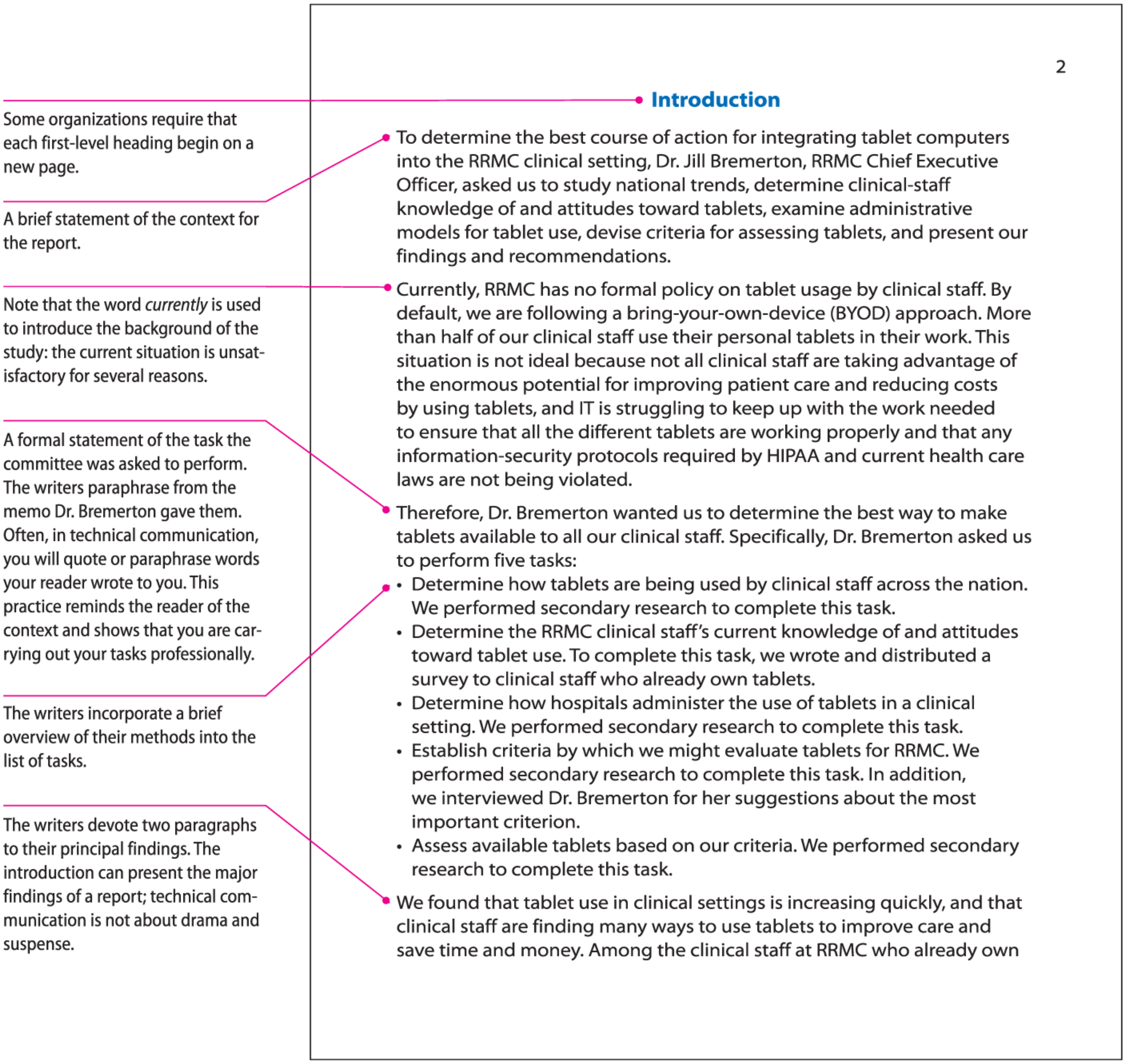
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A notation at the top reads, The executive summary describes the project with a focus on the managerial aspects, particularly the recommendation. Note the writers' emphasis on the problem at R R

M C. A bold, centered heading reads, Executive Summary. Text reads, To determine the best way to integrate tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting, Dr. Jill Bremerton, Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff attitudes, examine management models, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations. A notation reads, Here the writers present a brief statement of the subject of their report. Currently, R R M C has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) approach. More than half of our clinical staff already use their personal tablets in their work. Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. This charge included assessing the available tablets and recommending which tablet we should make available to our clinical staff. A notation reads, The background of the feasibility study that Dr. Bremerton is funding. To carry out this study, we completed the tasks described in our proposal of October 6, 2018: we studied the literature on tablet use; distributed a questionnaire to every member of the RRMC clinical staff, requesting responses from those who own tablets; and interviewed Dr. Bremerton. Then, we collected and analyzed our data and wrote the report. A notation reads, A brief statement of the methods the writers used to carry out their research. Note that throughout this report the writers use the active voice ("We studied the literature ellipsis"). See Ch. 10 for more on the active voice. Note, too, that the discussion of the methods is brief: most managers are less interested in the details of the methods you used than in your findings. Our main finding is that the clinical staff who already own tablets are very receptive to the idea of using tablets in a clinical setting. Not one of these staff members thought we should not use tablets in the clinical setting. By a slight margin, these staff members prefer having the hospital supply the tablets. We, too, think the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the B Y O D model because it will reduce the chances of privacy violations and streamline the work of the I T department. We concluded, too, that the best tablets for our needs are those designed and built for health-care applications. Unfortunately, they are too expensive for our budget. And we cannot be sure, simply from reading the literature, whether the many general-purpose tablets can meet our standards for ease of disinfection or durability. Nor can we be sure whether they have sufficient battery life. Any of the general-purpose tablets, regardless of operating system or brand, would be adequate if it met these standards. A note reads, Findings are the important results and conclusions of a study. We recommend one of two courses of action: reconsidering our cost criterion or testing a representative sample of general-purpose tablets for disinfection and the other technical characteristics and making suitable tablets available for clinical staff to try out. We believe reconsidering the cost criterion is the better approach for our needs because the health-care-specific tablets offer significant advantages over the general-purpose tablets. Two notations read, Note that the writers use the word recommend. Using key generic terms such as problem, methods, results, conclusions, and recommendations helps readers understand the role that each section plays in the document.; Because the executive summary is the report element addressed most directly to management, the writers make clear why they prefer looking again at whether the hospital can afford to purchase health-care-specific tablets.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



2

Introduction

Some organizations require that each first-level heading begin on a new page.

To determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the RRMC clinical setting, Dr. Jill Bremerton, RRMC Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations.

A brief statement of the context for the report.

Currently, RRMC has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (BYOD) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and IT is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that any information-security protocols required by HIPAA and current health care laws are not being violated.

Note that the word *currently* is used to introduce the background of the study: the current situation is unsatisfactory for several reasons.

Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks:

- Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation. We performed secondary research to complete this task.
- Determine the RRMC clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. To complete this task, we wrote and distributed a survey to clinical staff who already own tablets.
- Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting. We performed secondary research to complete this task.
- Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for RRMC. We performed secondary research to complete this task. In addition, we interviewed Dr. Bremerton for her suggestions about the most important criterion.
- Assess available tablets based on our criteria. We performed secondary research to complete this task.

A formal statement of the task the committee was asked to perform. The writers paraphrase from the memo Dr. Bremerton gave them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase words your reader wrote to you. This practice reminds the reader of the context and shows that you are carrying out your tasks professionally.

The writers incorporate a brief overview of their methods into the list of tasks.

We found that tablet use in clinical settings is increasing quickly, and that clinical staff are finding many ways to use tablets to improve care and save time and money. Among the clinical staff at RRMC who already own

The writers devote two paragraphs to their principal findings. The introduction can present the major findings of a report; technical communication is not about drama and suspense.

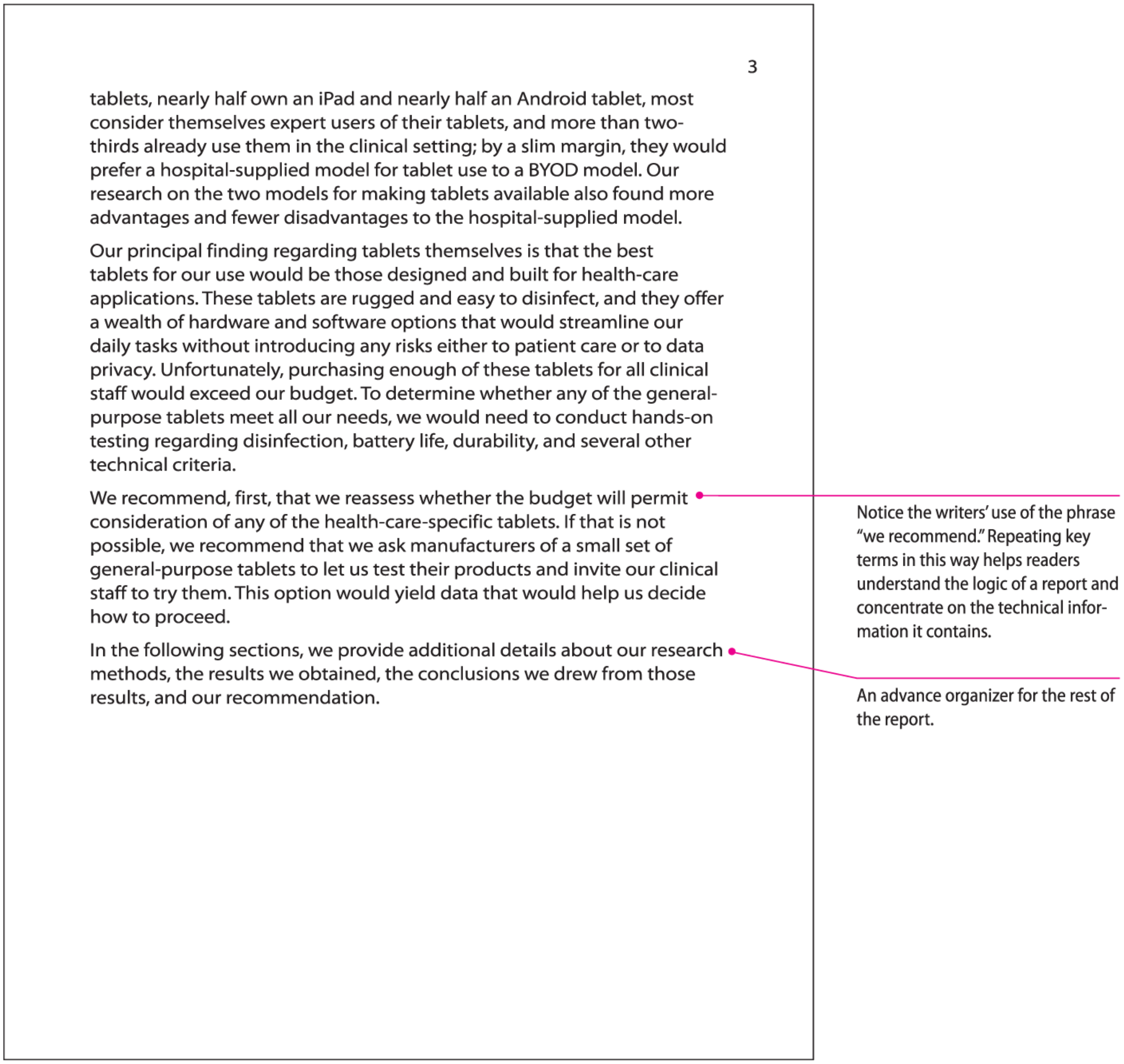
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Introduction. A notation reads, Some organizations require that each first-level heading begin on a new page. Text reads, To determine the best course of action for integrating tablet computers into the R R M C clinical setting, Dr. Jill

Bremerton, R R M C Chief Executive Officer, asked us to study national trends, determine clinical-staff knowledge of and attitudes toward tablets, examine administrative models for tablet use, devise criteria for assessing tablets, and present our findings and recommendations. A notation reads, A brief statement of the context for the report. Currently, R R M C has no formal policy on tablet usage by clinical staff. By default, we are following a bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) approach. More than half of our clinical staff use their personal tablets in their work. This situation is not ideal because not all clinical staff are taking advantage of the enormous potential for improving patient care and reducing costs by using tablets, and I T is struggling to keep up with the work needed to ensure that all the different tablets are working properly and that any information-security protocols required by H I P A A and current health care laws are not being violated. A note reads, Note that the word currently is used to introduce the background of the study: the current situation is unsatisfactory for several reasons. Therefore, Dr. Bremerton wanted us to determine the best way to make tablets available to all our clinical staff. Specifically, Dr. Bremerton asked us to perform five tasks: A note reads, A formal statement of the task the committee was asked to perform. The writers paraphrase from the memo Dr. Bremerton gave them. Often, in technical communication, you will quote or paraphrase words your reader wrote to you. This practice reminds the reader of the context and shows that you are carrying out your tasks professionally. Bullet Determine how tablets are being used by clinical staff across the nation. We performed secondary research to complete this task. Bullet Determine the R R M C clinical staff's current knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. To complete this task, we wrote and distributed a survey to clinical staff who already own tablets. Bullet Determine how hospitals administer the use of tablets in a clinical setting. We performed secondary research to complete this task. Bullet Establish criteria by which we might evaluate tablets for R R M C. We performed secondary research to complete this task. In addition, we interviewed Dr. Bremerton for her suggestions about the most important criterion. Bullet Assess available tablets based on our criteria. We performed secondary research to complete this task. A note reads, The writers incorporate a brief overview of their methods into the list of tasks. We found that tablet use in clinical settings is increasing quickly, and that clinical staff are finding many ways to use tablets to improve care and save time and money. Among the clinical staff at R R M C who already own A notation reads, The writers devote two paragraphs to their principal findings. The introduction can present the major findings of a report; technical communication is not about drama and suspense.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



3

tablets, nearly half own an iPad and nearly half an Android tablet, most consider themselves expert users of their tablets, and more than two-thirds already use them in the clinical setting; by a slim margin, they would prefer a hospital-supplied model for tablet use to a BYOD model. Our research on the two models for making tablets available also found more advantages and fewer disadvantages to the hospital-supplied model.

Our principal finding regarding tablets themselves is that the best tablets for our use would be those designed and built for health-care applications. These tablets are rugged and easy to disinfect, and they offer a wealth of hardware and software options that would streamline our daily tasks without introducing any risks either to patient care or to data privacy. Unfortunately, purchasing enough of these tablets for all clinical staff would exceed our budget. To determine whether any of the general-purpose tablets meet all our needs, we would need to conduct hands-on testing regarding disinfection, battery life, durability, and several other technical criteria.

We recommend, first, that we reassess whether the budget will permit consideration of any of the health-care-specific tablets. If that is not possible, we recommend that we ask manufacturers of a small set of general-purpose tablets to let us test their products and invite our clinical staff to try them. This option would yield data that would help us decide how to proceed.

In the following sections, we provide additional details about our research methods, the results we obtained, the conclusions we drew from those results, and our recommendation.

Notice the writers' use of the phrase "we recommend." Repeating key terms in this way helps readers understand the logic of a report and concentrate on the technical information it contains.

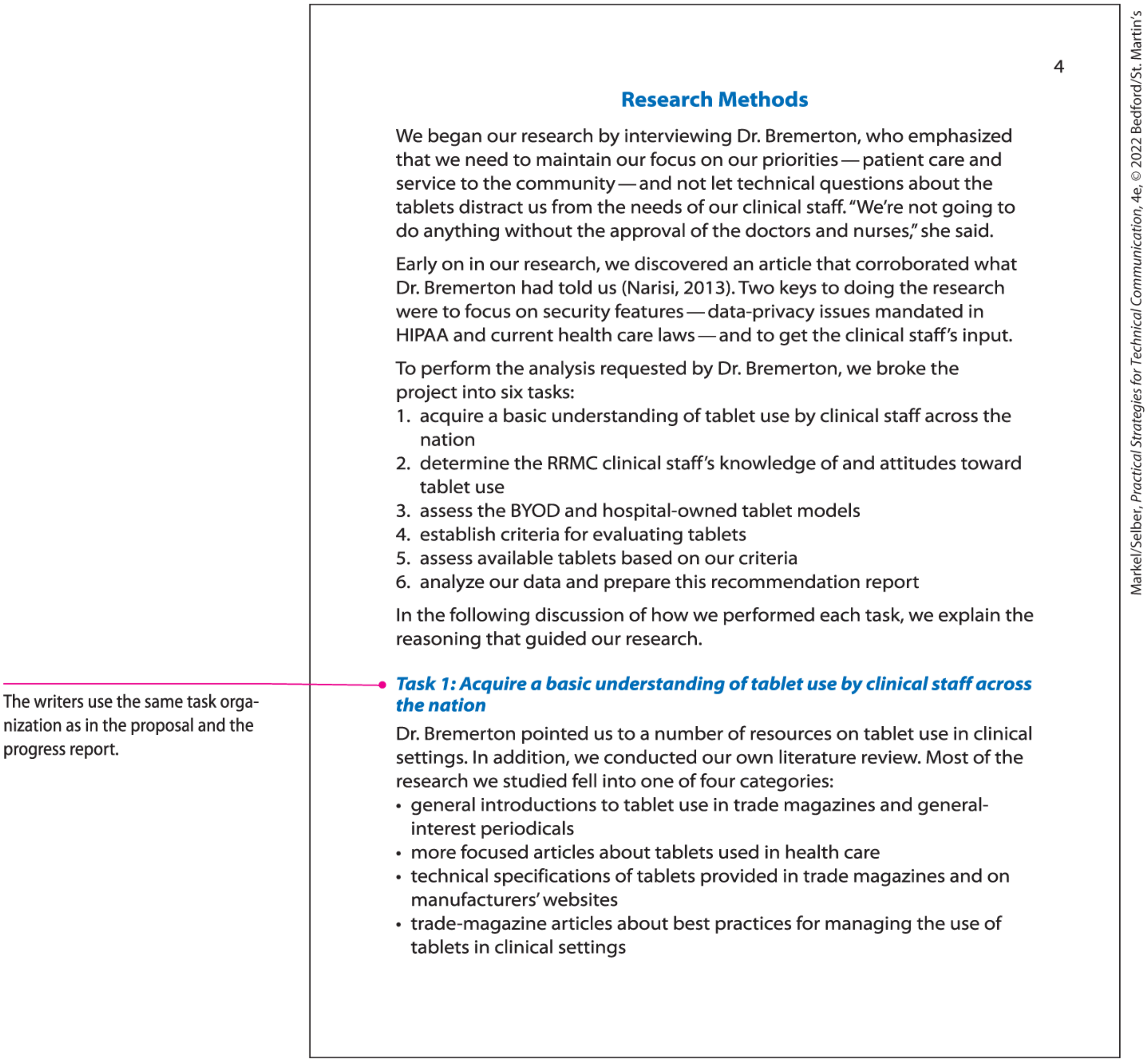
An advance organizer for the rest of the report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues, tablets, nearly half own an iPad and nearly half an Android tablet, most consider themselves expert users of their tablets, and more than two-thirds already use them in the clinical setting; by a slim margin, they would prefer a hospital-supplied model for tablet use to a B Y O D model. Our research on the two models for making tablets available also found more advantages and fewer disadvantages to the hospital-supplied model. Our principal finding regarding tablets themselves is that the best tablets for our use would be those designed and built for health-care applications. These tablets are rugged and easy to disinfect, and they offer a wealth of hardware and software options that would streamline our daily tasks without introducing any risks either to patient care or to data privacy. Unfortunately, purchasing enough of these tablets for all clinical staff would exceed our budget. To determine whether any of the general purpose tablets meet all our needs, we would need to conduct hands-on testing regarding disinfection, battery life, durability, and several other technical criteria. We recommend, first, that we reassess whether the budget will permit consideration of any of the health-care-specific tablets. If that is not possible, we recommend that we ask manufacturers of a small set of general-purpose tablets to let us test their products and invite our clinical staff to try them. This option would yield data that would help us decide how to proceed. A notation reads, Notice the writers’ use of the phrase “we recommend.” Repeating key terms in this way helps readers understand the logic of a report and concentrate on the technical information it contains. In the following sections, we provide additional details about our research methods, the results we obtained, the conclusions we drew from those results, and our recommendation. A notation reads, An advance organizer for the rest of the report.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



4

Research Methods

We began our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. "We're not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses," she said.

Early on in our research, we discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff's input.

To perform the analysis requested by Dr. Bremerton, we broke the project into six tasks:

1. acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation
2. determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use
3. assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models
4. establish criteria for evaluating tablets
5. assess available tablets based on our criteria
6. analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report

In the following discussion of how we performed each task, we explain the reasoning that guided our research.

The writers use the same task organization as in the proposal and the progress report.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we conducted our own literature review. Most of the research we studied fell into one of four categories:

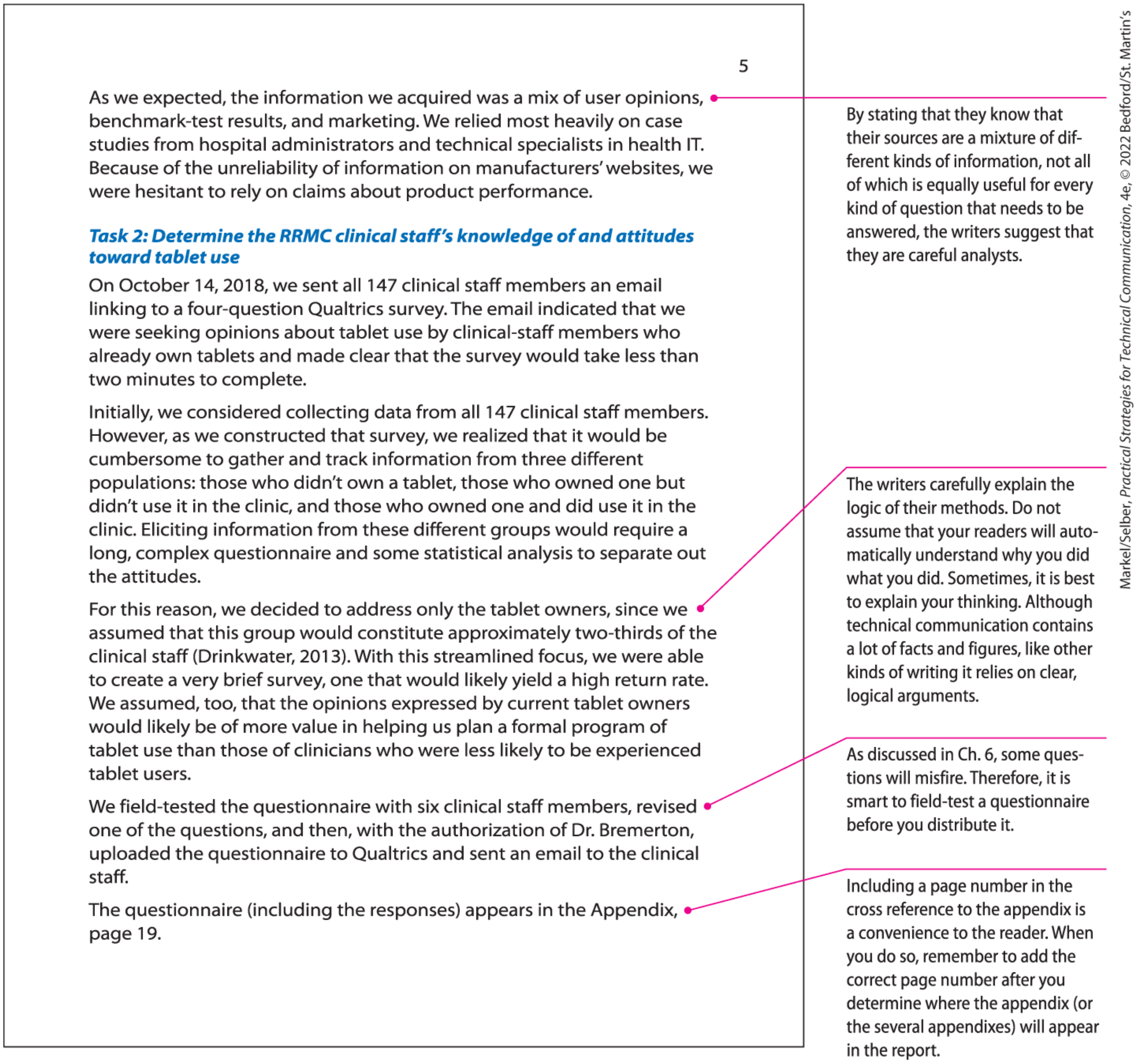
- general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general-interest periodicals
- more focused articles about tablets used in health care
- technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers' websites
- trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Research Methods. We began our research by interviewing Dr. Bremerton, who emphasized that we need to maintain our focus on our priorities — patient care and service to the community — and not let technical questions about the tablets distract us from the needs of our clinical staff. “We’re not going to do anything without the approval of the doctors and nurses,” she said. Early on in our research, we discovered an article that corroborated what Dr. Bremerton had told us (Narisi, 2013). Two keys to doing the research were to focus on security features — data-privacy issues mandated in HIPAA and current health care laws — and to get the clinical staff’s input. To perform the analysis requested by Dr. Bremerton, we broke the project into six tasks: 1. acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation 2. determine the R R M C clinical staff’s knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use 3. assess the B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models 4. establish criteria for evaluating tablets 5. assess available tablets based on our criteria 6. analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report In the following discussion of how we performed each task, we explain the reasoning that guided our research. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation. A note reads, The writers use the same task organization as in the proposal and the progress report. Dr. Bremerton pointed us to a number of resources on tablet use in clinical settings. In addition, we conducted our own literature review. Most of the research we studied fell into one of four categories: Bullet general introductions to tablet use in trade magazines and general interest periodicals Bullet more focused articles about tablets used in health care Bullet technical specifications of tablets provided in trade magazines and on manufacturers’ websites Bullet trade-magazine articles about best practices for managing the use of tablets in clinical settings A notation reads, The writers use the same task organization as in the proposal and the progress report.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



As we expected, the information we acquired was a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We relied most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health IT. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we were hesitant to rely on claims about product performance.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. The email indicated that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

Initially, we considered collecting data from all 147 clinical staff members. However, as we constructed that survey, we realized that it would be cumbersome to gather and track information from three different populations: those who didn't own a tablet, those who owned one but didn't use it in the clinic, and those who owned one and did use it in the clinic. Eliciting information from these different groups would require a long, complex questionnaire and some statistical analysis to separate out the attitudes.

For this reason, we decided to address only the tablet owners, since we assumed that this group would constitute approximately two-thirds of the clinical staff (Drinkwater, 2013). With this streamlined focus, we were able to create a very brief survey, one that would likely yield a high return rate. We assumed, too, that the opinions expressed by current tablet owners would likely be of more value in helping us plan a formal program of tablet use than those of clinicians who were less likely to be experienced tablet users.

We field-tested the questionnaire with six clinical staff members, revised one of the questions, and then, with the authorization of Dr. Bremerton, uploaded the questionnaire to Qualtrics and sent an email to the clinical staff.

The questionnaire (including the responses) appears in the Appendix, page 19.

By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which is equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts.

The writers carefully explain the logic of their methods. Do not assume that your readers will automatically understand why you did what you did. Sometimes, it is best to explain your thinking. Although technical communication contains a lot of facts and figures, like other kinds of writing it relies on clear, logical arguments.

As discussed in Ch. 6, some questions will misfire. Therefore, it is smart to field-test a questionnaire before you distribute it.

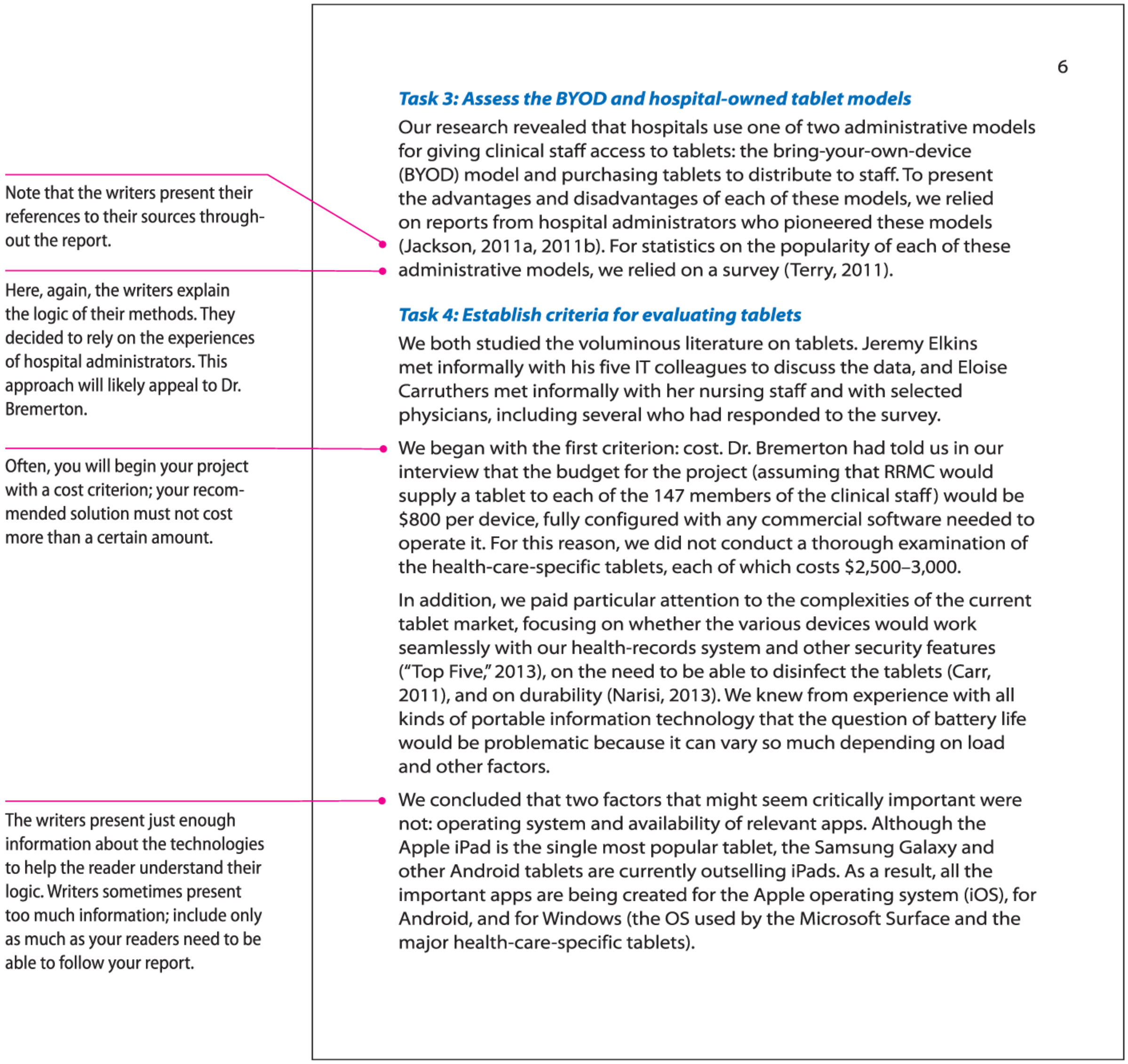
Including a page number in the cross reference to the appendix is a convenience to the reader. When you do so, remember to add the correct page number after you determine where the appendix (or the several appendixes) will appear in the report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues, As we expected, the information we acquired was a mix of user opinions, benchmark-test results, and marketing. We relied most heavily on case studies from hospital administrators and technical specialists in health I T. Because of the unreliability of information on manufacturers' websites, we were hesitant to rely on claims about product performance. A notation reads, By stating that they know that their sources are a mixture of different kinds of information, not all of which is equally useful for every kind of question that needs to be answered, the writers suggest that they are careful analysts. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 2: Determine the R R M C clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. The email indicated that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete. Initially, we considered collecting data from all 147 clinical staff members. However, as we constructed that survey, we realized that it would be cumbersome to gather and track information from three different populations: those who didn't own a tablet, those who owned one but didn't use it in the clinic, and those who owned one and did use it in the clinic. Eliciting information from these different groups would require a long, complex questionnaire and some statistical analysis to separate out the attitudes. For this reason, we decided to address only the tablet owners, since we assumed that this group would constitute approximately two-thirds of the clinical staff (Drinkwater, 2013). With this streamlined focus, we were able to create a very brief survey, one that would likely yield a high return rate. We assumed, too, that the opinions expressed by current tablet owners would likely be of more value in helping us plan a formal program of tablet use than those of clinicians who were less likely to be experienced tablet users. A notation reads, The writers carefully explain the logic of their methods. Do not assume that your readers will automatically understand why you did what you did. Sometimes, it is best to explain your thinking. Although technical communication contains a lot of facts and figures, like other kinds of writing it relies on clear, logical arguments. We field-tested the questionnaire with six clinical staff members, revised one of the questions, and then, with the authorization of Dr. Bremerton, uploaded the questionnaire to Qualtrics and sent an email to the clinical staff. A note reads, As discussed in Ch. 6, some questions will misfire. Therefore, it is smart to field-test a questionnaire before you distribute it. The questionnaire (including the responses) appears in the Appendix, page 19. A note reads, Including a page number in the cross reference to the appendix is a convenience to the reader. When you do so, remember to add the correct page number after you determine where the appendix (or the several appendixes) will appear in the report.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



6

Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Our research revealed that hospitals use one of two administrative models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. To present the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models, we relied on reports from hospital administrators who pioneered these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b). For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we relied on a survey (Terry, 2011).

Note that the writers present their references to their sources throughout the report.

Here, again, the writers explain the logic of their methods. They decided to rely on the experiences of hospital administrators. This approach will likely appeal to Dr. Bremerton.

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

We both studied the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins met informally with his five IT colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who had responded to the survey.

We began with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton had told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that RRMC would supply a tablet to each of the 147 members of the clinical staff) would be $800 per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we did not conduct a thorough examination of the health-care-specific tablets, each of which costs $2,500–3,000.

Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion; your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount.

In addition, we paid particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security features ("Top Five," 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). We knew from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors.

We concluded that two factors that might seem critically important were not: operating system and availability of relevant apps. Although the Apple iPad is the single most popular tablet, the Samsung Galaxy and other Android tablets are currently outselling iPads. As a result, all the important apps are being created for the Apple operating system (iOS), for Android, and for Windows (the OS used by the Microsoft Surface and the major health-care-specific tablets).

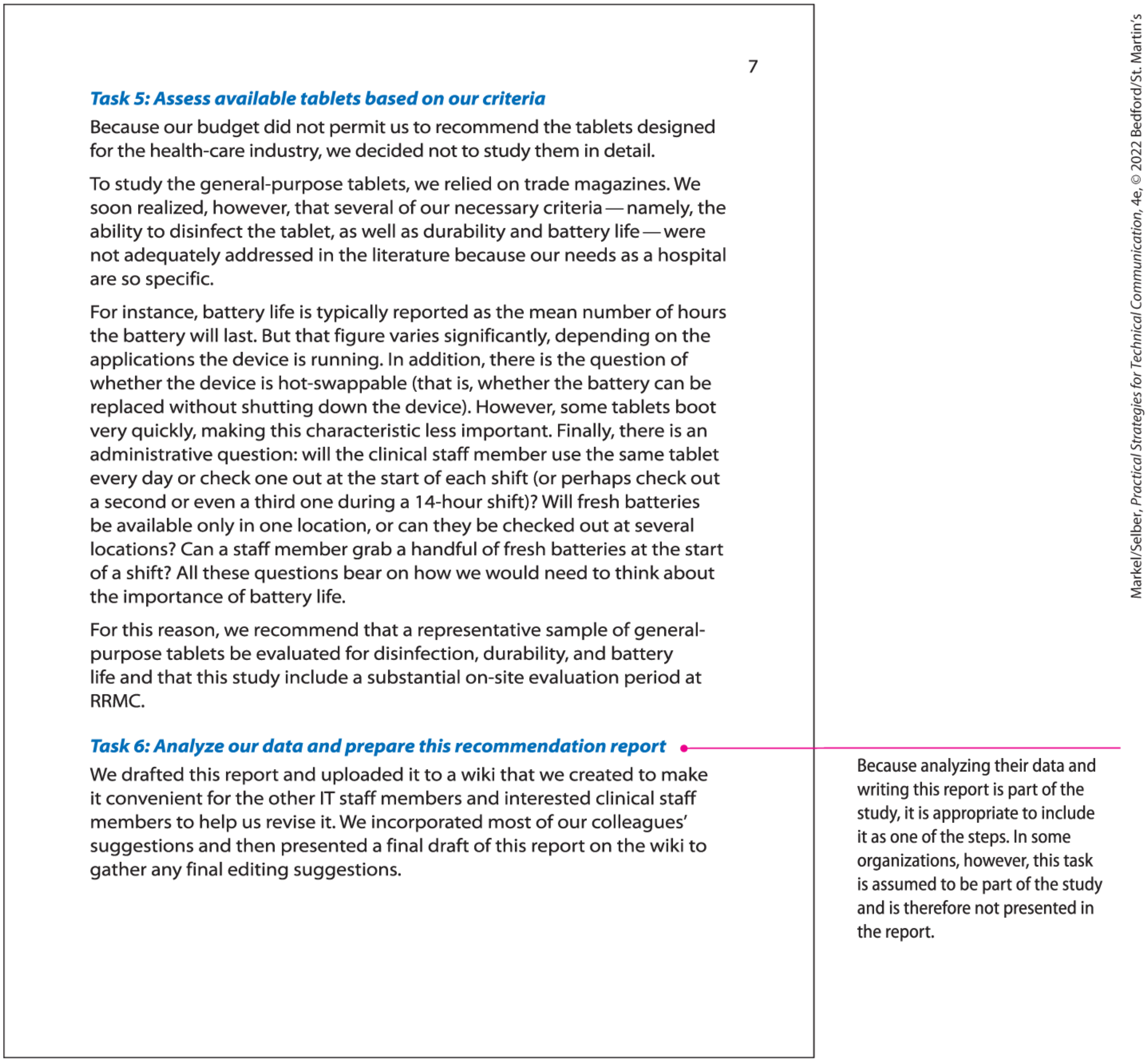
The writers present just enough information about the technologies to help the reader understand their logic. Writers sometimes present too much information; include only as much as your readers need to be able to follow your report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, italic subhead reads, Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models (bold, italic) Our research revealed that hospitals use one of two administrative models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) model and purchasing tablets to distribute to staff. To present the advantages and disadvantages of each of these models, we relied on reports from hospital administrators who pioneered these models (Jackson, 2011a, 2011b). For statistics on the popularity of each of these administrative models, we relied on a survey (Terry, 2011). Two notations read, Note that the writers present their references to their sources throughout the report; Here, again, the writers explain the logic of their methods. They decided to rely on the experiences of hospital administrators. This approach will likely appeal to Dr. Bremerton. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets We both studied the voluminous literature on tablets. Jeremy Elkins met informally with his five I T colleagues to discuss the data, and Eloise Carruthers met informally with her nursing staff and with selected physicians, including several who had responded to the survey. We began with the first criterion: cost. Dr. Bremerton had told us in our interview that the budget for the project (assuming that R R M C would supply a tablet to each of the 147 members of the clinical staff) would be 800 dollars per device, fully configured with any commercial software needed to operate it. For this reason, we did not conduct a thorough examination of the health-care-specific tablets, each of which costs 2,500–3,000 dollars. A notation reads, Often, you will begin your project with a cost criterion; your recommended solution must not cost more than a certain amount. In addition, we paid particular attention to the complexities of the current tablet market, focusing on whether the various devices would work seamlessly with our health-records system and other security feature (“Top Five,” 2013), on the need to be able to disinfect the tablets (Carr, 2011), and on durability (Narisi, 2013). We knew from experience with all kinds of portable information technology that the question of battery life would be problematic because it can vary so much depending on load and other factors. We concluded that two factors that might seem critically important were not: operating system and availability of relevant apps. Although the Apple iPad is the single most popular tablet, the Samsung Galaxy and other Android tablets are currently outselling iPads. As a result, all the important apps are being created for the Apple operating system (I O S), for Android, and for Windows (the O S used by the Microsoft Surface and the major health-care-specific tablets). A notation reads, The writers present just enough information about the technologies to help the reader understand their logic. Writers sometimes present too much information; include only as much as your readers need to be able to follow your report.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



7

Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

Because our budget did not permit us to recommend the tablets designed for the health-care industry, we decided not to study them in detail.

To study the general-purpose tablets, we relied on trade magazines. We soon realized, however, that several of our necessary criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — were not adequately addressed in the literature because our needs as a hospital are so specific.

For instance, battery life is typically reported as the mean number of hours the battery will last. But that figure varies significantly, depending on the applications the device is running. In addition, there is the question of whether the device is hot-swappable (that is, whether the battery can be replaced without shutting down the device). However, some tablets boot very quickly, making this characteristic less important. Finally, there is an administrative question: will the clinical staff member use the same tablet every day or check one out at the start of each shift (or perhaps check out a second or even a third one during a 14-hour shift)? Will fresh batteries be available only in one location, or can they be checked out at several locations? Can a staff member grab a handful of fresh batteries at the start of a shift? All these questions bear on how we would need to think about the importance of battery life.

For this reason, we recommend that a representative sample of general-purpose tablets be evaluated for disinfection, durability, and battery life and that this study include a substantial on-site evaluation period at RRMC.

Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report

We drafted this report and uploaded it to a wiki that we created to make it convenient for the other IT staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We incorporated most of our colleagues' suggestions and then presented a final draft of this report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

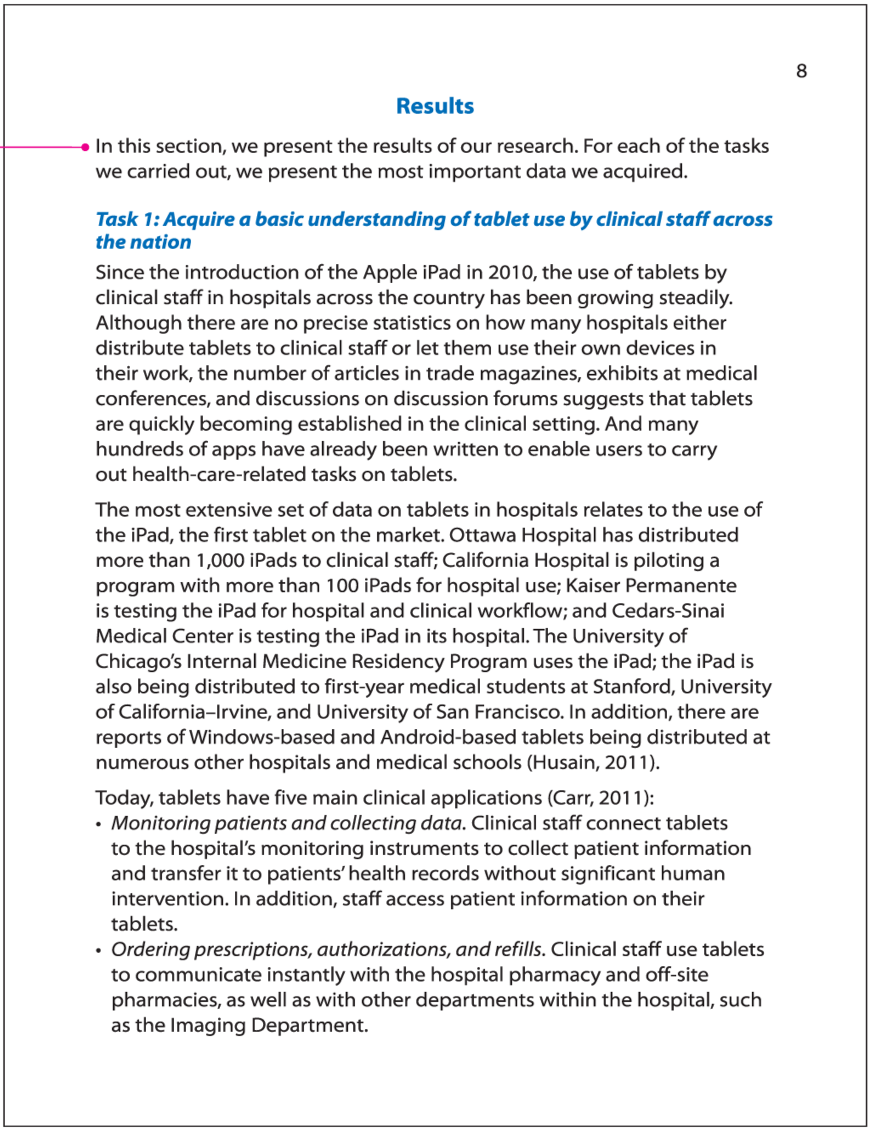
Because analyzing their data and writing this report is part of the study, it is appropriate to include it as one of the steps. In some organizations, however, this task is assumed to be part of the study and is therefore not presented in the report.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria Because our budget did not permit us to recommend the tablets designed for the health-care industry, we decided not to study them in detail. To study the general-purpose tablets, we relied on trade magazines. We soon realized, however, that several of our necessary criteria — namely, the ability to disinfect the tablet, as well as durability and battery life — were not adequately addressed in the literature because our needs as a hospital are so specific. For instance, battery life is typically reported as the mean number of hours the battery will last. But that figure varies significantly, depending on the applications the device is running. In addition, there is the question of whether the device is hot-swappable (that is, whether the battery can be replaced without shutting down the device). However, some tablets boot very quickly, making this characteristic less important. Finally, there is an administrative question: will the clinical staff member use the same tablet every day or check one out at the start of each shift (or perhaps check out a second or even a third one during a 14-hour shift)? Will fresh batteries be available only in one location, or can they be checked out at several locations? Can a staff member grab a handful of fresh batteries at the start of a shift? All these questions bear on how we would need to think about the importance of battery life. For this reason, we recommend that a representative sample of general purpose tablets be evaluated for disinfection, durability, and battery life and that this study include a substantial on-site evaluation period at R R M C. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 6: Analyze our data and prepare this recommendation report. A note reads, Because analyzing their data and writing this report is part of the study, it is appropriate to include it as one of the steps. In some organizations, however, this task is assumed to be part of the study and is therefore not presented in the report. We drafted this report and uploaded it to a wiki that we created to make it convenient for the other IT staff members and interested clinical staff members to help us revise it. We incorporated most of our colleagues' suggestions and then presented a final draft of this report on the wiki to gather any final editing suggestions.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



8

Results

In this section, we present the results of our research. For each of the tasks we carried out, we present the most important data we acquired.

Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation

Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets.

The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago's Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California–Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011).

Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011):

- *Monitoring patients and collecting data.* Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital's monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients' health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets.
- *Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills.* Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.

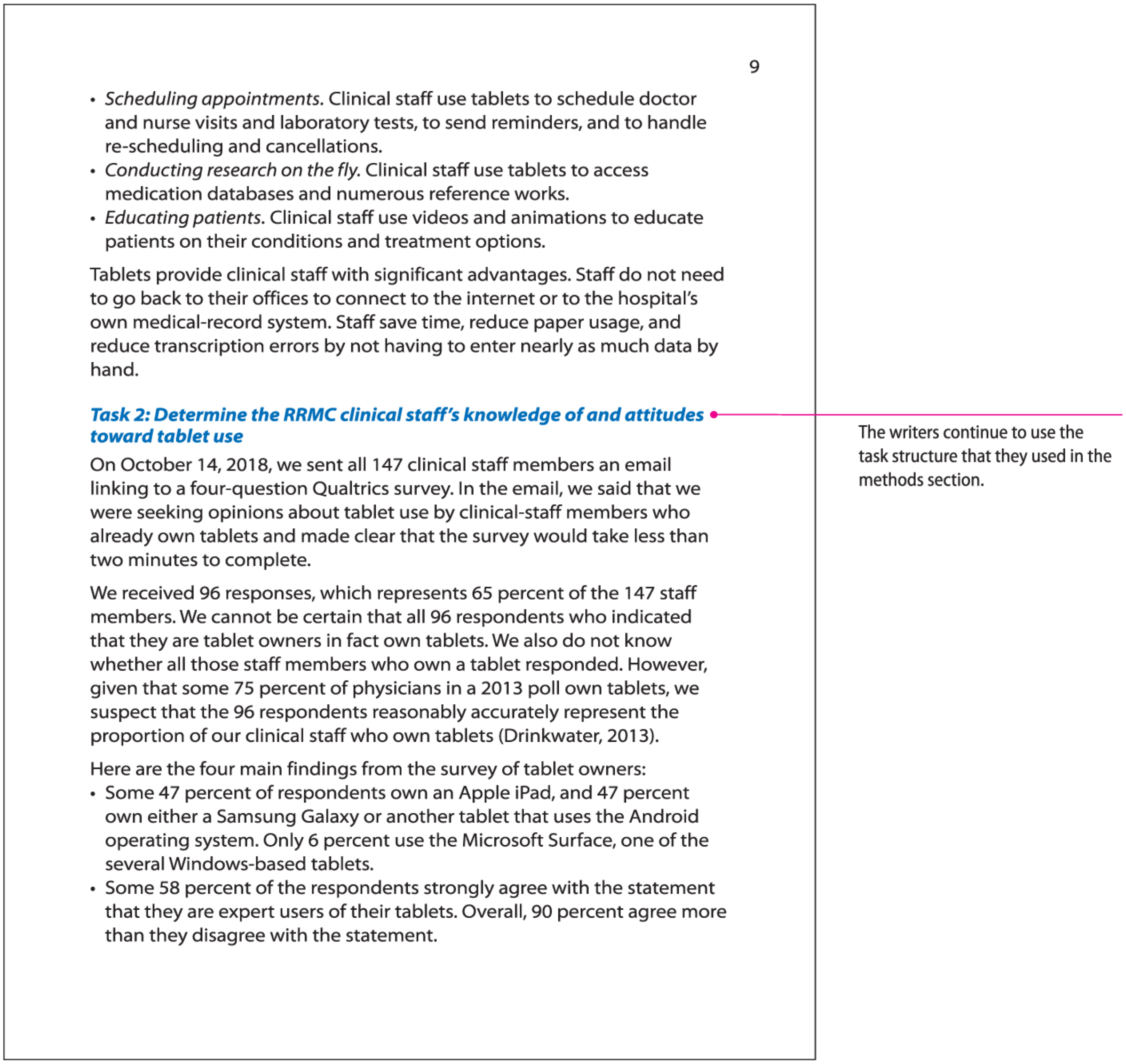
The writers present an advance organizer for the results section.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Results In this section, we present the results of our research. For each of the tasks we carried out, we present the most important data we acquired. A note reads, The writers present an advance organizer for the results section. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 1: Acquire a basic understanding of tablet use by clinical staff across the nation Since the introduction of the Apple iPad in 2010, the use of tablets by clinical staff in hospitals across the country has been growing steadily. Although there are no precise statistics on how many hospitals either distribute tablets to clinical staff or let them use their own devices in their work, the number of articles in trade magazines, exhibits at medical conferences, and discussions on discussion forums suggests that tablets are quickly becoming established in the clinical setting. And many hundreds of apps have already been written to enable users to carry out health-care-related tasks on tablets. The most extensive set of data on tablets in hospitals relates to the use of the iPad, the first tablet on the market. Ottawa Hospital has distributed more than 1,000 iPads to clinical staff; California Hospital is piloting a program with more than 100 iPads for hospital use; Kaiser Permanente is testing the iPad for hospital and clinical workflow; and Cedars-Sinai Medical Center is testing the iPad in its hospital. The University of Chicago's Internal Medicine Residency Program uses the iPad; the iPad is also being distributed to first-year medical students at Stanford, University of California Irvine, and University of San Francisco. In addition, there are reports of Windows-based and Android-based tablets being distributed at numerous other hospitals and medical schools (Husain, 2011). Today, tablets have five main clinical applications (Carr, 2011): Bullet Monitoring patients and collecting data. Clinical staff connect tablets to the hospital's monitoring instruments to collect patient information and transfer it to patients' health records without significant human intervention. In addition, staff access patient information on their tablets. Bullet Ordering prescriptions, authorizations, and refills. Clinical staff use tablets to communicate instantly with the hospital pharmacy and off-site pharmacies, as well as with other departments within the hospital, such as the Imaging Department.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



9

- *Scheduling appointments*. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations.
- *Conducting research on the fly*. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works.
- *Educating patients*. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educate patients on their conditions and treatment options.

Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital's own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand.

Task 2: Determine the RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

The writers continue to use the task structure that they used in the methods section.

On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete.

We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents reasonably accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013).

Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners:

- Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets.
- Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues, Bullet Scheduling appointments. Clinical staff use tablets to schedule doctor and nurse visits and laboratory tests, to send reminders, and to handle re-scheduling and cancellations. Bullet Conducting research on the fly. Clinical staff use tablets to access medication databases and numerous reference works. Bullet Educating patients. Clinical staff use videos and animations to educate patients on their conditions and treatment options. Tablets provide clinical staff with significant advantages. Staff do not need to go back to their offices to connect to the internet or to the hospital's own medical-record system. Staff save time, reduce paper usage, and reduce transcription errors by not having to enter nearly as much data by hand. A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 2: Determine the R R M C clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. A notation reads, The writers continue to use the task structure that they used in the methods section. On October 14, 2018, we sent all 147 clinical staff members an email linking to a four-question Qualtrics survey. In the email, we said that we were seeking opinions about tablet use by clinical-staff members who already own tablets and made clear that the survey would take less than two minutes to complete. We received 96 responses, which represents 65 percent of the 147 staff members. We cannot be certain that all 96 respondents who indicated that they are tablet owners in fact own tablets. We also do not know whether all those staff members who own a tablet responded. However, given that some 75 percent of physicians in a 2013 poll own tablets, we suspect that the 96 respondents reasonably accurately represent the proportion of our clinical staff who own tablets (Drinkwater, 2013). Here are the four main findings from the survey of tablet owners: Bullet Some 47 percent of respondents own an Apple iPad, and 47 percent own either a Samsung Galaxy or another tablet that uses the Android operating system. Only 6 percent use the Microsoft Surface, one of the several Windows-based tablets. Bullet Some 58 percent of the respondents strongly agree with the statement that they are expert users of their tablets. Overall, 90 percent agree more than they disagree with the statement.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

- Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had IT do so for them.
- Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by RRMC. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all.

Task 3: Assess the BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (BYOD) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model.

The BYOD model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets.

The main advantage of the BYOD model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not own their own). Todd Richardson, CIO with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011b), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn't have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account.

However, there are three main disadvantages to the BYOD model:

- Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues, Bullet Some 63 percent of respondents use their tablets for at least one clinical application. They have either loaded apps on their tablets themselves or had I T do so for them. Bullet Some 27 percent of the respondents would prefer to continue to use their own tablets for clinical applications, whereas 38 percent would prefer to use a tablet supplied by R R M C. Some 35 percent had no strong feelings either way. None of the respondents indicated that they would prefer not to use a tablet at all. Task 3: Assess the B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models (bold, italic) Currently, hospitals use one of two models for giving clinical staff access to tablets: the bring-your-own-device (B Y O D) model and the purchase model, whereby the hospital purchases tablets to distribute to staff. In this section, we will present our findings on the relative advantages of each model. The B Y O D model is based on the fact that, nationally, some three-quarters of physicians already own tablets (with the Apple iPad the single most popular model) (Drinkwater, 2013). We could find no data on how many nurses own tablets. The main advantage of the B Y O D model is that clinical staff already know and like their tablets; therefore, they are motivated to use them and less likely to need extensive training. In addition, the hardware costs are eliminated (or almost eliminated, since some hospitals choose to purchase some tablets for staff who do not own their own). Todd Richardson, C I O with Deaconess Health System, Evansville, Indiana (Jackson, 2011b), argues that staff members who own their own tablets use and maintain them carefully: they know how to charge, clean, store, and protect them. In addition, the hospital doesn’t have to worry about the question of liability if staff members lose them during personal use. And if the staff member moves on to a new position at a different hospital, there is no dispute about who owns the information on the tablet. All the hospital has to do is disable the staff member's account. However, there are three main disadvantages to the B Y O D model: Bullet Some clinical staff do not have their own tablets, and some who do don't want to use them at work; to make the advantages of tablet use

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members.
- Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital IT department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by IT can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself.
- Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital.

The other model for making tablets available to clinical staff is for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member.

The purchase model offers two distinct advantages, as described by Dale Potter, CIO of 1,300-bed Ottawa Hospital in Ontario, Canada. Potter has purchased more than 2,000 iPads for his staff (Jackson, 2011a):
- The hospital controls the software and apps loaded on the tablets and can even create its own apps. For instance, Potter hired 120 developers to create apps.
- The hospital reduces labor costs because IT can load exactly the same set of apps and other software on each machine. Updates and upgrades also are far simpler to manage when all the devices are the same.

The main disadvantages of the purchase model are the following:
- Staff members might not like the tablet that the hospital chooses.
- Staff members might need to be trained to use the tablet.
- Liability issues related to loss of the tablets must be addressed officially in the employment contract between the hospital and the staff member.

Beginning in 2010 with the introduction of the iPad, most hospitals used the BYOD model; clinical staff brought their own tablets to work and started to think about ways to use them in a clinical setting. As time passed, however, and more people began to acquire tablets from different manufacturers, hospitals began to see the advantages of standardizing tablet use. A 2011 survey (Terry, 2011) showed that 40 percent of hospitals use the BYOD model, whereas 55 percent of hospitals support only devices provided or owned by the institution.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text continues, available to all the clinical staff, therefore, the hospital needs to decide whether to purchase tablets and distribute them to these staff members. Bullet Labor costs are high because each tablet needs to be examined carefully by the hospital I T department to ensure that it contains no software that might interfere with or be incompatible with the health-care software that needs to be loaded onto it. This labor-intensive assessment by I T can seriously erode the cost savings from not having to buy the tablet itself. Bullet Chances of loss increase because the staff member is more likely to use the tablet at home as well as in the hospital. The other model for making tablets available to clinical staff is for the hospital to purchase the same tablet for each staff member. The purchase model offers two distinct advantages, as described by Dale Potter, C I O of 1,300-bed Ottawa Hospital in Ontario, Canada. Potter has purchased more than 2,000 iPads for his staff (Jackson, 2011a): Bullet The hospital controls the software and apps loaded on the tablets and can even create its own apps. For instance, Potter hired 120 developers to create apps. Bullet The hospital reduces labor costs because I T can load exactly the same set of apps and other software on each machine. Updates and upgrades also are far simpler to manage when all the devices are the same. The main disadvantages of the purchase model are the following: Bullet Staff members might not like the tablet that the hospital chooses. Bullet Staff members might need to be trained to use the tablet. Bullet Liability issues related to loss of the tablets must be addressed officially in the employment contract between the hospital and the staff member. Beginning in 2010 with the introduction of the iPad, most hospitals used the B Y O D model; clinical staff brought their own tablets to workand started to think about ways to use them in a clinical setting. As time passed, however, and more people began to acquire tablets from different manufacturers, hospitals began to see the advantages of standardizing tablet use. A 2011 survey (Terry, 2011) showed that 40 percent of hospitals use the B Y O D model, whereas 55 percent of hospitals support only devices provided or owned by the institution.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets

Our interview with Dr. Bremerton, as well as our research in the available literature, yielded four *necessary* criteria and two *desirable* criteria for tablet use at RRMC.

A tablet that does not meet a necessary criterion would be eliminated from consideration. The four necessary criteria are the following:

- *Cost.* Each device must cost less than $800, fully configured for use.
- *HIPAA compliance.* We cannot use any device or technology that would jeopardize our compliance with the HIPAA and current health care privacy standards for medical information. What this means, in essence, is that a tablet must operate seamlessly with our electronic health-records system, Cerner, which we access through our current utility, Citrix. The tablet must duplicate our current desktop and remote-access capabilities.
- *Other security features.* The tablet must support basic security features, including encryption, remote wipe (IT's ability to remove data on a lost tablet), auto-lock (that cannot be turned off except by IT), and perimeter settings (IT's ability to prevent use of a tablet that has strayed a certain distance from the server) ("Top Five," 2013).
- *Ease of disinfection.* Because the tablets would be used in a clinical setting, they would be subject to the same standards of disinfection as any other equipment or device. A tablet that cannot be disinfected effectively and easily would not be an appropriate choice (Carr, 2011).

In addition, we have established two other criteria against which to evaluate tablets. We have deemed these criteria desirable; a tablet that does not meet a desirable criterion would not be eliminated from consideration.

- *Durability.* Because the tablet would be carried around within the hospital and sometimes would be used in close quarters, it likely would be dropped or bumped. The more durable, the more desirable the tablet would be.
- *Long battery life.* Our clinical staff routinely work shifts as long as 14 hours. The longer the battery life, the better. Related to battery life is the hot-swap feature. In a hot-swappable device, the battery can be removed and replaced with a fresh one without having to shut down the tablet.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 4: Establish criteria for evaluating tablets Our interview with Dr. Bremerton, as well as our research in the available literature, yielded four necessary criteria and two desirable criteria for tablet use at R R M C. A tablet that does not meet a necessary criterion would be eliminated from consideration. The four necessary criteria are the following: Bullet Cost. Each device must cost less than 800 dollars, fully configured for use. Bullet H I P A A compliance. We cannot use any device or technology that would jeopardize our compliance with the H I P A A and current health care privacy standards for medical information. What this means, in essence, is that a tablet must operate seamlessly with our electronic health records system, Cerner, which we access through our current utility, Citrix. The tablet must duplicate our current desktop and remote-access capabilities. Bullet Other security features. The tablet must support basic security features, including encryption, remote wipe (I T's ability to remove data on a lost tablet), auto-lock (that cannot be turned off except by I T), and perimeter settings (I T's ability to prevent use of a tablet that has strayed a certain distance from the server) ("Top Five," 2013). Bullet Ease of disinfection. Because the tablets would be used in a clinical setting, they would be subject to the same standards of disinfection as any other equipment or device. A tablet that cannot be disinfected effectively and easily would not be an appropriate choice (Carr, 2011). In addition, we have established two other criteria against which to evaluate tablets. We have deemed these criteria desirable; a tablet that does not meet a desirable criterion would not be eliminated from consideration. Bullet Durability. Because the tablet would be carried around within the hospital and sometimes would be used in close quarters, it likely would be dropped or bumped. The more durable, the more desirable the tablet would be. Bullet Long battery life. Our clinical staff routinely work shifts as long as 14 hours. The longer the battery life, the better. Related to battery life is the hot-swap feature. In a hot-swappable device, the battery can be removed and replaced with a fresh one without having to shut down the tablet.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria

One challenge we faced is that it was impractical to do a comprehensive assessment of all of the approximately 100 tablets available on the market. A second challenge is that tablets fall into a dizzying variety of sometimes overlapping categories. For example, the single most popular tablet is the Apple iPad, which runs on Apple's proprietary operating system. Many other tablets run on the Android system. Some, like the Amazon Kindle Fire, run on specialized configurations of Android. And Microsoft's Surface runs on Windows. There are general-purpose tablets, like the Samsung, made for the consumer market, and there are specialized tablets, like the Motion, designed for the health-care industry (Phillips, 2013). There are rugged tablets designed to meet military specifications for durability. Some tablets have USB ports for easy connection to existing clinical instruments and devices, as well as specialized features such as barcode-reading and RFID capabilities. Some tablets come with dozens of native (pre-installed) apps related to health care.

In short, although many brands of tablet are similar, no two are identical. As a result, we decided to review a small set of tablets that are mentioned frequently in health-care magazines and journals. We were sure to include the iPad, the Microsoft Surface, and several Android tablets. We also looked briefly at several tablets specially designed and marketed for health-care applications.

We present our basic findings by returning to our set of necessary and desired criteria.

The four necessary criteria are the following:

- *Cost.* Unfortunately, our cost criterion of $800 per unit eliminates all the tablets designed for health-care applications. These tablets, which cost between $2,500 and $3,000, are easy to disinfect and highly durable and include many desirable features such as barcode scanners, RFID readers, speech, and smart-card readers. The leading tablets in this category are the ProScribe Medical Tablet PC, the Sahara Slate PC, the MediSlate MCA, the Motion C5v Medical Tablet PC, the Teguar TA-10 Medical Tablet PC, the Advantech Medical PC, and the Arbor Antibacterial Medical Tablet.
- *HIPAA compliance.* All of the tablets we reviewed would enable us to remain in compliance with HIPAA and the current health care laws, and all would enable us to use our current record system, Cerner, through our Citrix utility. Some of the tablets have native apps to support this access, whereas others use virtual private networks.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, italic subheading reads, Task 5: Assess available tablets based on our criteria One challenge we faced is that it was impractical to do a comprehensive assessment of all of the approximately 100 tablets available on the market. A second challenge is that tablets fall into a dizzying variety of sometimes overlapping categories. For example, the single most popular tablet is the Apple iPad, which runs on Apple's proprietary operating system. Many other tablets run on the Android system. Some, like the Amazon Kindle Fire, run on specialized configurations of Android. And Microsoft's Surface runs on Windows. There are general-purpose tablets, like the Samsung, made for the consumer market, and there are specialized tablets, like the Motion, designed for the health-care industry (Phillips, 2013). There are rugged tablets designed to meet military specifications for durability. Some tablets have USB ports for easy connection to existing clinical instruments and devices, as well as specialized features such as barcode-reading and RFID capabilities. Some tablets come with dozens of native (pre-installed) apps related to health care. In short, although many brands of tablet are similar, no two are identical. As a result, we decided to review a small set of tablets that are mentioned frequently in health-care magazines and journals. We were sure to include the iPad, the Microsoft Surface, and several Android tablets. We also looked briefly at several tablets specially designed and marketed for health-care applications. We present our basic findings by returning to our set of necessary and desired criteria. The four necessary criteria are the following: Bullet Cost. Unfortunately, our cost criterion of 800 dollars per unit eliminates all the tablets designed for health-care applications. These tablets, which cost between 2,500 and 3,000 dollars, are easy to disinfect and highly durable and include many desirable features such as barcode scanners, R F I D readers, speech, and smart-card readers. The leading tablets in this category are the ProScribe Medical Tablet PC, the Sahara Slate P C, the MediSlate M C A, the Motion C 5 v Medical Tablet P C, the Teguar T A-10 Medical Tablet P C, the Advantech Medical P C, and the Arbor Antibacterial Medical Tablet. Bullet H I P A A compliance. All of the tablets we reviewed would enable us to remain in compliance with H I P A A and the current health care laws, and all would enable us to use our current record system, Cerner, through our Citrix utility. Some of the tablets have native apps to support this access, whereas others use virtual private networks.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

- *Other security features*. All of the tablets we reviewed would support the basic security features we identified, although some tablets would be easier than others for IT to configure.
- *Ease of disinfection*. This proved to be a very challenging criterion to assess. On the one hand, all of the so-called ruggedized tablets, as well as all those designed for health care, met this criterion because all the surfaces are sealed. On the other hand, the general-purpose tablets were not designed to withstand medical-grade disinfectants. However, this does not necessarily mean that they would not withstand clinical disinfection. According to John Curin, head of the health-care practice at Burwood, an IT consulting firm, "I couldn't disinfect [an iPad] if I wanted to." By contrast, Dr. John Halamka, the CIO of Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center in Boston, argues that the iPad is "completely disinfectable." Even though Apple advises against using a disinfecting solution on the iPad, Halamka says he does so and has experienced no problems (Carr, 2011).

On the basis of the cost criterion, we must eliminate all the health-care-specific tablets and study only the general-purpose tablets. We need to devise a method to determine whether any of the general-purpose tablets can be adequately disinfected. For the purposes of this study, however, we decided to assess a representative subset of the general-purpose tablets based on our desirable criteria.

We will now present our major findings regarding the desirable criteria: durability and long battery life. We have decided against presenting a decision matrix because some of the technical characteristics are either imprecise or unknowable. For instance, battery life is a notoriously difficult characteristic to measure, because it can be affected greatly by so many factors.

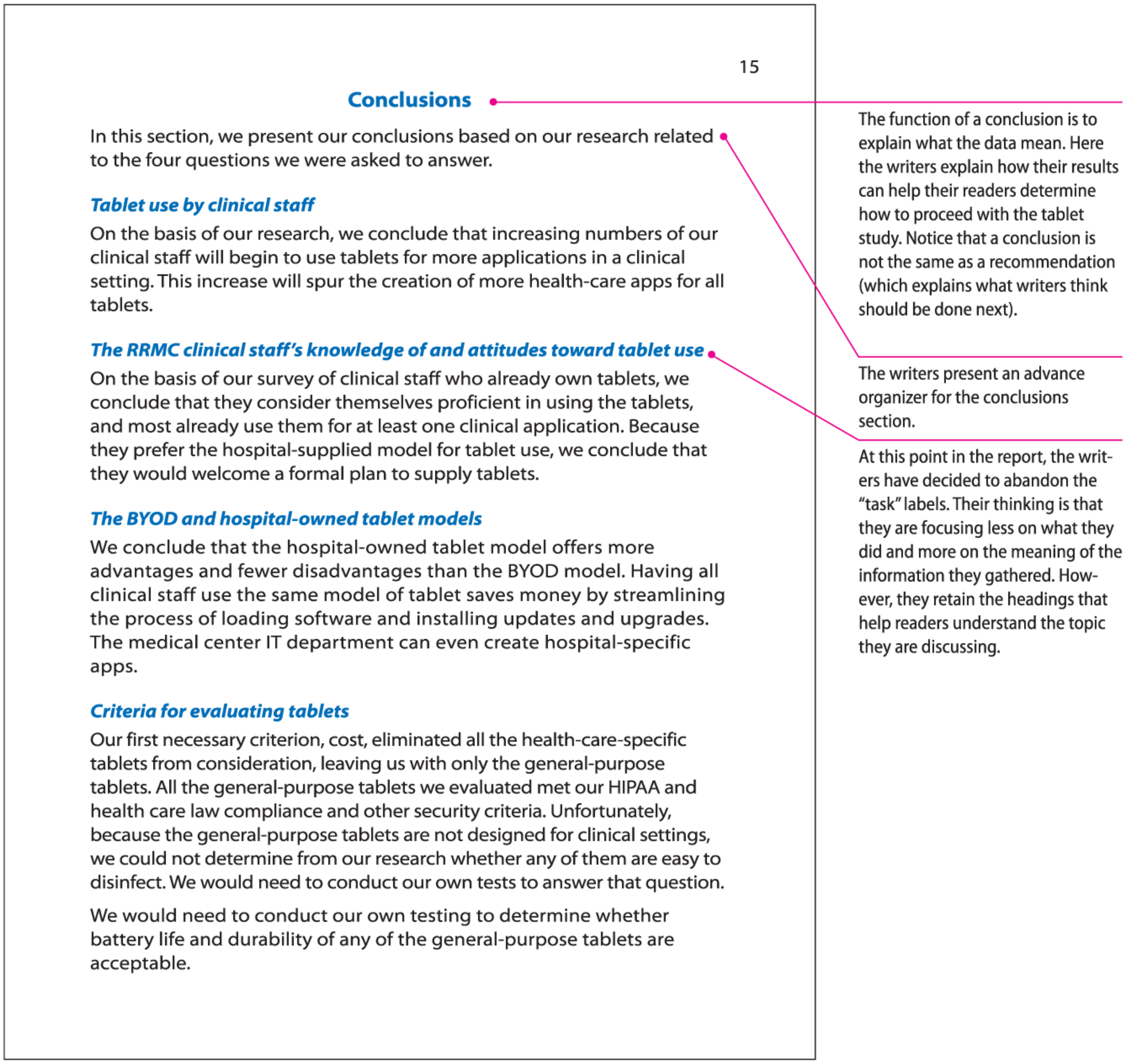
Our tentative findings are that the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy and the many other Android tablets, and the Microsoft Surface *appear* to meet our two desirable criteria. We would need to carry out our own tests of these tablets, configured with our software and appropriate apps, to determine their battery life. And we would need to determine whether any of the aftermarket protective cases would provide adequate durability. Rugged and waterproof iPad cases are available from Hard Candy Cases, OtterBox, and others. There are also waterproof solutions that are said to sterilize the iPad. In addition, there are some protective cases said to be designed specifically for clinical environments.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text reads, Bullet Other security features. All of the tablets we reviewed would support the basic security features we identified, although some tablets would be easier than others for I T to configure. Bullet Ease of disinfection. This proved to be a very challenging criterion to assess. On the one hand, all of the so-called ruggedized tablets, as well as all those designed for health care, met this criterion because all the surfaces are sealed. On the other hand, the general-purpose tablets were not designed to withstand medical-grade disinfectants. However, this does not necessarily mean that they would not withstand clinical disinfection. According to John Curin, head of the health-care practice at Burwood, an I T consulting firm, “I couldn’t disinfect [an iPad] if I wanted to.” By contrast, Dr. John Halamka, the CIO of Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center in Boston, argues that the iPad is “completely disinfectable.” Even though Apple advises against using a disinfecting solution on the iPad, Halamka says he does so and has experienced no problems (Carr, 2011). On the basis of the cost criterion, we must eliminate all the health-care-specific tablets and study only the general-purpose tablets. We need to devise a method to determine whether any of the general-purpose tablets can be adequately disinfected. For the purposes of this study, however, we decided to assess a representative subset of the general-purpose tablets based on our desirable criteria. We will now present our major findings regarding the desirable criteria: durability and long battery life. We have decided against presenting a decision matrix because some of the technical characteristics are either imprecise or unknowable. For instance, battery life is a notoriously difficult characteristic to measure, because it can be affected greatly by so many factors. Our tentative findings are that the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy and the many other Android tablets, and the Microsoft Surface appear to meet our two desirable criteria. We would need to carry out our own tests of these tablets, configured with our software and appropriate apps, to determine their battery life. And we would need to determine whether any of the aftermarket protective cases would provide adequate durability. Rugged and waterproof iPad cases are available from Hard Candy Cases, OtterBox, and others. There are also waterproof solutions that are said to sterilize the iPad. In addition, there are some protective cases said to be designed specifically for clinical environments.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



Conclusions

In this section, we present our conclusions based on our research related to the four questions we were asked to answer.

Tablet use by clinical staff

On the basis of our research, we conclude that increasing numbers of our clinical staff will begin to use tablets for more applications in a clinical setting. This increase will spur the creation of more health-care apps for all tablets.

The RRMC clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use

On the basis of our survey of clinical staff who already own tablets, we conclude that they consider themselves proficient in using the tablets, and most already use them for at least one clinical application. Because they prefer the hospital-supplied model for tablet use, we conclude that they would welcome a formal plan to supply tablets.

The BYOD and hospital-owned tablet models

We conclude that the hospital-owned tablet model offers more advantages and fewer disadvantages than the BYOD model. Having all clinical staff use the same model of tablet saves money by streamlining the process of loading software and installing updates and upgrades. The medical center IT department can even create hospital-specific apps.

Criteria for evaluating tablets

Our first necessary criterion, cost, eliminated all the health-care-specific tablets from consideration, leaving us with only the general-purpose tablets. All the general-purpose tablets we evaluated met our HIPAA and health care law compliance and other security criteria. Unfortunately, because the general-purpose tablets are not designed for clinical settings, we could not determine from our research whether any of them are easy to disinfect. We would need to conduct our own tests to answer that question.

We would need to conduct our own testing to determine whether battery life and durability of any of the general-purpose tablets are acceptable.

The function of a conclusion is to explain what the data mean. Here the writers explain how their results can help their readers determine how to proceed with the tablet study. Notice that a conclusion is not the same as a recommendation (which explains what writers think should be done next).

The writers present an advance organizer for the conclusions section.

At this point in the report, the writers have decided to abandon the "task" labels. Their thinking is that they are focusing less on what they did and more on the meaning of the information they gathered. However, they retain the headings that help readers understand the topic they are discussing.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Conclusions. A notation reads, The function of a conclusion is to explain what the data mean. Here the writers explain how their results can help their readers determine how to proceed with the tablet study. Notice that a conclusion is not the same as a recommendation (which explains what writers think should be done next). In this section, we present our conclusions based on our research related to the four questions we were asked to answer. A note reads, The writers present an advance organizer for the conclusions section. A bold, italic subheading reads, Tablet use by clinical staff On the basis of our research, we conclude that increasing numbers of our clinical staff will begin to use tablets for more applications in a clinical setting. This increase will spur the creation of more health-care apps for all tablets. A bold, italic subheading reads, The R R M C clinical staff's knowledge of and attitudes toward tablet use. A note reads, At this point in the report, the writers have decided to abandon the "task" labels. Their thinking is that they are focusing less on what they did and more on the meaning of the information they gathered. However, they retain the headings that help readers understand the topic they are discussing. On the basis of our survey of clinical staff who already own tablets, we conclude that they consider themselves proficient in using the tablets, and most already use them for at least one clinical application. Because they prefer the hospital-supplied model for tablet use, we conclude that they would welcome a formal plan to supply tablets. A bold, italic subheading reads, The B Y O D and hospital-owned tablet models. We conclude that the hospital-owned tablet model offers more advantages and fewer disadvantages than the B Y O D model. Having all clinical staff use the same model of tablet saves money by streamlining the process of loading software and installing updates and upgrades. The medical center IT department can even create hospital-specific apps. A bold, italic subheading reads, Criteria for evaluating tablets. Our first necessary criterion, cost, eliminated all the health-care-specific tablets from consideration, leaving us with only the general-purpose tablets. All the general-purpose tablets we evaluated met our H I P A A and health care law compliance and other security criteria. Unfortunately, because the general-purpose tablets are not designed for clinical settings, we could not determine from our research whether any of them are easy to disinfect. We would need to conduct our own tests to answer that question. We would need to conduct our own testing to determine whether battery life and durability of any of the general-purpose tablets are acceptable.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Assessing available tablets based on our criteria

We drew two main conclusions from our study of available tablets:

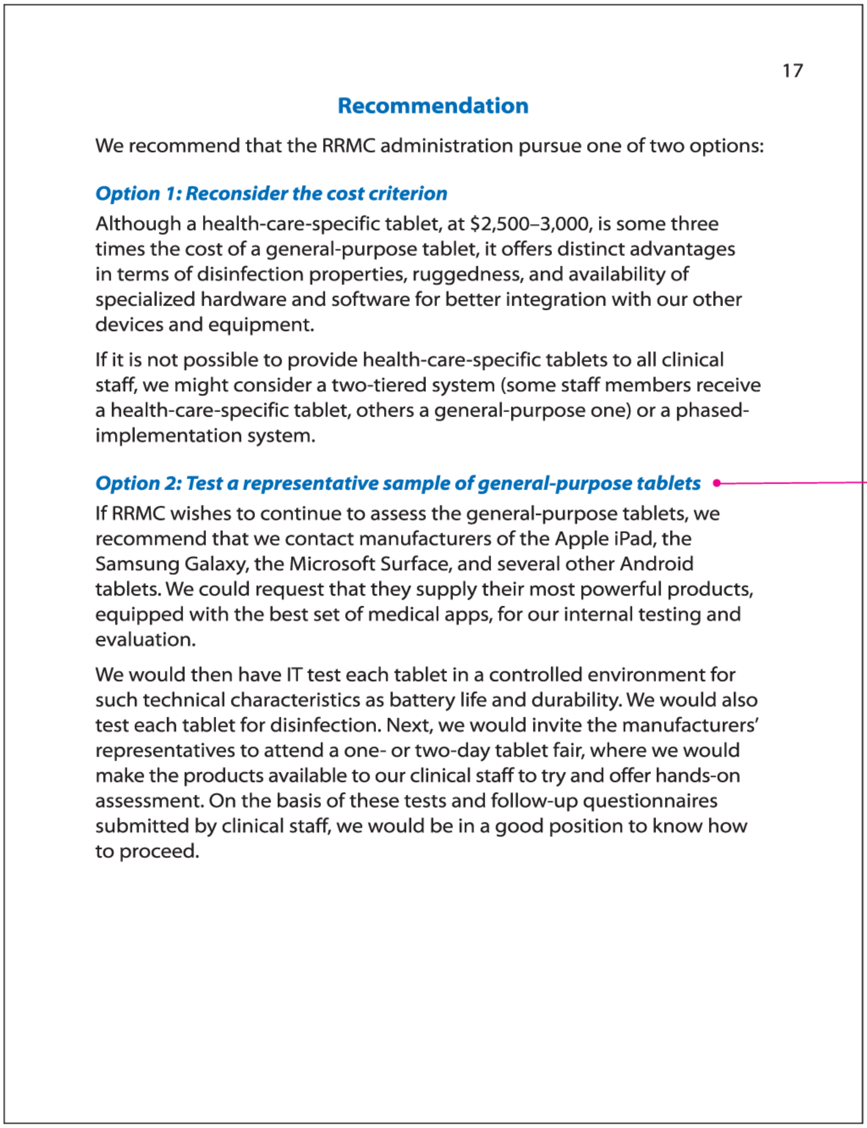
- The best tablets for our use — the ones designed and intended for health-care settings — are out of our price range. Because they meet all our criteria, we should reassess whether our budget will permit us to assess them more carefully.
- Any one of the available general-purpose tablets is potentially acceptable (provided it meets the disinfection criterion). We see no compelling reason to favor one operating system over another. Apple iPads, Android tablets, and Windows tablets all come with acceptable power, and there are plenty of health-care apps available for each type. As Android machines establish their dominance over the iPad, health-care apps for Android devices will surpass those for the iPad in variety and number.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, italic subheading reads, Assessing available tablets based on our criteria We drew two main conclusions from our study of available tablets: Bullet The best tablets for our use — the ones designed and intended for health-care settings — are out of our price range. Because they meet all our criteria, we should reassess whether our budget will permit us to assess them more carefully. Bullet Any one of the available general-purpose tablets is potentially acceptable (provided it meets the disinfection criterion). We see no compelling reason to favor one operating system over another. Apple iPads, Android tablets, and Windows tablets all come with acceptable power, and there are plenty of health-care apps available for each type. As Android machines establish their dominance over the iPad, healthcare apps for Android devices will surpass those for the iPad in variety and number.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



17

Recommendation

We recommend that the RRMC administration pursue one of two options:

Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion

Although a health-care-specific tablet, at $2,500–3,000, is some three times the cost of a general-purpose tablet, it offers distinct advantages in terms of disinfection properties, ruggedness, and availability of specialized hardware and software for better integration with our other devices and equipment.

If it is not possible to provide health-care-specific tablets to all clinical staff, we might consider a two-tiered system (some staff members receive a health-care-specific tablet, others a general-purpose one) or a phased-implementation system.

Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets

If RRMC wishes to continue to assess the general-purpose tablets, we recommend that we contact manufacturers of the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy, the Microsoft Surface, and several other Android tablets. We could request that they supply their most powerful products, equipped with the best set of medical apps, for our internal testing and evaluation.

We would then have IT test each tablet in a controlled environment for such technical characteristics as battery life and durability. We would also test each tablet for disinfection. Next, we would invite the manufacturers' representatives to attend a one- or two-day tablet fair, where we would make the products available to our clinical staff to try and offer hands-on assessment. On the basis of these tests and follow-up questionnaires submitted by clinical staff, we would be in a good position to know how to proceed.

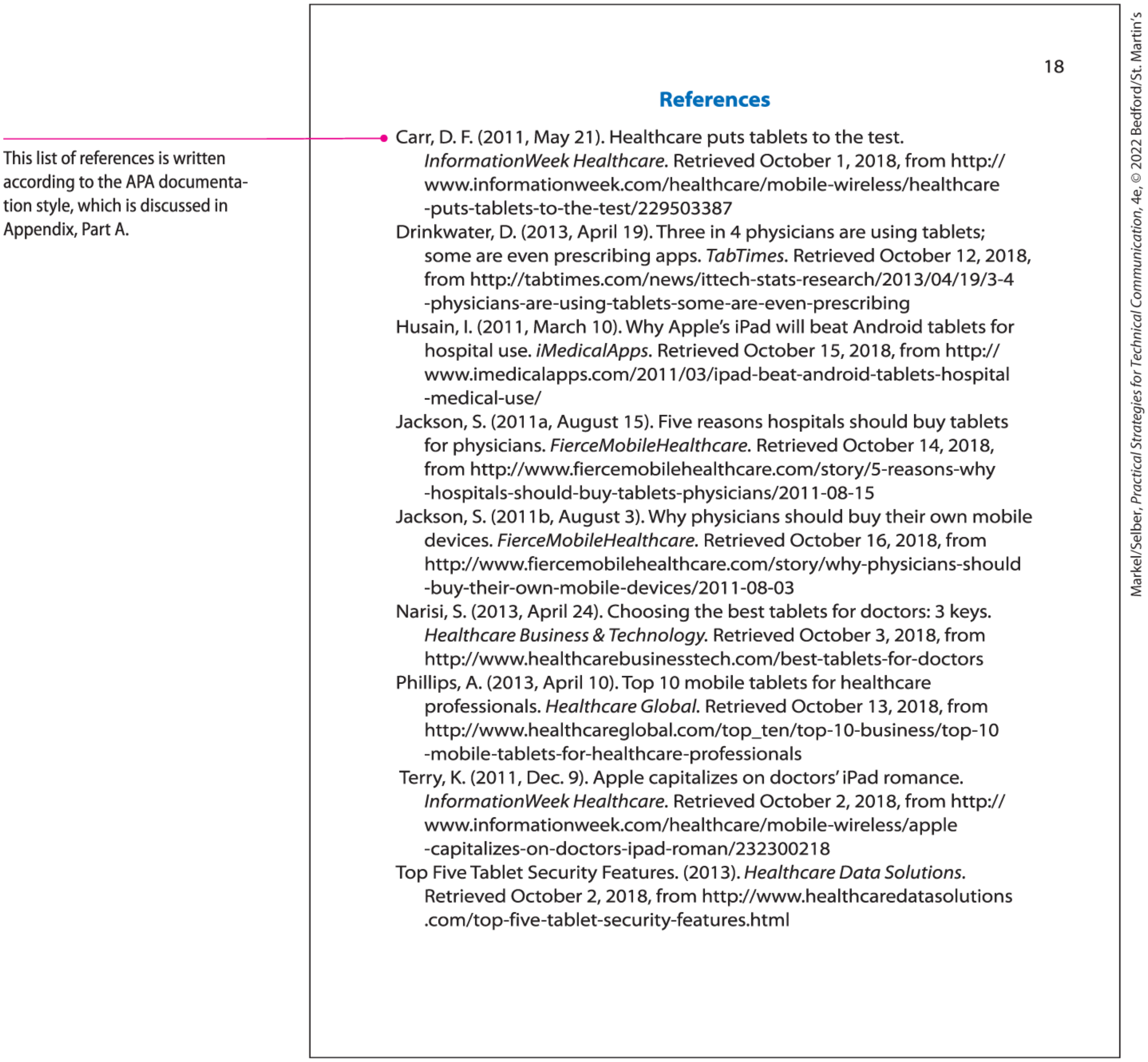
This recommendation states explicitly what the writers think the reader should do next. Note that they are sketching in ideas that they have not discussed in detail but that might interest their readers.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Recommendation We recommend that the RRMC administration pursue one of two options: A bold, italic subheading reads, Option 1: Reconsider the cost criterion Although a health-care-specific tablet, at 2,500–3,000 dollars, is some three times the cost of a general-purpose tablet, it offers distinct advantages in terms of disinfection properties, ruggedness, and availability of specialized hardware and software for better integration with our other devices and equipment. If it is not possible to provide health-care-specific tablets to all clinical staff, we might consider a two-tiered system (some staff members receive a health-care-specific tablet, others a general-purpose one) or a phased implementation system. A bold, italic subheading reads, Option 2: Test a representative sample of general-purpose tablets. A note reads, This recommendation states explicitly what the writers think the reader should do next. Note that they are sketching in ideas that they have not discussed in detail but that might interest their readers. If R R M C wishes to continue to assess the general-purpose tablets, we recommend that we contact manufacturers of the Apple iPad, the Samsung Galaxy, the Microsoft Surface, and several other Android tablets. We could request that they supply their most powerful products, equipped with the best set of medical apps, for our internal testing and evaluation. We would then have IT test each tablet in a controlled environment for such technical characteristics as battery life and durability. We would also test each tablet for disinfection. Next, we would invite the manufacturers' representatives to attend a one- or two-day tablet fair, where we would make the products available to our clinical staff to try and offer hands-on assessment. On the basis of these tests and follow-up questionnaires submitted by clinical staff, we would be in a good position to know how to proceed.

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



18

References

This list of references is written according to the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A.

Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test/229503387

Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. *TabTimes*. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http://tabtimes.com/news/ittech-stats-research/2013/04/19/3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing

Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. *iMedicalApps*. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http://www.imedicalapps.com/2011/03/ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital-medical-use/

Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/5-reasons-why-hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians/2011-08-15

Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. *FierceMobileHealthcare*. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http://www.fiercemobilehealthcare.com/story/why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices/2011-08-03

Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. *Healthcare Business & Technology*. Retrieved October 3, 2018, from http://www.healthcarebusinesstech.com/best-tablets-for-doctors

Phillips, A. (2013, April 10). Top 10 mobile tablets for healthcare professionals. *Healthcare Global*. Retrieved October 13, 2018, from http://www.healthcareglobal.com/top_ten/top-10-business/top-10-mobile-tablets-for-healthcare-professionals

Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors' iPad romance. *InformationWeek Healthcare*. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http://www.informationweek.com/healthcare/mobile-wireless/apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman/232300218

Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). *Healthcare Data Solutions*. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http://www.healthcaredatasolutions.com/top-five-tablet-security-features.html

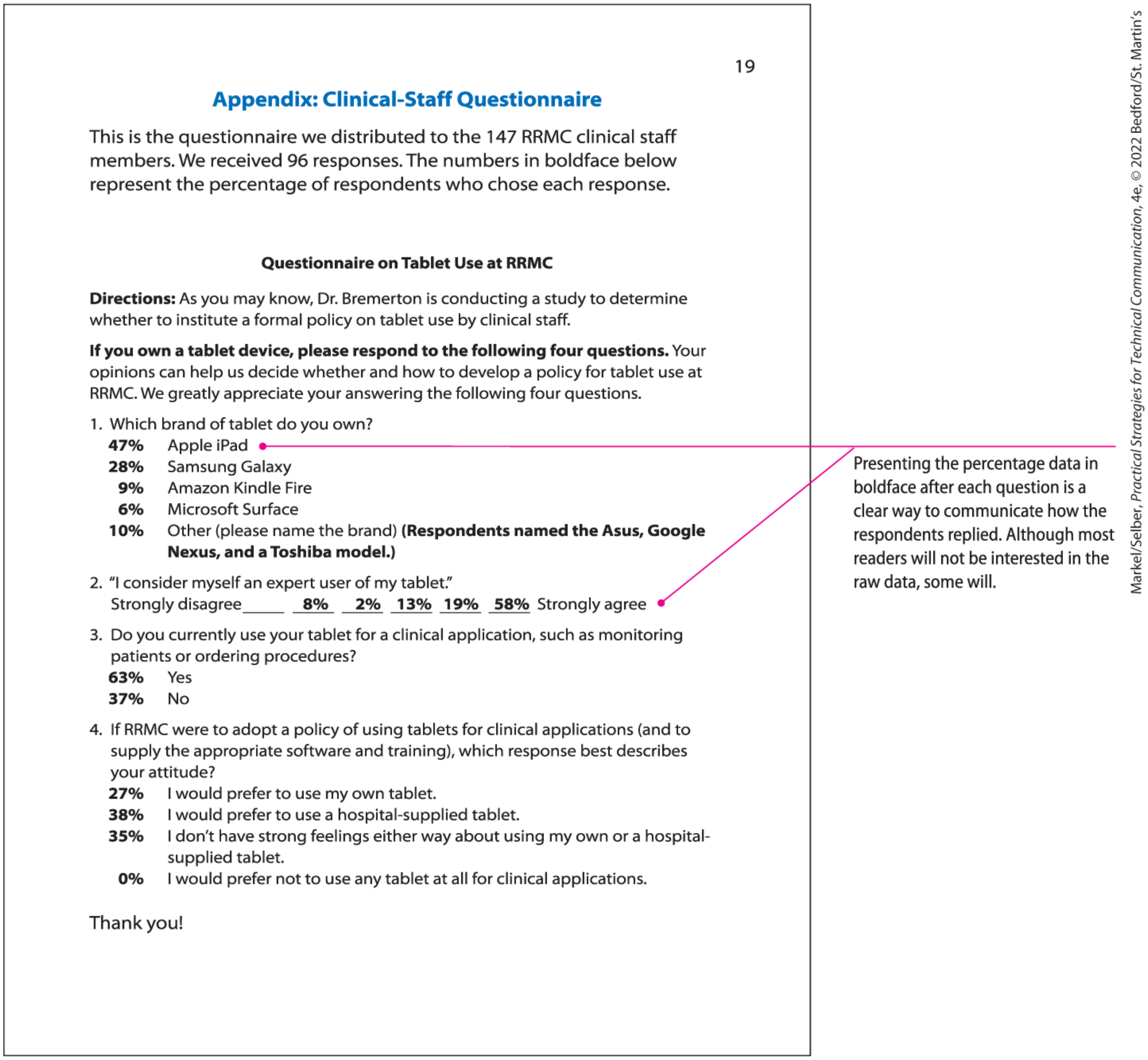
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, References All references are formatted using a hanging indent. First reference: Carr, D. F. (2011, May 21). Healthcare puts tablets to the test. Italic InformationWeek Healthcare end italic. Retrieved October 1, 2018, from http: slash

slash w w w dot informationweek dot com slash healthcare slash mobile-wireless slash healthcare-puts-tablets-to-the-test slash 2 2 9 5 0 3 3 8 7 A note reads, This list of references is written according to the APA documentation style, which is discussed in Appendix, Part A. Next reference: Drinkwater, D. (2013, April 19). Three in 4 physicians are using tablets; some are even prescribing apps. Italic TabTimes end italic. Retrieved October 12, 2018, from http: slash slash tabtimes dot com slash news slash ittech-stats-research slash 2013 slash 04 slash 19 slash 3-4-physicians-are-using-tablets-some-are-even-prescribing Next reference: Husain, I. (2011, March 10). Why Apple's iPad will beat Android tablets for hospital use. Italic iMedicalApps end italic. Retrieved October 15, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot imedicalapps dot com slash 2011 slash 0 3 slash ipad-beat-android-tablets-hospital -medical-use slash Next reference: Jackson, S. (2011a, August 15). Five reasons hospitals should buy tablets for physicians. Italic FierceMobileHealthcare end italic. Retrieved October 14, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot fiercemobilehealthcare dot com slash story slash 5-reasons-why -hospitals-should-buy-tablets-physicians slash 2011-08-15 Next reference: Jackson, S. (2011b, August 3). Why physicians should buy their own mobile devices. Italic FierceMobileHealthcare end italic. Retrieved October 16, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot fiercemobilehealthcare dot com slash story slash why-physicians-should-buy-their-own-mobile-devices slash 2011-08-03 Next reference: Narisi, S. (2013, April 24). Choosing the best tablets for doctors: 3 keys. Italic Healthcare Business ampersand Technology end italic. Retrieved October 3, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot healthcarebusinesstech dot com slash best-tablets-for-doctors Next reference: Phillips, A. (2013, 10 April). Top 10 mobile tablets for healthcare professionals. Italic Healthcare Global end italic. Retrieved October 13, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot healthcareglobal.com slash top underscore ten slash top-10-business slash top-10-mobile-tablets-for-healthcare-professionals Next reference:Terry, K. (2011, Dec. 9). Apple capitalizes on doctors' iPad romance. Italic InformationWeek Healthcare end italic. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot informationweek dot com slash healthcare slash mobile-wireless slash apple-capitalizes-on-doctors-ipad-roman slash 2 3 2 3 0 0 2 1 8 Next reference: Top Five Tablet Security Features. (2013). Healthcare Data Solutions. Retrieved October 2, 2018, from http: slash slash w w w dot healthcaredatasolutions dot com slash top-five-tablet-security-features dot html

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report



19

Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire

This is the questionnaire we distributed to the 147 RRMC clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response.

Questionnaire on Tablet Use at RRMC

Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff.

If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at RRMC. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions.

1. Which brand of tablet do you own?
   47% Apple iPad
   28% Samsung Galaxy
   9% Amazon Kindle Fire
   6% Microsoft Surface
   10% Other (please name the brand) **(Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.)**
2. "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."
   Strongly disagree _____ **8%** **2%** **13%** **19%** **58%** Strongly agree
3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures?
   63% Yes
   37% No
4. If RRMC were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude?
   27% I would prefer to use my own tablet.
   38% I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet.
   35% I don't have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet.
   0% I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications.

Thank you!

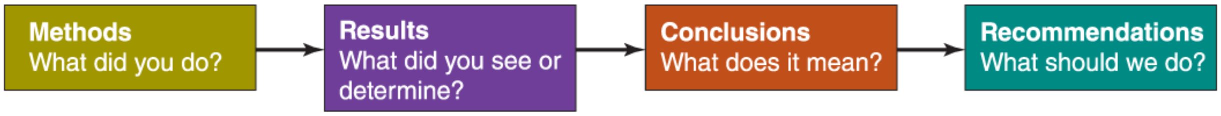
Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A bold, centered heading reads, Appendix: Clinical-Staff Questionnaire This is the questionnaire we distributed to the 147 RRMC clinical staff members. We received 96 responses. The numbers in boldface below represent the percentage of respondents who chose each response. A bold, centered subheading reads, Questionnaire on Tablet Use at RRMC Directions: As you may know, Dr. Bremerton is conducting a study to determine whether to institute a formal policy on tablet use by clinical staff. If you own a tablet device, please respond to the following four questions. Your opinions can help us decide whether and how to develop a policy for tablet use at R R M C. We greatly appreciate your answering the following four questions. 1. Which brand of tablet do you own? 47 percent Apple iPad 28 percent Samsung Galaxy 9 percent Amazon Kindle Fire 6 percent Microsoft Surface 10 percent Other (please name the brand) (Respondents named the Asus, Google Nexus, and a Toshiba model.) 2. “I consider myself an expert user of my tablet.” Strongly disagree space 8 percent space 2 percent space 13 percent space 19 percent space 58 percent space Strongly agree A notation reads, Presenting the percentage data in boldface after each question is a clear way to communicate how the respondents replied. Although most readers will not be interested in the raw data, some will. 3. Do you currently use your tablet for a clinical application, such as monitoring patients or ordering procedures? 63 percent Yes 37 percent No 4. If R R M C were to adopt a policy of using tablets for clinical applications (and to supply the appropriate software and training), which response best describes your attitude? 27 percent I would prefer to use my own tablet. 38 percent I would prefer to use a hospital-supplied tablet. 35 percent I don’t have strong feelings either way about using my own or a hospital-supplied tablet. 0 percent I would prefer not to use any tablet at all for clinical applications. Thank you!

Return to Figure 13.8 Sample Recommendation Report

Extended description for Four text boxes with arrows from left to right show steps for writing recommendations

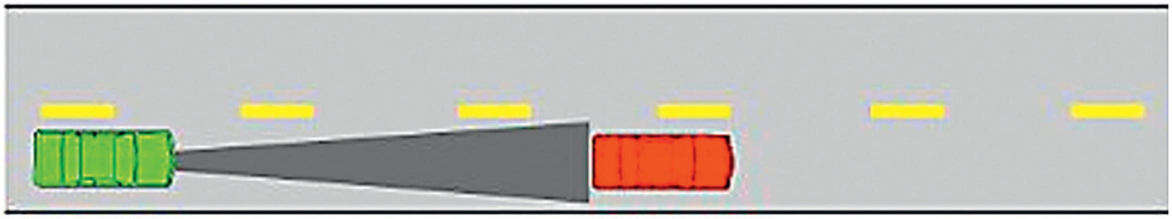

Methods
What did you do?
Results
What did you see or determine?
Conclusions
What does it mean?
Recommendations
What should we do?

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

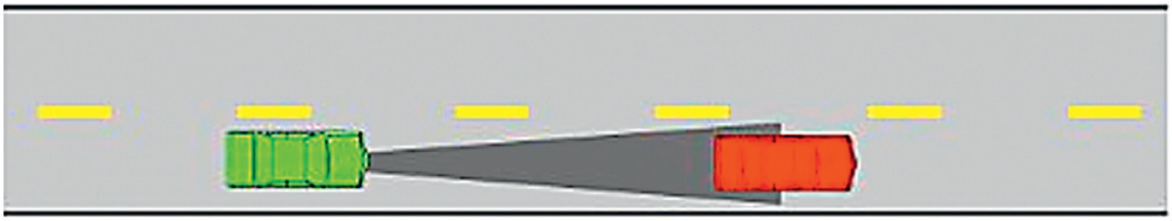
The boxes read as follows: Methods: what did you do? Results: what did you see or determine? Conclusions: what does it mean? Recommendations: what should we do?

Return to Four text boxes with arrows from left to right show steps for writing recommendations

Extended description for A Two-part illustration shows how high-tech safety systems are employed in vehicles



The ACC system in the green car detects the slower-moving red car.



ACC reduces the green car’s speed and maintains the preset headway.

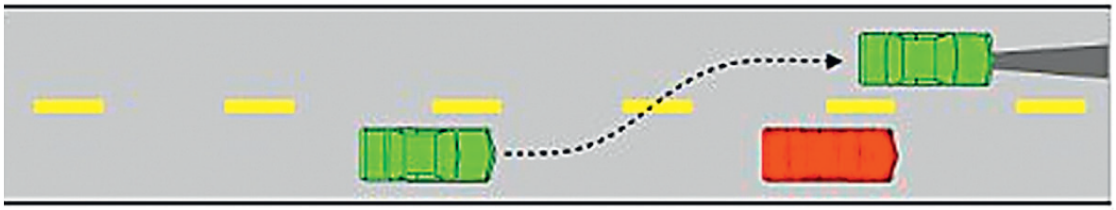
High-tech vehicle safety systems. Used with permission from Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals.

Each part shows a birds-eye view of a road with two cars in the same lane, one red, one green. In the top part, a shaded triangle emerges from the front of the green car, which is behind the red car, and widens to the rear of the red car. Text below reads, the A C C system in the green car detects the slower-moving red car. The second part shows the green car closer to the red car. The shaded triangle extends from the front of the green car to the middle of the red car. The text below the image reads, A C C reduces the green car’s speed and maintains the preset headway. High-tech vehicle safety systems.

Used with permission from Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals.

Return to A Two-part illustration shows how high-tech safety systems are employed in vehicles.

Extended description for A Two-part illustration shows how high-tech safety systems are employed in vehicles



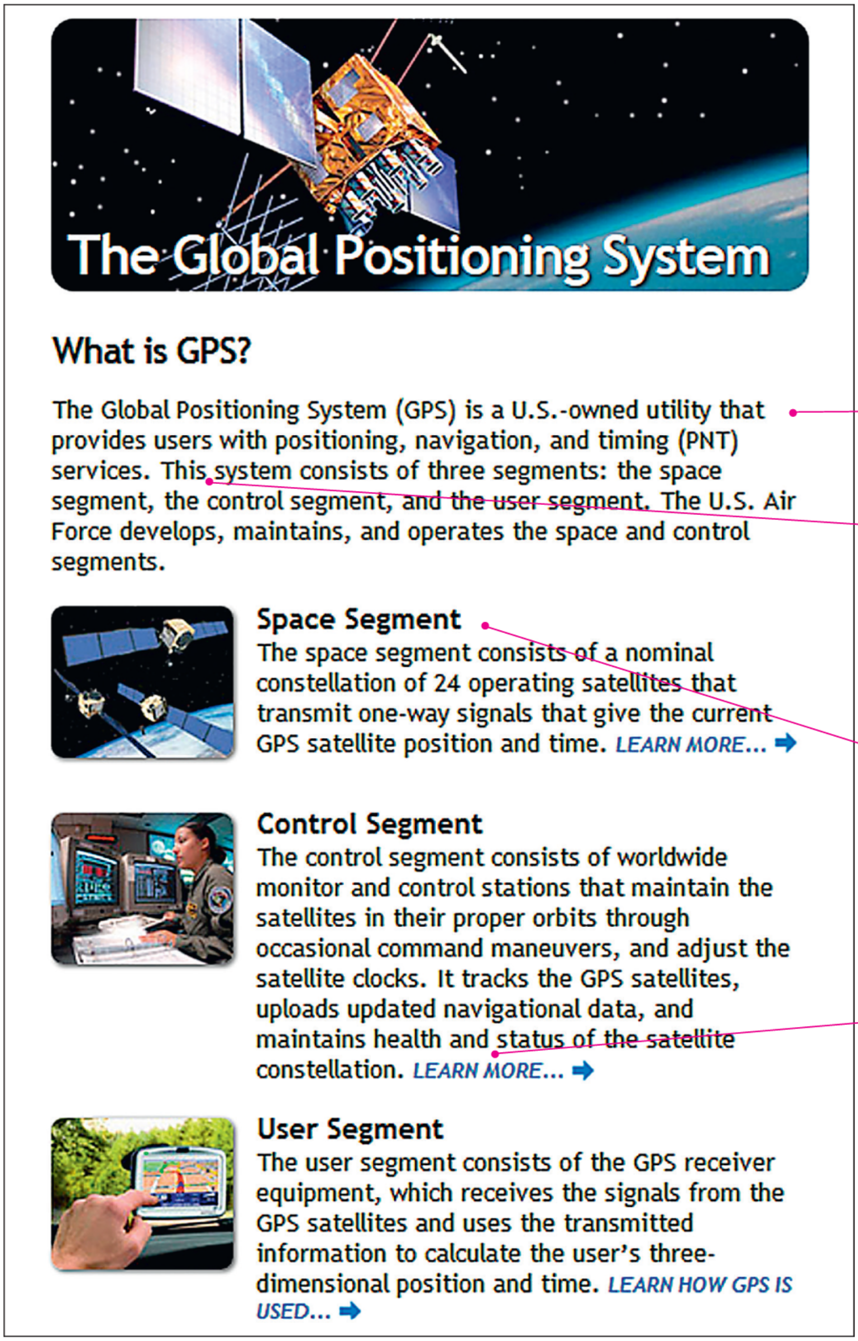
The green car overtakes the red car. The road ahead is clear. The ACC system resumes the vehicle's preset cruising speed.

High-tech vehicle safety systems. Used with permission from Canadian Association of Road Safety Professionals.

The third part shows the green car moving closer and passing the red car with a dotted arrowed line that depicts the movement. The text below the image reads, the green car overtakes the red car. The road ahead is clear. The A C C system resumes the vehicle's preset cruising speed.

[Return to A illustration shows how high-tech safety systems are employed in vehicles.]

Extended description for Figure 14.1 An Extended Definition



The Global Positioning System

What is GPS?

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a U.S.-owned utility that provides users with positioning, navigation, and timing (PNT) services. This system consists of three segments: the space segment, the control segment, and the user segment. The U.S. Air Force develops, maintains, and operates the space and control segments.

Space Segment

The space segment consists of a nominal constellation of 24 operating satellites that transmit one-way signals that give the current GPS satellite position and time. *LEARN MORE…* ➡

Control Segment

The control segment consists of worldwide monitor and control stations that maintain the satellites in their proper orbits through occasional command maneuvers, and adjust the satellite clocks. It tracks the GPS satellites, uploads updated navigational data, and maintains health and status of the satellite constellation. *LEARN MORE…* ➡

User Segment

The user segment consists of the GPS receiver equipment, which receives the signals from the GPS satellites and uses the transmitted information to calculate the user's three-dimensional position and time. *LEARN HOW GPS IS USED…* ➡

The first paragraph of this extended definition of GPS begins with a sentence definition.

The second sentence serves as an advance organizer for the definition, explaining that the definition will be extended by partition: GPS consists of three segments.

The body of this extended definition consists of three sections, each of which is introduced by a graphic and a topic sentence explaining the segment.

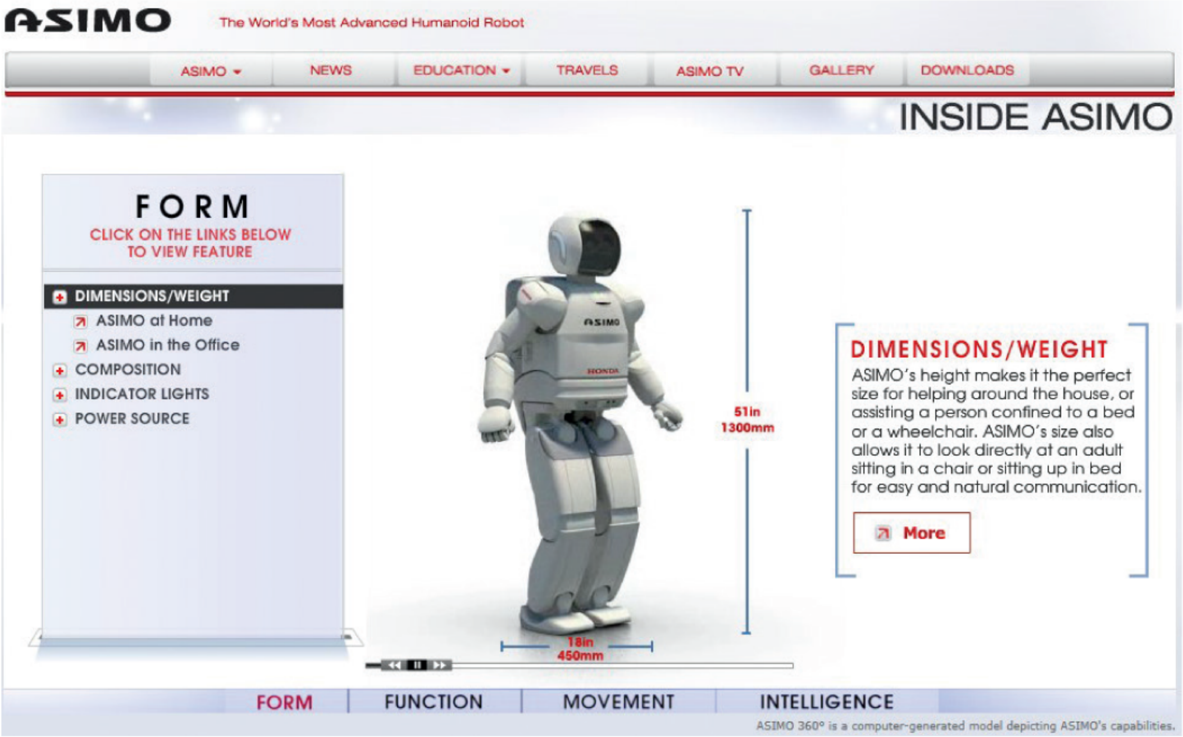
Links lead the reader to much more information about each segment, including more text, diagrams, and videos.

GPS.gov, 2013: www.gps.gov/systems/gps/
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A graphic of a satellite in the atmosphere is depicted with the stars and black sky behind it. A superimposed heading reads, The Global Positioning System. The introductory paragraph reads, What is G P S? The Global Positioning System (G P S) is a U S-owned utility that provides users with positioning, navigation, and timing (P N T) services. This system consists of three segments, the space segment, the control segment, and the user segment. The U S Air Force develops, maintains, and operates the space and control segments. Notations read, The first paragraph of this extended definition of G P S begins with a sentence definition; The second sentence serves as an advance organizer for the definition, explaining that the definition will be extended by partition: G P S consists of three segments. The first section shows a photo of satellites floating above earth with a black sky behind them. Text reads, Space Segment. The space segment consists of nominal constellation of 24 operating satellites that transmit one-way signals that give the current G P S satellite position and time. Learn more arrow. A notation reads, The body of this extended definition consists of three sections, each of which is introduced by a graphic and a topic sentence explaining the segment. The second section shows a woman in uniform monitoring three computer screens. Text reads, Control Segment. The control segment consists of worldwide monitor and control stations that maintain the satellites in their proper orbits through occasional command maneuvers, and adjust the satellite clocks. It traces the G P S satellites, uploads updated navigational data, and maintains health and status of the satellite constellation. Learn more arrow. A notation reads, Links lead the reader to much more information about each segment, including more text, diagrams, and videos. The third section shows a hand operating a G P S system. Text reads, User Segment. The user segment consists of the G P S receiver equipment, which received the signals from the G P S satellites and uses the transmitted information to calculate the user’s three-dimensional position and time. Learn how G P S is used arrow.

Return to Figure 14.1 An Extended Definition

Extended description for Figure 14.2 Graphic with Linked Descriptions


ASIMO
The World's Most Advanced Humanoid Robot
ASIMO
NEWS
EDUCATION
TRAVELS
ASIMO TV
GALLERY
DOWNLOADS
INSIDE ASIMO
FORM
CLICK ON THE LINKS BELOW TO VIEW FEATURE
DIMENSIONS/WEIGHT
ASIMO at Home
ASIMO in the Office
COMPOSITION
INDICATOR LIGHTS
POWER SOURCE
51in
1300mm
18in
450mm
More
FORM
FUNCTION
MOVEMENT
INTELLIGENCE

DIMENSIONS/WEIGHT

ASIMO's height makes it the perfect size for helping around the house, or assisting a person confined to a bed or a wheelchair. ASIMO's size also allows it to look directly at an adult sitting in a chair or sitting up in bed for easy and natural communication.

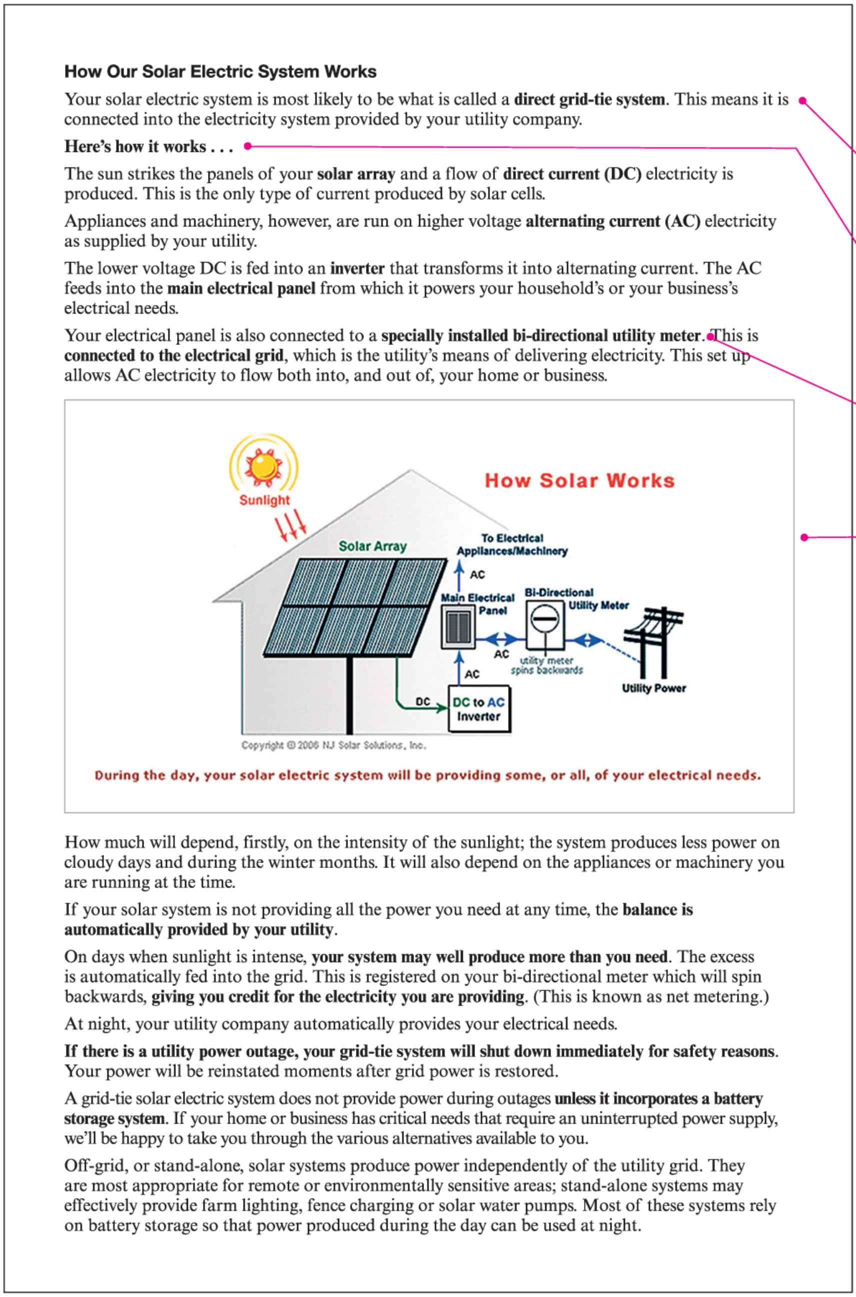
ASIMO 360° is a computer-generated model depicting ASIMO's capabilities.

Honda, 2016: http://asimo.honda.com/inside-asimo/.Honda.

Tabs at the top read, ASIMO, news, education, travels, ASIMO t v, gallery, downloads. The left of the window shows text links reading FORM, click on the links below to view feature. Links are dimensions slash weight with secondary links for ASIMO at home and ASIMO in the office, composition, indicator lights, and power source. An illustration of the robot is in the center of the page showing its height and width. To the right are details of the dimensions slash weight. The bottom of the page contains four links: form, function, movement, intelligence.

Return to Figure 14.2 Graphic with Linked Descriptions

Extended description for Figure 14.3 A Process Description Based on a Graphic



How Our Solar Electric System Works

Your solar electric system is most likely to be what is called a **direct grid-tie system**. This means it is connected into the electricity system provided by your utility company.

Here's how it works . . .

The sun strikes the panels of your **solar array** and a flow of **direct current (DC)** electricity is produced. This is the only type of current produced by solar cells.

Appliances and machinery, however, are run on higher voltage **alternating current (AC)** electricity as supplied by your utility.

The lower voltage DC is fed into an **inverter** that transforms it into alternating current. The AC feeds into the **main electrical panel** from which it powers your household's or your business's electrical needs.

Your electrical panel is also connected to a **specially installed bi-directional utility meter**. This is **connected to the electrical grid**, which is the utility's means of delivering electricity. This set up allows AC electricity to flow both into, and out of, your home or business.

How Solar Works
Sunlight
Solar Array
To Electrical Appliances/Machinery
AC
Main Electrical Panel
Bi-Directional Utility Meter
AC
utility meter spins backwards
AC
Utility Power
DC
DC to AC Inverter
Copyright © 2006 NJ Solar Solutions, Inc.

During the day, your solar electric system will be providing some, or all, of your electrical needs.

How much will depend, firstly, on the intensity of the sunlight; the system produces less power on cloudy days and during the winter months. It will also depend on the appliances or machinery you are running at the time.

If your solar system is not providing all the power you need at any time, the **balance is automatically provided by your utility**.

On days when sunlight is intense, **your system may well produce more than you need**. The excess is automatically fed into the grid. This is registered on your bi-directional meter which will spin backwards, **giving you credit for the electricity you are providing**. (This is known as net metering.)

At night, your utility company automatically provides your electrical needs.

If there is a utility power outage, your grid-tie system will shut down immediately for safety reasons. Your power will be reinstated moments after grid power is restored.

A grid-tie solar electric system does not provide power during outages **unless it incorporates a battery storage system**. If your home or business has critical needs that require an uninterrupted power supply, we'll be happy to take you through the various alternatives available to you.

Off-grid, or stand-alone, solar systems produce power independently of the utility grid. They are most appropriate for remote or environmentally sensitive areas; stand-alone systems may effectively provide farm lighting, fence charging or solar water pumps. Most of these systems rely on battery storage so that power produced during the day can be used at night.

This description begins with an informal definition of "direct grid-tie system."

In the next section, the writer presents the steps of the process in chronological order.

The description uses boldfaced text to emphasize key terms, most of which appear in the graphic.

The description focuses on the operating principle of the system. It does not seek to explain the details of how the system works. Accordingly, the graphic focuses on the logic of the process, not on the particulars of what the components look like or where they are located in the house.

"How Solar Works" from Vanguard Energy Partners. Used with permission. Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A heading reads, How Our Solar Electric System Works Your solar electric system is most likely to be what is called a direct grid-tie system. This means it is connected into the electricity system provided by your utility company. A notation reads, This description begins with an informal definition of “direct grid-tie system.” Here’s how it works ellipsis. A notation reads, In the next section, the writer presents the steps of the process in chronological order. The sun strikes the panels of your solar array and a flow of direct current (D C) electricity is produced. This is the only type of current produced by solar cells. Appliances and machinery, however, are run on higher voltage alternating current (A C) electricity as supplied by your utility. The lower voltage D C is fed into an inverter that transforms it into alternating current. The A C feeds into the main electrical panel from which it powers your household’s or your business’s electrical needs. Your electrical panel is also connected to a specially installed bi-directional utility meter. This is connected to the electrical grid, which is the utility’s means of delivering electricity. This set up allows AC electricity to flow both into, and out of, your home or business. A notation reads, The description uses boldfaced text to emphasize key terms, most of which appear in the graphic. In the center of the page is a graphic showing the sun, the outline of a house, a solar array, the main electrical panel, the bi-directional utility meter, a utility power pole, and the D C to A C inverter. Arrows point in the directions the equipment works together. Text beneath the graphic reads, During the day, your solar electric system will be providing some, or all, of your electrical needs. Text following the graphic reads, How much will depend, firstly, on the intensity of the sunlight; the system produces less power on cloudy days and during the winter months. It will also depend on the appliances or machinery you are running at the time. If your solar system is not providing all the power you need at any time, the balance is automatically provided by your utility. On days when sunlight is intense, your system may well produce more than you need. The excess is automatically fed into the grid. This is registered on your bi-directional meter which will spin backwards, giving you credit for the electricity you are providing. (This is known as net metering.) At night, your utility company automatically provides your electrical needs. If there is a utility power outage, your grid-tie system will shut down immediately for safety reasons. Your power will be reinstated moments after grid power is restored. A grid-tie solar electric system does not provide power during outages unless it incorporates a battery storage system. If your home or business has critical needs that require an uninterrupted power supply, we'll be happy to take you through the various alternatives available to you. Off-grid, or stand-alone, solar systems produce power independently of the utility grid. They are most appropriate for remote or environmentally sensitive areas; stand-alone systems may effectively provide farm lighting, fence charging or solar water pumps. Most of these systems rely on battery storage so that power produced during the day can be used at night.

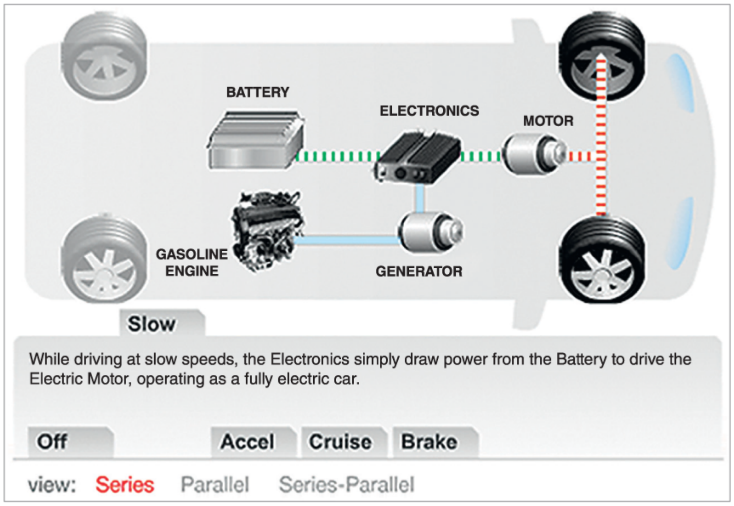
Return to Figure 14.3 A Process Description Based on a Graphic

Extended description for Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description

Drivetrains

Now that we've covered the basic technology that defines hybrid vehicles, let's take a look at how they are put together to move the vehicle. The drivetrain of a vehicle is composed of the components that are responsible for transferring power to the drive wheels of your vehicle. With hybrids there are three possible setups for the drivetrain: the series drivetrain, the parallel drivetrain, and the series/parallel drivetrain.

This excerpt from a mechanism description begins with an advance organizer that helps the reader make the transition from the previous section (a basic description of hybrid technology) to the present section, which discusses the three types of drivetrains.



While driving at slow speeds, the Electronics simply draw power from the Battery to drive the Electric Motor, operating as a fully electric car.

The interactive graphic enables the reader to view the principle of operation of three types of hybrid drivetrains, each during five modes. Here, the graphic shows how the components of the series drivetrain work together as the car operates at slow speeds. On the UCS website, the red and green striped lines are animated to highlight the components operating during the mode the reader has selected.

Series Drivetrain
This is the simplest hybrid configuration. In a series hybrid, the electric motor is the only means of providing power to get your wheels turning. The motor receives electric power from either the battery pack or from a generator run by a gasoline engine. A computer determines how much of the power comes from the battery or the engine/generator set. Both the engine/generator and regenerative braking recharge the battery pack. . . . While the engine in a conventional vehicle is forced to operate inefficiently in order to satisfy varying power demands of stop-and-go driving, series hybrids perform at their best in such conditions. This is because the gasoline engine in a series hybrid is not coupled to the wheels. This means the engine is no longer subject to the widely varying power demands experienced in stop-and-go driving and can instead operate in a narrow power range at near optimum efficiency. . . .

Parallel Drivetrain
Some up-and-coming hybrid models use a second electric motor to drive the rear wheels, providing electronic all-wheel drive that can improve handling and driving in bad weather conditions.

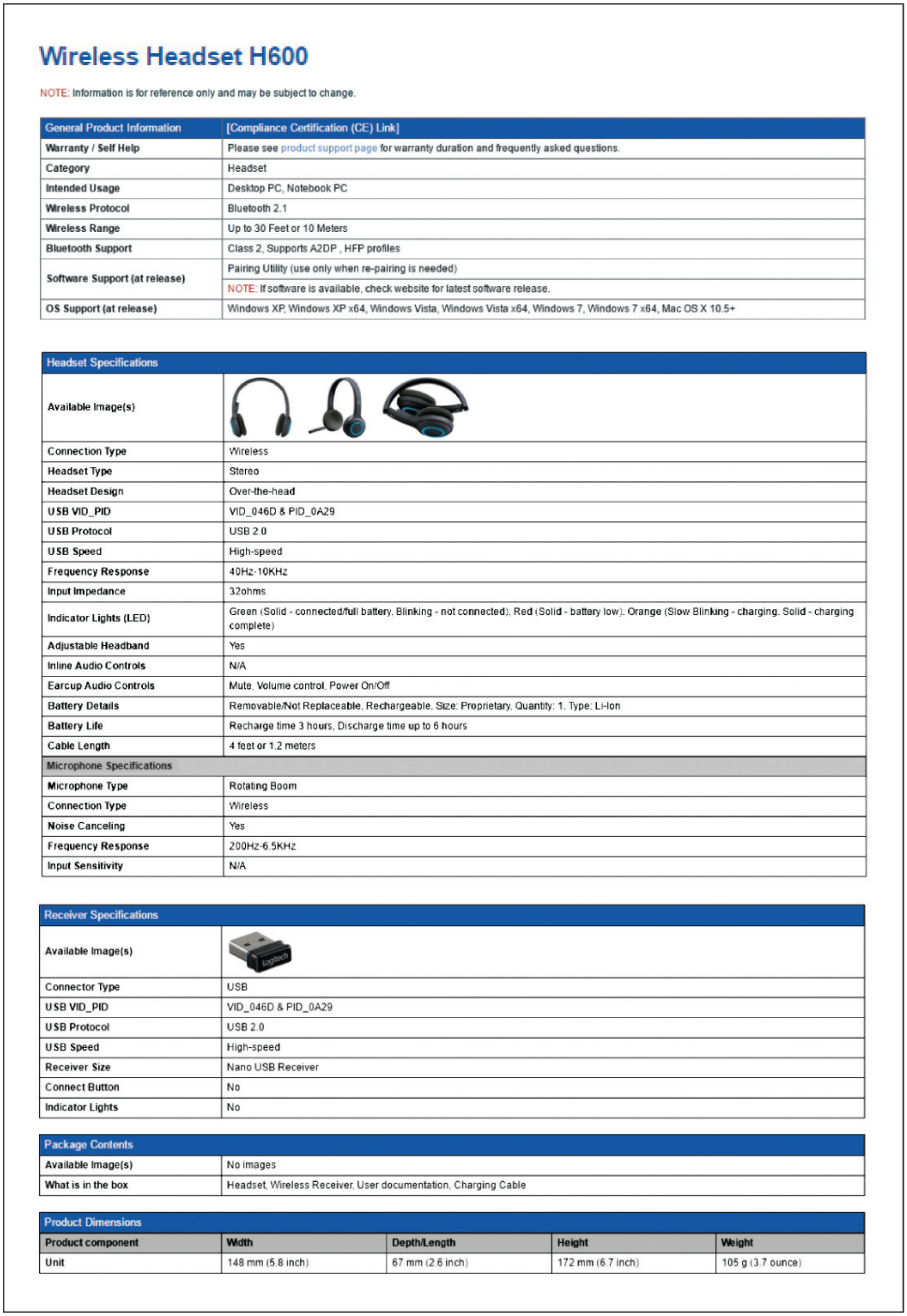
For each of the three types of drivetrains, the text begins with a description of the operating principle, followed by explanations of the strengths and weaknesses of the drivetrain. Notice that the audience and purpose of this description determine the kind of information it contains. Because this description seeks to explain the operating principle behind each of the three types of drivetrains, it focuses on the drivetrains' functions, not on the materials they are made of or on their technical specifications.

Hybrids Under the Hood (Part 2): Drivetrains from Union of Concerned Scientists. www.ucsusa.org. Reprinted by permission.

A bold heading reads, Drivetrains. Text reads, Now that we’ve covered the basic technology that defines hybrid vehicles, let’s take a look at how they are put together to move the vehicle. The drivetrain of a vehicle is composed of the components that are responsible for transferring power to the drive wheels of your vehicle. With hybrids there are three possible setups for the drivetrain: the series drivetrain, the parallel drivetrain, and the series slash parallel drivetrain. A notation reads, This excerpt from a mechanism description begins with an advance organizer that helps the reader make the transition from the previous section (a basic description of hybrid technology) to the present section, which discusses the three types of drivetrains. The center of the page shows an illustration containing the outline of a car, the wheels, and all the components of the drivetrain including the battery, electronics, motor, generator, gasoline engine, and the axle at the front of the car. Below the illustration are five tabs: off, slow, accel, cruise, brake. The slow tab is selected. Text reads, While driving at slow speeds, the Electronics simply draw power from the Battery to drive the Electric Motor, operating as a fully electric car. A notation reads, The interactive graphic enables the reader to view the principle of operation of three types of hybrid drivetrains, each during five modes. Here, the graphic shows how the components of the series drivetrain work together as the car operates at slow speeds. On the U C S website, the red and green striped lines are animated to highlight the components operating during the mode the reader has selected. Below the illustration, a bold heading reads, Series Drivetrain. This is the simplest hybrid configuration. In a series hybrid, the electric motor is the only means of providing power to get your wheels turning. The motor receives electric power from either the battery pack or from a generator run by a gasoline engine. A computer determines how much of the power comes from the battery or the engine slash generator set. Both the engine slash generator and regenerative braking recharge the battery pack ellipsis. While the engine in a conventional vehicle is forced to operate inefficiently in order to satisfy varying power demands of stop-and-go driving, series hybrids perform at their best in such conditions. This is because the gasoline engine in a series hybrid is not coupled to the wheels. This means the engine is no longer subject to the widely varying power demands experienced in stop-and-go driving and can instead operate in a narrow power range at near optimum efficiency ellipsis. A bold heading reads, Parallel Drivetrain. Some up-and-coming hybrid models use a second electric motor to drive the rear wheels, providing electronic all-wheel drive that can improve handling and driving in bad weather conditions. A notation reads, For each of the three types of drivetrains, the text begins with a description of the operating principle, followed by explanations of the strengths and weaknesses of the drivetrain. Notice that the audience and purpose of this description determine the kind of information it contains. Because this description seeks to explain the operating principle behind each of the three types of drivetrains, it focuses on the drivetrains’ functions, not on the materials they are made of or on their technical specifications.

Return to Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description

Extended description for Figure 14.5 Specifications



Wireless Headset H600

NOTE: Information is for reference only and may be subject to change.

General Product Information	[Compliance Certification (CE) Link]
Warranty / Self Help	Please see product support page for warranty duration and frequently asked questions.
Category	Headset
Intended Usage	Desktop PC, Notebook PC
Wireless Protocol	Bluetooth 2.1
Wireless Range	Up to 30 Feet or 10 Meters
Bluetooth Support	Class 2, Supports A2DP , HFP profiles
Software Support (at release)	Pairing Utility (use only when re-pairing is needed) NOTE: If software is available, check website for latest software release.
OS Support (at release)	Windows XP, Windows XP x64, Windows Vista, Windows Vista x64, Windows 7, Windows 7 x64, Mac OS X 10.5+

Headset Specifications	
Available Image(s)	
Connection Type	Wireless
Headset Type	Stereo
Headset Design	Over-the-head
USB VID_PID	VID_046D & PID_0A29
USB Protocol	USB 2.0
USB Speed	High-speed
Frequency Response	40Hz-10KHz
Input Impedance	32ohms
Indicator Lights (LED)	Green (Solid - connected/full battery, Blinking - not connected), Red (Solid - battery low), Orange (Slow Blinking - charging, Solid - charging complete)
Adjustable Headband	Yes
Inline Audio Controls	N/A
Earcup Audio Controls	Mute, Volume control, Power On/Off
Battery Details	Removable/Not Replaceable, Rechargeable, Size: Proprietary, Quantity: 1, Type: Li-Ion
Battery Life	Recharge time 3 hours, Discharge time up to 6 hours
Cable Length	4 feet or 1.2 meters
Microphone Specifications	
Microphone Type	Rotating Boom
Connection Type	Wireless
Noise Canceling	Yes
Frequency Response	200Hz-6.5KHz
Input Sensitivity	N/A

Receiver Specifications	
Available Image(s)	
Connector Type	USB
USB VID_PID	VID_046D & PID_0A29
USB Protocol	USB 2.0
USB Speed	High-speed
Receiver Size	Nano USB Receiver
Connect Button	No
Indicator Lights	No

Package Contents	
Available Image(s)	No images
What is in the box	Headset, Wireless Receiver, User documentation, Charging Cable

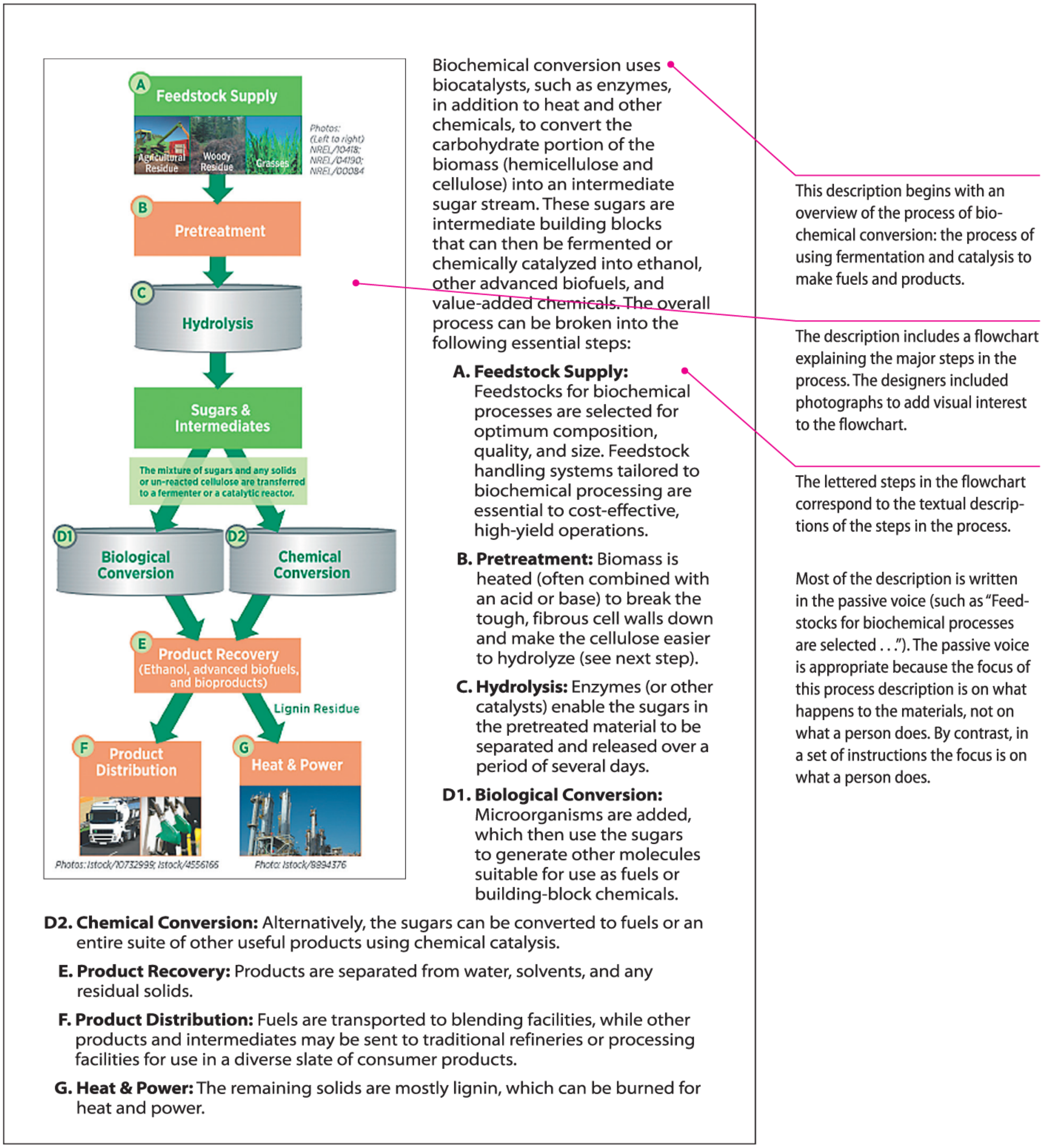
Product Dimensions				
Product component	**Width**	**Depth/Length**	**Height**	**Weight**
Unit	148 mm (5.8 inch)	67 mm (2.6 inch)	172 mm (6.7 inch)	105 g (3.7 ounce)

Courtesy of Logitech

The heading reads, Wireless Headset H 600. Note: Information is for reference only and may be subject to change. Below are five tables. Headings are white in a blue bar. The first is General Product Information with a list of eight items and compliance certifications with a link. The second is the Headset Specification with a series of details relevant to the headset. Three images are depicted at the top, a front view, side view, and folded view. The third table shows the Receiver Specifications with an image of the receiver and all details regarding it. Next is a list of Package Contents, and last is the Product Dimensions.

Return to Figure 14.5 Specifications

Extended description for Figure 14.6 An Effective Process Description


A
Feedstock Supply
Agricultural Residue
Woody Residue
Grasses
Photos: (Left to right) NREL/10418; NREL/04190; NREL/00084
B
Pretreatment
C
Hydrolysis
Sugars & Intermediates
The mixture of sugars and any solids or un-reacted cellulose are transferred to a fermenter or a catalytic reactor.
D1
Biological Conversion
D2
Chemical Conversion
E
Product Recovery (Ethanol, advanced biofuels, and bioproducts)
Lignin Residue
F
Product Distribution
G
Heat & Power
Photos: Istock/10732999; Istock/4556166
Photo: Istock/8894376

Biochemical conversion uses biocatalysts, such as enzymes, in addition to heat and other chemicals, to convert the carbohydrate portion of the biomass (hemicellulose and cellulose) into an intermediate sugar stream. These sugars are intermediate building blocks that can then be fermented or chemically catalyzed into ethanol, other advanced biofuels, and value-added chemicals. The overall process can be broken into the following essential steps:

A. Feedstock Supply: Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected for optimum composition, quality, and size. Feedstock handling systems tailored to biochemical processing are essential to cost-effective, high-yield operations.

B. Pretreatment: Biomass is heated (often combined with an acid or base) to break the tough, fibrous cell walls down and make the cellulose easier to hydrolyze (see next step).

C. Hydrolysis: Enzymes (or other catalysts) enable the sugars in the pretreated material to be separated and released over a period of several days.

D1. Biological Conversion: Microorganisms are added, which then use the sugars to generate other molecules suitable for use as fuels or building-block chemicals.

D2. Chemical Conversion: Alternatively, the sugars can be converted to fuels or an entire suite of other useful products using chemical catalysis.

E. Product Recovery: Products are separated from water, solvents, and any residual solids.

F. Product Distribution: Fuels are transported to blending facilities, while other products and intermediates may be sent to traditional refineries or processing facilities for use in a diverse slate of consumer products.

G. Heat & Power: The remaining solids are mostly lignin, which can be burned for heat and power.

This description begins with an overview of the process of biochemical conversion: the process of using fermentation and catalysis to make fuels and products.

The description includes a flowchart explaining the major steps in the process. The designers included photographs to add visual interest to the flowchart.

The lettered steps in the flowchart correspond to the textual descriptions of the steps in the process.

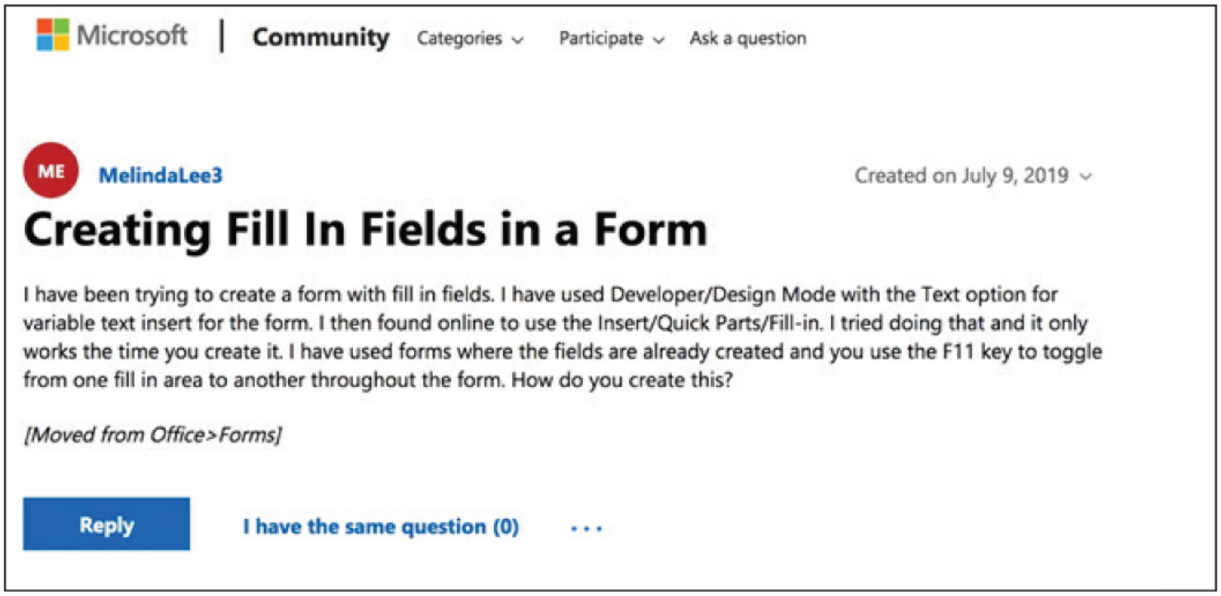
Most of the description is written in the passive voice (such as "Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected . . ."). The passive voice is appropriate because the focus of this process description is on what happens to the materials, not on what a person does. By contrast, in a set of instructions the focus is on what a person does.

U.S. Department of Energy, 2013: www1.eere.energy.gov/bioenergy/pdfs/biochemical_four_pager.pdf.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The flowchart to the left of the text begins with an image of Feedstock Supply such as agricultural residue, woody residue, and grasses, marked A. An arrow leads to B, Pretreatment, which leads to C, Hydrolysis, which in turn leads to Sugars and Intermediates. A box reads, The mixtures of sugars and any solids or un-reacted cellulose are transformed to a fermenter or a catalytic reactor. This divides into D1, Biological Conversion, and D2, Chemical Conversion. Both merge to E, Product Recovery (ethanol, advanced, biofuels, and byproducts), which separate into F, Product Distribution, and G, Heat and Power. Images show a fuel truck by a gas pump and a power plant. Text to the right of the flowchart reads, Biochemical conversion uses biocatalysts, such as enzymes, in addition to heat and other chemicals, to convert the carbohydrate portion of the biomass (hemicellulose and cellulose) into an intermediate sugar stream. These sugars are intermediate building blocks that can then be fermented or chemically catalyzed into ethanol, other advanced biofuels, and value-added chemicals. The overall process can be broken into the following essential steps: Notations read, This description begins with an overview of the process of biochemical conversion: the process of using fermentation and catalysis to make fuels and products; The description includes a flowchart explaining the major steps in the process. The designers included photographs to add visual interest to the flowchart. Text continues, bold A. Feedstock Supply: end bold Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected for optimum composition, quality, and size. Feedstock handling systems tailored to biochemical processing are essential to cost-effective, high-yield operations. Notations read, The lettered steps in the flowchart correspond to the textual descriptions of the steps in the process; Most of the description is written in the passive voice (such as “Feedstocks for biochemical processes are selected ellipsis”). The passive voice is appropriate because the focus of this process description is on what happens to the materials, not on what a person does. By contrast, in a set of instructions the focus is on what a person does. Text continues, bold B. Pretreatment: end bold Biomass is heated (often combined with an acid or base) to break the tough, fibrous cell walls down and make the cellulose easier to hydrolyze (see next step). bold C. Hydrolysis: end bold Enzymes (or other catalysts) enable the sugars in the pretreated material to be separated and released over a period of several days. Bold D1. Biological Conversion: end bold Microorganisms are added, which then use the sugars to generate other molecules suitable for use as fuels or building-block chemicals. Bold D2. Chemical Conversion: end bold Alternatively, the sugars can be converted to fuels or an entire suite of other useful products using chemical catalysis. Bold E. Product Recovery: end bold Products are separated from water, solvents, and any residual solids. Bold F. Product Distribution: end bold Fuels are transported to blending facilities, while other products and intermediates may be sent to traditional refineries or processing facilities for use in a diverse slate of consumer products. Bold G. Heat … Power: end bold The remaining solids are mostly lignin, which can be burned for heat and power.

Return to Figure 14.6 An Effective Process Description

Extended description for Figure 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word


Microsoft
Community
Categories
Participate
Ask a question
ME
MelindaLee3
Created on July 9, 2019

Creating Fill In Fields in a Form

I have been trying to create a form with fill in fields. I have used Developer/Design Mode with the Text option for variable text insert for the form. I then found online to use the Insert/Quick Parts/Fill-in. I tried doing that and it only works the time you create it. I have used forms where the fields are already created and you use the F11 key to toggle from one fill in area to another throughout the form. How do you create this?

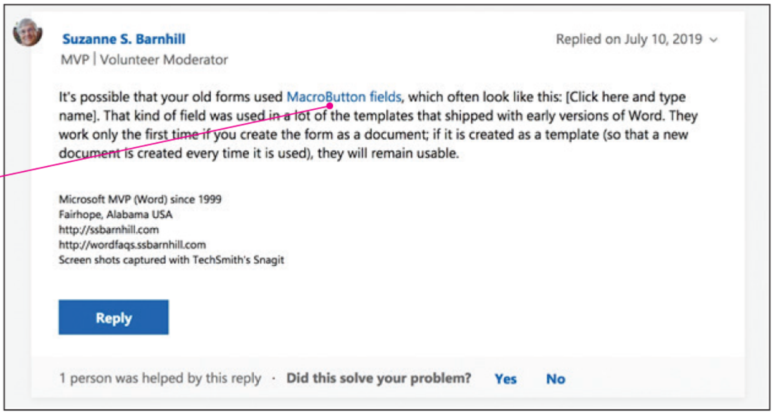
[Moved from Office>Forms]

Reply
I have the same question (0)
...

At the top are the Microsoft logo and tabs for Community, Categories, Participate, and Ask a Question. In the center is a post from MelindaLee3 created on July 9, 2019. Its heading reads, Creating Fill In Fields in a Form, followed by her message to the moderator. An italic note reads, bracket Moved from Office right arrow Forms end bracket. At the bottom is a Reply button and a button reading, I have the same question (0) ellipses.

Return to Figure 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word

Extended description forFigure 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word



Suzanne S. Barnhill

MVP | Volunteer Moderator

Replied on July 10, 2019

It's possible that your old forms used MacroButton fields, which often look like this: [Click here and type name]. That kind of field was used in a lot of the templates that shipped with early versions of Word. They work only the first time if you create the form as a document; if it is created as a template (so that a new document is created every time it is used), they will remain usable.

Microsoft MVP (Word) since 1999
Fairhope, Alabama USA
http://ssbarnhill.com
http://wordfaqs.ssbarnhill.com
Screen shots captured with TechSmith's Snagit

1 person was helped by this reply · Did this solve your problem? Yes No

The moderator explains how to solve the problem but also recommends an entirely different approach to the task. The moderator's knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here.

The moderator also links to a third-party document, drawing on a wider circle of experts to help provide solutions.

In addition to answering questions, moderators also merge and split threads to keep them on topic and prevent duplication, report spam, and keep discussions civil and productive.

The moderator provides a description of the legacy method the user seems to be describing, with a link to a third-party document explaining how to use that method, and adds advice for best practices using the method. The moderator's knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here, but the moderator concludes by recommending a more modern method that has already been suggested by another Word MVP.

Courtesy of Suzanne Barnhill

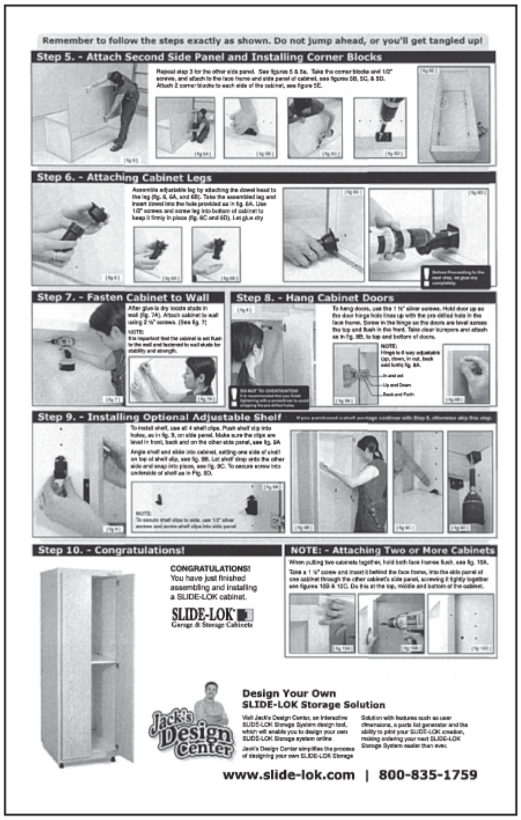
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The screenshot shows the profile picture of Suzanne S. Barnhill, MVP, Volunteer Moderator. The text shows the reply was on July 19, 2019. The reply reads, It's possible that your old forms used MacroButton fields, (an annotation reads, The moderator also links to a third-party document, drawing on a wider circle of experts to help provide solutions.) which often look like this: [Click here and type name]. This kind of field was used in a lot of templates that shipped with early versions of Word. They work only the first time if you create the form as a document; if it is created as a template (so that a new document is created every time it is used), they will remain usable. Microsoft M V P (Word) since 1999; Fairhope, Alabama U S A; http: / / ssbarnhill.com; http: / / wordfaqs. Ssbarnhill.com; screen shots captured with TechSmith's Snagit.

Below is a reply button. It also shows one person was helped by this reply, and text reads, Did this solve your problem? Yes or no. Text to the left of the screenshot reads, The moderator explains how to solve the problem but also recommends an entirely different approach to the task. The moderator’s knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here. An arrow points to the highlighted text. In addition to answering questions, moderators also merge and split threads to keep them on topic and prevent duplication, report spam, and keep discussions civil and productive. Text to the right of the screenshot reads, The moderator provides a description of the legacy method the user seems to be describing, with a link to a third-party document explaining how to use that method, and adds advice for best practices using the method. The moderator’s knowledge of older versions of Word is crucial here, but the moderator concludes by recommending a more modern method that has already been suggested by another Word M V P.

Return to Figure 14.7 Moderating a User Forum for Microsoft Word.

Extended description for Figure 14.8 Cluttered and Attractive Page Designs for Instructions



Remember to follow the steps exactly as shown. Do not jump ahead, or you'll get tangled up!

Step 5. - Attach Second Side Panel and Installing Corner Blocks

Step 6. - Attaching Cabinet Legs

Step 7. - Fasten Cabinet to Wall

Step 8. - Hang Cabinet Doors

Step 9. - Installing Optional Adjustable Shelf

Step 10. - Congratulations!

CONGRATULATIONS!
You have just finished
assembling and installing
a SLIDE-LOK cabinet.

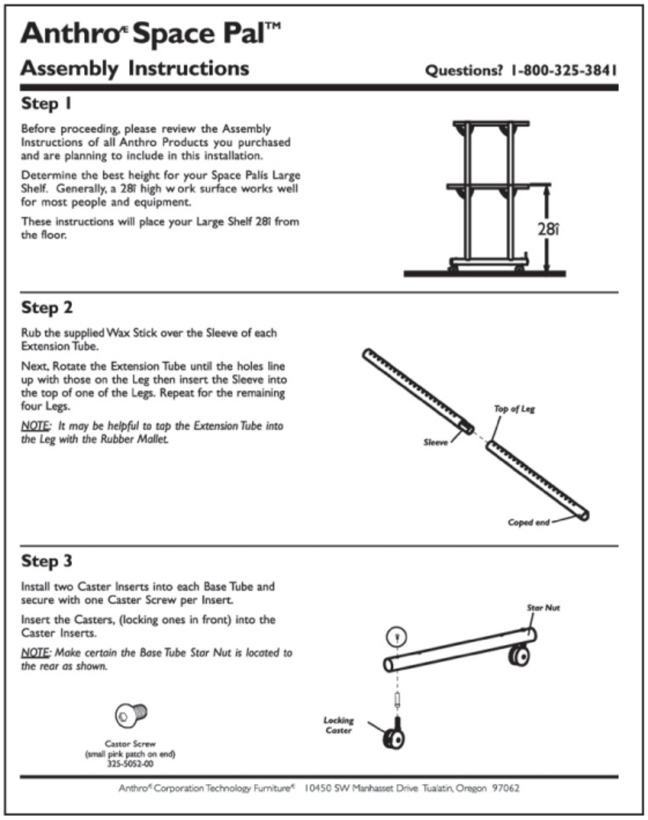
SLIDE-LOK
Garage & Storage Cabinets

NOTE: - Attaching Two or More Cabinets

Jack's Design Center

Design Your Own
SLIDE-LOK Storage Solution

www.slide-lok.com | 800-835-1759



Anthro® Space Pal™

Assembly Instructions **Questions? 1-800-325-3841**

Step 1

Before proceeding, please review the Assembly Instructions of all Anthro Products you purchased and are planning to include in this installation.

Determine the best height for your Space Palís Large Shelf. Generally, a 28î high w ork surface works well for most people and equipment.

These instructions will place your Large Shelf 28î from the floor.

28î

Step 2

Rub the supplied Wax Stick over the Sleeve of each Extension Tube.

Next, Rotate the Extension Tube until the holes line up with those on the Leg then insert the Sleeve into the top of one of the Legs. Repeat for the remaining four Legs.

NOTE: It may be helpful to tap the Extension Tube into the Leg with the Rubber Mallet.

Top of Leg
Sleeve
Coped end

Step 3

Install two Caster Inserts into each Base Tube and secure with one Caster Screw per Insert.

Insert the Casters, (locking ones in front) into the Caster Inserts.

NOTE: Make certain the Base Tube Star Nut is located to the rear as shown.

Star Nut
Locking Caster

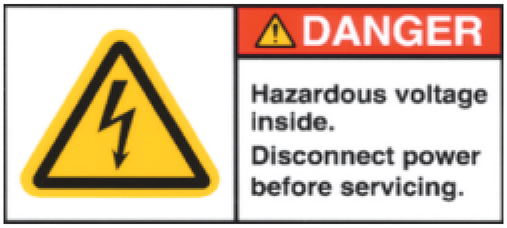
Castor Screw
(small pink patch on end)
325-5052-00

Anthro® Corporation Technology Furniture® 10450 SW Manhasset Drive Tualatin, Oregon 97062

The left page shows multiple sections with several small photos and small type with too much information. The right page is attractive with a two-column format and plenty of white space. A heading and phone number are at the top. Text and steps are on the left side, and simple illustrations are on the right. It is easy to follow and clearly defined.

Return to Figure 14.8 Cluttered and Attractive Page Designs for Instructions

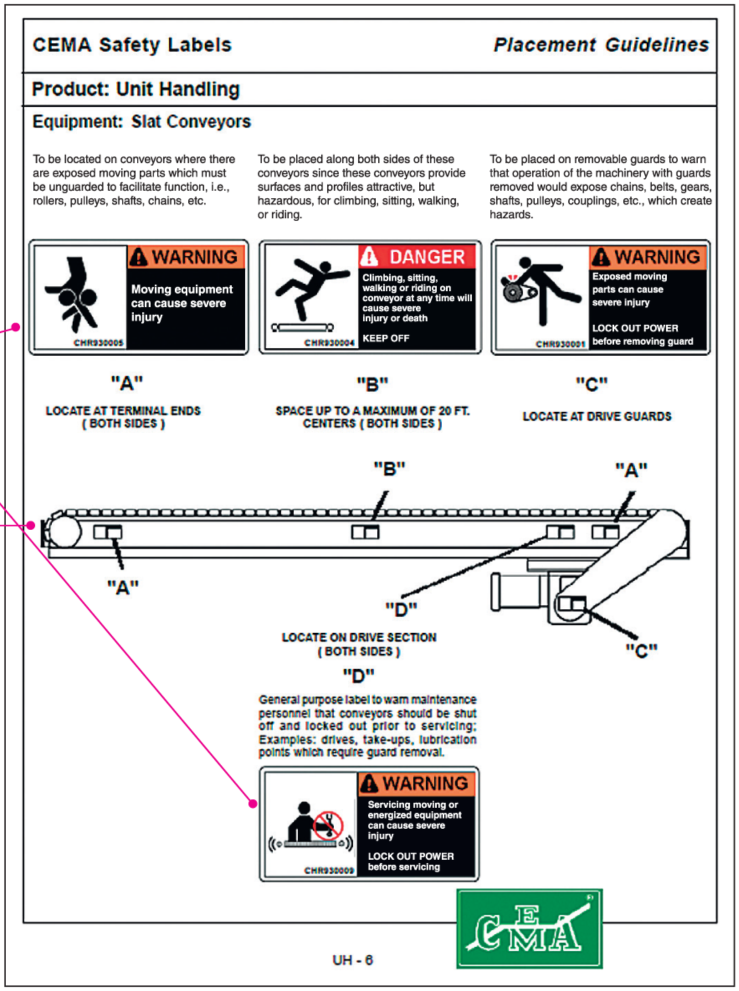
Extended description for Figure 14.9 A Typical Safety Label


DANGER
Hazardous voltage inside.
Disconnect power before servicing.

The label shows a yellow triangle containing a black lightning bolt. To the right in red is the danger signal word, and text below reads, Hazardous voltage inside. Disconnect power before servicing.

Return to Figure 14.9 A Typical Safety Label

Extended description for Figure 14.10 Placement of Safety Information on Equipment



CEMA Safety Labels ***Placement Guidelines***

Product: Unit Handling

Equipment: Slat Conveyors

To be located on conveyors where there are exposed moving parts which must be unguarded to facilitate function, i.e., rollers, pulleys, shafts, chains, etc.

To be placed along both sides of these conveyors since these conveyors provide surfaces and profiles attractive, but hazardous, for climbing, sitting, walking, or riding.

To be placed on removable guards to warn that operation of the machinery with guards removed would expose chains, belts, gears, shafts, pulleys, couplings, etc., which create hazards.

WARNING
Moving equipment can cause severe injury
CHR930005

DANGER
Climbing, sitting, walking or riding on conveyor at any time will cause severe injury or death
KEEP OFF
CHR930004

WARNING
Exposed moving parts can cause severe injury
LOCK OUT POWER before removing guard
CHR930001

"A"
LOCATE AT TERMINAL ENDS (BOTH SIDES)

"B"
SPACE UP TO A MAXIMUM OF 20 FT. CENTERS (BOTH SIDES)

"C"
LOCATE AT DRIVE GUARDS

LOCATE ON DRIVE SECTION (BOTH SIDES)

"D"

General purpose label to warn maintenance personnel that conveyors should be shut off and locked out prior to servicing; Examples: drives, take-ups, lubrication points which require guard removal.

WARNING
Servicing moving or energized equipment can cause severe injury
LOCK OUT POWER before servicing
CHR930009

UH - 6

This page shows the four safety labels that the industry association recommends for use on conveyor belts.

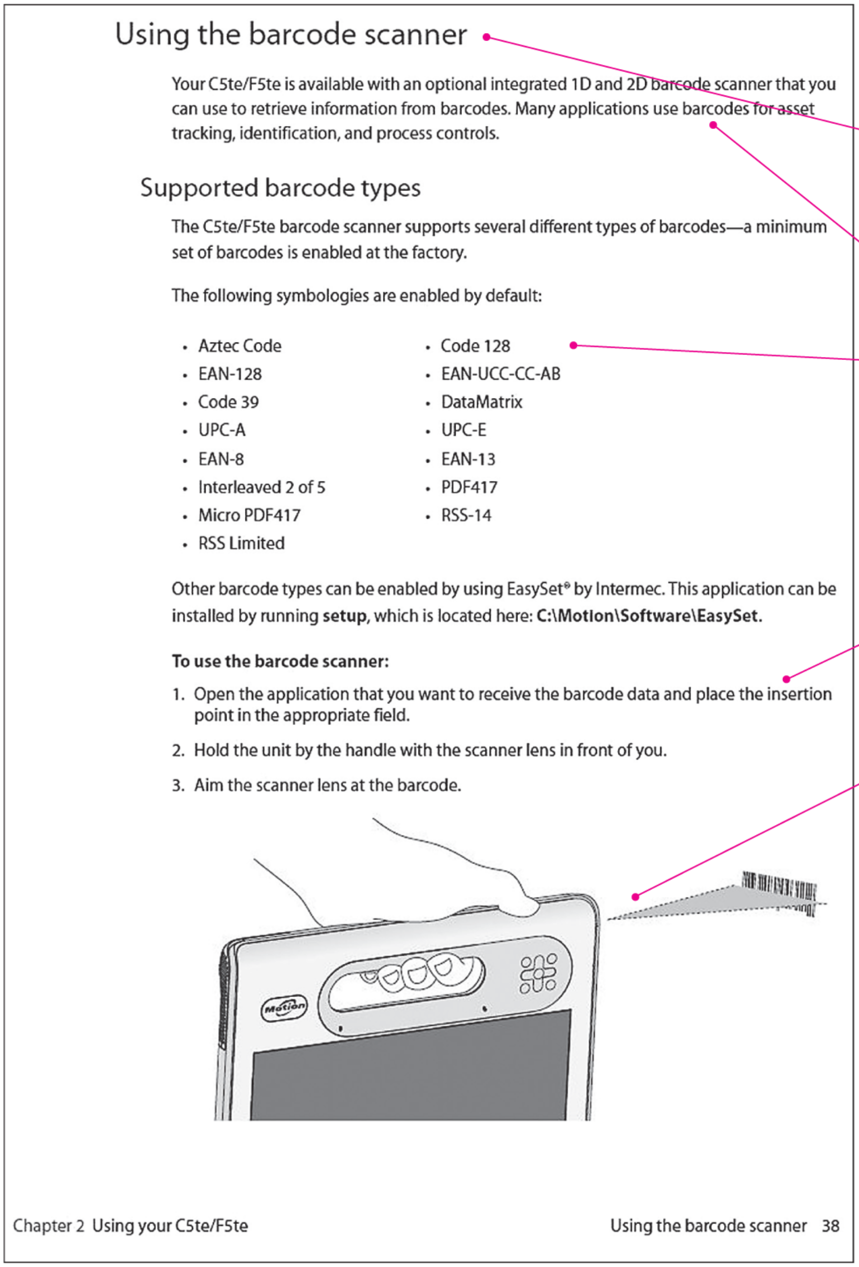
The diagram of the conveyor belt shows where the organization recommends placing the safety labels.

Reprinted by permission of Conveyor Equipment Manufacturers Association.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The page is titled CEMA Safety Labels, Placement Guidelines. Below are headings reading, product: Unit handling; Equipment: Slat Conveyors. Three short columns each contain a paragraph accompanied by a warning label, a danger label, and another warning label, from left to right. The labels show three different hazardous positions, labeled A, B, and C. Beneath the labels is a drawing of the conveyor belt with locations highlighted as to where to place labels. Under the drawing is a fourth warning label, D. At the bottom is the CEMA logo. A notation pointing to the labels reads, This page shows the four safety labels that the industry association recommends for use on conveyor belts. A notation pointing to the drawing reads, The diagram of the conveyor belt shows where the organization recommends placing the safety labels.

Return to Figure 14.10 Placement of Safety Information on Equipment

Extended description for Figure 14.11 Excerpt from a Set of Instructions



Using the barcode scanner

Your C5te/F5te is available with an optional integrated 1D and 2D barcode scanner that you can use to retrieve information from barcodes. Many applications use barcodes for asset tracking, identification, and process controls.

Supported barcode types

The C5te/F5te barcode scanner supports several different types of barcodes—a minimum set of barcodes is enabled at the factory.

The following symbologies are enabled by default:

- Aztec Code
- EAN-128
- Code 39
- UPC-A
- EAN-8
- Interleaved 2 of 5
- Micro PDF417
- RSS Limited
- Code 128
- EAN-UCC-CC-AB
- DataMatrix
- UPC-E
- EAN-13
- PDF417
- RSS-14

Other barcode types can be enabled by using EasySet® by Intermec. This application can be installed by running **setup**, which is located here: **C:\Motion\Software\EasySet.**

To use the barcode scanner:

1. Open the application that you want to receive the barcode data and place the insertion point in the appropriate field.
2. Hold the unit by the handle with the scanner lens in front of you.
3. Aim the scanner lens at the barcode.

Chapter 2 Using your C5te/F5te

Using the barcode scanner 38

This page from the user's manual for a tablet computer used in healthcare environments discusses how to use the barcode scanner.

Note that the writer uses a gerund (*-ing* verb) in the major heading to describe the action ("Using the barcode scanner").

The writer explains why readers might want to scan barcodes.

The writer lists the types of barcodes the tablet can scan and then explains how to enable the tablet to scan additional types. Note that the more conceptual information about the task precedes the instructional information. Why? Because readers want to understand the big picture before getting into the details.

The writer presents the steps. Note that the writer numbers the steps and uses the imperative mood for each one.

The drawing helps readers understand how to hold the tablet and aim it at the barcode. In cases such as this, simple drawings work better than photographs because they do not distract readers with unnecessary detail.

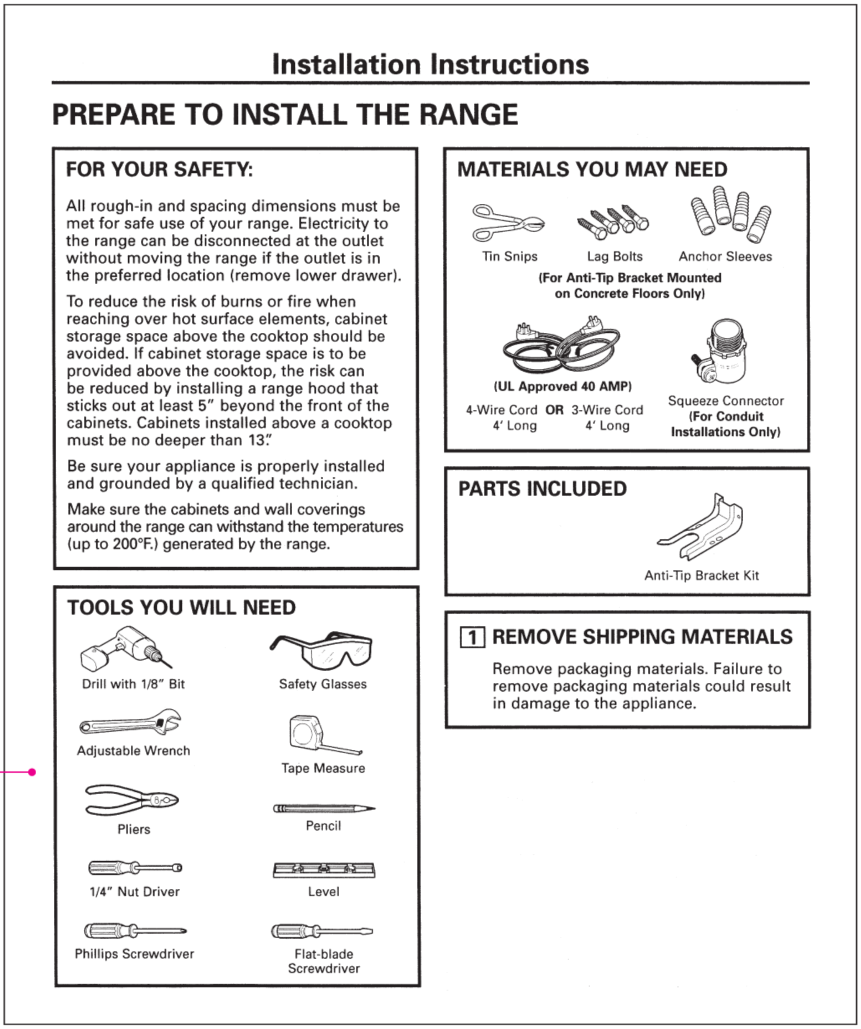
Courtesy of Xplore.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

A notation reads, This page from the user's manual for a tablet computer used in healthcare environments discusses how to use the barcode scanner. The heading reads, Using the barcode scanner. A note reads, Note that the writer uses a gerund (-ing verb) in the major heading to describe the action (“Using the barcode scanner”). The heading is followed by a paragraph of text. A notation reads, The writer explains why readers might want to scan barcodes. A subtitle reads, Supported barcode types, followed by a paragraph of text, then a bulleted list of scanner types, then another paragraph. Numbered steps on how to use the barcode scanner are presented at the bottom with a drawing illustrating them. Notations read, The writer presents the steps. Note that the writer numbers the steps and uses the imperative mood for each one; The drawing helps readers understand how to hold the tablet and aim it at the barcode. In cases such as this, simple drawings work better than photographs because they do not distract readers with unnecessary detail.

Return to Figure 14.11 Excerpt from a Set of Instructions

Extended description for Figure 14.12 List of Tools and Materials



Installation Instructions

PREPARE TO INSTALL THE RANGE

FOR YOUR SAFETY:

All rough-in and spacing dimensions must be met for safe use of your range. Electricity to the range can be disconnected at the outlet without moving the range if the outlet is in the preferred location (remove lower drawer).

To reduce the risk of burns or fire when reaching over hot surface elements, cabinet storage space above the cooktop should be avoided. If cabinet storage space is to be provided above the cooktop, the risk can be reduced by installing a range hood that sticks out at least 5″ beyond the front of the cabinets. Cabinets installed above a cooktop must be no deeper than 13″.

Be sure your appliance is properly installed and grounded by a qualified technician.

Make sure the cabinets and wall coverings around the range can withstand the temperatures (up to 200°F.) generated by the range.

TOOLS YOU WILL NEED

Drill with 1/8″ Bit

Safety Glasses

Adjustable Wrench

Tape Measure

Pliers

Pencil

1/4″ Nut Driver

Level

Phillips Screwdriver

Flat-blade Screwdriver

MATERIALS YOU MAY NEED

Tin Snips

Lag Bolts

Anchor Sleeves

(For Anti-Tip Bracket Mounted on Concrete Floors Only)

(UL Approved 40 AMP)

4-Wire Cord 4′ Long **OR** 3-Wire Cord 4′ Long

Squeeze Connector **(For Conduit Installations Only)**

PARTS INCLUDED

Anti-Tip Bracket Kit

1 REMOVE SHIPPING MATERIALS

Remove packaging materials. Failure to remove packaging materials could result in damage to the appliance.

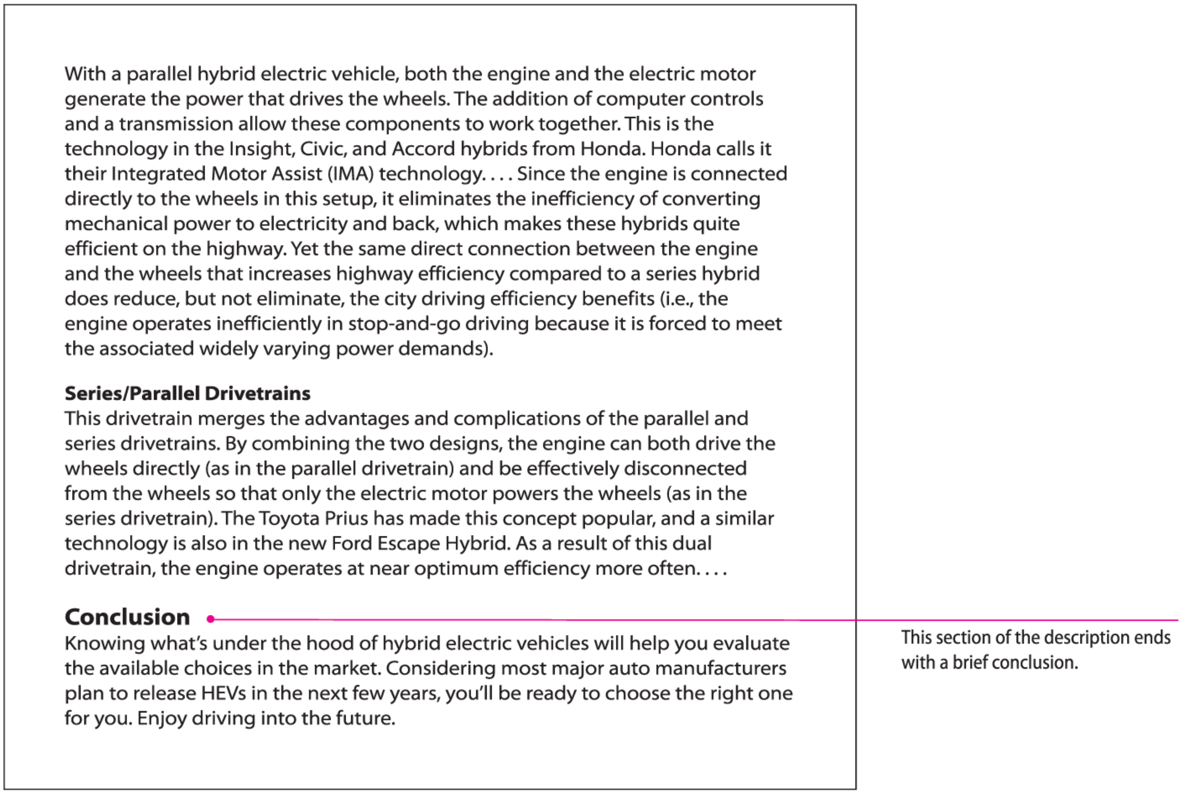
Drawings of tools, materials, and parts are more effective than lists.

Prepare to Install the Range from General Electric, INSTALATION INSTRUCTIONS: FREE-STANDING ELECTRIC RANGES (Manual 229C4053P545-1 31-10556-1 04-03 JR). Used with permission.

The heading reads, Prepare to install the range. Below, five boxes contain text and images. At the top left is a text box that reads, For your Safety: All rough-in and spacing dimensions must be met for safe use of your range. Electricity to the range can be disconnected at the outlet without removing the range if the outlet is in the preferred location (remove lower drawer). To reduce the risk of burns or fire when reaching over hot surface elements cabinet storage above the cooktop should be avoided. If cabinet storage space is to be provided above the cooktop, the risk can be reduced by installing a range hood that sticks out at least 5 inches beyond the front of the cabinets. Cabinets installed above a cooktop must be no deeper than 13 inches. Be sure your appliance is properly installed and grounded by a qualified technician. Make sure the cabinets and wall coverings around the range can withstand the temperatures (up to 200 degrees Fahrenheit) generated by the range. The bottom left box is titled Tools You Will Need and contains labeled drawings. The list of tools required are Drill with one eighth inch bit; Safety Glasses; Adjustable Wrench; Tape Measure; Pliers; Pencil; one quarter Inch Nut Driver; Level; Phillips Screwdriver; Flat-Blade Screwdriver. The top right box is titled Materials You May Need and contains labeled drawings of a series of items as follows: tin snips; lag bolts; anchor sleeves (for anti-tip bracket mounted on concrete floors only); U L approved 40 amp 4-wire cord 4 feet long OR 3-wire cord 4 feet long; an squeeze connector (for conduit installations only). Under Materials needed the central box on the right is titled Parts Included and shows a drawing of an anti-tip bracket kit. The final box shows the first step, labeled 1. Remove shipping materials and reads, Remove packaging materials. Failure to remove packaging materials could result in damage to the appliance. A note reads, Drawings of tools, materials, and parts are more effective than lists.

Return to Figure 14.12 List of Tools and Materials

Extended description for Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description



With a parallel hybrid electric vehicle, both the engine and the electric motor generate the power that drives the wheels. The addition of computer controls and a transmission allow these components to work together. This is the technology in the Insight, Civic, and Accord hybrids from Honda. Honda calls it their Integrated Motor Assist (IMA) technology. . . . Since the engine is connected directly to the wheels in this setup, it eliminates the inefficiency of converting mechanical power to electricity and back, which makes these hybrids quite efficient on the highway. Yet the same direct connection between the engine and the wheels that increases highway efficiency compared to a series hybrid does reduce, but not eliminate, the city driving efficiency benefits (i.e., the engine operates inefficiently in stop-and-go driving because it is forced to meet the associated widely varying power demands).

Series/Parallel Drivetrains

This drivetrain merges the advantages and complications of the parallel and series drivetrains. By combining the two designs, the engine can both drive the wheels directly (as in the parallel drivetrain) and be effectively disconnected from the wheels so that only the electric motor powers the wheels (as in the series drivetrain). The Toyota Prius has made this concept popular, and a similar technology is also in the new Ford Escape Hybrid. As a result of this dual drivetrain, the engine operates at near optimum efficiency more often. . . .

Conclusion

Knowing what's under the hood of hybrid electric vehicles will help you evaluate the available choices in the market. Considering most major auto manufacturers plan to release HEVs in the next few years, you'll be ready to choose the right one for you. Enjoy driving into the future.

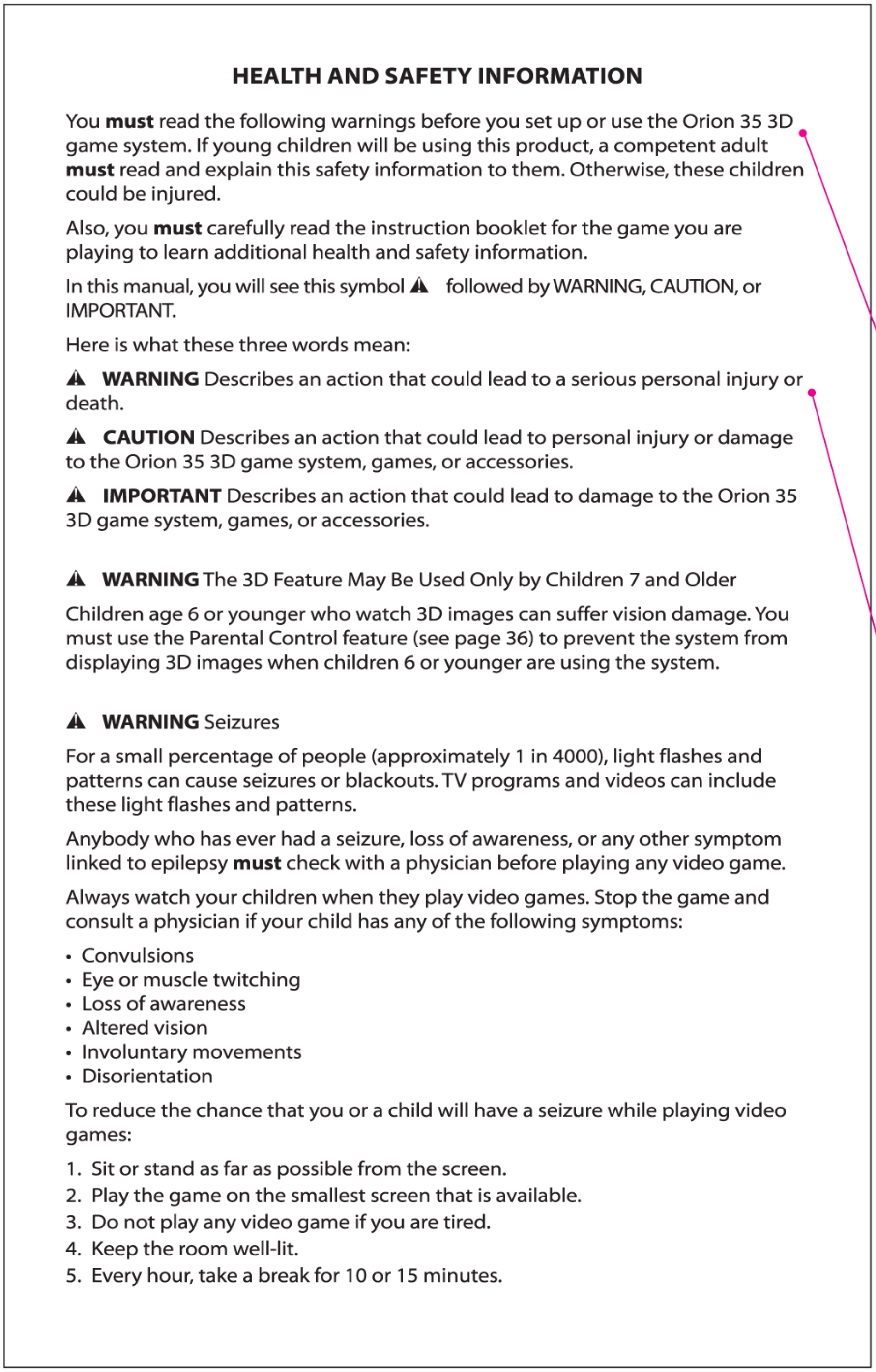
This section of the description ends with a brief conclusion.

Hybrids Under the Hood (Part 2): Drivetrains from Union of Concerned Scientists. www.ucsusa.org. Reprinted by Permission.

Text continues, With a parallel hybrid electric vehicle, both the engine and the electric motor generate the power that drives the wheels. The addition of computer controls and a transmission allow these components to work together. This is the technology in the Insight, Civic, and Accord hybrids from Honda. Honda calls it their Integrated Motor Assist (I M A) technology ellipsis. Since the engine is connected directly to the wheels in this setup, it eliminates the inefficiency of converting mechanical power to electricity and back, which makes these hybrids quite efficient on the highway. Yet the same direct connection between the engine and the wheels that increases highway efficiency compared to a series hybrid does reduce, but not eliminate, the city driving efficiency benefits (for example the engine operates inefficiently in stop-and-go driving because it is forced to meet the associated widely varying power demands). A bold heading reads, Series slash Parallel Drivetrains This drivetrain merges the advantages and complications of the parallel and series drivetrains. By combining the two designs, the engine can both drive the wheels directly (as in the parallel drivetrain) and be effectively disconnected from the wheels so that only the electric motor powers the wheels (as in the series drivetrain). The Toyota Prius has made this concept popular, and a similar technology is also in the new Ford Escape Hybrid. As a result of this dual drivetrain, the engine operates at near optimum efficiency more often ellipsis. A bold heading reads, Conclusion. A notation reads, This section of the description ends with a brief conclusion. Knowing what's under the hood of hybrid electric vehicles will help you evaluate the available choices in the market. Considering most major auto manufacturers plan to release H E Vs in the next few years, you'll be ready to choose the right one for you. Enjoy driving into the future.

Return to Figure 14.4 Excerpt from a Mechanism Description

Extended description for Figure 14.13 Excerpt from Safety Information



HEALTH AND SAFETY INFORMATION

You **must** read the following warnings before you set up or use the Orion 35 3D game system. If young children will be using this product, a competent adult **must** read and explain this safety information to them. Otherwise, these children could be injured.

Also, you **must** carefully read the instruction booklet for the game you are playing to learn additional health and safety information.

In this manual, you will see this symbol ⚠ followed by WARNING, CAUTION, or IMPORTANT.

Here is what these three words mean:

⚠ **WARNING** Describes an action that could lead to a serious personal injury or death.

⚠ **CAUTION** Describes an action that could lead to personal injury or damage to the Orion 35 3D game system, games, or accessories.

⚠ **IMPORTANT** Describes an action that could lead to damage to the Orion 35 3D game system, games, or accessories.

⚠ **WARNING** The 3D Feature May Be Used Only by Children 7 and Older

Children age 6 or younger who watch 3D images can suffer vision damage. You must use the Parental Control feature (see page 36) to prevent the system from displaying 3D images when children 6 or younger are using the system.

⚠ **WARNING** Seizures

For a small percentage of people (approximately 1 in 4000), light flashes and patterns can cause seizures or blackouts. TV programs and videos can include these light flashes and patterns.

Anybody who has ever had a seizure, loss of awareness, or any other symptom linked to epilepsy **must** check with a physician before playing any video game.

Always watch your children when they play video games. Stop the game and consult a physician if your child has any of the following symptoms:

- Convulsions
- Eye or muscle twitching
- Loss of awareness
- Altered vision
- Involuntary movements
- Disorientation

To reduce the chance that you or a child will have a seizure while playing video games:

1. Sit or stand as far as possible from the screen.
2. Play the game on the smallest screen that is available.
3. Do not play any video game if you are tired.
4. Keep the room well-lit.
5. Every hour, take a break for 10 or 15 minutes.

This excerpt from a user manual for a video-game player that displays 3D images describes two of the safety risks associated with playing video games.

Notice that the excerpt uses mandatory language: "You must . . ." Although politeness is desirable most of the time, you don't want to sound as if you are making suggestions or asking readers to do you favors. For instance, if a task calls for using safety goggles, do not write "You should consider wearing safety goggles." Instead, write "You must wear safety goggles when operating this equipment."

This set of safety information defines the keywords *warning*, *caution*, and *important*.

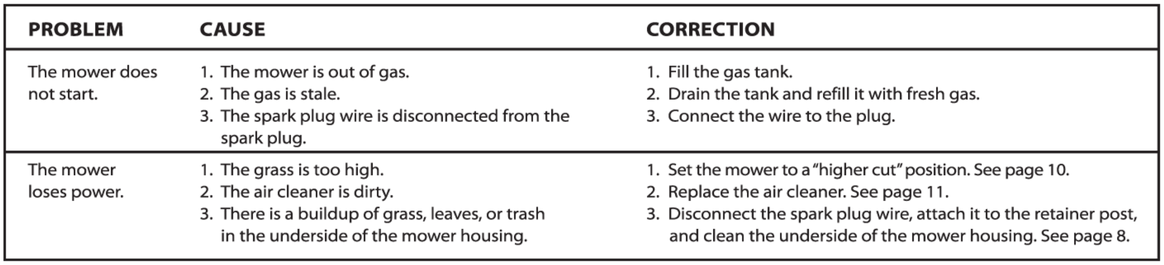
The safety information goes on to discuss eyestrain and motion sickness, repetitive motion injuries, and radio frequency interference.

The heading reads, Health and Safety Information. Text reads, You must read the following warnings before you set up or use the Orion 35 3 D game system. If young children will be using this product, a competent adult must read and explain this safety information to them. Otherwise, these children could be injured. Notations read, This excerpt from a user manual for a video-game player that displays 3D images describes two of the safety risks associated with playing video games; Notice that the excerpt uses mandatory language: “You must …” Although politeness is desirable most of the time, you don’t want to sound as if you are making suggestions or asking readers to do you favors. For instance, if a task calls for using safety goggles, do not write “You should consider wearing safety goggles.” Instead, write “You must wear safety goggles when operating this equipment.” Also, you must carefully read the instruction booklet for the game you are playing to learn additional health and safety information. Note the word “must” is always bold throughout. In this manual, you will see this symbol (an icon of a triangle and exclamation point) followed by WARNING, CAUTION, or IMPORTANT. Here is what these three words mean: Icon WARNING Describes an action that could lead to a serious personal injury or death. Notation reads, This set of safety information defines the keywords warning, caution, and important. Icon CAUTION Describes an action that could lead to personal injury or damage to the Orion 35 3 D game system, games, or accessories. Icon IMPORTANT Describes an action that could lead to damage to the Orion 35 3 D game system, games, or accessories. Icon WARNING The 3 D Feature May Be Used Only by Children 7 and

Older Children age 6 or younger who watch 3 D images can suffer vision damage. You must use the Parental Control feature (see page 36) to prevent the system from displaying 3 D images when children 6 or younger are using the system. Icon WARNING Seizures For a small percentage of people (approximately 1 in 4000), light flashes and patterns can cause seizures or blackouts. TV programs and videos can include these light flashes and patterns. Anybody who has ever had a seizure, loss of awareness, or any other symptom linked to epilepsy must check with a physician before playing any video game. Always watch your children when they play video games. Stop the game and consult a physician if your child has any of the following symptoms: Bullet Convulsions Bullet Eye or muscle twitching Bullet Loss of awareness Bullet Altered vision Bullet Involuntary movements Bullet Disorientation To reduce the chance that you or a child will have a seizure while playing video games: 1. Sit or stand as far as possible from the screen. 2. Play the game on the smallest screen that is available. 3. Do not play any video game if you are tired. 4. Keep the room well-lit. 5. Every hour, take a break for 10 or 15 minutes.

Return to Figure 14.13 Excerpt from Safety Information

Extended description for Figure 14.14 Excerpt from a Troubleshooting Guide



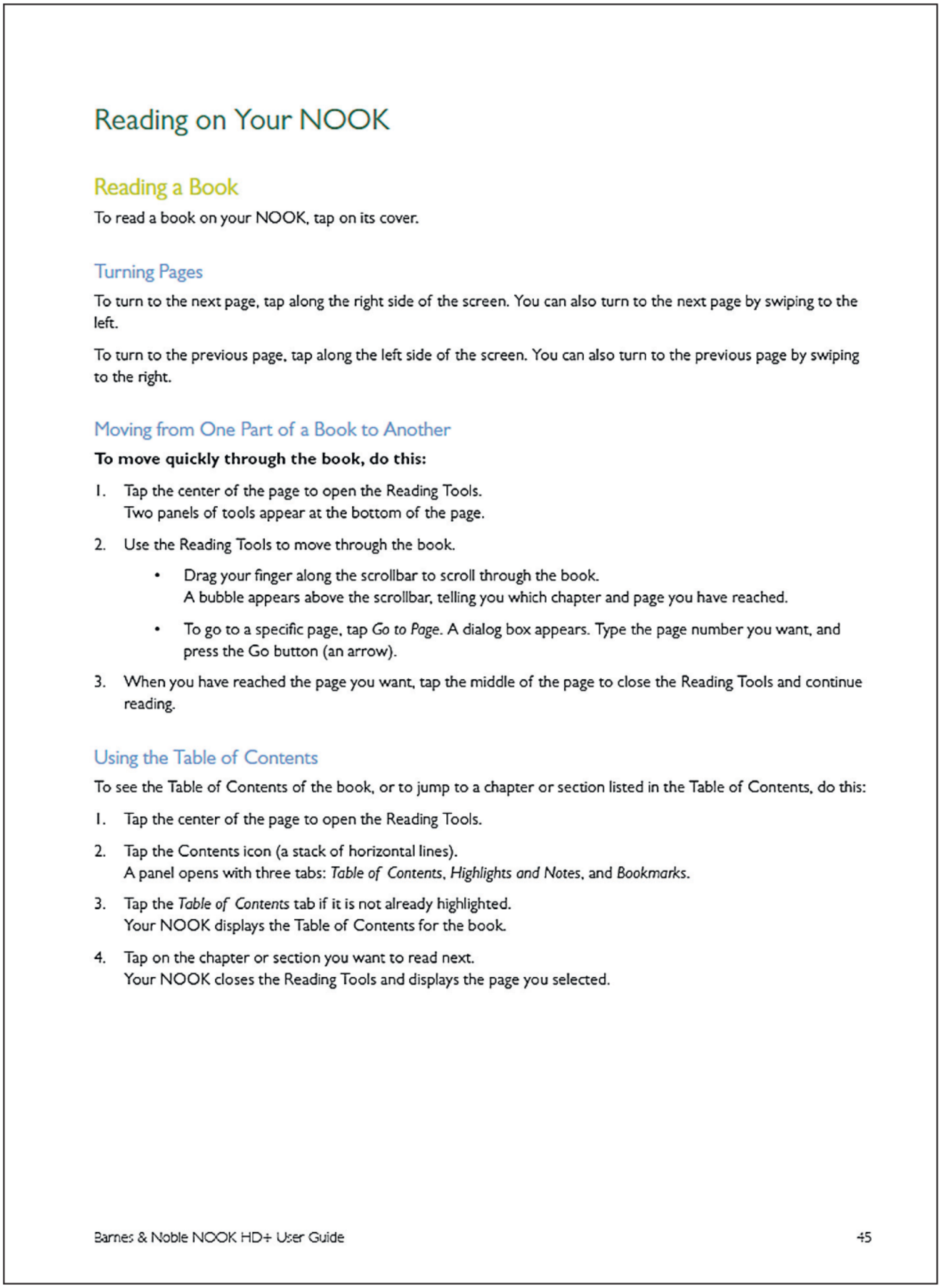
PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTION
The mower does not start.	1. The mower is out of gas. 2. The gas is stale. 3. The spark plug wire is disconnected from the spark plug.	1. Fill the gas tank. 2. Drain the tank and refill it with fresh gas. 3. Connect the wire to the plug.
The mower loses power.	1. The grass is too high. 2. The air cleaner is dirty. 3. There is a buildup of grass, leaves, or trash in the underside of the mower housing.	1. Set the mower to a "higher cut" position. See page 10. 2. Replace the air cleaner. See page 11. 3. Disconnect the spark plug wire, attach it to the retainer post, and clean the underside of the mower housing. See page 8.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

There are three columns: Problem, Cause, and Correction. Text reads as follows. Problem: The mower does not start. 1. The mower is out of gas. 1. Fill the gas tank. 2. The gas is stale. 2. Drain the tank and refill it with fresh gas. 3. The spark plug wire is disconnected from the spark plug. 3. Connect the wire to the plug. Problem: The mower loses power. 1. The grass is too high. 1. Set the mower to a "higher cut" position. See page 10. 2. The air cleaner is dirty. 2. Replace the air cleaner. See page 11. 3. There is a buildup of grass, leaves, or trash in the underside of the mower housing. 3. Disconnect the spark plug wire, attach it to the retainer post, and clean the underside of the mower housing. See page 8.

Return to Figure 14.14 Excerpt from a Troubleshooting Guide

Extended description for A document is titled, Reading on Your NOOK



Reading on Your NOOK

Reading a Book

To read a book on your NOOK, tap on its cover.

Turning Pages

To turn to the next page, tap along the right side of the screen. You can also turn to the next page by swiping to the left.

To turn to the previous page, tap along the left side of the screen. You can also turn to the previous page by swiping to the right.

Moving from One Part of a Book to Another

To move quickly through the book, do this:

1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading Tools.
   Two panels of tools appear at the bottom of the page.
2. Use the Reading Tools to move through the book.
    - Drag your finger along the scrollbar to scroll through the book.
      A bubble appears above the scrollbar, telling you which chapter and page you have reached.
    - To go to a specific page, tap *Go to Page*. A dialog box appears. Type the page number you want, and press the Go button (an arrow).
3. When you have reached the page you want, tap the middle of the page to close the Reading Tools and continue reading.

Using the Table of Contents

To see the Table of Contents of the book, or to jump to a chapter or section listed in the Table of Contents, do this:

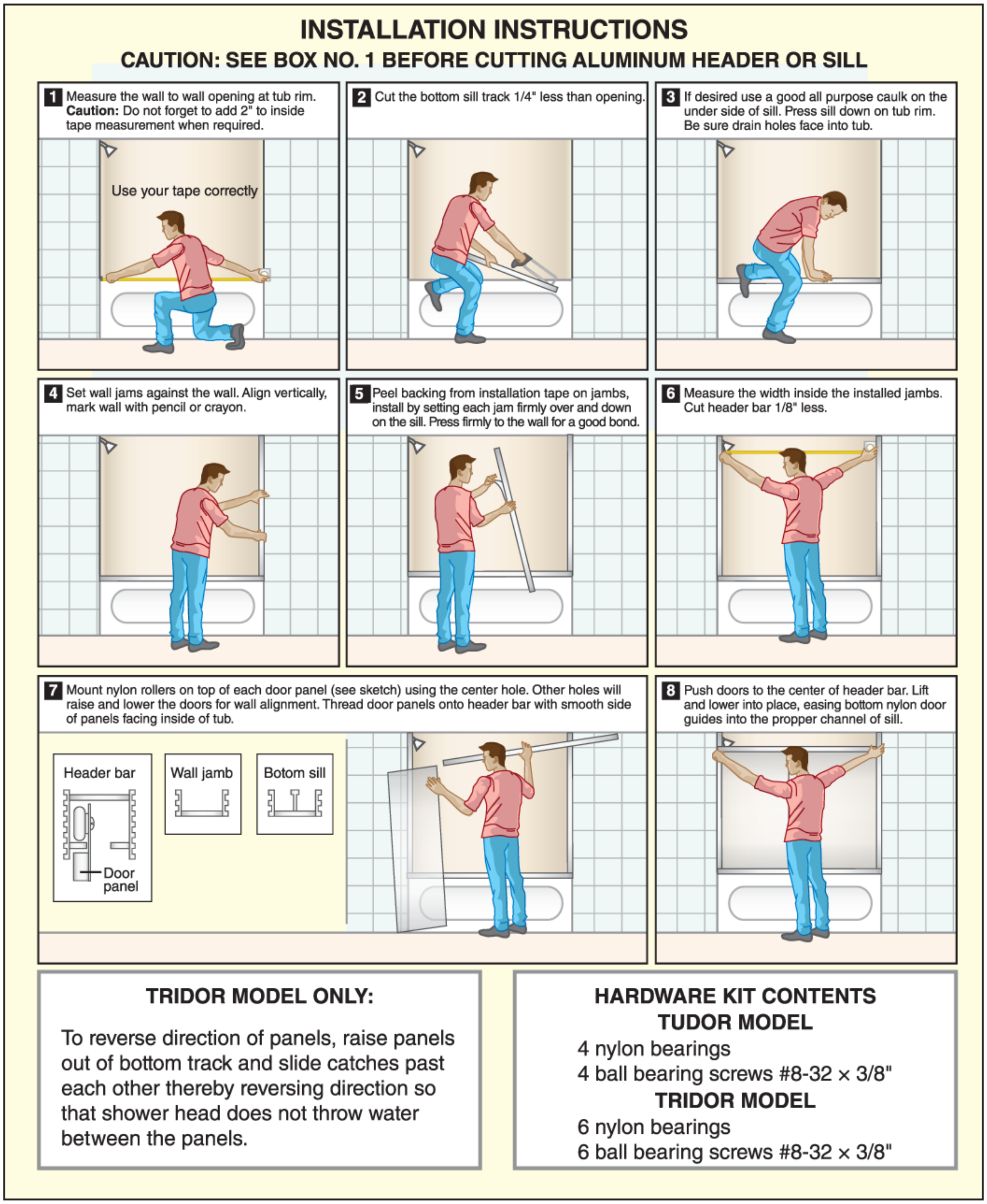
1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading Tools.
2. Tap the Contents icon (a stack of horizontal lines).
   A panel opens with three tabs: *Table of Contents*, *Highlights and Notes*, and *Bookmarks*.
3. Tap the *Table of Contents* tab if it is not already highlighted.
   Your NOOK displays the Table of Contents for the book.
4. Tap on the chapter or section you want to read next.
   Your NOOK closes the Reading Tools and displays the page you selected.

© 2013 barnesandnoble.com llc. All rights reserved. Reprinted with permission.

A heading reads, Reading a book. To read a book on your NOOK, tap on its cover. A heading reads, Turning Pages To turn to the next page, tap along the right side of the screen. You can also turn to the next page by swiping to the left. To turn to the previous page, tap along the left side of the screen. You can also turn to the previous page by swiping to the right. A heading reads, Moving from One Part of a Book to Another To move quickly through the book, do this: 1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading tools. Two panels of tools appear at the bottom of the page. 2. Use the Reading Tools to move through the book. Bullet Drag your finger along the scrollbar to scroll through the book. A bubble appears above the scrollbar, telling you which chapter and page you have reached. Bullet To go to a specific page, tap Go to Page. A dialog box appears. Type the page number you want and press the Go button (an arrow). 3. When you have reached the page you want, tap the middle of the page to close the Reading Tools and continue reading. A heading reads, Using the Table of Contents To see the Table of Contents of the book, or to jump to a chapter or section listed in the Table of Contents, do this: 1. Tap the center of the page to open the Reading Tools. 2. Tap the Contents icon (a stack of horizontal lines). A panel opens with three tabs: Table of Contents, Highlights and Notes, and Bookmarks. 3. Tape the Table of Contents tab if it is not already highlighted. Your NOOK displays the Table of Contents for the book. 4. Tap on the chapter or section you want to read next. Your NOOK closes the Reading Tools and displays the page you selected.

Return to A document is titled, Reading on Your NOOK

Extended description for A page containing images and text is titled, Installation Instructions



INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

CAUTION: SEE BOX NO. 1 BEFORE CUTTING ALUMINUM HEADER OR SILL

1 Measure the wall to wall opening at tub rim. **Caution:** Do not forget to add 2" to inside tape measurement when required.

Use your tape correctly

2 Cut the bottom sill track 1/4" less than opening.

3 If desired use a good all purpose caulk on the under side of sill. Press sill down on tub rim. Be sure drain holes face into tub.

4 Set wall jams against the wall. Align vertically, mark wall with pencil or crayon.

5 Peel backing from installation tape on jambs, install by setting each jam firmly over and down on the sill. Press firmly to the wall for a good bond.

6 Measure the width inside the installed jambs. Cut header bar 1/8" less.

7 Mount nylon rollers on top of each door panel (see sketch) using the center hole. Other holes will raise and lower the doors for wall alignment. Thread door panels onto header bar with smooth side of panels facing inside of tub.

8 Push doors to the center of header bar. Lift and lower into place, easing bottom nylon door guides into the propper channel of sill.

TRIDOR MODEL ONLY:

To reverse direction of panels, raise panels out of bottom track and slide catches past each other thereby reversing direction so that shower head does not throw water between the panels.

HARDWARE KIT CONTENTS

TUDOR MODEL

4 nylon bearings
4 ball bearing screws #8-32 × 3/8"

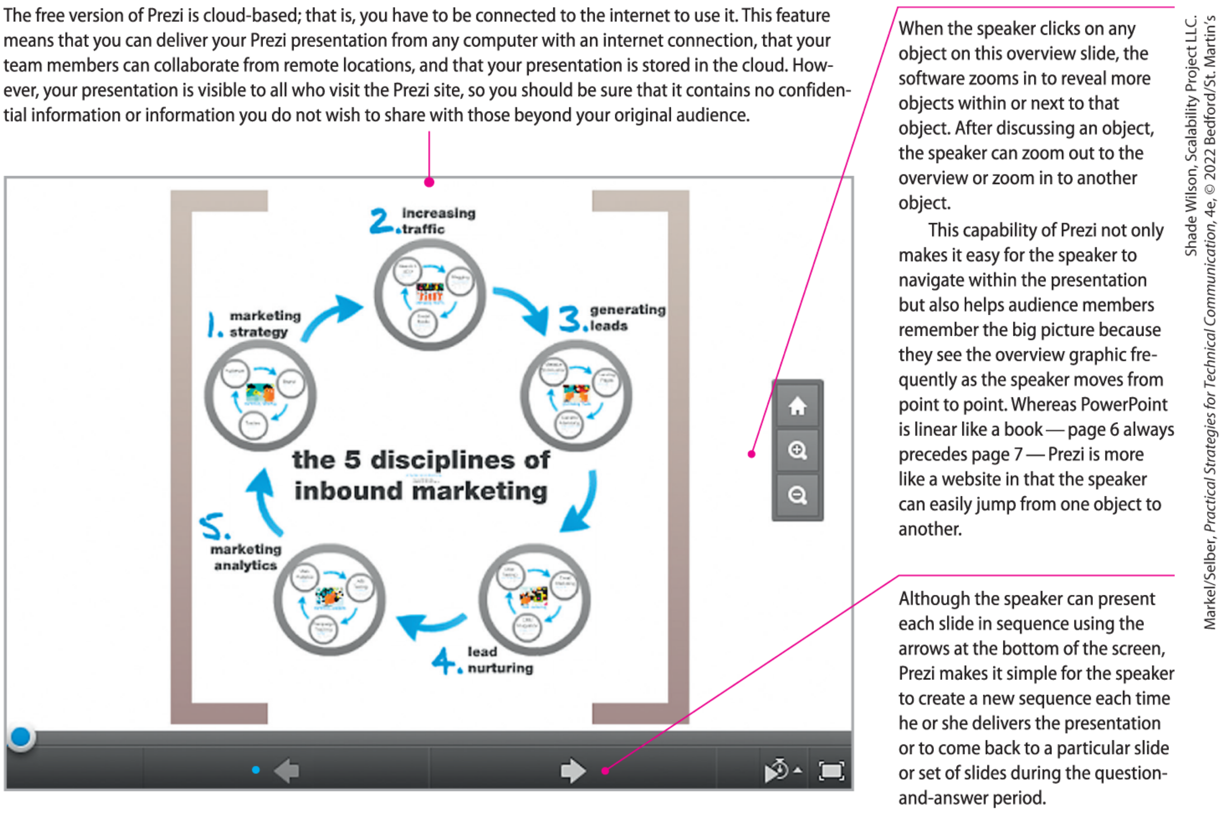
TRIDOR MODEL

6 nylon bearings
6 ball bearing screws #8-32 × 3/8"

Text below the title reads, CAUTION: SEE BOX NO. 1 BEFORE CUTTING ALUMINUM HEADER OR SILL Eight illustrations depict the steps, with instructions above each one. Two text boxes are at the bottom. Instructions read as follows: 1. Measure the wall to wall opening at tub rim. Caution: Do not forget to add 2 inches to inside tape measurement when required. 2. Cut the bottom sill track one quarter inch less than opening. 3. If desired use a good all purpose caulk on the underside of sill. Press sill down on tub rim. Be sure drain holes face into tub. 4. Set wall jams against the wall. Align vertically, mark wall with pencil or crayon. 5. Peel backing from installation tape on jambs, install by setting each jam firmly over and down on the sill. Press firmly to the wall for a good bond. 6. Measure the width inside the installed jambs. Cut header bar one eighth inch less. 7. Mount nylon rollers on top of each door panel (see sketch) using the center hole. Other holes will raise and lower the doors for wall alignment. Thread door panels onto header bar with smooth side of panels facing inside of tub. Note this panel shows drawings of the header bar, wall jamb, and bottom sill as well as the person doing installation. 8. Push doors to the center of header bar. Lift and lower into place, easing bottom nylon door guides into the proper channel of sill. The first text box reads, Tridor Model Only: To reverse direction of panels, raise panels out of bottom track and slide catches past each other thereby reversing direction so that shower head does not throw water between the panels. The second text box reads, Hardware Kit Contents Tudor Model: 4 nylon bearings; 4 ball bearing screws number 8 dash 32 by three eighths inch. Tridor Model: 6 nylon bearings; 6 ball bearing screws number 8 dash 32 by three eighths inch

Return to A page containing images and text is titled, Installation Instructions

Extended description for Figure 15.1 The Network Organization of Prezi


The free version of Prezi is cloud-based; that is, you have to be connected to the internet to use it. This feature means that you can deliver your Prezi presentation from any computer with an internet connection, that your team members can collaborate from remote locations, and that your presentation is stored in the cloud. However, your presentation is visible to all who visit the Prezi site, so you should be sure that it contains no confidential information or information you do not wish to share with those beyond your original audience.

When the speaker clicks on any object on this overview slide, the software zooms in to reveal more objects within or next to that object. After discussing an object, the speaker can zoom out to the overview or zoom in to another object.

This capability of Prezi not only makes it easy for the speaker to navigate within the presentation but also helps audience members remember the big picture because they see the overview graphic frequently as the speaker moves from point to point. Whereas PowerPoint is linear like a book — page 6 always precedes page 7 — Prezi is more like a website in that the speaker can easily jump from one object to another.

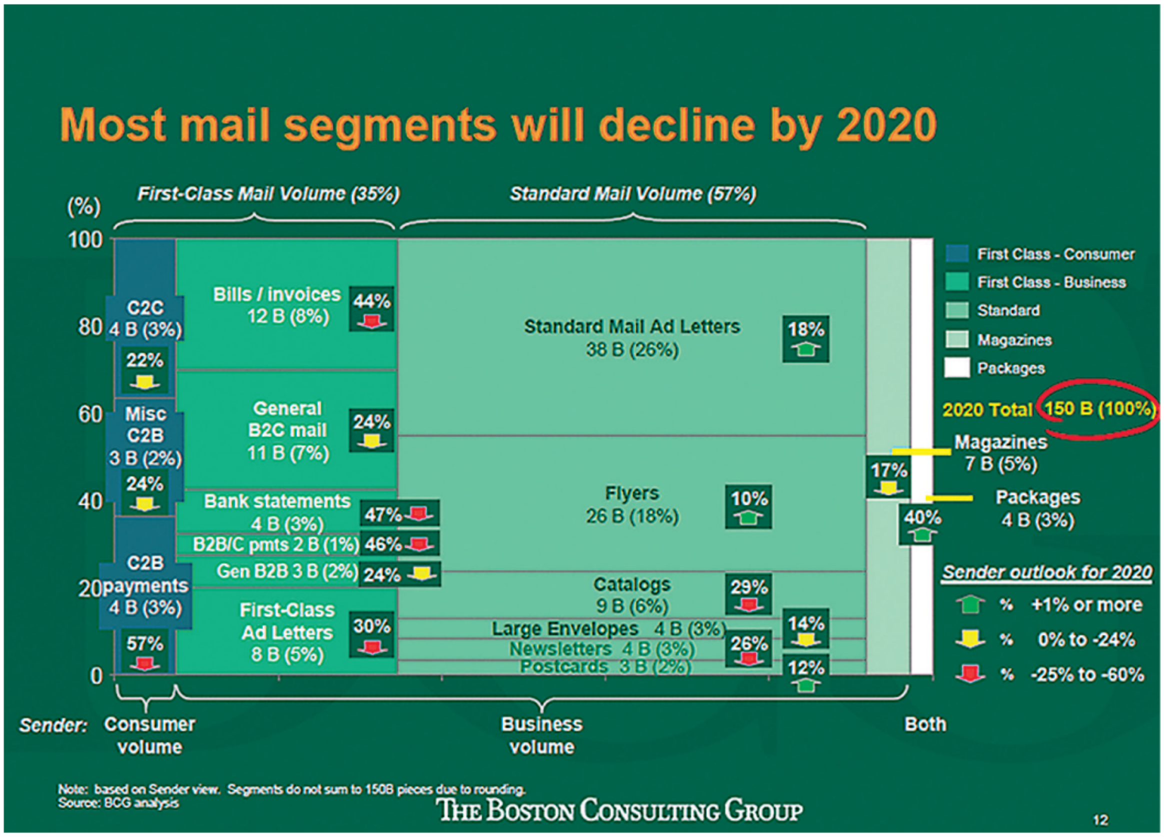
Although the speaker can present each slide in sequence using the arrows at the bottom of the screen, Prezi makes it simple for the speaker to create a new sequence each time he or she delivers the presentation or to come back to a particular slide or set of slides during the question-and-answer period.

Shade Wilson, Scalability Project LLC.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first discipline is marketing strategy. The second is increasing traffic. Third is generating leads. Fourth is lead nurturing, and fifth is marketing analytics. Text at the top pointing to the graphic reads, The free version of Prezi is cloud-based; that is, you have to be connected to the internet to use it. This feature means that you can deliver your Prezi presentation from any computer with an internet connection, that your team members can collaborate from remote locations, and that your presentation is stored in the cloud. However, your presentation is visible to all who visit the Prezi site, so you should be sure that it contains no confidential information or information you do not wish to share with those beyond your original audience. Text to the right reads, When the speaker clicks on any object on this overview slide, the software zooms in to reveal more objects within or next to that object. After discussing an object, the speaker can zoom out to the overview or zoom in to another object. This capability of Prezi not only makes it easy for the speaker to navigate within the presentation but also helps audience members remember the big picture because they see the overview graphic frequently as the speaker moves from point to point. Whereas PowerPoint is linear like a book — page 6 always precedes page 7 — Prezi is more like a website in that the speaker can easily jump from one object to another. Another notation points to arrows at the bottom of the screen and reads, Although the speaker can present each slide in sequence using the arrows at the bottom of the screen, Prezi makes it simple for the speaker to create a new sequence each time he or she delivers the presentation or to come back to a particular slide or set of slides during the question-and-answer period.

Return to Figure 15.1 The Network Organization of Prezi

Extended description for Figure 15.2 Too Much Information on a Slide



Most mail segments will decline by 2020

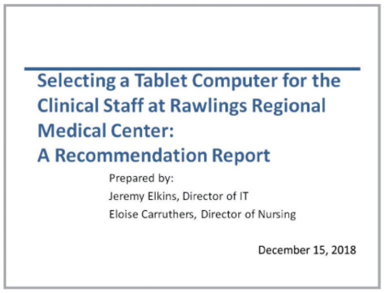
Note: based on Sender view. Segments do not sum to 150B pieces due to rounding.
Source: BCG analysis

Information from Boston Group, 2010: www.usps.com/strategicplanning/_pdf/BCG_Detailedpresentation.pdf.

The slide is titled Most mail segments will decline by 2020. It shows a plethora of information on a green background with white type, arrows, legends, and details that are too small to see or read. It appears very confusing.

Return to Figure 15.2 Too Much Information on a Slide

Extended description for Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

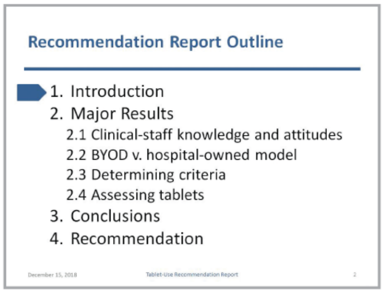


Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center: A Recommendation Report

Prepared by:
Jeremy Elkins, Director of IT
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 15, 2018

The title slide shows the title of the presentation and the name and affiliation of each speaker. You might also want to include the date of the presentation.



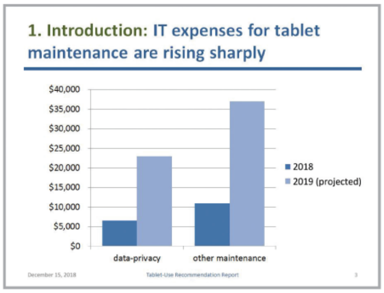
Recommendation Report Outline

➡ 1. Introduction
2. Major Results
    2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
    2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
    2.3 Determining criteria
    2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 2

The next slide presents an overview, which outlines the presentation. The arrow identifies the point the speaker is addressing.

At the bottom of each slide in the body of the presentation is a footer with the date, the title of the presentation, and the number of the slide. The slide number gives audience members a way to refer to the slide when they ask questions.



1. Introduction: IT expenses for tablet maintenance are rising sharply

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 3

This slide uses a simple bar graph created in PowerPoint. Don't try to present a lot of information on a single slide.

The title of this slide uses the numbering system introduced in the previous slide. This cue helps the audience understand the structure of the presentation. Following the colon is an independent clause that presents the claim that will be supported in the slide.

1. Introduction (cont'd): We cannot certify our tablets for disinfection

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 4

If the images in your presentation are your own intellectual property or are clip art that comes with the software, you can legally display them anywhere. If they are not, you need to cite their sources and obtain written permission. You have three choices for placing the source statements: at the bottom of the appropriate slides, in a sources slide that you show at the end of the presentation, or on a paper handout that you distribute at the end of the presentation.

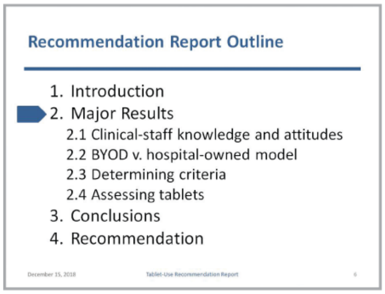
BeeBright/Shutterstock.com

1. Introduction (cont'd): We lack a policy for making tablets available

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 5

For second and subsequent slides within the same section of the presentation, use the "continued" abbreviation shown here. Notice that the speakers use one color for the generic term ("Introduction") and a different color for the claim.

Photo: kurhan/Shutterstock.com



Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
➡ 2. Major Results
    2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
    2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
    2.3 Determining criteria
    2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 6

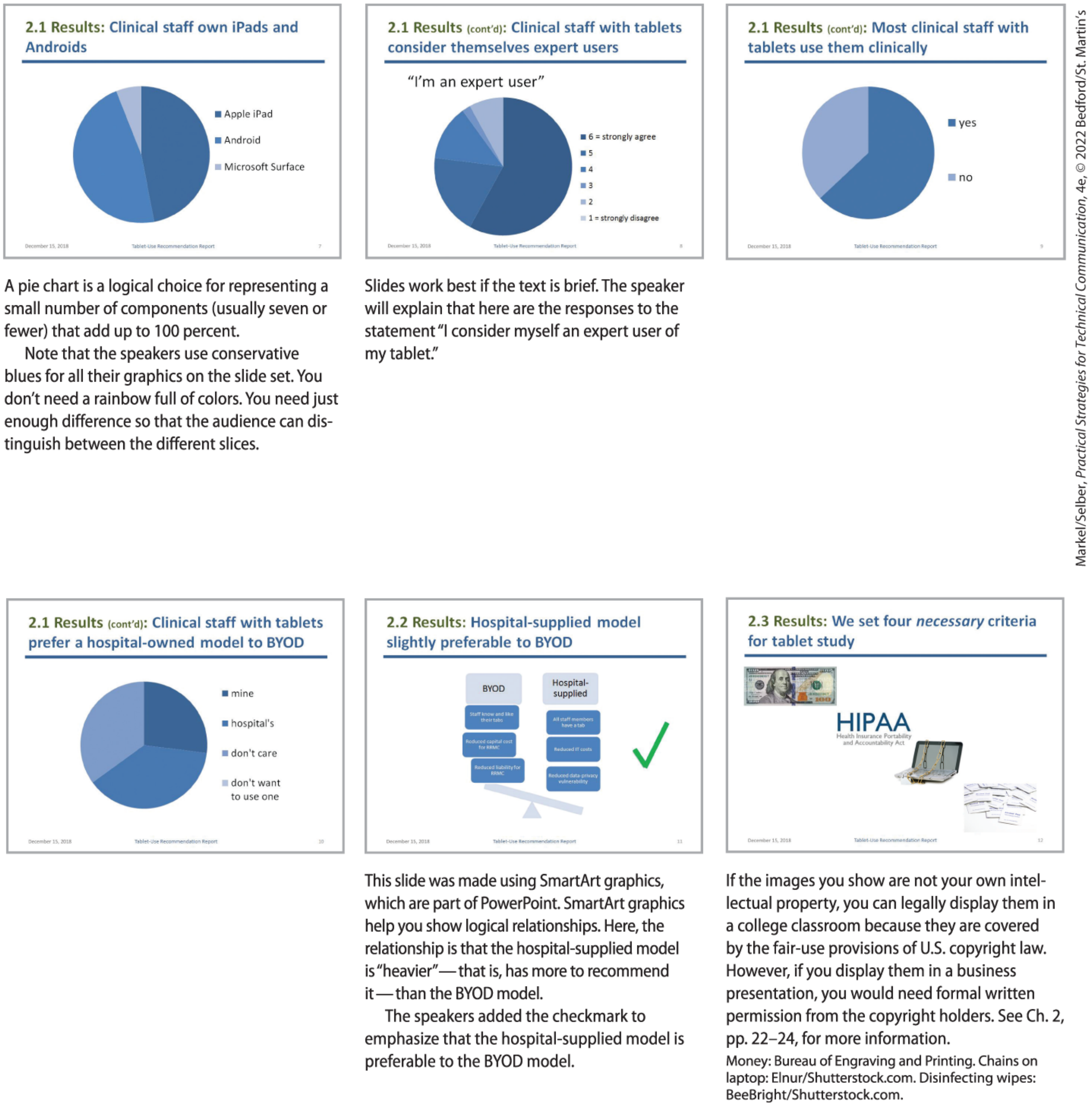
This slide is identical to Slide 2, except that the arrow has moved. Use this organizing slide to help your audience remember the overall organization of your presentation. Don't overdo it; if you presented this organizing slide just a few slides ago, don't use it again until you make the transition to the next major unit in the presentation.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first slide is the title slide, showing the title of the presentation and who prepared it with the date. Text reads, The title slide shows the title of the presentation and the name and affiliation of each speaker. You might also want to include the date of the presentation. The second slide shows the outline of the report and an arrow pointing to the Introduction. Text reads, The next slide presents an overview, which outlines the presentation. The arrow identifies the point the speaker is addressing. At the bottom of each slide in the body of the presentation is a footer with the date, the title of the presentation, and the number of the slide. The slide number gives audience members a way to refer to the slide when they ask questions. The next slide shows a bar graph with accompanying text reading, This slide uses a simple bar graph created in PowerPoint. Don’t try to present a lot of information on a single slide. The title of this slide uses the numbering system introduced in the previous slide. This cue helps the audience understand the structure of the presentation. Following the colon is an independent clause that presents the claim that will be supported in the slide. The fourth slide shows a photo with text below reading, If the images in your presentation are your own intellectual property or are clip art that comes with the software, you can legally display them anywhere. If they are not, you need to cite their sources and obtain written permission. You have three choices for placing the source statements: at the bottom of the appropriate slides, in a sources slide that you show at the end of the presentation, or on a paper handout that you distribute at the end of the presentation. BeeBright/Shutterstock dot com. The fifth slide shows a photo of a group of medical professionals. Text reads, For second and subsequent slides within the same section of the presentation, use the “continued” abbreviation shown here. Notice that the speakers use one color for the generic term (“Introduction”) and a different color for the claim. Photo: kurhan/Shutterstock dot com. The sixth slide shows the recommendation report outline with an arrow pointing the Major results. Text reads, This slide is identical to Slide 2, except that the arrow has moved. Use this organizing slide to help your audience remember the overall organization of your presentation. Don’t overdo it; if you presented this organizing slide just a few slides ago, don’t use it again until you make the transition to the next major unit in the presentation.

Return to Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

Extended description for Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation



2.1 Results: Clinical staff own iPads and Androids

Apple iPad
Android
Microsoft Surface

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 7

2.1 Results (cont'd): Clinical staff with tablets consider themselves expert users

"I'm an expert user"

6 = strongly agree
5
4
3
2
1 = strongly disagree

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 8

2.1 Results (cont'd): Most clinical staff with tablets use them clinically

yes
no

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 9

A pie chart is a logical choice for representing a small number of components (usually seven or fewer) that add up to 100 percent.

Note that the speakers use conservative blues for all their graphics on the slide set. You don't need a rainbow full of colors. You need just enough difference so that the audience can distinguish between the different slices.

Slides work best if the text is brief. The speaker will explain that here are the responses to the statement "I consider myself an expert user of my tablet."

2.1 Results (cont'd): Clinical staff with tablets prefer a hospital-owned model to BYOD

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 10

2.2 Results: Hospital-supplied model slightly preferable to BYOD

BYOD

- Staff know and like their tabs
- Reduced capital cost for RRMC
- Reduced liability for RRMC

Hospital-supplied

- All staff members have a tab
- Reduced IT costs
- Reduced data-privacy vulnerability

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 11

2.3 Results: We set four *necessary* criteria for tablet study

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 12

This slide was made using SmartArt graphics, which are part of PowerPoint. SmartArt graphics help you show logical relationships. Here, the relationship is that the hospital-supplied model is "heavier"—that is, has more to recommend it—than the BYOD model.

The speakers added the checkmark to emphasize that the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the BYOD model.

If the images you show are not your own intellectual property, you can legally display them in a college classroom because they are covered by the fair-use provisions of U.S. copyright law. However, if you display them in a business presentation, you would need formal written permission from the copyright holders. See Ch. 2, pp. 22–24, for more information.

Money: Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Chains on laptop: Elnur/Shutterstock.com. Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com.

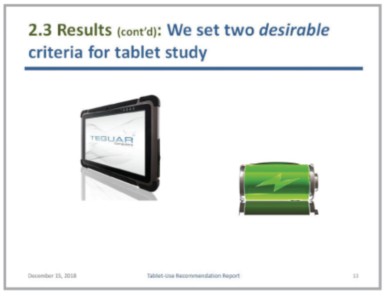
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first slide shows the first Results slide with a pie chart showing which laptops are being used. Text reads, A pie chart is a logical choice for representing a small number of components (usually seven or fewer) that add up to 100 percent. Note that the speakers use conservative blues for all their graphics on the slide set. You don’t need a rainbow full of colors. You need just enough difference so that the audience can distinguish between the different slices. The second slide shows another pie chart showing expert users. Text reads, Slides work best if the text is brief. The speaker will explain that here are the responses to the statement “I consider myself an expert user of my tablet.” The third slide shows a pie chart showing clinical staff that uses tablets clinically. The fourth slide shows a pie chart depicting clinical staff that prefer hospital-owned models to B Y O D. The fifth shows a balance scale with B Y O D versus hospital-supplied devices. Text reads, This slide was made using SmartArt graphics, which are part of PowerPoint. SmartArt graphics help you show logical relationships. Here, the relationship is that the hospital-supplied model is “heavier” — that is, has more to recommend it — than the BYOD model. The speakers added the checkmark to emphasize that the hospital-supplied model is preferable to the BYOD model. The six slide shows four necessary criterial for tablet study. Four images are shown. Text reads, If the images you show are not your own intellectual property, you can legally display them in a college classroom because they are covered by the fair-use provisions of U S copyright law. However, if you display them in a business presentation, you would need formal written permission from the copyright holders. See Chapter 2, pages 22–24, for more information. Money: Bureau of Engraving and

Printing. Chains on laptop: Elnur slash Shutterstock dot com. Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright slash Shutterstock dot com.

Return to Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

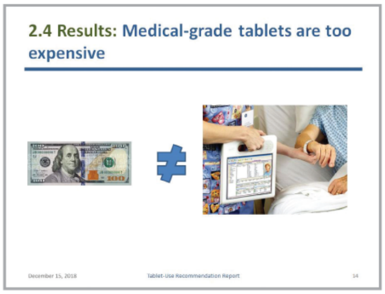
Extended description for Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation


2.3 Results (cont'd): We set two *desirable* criteria for tablet study

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 13

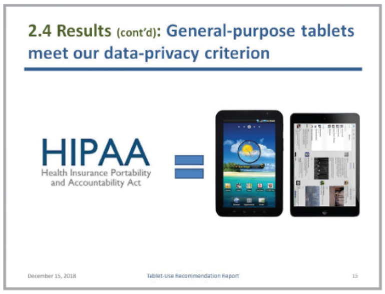
The speakers used the "appear" animation to display first the picture of the tablet and then the picture of the battery. This feature lets the speakers display on the screen only what they are discussing so that the audience is not distracted by other images.

TMT-1830-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. Battery: oxanaart/Shutterstock.com.


2.4 Results: Medical-grade tablets are too expensive

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 14

Money: Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore.

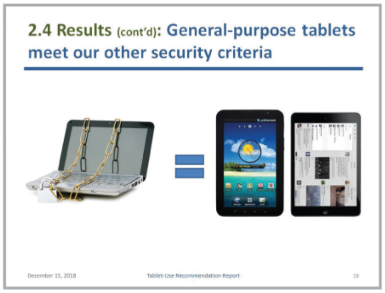

2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets meet our data-privacy criterion

HIPAA
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 15

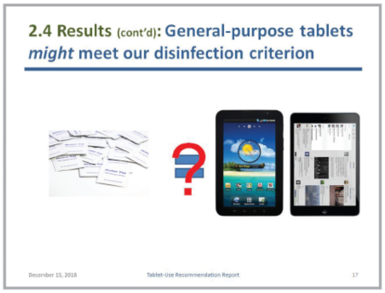
HootSuite App for iPod: HootSuite.

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's


2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets meet our other security criteria

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 16

Chains on laptop: Elnur/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

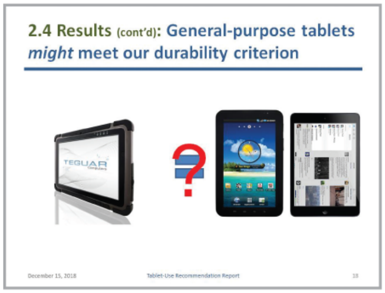

2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets *might* meet our disinfection criterion

December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 17

The formatting that appears throughout the slide set — the background color, the horizontal rule, and the footer — is created in the Slide-Master view. This formatting appears in every slide unless you modify or delete it for that slide.

Note that the speakers use color — sparingly — for emphasis.

Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.


2.4 Results (cont'd): General-purpose tablets *might* meet our durability criterion

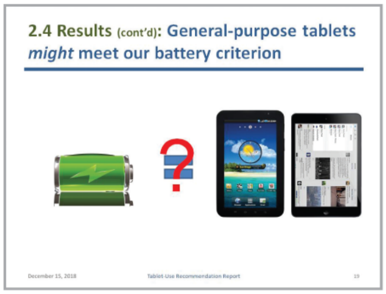
December 15, 2018 Tablet-Use Recommendation Report 18

TMT-1830-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

The first slide shows two desirable criteria for tablet study. Photos of a tablet and battery are used. Text reads, The speakers used the “appear” animation to display first the picture of the tablet and then the picture of the battery. This feature lets the speakers display on the screen only what they are discussing so that the audience is not distracted by other images. T M T-1 8 3 0-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. Battery: oxanaart slash Shutterstock dot com. The second slide shows how medical grade tablets are too expensive. Photos of money and a tablet are shown. Text reads, Money: Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore. The third slide shows HIPPA equals two tablet photos. Text reads, HootSuite App for iPod: HootSuite. The fourth slide shows that general purpose tablets meet security criteria. Photos show a laptop with chains equals two tablets. Text reads, Chains on laptop: Elnur slash Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite. The fifth shows general purpose tablets may meet disinfection criterion. Photos depicted are wipes equals with a red question mark and two tablets. Text reads, The formatting that appears throughout the slide set — the background color, the horizontal rule, and the footer — is created in the Slide- Master view. This formatting appears in every unless you modify or delete it for that slide. Note that the speakers use color — sparingly — for emphasis. Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite. The sixth slide shows general purpose tablets may meet durability criterion. Photos depicted are a medical tablet equals with a red question mark and two tablets. Text reads, T M T-1 8 3 0-10 MEDICAL TABLET PC: Courtesy Teguar Corporation. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

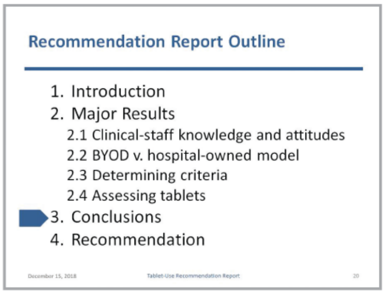
Return to Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

Extended description for Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation



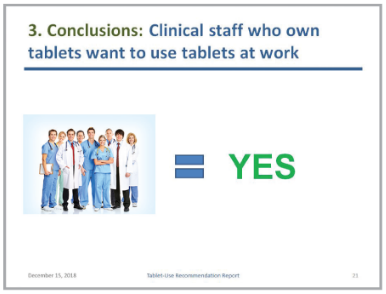
2.4 Results (cont'd): **General-purpose tablets *might* meet our battery criterion**

Battery: oxanaart/Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.



Recommendation Report Outline

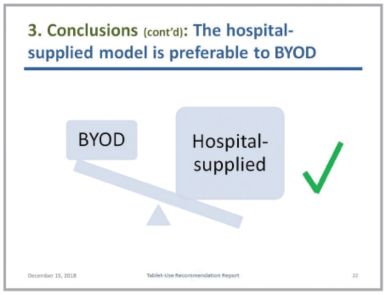
1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation



3. Conclusions: Clinical staff who own tablets want to use tablets at work

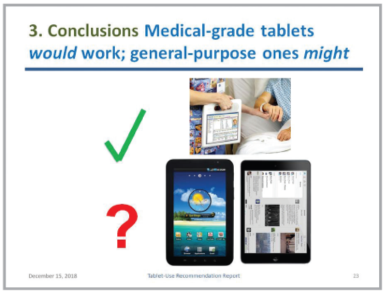
As discussed in Ch. 13, conclusions are inferences you draw from results.

Photo: kurhan/Shutterstock.com.



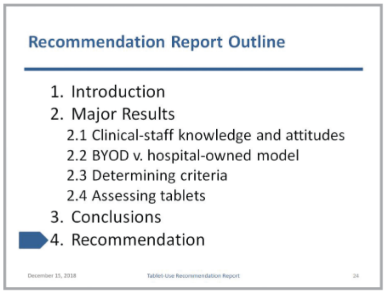
3. Conclusions (cont'd): **The hospital-supplied model is preferable to BYOD**

BYOD
Hospital-supplied



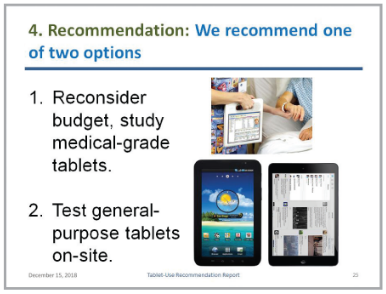
3. Conclusions Medical-grade tablets *would* work; general-purpose ones *might*

Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.



Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
   - 2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
   - 2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
   - 2.3 Determining criteria
   - 2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation



4. Recommendation: We recommend one of two options

1. Reconsider budget, study medical-grade tablets.
2. Test general-purpose tablets on-site.

As discussed in Ch. 13, recommendations are statements about what you think should be done next.

Some speakers like to make a final slide with the word *Questions?* on it to signal the end of the presentation. You can also display contact information (such as your email address) to encourage audience members to get in touch with you.

Photo of Motion C5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

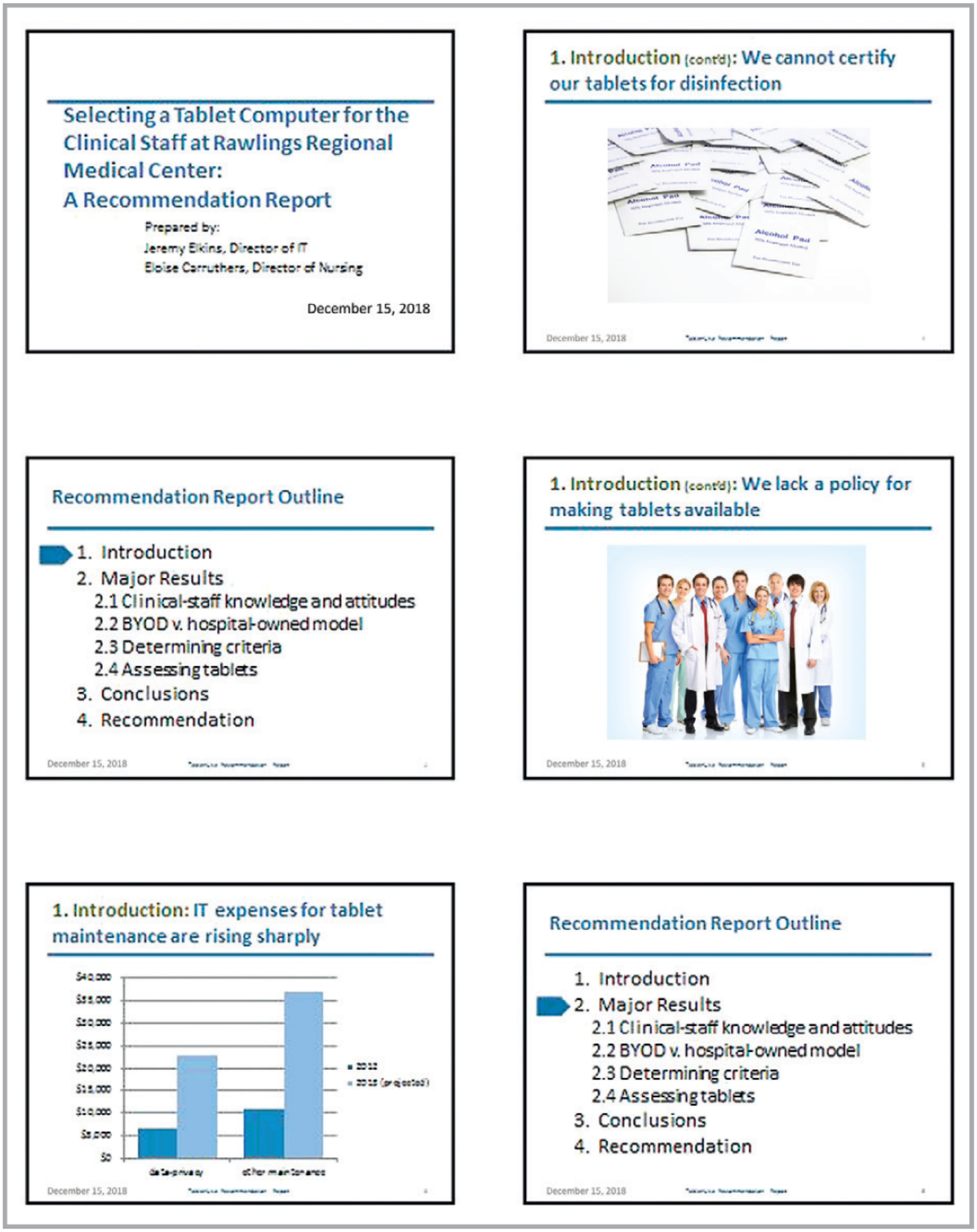
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The first slide show that general purpose tablets may meet battery criterion. Images shown are a battery, equal sign with red question mark and two tablets. Text reads, Battery: oxanaart slash

Shutterstock.com. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite. The second slide shows the Recommendation report outline with an arrow marking conclusions. The third slide shows a picture of clinical staff equals YES depicting staff want to use tablets. The fourth shows a scale depicting hospital supplied models are preferred and a checkmark. The fifth slide shows medical grade tablets would work and general purpose ones may. A picture of a hospital grade tablet has a checkmark and other tablets with a question mark. Text reads, Photo of Motion C 5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite. The sixth slide shows the outline with an arrow marking recommendation. The seventh slide shows two options for use of either medical grade tablets or general purpose tablets. The text reads, As discussed in Chapter 13, recommendations are statements about what you think should be done next. Some speakers like to make a final slide with the word “Questions?” on it to signal the end of the presentation. You can also display contact information (such as your email address) to encourage audience members to get in touch with you. Photo of Motion C 5: Courtesy of Xplore. HootSuite App for iPad: HootSuite.

Return to Figure 15.3 Sample PowerPoint Presentation

Extended description for Figure 15.5 Handout



Selecting a Tablet Computer for the Clinical Staff at Rawlings Regional Medical Center:
A Recommendation Report

Prepared by:
Jeremy Elkins, Director of IT
Eloise Carruthers, Director of Nursing

December 15, 2018

Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
    2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
    2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
    2.3 Determining criteria
    2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction: IT expenses for tablet maintenance are rising sharply

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction (cont'd): We cannot certify our tablets for disinfection

December 15, 2018

---

1. Introduction (cont'd): We lack a policy for making tablets available

December 15, 2018

Recommendation Report Outline

1. Introduction
2. Major Results
    2.1 Clinical-staff knowledge and attitudes
    2.2 BYOD v. hospital-owned model
    2.3 Determining criteria
    2.4 Assessing tablets
3. Conclusions
4. Recommendation

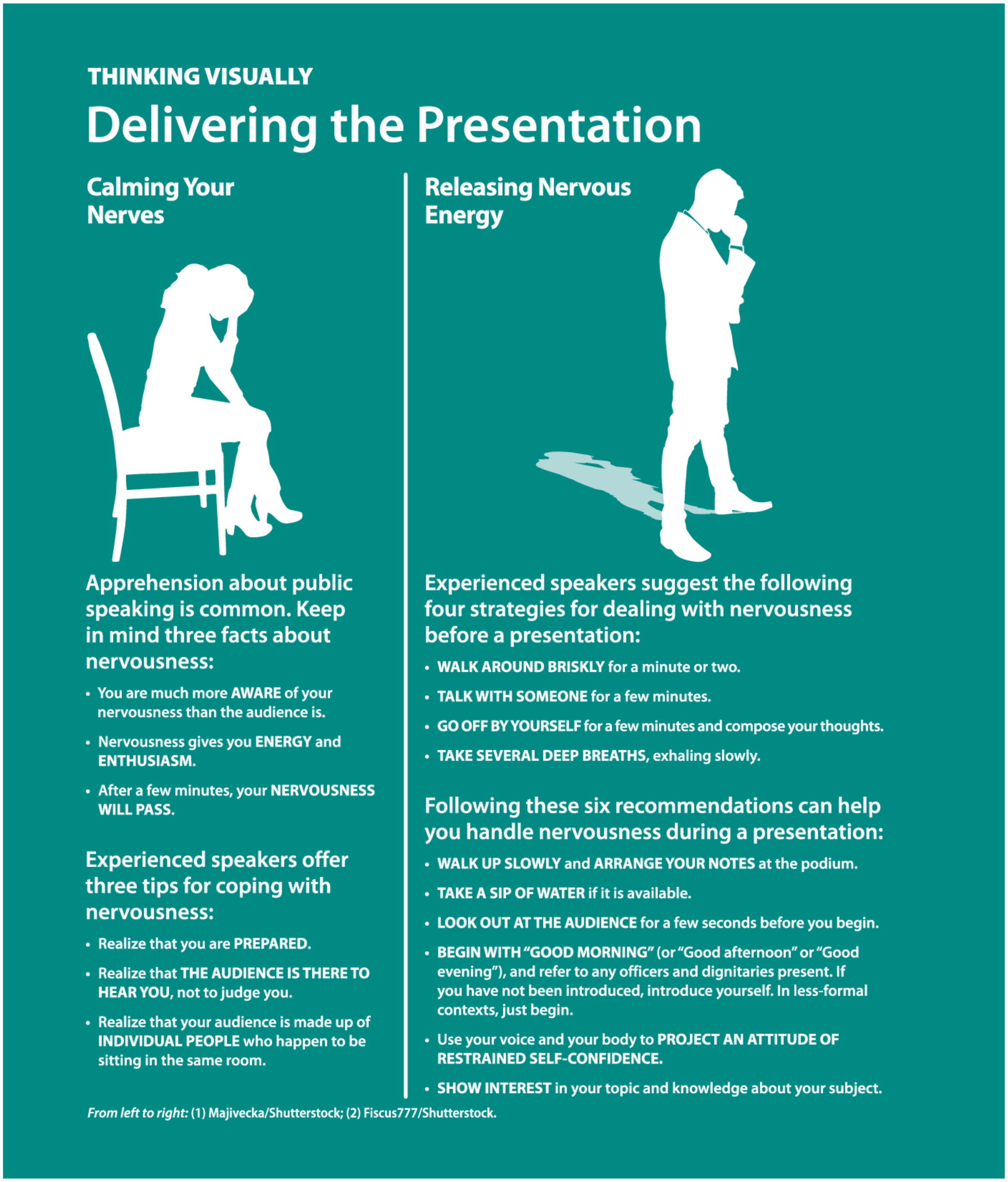
December 15, 2018

Disinfecting wipes: BeeBright/Shutterstock.com. Photo of health-care workers: kurhan/Shutterstock.com.

The first slide shows some text. Second slide shows title with a graphic. Third slide shows a list. Fourth slide shows a title with a photo. Fifth slide shows a graph. Sixth slide shows text.

Return to Figure 15.5 Handout

Extended description for An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text



THINKING VISUALLY

Delivering the Presentation

Calming Your Nerves

Apprehension about public speaking is common. Keep in mind three facts about nervousness:

- You are much more **AWARE** of your nervousness than the audience is.
- Nervousness gives you **ENERGY** and **ENTHUSIASM.**
- After a few minutes, your **NERVOUSNESS WILL PASS.**

Experienced speakers offer three tips for coping with nervousness:

- Realize that you are **PREPARED.**
- Realize that **THE AUDIENCE IS THERE TO HEAR YOU,** not to judge you.
- Realize that your audience is made up of **INDIVIDUAL PEOPLE** who happen to be sitting in the same room.

Releasing Nervous Energy

Experienced speakers suggest the following four strategies for dealing with nervousness before a presentation:

- **WALK AROUND BRISKLY** for a minute or two.
- **TALK WITH SOMEONE** for a few minutes.
- **GO OFF BY YOURSELF** for a few minutes and compose your thoughts.
- **TAKE SEVERAL DEEP BREATHS,** exhaling slowly.

Following these six recommendations can help you handle nervousness during a presentation:

- **WALK UP SLOWLY** and **ARRANGE YOUR NOTES** at the podium.
- **TAKE A SIP OF WATER** if it is available.
- **LOOK OUT AT THE AUDIENCE** for a few seconds before you begin.
- **BEGIN WITH "GOOD MORNING"** (or "Good afternoon" or "Good evening"), and refer to any officers and dignitaries present. If you have not been introduced, introduce yourself. In less-formal contexts, just begin.
- Use your voice and your body to **PROJECT AN ATTITUDE OF RESTRAINED SELF-CONFIDENCE.**
- **SHOW INTEREST** in your topic and knowledge about your subject.

From left to right: (1) Majivecka/Shutterstock; (2) Fiscus777/Shutterstock.

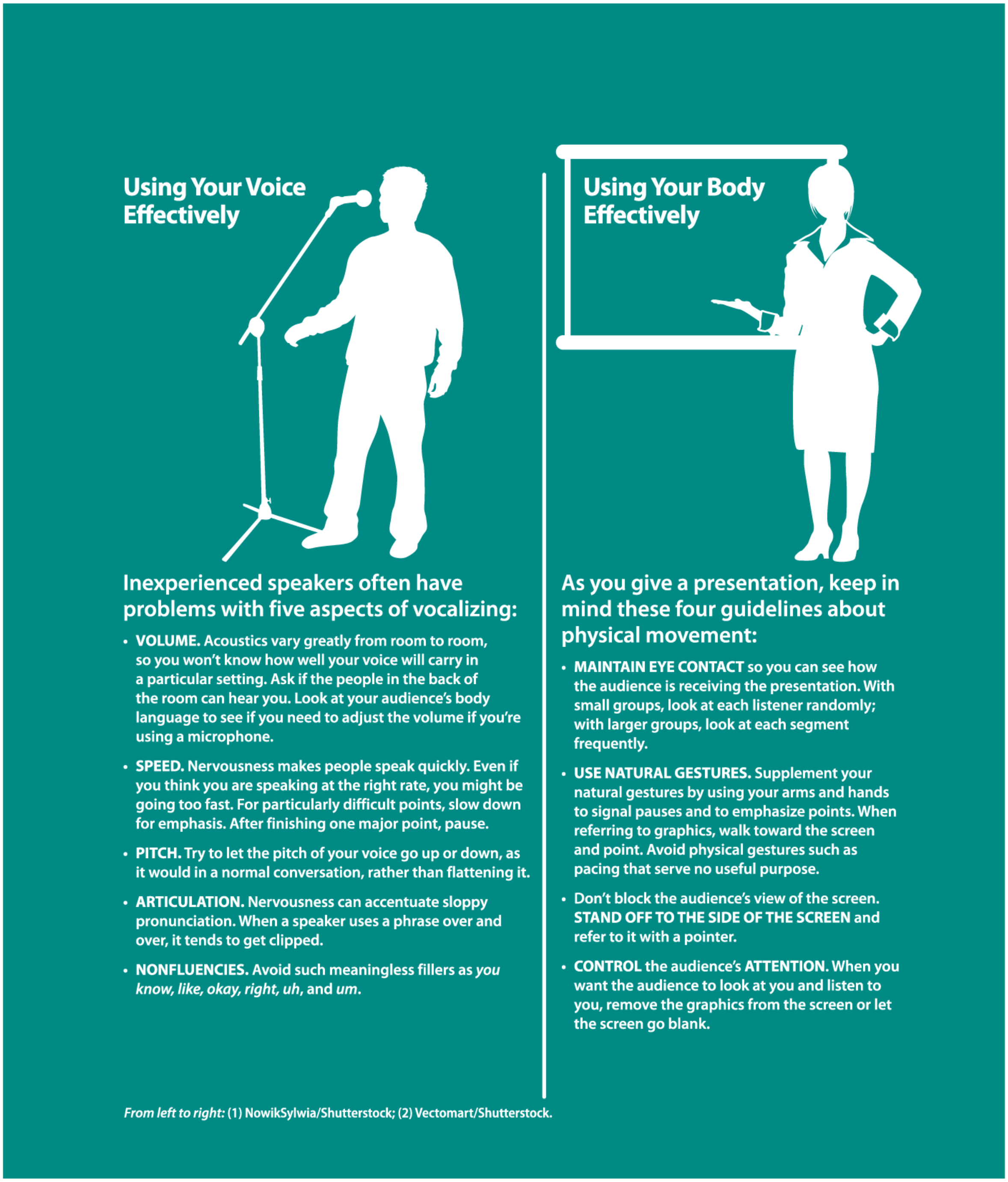
Left: Majivecka/Shutterstock; right: Fiscus777/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The page is divided into two columns. The left side reads, Calming your Nerves. A silhouette shows a woman sitting in a chair with her hand to her head. Text below reads, Apprehension about public speaking is common. Keep in mind three facts about nervousness:

Bullet You are much more AWARE of your nervousness than the audience is. Bullet Nervousness gives you ENERGY and ENTHUSIASM. Bullet After a few minutes, your NERVOUSNESS WILL PASS. Experienced speakers offer three tips for coping with nervousness: Bullet Realize that you are PREPARED. Bullet Realize that THE AUDIENCE IS THERE TO HEAR YOU, not to judge you. Bullet Realize that your audience is made up of INDIVIDUAL PEOPLE who happen to be sitting in the same room. The right side reads, Releasing Nervous Energy. A silhouette shows a man standing with his fist to his mouth. Text reads, Experienced speakers suggest the following four strategies for dealing with nervousness before a presentation: Bullet WALK AROUND BRISKLY for a minute or two. Bullet TALK WITH SOMEONE for a few minutes. Bullet GO OFF BY YOURSELF for a few minutes and compose your thoughts. Bullet TAKE SEVERAL DEEP BREATHS, exhaling slowly. Following these six recommendations can help you handle nervousness during a presentation: Bullet WALK UP SLOWLY and ARRANGE YOUR NOTES at the podium. Bullet TAKE A SIP OF WATER if it is available. Bullet LOOK OUT AT THE AUDIENCE for a few seconds before you begin. Bullet BEGIN WITH “GOOD MORNING” (or “Good afternoon” or “Good evening”), and refer to any officers and dignitaries present. If you have not been introduced, introduce yourself. In less formal contexts, just begin. Bullet Use your voice and your body to PROJECT AN ATTITUDE OF RESTRAINED SELF-CONFIDENCE. Bullet SHOW INTEREST in your topic and knowledge about your subject.

Return to An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text

Extended description for An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text



Using Your Voice Effectively

Inexperienced speakers often have problems with five aspects of vocalizing:

- **VOLUME.** Acoustics vary greatly from room to room, so you won't know how well your voice will carry in a particular setting. Ask if the people in the back of the room can hear you. Look at your audience's body language to see if you need to adjust the volume if you're using a microphone.
- **SPEED.** Nervousness makes people speak quickly. Even if you think you are speaking at the right rate, you might be going too fast. For particularly difficult points, slow down for emphasis. After finishing one major point, pause.
- **PITCH.** Try to let the pitch of your voice go up or down, as it would in a normal conversation, rather than flattening it.
- **ARTICULATION.** Nervousness can accentuate sloppy pronunciation. When a speaker uses a phrase over and over, it tends to get clipped.
- **NONFLUENCIES.** Avoid such meaningless fillers as *you know, like, okay, right, uh*, and *um*.

Using Your Body Effectively

As you give a presentation, keep in mind these four guidelines about physical movement:

- **MAINTAIN EYE CONTACT** so you can see how the audience is receiving the presentation. With small groups, look at each listener randomly; with larger groups, look at each segment frequently.
- **USE NATURAL GESTURES.** Supplement your natural gestures by using your arms and hands to signal pauses and to emphasize points. When referring to graphics, walk toward the screen and point. Avoid physical gestures such as pacing that serve no useful purpose.
- Don't block the audience's view of the screen. **STAND OFF TO THE SIDE OF THE SCREEN** and refer to it with a pointer.
- **CONTROL** the audience's **ATTENTION.** When you want the audience to look at you and listen to you, remove the graphics from the screen or let the screen go blank.

From left to right: (1) NowikSylwia/Shutterstock; (2) Vectomart/Shutterstock.

Left: NowikSylwia/Shutterstock; right: Vectomart/Shutterstock.
Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

The left column is titled, Using Your Voice Effectively. A silhouette shows a man with a microphone. Text below reads, Inexperienced speakers often have problems with five aspects of vocalizing: Bullet VOLUME. Acoustics vary greatly from room to room, so you won't know how well your voice will carry in a particular setting. Ask if the people in the back of the room can hear you. Look at your audience's body language to see if you need to adjust the volume if you're using a microphone. Bullet SPEED. Nervousness makes people speak quickly. Even if you think you are speaking at the right rate, you might be going too fast. For particularly difficult points, slow down for emphasis. After finishing one major point, pause. Bullet PITCH. Try to let the pitch of your voice go up or down, as it would in a normal conversation, rather than flattening it. Bullet ARTICULATION. Nervousness can accentuate sloppy pronunciation. When a speaker uses a phrase over and over, it tends to get clipped. Bullet NONFLUENCIES. Avoid such meaningless fillers as you know, like, okay, right, uh, and um. The right column is titled Using Your Body Effectively. A silhouette shows a woman beside a screen with her hand pointing to it. Text reads, As you give a presentation, keep in mind these four guidelines about physical movement: • MAINTAIN EYE CONTACT so you can see how the audience is receiving the presentation. With small groups, look at each listener randomly; with larger groups, look at each segment frequently. • USE NATURAL GESTURES. Supplement your natural gestures by using your arms and hands to signal pauses and to emphasize points. When referring to graphics, walk toward the screen and point. Avoid physical gestures such as pacing that serve no useful purpose. • Don't block the audience's view of the screen. STAND OFF TO THE SIDE OF THE SCREEN and refer to it with a pointer. • CONTROL the audience's ATTENTION. When you want the audience to look at you and listen to you, remove the graphics from the screen or let the screen go blank.

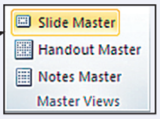
Return to An illustration is titled Thinking Visually. Delivering the Presentation. The page has a colored background with white text

Extended description for An illustration is titled How to Create A Presentation Template in PowerPoint and Prezi, and contains text illustrated with screenshots

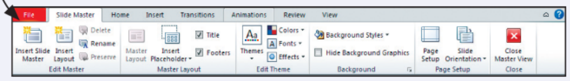
How To Create a Presentation Template

PowerPoint

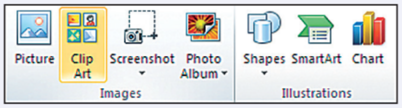
In PowerPoint, select **Slide Master** from the **Master Views** group on the **View** tab.


Slide Master
Handout Master
Notes Master
Master Views

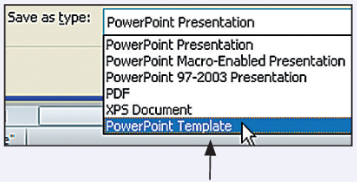
By selecting elements on the master slide and then using the commands on the **Slide Master** tab, you can add a background, choose a color scheme, and choose type styles and sizes.


File
Slide Master
Home
Insert
Transitions
Animations
Review
View
Insert Slide Master
Insert Layout
Delete
Rename
Preserve
Edit Master
Master Layout
Insert Placeholder
Title
Footers
Master Layout
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Effects
Edit Theme
Background Styles
Hide Background Graphics
Background
Page Setup
Slide Orientation
Page Setup
Close Master View
Close

To add graphics to the master slide, use the **Images** and **Illustrations** groups on the **Insert** tab.

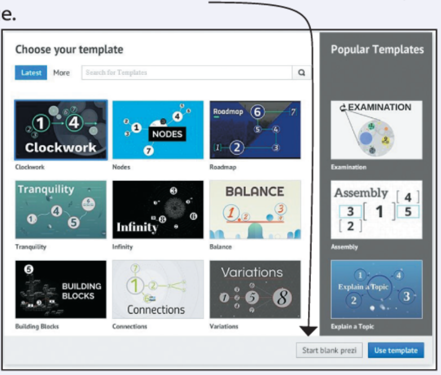

Picture
Clip Art
Screenshot
Photo Album
Images
Shapes
SmartArt
Chart
Illustrations

To save your page design so that you can use this design for another presentation, select **Save As** from the **File** tab, and then select **PowerPoint Template** from the drop-down menu.

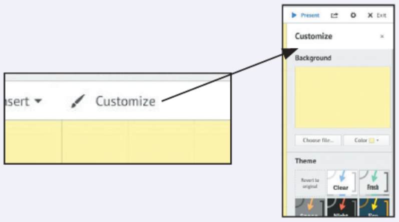

Save as type:
PowerPoint Presentation
PowerPoint Presentation
PowerPoint Macro-Enabled Presentation
PowerPoint 97-2003 Presentation
PDF
XPS Document
PowerPoint Template

Prezi

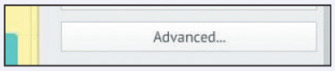
In Prezi, select **Start blank prezi** on the **Choose your template** page.


Choose your template
Latest
More
Search for Templates
Clockwork
Nodes
Roadmap
Tranquility
Infinity
Balance
Building Blocks
Connections
Variations
Popular Templates
Examination
Assembly
Explain a Topic
Start blank prezi
Use template

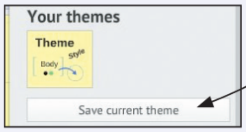
Click on the **Customize** option to launch the **Customize** panel, where you can choose the background colors and insert your own background images or content from your computer.


sert
Customize
Present
Exit
Customize
Background
Choose file...
Color
Theme
Revert to original
Clear
Fresh

More background options are available from the **Advanced** button at the bottom of the **Customize** panel.



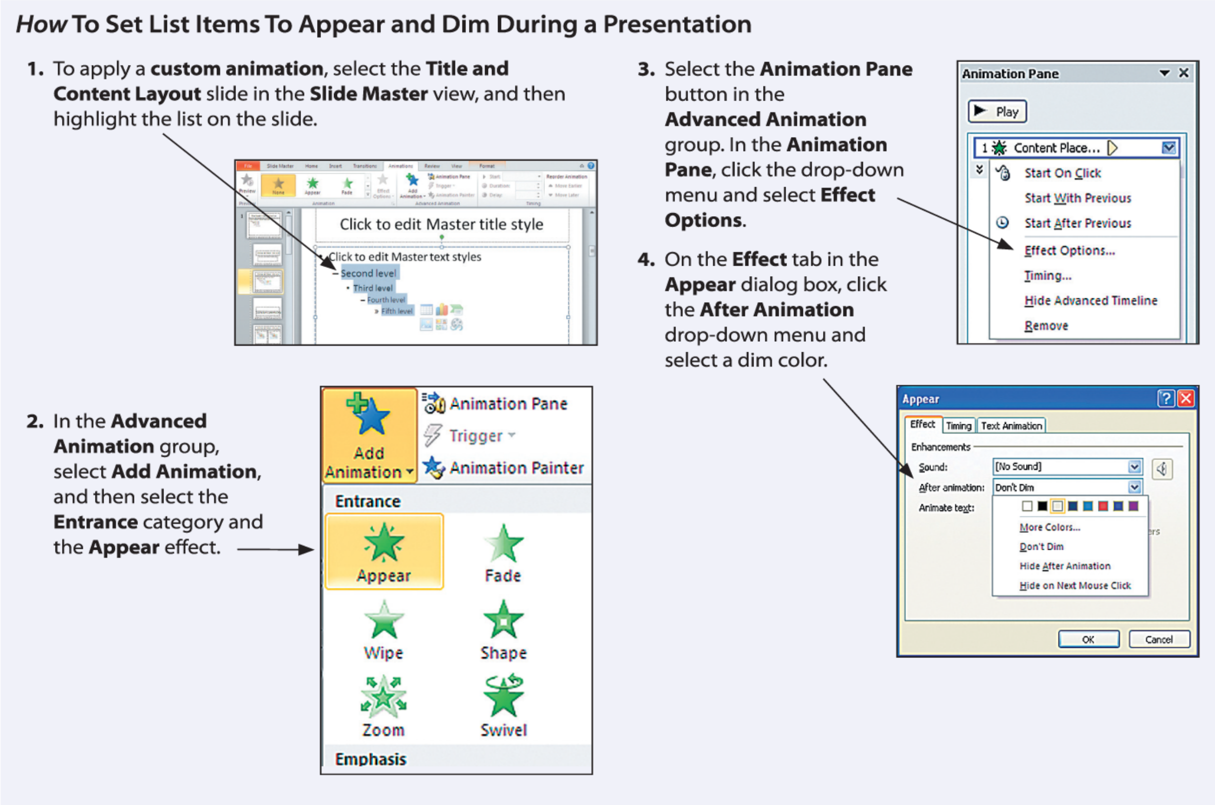
To save your customized background theme, choose **Save current theme**.


Your themes
Theme
Body
Style
Save current theme

The left column shows PowerPoint. Text reads, PowerPoint. In PowerPoint, select Slide Master from the Master Views group on the View tab. A screen shot shows the view tab. By selecting elements on the master slide and then using the commands on the Slide Master tab, you can add a background, choose a color scheme, and choose type styles and sizes. A screen shot shows the slide master tab and all of its available options. Text reads, To add graphics to the master slide, use the Images and Illustrations groups on the Insert tab. A screen shot shows the insert tab with clip art highlighted. To save your page design so that you can use this design for another presentation, select Save As from the File tab, and then select PowerPoint Template from the drop-down menu. The Save as type drop down is shown with PowerPoint template selected. The right column shows Prezi instructions. Text reads, Prezi. In Prezi, select Start blank prezi on the Choose your template page. A window shows the different available backgrounds and popular templates. Click on the Customize option to launch the Customize panel, where you can choose the background colors and insert your own background images or content from your computer. Screen shots show the customize panel where it is possible to choose background and theme. More background options are available from the Advanced button at the bottom of the Customize panel. The advanced window is shown. To save your customized background theme, choose Save current theme. A window shows Your themes and save current theme.

Return to An illustration is titled How to Create A Presentation Template in PowerPoint and Prezi, and contains text illustrated with screenshots

Extended description for An illustration is titled How To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation in PowerPoint. Four steps are shown with text and screenshots



How To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation

1. To apply a **custom animation**, select the **Title and Content Layout** slide in the **Slide Master** view, and then highlight the list on the slide.

2. In the **Advanced Animation** group, select **Add Animation**, and then select the **Entrance** category and the **Appear** effect.

3. Select the **Animation Pane** button in the **Advanced Animation** group. In the **Animation Pane**, click the drop-down menu and select **Effect Options**.

4. On the **Effect** tab in the **Appear** dialog box, click the **After Animation** drop-down menu and select a dim color.

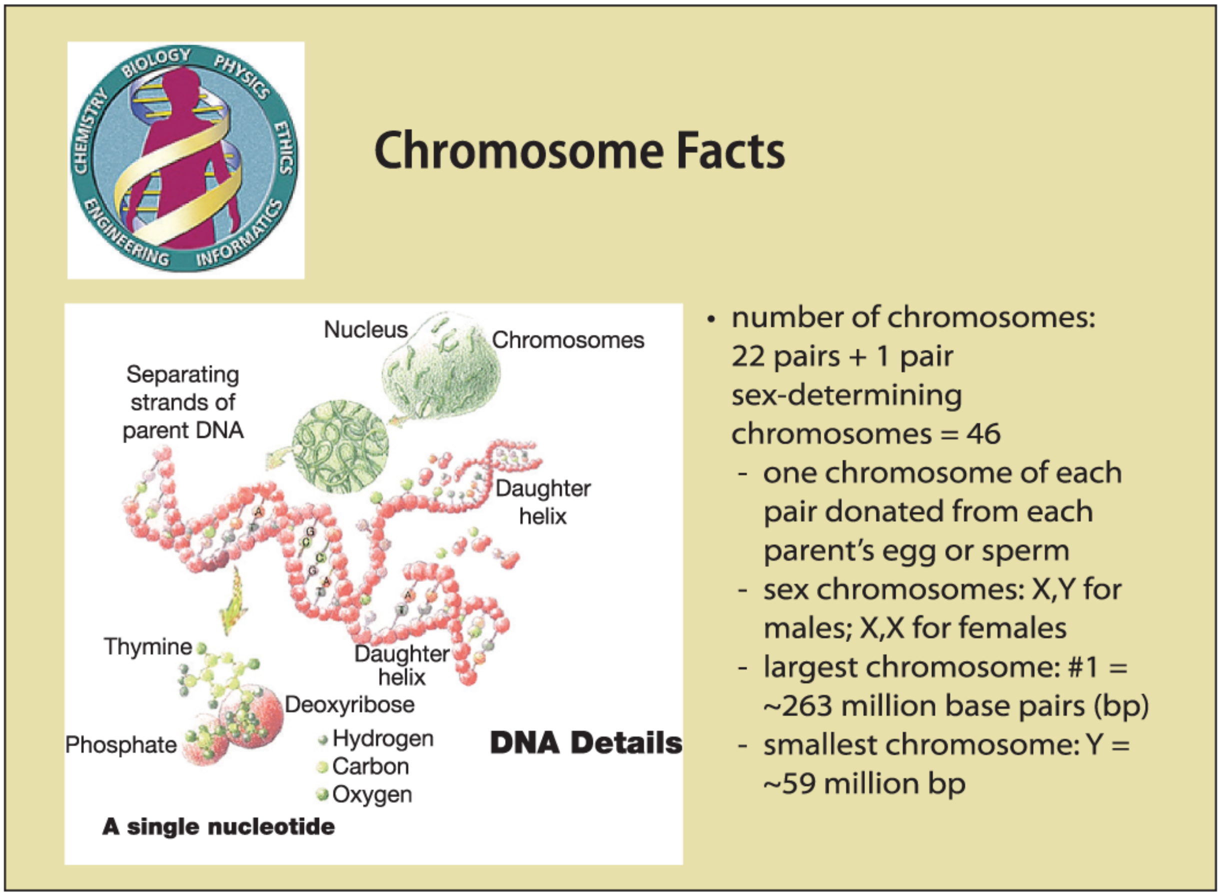
Click to edit Master title style
Click to edit Master text styles
Second level
Third level
Fourth level
Fifth level
Add Animation
Animation Pane
Trigger
Animation Painter
Entrance
Appear
Fade
Wipe
Shape
Zoom
Swivel
Emphasis
Animation Pane
Play
1 Content Place...
Start On Click
Start With Previous
Start After Previous
Effect Options...
Timing...
Hide Advanced Timeline
Remove
Appear
Effect
Timing
Text Animation
Enhancements
Sound:
[No Sound]
After animation:
Don't Dim
Animate text:
More Colors...
Don't Dim
Hide After Animation
Hide on Next Mouse Click
OK
Cancel

Text reads, 1. To apply a custom animation, select the Title and Content Layout slide in the Slide Master view, and then highlight the list on the slide. An arrow points to a screenshot of the window with the second through fifth levels highlighted. 2. In the Advanced Animation group, select Add Animation, and then select the Entrance category and the Appear effect. An arrow points to the screenshot of the window showing the Appear option highlighted. 3.

Select the Animation Pane button in the Advanced Animation group. In the Animation Pane, click the drop-down menu and select Effect Options. An arrow points to a screenshot of the pane showing the effect options. 4. On the Effect tab in the Appear dialog box, click the After Animation drop-down menu and select a dim color. An arrow points to the effect tab showing options for colors.

Return to An illustration is titled How To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation in PowerPoint. Four steps are shown with text and screenshots

Extended description for An illustration shows how to integrate graphics and text on a presentation slide



Chromosome Facts

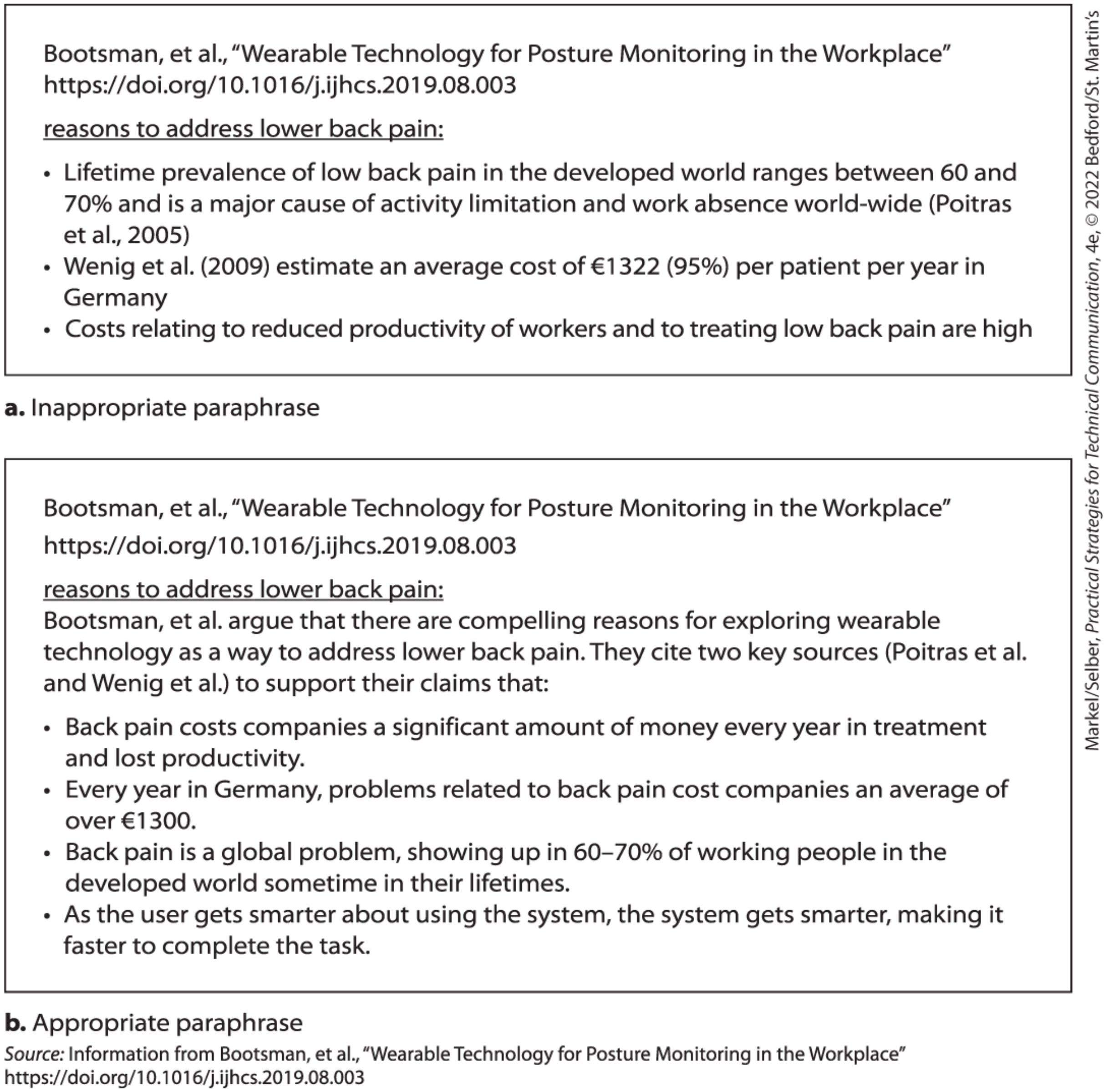
Nucleus
Chromosomes
Separating strands of parent DNA
Daughter helix
Thymine
Daughter helix
Deoxyribose
Phosphate
Hydrogen
Carbon
Oxygen
A single nucleotide
DNA Details

- number of chromosomes: 22 pairs + 1 pair sex-determining chromosomes = 46
  - one chromosome of each pair donated from each parent's egg or sperm
  - sex chromosomes: X,Y for males; X,X for females
  - largest chromosome: #1 = ~263 million base pairs (bp)
  - smallest chromosome: Y = ~59 million bp

The slide contains a logo at the top left, the heading Chromosome Facts centered, a large graphic of DNA details at bottom left, and text to the right explaining the graphic.

Return to An illustration shows how to integrate graphics and text on a presentation slide

Extended description for Figure A.1 Inappropriate and Appropriate Paraphrased Notes



Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace"
https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

reasons to address lower back pain:

- Lifetime prevalence of low back pain in the developed world ranges between 60 and 70% and is a major cause of activity limitation and work absence world-wide (Poitras et al., 2005)
- Wenig et al. (2009) estimate an average cost of €1322 (95%) per patient per year in Germany
- Costs relating to reduced productivity of workers and to treating low back pain are high

a. Inappropriate paraphrase

Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace"
https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

reasons to address lower back pain:
Bootsman, et al. argue that there are compelling reasons for exploring wearable technology as a way to address lower back pain. They cite two key sources (Poitras et al. and Wenig et al.) to support their claims that:

- Back pain costs companies a significant amount of money every year in treatment and lost productivity.
- Every year in Germany, problems related to back pain cost companies an average of over €1300.
- Back pain is a global problem, showing up in 60–70% of working people in the developed world sometime in their lifetimes.
- As the user gets smarter about using the system, the system gets smarter, making it faster to complete the task.

b. Appropriate paraphrase

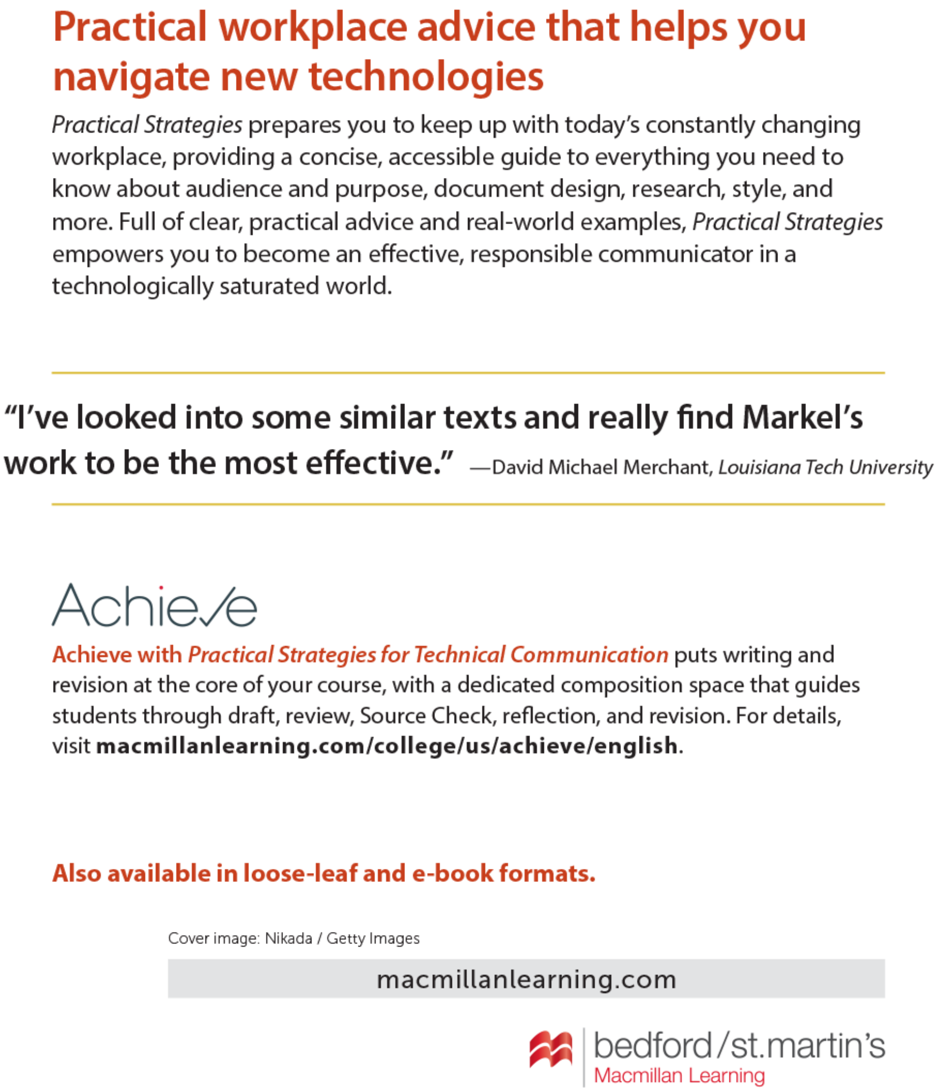
Source: Information from Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace" https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijhcs.2019.08.003

Markel/Selber, *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication*, 4e, © 2022 Bedford/St. Martin's

Text for excerpt a reads, Bootsman, et al., "Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace" https: slash slash doi dot org slash 10.1016 slash j.ijhcs.2019.08.003 reasons to address lower back pain: Bullet Lifetime prevalence of low back pain in the developed world ranges between 60 and 70 percent and is a major cause of activity limitation and work absence world-wide (Poitras et al., 2005) Bullet Wenig et al. (2009) estimate an average cost of 1322 euro (95 percent) per patient per year in Germany Bullet Costs relating to reduced productivity of workers and to treating low back pain are high Text for excerpt b reads, Bootsman, et al., “Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace”l https: slash slash doi dot org slash 10.1016 slash j dot i j h c s dot 2019 dot 0 8 dot 0 0 3 reasons to address lower back pain: Bootsman, et al. argue that there are compelling reasons for exploring wearable technology as a way to address lower back pain. They cite two key sources (Poitras et al. and Wenig et al.) to support their claims that: Bullet Back pain costs companies a significant amount of money every year in treatment and lost productivity. Bullet Every year in Germany, problems related to back pain cost companies an average of over 1300 euro. Bullet Back pain is a global problem, showing up in 60–70 percent of working people in the developed world sometime in their lifetimes. Bullet As the user gets smarter about using the system, the system gets smarter, making it faster to complete the task. At the bottom the source is cited, reading Source: Information from Bootsman, et al., “Wearable Technology for Posture Monitoring in the Workplace” https: slash slash do dot org slash 10 dot 1 0 1 6 slash j dot i j h c s dot 2019 dot 0 8 dot 0 0 3

Return to Figure A.1 Inappropriate and Appropriate Paraphrased Notes

Extended description for The back cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber



Practical workplace advice that helps you navigate new technologies

Practical Strategies prepares you to keep up with today's constantly changing workplace, providing a concise, accessible guide to everything you need to know about audience and purpose, document design, research, style, and more. Full of clear, practical advice and real-world examples, *Practical Strategies* empowers you to become an effective, responsible communicator in a technologically saturated world.

"I've looked into some similar texts and really find Markel's work to be the most effective." —David Michael Merchant, *Louisiana Tech University*

Achieve

Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication* puts writing and revision at the core of your course, with a dedicated composition space that guides students through draft, review, Source Check, reflection, and revision. For details, visit **macmillanlearning.com/college/us/achieve/english**.

Also available in loose-leaf and e-book formats.

Cover image: Nikada / Getty Images

macmillanlearning.com

bedford/st.martin's
Macmillan Learning

The back cover of the book shows text as follows. Practical workplace advice that helps you navigate new technologies. Practical Strategies prepares you to keep up with today's constantly changing workplace providing a concise, accessible guide to everything you need to know about audience and purpose, document design, research, style, and more. Full of clear, practical advice and real-world examples, Practical Stategies empowers you to become an effective, responsible communicator in a technologically saturated world. “I’ve looked Into some similar texts and really find Markel’s work to be the most effective.” David Michael Merchant, Louisiana Tech University. There is an Achieve logo below this text. Further, text reads, Achieve with Practical Strategies for Technical communication puts writing and revision at the core of your course, with a dedicated composition space that guides students through draft, review, Source check, reflection, and revision. For details, visit macmillanlearning dot com slash college slash u s slash achieve slash english. Also available in loose-leaf and e-book formats. I S B N information is at the bottom right corner.

Return to The back cover of the book Practical Strategies for Technical Communication: A Brief Guide, Fourth Edition, Mike Markel and Stuart A. Selber

Index of Selected Features

ETHICS NOTES

Distinguishing Plagiarism from Acceptable Reuse of Information

Pulling Your Weight on Collaborative Projects

Maintaining a Professional Presence Online

Meeting Your Readers' Needs Responsibly

Reporting and Analyzing Data Honestly

Avoiding Burying Bad News in Paragraphs

Euphemisms and Truth Telling

Using Type Sizes Responsibly

Designing Legal and Honest Online Documents

Creating Honest Graphics

Writing Honest Business Correspondence

Writing Honest Job-Application Materials

Writing Honest Proposals

Reporting Your Progress Honestly

Presenting Honest Recommendations

Answering Questions Honestly

TECH TIPS

Why and *How* To Format Columns

Why and *How* To Create Borders and Screens

Why and *How* To Insert and Modify Graphics

Why and *How* To Use Drawing Tools

Why and *How* To Create and Insert Screen Shots

Why and *How* To Use Email for Business Correspondence

Why and *How* To Create a Gantt Chart

Why and *How* To Make a Long Report Navigable

Why and *How* To Create a Presentation Template

Why and *How* To Set List Items To Appear and Dim During a Presentation

THINKING VISUALLY

Characteristics of a Technical Document
Measures of Excellence in Technical Documents
Principles for Ethical Communication
Advantages and Disadvantages of Collaboration
Determining the Important Characteristics of Your Audience
Characteristics of an Effective Graphic
Delivering the Presentation

CASES

Using the Measures of Excellence in Evaluating a Résumé

The Ethics of Requiring Students to Subsidize a Plagiarism-Detection Service
Accommodating a Team Member’s Scheduling Problems
Focusing on an Audience’s Needs and Interests
Revising a Questionnaire
Emphasizing Important Information in a Technical Description
Designing a Flyer
Creating Appropriate Graphics to Accompany a Report
Writing a Memo
Writing a Cover Letter
Writing an Introduction for a Proposal
Writing a Directive
Writing a Recommendation
Writing Instructions
Writing an Oral Presentation

Practical workplace advice that helps you navigate new technologies

Practical Strategies prepares you to keep up with today's constantly changing workplace, providing a concise, accessible guide to everything you need to know about audience and purpose, document design, research, style, and more. Full of clear, practical advice and real-world examples, *Practical Strategies* empowers you to become an effective, responsible communicator in a technologically saturated world.

> **"I've looked into some similar texts and really find Markel's work to be the most effective."** —David Michael Merchant, *Louisiana Tech University*

Achieve

Achieve with *Practical Strategies for Technical Communication* puts writing and revision at the core of your course, with a dedicated composition space that guides students through draft, review, Source Check, reflection, and revision. For details, visit **macmillanlearning.com/college/us/achieve/english**.

Also available in loose-leaf and e-book formats.

Cover image: Nikada / Getty Images

macmillanlearning.com

bedford/st.martin's
Macmillan Learning

HTML Page

- **Title** Text goes here